

InfiniBand™ Architecture Specification Volume 1

Release 1.5

June 22, 2020
Draft

Table 1 Revision History

Revision	Release Date	Notes
1.0	2000-09-26	Release 1.0
1.0.a	2001-06-19	Release 1.0 augmented with errata material. Updates only correct errors - no additional features have been added.
1.1	2002-11-06	Release 1.0.a augmented with additional features. Revised SA and CM Class with new version.
1.2	2004-09-07	Release 1.1 augmented with additional features (added annexes A7 through A10). Incorporated errata.
1.2.1	2004-11-30	Release 1.2 augmented with additional features (added annex A11-A13).
1.3	2015-03-03	Release 1.3 - added Annexes and integrated XRC into the main body. Updated Chapters include new Change Bars
1.4	2020-04-07	Release 1.4 - added new material from the LWG, MgtWG and SWG. Corrected errors in Chapter 9 introduced in release 1.2.1 as per comments from Pat Thaler. Added Virtualization Annex Added RoCE-v1 and RoCE-v2 Annexes Implemented comments approved by MgtWG
1.5	2020-06-22	Release 1.5 - NDR updates and new features from the LWG and MgtWG

LEGAL DISCLAIMER

This IBTA specification provided “AS IS” and without any warranty of any kind, including, without limitation, any express or implied warranty of non-infringement, merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose.

In no event shall IBTA or any member of IBTA be liable for any direct, indirect, special, exemplary, punitive, or consequential damages, including, without limitation, lost profits, even if advised of the possibility of such damages.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1: Introduction.....	73	1
1.1 Acknowledgments.....	73	2
1.2 InfiniBand Conceptual Overview.....	77	3
1.2.1 The Problem	77	4
1.2.2 Features.....	78	5
1.2.3 Benefits.....	78	6
1.3 Scope.....	79	7
1.4 Document Organization	80	8
1.4.1 Series of Volumes	80	9
1.4.2 Volume 1 Organization.....	81	10
1.5 Document Conventions	81	11
1.5.1 Byte Ordering.....	81	12
1.5.2 Numeric Values.....	82	13
1.6 Disclaimer	83	14
Chapter 2: Glossary	84	15
Chapter 3: Architectural Overview.....	101	16
3.1 Architecture Scope	102	17
3.1.1 Topologies & Components.....	103	18
3.2 Communication.....	105	19
3.2.1 Queuing	105	20
3.2.2 Connections.....	109	21
3.3 Communications Stack	109	22
3.4 IBA Components	111	23
3.4.1 Links & Repeaters.....	111	24
3.4.2 Channel Adapters	111	25
3.4.3 Switches	113	26
3.4.4 Routers	114	27
3.4.5 Management Components.....	115	28
3.4.5.1 Subnet Managers	115	29
3.4.5.2 Subnet Management Agents.....	115	30
3.4.5.3 General Service Agents.....	116	31
3.5 IBA Features	116	32
3.5.1 Queue Pairs.....	116	33
3.5.2 Types of Service	117	34
3.5.3 Keys.....	119	35

3.5.4	Virtual Memory Addresses	121	1
3.5.5	Protection Domains.....	121	2
3.5.6	Partitions	121	3
3.5.7	Virtual Lanes	122	4
3.5.8	Quality of Service.....	123	5
3.5.8.1	Service Level.....	124	6
3.5.8.2	SL to VL mapping.....	124	7
3.5.8.3	Partitions	124	8
3.5.9	Injection Rate Control	124	9
3.5.10	Addressing	125	10
3.5.11	Multicast.....	127	11
3.5.11.1	Multicast Example	128	12
3.5.11.2	Group Management	129	13
3.5.11.3	Multicast Prune.....	132	14
3.5.12	Verbs.....	132	15
3.6	Channel & Memory Semantics	132	16
3.6.1	Communication Interface.....	133	17
3.6.2	IBA Transport Services	135	18
3.7	IBA Layered Architecture	139	19
3.7.1	Physical Layer.....	140	20
3.7.2	Link Layer	141	21
3.7.3	Network Layer.....	142	22
3.7.4	Transport Layer.....	143	23
3.7.5	Upper Layer Protocols	145	24
3.7.5.1	Subnet Management.....	145	25
3.7.5.2	General Services.....	146	26
3.8	IBA Transaction Flow	147	27
3.9	IBA Management Infrastructure	148	28
3.9.1	Management Datagrams	151	29
3.9.2	Management Methods	152	30
3.9.2.1	Gets & Sets	152	31
3.9.2.2	Traps and Notices	153	32
3.9.2.3	Sends	153	33
3.9.2.4	Reports.....	153	34
3.9.3	Management Interfaces	153	35
3.9.4	Subnet Management Interface.....	153	36
3.9.4.1	Fabric Initialization.....	154	37
3.9.4.2	Directed Routes.....	154	38
3.9.5	General Service Interface	154	39
3.9.5.1	Redirection	155	40
			41
			42

3.10	I/O Operation	155	1
Chapter 4: Addressing		158	2
4.1	Terminology And Concepts	159	3
4.1.1	GID Usage and Properties.....	160	4
4.1.2	Channel Adapter, Switch, and Router Addressing Rules	164	5
4.1.3	Local Identifiers.....	164	6
			7
Chapter 5: Data Packet Format		167	8
5.1	Packet Types	167	9
5.2	Data Packet Format.....	168	10
5.2.1	Local Route Header (LRH) - 8 Bytes	171	11
5.2.2	Global Route Header (GRH) - 40 Bytes.....	171	12
5.2.3	Base Transport Header (BTH) - 12 Bytes	172	13
5.2.4	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH) - 4 Bytes	174	14
5.2.5	Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH) - 8 Bytes.....	174	15
5.2.6	RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH) - 16 Bytes	175	16
5.2.7	Atomic Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH) - 28 Bytes	176	17
5.2.8	XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)	176	18
5.2.9	ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) - 4 Bytes	177	19
5.2.10	Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH) - 8 Bytes.....	177	20
5.2.11	Immediate Data Extended Transport Header (ImmDt) - 4 Bytes	178	21
5.2.12	INVALIDATE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IETH) - 4 BYTES	178	22
5.2.13	Payload.....	178	23
5.2.14	Invariant CRC	179	24
5.2.15	Variant CRC	179	25
5.3	Raw Packet Format	179	26
5.4	Packet Examples	180	27
			28
Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface.....		182	29
6.1	Overview	182	30
6.2	Services provided by the Physical Layer.....	182	31
6.3	Interface between physical and Link Layers.....	183	32
6.3.1	Interface between physical receive and link receive.....	183	33
6.3.1.1	Phy_link - Physical Link Status	183	34
6.3.1.2	L_Init_Train - Link Initiate Retraining.....	183	35
6.3.1.3	rcv_stream - Receive Stream.....	184	36
6.3.2	Interface between physical Transmit and link Transmit	184	37
6.3.2.1	Xmit_stream - Transmit Stream.....	184	38
6.3.2.2	Xmit_Ready - Physical Transmitter Ready	184	39
			40
			41
			42

Chapter 7: Link Layer	186	1
7.1 Overview	186	2
7.1.1 State Machine Conventions	186	3
7.2 Link States	187	4
7.2.1 LinkDown State	187	5
7.2.2 LinkInitialize State	187	6
7.2.3 LinkArm State	187	7
7.2.4 LinkActive State	188	8
7.2.5 LinkActDefer State	188	9
7.2.6 Management State Change Commands	188	10
7.2.7 State Machine Terms	189	11
7.3 Packet Receiver States	191	12
7.4 Data Packet Check	194	13
7.5 Link Packet Check	197	14
7.6 Virtual Lanes Mechanisms	199	15
7.6.1 VL identification	201	16
7.6.2 Number of VLs supported	201	17
7.6.3 Special VLs	201	18
7.6.4 Buffering and Flow Control For Data VLs	202	19
7.6.5 Service Level	204	20
7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet	205	21
7.6.7 Initialization and Configuration	207	22
7.6.8 VL Scheduling and Flow Control For VL15 and Flow Control Packets	208	23
7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization	208	24
7.6.9.1 VL Arbitration When Only One Data VL Is Implemented	208	25
7.6.9.2 VL Arbitration When Multiple Data VLs Are Implemented	208	26
7.6.10 Enhanced QoS Arbiter	212	27
7.6.10.1 Bandwidth Sharing	213	28
7.6.10.2 Rate Limiting	214	29
7.7 Local Route Header	215	30
7.7.1 Virtual Lane (VL) - 4 bits	215	31
7.7.2 Link Version (LVer) - 4 bits	215	32
7.7.3 Service Level (SL) - 4 bits	216	33
7.7.4 Reserve - 2 bits	216	34
7.7.5 Link Next Header (LNH) - 2 bits	216	35
7.7.6 Destination Local Identifier (DLID) - 16 bits	216	36
7.7.7 Reserve - 5 bits	216	37
7.7.8 Packet Length (PktLen) - 11 bits	216	38
7.7.9 Source Local Identifier (SLID) - 16 bits	217	39
7.8 CRCs	218	40
7.8.1 Invariant CRC (ICRC) - 4 Bytes	218	41
		42

7.8.2	Variant CRC (VCRC) - 2 Bytes	219	1
7.8.3	Link Packet CRC (LPCRC) - 2 Bytes	220	2
7.8.4	CRC Calculation Samples	221	3
7.8.4.1	ICRC Generator	221	4
7.8.4.2	VCRC Generator	222	5
7.8.4.3	Sample Packets	223	6
7.9	Flow Control.....	232	7
7.9.1	Introduction	232	8
7.9.2	Flow Control Blocks	232	9
7.9.3	Relationship to Virtual Lanes	232	10
7.9.4	Flow Control Packet.....	233	11
7.9.4.1	Flow Control Packet Fields.....	233	12
7.9.4.2	Calculation of FCTBS.....	234	13
7.9.4.3	Calculation of FCCL	234	14
7.9.4.4	Transmission of Packets	235	
7.10	IBA and Raw Packet Multicast.....	235	15
7.10.1	Overview	235	16
7.10.2	IBA Unreliable Multicast Operational Rules	237	17
7.10.3	Raw Packet Multicast.....	240	18
7.10.3.1	Raw Multicast Operational Rules	240	19
7.10.4	Group Management	242	20
7.11	Subnet Multipathing	242	21
7.11.1	Multipathing Requirements on end node	242	22
7.12	Error detection and handling.....	242	23
7.12.1	Error Detection.....	242	24
7.12.2	Error Recovery Procedures	244	25
7.12.3	Error Notification	244	26
Chapter 8: Network Layer		245	27
8.1	Overview	245	28
8.2	Packet Routing	245	29
8.2.1	Overview	245	30
8.2.2	Global Fabric Characteristics.....	246	31
8.2.2.1	Inheritance of Subnet Requirements	246	32
8.2.2.2	Packet Errors and Error Detection	246	33
8.2.2.3	Service Levels	246	34
8.2.3	Support for Multiple Global Paths	246	35
8.2.4	Global Multicast	248	36
8.3	Global Route Header	248	37
8.3.1	IP Version (IPVer) - 4 bits.....	248	38
8.3.2	Traffic Class (TClass) - 8 bits.....	248	39
8.3.3	Flow Label (FlowLabel) - 20 bits	249	40
			41
			42

8.3.4	Payload Length (PayLen) - 16 bits.....	249	1
8.3.5	Next Header (NxtHdr) - 8 bits	249	2
8.3.6	Hop Limit (HopLmt) - 8 bits	249	3
8.3.7	Source Global Identifier (SGID) - 128 bits	249	4
8.3.8	Destination Global Identifier (DGID) - 128 bits.....	249	5
8.4	Global Route Header Usage.....	249	6
8.4.1	Global Route Header Generation	249	7
8.4.2	Global Route Header Modification.....	251	8
8.4.3	Global Route Header Verification.....	252	9
Chapter 9: Transport Layer		253	10
9.1	Overview	253	11
9.2	Base Transport Header.....	256	12
9.2.1	Operation Code (OpCode).....	257	13
9.2.2	Reserved Transport Function OpCodes	259	14
9.2.3	Solicited Event (SE) - 1 bit.....	260	15
9.2.4	MigReq (M) - 1 Bit.....	260	16
9.2.5	Pad Count (PadCnt) - 2 bits.....	260	17
9.2.6	Transport Header Version (TVer) - 4 bits	261	18
9.2.7	Partition Key (P_Key) - 16 bits.....	261	19
9.2.8	Destination QP (DestQP) - 24 bits.....	261	20
9.2.9	FECN/Res1 (F/Res1) - 1 bit.....	261	21
9.2.10	BECN/Res1 (B/Res1) - 1 bit	261	22
9.2.11	Reserve 6(Resv6) - 6 bits	261	23
9.2.12	AckReq (A) - 1 Bit	261	24
9.2.13	Reserved 7 (resv7) - 7 bits.....	262	25
9.2.14	Packet Sequence Number (PSN) - 24 bits	262	26
9.3	Extended Transport Headers.....	262	27
9.3.1	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH) - 4 Bytes	262	28
9.3.1.1	Reserve - 8 bits	262	29
9.3.1.2	End-to-End (EE) Context - 24 bits.....	262	30
9.3.2	Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH) - 8 Bytes.....	263	31
9.3.2.1	Q_Key - 32 bits.....	263	32
9.3.2.2	Reserve - 8 bits	263	33
9.3.2.3	Source QP (SrcQP) - 24 bits	263	34
9.3.3	RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH) - 16 Bytes	263	35
9.3.3.1	Virtual Address (VA) - 64 bits	263	36
9.3.3.2	R_Key - 32 bits.....	263	37
9.3.3.3	DMA Length (DMAlen) - 32 bits.....	264	38
9.3.4	ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH) - 28 Bytes	265	39
9.3.4.1	Virtual Address (VA) - 64 bits	265	40
9.3.4.2	R_Key - 32 bits.....	265	41
			42

9.3.4.3	Swap (Add) Data (SwapDt) - 64 bits	265	1
9.3.4.4	Compare Data (CmpDt) - 64 bits.....	265	1
9.3.5	ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) - 4 Bytes	265	2
9.3.5.1	Syndrome	266	3
9.3.5.2	Message Sequence Number (MSN)	266	4
9.3.5.3	ATOMIC Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH) - 8 Bytes...	266	5
9.3.5.4	Original Remote Data (OrigRemDt) - 64 bits.....	266	6
9.3.6	Immediate Extended Transport Header (ImmDt) - 4 Bytes.....	266	7
9.3.7	Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH) - 4 Bytes.....	266	8
9.3.7.1	R_Key - 32 bits.....	267	9
9.3.8	XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)	267	10
9.3.8.1	Reserved - 8 bits	267	11
9.3.8.2	XRCSRQ - 24 bits	267	12
9.4	Transport Functions	267	13
9.4.1	SEND Operation	268	14
9.4.1.1	Send With Invalidate	272	15
9.4.2	RESYNC Operation	275	16
9.4.3	RDMA WRITE Operation	275	17
9.4.4	RDMA READ Operation.....	279	18
9.4.5	ATOMIC Operations.....	283	19
9.4.5.1	Atomicity Guarantees	286	20
9.4.5.2	ATOMIC Acknowledgment Generation and Ordering Rules.....	286	21
9.4.5.3	Error Behavior	286	22
9.4.6	Reserved and Manufacturer Defined Transport Function OpCodes	291	23
9.5	Transaction Ordering	291	24
9.6	Packet Transport Header Validation	292	25
9.6.1	Validating Header Fields	295	26
9.6.1.1	BTH Checks	295	27
9.6.1.2	GRH Checks	297	28
9.6.1.3	XRC Checks.....	300	29
9.6.1.4	RDETH Checks.....	300	30
9.6.1.5	DETH Checks.....	301	31
9.6.1.6	LRH Checks	302	32
9.7	Reliable Service	304	33
9.7.1	Packet Sequence Numbers (PSN)	305	34
9.7.1.1	PSN Model for Reliable Service	309	35
9.7.2	ACK/NAK Protocol	311	36
9.7.3	Requester: Generating Request Packets	313	37
9.7.3.1	Requester Side - Generating PSN	313	38
9.7.3.2	Requester - Special Rules for Reliable Datagram.....	315	39
9.7.3.3	Requester - Generating Opcodes	316	40
9.7.3.4	Requester - Generating Payloads	317	41
9.7.4	Responder: Receiving Inbound Request Packets	318	42

9.7.4.1	Responder - Inbound Packet Validation	318	1
9.7.5	Responder: Generating Responses.....	331	2
9.7.5.1	Responder Side Behavior	331	3
9.7.5.2	AETH Format	348	4
9.7.6	Requester: Receiving Responses.....	355	5
9.7.6.1	Validating Inbound Response Packets.....	355	6
9.7.7	Reliable Connections	366	7
9.7.7.1	Generating MSN Value.....	367	8
9.7.7.2	End-to-End (Message Level) Flow Control	371	9
9.7.8	Reliable Datagram	382	10
9.7.8.1	Reliable datagram Characteristics	383	11
9.7.8.2	Example RD Operations.....	386	12
9.7.8.3	Reliable Datagram Operations	391	13
9.7.8.4	Ordering Rules	391	14
9.7.8.5	Handling QP errors - RESYNC	392	15
9.7.8.6	Responder Generation of MSN	397	16
9.7.9	XRC	399	17
9.7.9.1	Introduction.....	399	18
9.7.9.2	XRC Packet Format Rules	401	19
9.8	Unreliable Service.....	402	20
9.8.1	Validating and Executing Requests	403	21
9.8.2	Unreliable Connections.....	406	22
9.8.2.1	Requester Behavior.....	406	23
9.8.2.2	Responder Behavior.....	409	24
9.8.3	Unreliable Datagrams	416	25
9.8.3.1	Requester Behavior.....	417	26
9.8.3.2	Responder Behavior.....	419	27
9.8.4	Raw datagrams.....	420	28
9.8.4.1	Raw Datagram Packet Size	422	29
9.9	Error detection and handling.....	422	30
9.9.1	Reporting Errors to the Verbs Layer	423	31
9.9.2	Requester Side Error Behavior.....	424	32
9.9.2.1	Requester Side Error Detection - Locally Detected Errors	424	33
9.9.2.2	Requester Side Error Detection - Remotely Detected Errors.....	426	34
9.9.2.3	Summary - Requester Side Error Behavior.....	426	35
9.9.2.4	Requester Side Error Response	430	36
9.9.3	Responder Side Behavior	435	37
9.9.3.1	Responder Side Error Response	439	38
9.10	Header and Data Field Source	450	39
9.10.1	Field source when generating packets	450	40
9.10.2	Transport Connection Parameters.....	452	41
9.10.3	Packet Header and Data Field Validation	454	42

9.11	Static Rate Control.....	456	1
9.11.1	Static rate control for Heterogeneous Links.....	457	2
Chapter 10: Software Transport Interface.....		460	3
10.1	Overview	460	4
10.1.1	Introduction	460	5
10.2	Managing HCA Resources	461	6
10.2.1	HCA	461	7
10.2.1.1	Opening an HCA	461	8
10.2.1.2	HCA Attributes	462	9
10.2.1.3	Modifying HCA Attributes.....	462	10
10.2.1.4	Closing an HCA.....	462	11
10.2.2	Addressing	462	12
10.2.2.1	Source Addressing	462	13
10.2.2.2	Destination Addressing.....	463	14
10.2.2.3	Loopback.....	464	15
10.2.3	Protection Domains.....	465	16
10.2.3.1	Allocating a Protection Domain	467	17
10.2.3.2	Deallocating a Protection Domain	467	18
10.2.4	Queue Pairs	467	19
10.2.4.1	Creating a Queue Pair.....	467	20
10.2.4.2	Queue Pair Attributes	468	21
10.2.4.3	Modifying Queue Pair Attributes.....	468	22
10.2.4.4	Destroying a Queue Pair	469	23
10.2.4.5	Special QPs.....	470	24
10.2.5	Q_Keys	470	25
10.2.6	Completion Queues	471	26
10.2.6.1	Creating a Completion Queue.....	471	27
10.2.6.2	Completion Queue Attributes	471	28
10.2.6.3	Modifying Completion Queue Attributes	472	29
10.2.6.4	Destroying a Completion Queue	472	30
10.2.7	End-to-End Contexts.....	472	31
10.2.7.1	Creating an EE Context.....	473	32
10.2.7.2	EE Context Attributes	473	33
10.2.7.3	Modifying EE Context Attributes	473	34
10.2.7.4	Destroying an EE Context	473	35
10.2.8	Reliable Datagram Domains	474	36
10.2.8.1	Allocating A Reliable Datagram Domain.....	474	37
10.2.8.2	Deallocating A Reliable Datagram Domain	474	38
10.2.9	Shared Receive Queue.....	475	39
10.2.9.1	Motivation for supporting SRQ	475	40
10.2.9.2	Shared Receive Queue Creation	475	41
10.2.9.3	Shared Receive Queue Modification	476	42

	10.2.9.4 Shared Receive Queue Destruction.....	477	1
	10.2.9.5 SRQ States	478	1
	10.2.10 XRC Software Transport Interface.....	478	2
	10.2.11 InfiniBand Header Data and Sources	479	3
10.3	Resource States	483	4
	10.3.1 Queue Pair and EE Context States	483	5
	10.3.1.1 Reset.....	486	6
	10.3.1.2 Initialized (Init)	487	7
	10.3.1.3 Ready to Receive (RTR)	487	8
	10.3.1.4 Ready to Send (RTS)	488	9
	10.3.1.5 Send Queue Drain (SQD)	489	10
	10.3.1.6 Send Queue Error (SQER)	491	11
	10.3.1.7 Error	492	12
10.4	Automatic Path Migration.....	493	13
	10.4.1 Path Migration State Diagram.....	494	14
	10.4.1.1 Migrated	495	15
	10.4.1.2 Rearm.....	497	16
	10.4.1.3 Armed.....	497	17
10.5	Multicast Services	497	18
	10.5.1 Multicast Groups and Multicast Message Reception.....	498	19
	10.5.1.1 IBA Unreliable Multicast Reception	498	20
	10.5.1.2 Raw Packet Multicast Reception.....	499	21
	10.5.2 Multicast Work Requests	499	22
	10.5.2.1 IBA Unreliable Multicast Work Requests	499	23
	10.5.2.2 Raw Packet Multicast Work Requests	500	24
	10.5.3 Multicast Destination Establishment	500	25
10.6	Memory Management.....	501	26
	10.6.1 Overview	501	27
	10.6.2 Memory Registration.....	501	28
	10.6.2.1 Memory Regions	502	29
	10.6.2.2 Allocation of Memory Registration Resources	503	30
	10.6.2.3 Memory Region Types	504	31
	10.6.3 Access to Registered Memory	506	32
	10.6.3.1 Local Access to Registered Memory	506	33
	10.6.3.2 Remote Access to Registered Memory	507	34
	10.6.3.3 Local Access Keys	507	35
	10.6.3.4 Remote Access Keys	508	36
	10.6.3.5 Protection Domains	509	37
	10.6.3.6 Scope of Access.....	510	38
	10.6.3.7 Fast Registration	510	39
	10.6.3.8 Multiple Registration of Memory regions	511	40
	10.6.4 Addressing Memory	511	41
	10.6.4.1 Virtual Addresses ("Pointers")	511	42

10.6.4.2	Virtual to physical translations.....	512	1
10.6.4.3	Registration of virtually addressed regions	513	2
10.6.4.4	Registration of physically addressed regions	515	3
10.6.4.5	Memory Region Error Checking	517	4
10.6.5	Invalidation of Memory Regions.....	518	5
10.6.5.1	Invalidation Ordering	520	6
10.6.6	Deregistration of regions.....	521	7
10.6.7	Memory Access Control.....	522	8
10.6.7.1	Local Access Control.....	522	9
10.6.7.2	Remote Access Control.....	523	10
10.7	Work Requests	536	11
10.7.1	Creating Work Requests.....	537	12
10.7.2	Work Request Types.....	537	13
10.7.2.1	Send/Receive	537	14
10.7.2.2	RDMA.....	538	15
10.7.2.3	Atomic Operations.....	539	16
10.7.2.4	Bind Memory Windows.....	541	17
10.7.2.5	Local Invalidate	541	18
10.7.2.6	Fast Register Physical MR	541	19
10.7.3	Work Request Contents.....	542	20
10.7.3.1	Signaled Completions	542	21
10.7.3.2	Scatter/Gather	543	22
10.8	Work Request Processing Model.....	543	23
10.8.1	Overview	543	24
10.8.2	Submitting Work Requests to a Work Queue	544	25
10.8.2.1	Submitting A List of Work Requests	545	26
10.8.3	Work Request Processing	546	27
10.8.3.1	Reliable Datagram Ordering Rules	547	28
10.8.3.2	Shared Receive Queue Ordering Rules.....	547	29
10.8.3.3	Send Queue Ordering Rules	548	30
10.8.4	Completion Processing	551	31
10.8.5	Returning Completed Work Requests	551	32
10.8.5.1	Freed Resource Count	552	33
10.8.5.2	Completion Queue Errors.....	553	34
10.8.6	Unsignaled Completions	554	35
10.8.7	Asynchronous Completion Notification	554	36
10.9	Partitioning	556	37
10.9.1	Introduction	556	38
10.9.1.1	Limited and Full Membership	556	39
10.9.1.2	Special P_Keys	557	40
10.9.1.3	Operation Across Subnets.....	557	41
10.9.2	The Partition Key Table (P_Key Table)	557	42
10.9.3	Partition Key Matching	558	

10.9.4	Bad P_Key Trap and P_Key Violations Counter (Optional)	559	1
10.9.5	CI Partition Support.....	560	2
10.9.5.1	EE Context (Reliable Datagram) Support	560	3
10.9.5.2	Partition Key Changes.....	561	4
10.9.6	TCA Partition Support	561	5
10.9.7	Fabric Partition Support	561	6
10.9.8	Partition Enforcement on Management Queue Pairs	562	7
10.9.9	Related Enforcement of Management Message Checking.....	562	8
10.10	Error Handling Semantics and Mechanisms.....	563	9
10.10.1	Error Types	563	10
10.10.2	Error Handling Mechanisms.....	563	11
10.10.2.1	Immediate Errors.....	563	12
10.10.2.2	Completion Errors	563	13
10.10.2.3	Asynchronous Errors.....	564	14
10.10.3	Effects of Errors on QP Service Types.....	564	15
10.10.3.1	Reliable Connection QPs:	564	16
10.10.3.2	Reliable Datagram QPs:.....	566	17
10.10.3.3	Unreliable Connected QPs:.....	570	18
10.10.3.4	Unreliable Datagram QPs:	571	19
10.10.3.5	Raw QPs:	573	20
10.10.3.6	Extended Reliable Connected.....	574	21
10.10.4	Effects of Transport Layer Errors	576	22
Chapter 11: Software Transport Verbs	583	23	
11.1	Verbs Introduction and Overview	583	24
11.1.1	Verb Extensions	583	25
11.1.2	Verb Classes.....	584	26
11.1.2.1	Mandatory vs. Optional Verbs	584	27
11.1.2.2	Mandatory vs. Optional Verb Functionality.....	584	28
11.1.2.3	Consumer Accessibility	585	29
11.2	Transport Resource Management	587	30
11.2.1	HCA	587	31
11.2.1.1	Open HCA.....	587	32
11.2.1.2	Query HCA.....	588	33
11.2.1.3	Modify HCA Attributes	594	34
11.2.1.4	Close HCA.....	595	35
11.2.1.5	Allocate Protection Domain	595	36
11.2.1.6	Deallocate Protection Domain.....	596	37
11.2.1.7	Allocate Reliable Datagram Domain	596	38
11.2.1.8	Deallocate Reliable Datagram Domain	597	39
11.2.1.9	Allocate XRC Domain.....	597	40
11.2.1.10	Deallocate XRC Domain	598	41
11.2.2	Address Management Verbs.....	598	42

11.2.2.1	Create Address Handle	598	1
11.2.2.2	Modify Address Handle	599	2
11.2.2.3	Query Address Handle	600	3
11.2.2.4	Destroy Address Handle	601	4
11.2.3	Shared Receive Queue.....	602	5
11.2.3.1	Create Shared Receive Queue	602	6
11.2.3.2	Query Shared Receive Queue	603	7
11.2.3.3	Modify Shared Receive Queue	603	8
11.2.3.4	Destroy Shared Receive Queue.....	604	9
11.2.4	XRC SRQs.....	605	10
11.2.4.1	Create XRC Shared Receive Queue.....	605	11
11.2.4.2	Query XRC Shared Receive Queue.....	606	12
11.2.4.3	Modify XRC Shared Receive Queue	607	13
11.2.4.4	Destroy XRC Shared Receive Queue	608	14
11.2.5	Queue Pair.....	608	15
11.2.5.1	Create Queue Pair	608	16
11.2.5.2	Modify Queue Pair.....	611	17
11.2.5.3	Query Queue Pair	618	18
11.2.5.4	Destroy Queue Pair	621	19
11.2.6	Get Special QP	622	20
11.2.7	XRC Target QP	624	21
11.2.7.1	Create XRC Target QP	624	22
11.2.7.2	Modify XRC Target Queue Pair	625	23
11.2.7.3	Query XRC Target Queue Pair.....	630	24
11.2.7.4	Destroy XRC Target Queue Pair	633	25
11.2.8	Completion Queue	633	26
11.2.8.1	Create Completion Queue.....	633	27
11.2.8.2	Query Completion Queue.....	634	28
11.2.8.3	Resize Completion Queue	634	29
11.2.8.4	Destroy Completion Queue	635	30
11.2.9	EE Context.....	636	31
11.2.9.1	Create EE Context	636	32
11.2.9.2	Modify EE Context Attributes.....	636	33
11.2.9.3	Query EE Context	641	34
11.2.9.4	Destroy EE Context.....	643	35
11.2.10	Memory Management.....	644	36
11.2.10.1	Allocate L_Key	644	37
11.2.10.2	Register Memory Region.....	645	38
11.2.10.3	Register Physical Memory Region	646	39
11.2.10.4	Query Memory Region	649	40
11.2.10.5	Deregister Memory Region	650	41
11.2.10.6	Reregister Memory Region	650	42
11.2.10.7	Reregister Physical Memory Region	653	
11.2.10.8	Register Shared Memory Region	656	

	11.2.10.9 Allocate Memory Window.....	657	1
	11.2.10.10Query Memory Window.....	658	2
	11.2.10.11Bind Memory Window	659	3
	11.2.10.12Deallocate Memory Window	661	4
11.3	Multicast.....	661	5
11.3.1	Attach QP to Multicast Group	661	6
11.3.2	Detach QP from Multicast Group	662	7
11.4	Work Request Processing	663	8
11.4.1	Queue Pair Operations	663	9
11.4.1.1	Post Send Request	663	10
11.4.1.2	Post Receive Request.....	673	11
11.4.2	Completion Queue Operations	675	12
11.4.2.1	Poll for Completion	675	13
11.4.2.2	Request Completion Notification.....	680	14
11.5	Event Handling	683	15
11.5.1	Set Completion Event Handler.....	683	16
11.5.2	Set Asynchronous Event Handler	684	17
11.6	Result Types	684	18
11.6.1	Immediate Return Results	684	19
11.6.2	Completion Return Status.....	687	20
11.6.3	Asynchronous Events	690	21
11.6.3.1	Affiliated Asynchronous Events	691	22
11.6.3.2	Affiliated Asynchronous Errors	692	23
11.6.3.3	Unaffiliated Asynchronous Events	694	24
11.6.3.4	Unaffiliated Asynchronous Errors	695	25
11.6.4	Verb Extension Summary	695	26
11.6.5	XRC Summary	704	27
Chapter 12: Communication Management.....		707	28
12.1	Overview	707	29
12.2	Establishment	709	30
12.2.1	Quiet Time	710	31
12.3	Automatic Path Migration.....	710	32
12.4	Release.....	711	33
12.4.1	Stale Connection	711	34
12.5	Service Types	711	35
12.5.1	Supported Protocols	711	36
12.5.2	Connected Services.....	711	37
12.5.3	Unreliable Datagram Service	711	38
12.5.4	Reliable Datagram	712	39
12.5.5	Extended Reliable Connected Service	712	40
			41
			42

12.6	Communication Management Messages.....	712	1
12.6.1	Required Messages.....	713	2
12.6.2	Conditionally Required Messages	714	3
12.6.3	Optional Messages	714	4
12.6.4	Message Usage.....	715	5
12.6.5	REQ - Request for Communication	717	6
12.6.6	MRA - Message Receipt Acknowledgment.....	720	7
12.6.7	REJ - Reject.....	720	8
12.6.7.1	Example REJ message	722	9
12.6.7.2	Rejection Reason	723	10
12.6.8	REP - Reply to Request for Communication.....	726	11
12.6.9	RTU - Ready To Use.....	728	12
12.6.10	DREQ - Request for communication Release (Disconnection REQuest).....	728	13
12.6.11	DREP - Reply to Request for communication Release.....	729	14
12.7	Message Field Details	729	15
12.7.1	Local Communication ID.....	732	16
12.7.2	Remote Communication ID.....	732	17
12.7.3	ServiceID	733	18
12.7.4	Remote CM Response Timeout.....	733	19
12.7.5	Local CM Response Timeout.....	733	20
12.7.6	Transport Service Type.....	733	21
12.7.7	Subnet Local.....	733	22
12.7.8	This Section Has Been Deleted.....	734	23
12.7.9	Local CA GUID.....	734	24
12.7.10	Local Port GID	734	25
12.7.11	Local Port LID	734	26
12.7.12	Local QPN	734	27
12.7.13	Local Q_Key	734	28
12.7.14	Local EECN	734	29
12.7.15	Remote EECN	734	30
12.7.16	Service Level	735	31
12.7.17	Traffic Class	735	32
12.7.18	Flow Label	735	33
12.7.19	Hop Limit.....	735	34
12.7.20	Primary Remote Port GID	735	35
12.7.21	Primary Remote Port LID.....	735	36
12.7.22	Alternate Remote Port GID	735	37
12.7.23	Alternate Remote Port LID.....	735	38
12.7.24	Partition Key	735	39
12.7.25	Packet Rate	736	40
12.7.26	End-to-End Flow Control.....	736	41
			42

12.7.27	Max CM Retries	736	1
12.7.28	Path Packet Payload MTU.....	736	2
12.7.29	Responder Resources	736	3
12.7.30	Initiator Depth	736	4
12.7.31	Starting PSN	737	5
12.7.32	Service Timeout	737	6
12.7.33	Target ACK Delay.....	737	7
12.7.34	Local ACK Timeout	737	8
12.7.35	PrivateData	738	9
12.7.36	Failover Accepted	738	10
12.7.37	Remote QPN/ECCN.....	738	11
12.7.38	Retry Count.....	738	12
12.7.39	RNR Retry Count.....	738	13
12.7.40	SAP Supported	739	14
12.7.41	Extended Transport Type.....	739	15
12.7.42	VendorID	739	16
12.8	Alternate Path Management	739	17
12.8.1	LAP - Load Alternate Path	741	18
12.8.2	APR - Alternate Path Response.....	742	19
12.8.2.1	AP Status	743	20
12.8.3	SAP - Suggest Alternate Path.....	744	21
12.8.4	SPR - Suggest Path Response.....	745	22
12.8.4.1	Suggest AP Status	746	23
12.9	State Transition Diagrams For Communication Establishment and Release	746	24
12.9.1	Diagram Description	747	25
12.9.2	Invalid State Input Handling.....	747	26
12.9.3	timeouts	748	27
12.9.4	State Diagram Notes.....	748	28
12.9.5	Communication Establishment and Release - Active	749	29
12.9.6	Communication Establishment - Passive.....	750	30
12.9.7	State and Transition Definitions	751	31
12.9.7.1	Active States	751	32
12.9.7.2	Passive States.....	754	33
12.9.8	State Details	756	34
12.9.8.1	Timeout	756	35
12.9.8.2	RTU Timeout	757	36
12.9.8.3	Established.....	757	37
12.9.8.4	TimeWait	757	38
12.9.8.5	Message Receipt Acknowledgment (MRA)	758	39
12.9.8.6	Timeouts and Retries	759	40
12.9.8.7	REJ Retry	759	41
12.9.8.8	REJ Sent	760	42

	12.9.8.9 REP Sent / MRA(REP) Received.....	760	1
12.9.9	Connection State	760	2
12.10	Communication Establishment Ladder Diagrams.....	761	3
12.10.1	Active Client to Passive Server - Both Client and Server Accept Communication.....	761	4
12.10.2	Active Client to Passive Server - Server Rejects Communication	762	5
12.10.3	Active Client to Passive Server - Client Rejects Communication	763	6
12.10.4	Peer to Peer - Both Accept Communication	764	7
12.10.5	Active Peer to Active Peer - Passive Rejects Communication.....	765	8
12.10.6	Active Peer to Active Peer - Active Rejects Communication.....	766	9
12.10.7	Active Client to Passive Server with Redirector - All Accept Communication	767	10
12.10.8	Communication Release.....	768	11
	12.10.8.1 Disconnect Request	768	12
12.11	Service ID Resolution Protocol	768	13
12.11.1	SIDR_REQ - Service ID Resolution Request	769	14
	12.11.1.1 RequestID	769	15
	12.11.1.2 Partition Key	769	16
	12.11.1.3 Service ID.....	769	17
	12.11.1.4 Private Data.....	769	18
12.11.2	SIDR_REP - Service ID Resolution Response	770	19
	12.11.2.1 Status	770	20
	12.11.2.2 QPN.....	771	21
	12.11.2.3 Q_Key	771	22
	12.11.2.4 VendorID	771	23
	12.11.3 Path Information	771	24
Chapter 13: Management Model	772	25	
13.1	Introduction	772	26
13.2	Assumptions, and Scope	773	27
13.2.1	Assumptions	773	28
13.2.2	Scope.....	773	29
13.3	Managers, Agents, and Interfaces	776	30
13.3.1	Introduction	776	31
13.3.2	Required Managers and Agents	779	32
13.4	Management Datagrams	780	33
13.4.1	Conventions	780	34
13.4.2	Management Datagram Format.....	781	35
13.4.3	Management Datagram Fields.....	782	36
13.4.4	Management Classes	783	37
13.4.5	Management Class Methods	785	38
13.4.6	Management Messaging.....	787	39
	13.4.6.1 Methods and Message Sequencing	787	40
	13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts.....	791	41
			42

13.4.6.3	Timeout/Timer Usage	793	1
13.4.6.4	TransactionID usage	794	1
13.4.7	Status Field.....	795	2
13.4.8	Management Class Attributes	797	3
13.4.8.1	ClassPortInfo.....	799	4
13.4.8.2	Notice	802	5
13.4.8.3	InformInfo	804	6
13.4.8.4	Class Management Key and KeyInfo	806	7
13.4.9	Traps.....	811	8
13.4.10	Notice Queue	813	9
13.4.11	Event Forwarding.....	814	10
13.5	MAD Processing	818	11
13.5.1	MAD Interfaces	819	12
13.5.1.1	Processing Subnet Management Packets (SMPs)	821	13
13.5.1.2	Processing General Services Management Packets (GMPs).....	822	14
13.5.2	GSI Redirection.....	823	15
13.5.3	MAD Validation	825	16
13.5.3.1	MAD Validation for Subnet Management MADs	825	17
13.5.3.2	Mad Validation for Subnet Administration and General Services	827	18
13.5.3.3	Consolidated MAD Validation Flow Diagrams.....	829	19
13.5.4	Response Generation and Reversible Paths.....	839	20
13.5.4.1	Reversible Paths	839	21
13.5.4.2	Common Response Actions	839	22
13.5.4.3	Constructing a Response Without a GRH.....	840	23
13.5.4.4	Constructing a Response With a GRH.....	840	24
13.5.4.5	Responses to MADs.....	840	25
13.6	Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol	841	26
13.6.1	Management Class Use of RMPP	842	27
13.6.2	RMPP Packet Formats	843	28
13.6.2.1	RMPP Header	843	29
13.6.2.2	Status Codes.....	844	30
13.6.2.3	DATA Packet	846	31
13.6.2.4	ACK Packet.....	847	32
13.6.2.5	ABORT and STOP Packets.....	848	32
13.6.3	Timeouts	849	33
13.6.3.1	Response Timeout (Resp).....	849	34
13.6.3.2	Total Transaction Timeout (Ttime)	850	35
13.6.4	Ladder Diagram (Example).....	851	36
13.6.5	Flow Diagrams	853	37
13.6.5.1	Context State Variables.....	853	38
13.6.5.2	Context & Dispatching.....	855	39
13.6.5.3	Common Termination Flow.....	856	40
13.6.5.4	Receiver Flow Diagram	857	41
			42

13.6.5.5	Sender Main Flow Diagram.....	860	1
13.6.5.6	Direction Switch.....	860	1
13.6.6	Startup Scenarios	862	2
13.6.6.1	Receiver-Initiated Transfer	863	3
13.6.6.2	Sender-Initiated Transfer.....	864	4
13.6.6.3	Sender-Initiated Double-Sided Transfer	864	5
Chapter 14: Subnet Management.....	865	7	
14.1	Subnet Management Model.....	865	8
14.2	Subnet Management Class	865	9
14.2.1	Datagram Formats and Use.....	866	10
14.2.1.1	SMP Data Format - LID Routed	866	11
14.2.1.2	SMP Data Format - Directed Route	867	12
14.2.2	SMPs and Directed Route Algorithm	868	13
14.2.2.1	Outgoing Directed Route SMP Initialization	871	14
14.2.2.2	Outgoing Directed Route SMP handling by SMI	873	15
14.2.2.3	Returning Directed Route SMP Initialization	875	16
14.2.2.4	Returning Directed Route SMP handling by SMI	875	17
14.2.3	Methods	877	18
14.2.4	Management Key.....	877	19
14.2.4.1	Levels of Protection.....	878	20
14.2.4.2	Lease Period	879	21
14.2.4.3	Notes on Expected Usage.....	880	22
14.2.4.4	Update Procedure	880	23
14.2.4.5	Initialization.....	881	24
14.2.4.6	SMI	881	25
14.2.5	Attributes.....	881	25
14.2.5.1	Notices and Traps	887	26
14.2.5.2	NodeDescription.....	894	27
14.2.5.3	NodeInfo.....	894	28
14.2.5.4	SwitchInfo.....	895	29
14.2.5.5	GUIDInfo	897	30
14.2.5.6	PortInfo.....	898	31
14.2.5.7	P_KeyTable	918	32
14.2.5.8	SLtoVLMappingTable	918	33
14.2.5.9	VLArcitrationTable	921	34
14.2.5.10	LinearForwardingTable	922	35
14.2.5.11	RandomForwardingTable	922	36
14.2.5.12	MulticastForwardingTable	923	37
14.2.5.13	SMInfo	924	38
14.2.5.14	VendorDiag.....	925	39
14.2.5.15	LedInfo	926	40
14.2.5.16	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable	927	41
14.2.5.17	VendorSpecificMadsTable	929	41
			42

14.2.5.18	CableInfo	930	1
14.2.5.19	PortInfoExtended.....	933	2
14.2.5.20	SwitchPortStateTable	937	3
14.2.5.21	EnhQoSArbiterInfo	937	4
14.2.5.22	EnhPortVLArbiter	938	5
14.2.5.23	EnhSLArbiter	942	
14.2.6	Subnet Management MAD Status	943	6
14.2.6.1	Status Precedence	944	7
14.2.6.2	SMP Version Not Supported (status_field[4:2] = 0x1)	944	8
14.2.6.3	SMP Method Not Supported (status_field[4:2] = 0x2)	945	9
14.2.6.4	SMP Method/Attribute Combination Not Supported (status_field[4:2] = 0x3)	945	10
14.2.6.5	SMP AttributeModifier Errors (status_field[4:2] = 0x7)	947	11
14.2.6.6	SMP Attribute Component Errors (status_field[4:2] = 0x7)	950	12
14.2.6.7	SM Class Additional Status	968	13
14.3	Subnet Management Agent	975	14
14.3.1	SubnGet()	976	15
14.3.2	SubnSet().....	976	16
14.3.3	SubnGetResp().....	976	17
14.3.4	SubnTrap()	977	18
14.3.5	SubnTrapRepress()	978	19
14.3.6	Port State Change	979	20
14.3.6.1	Enhanced Trap 128 Support	979	21
14.3.7	P_Key Mismatch on Switch External Ports.....	982	22
14.3.8	Transport Key Mismatch	983	23
14.3.9	M_Key mismatch	984	24
14.3.10	Link Layer Errors.....	984	25
14.3.11	Change CapabilityMask	985	26
14.3.12	Change SystemImageGUID	985	27
14.3.13	Other Local Changes	986	28
14.3.14	SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds	986	29
14.3.14.1	PortInfo.....	987	30
14.3.14.2	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable	988	31
14.4	Subnet Manager	989	32
14.4.1	SM State Machine.....	990	33
14.4.1.1	Control Packets	991	34
14.4.1.2	Discovering State	992	35
14.4.1.3	Standby State	993	36
14.4.1.4	Not-Active State	995	37
14.4.1.5	Master State	995	38
14.4.2	Subnet Discovery Actions	997	39
14.4.3	Initialization Actions.....	998	40
14.4.4	Node Reinitialization	1002	41
14.4.5	Port State Transitions.....	1007	42

14.4.6	Subnet Sweeping.....	1008	1
14.4.7	Authentication	1009	2
14.4.8	SM Disable Mechanism	1009	3
14.4.9	In and Out of Service Traps	1010	4
14.4.10	Multicast Group Create/Delete Traps.....	1011	5
14.4.11	Client Reregistration	1011	6
14.4.12	UnPath/RePath Traps.....	1012	7
Chapter 15: Subnet Administration		1015	8
15.1	Introduction and Overview	1015	9
15.1.1	SA Function	1015	10
15.1.2	Relationship Between SA and the SM	1016	11
15.1.3	Overview	1016	12
15.2	SA MADs	1016	13
15.2.1	SA MAD Format.....	1016	14
15.2.1.1	SA Header	1017	15
15.2.1.2	SA Header Fields	1017	16
15.2.1.3	SA-Specific Optional Capabilities.....	1018	17
15.2.2	Summary of Methods.....	1018	18
15.2.3	Subnet Administration Status Values	1018	19
15.2.4	Attributes and Attribute Tables	1018	20
15.2.4.1	Embedded Attributes	1021	21
15.2.4.2	Record Identifier (RID) Fields.....	1022	22
15.2.4.3	Tables	1022	23
15.2.5	Attributes.....	1022	24
15.2.5.1	Summary of Attributes	1023	25
15.2.5.2	NodeRecord	1027	26
15.2.5.3	PortInfoRecord	1027	27
15.2.5.4	SLtoVLMappingTableRecord.....	1029	28
15.2.5.5	SwitchInfoRecord	1029	29
15.2.5.6	LinearForwardingTableRecord	1029	30
15.2.5.7	RandomForwardingTableRecord.....	1030	31
15.2.5.8	MulticastForwardingTableRecord	1030	32
15.2.5.9	VLArbitationTableRecord	1030	33
15.2.5.10	SMInfoRecord	1031	34
15.2.5.11	P_KeyTableRecord.....	1031	35
15.2.5.12	InformInfoRecord.....	1031	36
15.2.5.13	LinkRecord	1032	37
15.2.5.14	ServiceRecord.....	1033	38
15.2.5.15	ServiceAssociationRecord	1037	39
15.2.5.16	PathRecord	1038	40
15.2.5.17	MCMemberRecord	1050	41
15.2.5.18	GuidInfoRecord	1059	42

15.2.5.19	TraceRecord.....	1060	1
15.2.5.20	MultiPathRecord.....	1061	2
15.2.5.21	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord.....	1065	3
15.2.5.22	CableInfoRecord	1065	4
15.2.5.23	PortInfoExtendedRecord.....	1066	5
15.2.5.24	EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord.....	1066	6
15.2.5.25	EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord.....	1067	7
15.2.5.26	EnhVLArbiterRecord	1067	8
15.2.5.27	EnhSLArbiterRecord	1067	
15.3	Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol	1067	9
15.4	Operations	1069	10
15.4.1	Restrictions on Access.....	1069	11
15.4.1.1	Access Restrictions For PathRecords.....	1069	12
15.4.1.2	Access Restrictions For Other Attributes.....	1070	13
15.4.2	Locating Subnet Administration	1071	14
15.4.3	Event Forwarding Subsystem	1072	15
15.4.4	Administration Query Subsystem.....	1072	16
15.4.5	SubnAdmGetTable() / SubnAdmGetTableResp()	1073	17
15.4.6	SubnAdmGet() / SubnAdmGetResp(): Get an Attribute.....	1075	18
15.4.7	SubnAdmSet(): Set an Attribute.....	1076	19
15.4.8	SubnAdmDelete(): Delete an Attribute.....	1076	20
15.4.9	SubnAdmGetTraceTable(): Trace a Path.....	1077	21
15.4.10	SubnAdmGetMulti() / SubnAdmGetMultiResp(): Send & Receive Multiple Packets	1078	22
Chapter 16: General Services.....	1079	23	
16.1	Performance Management	1079	24
16.1.1	MAD Format.....	1080	25
16.1.1.1	Status Field	1081	26
16.1.2	Methods	1081	28
16.1.3	Mandatory Attributes	1081	29
16.1.3.1	ClassPortInfo.....	1082	30
16.1.3.2	PortSamplesControl	1083	31
16.1.3.3	CounterSelect Values.....	1091	32
16.1.3.4	PortSamplesResult.....	1097	33
16.1.3.5	PortCounters	1098	33
16.1.3.6	Typical Performance Attribute Use Model	1102	34
16.1.4	Optional Attributes	1103	35
16.1.4.1	Traps and Notices	1106	36
16.1.4.2	PortRcvErrorDetails.....	1107	37
16.1.4.3	PortXmitDiscardDetails	1108	38
16.1.4.4	PortOpRcvCounters	1109	39
16.1.4.5	PortFlowCtlCounters	1110	40
16.1.4.6	PortVLOpPackets.....	1111	41
			42

16.1.4.7	PortVLOpData	1112	1
16.1.4.8	PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	1114	2
16.1.4.9	PortVLXmitWaitCounters	1115	3
16.1.4.10	SwPortVLCongestion	1117	4
16.1.4.11	PortSamplesResultExtended	1119	5
16.1.4.12	PortCountersExtended	1120	6
16.1.4.13	PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	1125	7
16.1.5	Performance Management Status	1131	8
16.1.5.1	Mandatory PM Attribute Status	1132	9
16.1.5.2	Optional PM Attribute Status	1134	10
16.1.5.3	PM Class Additional Status	1139	
16.2	Baseboard Management	1141	11
16.2.1	MAD Format	1142	12
16.2.1.1	Status Field	1144	13
16.2.2	Methods	1144	14
16.2.3	Attributes	1145	15
16.2.3.1	ClassPortInfo	1147	16
16.2.3.2	Notice	1148	17
16.2.3.3	BKeyInfo	1149	18
16.2.3.4	IB-ML Attributes	1150	19
16.2.4	B_Key General Use	1150	20
16.2.4.1	B_Key Assumptions	1150	21
16.2.4.2	B_Key Protection Scope	1150	22
16.2.4.3	B_Key Operation	1151	23
16.2.4.4	B_Key Initialization	1152	24
16.2.4.5	B_Key Recovery	1152	25
16.2.4.6	Levels of Protection	1152	
16.3	Device Management	1153	26
16.3.1	MAD Format	1154	27
16.3.1.1	Status Field	1155	28
16.3.2	Methods	1156	29
16.3.3	Attributes	1157	30
16.3.3.1	ClassPortInfo	1159	31
16.3.3.2	Notice	1159	32
16.3.3.3	IOUnitInfo	1160	33
16.3.3.4	IOControllerProfile	1160	34
16.3.3.5	ServiceEntries	1163	35
16.3.3.6	DiagnosticTimeout	1163	36
16.3.3.7	PrepareToTest	1163	37
16.3.3.8	TestDeviceOnce	1163	38
16.3.3.9	TestDeviceLoop	1164	39
16.3.3.10	DiagCode	1164	40
16.3.4	Device Diagnostic Framework	1164	41
			42

	16.3.4.1 Behaviors	1164	1
16.4	SNMP Tunneling	1166	1
16.4.1	MAD Format.....	1166	2
	16.4.1.1 Status Field	1167	3
16.4.2	Methods	1167	4
16.4.3	Attributes.....	1168	5
	16.4.3.1 ClassPortInfo.....	1169	6
	16.4.3.2 Obsolete Section	1169	7
	16.4.3.3 PdulInfo	1169	8
16.4.4	Operations	1169	9
	16.4.4.1 SNMP Targets for Beyond the InfiniBand Endnode	1171	10
	16.4.4.2 Trap Event Subscription	1172	11
16.5	Vendor-specific	1172	12
16.5.1	MAD Format.....	1173	13
16.5.2	Status Field.....	1176	14
16.5.3	Methods	1177	15
16.5.4	Attributes.....	1177	16
	16.5.4.1 Traps and Notices	1178	17
	16.5.4.2 ClassPortInfo.....	1178	18
16.6	Application-specific	1178	19
16.6.1	MAD Format.....	1179	20
	16.6.1.1 Status Field	1180	21
16.6.2	Methods	1181	22
16.6.3	Attributes.....	1181	23
	16.6.3.1 Traps and Notices	1182	24
	16.6.3.2 ClassPortInfo.....	1182	25
16.7	Communication Management.....	1182	26
16.7.1	MAD Format.....	1183	27
	16.7.1.1 Status Field	1183	28
16.7.2	Methods	1183	29
16.7.3	Attributes.....	1184	30
	16.7.3.1 ClassPortInfo.....	1186	31
Chapter 17: Channel Adapters	1187	32	
17.1	Overview	1187	33
17.2	Common Functional Requirements	1188	34
17.2.1	Multiple Ports per Channel Adapter	1188	36
	17.2.1.1 Topologies Supported With Multi-Ported Channel Adapters	1189	37
	17.2.1.2 Association of QPs with Ports	1191	38
	17.2.1.3 Port Attributes and Functions	1192	39
	17.2.1.4 Switching Packets through Multiple Ports	1194	40
17.2.2	Channel Adapter Attributes	1194	41
			42

17.2.3	Deadlock Prevention.....	1197	1
17.2.4	Checking Incoming Packets.....	1198	2
17.2.5	Non-Volatile State	1198	3
17.2.6	Static Rate Control.....	1198	4
17.2.7	Management Messages.....	1199	5
	17.2.7.1 Subnet Management.....	1200	6
	17.2.7.2 General Services.....	1200	7
17.2.8	Automatic Path Migration.....	1200	8
	17.2.8.1 Automatic Path Migration Protocol.....	1201	9
17.3	Host Channel Adapter.....	1203	10
17.3.1	Loopback	1203	11
17.4	Target Channel Adapter	1204	12
17.4.1	Contrast to a Host Channel Adapter	1205	13
	17.4.1.1 Memory Protection	1206	14
17.4.2	Device Administration	1206	15
	17.4.3 Fabric Loopback	1207	16
Chapter 18: Switches		1209	17
18.1	Overview	1209	18
18.1.1	Switch Port 0.....	1210	19
18.2	Detailed Functional Requirements.....	1211	20
18.2.1	Attributes.....	1211	21
18.2.2	Initialization	1213	22
18.2.3	Configuration	1213	23
18.2.4	Packet Relay Requirements	1213	24
	18.2.4.1 Switch Ports	1214	25
	18.2.4.2 Receiver Queuing.....	1215	26
	18.2.4.3 Packet Relay	1217	27
	18.2.4.4 Transmitter Queueing.....	1223	28
	18.2.4.5 Packet Transmission	1225	29
18.2.5	Error Handling.....	1225	30
	18.2.5.1 Switch Ports	1226	31
	18.2.5.2 Receiver Queueing.....	1226	32
	18.2.5.3 Packet Relay	1226	33
	18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing.....	1226	34
	18.2.5.5 Packet Transmission	1227	35
18.2.6	Subnet Management Agent Requirements	1227	36
Chapter 19: Routers		1228	37
19.1	Overview	1228	38
19.2	Detailed functional requirements	1229	39
19.2.1	Attributes.....	1229	40
19.2.2	Initialization	1231	41

19.2.3	Configuration	1232	1
19.2.4	Packet Relay Model.....	1232	2
19.2.4.1	Path Selection	1233	3
19.2.4.2	Router Ports	1233	4
19.2.4.3	Receiver Queuing.....	1234	5
19.2.4.4	Packet Relay	1235	6
19.2.4.5	Transmitter Queuing.....	1236	7
19.2.4.6	Packet Transmission	1238	8
19.2.5	Error Handling.....	1238	9
19.2.5.1	Router Ports Errors	1238	10
19.2.5.2	Receiver Queuing Errors.....	1238	11
19.2.5.3	Packet Relay Errors	1239	12
19.2.5.4	Transmitter Queueing Errors	1239	13
19.2.5.5	Packet Transmission Errors	1239	14
19.2.6	Subnet Management Agent Requirements	1240	15
Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary		1241	
20.1	Compliance Definition	1241	16
20.1.1	Product Application	1241	17
20.2	Volume 1 Compliance Categories	1241	18
20.2.1	Volume 1 Compliance Qualifiers.....	1242	19
20.2.1.1	Claiming Support for Optional Features	1243	20
20.2.1.2	Compliance Statements with Multiple Qualifiers	1245	21
20.2.2	Compliance Statement Lists	1245	22
20.2.2.1	Hypertext Links.....	1245	23
20.2.2.2	Compliance Statement Labels	1245	24
20.2.2.3	Compliance Statement Titles.....	1245	25
20.2.3	Common Requirements	1246	26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

20.3	HCA-CI Compliance Category	1246	1
20.4	TCA Compliance Category	1261	2
20.5	Switch Compliance Category.....	1270	3
20.6	Router Compliance Category	1274	4
20.7	Subnet Manager Compliance Category.....	1278	5
20.8	Subnet Administration Compliance Category	1280	6
20.9	Communication Manager Compliance Category	1281	7
20.10	Performance Manager Compliance Category.....	1282	8
20.11	Vendor-Defined Manager Compliance Category	1283	9
20.12	Optional Management Agent Compliance Category.....	1284	10
20.13	Common MAD Requirements	1286	11
Annex A1: I/O Infrastructure.....		1289	13
A1.1	Introduction.....	1289	14
	A1.1.1 Purpose.....	1289	15
	A1.1.2 Glossary.....	1289	16
A1.2	Principles of I/O	1290	17
	A1.2.1 I/O Operation Overview.....	1290	18
	A1.2.2 Managed I/O Units	1292	19
	A1.2.3 ROM Repository.....	1292	20
	A1.2.4 I/O Device Drivers	1293	21
	A1.2.4.1 Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver.....	1293	22
	A1.2.4.2 Using an I/O Controller.....	1295	23
	A1.2.5 I/O Attachment	1297	24
	A1.2.5.1 Direct attachment	1297	25
	A1.2.5.2 Fabric Attachment	1297	26
	A1.2.5.3 Power Management	1297	27
A1.3	I/O Management.....	1298	28
	A1.3.1 I/O Device Resolution	1298	29
	A1.3.1.1 Resolving A Path	1298	30
	A1.3.1.2 Persistent Information	1299	31
	A1.3.1.3 Configuration Changes.....	1299	32
	A1.3.2 Retry-Backoff Policy	1302	33
A1.4	Impact of Partitions on I/O	1302	34
	A1.4.1 I/O Units and Partitions	1304	35
	A1.4.2 Hosts and I/O Partitions	1304	36
	A1.4.2.1 Query for Path	1305	37
	A1.4.2.2 Query for Service	1305	38
	A1.4.2.3 Query for List of I/O Units	1305	39
A1.5	Storage I/O	1306	40
	A1.5.1 IB Storage Concepts	1306	41
			42

A1.5.2	Protocol Specific Fields.....	1306	1
A1.5.3	Storage Protocols.....	1307	2
Annex A2: Console Service Protocol		1308	3
A2.1	Introduction.....	1308	4
A2.1.1	Glossary	1308	5
A2.1.2	Compliance	1309	6
A2.1.3	Overview	1309	7
A2.1.4	Goals.....	1309	8
A2.2	The IB Console Abstraction	1310	9
A2.2.1	Console IO Controllers.....	1312	10
A2.2.2	Console Server Processes.....	1313	11
A2.3	Console Service Protocol	1313	12
A2.3.1	Error Reporting.....	1318	13
A2.3.2	Console Device Enumeration.....	1319	14
A2.3.3	Capability Query.....	1321	15
A2.3.4	Session Establishment.....	1324	16
A2.3.5	Normal Operation.....	1327	17
A2.3.5.1	ASCII Text Streams	1328	18
A2.3.5.2	UTF-8 Text Streams	1328	19
A2.3.5.3	HTTP Console Support	1328	20
A2.3.6	Session Handoff and Maintenance	1329	21
A2.3.7	Connection Maintenance Messages	1336	22
A2.3.8	Service Connection and Session Termination.....	1337	23
A2.4	Compliance Summary	1339	24
A2.4.1	CSP Client Compliance Category	1339	25
A2.4.2	CSP Server Compliance Category	1339	26
Annex A3: Application Specific Identifiers		1341	27
A3.1	Introduction.....	1341	28
A3.1.1	Glossary	1341	29
A3.1.2	Compliance	1342	30
A3.2	Service ID	1342	31
A3.2.1	Goals and Scope.....	1342	32
A3.2.2	Principles of Service ID Usage.....	1343	33
A3.2.2.1	Background	1343	34
A3.2.2.2	Considerations	1345	35
A3.2.2.3	Assigning Service IDs	1347	36
A3.2.3	Service ID Structure	1349	37
A3.2.3.1	IBTA Assigned Service IDs	1349	38
A3.2.3.2	IETF Service IDs	1351	39
A3.2.3.3	Local OS Administered Service IDs	1351	40
			41
			42

A3.2.3.4	Externally Administrated Service IDs	1354	1
A3.2.4	Resolving Service Names	1355	2
	A3.2.4.1 Service Advertisement.....	1355	3
	A3.2.4.2 Multicast Query	1355	4
	A3.2.4.3 Alternatives.....	1356	
A3.3	I/O Controller Identification	1356	5
	A3.3.1 Vendor Information.....	1357	6
	A3.3.2 Generic Information.....	1357	7
	A3.3.3 IBTA Protocols.....	1358	8
	A3.3.4 Other Protocols	1358	9
A3.4	Service Names	1359	10
	A3.4.1 IBTA Service Names	1359	11
	A3.4.2 I/O Service Records	1359	12
	A3.4.3 ServiceRecord Attribute	1360	13
A3.5	Management Class Codes	1360	14
A3.6	Queue Keys.....	1360	15
A3.7	Compliance Summary	1361	16
	A3.7.1 Service ID Administration.....	1361	17
	A3.7.2 Service Application.....	1362	18
	A3.7.3 Managed I/O Unit	1362	19
Annex A4: Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP)	1363	21
A4.1	Introduction.....	1363	22
	A4.1.1 Architectural Goals.....	1363	23
	A4.1.2 Overview of the Byte-Stream Protocol	1364	24
A4.2	Glossary	1366	25
A4.3	SDP message Formats	1369	26
	A4.3.1 Base Sockets Direct Header (BSDH).....	1369	27
	A4.3.1.1 Message identifier (MID)	1369	28
	A4.3.1.2 Flags.....	1371	29
	A4.3.1.3 Buffers (Bufs).....	1371	30
	A4.3.1.4 Length (Len)	1372	31
	A4.3.1.5 Message Sequence Number (MSeq)	1372	32
	A4.3.1.6 Message Sequence Number Acknowledgement (MSeqAck).....	1372	33
	A4.3.2 Connection Management Messages.....	1372	34
	A4.3.2.1 Hello Message (HH)	1372	35
	A4.3.2.2 HelloAck Message (HAH).....	1376	36
	A4.3.2.3 DisConn Message	1378	37
	A4.3.2.4 AbortConn Message.....	1378	38
	A4.3.3 Data Transfer and Flow Control Messages.....	1379	39
	A4.3.3.1 Data Message	1379	40
	A4.3.3.2 SrcAvail Message (SrcAH)	1379	41

A4.3.3.3	SinkAvail Message (SinkAH).....	1380	1
A4.3.3.4	RDMA Messages.....	1381	2
A4.3.3.5	SendSm Message	1381	3
A4.3.3.6	RdmaWrCompl Message (RWCH).....	1381	4
A4.3.3.7	RdmaRdCompl Message (RRCH)	1382	5
A4.3.3.8	ModeChange Message (MCH).....	1382	6
A4.3.3.9	SrcAvailCancel Message.....	1383	7
A4.3.3.10	SinkAvailCancel Message.....	1384	8
A4.3.3.11	SinkCancelAck Message.....	1384	9
A4.3.4	Private Buffer Resizing Messages	1384	10
A4.3.4.1	ChRcvBuf Message (CRBH)	1384	11
A4.3.4.2	ChRcvBufAck Message (CRBAH)	1384	12
A4.3.5	Socket Duplication Messages	1385	13
A4.3.5.1	SuspComm Message	1385	14
A4.3.5.2	SuspCommAck Message	1385	15
A4.4	Address Resolution	1386	16
A4.5	Connection Management	1386	17
A4.5.1	Connection Setup.....	1386	18
A4.5.1.1	InfiniBand Reliable Connection Setup	1386	19
A4.5.1.2	Aborting Connection Setup	1389	20
A4.5.2	Automatic Path Migration	1389	21
A4.5.2.1	Determining Alternate Paths.....	1389	22
A4.5.2.2	Example Alternate Path Selection Procedure	1389	23
A4.5.2.3	Configuring Alternate Paths.....	1391	24
A4.5.3	Connection Teardown	1391	25
A4.5.3.1	Graceful Close.....	1391	26
A4.5.3.2	Abortive Close	1394	27
A4.6	Data Transfer Mechanisms.....	1395	28
A4.6.1	Bcopy	1396	29
A4.6.2	Read Zcopy	1397	30
A4.6.3	Write Zcopy	1401	31
A4.6.4	Transaction Mechanism	1403	32
A4.6.5	Miscellaneous Data Transfer Issues	1405	33
A4.6.5.1	Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements.....	1405	34
A4.6.5.2	Mechanisms For Forcing Bcopy	1406	35
A4.6.5.3	Processing Out-Of-Band Data.....	1408	36
A4.6.5.4	SrcAvail Revocation	1408	37
A4.6.5.5	SinkAvail Revocation	1410	38
A4.6.5.6	Buffering ULP Payload	1411	39
A4.7	Private Buffer Management.....	1412	40
A4.7.1	SDP Message Ordering	1413	41
A4.7.2	Send Credit Calculation	1413	42
A4.7.3	Initialization of Send Credit	1413	

A4.7.4	Gratuitous Update Of The Remote Peer's Send Credit	1414	1
A4.7.5	Use of Send Credits	1414	2
A4.7.6	Receive Buffer Resizing	1415	3
	A4.7.6.1 Conflict Resolution	1416	4
	A4.7.6.2 Flow Control Issues During Resizing	1416	
A4.8	SDP Modes	1416	5
A4.8.1	Buffered Mode.....	1419	6
A4.8.2	Combined Mode.....	1419	7
A4.8.3	Pipelined Mode	1419	8
A4.9	SDP Mode Transitions.....	1421	9
A4.9.1	Transition From Combined Mode to Buffered Mode	1423	10
A4.9.2	Transition From Buffered Mode to Combined Mode	1423	11
A4.9.3	Transition From Combined Mode to Pipelined Mode	1423	12
A4.9.4	Transition From Pipelined Mode to Combined Mode	1424	13
A4.9.5	State Mode Transition Summary.....	1425	14
A4.10	Socket Duplication.....	1428	15
A4.10.1	Implementing Socket Duplication.....	1429	16
	A4.10.1.1 Socket Duplication Procedure	1429	17
	A4.10.1.2 Conflict Resolution	1431	18
A4.10.2	HCA Managed Failover	1431	19
A4.11	InfiniBand Transport Layer Issues	1432	20
A4.11.1	InfiniBand Message Requirements	1432	21
A4.11.2	Solicited Events.....	1432	22
A4.11.3	Keepalive Messages	1434	23
A4.12	SDP Compliance Category.....	1435	24
Annex A5: Booting Annex	1438	25	
A5.1	Introduction.....	1438	26
A5.1.1	Purpose.....	1438	27
A5.1.2	Glossary	1438	28
A5.1.3	Overview	1441	29
A5.1.4	Console	1444	30
A5.1.5	Storage Boot Method	1445	31
A5.1.6	Network Boot Method.....	1446	32
A5.1.7	Boot Environment.....	1447	33
A5.1.8	Managing the Behavior of a Booting Platform.....	1448	34
	A5.1.8.1 Boot Resolution Methods	1448	35
	A5.1.8.2 ROM Repository	1449	36
	A5.1.8.3 Boot Environment Extension	1449	37
	A5.1.8.4 Proprietary Driver Load	1449	38
A5.1.9	Subnet Initialization	1449	39
		40	
		41	
		42	

A5.1.10	Boot/Reboot	1450	1
A5.2	BootManager	1450	2
A5.2.1	General Operation.....	1450	2
A5.2.2	Detecting New Boot Platforms	1452	3
A5.2.3	Multiple Boot Managers	1452	4
A5.2.4	Protecting the BtM_Key	1453	5
A5.2.5	Event Reporting	1453	6
A5.2.6	SA Advertisement.....	1453	7
A5.3	BootAgent.....	1454	9
A5.4	MAD Format	1454	10
A5.4.1	Boot Management MAD Status.....	1456	11
A5.4.2	MAD BtM_Key.....	1457	12
A5.5	Boot Management Methods and Attributes	1457	13
A5.6	Boot Management Attribute Definitions	1461	14
A5.6.1	ClassPortInfo.....	1463	15
A5.6.2	BtM_KeyInfo.....	1463	16
A5.6.2.1	BtM_Key General Use.....	1464	17
A5.6.2.2	BtM_Key Assumptions	1465	18
A5.6.2.3	BtM_Key Operations	1465	19
A5.6.2.4	BtM_Key Initialization	1467	20
A5.6.2.5	BtM_Key Recovery.....	1467	21
A5.6.2.6	Lease Period	1468	22
A5.6.3	PlatformBootInfo Attribute	1469	23
A5.6.3.1	BootPlatformUUID	1479	24
A5.6.3.2	PlatformInfo	1479	25
A5.6.3.3	Booting Platform Capability	1481	26
A5.6.3.4	Boot Record Locator Sources	1483	27
A5.6.3.5	Record Count	1485	28
A5.6.3.6	Deleting Persistent Records.....	1487	29
A5.6.3.7	Status Components.....	1487	29
A5.6.4	PortBootInfo Attribute	1488	30
A5.6.4.1	BisPortPriority	1492	31
A5.6.4.2	RomPortPriority	1492	32
A5.6.4.3	ConsolePortPriority	1492	33
A5.6.4.4	LocPortPriority	1492	34
A5.6.4.5	NetworkBootPortPriority	1493	35
A5.6.4.6	Time-outs.....	1493	36
A5.6.5	Persistent Locator Records	1495	37
A5.6.5.1	Device-Service	1498	38
A5.6.5.2	LocGUID-SID	1499	39
A5.6.5.3	PortGUID	1499	40
A5.6.5.4	Protocol	1499	41
			42

A5.6.5.5	RecordFunction	1499	1
A5.6.6	Node Reboot.....	1502	2
	A5.6.6.1 NodeReboot Attribute	1502	3
	A5.6.6.2 Reboot Time Line	1503	4
A5.6.7	Traps and Notice Queues	1504	5
	A5.6.7.1 Notice Attribute	1507	6
	A5.6.7.2 TrapRepress.....	1514	7
	A5.6.7.3 Trap Subscription / Reporting.....	1514	8
A5.6.8	InformInfo Attribute.....	1519	9
A5.7	Platforms Use of BIS	1519	10
A5.7.1	BIS Usage Overview	1519	11
A5.7.2	PlatformBootInfo Source.....	1520	12
A5.7.3	PortBootInfo Source.....	1521	13
A5.7.4	Determining to use a BIS	1521	14
A5.7.5	Finding a BIS.....	1521	15
A5.7.6	Selecting A BIS.....	1522	16
A5.7.7	Prioritizing Multiple BISs	1522	17
A5.7.8	Other Considerations	1523	18
	A5.7.8.1 Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol	1523	19
	A5.7.8.2 Port GID to LID Resolution	1523	20
	A5.7.8.3 Reporting Failures	1524	21
A5.8	IB Network Booting.....	1524	22
A5.9	Retry Backoff	1524	23
A5.10	IB Boot Process - Summary	1525	24
A5.11	AdditionallInfo.....	1530	25
	A5.11.1 SRP	1531	26
	A5.11.2 Console	1532	27
A5.12	ROM Repository	1533	28
A5.12.1	Introduction	1533	29
A5.12.2	Overview of IOC Boot Driver Download.....	1534	30
A5.12.3	ROM Repository Model.....	1534	31
A5.12.4	Identifying a ROM Repository	1535	32
A5.12.5	ROM Repository Access Methods	1536	33
A5.12.6	ROM Repository Messages	1536	34
A5.12.7	Reading ROM Repository Information	1538	35
A5.12.8	IMAGE Descriptor	1543	36
A5.12.9	Reading an Image Descriptor	1545	37
A5.12.10	Reading an image	1548	38
A5.12.11	Adding and Updating an Image.....	1551	39
	A5.12.11.1 Initiating an Image Add Operation	1551	40
	A5.12.11.2 Initiating an Image Update	1554	41
			42

A5.12.11.3	Writing Descriptor and Image Data	1559
A5.12.11.4	Deleting an Image	1563
A5.13	Compliance Summary	1564
A5.13.1	Booting Specification Compliance Categories	1564
A5.13.2	BootAgent (BtA) Compliance Category.....	1565
A5.13.3	BootManager (BtM) Compliance Category	1566
A5.13.4	Boot Platform (BtPlatform) Compliance Category.....	1568
A5.13.5	ROM Repository Compliance Category	1568
A6 Annex A6: Boot Information Service	1570
A6.1	Introduction.....	1570
A6.1.1	Glossary	1570
A6.1.2	Compliance	1570
A6.2	BIS Overview.....	1570
A6.2.1	BIS Operational Model.....	1572
A6.2.2	Relationship with other Management Classes	1574
A6.2.2.1	Boot Management	1574
A6.2.2.2	Subnet Administration	1574
A6.2.2.3	Subnet Management	1575
A6.2.2.4	Device Management	1575
A6.2.3	Characteristics	1575
A6.3	BIS Class Specification	1577
A6.3.1	Registration	1578
A6.3.2	BIS Query Operation.....	1578
A6.3.3	BIS Data Formats.....	1580
A6.3.3.1	Reserved Fields	1581
A6.3.3.2	BIS Status Values.....	1581
A6.3.4	BIS Methods.....	1582
A6.3.4.1	Common Methods	1582
A6.3.4.2	Query Methods.....	1582
A6.3.4.3	Lost Messages	1584
A6.3.5	Attributes	1584
A6.3.5.1	ClassPortInfo	1585
A6.3.5.2	BootQueryInfo Attribute	1585
A6.3.5.3	PlatformBootInfo Attribute	1592
A6.3.5.4	PortBootInfo Attribute	1593
A6.3.5.5	RomRepositoryLocatorRecord Attribute	1594
A6.3.5.6	ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute	1594
A6.3.5.7	OsLocatorRecord Attribute	1596
A6.3.5.8	Protocol Field	1597
A6.4	Booting using Boot Information Records	1598
A6.4.1	Overview	1598

A6.4.2	General Operation.....	1599	1
A6.5	Compliance Summary	1601	2
Annex A7: Configuration Management	1603	3	
A7.1	Introduction.....	1603	4
A7.1.1	Glossary	1604	5
A7.1.2	Compliance	1608	6
A7.2	Overview.....	1608	7
A7.2.1	Objective	1610	8
A7.2.2	Usage Model.....	1610	9
A7.2.3	Configuration Management Application	1612	10
A7.2.3.1	Passive Management.....	1612	11
A7.2.3.2	Active Management.....	1613	12
A7.2.3.3	Multiple Managers	1613	13
A7.3	Configuration Management Operational Model.....	1616	14
A7.4	Configuration Management Characteristics	1617	15
A7.4.1	Configuration Domain	1617	16
A7.4.2	Partition Usage.....	1618	17
A7.4.3	SA usage.....	1619	18
A7.4.4	Manager Interaction	1619	19
A7.5	Configuration Management Operation	1619	20
A7.5.1	Interaction with Subnet Manager	1620	21
A7.5.2	Initialization and SA Registration.....	1620	22
A7.5.3	Coherency between Configuration Managers.....	1621	23
A7.5.4	Active vs. Passive Configuration Management.....	1622	24
A7.5.5	Device Manager Operation	1623	25
A7.5.6	Protecting the Manager_Key.....	1624	26
A7.5.7	I/O Unit Trap Forwarding	1625	27
A7.5.7.1	Configuring IOUs for Traps.....	1625	28
A7.5.7.2	Trap Subscription / Reporting.....	1625	29
A7.5.7.3	Subscription Integrity.....	1628	30
A7.5.7.4	Subscription Timeout.....	1629	31
A7.5.7.5	Heartbeat.....	1630	32
A7.5.8	Graceful Hot Removal.....	1631	33
A7.5.9	Diagnostics.....	1635	34
A7.5.9.1	Diagnostic Framework.....	1635	35
A7.5.9.2	Version 1 Diagnostics	1636	36
A7.5.9.3	7.5.9.3 Diagnostics under Passive Management	1637	37
A7.6	DevAdm Class Definition.....	1638	38
A7.6.1	Operation	1638	39
A7.6.1.1	Query.....	1638	40
A7.6.1.2	Event Notification Subsystem.....	1639	41

A7.6.2	DevAdm Message Format	1646	1
A7.6.2.1	Reserved Fields	1648	2
A7.6.2.2	DevAdm Status Values.....	1648	3
A7.6.2.3	Methods.....	1649	4
A7.6.2.4	RMPP Header	1649	5
A7.6.2.5	RequesterID	1650	6
A7.6.2.6	Component Mask	1651	7
A7.6.2.7	Lost Messages	1652	
A7.6.3	Attributes	1652	8
A7.6.3.1	ClassPortInfo	1653	9
A7.6.3.2	Notice	1654	10
A7.6.3.3	InformInfo	1657	11
A7.6.3.4	LogIn	1658	12
A7.6.3.5	S_KeyInfo.....	1661	13
A7.6.3.6	C_KeyInfo.....	1662	14
A7.6.3.7	RemovalReq.....	1664	15
A7.6.3.8	DiagNotice.....	1666	16
A7.6.3.9	ResetNotice	1668	
A7.7	Compliance.....	1670	17
A7.7.1	Compliance Categories.....	1670	18
A7.7.2	Configuration Manager Compliance Summary	1671	19
A7.7.3	I/O Client Compliance Summary.....	1672	20
A7.7.4	Common Management Requirements	1672	21
Annex A8: Device Management	1674	23	
A8.1	Introduction.....	1674	24
A8.1.1	Glossary	1675	25
A8.1.2	Compliance	1675	26
A8.1.3	Goals and Objectives	1675	27
A8.2	Overview.....	1676	28
A8.2.1	Usage Model	1676	29
A8.2.1.1	Device Manager (DM)	1677	30
A8.2.1.2	I/O Resource Manager	1679	31
A8.2.1.3	I/O Client	1679	32
A8.2.1.4	I/O Management Application	1680	33
A8.2.2	I/O Unit Model	1681	34
A8.2.3	Device Management Model	1683	35
A8.2.3.1	Authority	1685	36
A8.2.3.2	Device Information	1686	37
A8.2.3.3	Device Assignment.....	1688	38
A8.2.3.4	Physical Management	1692	39
A8.2.3.5	Device Diagnostics	1694	40
A8.2.4	Levels of Access	1695	41
			42

A8.3	Device Mgt MAD Specification	1697	1
A8.3.1	MAD Format.....	1697	2
A8.3.1.1	Class Version	1698	3
A8.3.1.2	Status Field	1702	4
A8.3.1.3	RMPP Header	1703	5
A8.3.1.4	Access_Key and KeyType.....	1703	6
A8.3.1.5	Component Mask	1705	
A8.3.2	Methods	1706	7
A8.3.3	Attributes	1707	8
A8.3.3.1	ClassPortInfo.....	1711	9
A8.3.3.2	Notice	1712	10
A8.3.3.3	InformInfo	1724	11
A8.3.3.4	DA Info.....	1725	12
A8.3.3.5	IOUnitInfo	1726	13
A8.3.3.6	IOControllerProfile.....	1728	14
A8.3.3.7	ServiceRecord.....	1731	15
A8.3.3.8	ProtocolRecord.....	1735	16
A8.3.3.9	SlotControlStatus	1737	17
A8.3.3.10	Reset	1740	18
A8.3.3.11	ProductInfo	1741	19
A8.3.3.12	KeyInfo	1743	20
A8.3.3.13	IouResourceInfo	1749	21
A8.3.3.14	PlatformPoolRecord	1752	22
A8.3.3.15	ClientPoolRecord	1758	23
A8.3.3.16	KeyChange.....	1764	24
A8.3.3.17	DiagSession	1765	25
A8.3.3.18	DiagnosticTimeout.....	1769	26
A8.3.3.19	TestDeviceOnce	1770	27
A8.3.3.20	TestDeviceLoop.....	1771	28
A8.3.3.21	DiagCode	1772	
A8.4	Resource Allocation Framework.....	1773	29
A8.4.1	QP Allocation.....	1773	30
A8.4.2	Filtering Information	1775	31
A8.4.3	Restricting Access.....	1777	32
A8.4.4	Consuming QPs	1779	33
A8.5	Device Diagnostic Framework.....	1781	34
A8.5.1	Behaviors	1783	35
A8.5.2	Preparing for Diagnostic Tests	1784	36
A8.5.3	Invoking Diagnostic Tests.....	1784	37
A8.6	IOC Graceful Hot Removal.....	1785	38
A8.6.1	Required Hot Plug Facilities.....	1786	39
A8.6.2	Operation	1787	40
A8.6.3	STATE DIAGRAM	1788	41
			42

A8.6.4	I/O Module Indicators	1789	1
	A8.6.4.1 LED Blink Rate Definitions	1790	2
	A8.6.4.2 LED Color	1790	2
A8.7	Device Manager	1790	3
A8.8	I/O Unit Implementation	1791	4
A8.9	Compliance.....	1792	5
	A8.9.1 Compliance Categories.....	1792	6
	A8.9.2 Device Management Agent Compliance Summary.....	1792	7
	A8.9.3 Common Management Requirements	1794	8
	Annex A9: Verb Extensions Annex.....	1796	9
A9.1	Introduction.....	1796	10
	A9.1.1 Overview	1796	11
	Annex A10: Congestion Control	1797	12
A10.1	Congestion Control in InfiniBand Networks	1797	13
	A10.1.1 Glossary	1797	14
	A10.1.2 Congestion Overview	1799	15
	A10.1.3 Congestion control Summary.....	1801	16
	A10.1.3.1 Current Performance metrics	1802	17
	A10.1.3.2 Operation with CC Unaware switches and Channel Adapters	1802	18
A10.2	Congestion Control Mechanism	1803	19
	A10.2.1 Switch Behavior	1803	20
	A10.2.1.1 Congestion Detection	1803	21
	A10.2.1.2 Congestion Marking	1805	22
	A10.2.1.3 Congestion Log	1806	23
	A10.2.1.4 Switch Performance counters for congestion	1807	24
	A10.2.1.5 Switch Credit Starvation	1808	25
	A10.2.2 CA Behavior	1808	26
	A10.2.2.1 Injection rate control	1810	27
	A10.2.2.2 CA Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log.....	1812	28
	A10.2.2.3 CA Performance Counters	1814	29
A10.3	Packet Formats	1814	30
	A10.3.1 BTH: FECN and BECN locations	1814	31
	A10.3.2 Congestion Notification Packet (CNP) format.....	1815	32
A10.4	Congestion Control Management.....	1816	33
	A10.4.1 Congestion Control MAD Format.....	1816	34
	A10.4.1.1 CC_Key	1817	35
	A10.4.1.2 Congestion Control Log Data	1820	36
	A10.4.1.3 CCMgt Data	1820	37
	A10.4.2 Methods	1820	38
	A10.4.3 Attributes	1820	39

A10.4.3.1	ClassPortInfo	1822	1
A10.4.3.2	Traps and Notices	1822	2
A10.4.3.3	CongestionInfo	1824	3
A10.4.3.4	CongestionKeyInfo	1824	4
A10.4.3.5	CongestionLog	1825	5
A10.4.3.6	SwitchCongestionSetting	1827	6
A10.4.3.7	SwitchPortCongestionSetting	1829	7
A10.4.3.8	CACongestionSetting	1831	8
A10.4.3.9	CongestionControlTable	1832	9
A10.4.3.10	TimeStamp	1834	10
A10.5	Congestion Management Performance Counters	1834	10
A10.5.1	PortSamplesControl	1834	11
A10.5.2	Counter Select Values	1835	12
A10.5.3	Optional Performance Management Attributes	1835	13
A10.5.4	PortRcvConCtrl	1836	14
A10.5.5	PortSLRcvFECN	1837	15
A10.5.6	PortSLRcvBECN	1839	16
A10.5.7	PortXmitConCtrl	1841	17
A10.5.8	PortVLXmitTimeCong	1841	18
A10.6	Optional PM Attribute status	1843	19
A10.6.1	PM AttributeModifier Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1844	20
A10.6.2	PM Attribute Component Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1844	21
A10.7	Compliance Summary	1845	22
A10.7.1	CCMgt Switch Compliance Category	1845	23
A10.7.2	CCMgt CA Compliance Category	1846	24
			25
Annex A11: RDMA IP CM Service	1848	26	
A11.1	Introduction	1848	27
A11.2	Glossary	1848	28
A11.3	Convention	1849	29
A11.4	IP Connection Establishment	1849	30
A11.4.1	Major Version (4 bits)	1850	31
A11.4.2	Minor Version (4 bits)	1850	32
A11.4.3	IP version (4 bits)	1851	33
A11.4.4	Res (4 bits)	1851	34
A11.4.5	Source Port (16 bits)	1851	35
A11.4.6	Source & Destination IP Addresses (128 bits)	1851	36
A11.4.7	IP Service ID Resolution	1851	37
			38
A11.5	IP Protocol Ports Mapping into IBTA Service IDs	1852	39
A11.6	Error Handling	1852	40
A11.6.1	SIDR Error Handling	1853	41
			42

A11.7	REJ Reasons.....	1854	1
	A11.7.1 SIDR Additional Information	1855	2
A11.8	Compliance Summary	1856	3
Annex A12: Support for iSCSI Extensions for RDMA (iSER)		1857	4
A12.1	Introduction.....	1857	5
A12.2	Glossary	1857	6
A12.3	Convention	1858	7
A12.4	iSER Connection Establishment.....	1858	8
A12.5	iSER Extension for Handling Send with Invalidate	1860	9
A12.6	iSER Extension for Handling Virtual Address	1861	10
A12.7	Compliance Summary	1862	11
Annex A13: Quality of Service (QoS).....		1863	12
A13.1	Introduction.....	1863	13
A13.2	Glossary	1863	14
A13.3	Overview.....	1864	15
	A13.3.1 Objectives	1864	16
	A13.3.2 Passive vs Active QoS Management	1865	17
	A13.3.3 QoS Management Model	1865	18
	A13.3.4 Congestion Management vs QoS Management	1867	19
	A13.3.5 Congestion Control Manager and QoS Manager Coexistence	1868	20
A13.4	VL Requirements.....	1868	21
A13.5	Subnet Administration.....	1869	22
	A13.5.1 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities.....	1869	23
	A13.5.2 Subnet Administration Status Values	1869	24
	A13.5.3 QoS Extended Attributes	1869	25
	A13.5.3.1 PathRecord	1869	26
	A13.5.3.2 MultiPathRecord.....	1871	27
A13.6	Performance Counters	1872	28
	A13.6.1 New counters for Active QoS	1872	29
	A13.6.2 QoS Performance Counter Requirements	1873	30
	A13.6.3 PortSamplesControl	1874	31
	A13.6.4 Counter Select Values.....	1874	32
	A13.6.5 Optional Performance Management Attributes	1875	33
	A13.6.6 PortXmitDataSL.....	1876	34
	A13.6.7 PortRcvDataSL.....	1878	35
	A13.6.8 PortXmitDataSLExt	1879	36
	A13.6.9 PortRcvDataSLExt	1881	37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

A13.7	Optional PM Attribute status	1883	1
A13.7.1	PM AttributeModifier Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1884	2
A13.7.2	PM Attribute Component Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1884	3
A13.8	Compliance.....	1885	4
Annex A14: Extended Reliable Connected (XRC) Transport Service.....	1886	5	
A14.1	Introduction.....	1886	6
Annex A15: Hierarchy Information	1887	8	
A15.1	Introduction.....	1887	9
A15.2	Glossary	1887	10
A15.3	Overview.....	1887	11
A15.4	Mode of Operation.....	1891	12
A15.4.1	Storing and Updating Hierarchical Information	1891	13
A15.4.2	Fabric Discovery	1891	14
A15.4.3	Decoding Hierarchical Information	1892	15
A15.5	Subnet Management Extensions.....	1892	16
A15.5.1	Hierarchy Information Capability	1893	17
A15.5.2	Hierarchy Information OtherLocalChanges bit	1893	18
A15.5.3	HierarchyInfo Attribute.....	1894	19
A15.5.3.1	HierarchyInfo Query	1896	20
A15.5.3.2	Setting HierarchyInfo	1896	21
A15.5.4	Error handling for HierarchyInfo Attribute.....	1896	22
A15.5.4.1	HierarchyInfo METHOD/ATTRIBUTE COMBINATION NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0X3)1896	1896	23
A15.5.4.2	HierarchyInfo AttributeModifier Errors (status_field[4:2] = 0x7)	1897	24
A15.5.4.3	HierarchyInfo ATTRIBUTE Component Errors (status_field[4:2] = 0x7)	1897	25
A15.6	Subnet Administration Extensions	1898	26
A15.6.1	HierarchyInfo Support	1898	27
A15.6.2	HierarchyInfoRecord Attribute	1898	28
A15.7	Hierarchy Template File	1899	29
A15.7.1	Key Schema Design Considerations.....	1899	30
A15.7.2	Schema Elements	1899	31
A15.7.2.1	Bits Element	1899	32
A15.7.2.2	Schema Data Types	1900	33
A15.7.2.3	Representation Element.....	1900	34
A15.7.2.4	Record Element.....	1900	35
A15.7.3	RecordSelector, RecordCode and ApplyToLevels Elements	1902	36
A15.7.4	Formal Template File XML Schema	1902	37
A15.7.5	A Generic Physical Hierarchy Template	1905	38
A15.7.6	A Generic Port Hierarchy Template	1908	39

A15.8	Compliance.....	1910	1
Annex A16: RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE).....		1911	2
A16.1	Introduction.....	1911	3
A16.2	Overview.....	1911	4
	A16.2.1 Architectural Goals.....	1912	5
A16.3	RoCE On-the-wire Formats	1912	6
	A16.3.1 Packet header layout	1912	8
	A16.3.2 ICRC Calculation.....	1913	9
A16.4	Management Considerations.....	1913	10
	A16.4.1 Subnet Management.....	1914	11
	A16.4.2 Subnet Administration	1915	12
	A16.4.3 Management Interfaces	1915	13
	A16.4.4 Management Messaging.....	1915	14
A16.5	RoCE Addressing	1916	15
	A16.5.1 Address Assignment and Resolution	1916	16
	A16.5.2 Connection Management.....	1916	17
	A16.5.2.1 REQ Message Contents.....	1917	18
	A16.5.2.2 REJ Message Contents.....	1917	19
	A16.5.2.3 LAP Message Contents.....	1917	20
	A16.5.2.4 APR Message Contents	1917	21
A16.6	Link Layer Considerations	1917	22
A16.7	Transport Considerations	1917	23
	A16.7.1 Transport header checks.....	1918	24
	A16.7.2 Loopback.....	1918	25
	A16.7.3 Static Rate Control	1919	26
	A16.7.4 Congestion Control	1919	27
	A16.7.5 QoS Management.....	1919	28
A16.8	Software Transport Interface	1920	29
	A16.8.1 SL, VL management.....	1920	30
	A16.8.2 Partitioning	1920	31
A16.9	Verbs Considerations	1921	32
	A16.9.1 Query HCA.....	1921	33
	A16.9.2 Modify HCA.....	1921	34
	A16.9.3 Create Address Handle	1921	35
	A16.9.4 Modify Address Handle	1922	36
	A16.9.5 Query Address Handle	1922	37
	A16.9.6 Modify Queue Pair / Modify XRC Initiator QP / Modify XRC Target QP	1922	38
	A16.9.7 Query Queue Pair / Query XRC Initiator QP / Query XRC Target QP	1923	39
	A16.9.8 Modify EE Context Attributes	1923	40
	A16.9.9 Query EE Context	1924	41
			42

A16.9.10 Attach QP to Multicast Group.....	1924	1
A16.9.11 Detach QP from Multicast Group	1925	2
A16.9.12 Poll for Completion.....	1925	3
A16.9.13 Get Special QP	1925	4
A16.9.14 Post Send Request	1925	5
A16.9.15 Unaffiliated Asynchronous Events.....	1925	6
A16.10 Channel Adapters	1926	7
A16.10.1 Loading the P_Key Table	1926	8
A16.10.2 Locally Routed Packets.....	1926	9
A16.10.3 Backpressure, Deadlock Prevention	1926	10
A16.10.4 Inbound Packet Checking	1926	11
A16.10.5 Support for QPO	1927	12
Annex A17: RoCEv2 (IP Routable RoCE).....	1928	13
A17.1 Introduction.....	1928	14
A17.2 Overview.....	1928	15
A17.2.1 The InfiniBand Architecture	1928	16
A17.2.2 RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE).....	1928	17
A17.2.3 The Need for (IP) Routable RDMA.....	1929	18
A17.2.4 RoCEv2 (IP Routable RoCE)	1930	19
A17.3 RoCEv2 Packet Format.....	1931	20
A17.3.1 Ethertypes and IP Header Fields	1931	21
A17.3.1.1 RoCEv2 with IPv4	1932	22
A17.3.1.2 RoCEv2 with IPv6	1933	23
A17.3.2 UDP Header Fields	1934	24
A17.3.2.1 Source Port	1934	25
A17.3.2.2 Destination Port.....	1934	26
A17.3.2.3 Length	1935	27
A17.3.2.4 Checksum	1935	28
A17.3.3 ICRC for RoCEv2 Packets	1935	29
A17.3.4 RoCEv2 Inbound Packet Validation	1936	30
A17.4 InfiniBand Transport Protocol Spec Considerations	1936	31
A17.4.1 RoCEv2 Addressing	1936	32
A17.4.1.1 L3 Addresses.....	1936	33
A17.4.1.2 L2 Addresses.....	1936	34
A17.4.2 Address Vector.....	1937	35
A17.4.3 Port GID Table.....	1938	36
A17.4.4 GRH Checks	1938	37
A17.4.4.1 IP Version	1938	38
A17.4.4.2 Address Validation Rules.....	1939	39
A17.4.5 Unreliable Datagram (UD)	1939	40
A17.4.5.1 UD Completion Queue Entries (CQEs)	1939	41

A17.4.5.2	Scattering of the L3 Header in UD	1939	1
A17.4.6	IB Raw Datagrams	1939	2
A17.4.7	InfiniBand Partitioning	1940	3
A17.4.8	InfiniBand Congestion Control	1940	4
A17.4.9	InfiniBand QOS	1940	5
A17.5	InfiniBand Verbs Considerations	1940	6
A17.5.1	QUERY HCA.....	1940	7
A17.5.2	MODIFY HCA.....	1941	8
A17.5.3	CREATE/MODIFY/QUERY ADDRESS HANDLE	1941	9
A17.5.4	MODIFY/QUERY QUEUE PAIR / MODIFY/QUERY XRC TARGET QP	1941	10
A17.5.5	MODIFY/QUERY EE CONTEXT.....	1941	11
A17.5.6	ATTACH/DETACH QP TO/FROM MULTICAST GROUP	1942	12
A17.5.7	POLL FOR COMPLETION.....	1942	13
A17.5.8	GET SPECIAL QP.....	1942	14
A17.5.9	POST SEND REQUEST	1942	15
A17.5.10	UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS.....	1942	16
A17.6	InfiniBand Management Considerations.....	1942	17
A17.6.1	Communication Management	1943	18
A17.6.1.1	REQ Message	1943	19
A17.6.1.2	REJ Message	1944	20
A17.6.1.3	LAP Message	1944	21
A17.6.1.4	APR Message	1944	22
A17.6.1.5	SAP Message.....	1944	23
A17.7	Channel Adapters	1944	24
A17.7.1	Loading The P_KEY Table	1944	25
A17.7.2	Locally Routed Packets.....	1945	26
A17.7.3	Backpressure and Deadlock Prevention	1945	27
A17.7.4	Inbound Packet Checking	1945	28
A17.7.5	Support for QP0	1945	29
A17.8	Interoperability with RoCE Endnodes	1945	30
A17.9	RoCEv2 Network Considerations	1946	31
A17.9.1	Lossless Network	1946	32
A17.9.2	RoCEv2 QoS.....	1946	33
A17.9.3	RoCEv2 Congestion Management.....	1947	34
A17.9.4	ECMP for RoCEv2	1948	35
Annex A18: Virtualization	1950	36	
A18.1	Introduction.....	1950	37
A18.1.1	Glossary	1950	38
A18.1.2	Overview	1951	39
			40
			41
			42

A18.2	VPort Packet Relay	1953	1
A18.2.1	IBA Unicast Transport Packets.....	1953	2
A18.2.2	IBA Multicast Transport Packets	1953	3
A18.2.3	Raw Ethernet and Raw IPv6 Packets	1953	4
A18.2.4	Allowed SLs	1953	5
A18.3	VHCA Transport Interface.....	1954	6
A18.3.1	VPort LID.....	1954	7
A18.3.2	VPort GID Table	1954	8
A18.3.3	Vport Partition Table (P_Key Table)	1955	9
A18.3.4	VPort Link States	1955	10
A18.3.5	VPort0	1956	11
A18.3.6	Special QPs	1957	12
A18.3.6.1	SMI	1957	13
A18.3.6.2	GSI	1958	14
A18.3.6.3	Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype QPs	1958	15
A18.3.7	Client ReRegistration	1958	16
A18.3.8	Capability Mask.....	1958	17
A18.3.9	Software Transport Verbs.....	1960	18
A18.3.9.1	Open HCA	1961	19
A18.3.9.2	Query HCA	1961	20
A18.3.9.3	Modify HCA Attributes	1962	21
A18.3.10	Asynchronous Events	1962	22
A18.3.10.1	Unaffiliated Asynchronous Events	1962	23
A18.3.10.2	Unaffiliated Asynchronous Errors	1963	
A18.4	Subnet Management	1963	24
A18.4.1	Virtualization Support	1963	25
A18.4.2	Virtualization Attributes.....	1963	26
A18.4.2.1	Trap/Notice Generation	1964	27
A18.4.2.2	VirtualizationInfo	1968	28
A18.4.2.3	VPortInfo	1969	29
A18.4.2.4	VNodeInfo	1970	30
A18.4.2.5	VPortState	1971	31
A18.4.2.6	VNodeDescription	1971	32
A18.4.2.7	VPortGUIDInfo	1972	33
A18.4.2.8	VPortPartitionTable.....	1972	34
A18.4.3	Subnet Management MAD Status.....	1972	35
A18.4.3.1	SMP Method/Attribute Combination not supported (Status_Field[4:2] = 0x3). 1972	36	
A18.4.3.2	SMP AttributeModifier Errors (Status_Field[4:2] = 0x7)..... 1973	37	
A18.4.3.3	SMP Attribute Component Errors (Status_Field[4:2] = 0x7)..... 1973	38	
A18.5	Subnet Administration.....	1975	39
A18.5.1	SA Specific Optional Capability.....	1975	40
A18.5.2	Modifications to existing SA Attributes	1975	41
			42

A18.5.2.1	InformInfo	1975	1
A18.5.2.2	InformInfoRecord.....	1975	2
A18.5.2.3	ServiceRecord.....	1976	3
A18.5.2.4	PathRecord	1976	4
A18.5.2.5	MCMemberRecord	1976	5
A18.5.2.6	MultiPathRecord.....	1976	6
A18.5.3	New SA Attributes	1976	7
A18.5.3.1	VirtualizationInfoRecord	1977	8
A18.5.3.2	VNodeRecord.....	1977	9
A18.5.3.3	VPortInfoRecord.....	1978	10
A18.5.3.4	VPortGUIDInfoRecord	1978	11
A18.5.3.5	VPortPartitionTableRecord	1978	12
A18.6	Performance Management.....	1979	13
A18.6.1	ClassPortInfo.....	1979	14
A18.6.2	VPortCounters.....	1979	15
A18.6.3	Performance Management Status	1981	16
A18.6.3.1	PM Attribute Modifier Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1981	17
A18.6.3.2	PM Attribute Component Errors (Status[4:2] = 0x7)	1981	18
			19
			20
			21
			22
			23
			24
			25
			26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1	IBA System Area Network	77	5
Figure 2	Single Host Environment.....	80	6
Figure 3	Byte Order for Multiple Byte Fields.....	81	7
Figure 4	Byte Order Examples	82	8
Figure 5	Bit Order Examples	82	9
Figure 6	IBA System Area Network.....	102	9
Figure 7	IBA Network	103	10
Figure 8	IBA Network Components.....	104	11
Figure 9	IBA Subnet Components.....	104	12
Figure 10	Processor Node.....	105	13
Figure 11	Consumer Queuing Model	106	14
Figure 12	Work Queue Operations.....	107	15
Figure 13	IBA Communication Stack.....	110	16
Figure 14	Channel Adapter	112	17
Figure 15	IBA Switch Elements	113	17
Figure 16	IBA Router Elements.....	114	18
Figure 17	Communication Interface	117	19
Figure 18	Virtual Lanes	123	20
Figure 19	Rate Matching Example	125	21
Figure 20	Simplified Address Resolution Process.....	127	22
Figure 21	Example Unreliable Multicast Operation	129	23
Figure 22	Connected Service	136	23
Figure 23	Datagram Service.....	137	24
Figure 24	Reliable Datagram Service.....	138	25
Figure 25	IBA Architecture Layers.....	140	26
Figure 26	IBA Packet Framing	140	27
Figure 27	IBA Data Packet Format.....	141	28
Figure 28	Segmentation of Data.....	143	29
Figure 29	Upper Layers.....	145	30
Figure 30	Subnet Management Elements	146	30
Figure 31	General Services.....	146	31
Figure 32	Subnet Management Models	149	32
Figure 33	General Services Physical Model.....	150	33
Figure 34	General Services Logical Models.....	150	34
Figure 35	I/O Unit	156	35
Figure 36	IO Operation	157	36
Figure 37	Reference IBA Address / Component Association.....	158	36
Figure 38	Reference IBA Router Address Association.....	159	37
Figure 39	Link-Local Unicast GID Format	161	38
Figure 40	Site-Local Unicast GID Format.....	162	39
Figure 41	Unicast Global GID Format	162	40
Figure 42	Multicast GID Format	162	41
			42

Figure 43	Multipath Identification Example	165	1
Figure 44	IBA Messages and Packets	167	1
Figure 45	IBA Packet Overview.....	169	2
Figure 46	IBA Packet Structure	170	3
Figure 47	Raw Header (RWH)	180	4
Figure 48	IBA Packet Examples	181	5
Figure 49	Physical Functions and Physical/Link Interface	182	6
Figure 50	Link State Machine	189	7
Figure 51	Packet Receiver State Machine	193	8
Figure 52	Data Packet Check machine	195	9
Figure 53	Link Packet Check machine	198	9
Figure 54	SL to Port Level Arbiter Scheme	213	10
Figure 55	Local Route Header (LRH).....	215	11
Figure 56	CRC Calculation Order.....	219	12
Figure 57	ICRC Generator	221	13
Figure 58	VCRC / LPCRC Generator.....	222	14
Figure 59	Local Packet Example	223	
Figure 60	Global Packet Example	227	15
Figure 61	Flow Control Packet Format.....	233	16
Figure 62	Example IBA Unreliable Multicast Operation	236	17
Figure 63	Packet Delivery within an end node	239	18
Figure 64	Example Raw Packet Multicast Operation	240	19
Figure 65	Global Route Header (GRH)	248	20
Figure 66	IBA Operation	254	21
Figure 67	Base Transport Header (BTH)	256	
Figure 68	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH)	262	22
Figure 69	Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH)	263	23
Figure 70	RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH)	263	24
Figure 71	ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH)	265	25
Figure 72	Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AETH).....	265	26
Figure 73	ATOMIC Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH)	266	27
Figure 74	Immediate Extended Transport Header (ImmDt)	266	28
Figure 75	Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH)	267	
Figure 76	XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)	267	29
Figure 77	SEND Operation Example.....	270	30
Figure 78	RDMA WRITE Operation Example.....	277	31
Figure 79	RDMA READ Operation Example	280	32
Figure 80	ATOMIC Operation Example.....	285	
Figure 81	Responder State Maintained for ATOMIC & RDMA READ Operations	288	33
Figure 82	Retrying ATOMIC Operations	290	34
Figure 83	Packet Header Validation Process	294	35
Figure 84	Send-Receive Queues Related by PSN.....	306	36
Figure 85	Duplicate Request Packets	307	37
Figure 86	Ghost Request Packet	307	38
Figure 87	Lost Request Packet(s)	308	39
Figure 88	Valid and Invalid PSN Regions	309	40
Figure 89	Request/Response PSNs.....	311	41
Figure 90	Inbound Request Packet Validation, RC mode	319	

Figure 91	Inbound Request Packet Validation, RD mode	320	1
Figure 92	Example: PSNs for Response Messages	331	1
Figure 93	Requester Interpretation of Coalesced Acknowledges	333	2
Figure 94	Relaxed Ordering Rules for RDMA READs	336	3
Figure 95	Maintaining the Order of Responses to Duplicate Requests.....	338	4
Figure 96	Acknowledging a Duplicate SEND Request.....	340	5
Figure 97	Acknowledging a Duplicate RDMA READ Request	342	6
Figure 98	Response Format for SENDs, RDMA WRITEs	346	7
Figure 99	Acknowledge Message Format for RDMA READ Requests	347	7
Figure 100	Response Packet PSN Regions.....	357	8
Figure 101	Three PSN Paradigm	359	9
Figure 102	Responder Initializes MSN to Zero	368	10
Figure 103	Requester Behavior - Completing WQEs	369	11
Figure 104	Limitation on Completing Send Queue WQEs	370	12
Figure 105	Requester End-to-End Credit Processes	375	13
Figure 106	Responder End-to-End Credit Initialization Process	376	14
Figure 107	Relating AETH values to the Send Queue	380	14
Figure 108	"Connectionless" QPs for Reliable Datagram Operation.....	387	15
Figure 109	Loss of synchronization of the EEC on Suspend	393	16
Figure 110	Requestor RESYNC flow chart	394	17
Figure 111	RESYNC detects unexpectedly complete message	395	18
Figure 112	RESYNC prevents corruption by delayed packets.....	396	19
Figure 113	Responder use of MSN	398	20
Figure 114	Extended Reliable Connected (XRC) Model	399	21
Figure 115	Unreliable Service: Inbound Packet Validation	405	21
Figure 116	Connectionless QPs for Unreliable Datagram Operation	418	22
Figure 117	Raw Datagrams.....	421	23
Figure 118	Requester / Responder Error Detection	423	24
Figure 119	Requester Class A Fault Behavior	431	25
Figure 120	Requester Class B Fault Behavior	433	26
Figure 121	Requester Class D Fault Behavior	434	27
Figure 122	Transport Class A Responder Behavior	440	28
Figure 123	Responder Class B Fault Behavior	441	28
Figure 124	Transport Class C Receive Queue Behavior	442	29
Figure 125	Transport Class E Receive Queue Behavior.....	444	30
Figure 126	Transport Class F Receive Queue Behavior.....	446	31
Figure 127	QP/EE Context State Diagram	484	32
Figure 128	Path Migration State Diagram	495	33
Figure 129	Registered Virtual Buffer to Physical Page Relationship.....	512	33
Figure 130	Work Queue Abstraction	545	34
Figure 131	Communication Management Entities.....	707	35
Figure 132	Sample Connection Establishment Sequence	709	36
Figure 133	Loading alternate path.....	740	37
Figure 134	Suggesting Alternate Path.....	741	38
Figure 135	Communication Establishment(Active Side)	749	39
Figure 136	Communication Establishment(Passive Side).....	750	40
Figure 137	MRA Example	758	40
Figure 138	Active/Passive, Both Accept.....	761	41

Figure 139	Active/Passive, Server Reject	762
Figure 140	Active/Passive, Client Reject.....	763
Figure 141	Active/Active, Both Accept	764
Figure 142	Active/Active, Passive Reject	765
Figure 143	Active/Active, Active Reject.....	766
Figure 144	Redirection, Accepted	767
Figure 145	Disconnect Request	768
Figure 146	Management Model.....	776
Figure 147	Typical Subnet Manager/Agent Relationships	778
Figure 148	Typical General Services Management/Agent Relationship	779
Figure 149	MAD Base Format.....	782
Figure 150	Get()	787
Figure 151	Set().....	788
Figure 152	Trap().....	789
Figure 153	TrapRepress()	790
Figure 154	Forwarding Trap()s/Notices from the class manager	790
Figure 155	Subscribing and unsubscribing for forwarding	816
Figure 156	Forwarding Trap()s/Notices from the Class Manager	818
Figure 157	MAD Interface	819
Figure 158	GSI Redirection	824
Figure 159	LRH Check	829
Figure 160	BTH Check	830
Figure 161	BTH Check Extension	830
Figure 162	GRH Check	830
Figure 163	SMP Check 1	831
Figure 164	SMP M_Key Check	832
Figure 165	SMP Check 2	833
Figure 166	SMP - SM Check.....	833
Figure 169	SMP - Direct Route Check 3	833
Figure 167	SMP Direct Route Check 1	834
Figure 168	SMP Direct Route Check 2	835
Figure 170	SMP Direct Route Check 4	836
Figure 171	SMP Direct Route Check 5	837
Figure 172	SMP - Direct Route Check 6	837
Figure 173	GMP Check	838
Figure 174	RMPP Header Layout	843
Figure 175	RMPP DATA Packet Layout.....	846
Figure 176	RMPP ACK Packet Layout.....	847
Figure 177	RMPP ABORT & STOP Packet Layouts	848
Figure 178	RMPP Example	852
Figure 179	RMPP Window State Variable Relationships	854
Figure 180	RMPP Dispatcher.....	855
Figure 181	RMPP Common Termination Flow	857
Figure 182	RMPP Receiver Main Flow Diagram	858
Figure 183	RMPP Receiver Termination Flow	859
Figure 184	RMPP Sender Main Flow Diagram	861
Figure 185	RMPP Sender Direction Switch Flow Diagram	862
Figure 186	RMPP Receiver-Initiated Flow	863

Figure 187	SMP Format (LID Routed).....	866	1
Figure 188	SMP Format (Directed Route).....	867	2
Figure 189	Complete route using directed routing	870	3
Figure 190	Loopback using directed routing	870	4
Figure 191	Pure directed route	870	5
Figure 192	Directed route with LID-Routed part at the source	871	6
Figure 193	Directed route with LID-Routed part at the destination	871	7
Figure 194	DiagCode Fields	916	8
Figure 195	Example of DiagCode Bits	917	9
Figure 196	MulticastForwardingTable Bit Layout	924	10
Figure 197	Index Forwarded Diagnostic Information.....	926	11
Figure 198	SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with "old" SM	980	12
Figure 199	SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with "new" SM - No additional port state changes	981	13
Figure 200	SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with "new" SM - Additional port state changes	982	14
Figure 201	SMInfo State Transitions	991	15
Figure 202	Subnet Administration Format.....	1017	16
Figure 203	SA-Created Multicast GID Format.....	1054	17
Figure 204	SubnAdmGetTable() Example	1075	18
Figure 205	Performance Management MAD Format	1080	19
Figure 206	Baseboard Management Architecture.....	1142	20
Figure 207	Baseboard Management MAD Format.....	1143	21
Figure 208	BM Initiated IB-ML Command	1145	22
Figure 209	IB-ML Initiated Command.....	1145	23
Figure 210	Architectural Model for an I/O Unit	1154	24
Figure 211	Device Management MAD Format.....	1155	25
Figure 212	SNMP Tunneling MAD Format.....	1166	26
Figure 213	This Figure is Obsolete and Has Been Deleted	1169	27
Figure 214	SNMP Proxy Agents.....	1171	28
Figure 215	SNMP PDU Segmentation	1172	29
Figure 216	Vendor MAD Format (Classes 0x09-0x0F)	1173	30
Figure 217	Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key (Classes 0x09-0x0F)	1174	31
Figure 218	Vendor MAD Format (Classes 0x30-0x4F)	1175	32
Figure 219	Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key (Classes 0x30-0x4F)	1176	33
Figure 220	Application MAD Format	1179	34
Figure 221	Application MAD with App_Key Format	1180	35
Figure 222	Communication Management MAD Format	1183	36
Figure 223	IBA Architecture Layers.....	1187	37
Figure 224	Multiport CA.....	1188	38
Figure 225	Multiport CA Architectural Layers.....	1188	39
Figure 226	Multiported CAs Connected to Single Subnet	1189	40
Figure 227	Multiported CAs Connected to Multiple Subnets	1190	41
Figure 228	Fault Tolerant Connections to Independent Fabrics	1190	42
Figure 229	Fault Tolerant Connection to a Single Fabrics	1191	
Figure 230	Multiported HCA with Direct Connections to TCAs	1191	
Figure 231	Multiple Single Ported CAs with an Embedded Switch	1194	

Figure 232	Automatic Path Migration State Machine (per QP)	1202	1
Figure 233	Generic I/O Node Model.....	1204	2
Figure 234	Host Environment - Split Responsibility	1205	3
Figure 235	Target Environment - TCA Responsibility	1206	4
Figure 236	Reference of Routers Connecting Subnets.....	1228	5
Figure 237	Single System & Direct Attached I/O.....	1290	6
Figure 238	Multiple Systems	1291	7
Figure 239	Architectural Model for a Managed I/O Unit	1292	8
Figure 240	I/O Partitions.....	1303	9
Figure 241	Schematic of IBA Console Abstraction.....	1311	10
Figure 242	CSP Server Session State Diagram.....	1316	11
Figure 243	CSP Client Session State Diagram	1317	12
Figure 244	Protocol Flow Diagram	1317	13
Figure 245	Version Negotiation Diagram	1323	14
Figure 246	Suspend Example	1330	15
Figure 247	Resume Reject.....	1331	16
Figure 248	Handoff Example.....	1332	17
Figure 249	Ping Diagrams.....	1336	18
Figure 250	Session Termination by Server	1338	19
Figure 251	Session Termination by Client.....	1338	20
Figure 252	Typical Service Resolution for Host-based Services.....	1344	21
Figure 253	Typical Service Resolution for I/O Services	1345	22
Figure 254	General Service ID Structure	1349	23
Figure 255	IBTA Assigned Service IDs	1349	24
Figure 256	IETF Service IDs	1351	25
Figure 257	OS Administered Service IDs.....	1351	26
Figure 258	Externally Administrated Service IDs	1354	27
Figure 259	Class/Subclass fields for External Protocols	1358	28
Figure 260	SDP Relation to IBA Architecture Layers	1365	29
Figure 261	Base Sockets Direct Header (BSDH)	1369	30
Figure 262	Hello Header	1373	31
Figure 263	HelloAck Header	1376	32
Figure 264	SrcAvail Header (SrcAH).....	1379	33
Figure 265	SinkAvail Header (SinkAH)	1380	34
Figure 266	RdmaWrCompl Header (RWCH)	1381	35
Figure 267	RdmaRdCompl Header (RRCH)	1382	36
Figure 268	ModeChange Header (MCH)	1383	37
Figure 269	ChRcvBuf Header (CRBH).....	1384	38
Figure 270	ChRcvBufAck Header (CRBAH)	1385	39
Figure 271	SuspComm Header (SuspCH)	1385	40
Figure 272	Ladder Diagram for BCopy Mechanism	1396	41
Figure 273	Ladder Diagram for Read Zcopy Mechanism.....	1400	42
Figure 274	Ladder Diagram for Write Zcopy Mechanism	1403	
Figure 275	Ladder Diagram of Transaction Mechanism	1404	
Figure 276	Mode State Machine	1421	
Figure 277	Data Source Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode	1426	
Figure 278	Data Sink Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode.....	1427	
Figure 279	Booting Framework	1442	

Figure 280	IB I/O Boot Model	1444	1
Figure 281	LAN Network Boot Model	1446	2
Figure 282	IB Network Boot Model.....	1447	3
Figure 283	BootManager/BtA Relationship	1451	4
Figure 284	Boot Management MAD	1454	5
Figure 285	Reboot Time Line	1504	6
Figure 286	Boot Management Trap Flow	1505	7
Figure 287	Boot Management Notice Flow	1506	8
Figure 288	Configuring the Boot Platform	1526	9
Figure 289	RomRepository Access	1528	10
Figure 290	Platform Boot Example.....	1529	11
Figure 291	Boot Platform to IOU Communication - Access OS Loader	1530	12
Figure 292	Ladder Diagram of Image Descriptor Read Operation.....	1548	13
Figure 293	Ladder Diagram of Image Read Operation	1550	14
Figure 294	Handles Involved in an Image Add Operation	1553	15
Figure 295	Handles Involved in an Image Update in Non Retain Mode.....	1556	16
Figure 296	Handles Involved in an Image Update in Retain Mode	1557	17
Figure 297	Ladder Diagram of Image Write operation	1562	18
Figure 298	Booting Framework	1571	19
Figure 299	BIS Application Model	1573	20
Figure 300	BIS Components & Interfaces	1577	21
Figure 301	BIS MAD Structure	1580	22
Figure 302	Query Operation.....	1583	23
Figure 303	Configuration Management Usage Model.....	1610	24
Figure 304	Configuration Management Functions and Relationships	1611	25
Figure 305	Multiple Configuration Group Example.....	1614	26
Figure 306	Standby Configuration Manager Example.....	1615	27
Figure 307	Distributed Configuration Manager Example.....	1615	28
Figure 308	Configuration Management Operational Model.....	1616	29
Figure 309	Trap Subscription	1627	30
Figure 310	Trap Forwarding	1627	31
Figure 311	IOU Initiated Removal Process	1631	32
Figure 312	SW Initiated Removal Process.....	1631	33
Figure 313	Diagnostic Usage Model	1635	34
Figure 314	Event Subscription	1641	35
Figure 315	Event Notification for Resource Allocation Change.....	1644	36
Figure 316	DevAdm MAD Format	1647	37
Figure 317	Device Management Usage Model	1677	38
Figure 318	Model for an I/O Unit	1682	39
Figure 319	I/O Components and Relationships.....	1684	40
Figure 320	Data Hierarchy	1687	41
Figure 321	Device Assignment Attributes	1688	42
Figure 322	Physical Management Attributes.....	1692	
Figure 323	Example of IOU with Permanent IOCs.....	1693	
Figure 324	Example of IOU with Removable Modules.....	1694	
Figure 325	Diagnostic Usage Model	1695	
Figure 326	Device Management MAD Format	1697	
Figure 327	Service Object Tuple	1758	

Figure 328	Allocating Resource Pools	1774	1
Figure 329	Connection Approval Decision Tree	1778	2
Figure 330	Consuming QPs from Resource Pools.....	1780	3
Figure 331	Graceful Removal State Diagram.....	1789	4
Figure 332	Fabric Congestion	1800	5
Figure 333	Congestion Notification packet format.....	1815	6
Figure 334	Congestion Control MAD format	1816	7
Figure 335	QoS Management Model	1866	8
Figure 336	Equipment Rack	1888	9
Figure 337	Flat topology view.....	1889	10
Figure 338	Physical hierarchy view	1889	11
Figure 339	Hierarchy Template File XML Schema.....	1903	12
Figure 340	Generic Physical Hierarchy Template	1905	13
Figure 341	Physical hierarchy view	1906	14
Figure 342	Generic Port Hierarchy Template	1909	15
Figure 343	RoCE Packet Format	1913	16
Figure 344	InfiniBand and RoCE Protocol Stacks	1929	17
Figure 345	RoCE Packet Format	1929	18
Figure 346	RoCEv2 and RoCE Frame Format Differences	1930	19
Figure 347	RoCEv2 Protocol Stack.....	1931	20
Figure 348	RoCEv2 Packet Format.....	1931	21
Figure 349	RoCEv2 CNP Format	1948	22
			23
			24
			25
			26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1	Revision History	2	5
Table 2	Service Types	118	6
Table 3	Multicast Address Scope	163	7
Table 4	Local Route Header Fields.....	171	8
Table 5	Global Route Header Fields	172	9
Table 6	Base Transport Header Fields.....	173	10
Table 7	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header Fields.....	174	11
Table 8	Datagram Extended Transport Header Fields.....	175	12
Table 9	RDMA Extended Transport Header Fields	175	13
Table 10	Atomic Extended Transport Header Fields.....	176	14
Table 11	XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)	176	15
Table 12	ACK Extended Transport Header Fields	177	16
Table 13	Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header Fields	177	17
Table 14	Immediate Data Extended Transport Header (ImmDt)	178	18
Table 15	Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH)	178	19
Table 16	Key Virtual Lane Characteristics	200	20
Table 17	VL Numbering and Inter-operability.....	201	21
Table 18	Processing of Link Packets	203	22
Table 19	SLtoVLMappingTable Behavior	206	23
Table 20	Arbitration Rules for Devices with only one data VL.....	208	24
Table 21	Link Next Header Definition.....	216	25
Table 22	Packet Size	217	26
Table 23	LRH	223	27
Table 24	BTH	223	28
Table 25	RETH.....	224	29
Table 26	Payload	224	30
Table 27	Local Packet Byte Stream (before ICRC and VCRC)	225	31
Table 28	Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation	225	32
Table 29	Local Packet Byte Stream	226	33
Table 30	LRH	227	34
Table 31	GRH	227	35
Table 32	Global Packet Byte Stream (before ICRC and VCRC).....	228	36
Table 33	Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation	229	37
Table 34	Global Packet Byte Stream	230	38
Table 35	Link Packet.....	231	39
Table 36	Link Packet Byte Stream	231	40
Table 37	Comparison of IBA Transport Service Types.....	255	41
Table 38	OpCode field	257	42
Table 39	Transport Functions Supported for Specific Transport Services	268	

Table 40	Verification of Destination QP	296	1
Table 41	Verification of EE Context.....	301	2
Table 42	Requester's Calculation of Next PSN.....	314	3
Table 43	Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences	317	4
Table 44	Summary: Responder Actions for Duplicate PSNs	324	5
Table 45	Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences	326	6
Table 46	AETH Syndrome Field.....	348	7
Table 47	NAK Codes.....	349	8
Table 48	Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field	354	9
Table 49	Reliable Connected Service Characteristics	366	10
Table 50	End-to-End Flow Control Credit Encoding	378	11
Table 51	Reliable Datagram QP characteristics.....	383	12
Table 52	Summary of Unreliable Connection Service Characteristics	406	13
Table 53	Requester's Calculation of Next PSN.....	407	14
Table 54	Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences	408	15
Table 55	Summary: Valid OpCode Sequences	413	16
Table 56	Unreliable Datagram QP characteristics	417	17
Table 57	Maximum Raw Datagram Packet Payload.....	422	18
Table 58	Software Error Types Detected by Transport Layer	424	19
Table 59	Requester Side Error Behavior	428	20
Table 60	Summary of Requester Fault Behavior Classes	430	21
Table 61	Responder Error Behavior Summary	436	22
Table 62	Summary of Responder Fault Class Behaviors	439	23
Table 63	Packet Fields and Parameters by Service	450	24
Table 64	Connection Parameters by Transport Service.....	453	25
Table 65	Packet Fields Validation Source by Service	455	26
Table 66	Inter Packet Delay	458	27
Table 67	Packet Fields, Queue Parameters, and their Sources	480	28
Table 68	Legend for Table 67	482	29
Table 69	Memory Region States Summary	505	30
Table 70	Memory Region State Transitions	505	31
Table 71	Non-Shared Memory Regions Invalidation and Fast-Registration Rules	520	32
Table 72	Type 1 Memory Windows States Summary	526	33
Table 73	Type 2 Memory Windows States Summary	526	34
Table 74	Type 2 Memory Windows State Transitions	527	35
Table 75	Post Send Bind WR Rules	533	36
Table 76	Type 2 Memory Window Invalidation Rules	533	37
Table 77	Type 2 Memory Window Access Rules	533	38
Table 78	Memory Windows Invalidation Rules	534	39
Table 79	Work Request Operation Ordering	550	40
Table 80	Ordering Rules Key	551	41
Table 81	Completion Error Handling for RC Send Queues.....	565	42
Table 82	Completion Error Handling for RC Receive Queues	566	
Table 83	Completion Error Handling for RD Send Queues.....	567	

Table 84	Completion Error Handling for RD Receive Queues	569	1
Table 85	Completion Error Handling for UC Send Queues.....	571	2
Table 86	Completion Error Handling for UC Receive Queues	571	3
Table 87	Completion Error Handling for UD Send Queues.....	572	4
Table 88	Completion Error Handling for UD Receive Queues	572	5
Table 89	Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Send Queues.....	573	6
Table 90	Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Receive Queues	574	7
Table 91	Completion Error Handling for XRC Initiator QPs	575	8
Table 92	Completion Error Handling for XRC SRQs.....	576	9
Table 93	Verbs Level Behavior for Requester Side Errors.....	577	10
Table 94	Verbs Level Behavior for Responder Side Errors.....	579	11
Table 95	Verb Classes	585	12
Table 96	QP State Transition Properties	611	13
Table 97	XRC Target QP State Transition Properties	625	14
Table 98	EE Context State Transition Properties	637	15
Table 99	Operation Type Matrix	664	16
Table 100	Work Request Modifier Matrix	666	17
Table 101	Completion Error Types for Send Queues.....	676	18
Table 102	Completion Error Types for RQs or SRQs.....	677	19
Table 103	Datagram addressing information	679	20
Table 104	List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers	696	21
Table 105	List of XRC Verbs and Optional Modifiers	705	22
Table 106	REQ Message Contents.....	717	23
Table 107	MRA Message Contents.....	720	24
Table 108	REJ Message Contents.....	721	25
Table 109	Example REJ Message	722	26
Table 110	REP Message Contents	727	27
Table 111	RTU Message Contents	728	28
Table 112	DREQ Message Contents	728	29
Table 113	DREP Message Contents.....	729	30
Table 114	Message Field Origins.....	729	31
Table 115	LAP Message Contents.....	741	32
Table 116	APR Message Contents	742	33
Table 117	SAP Message Contents	744	34
Table 118	SPR Message Contents	745	35
Table 119	SIDR_REQ Message Contents	769	36
Table 120	SIDR REP Message Contents.....	770	37
Table 121	Common MAD Fields	782	38
Table 122	Management Class Values.....	784	39
Table 123	Common Management Methods	786	40
Table 124	MAD Common Status Field Bit Values	795	41
Table 125	AdditionalStatus Ranges	796	42
Table 126	IBA Standard Error Ranges in AdditionalStatus	796	
Table 127	Common MAD Status in AdditionalStatus	796	

Table 128	Attributes Common to Multiple Classes	798	1
Table 129	ClassPortInfo	800	2
Table 130	Notice	802	3
Table 131	InformInfo	805	4
Table 132	KeyInfo	807	5
Table 133	Key Protection Scope	808	6
Table 134	Key Check	808	7
Table 135	Protection Levels	809	8
Table 136	Traps	810	9
Table 137	Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap	810	10
Table 138	Setting Report(Notice) MAD Fields	817	11
Table 139	Management Interfaces Summary	823	12
Table 140	SM MAD Sources and Destinations	826	13
Table 141	RMPP Header Fields	844	14
Table 142	RMPPStatus Codes	845	15
Table 143	SMP Fields (LID Routed)	867	16
Table 144	SMP Fields (Directed Route)	868	17
Table 145	Subnet Management Methods	877	18
Table 146	Protection Levels	878	19
Table 147	Subnet Management Attributes (Summary)	882	20
Table 148	Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map	885	21
Table 149	Traps	887	22
Table 150	Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67	889	23
Table 151	Notice DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData For Traps 68 and 69	889	24
Table 152	Notice DataDetails For Trap 128	889	25
Table 153	Notice DataDetails For Traps 129, 130 and 131	890	26
Table 154	Notice DataDetails For Trap 144	890	27
Table 155	Notice DataDetails For Trap 145	891	28
Table 156	Notice DataDetails For Trap 256	891	29
Table 157	Notice DataDetails For Traps 257 and 258	892	30
Table 158	Notice DataDetails For Trap 259	893	31
Table 159	NodeDescription	894	32
Table 160	NodeInfo	894	33
Table 161	SwitchInfo	895	34
Table 162	GUIDInfo	898	35
Table 163	GUID Block Element	898	36
Table 164	PortInfo	899	37
Table 165	Standard Encoding of DiagCode Bits 3-0	917	38
Table 166	P_KeyTable	918	39
Table 167	P_Key Block Element	918	40
Table 168	SLtoVLMappingTable	920	41
Table 169	VLArbitrationTable	921	42
Table 170	VL/Weight Block Element	921	
Table 171	LinearForwardingTable	922	

Table 172	Port Block Element.....	922	1
Table 173	RandomForwardingTable	923	2
Table 174	LID/Port Block Element	923	3
Table 175	MulticastForwardingTable.....	924	4
Table 176	PortMask Block Element	924	5
Table 177	SMInfo	925	6
Table 178	VendorDiag.....	925	7
Table 179	LedInfo	927	8
Table 180	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable	928	9
Table 181	VendorSpecificMadsTable	930	10
Table 182	VendorSpecificMadsTableEntry.....	930	11
Table 183	CableInfo	933	12
Table 184	PortInfoExtended.....	934	13
Table 185	SwitchPortStateTable	937	14
Table 186	PortState Block Element	937	15
Table 187	EnhQoSArbiterInfo	937	16
Table 188	VLGroupsArbiterConfig	938	17
Table 189	BandwidthPerVLGroup element.....	940	18
Table 190	VLArbiterConfig	941	19
Table 191	BandwidthPerVL element.....	942	20
Table 192	EnhSLArbiter	942	21
Table 193	BandwidthPerSL element.....	943	22
Table 194	Status Precedence	944	23
Table 195	Version Errors in SMPs	944	24
Table 196	Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map Errors	945	25
Table 197	SMP AttributeModifier Errors	947	26
Table 198	Notice Attribute Component Errors.....	951	27
Table 199	NodeDescription Attribute Component Errors	951	28
Table 200	NodeInfo Attribute Component Errors	951	29
Table 201	SwitchInfo Attribute Component Errors	951	30
Table 202	GUIDInfo Attribute Component Errors.....	951	31
Table 203	PortInfo (CA/Router/Switch Port0) Attribute Component Errors	952	32
Table 204	PortInfo (Switch External Port) Attribute Component Errors	954	33
Table 205	P_Key Block Element in P_KeyTable Attribute Component Errors	956	34
Table 206	SLtoVLMappingTable Attribute Component Errors.....	956	35
Table 207	VLArbitrationTable Attribute Component Errors	957	36
Table 208	LinearForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors	957	37
Table 209	RandomForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors.....	958	38
Table 210	Multicast ForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors	958	39
Table 211	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable Attribute Component Errors.....	958	40
Table 212	VendorSpecificMadsTable Attribute Component Errors	958	41
Table 213	SMInfo Attribute Component Errors	958	42
Table 214	VendorDiag Attribute Component Errors	958	
Table 215	LedInfo Attribute Component Errors	958	

Table 216	Vendor Specific Attribute Component Errors	958	1
Table 217	CableInfo Attribute Component Errors	959	2
Table 218	PortInfoExtended Attribute Component Errors	959	3
Table 219	PortState Block Element in SwitchPortStateTable Component Errors	959	4
Table 220	EnhQoSArbiterInfo attribute component errors	960	5
Table 221	EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component.....	960	6
Table 222	EnhSLArbiter attribute component errors.....	965	7
Table 223	SM Class Additional Status for attribute errors.....	968	8
Table 224	SM Class Additional Status for AttributeModifier errors.....	970	9
Table 225	SM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors	972	10
Table 226	SM Control Packets.....	992	11
Table 227	Initialization.....	998	12
Table 228	PortInfo:InitType Interpretations	1006	13
Table 229	Subnet Administration Fields	1017	14
Table 230	SA-Specific Optional Capabilities	1019	15
Table 231	Subnet Administration Methods.....	1020	16
Table 232	SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings	1021	17
Table 233	Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary).....	1023	18
Table 234	Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map	1025	19
Table 235	NodeRecord	1027	20
Table 236	PortInfoRecord	1027	21
Table 237	SLtoVLMappingTableRecord.....	1029	22
Table 238	SwitchInfoRecord	1029	23
Table 239	LinearForwardingTableRecord	1029	24
Table 240	RandomForwardingTableRecord.....	1030	25
Table 241	MulticastForwardingTableRecord	1030	26
Table 242	VLArbitrationTableRecord	1030	27
Table 243	SMInfoRecord	1031	28
Table 244	P_KeyTableRecord.....	1031	29
Table 245	InformInfoRecord.....	1031	30
Table 246	LinkRecord	1032	31
Table 247	ServiceRecord.....	1033	32
Table 248	ServiceAssociationRecord	1037	33
Table 249	PathRecord	1038	34
Table 250	Example PathRecord Request MAD Header Fields.....	1045	35
Table 251	Example PathRecord Request Data	1046	36
Table 252	Example PathRecord Response MAD Header Fields.....	1047	37
Table 253	Example PathRecord Response Data.....	1048	38
Table 254	MCMemberRecord	1050	39
Table 255	GuidInfoRecord	1059	40
Table 256	TraceRecord.....	1060	41
Table 257	MultiPathRecord.....	1061	42
Table 258	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord.....	1065	
Table 259	CableInfoRecord	1065	

Table 260	PortInfoExtendedRecord	1066
Table 261	EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord.....	1066
Table 262	EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord	1066
Table 263	EnhVLArbiterRecord	1067
Table 264	EnhSLArbiterRecord	1067
Table 265	SubnAdmGetTable query for all NodeRecords with a specific NodeType.....	1074
Table 266	SubnAdmGet() query for a Particular NodeRecord.....	1076
Table 267	Performance Management MAD Fields	1080
Table 268	Performance Management Status Field.....	1081
Table 269	Performance Management Methods	1081
Table 270	Mandatory Performance Management Attributes	1082
Table 271	Mandatory Performance Management Attribute / Method Map.....	1082
Table 272	Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.....	1082
Table 273	Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.....	1083
Table 274	PortSamplesControl	1085
Table 275	CounterSelect Values	1091
Table 276	PortSamplesResult.....	1097
Table 277	PortCounters	1098
Table 278	Optional Performance Management Attributes	1104
Table 279	Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map	1106
Table 280	PortRcvErrorDetails.....	1107
Table 281	PortXmitDiscardDetails	1108
Table 282	PortOpRcvCounters	1109
Table 283	PortFlowCtlCounters	1110
Table 284	PortVLOpPackets.....	1111
Table 285	PortVLOpData	1112
Table 286	PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	1114
Table 287	PortVLXmitWaitCounters.....	1115
Table 288	SwPortVLCongestion	1117
Table 289	PortSamplesResultExtended	1119
Table 290	PortCountersExtended	1120
Table 291	PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	1125
Table 292	Mandatory PM Attribute Status.....	1132
Table 293	Valid Mandatory PM Method/Attribute Combinations	1132
Table 294	PM AttributeModifier Errors	1133
Table 295	PerformanceSet(ClassPortInfo) Component Errors	1133
Table 296	PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl) Component Errors	1133
Table 297	PerformanceGet(PortSamplesControl) Component Errors	1134
Table 298	PerformanceGet/PerformanceSet(PortCounters) Component Errors	1134
Table 299	Optional PM Attribute Status	1134
Table 300	Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations.....	1135
Table 301	PM AttributeModifier Errors	1135
Table 302	PerformanceSet(PortRcvErrorDetails) Component Errors.....	1136
Table 303	PerformanceSet(PortXmitDiscardDetails) Component Errors.....	1136

Table 304	PerformanceSet(PortOpRcvCounters) Component Errors	1136	1
Table 305	PerformanceSet(PortFlowCtlCounters) Component Errors	1137	1
Table 306	PerformanceSet(PortVLOpPackets) Component Errors	1137	2
Table 307	PerformanceSet(PortVLOpData) Component Errors	1137	3
Table 308	PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors) Component Errors	1138	4
Table 309	PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitWaitCounters) Component Errors	1138	5
Table 310	PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors) Component Errors	1138	6
Table 311	PerformanceSet(PortSamplesResultExtended) Component Errors.....	1138	7
Table 312	PerformanceSet(PortCountersExtended) Component Errors	1138	8
Table 313	PerformanceSet(PortExtendedSpeedsCounters) Component Errors	1139	9
Table 314	PerformanceGet Component Errors for all optional attributes with PortSelect component. 1139	10	10
Table 315	PM Class AdditionalStatus for AttributeModifier errors.....	1139	11
Table 316	PM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors	1140	12
Table 317	Baseboard Management MAD Fields	1143	13
Table 318	Baseboard Management Status Field	1144	14
Table 319	Baseboard Management Methods	1144	15
Table 320	Baseboard Management Attributes	1146	16
Table 321	Baseboard Management Attribute / Method Map	1147	17
Table 322	Baseboard Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1147	18
Table 323	Baseboard Management Traps	1148	19
Table 324	Notice DataDetails For Trap 259	1148	20
Table 325	Notice DataDetails For Trap 260	1149	21
Table 326	BKeyInfo.....	1149	22
Table 327	B_Key Protection Scope	1151	23
Table 328	B_Key Check.....	1151	24
Table 329	Protection Levels.....	1153	25
Table 330	Device Management MAD Fields.....	1155	26
Table 331	Device Management Status Field	1155	27
Table 332	Device Management Methods.....	1156	28
Table 333	Device Management Attributes	1157	29
Table 334	Device Management Attribute / Method Map	1158	30
Table 335	Device Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1159	31
Table 336	Device Management Traps	1159	32
Table 337	Notice DataDetails For Trap 514	1159	33
Table 338	IOUnitInfo	1160	34
Table 339	IOControllerProfile	1160	35
Table 340	ServiceEntries	1163	36
Table 341	DiagnosticTimeout.....	1163	37
Table 342	PrepareToTest	1163	38
Table 343	TestDeviceOnce	1163	39
Table 344	TestDeviceLoop.....	1164	40
Table 345	DiagCode	1164	41
Table 346	SNMP Tunneling MAD Fields	1167	42

Table 347	SNMP Tunneling Status Field.....	1167	1
Table 348	SNMP Tunneling Methods.....	1168	2
Table 349	SNMP Tunneling Attributes.....	1168	3
Table 350	SNMP Tunneling Attribute / Method Map	1168	4
Table 351	SNMP Tunneling ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.....	1169	5
Table 352	PduInfo	1169	6
Table 353	Vendor MAD Fields (Classes 0x09-0x0F)	1173	7
Table 354	Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key (Classes 0x09-0x0F)	1174	8
Table 355	Vendor MAD Fields (Classes 0x30-0x4F)	1175	9
Table 356	Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key (Classes 0x30-0x4F)	1176	10
Table 357	Vendor Status Field	1176	11
Table 358	Vendor Class Methods	1177	12
Table 359	Vendor Class Attributes	1177	13
Table 360	Vendor Attribute / Method Map	1178	14
Table 361	Vendor ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1178	15
Table 362	Application MAD Fields	1179	16
Table 363	Application MAD with App_Key Fields	1180	17
Table 364	Application Status Field.....	1180	18
Table 365	Application Class Methods	1181	19
Table 366	Application Class Attributes	1181	20
Table 367	Application Attribute / Method Map	1182	21
Table 368	Application ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1182	22
Table 369	Communication Management MAD Fields	1183	23
Table 370	Communication Management Status Field	1183	24
Table 371	Communication Management Methods.....	1184	25
Table 372	Communication Management Attributes	1184	26
Table 373	Communication Management Attribute / Method Map	1185	27
Table 374	Communication Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1186	28
Table 375	Port Attributes & Functions.....	1192	29
Table 376	Channel Adapter Attributes.....	1194	30
Table 377	Static Rate Control IPD Values.....	1198	31
Table 378	Volume 1 Compliance Categories	1242	32
Table 379	Volume 1 Compliance Qualifiers	1243	33
Table 380	ASCII String Representations of DevMgt Components.....	1294	34
Table 381	Compatibility Strings.....	1294	35
Table 382	Console Protocol Messages.....	1315	36
Table 383	Console Protocol Error Actions	1318	37
Table 384	ErrorReport.....	1318	38
Table 385	ConsoleDeviceProfile	1319	39
Table 386	ConsoleCapabilityRecord.....	1320	40
Table 387	ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest.....	1322	41
Table 388	ConsoleDeviceProfileReply	1323	42
Table 389	ConsoleDeviceProfileReject	1324	
Table 390	SessionInitRequest	1325	

Table 391	SessionInitAck.....	1325	1
Table 392	SessionInitNAK	1326	2
Table 393	ConsoleDataOut.....	1327	3
Table 394	ConsoleDataIn.....	1327	4
Table 395	SessionSuspendRequest.....	1333	5
Table 396	SessionSuspendNAK	1333	6
Table 397	SessionSuspendAck	1334	7
Table 398	SessionResumeRequest.....	1334	8
Table 399	SessionResumeAck	1335	9
Table 400	SessionResumeNAK.....	1335	10
Table 401	PingRequest.....	1336	11
Table 402	PingResponse	1336	12
Table 403	SessionEndRequest.....	1337	13
Table 404	SessionTerminated Message	1337	14
Table 405	Service ID Categories and Characteristics.....	1347	15
Table 406	AGN Codes	1349	16
Table 407	IBTA Assigned Service IDs	1350	17
Table 408	I/O Category	1358	18
Table 409	IBTA Defined Protocols.....	1358	19
Table 410	IBTA Service Names.....	1359	20
Table 411	Application Specific Management Class Codes	1360	21
Table 412	Privileged Q_Keys.....	1361	22
Table 413	SDP Message Definitions.....	1370	23
Table 414	BSDH Flags.....	1371	24
Table 415	Capabilities	1375	25
Table 416	Capabilities	1378	26
Table 417	MCH Mode Values.....	1383	27
Table 418	Mode Characteristics.....	1418	28
Table 419	Summary of Permitted Actions By Mode Pair	1418	29
Table 420	Mode Master	1422	30
Table 421	Data Source Mode Transition Events	1428	31
Table 422	Data Sink Mode Transition Events	1428	32
Table 423	Boot Management MAD Components.....	1455	33
Table 424	Boot Management Methods	1457	34
Table 425	BtA Method/Attribute Combinations	1458	35
Table 426	BtA Capability Requirements.....	1459	36
Table 427	BootManager Method/Attribute Combinations	1461	37
Table 428	Boot Management Attribute Summary	1461	38
Table 429	Boot Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1463	39
Table 430	BtM_KeyInfo Attribute.....	1463	40
Table 431	BtM_Key Check.....	1465	41
Table 432	PlatformBootInfo Attribute	1470	42
Table 433	PlatformInfo Elements	1480	
Table 434	PortBootInfo Attribute	1489	

Table 435	RomRepositoryLocatorRecord Attribute	1495	1
Table 436	ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute	1496	2
Table 437	OsLocatorRecord Attribute	1497	3
Table 438	Protocol Component Bit Definitions	1499	4
Table 439	NodeReboot Attribute	1502	5
Table 440	Notice Attribute	1507	6
Table 441	Boot Management Traps	1508	7
Table 442	Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation	1509	8
Table 443	Notice Details for Trap 0x0100 - ChangeReport	1510	9
Table 444	Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport	1511	10
Table 445	Notice Details for Trap 0x0007 - Heartbeat	1513	11
Table 446	Privileged Traps	1515	12
Table 447	InformInfo	1519	13
Table 448	General AdditionalInfo Element Definitions	1531	14
Table 449	SRP AdditionalInfo Elements	1531	15
Table 450	Console AdditionalInfo Elements	1533	16
Table 451	ROM Repository Operation Codes	1536	17
Table 452	RepositoryInfoRequest Message	1538	18
Table 453	RepositoryInfoResponse Message	1538	19
Table 454	Transaction Status Codes for All Transactions	1540	20
Table 455	Status Code Matrix	1542	21
Table 456	ROM Repository IDs	1543	22
Table 457	Image Descriptor Format	1544	23
Table 458	IBTA Boot Image Types	1545	24
Table 459	DescriptorReadRequest message	1547	25
Table 460	DescriptorReadResponse Message	1547	26
Table 461	ImageReadRequest Message	1549	27
Table 462	ImageReadResponse Message	1550	28
Table 463	ImageAddRequest Message	1553	29
Table 464	ImageAddResponse Message	1554	30
Table 465	ImageUpdateRequest Message	1557	31
Table 466	ImageUpdateResponse Message	1559	32
Table 467	ImageWriteRequest Message	1560	33
Table 468	ImageWriteResponse Message	1560	34
Table 469	ImageDeleteRequest Message	1563	35
Table 470	ImageDeleteResponse Message	1563	36
Table 471	Booting Compliance Categories/Qualifiers	1564	37
Table 472	BIS MAD Components	1580	38
Table 473	BIS MAD Status Field Components	1581	39
Table 474	BIS Methods	1582	40
Table 475	BIS Attributes	1584	41
Table 476	BIS Attribute / Method Map	1585	42
Table 477	BootQueryInfo Attribute	1585	
Table 478	PlatformInfo Elements	1591	

Table 479	PlatformBootInfo Attribute	1592	1
Table 480	PortBootInfo Attribute	1593	2
Table 481	RomRepositoryLocatorRecord Attribute	1594	3
Table 482	ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute	1595	4
Table 483	OsLocatorRecord Attribute	1596	5
Table 484	Protocol Component Bit Definitions	1598	6
Table 485	Privileged Traps	1626	7
Table 486	Device Administration MAD Fields	1647	8
Table 487	DevAdm MAD Status Field Values	1648	9
Table 488	DevAdm Methods	1649	10
Table 489	DevAdm Attributes	1652	11
Table 490	DevAdm Attribute / Method Map	1653	12
Table 491	Device Administration ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1654	13
Table 492	Notice Component Values	1655	14
Table 493	Generic DevAdm Events	1655	15
Table 494	Configuration Change Notice DataDetails	1656	16
Table 495	IOC On-line Notice DataDetails	1656	17
Table 496	IOC Off-line Notice DataDetails	1656	18
Table 497	Resource Allocation Change Notice DataDetails	1657	19
Table 498	Heartbeat Notice DataDetails	1657	20
Table 499	DevAdm LID Range Interpretation	1658	21
Table 500	LogIn Attribute	1659	22
Table 501	Context Change	1660	23
Table 502	S_KeyInfo Attribute	1662	24
Table 503	C_KeyInfo Attribute	1663	25
Table 504	RemovalReq Attribute	1664	26
Table 505	Removal/Diagnostic/Reset Priority	1666	27
Table 506	DiagNotice Attribute	1666	28
Table 507	ResetNotice Attribute	1668	29
Table 508	Configuration Management Compliance Categories/Qualifiers	1670	30
Table 509	Device Management MAD Fields	1698	31
Table 510	Class Version	1699	32
Table 511	DevMgt Backward Compatibility	1701	33
Table 512	Device Management Status Field	1702	34
Table 513	Device Management Methods	1706	35
Table 514	Device Management Attributes	1707	36
Table 515	DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map	1709	37
Table 516	DM Attribute / Method Map	1710	38
Table 517	Device Management Agent ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1711	39
Table 518	Device Manager ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1712	40
Table 519	Notices for Device Management Traps	1714	41
Table 520	Notice 0x0000 DataDetails [MgrKey Violation]	1715	42
Table 521	Notice 0x0001 DataDetails [SupvKey Violation]	1716	
Table 522	Notice 0x0002 DataDetails [Client Violation]	1717	

Table 523	Notice 0x0003 DataDetails [DiagToken Violation]	1718	1
Table 524	Notice 0x0007 DataDetails [Heartbeat]	1719	2
Table 525	Notice 0x0008 DataDetails [StatusReport]	1719	3
Table 526	Notice 0x0010 DataDetails [IO Controller Change]	1720	4
Table 527	Notice 0x0011 DataDetails [ServiceRecord Change]	1721	5
Table 528	Notice 0x0018 DataDetails [Slot Status Change]	1722	6
Table 529	Notice 0x0020 DataDetails [IomRemoval]	1722	7
Table 530	Notice 0x0801 DataDetails [DiagSessionState]	1723	8
Table 531	Notice 0x0802 DataDetails [DiagSession Violation]	1723	9
Table 532	DAInfo Attribute	1725	10
Table 533	IOUnitInfo Attribute	1726	11
Table 534	IOControllerProfile	1729	12
Table 535	ServiceRecord Attribute	1732	13
Table 536	ProtocolRecord Attribute	1735	14
Table 537	SlotControlStatus Attribute	1738	15
Table 538	Reset Attribute	1740	16
Table 539	ProductInfo Attribute	1741	17
Table 540	ProductData Elements	1742	18
Table 541	KeyInfo Attribute	1743	19
Table 542	Manager_Key Check	1745	20
Table 543	IouResourceInfo Attribute	1749	21
Table 544	PlatformPoolRecord Attribute	1753	22
Table 545	ClientPoolRecord Attribute	1759	23
Table 546	KeyChange Attribute	1765	24
Table 547	DiagSession	1765	25
Table 548	DiagnosticTimeout	1769	26
Table 549	TestDeviceOnce	1770	27
Table 550	TestDeviceLoop	1771	28
Table 551	DiagCode	1772	29
Table 552	I/O Module Status LED	1789	30
Table 553	Blink Rate Definitions	1790	31
Table 554	Device Management Compliance Qualifiers	1792	32
Table 555	Base Transport Header	1814	33
Table 556	Congestion Control MAD Fields	1817	34
Table 557	CC_Key Protection Scope	1818	35
Table 558	CC_Key Check	1818	36
Table 559	Protection Levels	1819	37
Table 560	Congestion Control Methods	1820	38
Table 561	Congestion Control Attributes	1821	39
Table 562	Congestion Control Attribute / Method Map	1822	40
Table 563	Congestion Control ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask	1822	41
Table 564	Congestion Control Traps	1823	42
Table 565	Notice details for Trap 0x0000 CC_KeyViolation	1823	
Table 566	CongestionInfo	1824	

Table 567	CongestionKeyInfo	1824	1
Table 568	CongestionLog (switch)	1825	2
Table 569	CongestionLogEvent (switch)	1825	3
Table 570	CongestionLog (CA)	1826	4
Table 571	CongestionLogEvent (CA)	1826	5
Table 572	SwitchCongestionSetting	1827	6
Table 573	SwitchPortCongestionSetting Attribute	1829	7
Table 574	SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement	1830	8
Table 575	CACongestionSetting	1831	9
Table 576	CACongestionEntry	1832	10
Table 577	CongestionControlTable	1832	11
Table 578	CongestionControlTableEntry	1834	12
Table 579	TimeStamp	1834	13
Table 580	Addition to PortSamplesControl	1835	14
Table 581	Additional CounterSelect Values	1835	15
Table 582	Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes	1835	16
Table 583	Additional Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map	1836	17
Table 584	PortRcvConCtrl	1837	18
Table 585	PortSLRcvFECN	1838	19
Table 586	PortSLRcvBECN	1839	20
Table 587	PortXmitConCtrl	1841	21
Table 588	PortVLXmitTimeCong	1841	22
Table 589	Additional Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations	1843	23
Table 590	Additional PM AttributeModifier Errors	1844	24
Table 591	PerformanceSet(PortRcvConCtrl) Component Errors	1844	25
Table 592	PerformanceSet(PortSLRcvFECN) Component Errors	1844	26
Table 593	PerformanceSet(PortSLRcvBECN) Component Errors	1844	27
Table 594	PerformanceSet(PortXmitConCtrl) Component Errors	1845	28
Table 595	PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitTimeCong) Component Errors	1845	29
Table 596	IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format	1850	30
Table 597	RDMA IP CM Service IBTA Service ID Format	1852	31
Table 598	REJ ARI format	1854	32
Table 599	REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service	1854	33
Table 600	RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI	1855	34
Table 601	iSER Service ID Format	1858	35
Table 602	iSER CM REQ Message Private Data Format	1859	36
Table 603	iSER CM REP Message Private Data Format	1860	37
Table 604	Expanded iSER Header for Supporting Virtual Address	1861	38
Table 605	SA MAD Additional Class-Specific Status Encoding	1869	39
Table 606	PathRecord	1870	40
Table 607	QoSClass Component	1871	41
Table 608	MultiPathRecord	1872	42
Table 609	Addition to PortSamplesControl	1874	
Table 610	Additional CounterSelect Values	1874	

Table 611	Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes.....	1875
Table 612	Additional Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map	1876
Table 613	PortXmitDataSL.....	1876
Table 614	PortRcvDataSL.....	1878
Table 615	PortXmitDataSLExt	1879
Table 616	PortRcvDataSLExt	1881
Table 617	Additional Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations.....	1883
Table 618	Additional PM AttributeModifier Errors	1884
Table 619	PerformanceSet(PortXmitDataSL) Component Errors	1884
Table 620	PerformanceSet(PortRcvDataSL) Component Errors.....	1884
Table 621	PerformanceSet(PortXmitDataSLExt) Component Errors.....	1884
Table 622	PerformanceSet(PortRcvDataSLExt) Component Errors.....	1885
Table 623	HierarchyInfo Attribute	1895
Table 624	HierarchyInfo Attribute / Method Map Errors	1896
Table 625	HierarchyInfo AttributeModifier Errors	1897
Table 626	HierarchyInfo Component Errors.....	1897
Table 627	HierarchyInfoRecord	1898
Table 628	Physical HierarchyInfo GetResponse Example.....	1906
Table 629	Port HierarchyInfo GetResponse Example	1910
Table 630	Capability Mask bits available on VHCA and their origin.....	1959
Table 631	Virtualization Subnet Management Attributes (Summary).....	1964
Table 632	Trap types.....	1965
Table 633	Notice DataDetails for Trap 1144.....	1965
Table 634	Notice DataDetails for Traps 1257 and 1258	1967
Table 635	VirtualizationInfo	1968
Table 636	VPortInfo	1969
Table 637	VNodeInfo	1970
Table 638	VPortState	1971
Table 639	PortState Block Element	1971
Table 640	VNodeDescription	1972
Table 641	VPortGUIDInfo	1972
Table 642	VPortPartitionTable.....	1972
Table 643	Subnet Management Virtualization Attribute/Method Map Errors.....	1972
Table 644	Virtualization SMP AttributeModifier Errors	1973
Table 645	VirtualizationInfo Attribute Component Errors	1973
Table 646	VPortInfo Attribute Component Errors	1974
Table 647	VNodeInfo Attribute Component Errors	1974
Table 648	VNodeDescription Attribute Component Errors	1974
Table 649	VGUIDInfo Attribute Component Errors	1974
Table 650	P_Key Block Element in VPortPartitionTable Attribute Component Errors.....	1974
Table 651	VPortState Block Element in VPortState Attribute Component Errors	1975
Table 652	Additional Subnet Administration Attributes for Virtualization(Summary)	1976
Table 653	Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map	1977
Table 654	VirtualizationInfoRecord	1977

Table 655	VNodeRecord.....	1977	1
Table 656	VPortInfoRecord.....	1978	2
Table 657	VPortGUIDInfoRecord.....	1978	3
Table 658	VPortPartitionTableRecord	1978	4
Table 659	Performance Management Attributes for Virtualization (Summary)	1979	5
Table 660	Performance Management Virtualization Attribute / Method Map	1979	6
Table 661	Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.....	1979	7
Table 662	VPortCounters.....	1980	8
Table 663	PM Attribute Modifier Errors	1981	9
Table 664	PerformanceSet(VPortCounters) Component Errors	1981	10
			11
			12
			13
			14
			15
			16
			17
			18
			19
			20
			21
			22
			23
			24
			25
			26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

This is Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture specification. It is the first
in a series of documents that describe the architecture.

1.1 ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The following persons were instrumental in the development of this
volume of the InfiniBand Architecture specification:

Steering Committee Members

Co-Chairs:

Jim Pappas Barry Barnett

Members - past and present:

Jacqueline Balfour	Tom Bradicich	David Brean
Kobby Carmona	Kevin Deierling	Lloyd Dickman
Balint Fleischer	Albert Greenberg	Paul Grun
Dr. Alfred Hartmann	Yaron Haviv	David Heisey
Ranjit Henry	Ken Jansen	Skip Jones
Michael Krause	Dale Kaisner	Marina Lipshteyn
Nishant Lodha	Robert Lusinsky	Todd Matters
Tom Macdonald	Chet Mehta	Ed Miller
Mark Miller	Scott Misage	Alex Nicolson
John Pescatore	Jim Pinkerton	Marc Sultzbaugh
Pat Thaler	Martin Whittaker	Bob Zak

Technical Working Group Members

Co-Chairs:

Bill Magro Noam Bloch

Past Chairs:

Dwight Barron	Paul Grun	Jeff Hilland
Irv Robinson	David Wooten	

Members:

Dr. Alan Benner	Mark Bradley	Wolfgang Christl
David Craddock	Diego Crupnicoff	Rupert Dance
Dr. Alfred Hartmann	Dr. Ted Kim	Michael Krause
Bill Lynn	Ed Miller	Dr. Gregory F. Pfister
Thomas Sand	Greg Still	Ken Ward

Working Group Co-Chairs

Application Working Group (AWG):

Chair: Not Active

Past Chairs:			1
Dwight Barron	William Futral	Greg Pellegrino	2
Compliance and Interoperability Working Group (CIWG):			3
Chair:			4
Rupert Dance			5
Past Chairs:			6
Lenny Dingle	Neeraj Gupta	Donald Parker	7
Tuan Phamdo			8
ElectroMechanical Working Group (EWG):			9
Chair:			10
Alan Benner			11
			12
IBXoE:			13
Chair: Not Active			14
Past Chairs:			15
Paul Grun	Diego Crupnicoff		16
Link Working Group (LWG):			17
Chair:			18
Idan Burstein			19
Past Chairs:			20
Nir Arad	Daniel Cassiday	Ian Colloff	21
Freddy Gabbay	Benny Koren	Michael Krause	22
John Russo			23
			24
Management Working Group (MgtWG):			25
Chairs:			26
Lion Levi			27
Past Chairs:			28
David W. Abmayr	Brian Forbes	Jimmy Hill	29
Jeff Hilland	Dr. Pankaj Mehra	Dr. Gregory F. Pfister	30
Hal Rosenstock	William H. Swortwood	Dr. Mazin Yousif	31
Eitan Zahavi			32
Marketing Working Group (MWG):			33
Chair:			34
Bill Lee			35
Past Chairs:			36
Skip Jones	Kevin Judd	Jim Ryan	37
Ishan Sehgal	Brian Sparks	Shaun Walsh	38
			39
			40
			41
			42

1	
2	Software Working Group (SWG):
3	Chair:
4	John Walthour
5	
6	Past Chairs:
7	Ed Miller
8	Jim Pinkerton
9	Renato J. Recio
10	Thomas Sand
11	
12	Editor of Volume 1 Revision 1.3:
13	Rupert Dance
14	
15	Editor of Volume 1 Revision 1.4:
16	Rupert Dance
17	
18	
19	
20	
21	
22	
23	
24	
25	
26	
27	
28	
29	
30	
31	
32	
33	
34	
35	
36	
37	
38	
39	
40	
41	
42	

Contributors

David W. Abmayr	Jimmy Hill	Chris Szeto	1
Dr. Ramon Acosta	Jeff Hilland	Monika ten Bruggencate	2
Sesidhar Baddela	Michael Heumann	Pat Thaler	3
Dr. Alan Benner	Jenwei Hsieh	Saeki Toshiaki	4
Frank L. Berry	Christopher J. Jackson	Franco Travastino	5
Bruce Beukema	Jeff Jilg	Dono Van-Mierop	6
Suri Brahmaroutu	Dave Kasberg	Ken Ward	7
David M. Brean	Vivek Kashyap	Kurt Ware	8
Tom Brey	Dr. Ted Kim	Tom Webber	9
John Carrier	Dr. Hiro Kishimoto	Dong Wei	10
Daniel Cassiday	Mike Ko	Ted Wilcox	11
Norman Chou	Michael Krause	Jeff Young	12
Ian Colloff	Alan Langerman	Dr. Mazin Yousif	13
Joe Cowan	Lion Levi	Eitan Zahavi	14
David Craddock	James W. Livingston		15
Olivier Crémel	Venitha L. Manter		16
Diego Crupnicoff	Gunna Marripudi		17
Paul Culley	Dr. Pankaj Mehra		18
Roger Cummings	Charles Monia		19
George Dake	Jim Mott		20
Rupert Dance	Mark Myers		21
Ellen Deleganes	Neil MacLean		22
Kevin Deierling	Tarl Neustaedter		23
Chunlei Dong	Rahul Nim		24
Scott Feller	Shravan Pargal		25
Brian Forbes	Joe Pelissier		26
Dan Fowler	Greg Pellegrino		27
Giles Frazier	Dr. Gregory F. Pfister		28
Bill Futral	Jim Pinkerton		29
Dr. Freddy Gabbay	Vandana Rao		30
Narayanan Ganapathy	Renato J. Recio		31
David Garcia	Roger Ronald		32
Nimrod Gindi	William J. Rooney		33
Dror Goldenberg	Hal Rosenstock		34
Adam Goldman	Tom Ryle		35
Nancy J. Golio	Thomas Sand		36
Paul Grun	Hide Senta		37
James Hamrick	Michael Shinkarovsky		38
Dr. Alfred Hartmann	Cris Simpson		39
Yaron Haviv	William Strahm		40
Arel Hendel	William H. Swortwood		41
			42

1.2 INFINIBAND CONCEPTUAL OVERVIEW

The InfiniBand Architecture Specification describes a first order interconnect technology for interconnecting processor nodes and I/O nodes to form a system area network. The architecture is independent of the host operating system (OS) and processor platform.

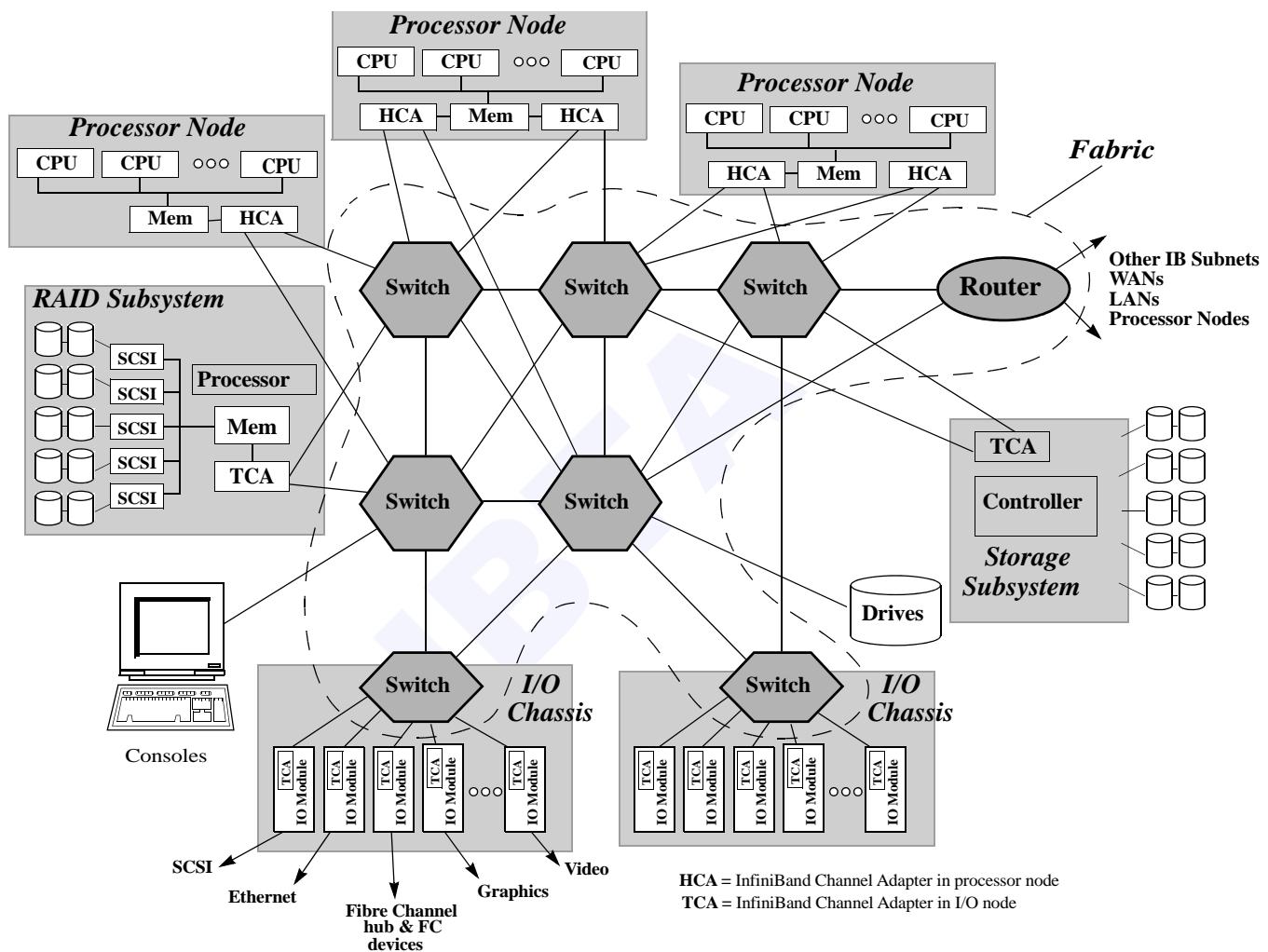


Figure 1 IBA System Area Network

1.2.1 THE PROBLEM

Existing interconnect technologies have failed to keep pace with computer evolution and the increased burden imposed on data servers, application processing, and enterprise computing created by the popular success of the Internet. High-end computing concepts such as clustering, fail-safe, and 24x7 availability demand greater capacity to move data between processing nodes as well as between a processor node and I/O devices. These trends require higher bandwidth and lower latencies, they are

pushing more functionality down to the I/O device, and they are demanding greater protection, higher isolation, deterministic behavior, and a higher quality of service than currently available.

1.2.2 FEATURES

InfiniBand Architecture (IBA) is designed around a point-to-point, switched I/O fabric, whereby end node devices (which can range from very inexpensive I/O devices like single chip SCSI or Ethernet adapters to very complex host computers) are interconnected by cascaded switch devices. The physical properties of the IBA interconnect support two predominant environments, with bandwidth, distance and cost optimizations appropriate for these environments:

- Module-to-module, as typified by computer systems that support I/O module add-in slots
- Chassis-to-chassis, as typified by interconnecting computers, external storage systems, and external LAN/WAN access devices (such as switches, hubs, and routers) in a data-center environment.

The IBA switched fabric provides a reliable transport mechanism where messages are enqueued for delivery between end nodes. In general, message content and meaning is not specified by InfiniBand Architecture, but rather is left to the designers of end node devices and the processes that are hosted on end node devices. IBA defines hardware transport protocols sufficient to support both reliable messaging (send/receive) and memory manipulation semantics (e.g. remote DMA) without software intervention in the data movement path. IBA defines protection and error detection mechanisms that permit IBA transactions to originate and terminate from either privileged kernel mode (to support legacy I/O and communication needs) or user space (to support emerging interprocess communication demands).

The IBA Specification also addresses the need for a rich manageability infrastructure to support interoperability between multiple generations of IBA components from many vendors over time. This infrastructure provides ease of use and consistent behavior for high volume, cost sensitive deployment environments. IBA also specifies interfaces for industry standard management that interoperate with enterprise class management tools for configuration, asset management, error reporting, performance metric collection, and topology management necessary for data center deployment of IBA.

1.2.3 BENEFITS

For all of the revolutionary aspects of IBA, the architecture has been carefully designed to minimize disruption of prevailing market paradigms and business practices. By simultaneously supporting board and chassis in-

terconnections, it is expected that vendors are able to adopt InfiniBand Architecture technology for use in future generations of existing products, within current business practices, to best support their customers needs.

IBA can support bandwidths that are anticipated to remain an order of magnitude greater than prevailing I/O media (SCSI, Fibre Channel, Ethernet). This ensures its role as the common interconnect for attaching I/O media using these technologies. Reinforcing this point is IBA's native use of IPv6 headers, which supports extremely efficient junctions between IBA fabrics and traditional Internet and intranet infrastructures.

IBA supports implementations as simple as a single computer system, and can be expanded to include: replication of components for increased system reliability, cascaded switched fabric components, additional I/O units for scalable I/O capacity and performance, additional host node computing elements for scalable computing, or any combinations thereof. InfiniBand Architecture is a revolutionary architecture that enables computer systems to keep up with the ever increasing customer requirement for increased scalability, increased bandwidth, decreased CPU utilization, high availability, high isolation, and support for Internet technology.

Being designed as a first order network, IBA focuses on moving data in and out of a node's memory and is optimized for separate control and memory interfaces. This permits hardware to be closely coupled or even integrated with the node's memory complex, removing any performance barriers. IBA is flexible enough to be implemented as a second order network permitting legacy and migration. Even when implemented as a second order network, IBA's memory optimization operation permits maximum available bandwidth utilization and increases CPU efficiency.

1.3 SCOPE

IBA supports a range of applications from being the backplane interconnect of a single host, to a complex system area network consisting of multiple independent and clustered hosts and I/O components.

For the single host environments, as depicted in Figure 2, each IBA fabric serves as a private I/O interconnect for its host and provides connectivity

between the host's CPU/memory complex and a number of I/O modules. For this environment, all devices are dedicated to the host.

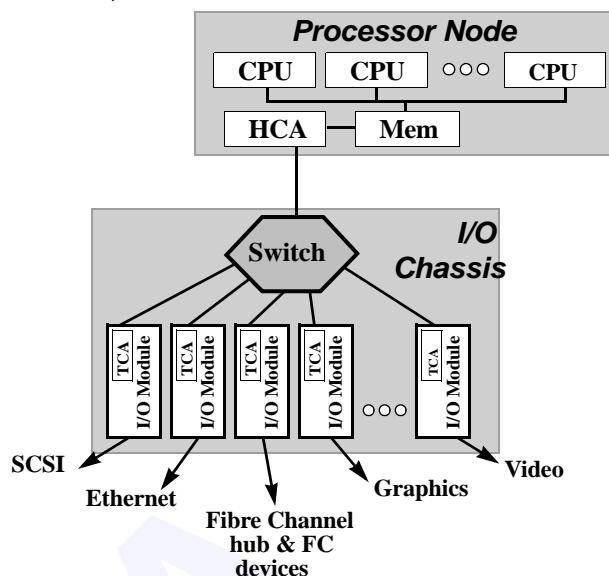


Figure 2 **Single Host Environment**

On the other end of the scale is multiple host connectivity as depicted in Figure 1. Here a single fabric or even multiple fabrics interconnect numerous hosts and various I/O units. Some hosts might share I/O devices and others do not. Interprocess communication between hosts becomes a very significant objective. Trivial fabric management is no longer sufficient as network administrators desire additional features to maintain separation and assure deterministic behavior.

The architecture not only specifies the mechanisms for I/O and interprocess communication, but it also specifies an extensive set of management mechanisms that are flexible enough to permit single host environments without undue burden and costly fabric managers and at the same time support very complex system area networks (SAN) and feature rich fabric management.

1.4 DOCUMENT ORGANIZATION

1.4.1 SERIES OF VOLUMES

There are two volumes that comprise the InfiniBand normative specifications suite:

Volume 1 - specifies the core InfiniBand™ Architecture. It provides normative information required for IBA operation for switches, routers, host channel adapters for processor nodes, target channel adapters for I/O devices, and management.

Volume 2 - specifies electrical & mechanical configurations. It specifies requirements for a number of different physical media and signaling rates, defines mechanical form factors, and specifies physical and chassis management requirements. Volume 2 has been broken into three parts:

- 1) The current Volume 2 Spec is available in the IBTA Members Area.
- 2) Volume 2 - DEPR-Deprecated Functionality.
- 3) Volume 2 - COMP - Summary of Compliance Statements.

Standalone Annexes - The IBTA Specifications are living documents and Annexes may be added after release and may be added back into the next release of the Specification. However there are currently two standalone Annexes and the intention is that these will live separately forever. There are two standalone annexes as of the release of Volume 1 Release 1.3 are as follows:

- 1) Annex A16 RoCE
- 2) Annex A17 RoCE-v2

1.4.2 VOLUME 1 ORGANIZATION

1.5 DOCUMENT CONVENTIONS

1.5.1 BYTE ORDERING

This specification uses Big Endian byte ordering. For fields greater than one byte in size this means that the most significant byte of each field is transmitted first as illustrated in Figure 3.

Byte offset	previous field
+0	Most Significant Byte
+1	Second Most Significant Byte
.	o
.	o
.	o
+n	Least Significant Byte

Figure 3 Byte Order for Multiple Byte Fields

Unless specifically stated otherwise, the text of this document lists fields in the order of transmission. In most cases, multiple byte fields are aligned to start or end on a 32-bit boundary. For clarity, certain figures show fields ordered in 32 bit words. These words are in big endian format and implementations targeted for little endian processing need to pay particular attention to byte ordering to assure correct operation since little endian processing tends to place the least significant bytes in lower byte offsets.

Figure 4 illustrates how numeric and bit significant fields should be interpreted.

bits	b7	b0	b7	b0	b7	b0	b7	b0
Byte Offset	Byte 0,4,8...		Byte 1,5,9,...		Byte 2,6,10,...		Byte 3,7,11,...	
0-3	b15	16-bit field	b0	b15	16-bit field	b0		
4-7	b31	32-bit field				b0		
8-11	b7	1-byte	b0	b23	24-bit field		b0	
12-15	b23	24-bit field		b0	b7	1-byte	b0	
16-19	b47	48-bit field (high)					b16	
20-23	b15	48-bit field (low)		b0	b47	48-bit field (high bytes)	b32	
24-27	b31	48-bit field (low bytes)					b0	
28-31	b63	64-bit field (high bytes)					b32	
32-35	b31	64-bit field (low bytes)					b0	
36-39	b127	128-bit field (highest bytes)					b96	
40-43	b95						b64	
44-47	b63						b32	
48-51	b31	128-bit field (lowest bytes)					b0	

Figure 4 Byte Order Examples

Bit fields with other than byte granularity follow the same rules - that is, the most significant bits of the field occupies the higher order bits of the lowest byte offset with least significant bits being in the lowest byte offset as illustrated in Figure 5.

Previous Byte	First Byte					Next Byte				Following Byte	
	5-bit field					3-bit field		2-bit	6-bit field		
	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	b2	b1	b0	b1	b0	b5
	4-bit field					12-bit field					
	b3	b2	b1	b0	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5
	14-bit field					2-bit					
	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3
						b2	b1	b0	b1	b0	b0

Figure 5 Bit Order Examples

1.5.2 NUMERIC VALUES

Unless otherwise stated numerical values without qualifiers are decimal. This document uses the following qualifiers:

- 0x prefixed to a hexadecimal value (e.g., 0x15F7)
- b' prefixed to a binary value (e.g., b'0110)

An obvious exception are binary numbers used in figures and tables	1
In table headings a colon is used to specify a range of bits (e.g., Bits 7:0) and table values in that column are binary numbers.	2
A dash between two numbers represents a range (e.g., 0-3 = zero to three)	3
Global IDs are 128-bit values specified in the format : value:value:value:value:value:value:value:value	4
Where each value represents a 4-digit hexadecimal number (e.g., FF02:0:0:0:0:0:1)	5

1.6 DISCLAIMER

Like any document, this specification is subject to errata for correctness, clarity, and enhancements. The InfiniBand™ Trade Association hosts a web site at <http://www.InfiniBandTA.org>. Please visit this site to check for errata and updates to this specification.

CHAPTER 2: GLOSSARY

Active	Describes an entity initiating a communication establishment request (e.g., TCP CONNECT).	5
Address Handle	An object that contains the information necessary to transmit messages to a remote port over Unreliable Datagram service.	6
Address Vector	A collection of address and Path information specifying a remote port and the parameters to be used when communicating with it.	7
AETH	Ack Extended Transport Header	8
AM	Attribute Modifier.	9
Asynchronous error	A permanent error that cannot be reported through immediate or completion error handling mechanisms at the local end. Asynchronous errors may be unaffiliated or may be affiliated with a specific Completion Queue , Endport , or Queue Pair .	10
Attribute	The collection of management data carried in a Management Datagram .	11
Automatic Path Migration	The process in which a Channel Adapter , on a per- Queue Pair basis, signals another CA to cause Path Migration to a preset alternate Path . Automatic Path Migration uses a bit in a request or response packet (MigReq) to signal the other channel adapter to migrate to the predefined alternate path.	12
B_Key	See Baseboard Management Key .	13
Base LID	The numerically lowest Local Identifier that refers to a Port . The Path Bits of a Base LID are always zero.	14
Base Switch Port 0	A Switch Port 0 which is not an Endport .	15
Baseboard Managed Unit	Any Unit which provides InfiniBand(TM) specification defined information about itself by a Baseboard method MAD operation through the InfiniBand™ link.	16
Baseboard Management Key	A construct that is contained in IBA management datagrams to authenticate that the sender is allowed to perform the requested operation.	17
BECN	Backward Explicit Congestion Notification	18

Binding	The act of associating a virtual address range in a specified Memory Region with a Memory Window .	1
BTH	Base Transport Header.	2
CA	See Channel Adapter .	3
Channel	The association of two queue pairs for communication.	4
Channel Adapter	Device that terminates a link and executes transport-level functions. One of Host Channel Adapter or Target Channel Adapter .	5
Channel Interface	The presentation of the channel to the Verbs Consumer as implemented through the combination of the Host Channel Adapter , associated firmware, and device driver software.	6
Channel, Reliable Datagram	See Reliable Datagram Channel .	7
CI	See Channel Interface .	8
Client	The active entity in an active/passive communication establishment exchange.	9
CM	See Communication Manager .	10
CME	Chassis Management Entity.	11
Communication Manager	The software, hardware, or combination of the two that supports the communication management mechanisms and protocols.	12
Completion Error	Permanent interface or processing error reported through completion status.	13
Completion Event Handler	A handler that is invoked when the Consumer requests completion notification and an entry is added to the completion queue associated with the handler's identifier.	14
Completion Queue	A queue containing one or more Completion Queue Entries. Completion Queues are internal to the Channel Interface, and are not visible to verb consumers.	15
Completion Queue Entry	The Channel Interface -internal representation of a Work Completion .	16
Component Mask	A field in a Management Datagram used to indicate which components of the MAD are to be considered in carrying out the operation. See Wild-carding .	17
Connection	An association between a pair of entities (e.g., processes) over one or	18

	more Channels .	1
Consumer	See Verbs Consumer .	2
CQE	Completion Queue Entry , commonly pronounced “cookie”.	3
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check.	5
Data Payload	The data, not including any control or header information, carried in one packet.	7
Data Segment	A tuple in a Work Request that specifies a virtually contiguous buffer for Host Channel Adapter access. Each Data Segment consists of a Virtual Address, an associated Local Key or Remote Key , and a length.	10
DETH	Datagram Extended Transport Header.	13
DGID	Destination Global Identifier .	15
DLID	Destination Local Identifier .	16
EEC	See End to End Context .	18
EECN	See End to End Context Number .	19
EE Context	See End to End Context .	20
Endpoint	A Port which can be a destination of LID -routed communication within the same Subnet as the sender. All Channel Adapter ports on the subnet are endpoints of that subnet, as is Port 0 of each Switch in the subnet. Switch ports other than Port 0 may not be endpoints. When <i>port</i> is used without qualification, it may be assumed to mean <i>endpoint</i> whenever the context indicates that it is a destination of communication.	23
End to End Context	The endpoint of a Reliable Datagram channel.	24
End to End Context Number	Identifies a specific End to End Context within a Channel Adapter .	25
End to End Flow Control	A mechanism to prevent a sender from transmitting messages during periods when receive buffers are not posted at the recipient.	26
Enhanced Switch Port 0	A Switch Port 0 which provides the functionality of a Target Channel Adapter .	27
External Switch Port	A physical Port on a Switch . See also Switch Port 0 .	28
Fabric	The collection of Links , Switches , and Routers that connects a set of Channel Adapters .	29

Fast Register Physical MR	A memory registration performed on an existing local L_Key , and any associated R_Key , through a Post Send Work Request .	1
Fast Register PMR	Fast Register Physical MR .	2
FEC	Forward Error Correction	3
FECN	Forward Explicit Congestion Notification	4
Gb/s	Giga-bits per second (10^9 bits per second)	5
GB/s	Giga-bytes per second (10^9 bytes per second)	6
General Service Interface	An interface providing management services (e.g., connection, performance, diagnostics) other than subnet management.	7
GID	See Global Identifier .	8
GID Index 0	The unicast GID referenced through index 0 of an endpoint's GID Table , based on the endpoint's invariant manufacturer-assigned EUI-64.	9
GID Table	A table containing one or more Global Identifiers by which an endpoint may be referenced.	10
Global Identifier	A 128-bit unicast or multicast identifier used to identify an Endpoint or a multicast group.	11
Global Route Header	Routing header present in InfiniBand™ Architecture packets targeted to destinations outside the sender's local subnet.	12
Globally Unique Identifier	A number that uniquely identifies a device or component.	13
GMP	General Management Packet.	14
GRH	See Global Route Header .	15
GSI	See General Service Interface .	16
GUID	See Globally Unique Identifier .	17
HCA	See Host Channel Adapter .	18
Host	One or more Host Channel Adapters governed by a single memory/CPU complex.	19
Host Channel Adapter	A Channel Adapter that supports the Verbs interface.	20
IBA	InfiniBand™ Architecture.	21

IB-ML	InfiniBand™ Management Link.	1
ICRC	See Invariant CRC .	2
Immediate Data	Data contained in a Work Queue Element that is sent along with the payload to the remote Channel Adapter and placed in a Receive Work Completion .	3
Immediate Error	A permanent Interface Error reported through the verb status.	4
Initiator	The source of requests.	5
Interface Error	An error due to an invalid field in a Work Request .	6
Invalid Key	See Key .	7
Invalidate Operation	An operation that disables CI 's access to host memory through an L Key or R Key , but retains L Key or R Key translation and protection resources for use on future memory registrations.	8
Invariant CRC	A CRC covering the fields in a packet that do not change from the source to the destination.	9
I/O	Input/Output.	10
I/O Controller	One of the two architectural divisions of an I/O Unit . An I/O controller (IOC) provides I/O services, while a Target Channel Adapter provides transport services.	11
I/O Unit	An I/O unit (IOU) provides I/O service(s). An I/O unit consists of one or more I/O Controllers attached to the fabric through a single Target Channel Adapter .	12
I/O Virtual Address	An address having no direct meaning to the Host processor, intended for use only in describing a Local or Remote memory buffer to the Host Channel Adapter .	13
IOC	See I/O Controller .	14
IOU	See I/O Unit .	15
IPv6	Internet Protocol, version 6	16
IPv6 Address	A 128-bit address constructed in accordance with IETF RFC 2460 for IPv6.	17
Key	A construct used to limit access to one or more resources, similar to a password. The following keys are defined by the InfiniBand™ Architec-	18

ture:

- [Baseboard Management Key](#)
- [Local Key](#)
- [Management Key](#)
- [Queue Key](#)
- [Partition Key](#)
- [Remote Key](#)

Key Space

Refers to whether the index portion of the [L_Key](#) and [R_Key](#) for a particular [Memory Region](#) have the same value or not. If they do, then they are in the same Key Space. Otherwise they are in separate Key Spaces.

L_Key

See [Local Key](#).

LID

See [Local Identifier](#).

LID Mask Control

A per-port value assigned by the [Subnet Manager](#). The value of the LMC specifies the number of [Path Bits](#) in the [Local Identifier](#).

Link

A full duplex transmission path between any two network fabric elements, such as [Channel Adapters](#) or [Switches](#).

LMC

See [LID Mask Control](#).

Local Identifier

An address assigned to a port by the [Subnet Manager](#), unique within the subnet, used for directing packets within the subnet. The Source and Destination LIDs are present in the [Local Route Header](#). A Local Identifier is formed by the sum of the [Base LID](#) and the value of the [Path Bits](#).

Local Invalidate

An [Invalidate Operation](#) performed through the [Send Queue](#): on a local [L_Key](#), [R_Key](#), or [Memory Region Handle](#) that is associated with an [MR](#); or an [R_Key](#) or [Memory Window Handle](#) that is associated with a [Type 2 Memory Window](#).

Local Key

An opaque object, created by a verb, referring to a [Memory Registration](#), used with a Virtual Address to describe authorization for the HCA hardware to access local memory. It may also be used by the HCA hardware to identify the appropriate page tables for use in translating virtual to physical addresses.

Local Route Header

Routing header present in all InfiniBand™ Architecture packets, used for routing through switches within a subnet.

Local Subnet

The collection of links and [Switches](#) that connect the [Channel Adapters](#) of a particular subnet.

LRH	See Local Route Header .	1
M_Key	See Management Key .	2
MAD	See Management Datagram .	3
Managed Unit	A Unit which provides Vital Product Data about itself to an external entity, and is managed by that entity.	4
Management Datagram	Refers to the contents of an Unreliable Datagram packet used for communication among HCAs, switches, routers, and TCAs to manage the fabric. InfiniBand™ Architecture describes the format of a number of these management commands.	5
Management Key	A construct that is contained in IBA management datagrams to authenticate the sender to the receiver.	6
Maximum Transfer Unit	The maximum Packet Payload size, which may be 256, 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096 bytes. See also MTU Capacity , Neighbor MTU , and Path Maximum Transfer Unit .	7
MB/s	Mega-bytes per second (10^6 bytes per second)	8
Memory Protection Attributes	The access rights granted to Memory Regions .	9
Memory Region	A virtually contiguous area of arbitrary size within a Consumer's address space that has been registered, enabling HCA local access and optional remote access. See Memory Registration	10
Memory Region Handle	An opaque object returned to the consumer when the consumer registers a Memory Region . The Memory Region Handle is used to specify the registered region to the memory management verbs.	11
Memory Registration	The act of registering a host Memory Region for use by a consumer. The memory registration operation returns a Memory Region Handle . The process provides this with any reference to a virtual address within the memory region.	12
Memory Window	An allocated resource that enables remote access after being bound to a specified area within an existing Memory Region . Each Memory Window has an associated Window Handle , set of access privileges, and current R_Key.	13
Message	A transfer of information between two or more Channel Adapters that consists of one or more packets.	14

Message-Level Flow Control	See End to End Flow Control .	1
Message Sequence Number	A value returned as part of an acknowledgement by the responder to the requestor, indicating the last message completed. Contrast Packet Sequence Number .	2
Modifiers	In a verb definition, the list of input and output objects that specify how, and on what, the verb is to be executed.	3
MR	Memory Region	4
MSN	See Message Sequence Number .	5
MTU	See Maximum Transfer Unit .	6
MTUCap	See MTU Capacity .	7
MTU Capacity	The largest Maximum Transfer Unit that a port can support.	8
Multicast	A facility by which a packet sent to a single address may be delivered to multiple ports.	9
Multicast Identifier	A Local Identifier or Global Identifier for a Multicast Group .	10
Multicast Group	A collection of Endpoints that receive Multicast packets sent to a single address.	11
MW	Memory Window	12
Neighbor MTU	The configured Maximum Transfer Unit for a Port , the value that specifies the maximum packet payload that may be sent to, or received from, the port at the other end of the Link .	13
NQ	Notification Queue.	14
Out-of-band Management	Management messages which traverse a transport other than the InfiniBand™ fabric.	15
Outstanding	3) The state of a Work Request after it has been posted on a Work Queue , but before the retrieval of the Work Completion by the consumer. 4) The state of a packet that has been sent onto the fabric but has not been acknowledged.	16
P_Key	See Partition Key .	17
Packet	The indivisible unit of IBA data transfer and routing, consisting of one or	18

	more headers, a Packet Payload , and one or two CRCs .	1
Packet Payload	The portion of a Packet between (not including) any Transport header(s) and the CRCs at the end of each packet. The packet payload contains up to 4096 bytes.	2
Packet Sequence Number	A value carried in the Base Transport Header that allows the detection and re-sending of lost packets.	3
Partition	A collection of Channel Adapter ports that are allowed to communicate with one another. Ports may be members of multiple partitions simultaneously. Ports in different partitions are unaware of each other's presence insofar as possible.	4
Partition Key	A value carried in packets and stored in Channel Adapter s that is used to determine membership in a partition.	5
	Default Partition Key: A partition key special value providing Full membership in the default partition. See Partition Membership Type .	6
	Invalid Partition Key: A special value that indicates that the Partition Key Table entry does not contain a valid key.	7
Partition Key Table	A table of partition keys present in each Port .	8
Partition Key Table Index (P_Key_ix)	An index into the partition key table.	9
Partition Manager	The entity that manages partition keys and membership.	10
Partition Membership Type	The high-order bit of the partition key is used to record the type of membership in an Port 's partition table: 0 for Limited, 1 for Full. Limited members cannot accept information from other Limited members, but communication is allowed between every other combination of membership types.	11
Passive	Describes an entity waiting to receive a communication establishment request (e.g., TCP LISTEN).	12
Path	The collection of links, switches, and routers a message traverses from a source Channel Adapter to a destination channel adapter. Within a subnet, a path is defined by the tuple < SLID , DLID , SL >.	13
Path Bits	The portion of a Local Identifier that may be changed to vary the Path through the subnet to a particular Port . If the Path Bits are zero, the Local Identifier is equal to the Base LID . The number of Path Bits applicable to a particular port is specified by the Subnet Manager through the LID Mask Control value.	14

Path Maximum Transfer Unit	The Maximum Transfer Unit supported along a Path from source to destination. PMTU is described in terms of the payload size, and may be 256, 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096 bytes.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
Path Migration	The modification of the Path used by a connection.	
PD	See Protection Domain .	
Peer	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1) One of the agents in an active/active connection establishment exchange.2) A generic term for the entity at the other end of a connection.	
Performance Management	Class which provides mechanisms to retrieve performance and error statistics from InfiniBand components.	
Pinning memory	A function supplied by the OS which forces the memory region to be resident and keeps the virtual-to-physical translations constant from the HCA point of view.	
PM	See Partition Manager or Performance Management , depending on the context.	
PMR	Physical Memory Region	
PMTU	See Path Maximum Transfer Unit .	
Port	Location on a Channel Adapter or Switch to which a link connects. There may be multiple ports on a single Channel Adapter , each with different context information that must be maintained. Switches /switch elements contain more than one port by definition.	
Post	To place a Work Request on a Work Queue .	
Private Data	A field present in Communication Management messages that is opaque at all IBA layers. Consumers may use this field to “piggy-back” additional information over the CM message exchange.	
Processing Error	A processing error is an error that occurs when the Host Channel Adapter is performing the unit of work described by the Work Queue Element and is unable to complete the request successfully due to an error that is returned by the transport protocol.	
Protection Domain	A mechanism for associating Queue Pairs , Address Handles , Memory Windows , and Memory Regions .	
PSN	See Packet Sequence Number .	
Q_Key	See Queue Key .	

QoS	See Quality of Service .	1
QP	See Queue Pair .	2
Quality of Service	Metrics that predict the behavior, reliability, speed, and latency of a given network connection.	3
Queue Key	A construct that is used to validate a remote sender's right to access a local Receive Queue for the Unreliable Datagram and Reliable Datagram service types. If the Q_Key present in an incoming packet does not match the value stored in the receiving QP, the packet shall be dropped.	4
Queue Pair	Consists of a Send Work Queue and a Receive Work Queue. Send and receive queues are always created as a pair and remain that way throughout their lifetime. A Queue Pair is identified by its Queue Pair Number .	5
Queue Pair Context	The information that pertains to a particular Queue Pair , such as the current Work Queue Elements , Packet Sequence Numbers , transmission parameters, etc.	6
Queue Pair Handle	An opaque object that refers to a specific Queue Pair . A Queue Pair Handle is returned by the operation that creates the QP and is supplied as an identifying parameter for other QP operations.	7
Queue Pair Number	Identifies a specific Queue Pair within a Channel Adapter.	8
R_Key	See Remote Key .	9
Raw Datagram	A packet that contains an IBA Local Route Header , may contain an IBA Global Route Header , but does not contain an IBA Transport header, and is not handled by IBA transport services.	10
RC	See Reliable Connection .	11
RD	See Reliable Datagram .	12
RDC	See Reliable Datagram Channel .	13
RDD	See Reliable Datagram Domain .	14
RDETH	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header.	15
RDMA	See Remote Direct Memory Access .	16
Receive Queue	One of the two queues associated with a Queue Pair . The receive queue contains Work Queue Elements that describe where to place incoming data.	17

Region Handle	See Memory Region Handle .	1
Registered Memory	A region of memory that has been through Memory Registration .	2
Registration	See Memory Registration .	3
Registered memory region	See Memory Region .	4
Reliable Connection	A Transport Service Type in which a Queue Pair is associated with only one other QP, such that messages transmitted by the send queue of one QP are reliably delivered to receive queue of the other QP. As such, each QP is said to be “connected” to the opposite QP.	5
Reliable Datagram	A Transport Service Type in which a Queue Pair may communicate with multiple other QPs over a Reliable Datagram Channel . A message transmitted by an RD QP’s send queue will be reliably delivered to the receive queue of the QP specified in the associated Work Request . Despite the name, Reliable Datagram messages are not limited to a single packet.	6
Reliable Datagram Channel	The association of two Reliable Datagram End to End Contexts . A Reliable Datagram channel may multiplex Reliable Datagrams from many RD Queue Pairs.	7
Reliable Datagram Domain	An association that defines which Reliable Datagram Queue Pairs may use an End to End Context .	8
Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol	A transaction protocol based on Management Datagram s supporting the reliable transfer of amounts of data larger than that possible in a single Management Datagram.	9
Remote Direct Memory Access	Method of accessing memory on a remote system without interrupting the processing of the CPU(s) on that system.	10
Remote Invalidate	An Invalidate Operation performed on a local R_Key through an incoming Send with Invalidate Message.	11
Remote Key	An opaque object, created by a verb, referring to a Memory Region or Memory Window , used with a Virtual Address to describe authorization for the remote device to access local memory. It may also be used by the HCA hardware to identify the appropriate page tables for use in translating virtual to physical addresses.	12
Reserved L_Key	An L_Key that can be used by a privileged Consumer to provide the HCA direct access to host physical addresses.	13
Retired	The state of a Work Queue Element after the Host Channel Adapter completes the operation specified by the WQE, but before the Work Completion has been presented to the consumer.	14

RMPP	See Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol .	1
RNR Nak	Receiver Not Ready. A response signifying that the receiver is not currently able to accept the request, but may be able to do so in the future.	2
Router	A device that transports packets between IBA subnets.	3
SA	See Subnet Administration .	4
SAR	Segmentation and Re-assembly.	5
Send Queue	One of the two queues of a Queue Pair . The Send queue contains WQEs that describe the data to be transmitted.	6
Server	1) The passive entity in a connection establishment exchange. 2) An entity (e.g., a process) that provides services in response to requests from clients.	7
Service ID	A value that allows a Communication Manager to associate an incoming connection request with the entity providing the service. The Service ID is similar to the TCP Port Number.	8
Service Level	Value in the Local Route Header identifying the appropriate Virtual Lane for a packet, enabling the implementation of differentiated services. While the appropriate VL for a specific Service Level may differ over a packet's Path , the Service Level remains constant.	9
Service Type	See Transport Service Type .	10
Signaled Completion	A modifier used for Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue specifying that a Work Completion shall be generated when the work requested completes, whether successfully or in error.	11
SGID	Source Global Identifier .	12
Shared Receive Queue	The Shared Receive Queue contains WQEs that can be used to receive incoming data on any QP that is associated with the Shared Receive Queue.	13
SLID	Source Local Identifier	14
SL	See Service Level .	15
SM	See Subnet Manager .	16
SMA	See Subnet Management Agent .	17
SMP	See Subnet Management Packet .	18

Solicited Event	A facility by which a message sender may cause an event to be generated at the recipient when the message is received.	1
SRQ	<u>Shared Receive Queue</u>	2
Subnet	A set of InfiniBand™ Architecture <u>Ports</u> , and associated links, that have a common Subnet ID and are managed by a common <u>Subnet Manager</u> . Subnets may be connected to each other through routers.	3
Subnet Administration	The architectural construct that implements the interface for querying and manipulating subnet management data.	4
Subnet Manager	One of several entities involved in the configuration and control of the subnet. Master Subnet Manager: The subnet manager that is authoritative, that has the reference configuration information for the subnet. Standby Subnet Manager: A subnet manager that is currently quiescent, and not in the role of a master SM, by agency of the master SM. Standby SMs are dormant managers.	5
Subnet Management Agent	An entity present in all IBA <u>Channel Adapters</u> and <u>Switches</u> that processes <u>Subnet Management Packets</u> from <u>Subnet Manager(s)</u> .	6
Subnet Management Data	Vital Product Data required by the <u>Subnet Manager</u> .	7
Subnet Management Packet	The subclass of <u>Management Datagram</u> s used to manage the subnet. SMPs travel exclusively over <u>Virtual Lane</u> 15 and are addressed exclusively to <u>Queue Pair Number</u> 0.	8
Switch	A device that routes packets from one link to another of the same <u>Subnet</u> , using the Destination <u>Local Identifier</u> field in the Local Route Header.	9
Switch Management Port	A virtual port by which a <u>Switch</u> may be managed. See <u>Switch Port 0</u> .	10
Switch Port 0	An addressable virtual port by which a <u>Switch</u> may be managed. May be one of <u>Base Switch Port 0</u> or <u>Endpoint</u> .	11
TCA	See <u>Target Channel Adapter</u> .	12
Target Channel Adapter	A <u>Channel Adapter</u> typically used to support I/O devices. TCAs are not required to support the <u>Verbs</u> interface. See also <u>I/O Unit</u> .	13
Transport Service Type	Describes the reliability, sequencing, message size, and operation types that will be used between the communicating <u>Channel Adapters</u> .	14
	Transport service types that use the IBA transport:	15

	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Reliable Connection• Unreliable Connection• Reliable Datagram• Unreliable Datagram	1 2 3 4
	Raw Datagram service does not use the IBA transport.	5 6
Type 1 Memory Window	A Memory Window that is associated with a QP through the PD and cannot be Invalidated.	7 8
Type 2 Memory Window	A Memory Window that is either a Type 2A Memory Window or a Type 2B Memory Window .	9 10 11
Type 2A Memory Window	A Memory Window that when bound is associated with a QP through the QP Number and can be Invalidated.	12 13
Type 2B Memory Window	A Memory Window that when bound is associated with a QP through the QP Number and PD , and can be Invalidated.	14 15 16
UC	See Unreliable Connection .	17 18
UD	See Unreliable Datagram .	19 20
Unicast	An identifier for a single port. A packet sent to a unicast address is delivered to the port identified by that address.	21 22
Unit	One or more sets of processes and/or functions attached to the fabric by one or more channel adapters. See Host and I/O Unit .	23 24 25
Unreliable Connection	A Transport Service Type in which a Queue Pair is associated with only one other QP, such that messages transmitted by the send queue of one QP are, if delivered, delivered to the receive queue of the other QP. As such, each QP is said to be “connected” to the opposite QP. Messages with errors are not retried by the transport, and error handling must be provided by a higher level protocol.	26 27 28 29 30 31
Unreliable Datagram	A Transport Service Type in which a Queue Pair may transmit and receive single-packet messages to/from any other QP. Ordering and delivery are not guaranteed, and delivered packets may be dropped by the receiver.	32 33 34 35
Unsignaled Completion	A modifier used for Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue signifying that a Work Completion is to be generated only if the requested action completes in error.	36 37 38 39
Variant CRC	A CRC covering all the fields of a packet, including those that may be changed by Switches .	40 41 42

VCRC	See Variant CRC .	1
Verbs	An abstract description of the functionality of a Host Channel Adapter . An operating system may expose some or all of the verb functionality through its programming interface.	2
Verbs Consumer	The direct user of the Verbs .	3
Virtual Lane	A method of providing independent data streams on the same physical link.	4
Vital Product Data	Device-specific data to support management functions.	5
VL	See Virtual Lane .	6
VPD	See Vital Product Data .	7
WC	See Work Completion .	8
Wildcarding	Setting a Component Mask bit in a Management Datagram to 0, causing that component's value to be ignored in carrying out the operation. Not all management classes define a Component Mask and Component Mask is only applicable to certain Method-Attribute combinations. An example of a management class with a Component Mask is SubnAdm.	9
Window Handle	An opaque object that identifies a Memory Window .	10
Work Completion	The consumer-visible representation of a Completion Queue Entry . A Work Completion may be obtained when a consumer polls a Completion Queue .	11
Work Queue	One of Send Queue or Receive Queue .	12
Work Queue Element	The Host Channel Adapter 's internal representation of a Work Request . The consumer does not have direct access to Work Queue Elements .	13
Work Queue Pair	See Queue Pair .	14
Work Request	The means by which a consumer requests the creation of a Work Queue Element .	15
WQ	See Work Queue .	16
WQE	Work Queue Element , commonly pronounced “wookie”.	17
WQP	See Work Queue Pair .	18
WR	See Work Request .	19

XRC	Acronym for the eXtended Reliable Connected transport service.	1
XRC Domain	Attribute used to associate XRC TGT QPs and XRC SRQs. XRC packets can only target XRC SRQs in the same XRC Domain as the XRC TGT QP that they are destined for.	2 3 4
XRC INI QP	XRC Initiator QP. This is the initiator Queue for XRC operations. XRC INI QPs are used to issue XRC outgoing requests and do not have a responder side. XRC incoming requests will be handled by XRC TGT QPs.	5 6 7 8
XRC SRQ	This is the Receive Queue where Receive WQEs are posted for incoming XRC requests. XRC request packets carry in an extended header (XRCETH) the XRC SRQ number that is being targeted and from which a receive WQE will be fetched if required.	9 10 11 12
XRC TGT QP	XRC Target QP. This is the responder for XRC operations. XRC TGT QPs (together with XRC SRQs) are used to process incoming XRC requests. XRC TG QPs do not have a requester side. XRC outgoing requests are issued through XRC INI QPs.	13 14 15 16
XRCETH	XRC Extended Transport Header. Present in XRC request packets.	17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42

CHAPTER 3: ARCHITECTURAL OVERVIEW

This chapter provides a top-down description of the InfiniBand Architecture (IBA) features, capabilities, components, and elements and it describes various principles of operation. It is a high level overview intended as an informative guide and thus certain details are intentionally excluded for the purpose of clarity.

IBA defines a System Area Network (SAN) for connecting multiple independent processor platforms (i.e., host processor nodes), I/O platforms, and I/O devices (see [Figure 6](#)). The IBA SAN is a communications and management infrastructure supporting both I/O and interprocessor communications (IPC) for one or more computer systems. An IBA system can range from a small server with one processor and a few I/O devices to a massively parallel supercomputer installation with hundreds of processors and thousands of I/O devices. Furthermore, the Internet protocol (IP) friendly nature of IBA allows bridging to an Internet, intranet, or connection to remote computer systems.

IBA defines a switched communications fabric allowing many devices to concurrently communicate with high bandwidth and low latency in a protected, remotely managed environment. An endnode can communicate over multiple IBA ports and can utilize multiple paths through the IBA fabric. The multiplicity of IBA ports and paths through the network are exploited for both fault tolerance and increased data transfer bandwidth.

IBA hardware off-loads from the CPU much of the I/O communications operation. This allows multiple concurrent communications without the traditional overhead associated with communicating protocols. The IBA SAN provides its I/O and IPC clients zero processor-copy data transfers, with no kernel involvement, and uses hardware to provide highly reliable, fault tolerant communications.

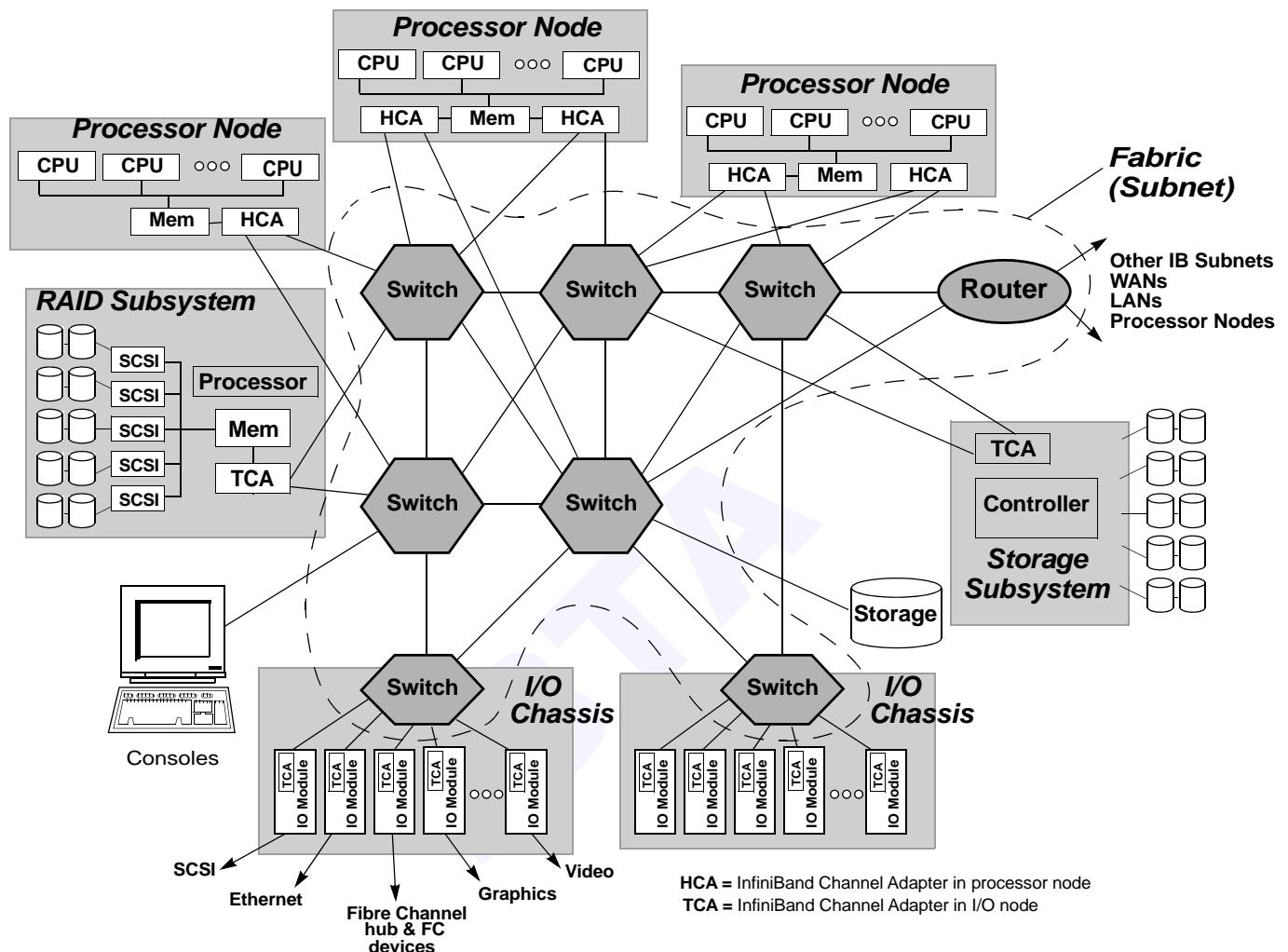


Figure 6 IBA System Area Network

An IBA System Area Network consists of processor nodes and I/O units connected through an IBA fabric made up of cascaded switches and routers.

IO units can range in complexity from single ASIC IBA attached devices such as a SCSI or LAN adapter to large memory rich RAID subsystems that rival a processor node in complexity to complex distributed parallel file systems.

3.1 ARCHITECTURE SCOPE

This volume of the InfiniBand Architecture Specification defines the interconnect fabric, routing elements, endnodes, management infrastructure, and the communication formats and protocols. It does not specify I/O commands or cluster services.

For example, consider an IBA SCSI adapter. IBA does not define the disk I/O commands, how the SCSI adapter communicates with the disk, how the operating system (OS) views the disk device, nor which node in the cluster owns the disk adapter. IBA is an essential underpinning of each of these operations, but does not directly define any of them. Instead, IBA defines how data and commands can be transported between the I/O driver on a processor node and the SCSI adapter.

IBA handles the data communications for I/O and IPC in a multi-computer environment. It supports the high bandwidth and scalability required for IO. It caters to the extremely low latency and low CPU overhead required for IPC. With IBA, the OS can provide its clients with communication mechanisms that bypass the OS kernel and directly access IBA network communication hardware, enabling efficient message passing operation. IBA is well suited to the latest computing models and is a building block for new forms of I/O and cluster communication. IBA allows I/O units to communicate among themselves and with any or all of the processor nodes in a system. Thus an I/O unit has the same communications capability as any processor node.

3.1.1 TOPOLOGIES & COMPONENTS

At a high level, IBA serves as an interconnect for endnodes as illustrated in [Figure 7](#). Each node can be a processor node, an I/O unit, and/or a router to another network.

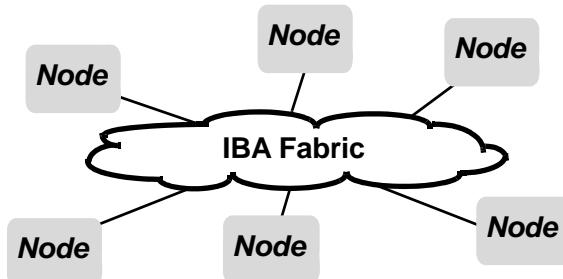


Figure 7 **IBA Network**

An IBA network is subdivided into subnets interconnected by routers as illustrated in [Figure 8](#). Endnodes may attach to a single subnet or multiple subnets.

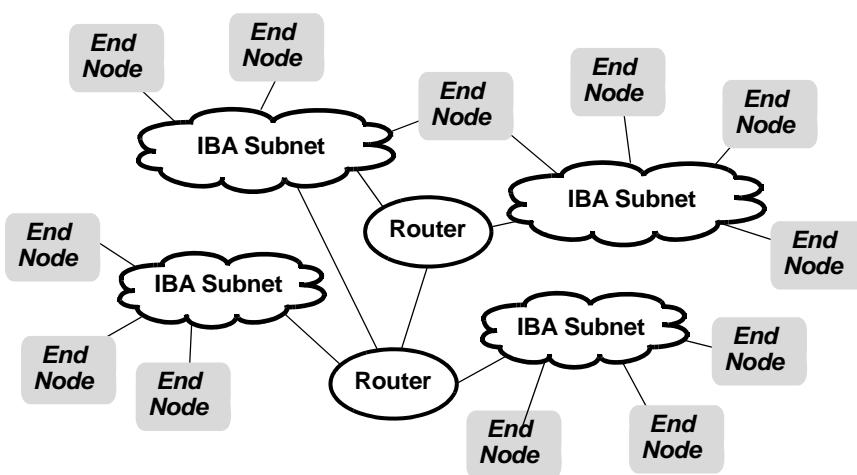


Figure 8 IBA Network Components

An IBA subnet is composed of endnodes, switches, routers, and subnet managers interconnected by links as illustrated in [Figure 9](#). Each IBA device may attach to a single switch or multiple switches and/or directly with each other¹. Multiple links can exist between any two IBA devices.

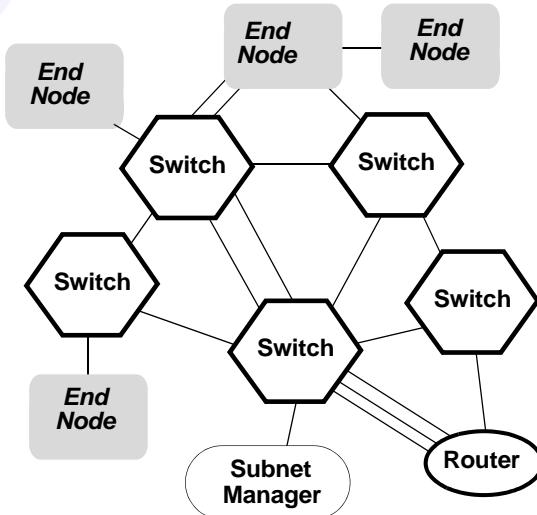


Figure 9 IBA Subnet Components

1. Single endnode to endnode connection creates an independent subnet, with no connectivity to the remainder of the IBA devices, in which case one of the two interconnected endnodes functions as the subnet manager for that link.

The architecture is optimized for units that contain multiple independent processes and threads (consumers) as illustrated in [Figure 10](#). Each channel adapter constitutes a node on the fabric. The architecture supports multiple channel adapters per unit with each channel adapter providing one or more ports that connect to the fabric, in which case the processor node appears as multiple endnodes to the fabric.

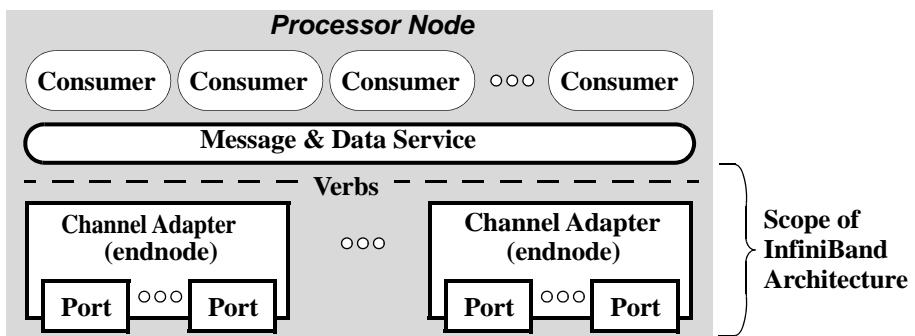


Figure 10 Processor Node

In a processor node, the message and data service is an OS component that is outside the scope of this document. This document specifies the semantic behavior of the interface between the message and data service and a channel adapter. This semantic interface is referred to as IBA Verbs. Verbs describe the functions necessary to configure, manage, and operate a host channel adapter. These verbs identify the appropriate parameters that need to be included for each particular function. Verbs, as defined in this specification, are not an API, but instead describe the semantic behavior that an API must provide in order to allow a consumer to directly access the services provided by an InfiniBand channel adapter.

IBA is architected as a first order network and as such it defines the host behavior (verbs) and defines memory operation such that the channel adapter can be located as close to the memory complex as possible. It provides independent direct access between consenting consumers regardless of whether those consumers are I/O drivers and I/O controllers or software processes communicating on a peer to peer basis. IBA provides both channel semantics (send and receive) and direct memory access with a level of protection that prevents access by non participating consumers.

3.2 COMMUNICATION

3.2.1 QUEUING

The foundation of IBA operation is its asynchronous nature, meaning that a consumer can queue up a series of service requests to be executed by the hardware. The queue used to hold these service requests is referred to as a work queue. Work queues are typically² created in pairs, called a

2. The XRC Transport Service Queues are not created in pairs.

Queue Pair (QP), one for send operations and one for receive operations. In general, the send work queue holds instructions that cause data to be transferred between the consumer's memory and another consumer's memory, and the receive work queue holds instructions about where to place data that is received from another consumer. The other consumer is referred to as a *remote consumer* even though it might be located on the same node. IBA specifically describes the queuing relationship for a *Host Channel Adapter* (HCA) but not the I/O unit because an I/O unit is not necessarily subject to 2nd and 3rd party interoperability that is present in a host environment (i.e., interoperability between the HCA vendor, the OS vendor, and an IHV's I/O driver or an ISV's application using IPC). The following describes the HCA queuing model.

The consumer submits a work request (WR), which causes an instruction called a Work Queue Element (WQE) to be placed on the appropriate work queue. The channel adapter executes WQEs in the order that they were placed on the work queue. When the channel adapter completes a WQE, a Completion Queue Element (CQE) is placed on a completion queue³. Each CQE specifies all the information necessary for a work completion, and either contains that information directly or points to other structures, for example, the associated WQE, that contain the information.

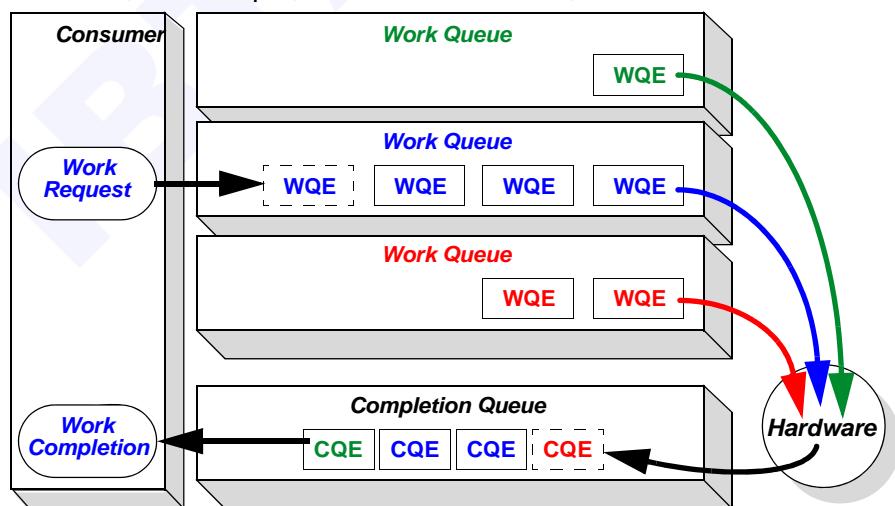


Figure 11 Consumer Queuing Model

Each consumer may have its own set of work queues, each pair of work queues is independent from the others. Each consumer creates one or more completion queues and associates each send and receive queue to a particular completion queue. It is not necessary that both the send and receive queue of a work queue pair use the same completion queue.

3. WQEs and CQEs are not architected entities, only the Work Request verbs are architected.

Because some work queues require an acknowledgment from the remote node and some WQEs use multiple packets to transfer the data, the channel adapter can have multiple WQEs in progress at the same time, even from the same work queue. Thus the order in which CQEs are posted to the completion queue is not deterministic except that CQEs for the same work queue are normally posted in the order that the corresponding WQE was posted to the work queue⁴.

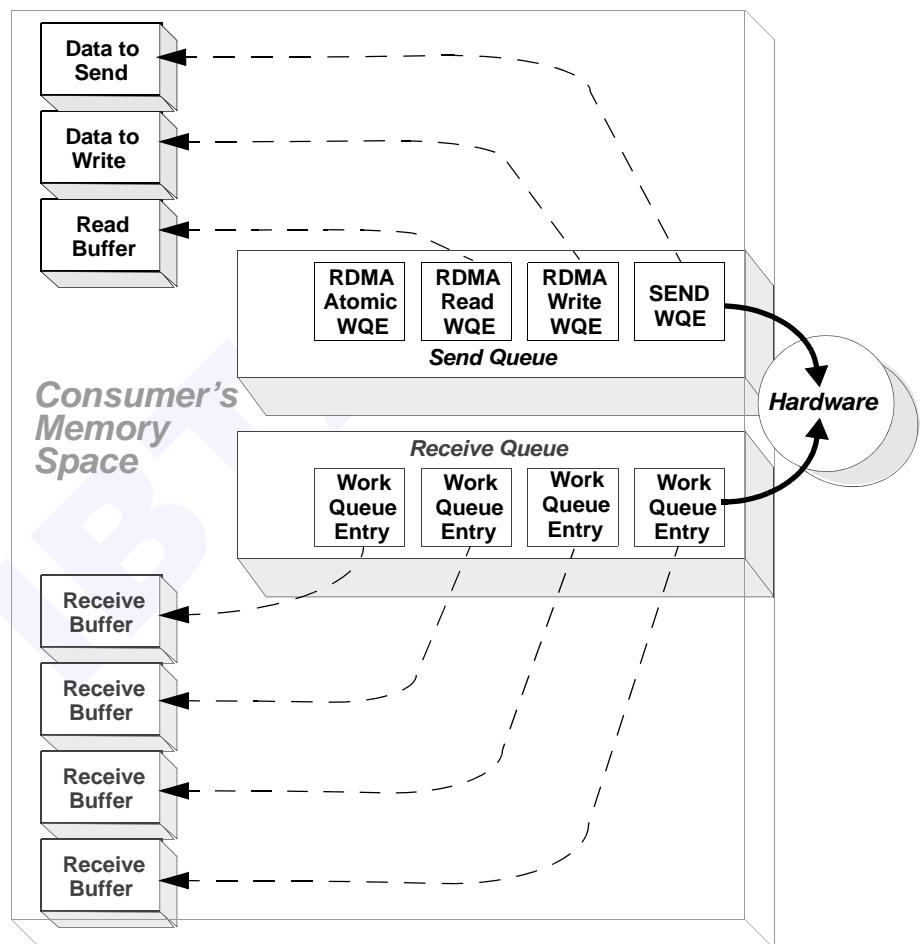


Figure 12 Work Queue Operations
There are three classes of send queue operations SEND, Remote memory Access (RDMA), and MEMORY BINDING.

4. Receive completions for reliable datagram service are the exception because concurrent reception on multiple EE contexts can result in out of order posting.

- For a SEND operation, the WQE specifies a block of data in the consumer's memory space for the hardware to send to the destination, letting a receive WQE already queued at the destination specify where to place that data.
- For an RDMA operation, the WQE also specifies the address in the remote consumer's memory. Thus an RDMA operation does not need to involve the receive work queue of the destination⁵. There are 3 types of RDMA operations, RDMA-WRITE, RDMA-READ, and ATOMIC.
 - The RDMA-WRITE operation stipulates that the hardware is to transfer data from the consumer's memory to the remote consumer's memory.
 - The RDMA-READ operation stipulates that the hardware is to transfer data from the remote memory to the consumer's memory.
 - The ATOMIC operation stipulates that the hardware is to perform a read of a remote 64-bit memory location. The target returns the value read, and conditionally modifies/replaces the remote memory contents by writing an updated value back to the same location.
- MEMORY BINDING instructs the hardware to alter memory registration relationships (see section 10.6.6.2). It associates (binds) a Memory Window to a specified range within an existing Memory Region. Memory binding allows a consumer to specify which portions of registered memory it shares with other nodes (i.e., the memory a remote node can access) and specifies read and write permissions. The result produces a memory key (R_KEY) that the consumer passes to remote nodes for their use in their RDMA operations.

There is only one receive queue operation and it is to specify a receive data buffer.

- A RECEIVE WQE specifies where the hardware is to place data received from another consumer when that consumer executes a SEND operation. Each time the remote consumer successfully executes a SEND operation, the hardware takes the next entry from the receive queue, places the received data in the memory location specified in that receive WQE, and places a CQE on the completion queue indicating to the consumer that the receive operation has completed. Thus the execution of a SEND operation causes a receive queue operation at the remote consumer.

5. RDMA Write with immediate data does involve the destination's receive work queue.

Normally an RDMA operation does not consume a receive WQE at the destination, but there is one exception. That is for an RDMA WRITE operation which specifies immediate data. *Immediate data* is 32 bits of information that is optionally provided in a SEND or RDMA WRITE instruction, transferred as part of the operation, but instead of writing the immediate data to memory, the data is treated as another piece of status information and returned as a special field of the RECEIVE CQE status. This means that an RDMA WRITE with immediate data will consume a RECEIVE WQE at the destination.

3.2.2 CONNECTIONS

IBA supports both connection oriented and datagram service. For connected service, each QP is associated with exactly one remote consumer. In this case the QP context is configured with the identity of the remote consumer's queue pair. The remote consumer is identified by a port and a QP number. The port is identified by a local ID (LID) and optionally a Global ID (GID). During the communication establishment process, this and other information is exchanged between the two nodes.

For datagram service, a QP is not tied to a single remote consumer, but rather information in the WQE identifies the destination. A communication setup process similar to the connection setup process needs to occur with each destination to exchange that information.

3.3 COMMUNICATIONS STACK

The communication stack for IBA is illustrated in [Figure 13](#). The architecture provides a number of IBA transactions that a consumer can use to execute a transaction with a remote consumer. The consumer posts work

queue elements (WQE) to the QP and the channel adapter interprets each WQE to perform the operation.

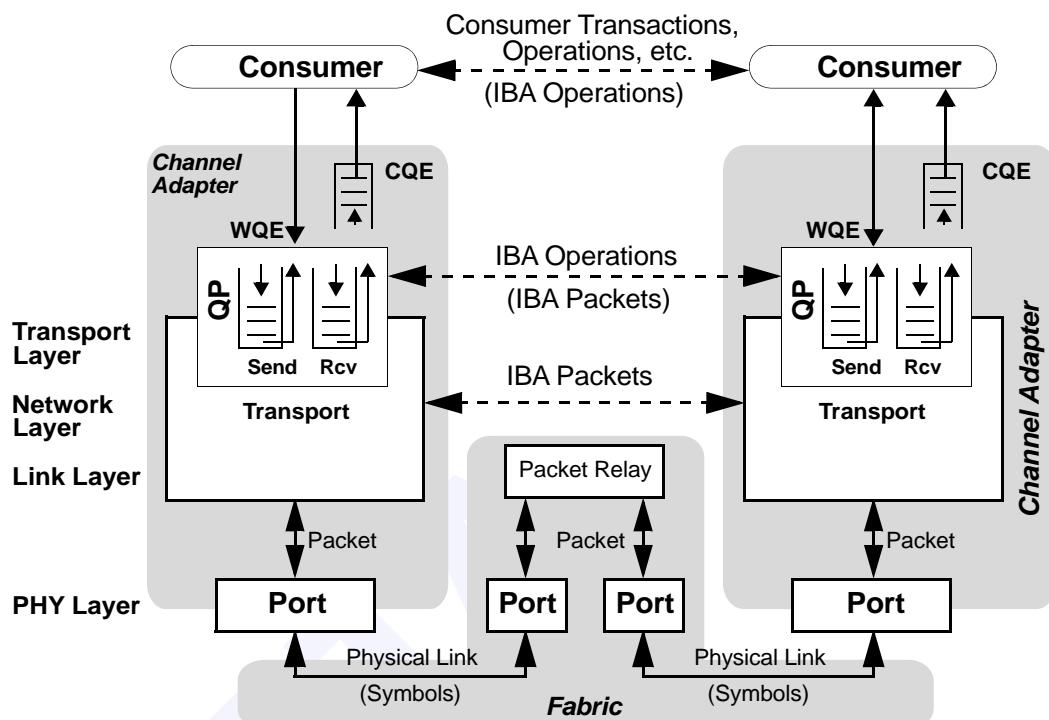


Figure 13 IBA Communication Stack

For Send Queue operations, the channel adapter interprets the WQE, creates a request message, segments the message into multiple packets if necessary, adds the appropriate routing headers, and sends the packet out the appropriate port.

The port logic transmits the packet over the link where switches and routers relay the packet through the fabric to the destination.

When the destination receives a packet, the port logic validates the integrity of the packet. The channel adapter associates the received packet with a particular QP and uses the context of that QP to process the packet and execute the operation. If necessary, the channel adapter creates a response (acknowledgment) message and sends that message back to the originator.

Reception of certain request messages cause the channel adapter to consume a WQE from the receive queue. When it does, a CQE corresponding to the consumed WQE is placed on the appropriate completion queue, which causes a work completion to be issued to the consumer that owns the QP.

3.4 IBA COMPONENTS

The devices in an IBA system are classified as:

- switches
- routers
- channel adapters
- repeaters
- links that interconnect switches, routers, repeaters, and channel adapters

The management infrastructure includes:

- subnet managers
- general service agents

3.4.1 LINKS & REPEATERS

Links interconnect channel adapters, switches, repeaters, and routing devices to form a fabric. A link can be a copper cable, an optical cable, or printed circuit wiring on a backplane. Repeaters are transparent⁶ devices that extend the range of a link. Volume 2 of InfiniBand Architecture specifies link and repeater requirements for various media types as well as defines various module form factors for I/O devices. The architecture described in Volume 1 is independent of the type of link and the form factor.

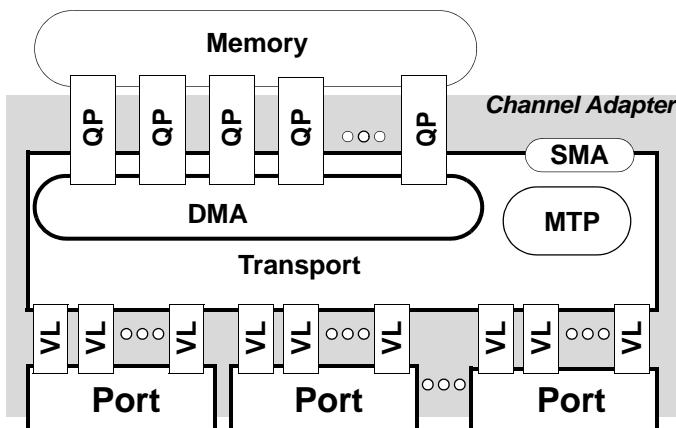
Links and repeaters are not directly addressable but the link status can be determined via the device on each end of the link.

3.4.2 CHANNEL ADAPTERS

Channel adapters are the IBA devices in processor nodes and I/O units that generate and consume packets. IBA defines two types of channel adapters: *Host Channel Adapter* (HCA) and *Target Channel Adapter* (TCA). The HCA provides a consumer interface providing the functions specified by IBA verbs. IBA does not specify the semantics of the consumer interface for a TCA.

A channel adapter is a programmable DMA engine with special protection features that allow DMA operations to be initiated locally and remotely.

6. Transparent in the sense repeaters only participate at the physical layer protocol level and nodes are not aware of their presence.

**Figure 14 Channel Adapter**

A channel adapter may have multiple ports. Each port of a channel adapter is assigned a *Local ID* (LID) or a range of LIDs. Each port has its own set of transmit and receive buffers such that each port is capable of sending and receiving concurrently. Buffering is channeled through *virtual lanes* (VL) where each VL has its own flow control.

The channel adapter provides a Memory Translation & Protection (MTP) mechanism that translates virtual addresses to physical addresses and to validate access rights. Specific memory management mechanisms are not specified by this document, and requirements for such mechanisms are not specified for TCAs.

The channel adapter provides multiple instances of the communication interface to its consumer in the form of *queue pairs* (QP) comprised of a send and receive work queue.

A subnet manager configures channel adapters with the local addresses for each physical port, i.e., the port's LID. The entity that communicates with the subnet manager for the purpose of configuring the channel adapter is referred to as the *Subnet Management Agent* (SMA).

Each channel adapter has a *globally unique identifier* (GUID) assigned by the channel adapter vendor. Since local IDs assigned by the subnet manager are not persistent (i.e., might change from one power cycle to the next), the channel adapter GUID (called Node GUID) becomes the primary object to use for persistent identification of a channel adapter. Additionally, each port has a Port GUID assigned by the channel adapter vendor.

3.4.3 SWITCHES

Switches primarily pass packets along based on the destination address in the packet's local route header. A switch also consumes and sources packets required for managing the switch itself. Optionally, a switch port may incorporate the properties of a physical TCA port.

IBA switches are the fundamental routing component for intra-subnet routing (inter-subnet routing is provided by IBA routers). Switches inter-connect links by relaying packets between the links.

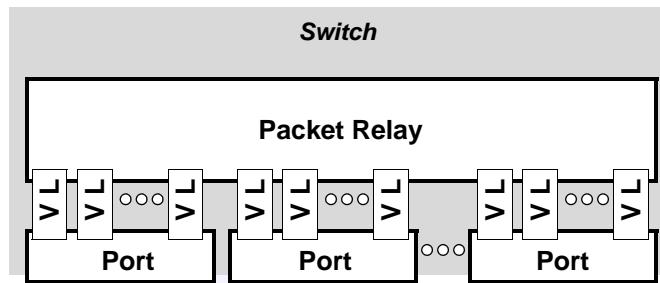


Figure 15 IBA Switch Elements

Switches expose two or more ports between which packets are relayed.

Every destination within the subnet is configured with one or more unique local identifiers (LIDs). Packets contain a destination address that specifies the LID of the destination. From the point of view of a switch, the Destination LID represents a path through the switch. Switch elements are configured with forwarding tables. Individual packets are forwarded within a switch to an outbound port or ports based on the packet's Destination LID and the Switch's forwarding table.

IBA switches support unicast forwarding and may support multicast forwarding. Unicast is the delivery of a single packet to a single destination and multicast is the ability of the fabric to deliver a single packet to multiple destinations.

A subnet manager configures switches including loading their forwarding tables.

To maximize availability, multiple paths between endnodes may be deployed within the switch fabric. If multiple paths are available between switches, the subnet manager can use these paths for redundancy or for destination LID based load sharing. Where multiple paths exist, a subnet manager can re-route packets around failed links by re-loading the forwarding tables of switches in the affected area of the fabric.

3.4.4 ROUTERS

Like switches, routers do not generate nor consume packets (except for management packets). They simply pass them along. Routers forward packets based on the packet's global route header and actually replaces the packet's local route header as the packet passes from subnet to subnet.

IBA routers are the fundamental routing component for inter-subnet routing (intra-subnet routing is provided by IBA switches). Routers inter-connect subnets by relaying packets between the subnets.

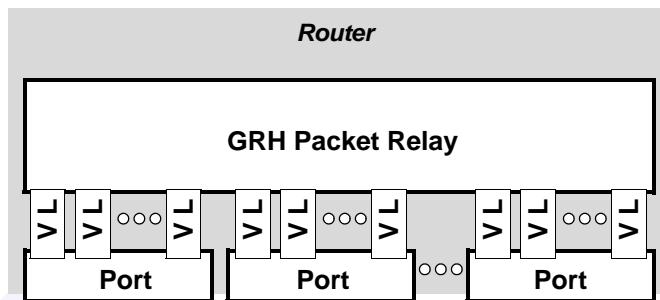


Figure 16 IBA Router Elements

Routers expose one or more ports between which packets are relayed. Routers could be embedded with other devices, such as channel adapters or switches.

Routers are not completely transparent to the endnodes since the source must specify the LID of the router and also provide the GID of the destination.

Each subnet is uniquely identified with a subnet ID known as the Subnet Prefix. The subnet manager programs all ports (via the PortInfo attribute) with the Subnet Prefix for that subnet. When combined with a Port GUID, this combination becomes a port's natural GID. Ports may have other locally administrated GIDs.

From the point of view of a router, the subnet prefix portion of a GID represents a path through the router. IPv6 specifies the protocol performed between routers to derive their forwarding tables. Individual packets are forwarded within a router to an outbound port or ports based on the packet's Destination GID and the router's forwarding table.

Each router forwards the packet through the next subnet to another router until the packet reaches the target subnet. The last router sends the packet using the LID associated with the Destination GID as the Destination LID.

A subnet manager configures routers with information about the subnet such as which VLs to use and partition information.

To maximize availability, multiple paths between subnets may be deployed within the fabric. If multiple paths are available, routers might use those paths for redundancy or for load sharing. Where multiple paths exist, a router can re-route packets around failed subnets.

3.4.5 MANAGEMENT COMPONENTS

IBA management provides for a subnet manager and an infrastructure that supports a number of general management services. The management infrastructure requires a subnet management agent in each node and defines a general service interface that allows additional general services agents.

The architecture defines a common management datagram (MAD) message structure for communicating between managers and management agents.

3.4.5.1 SUBNET MANAGERS

A *Subnet Manager* (SM) is an entity attached to a subnet that is responsible for configuring and managing switches, routers, and channel adapters. A SM can be implemented with other devices, such as a channel adapter or a switch.

IBA supports the notion of multiple subnet managers per subnet and specifies how multiple subnet managers negotiate for one to become the master SM. It does not prohibit other methods between cooperating SMs for governing master/standby relationships

The master SM:

- discovers the subnet topology,
- configures each channel adapter port with a range of LIDs, GIDs subnet prefix, and P_Keys,
- configures each switch with a LID, the subnet prefix, and with its forwarding database,
- maintains the endnode and service databases for the subnet and thus provides a GUID to LID/GID resolution service as well as a services directory.

3.4.5.2 SUBNET MANAGEMENT AGENTS

Each node provides a Subnet Management Agent (SMA) that the SM access through a well known interface called the Subnet Management Interface (SMI). SMI allows for both LID Routed packets and Directed Route packets. Directed routing provides the means to communicate before

switches and end nodes are configured. Only the SMI allows for directed route packets.

3.4.5.3 GENERAL SERVICE AGENTS

Each node may contain additional management agents referred to as General Service Agents (GSA*) that can be accessed through a well known interface called the General Service Interface (GSI). The GSI only supports LID routing. The general service classes defined by IBA are:

- Subnet Administration (SA) - this is a service provided by the SM that allows nodes to access information about the subnet to discover other nodes and services, to resolve paths, and to register its services.
- Performance Management - monitors and reports well-defined performance counters
- Baseboard Management - provides for chassis management using IB-ML as defined in Volume 2.
- SNMP Tunneling - provides SNMP functionality by defining the method for sending and receiving SNMP messages.
- Vendor Defined - allows private extensions that a device vendor may use to remotely configure and manage its devices.
- Communication Management (ComMgt) - Provides for connection establishment and other communication management functions between endnodes.
- Device Management (DevMgt) - Provides I/O resource management.
- Application Specific - this class defines a set of general purpose methods available for use by applications. Applications are free to define new methods and attributes, however they must conform to management datagram formats and restrictions described in a later chapter of this specification.

3.5 IBA FEATURES

3.5.1 QUEUE PAIRS

The QP is the virtual interface that the hardware provides to an IBA consumer; it serves as a virtual communication port for the consumer. The architecture supports up to 2^{24} QPs per channel adapter; the operation on each QP is independent from the others. Each QP provides a high degree of isolation and protection from other QP operations and other consumers. Thus a QP can be considered a private resource assigned to a

single consumer. A consumer might consume multiple QPs as illustrated in [Figure 17](#).

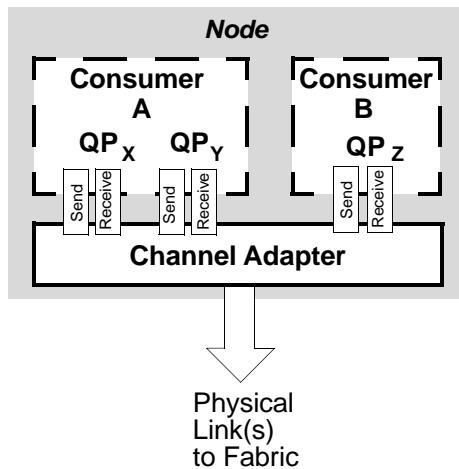


Figure 17 Communication Interface

The consumer creates this virtual communication port by allocating a QP and specifying its class of service. Communication takes place between a source QP and a destination QP. For connection oriented service, each QP is tightly bound to exactly one other QP, usually on a different node. The consumer initiates any communication establishment necessary to bind the QP with the destination QP and configures the QP context with certain information such as Destination LID, service level, and negotiated operating limits.

The consumer posts work requests to a QP to invoke communication through that QP.

3.5.2 TYPES OF SERVICE

Each QP is configured for a certain class of operation (referred to as service type) based on how the sourcing and receiving QPs interact. Both the source and destination QPs must be configured for the same service type. Each service type is based on the following attributes.

- **Connection oriented** versus **datagram** - For connection oriented service, the QP is associated with exactly one other QP and all work requests posted to the QP results in a message sent to the established destination QP. Datagram operation allows a single QP to be used to send and receive messages to/from any appropriate QP on any node.
- **Reliable** versus **Unreliable** - The IBA transport guarantees reliability through a series of acknowledgements. For a reliable service, the transport guarantees delivery of each message, in order

and exactly once in the absence of errors. To deliver this level of reliability, the receiving QP acknowledges all received inbound requests with either a positive acknowledgment (ACK) or a negative acknowledgment (NAK). For an unreliable service, the transport protocol does not guarantee that all data is delivered, although there are mechanisms that allow it to ensure that all received data is delivered at most once and that the delivered data is not corrupted. Also there are certain cases where changes in fabric configuration may cause data to be delivered out of order; the reliable service can detect and recover from these cases. The unreliable service can detect these cases but cannot independently recover from them.

- **IBA transport** versus **other transport** - IBA transport services define a specific transport protocol for channel based and memory based operations. IBA also supports using the channel adapter as a data link engine to send raw packets between nodes which is useful for supporting legacy protocol stacks and legacy networks.

The service types defined by IBA are specified in Table 2

Table 2 Service Types

Service Type	Connection Oriented	Acknowledged	Transport
Reliable Connection	yes	Yes	IBA
Unreliable Connection	yes	no	IBA
Reliable Datagram	no	Yes	IBA
Unreliable Datagram	no	no	IBA
RAW Datagram	no	no	Raw

Certain IBA operations are valid only over certain classes of service. A QP rejects a WQE for an operation that is not valid for the configured class of service.

Connection oriented service requires that the consumer initiate a communication establishment procedure (connection setup) with the target node to associate the QPs and establish QP context prior to any QP operation. Actually, all service classes except for raw datagram need some form of communication setup to associate queue pairs. For reliable datagram service, the node performs a communication establishment process to associate an end-to end (EE) context (explained later) with each target node. All QPs configured for Reliable Datagram service use established EE contexts and the work request specifies which EE context to use for that operation.

Raw Datagrams are similar to unreliable datagrams, except that the source QP does not know the identity of the QP that will receive and process the message. Raw datagrams allow for routers that forward raw datagram packets to non IBA destinations on a disparate fabric (such as a LAN or WAN) that has no equivalent of a QP. There are two types of raw datagrams, IPv6 and Ethertype. IPv6 raw datagrams contain a global routing header and the packet payload contains a transport protocol service data unit as identified in the global routing header. An Ethertype raw datagram contains an Ethernet Type field and the packet payload contains a transport protocol service data unit as identified in the Ethernet Type field.

IBA defines both channel (send/receive) and memory (RDMA) semantics. Raw datagram and Unreliable Datagram services do not support memory semantics.

3.5.3 KEYS

IBA uses various keys to provide isolation and protection. Keys are values assigned by an administrative entity that are used in messages in various ways. The keys themselves do not provide security since the keys are available in messages that cross the fabric and thus any entity that can get to the interior of the fabric can ascertain key values. IBA does place restrictions on how applications can access certain keys.

The keys are:

- **Management Key (M_Key):** Enforces the control of a master subnet manager. Administered by the subnet manager and used in certain subnet management packets. Each channel adapter port has a M_Key that the SM sets and then enables. The SM may assign a different key to each port. Once enabled, the port rejects certain management packets that do not contain the programmed M_Key. Thus only a SM with the programmed M_Key can alter a node's fabric configuration. The SM can prevent the port's M_Key from being read as long as the SM is active. The port maintains a time-out such that the port reverts to an unmanaged state if the SM fails. There is one M_Key for a switch.
- **Baseboard Management Key (B_Key):** Enforces the control of a subnet baseboard manager. Administered by the subnet baseboard manager and used in certain MADs. Each channel adapter port has a B_Key that the baseboard manager sets. The baseboard manager may assign a different key to each port. Once enabled, the port rejects certain management packets that do not contain the programmed B_Key. Thus only a baseboard manager with the programmed B_Key can alter a node's baseboard configuration. The baseboard manager can prevent the port's B_Key from being read as

long as the baseboard manager is active. The port maintains a time-out such that the port reverts to an unmanaged state if the baseboard manager fails. There is one B_Key for a switch.

- **Partition Key (P_Key):** Enforces membership. Administered through the subnet manager by the partition manager (PM). Each channel adapter port contains a table of partition keys which is setup by the PM. QPs are required to be configured for the same partition to communicate (except QP0, QP1, and ports configured for raw datagrams) and thus the P_Key is carried in every IB transport packet. Part of the communication establishment process determines which P_Key that a particular QP or EEC uses. An EEC contains the P_Key for Reliable Datagram service and a QP context contains the P_Key for the other IBA transport types. The P_Key in the QP or EEC is placed in each packet sent, and compared with the P_Key in each packet received. Received packets whose P_Key comparison fails are rejected. Each switch has one P_Key table for management messages and may optionally support partition enforcement tables that filter packets based on their P_Key.
- **Queue Key (Q_Key):** Enforces access rights for reliable and unreliable datagram service (RAW datagram service type not included). Administered by the channel adapter. During communication establishment for datagram service, nodes exchange Q_Keys for particular queue pairs and a node uses the value it was passed for a remote QP in all packets it sends to that remote QP. Likewise, the remote node uses the Q_Key it was provided. Receipt of a packet with a different Q_Key than the one the node provided to the remote queue pair means that packet is not valid and thus rejected.

Q_Keys with the most significant bit set are considered controlled Q_Keys (such as the GSI Q_Key) and a HCA does not allow a consumer to arbitrarily specify a controlled Q_Key. An attempt to send a controlled Q_Key results in using the Q_Key in the QP context. Thus the OS maintains control since it can configure the QP context for the controlled Q_Key for privileged consumers.

- **Memory Keys (L_Key and R_Key):** Enables the use of virtual addresses and provides the consumer with a mechanism to control access to its memory. These keys are administered by the channel adapter through a registration process. The consumer registers a region of memory with the channel adapter and receives an L_Key and R_Key. The consumer uses the L_Key in work requests to describe local memory to the QP and passes the R_Key to a remote consumer for use in RDMA operations. When a consumer queues up a RDMA operation it specifies the R_Key passed to it from the remote consumer and the R_Key is included in the RDMA request packet to the original channel adapter. The R_Key validates the sender's right to

access the destination's memory and provides the destination channel adapter with the means to translate the virtual address to a physical address.

3.5.4 VIRTUAL MEMORY ADDRESSES

IBA is optimized for virtual addressing. That is, an IBA consumer uses virtual addresses in work requests and the channel adapter is able to convert the virtual address to physical address as necessary. For this to happen, each consumer registers regions of virtual memory with the channel adapter and the channel adapter returns 2 memory handles called L_Key and R_Key to the consumer. The consumer then uses the L_Key in each work request that requires a memory access to that region. See [Section 3.5.3](#) for description of L_Key usage.

Memory Registration provides mechanisms that allow IBA consumers to describe a set of virtually contiguous memory locations or a set of physically contiguous memory locations to allow the HCA to access the memory as a virtually contiguous buffer using virtual addresses.

IBA also supports remote memory access (RDMA) that permits a remote consumer to access that registered memory. For RDMA, the consumer passes the R_KEY and a virtual address of a buffer in that memory region to another consumer. That remote consumer supplies that R_Key in its RDMA WQEs that will access memory in the original node. See [Section 3.5.3](#) for detailed description of R_Key usage.

3.5.5 PROTECTION DOMAINS

Not only does memory registration allow the use of virtual memory addressing, but it also provides an increased level of protection against inadvertent and unauthorized access.

Since a consumer might communicate with many different destinations but not wish to let all those destinations have the same access to its registered memory, IBA provides protection domains. Protection domains allow a consumer to control which set of its Memory Regions and Memory Windows can be accessed by which set of its QPs.

Before a consumer allocates a QP or registers memory, it creates one or more protection domains. QPs are allocated to, and memory registered to, a protection domain. L_Keys and R_Keys for a particular memory domain are only valid on QPs created for the same protection domain.

3.5.6 PARTITIONS

Partitioning enforces isolation among systems sharing an InfiniBand fabric. Partitioning is not related to boundaries established by subnets, switches, or routers. Rather a partition describes a set of endnodes within the fabric that may communicate.

Each port of an endnode is a member of at least one partition and may be a member of multiple partitions. A partition manager assigns partition keys (P_Keys) to each channel adapter port. Each P_Key represents a partition. Each QP⁷ and EE context is assigned to a partition and uses that P_Key in all packets it sends and inspects the P_Key in all packets it receives. Reception of an Invalid P_Key causes the packet to be discarded.

Switches and routers may optionally be used to enforce partitioning. In this case the partition manager programs the switch or router with P_Key information and when the switch or router detects a packet with an invalid P_Key, it discards the packet.

3.5.7 VIRTUAL LANES

Virtual lanes (VL) provide a mechanism for creating multiple virtual links within a single physical link. A virtual lane represents a set of transmit and receive buffers in a port. All ports support VL₁₅ which is reserved exclusively for subnet management. There are 15 other VLs (VL₀ to VL₁₄) called data VLs and all ports support at least one data VL (VL₀) and may provide VL₁ to VL_{n-1}, where n is the number of data VLs the port supports).

The actual data VLs that a port uses is configured by the SM and is based on the Service Level (SL) field in the packet. The default is to use VL₀ until the SM determines the number of VLs that are supported by both ends of the link and programs the port's SL to VL mapping table.

7. Except QP0, QP1, and QPs configured for Raw Datagrams type of service.

The port maintains separate flow control over each data VL such that excessive traffic on one VL does not block traffic on another VL.

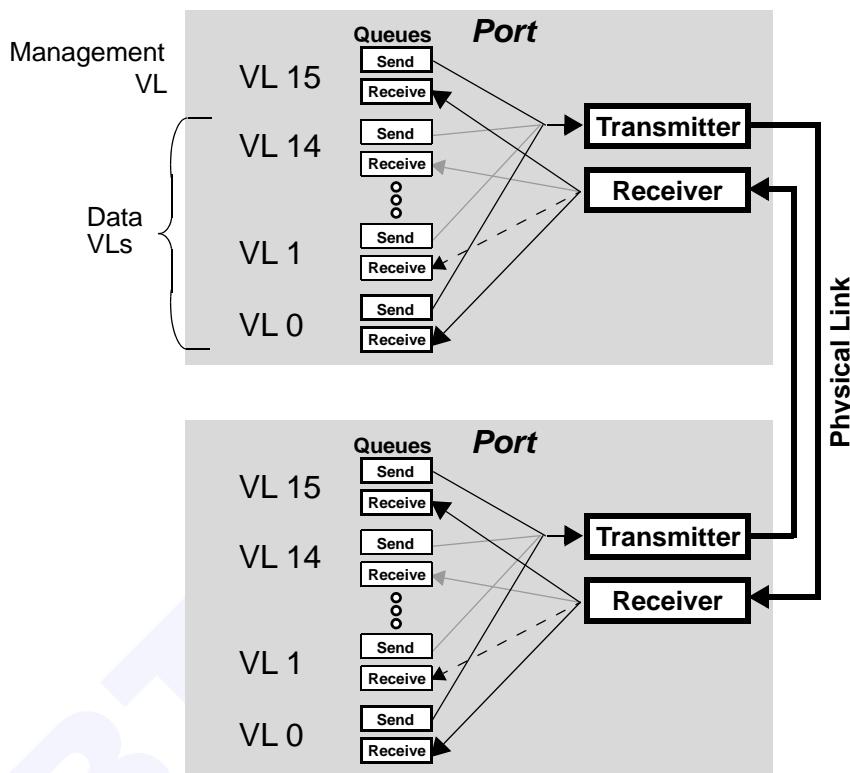


Figure 18 Virtual Lanes

VL assignment exists only between ports at each end of a link and VL assignment on one link is independent of assignments on other links.

Each packet has a SL which is specified in the packet header. As a packet traverses the fabric, its SL determines which VL will be used on each link. Each port maintains a table of SL to VL mapping such that a packet is sent on the appropriate VL.

When the ports at each end of a link support a different number of data VLs, the port with the higher number degrades to the number supported by the other port. Thus for ports that only support a single data VL, all data traffic defaults to VL₀.

3.5.8 QUALITY OF SERVICE

IBA provides several mechanisms that permit a subnet manager to administer various quality of service guarantees for both connected and connectionless services. These mechanisms are Service Level, Service Level to Virtual Lane Mapping, and Partitions. IBA does not define quality of service (QoS) levels (e.g., best effort).

3.5.8.1 SERVICE LEVEL

IBA defines a Service Level (SL) attribute that permits a packet to operate at one of 16 service levels. The definition and purpose of each service level is outside the scope of the architecture and left as a fabric administration policy. Thus the assignment of service levels is a function of each node's communication manager and its negotiation with a subnet manager.

3.5.8.2 SL TO VL MAPPING

Another IBA mechanism that is tied to service levels is virtual lanes. Each packet identifies its SL and as the packet traverses the fabric, the packet's SL is a component in determining which VL is used on the next link. To this end, each port (switches, routers, endnodes) has a SL to VL mapping table that is configured by subnet management. Naturally, for all links that terminate at a port that only supports one data VL, all SLs map to VL₀. Otherwise, subnet management policy determines the mapping of each SL to an available VL.

Packets addressed to QP0 are Subnet Management Packets (SMP) and exclusively use VL15 and their SL is ignored. VL15 (the management VL) is not a data VL and is not used for packets not addressed to QP0.

3.5.8.3 PARTITIONS

Another IBA mechanism that can be tied to service levels is partitioning. Fabric administration can assign certain SLs for particular partitions. This allows the SM to isolate traffic flows between those partitions and even if both partitions operate at the same QoS level, each partition can be guaranteed its fair share of bandwidth regardless of whether nodes in other partitions misbehave or are over subscribed.

3.5.9 INJECTION RATE CONTROL

IBA defines a number of different link bit rates. The lowest bit rate of 2.5 Gb/sec is referred to as a 1x (times one) link. Other link rates are 10Gb/sec (4x) and 30 Gb/sec (x12). Please see the InfiniBand Trade Association website (www.infinibandta.org) for a view into current speed roadmap planning. To support multiple link speeds within a fabric, IBA defines a *Static Rate Control* mechanism that prevents a port with a high speed link from overrunning the capacity of a port with a lower speed link.

As part of the path resolution process, the SubnAdm:PathRecord provides the node with MTU and rate information for the path. Path information is used since either a switch port or the endnode could be the limiting factor.

The example in [Figure 19](#) illustrates that port A with a 12x link speed has the potential for injecting traffic at 3 times the capacity of port B and 12

times the capacity of ports C, D, or E. Additionally port B has the potential for injecting traffic at 4 times the capacity of port C, D, or E. Since traffic tends to be bursty, every time port A sends to one of the other ports, the fabric has a high probability of congesting. Link flow control keeps the fabric from losing packets due to that congestion, but the back pressure will effect other paths that otherwise would not be congested.

IBA solves this problem by defining a static rate control mechanism for ports that operate at link speeds greater than 1x.

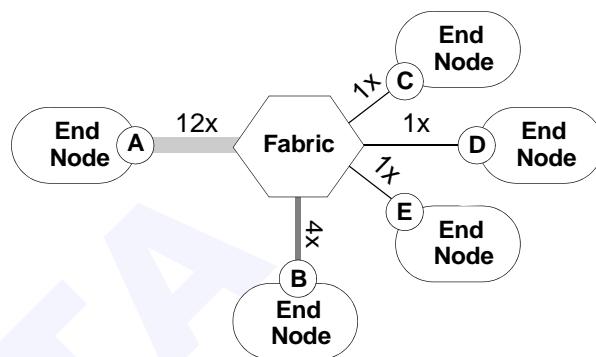


Figure 19

Rate Matching Example

Each destination has a time-out value associated with it and that time-out value is based on the ratio between the source and destination bit rates. When the source and destination bit rates are equal, the time-out values is 0 (not needed). Otherwise when the port transmits a packet to a destination, it puts that destination LID and a time-out value in its static rate control table. The port removes the entry after the time-out period expires. While the entry remains in the table, the port does not send any more packets to that destination (i.e., defers to traffic for other destinations not in the table). When there is no entry in the table, the port transmits the packet by placing it on the appropriate VL output queue.

3.5.10 ADDRESSING

Each endnode contains one or more channel adapters and each channel adapter contains one or more ports. Additionally each channel adapter contains a number of queue pairs (QP).

Each QP has a queue pair number (QPN) assigned by the channel adapter which uniquely identifies the QP within the channel adapter. There are two well-known QPs for each port (QP0 and QP1) and all other QPs are configured for operation through a particular port. For reliable datagram service, it is the EE context rather than the QP context that determines the port.

Packets other than raw datagrams contain the QPN of the destination QP.
When the channel adapter receives a packet, it uses the context of the
destination QPN (and EE context for reliable datagram) to process the
packet.

Each port has a Local ID (LID) assigned by the local subnet manager (i.e.,
the subnet manager for the subnet). Within the subnet, LIDs are unique.
Switches use the LID to route packets within the subnet. The local subnet
manager configures routing tables in switches based on LIDs and where
that port is located with respect to the specific switch. Each packet con-
tains a Source LID (SLID) that identifies the port that injected the packet
into the subnet and a Destination LID (DLID) that identifies the port where
the fabric is to deliver the packet.

IBA also provides for multiple virtual ports within a physical port by de-
fining a LID Mask Control (LMC). The LMC specifies the number of least
significant bits of the LID that a physical port masks (ignores) when vali-
dating that a packet DLID matches its assigned LID. Those bits are not ig-
nored by switches, therefore the subnet manager can program different
paths through the fabric based on those least significant bits. Thus the
port appears to be 2^{LMC} ports for the purpose of routing across the fabric.

Each port also has at least one Global ID (GID) that is in the format of an
IPv6 address. GIDs are globally unique. Each packet optionally contains
a Global Route Header (GRH) specifying a Source GID (SGID) that iden-
tifies the port that injected the packet into the fabric and a Destination GID
(DGID) that identifies the port where the fabric is to deliver the packet.
Routers use the GRH to route packets between subnets. Switches ignore
the GRH.

Each channel adapter has a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) called the
Node GUID assigned by the channel adapter vendor. Each of its ports has
a Port GUID also assigned by the channel adapter vendor. The Port GUID
combined with the local subnet prefix becomes a port's default GID.

Subnet administration provides a GUID to LID/GID resolution service.
Thus a node can persistently identify another node by remembering a
Node or Port GUID.

The address of a QP is the combination of the port address (GID + LID)
and the QPN. To communicate with a QP requires a vector of information
including the port address (LID and/or GID), QPN, service level, path
MTU, and possibly other information. This information can be obtained by
a path query request addressed to Subnet Administration.

Service IDs are used to resolve QPs. Some Service IDs are well known
(i.e., certain functions have a predetermined Service ID) and some are ad-
vertised in an I/O controller's Service Entries list. The subnet manager

provides the GUID to GID/LID resolution, but the target provides a Service ID to QP resolution as part of the communication management process.

In general, the target node of a Request for Communication message uses the Service ID to direct the request to the entity who decides whether to proceed with communication establishment. If the decision is affirmative, the target returns the information necessary to establish communication, which includes the QPN plus other information specific to the transport service type.

A simplified address resolution process is illustrated in [Figure 20](#).

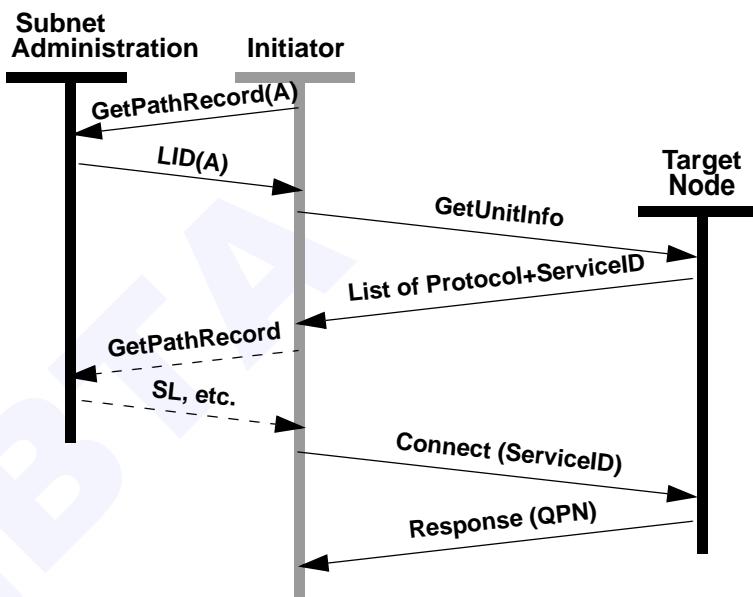


Figure 20

Simplified Address Resolution Process

In the illustration, the target is an I/O controller where the initiator learns the Service ID by querying the IOC for a list of I/O protocols supported. The second path resolution is only necessary if the service being established uses different path characteristics (SL, QoS, MTU, etc.) than the management MADs.

3.5.11 MULTICAST

Multicast is a one-to-many / many-to-many communication paradigm designed to simplify and improve the efficiency of communication between a set of endnodes.

Each multicast group is identified by a unique GID. A node joins and leaves a multicast group through a management action where the node supplies the LID for each port that will participate. This information is distributed to the switches. Each switch is configured with routing information for the multicast traffic which specifies all of the ports where the packet needs to travel. Care is taken to assure there are no loops (i.e., a single

spanning tree such that a packet is not forwarded to a switch that already processed that packet).

The node uses the multicast LID and GID in all packets it sends to that multicast group. When a switch receives a multicast packet (i.e., a packet with a multicast LID in the packet's DLID field) it replicates the packet and sends it out to each of the designated ports except the arrival port. In this fashion, each cascaded switch replicates the packet such that the packet arrives only once at every subscribed endnode.

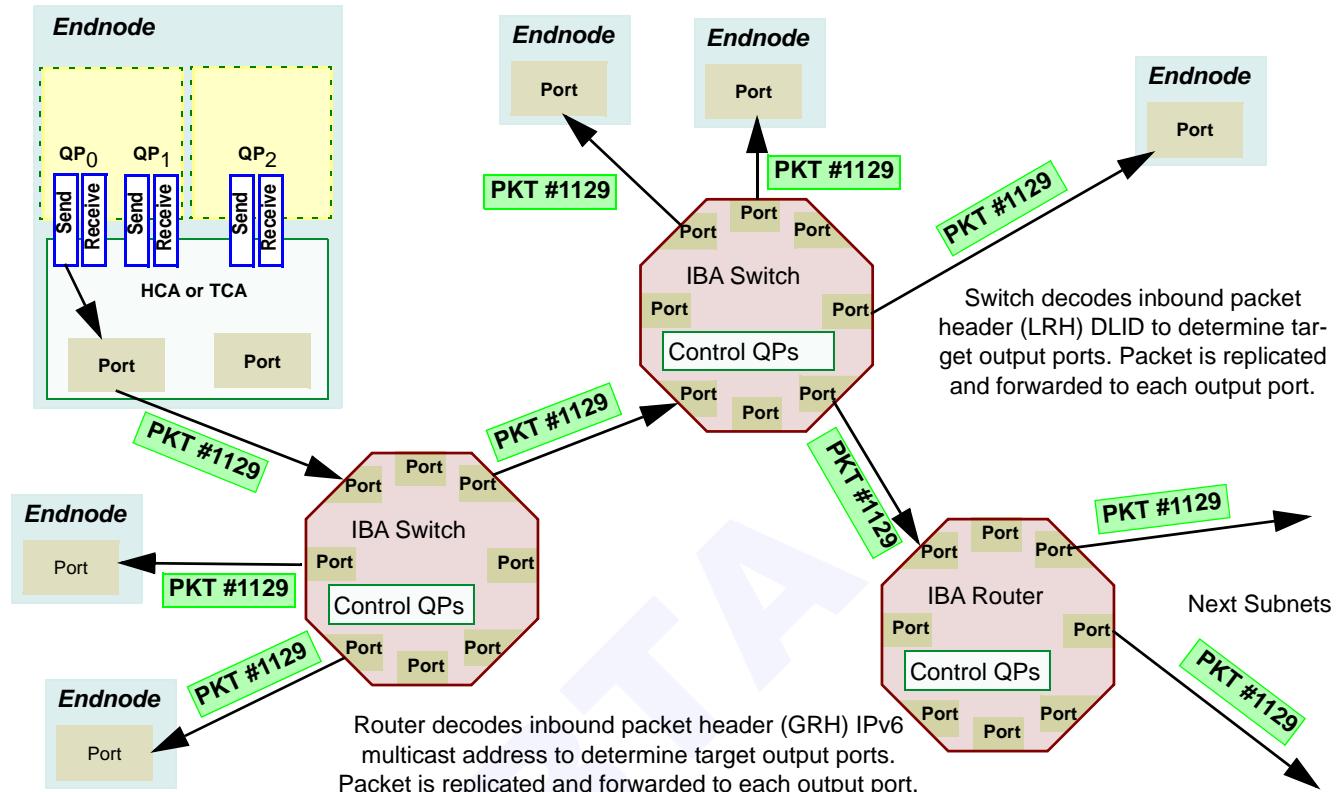
The channel adapter may limit the number of QPs that can register for the same multicast address. The channel adapter distributes multicast packets to QPs registered for that multicast address. A single QP can be registered for multiple addresses for the same port but if a consumer wishes to receive multicast traffic on multiple ports it needs a different QP for each port. The channel adapter recognizes a multicast packet by the packet's DLID or by the special value in the packet's Destination QP field and routes the packet to the QPs registered for that address and port.

Note that the Destination QP field in a multicast packet is not a QPN.

3.5.11.1 MULTICAST EXAMPLE

[Figure 21](#) illustrates an example unreliable multicast IBA operation:

- A packet with PSN = 1129 is received on an IBA routing element (switch or router) port.
- The switching / routing element examines the packet header and extracts the DLID / multicast GID to determine if it corresponds to a multicast group. An implementation may maintain this data as part of its internal route table, e.g. a bit-mask which corresponds to the output ports this packet should be forwarded.
- Switches or routers replicate the packet (implementation dependent) and forwards the packet onto the output port(s)

**Figure 21** Example Unreliable Multicast**3.5.11.2 GROUP MANAGEMENT**

IBA does not define the multicast group management protocol to implement join and leave operations. However, the management interface and associated MADs to implement a multicast group protocol is specified. While these mechanisms are part of Subnet Administration (SA), some actions are implicitly performed by the Subnet Manager (SM). For the following discussion, the term multicast management entity is used to describe the SA/SM expected responsibility with respect to multicast management. Refer to the Subnet Administration attributes of Multicast Member Record for more information.

3.5.11.2.1 MULTICAST GROUP CREATE

The multicast group creation is an explicit operation in IBA, in order to provide a single control of group characteristics and allow members to join subversively. The group has to be created by the multicast management entity before a join can be successful:

- 1) An (administrative) application defines (or determines) a target multicast group address (GID). It specifies particular group characteristics (PMTU, P-Key, etc.) and creates the multicast group by invoking a

multicast group create to the multicast management entity. This application may request a specific multicast GID or have one allocated for it.

- 2) The multicast management entity may notify appropriate routers on the subnet of the new group which is being created (not defined in IBA V 1.1). The router protocol should determine whether this multicast group is in operation within another subnet. If so the router returns the PMTU of the existing multicast group to determine whether the create is allowed or not.
- 3) The multicast management entity maps the multicast group address to a multicast LID.

3.5.11.2.2 MULTICAST GROUP JOIN

The multicast group join algorithm (applies to IBA unreliable datagram multicast groups) is defined as follows:

- 1) Application defines or determines the target multicast group address and invokes a multicast join operation.
- 2) The underlying join implementation determines if the associated endnode is participating in the multicast group. If it is, the application establishes a new local QP and performs the steps required to join this group. If not, the application invokes the management interface to communicate with the multicast group management entity.
- 3) The multicast management entity performs the following steps upon receiving a join request:
 - a) Validate the multicast group address - fail join operation if invalid.
 - b) Validate the requested PMTU - fail join operation if invalid.
 - c) Verify the switch attached to the endnode is capable of multicast operation. The switch either supports multicast operation via packet replication or it can be configured to send all multicast packets to the endnode-attached port.
 - d) If the multicast group address is currently in operation within this subnet, take the following actions:
 - i) Verify all switches and routers which are participating in this multicast group can support the requested PMTU. If they cannot, the join operation fails.
 - ii) Each multicast group is implemented by defining a logical routing tree across the participating switches. Rebuild / modify the routing tree to include the new endnode. The multicast management entity informs fabric management to update the associated route forwarding tables within all switches and routers to reflect this new topology.

- e) If the multicast group address is not operating within this subnet, take the following steps.
 - i) Inform each router within this subnet of the join operation. The router protocol should determine whether this multicast group is in operation within another subnet. If so, the router returns the PMTU of the existing multicast group to determine whether the create and subsequent join operation is allowed or not.
 - ii) Map the multicast group address to an unused multicast LID.
 - iii) Establish a multicast routing tree and update the associated switch and router route forwarding tables accordingly.
 - iv) Create the group and assign the PMTU to the multicast group.
 - v) Return the multicast LID and associated group characteristics to the endnode and allow multicast operations to be initiated.
 - f) Each router within this subnet is informed of successful multicast join operation. Routers invoke the appropriate multicast group management operations to add this subnet as participating in the associated multicast group. This protocol is outside the IBA specification.
- 4) Add the member to the group.

3.5.11.2.3 MULTICAST GROUP LEAVE

When an application leaves a multicast group, the following algorithm is used:

- 1) The application's QP is removed as a target for the multicast group. If there are QPs still participating in this multicast group, no further action is required.
- 2) If there are no more QPs on this port participating within the multicast group, the leave implementation informs the multicast management entity that this endnode is no longer participating in this multicast group. The multicast management entity takes the following step:
 - a) Update the switch and router route forwarding table(s) to effectively remove this endnode as a target for packets associated with this multicast group.
 - b) Remove the member from the group.

3.5.11.2.4 MULTICAST GROUP DELETE

When an (administrative) application deems there is no need for a multicast group or there are no other endnodes participating in a multicast group, the multicast group may be deleted. Upon receiving the delete request, the multicast management entity takes the following steps:

- 1) Unmap the multicast LID from the multicast group address.

- 2) Inform each router within this subnet that this subnet is no longer participating in the associated multicast group.

3.5.11.3 MULTICAST PRUNE

To improve fabric efficiency, the multicast group management entity should periodically verify that all endnodes and routers participating within a multicast group are still participating and if they are not, it should prune them from the multicast group by performing the multicast group leave algorithm. The verification period is outside the scope of IBA.

3.5.12 VERBS

IBA describes a service interface between a host channel adapter and a consumer of the I/O services provided by that host channel adapter. The required behavior exposed to the consumer is described by a set of semantics called *Verbs*. Verbs describe operations that take place between a host channel adapter and the consumer based on a particular queuing model for submitting work requests to the channel adapter and returning completion status.

The intent of Verbs is not to specify an API, but rather to describe the interface sufficiently to permit an API to be defined that allows a consumer of I/O services to take full advantage of the architecture.

Verbs describe the parameters necessary for configuring and managing the channel adapter, allocating (creating and destroying) queue pairs, configuring QP operation, posting work requests to the QP, getting completion status from the completion queue.

3.6 CHANNEL & MEMORY SEMANTICS

IBA communications provide the user with both channel semantics and memory semantics since both are useful for I/O and IPC. Channel semantics, sometimes called Send/Receive, refers to the communication style used in a classic I/O channel – one party pushes the data and the destination party determines the final destination of the data. That is, the transaction is double-ended requiring cooperation between the requester side and the responder side. The message transmitted on the wire only names the destination's QP, the message does not describe where in the destination consumer's memory space the message content will be written. Instead, the destination QP contains addressing information used to deliver the message to the appropriate memory location.

With memory semantics the initiating party directly reads or writes the virtual address space of a remote node. The remote party needs only communicate the location of the buffer; it is not involved with the actual transfer of the data. Hence, this style is sometimes referred to as single-ended communications.

A typical I/O transaction might use a combination of channel and memory semantics. For example, a host process might initiate an I/O operation by using channel semantics to send a disk write command to an I/O device. The I/O device examines the command and uses memory semantics to read the data buffer directly from the memory space of the processor node. After the operation is completed, the I/O unit then uses channel semantics to push an I/O completion message back to the processor node.

3.6.1 COMMUNICATION INTERFACE

“*Channel adapter*” is the term that identifies the hardware that connects a node to the IBA fabric (and includes any supporting software). The channel adapter for a processor node is called a “*host channel adapter*” (HCA) and a channel adapter in an I/O node is a “*target channel adapter*” (TCA). A consumer communicates through one or more “queue pairs” (QP). An HCA typically supports hundreds or thousands of QPs while a TCA might support less than ten QPs.

It is the QP that is the communication interface. The user initiates work requests (WR) that causes work items, called WQEs, to be placed onto the queues and the channel adapter executes the work item.

Specifically, the operations supported for Send Queues are:

- **Send Buffer** -- a channel semantic operation to push a local buffer to a remote QP’s receive buffer. The Send WR includes a gather list to combine data from several virtually contiguous local buffer segments into a single message that is pushed to a remote QP’s Receive Buffer. The local buffer’s virtual addresses must be in the address space of the consumer that created the local QP.
- **RDMA Read** -- a memory semantic operation to read a virtually contiguous buffer on a remote node. The RDMA Read operation reads a virtually contiguous buffer on a remote endnode and writes the data to a local memory buffer.

Like the Send operation, the local buffer must be in the address space of the consumer that created the local QP.

The remote buffer must be in the address space of the remote consumer owning the remote QP targeted by the RDMA Read.

- **RDMA Write** -- a memory semantic operation to write a virtually contiguous buffer on a remote node. The WR contains a gather list of local buffer segments and the virtual address of the remote buffer into which the data from the local buffer segments are written.

Like the Send WR, the local buffer must be in the address space of the consumer that created the local QP.

The remote buffer must be in the address space of the remote consumer owning the remote QP targeted by the RDMA Write.

- **Atomic** -- a memory semantic operation to do an atomic operation on a remote 64 bit word. The Atomic operation is a combined Read, Modify, and Write operation.

An example of an Atomic operation is the Compare and Swap if Equal operation. The WR specifies a remote memory location, a compare value, and a new value. The remote QP reads the specified memory location, compares that value to the compare value supplied in the message, and only if those values are equal, then the QP writes the new value to that same memory location. In either case the remote QP returns the value it read from the memory location to the requesting QP. The other atomic operation is the FetchAdd operation where the remote QP reads the specified memory location, returns that value to the requesting QP, adds to that value a value supplied in the message, and then writes the result to that same memory location.

- **Memory Bind** -- a memory management operation that changes the binding of a memory window. The Bind Memory Window operation associates a previously allocated Memory Window to a specified address range within an existing Memory Region, along with a specified set of remote access privileges.

For Receive Queues, there is only a single type of WR:

- **Post Receive Buffer** -- a channel semantic operation describing a local buffer into which incoming Send messages are written. The WR includes a scatter list describing several local buffer segments. The contents of an incoming Send message is written to these buffer segments in the order specified. The buffer's virtual addresses must be in the address space of the consumer that created the local QP. A WR without a scatter-gather list may be used to receive Immediate Data from a Write or a zero length Send operation.

Zero processor copy data transfer, with no kernel involvement, is key in providing high bandwidth, low latency communication. A consumer can transfer a data buffer via the QP directly from where the buffer resides in memory. Furthermore, the protection provided by R_Keys & L_Keys (memory registration) removes the need for the OS to validate data transfers. Thus the OS may allow posting the WQE from user-mode, bypassing the operating system, and thus consuming fewer instruction cycles.

IBA operations support the use of virtual addresses and existing virtual memory protection mechanisms to assure correct and proper access to all memory. Thus IBA applications are not required to use physical addressing for any operation.

A consumer can use either of two mechanisms to enable remote access to its memory (RDMA). First, when registering its memory (creating a Memory Region), the consumer can simply enable remote access for the entire Memory Region. If more control of remote access is desired, the consumer can allocate a Memory Window and bind it to a subset of an existing Memory Region. Either approach results in an R_Key. The consumer then provides that R_Key and the virtual address of the data buffer to a remote node for use in subsequent RDMA operations. Only an incoming RDMA request with a correct R_Key can gain access to the specific area of memory. Furthermore, the QP and the Memory Region or Window must be in the same protection domain.

3.6.2 IBA TRANSPORT SERVICES

The IBA transport mechanisms provide multiple classes of communication services. When a QP is created, it is configured to provide one of these classes of transport services:

- **Reliable Connection** (acknowledged - connection oriented)
- **Reliable Datagram** (acknowledged - multiplexed)
- **Unreliable Connection** (unacknowledged - connection oriented)
- **Unreliable Datagram** (unacknowledged - connectionless)
- **Raw Datagram** (unacknowledged - connectionless)

The **Reliable Connection** service associates a local QP with one and only one remote QP. Thus a Send Buffer WQE placed on one QP causes data to be written into the Receive Buffer of the associated QP. RDMA operations operate on the address space of the associated QP.

A connected service requires each consumer to create a QP for each consumer with which it wishes to communicate. Thus if there are M consumers on each of N platforms that all wish to communicate via connected class of service, then each platform requires $M^2 * N$ QPs. This assumes that each consumer on a particular platform communicates with con-

sumers (including itself) on that same platform by taking advantage of the ability to connect a QP to a QP on the same node.

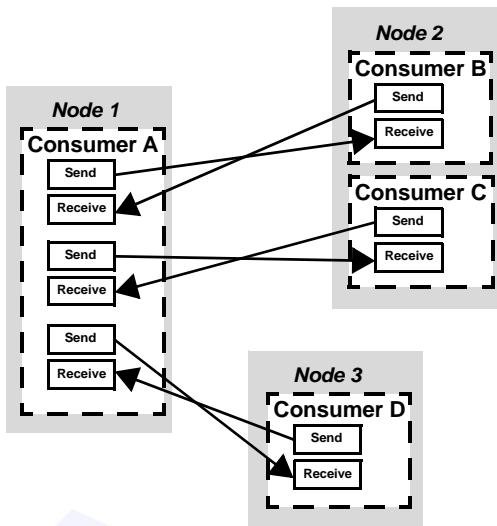


Figure 22 **Connected Service**

The Reliable Connection is reliable because the channel adapter can maintain sequence numbers and acknowledges all messages. A combination of hardware and channel adapter software retries any failed communications. The consumer of the QP sees reliable communications even in the presence of bit errors, receive buffer under runs, network congestion, and if alternate paths exist in the fabric, failures of fabric switches or links.

The acknowledgments ensure data is delivered reliably between the associated QPs and thus between each node's memory.

The acknowledgment is not a consumer level acknowledgment -- it doesn't validate that the receiving consumer has consumed the data. The acknowledgment only means the data has reached the destination.

The **Unreliable Connection** service also associates a local QP with one and only one remote QP. Thus a Send Buffer request placed on one QP causes data to be written into the Receive Buffer of the associated QP. RDMA Write operations operate on the address space of the associated QP.

Unlike reliable connection service, unreliable connection does not acknowledge and thus does not have the ability to resend lost or corrupted messages. Rather, lost or corrupted messages are simply dropped. Since there is no acknowledgment, RDMA Reads and Atomic operations are not supported. Because packets of an RDMA Write might be lost or corrupted,

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
partial writing of a buffer might take place, but once a missing or corrupted packet is received, the write operation ceases until the start of a new message.

The **Unreliable Datagram** service is connectionless and unacknowledged. It allows the consumer of the QP to communicate with any unreliable datagram QP on any node. Receive operation allows incoming messages from any unreliable datagram QP on any node.

The Unreliable Datagram service greatly improves the scalability of IBA. Since the service is connectionless, an endnode with a fixed number of QPs can communicate with far more consumers and platforms compared to the number possible using the Reliable Connection and Unreliable Connection service.

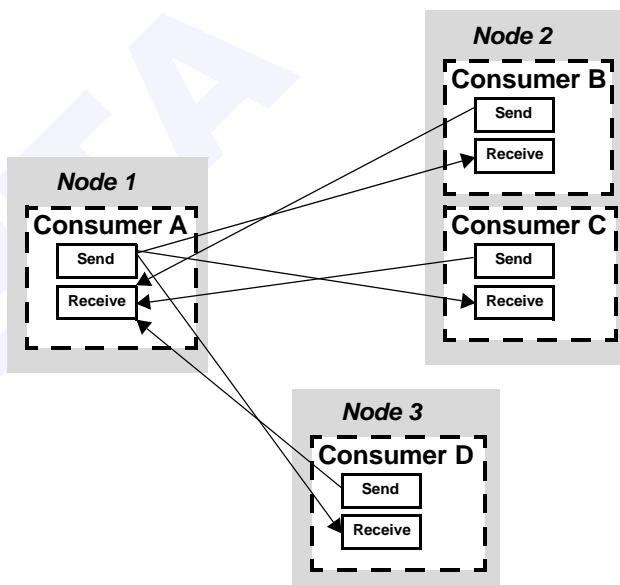


Figure 23 **Datagram Service**

This is the class of service used by management to discover and integrate new IBA switches and endnodes. It does not provide the reliability guarantees of the other service classes, but operates with less state maintained at each endnode. Unlike other services where messages are conveyed by multiple packets, the maximum message length is constrained in size to fit in a single packet.

The **Reliable Datagram** (RD) service is multiplexed over connections between nodes called End-to-end contexts (EEC) which allows each RD QP to communicate with any RD QP on any node with an established EEC. Multiple QPs can use the same EEC and a single QP can use multiple EECs (one EEC for each remote node per reliable datagram domain).

A reliable datagram domain (RDD) determine which sets of RD QPs can access which sets of EECs. Some possible reasons for multiple RDDs are traffic in different partitions, different QoS characteristics, security, and performance.

The EEC uses sequence numbers and acknowledgments associated with each message to ensure the same degree of reliability as with the Reliable Connection service. Each channel adapter maintains end-to-end specific state for each node to keep track of the sequence numbers, acknowledgments, and time-out values. Each EEC is shared by all Reliable Datagram QPs for that RDD.

For reliable datagram service on a per RDD basis, each consumer needs only to create a single QP and the node creates an EE context for each platform with which it communicates. Thus if there are M consumers on each of N platforms that all wish to communicate via IBA reliable datagram service, then each platform requires M QPs and N end-to-end contexts.

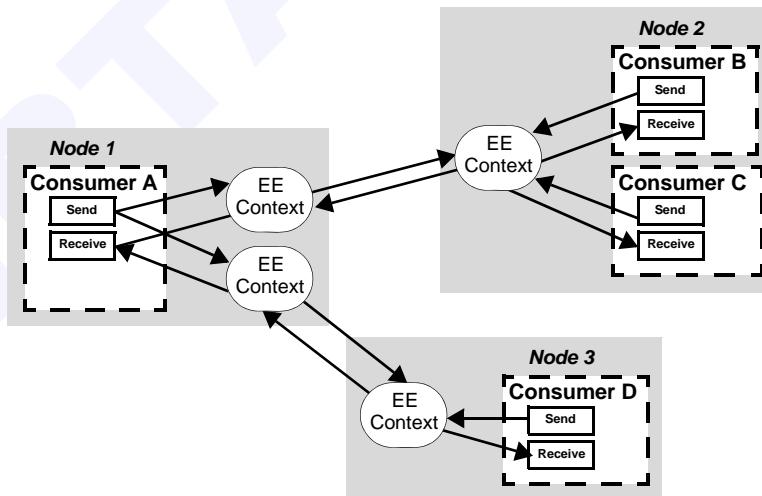


Figure 24 Reliable Datagram Service

The **Extended Reliable Connection** service (**XRC**) is a hybrid of the previous two: On the requester side it behaves just as a normal Reliable Connected send queue would behave, but on the receive side there exists a data structure similar in concept to that found on the receive side of a Reliable Datagram service. The objective of XRC service is to improve scalability of all-to-all data patterns but while limiting the growth in the data structures required at either end to do so. XRC achieves its goal without incurring a significant constraint found in the Reliable Datagram service which is limited to single packet messages.

The **Raw Datagram** is a data link service that allows a QP to send and receive raw datagram messages. There are two types of raw datagram service (EtherType and IPv6). The EtherType raw datagram packet contains a generic transport header that is not interpreted by the channel adapter, but it specifies the protocol type. The IPv6 raw datagram contains a global route header that identifies the protocol type.

Using IPv6 raw datagram service, the IBA channel adapter can support standard protocols layered atop IPv6, such as TCP and UDP. Thus native IPv6 packets can be bridged into the IBA SAN and delivered directly to a port and to its IPv6 raw datagram QP. This allows the raw datagram QP consumer to support multiple transport protocols.

Using EtherType raw datagram service, the IBA channel adapter can support standard protocols the same as Ethernet, including TCP and UDP as well as IPv4. Thus native ethernet packets can be bridged into the IBA subnet and delivered directly to a port and to its EtherType raw datagram QP.

When the QP is created, the consumer registers with the channel adapter in order to direct received datagrams to it (one QP for IPv6 and one for EtherType).

3.7 IBA LAYERED ARCHITECTURE

IBA operation can be described as a series of layers. The protocol of each layer is independent of the other layers. Each layer is dependent on the service of the layer below it and provides service to the layer above it.

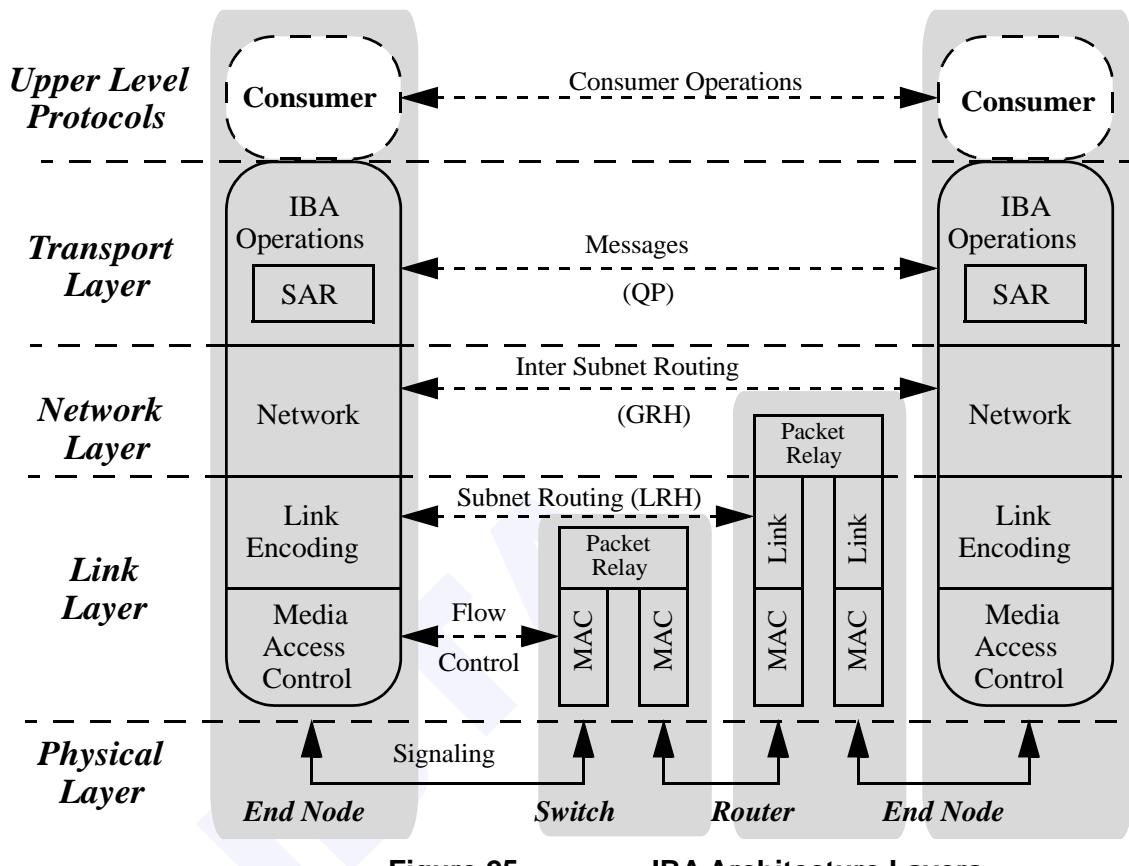


Figure 25 IBA Architecture Layers

3.7.1 PHYSICAL LAYER

The physical layer specifies how bits are placed on the wire to form symbols and defines the symbols used for framing (i.e., start of packet & end of packet), data symbols, and fill between packets (Idles). It specifies the signaling protocol as to what constitutes a validly formed packet (i.e., symbol encoding, proper alignment of framing symbols, no invalid or non-data symbols between start and end delimiters, no disparity errors, synchronization method, etc.)

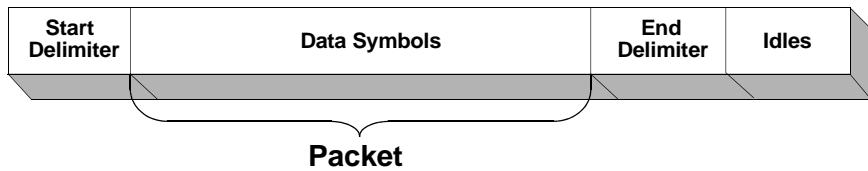


Figure 26 IBA Packet Framing

The physical layer specification is in Volume 2. It specifies the bit rates, media, connectors, signaling techniques, etc.

3.7.2 LINK LAYER

The link layer describes the packet format and protocols for packet operation, e.g. flow control and how packets are routed within a subnet between the source and destination. There are two types of packets.

- **Link Management Packet** - these are packets used to train and maintain link operation. These packets are created and consumed within the Link Layer and are not subject to flow control. Link management packets are used to negotiate operational parameters between the ports at each end of the link such as bit rate, link width, etc. They are also used to convey flow control credits and maintain link integrity. Link management packets are never forwarded to other links.
- **Data Packet** - these are the packets that convey IBA operations and they consist of a number of different headers, which might or might not be present.

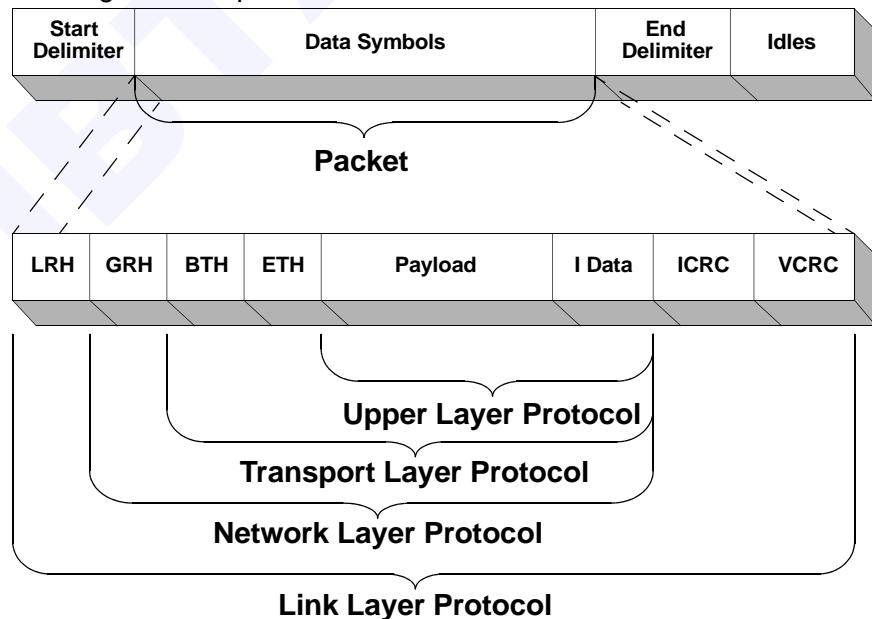


Figure 27 IBA Data Packet Format

The **Local Route Header (LRH)** is always present and it identifies the local source and local destination ports where switches will route the packet and also specifies the *Service Level (SL)* and *VL* on which the packet travels. The *VL* is changed as the packet traverses the subnet but the other fields remain unchanged.

The subnet manager assigns unique LIDs to each port of a channel adapter as well as the management entity of a switch. The source places the LID of the destination in the LRH and switches route the packet to that destination. If the packet is to be routed to another subnet, the packet's destination LID contains the LID of a router, otherwise the packet's destination LID specifies a LID assigned to a channel adapter (or switch, for certain of management packets).

There are two CRCs in each packet. The **Invariant CRC** (ICRC) covers all fields which should not change as the packet traverses the fabric. The **Variant CRC** (VCRC) covers all of the fields of the packet. The combination of the two CRCs allow switches and routers to modify appropriate fields and still maintain an end to end data integrity for the transport control and data portion of the packet. The coverage of the ICRC is different depending on whether the packet is routed to another subnet (i.e. contains a global route header).

Link level flow control is a credit based method where the receiver on each link sends credits to the transmitter on the other end of the link. Credits are per VL and indicate the number of data packets that the receiver can accept on that VL. The transmitter does not send data packets unless the receiver indicates it has room. VL15 (the management VL) is not subject to flow control.

3.7.3 NETWORK LAYER

The network layer describes the protocol for routing a packet between subnets.

The **Global Route Header** (GRH) is present in a packet that traverses multiple subnets. The GRH identifies the source and destination ports using GID in the format of an IPv6 address. Routers forward the packet based on the content of the GRH. As the packet traverses different subnets, the routers modify the content of the GRH and replace the LRH. But the source and destination GIDs do not change and are protected by the ICRC field. Routers recalculate the VCRC but not the ICRC. This preserves end to end transport integrity.

Each subnet has a unique subnet ID, the Subnet Prefix. When combined with a Port GUID, this combination becomes a port's Global ID (GID). A node might have other locally administrated Global IDs. The source places the GID of the destination in the GRH and the LID of the router in the LRH. Each router forwards the packet through the next subnet to another router until the packet reaches the target subnet. The last router replaces the LRH using the LID of the destination.

3.7.4 TRANSPORT LAYER

The network and link protocols deliver a packet to the desired destination. The transport portion of the packet delivers the packet to the proper QP and instructs the QP how to process the packet's data.

The transport layer is responsible for segmenting an operation into multiple packets when the message's data payload is greater than the *maximum transfer unit* (MTU) of the path. The QP on the receiving end reassembles the data into the specified data buffer in its memory.

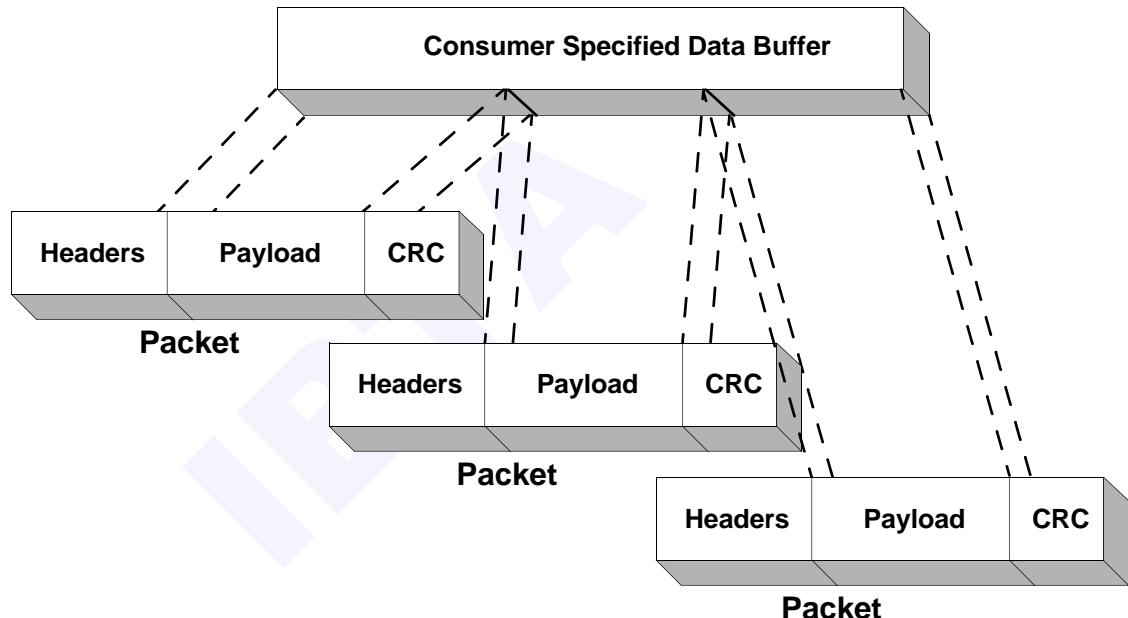


Figure 28 Segmentation of Data
The **Base Transport Header** (BTH) is present in all packets except for RAW datagrams. It specifies the destination QP and indicates the operation code, packet sequence number, and partition.

The operation code identifies if the packet is the first, last, intermediate, or only packet of a message and specifies the operation (Send, RDMA Write, Read, Atomic).

The packet sequence number (PSN) is initialized as part of the communications establishment process and increments each time the QP creates a new packet. The receiving QP tracks the received PSN to determine if it lost a packet. For reliable service, the receiver sends an ACK or NAK packet back to notify the sender that packets were or were not received correctly. In this case the recipient discards subsequent packets until the sender resends the missing messages. For unacknowledged service, when the recipient detects a missing packet, it aborts the current opera-

tion and discards all subsequent packets until it receives one that specifies a first or only operation code. Then operation continues.

There are various **Extended Transport Headers** (ETH) conditionally present depending on the class of service and the operation code.

For reliable datagram service, the ETH identifies the **EE context** that the QP uses to detect missing packets.

The first message of an RDMA Read or Write operation contains an **RDMA ETH** that specifies the virtual address, R_Key, and total length of the data buffer to read or write. Subsequent RDMA write packets provide the remainder of the data. The QP validates that the memory is properly registered for access by that QP and that the total data written does not overrun the length specified. For an RDMA Read operation, the QP fetches the data, segments it into Read Response packets and sends them to the originator. When receiving a RDMA response, the QP writes the data into the buffer specified in the WQE of the RDMA Read Request.

An Atomic operation contains an **Atomic ETH** that specifies the virtual address and R_Key of the memory location that is the object of the operation as well as 2 operands. The QP validates that the memory is properly registered for access by that QP. The QP fetches the data, returns that value to the originator, performs the operation, and writes the result back to memory. For the Compare & Swap operation, the QP compares the content of the memory location with the first operand, and if they match, then it writes the second operand to that same location. Otherwise it does not modify it. For the Fetch & Add operation, the QP performs an unsigned add using the 64-bit Add Data field in the Atomic ETH, and writes the result back to the same memory location. In either case, operation is atomic such that another QP is not allowed to modify that memory location between the time of the read and the subsequent write.

The **Immediate Data** (IMMDT) field is optionally present in RDMA WRITE and SEND messages. It contains data that the consumer placed in the Send or RDMA Write request and the receiving QP will place that value in the current receive WQE. An RDMA Write with immediate data will consume a receive WQE even though the QP did not place any data into the receive buffer since the IMMDT is placed in a CQE that references the receive WQE and indicates that the WQE has completed.

For reliable connection service, IBA defines an end-to-end message level flow control. This allows the receiver to send credits to the transmitter as WQEs are posted to the receive queue. The QP tracks the number of WQEs posted and retired from the receive queue and keeps track of the number of messages received. It adds these numbers together to achieve a message limit value which it sends to the transmitter on the other end of the connection. The transmitter keeps track of the total number of mes-

sages that it creates and stops transmitting when it reaches the limit value established by the other end of the connection.

3.7.5 UPPER LAYER PROTOCOLS

As illustrated in [Figure 29](#), IBA supports any number of upper layer protocols by various user consumers. IBA also defines messages and protocols for certain management functions. These management protocols are separated into Subnet Management and Subnet Services. Both of these have unique properties.

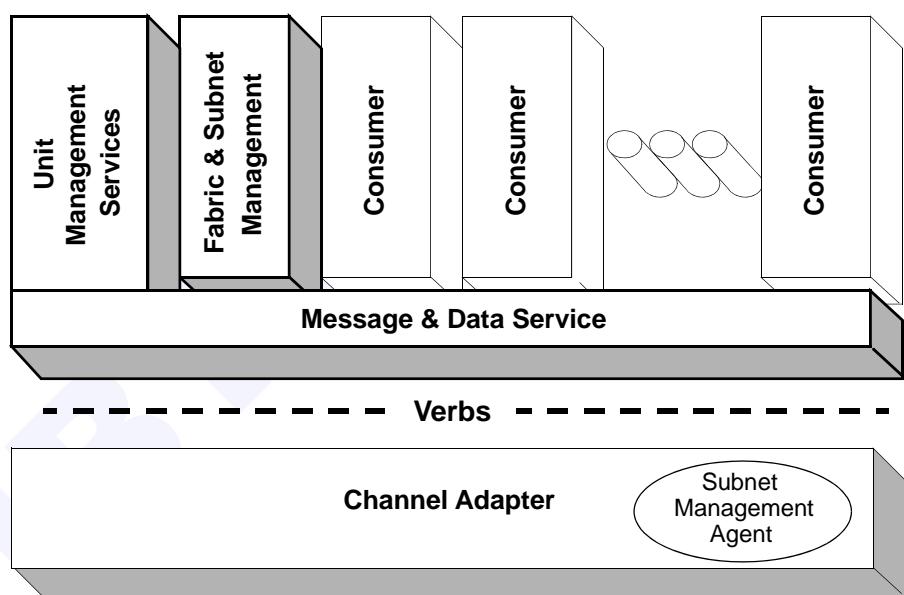


Figure 29 Upper Layers

3.7.5.1 SUBNET MANAGEMENT

Subnet Management is actually divided between the Subnet Manager (SM) application and the Subnet Management Agent (SMA). There only needs to be one subnet manager per subnet and it can reside in any node including switches and routers. Subnet management uses a special class of *Management Datagram* (MAD) called a *Subnet Management Packet* (SMP) which is directed to a special queue pair (QP0). As illustrated in [Figure 30](#), each port has a QP0, and each node contains an SMA that:

- processes *Get()* and *Set()* SMPs received on QP0
- sends *GetResp()* SMPs out QP0
- sends *Trap()* SMPs out QP0.

A subnet manager:

- sends SMPs out QP0 to any port's QP0
- processes all SMPs received on QP0 except SMPs which are processed by that node's SMA.

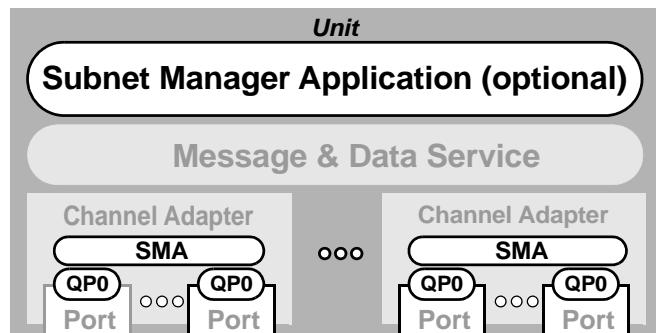


Figure 30 Subnet Management Elements

3.7.5.2 GENERAL SERVICES

General Service Agents (GSA*) actually consists of a number of management service agents as illustrated in [Figure 31](#). Some of the services are optional. General services use a message format called a *General Management Packet* (GMP) which is a *Management Datagram* (MAD) and is normally directed to a special queue pair (QP1) called the General Service Interface (GSI). As illustrated in [Figure 31](#), each port has a QP1, and all GMPs received on QP1 are processed by the one of the GSAs. The GSA is actually able to redirect GMPs for its particular class of service to another queue pair, allowing each GSA to maintain its own communication interface.

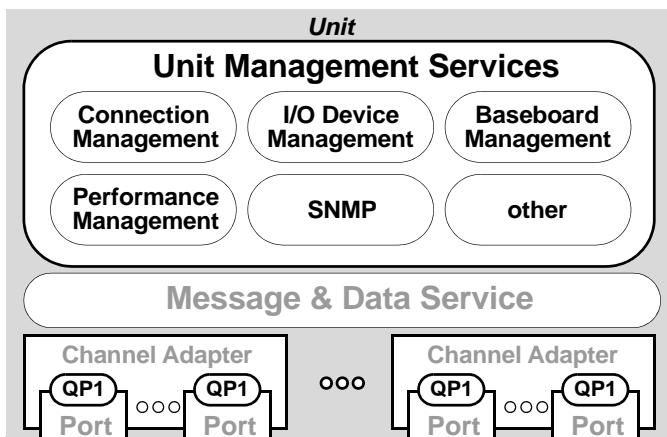


Figure 31 General Services

3.8 IBA TRANSACTION FLOW

A consumer interacts with an IBA channel adapter through a data structure called the Queue Pair, consisting of a Send Queue and a Receive Queue. A message is initiated by posting a work request which results in a WQE being placed on the Send Queue. In general, QPs are symmetric meaning that traffic can be carried in either direction. There is an exception for the XRC service, which is asymmetric.

The channel adapter detects the WQE posting and accesses the WQE. The channel adapter interprets the command, validates the WQE's virtual addresses, translates it to physical addresses, and accesses the data. The outgoing message buffer is split into one or more packets. To each packet the channel adapter adds a transport header (sequence numbers, opcode, etc.). If the destination resides on a remote subnet the channel adapter adds a network header (source & destination GIDs). The channel adapter then adds the local route header and calculates both the variant and invariant checksums.

The flow of packets is subject to the link-level protocol over each link.

A packet is the unit of information that is routed through the IBA fabric. The packet is an endnode-to-endnode construct, in that it is created and consumed by endnodes. As the packet passes through switches, the switch may need to change the virtual lane and thus must replace the variant CRC with a new value but it does not touch the invariant CRC. If the packet passes through a router, the router changes the local route header and updates fields in the global route header, again updating the variant CRC but not changing the invariant CRC. Each switch and router moves the packet closer to its ultimate destination.

When a packet arrives at its final destination it goes through normal validity checks (e.g., framing violations, disparity, illegal characters, alignment, etc.) and both VCRC and ICRC are checked for integrity. The transport header identifies the target QP and the channel adapter uses context from that QP to validate that the packet came from the correct source, etc. and checks that the packet sequence number is valid (no missed packets). For a Send operation, the QP retrieves the address of the receive buffer from the next WQE on its receive queue, translates it to physical addresses, and accesses memory writing the data. If this is not the last packet of the message, the QP saves the current write location in its context and waits for the next packet at which time it continues writing the receive buffer until it receives a packet that indicates it is the last packet of the operation. It then updates the receive WQE, retires it, and sends an acknowledge message to the originator.

For reliable service types, if the QP detects one or more missing packets, it sends a NAK message to the originator indicating its next expected se-

quence number. The originator can then resend starting with the expected packet.

When the originator receives an acknowledgment, it creates a CQE on the CQ and retires the WQE from the send queue.

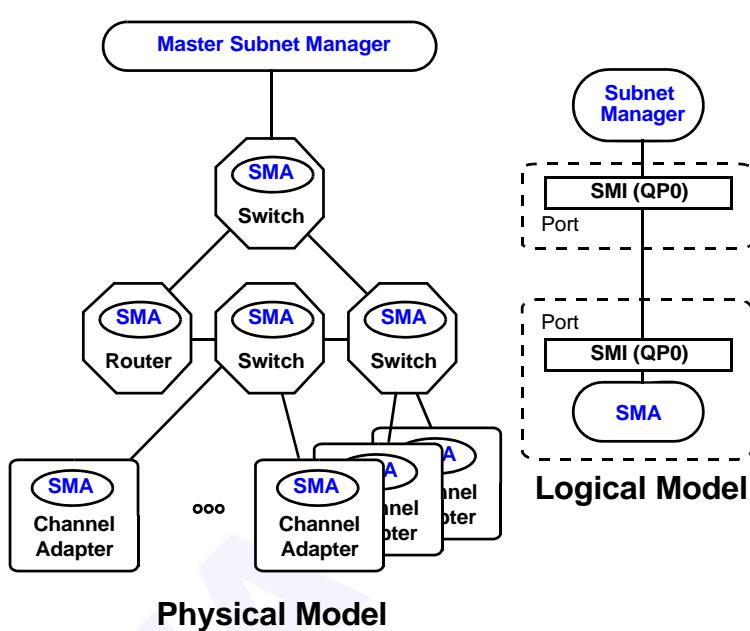
AQP can have multiple outstanding messages at any one time but the target always acknowledges in the order sent, thus WQEs are retired in the order that they are posted.

3.9 IBA MANAGEMENT INFRASTRUCTURE

IBA management defines a common management infrastructure for

- Subnet Management - provides methods for a subnet manager to discover and configure IBA devices and manage the fabric.
- General management services
 - Subnet administration - provides nodes with information gathered by the SM and provides a registrar for nodes to register general services they provide.
 - Communication establishment & connection management between endnodes
 - Mechanisms to discover and manage I/O devices “behind” channel adapters
 - Configuration management - an authority for assigning I/O resources to hosts
 - Performance management - monitors and reports well-defined performance counters
 - Baseboard management - provides for power & chassis management using IB-ML as defined in Volume 2
 - SNMP Tunneling (SNMP) - provides method for sending and receiving information between management agents and management applications. This includes Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Desktop Management Interface (DMI), and Common Information Model (CIM), as well as other standard and proprietary interfaces.

The subnet management physical and logical models are illustrated in [Figure 32](#). The general service models are illustrated in [Figure 33](#) and [Figure 34](#).

**Figure 32 Subnet Management Models**

Every channel adapter, switch, and router has a Subnet Management Agent (SMA) that responds to subnet management packets. Communication between the SM and SMAs use a well-known interface called the Subnet Management Interface (SMI) where each port has a QP with QP Number 0 (QP0) that is dedicated to sending and receiving SMPs.

Protection - The subnet manager can place a key (M_Key) in each node which can not be read by other nodes and prevents nodes without the M_Key from modifying a node's configuration. The SM only shares the M_Key with trusted peers as necessary. IBA also provides a lease expiration mechanism such that if the SM dies before it shares M_Key information with a successor, the lease expires, and the node returns to a state that allows the successor SM to establish a new M_Key.

IBA management defines the underlying interfaces and principles that allow IBA devices and the corresponding fabric to be discovered, initialized, and controlled. It defines a common management model and framework applicable to IBA-managed elements, identifies those elements, and defines their managed features. Management applications use this infrastructure to manage the IBA devices and communicate with other management applications.

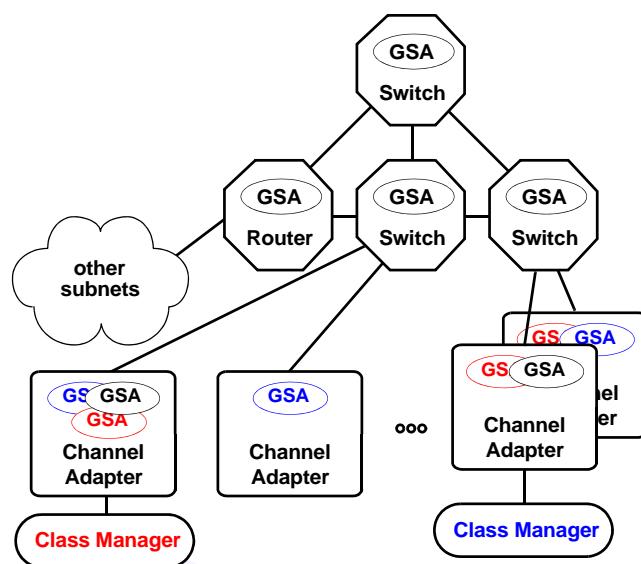


Figure 33 General Services Physical Model

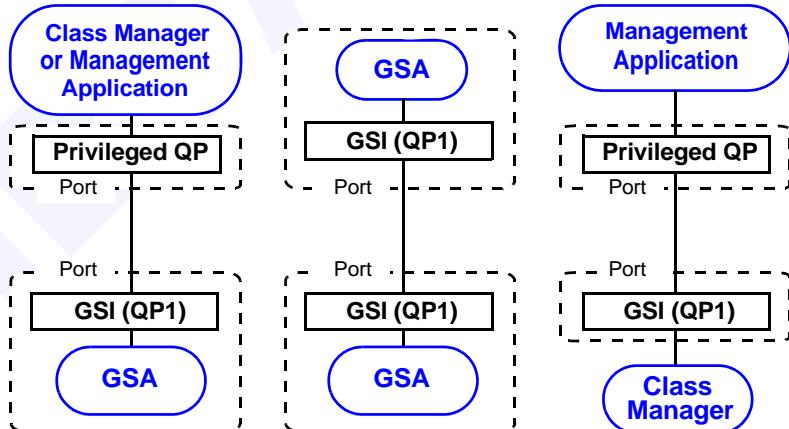


Figure 34 General Services Logical Models

IBA management infrastructure supports a number of different management service classes and logically provides for any node to host a class manager. [Figure 34](#) illustrates different ways that management classes can use the management infrastructure.

- The Managed Agent model allows a class manager or management application to manage nodes through a General Service Agent (GSA) defined for that class present on each node to be managed. This is the same model used for subnet management and is the model used for I/O device management, baseboard management, SNMP, and performance management classes.

- The Peer Agents model allows managers resident on each node as a GSA to communicate with each other. This is the model used for communication management class.

- The Managed Service model allows management applications to access class managers. This is the model used for subnet administration and I/O resource management classes.

IBA management entails a variety of concepts, including:

- A means of configuring and gathering information from endnodes, switches and routers.
- A diagnostics framework as a common error handling mechanism.
- Installation and configuration services to allow for discovery and initialization of the fabric and endnodes.
- A standard management packet called a “Management Datagram” or “MAD”.
- Subnet Management Packets (SMP) as a subset of the MADs to allow set and get operations specifically between the Subnet Manager and IBA devices.
- General Management Packets (GMP) as the remaining subset of the MADs that allow management operations between the Subnet Manager and IBA devices and management operations between IBA devices themselves.
- Communication management services to allow setup and teardown of communications between channel adapters.
- Partitioning services to configure ports of an endnodes to be members of one or more possibly overlapping sets called partitions.

IBA provides the means for the operating system to restrict access to the management infrastructure. For the SMI, subnet management packets must be sourced from QP0. The GSI uses a privileged Q_Key (i.e., a Q_Key with the most significant bit set). Host channel adapters do not permit a privileged Q_Key to be specified in a work request, rather the QP must be configured for privileged operation by configuring the QP context with the privileged Q_Key. This permits management applications and class mangers to maintain their own QPs. The GSI uses QP1 for initial communication but allows traffic for a particular class to be redirected to a privileged QP.

3.9.1 MANAGEMENT DATAGRAMS

IBA defines a standard format for management messages which supports common processing. Each MAD contains the same header format that identifies the class of management message and the method. SMPs are one class of management message, another is directed route SMPs. MADs for other classes are called General Management Packets (GMPs)

and include subnet administration, communication management, performance management, SNMP, device management, and baseboard management.

MADs begin with a standard header that carries information common to all classes. For classes that use the reliable multi-packet protocol (RMPP), this is immediately followed by an additional header for RMPP information. RMPP is a protocol that permits management entities to exchange more data than will fit in a single MAD. RMPP may be used by any management class. For example, it is used by the Subnet Administration class to give a client information about collections of paths between nodes.

3.9.2 MANAGEMENT METHODS

IBA defines common methods that may be adopted by any class. These include Get, Set, GetResp, Send, Trap, TrapRepress, Report, and ReportResp. Of course each management class defines their own set of attributes. These methods are sufficient for many classes but IBA also provides for class specific methods.

3.9.2.1 GETS & SETS

Gets and Sets are the most common use of MADs, especially the SM. The SM polls the fabric and learns its topology by sending SMP Get request messages. Each destination responds by sending a GetResp response message that includes the requested data. The SM configures IBA devices by sending Set request messages. This is effectively a Set & Get request. Each destination responds by sending a GetResp response message that includes the data values after the set action. Since not all parameters are settable or they might have limits, the originator inspects the response message to determine the true effect of the set request message.

3.9.2.2 TRAPS AND NOTICES

A trap is a message sent by a management agent to its class manager when certain asynchronous management events occur (such as protocol violations). Notices are attributes that can be queued in a Notice Queue at the managed node and may be retrieved and cleared by the class manager. The trap message has its data in the form of a notice attribute. The class manager programs the node with information about where to send traps and the node stops sending the trap when it receives a TrapRepress from the class manager.

IBA devices use SMPs to send traps to the subnet manager when certain events occur. One such use is for a switch to send a trap to the subnet manager when it detects a state change on one of its ports (i.e., a topology change and/or device joining or leaving). Of course since SMPs are unre-

liable, the SM can not solely depend on this type of notification, but successful traps will decrease the latency in managing the topology change.

3.9.2.3 SENDS

Send() is a management method where one entity sends data to another on a class specific basis. Unlike Gets and Sets where the response contains the same attribute and transaction ID as the request, there is no explicit response to a Send. A management protocol based on Sends might respond with another Send, which may contain an entirely different attribute. In this case, information needs to be included in the attribute to correlate one Send to another.

3.9.2.4 REPORTS

The management infrastructure provides a means for management entities to subscribe to the class manager in order to have the class manager forward traps it receives from management agents it controls. A management entity subscribes by sending a Set to the class manager identifying the port and QP where the class manager is to forward the traps. When the class manager receives a trap, it forwards the notice attribute to the subscribed entity in the form of a Report MAD and the entity responds with a ReportResp MAD to let the class manager know that it received the Report. The class manager continues sending Reports until the subscribed entity responds with a ReportResp.

3.9.3 MANAGEMENT INTERFACES

IBA defines two well known QPs for management interfaces. **QP0** is reserved for subnet management and **QP1** is designated for general management services.

3.9.4 SUBNET MANAGEMENT INTERFACE

Every IBA port has a QP dedicated to subnet management. This is QP0. QP0 has special features that make it unique compared to other QPs.

- QP0 is permanently configured for Unreliable Datagram class of service.
- Each port of an IBA device has a QP0 that sends and receives packets.
- QP0 is a member of all partitions (i.e., can accept any packet specifying any partition).
- Only subnet management packets (SMPs) are valid
- Traffic for QP0 (i.e., SMPs) exclusively uses VL15, which is not subject to link-level flow control.

3.9.4.1 FABRIC INITIALIZATION

The subnet manager uses this service interface to poll and configure the fabric. Switches support a special routing mode known as *directed routing* that allows SMPs to be routed through switches prior to switches being configured with their forwarding database and prior to nodes being assigned local IDs. The subnet manager walks its way through the fabric sending SMPs to a device and discovering if it is a switch. Using directed routing, it can then send SMPs out each of the switch's ports to discover the devices connected to the switch. This process continues until the subnet manger discovers all of the devices and how they are interconnected.

Once the SM learns the subnet's topology, it configures each node with local IDs and configures the routing tables of switches. Once the fabric has been configured, SMPs can be sent using destination routing.

IBA allows multiple subnet managers per subnet but only one can be the master manager. Thus IBA defines how a subnet manager detects the presence of another subnet manager and the arbitration mechanism for selecting which will be the master subnet manager.

3.9.4.2 DIRECTED ROUTES

A SMP can specify the route it takes through the fabric. This is done by including in the SMP a list of port numbers that define a path through the subnet (i.e., the path vector). The path vector specifies the output port for each switch along the path. The packet contains two path vectors (one for the forward route and one for the reverse route), a direction bit that indicates which path vector to traverse, and a hop pointer that indicates the current position in the path vector. The reverse path vector is built by switches as they process the forward path vector.

When a switch receives a directed routed SMP, it uses the current hop pointer to identify where in the path vector it is. If the direction is "forward" it determines the output port from the forward path vector, updates the reverse path vector by adding the port number on which it received the SMP, increments the current hop pointer, and then forwards the packet out the specified output port. When the packet reaches the destination, the target device uses the reverse route field for the reply by simply changing the sense of the direction bit and sending the reply SMP out the port on which it was received. Because the direction is "reverse" each switch now decrements the current hop pointer, uses it to determine the original input port, and then sends the packet out that port.

3.9.5 GENERAL SERVICE INTERFACE

Every IBA channel adapter has a QP dedicated to general fabric services. This is QP1. QP1 has special features that make it unique compared to other QPs.

- QP1 is permanently configured for Unreliable Datagram class of service.
- Each port of an IBA device has a QP1 that sends and receives packets.
- QP1 is a member of all of the port's partitions (i.e., can accept any packet specifying a P_Key contained in the port's P_Key table).
- Only management datagrams (MADs) are valid
- Traffic for QP1 does not use VL15

3.9.5.1 REDIRECTION

QP1 being a well known interface has its advantages and disadvantages. One disadvantage is that all management classes go into the same queue which tends to bottleneck and promote head of line blocking. Thus IBA defines a mechanism that allows the channel adapter to redirect general service requests to other QPs.

When a channel adapter receives a GMP on QP1, it may respond with a redirect response indicating a new port and QP. The originator then resends the request to the new address and also uses that address for all subsequent requests for that same management class.

3.10 I/O OPERATION

IBA I/O architecture supports a range of I/O implementation from simple native devices to massive I/O subsystems. The model for an I/O unit is shown in [Figure 35](#). An I/O unit is composed of a channel adapter and a number of I/O controllers. The channel adapter of an I/O unit is referred to as a Target Channel Adapter (TCA). A TCA has the same functionality as the HCA, but unlike the HCA, it is not necessarily designed for generic use, which means that it only needs to support the capabilities required by its controllers.

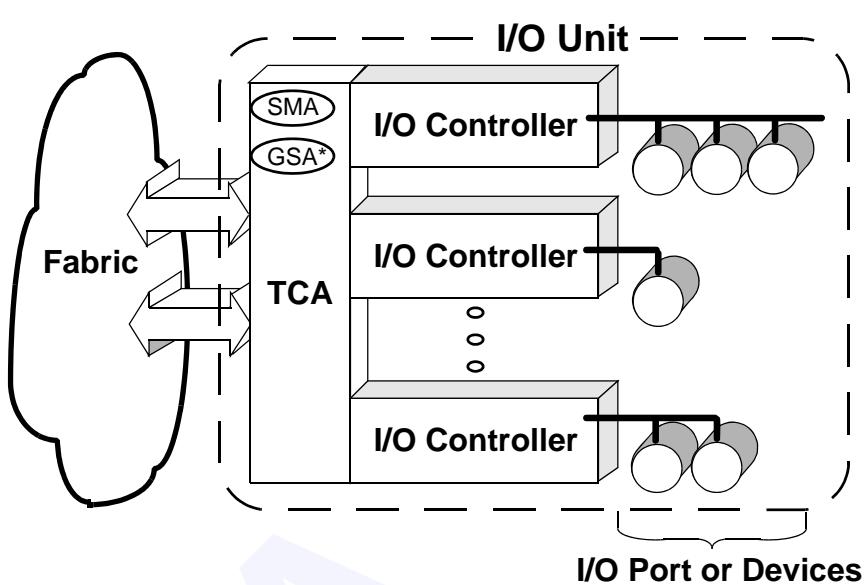


Figure 35 I/O Unit

I/O controllers represent the hardware and software that processes I/O transaction requests. Examples of I/O controllers are a SCSI interface controller, a RAID processor, a storage array processor, a LAN port controller, a disk drive controller, a console service.

The I/O unit contains a Subnet Management Agent (SMA) that responds to SMPs received on QP0. The I/O unit also contains general service agents (GSA*) that responds to GMPs received on the GSI (QP1). The GSA* contains at least Communication Management and I/O Device Management (DevMgt). Each I/O controller is registered with the DevMgt GSA such that it can respond to DevMgt GMPs with specific information about the controller.

Typically an I/O resource manager in the processor node sends DevMgt GMPs to an I/O unit to discover the attributes of the controllers. The attributes contain sufficient information for the I/O resource manager to identify the appropriate I/O driver. The I/O resource manager loads the driver, if necessary, and configures the I/O driver with the identity of the controller (I/O Unit and Controller ID). The I/O driver then creates the appropriate communication ports (i.e., QPs) on the processor node and calls the processor node's communication manager to create the appropriate connections with the I/O controller. Once the connections are established, the I/O driver exchanges control messages and data over the connections.

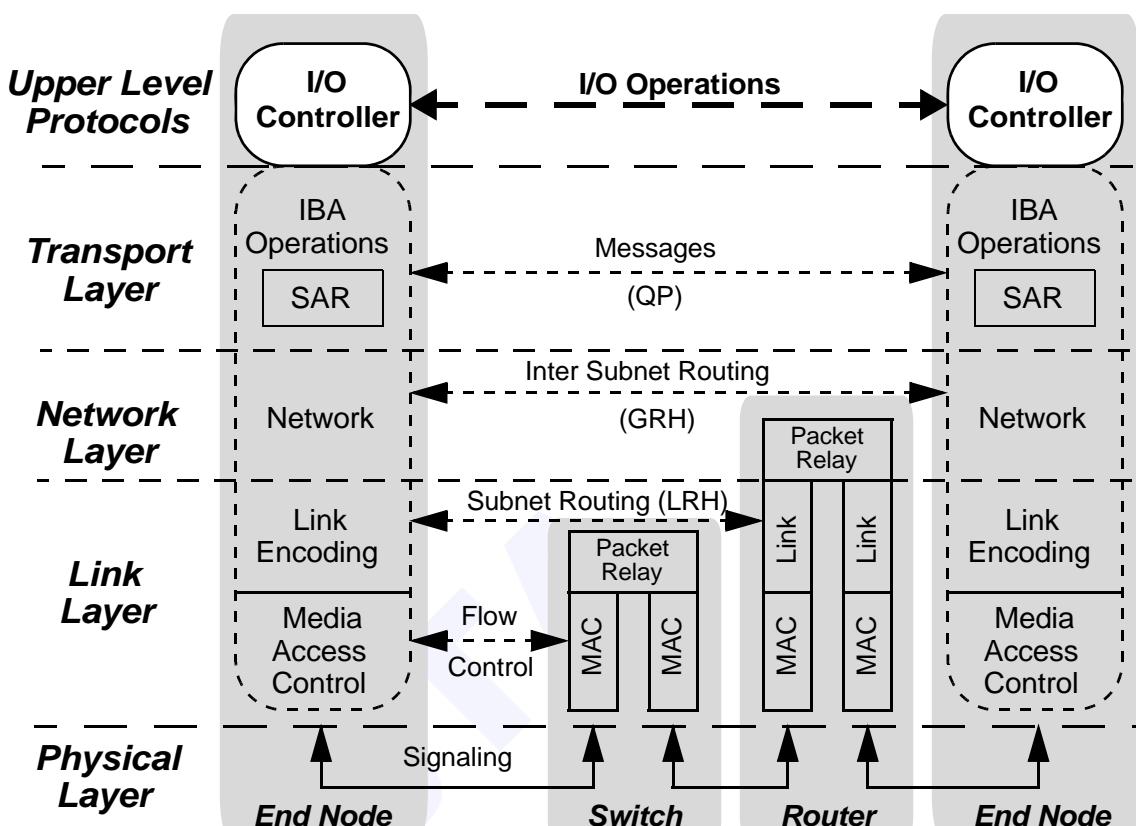


Figure 36 IO Operation

The number of communication ports used by the driver is an implementation variable. An I/O driver may use any available class of service (reliable connection, unreliable connection, reliable datagram, or unreliable datagram) and might use various classes of service for different communication ports.

CHAPTER 4: ADDRESSING

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

This chapter defines IBA addressing terminology and concepts. To facilitate understanding, refer to the following figures.

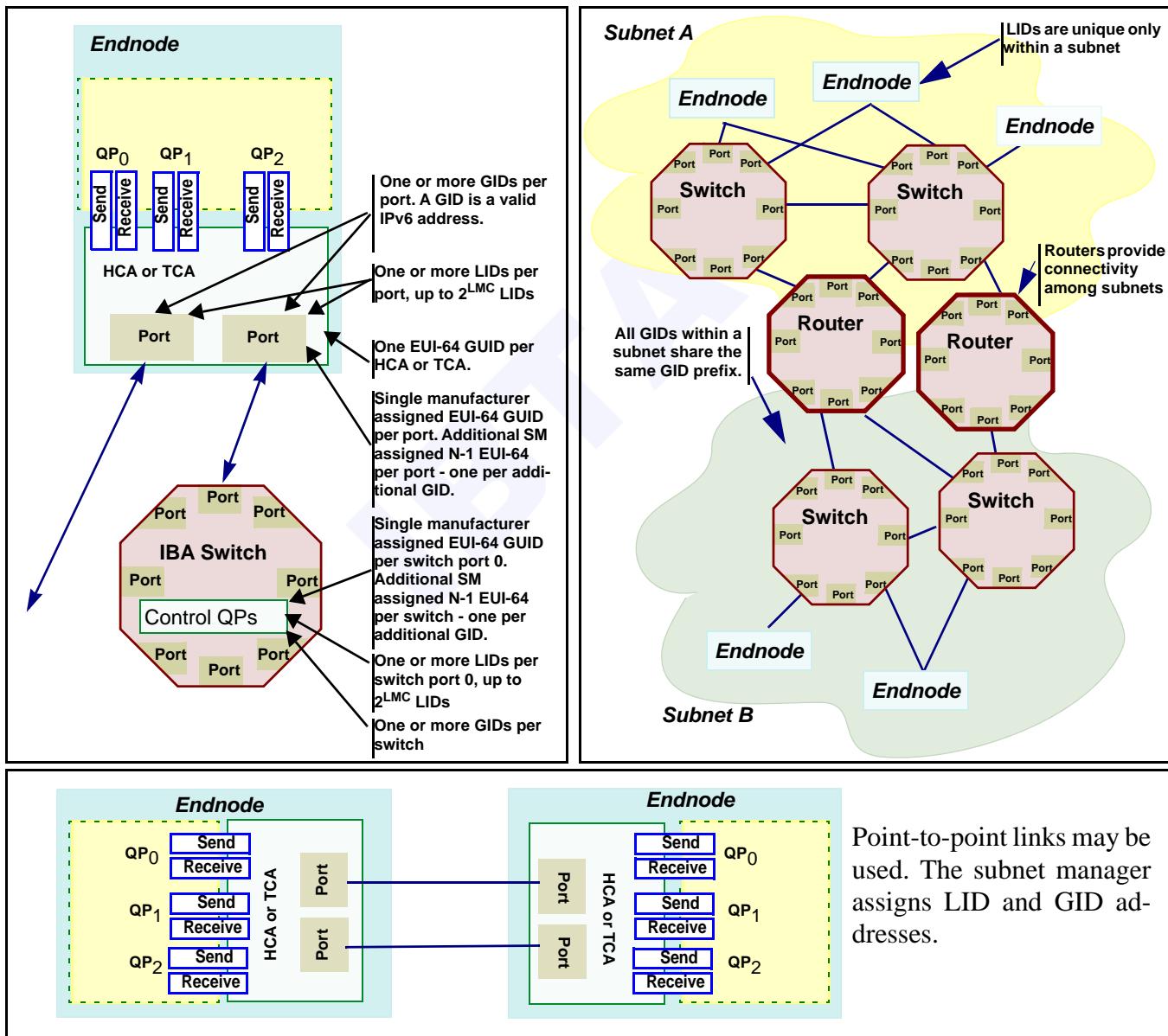


Figure 37

Reference IBA Address / Component Association

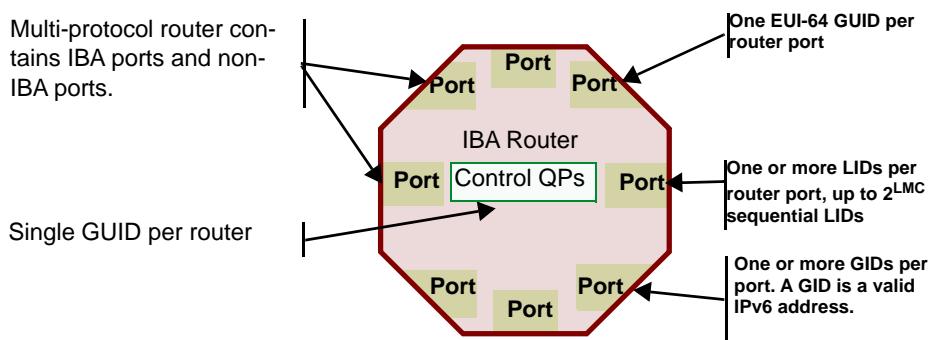


Figure 38 ReferenceIBARouterAddressAssociation

4.1 TERMINOLOGY AND CONCEPTS

Endpoint: An endpoint is a CA port, a router port, or a switch management port.

Unicast Identifier: An identifier for a single endpoint. A packet sent to an unicast identifier is delivered to the endpoint identified by that identifier. IBA defines two unicast identifiers - a global identifier (GID) - may be unique across subnets - and a local identifier (LID) - unique only within a subnet).

Multicast Identifier: An identifier for a set of endpoints. A packet sent to a multicast identifier is delivered to all endpoints identified by that identifier. IBA defines two multicast identifiers - a global identifier (GID) used by applications to address a multicast group and route packets between subnets and a local identifier (LID) used to switch packets within a subnet.

EUI-64: IEEE defined 64-bit identifier assigned to a device. The EUI-64 is a 64-bit identifier created by concatenating a 24-bit company_id value and a 40-bit extension identifier. The company_id is assigned by the IEEE Registration Authority; the extension identifier is assigned by the organization with the assigned company_id.

- The manufacturer assigns an EUI-64 with global scope set. A SM may assign additional EUI-64 with local scope indicated.
- For additional details, see: “Guidelines For 64-bit Global Identifier (EUI-64) Registration Authority” at www.standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/tutorials/EUI64.html

GUID (Global Unique Identifier): A globally unique EUI-64 compliant identifier.

C4-1: Each HCA, TCA, switch, and router shall be assigned an EUI-64 GUID by the manufacturer.

C4-2: Each endpoint shall be assigned an EUI-64 GUID by the manufacturer.

Subnet Prefix: A 0 to 64-bit - as a function of scope - identifier used to uniquely identify a set of endpoints which are managed by a common subnet manager.

GID Prefix: A 64-bit identifier (upper 64-bits of a GID) created by concatenating address scope bits, potentially a small number of “filler” bits, and potentially a subnet prefix - filler and subnet prefix presence is a function of the address scope.

GID (Global Identifier): A 128-bit unicast or multicast identifier used to identify an endpoint or a multicast group. A GID is a 128-bit address that leverages numerous concepts and semantics of an IPv6 address (per RFC 2373), however, the IBA does not define a relationship between a GID and IPv6 address, i.e. there is no defined mapping between GID and IPv6 address for any endpoint or multicast group. Note: These rules apply only to IBA operation and do not apply to raw IPv6 operation unless specifically called out.

C4-3: GIDs shall comply with the rules defined within [4.1.1 GID Usage and Properties on page 160](#):

4.1.1 GID USAGE AND PROPERTIES

- 1) The default GID prefix is defined as (0xFE80::/64). A packet containing a GRH with a destination GID beginning with this prefix must never be forwarded by a router, i.e. it is restricted to the local subnet.
- 2) The subnet manager may configure a non-default GID prefix to an endpoint. A subnet shall have zero or one non-default assigned GID prefix at any given time.
- 3) Each endpoint shall have at least one unicast GID. Endpoint unicast GIDs are created using the following mechanisms:
 - a) For each endpoint GUID (listed in the GUIDInfo attribute), use the default GID prefix concatenated with the GUID.
 - b) If the subnet manager configured the endpoint with a non-default GID prefix, then: for each endpoint GUID, use the configured GID prefix concatenated with the GUID.
- 4) Any QP in a CA, switch or router shall be addressable using the default GID prefix in addition to the assigned GID for that QP. This allows a subnet to transition from a default GID prefix state to a managed state without interrupting existing communication sessions.
- 5) The maximum number (N) of unicast GIDs supported per endpoint is implementation specific. The subnet manager may assign N-1 additional unicast GIDs. Each of these N-1 GIDs is created by concate-

- nating one subnet manager assigned EUI-64 identifier (the local bit set) with the GID prefix.
- 6) The unicast GID address 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:0 is reserved - referred to as the Reserved GID. It shall never be assigned to any endpoint. It shall not be used as a destination address or in a global routing header (GRH).
 - 7) The unicast GID address 0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1 is referred to as the loopback GID and is only used by raw IPv6 services - it is not used by IBA transport services. It shall never be assigned to an endpoint or be present in any IBA packets.
 - 8) The unicast GID subnet prefix shall be limited to the upper 64-bits of the GID address space. The number of subnet prefix bits may further be limited by filler and scope bits - see below.
 - 9) The lower 64-bits of the unicast GID cannot be further partitioned into subnets.
 - 10) The lower 64-bits of a unicast GID shall be subnet unique. If the universal / local bit is set to universal, then the assignment must be globally unique.
 - 11) The GRH (Global Route Header) shall contain valid source and destination GIDs. For raw IPv6 packets, an IPv6 routing header shall contain source and destination addresses in compliance with RFC 2373.
 - 12) Unicast GID scoping shall be:
 - a) Link-local - A unicast GID used within a local subnet using the default GID prefix. Routers must not forward any packets with either link-local source or destination GIDs outside the local subnet. A link-local GID has the following format:

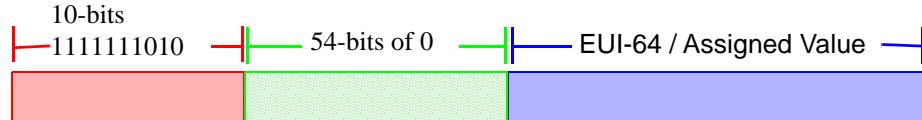


Figure 39 Link-Local Unicast GID Format

- b) Site-local - A unicast GID used within a collection of subnets which is unique within that collection (e.g. a data center or campus) but is not necessarily globally unique. Routers must not forward any packets with either a site-local Source GID (SGID) or a site-local Destination GID (DGID) outside of the site.

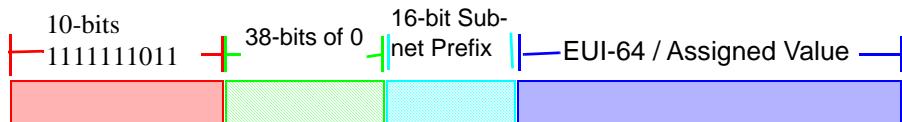


Figure 40 Site-LocalUnicastGIDFormat

- c) Global - A unicast GID with a global prefix, i.e. a router may use this GID to route packets throughout an enterprise or Internet. The global GID format is:

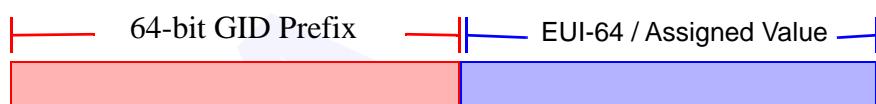


Figure 41 Unicast Global GID Format

- 13) A multicast group is uniquely identified by a multicast GID (MGID). Further, in addition to having the same MGID, all members of the multicast group must share the same P_Key and Q_Key.

- 14) The multicast GID format is:

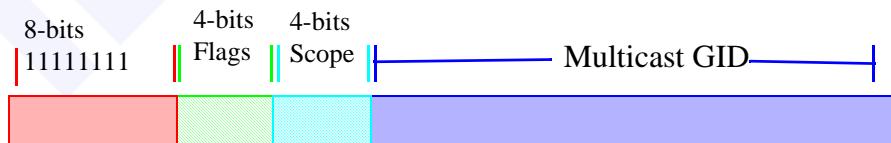


Figure 42 Multicast GID Format

- a) 8-bits of 11111111 at the start of the GID identifies this as being a multicast GID.
- b) Flags is a set of four 1-bit flags: 000T with three flags reserved and defined as zero ('0'). The T flag is defined as follows:
- vi) T = 0 indicates this is a permanently assigned (i.e. well-known) multicast GID. See RFC 2373 and RFC 2375 as reference for these permanently assigned GIDs.
 - vii) T = 1 indicates this is a non-permanently assigned (i.e. transient) multicast GID.

- c) Scope is a 4-bit multicast scope value used to limit the scope of the multicast group. The following table defines scope value and interpretation.

Table 3 Multicast Address Scope

Scope Value	Address Scope
0	Reserved
1	Unassigned
2	Link-local
3	Unassigned
4	Unassigned
5	Site-local
6	Unassigned
7	Unassigned
8	Organization-local
9	Unassigned
0xA	Unassigned
0xB	Unassigned
0xC	Unassigned
0xD	Unassigned
0xE	Global
0xF	Reserved

- 15) An endpoint may join zero, one or more multicast groups, i.e. an endpoint may be assigned zero, one or more multicast GIDs.
- 16) Multicast GIDs shall not appear as the source GID (SGID) in the GRH.
- 17) Multicast GID FF02:0:0:0:0:0:1 is the link-local multicast GID - a router should not route packets with this destination GID outside the local subnet. This GID is used as the destination address within the global router header (GRH) for communicating to a set of QPs participating within the all channel adapters multicast group - includes all channel adapters and enhanced switch port 0 endnodes that wish to participate in this group. ALL CHANNEL ADAPTERS MULTICAST GROUP is used to implement a broadcast service to all channel adapters which are capable of participating in multicast operations (must share the same MGID, P_Key, and Q_Key).

- 18) IPv6 defines a set of reserved multicast addresses in RFC 2375 and
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
RFC 2373. IBA, unless explicitly stated otherwise, shall not use these
addresses for IBA multicast operations and defines them as reserved
for raw IPv6 usage.

4.1.2 CHANNEL ADAPTER, SWITCH, AND ROUTER ADDRESSING RULES

C4-4: Channel Adapters, Switches, and Routers shall comply with the addressing rules defined within [4.1.2 Channel Adapter, Switch, and Router Addressing Rules on page 164](#).

Addressing rules are:

- 1) A port shall attach to one link.
- 2) An endpoint shall support a range of LIDs as defined by a Base LID and an LMC. The LIDs shall be sequentially ordered starting with a base LID and ending with base LID plus $(2^{\text{LMC}}-1)$, included. The SM may program the LMC on an endpoint to any value between 0 and 7, to allow use of multiple LIDs (1-128) in addressing the endpoint.
 - a) Base switch port 0 shall be assigned a single unicast LID, i.e. LMC = 0.
- 3) A unicast LID shall map to only one endpoint.
- 4) A multicast LID shall map to one or more endpoints - an endpoint may be the target of zero, one, or more multicast flows.
- 5) Unicast GIDs shall be assigned on a per endpoint basis.
- 6) A multiport CA (and by definition, a router) may be attached to one or more subnets - an endpoint shall only be attached to one subnet at a time.

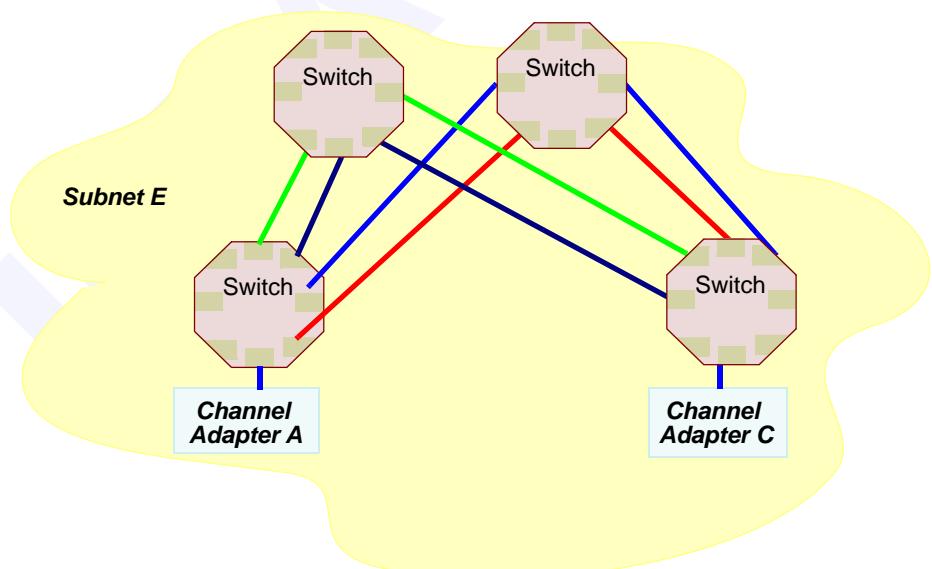
4.1.3 LOCAL IDENTIFIERS

C4-5: Local Identifiers (LIDs) shall comply with the rules defined within [4.1.3 Local Identifiers on page 164](#).

Local identifier (LID): A 16-bit identifier with the following properties:

- 1) A LID is assigned by the Subnet Manager (SM) and is subnet unique, i.e. it cannot be used to route between subnets.
- 2) The LID address space is divided into reserved, unicast and multicast address ranges.
- 3) LIDs are contained within the LRH (Local Route Header).
- 4) A source LID (SLID) shall refer to the endpoint that first injected the packet into the subnet.
- 5) A SLID shall only be associated with a unicast address.

- 6) A unicast destination LID (DLID) shall refer to the destination endpoint. A multicast DLID refers to the set of destination endpoints within the subnet participating in a given multicast group.
- 7) If the destination endpoint is not on the same subnet, the DLID shall refer to the router port responsible for forwarding the packet to the next hop to the destination endpoint.
- 8) From any point within a subnet, a given endpoint may receive packets through multiple physical paths within the subnet. Each physical path may be identified by one or more destination LIDs. To facilitate multipath operation while minimizing channel adapter complexity, each endpoint shall be assigned a base LID and a LID Mask Control (LMC) value by the subnet manager. The LMC is a 3-bit field which represents 2^{LMC} paths (maximum of 128 paths). During discovery, the subnet manager may determine the number of paths to a given endpoint and will partition the 16-bit LID space to assign a base LID and up to 2^{LMC} sequential LIDs to each endpoint.



Four paths exist between channel adapters A and C. CA A is assigned a Base LID 4, LMC = 2. This translates to CA A being assigned LIDs: {4, 5, 6, 7}. CA C is assigned Base LID 8, LMC = 2. This translates into CA C being assigned LIDs: {8, 9, 10, 11}.

Figure 43 Multipath Identification

Note: The base LID must have LMC least significant bits set to 0. For example, if the LMC = 0, the base LID may be any unicast LID. If the LMC = 7, the base LID set the 7 least significant bits to zero.

- 9) The LID space is defined as follows:
 - LID 0x0000 is reserved.

- LID 0xFFFF is defined as a permissive DLID. The permissive DLID indicates that the packet is destined for QP0 on the endpoint which received it. LMC is not defined for this address.
 - The unicast LID range is a flat identifier space defined as 0x0001 to 0xBFFF.
 - The multicast LID range is a flat identifier space defined as 0xC000 to 0xFFFF.
 - The DLID for any packet which contains a multicast GID shall be within the above specified multicast LID range.
- 10) A multicast LID may be overloaded by multiple multicast GIDs, i.e. there may be a many-to-one MGID to MLID mapping within a given subnet. When a multicast LID is overloaded, the multicast groups sharing the same MLID need not have the same P_Key. It is the responsibility of the SM to setup the subnet appropriately when it supports optional MLID overloading.

CHAPTER 5: DATA PACKET FORMAT

This chapter introduces the fields in the data packet. A brief description of each field is given including a definition, field size, and abbreviation. This chapter does not specify the details of each field, but only the general usage and layout of the fields.

In addition to data packets, IBA defines link packets which are used for link-level flow control. The format of these link packets is described in [7.9.4 Flow Control Packet on page 233](#).

In this specification, the term packet refers to data packets only (i.e., packet and data packet are synonymous). Where reference to link packets is intended, the full term *link packet* will be used.

5.1 PACKET TYPES

Packets are the unit of transfer in IBA. As described in [3.3 Communications Stack on page 109](#) messages are segmented into packets by the CAs for transmission across the IB fabric.

Packets have the following attributes:

- Indivisible unit of data transfer and routing
- Unit of acknowledgement
- Unit of segmentation and re-assembly for messages
- Unit of link-level flow control

IBA Message (End to End)

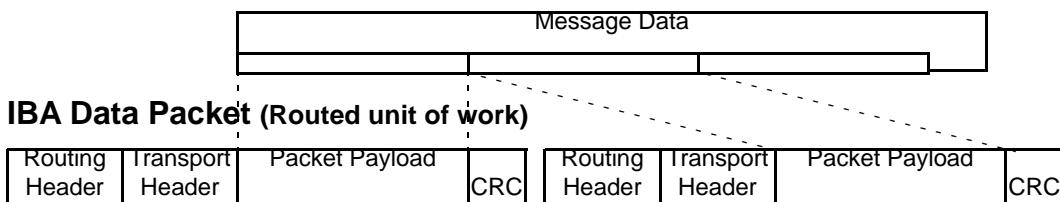


Figure 44

IBA Messages and Packets

There are two general classes of transports used in Packets:

- **IBA Packets** have IBA defined transport headers, are routed on IBA fabrics, and use native IBA transport facilities.

- **Raw Packets** may be routed on IBA fabrics but do not contain IBA transport headers. From the IB point of view, these packets contain only IBA routing headers, payload and CRC. IBA does not define the processing of these packets above the link and network layers. The intent is that these packets can be used to support non-IBA transports over an IB fabric.

5.2 DATA PACKET FORMAT

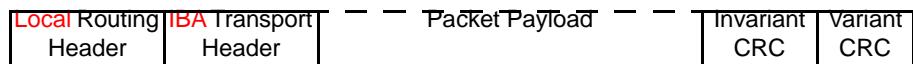
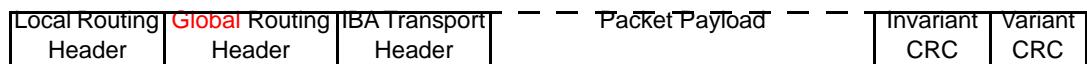
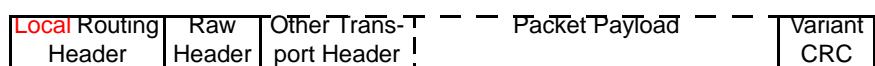
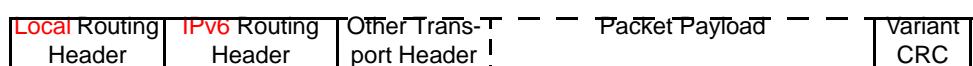
The overall data packet structure is shown in [Figure 45 on page 169](#). There are two routing headers that precede a transport header(s) and payload:

- The local route header is required on all packets
- The global route header is required on all packets that are to be routed to a different subnet, and on all multicast packets regardless of destination.
- A global route header may be placed on any packet except subnet management packets.

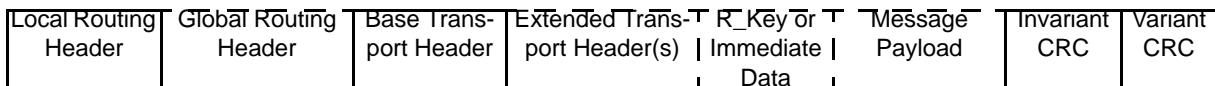
C5-1: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device shall conform to the packet structure defined in Figure 45 and to the packet header location and size requirements as defined in Figure 46

Each IBA packet ends with an invariant CRC followed by a variant CRC.

Each raw packet ends with a variant CRC.

Local (within a subnet) Packets**Global (routing between subnets) Packets****Raw Packet with Raw Header****Raw Packet with IPv6 Header****Figure 45****IBA Packet Overview**

The IBA packet structure is shown in [Figure 46 on page 170](#).



VL	LVer	SL	rsrv	lnnh	Destination Local ID
			5	Pckt Length(11b)	Source Local ID

Local Routing Header - LRH - 8 bytes
Present in all packets of a message.

IP Vers	Traffic Class	Flow Label - 20 bits
		Payload Length
		Next Hdr
		Hop Limit
	Source GID[127:96]	
	Source GID[95:64]	
	Source GID[63:32]	
	Source GID[31:0]	
	Destination GID[127:96]	
	Destination GID[95:64]	
	Destination GID[63:32]	
	Destination GID[31:0]	

Global Routing Header - GRH - 40 Bytes
Present in all packets of message, if indicated by Link Next Header field in LRH.

OpCode	SMPal TVER	Partition Key
F/R/R	resv 6	Destination QP
A	resv 7	PSN

Base Transport Header - BTH - 12 Bytes
Present in all packets of message, if indicated by Link Next Header field (i.e.,not a raw packet)

resv	EE-Context
------	------------

Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header - RDETH - 4 Bytes; Present in every packet of reliable datagram message.

resv	Queue Key
	Source QP

Datagram Extended Transport Header - DETH - 8 Bytes
Present in every packet of datagram request messages

resv	XRC SRQ
------	---------

XRC Extended Transport Header - XRCETH- 4 Bytes
Present in XRC send, XRC RDMA Read/Write or XRC Atomic Request

VA[63:32]	
VA[31:0]	
Remote Key	
DMA Length	

RDMA Extended Transport Header - RETH - 16Bytes
Present in first packet of RDMA request message

VA[63:32]	
VA[31:0]	
Remote Key	
Swap (or Add) Data[63:32]	
Swap (or Add) Data[31:0]	
Compare Data[63:32]	
Compare Data[31:0]	

Atomic Extended Transport Header - AtomicETH - 28 Bytes
Present in Atomic request message

Syndrome	MSN
----------	-----

ACK Extended Transport Header - AETH - 4Bytes;
Present in all ACK packets, including first and last packet of message for
RDMA Read Response packets.

Original Remote Data[63:32]	
Original Remote Data[31:0]	

Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header - AtomicAckETH - 8Bytes; Present
in all AtomicACK packets.

Immediate Data	
----------------	--

Immediate Data - ImmDt - 4 Bytes
Present in last packet of request with immediate data.

R_Key	
-------	--

Invalidate Extended Transport Header - IETH - 4 Bytes
Present in last packet of SEND with Invalidate request

Payload	
[pad -0-3B]	

Payload - PYLD - 0-4096 Bytes

ICRC	
------	--

Invariant CRC- ICRC - 32b
Present in all packets of message, if indicated by Link Next Header field (i.e.,not a raw packet).

VCRC	
------	--

Variant CRC- VCRC - 16b
Present in all packets of message.

Figure 46 IBA Packet Structure

5.2.1 LOCAL ROUTE HEADER (LRH) - 8 BYTES

C5-2: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device shall conform to the packet header format for the LRH as defined in Table 4.

The Local Routing Header (LRH) contains fields used for local routing by switches within a IBA subnet. The following table summarizes the fields in the LRH:

Table 4 Local Route Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Virtual Lane	VL	4	This field identifies the virtual lane that the packet is using.
Link Version	LVer	4	This field identifies the Link level protocol and the version of the Local Routing Header of this packet. This version applies to the general packet structure including the LRH fields and the variant CRC.
Service Level	SL	4	This field indicates what service level the packet is requesting within the subnet.
Reserved		2	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive.
Link Next Header	LNH	2	This field identifies the headers that follow the LRH.
Destination Local ID	DLID	16	This field identifies the destination port and path (data sink) on the local subnet.
Reserved		5	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive.
Packet Length	PktLen	11	This field identifies the size of the Packet in four-byte words. This field includes the first byte of LRH to the last byte before the variant CRC. See 7.7.8 Packet Length (PktLen) - 11 bits on page 216 for details on max and min values of PktLen
Source Local ID	SLID	16	This field identifies the source port (injection point) on the local subnet.

The LRH fields are fully defined in [7.7 Local Route Header on page 215](#).

5.2.2 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER (GRH) - 40 BYTES

C5-3: Packets generated by InfiniBand devices shall conform to the packet header format for the GRH as defined in Table 5.

Global Route Header (GRH) contains fields for routing the packet between subnets. The presence of the GRH is indicated by the Link Next Header (LNH) field in the LRH. The layout of the GRH is the same as the IPv6 Header defined in RFC 2460. Note, however, that IBA does not define a relationship between a device GID and IPv6 address (i.e., there is

no defined mapping between GID and IPv6 address for any IB device or port).

The following table summarizes the fields in the GRH.

Table 5 Global Route Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
IP Version	IPVer	4	This field indicates version of the GRH
Traffic Class	TClass	8	This field is used by IBA to communicate global service level.
Flow Label	Flow-Label	20	This field identifies sequences of packets requiring special handling.
Payload length	PayLen	16	For an IBA packet this field specifies the number of bytes starting from the first byte after the GRH, up to and including the last byte of the ICRC. For a raw IPv6 datagram this field specifies the number of bytes starting from the first byte after the GRH, up to but not including either the VCRC or any padding, to achieve a multiple of 4 byte packet length. For raw IPv6 datagrams padding is determined from the lower 2 bits of this GRH:PayLen field. Note: GRH:PayLen is different from LRH:PktLen.
Next Header	NxtHdr	8	This field identifies the header following the GRH. This field is included for compatibility with IPV6 headers. It should indicate IBA transport.
Hop Limit	HopLmt	8	This field sets a strict bound on the number of hops between subnets a packet can make before being discarded. This is enforced only by routers.
Source GID	SGID	128	This field identifies the Global Identifier (GID) for the port which injected the packet into the network.
Destination GID	DGID	128	This field identifies the GID for the port which will consume the packet from the network.

5.2.3 BASE TRANSPORT HEADER (BTH) - 12 BYTES

C5-4: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device shall conform to the packet header format for the BTH as defined in Table 6.

Base Transport Header (BTH) contains the fields for IBA transports. The presence of BTH is indicated by the Next Header field of the last previous header (i.e., either LRH:LNH or GRH:NextHdr depending on which was

the last previous header). The following table summarizes the fields in the BTH:

Table 6 Base Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Opcode	OpCode	8	This field indicates the IBA packet type. The OpCode also specifies which extension headers follow the Base Transport Header
Solicited Event	SE	1	This bit indicates that an event should be generated by the responder.
MigReq	M	1	This bit is used to communicate migration state.
Pad Count	PadCnt	2	This field indicates how many extra bytes are added to the payload to align to a 4 byte boundary.
Transport Header Version	TVer	4	This field indicates the version of the IBA Transport Headers.
Partition Key	P_KEY	16	This field indicates which logical Partition is associated with this packet (see 10.9 Partitioning on page 556)
F/Res1*	F/R	1	F (FECN): 0 indicates that a FECN indication was not received. 1 indicates that the packet went through a point of congestion. Res1*: Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC. see 7.8 CRCs on page 218 for details.
B/Res1*	B/R	1	B (BECN): 0 the packet did not go through a point of congestion or went through a point of congestion but was not marked. 1 indicates that the packet indicated by this header was subject to forward congestion. The B bit is set in an ACK or CN BTH. Res1*: Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC. see 7.8 CRCs on page 218 for details.
Reserved (variant)		6	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC. see 7.8 CRCs on page 218 for details.
Destination QP	DestQP	24	This field indicates the Work Queue Pair Number (a.k.a. QP) at the destination
Acknowledge Request	A	1	This bit is used to indicate that an acknowledge (for this packet) should be scheduled by the responder.
Reserved		7	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is included in the invariant CRC.

Table 6 Base Transport Header Fields (Continued)

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Packet Sequence Number	PSN	24	This field is used to detect a missing or duplicate Packet. See 9.7.1 Packet Sequence Numbers (PSN) on page 305 for a detailed description of PSN.

The detailed definition of the Base Transport Header fields are defined in Section [9.2 on page 256](#).

5.2.4 RELIABLE DATAGRAM EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (RDETH) - 4 BYTES

o5-1: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device that supports reliable datagrams shall conform to the packet header format for the RDETH header as defined in Table 7.

Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH) contains the additional transport fields for reliable datagram service. The RDETH is only in Reliable Datagram packets as indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the RDETH:

Table 7 Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Reserved		8	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive.
EE-Context	EECnxt	24	This field indicates which End-to-End Context should be used for this Reliable Datagram packet

The detailed definition of the Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.1 Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header \(RDETH\) - 4 Bytes on page 262](#).

5.2.5 DATAGRAM EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (DETH) - 8 BYTES

C5-5: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device shall conform to the packet header format for the DETH as defined in Table 8.

Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH) contains the additional transport fields for datagram service. The DETH is only in datagram

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
packets if indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the DETH:

Table 8 Datagram Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Queue Key	Q_Key	32	This field is required to authorize access to the receive queue.
Reserved		8	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive.
Source QP	SrcQP	24	This field indicates the Work Queue Pair Number (a.k.a. QP) at the source.

The detailed definition of the Datagram Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.2 Datagram Extended Transport Header \(DETH\) - 8 Bytes on page 263](#).

5.2.6 RDMA EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (RETH) - 16 BYTES

o5-2: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device that supports RDMA operations shall conform to the packet header format for the RETH as defined in Table 9.

RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH) contains the additional transport fields for RDMA operations. The RETH is present in only the first (or only) packet of an RDMA Request as indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the RETH:

Table 9 RDMA Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Virtual Address	VA	64	This field is the Virtual Address of the RDMA operation.
Remote Key	R_Key	32	This field is the Remote Key that authorizes access for the RDMA operation.
DMA Length	DMALen	32	This field indicates the length (in Bytes) of the DMA operation.

The detailed definition of the RDMA Extended Transport Header is in [9.3.3 RDMA Extended Transport Header \(RETH\) - 16 Bytes on page 263](#).

5.2.7 ATOMIC EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (ATOMICETH) - 28 BYTES

o5-3: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device that supports atomic operations shall conform to the packet header format for the AtomicETH header as defined in Table 10.

Atomic Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH) contains the additional transport fields for Atomic packets. The AtomicETH is only in Atomic packets as indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the AtomicETH:

Table 10 Atomic Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Virtual Address	VA	64	This field is the remote virtual address.
Remote Key	R_Key	32	This field is the Remote Key that authorizes access to the remote virtual address.
Swap (or Add) Data	SwapDt	64	This field is an operand in atomic operations.
Compare Data	CmpDt	64	This field is an operand in CmpSwap atomic operation.

The detailed definition of the Atomic Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.4 ATOMIC Extended Transport Header \(AtomicETH\) - 28 Bytes on page 265](#).

5.2.8 XRC EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (XRCETH)

XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH) contains the Destination XRC SRQ identifier.

o5-3.a1: If a CA implements the XRC transport service, then when generating a request packet, the sender shall set the XRCETH fields as described in [5.2.8 XRC Extended Transport Header \(XRCETH\) on page 176](#).

Table 11 XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Reserved	Reserved	8	Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive.
XRC Shared Receive Queue	XRCSRQ	24	This field indicates the XRC Shared Receive Queue number to be used by the responder for this packet.

5.2.9 ACK EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (AETH) - 4 BYTES

C5-6: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device shall conform to the packet header format for the AETH as defined in Table 12.

ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) contains the additional transport fields for ACK packets. The AETH is only in Acknowledge, RDMA READ Response First, RDMA READ Response Last, and RDMA READ Response Only packets as indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the AETH.

Table 12 ACK Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Syndrome	Syndrome	8	This field indicates if this is an ACK or NAK packet plus additional information about the ACK or NAK.
Message Sequence Number	MSN	24	This field indicates the sequence number of the last message completed at the responder.

The detailed definition of the ACK Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.5 on page 265](#).

5.2.10 ATOMIC ACK EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (ATOMICAckETH) - 8 BYTES

o5-4: Packets generated by an InfiniBand device that supports atomic operations shall conform to the packet header format for the AtomicAckETH as defined in Table 13.

Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH) contains the additional transport fields for AtomicACK packets. The AtomicAckETH is only in Atomic Acknowledge packets as indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode field. The following table summarizes the fields in the AtomicAckETH:

Table 13 Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header Fields

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Original Remote Data	Orig-RemDt	64	This field is the return operand in atomic operations and contains the data in the remote memory location before the atomic operation.

The detailed definition of the Atomic ACK Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.5.3 on page 266](#).

5.2.11 IMMEDIATE DATA EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IMMDT) - 4 BYTES

Immediate Data Extended Transport Header (ImmDt) contains the additional data that is placed in the receive Completion Queue Element (CQE). The ImmDt is only in Send or RDMA-Write packets with Immediate Data if indicated by the Base Transport Header Opcode.

The detailed definition of the Immediate Data Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.6 on page 266](#).

Note, the terms *Immediate Data Extended Transport Header* and *Immediate Data Header* are used synonymously in this specification.

TABLE 14 IMMEDIATE DATA EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IMMDT)

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
Immediate Data	ImmDt	32	Immediate Data (ImmDt) contains data that is placed in the receive Completion Queue Element (CQE). The ImmDt is only allowed in SEND or RDMA WRITE packets with Immediate Data.

5.2.12 INVALIDATE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IETH) - 4 BYTES

The Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH) contains an R_Key field which is used by the responder to invalidate a memory region or memory window once it receives and executes the SEND with Invalidate request.

The detailed definition of the Invalidate Extended Transport Header is in Section [9.3.7 on page 266](#).

TABLE 15 INVALIDATE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IETH)

Field Name	Field Abbreviation	Field Size (in bits)	Description
R_Key	R_Key	32	The SEND with Invalidate operation carries with it an R_Key field. This R_Key is used by the responder to invalidate a memory region or memory window once it receives and executes the SEND with Invalidate request. The R_Key is carried in a new extended transport header called the Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH) as shown below.

5.2.13 PAYLOAD

Payload (PYLD) contains the application data being transferred end to end. Payload is not present in RDMA Read Requests, Acknowledge,

CmpSwp, FetchAdd, and Atomic Acknowledge packets. It is optionally present in the other packet op-codes.

C5-7: The length of the Payload shall be 0 or more bytes up to the full path MTU.

C5-8: All packets of an IBA message that contain a payload shall fill the payload to the full path MTU except the last (or only) packet of the message.

C5-9: In a packet using InfiniBand transport, a Pad field of 0-3 bytes shall be included in the packet and used to align the Payload to a multiple of 4 bytes (i.e., the size of the Payload plus the Pad field is always a multiple of four bytes). The actual size of the Pad field used in a given packet shall be indicated in the Base Transport Header PadCnt field of the packet.

5.2.14 INVARIANT CRC

Invariant CRC (ICRC) covers the fields that do not change in packet from source to destination. ICRC is only in IBA packets, and is not present in Raw Packets. Which fields are covered in the ICRC is dependent on the presence of the GRH.

The detailed definition of the Invariant CRC is in Section [7.8.1 on page 218](#).

5.2.15 VARIANT CRC

Variant CRC (VCRC) covers the fields that can change from link to link. The VCRC is in all packets, both IBA and Raw Packets. The VCRC can be regenerated in the fabric.

The detailed definition of the Variant CRC is in Section [7.8.2 on page 219](#).

5.3 RAW PACKET FORMAT

A Raw Packet is a packet that does not use IBA transport. Raw packets are not a required feature of InfiniBand devices, but if they are supported, the raw packet shall be formatted as specified in this section.

o5-5: If a Raw packet contains an IPv6 Routing Header, the packet structure shall be: LRH, IPv6, Payload (including any transport headers), and VCRC. If a Raw packet does not contain a IPv6 Routing Header, then the structure shall be: LRH, RWH, Payload, and VCRC.

o5-6: The RWH is a 32 bit “Raw Header” that shall contain the EtherType of the payload. EtherType indicates the protocol of the raw packet and shall conform to the definition in the IEEE Type Field Registrar. (See stan-

dards IEEE 802.3, 1998 Clause 3.2.6 Length/Type Field specifications and IEEE 802.1H-1995 for use of the Type Field.)

This format of “Raw” packets is shown in [Figure 45 on page 169](#).

o5-7: The length of a raw packet (from after the RWH to before the variant CRC) must be a multiple of 4 bytes.

o5-8: The format of the Raw Header shall be as is shown in [Figure 47](#).

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Reserved (Send as 0, ignore on receive)			EtherType

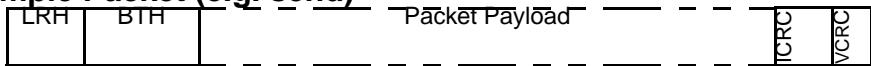
Figure 47

Raw Header (RWH)

5.4 PACKET EXAMPLES

Some examples of IBA packets are shown in [Figure 48](#).

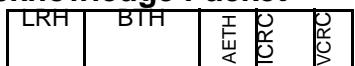
Simple Packet (e.g. send)



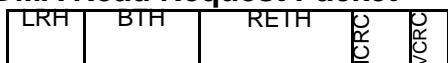
Simple Packet with Global Route Header



Acknowledge Packet



RDMA Read Request Packet



RDMA Read Response Packet



RDMA Write Request Packet



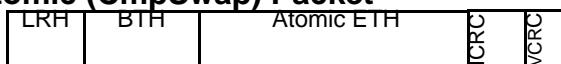
Datagram Packet



Reliable Datagram Packet



Atomic (CmpSwap) Packet



Atomic Acknowledge Packet



Raw Packet (without IPv6 route header)



Raw Packet (with IPv6 route header)

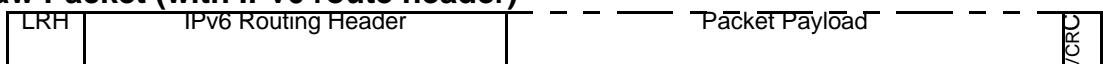


Figure 48

IBA Packet Examples

CHAPTER 6: PHYSICAL LAYER INTERFACE

6.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter describes services provided by the physical layer to the link layer and the logical interface between these layers. The physical layer also has an interface to management which is not covered in this chapter.

The description of the physical layer is provided in Volume 2, the electro-mechanical specification

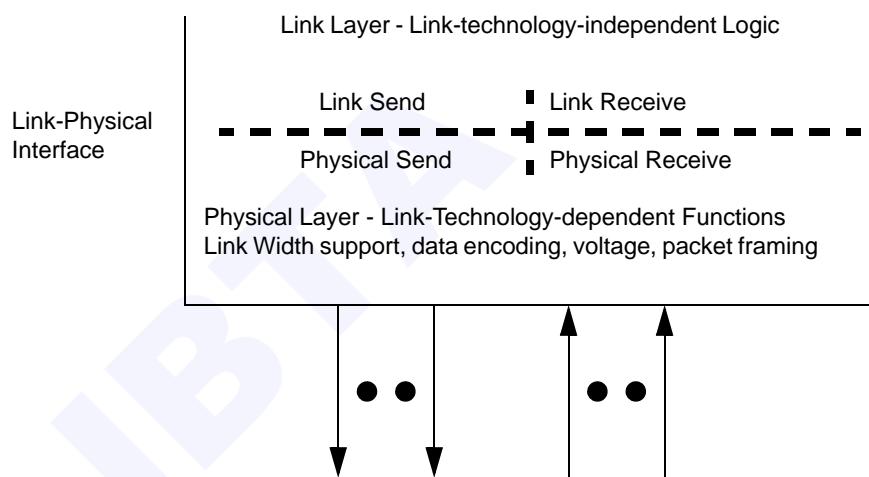


Figure 49 Physical Functions and Physical/Link Interface

6.2 SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE PHYSICAL LAYER.

The physical layer is responsible for:

- establishing a physical link when possible,
- informing the link layer whether the physical link is up or down,
- monitoring the status of the physical link, and
- when the physical link is up:
 - delivering received control and data bytes to the link layer, and
 - transmitting control and data bytes from the link layer.

See volume 2 for physical layer specifications.

6.3 INTERFACE BETWEEN PHYSICAL AND LINK LAYERS.

This chapter does not intend to describe an actual interface within a chip - it describes the functionality of the interface between the link-technology-dependent physical send and receive functions, and the link-technology-independent link logical function.

This interface is designed to keep the link and higher layer interface independent of physical layer implementation. The physical layer deals with all details that are dependent on the characteristics of operation over a particular physical layer such as line code.

The purpose of describing a logical interface and the related state machines is to partition functions to describe external behavior of IBA devices as simply and clearly as possible. Such descriptions are not intended to imply details of the internal implementation of devices. For instance, the interface described here does not imply the width of the internal link path which will be implementation dependent.

6.3.1 INTERFACE BETWEEN PHYSICAL RECEIVE AND LINK RECEIVE.

The following messages are sent between the physical receive function and the link logic.

6.3.1.1 PHY_LINK - PHYSICAL LINK STATUS

This message conveys the status of the physical link from the physical receive function to the link logic. This message is sent when physical link status changes and can take the following values:

down	the physical link is not operational. Sent when the link is in any non-operational status including no receive signal or retraining in progress
up	the physical link is trained and operational

These values report the status of the physical link as needed by the link logic. Any finer grain information needed by management (e.g. no_signal or retraining) will be obtained by management from the physical layer rather than passed through the link layer.

6.3.1.2 L_INIT_TRAIN - LINK INITIATE RETRAINING

This message is a request for retraining of the physical link. It is sent from the link logic to the physical receive function when the link logic has detected a need to retrain the link. See [Section 7.12.2, “Error Recovery Procedures,” on page 244](#) for usage of this message.

6.3.1.3 RCV_STREAM - RECEIVE STREAM

This message conveys the control and data stream decoded by the receiver from the physical receive function to the link logic. This message is sent once for each data byte and once for each control signal received. The idle signaling of the physical link is treated as one control signal. This message can take the following values:

data	data and link packet contents
error	code violation
SDP	start data packet delimiter
SLP	start link packet delimiter
EGP	end good packet delimiter
EBP	end bad packet delimiter
idle	idle

6.3.2 INTERFACE BETWEEN PHYSICAL TRANSMIT AND LINK TRANSMIT.

The following messages are sent between the physical transmit function and the link logic.

6.3.2.1 XMIT_STREAM - TRANSMIT STREAM

This message conveys the control and data stream from the link logic to the physical layer. This message is sent once for each data byte and once for each control signal to be sent. The idle message causes the physical send function to send idles until a new message is received. This message can take the following values:

data	data and link packet contents
SDP	start data packet delimiter
SLP	start link packet delimiter
EGP	end good packet delimiter
EBP	end bad packet delimiter
idle	idle

6.3.2.2 XMIT_READY - PHYSICAL TRANSMITTER READY

This message is sent from the physical transmit function to the link transmitter to indicate whether the physical transmit function is ready to start transmitting a new packet. This provides physical layer dependent pacing back to the link layer since many physical layers have constraints that pre-

vent sending continuous packet traffic. This message can take the following values:

rdy ready for packet initiation

wait hold off packet initiation

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

CHAPTER 7: LINK LAYER

7.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter describes the behavior of the link and specifies the link level operations for devices attached to an IBA network. The link layer handles the sending and receiving of data across the links at the packet level. Services provided by the link layer include addressing, buffering, flow control, error detection and switching.

State machines are used in this specification to define the logical operation of the link layer as externally visible. They are not intended to define internal details of implementation. For instance, the packet receiver state machine operates on data received from the link layer as a stream of bytes though it is expected that many implementations of the link layer will process multiple bytes of the data stream in parallel.

7.1.1 STATE MACHINE CONVENTIONS

State machines are described to provide a clear description of the external behavior of the devices. Their description is not intended to imply the internal implementation of IBA devices. Actual implementations must take into account other considerations such as efficiency and suitability to the implementation technology.

The state machines in this chapter use the following conventions:

- Each state is represented by a box.
- The top section of the box contains the state name.
- The bottom section of the box contains the actions which occur in the state.
- Transition arrows indicate state transitions which will be made when the expression next to the arrow is satisfied.
- A transition arrow which does not originate in a state indicates a global transition. Such a transition will occur regardless of the current state. For instance, in [Figure 50 on page 189](#), there is a global transition into the LinkDown state.
- If no exit condition for a state is satisfied, the machine remains in the current state.
- “Or” is represented by “+”.
- “And” is represented by “*”.

- The state diagrams represent the primary specification for the functions they depict. When a conflict exists between a state diagram and descriptive text, the state diagram takes precedence.

7.2 LINK STATES

C7-1: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by C7-1.1.1:

C7-1.1.1: A port shall control its state and overall operation as specified in [Figure 50 Link State Machine on page 189](#) and [Section 7.2.7, "State Machine Terms," on page 189](#).

The states LinkInitialize and LinkArm are used by subnet management to configure devices on the subnet. Refer to [14.3.6 Port State Change on page 979](#) for additional information on how these states are used.

The link state machine is depicted in Figure 50. The following is a description of the states of this state machine.

7.2.1 LINKDOWN STATE

In the LinkDown state, the physical link is not up (that is, the physical layer is sending phy_link=down to the link layer) and the link layer is idle. In this state the link layer discards all packets presented to it for transmission.

7.2.2 LINKINITIALIZE STATE

In the LinkInitialize state, the physical link is up (that is, the physical layer is sending phy_link=up to the link layer) and the link layer can only receive and transmit subnet management packets (SMPs) and flow control link packets. While in this state, the link layer discards all other packets received or presented to it for transmission.

7.2.3 LINKARM STATE

In the LinkArm state, the physical link is up and the link layer can receive and transmit SMPs and flow control link packets. Additionally, the link layer can receive all other packets but discards all non-SMP data packets presented to it for transmission.

A switch port which is moved from LinkArm to LinkActive by a packet may also be the output port for that packet. The port will not be activated until the VCRC has been checked for the packet. One data packet should be able to pass through the network causing all armed ports on switches in its path to transition to active. Therefore, it is important that such a packet not be dropped when it is forwarded to a port that has not yet transitioned to active.

C7-1.a1: A switch shall ensure that a packet which causes its output port to transition from Armed to Active is not dropped by the port while in the Armed state. A switch port may enable transmission of data packets while in the Armed state.

7.2.4 LINKACTIVE STATE

In the LinkActive state, the physical link is up and the link layer can transmit and receive all packet types.

7.2.5 LINKACTDEFER STATE

The LinkActDefer state is entered from the LinkActive state when the physical layer indicates a failure in the link. If the error persists, the LinkDownTimeout expires and the port state transitions to LinkDown state. If the physical layer recovers prior to LinkDownTimeout expiration, the port state machine returns to the LinkActive state. While in the LinkActDefer state, the link layer will not transmit or receive packets. It may process packets already received as it would in the corresponding states. It will drop packets presented to it for transmission.

The purpose of this state is to allow for retraining of the physical link without requiring reinitialization of the link and higher layers.

7.2.6 MANAGEMENT STATE CHANGE COMMANDS

Management can send commands to attempt to alter the link state by sending a set request to the link port state in PortInfo. In the state diagrams, these commands are designated as CPortState=<something>, where <something> is Down, Arm or Active. Issuing these commands does not always result in a transition to that state. This is illustrated in the state machine diagram, where the link must first be in the correct state to respond to such a command. For example, the state diagram indicates that the command CPortState=Active can only cause a transition to the LinkActive state if the current link state is LinkArm.

C7-2: Any management state change command with a value other than Down, Arm, or Active shall not result in a state change.

C7-3: A management state change command which is not valid in the current state shall not result in a state change.

Note, issuing a management state change command that is not valid (i.e. does not cause a state change) does not necessarily imply an error. For example, issuing CPortState=Active while in the LinkActive state, should not cause a state transition, and may or may not be reported as an error (See Section [14.2.6.6 SMP Attribute Component Errors \(status_field\[4:2\] = 0x7\) on page 950](#) for a discussion of errors).

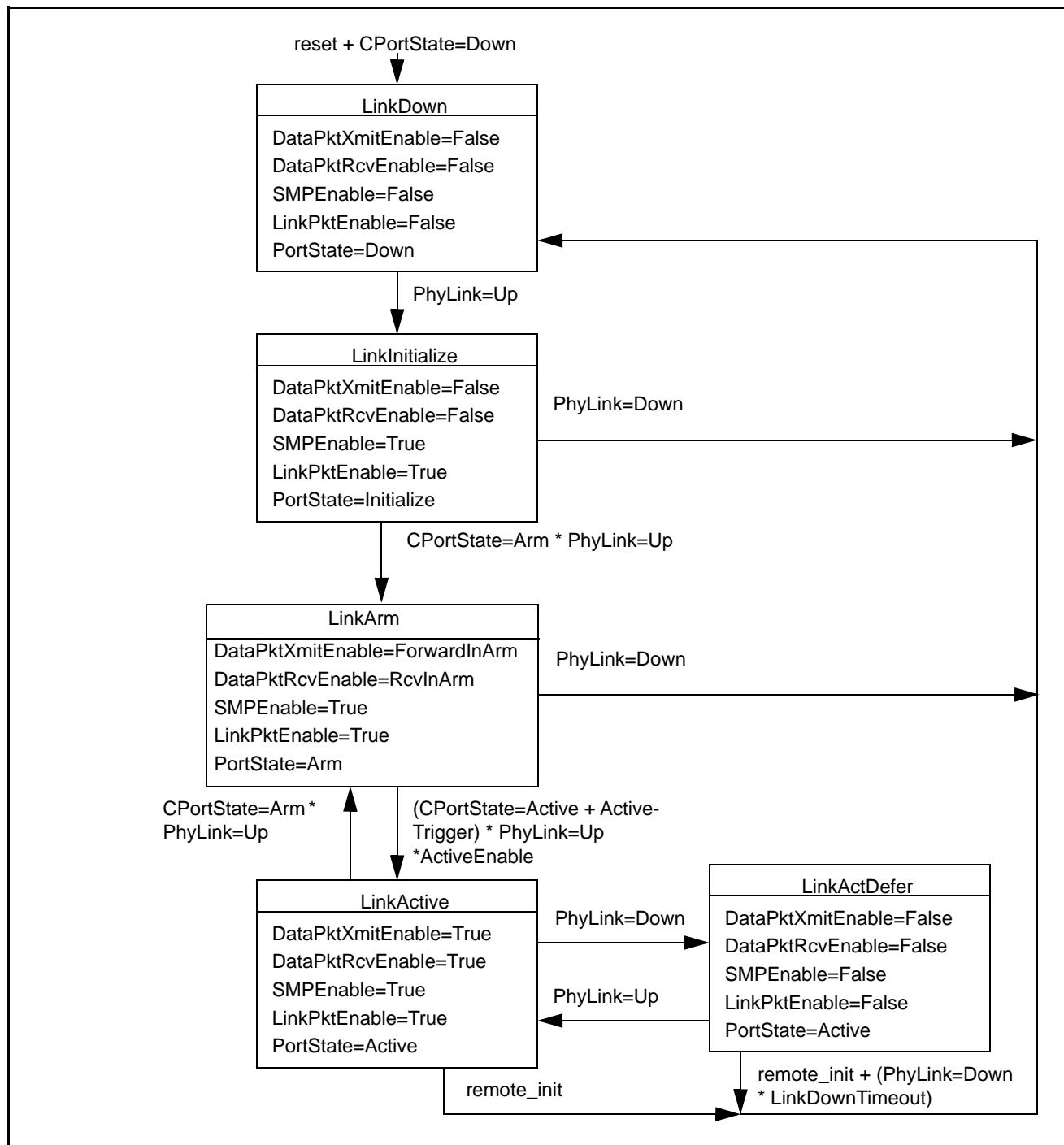


Figure 50 **Link State Machine**

7.2.7 STATE MACHINE TERMS

Reset - An internal signal to reset the interface.

Remote_init - a link packet with the flow control initialize Op code (see [7.9.4 Flow Control Packet on page 233](#)) has been received and has passed the checks of the link packet check state machine.

Active_enable - a flag to prevent a premature transition from armed to active. It is set to false when the LinkInitialize state is exited. It is set to true when a link packet with the normal flow control Op code has been received and has passed the checks of the link packet check state machine while in the LinkArm state.

PhyLink - the physical link status, phy_link, from the physical layer (refer to [6.3.1.1 Phy link - Physical Link Status on page 183](#)). Valid values are Up and Down.

PortState - the value of the PortState component of the PortInfo attribute. (Refer to [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#).) Valid values are "Down", "Initialize", "Arm" and "Active".

CPortState - a value that indicates commands from management to change the port state. Valid values are "Down", "Arm", and "Active". Note that when phy_link=up and CPortState=down, the state machine will transition to the LinkDown state which will reset other link state machines. Since phy_link=up, this will be followed by a transition to the LinkInitialize state. Thus a command to change link port state to down provides a way to re-initialize the link layer. To disable a port requires a command to the physical layer port state machine. The value of CPortState shall only persist while in the state where it was received. If it satisfies a transition term from that state, it shall cause the transition. If it does not, it shall cause no transitions. Any state transition clears CPortState.

DataPktXmitEnable - a Boolean that indicates the link layer's action with respect to transmission of non-SMP data packets. When True, transmission of non-SMP data packets is enabled. When False, non-SMP data packets submitted to link layer for transmission are discarded.

DataPktRcvEnable - a Boolean that indicates the link layer's action with respect to reception of non-SMP data packets from the physical layer. When True, reception of non-SMP data packets is enabled. When False, non-SMP data packets received from the physical layer are discarded.

SMPEnable - a Boolean that indicates the link layer's action with respect to transmission and reception of subnet management packets (SMPs). When True, transmission and reception of SMPs are enabled. When False, SMPs submitted to link layer for transmission or reception are discarded.

LinkPktEnable - a Boolean that indicates the link layer's action with respect to transmission and reception of link packets. When True, transmis-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
sion and reception of link packets are enabled. When False, link packets are not generated by the link layer and any link packets received are discarded.

ForwardInArm - a Boolean constant that indicates whether transmission of data packets is enabled during the Arm state. For a CA, this shall equal False. A switch may optionally use False or True.

RcvInArm - a Boolean constant that indicates whether data packets will be received during the Arm state. For a CA, this shall be equal to True. For a switch all ports will be set to True, except for ESP0 (if supported) which will be set to False (This is to guarantee that a virtual CA behind this ESP0 will not be able to inject non-VL15 packets into the fabric while the ESP0 is in the ARMED state. This is equivalent to the way a standalone CA would behave by means of its own port state while it is ARMED. Since virtual CAs behind ESP0 do not have their own port state, this mechanism that prevents injection of non-VL15 packets while ARMED, is based on the port state of the switch ESP0).

ActiveTrigger - a device dependent trigger that initiates the transition from LinkArm to LinkActive. For routers and channel adapters, ActiveTrigger occurs upon reception of a non-VL15 packet which passes the VCRC check on the port. For routers and channel adapters, ActiveTrigger is only generated on the port that received the packet.

For switches, ActiveTrigger occurs upon reception of a non-VL15 packet which passes the VCRC check on any port of the switch. Note, that for switches, the port receiving the packet could be in either Active or Armed state, and that ActiveTrigger is generated for all ports (including enhanced port 0) on the switch that are in Armed state.

LinkDownTimeout - a timeout that indicates that the physical link has been down (PhyLink = down) for a period of time that causes the port state machine to transition to the LinkDown state. LinkDownTimeout occurs when the port state machine has continuously been in the LinkActDefer state for 10ms +3% / -51%.

7.3 PACKET RECEIVER STATES

C7-4: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C7-4.1.1](#).

C7-4.1.1: Whenever the physical link is up, the packet receiver shall process the received stream from the physical layer as defined in [Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193](#).

The packet receiver's primary input is the `rcv_stream` (refer to [6.3.1.3 rcv_stream - Receive Stream on page 184](#)). See the Link/Phy Interface Chapter in Volume 2 of the IBA Specification for the definitions of `rcv_stream=idle` and data appearing this the state machine. (It should be noted that, for the Phy defined in IBA Version 1.1, and earlier, the `rcv_stream=idle` transition case from the *data pkt receive* and *link pkt receive* states cannot occur. This transition term is intended only for a Phy that provides explicit notification of *idle* at the receiver.)

The packet receiver monitors the received stream from the physical layer, `rcv_stream`, and passes any packets received with proper delimiters and no code violations to the link packet check or the data packet check as appropriate. Each byte of the `rcv_stream` is tested once by the state machine and causes at most one state transition. For example, when an SLP causes a transition from `RcvDataPacket` to `BadPacket`, that SLP does not cause a further transition from `BadPacket` to `RcvLinkPacket`.

While this logical state machine represents sending the whole packet to the packet checker once the end delimiter is received, implementations are allowed to begin processing the packet before that has occurred. Switches and routers may begin to forward a data packet while in the `RcvDataPacket` state if the packet passes all checks of the Data Packet Check state machine which require discard of the packet on failure. The required checks are all based on fields within the LRH. If further processing of the packet results in a transition to the `MarkedBadPacket` or `BadPacket` states and the switch or router has begun forwarding the packet, the switch or router shall corrupt the packet.

C7-5: To corrupt a packet, a switch or router shall place the 1's complement of the VCRC calculated for the transmitted packet in the `VCRC` field and shall terminate the packet with the EBP delimiter.

o7-1: When corrupting a packet, the switch or router may truncate the packet rather than sending all the received bytes.

C7-6: If a switch or router is forwarding a corrupted packet which is longer than indicated by the packet length field of the LRH, then it shall truncate the packet to less than or equal to the packet length field value.

C7-7: A CA shall not deliver a received packet to its client unless it has passed all the checks of the packet receiver and data packet check state machines. Therefore, when the action in the state is "discard or corrupt," a CA shall discard the packet.

Packets without proper start delimiters cause entry to the bad packet discard state and are discarded. Packets received with one or more bytes of `rcv_stream=error` or without proper end delimiters cause entry to the bad packet state and are discarded by CAs and discarded or corrupted by

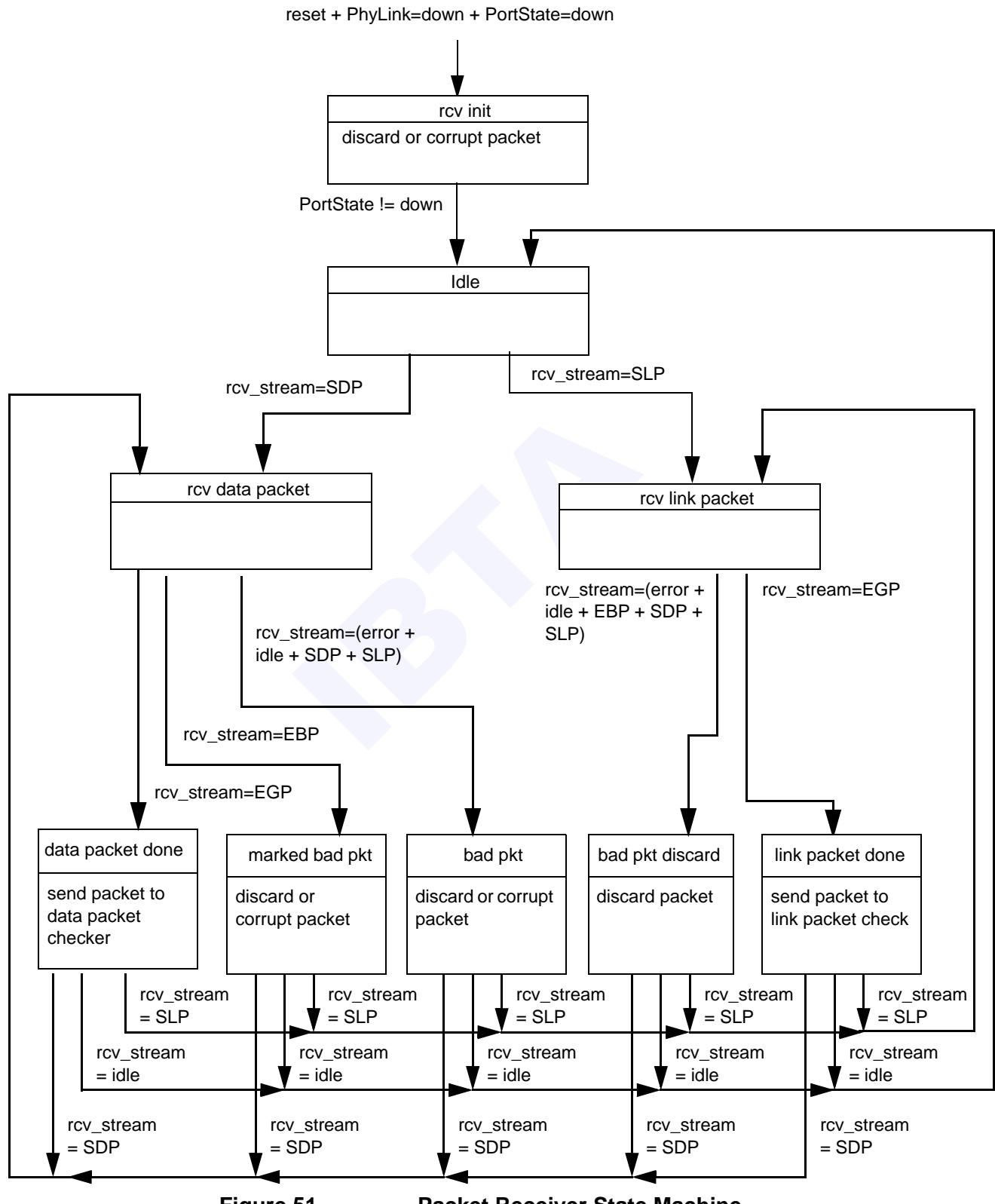


Figure 51

Packet Receiver State Machine

switches. The errors which cause entry to the bad packet discard and bad packet states indicate an error occurring on the local link. Packets received with no bytes of rcv_stream=error, a data packet start delimiter (SDP), and a bad packet end delimiter (EBP) indicate a packet forwarded by a switch that experienced an error that was not on the local link. These packets cause entry to the marked bad pkt state. Since link packets are not forwarded by switches and routers, they should never have a bad packet end delimiter. A packet with a start delimiter of SLP and an end delimiter of EBP is considered a local link error and causes entry to the bad packet state.

7.4 DATA PACKET CHECK

The data packet check machine in a CA verifies a data packet before passing it to the network layer. The data packet check machine in a switch or router port verifies a received data packet.

C7-8: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C7-8.1.1](#):

C7-8.1.1: Data packets shall be checked as specified by [Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195](#) and [Section 7.4, "Data Packet Check," on page 194](#). The order of checks within this state machine indicates the precedence of the errors for reporting and not necessarily the order in which the errors are detected.

For instance, most implementations would detect an invalid VL shortly after the packet starts and a CRC error cannot be detected until the end of the packet. However, CRC error is checked first in the state machine because if both of these errors occur, the CRC error indicates that the packet was damaged and that error should be reported rather than the VL error.

C7-9: A switch or router shall perform the same checks as a CA on packets for which the switch or router is the destination such as management packets addressed to the switch or router.

The data packet check machine in a CA passes packets to the receiver queueing. See Section [18.2.5.2 Receiver Queuing on page 1226](#).

C7-10: If a packet fails any test that terminates in a state of the Data Packet Check State Machine with the action “discard,” switches, routers, and CAs shall discard the packet.

C7-11: For packets that only fail tests terminating in states of the Data Packet Check State Machine that specify the action of “corrupt or discard,” a CA shall discard the packet and a switch or router shall discard the

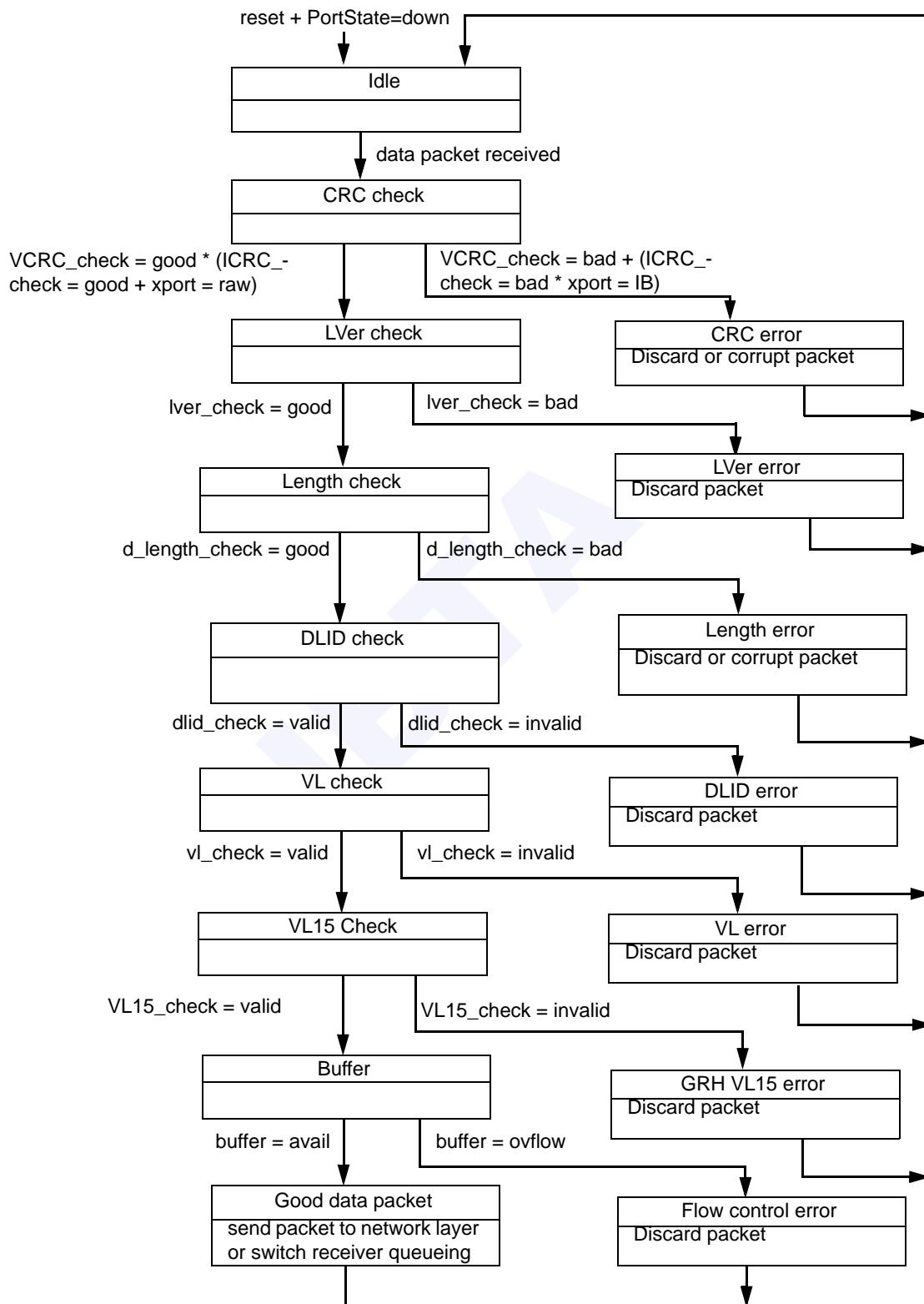


Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine

packet or corrupt it as defined in [Section 7.3, "Packet Receiver States," on page 191.](#)

VCRC_check

- | | |
|------|---------------------|
| good | VCRC check was good |
| bad | otherwise |

ICRC_check

- | | |
|------|---------------------|
| good | ICRC check was good |
| bad | otherwise |

The link layer of a switch or router is only required to check ICRC on packets that are destined to that switch or router. On all other packets, a switch or router may omit the ICRC check by returning ICRC_check = good without checking the ICRC.

xport

- | | |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| IB | LNH indicates IB transport |
| raw | LNH indicates raw transport |

lver_check

- | | |
|------|-----------------|
| good | LVer equals 0x0 |
| bad | otherwise |

d_length_check

- | | |
|------|--|
| good | PktLen * 4 = received data bytes - 2 and
(MTU +124)/4 >= PktLen >= minimum length |
| bad | otherwise |

Received length is the number of bytes between the SDP and EGP. MTU is PortInfo.MTUCap. Minimum length is 5 for raw packets and 6 for IBA transport packets. See [Section 7.7.8, "Packet Length \(PktLen\) - 11 bits," on page 216.](#)

dlid_check

valid	for CAs: one of the following conditions is met: • DLID is a unicast LID of this CA Port, or • DLID is a multicast LID (i.e. in the range 0xc000 to 0xffff), or • DLID is 0xFFFF (the permissive LID) and VL is 15 for switches and routers: DLID is not 0x0000.
invalid	otherwise

In addition to the above checks, if the DLID is a multicast LID a CA may optionally check if the DLID is configured for this CA. If the CA performs this check, the dlid_check result may be invalid if the DLID is not configured for this CA. Thus a DLID which is within the range 0xC000 to 0xFFFF may be declared by the CA as being invalid if the specific DLID is not configured for this CA.

VL_check

valid	(VL is operational and PortState = Active or Armed) or (VL = 15 and DLID is unicast). ^a
invalid	otherwise

a. Note, the permissive LID is a unicast LID

VL15_check

valid	(VL not equal 15) or (LNH indicates IBA local packet)
invalid	otherwise

buffer

avail	buffer is available for the packet
ovflow	otherwise

7.5 LINK PACKET CHECK

The only type of link packet currently defined is the flow control packet. See [Section 7.9.4, “Flow Control Packet,” on page 233](#).

C7-12: A port shall verify a link packet as specified by [Figure 53 Link Packet Check machine on page 198](#) and [Section 7.5, “Link Packet Check,” on page 197](#) before passing it to the flow control.

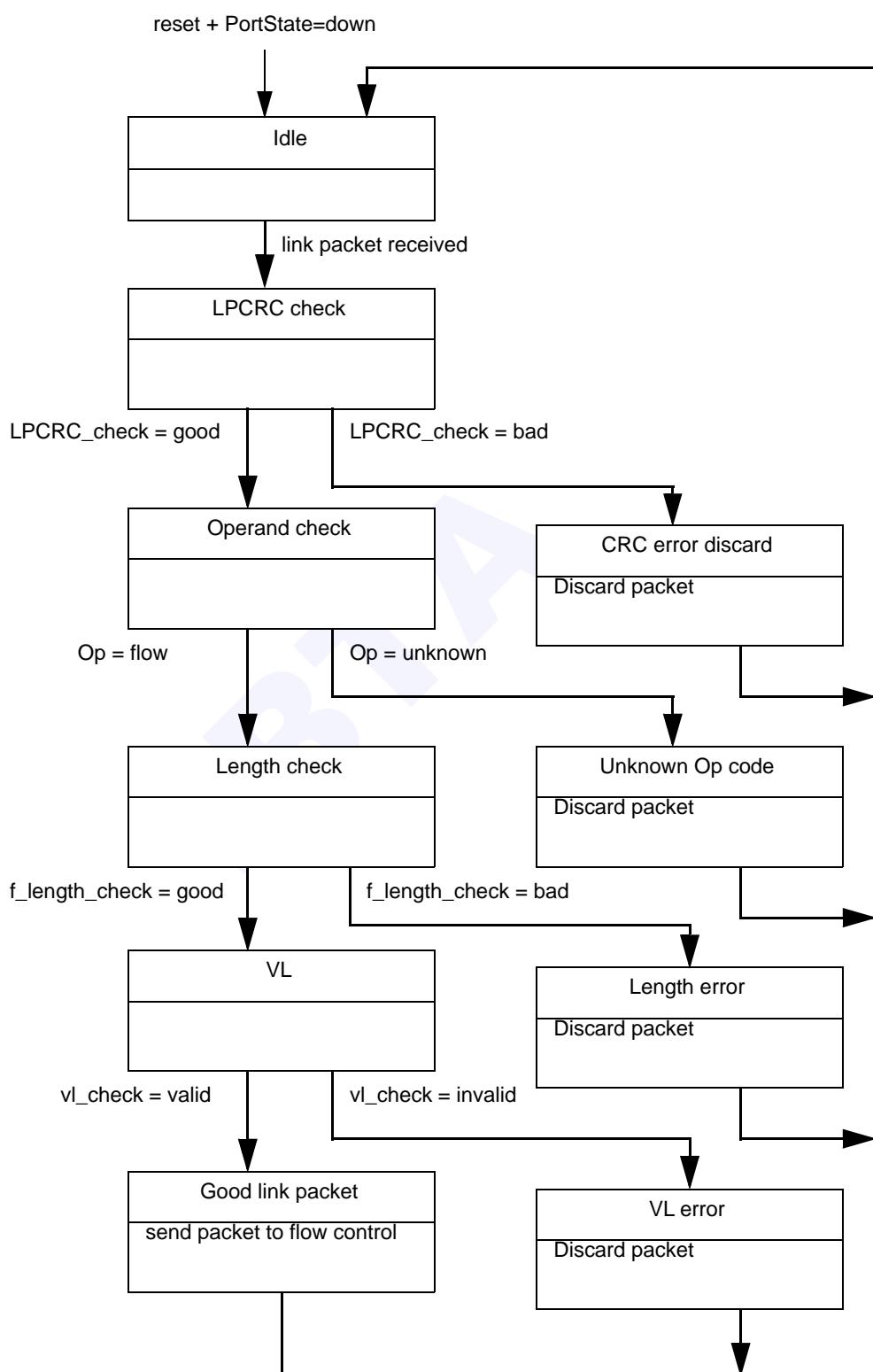


Figure 53

Link Packet Check machine

LPCRC_check

1
2 good LPCRC (Link Packet CRC) check was good
3 bad otherwise

Op

6
7 flow either flow control opcode is present
8 unknown otherwise

VL_check

11
12 valid (VL is supported or PortState is not LinkDown or not Link-
13 Active) and VL is not 15
14 invalid otherwise

15
16 During initialization, the number of active VLs may not have been con-
17 figured yet, so receiving credits for a non-supported VL is only an error
18 when in the active state.

f_length_check

20
21 good length received = 6 bytes (including LPCRC)
22 bad otherwise

7.6 VIRTUAL LANES MECHANISMS

23
24 Virtual lanes (VLs) provide a means to implement multiple logical flows
25 over a single physical link. Link level flow control can be applied to one
26 lane without affecting the others. [Table 16 on page 200](#) summarizes the
27 key attributes of VLs.

28
29 **C7-13:** An InfiniBand protocol aware device shall conform to the require-
30 ments defined by the rows labeled *required VLs*, *buffering*, and *ordering*
31 in Table 16.

32
33 **o7-2:** An InfiniBand protocol aware device that implements more than one
34 data VL shall conform to the requirements defined by the row labeled *flow
35 control* in Table 16.

Table 16 Key Virtual Lane Characteristics

Attribute	Description
VL	Represents a logical flow over a given physical link.
VL Types	There are two types of VLs, one for normal traffic called a data VL and one reserved for subnet management traffic. The subnet management traffic VL is VL15. All other VLs are for normal traffic.
Required VLs	VL 15 shall be implemented in all IBA channel adapters, switches, and routers. VL 0 shall be implemented for application use in all IBA channel adapters, switches, and routers. VLs 1-14 may be implemented to support additional traffic segregation. If implemented, VLs shall be numbered as indicated in Table 17 VL Numbering and Interoperability on page 201
Buffering	Devices shall provide independent buffering resources for each VL. See 7.6.4 Buffering and Flow Control For Data VLs on page 202 for details.
Flow Control	Link-level flow control shall be implemented on a per VL basis. See 7.9 Flow Control on page 232 for description of flow control on data VLs. VL 15 does not use link-level flow control, however. See 7.6.3 Special VLs on page 201 for details. Flow control packets are not subject to flow control.
VL Field	4-bit field within the LRH indicating the actual VL being used by this packet.
SL Field	4-bit field located in the LRH indicating the requested service level within the local subnet. See 7.6.5 Service Level on page 204 for a description of this field.
Ordering	When fabric configuration is stable, unicast packets between the same source and destination LIDs within a subnet and using the same SL shall be ordered. Multicast packets shall also be similarly ordered. Note, however, that ordering is not guaranteed between unicast and multicast flows, even if on the same SL. Ordering is not maintained between different SLs. Packets on one SL may overtake packets on another SL, even if flowing through the same physical path within the fabric.

7.6.1 VL IDENTIFICATION

C7-14: The sending port of an InfiniBand protocol aware device shall identify each packet with the virtual lane to be used, this information being carried in the 4-bit VL field of link header. In addition, the local routing header shall contain a 4-bit Service Level (SL).

The use of the SL field is described in Section 7.6.5 on page 204.

7.6.2 NUMBER OF VLs SUPPORTED

C7-15: An InfiniBand protocol aware device shall conform to requirements defined by the rows labeled *VL numbering* and *configuration* in Table 17

C7-16: All ports of an InfiniBand protocol aware device shall support VL15. Further, all ports shall support data VL0.

o7-3: Ports may support more than one data VL. If they do, they shall do in accordance with the allowed number specified in [Table 17 on page 201](#).

C7-17: The data VLs shall be numbered sequentially starting from zero.

Thus, if an implementation supports 4 data VLs, they shall be numbered 0, 1, 2 and 3.

Table 17 VL Numbering and Inter-operability

Number of Data VLs Supported	VL Numbering	List of VL Configurations That Shall Be Supported ^a
1	VL0	1
2	VL0, VL1	2, 1
4	VL0 - VL3	4, 2, 1
8	VL0 - VL7	8, 4, 2, 1
15	VL0 - VL14	15, 8, 4, 2, 1

a. Because the port at the other end of the link may support a different number of VLs, the port must support operation with different numbers of VLs.

7.6.3 SPECIAL VLs

VL 15 is a special VL and must be supported by all ports. The following lists the properties of VL 15:

- C7-18:** VL15 shall not be subject to flow control (both link level and end-to-end), i.e. VL 15 packets may be transmitted at any time.
- C7-19:** InfiniBand protocol aware devices shall discard VL15 packets if there is not enough room for reception. Other than the packet discard counter ([16.1.3.5 PortCounters on page 1098](#)) this discard is done silently.
- C7-20:** All InfiniBand protocol aware devices shall support sourcing and sinking VL 15 packets.
- C7-21:** CAs and routers shall provide a minimum of a single packet buffer per port for VL15 on each port for reception.
- C7-22:** Switches shall provide a minimum of a single packet buffer for VL15 per switch.
- C7-23:** VL15 packets shall be scheduled preemptively, i.e. they are transmitted ahead of all other packets (including flow control packets).
- C7-24:** VL mapping in a switch does not apply to VL15. That is, a packet received by a switch on VL15 shall be transmitted on VL15 and no packet received on another VL shall be transmitted on VL15.
- C7-25:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.
The SL field should be set to 0 by devices sourcing VL15 packets and ignored by devices checking and sinking VL15 packets.
- C7-26:** VL15 packets shall not be forwarded between subnets, i.e. they shall not have a GRH and they shall not be raw.
- C7-27:** Packets using VL15 shall have a maximum payload of 256 payload bytes.

7.6.4 BUFFERING AND FLOW CONTROL FOR DATA VLs

Virtual Lanes provide independent data streams on the same physical link.

For data VLs, separate guaranteed buffering resources, and separate flow control shall be provided. (For VL 15, different flow control and buffering restrictions apply, and are described in above.)

C7-28: For data VLs, each VL on each port shall provide the appearance of separate buffering resources, i.e. although dedicated buffering resources are not required, the ports must behave as if they were.

C7-29: Each port shall advertise the number of credits available for each data VL configured using flow control packets.

These credit packets and the flow control process are described in [7.9 Flow Control on page 232](#).

[Table 18 Processing of Link Packets on page 203](#) details the behavior of a port when sending and receiving a link packet for a given data VL. The following terminology is used in this table (and elsewhere in this specification):

- A data VL is supported if its VL number is inside the range indicated by the PortInfo.VLCap attribute. This indicates that the data VL is supported by the port.
- A data VL is configured if its VL number is inside the range indicated by the PortInfo.OperationalVLs attribute. This indicates that the data VL is currently configured for use by the port.

(Refer to [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#) for description of PortInfo.VLCap and PortInfo.OperationalVLs.)

C7-30: Each port shall send and receive link packets as specified in [Table 18 Processing of Link Packets on page 203](#)

Note, in this table, a required behavior has not been specified for the cases where the data VL is supported but not currently configured. This is done to support changing of the Data VL configuration. Note further, the Data VL configuration may be changed in any PortState including LinkActive. It should also be noted that changing Data VL configuration when in LinkActive state might result in generation of FlowControlUpdateErrors which in turn could cause transitions between LinkActive and LinkActive-Defer states and effect the values of the performance counter LinkError-RecoveryCounter.

Table 18 Processing of Link Packets

PortState	Status of a Data VL	Sending of Credits on that Data VL	Receiving of Credits on that Data VL
LinkInitialize	Data VL is Configured	Shall send link packets for that Data VL	Shall be accepted
	Data VL is supported but not currently configured	May send link packets for that Data VL	Shall be ignored, no error
	Data VL is not supported	Shall not send link packets for that Data VL	Shall be ignored, no error

Table 18 Processing of Link Packets (Continued)

PortState	Status of a Data VL	Sending of Credits on that Data VL	Receiving of Credits on that Data VL
LinkArm or LinkActive	Data VL is Configured	Shall send link packets on that Data VL	Shall be accepted
	Data VL is supported but not currently configured	Should not send link packets on that Data VL	Shall be ignored, no error
	Data VL is not supported	Shall not send link packets on unsupported data VLs	Shall be ignored, malformed packet reported

C7-31: Each port shall provide sufficient buffering for each configured data VL to be able to advertise credit for at least one packet with MTU payload.

Note, MTU payload here refers to the lesser of MTUCap and neighborMTU for that port

(See [7.7.8 Packet Length \(PktLen\) - 11 bits on page 216](#) for definition of the corresponding packet size requirement.)

C7-32: When a data packet arrives at a port, it shall be placed in the buffer associated with that input port and VL field in the packet.

7.6.5 SERVICE LEVEL

Service Level (SL) is used to identify different flows within an IBA subnet. It is carried in the local route header of the packet.

C7-33: The SL of a packet shall not be changed as a packet crosses the subnet.

The SL is an indication as to the service class of the packet. IBA does not assign any specific meaning to an SL value. SLs are intended as a mechanism to aid in providing differentiated services, improved fabric utilization and avoiding deadlock. However, the specifics on how this is done is beyond the scope of this specification.

The IBA specification does, however, define two mechanisms using SLs and VLs that are intended as tools to implement Quality of Service (QoS) related services. One is SL-to-VL mapping, the other is data VL arbitration. Both are described in detail below.

o7-4: If multiple data VLs are supported, then both SL-to-VL mapping and data VL arbitration must be supported (both described below).

Note, if only a single data VL is supported, then SL-to-VL mapping may still be implemented for SL filtering--see [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#) for a description of this).

C7-34: The only requirement for devices supporting only a single data VL with respect to SLs and VLs is that the device shall include the SL value in the SL field when sourcing a packet into an IBA subnet.

Note that switches are included in this list because they can be the source of packets via their SMI or GSI interfaces. Note also that this specification does not require the validation of SL field at the packet destination.

There are no ordering guarantees between packets of different SL.

The source for SL for different transport services is detailed in [9.10 Header and Data Field Source on page 450](#). For connected services (unreliable connected, reliable connected and reliable datagrams), the SL associated with the forward and reverse paths of the same connection may be different (i.e. on the same connection, the SL associated with the DeviceA:transmitWQ may be different from that for the DeviceB:transmitWQ). For unreliable and raw datagrams, however, a node can always respond to a datagram from some other node using the same SL as the original datagram.

The SL used for a given destination (DLID), QOS, partition etc. is ultimately provided by the subnet manager. It may also be from derived sources such as request packets, local management agents etc.

7.6.6 VL MAPPING WITHIN A SUBNET

As a packet is routed across a subnet, it may be necessary for it to change VLs when it uses a given link. Examples of where this may be needed include:

- 1) The link may not support the VL previously used by the packet. This could happen when a device in the fabric supports a limited set of VLs.
- 2) Two traffic streams arriving on different input ports of a switch may be using the same outgoing link, and may also happen to be using the same VL when arriving at the switch. If VL mapping were not supported, then both traffic streams would have to use the same VL on the output port. VL mapping allows these two streams to be assigned different VLs on the outgoing links. In general, VL mapping offers greater flexibility in maintaining independent traffic flows within a fabric.

SL to VL mapping is used to change VLs as a packet crosses a subnet.

SL to VL mapping is required in channel adapters, switches, and routers that support more than one data VL. It is optional in those devices supporting only one data VL. If it is implemented it shall be implemented in accordance with the requirements of this section.

SL to VL mapping is done using a programmable mapping table. This is provided by the SLtoVLMappingTable.

o7-5: In channel adapters and routers that support SL to VL mapping, there shall be a logical table that maps the SL field in the packet LRH to the VL to be used for that output port. This table is 16 entries deep, with each port of the device having an independent table. All 16 possible values of SL shall be included in this table. The table indicates the VL number to be used by that packet when it is transmitted by the port.

o7-6: In switches that support SL to VL mapping, there shall be a logical table that maps the SL, input port and output port of the packet to the VL to be used for the next hop.

This table can be best viewed as a set of tables, one for each output port. Each of these per output port tables then indicates which VL should be used by the outgoing packet based on its SL field and the port that it arrived on. Because the switch supports an internal port (refer to [18.2.4.1 Switch Ports on page 1214](#)) that will also source packets that require VL mapping, this port is included as one of the input ports in the table. See [14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 918](#) for details on table size and layout.

o7-7: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

The table indicates the VL to be used by that packet for the next hop transmission based on packet SL, input port and output port.

This table provides mapping for the n+1 input ports (including the internal port) to n output ports.

Refer to [Table 168 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 920](#) for details of on the SLtoVLMappingTable.

o7-8: Devices implementing SL to VL mapping shall behave as depicted in Table 19.

Table 19 SLtoVLMappingTable Behavior

VL Value in SLtoVLMappingTable	Action
VL15	Discard packet, no error.
Data VL not configured by port	Discard packet, no error.

Table 19 SLtoVLMappingTable Behavior (Continued)

VL Value in SLtoVLMappingTable	Action
Data VL configured by port	Forward packet to port using VL

The number of VLs supported is defined by the VLCap component of the PortInfo attribute, while the number configured is defined by the Operational VLs component of the PortInfo attribute. (Refer to [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#) for description of PortInfo.VLCap and PortInfo.Operation-alVLs.)

Note, the SLtoVLMappingTable may be programmed with VL15 for any SL that is not authorized to use that port (for channel adapters and routers) or input-output port path (for switches). As indicated by the above table, packets are discarded if the SLtoVLMappingTable returns VL15. This filtering is intended as a mechanism to help protect against unauthorized use of SLs, and to help in breaking routing dependency loops (and thereby avoiding routing deadlocks).

7.6.7 INITIALIZATION AND CONFIGURATION

In order to allow devices to be built with different numbers of VLs, the SM must be able to configure the number of VLs to be used on a given link. The SM can query each port to determine the number of VLs it supports and then configure to a number supported by both ports on the link. [Table 17 on page 201](#) depicts the number of VLs combinations that each device must support. The number of VLs supported is defined by the PortInfo.VLCap component while the number of VLs configured is defined by the PortInfo.OperationalVL (Refer to [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#)).

Ports may be configured to 1, 2, 4, 8 or 15 VLs and must be configured to a value equal to or less than the number supported. If an attempt is made to program the OperationalVLs to a value larger than the VLCap, the port may load OperationalVLs with any valid value.

A port must be configured with the same number of VLs for both its sending and receiving directions.

Modification of the SLtoVLMappingTable may be made while the port is in operation.

o7-9: If a port implements SL-to-VL mapping, it shall not allow any packet in transit to be fragmented as a result of changing the SLtoVLMapping-Table contents.

Packets may be discarded or mis-mapped during this change, however.

When a channel adapter, router, or switch initializes, the SLtoVLMapping-Table is not required to be initialized (i.e.the contents are undefined). The table should be initialized by the SM prior to use by data traffic.

7.6.8 VL SCHEDULING AND FLOW CONTROL FOR VL15 AND FLOW CONTROL PACKETS

VL15 (i.e. subnet management packets) traffic and flow control packets will use preemptive scheduling. The order of precedence is depicted in Table 20.

7.6.9 VL ARBITRATION AND PRIORITIZATION

VL arbitration refers to the arbitration done for an outgoing link on a switch, router or channel adapter. Each output port has a separate arbiter. The arbiter selects the next packet to transmit from the set of candidate packets available for transmission on that port.

C7-35: The arbiter shall not violate packet ordering rules, i.e. packets on a given VL shall not be reordered.

The following describes the algorithm to be used by the VL arbiter.

7.6.9.1 VL ARBITRATION WHEN ONLY ONE DATA VL IS IMPLEMENTED

Table 20 depicts the arbitration rules for switch, router or channel adapters that implement only a single data VL. This is a simple priority scheme

Table 20 **Arbitration Rules for Devices with only one data VL**

Packet type	Precedence order
VL15	Highest
Flow control packet	2nd highest
VL0	Lowest

where all packets at a precedence level are sent before any packets at a lower precedence level.

o7-10: Devices implementing only a single data VL shall transmit packets on its output ports using the arbitration rules depicted in [Table 20 Arbitration Rules for Devices with only one data VL on page 208](#).

7.6.9.2 VL ARBITRATION WHEN MULTIPLE DATA VL S ARE IMPLEMENTED

The implementation of multiple data VLs is an optional feature in IBA. If they are implemented, however, the implementation shall conform to the specification detailed in this section.

1
2
3
4
o7-11: For devices implementing more than one data VL, the transmission of VL15 packets and flow control packets shall be the same as depicted in [Table 20 on page 208](#) except that here all the data VLs are at a lower priority than VL15 (highest) and flow control packets (second highest).

5
6
7
8
o7-12: Devices implementing more than one data VL shall also implement the algorithm described in Section [7.6.9.2](#) for arbitrating between packets on the data VLs.

9
10
11
12
A two level scheme is employed, using preemptive scheduling layered on top of a weighted fair scheme. Additionally, the scheme provides a method to ensure forward progress on the low-priority VLs. The weighting, prioritization, and minimum forward progress bandwidth is programmable.

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
VL arbitration is controlled by the VLArbitrationTable (refer to [14.2.5.9 VLArbitrationTable on page 921](#)). This table shall consist of three components, *High-Priority*, *Low-Priority* and *Limit of High-Priority*. The *High-Priority* and *Low-Priority* components are each a list of VL/Weight pairs. The *High-Priority* list shall have a minimum length of one and a maximum of length of 64. The *Low-Priority* list shall have a minimum length equal to the number of data VLs supported and a maximum of length of 64. The *High-Priority* and *Low-Priority* component lists are allowed to be of different length.

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
Each list entry shall contain (1) a VL number (values from 0-14), and (2) a weighting value (values 0-255), indicating the number of 64 byte units which may be transmitted from that VL when its turn in the arbitration occurs. The PktLen field in the LRH is used to determine the number of units in the packet. (Note, the VCRC and also the symbols between packets introduced by the physical layer should not be included in VL arbitration weight calculations.) The calculation shall be maintained to 4 byte increments.

30
31
A weight of 0 indicates that this entry should be skipped.

32
33
34
If a list entry is programmed for VL15 or for a VL that is not supported or is not currently configured by the port, the port may either skip that entry or send from any supported VL for that entry.

35
36
37
Note, that the same data VL may be listed multiple times in the High or Low-Priority component list, and, further, it can be listed in both lists.

38
39
40
41
42
Each configured data VL should be listed in at least one of the component lists. There is, however, no requirement for a device to check for this case. Should a configured data VL not appear in either component list, packets for this data VL may be dropped, sent when the arbiter has no packets to send or never sent.

The *Limit of High-Priority* component indicates the number of high-priority packets that can be transmitted without an opportunity to send a low priority packet. Specifically, the number of bytes that can be sent is *Limit of High-Priority* times 4K bytes, with the counting done the same as described above for weights (i.e. the calculation is done to 4 byte increments and a High-Priority packet can be sent if current byte count has not exceeded exceeded the *Limit of High-Priority*). A value of 255 indicates that the byte limit is unbounded. (Note, if the 255 value is used, forward progress of low priority packets is not guaranteed by this arbitration scheme.) A value of 0 indicates that only a single packet from the high-priority table may be sent before an opportunity is given to the low-priority table.

The VLArbitrationTable may be modified when the port is active. This modification shall not result in fragmentation of any packet that is in transit. Arbitration rules may be violated during this change, however.

When a channel adapter, router, or switch initializes, the VLArbitrationTable is not required to be initialized (i.e. the contents are undefined). The table should be initialized by the SM prior to use by data traffic.

7.6.9.2.1 ARBITRATION RULES BETWEEN VL15, LINK CONTROL AND DATA VL PACKETS

The rules of table [Table 20 on page 208](#) apply, where the data VLs (VL0-VL14) have the lowest priority.

7.6.9.2.2 ARBITRATION RULES FOR DATA VL PACKETS

When there are no VL15 or Flow Control packets to send, the arbitration rules in this section apply.

7.6.9.2.3 ARBITRATION RULES BETWEEN HIGH AND LOW PRIORITY COMPONENTS

The *High-Priority* and *Low-Priority* components form a two level priority scheme. Each of these components (or tables) may have a packet available for transmission. A packet is available for transmission from the High Priority table if the following test succeeds:

For each entry in the High Priority table, determine if:

- 1) the VL field matches that of any packets that are currently waiting for transmission for this port AND
- 3) there is available credit to send that packet

An entry with 0 weight is considered not in the list.

Note, Implementations may check if HiPriAvailWeight is available in determining if a packet is available.

Upon completion of transmission of a packet the following test should be done to determine which table to use to transmit the next packet:

If the High-Priority table has an available packet for transmission (as defined above) and the HighPriCounter has not expired, then the High-Priority is said to be *active* and a packet may be sent from the High-Priority table.

If the High-Priority table does not have an available packet for transmission (as defined above), or if the HighPriCounter has expired, then the HighPriCounter shall be reset, the Low-Priority table is said to be *active* and a packet may be sent from the Low-Priority table.

The following rules govern the operation of the HighPriCounter:

- 1) The HighPriCounter expires when its current value is negative.
- 2) If the value in the *Limit of High-Priority* component is not 255, then for each High-Priority packet transmitted, the size of the packet (as defined by the PktLen field in the LRH) is deducted from the current value of the HighPriCounter. The calculation should be maintained to 4 byte increments.
- 3) When the HighPriCounter is reset, the value in the *Limit of High-Priority* component times 4K bytes is loaded into the HighPriCounter.

7.6.9.2.4 ARBITRATION RULES WITHIN THE HIGH AND LOW COMPONENTS

Within each High or Low Priority table, weighted fair arbitration is used, with the order of entries in each table specifying the order of VL scheduling, and the weighting value specifying the amount of bandwidth allocated to that entry. Each entry in the table is processed in order.

A separate pointer and available weight count is maintained for each of the two tables. The pointers identify the current entry in the table, while the available weight count indicates the amount of weight that the current entry has available for data packet transmission. When a table is active (as defined in the previous section), the current entry in the table is inspected. A packet corresponding to this entry will be sent to the output port for transmission and the packet size (in 4 byte increments) will be deducted from the available weight count for the current entry, if all of the following are true:

- 1) The available weight for the list entry is positive.
- 2) There is a packet available for the VL of the entry
- 3) Buffer credit is available for this packet.

Note, if the available weight at the start of a new packet is positive, condition 1 above is satisfied, even if the packet is larger than the available weight.

When any of these conditions is not true, the next entry in the table is inspected. The current pointer is moved to the next entry in the table, the

available weight count is set to the weighting value for this new entry, and the above test repeated. This is repeated until a packet is found that can be sent to the port for transmission. If the entire table is checked and no entry can be found satisfying the above criteria, the other table becomes active.

This description depicts the logical flow of the arbitration process, but does not specify performance requirements. Implementations shall perform in a logically consistent manner with the above description. Implementations may process steps in parallel and may pipeline tests. As an example of pipelining of tests, the check that there be available packets may return false if a packet has just recently been forwarded to output port but the arbiter logic has not processed its arrival.

Further, implementations are not required to implement the pointers, available weight counter and HighPriCounter. They must, however, behave in a manner equivalent to that described in this section.

7.6.10 ENHANCED QoS ARBITER

The mandatory VL arbiter is a non-deficit weight round robin arbiter with 2 strict priority levels. This section describes a new optional enhanced QoS arbiter to improve the following behavioral characteristics of the mandatory VL arbiter: improve dynamic range, improve predictability, eliminate the starvation of low priority traffic and support rate limits.

The requirements of this new optional enhanced QoS arbiter are as follows:

- 1) Bandwidth predictability provided by arbitration algorithm such as deficit weighted round robin (DWRR) arbitration or something similar.
- 2) Support larger weights.
- 3) Support up to 8 VL groups with minimum of 2 VL groups.
- 4) Optional rate limiting per port.
- 5) Optional support bandwidth sharing and/or rate limiting per VL Group per port.
- 6) Optional support bandwidth sharing and/or rate limiting per VL per port.
- 7) Optional support bandwidth sharing and/or rate limiting per SL per port.

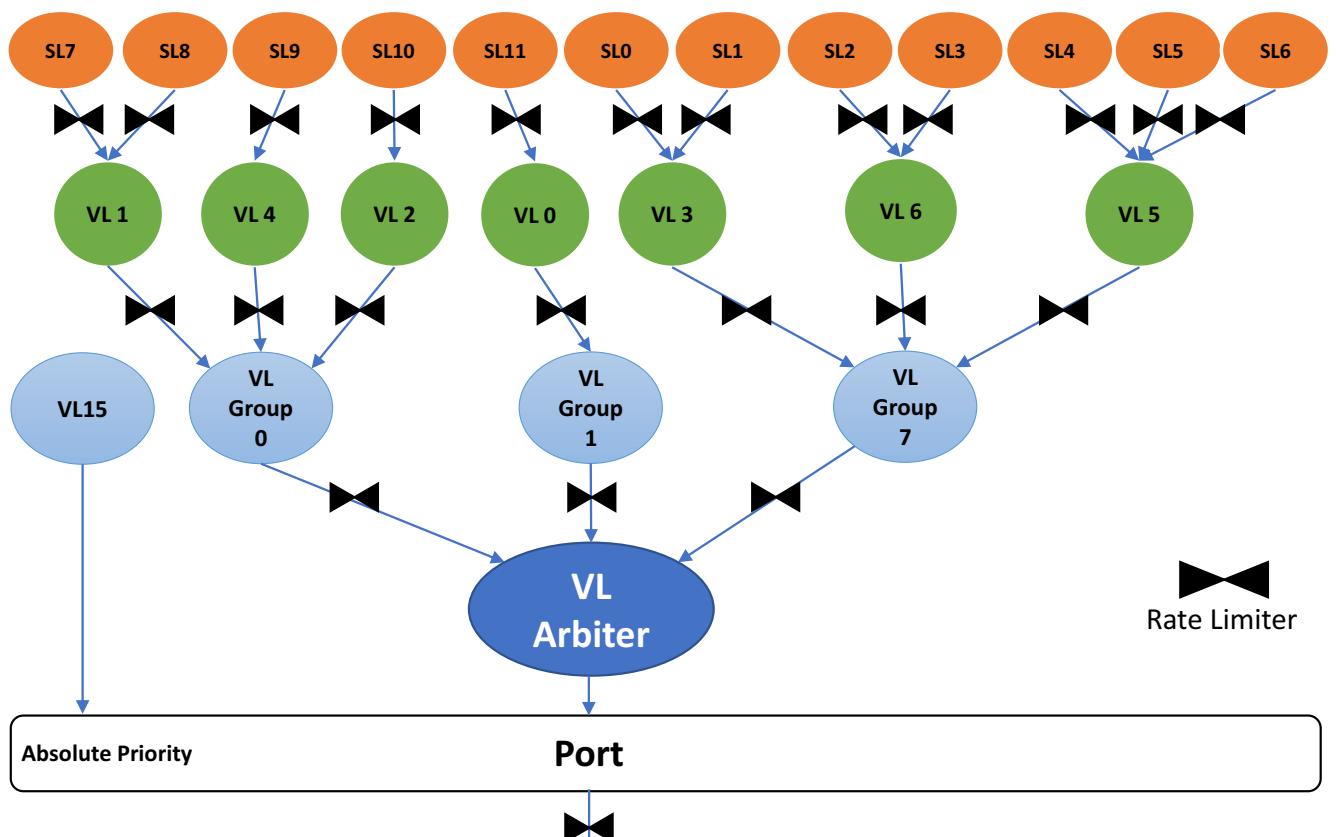


Figure 54

SL to Port Level Arbiter Scheme

Note that the arbiter itself is hierarchical, thus SL can be mapped to a single VL and a VL can be mapped to a single VL group.

A device that supports the enhanced QoS arbiter and receives VLArbitrationTable attribute should receive the MAD and configure the existing ETS arbiter to mimic the VLArbitrationTable configuration properties.

7.6.10.1 BANDWIDTH SHARING

Bandwidth sharing is modeled after IEEE 802.1Qaz-2011 Enhanced Transmission Selection (ETS) for Bandwidth Sharing Between Traffic Classes. The algorithm allows bandwidth intensive and loss sensitive traffic to share the network while allowing coexistence with low latency traffic.

When the offered load in a traffic class doesn't use its allocated bandwidth, enhanced transmission selection will allow other traffic classes to use the available bandwidth. Bandwidth is used by traffic classes according to enhanced transmission selection (ETS).

o7-13: Bandwidth configuration shall be with a granularity of 1% or finer

o7-14: Bandwidth allocation shall be with a precision of 10%

If ETS is enabled, transmission selection is performed based on the allocation of bandwidth to the traffic class. Bandwidth is distributed amongst the traffic such that each traffic class is allocated available bandwidth in proportion to its BandwidthShare. For each traffic class, BandwidthShare is the percentage of available bandwidth assigned to that traffic class. The total for all traffic classes is equal to 100%.

Since there are a number of variants of bandwidth sharing algorithms (such as Weighted Round Robin (WRR) or Deficit Weighted Round Robin (DWRR)) that provide appropriate bandwidth sharing, a detailed algorithm is not specified. Any algorithm is allowed as long as it meets the specified performance requirements.

For a given queue, the ETS algorithm determines that there is a frame available for transmission if the following conditions are all true:

- 1) The queue contains one or more frames; and
- 2) The ETS algorithm determines that a frame should be transmitted from the queue.
 - a) A traffic class consumes less than its percentage of Available Bandwidth when the offered load for that traffic class is less than its percentage of the Available Bandwidth. In that case the remainder of its percentage of Available Bandwidth can be used by other traffic classes.
 - b) A traffic class can consume more than its percentage of Available Bandwidth when the offered load of other traffic classes is consuming less than their percentage of Available Bandwidth.
 - c) When all traffic classes are offered enough load to consume their share of available bandwidth, the bandwidth received from a traffic class shall deviate from its allocation by no more than 10% of the available bandwidth.

Allocation of any excess Available Bandwidth is implementation specific.

7.6.10.2 RATE LIMITING

A traffic class can be rate limited. A RateLimit is the maximum bandwidth allowed averaged over time. A rate limit is a cap on the bandwidth whereas bandwidth share is a percentage of the bandwidth. Whereas bandwidth sharing provides for at least percentage of bandwidth configured, rate limiting provides a maximum bandwidth.

o7-15: Rate limit configuration shall conform with the granularity specified in EnhQoSArbiterInfo.RatelimiterGranularityEnabled - see [14.2.5.21 EnhQoSArbiterInfo on page 937](#)

7.7 LOCAL ROUTE HEADER

Local Routing Header - LRH - 8 bytes

The Local Routing Header (LRH) contains the fields for local routing by switches within a IBA subnet. The LRH is at the start of every packet and the packet ends with the Variant CRC. The LRH is 8 bytes long. For additional information on overall packet layout, see [Chapter 5: Data Packet Format on page 167](#).

bits bytes	31-24		23-16			15-8	7-0
0-3	VL	LVer	SL	Rsv2	LNH	Destination Local Identifier	
4-7	Reserve 5		Packet Length (11 bits)			Source Local Identifier	

Figure 55 Local Route Header (LRH)

C7-36: The LRH shall use the format specified in [Figure 55 Local Route Header \(LRH\) on page 215](#).

7.7.1 VIRTUAL LANE (VL) - 4 BITS

Specifies a virtual lane to be used for a packet. This field identifies which receive buffer and which receive flow control credits should be used for the received packet.

C7-37: The VL field shall be set to the VL on which the packet is sent.

The virtual lane can change from link to link in a subnet. Since the Virtual Lane can change, the Link Virtual Lane is not included in the Invariant CRC field.

7.7.2 LINK VERSION (LVER) - 4 BITS

Specifies the version of the Local Routing Header used for this packet. This version applies to the general packet structure including the LRH fields and the variant CRC.

C7-38: The LVer field shall be set to 0x0.

If a receiving device does not support the Link Version specified then the packet is discarded.

7.7.3 SERVICE LEVEL (SL) - 4 BITS

The Service Level field. This field is used by switches to determine the Virtual Lane used for this packet. This is described in Section [7.6.5 on page 204](#).

7.7.4 RESERVE - 2 BITS

C7-39: The 2-bit Reserve field shall be transmitted as 00 and shall be ignored on receive.

7.7.5 LINK NEXT HEADER (LNH) - 2 BITS

Specifies what headers following the Local Routing Header. The first bit (msb) indicates whether the packet uses IBA transport. The second bit (lsb) indicates whether a GRH/IPv6 header is present.

Table 21 Link Next Header Definition

Packet Type	LNH bit 1 IBA Transport	LNH bit 0 GRH/IPv6 header	Transport	Next Header
IBA global	1	1	IBA	GRH
IBA local	1	0	IBA	BTH
IP - non-IBA transport	0	1	Raw	IPv6
Raw	0	0	Raw	RWH (Ethertype)

C7-40: The LNH field shall indicate the packet type of the following packet as defined by [Table 21 Link Next Header Definition on page 216](#).

7.7.6 DESTINATION LOCAL IDENTIFIER (DLID) - 16 BITS

Specifies the LID of the port to which the subnet delivers the packet. LIDs are unique within a subnet. More specifically it identifies the route to take to the destination port. If the packet is to be routed to another subnet, then this is the LID of the Router.

7.7.7 RESERVE - 5 BITS

C7-41: The 5 bit reserve field shall be transmitted as 00000 and shall be ignored on receive.

7.7.8 PACKET LENGTH (PKTLEN) - 11 BITS

The number of 4 byte words contained in the packet.

C7-42: The value of the PktLen field shall equal the number of bytes in all the fields starting with the first byte of the Local Route Header and the last byte before the Variant CRC, inclusive, divided by 4.

The maximum allowable size of all headers plus the CRC fields is 126 bytes. The maximum value of this field is $(4096 + 126 - 2)/4 = 4220 / 4 = 1055$, reflecting a maximum of 126 bytes for all headers and CRCs minus the uncounted variant CRC. Note, the current version of the IBA is limited to 106 bytes (i.e. The longest current packet header that is possible is an RD Atomic Op (LRH + GRH + BTH + RDETH + DETH + AtomicETH + VCRC + ICRC). The additional allowable size is for future expansion.

Table 22 Packet Size

MTU	Maximum Packet Length (Bytes/4)	Maximum Bytes (MTU+126)
256	95	382
512	159	638
1024	287	1150
2048	543	2174
4096	1055	4222

C7-43: For packets with IBA transport, the smallest allowed value for Packet Length is 6 (24 Bytes) including LRH.

C7-44: For raw packets, the smallest allowed value for Packet Length is 5 (20 Bytes) including LRH.

C7-45: The maximum allowed value for Packet Length is the value shown in [Table 22 Packet Size on page 217](#) for the smaller of MTUCap and NeighborMTU.

Note, this compliance statement defines the maximum size packet. The d_length_check specified in Section [7.4: Data Packet Check](#) is done against PortInfo:MTUCap only, however.

7.7.9 SOURCE LOCAL IDENTIFIER (SLID) - 16 BITS

C7-46: For all non-directed route packets, the SLID shall be a LID of the port which injected the packet onto the subnet.

For requirements on DLID in directed route packets, see [14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865](#).

The subnet manager assigns each node a LID which is unique within a subnet.

7.8 CRCs

7.8.1 INVARIANT CRC (ICRC) - 4 BYTES

Specifies a Cyclic Redundancy Code covering all the fields of the Packet which are invariant from end to end through all switches and routers on the network. This field is present in all IBA packets but is NOT present in Raw Packets because for raw packets it is not known which fields will be invariant. The CRC calculation is re-started with each packet in the message. Which header fields that are included depends on whether the Global Routing Header is present because the router may modify additional header fields.

C7-47: The ICRC field shall be present in all IBA transport packets.

C7-48: The ICRC field shall be calculated as specified in [Section 7.8.1, "Invariant CRC \(ICRC\) - 4 Bytes," on page 218](#).

If the packet is local to the subnet (the Global Routing Header is not present), then the ICRC calculation is as follows:

- With no GRH, the ICRC includes:
 - Local Routing Header: except for the VL.
 - Base Transport Header: except for the Resv8a field
 - Extension Transport Headers (if present),
 - Packet Payload (if present),
- With no GRH, the ICRC excludes: (these fields are replaced with 1s for the ICRC calculation)
 - Local Routing Header: VL,
 - Base Transport Header: Resv8a.

If the packet is routed between subnets, so the Global route header is present, the ICRC calculation is as follows:

- With a GRH, the ICRC includes:
 - Global Routing Header: Version, Payload length, Next Header, Source IPV6 address, and Destination IPV6 address
 - Base Transport Header, except for the Resv8a field,
 - Extension Transport Headers (if present),
 - Packet Payload (if present).
- With a GRH, the ICRC excludes: (these fields are replaced with 1's for the CRC calculation)
 - Local Routing Header, all fields,

- Global Routing Header: Flow label, Traffic Class, and Hop Limit fields.
- Base Transport Header: Resv8a.

All fields in the packet, including those excluded from the Invariant CRC, are protected by the Variant CRC described in the next section.

The polynomial used is the same CRC-32 used by Ethernet - 0x04C11DB7. The procedure for the calculation is:

- 1) The initial value of the CRC-32 calculation is 0xFFFFFFFF.
- 2) The CRC calculation is done in big endian byte order with the least significant bit of the most significant byte being the first bits in the CRC calculation.
- 3) The bit sequence from the calculation is complemented and the result is the ICRC.
- 4) The resulting bits are sent in order from the bit representing the coefficient of the highest term of the remainder polynomial. The least significant bit, most significant byte first ordering of the packet does not apply to the ICRC field.

The CRC always starts with LRH:LVer bit 0, whether GRH is present or not.

This bit and byte ordering is consistent with Ethernet's CRC calculation.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
	Bit0 in CRC Calculation, Bit 0, Byte 0			
0-3	Byte0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte3
4-7	Byte 4	Byte 5	Byte 6	Byte 7
8-11	Byte 8	Byte 9	Byte 10	Byte 11
...				

Figure 56 CRC Calculation Order

7.8.2 VARIANT CRC (VCRC) - 2 BYTES

Specifies a Cyclic Redundancy Code covering all fields of the Packet. This field is present in all data packets including Raw Packets and includes all bytes from the first byte of the LRH to the last byte before the Variant CRC, inclusive. Since a number of these fields can change as the packet is processed by switches and routers the Variant CRC may have to be regenerated at each Link through the subnet. If a switch does not change any fields including the Link Virtual Lane, then the Variant CRC does not have to be regenerated.

C7-49: The VCRC field shall be present in all data packets.

C7-50: The VCRC field shall be calculated as specified in [Section 7.8.2. "Variant CRC \(VCRC\) - 2 Bytes."](#) on page 219.

The polynomial used is the same CRC-16 used by HIPPI-6400 - 0x100B.
The procedure for the calculation is:

- 1) The initial value of the CRC-16 calculation is 0xFFFF.
- 2) The CRC calculation is done in big endian byte order with the least significant bit of the first byte of the Local Route Header (bit 0 of LRH:LVer) being the first bit in the CRC calculation.
- 3) The bit sequence from the calculation is complemented and the result is the VCRC.
- 4) The resulting bits are sent in order from the bit representing the coefficient of the highest term of the remainder polynomial. The least significant bit, most significant byte first ordering of the packet does not apply to the VCRC field.

This bit and byte ordering is consistent with Ethernet's CRC calculation.

7.8.3 LINK PACKET CRC (LPCRC) - 2 BYTES

Specifies a Cyclic Redundancy Code covering all fields of the Link Packet. This field is present in all Link packets including Flow Control Link Packets and includes all bytes from the first byte of the Opcode to the last byte before the LPCRC, inclusive. This field is always computed for each Link-packet.

C7-51: The LPCRC field shall be present in all link packets.

C7-52: The LPCRC field shall be calculated as specified in [Section 7.8.3. "Link Packet CRC \(LPCRC\) - 2 Bytes."](#) on page 220.

The polynomial used is the same CRC-16 used by Variant CRC and HIPPI-6400 - 0x100B. The procedure for the calculation is:

- 1) The initial value of the CRC-16 calculation is 0xFFFF.
- 2) The CRC calculation is done in big endian byte order with the least significant bit of the first byte of the Local Route Header (bit 0 of LRH:LVer) being the first bit in the CRC calculation.
- 3) The bit sequence from the calculation is complemented and the result is the LPCRC.;
- 4) The resulting bits are sent in order from the bit representing the coefficient of the highest term of the remainder polynomial. The least significant bit, most significant byte first ordering of the packet does not apply to the LPCRC field.

nificant bit, most significant byte first ordering of the packet does not apply to the LPCRC field.

This bit and byte ordering is consistent with Ethernet's CRC calculation.

7.8.4 CRC CALCULATION SAMPLES

The following is an example of CRC calculation. The requirements for the CRC calculation are specified above, this section is intended for informative purposes only.

7.8.4.1 ICRC GENERATOR

The polynomial used for ICRC calculation is 0x04C11DB7. The seed value is 0xFFFFFFFF. The ICRC Generator Remainder is the complement of the resulting calculation.

The ICRC Generator actual implementation is not specified. The diagram in Figure 57 is provided as a reference with the sole purpose of clarifying the calculation details and does not imply a required implementation.

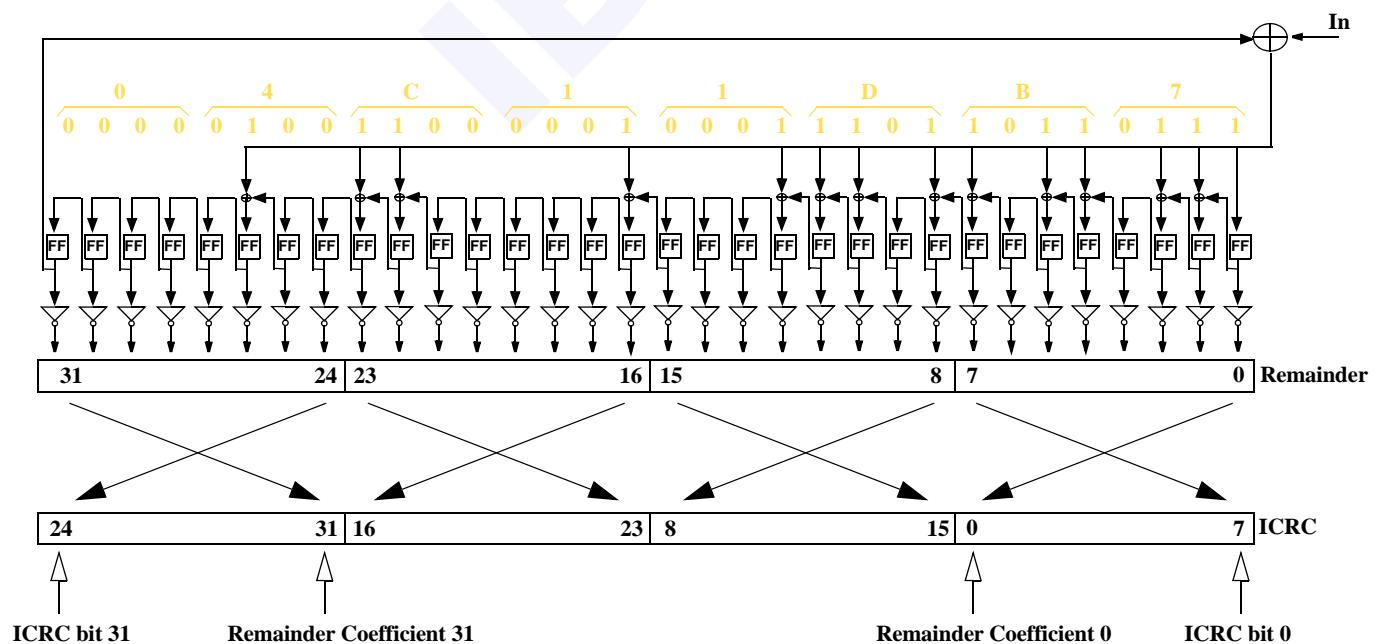


Figure 57

ICRC Generator

The 32 Flip-Flops are initialized to 1 before every ICRC generation. The packet is fed to the reference design of Figure 57 one bit at a time in the order specified in Section [7.8.1 on page 218](#). The **Remainder** is the **bit-wise NOT** of the value stored at the 32 Flip-Flops after the last bit of the packet was clocked into the ICRC Generator. **ICRC Field** is obtained from the **Remainder** as shown in Figure 57. **ICRC Field** is transmitted using Big Endian byte ordering like every field of an InfiniBand packet.

7.8.4.2 VCRC GENERATOR

The polynomial used for VCRC and LPCRC calculation is 0x100B. The seed value is 0xFFFF. The VCRC/LPCRC Generator Remainder is the complement of the resulting calculation.

The VCRC and LPCRC are generated in the same manner as described above for the ICRC. Figure 58 shows the reference design for the VCRC / LPCRC Generator.

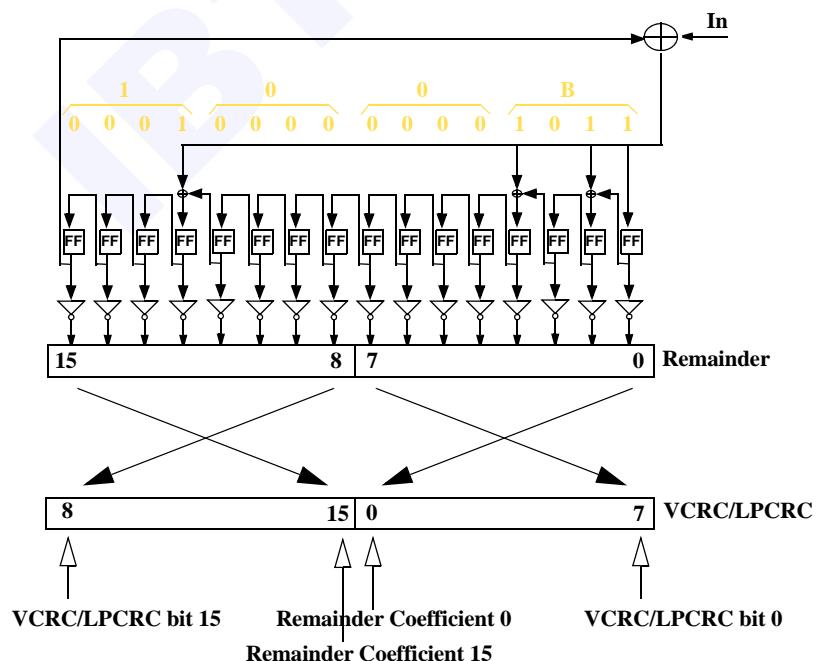


Figure 58 VCRC / LPCRC Generator

7.8.4.3 SAMPLE PACKETS**7.8.4.3.1 LOCAL PACKET EXAMPLE**

Figure 59 shows the structure of the local packet used for the example. The packet is a **RDMA Write Only** carrying a payload of 14 bytes.



Figure 59 Local Packet Example

The header values for the sample packet are shown in Table 23, Table 24 and Table 25 respectively. The data payload is shown in Table 26.

Table 23 LRH

Field	Value
VL	0x7
LVer	0x0
SL	0x1
LNH	0x2
DLID	0x375C
PktLen	0xE
SLID	0x17D2

Table 24 BTH

Field	Value
Opcode	0x0A
SE	0x0
M	0x0
Pad	0x2
TVer	0x0
PKey	0x2487

Table 24 BTH (Continued)

Field	Value
Dest QP	0x87B1B3
AckReq	0x0
PSN	0x0DEC2A

Table 25 RETH

Field	Value
VA	0x01710A1C015D4002
RKey	0x38f27A05
DMA Length	0x0000000E

Table 26 Payload

Byte	Value
0	0xBB
1	0x88
2	0x4D
3	0x85
4	0xFD
5	0x5C
6	0xFB
7	0xA4
8	0x72
9	0x8B
10	0xC0
11	0x69
12	0x0E
13	0xD4

The combined byte stream for the Local Packet (before ICRC and VCRC) is shown in Table 27

Table 27 Local Packet Byte Stream (before ICRC and VCRC)

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0x70	15	0xB3	30	0x7A	45	0x8B
1	0x12	16	0x00	31	0x05	46	0xC0
2	0x37	17	0x0D	32	0x00	47	0x69
3	0x5C	18	0xEC	33	0x00	48	0x0E
4	0x00	19	0x2A	34	0x00	49	0xD4
5	0x0E	20	0x01	35	0x0E	50	0x00
6	0x17	21	0x71	36	0xBB	51	0x00
7	0xD2	22	0x0A	37	0x88		
8	0x0A	23	0x1C	38	0x4D		
9	0x20	24	0x01	39	0x85		
10	0x24	25	0x5D	40	0xFD		
11	0x87	26	0x40	41	0x5C		
12	0x00	27	0x02	42	0xFB		
13	0x87	28	0x38	43	0xA4		
14	0xB1	29	0xF2	44	0x72		

Table 28 shows the masked byte stream used for ICRC calculation.

Table 28 Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0xF0	15	0xB3	30	0x7A	45	0x8B
1	0x12	16	0x00	31	0x05	46	0xC0
2	0x37	17	0x0D	32	0x00	47	0x69
3	0x5C	18	0xEC	33	0x00	48	0x0E
4	0x00	19	0x2A	34	0x00	49	0xD4

Table 28 Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
5	0x0E	20	0x01	35	0x0E	50	0x00
6	0x17	21	0x71	36	0xBB	51	0x00
7	0xD2	22	0x0A	37	0x88		
8	0x0A	23	0x1C	38	0x4D		
9	0x20	24	0x01	39	0x85		
10	0x24	25	0x5D	40	0xFD		
11	0x87	26	0x40	41	0x5C		
12	0xFF	27	0x02	42	0xFB		
13	0x87	28	0x38	43	0xA4		
14	0xB1	29	0xF2	44	0x72		

Generated ICRC is: 0x9625B75A

Generated VCRC is: 0x45FA

Table 29 shows the complete Local Packet Byte Stream.

Table 29 Local Packet Byte Stream

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0x70	15	0xB3	30	0x7A	45	0x8B
1	0x12	16	0x00	31	0x05	46	0xC0
2	0x37	17	0x0D	32	0x00	47	0x69
3	0x5C	18	0xEC	33	0x00	48	0x0E
4	0x00	19	0x2A	34	0x00	49	0xD4
5	0x0E	20	0x01	35	0x0E	50	0x00
6	0x17	21	0x71	36	0xBB	51	0x00
7	0xD2	22	0x0A	37	0x88	52	0x96
8	0x0A	23	0x1C	38	0x4D	53	0x25
9	0x20	24	0x01	39	0x85	54	0xB7
10	0x24	25	0x5D	40	0xFD	55	0x5A
11	0x87	26	0x40	41	0x5C	56	0x45
12	0x00	27	0x02	42	0xFB	57	0xFA
13	0x87	28	0x38	43	0xA4		
14	0xB1	29	0xF2	44	0x72		

7.8.4.3.2 GLOBAL PACKET EXAMPLE

Figure 60 shows the structure of the Global packet used for the example.



Figure 60 Global Packet Example

The BTH, RETH and data payload for the Global example packet are the same as for the Local packet one. The values for the LRH and GRH fields are shown in Table 30 and Table 31.

Table 30 LRH

Field	Value
VL	0x7
LVer	0x0
SL	0x1
LNH	0x3
DLID	0x375C
PktLen	0x18
SLID	0x17D2

Table 31 GRH

Field	Value
IPVer	0x6
TClass	0x00
FlowLabel	0x00000
PayLen	0x0030
NxtHdr	0x00

Table 31 GRH (Continued)

Field	Value
HopLmt	0x10
SGID	0x0000000000000001250000000000000026
DGID	0x0000000000000001170000000000000096

The combined byte stream for the Global Packet (before ICRC and VCRC) is shown in Table 32

Table 32 Global Packet Byte Stream (before ICRC and VCRC)

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0x70	25	0x00	50	0x24	75	0x0E
1	0x13	26	0x00	51	0x87	76	0xBB
2	0x37	27	0x00	52	0x00	77	0x88
3	0x5C	28	0x00	53	0x87	78	0x4D
4	0x00	29	0x00	54	0xB1	79	0x85
5	0x18	30	0x00	55	0xB3	80	0xFD
6	0x17	31	0x26	56	0x00	81	0x5C
7	0xD2	32	0x00	57	0x0D	82	0xFB
8	0x60	33	0x00	58	0xEC	83	0xA4
9	0x00	34	0x00	59	0x2A	84	0x72
10	0x00	35	0x00	60	0x01	85	0x8B
11	0x00	36	0x00	61	0x71	86	0xC0
12	0x00	37	0x00	62	0x0A	87	0x69
13	0x30	38	0x01	63	0x1C	88	0x0E
14	0x00	39	0x17	64	0x01	89	0xD4

Table 32 Global Packet Byte Stream (before ICRC and VCRC) (Continued)

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
15	0x10	40	0x00	65	0x5D	90	0x00
16	0x00	41	0x00	66	0x40	91	0x00
17	0x00	42	0x00	67	0x02		
18	0x00	43	0x00	68	0x38		
19	0x00	44	0x00	69	0xF2		
20	0x00	45	0x00	70	0x7A		
21	0x00	46	0x00	71	0x05		
22	0x01	47	0x96	72	0x00		
23	0x25	48	0x0A	73	0x00		
24	0x00	49	0x20	74	0x00		

Table 33 shows the masked byte stream used for ICRC calculation.

Table 33 Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0xFF	25	0x00	50	0x24	75	0x0E
1	0xFF	26	0x00	51	0x87	76	0xBB
2	0xFF	27	0x00	52	0xFF	77	0x88
3	0xFF	28	0x00	53	0x87	78	0x4D
4	0xFF	29	0x00	54	0xB1	79	0x85
5	0xFF	30	0x00	55	0xB3	80	0xFD
6	0xFF	31	0x26	56	0x00	81	0x5C
7	0xFF	32	0x00	57	0xD	82	0xFB
8	0x6F	33	0x00	58	0xEC	83	0xA4
9	0xFF	34	0x00	59	0x2A	84	0x72
10	0xFF	35	0x00	60	0x01	85	0x8B
11	0xFF	36	0x00	61	0x71	86	0xC0
12	0x00	37	0x00	62	0xA	87	0x69
13	0x30	38	0x01	63	0x1C	88	0x0E
14	0x00	39	0x17	64	0x01	89	0xD4

Table 33 Masked Byte Stream for ICRC Calculation

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
15	0xFF	40	0x00	65	0x5D	90	0x00
16	0x00	41	0x00	66	0x40	91	0x00
17	0x00	42	0x00	67	0x02		
18	0x00	43	0x00	68	0x38		
19	0x00	44	0x00	69	0xF2		
20	0x00	45	0x00	70	0x7A		
21	0x00	46	0x00	71	0x05		
22	0x01	47	0x96	72	0x00		
23	0x25	48	0x0A	73	0x00		
24	0x00	49	0x20	74	0x00		

ICRC Result is:0xB67D1ED1

VCRC Result is: 0xB148

Table 34 shows the complete Global Packet Byte Stream.

Table 34 Global Packet Byte Stream

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
0	0x70	25	0x00	50	0x24	75	0x0E
1	0x13	26	0x00	51	0x87	76	0xBB
2	0x37	27	0x00	52	0x00	77	0x88
3	0x5C	28	0x00	53	0x87	78	0x4D
4	0x00	29	0x00	54	0xB1	79	0x85
5	0x18	30	0x00	55	0xB3	80	0xFD
6	0x17	31	0x26	56	0x00	81	0x5C
7	0xD2	32	0x00	57	0x0D	82	0xFB
8	0x60	33	0x00	58	0xEC	83	0xA4
9	0x00	34	0x00	59	0x2A	84	0x72
10	0x00	35	0x00	60	0x01	85	0x8B
11	0x00	36	0x00	61	0x71	86	0xC0
12	0x00	37	0x00	62	0x0A	87	0x69
13	0x30	38	0x01	63	0x1C	88	0x0E
14	0x00	39	0x17	64	0x01	89	0xD4

Table 34 Global Packet Byte Stream (Continued)

Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value	Byte	Value
15	0x10	40	0x00	65	0x5D	90	0x00
16	0x00	41	0x00	66	0x40	91	0x00
17	0x00	42	0x00	67	0x02	92	0xB6
18	0x00	43	0x00	68	0x38	93	0x7D
19	0x00	44	0x00	69	0xF2	94	0x1E
20	0x00	45	0x00	70	0x7A	95	0xD1
21	0x00	46	0x00	71	0x05	96	0xB1
22	0x01	47	0x96	72	0x00	97	0x48
23	0x25	48	0x0A	73	0x00		
24	0x00	49	0x20	74	0x00		

7.8.4.3.3 LINK PACKET EXAMPLE

The field values for the Link Packet example are shown in Table 35.

Table 35 Link Packet

Field	Value
Op	0x0
FCTBS	0x10D
VL	0x5
FCCL	0x21B

Generated LPCRC: 0xF9C9

Table 36 Link Packet Byte Stream

Byte	Value
0	0x01
1	0x0D
2	0x52
3	0x1B
4	0xF9
5	0xC9

7.9 FLOW CONTROL

7.9.1 INTRODUCTION

This section describes the link level flow control mechanism utilized by IBA to prevent the loss of packets due to buffer overflow by the receiver at each end of a link. This mechanism does not describe end to end flow control such as might be utilized to prevent transmission of messages during periods when receive buffers are not posted. See [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#) for end to end flow control specification.

Throughout this section, the terms “transmitter” and “receiver” are utilized to describe each end of a given link. The transmitter is the node sourcing data packets. The receiver is the consumer of the data packets. Each end of the link has a transmitter and a receiver.

IBA utilizes an “absolute” credit based flow control scheme. Unlike many traditional flow control schemes which provide incremental updates that are added to the transmitters available buffer pool, IBA receivers provide a “credit limit”. A credit limit is an indication of the total amount of data that the transmitter has been authorized to send since link initialization.

Errors in transmission, in data packets, or in the exchange of flow control information can result in inconsistencies in the flow control state perceived by the transmitter and receiver. The IBA flow control mechanism provides for recovery from this condition. The transmitter periodically sends an indication of the total amount of data that it has sent since link initialization. The receiver uses this data to re-synchronize the state between the receiver and transmitter.

7.9.2 FLOW CONTROL BLOCKS

The term “flow control block”, or simply “block” indicates a quantity of data in a data packet. This quantity is defined to be the size of the data packet in bytes (every byte between the local route header and the variant CRC, inclusive) divided by 64 bytes, and rounded up to the next integral value.

7.9.3 RELATIONSHIP TO VIRTUAL LANES

The flow control algorithm defined in this chapter is applied to each virtual lane independently, except for virtual lane 15 which is not subject to link level flow control.

7.9.4 FLOW CONTROL PACKET

Flow Control Packet - general format				
bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Op	FCTBS	VL	FCCL
4-5	LPCRC			

Figure 61 Flow Control Packet Format

C7-53: Flow control packets shall be sent for each VL except VL15 upon entering the LinkInitialize state. When in the PortStates LinkInitialize, LinkArm or LinkActive, a flow control packet for a given virtual lane shall be transmitted prior to the passing of 65,536 symbol times since the last time a flow control packet for the given virtual lane was transmitted.

C7-54: Flow control packets shall use the format specified in [Figure 61 Flow Control Packet Format on page 233](#).

A symbol time is defined as the time required to transmit an eight bit data quantity onto a physical lane, i.e. for links operating at link speed of 2.5Gb/s, the symbol time is 4nsec independent of the width of the link.

Flow control packets may be transmitted as often as necessary to return credits and enable efficient utilization of the link. See [Section 7.6.4, “Buffering and Flow Control For Data VLs,” on page 202](#) for additional information.

7.9.4.1 FLOW CONTROL PACKET FIELDS

7.9.4.1.1 OPERAND (OP) - 4 BITS

The flow control packet is a link packet with one of two Op (operand) values: An operand of 0x0 indicates a normal flow control packet. An operand value of 0x1 indicates a flow control init packet.

C7-55: When in the PortState LinkInitialize, flow control packets shall be sent with the flow control init operand, 0x1.

C7-56: When in the PortStates LinkArm or LinkActive, flow control packets shall be sent with the normal flow control operand, 0x0.

C7-57: All other values of the Op field are reserved for operations that may be defined by IBA in the future. Any packet received with a reserved value shall be discarded.

7.9.4.1.2 FLOW CONTROL TOTAL BLOCKS SENT (FCTBS) - 12 BITS

The FCTBS (Flow Control Total Blocks Sent) field is generated by the transmitter side logic. The calculation for the value of FCTBS is described later.

7.9.4.1.3 FLOW CONTROL CREDIT LIMIT (FCCL) -12 BITS

The FCCL (Flow Control Credit Limit) field is generated by the receiver side logic. The calculation for the value of FCCL is described later.

7.9.4.1.4 VIRTUAL LANE (VL) - 4 BITS

VL (Virtual Lane) is set to the virtual lane to which the FCTBS and FCCL fields apply.

7.9.4.1.5 LINK PACKET CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK (LPCRC) - 16 BITS

LPCRC (Link Packet Cyclic Redundancy Check) field is a 16-bit CRC that covers the first four bytes of the flow control packet. See [Section 7.8.3, “Link Packet CRC \(LPCRC\) - 2 Bytes,” on page 220](#).

7.9.4.2 CALCULATION OF FCTBS

C7-58: Upon transmission of a flow control packet, FCTBS shall be set to the total blocks transmitted in the virtual lane since link initialization.

C7-59: When in the PortState initialize, FCTBS shall be set to zero.

7.9.4.3 CALCULATION OF FCCL

The FCCL calculation is based on a 12-bit Adjusted Blocks Received (ABR) counter maintained for each virtual lane at the receiver.

C7-60: The ABR counter shall be set to zero when in the PortState initialize.

C7-61: Upon receipt of each flow control packet, the ABR shall be set to the value of the FCTBS field.

C7-62: Upon receipt of each data packet, the ABR shall be increased by the blocks received, modulo 4096, except that the ABR shall not be increased for received packets that are discarded due to lack of receive capacity in the receiver.

C7-63: The FCCL field shall be set as specified in [Section 7.9.4.3, “Calculation of FCCL,” on page 234](#).

Upon transmission of a flow control packet, FCCL shall be set to one of the following:

- If the current buffer state of the receiver would permit reception of 2048 or more blocks from all combinations of valid IBA packets without discard, then the FCCL shall be set to ABR plus 2048 modulo 4096.

- Otherwise the FCCL shall be set to ABR plus the number of blocks the receiver is capable of receiving from all combinations of valid IBA packets without discard modulo 4096.

The number of blocks the receiver is capable of receiving means the number that the receiver can guarantee to receive without buffer overflow regardless of the sizes of the packets that arrive. If, for example, a receiver is capable of receiving more data when large packets arrive than for small packets, the receiver must use the smaller capacity to calculating FCCL.

This specification does not preclude the reconfiguration of receive buffers while the link is active. Such reconfiguration may result in changes of the FCCL value, including the possibility of reduction of available credit. Also, link errors may cause discrepancies between ABR at the receiver and FCTBS at the transmitter. When this has happened, the next flow control update to the receiver will correct the value of ABR and may result in changes of FCCL which reduce or increase credit. When FCCL is updated, the credit calculation for outgoing data packets should use the new value. Packets that are currently being transmitted or queued may be sent based on the previous FCCL value.

7.9.4.4 TRANSMISSION OF PACKETS

If a data packet is available for transmission:

- Let CR represent the total blocks sent since link initialization plus the number of blocks in the data packet to be transmitted, all modulo 4096.
- Let CL represent the last FCCL received in a flow control packet.

If $(CL-CR) \bmod 4096 \leq 2048$, then the data packet may be transmitted. If the condition is not true, then the data packet may not be transmitted until the condition becomes true. Flow control packet transmission is not subject to this restriction nor are any packets on virtual lane 15.

C7-64: A non-VL15 data packet may only be sent when there is sufficient credit as determined by the calculation in [Section 7.9.4.4, “Transmission of Packets,” on page 235](#).

C7-65: VL15 packets shall not be subject to flow control.

7.10 IBA AND RAW PACKET MULTICAST

7.10.1 OVERVIEW

Multicast is a one-to-many communication paradigm designed to improve the efficiency of communication between a set of end nodes. Figure 62 illustrates an example unreliable multicast IBA operation:

- A packet with PSN = 1129 is received on an IBA routing element (switch or router) port.
- Switches extract the multicast DLID from the LRH to determine if it corresponds to a multicast group. An implementation may maintain this data as part of its internal route table, e.g. a bit-mask which corresponds to the output ports this packet should be forwarded.
- Routers extract the GID from the GRH for IBA multicast or, for raw packet support, examine the IPv6 header or Ethertype within the RWH to determine if the packet corresponds to a multicast group. It uses this information to forward the packet to the next hop(s) to the destination(s).
- Switches or routers replicate the packet (implementation dependent) and forward the packet onto the output port(s).

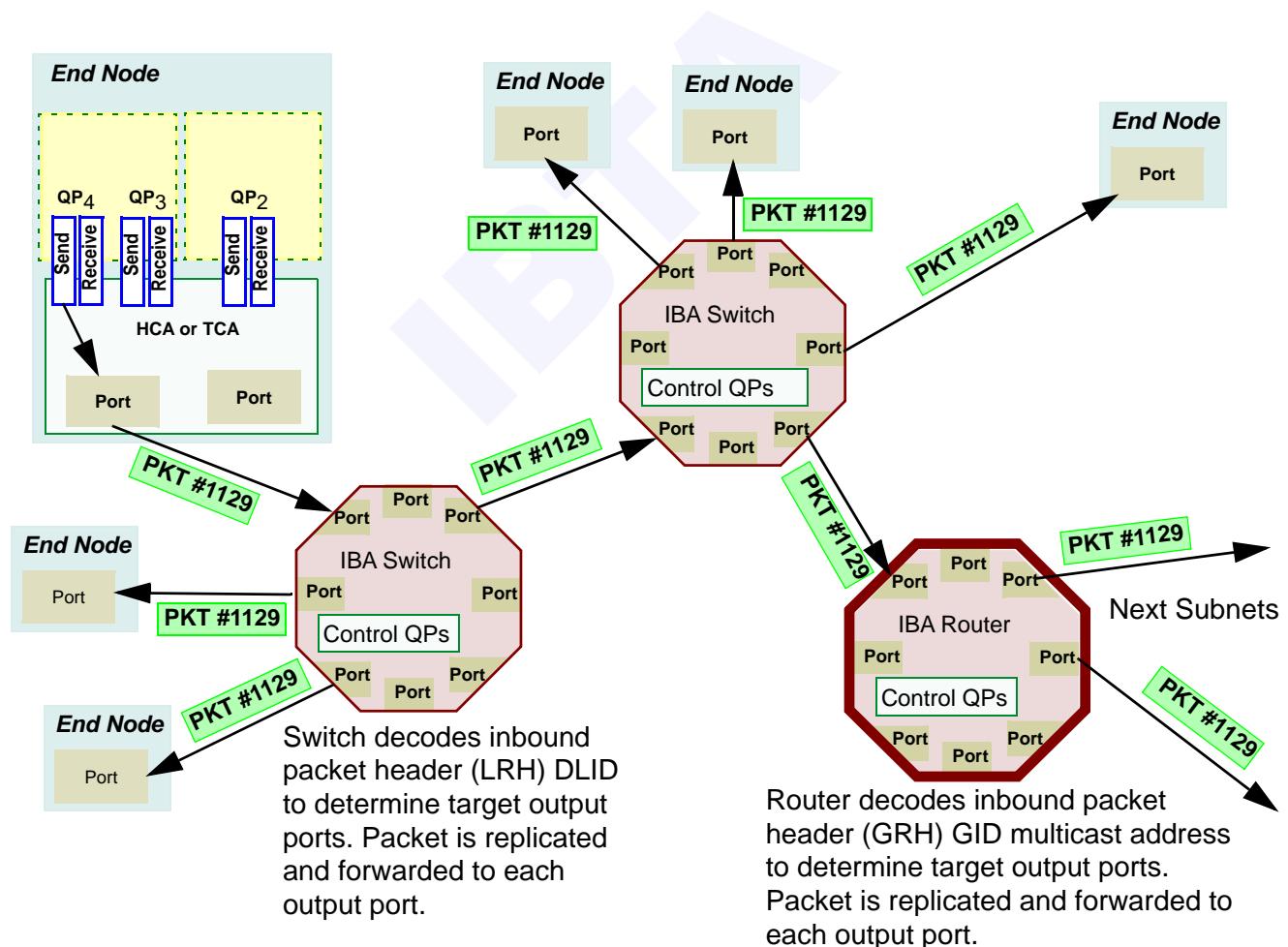


Figure 62

Example IBA Unreliable Multicast

7.10.2 IBA UNRELIABLE MULTICAST OPERATIONAL RULES

o7-16: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o7-16.1.1](#):

o7-16.1.1: IIBA unreliable multicast is an optional capability. When implemented, it shall function based on the operational rules in [Section 7.10.2, "IBA Unreliable Multicast Operational Rules," on page 237](#).

- 1) Multicast capability discovery, route table modification, status, and
control shall be administered by an IBA management entity. Refer to
[15.2.5.8 MulticastForwardingTableRecord on page 1030](#) and
[14.2.5.12 MulticastForwardingTable on page 923](#).
- 2) Within the network, packets are replicated within IBA switches and
routers and forwarded to the corresponding output ports.
- 3) Packets are not reliable with respect to acknowledgment generation
nor delivery guarantees.
- 4) Switches and routers may vary in their ability to support multicast
packets and thus may have implementation-specific scheduling, re-
source management, and congestion policies which are outside the
scope of IBA.
- 5) Application multicast packets may be transmitted on VLs as assigned
via the SL to VL mapping table by the subnet manager. The use of VL
15 for multicast is prohibited.
- 6) Application multicast packet headers may contain any SL as provided
or derived from values provided by the subnet manager.
- 7) Applications targeting a multicast group use a multicast group GID -
each endpoint participating in a multicast group shall be assigned the
corresponding multicast group GID.
- 8) Each CA, switch or router that supports multicast may participate in
zero, one, or many multicast groups.
- 9) Multicast groups may span multiple subnets - a multicast capable
router is required to forward packets to the next hop to the desti-
nation.
- 10) Multicast packets may be generated by an endpoint.

Multicast group membership is opaque to the participating end nodes, i.e.
except as noted in Section [15.2.5.17.5 Querying a Multicast Group on page 1057](#), it is impossible to know which end nodes are participating within a
multicast group and whether all participating end nodes within a multicast
group reside within a local or remote subnet. Therefore, all IBA multicast
packets shall contain a GRH with the destination multicast GID defined
per the IBA addressing rules.

- 11) The SGID within the GRH shall be set to the source port which initially injected the packet into the network.
- 12) Messages shall be limited to single-packet messages. The maximum message size is set during the multicast group's creation. The group creator sets the Path MTU (PMTU) for the multicast group. A CA / router will query the SM for the PMTU during multicast group join operation.
- If an end node attempts to join a multicast group and is unable to accept the current PMTU, the join operation must fail.
- 13) For each multicast group an endpoint is participating in, the port shall associate at least one locally managedQP.
- If a source port is also a destination port within the destination multicast group, the source shall internally replicate the packet within the channel interface to the associated local QPs, including the source QP if it is a receiver for this multicast group.
 - If the destination end node contains multiple locally managed QPs participating in a multicast group, the destination end node is responsible for internally replicating the packet within the channel interface and delivering a copy to each QP.

Destination end node delivers one internally replicated copy of the packet to each locally managed QP participating in the indicated multicast group.

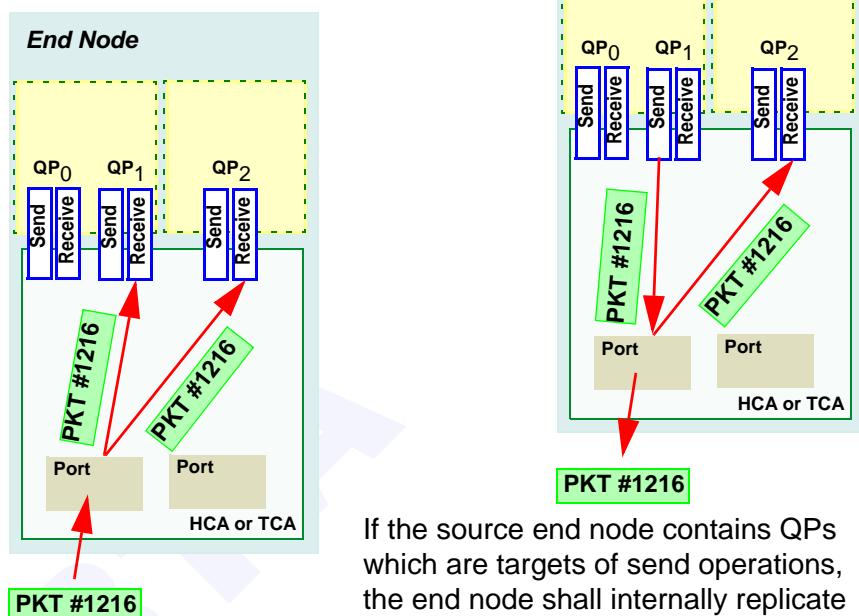


Figure 63

Packet Delivery within an end

- 14) Unreliable multicast shall use the unreliable datagram transport service. Refer to the unreliable datagram transport services section for operational rules, constraints, verification, and error handling.
- 15) A source end node shall set the destination QP within the packet header to 0xFFFFFFF.

7.10.3 RAW PACKET MULTICAST

Raw packets may be multicast using the same basic principles as unreliable multicast IBA packets.

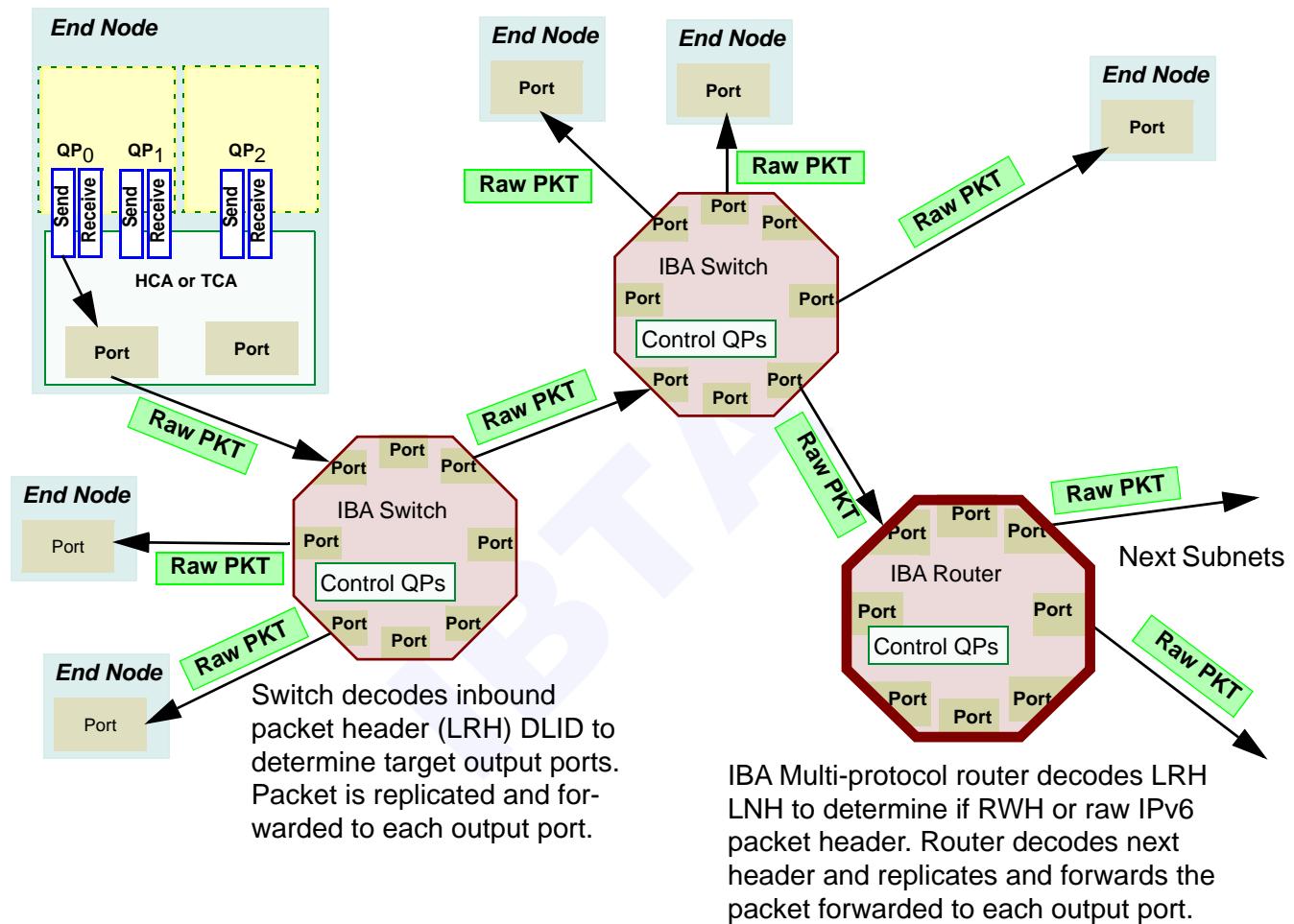


Figure 64

Example Raw Packet Multicast

7.10.3.1 RAW MULTICAST OPERATIONAL RULES

o7-17: Raw packet unreliable multicast is an optional capability. When implemented, it shall function based on the operational rules in [Section 7.10.3, “Raw Packet Multicast,” on page 240](#).

- 1) Raw packet multicast is optional functionality defined within IBA.
- 2) Raw multicast capability discovery, route table modification, status, and control shall be administered by an IBA management entity.

- 3) Within the network, packets are replicated within IBA switches and forwarded to the corresponding output ports.
- Switches extract the multicast DLID from the LRH to determine the corresponding output ports.
- 4) Routing elements may vary in their ability to support multicast packets and thus may have implementation-specific scheduling, resource management, and congestion / drop policies which are outside the scope of this architecture.
- 5) Raw multicast packets may be transmitted on any VL except VL 15.
- 6) Raw multicast packets may be transmitted using any valid SL.
- 7) IPv6 applications target a multicast group using an IPv6 multicast address. All other protocols use protocol specific addressing and resolution.
- 8) Each endnode which supports multicast may participate in zero, one, or many multicast groups.
- 9) Raw multicast groups may span multiple subnets - a multicast capable router is required to forward packets to the next hop to the destination.
- 10) Raw multicast packets may be generated by an endnode.
- 11) Messages shall be limited to single-packet messages. The maximum message size is a function of the PMTU between the source and destination end nodes. Raw protocol management will interact with IBA management entity to determine the maximum PMTU allowed. Raw multicast operations are not required to fail if the PMTU is too small - error recovery is the responsibility of the raw multicast group management protocol.
- 12) Raw packet support requires a minimum of one locally managed QP. An implementation may provide additional QPs based on implementation-specific policies. As such, implementations are responsible for local raw packet replication and delivery.
- If a source port is also a destination port within the destination multicast group, the source shall internally replicate the packet within the channel interface to the associated local application targets.
 - If the destination end node contains multiple participating application targets within a raw multicast group, the destination end node is responsible for internally replicating the packet within the channel interface and delivering a copy to each target.
- 13) Raw packet multicast shall use the IBA raw packet header formats and semantics.

7.10.4 GROUP MANAGEMENT

The management section does contain the management interface and associated MADs to implement a multicast group protocol. Multicast group management is covered in [15.2.5.17 MCMemberRecord on page 1050](#).

7.11 SUBNET MULTIPATHING

7.11.1 MULTIPATHING REQUIREMENTS ON END NODE

Each CA and router port is initialized with a LID plus an LMC (LID Mask Control) by the subnet manager. The value of LMC indicates the number of low order bits of the LID to mask when checking a received DLID against the port's DLID. LMC may take values from 0 to 7. Therefore, a port may be identified by 1 to 128 unicast LIDs.

C7-66: When a link layer of a CA or router port checks that a unicast DLID in a received packet is a valid DLID for that port, it shall mask the number of low order bits indicated by the LMC before comparing the DLID to its assigned LID.

The subnet manager may program alternate paths through the subnet for these various LIDs. The selection of which LID to use in the SLID and DLID of transmitted packets is covered in the Transport chapter.

7.12 ERROR DETECTION AND HANDLING

7.12.1 ERROR DETECTION

The following classes of errors are detectable by the link layer:

- Single packet receive errors
 - Local physical errors - errors indicative of bit errors on the attached physical link. Failures of ICRC, LPCRC and VCRC checks in the packet check state machines and entry to the bad packet or bad packet discard states of the packet receiver state machine belong to this class.
 - Remote physical errors - errors indicative of bit errors on a link other than the attached physical link. Entry to the marked bad packet state of the packet receiver state machine belongs to this class.
 - Malformed packet errors - errors indicative of packets transmitted with inconsistent content. The packet was possibly bad at the source. It is also possible that the error was inserted by a switch. Programming errors of switch or port configuration by the SM

1 may also create errors in this category. LVer error, Length error,
2 op_code error, VL error, and GRH_VL15 error belong to this
3 class. These are all errors from the packet check state machines.

- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- Switch routing errors - errors indicative of an error in switch routing. DLID errors are in this class.
 - Buffer overrun - error indicative of an error in the state of the flow control machine in the link layer at the other end of the physical link. One cause of such an error can be an earlier packet with a physical error if buffers are not immediately reclaimed from bad packets.

10 **C7-67:** An error in a received packet shall be classified as specified in
11 [Section 7.12.1, "Error Detection," on page 242.](#)

12

13 **C7-68:** When error counters for the single packet receive errors are implemented and one or more errors are detected in a received packet, then the counter associated with the error with the highest precedence as defined by [Section 7.3, "Packet Receiver States," on page 191](#), [Section 7.4, "Data Packet Check," on page 194](#), and [Section 7.5, "Link Packet Check," on page 197](#) shall increment and none of the other single packet error counters shall increment.

- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- Receiver errors
 - Local link integrity - excessively frequent local physical errors. This error is caused by a marginal link. A more severe physical problem will be detected at the physical layer based on high frequency of code violations. Detection of local link integrity errors is based on a count of local physical errors. The count starts at zero and shall be incremented for each packet received with a local physical error. If the current count is above zero, the counter shall be decremented once for each packet received without a local physical error. When it exceeds local_phy_errors threshold, the local link integrity error shall be detected.
 - Excessive buffer overruns - buffer overrun errors persisting over multiple flow control update times. This error shall be detected when the number of consecutive flow control update periods with at least one overrun error in each period exceeds the OverrunErrors threshold given in the PortInfo attribute. A flow control update period should correspond to a time interval of 65536 symbol times.

20

21 **C7-69:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
22 [C7-69.1.1:](#)

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

C7-69.1.1: Each port shall implement detection of local link integrity and excessive buffer overrun errors as specified in [Section 7.12.1, "Error Detection," on page 242](#)

- Transmitter errors
 - Flow control update - errors indicative of a failure of the flow control machine at the other end of the link. For each VL active in the current port configuration, except VL 15 there shall be a watchdog timer monitoring the arrival of flow control updates. If the timer expires without receiving an update, a flow control update error has occurred. The period of the watchdog timer shall be 400,000 +3%/-51% symbol times. This timer shall only run when PortState = Arm or Active. When PortState = ActiveD, this timer shall be reset. When PortState = Initialize or when a flow control packet is received, the timer shall be reset.

C7-70: Each port shall implement detection of flow control update errors as specified in [Section 7.12.1, "Error Detection," on page 242](#).

7.12.2 ERROR RECOVERY PROCEDURES

The response to any single packet receive error is to discard the packet. No further recovery is necessary at the link layer. For some errors, the data packet check state machine ([Section 7.4, "Data Packet Check," on page 194](#)) allows a switch to forward a packet with an error marking it as bad by appending a bad VCRC value and the EBP delimiter as an alternative to dropping the packet.

Local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun, and flow control update errors all indicate errors that may be fixed by retraining or may be due to a hard fault.

C7-71: Upon detecting local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun or flow control update errors, the link shall initiate retraining by asserting L_init_train (refer to [6.3.1.2 L_Init_Train - Link Initiate Retraining on page 183](#)).

7.12.3 ERROR NOTIFICATION

Single packet receive error classes increment error counters as specified in management (Refer to [16.1.4 Optional Attributes on page 1103](#)). Note that at most one link layer error is detected per packet so each packet increments one and only one of these counters.

Local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun, and flow control update are counted and may produce a trap as specified in management.

CHAPTER 8: NETWORK LAYER

8.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter describes the network layer within IBA. Within the IBA layered architecture, this layer is responsible for routing packets between IBA subnets. This includes unicast and multicast operations. This chapter specifies routing between IBA subnets - it does not specify multi-protocol routing, i.e. routing IBA over non-IBA fabric types, nor does it specify how raw packets are routed between IBA subnets.

This chapter, with the exception of section [8.4 Global Route Header Usage on page 249](#), is informational in nature. As such, it does not specify IBA requirements; refer to [Chapter 19: Routers on page 1228](#) for requirements of IBA routers. Packet forwarding within an IBA subnet is done at the link layer by IBA switches; refer to [Chapter 18: Switches on page 1209](#) for requirements of IBA switches.

8.2 PACKET ROUTING

8.2.1 OVERVIEW

IBA supports a two-layer topological division. The lower layer is referred to as an IBA subnet. Packets are forwarded throughout the subnet utilizing IBA switches (the process of forwarding a packet from one link to another within a subnet is referred to as switching). The path that a packet takes through this layer is uniquely defined by its point of injection into the fabric, identified in the packet by the SLID field in the LRH, and the DLID and SL fields in its LRH.

At the higher layer, subnets are interconnected using routers (the process of forwarding a packet from one subnet to another is referred to as routing). Routing may be accomplished utilizing routers conforming to the IBA specification, and may also be accomplished using routers conforming to other specifications (e.g. utilizing the Internet Protocol (IP) suite of specifications). The series of subnets through which a packet passes is not defined by IBA; however, several fields are provided in the Global Route Header to enable routers to make this decision. These fields include SGID, DGID, TClass and FlowLabel. Additionally, a router might use fields from other headers, e.g. the SL field in the LRH to determine a mapping to TClass. Regardless of the mechanism used in forwarding decisions, IBA requires that the path be symmetric with respect to SGID and DGID. This means that if a valid path exists from an SGID to a DGID, then IBA requires that a valid path also exist swapping the values of DGID and SGID.

The requirements of IBA routers are specified in [Chapter 19: Routers on page 1228](#). Interconnection of IBA subnets utilizing IBA routers is intended to preserve IBA intra-subnet behavior across subnets.

Use of other routing technologies is beyond the scope of IBA; however, the architecture is intentionally crafted to enable this capability, especially utilizing IP version 6 as specified by IETF RFC 2460 and other associated IETF RFCs.

A global IBA fabric consists of one IBA subnet or multiple IBA subnets interconnected via routers. As described above, this global fabric may also include non-IBA interconnects between IBA subnets, as well as gateways to non-IBA fabrics.

8.2.2 GLOBAL FABRIC CHARACTERISTICS

This section describes the characteristics of a global fabric interconnected exclusively with IBA routers. While beyond the scope of IBA, global fabrics interconnected with non-IBA technology may also exhibit some or all of these characteristics.

8.2.2.1 INHERITANCE OF SUBNET REQUIREMENTS

All the packet delivery characteristics of a subnet are inherited by the global fabric, except for virtual lane 15 subnet management packets (since subnet management occurs at the subnet level, these packets do not transit routers).

8.2.2.2 PACKET ERRORS AND ERROR DETECTION

IBA specifies an invariant CRC that is appended to all IBA packets except raw packets (refer to section [7.8.1 Invariant CRC \(ICRC\) - 4 Bytes on page 218](#)). This CRC covers all of the IBA packet fields that do not require modification to effect IBA routing. End-to-end data integrity assurance is provided by retaining this CRC unmodified as the packet transits the global fabric.

8.2.2.3 SERVICE LEVELS

Service levels and virtual lanes are supported throughout the global fabric. This is accomplished by mapping service level to traffic class in the GRH, and vice versa. The mapping function itself, as is the interpretation of service level, is beyond the scope of IBA.

8.2.3 SUPPORT FOR MULTIPLE GLOBAL PATHS

The information required to route a packet within a subnet and between subnets is contained in the packet's local route header and global route headers, respectively. Unlike many network protocols, IBA does not require a packet to contain a global route header unless the packet is either

destined for a device that is not on the same subnet (exception: GiD based addressing) or the packet is a multicast packet. However, any packet except subnet management packets may contain a global route header (subnet management packets are defined in [14.2.1 Datagram Formats and Use on page 866](#).)

The identification and utilization of multiple paths between two channel adapters on different subnets is hierarchical and involves similar but independent mechanisms within subnets and across subnets.

Within subnets, multiple paths between two channel adapters are identified by multiple LIDs. That is, a port may effectively be assigned multiple LIDs using a LID/LMC combination [Chapter 4: Addressing on page 158](#). The source channel adapter indicates a path via its selection of one of the LIDs assigned to the destination port.

Likewise, channel adapters have the option to support the assignment of multiple GIDs. In the case of global routing across subnets, the LID indicates which of the valid paths is to be used within the subnet (i.e. switch forwarding) and the GID indicates which of the valid paths is to be used between subnets (i.e. router forwarding).

As a packet transits a subnet, its SLID and DLID fields remain unchanged. As a packet transits between subnets (i.e. through a router), the router updates the SLID to that of its own LID and the DLID to the LID of the next router or final destination, as appropriate.

Note that for global routing, this provides two degrees of freedom for a source channel adapter to select a path through the fabric. Selection of the LID determines the route through the subnet to the first router. Selection of the GID determines the route taken after reaching the first router. Each router along the path may choose the path through a subnet to the next router (or final destination) via its selection of the LID for the next router (or final destination). Furthermore, since the DLID may contain LMC bits of multipath data, the router may use the DLID as part of its route determination algorithm.

The decision process that routers use for forwarding packets is not specified by IBA; however, routers may rely on various combinations of Destination GID, Source GID, SL, TClass, and FlowLabel fields, among other factors, to determine the forwarding path and flows that must exhibit in-order delivery. Channel Adapters and/or ingress routers may label flows of packets that are expected to be delivered in order with the same FlowLabel in the global route header. While IBA routers utilize LIDs and GIDs to determine paths, the FlowLabel may be used by non-IBA routers to determine paths.

8.2.4 GLOBAL MULTICAST

IBA supports an unreliable multicast mechanism. A detailed description of this mechanism may be found in section [7.10 IBA and Raw Packet Multicast on page 235](#). Implementation of this mechanism is optional in IBA devices (including switches and routers). Multicast packets within a given multicast group, i.e. multicast packets that share a common multicast GID, may be sourced by a single device or by multiple devices. Since multicast support is optional, routers may vary in their ability to support multicast packets.

8.3 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER

[Figure 65 on page 248](#) illustrates the format of the Global Route Header that is used for inter-subnet routing.

bits bytes	31-24		23-16		15-8	7-0
0-3	IPVer	TClass	FlowLabel			
4-7	PayLen			NxtHdr	HopLmt	
8-11	SGID[127-96]					
12-15	SGID[95-64]					
16-19	SGID[63-32]					
20-23	SGID[31-0]					
24-27	DGID[127-96]					
28-31	DGID[95-64]					
32-35	DGID[63-32]					
36-39	DGID[31-0]					

Figure 65 Global Route Header (GRH)

Global route headers are not required in all packets (see section [8.4.1 Global Route Header Generation on page 249](#) for details). The presence of a Global Route Header is indicated in the Local Route Header as specified in [7.7.5 Link Next Header \(LNH\) - 2 bits on page 216](#). The following subparagraphs describe the fields in the GRH:

8.3.1 IP VERSION (IPVER) - 4 BITS

Indicates the version of the GRH; always set to 6.

8.3.2 TRAFFIC CLASS (TCLASS) - 8 BITS

This field is used to communicate service level end-to-end, i.e. across subnets. The mapping of specific traffic class to specific TClass values is not specified by IBA and may vary by implementation.

8.3.3 FLOW LABEL (FLOWLABEL) - 20 BITS

This field may be used to identify a sequence of packets that must be delivered in order.

8.3.4 PAYLOAD LENGTH (PAYLEN) - 16 BITS

For an IBA packet this field specifies the number of bytes starting from the first byte after the GRH up to and including the last byte of the ICRC. For a raw IPv6 datagram this field specifies the number of bytes starting from the first byte after the GRH up to but not including either the VCRC or any padding to achieve a multiple of a 4 byte packet length.

8.3.5 NEXT HEADER (NXTHDR) - 8 BITS

This field indicates what header, if any, follows the global route header.

8.3.6 HOP LIMIT (HOPLMT) - 8 BITS

This field indicates the number of hops (i.e. the number of routers transited) that the packet is permitted to take prior to being discarded. This ensures that a packet will not loop indefinitely between routers should a routing loop occur. Setting this value to 0 or 1 will ensure that the packet will not be forwarded beyond the local subnet.

8.3.7 SOURCE GLOBAL IDENTIFIER (SGID) - 128 BITS

This field identifies the port that injected the packet into the global fabric. Additional information on the format and use of GID's may be found in [Chapter 4: Addressing on page 158](#).

8.3.8 DESTINATION GLOBAL IDENTIFIER (DGID) - 128 BITS

This field identifies the final destination port of the packet, or to the multi-cast group that represents the set of ports to which the packet is to be delivered. Additional information on the format and use of GID's may be found in [Chapter 4: Addressing on page 158](#).

8.4 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER USAGE

The following subsections describe the usage of the global route header:

8.4.1 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER GENERATION

C8-1: A channel adapter initiating a packet shall include a global route header if any of the following conditions apply:

- The packet is a multicast packet.
- The final destination of the packet is a port of a device that is not on the same subnet as the port that initially injects the packet into the fabric and both the injecting and receiving ports are connected to IBA subnets.

o8-1: A channel adapter, switch, or router initiating a packet may include a global route header in any packet except for SMPs.

The use of a global route header should be negotiated during connection establishment time. For unreliable datagram services (not including multicast which requires a global router header for all multicast packets), the process to determine whether to use a global route header or not is outside the scope of the specification.

If a global route header is included, the fields are loaded by the initiating channel adapter, switch, or router as follows:

C8-2: IPVer: If a global route header is included in a packet, this field shall be set to 6.

C8-3: TClass: If a global route header is included in a packet, this field shall either be set to zero or to an appropriate TClass value by the injecting channel adapter. Each router maps TClass to a SL appropriate for the subnet on which it will inject the packet. This mapping function is not specified by IBA.

FlowLabel: The use of this field is not required by IBA.

C8-4: If a global route header is included in a packet, and FlowLabel is not used, it shall be set to zero.

C8-5: If a global route header is included in a packet and FlowLabel is used, all packets that must be delivered in order with respect to each other shall be identified by a constant, non-zero value inserted in the FlowLabel field.

This implies that if a given QP uses a non-zero flow label, it must use the same flow label on all packets emitted from that QP that are destined for a given remote QP. Different QPs transmitting to a given destination may use the same or different flow labels. Flow labels may be shared among QPs.

C8-6: PayLen: If a global route header is included in an IBA packet, this field shall be loaded with the length of the packet, in bytes, starting from the first byte after the global route header up to and including the last byte of the ICRC.

NxtHdr: The use of this field varies depending on whether the packet is a raw or non-raw packet.

C8-7: For non-raw IBA packets that include a GRH, the NxtHdr field shall contain *0x1B*.

C8-8: For raw packets that include a IPv6 header, the contents of NxtHdr shall be set to the identifier for the next header as defined in IETF RFC 1700 et. seq.

C8-9: HopLmt: If a global route header is included in a packet, this field shall be set to the number of hops (i.e. the number of routers that may be transited) that the packet is permitted to take prior to being discarded.

C8-10: SGID: If a global route header is included in a packet, this field shall be set to one of the GID's assigned to the port that will inject the packet into the fabric.

C8-11: DGID: If a global route header is included in a packet, this field shall be set to one of the GID's assigned to the port that is the final destination of this packet, or to the multicast GID that represents the set of ports to which the packet is to be delivered.

8.4.2 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER MODIFICATION

This section describes the modifications that may and must be made to the global route header by IBA routers when forwarding packets between subnets. Note that modification of these fields implies updating the packet's variant CRC defined in [7.8.2 Variant CRC \(VCRC\) - 2 Bytes on page 219](#). These changes do not affect the packet's invariant CRC defined in [7.8.1 Invariant CRC \(ICRC\) - 4 Bytes on page 218](#).

C8-12: IPVer: This field shall not be changed by IBA routers.

TClass: This field is used to communicate service level end-to-end, i.e. across subnets. Routers utilize this field to determine an appropriate SL for forwarding on the next subnet. This mapping function is not specified by IBA.

C8-13: The TClass field, if non-zero, shall not be modified by IBA routers.

The use of TClass by routers when it contains zero is not defined by IBA.

FlowLabel: This field may be used to identify a sequence of packets that must be delivered in order. The use of this field is not required by IBA. If not used, it is left unchanged. If used, all packets that must be delivered in order with respect to each other shall be identified by a constant, non-zero value inserted in this field in each packet.

o8-2: The router may change the value of FlowLabel; however, it must use the same flow label for all packets that must be delivered in order, which includes all traffic between any given two QPs.

C8-14: PayLen: IBA routers shall not modify the content of PayLen.

C8-15: NxtHdr: IBA routers shall not modify the content of NxtHdr.

1

C8-16: HopLmt: IBA routers shall discard packets that contain a value of one or zero in the HopLmt field. Otherwise, IBA routers shall decrement the HopLmt field by one.

2

3

4

C8-17: SGID: IBA routers shall not modify the content of SGID

5

C8-18: DGID: IBA routers shall not modify the content of DGID.

6

7

8

8.4.3 GLOBAL ROUTE HEADER VERIFICATION

Any required checks on DGID are performed at the transport layer, see Section 9.6.1.2 GRH Checks

9

10

11

12

C8-19: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

CHAPTER 9: TRANSPORT LAYER

9.1 OVERVIEW

Each IBA packet contains a transport header. The transport header contains the information required by the endnode to complete the specified operation, e.g. delivery of data payload to the appropriate entity within the endnode such as a thread or IO controller. This chapter defines the transport services used by IBA.

The client of an IBA channel adapter communicates with the transport layer by manipulating a “queue pair” (QP) made up of a Send work queue and a Receive work queue. For a host platform, the client of the transport layer is the Verbs software layer. The client posts buffers or commands to these queues and hardware transfers data from or into the buffers. Throughout this chapter, a QP that initiates an operation, i.e. injects a message into the fabric, is referred to as the requester and the QP that receives the message is referred to as the responder.

When a QP is created, it is associated with one of five IBA transport service types or non-IBA protocol encapsulation services. The transport service describes the degree of reliability and to what and how the QP transfers data.

The five IBA transport service types are:

- 1) Reliable Connection (RC)
- 2) Reliable Datagram (RD)
- 3) Extended Reliable Connection (XRC)
- 4) Unreliable Datagram (UD)
- 5) Unreliable Connection (UC)

The non-IBA protocol encapsulation services are:

- 1) Raw IPv6 Datagram
- 2) Raw Ethernertype Datagram

[Table 376 Channel Adapter Attributes on page 1194](#) lists which of these services are required for Host Channel Adapters and Target Channel Adapters. [Table 38: OpCode field](#) below compares several key attributes of these five transport service types.

Reliable transport services use a combination of sequence numbers and acknowledgment messages (ACK / NAK) to verify packet delivery order,

prevent duplicate packets and out-of-sequence packets from being processed, and to detect missing packets. Upon error detection, e.g. a missing packet, the missing packet along with all subsequent packets will be retransmitted by the requestor. IBA does not support selective packet retransmission nor the out-of-order reception of packets.

An IBA operation is defined to include a request message and, for reliable services, its corresponding response. Thus, the request message is generated by a requester, and a response, if one exists, is generated by the responder.

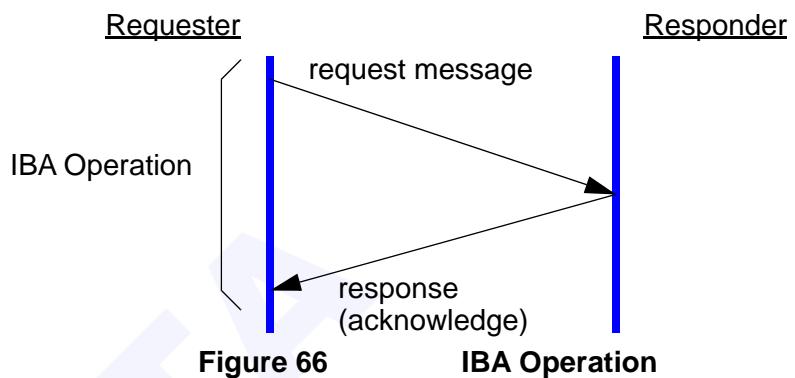


Figure 66

IBA Operation

A request message consists of one or more IBA packets. The packets of a request message are called request packets. A response, except for an RDMA READ Response, consists of exactly one packet. A response is also called an acknowledge. The response packet acknowledges receipt of one or more packets. The response may acknowledge the receipt of packets that comprise anywhere from a portion of a request message to multiple request messages.

Unreliable transport services do not use acknowledgment messages. They do however generate sequence numbers. This allows a responder to detect out-of-sequence or missing packets and to perform local recovery processing. The specifics of any recovery processing for unreliable datagrams are outside the scope of the IBA specification.

Table 37 Comparison of IBA Transport Service Types

Attribute	RC and XRC	Reliable Datagram	Unreliable Datagram	Unreliable Connection	Raw Datagram (both IPv6 & ethertype)
Scalability (M processes on N Processor nodes communicating with all processes on all nodes)	RC: $M^2 \times N$ QPs required on each processor node, per CA XRC: $M \times N$ QPs required on each processor node, per CA.	M QPs required on each processor node, per CA.	M QPs required on each processor node, per CA.	$M^2 \times N$ QPs required on each processor node, per CA.	Minimum 1 QP required on each end node, per CA.
Reliability	Corrupt data detected	Yes			
	Data delivery guarantee	Data delivered exactly once		No guarantees	
	Data order guaranteed	Yes, per connection	Yes, packets from any one source QP are ordered to multiple destination QPs.	No	Unordered and duplicate packets are detected.
	Data loss detected	Yes		No	Yes
	Error recovery	Reliable. Errors are detected at both the requestor and the responder. The requestor can transparently recover from errors (retransmission, alternate path, etc.) without any involvement of the client application. QP processing is halted only if the destination is inoperable or all fabric paths between the channel adapters have failed.		Unreliable. Packets with some types of errors may not be delivered. Neither source nor destination QPs are informed of dropped packets.	Unreliable. Packets with errors, including sequence errors, are detected and may be logged by the responder. The requestor is not informed.
RDMA and ATOMIC Operations		Yes	Yes	No	Yes: RDMA WRITEs No: RDMA READs & ATOMICs
Bind Memory Window		Yes	Yes	No	Yes
IBA Unreliable Multicast Support		No	No	Yes	No
Raw Multicast		No	No	No	Yes
Remote Invalidation		Yes	No	No	No
Shared Receive Queue		Yes	No	Yes	No

Table 37 Comparison of IBA Transport Service Types (Continued)

Attribute	RC and XRC	Reliable Datagram	Unreliable Datagram	Unreliable Connection	Raw Datagram (both IPv6 & ethertype)
Message Size	Transport supports a message size of zero to 2^{31} bytes. Implementations may support a smaller maximum message size. Actual maximum message size to be used may be negotiated by upper (application) layers. A message may consist of multiple packets.	Single PMTU packet datagrams - 0 to 4096 bytes.	Transport supports a message size of zero to 2^{31} bytes. Implementations may support a smaller maximum message size. Actual maximum message size to be used may be negotiated by upper (application) layers. A message may consist of multiple packets.	Single PMTU packet datagrams - 0 to 4096 bytes.	
Connection Oriented?	Connected. The client connects the local QP to one and only one remote QP. No other traffic flows over these QPs.	Connectionless. Appears connectionless to the client - uses one or more End-to-End contexts per CA to provide reliability service.	Connectionless. No prior connection is needed for communication.	Connected. The client connects the local QP to one and only one remote QP. No other traffic flows over these QPs.	Connectionless. No prior connection is needed for communication.

XRC is a new approach in the spirit of the Reliable Datagram (RD) model that reduces the number of QPs required for full connectivity in the scenario above by a factor of M thus significantly improving the scalability of the solution for large clusters of multi core endnodes. See section [9.7.9 XRC on page 399](#) for a full description of XRC.

9.2 BASE TRANSPORT HEADER

Base Transport Header (BTH) contains fields always present for all IBA transport services - it is not present in Raw packets. The presence of BTH is indicated by the Link Next Header (LRH:LNH) field.

Raw packets do not utilize the IBA transport service, therefore Base Transport Header is not required for raw packets.

C9-1: All IBA transport services shall include a Base Transport Header.

bits bytes	31-24			23-16			15-8	7-0
0-3	OpCode			SE	M	Pad	TVer	Partition Key
4-7	F/Res1 ^a B/Res1 ^a Reserved 6 ^a			Destination QP				
8-11	A	Reserved 7			PSN - Packet Sequence Number			

Figure 67 Base Transport Header (BTH)

a. These fields shall be masked in the ICRC

9.2.1 OPERATION CODE (OPCODE)

The OpCode field defines the interpretation of the remaining header and payload bytes. The OpCode list definition is shown in [Table 38 OpCode field on page 257](#).

C9-2: [Table 38: OpCode field](#) shall be used to define the OpCode parameter in the BTH as well as the headers and payload that follow the BTH.

o9-0.2.1: This compliance statement has been removed because it is covered by C9-2.

Table 38 **OpCode field**

Code[7-5]	Code[4-0]	Description	Packet Contents following the Base Transport header ^a
000 Reliable Connection (RC)	00000	SEND First	PayLd
	00001	SEND Middle	PayLd
	00010	SEND Last	PayLd
	00011	SEND Last with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	00100	SEND Only	PayLd
	00101	SEND Only with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	00110	RDMA WRITE First	RETH, PayLd
	00111	RDMA WRITE Middle	PayLd
	01000	RDMA WRITE Last	PayLd
	01001	RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	01010	RDMA WRITE Only	RETH, PayLd
	01011	RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate	RETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01100	RDMA READ Request	RETH
	01101	RDMA READ response First	AETH, PayLd
	01110	RDMA READ response Middle	PayLd
	01111	RDMA READ response Last	AETH, PayLd
	10000	RDMA READ response Only	AETH, PayLd
	10001	Acknowledge	AETH
	10010	ATOMIC Acknowledge	AETH, AtomicAckETH
	10011	CmpSwap	AtomicETH
	10100	FetchAdd	AtomicETH
	10101	Reserved	Undefined
	10110	SEND Last with Invalidate	IETH, PayLd
	10111	SEND Only with Invalidate	IETH, PayLd
	11000-11111	Reserved	undefined

Table 38 OpCode field (Continued)

Code[7-5]	Code[4-0]	Description	Packet Contents following the Base Transport header^a
001 Unreliable Connection (UC)	00000	SEND First	PayLd
	00001	SEND Middle	PayLd
	00010	SEND Last	PayLd
	00011	SEND Last with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	00100	SEND Only	PayLd
	00101	SEND Only with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	00110	RDMA WRITE First	RETH, PayLd
	00111	RDMA WRITE Middle	PayLd
	01000	RDMA WRITE Last	PayLd
	01001	RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate	ImmDt, PayLd
	01010	RDMA WRITE Only	RETH, PayLd
	01011	RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate	RETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01100-11111	Reserved	undefined
010 Reliable Datagram (RD)	00000	SEND First	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	00001	SEND Middle	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	00010	SEND Last	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	00011	SEND Last with Immediate	RDETH, DETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	00100	SEND Only	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	00101	SEND Only with Immediate	RDETH, DETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	00110	RDMA WRITE First	RDETH, DETH, RETH, PayLd
	00111	RDMA WRITE Middle	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	01000	RDMA WRITE Last	RDETH, DETH, PayLd
	01001	RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate	RDETH, DETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01010	RDMA WRITE Only	RDETH, DETH, RETH, PayLd
	01011	RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate	RDETH, DETH, RETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01100	RDMA READ Request	RDETH, DETH, RETH
	01101	RDMA READ response First	RDETH, AETH, PayLd
	01110	RDMA READ response Middle	RDETH, PayLd
	01111	RDMA READ response Last	RDETH, AETH, PayLd
	10000	RDMA READ response Only	RDETH, AETH, PayLd
	10001	Acknowledge	RDETH, AETH
	10010	ATOMIC Acknowledge	RDETH, AETH, AtomicAckETH
	10011	CmpSwap	RDETH, DETH, AtomicETH
	10100	FetchAdd	RDETH, DETH, AtomicETH
	10101	RESYNC	RDETH, DETH
	10110-11111	Reserved	undefined

Table 38 OpCode field (Continued)

Code[7-5]	Code[4-0]	Description	Packet Contents following the Base Transport header ^a
011 Unreliable Datagram (UD)	00000-00011	Reserved	undefined
	00100	SEND only	DETH, PayLd
	00101	SEND only with Immediate	DETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	00110-11111	Reserved	undefined
100 CNP	00000	CNP	none
	00001-11111	Reserved	undefined
101 Extended Reliable Connection (XRC)	00000	SEND First	XRCETH, PayLd
	00001	SEND Middle	XRCETH, PayLd
	00010	SEND Last	XRCETH, PayLd
	00011	SEND Last with Immediate	XRCETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	00100	SEND Only	XRCETH, PayLd
	00101	SEND Only with Immediate	XRCETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	00110	RDMA WRITE First	XRCETH, RETH, PayLd
	00111	RDMA WRITE Middle	XRCETH, PayLd
	01000	RDMA WRITE Last	XRCETH, PayLd
	01001	RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate	XRCETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01010	RDMA WRITE Only	XRCETH, RETH, PayLd
	01011	RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate	XRCETH, RETH, ImmDt, PayLd
	01100	RDMA READ Request	XRCETH, RETH
	01101	RDMA READ response First	AETH, PayLd
	01110	RDMA READ response Middle	PayLd
	01111	RDMA READ response Last	AETH, PayLd
	10000	RDMA READ response Only	AETH, PayLd
	10001	Acknowledge	AETH
	10010	ATOMIC Acknowledge	AETH, AtomicAckETH
	10011	CmpSwap	XRCETH, AtomicETH
	10100	FetchAdd	XRCETH, AtomicETH
	10101	Reserved	Undefined
	10110	SEND Last with Invalidate	XRCETH, IETH, PayLd
	10111	SEND Only with Invalidate	XRCETH, IETH, PayLd
	11000-11111	Reserved	undefined
110 - 111	00000-11111	Manufacturer Specific OpCodes	undefined

a. All OpCodes have the ICRC and VCRC attached.

9.2.2 RESERVED TRANSPORT FUNCTION OP CODES

For future expansion of its transport layer, IBA provides Reserved and Manufacturer Defined BTH OpCodes. Manufacturer Defined opcodes

should not be used between devices until the devices are clearly identified as supporting those opcodes.

9.2.3 SOLICITED EVENT (SE) - 1 BIT

The requester sets this bit to 1 to indicate that the responder shall invoke the CQ event handler. Additional operational guidelines:

- The SE bit should only be set in the last or only packet of a SEND, SEND with Immediate, or RDMA WRITE with Immediate.
- For additional operational guidelines impacting HCAs, see Section [11.4.2.2 Request Completion Notification on page 680](#).

SE bit is not considered a part of packet header validation, i.e. receipt of a packet with this bit set that does not meet the invocation requirements will not result in a NAK being generated.

C9-3: For an HCA, if an inbound request packet has the Solicited Event bit in the BTH set to 1 and the additional SE operational guidelines are valid, it shall invoke the CQ event handler.

o9-1: For a TCA supporting Solicited Events, if an inbound request packet has the Solicited Event bit in the BTH set to 1 and the additional SE operational guidelines are valid, it shall invoke the CQ event handler.

C9-4: The responder shall not consider the SE bit in the BTH part of the packet header validation.

In addition to its use in SEND, SEND with Immediate or RDMA Write with Immediate operations, the SE bit can be set with SEND with Invalidate operations. In such a case the SE bit should only be set in the last or only packet of a SEND with Invalidate. In all other respects, the use of the SE bit follows the same rules as defined for the use of the SE bit with a normal SEND operation.

9.2.4 MIGREQ (M) - 1 BIT

Used to communicate migration state. If set to one, indicates the connection or EE context has been migrated; if set to zero, it means there is no change in the current migration state. See Automatic Path Migration within the [Chapter 17: Channel Adapters on page 1187](#).

9.2.5 PAD COUNT (PADCNT) - 2 BITS

Packet payloads are sent as a multiple of 4-byte quantities. Pad count indicates the number of pad bytes - 0 to 3 - that are appended to the packet payload. Pads are used to “stretch” the payload (payloads may be zero or more bytes in length) to be a multiple of 4 bytes.

9.2.6 TRANSPORT HEADER VERSION (TVER) - 4 BITS

Specifies the version of the IBA Transport used for this packet. This version applies to all of the transport fields including the BTH, extended header and the invariant CRC - this field is set to 0x0. If a receiver does not support the Transport Version specified then the packet is discarded.

C9-5: Requesters and responders using IBA transports shall generate IBA transport packets with BTH:TVer = 0x0.

9.2.7 PARTITION KEY (P_KEY) - 16 BITS

P_Key identifies the partition that the destination QP (RC, UC, UD, XRC) or EE Context (RD) is a member.

9.2.8 DESTINATION QP (DESTQP) - 24 BITS

This field specifies the destination queue pair (QP) identifier.

9.2.9 FECN/RES1 (F/RES1) - 1 BIT

F (FECN): 0 indicates that a FECN indication was not received. 1 indicates that the packet went through a point of congestion.

Res1: Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC.

9.2.10 BECN/RES1 (B/RES1) - 1 BIT

B (BECN): 0 the packet did not go through a point of congestion or went through a point of congestion but was not marked. 1 indicates that the packet indicated by this header was subject to forward congestion. The B bit is set in an ACK or CN BTH.

Res1: Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC.

9.2.11 RESERVE 6(RESV6) - 6 BITS

Reserved (variant) - 6 bits. Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is not included in the invariant CRC.

C9-6: When generating a packet, the sender shall set the Resv6, F/Res1 and B/Res1 fields to zero. In general, the receiver shall ignore the reserved fields.

9.2.12 ACKREQ (A) - 1 BIT

Requests responder to schedule an acknowledgment on the associated QP.

9.2.13 RESERVED 7 (RESV7) - 7 BITS

Transmitted as 0, ignored on receive. This field is included in the invariant CRC.

C9-7: When generating a packet, the sender shall set the Resv7 field to zero. The receiver shall ignore this field.

9.2.14 PACKET SEQUENCE NUMBER (PSN) - 24 BITS

This field is used to identify the position of a packet within a sequence of packets. All IBA requestors shall generate a PSN as specified in [9.7.3.1 Requester Side - Generating PSN on page 313](#). Depending upon the transport service type and / or implementation requirements, a responder may validate the PSN to detect missing packets.

9.3 EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADERS

9.3.1 RELIABLE DATAGRAM EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (RDETH) - 4 BYTES

Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH) contains the End-to-End Context identifier.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Reserve		EE-Context	

Figure 68

Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header (RDETH)

9.3.1.1 RESERVE - 8 BITS

o9-2: If a CA implements Reliable Datagram functionality, then when generating a packet, the sender shall set this field to 0x0. The receiver shall ignore this field.

9.3.1.2 END-TO-END (EE) CONTEXT - 24 BITS

This field indicates the End-to-End (EE) Context used for this packet. EE context is a unique endnode identifier used to multiplex / demultiplex reliable datagram packets between any two end nodes. The EE-Context provides a context for reliable transfer state similar to that used for reliable connection.

9.3.2 DATAGRAM EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (DETH) - 8 BYTES

Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH) contains the additional transport fields for reliable and unreliable datagram service.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Queue Key			
4-7	Reserve	Source QP		

Figure 69

Datagram Extended Transport Header (DETH)

9.3.2.1 Q_KEY - 32 BITS

This field is required to authorize access to the destination queue. The responder compares this field with the destination's QP Q_Key.

9.3.2.2 RESERVE - 8 BITS

C9-8: When generating a packet, the sender shall set this field to 0x0. The receiver shall ignore this field.

9.3.2.3 SOURCE QP (SrcQP) - 24 BITS

This field specifies the source queue pair (QP) identifier. This is used as the destination QP for response packets.

9.3.3 RDMA EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (RETH) - 16 BYTES

RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH) contains the additional transport fields for RDMA operations.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Virtual Address (63-32)			
4-7	Virtual Address (31-0)			
8-11	R_Key			
12-15	DMA Length			

Figure 70

RDMA Extended Transport Header (RETH)

9.3.3.1 VIRTUAL ADDRESS (VA) - 64 BITS

Start address of buffer. RDMA VA may start on any byte boundary.

9.3.3.2 R_KEY - 32 BITS

R_Keys have the following properties:

- A R_Key acts as a protection key to access the specified memory address and range for a given operation, i.e. it is a protection mechanism to insure proper access to the target memory. The responder correlates the R_Key to the local protection mechanisms to validate the requester's access rights.
- A R_Key must be exported to the requester - this process (also includes the export of the starting virtual address and memory size, i.e. length) is outside the scope of this section.
- Access rights are granted for any combination of RDMA READ, RDMA WRITE, and ATOMICs - including none and all.
- Each Memory Region or Window has a single valid R_Key at any given moment. A virtually contiguous range of memory locations can have multiple Regions or Windows associated with it concurrently, each with an associated R_Key.
- A R_Key can be exported to multiple remote responders.
- R_Keys are used only for RDMA and ATOMIC Operations. A R_Key is contained within the packet header.

A responder that supports RDMA and / or ATOMIC Operations **shall** verify the R_Key, the associated access rights, and the specified virtual address. The responder must also perform bounds checking (i.e. verify that the length of the data being referenced does not cross the associated memory start and end addresses). Any violation must result in the packet being discarded and for reliable services, the generation of a NAK.

9.3.3.3 DMA LENGTH (DMALEN) - 32 BITS

This field indicates the length, in bytes, of the remote DMA operation.

C9-9: For an HCA performing RDMA operations, the minimum length specified in the DMALen field is 0; the maximum length is 2^{31} .

o9-3: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, the minimum length specified in the DMALen field is 0; the maximum length is 2^{31} .

9.3.4 ATOMIC EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (ATOMICETH) - 28 BYTES

ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH) contains the additional transport fields for ATOMIC Request operations.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Virtual Address (63-32)	
4-7			Virtual Address (31-0)	
8-11			R_Key	
12-15			Swap (or Add) Data (63-32)	
16-19			Swap (or Add) Data (31-0)	
20-23			Compare Data (63-32)	
24-27			Compare Data (31-0)	

Figure 71 ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH)

9.3.4.1 VIRTUAL ADDRESS (VA) - 64 BITS

Start address of buffer.

9.3.4.2 R_KEY - 32 BITS

R_Key used to verify remote access to the specified virtual address. See [9.3.3.2 R_Key - 32 bits on page 263](#).

9.3.4.3 SWAP (ADD) DATA (SWAPDT) - 64 BITS

The data operand used in ATOMIC Operations. In a CmpSwap operation this field is swapped into the addressed buffer if the CmpDt matched the existing buffer contents. In a FetchAdd operation this field is added to the contents of the addressed buffer.

9.3.4.4 COMPARE DATA (CMPDT) - 64 BITS

The data operand used in Compare portion of the CmpSwap ATOMIC Operation.

9.3.5 ACK EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (AETH) - 4 BYTES

ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) contains the additional transport fields for ACK packets. The ACK Extended Transport header is included in all ACK and the first and last packet of RDMA READ Response messages.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Syndrome		MSN	

Figure 72 Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AETH)

9.3.5.1 SYNDROME

This field indicates if this is an ACK or NAK. If the packet is an ACK and the QP is associated with Reliable Connection transport service, the syndrome also provides the Limit Sequence Number (LSN) - see [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#). If packet is a NAK, it indicates the error code. For RNR NAK, this field indicates the responder's requested timer to be used before retransmitting the request.

9.3.5.2 MESSAGE SEQUENCE NUMBER (MSN)

Sequence number of the last message completed at the responder. This field is used to optimize completion processing at the requester.

9.3.5.3 ATOMIC ACKNOWLEDGE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (ATOMICACKETH) - 8 BYTES

ATOMIC Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AtomicETH) contains the additional transport fields for ATOMIC response operations.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Original Remote Data (63-32)			
4-7	Original Remote Data (31-0)			

Figure 73 ATOMIC Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH)

9.3.5.4 ORIGINAL REMOTE DATA (ORIGREMDT) - 64 BITS

The data result from an ATOMIC Operation. This is the initial contents read from the remote memory buffer.

9.3.6 IMMEDIATE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IMMDT) - 4 BYTES

Immediate Data (ImmDt) contains data that is placed in the receive Completion Queue Element (CQE). The ImmDt is only allowed in SEND or RDMA WRITE packets with Immediate Data.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Immediate Data			

Figure 74 Immediate Extended Transport Header (ImmDt)

9.3.7 INVALIDATE EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (IETH) - 4 BYTES

The SEND with Invalidate operation carries with it an R_Key field. This R_Key is used by the responder to invalidate a memory region or memory window once it receives and executes the SEND with Invalidate request.

The R_Key is carried in a new extended transport header called the Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH) as shown below.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			R_Key	

Figure 75

Invalidate Extended Transport Header (IETH)

9.3.7.1 R_KEY - 32 BITS

R_Key defining the memory region or memory window to be Invalidated by the responder.

9.3.8 XRC EXTENDED TRANSPORT HEADER (XRCETH)

XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH) contains the Destination XRC SRQ identifier.

o9-3.a1: If a CA implements the XRC transport service, then when generating a request packet, the sender shall set the XRCETH fields as described below.

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	Reserved		XRCSRQ	

Figure 76

XRC Extended Transport Header (XRCETH)

9.3.8.1 RESERVED - 8 BITS

When generating a packet, the sender shall set this field to 0x0. The receiver shall ignore this field.

9.3.8.2 XRCSRQ - 24 BITS

This field indicates the XRC Shared Receive Queue number to be used by the responder for this packet.

9.4 TRANSPORT FUNCTIONS

A QP provides the transport layer's client (e.g. the verbs layer in an HCA) with a specific transport service. Different transport services have various reliability levels for connected and connectionless communication. This section describes the basic functions used with each of the transport services. Additional transport sections go into more depth on the specifics of response packets, ordering, error recovery, etc. This section provides the high level view of the functions and how they work.

Not all the functions are available for each transport service, as described in [Table 39 on page 268](#) below. The Raw Datagram transport service does

Table 39 Transport Functions Supported for Specific Transport Services

Transport Function	Transport Service					
	Reliable Connection	Unreliable Connection	XRC	Reliable Datagram	Unreliable Datagram	Raw Datagram
SEND	supported	supported	supported	supported	supported	not applicable
RESYNC	not supported	not supported	not supported	supported	not supported	not supported
RDMA WRITE	supported	supported	supported	supported	not supported	not applicable
RDMA READ	supported	not supported	supported	supported	not supported	not applicable
ATOMIC Operations	optional support	not supported	optional support	optional support	not supported	not applicable

not use the IBA defined transport functions. Instead, Raw Datagram packets transfer data that is part of some other, non IBA protocol.

9.4.1 SEND OPERATION

The SEND Operation is sometimes referred to as a Push operation or as having channel semantics. Both terms refer to how the SW client of the transport service views the movement of data. With a SEND operation the initiator of the data transfer pushes data to the remote QP. The initiator doesn't know where the data is going on the remote node. The remote node's Channel Adapter places the data into the next available receive buffer for that QP. On an HCA, the receive buffer is pointed to by the WQE at the head of the QP's receive queue.

The SEND Operation is referred to as having channel semantics because it moves data much like a mainframe IO channel -- the data is tagged with a discriminator (for IBA the discriminator is the destination LID and QP number) and the destination chooses where to place the data based on the discriminator.

A SEND Operation moves a single message. For the RC, RD, UC, and XRC transport services this message may be longer than a single packet. A message may range in size from zero bytes to 2^{31} bytes.

C9-10: The size of a SEND Operation, as generated by a requester, shall be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive).

C9-11: For RC and UC transport services in an HCA, a request message greater than PMTU in length shall be segmented into PMTU-sized seg-

ments for transmission via multiple packets. Similarly, an HCA responder shall reassemble such packets back into a single message.

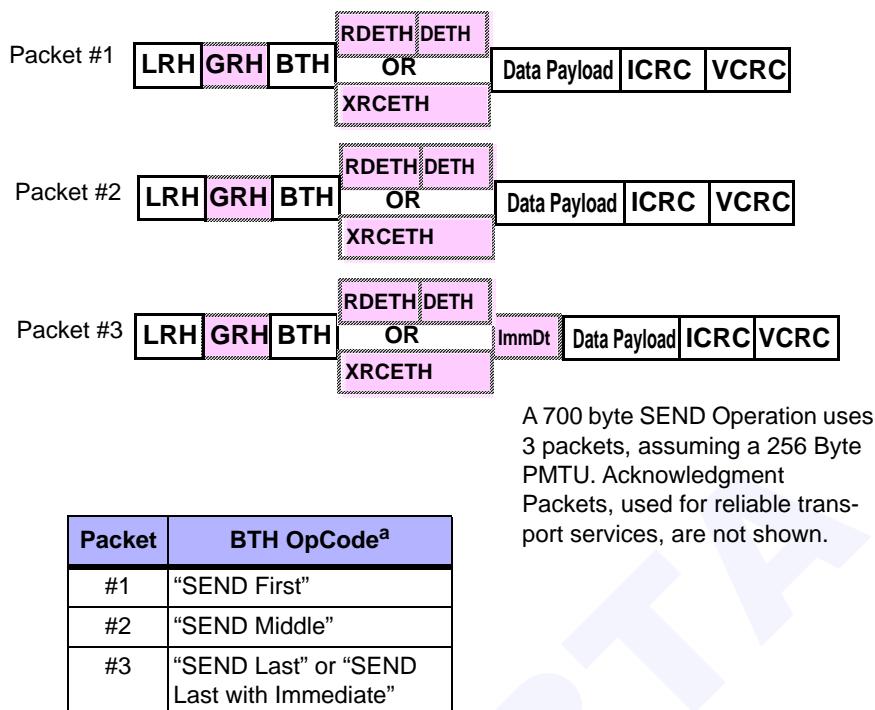
o9-4: For RD and XRC transport services in an HCA, a request message greater than PMTU in length shall be segmented into PMTU-sized segments for transmission via multiple packets. Similarly, an HCA responder shall reassemble such packets back into a single message.

o9-5: For RC, UC, RD and XRC transport services in a TCA, a request message greater than PMTU in length shall be segmented into PMTU-sized segments for transmission via multiple packets. Similarly, a TCA responder shall reassemble such packets back into a single message.

C9-12: For the Unreliable Datagram transport service, a SEND Operation shall consist only of single packet messages (i.e. the message data payload is limited to a maximum of the PMTU between the requester and the responder, i.e. 256, 512, 1024, 2048, or 4096 bytes).

A SEND Operation can, at the discretion of the client, include 4 bytes of Immediate data with each send message. If included, the Immediate data is contained within an additional header field (Immediate Extended Transport Header or ImmDt) on the last packet of the SEND Operation.

For example, Figure 77 below shows a SEND Operation of 700 bytes requiring 3 SEND packets, (assuming a 256 Byte PMTU



a. The BTH OpCode determines if the RDETH, DETH, and ImmDt headers are present.

Figure 77 SEND Operation Example

A 700 byte SEND Operation uses 3 packets, assuming a 256 Byte PMTU. Acknowledgment Packets, used for reliable transport services, are not shown.

Field Name	
LRH	Local Route Header
GRH	Global Route Header
BTH	Base Transport Header
RDETH	Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header ^a
DETH	Datagram Extended Transport Header ^b
XRCETH	eXtended Reliable Connected Extended Transport Header ^c
ImmDt	Immediate Extended Transport Header
ICRC	Invariant CRC
VCRC	Variant CRC

a. Present only for the Reliable Datagram transport service

b. Present only for Reliable Datagram and Unreliable Datagram transport service

c. XRCETH is present for XRC services only

There are several things to note from the above figure:

- The BTH OpCode field determines the start and end of the SEND message.
 - If the SEND message is less than or equal to the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode "SEND Only" or "SEND Only with Immediate" is used.
 - If the SEND message is for a length of zero, then the BTH OpCode "SEND Only" or "SEND Only with Immediate" is used. In this case, there is no Data Payload field, but all other fields are as shown.
 - If the SEND message is greater than the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode of the first packet is "SEND First" and the BTH OpCode of the last packet is "SEND Last" or "SEND Last with Immediate".

- If the SEND message is greater than twice the PMTU, then the packets between the first and last use the BTH OpCode “SEND Middle”.
1
- Every packet in a message that doesn’t have the opcode SEND Only, SEND Only with Immediate, SEND Last, or SEND Last with Immediate shall have a data field of PMTU length.
2
- The responder node (the destination of the SEND Operation) does not know the final length of the SEND message until the last packet with the “SEND Last” or “SEND Last with Immediate” OpCode arrives.
3
- The Packet Sequence Number field is used by the responder to detect out-of-order or missing packets.
4
- If the entire message is not a multiple of the PMTU, then the initial packets of the message carry a full PMTU number of bytes and the final packet carries the remainder as a partial payload.
5
- For a given requesting node’s QP, once a multi-packet SEND Operation is started, no other request packets may be generated until the “SEND Last” or “SEND Last with Immediate” packet.
6

C9-13: A multi-packet message shall not be interleaved with other operations on the same SEND Queue.
7

- Not all SEND messages carry Immediate data. If they do, a special header is included in the last or only packet of the message. The presence of the header is indicated by a special “SEND Last with Immediate Data” or “SEND Only with Immediate Data” OpCode in the BTH.
8
- For an HCA, there is no alignment requirement for the source or destination buffers of a SEND message. For buffers within a TCA, any alignment requirement is implementation specific.
9

The verbs chapter explains how the upper level SW client of an HCA uses a work request to post a buffer that is in turn segmented and sent as packets across the fabric. The same chapter also describes how the destination node posts a receive buffer into which the destination HCA reassembles the data. SEND messages initiated by a TCA use an implementation specific mechanism to create (and respond to) SEND packets.
10

C9-14: When generating a packet for a SEND operation, the requester shall include at least these headers and fields in every packet of the request: LRH, BTH, ICRC, VCRC.
11

C9-15: When generating a response to a SEND operation, the responder shall include at least these headers and fields the response: LRH, BTH, AETH, ICRC, VCRC.
12

9.4.1.1 SEND WITH INVALIDATE

In most respects, a SEND with Invalidate operates exactly as does a normal SEND operation. The significant variation is that the last (or only) packet of the message carries with it an R_KEY in an IETH (Invalidate Extended Transport Header). This is the R_KEY that the responder is being asked to invalidate. In effect, the Invalidate function is piggy-backed onto a normal SEND operation.

There are several things to note about SEND with Invalidate with respect to a normal SEND operation. All of the following statements assume that an Invalidate operation is being piggybacked onto a “normal” SEND operation.

- If the SEND message onto which the invalidate operation is piggy-backed is less than or equal to the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode “SEND Only with Invalidate” is used.
- If the SEND message onto which the invalidate operation is piggy-backed is for a length of zero, then the BTH OpCode “SEND Only with Invalidate” is used. In this case, there is no Data Payload field, but all other fields are as shown.
- If the SEND message onto which the invalidate operation is piggy-backed is greater than the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode of the first packet is “SEND First” and the BTH OpCode of the last packet is “SEND Last with Invalidate”. The BTH OpCode for all other packets of the message is “SEND Middle”.
- Every packet in a SEND message that doesn’t have the opcode “SEND Only”, “SEND Only with Immediate”, “SEND Only with Invalidate”, “SEND Last”, “SEND Last with Immediate”, or “SEND Last with Invalidate” shall have a data field of PMTU length.
- The responder node (the destination of the SEND operation) does not know the final length of the SEND message onto which the invalidate operation is being piggybacked until the last packet with the “SEND Last with Invalidate” OpCode arrives.
- For a given requesting node’s QP, once a multi-packet SEND operation is started, no other request packets may be generated until the “SEND Last”, “SEND Last with Immediate”, or “SEND Last with Invalidate” packet is generated.

Remote invalidate operations are used to disable access to memory through the R_Key contained in the IETH. However, Invalidate operations maintain the memory translation and protection resources associated with the R_Key that is being invalidated. A SEND with Invalidate operation does not disable all accesses to the memory referenced by the R_Key, it simply means that the R_Key being invalidated can no longer be used to access those memory regions or memory windows. Other R_Keys that reference the same memory remain valid.

The intent is that the Invalidate operation be executed by the channel interface, which may include hardware as well as software drivers below the verbs. Thus, the invalidate operation may be performed by the software driver immediately above the transport layer hardware. In this case, the transport layer hardware simply passes the IETH upwards to the software portion of the channel interface which executes the necessary invalidation. For this reason, the IETH is not validated as part of normal transport packet header validation. The invalidate operation does not make any changes to the state of the referenced memory.

9.4.1.1.1 INVALIDATE OPERATION ORDERING

o9-5.2.1: For any HCA which supports SEND with Invalidate, upon receiving an IETH, the Invalidate operation must not take place until after the normal transport header validation checks have been successfully completed.

An invalidation must not occur if the packet containing the IETH (e.g. SEND with Invalidate) is not a valid packet as described by normal packet validation procedures. However, since the invalidation operation is not executed by the transport layer, the Invalidate operation may take place either before or after the transport-level acknowledge has been generated, but in any case, the transport-level acknowledgement (ACK/NAK) does not reflect either the success or failure of the invalidate operation.

The following defines the ordering rules for a SEND with Invalidate operation:

- 1) there are no ordering guarantees between any SEND with Invalidate operation and any subsequent operation. Thus a requester cannot rely on a SEND with Invalidate operation, by itself, to prevent access to the responder's invalidated region by a subsequent operation.
- 2) Normal ordering rules apply to an RDMA WRITE, SEND or ATOMIC operation followed by a SEND with Invalidate operation. In this case, the RDMA WRITE, SEND or ATOMIC operation executes before the subsequent SEND with Invalidate operation is executed at the responder.
- 3) a SEND with Invalidate operation may impact a previous RDMA READ operation. Thus, a requester should not perform a SEND with Invalidate while previous RDMA READ operations are still outstanding. The requester can set the Fence attribute on a given work request such as a SEND with Invalidate in order to ensure that previous outstanding RDMA READ operations have completed before initiating a subsequent SEND with Invalidate operation.
- 4) As always, acknowledgements are always returned by the responder in order, and WQEs at the requester are always completed in order.

9.4.1.1.2 RESPONDER - R_KEY VALIDATION

The transport layer does not validate the R_Key field of the IETH during transport-level packet header validation. The channel interface retains responsibility for validating the R_Key field of the IETH prior to executing the invalidation. For this reason, the IETH is not considered to be a transport header and therefore R_Key validation for a remote invalidate operation is not discussed in this section.

See [9.4.1.1.3 R_Key Validation for Remote Memory Invalidate on page 274](#) for a description of validating the R_Key field of the IETH.

9.4.1.1.3 R_KEY VALIDATION FOR REMOTE MEMORY INVALIDATE

o9-5.2.2: For a CA which supports remote invalidate, prior to executing a remote invalidate operation, the R_Key contained in the IETH must be validated. To be considered valid, all of the following conditions must be true:

- 1) The R_Key must not be in the invalid state.
- 2) If the implementation supports a single key space for the L_Keys and R_Keys, the R_Key contained in the IETH must not be the same as the reserved L_Key.
- 3) For an HCA, the R_Key must not reference a memory region that was created through a Register Memory Region or Reregister Memory Region.
- 4) For an HCA, the R_Key must not reference a Shared Memory Region.
- 5) For an HCA, the R_Key must not reference a memory region that is associated with a different protection domain than the QP on which the IETH was received.
- 6) For an HCA, the R_Key must not reference a type 1 memory window. See Section [10.6.7.2.3 Type 1 Memory Windows on page 527](#) for a description of type 1 memory windows.
- 7) For an HCA, the R_Key must not simultaneously be in the valid state and be referencing a type 2A memory window that is associated with a different QP than the QP on which the IETH was received. See Section [10.6.7.2.4 Type 2 Memory Windows on page 529](#) for a description of type 2 memory windows.
- 8) For an HCA, the R_Key must not simultaneously be in the valid state and be referencing a type 2B memory window that is associated with a different protection domain or QP than the QP on which the IETH was received. See Section [10.6.7.2.4 Type 2 Memory Windows on page 529](#) for a description of type 2 memory windows.
- 9) For an HCA, the R_Key must not simultaneously be in the free state and be referencing a type 2 memory window that is associated with a

different protection domain than the protection domain of the QP on which the IETH was received. See Section [10.6.7.2.4 Type 2 Memory Windows on page 529](#) for a description of type 2 memory windows.

Note: If the L_Key and its accompanying R_Key are in the Free State then a remote invalidate operation will not change the L_Key and its accompanying R_Key state.

The behavior governing the QP if the R_Key validation as defined above in compliance statement [o9-5.2.2: fails](#) is defined in [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#) under the entry titled “Remote Invalidate Error”.

9.4.2 RESYNC OPERATION

A RESYNC operation is supported only for the Reliable Datagram transport service. RESYNC is essentially the same as a zero-length Reliable Datagram SEND-only request but with a several unique properties:

- 1) RESYNC is used by the requester to force the responder to reset its expected PSN to a value defined by the requester,
- 2) A RESYNC request carries a data payload of zero length,
- 3) The responder is required to accept a RESYNC request, even if the currently executing request has not yet completed.
- 4) A RESYNC request does not, itself, directly consume either a send WQE on the requester side, nor a receive WQE on the responder side.

C9-15.a1: The RESYNC request shall carry a zero length Data Payload.

9.4.3 RDMA WRITE OPERATION

The RDMA WRITE Operation is used by the requesting node to write into the virtual address space of a destination node. The message may be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive) and is written to a contiguous range of the destination QP’s virtual address space (not necessarily a contiguous range of physical memory).

C9-16: For an HCA requester performing RDMA WRITE operations, the length of an RDMA WRITE message, as reflected in the RETH:DMALen field, shall be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive).

o9-6: If a TCA requester implements RDMA WRITE functionality, the length of an RDMA WRITE message, as reflected in the RETH:DMALen field, shall be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive).

Before allowing incoming RDMA WRITEs, the destination node first allocates a memory range for access by the destination’s QP (or group of

QPs). A destination's channel adapter associates a 32-bit R_Key with this memory region or window. For a HCA, the verbs layer refers to this as registering a memory region - see [10.6 Memory Management on page 501](#). TCAs use an implementation-specific mechanism to allocate and manage R_Keys that is outside the scope of the IBA specification.

The destination communicates the virtual address, length, and R_Key to any other host it wishes to have access the memory region. The communication of address and R_Key is done by the client upper level protocol - the exchange is outside the scope of the IBA. For example, an application program might embed the address, length, and R_Key into a private data structure that it in turn pushes to other application programs using the SEND Operation.

C9-17: As with SEND Operations, an HCA requester shall segment a RDMA WRITE message larger than the PMTU into multiple packets.

o9-7: If a TCA requester implements RDMA WRITE functionality, it shall segment a RDMA WRITE message larger than the PMTU into multiple packets.

If specified by the verbs layer, Immediate data is included in the last packet of an RDMA WRITE message. The Immediate data is not written to the target virtual address range, but is passed to the client after the last RDMA WRITE packet is successfully processed. E.G. on an HCA the immediate data is placed on the completion queue.

For example, Figure 78 below shows a 700 byte RDMA WRITE (on a path with a 256B PMTU).

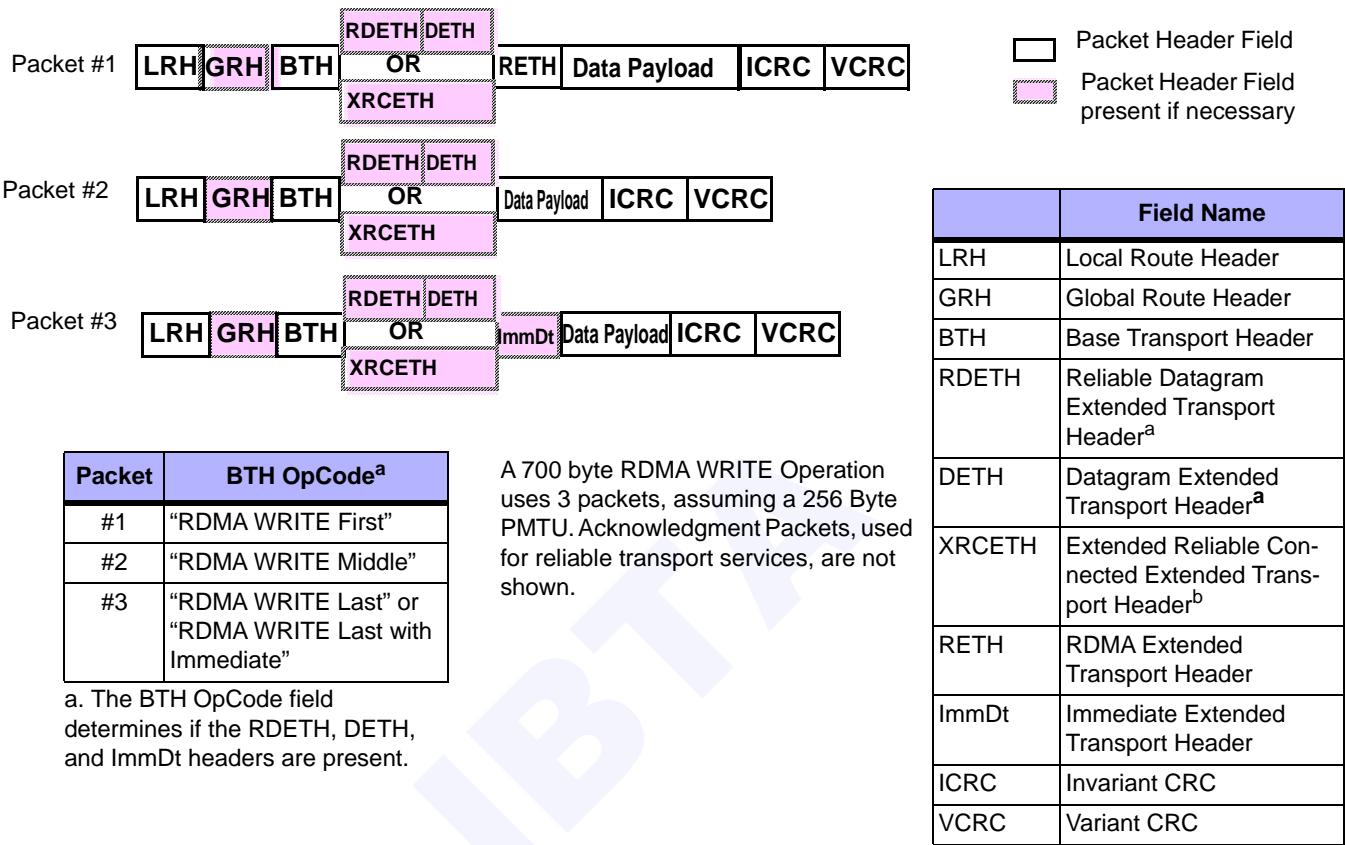


Figure 78

RDMA WRITE Operation

There are several things to note from the above figure:

- The BTH OpCode field determines the start and end of the RDMA WRITE message.
- If the RDMA WRITE request was for a length of zero, then the BTH OpCode "RDMA WRITE Only" or "RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate" is used. In this case, there is no Data Payload field, but all other fields are as shown.
- If the RDMA WRITE message is less than or equal to the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode "RDMA WRITE Only" or "RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate" is used.
- If the RDMA WRITE message is greater than the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode of the first packet is "RDMA WRITE First" and the BTH OpCode of the last packet is "RDMA WRITE Last" or "RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate".

- If the RDMA WRITE message is greater than twice the PMTU, then the packets between the first and last use the BTH OpCode “RDMA WRITE Middle”.
- Every packet in a RDMA WRITE message that doesn't have the opcode RDMA WRITE Only, RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate, RDMA WRITE Last, or RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate has a data field of PMTU length.
- The RETH header is present in the first (or only) packet of the message. It contains the virtual address of the destination buffer as well as the R_Key and message length fields.
- The Packet Sequence Number field is used by the responder to detect out-of-order or missing packets.
- If the entire message is not a multiple of the PMTU, then the initial packets of the message carry a full PMTU number of bytes and the final packet carries the remainder in a partial payload.
- For a given requesting node's QP, once a multi-packet RDMA WRITE operation is started, no other request packets may be generated until the “RDMA Last” or “RDMA Last with Immediate Data” packet is sent.

C9-18: For an HCA RDMA WRITE request, a multi-packet message shall not be interleaved with other operations on the same SEND Queue.

o9-8: If a TCA requester implements RDMA WRITE functionality, then for an RDMA WRITE request, a multi-packet message shall not be interleaved with other operations on the same SEND Queue.

- Not all RDMA WRITE messages carry Immediate data. If a RDMA WRITE does, a special header is included in the last (or only) packet of the message. The presence of the header is indicated by a special “RDMA WRITE Last with Immediate Data” or “RDMA WRITE Only with Immediate Data” OpCode in the BTH.
- For an HCA, there is no alignment requirement for the source or destination buffers of an RDMA WRITE message. For buffers within a TCA, any alignment requirement is implementation specific.

C9-19: When generating an RDMA WRITE Request, an HCA requester shall include at least the following headers and fields in each request packet: LRH, BTH, Data Payload, ICRC, VCRC. The first (or only) packet of the request shall also include the RETH.

o9-9: If a TCA requester implements RDMA WRITE functionality, it shall behave as follows. When generating an RDMA WRITE Request, a TCA requester shall include at least the following headers and fields in each request packet: LRH, BTH, Data Payload, ICRC, VCRC. The first (or only) packet of the request shall also include the RETH.

C9-20: When generating an RDMA WRITE Response, an HCA responder shall include at least the following headers and fields in each response packet: LRH, BTH, AETH, ICRC, VCRC.

o9-10: If a TCA responder implements RDMA WRITE functionality, then when generating an RDMA WRITE Response, a TCA responder shall include at least the following headers and fields in each response packet: LRH, BTH, AETH, ICRC, VCRC.

9.4.4 RDMA READ OPERATION

RDMA READ Operations are similar to RDMA WRITE Operations. They allow the requesting node to read a virtually contiguous block of memory on a remote node. As with RDMA WRITEs, the responding node first allows the requesting node permission to access its memory. The responder passes to the requestor a virtual address, length, and R_Key to use in the RDMA READ request packet.

A single RDMA READ request can read from zero to 2^{31} bytes (inclusive) of data.

C9-21: For an HCA responding to an RDMA READ request, if the requested data size is greater than the PMTU, the responder shall segment the data into PMTU size data segments for transmission as multiple RDMA READ Response packets. The data is reassembled in the requesting node's memory.

o9-11: If a TCA responder implements RDMA READ functionality, and the requested data size is greater than the PMTU, the responder shall segment the data into PMTU size data segments for transmission as multiple RDMA READ Response packets. The data is reassembled in the requesting node's memory.

C9-22: For an HCA requester using RDMA operations, the length of the requested RDMA READ data, as reflected in the RETH:DMALen field, shall be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive).

o9-12: If a TCA requester implements RDMA READ functionality, then the length of the requested RDMA READ data, as reflected in the RETH:DMALen field, shall be between zero and 2^{31} bytes (inclusive).

The following example in Figure 79 shows a 700 byte RDMA READ operation (on a path with a 256B PMTU)

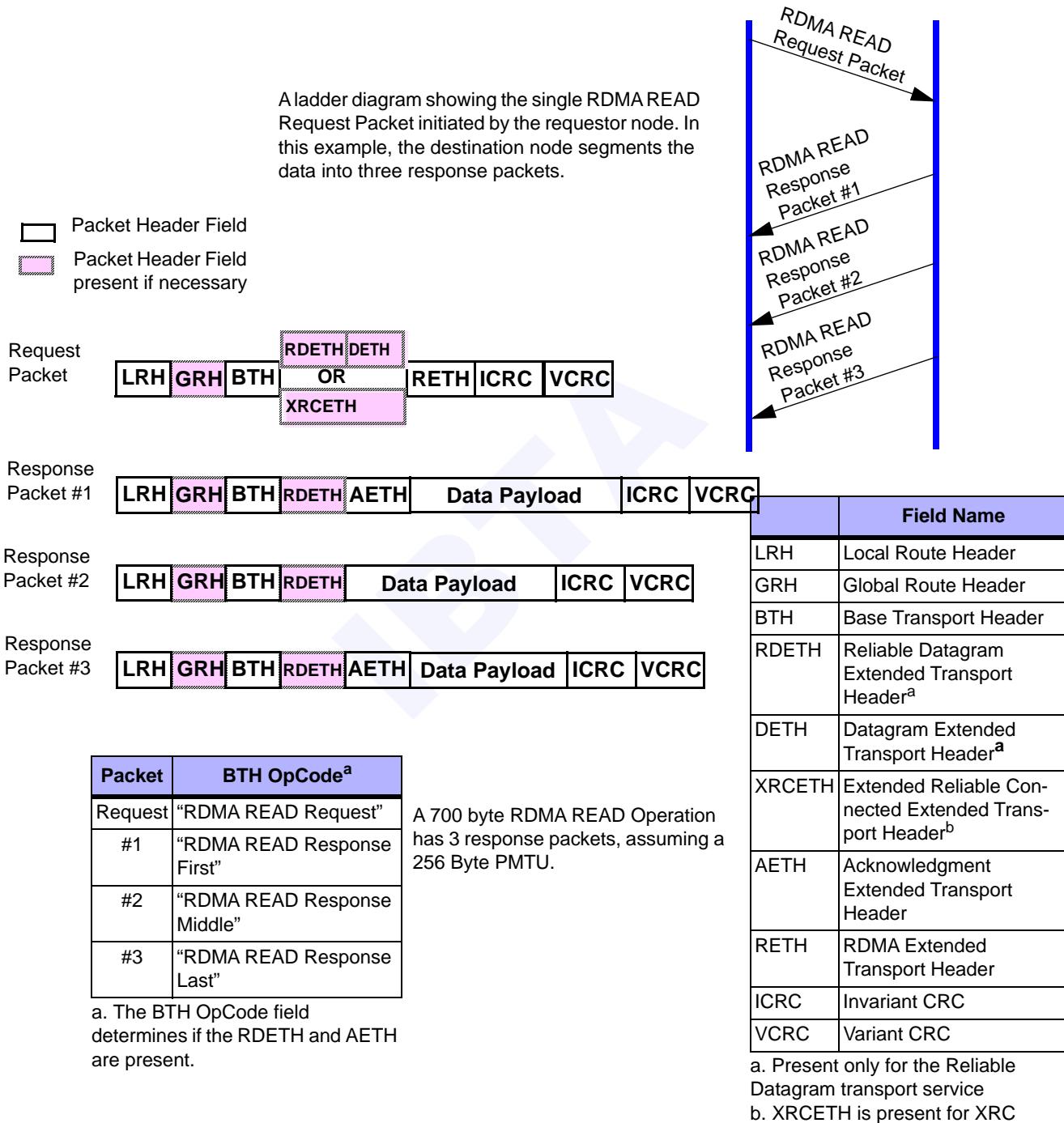


Figure 79

RDMA READ Operation

There are several things to note from the above figure:

- A single request packet will result in multiple read response packets if the read length is greater than the PMTU.
- The BTH OpCode field identifies the packet as a RDMA READ Request or Response as well as determines if any of the extended transport headers are present.
- The BTH OpCode field determines the start and end of the RDMA READ Acknowledgment message.
 - If the RDMA READ request message requested a zero byte transfer, then the BTH OpCode “RDMA READ Response Only” is used. All other fields remain as shown.
 - If the RDMA READ Acknowledgment message is less than or equal to the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode “RDMA READ Response Only” is used.
 - If the RDMA READ message is greater than the PMTU, then the BTH OpCode of the first packet is “RDMA READ Response First” and of the last packet “RDMA READ Response Last”.
 - If the RDMA READ response message is greater than twice the PMTU, then the packets between the first and last use the BTH OpCode “RDMA READ Response Middle”.
 - Every packet in a RDMA READ Response First or RDMA READ Response Middle message has a data field of PMTU length.
 - If the entire message is greater than a multiple of the PMTU, then the initial packets of the response message carry a full PMTU number of bytes and the final packet carries a partial payload.
 - The Packet Sequence Number (PSN) field is used to detect out-of-order or missing response packets.
 - After initiating a RDMA READ Request packet, the requesting node may send out additional request packets without waiting for the response packets to return. See section [9.7.3.1 Requester Side - Generating PSN on page 313](#) for an explanation of how the PSN is determined for subsequent request packets.
 - The maximum number of RDMA READ Requests for a particular QP that can be outstanding at any one time is negotiated at connection establishment time. A responder may restrict the connection to as few as one outstanding RDMA READ request per QP. If ATOMIC Operations are supported, the number of outstanding requests negotiated at connection establishment time includes both ATOMIC Operation requests and RDMA READ requests.
 - RDMA READ packets never carry Immediate data.

RDMA READ Requests are retried if the requester did not receive the proper response.

- Retried RDMA READ Requests need not start at the same address nor have the same length as the original RDMA READ. The retried request may only reread those portions that were not successfully responded to the first time.
- The responder validates the R_Key and RDMA READ virtual address for the retried request.
- The PSN of the retried RDMA READ must be in the duplicate PSN region. See Section [9.7.1 Packet Sequence Numbers \(PSN\) on page 305](#)
- The PSN of the retried RDMA READ request need not be the same as the PSN of the original RDMA READ request. Any retried request must correspond exactly to a subset of the original RDMA READ request in such a manner that all potential duplicate response packets must have identical payload data and PSNs regardless of whether it is a response to the original request or a retried request.
- For an HCA, there is no alignment requirement for the source or destination buffers of an RDMA READ message. For buffers within a TCA, any alignment requirement is implementation specific.

C9-23: When generating an RDMA READ Request, an HCA requester shall include at least the following headers and fields in its request packet: LRH, BTH, RETH, ICRC, VCRC.

o9-13: If a TCA requester implements RDMA operations, then it shall include at least the following headers and fields in its request packet: LRH, BTH, RETH, ICRC, VCRC.

C9-24: When generating an RDMA READ Response, an HCA responder shall include at least the following headers and fields in each response packet: LRH, BTH, Data Payload, ICRC, VCRC. If the response packet BTH:Opcode is “RDMA READ Response First, RDMA READ Response Last, or RDMA READ Response Only, the packet shall also include an AETH. If the response packet BTH:Opcode is “RDMA READ Response Middle, an AETH shall not be included.

o9-14: If a TCA responder implements RDMA operations, then it shall include at least the following headers and fields in each response packet: LRH, BTH, Data Payload, ICRC, VCRC. If the response packet BTH:Opcode is “RDMA READ Response First, RDMA READ Response Last, or RDMA READ Response Only, the packet shall also include an AETH. If the response packet BTH:Opcode is “RDMA READ Response Middle, an AETH shall not be included.

9.4.5 ATOMIC OPERATIONS

ATOMIC Operations execute a 64-bit operation at a specified address on a remote node. The operations atomically read, modify and write the destination address and guarantee that operations on this address by other QPs on the same CA do not occur between the read and the write. The scope of the atomicity guarantee may optionally extend to other CPUs and HCAs.

ATOMIC Operations use the same remote memory addressing mechanism as RDMA READs and Writes. The virtual address specified in the request packet is in the address space of the remote QP that the ATOMIC Operation has targeted.

ATOMIC Operations consist of two packet types, the “ATOMIC Command”, request packet and the “ATOMIC Acknowledge” response packet.

- 1) ATOMIC Operations are only supported by the Reliable Connection and Reliable Datagram transport services.
- 2) ATOMIC Operations do not support Immediate data.
- 3) ATOMIC Operations support is strongly recommended to be provided strictly in hardware.⁸
- 4) The virtual address in the ATOMIC Command Request packet shall be naturally aligned to an 8 byte boundary. The responding CA checks this and returns an Invalid Request NAK if it is not naturally aligned.

IBA defines the following ATOMIC Operations:

- **FetchAdd** (Fetch and Add)

The FetchAdd ATOMIC Operation tells the responder to read a 64-bit buffer value at a naturally aligned virtual address in the responder's memory, perform an unsigned⁹ add using the 64-bit Add Data field in the AtomicETH, and write the result (must match the memory type at the requester) back to the same virtual address. The responder's operation shall be atomic (i.e. undisturbed by other entities) per section [9.4.5.1 Atomicity Guarantees on page 286](#).

The FetchAdd operation is performed in the endian format of the target memory. The original remote data is converted from the endian format of the target memory for return. The fields are in Big-endian format on the wire.

-
8. CA implementations may use software assists - this shall be indistinguishable from a hardware-only implementation; Performance must be such that higher level software applications are not affected.
 9. If Signed numbers are used, this is the same as using twos complement arithmetic (the carry is not saved nor reported).

The requestor specifies:

- Remote data address and R_Key
- Add data

The acknowledge packet returns:

- Original remote data

After the operation, the responder's memory at the specified virtual address contains the unsigned sum of the original value and the Add field in the AtomicETH header. All operations on the requester's memory are done in the native endian format of the requester.

• **CmpSwap** (Compare and Swap)

The CmpSwap ATOMIC Operation tells the responder to read a 64-bit value at a naturally aligned virtual address in the responder's memory, compare it with the Compare Data field in the AtomicETH header, and, if they are equal, write the Swap Data field from the AtomicETH header into the same virtual address. If they are not equal, the contents of the responder's memory are not changed. In either case, the original value read from the virtual address is returned to the requester. The responder's operation shall be atomic (i.e. undisturbed by other entities) per section [9.4.5.1 Atomicity Guarantees on page 286](#).

The requestor specifies:

- Remote data address and R_Key
- Write (swap) data
- Compare data

The acknowledgment packet returns:

- Original remote data

After the operation, the remote data buffer contains the "original remote value" (if comparison did not match) or the "Write (swap) data" (if the comparison did match).

The CmpSwap operation involves three 8 byte data buffers, the compare data, the write (swap) data, and the original remote data. All three are transmitted within the request and response packets in byte big endian format. All operations on the responder's CA memory are done in the native endian format of that memory system. All operations on the requestor's memory are done in the native endian format of the requestor.

For example, consider a big endian CA initiating a CmpSwap ATOMIC Operation request packet to a little endian responder. The request packet contains two big endian data fields: the compare data and the write (swap) data. The responder converts these data fields to little endian format and does the compare and swap operation. The original

target data field is converted to big endian format and returned in the response packet.

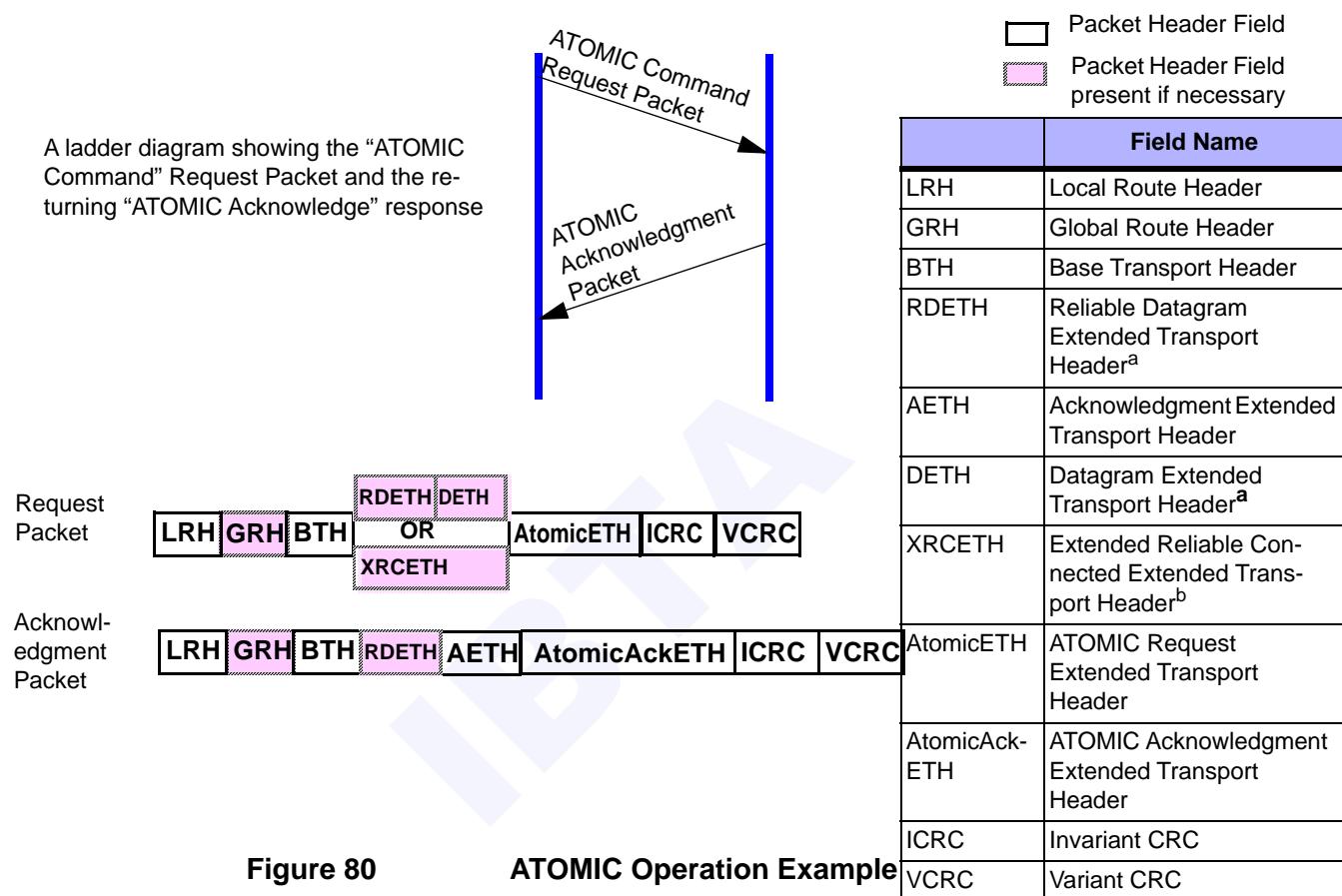


Figure 80

ATOMIC Operation Example

- a. Present in ATOMIC Operations only for the Reliable Datagram transport service
- b. XRCETH is present for XRC services only.

o9-15: When generating an ATOMIC Operation request, a requester shall include at least an LRH, a BTH, an AtomicETH, an ICRC and a VCRC. The sources of data for the LRH, BTH and AtomicETH headers shall be as shown in [Table 63 Packet Fields and Parameters by Service on page 450](#).

o9-16: When responding to an ATOMIC Operation request, a responder shall include in its response packet at least an LRH, BTH, AETH, AtomicAckETH, ICRC and a VCRC.

9.4.5.1 ATOMICITY GUARANTEES

o9-17: Atomicity of the read/modify/write on the responder's node by the ATOMIC Operation shall be assured in the presence of concurrent atomic accesses by other QPs on the same CA.

o9-18: A CA may optionally assure atomicity of ATOMIC Operations in the presence of concurrent memory accesses from other CAs, IO devices, and CPUs. For a HCA, the Verbs layer shall report whether it supports this enhanced atomicity guarantee.

9.4.5.2 ATOMIC ACKNOWLEDGMENT GENERATION AND ORDERING RULES

- 1) For the requestor, an ATOMIC Operation is considered complete when the response packet returns.
- 2) If an RDMA READ work request is posted before an ATOMIC Operation work request then the atomic may execute its remote memory operations before the previous RDMA READ has read its data. This can occur because the responder is allowed to delay execution of the RDMA READ. Strict ordering can be assured by posting the ATOMIC Operation work request with the fence modifier. See the description for the fence modifier Post Send Request. The fence modifier causes the requestor to wait till the RDMA READ completes before issuing the ATOMIC Operation.
- 3) When a sequence of requests arrives at a QP, the ATOMIC Operation only accesses memory after prior (non-RDMA READ) requests access memory and before subsequent requests access memory. Since the responder takes time to issue the response to the atomic request, and this response takes more time to reach the requestor and even more time for the requestor to create a completion queue entry, requests after the atomic may access the responders memory before the requestor writes the completion queue entry for the ATOMIC Operation request.
- 4) Each ATOMIC Operation request requires an explicit response and acknowledge message. An ATOMIC Operation response, with a properly formed AETH, is considered an acknowledge message.

9.4.5.3 ERROR BEHAVIOR

A responder utilizes vendor specific resources and facilities to implement ATOMIC Operations and RDMA READs as well as to facilitate retried ATOMIC requests. It is the responsibility of the requestor to ensure that all unacknowledged ATOMIC operations and RDMA READs combined do not overrun the receiver resources. The number of these resources is negotiated on a per QP basis at connection setup (see [9.4.4 RDMA READ Operation on page 279](#) and [9.4.5 ATOMIC Operations on page 283](#)).

The responding node saves the reply data, the PSN, and an indication that the stored data is from an ATOMIC Operation. This saved data is

used to generate the response for retried ATOMIC Operations. Note that the execution of an RDMA READ operation may consume the same resources as is used to save the ATOMIC Operation PSN and reply data. The information is stored in the destination QP's "connection context". The "connection context" is the QP context for Reliable Connection Service. For Reliable Datagram Service, the "Connection context" is actually the "EE context".

Several rules determine when the responder stores the PSN and reply data of an ATOMIC Operation:

- Only valid, new ATOMIC Operation requests (i.e. all header checks are valid, the incoming PSN matches the expected PSN, the R_Key is valid for the data being accessed, and the address is aligned to a 64b boundary) are saved.
- If the responder QP supports multiple outstanding ATOMIC Operations and RDMA READ Operations, the information on each valid request is saved in FIFO order. The FIFO depth is the same as the maximum number of outstanding ATOMIC Operations and RDMA READ requests negotiated on a per QP basis at connection setup.
- Repeated ATOMIC or RDMA READ Operations are not saved again.

The saved ATOMIC and RDMA READ state is shown in the figure below.

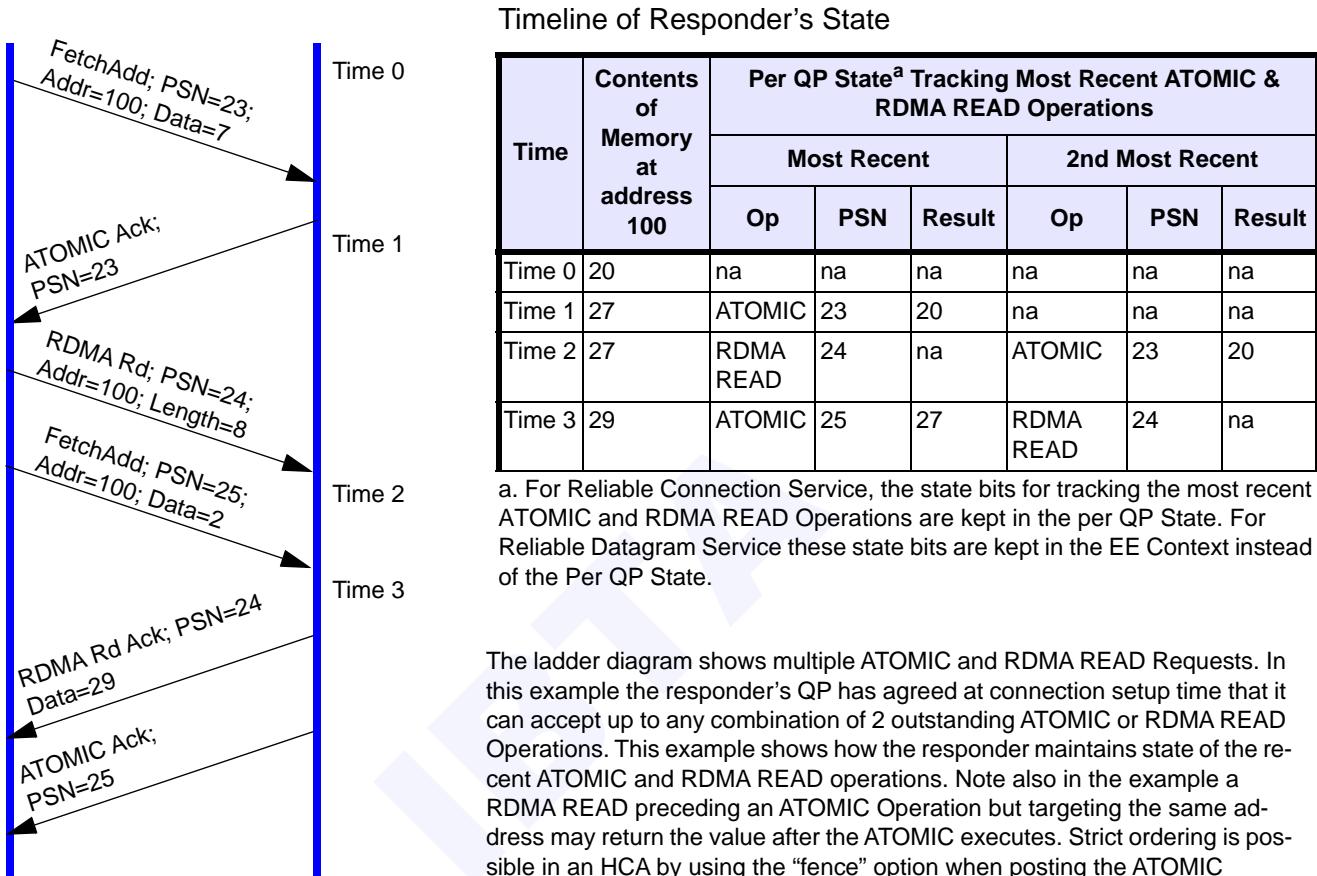


Figure 81

Responder State Maintained for ATOMIC & RDMA READ

An ATOMIC Operation is guaranteed to execute at most once. If the ATOMIC Operation does not execute on the destination, it is reported to the sender (e.g. an R_Key protection fault) with the appropriate NAK syndrome response.

However, like all operations, a non-recoverable error that occurs after execution at the responder, but before the response reaches the requester (e.g. a fatal HCA error), results in the requester not knowing the state of the responder's memory. This case must be detected and dealt with by the client or upper layer protocol.

As with all operations, errors could occur on any of the transfers. If the original "ATOMIC Command" request is lost, or the "ATOMIC Acknowledge" is lost, the sender will retry using the normal retry procedures. If the

retry fails, it is not certain whether the ATOMIC Operation took place at the destination, but the connection will be in the Error state.

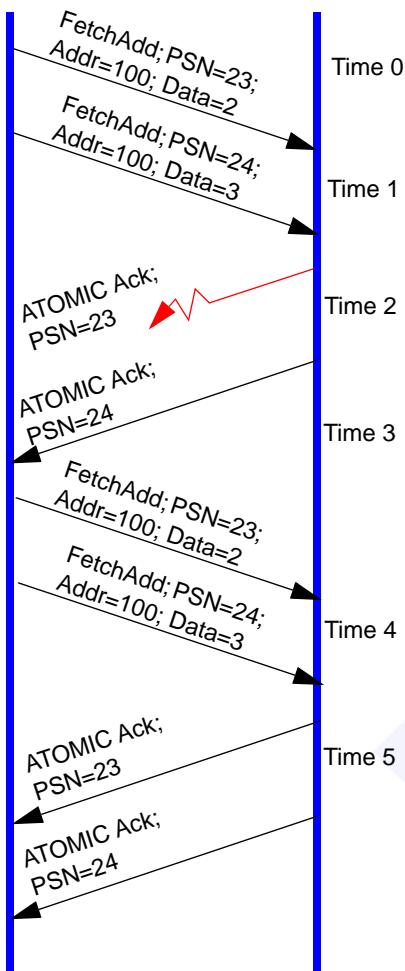
As with retries of Send and RDMA WRITE operations, if the responding CA has actually executed the request, it will only acknowledge the request again, not re-run the ATOMIC Operation. This is necessary since an ATOMIC Operation is not idempotent. The responder recognizes a retried ATOMIC Operation and returns the reply data from the original acknowledgement that was previously stored in the QP (or EE context for Reliable Datagram service) “hidden state”. The responder returns the stored result of an ATOMIC Operation if the following conditions are met:

- The request is valid (i.e. header and OpCode are valid)
- The request is for an ATOMIC Operation (the responder may check the ATOMIC Operation OpCode is the same as that of the stored operation)
- The PSN of the request is in the “duplicate region”. See a description of the PSN space in Section [9.7.1 Packet Sequence Numbers \(PSN\) on page 305](#).
- The PSN matches that of a saved ATOMIC Operation.

A retried ATOMIC Operation that does not meet the above conditions is discarded by the responder. See [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#)

When an ATOMIC Operation is retried, the responder does not validate the R_Key nor does it translate the virtual address in the retried request.

The figure below demonstrates a failed ATOMIC Operation response packet and shows the retried request and the eventual successful response.



Timeline of Responder's State

Time	Contents of Memory at address 100	Per QP State ^a Tracking Most Recent ATOMIC & RDMA READ Operations					
		Most Recent			2nd Most Recent		
		Op	PSN	Result	Op	PSN	Result
Time 0	20	na	na	na	na	na	na
Time 1	22	ATOMIC	23	20	na	na	na
Time 2	25	ATOMIC	24	22	ATOMIC	23	20
Time 3	25	ATOMIC	24	22	ATOMIC	23	20
Time 4	25	ATOMIC	24	22	ATOMIC	23	20
Time 5	25	ATOMIC	24	22	ATOMIC	23	20

a. For Reliable Connection Service, the state bits for tracking the most recent ATOMIC and RDMA READ Operations are kept in the per QP State. For Reliable Datagram Service these state bits are kept in the EE Context instead of the Per QP State.

The ladder diagram shows multiple ATOMIC and RDMA READ Requests. In this example the responder's QP has agreed at connection setup time that it can accept up to any combination of 2 outstanding ATOMIC or RDMA READ Operations. This example shows a lost ATOMIC acknowledgment (at Time 2). When the request is retried, the original result value is returned. The original value is returned even if subsequent operations from the same or a different QP have modified the target of the ATOMIC Operation.

Figure 82 Retrying ATOMIC Operations

If all retries fail, that implies that the connection is lost, and the error recovery routines in the requesting CA's driver will inform the local application.

The size of the operation is always 64-bits. The target must be naturally aligned (low 3 bits of the virtual address must be zero). An error will be reported if the R_Key range does not fully enclose the target. If this or another protection error occurs, it will be reported (NAK_Remote_Access) but will not result in taking any of the "ATOMIC Operation hidden queue" resources. That is, if the same request is repeated (same PSN) and the responding side has subsequently allocated an R_Key range, this new operation will now succeed.

9.4.6 RESERVED AND MANUFACTURER DEFINED TRANSPORT FUNCTION OP CODES

The IBA has two mechanisms for future expansion of its transport layer:

- Reserved and Manufacturer Defined BTH OpCodes

IBA Transport layer functionality can be expanded by defining new BTH OpCodes. Two blocks of undefined OpCodes are specified. One for future revisions of the IBA and one block for manufacturer specific functions.

9.5 TRANSACTION ORDERING

This section defines the rules for ordering of transmission, execution, and completion for transactions for a given QP:

C9-25: A requester shall transmit request messages in the order that the Work Queue Elements (WQEs) were posted.

C9-26: For messages that are segmented into PMTU-sized packets, the data payload shall use the same order as the data segments defined by the WQE.

Packets from a given source QP to a given destination QP travel on the same path through the fabric and are received in the same order they were injected.

C9-27: For reliable services on an HCA, all acknowledge packets shall be strongly ordered, e.g. all previous RDMA READ responses and ATOMIC responses shall be injected into the fabric before subsequent SEND, RDMA WRITE responses, RDMA READ response or ATOMIC Operation responses.

O9-19: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA responder implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, all acknowledge packets shall be strongly ordered. That is, all previous RDMA READ responses and ATOMIC responses shall be injected into the fabric before subsequent SEND, RDMA WRITE responses, RDMA READ response or ATOMIC Operation responses.

C9-28: A responder shall execute SEND requests, RDMA WRITE requests and ATOMIC Operation requests in the message order in which they are received. If the request is for an unsupported function or service, the appropriate response (for example, a NAK message, silent discard, or logging of the error) shall also be generated in the PSN order in which it was received.

- An application shall not depend upon the order of data writes to memory within a message. For example, if an application sets up data buffers that overlap, for separate data segments within a message, it is not guaranteed that the last sent data will always overwrite the earlier.

C9-29: The completion at the receiver is in the order sent (applies only to SENDs and RDMA WRITE with Immediate) and does not imply previous RDMA READs are complete unless fenced by the requester.

C9-30: A requester shall complete WQEs in the order in which they were transmitted.

C9-31: A work request with the fence attribute set shall block until all prior RDMA Read and Atomic WRs have completed.

C9-32: All WQEs shall be completed in the order they were posted independent of their execution order.

Due to the ordering rule guarantees of requests and responses for reliable services, the requester is allowed to write CQ completion events upon response receipt.

o9-20: An application shall not depend on the contents of an RDMA WRITE buffer at the responder until one of the following has occurred:

- Arrival and Completion of the last RDMA WRITE request packet when used with Immediate data.
- Arrival and completion of a subsequent SEND message.
- Update of a memory element by a subsequent ATOMIC operation.

o9-21: An application shall not depend on the contents of an RDMA READ target buffer at the requestor until the completion of the corresponding WQE.

o9-21.a1: An application shall not depend upon the contents of a SEND buffer at the responder until it has been completed.

C9-33: An application shall not depend on the contents of a receive queue buffer until the corresponding receive WQE has been completed.

9.6 PACKET TRANSPORT HEADER VALIDATION

Packet transport header validation is conducted on each packet that is passed up to the transport layer from the lower IBA layers. The purpose is to ascertain that the inbound packet can be associated with a particular queue pair. If it cannot, the packet is silently discarded. Packet transport header validation applies only to packets using the IBA transport.

C9-34: The transport layer shall validate the packet headers of all packets using the IBA transport according to the requirements in this section [\(9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292\)](#). A packet shall be deemed to be using the IBA transport if the msb of the LRH:LNH field is set to 1. If the msb of the LRH:LNH field is set to zero, then the packet is a raw packet. Raw packets are described in Section [9.8.4 Raw datagrams on page 420](#).

C9-35: For each inbound packet using the IBA transport, a CA shall validate the packet according to the state diagram shown in Figure 83¹⁰. The details of the state diagram are discussed in the remainder of this section.

If the packet can be associated with a given queue pair, further validation is conducted by comparing certain characteristics of the packet with context information stored with the queue pair (or EE Context, in the case of reliable datagram service). This level of validation is described in Section [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#) and Section [9.8 Unreliable Service on page 402](#).

Throughout this section, the phrase “packet is silently dropped” is used. The responder, unless otherwise noted, behaves as follows when a silent drop occurs:

- No acknowledge message is returned.
- No receive WQE is consumed by the responder.
- The errant request packet is not executed.
- Any request packets received prior to the errant request are executed and completed normally.
- Responder does not update its expected PSN.
- Responder resumes waiting for a valid inbound request packet.

The requester, unless otherwise noted, behaves as follows when a silent drop occurs:

- No send WQEs are completed as a result of a packet that is silently dropped.
- No direct action is taken as a result of the silently dropped packet, although error counters may be incremented or other similar events may occur.

10. The LVer field of the LRH is verified in the link layer before a packet is presented to the transport layer. The ICRC and VCRC headers are also verified in the link layer before a packet is presented to the transport layer. A packet with an invalid LVer field, invalid ICRC or invalid VCRC is dropped silently before reaching the transport layer.

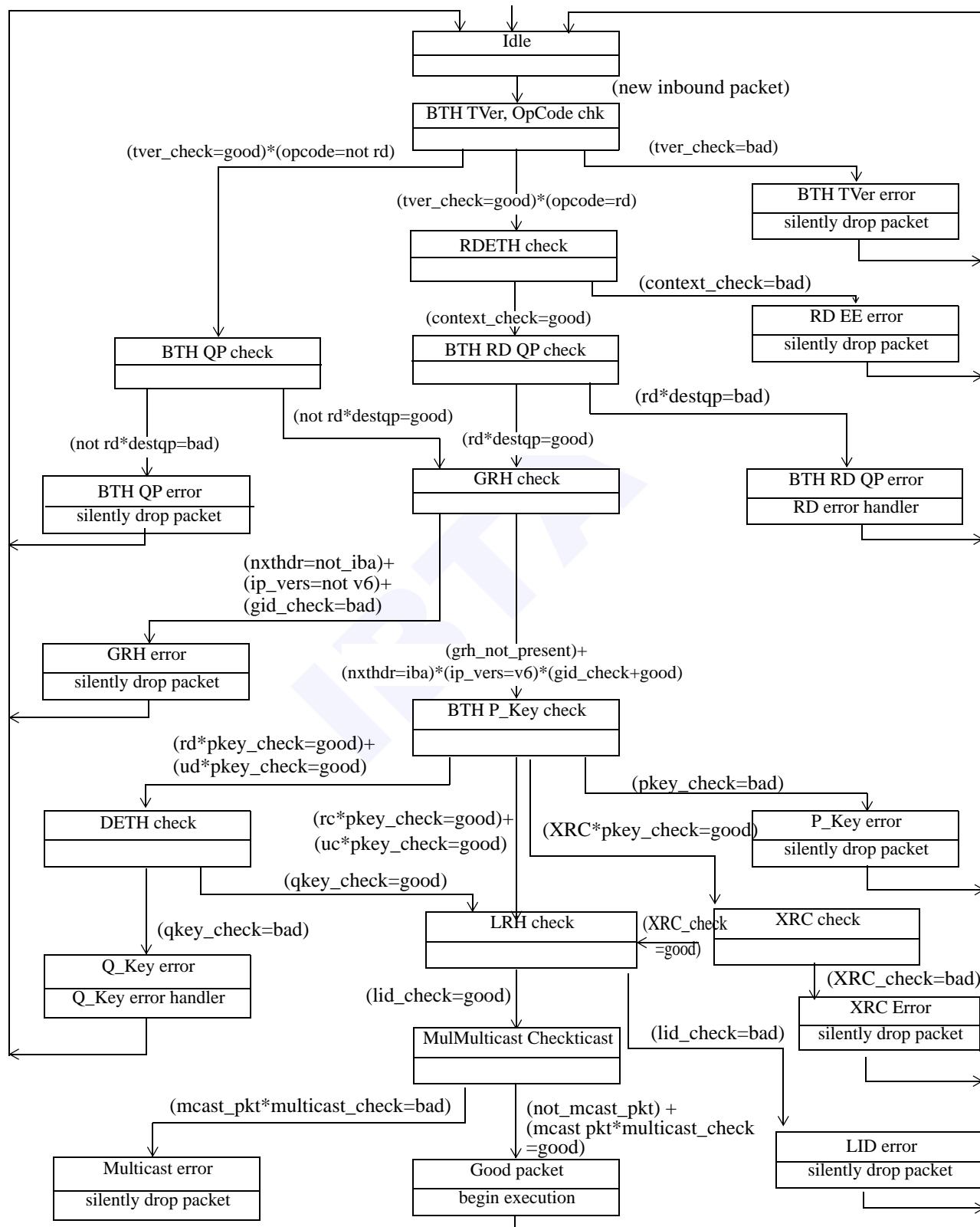


Figure 83

Packet Header Validation Process

- The silently dropped packet shall not count for purposes of satisfying the transport timer.

The queue state is not be changed. In addition, for connected transport services or reliable datagram, the connection or EE context is not torn down.

9.6.1 VALIDATING HEADER FIELDS

This section specifies the headers and fields that must be validated by a receiver of an inbound packet (either a request or response packet) before it can rely on the integrity of the packet.

9.6.1.1 BTH CHECKS

This section describes the fields of the BTH that must be validated for all incoming packets.

9.6.1.1.1 BTH:TVER VALIDATION

C9-36: The transport shall verify that the version number of the transport headers is supported by the CA or router. If the CA, switch or router does not support the indicated version, the packet shall be silently dropped. The only valid transport version is zero.

tver_check

- good: TVer field of BTH is 0x0
- bad: TVer field of BTH is non-zero

9.6.1.1.2 BTH:DESTINATION QP, OpCode CHECK

Since the OpCode contained in the BTH of the inbound packet is used to determine if the selected destination QP is valid, OpCode validation is combined with validating the destination QP and its current condition.

C9-37: The transport shall verify that the destination QP exists and that the QP state is valid for receiving the inbound packet.

o9-22: This compliance statement is obsolete and replaced by [o9-23.2.1](#):

o9-23: For CAs which support Unreliable Datagram Multicast, the destination QP value of 0xFFFFFFF shall only be valid if there is at least one locally managed QP which is configured for IBA Unreliable Datagram Multicast service.

C9-38: BTH:OpCode[7:5] shall be checked to ensure that the service requested (RC, UC, RD, UD, XRC) is consistent with the configuration of the destination QP.

The response to an inbound packet which contains either an invalid destination QP, or whose destination QP is not in a valid state for receiving

the inbound packet, is dependent on the service being requested. This is determined by examining BTH:OpCode[7:5], which indicates whether the requested service is RC, RD, UC, UD or XRC.

Furthermore, if BTH:OpCode[7:5] indicates that the packet is for RD service, then the remainder of the OpCode bits must be examined to determine if the inbound packet is a request or a response packet.

C9-39: If BTH:OpCode[7:5] indicates that the packet is for RC, UC, UD or XRC services, and the destination QP does not exist, or the destination QP is not configured to provide the requested service, or the destination QP state is invalid, then the inbound packet is silently dropped.

C9-40: This compliance statement is obsolete and replaced by [o9-23.2.1:](#)

o9-23.2.1: For a CA that implements RD service: if BTH:OpCode[7:0] indicates an RD request packet, (SEND, RDMA READ Request, etc.), and the EE Context is valid, and the destination QP does not exist, or the destination QP is not configured to provide RD service, or the destination QP state is invalid, then a NAK-invalid RD request must be returned. If BTH:OpCode[7:0] indicates an RD response packet (RDMA READ Response, Acknowledge, etc.), and the destination QP does not exist, or the destination QP is not configured to provide RD service, or the destination QP state is invalid, then the inbound packet shall be silently dropped.

Table 40 **Verification of Destination QP**

Error Condition	Description
Invalid Destination QP identifier	No such QP exists on this CA. If the QP identifier is the IBA unreliable multicast QP (0xFFFFFFF), there is no QP configured for IBA unreliable multicast service on this CA.
Incorrect Destination QP Configuration	The destination QP configuration is inconsistent with the service requested by BTH:OpCode[7:4].
Request packet: QP is not in Ready-to-Send state, Send-Queue-Drain state, Ready-to-Receive state or Send-Queue-Error state.	Receive queue is not in a proper state to accept an inbound request packet.
Acknowledge packet: QP is not in Send-Queue-Drain state, Ready-to-Send state, or Send-Queue-Error state.	Send queue is not in a proper state to accept an inbound response packet.

destqp_check

- good: destination QP specified in BTH is a valid QP, and it is in the correct state to receive the packet, and the configuration of the QP is consistent with the service being requested.

- bad: destination QP specified in BTH does not exist, or is not in the correct state to receive the packet, or is configured inconsistently with the service being requested.

9.6.1.1.3 BTH:P_KEY

C9-41: If the destination QP is QP0, the BTH:P_Key shall not be checked.

C9-42: If the destination QP is QP1, the BTH:P_Key shall be compared to the set of P_Keys associated with the port on which the packet arrived. If the P_Key matches any of the keys associated with the port, it shall be considered valid.

C9-43: For all destination QPs other than QP0 or QP1, for all transport services except Reliable Datagram, the P_Key shall be compared with the P_Key associated with the responder's receive queue. An invalid P_Key shall cause the request packet to be silently dropped.

o9-24: For Reliable Datagram, the P_Key shall be compared with the P_Key associated with the responder's EE Context. An invalid P_Key shall cause the request packet to be silently dropped.

For further details of the process for matching the P_Key, please see [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558](#).

pkey_check

- good: BTH:P_Key matches value associated with recv queue or EE Context
- bad: BTH:P_Key does not match value associated with recv queue or EE Context

9.6.1.2 GRH CHECKS

This sections describes the fields of the GRH, if present, that must be validated.

Prior to receiving an inbound packet, a QP or EEC is configured as to whether or not a GRH is expected in each packet received on this connection. The mechanism by which this configuration occurs is outside the scope of the specification. One possible implementation is that this configuration occurs at connection establishment time via the Subnet Local bit in the CM REQ message. An inbound packet is only guaranteed to pass the GRH check if the presence or absence of the GRH is consistent with the QP (or EEC) configuration. For RC, RD, UC and XRC services, if an inbound packet arrives that is not consistent with the QP (or EEC) configuration with respect to the presence or absence of the GRH, the packet should be dropped. For UD services, since it is impractical to predict the source of a packet, the presence or absence of the GRH should not be checked.

As specified in Section, [9.6.1.6.2 IBA Unreliable Multicast Checks on page 303](#), a multicast packet must include a GRH.

C9-43.1.1: For UD services, if the packet is a multicast packet as specified in Section [9.6.1.6.2 IBA Unreliable Multicast Checks on page 303](#) and a GRH is not present in the packet, the packet shall be silently dropped.

C9-43.1.2: For RC, RD, UC and XRC services, if a received packet is consistent with the configuration of the QP (or EEC) with respect to the presence or absence of a GRH, then the packet shall be considered to have passed the GRH check, subject to the remaining GRH checks described in the rest of Section [9.6.1.2 GRH Checks on page 297](#).

9.6.1.2.1 GRH:NEXT HEADER

C9-44: If there is a GRH present, the Next Header field of the GRH must be checked. The value of the Next Header field should be set to 0x1B. Any other value indicates that this packet does not use the IBA transport, and the packet shall be silently dropped.

nxthdr_check

- good: GRH:NxtHdr field indicates IBA transport
- bad: GRH:NxtHdr field indicates non-IBA transport

9.6.1.2.2 GRH:IPVERS

C9-45: If there is a GRH present, the version field of the GRH shall be checked. If the version number is anything other than 6, the packet shall be silently dropped.

ip_vers

- not_v6: invalid GRH version number
- v6: GRH version number is valid

9.6.1.2.3 GRH:SGID, GRH:DGID

Connection Management is responsible for loading the primary SGID and DGID in the transport layer. If the given CA supports automatic path migration, a set of alternate SGID and DGID are also loaded. Primary and alternate GID comparison and actions are per the rules defined in Section [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#).

If a GRH is present, the SGID and DGID shall be verified as follows:

C9-46: If the destination QP is configured for UD transport service, the SGID shall not be validated at the transport layer. The DGID shall only be validated if the packet is a valid multicast packet. See [9.6.1.6.2 IBA Unreliable Multicast Checks on page 303](#) for a definition of a valid multicast packet.

C9-47: This compliance statement is obsolete and replaced by [C9-47.1.1](#):

C9-47.1.1: If the destination QP is configured for RC, UC, RD or XRC transport services, the SGID and the DGID shall be validated at the transport layer. Packets that do not pass these validity checks must be silently dropped.

The DGID is validated as follows:

- 1) If the DGID is set to the Reserved GID, the DGID is invalid.
- 2) If the DGID is set to the Loopback GID, the DGID is invalid.
- 3) If the DGID's scope indicates a Multicast GID but there is no locally associated QP, then the DGID is invalid.

Following these checks, the DGID is compared against the following. If it matches none of these, then the DGID is invalid.

- 4) The DGID is compared against the Primary DGID.
- 5) The upper 64-bits of the DGID is compared against the default GID prefix (0xFE80::0) and the lower 64-bits of the DGID is compared with the lower 64-bits of the Primary DGID
- 6) If Automatic path migration is supported, the DGID is compared with the Alternate DGID.
- 7) If Automatic path migration is supported, the upper 64-bits of the DGID is compared against the default GID prefix (0xFE80::0) and the lower 64-bits of the DGID is compared with the lower 64-bits of the Alternate DGID

The SGID is validated as follows:

- 1) If the SGID is set to multicast, the SGID is invalid.
- 2) If the SGID is set to the Loopback GID, the SGID is invalid.

Following these checks, the SGID is compared to the following. If the SGID does not match at least one of the following, it is invalid.

- 3) The SGID is compared against the Primary SGID
- 4) The upper 64-bits of the SGID is compared against the default GID prefix (0xFE80::0) and the lower 64-bits of the SGID is compared with the lower 64-bits of the Primary SGID
- 5) If Automatic path migration is supported, the SGID is compared with the Alternate SGID
- 6) If Automatic path migration is supported, the upper 64-bits of the SGID is compared against the default GID prefix (0xFE80::0) and the

lower 64-bits of the SGID is compared with the lower 64-bits of the Alternate SGID

gid_check

- good GRH SGID and DGID compared successfully
- bad GRH SGID or DGID is invalid

9.6.1.3 XRC CHECKS

This section describes the fields of XRC, if present, that must be validated for XRC service

XRC_check:

- good XRC SRQ is in the same domain as the XRC TGT QP
- bad XRC SRQ is not in the same domain as the XRC TGT QP

o9-24.a1: If BTH:OpCode[7:5] indicates XRC transport service, the XRCETH shall be validated in accordance to "[XRC Packet Format Rules](#)" on page 401

9.6.1.4 RDETH CHECKS

The section describes the fields of the RDETH, if present, that must be validated for reliable datagram service.

9.6.1.4.1 RDETH:EE CONTEXT

C9-47.2.1: If BTH:OpCode[7:5] indicates RD transport service and the CA does not implement RD service, then the packet must be silently dropped.

o9-25: If BTH:OpCode[7:5] indicates RD transport service, the RDETH shall be validated.

o9-26: The EE Context Identifier shall be verified per the rules in [Table 41 Verification of EE Context on page 301](#). If the EE context is invalid, the packet must be silently dropped.

Table 41 Verification of EE Context

Error Condition	Description
Invalid Destination EE Context identifier	No such EE Context exists on this CA.
Request packet: EE Context is not in Ready-to-Send state, Send-Queue-Drain state or Ready-to-Receive state.	EE Context is not in a proper state to accept an inbound request packet.
Acknowledge packet: EE Context is not in Ready-to-Send state or Send-Queue-Drain state.	EE Context is not in a proper state to accept an inbound response packet.

context_check

- good: EE Context specified in RDETH is valid
- bad: EE Context specified in RDETH is invalid or CA does not support RD transport service

9.6.1.5 DETH CHECKS

This section describes the fields of the DETH, if present, that must be checked for datagram service, either reliable or unreliable.

9.6.1.5.1 DETH:Q_KEY

C9-48: If the destination QP is QP0, the DETH:Q_Key field shall not be validated.

C9-49: If the destination QP is QP1, the DETH:Q_Key field shall be considered valid if it compares successfully to the well-known Q_Key 0x80010000.

C9-50: For all packets received for a queue pair configured for datagram service, except QP0, the Q_Key shall be checked by the receiver's receive queue. If the Q_Keys do not match, the responder's behavior depends on whether the service is unreliable datagram or reliable datagram and shall be as follows:

Unreliable Datagram: the packet shall be silently dropped.

Reliable Datagram:

- A NAK-Invalid RD Request shall be returned.
- The P_Key used in the NAK may be supplied by the responder's EE Context or it may be extracted from the request packet being acknowledged.

- The PSN used in the NAK message is the PSN of the errant request packet.
- The EE Context's PSN is unchanged; it remains pointing to the failed request packet.
- The responder resumes waiting for a valid inbound request packet.

C9-51: The responder must not return an acknowledge message for a packet until the Q_Key and the P_Key for the packet have been checked by the receive queue.

qkey_check

- good: the Q_Key contained in the DETH matches that associated with the receive queue's stored Q_Key.
- bad: the Q_Key contained in the DETH does not match that associated with the receive queue's stored Q_Key.

9.6.1.6 LRH CHECKS

This section describes the fields of the LRH that must be validated for all inbound packets.

9.6.1.6.1 LRH:SLID, LRH:DLID

C9-52: The 16 bit fully resolved SLID and DLID contained in the LRH shall be validated.

C9-53: The DLID shall be validated only for reliable connected, unreliable connected or reliable datagram service (including XRC). The DLID shall not be validated for Unreliable Datagram service.

C9-54: The SLID shall be validated only for reliable connected, unreliable connected or reliable datagram service (including XRC). The SLID shall not be validated for Unreliable Datagram service or if the QP or EEC is configured to expect a GRH - see section [9.6.1.2 GRH Checks on page 297](#).

To be valid, the SLID and the DLID contained in the LRH must compare exactly to one of the following:

- 1) Permissive LID
- 2) Multicast LID (for DLID only)
- 3) Primary LID
- 4) Alternate LID

C9-55: The permissive LID shall only be accepted as valid if the destination queue pair is QP0.

C9-56: If the SLID is a multicast LID, it shall be invalid.

C9-57: In an HCA configured for Reliable Connection or Unreliable Connection service, if an invalid LID is detected, the packet shall be silently dropped. For RC and UC service, this check is performed by the send or receive queue.

o9-27: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection or Unreliable Connection service and an invalid LID is detected, the packet shall be silently dropped. For RC and UC service, this check is performed by the send or receive queue.

o9-28: If a CA implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, and if an invalid LID is detected, the packet shall be silently dropped. For RD service, this check is performed by the EE Context.

The primary SLID and DLID are stored in the QP or EE Context. If the given channel adapter supports transparent migration, an alternate SLID and DLID are also stored in the QP or EE Context as part of the alternate path. The choice of whether to compare the inbound SLID and DLID to the primary or alternate LIDs is a function of the current state of the automatic path migration state machine and the state of the MigReq bit in the BTH.

lid_check

- good: SLID and DLID contained in the LRH matches the SLID and DLID, respectively, stored in the QP or EE Context.
- bad: SLID or DLID contained in the LRH does not match the SLID and DLID, respectively, stored in the QP or EE Context.

9.6.1.6.2 IBA UNRELIABLE MULTICAST CHECKS

C9-58: A packet is declared to be an IBA unreliable multicast packet if the destination QP is 0xFFFFFFF. To be considered valid, it must have the following three characteristics: The packet must contain a GRH, the DGID must be a valid multicast GID, and there must be at least one locally managed queue pair configured for multicast operation. If any of these conditions is not true, the packet is not a valid multicast packet and shall be dropped silently.

C9-59: The DGID shall be used to map the inbound packet to a particular locally managed QP.

multicast_check

- good: a multicast packet meets all the criteria cited above to be a valid multicast packet.

- bad: a multicast packet does not meet all the criteria cited above to be a valid multicast packet.

9.7 RELIABLE SERVICE

Reliable Service provides a guarantee that messages are delivered from a requester to a responder at most once, in order and without corruption. Key elements of the reliable service include a protection scheme to enable detection of corrupted data (CRC), an acknowledgment mechanism allowing the requester to ascertain that the message had been successfully delivered, a packet numbering mechanism to detect missing packets and to allow the requester to correlate responses with requests, and a timer to allow detection of dropped or missing acknowledgment messages.

This section addresses the acknowledgment and packet sequence numbering mechanisms. The CRC mechanism for detecting packet corruption is not addressed here. Note that CRCs are checked at lower protocol layers and may result in packets being dropped before they are delivered to the transport layer. These dropped packets may eventually be detected at the transport layer as sequence errors.

- Characteristics of reliable service
 - Messages delivered at most once, in order and without corruption in the absence of unrecoverable errors.
 - Each message is acknowledged either explicitly or implicitly.
- Types of reliable service
 - Reliable Connection
 - Reliable datagram
 - Extended Reliable Connection
- Reliability mechanisms
 - ACK / NAK protocol
 - Packet Sequence Numbers (PSN)
- Responder considers operation complete when it has:
 - Received a valid “Last” or “Only” OpCode in the BTH,
 - Received all packets comprising the message in proper PSN order,
 - Payload has been committed to the local fault zone (SENDS or RDMA WRITEs),
 - Response has been committed to the wire for RDMA READs or ATOMIC Operations,

- Acknowledge packet for the last packet of the request has been committed to the wire (including the appropriate fields for RDMA READ response)
- Requester considers the operation complete when:
 - All packets of the response (for RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation) have been received and committed to local memory,
 - Acknowledge message has been received and validated.

C9-60: Before it can consider a WQE completed, the requester must wait for the necessary response(s) to arrive. If the requester requires an explicit response such that it can complete a given WQE, then the requester shall be responsible to take the necessary steps to ensure that the needed response is forthcoming.

There are several mechanisms available to accomplish this, such as:

- 1) Set the AckReq bit on the last packet of every message, thus guaranteeing that the responder will generate the needed explicit response,
- 2) Set the AckReq bit on the last packet of the message for which an explicit response is desired,
- 3) If the AckReq bit was not set for the request for which an explicit response was desired, the requester can retry the request (with AckReq set) thus requiring the responder to return a response,
- 4) If the AckReq bit was not set for the request for which an explicit response was desired, the requester can send a NOP command (e.g. RDMA WRITE request with a length of zero) and set the AckReq bit. This strategy only works if the responder supports RDMA WRITES.

The choice of which of these, or other, strategies to use is implementation dependent.

9.7.1 PACKET SEQUENCE NUMBERS (PSN)

PSNs are transmitted within the Base Transport Header (BTH) for all packets. They are used to detect missing or out-of-order packets, and, for reliable services, to relate a response packet to a given request packet. Each IBA QP consists of a send queue and a receive queue; likewise, an EE Context has a send side and a receive side. There is a relationship between the PSN on a requester's send queue and the PSN on the responder's corresponding receive queue. Thus, each half of a QP (or EE Context) maintains an independent PSN; there is no relationship between the PSNs used on the Send queue and Receive queue of a given queue pair, or between different connection. This is illustrated in the figure below.

There are two abnormal conditions that must be detected and resolved at the responder to ensure reliable operation. The two conditions are duplicate packets and invalid packets.

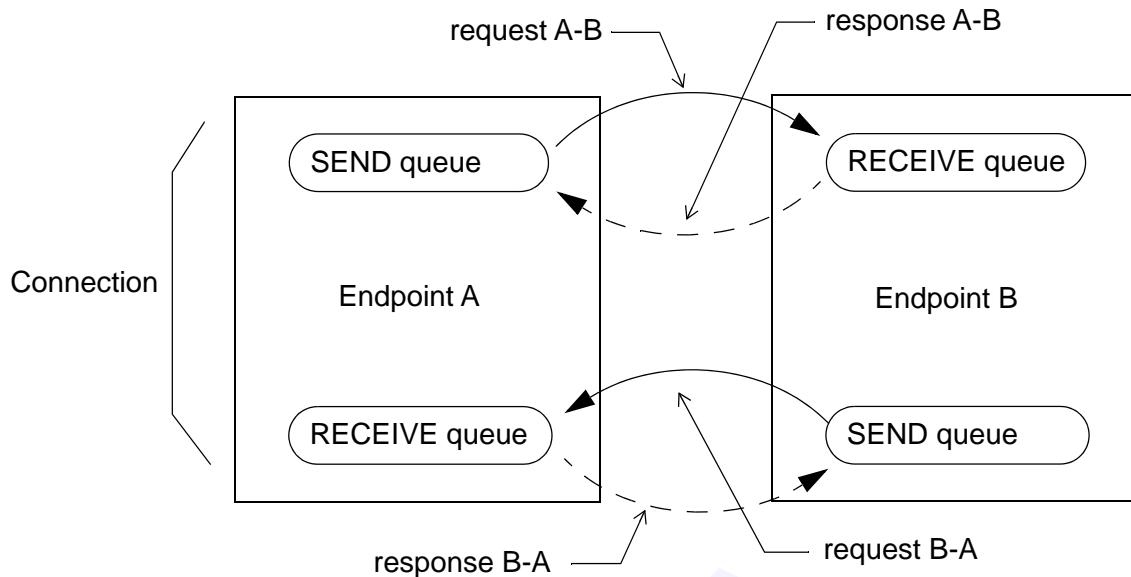


Figure 84

Send-Receive Queues Related by PSN

- 1) Duplicate Packet. A duplicate packet may be recognized by the responder if the requester injects a request packet into the fabric more than once. This occurs when the requester detects a condition for which the prescribed recovery mechanism is to retry the operation.

There are two primary causes of a timeout condition that may cause the requester to inject a given request packet into the fabric more than once:

- A response is late in arriving at the requester either because a response packet is lost or delayed in the fabric as shown in Figure 85 below, or because the responder experienced a delay in generating a response, or
- A request packet may be lost or delayed in reaching the responder as shown in Figure 87.

Regardless of the cause, the responder must be able to determine if an inbound request is a duplicate request that had been previously executed (or not) and respond appropriately.

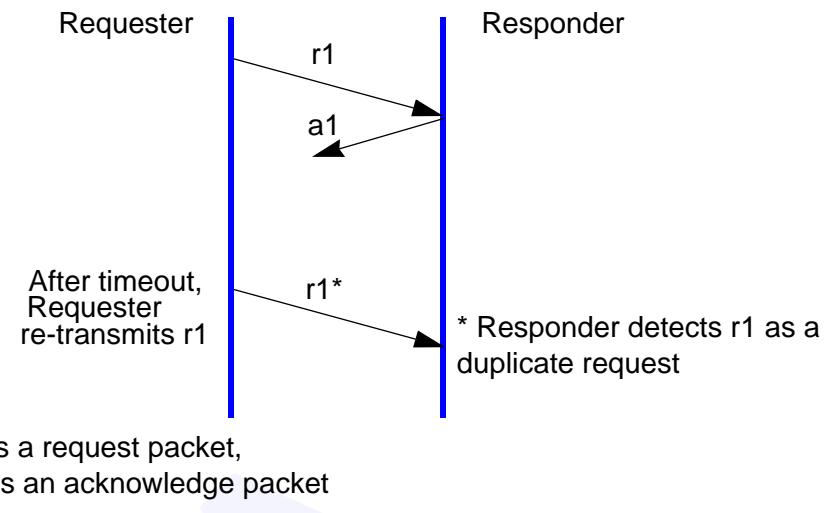


Figure 85 Duplicate Request

In the previous figure, the response has been lost or delayed in the fabric causing the requester to detect a timeout condition and re-transmit the request. The responder interprets the second arrival of the request packet as a duplicate request.

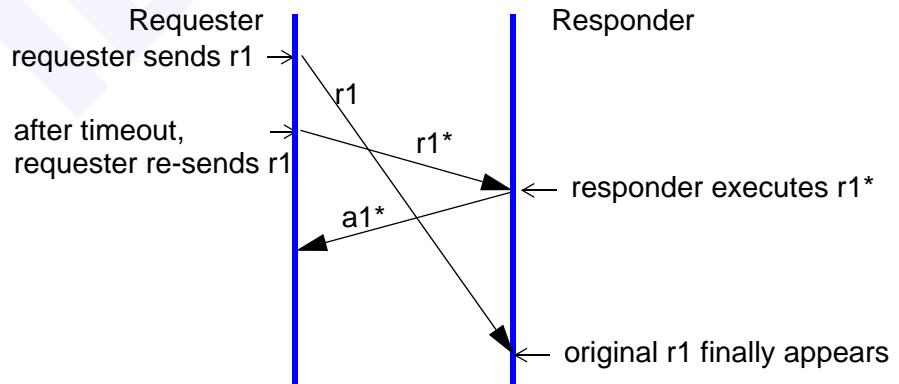


Figure 86 Ghost Request

A duplicate packet may also be detected by the responder due to a "ghost" request packet. This occurs when a request packet is delayed in the fabric long enough to cause a timeout to occur at the requester. The requester re-sends the original request packet to which the responder generates the proper acknowledge message. Sometime later, the original (delayed) packet arrives at the responder which in-

- interprets the late arriving packet as a duplicate request. This may occur, for example, during automatic path migration.
- 2) Invalid Request Packet Sequence. This condition occurs when the responder believes that one or more request packets have been lost in the fabric. This is illustrated in the following figure.

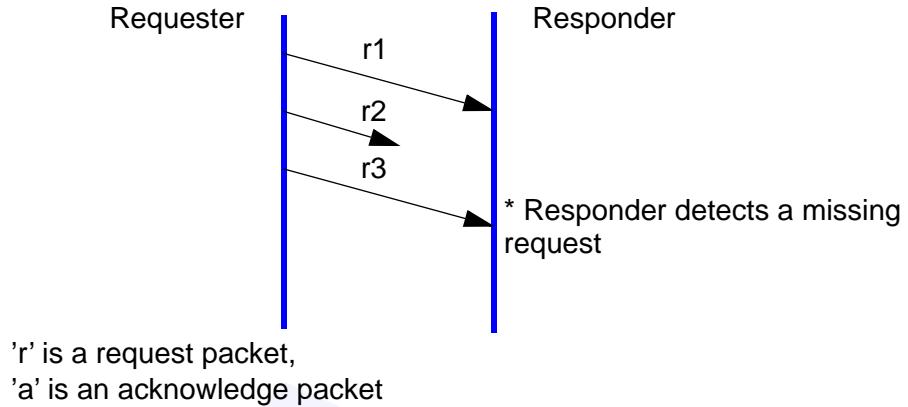


Figure 87 Lost Request

The distinction between an invalid packet and a duplicate packet is important since the requester's actions and the responder's actions are different for the two cases.

These two conditions must be detected both by the responder (for request packets), or by the requester (for response packets on reliable services).

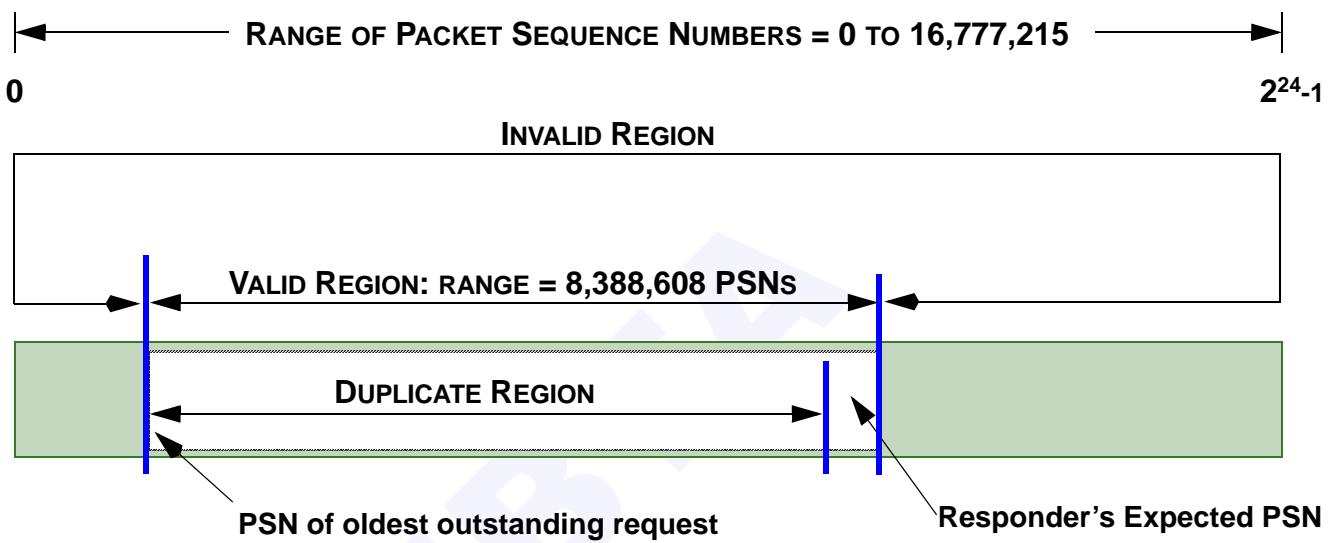
In addition to duplicate packets and invalid packets, there is a third condition, called a Stale Packet ("TIME WAIT packet"). If a connection to a responder is torn down and a new connection is established while packets are in flight, a packet from the old (stale) connection may arrive at the responder. The responder, in turn, may interpret this stale incoming packet as a valid packet, when in fact it is a remnant of a previous connection. There are no transport layer mechanisms to guard against this condition; it is the responsibility of connection management to avoid re-using QPs until there is no possibility that a stale packet could arrive at the responder. This is done by placing the requester and responder QPs in a "Time Wait" state long enough to ensure that any stale packets left in the fabric have expired before re-using those QPs.

Duplicate packets are distinguished from invalid packets by the 24-bit PSN field which is carried in the base transport header, and allows room for uniquely naming up to 16,777,216 packets.

C9-61: In order to make it possible for the responder to distinguish duplicate packets from out of order packets, a given send queue shall have a series of PSNs no greater than 8,388,608 outstanding at any given time. Therefore, a send queue shall have no more than 8,388,608 packets out-

standing at any given time. This includes the sum of all SEND request packets plus all RDMA WRITE request packets plus all ATOMIC Operation request packets plus all expected RDMA READ response packets.

Thus, the PSN space (consisting of a range of 16,777,216 PSNs) is divided into two regions, each occupying a range of 8,388,608 PSNs, called the valid region and the invalid region. This is illustrated in Figure 88.



A SEND QUEUE OR EE CONTEXT MAY HAVE NO MORE THAN
8,388,608 PACKETS OUTSTANDING AT ANY TIME.

Figure 88

Valid and Invalid PSN Regions

The responder further subdivides the valid region into an Expected PSN and a Duplicate region. The responder's expected PSN (ePSN) is defined in Section [9.7.4.1.2 Responder - PSN Verification on page 322](#), and is simply described as the PSN that the responder expects to find in the next new request packet to be received. The duplicate region is therefore defined to be the entire valid region, except for the single expected PSN. Simply put, a duplicate PSN is a PSN which the responder has seen and executed previously and which falls within the valid region.

9.7.1.1 PSN MODEL FOR RELIABLE SERVICE

C9-62: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the requester shall insert a PSN in each packet of each request it generates. When responding to the request, the responder shall insert a PSN in each packet of each response it generates.

o9-29: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, the requester shall insert a PSN in each packet of each request it generates. When responding to the request, the responder shall insert a PSN in each packet of each response it generates.

Except for the special case of RDMA READ responses, there is a 1:1 relationship between the PSN in a request packet and the PSN in the corresponding response packet.

In the general PSN model, the requester calculates the PSN of the next request packet to be generated. This calculated PSN is called the Next PSN. At the time that the requester generates a new request packet, the "Next PSN" is copied into the BTH and thus becomes the current PSN. The requester then calculates a new "Next PSN".

In order to detect missing or out of order packets, the responder also calculates the PSN it expects to find in the next inbound request packet. This is called the Expected PSN.

Conversely, when generating responses, the responder calculates the Response PSN to relate the response to a given request. However, due to acknowledge coalescing as described in [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#), the requester cannot necessarily predict which one of a range of PSNs may appear in the next response packet. Therefore, the requester must be prepared to accept any one of a range of Response PSNs. The range is bounded by the PSN of the oldest unacknowledged request packet and the expected response PSN of the most recently sent request packet. The requester evaluates the PSN of an inbound response packet to ensure that it falls between these two extremes. This general model is illustrated below.

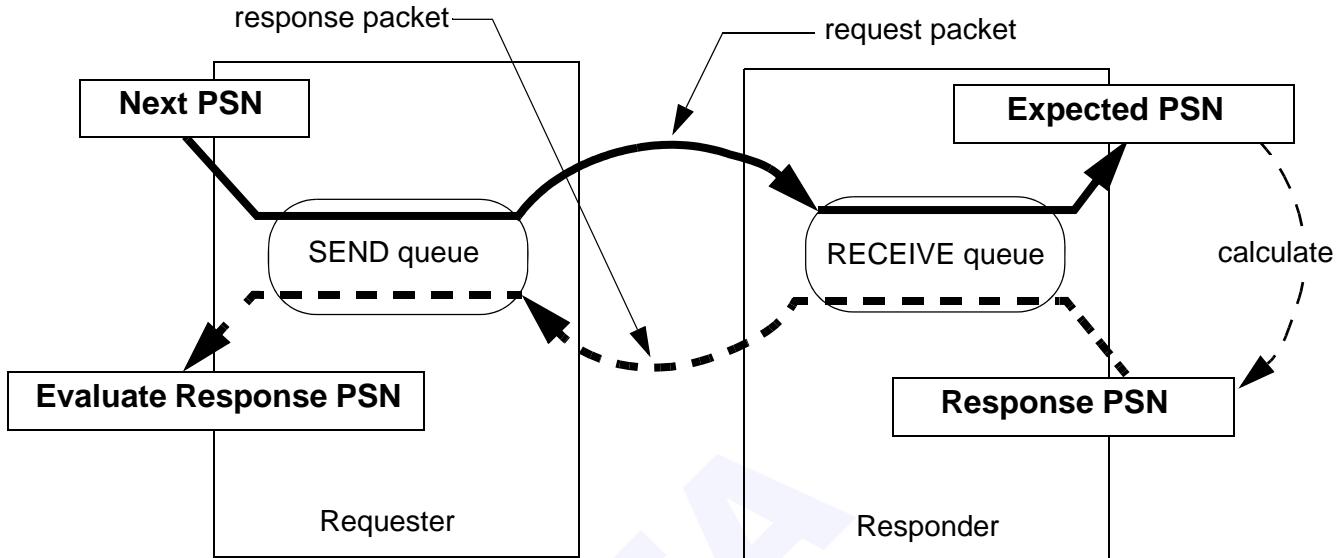


Figure 89 Request/Response PSNs

In the following sections only rarely is it not obvious from the context to which of the four PSNs the text is referring. Thus, it is common practice to refer to “PSN”, or “expected PSN” or some other variant. In the cases where the context is not clear, the above expressions are used for clarity.

9.7.2 ACK/NAK PROTOCOL

The ACK/NAK protocol, along with packet sequence numbers, is a fundamental component of reliable service, and applies to both reliable connected service, XRC service and reliable datagram service. This and the following sections describe the protocol, provide a set of rules governing generation of ACK and NAK responses, specify the ACK and NAK codes and specify the requester’s required responses when it receives either an ACK or a NAK response.

The purpose of the ACK/NAK protocol is to allow the requester to ascertain deterministically if the responder correctly received the request packet. There are also mechanisms provided to ensure that a complete message was received correctly. This is accomplished through a combination of the packet sequence number and packet OpCodes (first/middle/last/only packet indications).

Since a response packet(s) can get lost in the fabric, the ACK/NAK protocol requires a requester to implement a timer to detect lost response packets. The transport timer is also described in this section.

The word “acknowledge” is used consistently throughout this section to mean either a negative (NAK) or a positive (ACK) acknowledgment. The generic term “response” is used to describe the acknowledgment returned by the responder to the requester. A response is carried in one or more acknowledge packets and may comprise, depending on the original request message, an ACK packet, a NAK packet, a RDMA READ response or an ATOMIC Operation response.

The following is a summary of the rules governing the ACK/NAK protocol:

- Each request packet received on a reliable service shall be acknowledged.
- Each RDMA READ request requires an explicit response. A RDMA READ response, with a properly formed ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) is considered a valid response. The ACK Extended Transport Header appears in the first packet and last packet (or only packet) of a RDMA READ response. The details are covered below in Section [9.7.5.1.9 RDMA READ Responses on page 346](#)
- Each ATOMIC Request requires an explicit response. An acknowledge packet, with a properly formed ACK Extended Transport Header (AETH) and an ATOMIC ACK Extended Transport Header (AtomicAckETH) is considered to be a valid response.
- Acknowledges may be coalesced; that is, a single acknowledge packet can serve as acknowledgment for one or more previous request packets.
- Acknowledge packets shall be returned in the PSN order in which the original request packet was received, including RDMA READ responses.
- A RDMA READ response consists of one or more packets; all other responses consist of exactly one packet.

C9-63: For an HCA responder using Reliable Connection service, the responder shall behave as follows. A responder shall acknowledge each request packet received. A responder shall generate an explicit response for each RDMA READ request received. A responder shall generate an explicit response for each ATOMIC Request received. A responder shall generate response packets in the PSN order in which the original request packets were received, including RDMA READ responses.

o9-30: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA responder implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, the responder shall behave as follows. A responder shall acknowledge each re-

quest packet received. A responder shall generate an explicit response for each RDMA READ request received. A responder shall generate an explicit response for each ATOMIC Request received. A responder shall generate response packets in the PSN order in which the original request packets were received, including RDMA READ responses.

9.7.3 REQUESTER: GENERATING REQUEST PACKETS

This section specifies the requirements placed on a requester as it generates request packets.

9.7.3.1 REQUESTER SIDE - GENERATING PSN

C9-64: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA, the requester must place a value, called the current PSN, in the BTH:PSN field of every request packet.

o9-31: If Reliable Datagram or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, then the requester must place a value, called the current PSN, in the BTH:PSN field of every request packet.

During connection establishment, the transport layer's client programs the next PSN to any value between zero and 16,777,215. For proper operation, the initial expected PSN value on the responder side must be loaded with the same value.

C9-65: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA, the initial PSN, as programmed by the transport layer's client, is the PSN that shall appear in the first request packet generated by the requester.

o9-32: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in CA, or if Reliable Connection Service is implemented in a TCA, then the initial PSN, as programmed by the transport layer's client, is the PSN that shall appear in the first request packet generated by the requester.

Thereafter, the requester calculates the next PSN. The calculation depends on the operation being performed (SEND, RDMA READ, etc.) and the size of the data payload.

With one exception, the requester shall increment the current PSN value by one for each request packet it generates. The single exception is for any request packet immediately following a RDMA READ request message. In this case, the request packet immediately following the RDMA READ request message shall have a PSN that is one greater than the PSN of the last expected RDMA READ response packet. In this way, the requester leaves a "hole" in the PSN sequence of the request packets, such that all response packets will have monotonically increasing PSNs.

Thus, for RDMA READ Requests:

Let curr_PSN = PSN of a RDMA READ Request

Let next_PSN = PSN of the request following a RDMA READ Request

Let n = the number of expected RDMA READ response packets

Then next_PSN = (curr_PSN + n) modulo 2^{24}

Table 42 Requester's Calculation of Next PSN

Current Request Packet	PSN for Next Request Packet
SEND, RDMA WRITE, ATOMIC Operation	current PSN + 1 (modulo 2^{24})
RDMA READ	current PSN + (number of expected RDMA READ response packets) (modulo 2^{24})

Since the requester knows both the total length of the requested RDMA READ data and the PMTU between the requester and the responder, and since there is a requirement that each response packet (except a last or only packet) be filled to the full PMTU size, the requester can calculate the total number of expected response packets and thus calculate the PSN of the request immediately following the RDMA READ request.

C9-66: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the requester shall behave as follows. For each request packet other than the packet immediately following an RDMA READ request message, the requester shall increment the next PSN value by one modulo 2^{24} . For any request packet immediately following a RDMA READ request message, the packet shall have a PSN that is one greater (modulo 2^{24}) than the PSN of the last expected RDMA READ response packet.

o9-33: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, the requester shall behave as follows. For each request packet other than the packet immediately following an RDMA READ request message, the requester shall increment the next PSN value by one modulo 2^{24} . For any request packet immediately following a RDMA READ request message, the packet shall have a PSN that is one greater (modulo 2^{24}) than the PSN of the last expected RDMA READ response packet.

9.7.3.2 REQUESTER - SPECIAL RULES FOR RELIABLE DATAGRAM

9.7.3.2.1 RDD CHECKING

For reliable datagram service, any given send queue is associated with an EE Context by a Reliable Datagram Domain (RDD). Each send queue and EE Context has a single RDD associated with it. Before sending a request, the EE context must check the RDD of the currently active send queue. If the send queue's RDD does not match the EE Context's RDD, the current message transfer is terminated and a timeout condition is indicated to the send queue.

o9-34: For each request, the requester must confirm that the RDD of the currently active send queue matches the RDD of the selected EE context.

o9-35: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

Error behavior for RDD mismatch is defined in [Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 428](#)

9.7.3.2.2 RESYNC GENERATION

Under some conditions, a requester's EE Context is required to generate a special form of a request packet called a RESYNC request. This occurs when the requester EE Context elects to discontinue (abort) the current request message. The process of aborting the current request message and generating the subsequent RESYNC request is described in [9.7.8 Reliable Datagram on page 382](#) in the subsection dealing with handling QP errors.

The RESYNC request has the special property that it forces the responder to re-initialize its expected PSN to a value defined by the requester side EE Context.

The following paragraph governs the PSN that the requester is required to use when aborting the current message and generating the RESYNC request. It also governs the PSN it should expect in an acknowledgement received in response to the RESYNC request. These PSNs are identified in [Figure 89 Request/Response PSNs on page 311](#) as the Next PSN and the Response PSN.

o9-35.a1: For a CA which supports Reliable Datagram service, when aborting the current request message and generating a RESYNC request, the requester side EE Context shall set the PSN of the RESYNC request to an increment of one greater (Modulo 2^{24}) than the largest PSN (Modulo 2^{24}) used in transmitting the current request. In addition, the requester shall reset the PSN it expects in a response to the same value. "The largest PSN used in transmitting the current request" means;

- 1) The (logically) largest PSN (Modulo 2^{24}) assigned to any packet of
the request message including any retries of the request message, or
- 2) the PSN of the last expected RDMA READ response, if the request
was an RDMA READ request.

For example, if the current request being transmitted consists of three
packets with PSNs numbered 4, 5 and 6, then the PSN of the RESYNC
request would be set to 7.

Or, consider the case where the requester is sending a large request mes-
sage consisting of many packets. Even if the responder returns a NAK
early in the transfer but the requester has sent subsequent packets, the
PSN of the RESYNC request must be one greater (Modulo 2^{24}) than the
PSN of any request packet sent, regardless of when the NAK packet was
generated or its PSN.

In another example, if the current request being transmitted is an RDMA
READ request with a PSN of 24, and to which the requester expects to
receive 5 response packets, then the PSN of the RESYNC request would
be set to 29, which is one greater than the PSN of the last expected RDMA
READ response packet.

If a requester performs one or more retries, due to timeouts or other rea-
sons, the PSN of the RESYNC request must be one greater (Modulo 2^{24})
than the PSN of any request packet sent, or response packet expected,
for all of the previous attempts.

o9-35.a2: For a CA which supports Reliable Datagram service, the re-
quester shall insert in the RESYNC request source and destination QPns
which are identical to the source and destination QPs from the current re-
quest (which is being aborted).

9.7.3.3 REQUESTER - GENERATING OPCODES

The opcodes generated by a requester must fit into a schedule of opcodes
as shown below.

C9-67: A requester must generate packet opcodes which fit within the schedule of valid OpCode sequences as shown in [Table 43 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 317](#).

Table 43 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences

Previous Packet OpCode	Valid OpCodes for Current Packet
None e.g., first packet following connection establishment	"First" packet "Only" packet
"First" packet	"Middle" packet (message is 3 or more packets) "Last" packet (message is exactly 2 packets) Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
"Middle" packet	"Middle" packet "Last" packet Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
"Last" packet	"First" packet (1st packet of a new message) "Only" packet (1st packet of a new single packet msg)
"Only" packet	"First" packet "Only" packet

C9-68: When generating a request packet, the BTH:Opcode shall be as specified in [Table 38 OpCode field on page 257](#).

9.7.3.4 REQUESTER - GENERATING PAYLOADS

The requester shall generate payload lengths as a function of the opcode as follows:

C9-69: If the OpCode specifies a "first" or "middle" packet, then the packet payload length must be a full PMTU size.

C9-70: If the OpCode specifies a "only" packet, then the packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes in size. Thus, the only way to create a zero byte length transfer is by use of a single packet message.

C9-71: If the OpCode specifies a "last" packet, then the packet payload length must be between one and PMTU bytes in size.

C9-72: For an HCA, if the OpCode specifies an RDMA WRITE request, the length specified in the DMALen field of the RETH shall be no less than zero, and no greater than 2^{31} bytes.

o9-36: If RDMA WRITE is implemented in a TCA and the OpCode specifies an RDMA WRITE request, the length specified in the DMALen field of the RETH shall be no less than zero, and no greater than 2^{31} bytes.

9.7.4 RESPONDER: RECEIVING INBOUND REQUEST PACKETS

This section describes the process used by a responder when it receives an inbound request packet.

9.7.4.1 RESPONDER - INBOUND PACKET VALIDATION

C9-73: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA, inbound request packets shall be validated as shown in [Figure 90 on page 319](#).

o9-36.a1: If Reliable Connection service or XRC is implemented in a TCA, inbound request packets shall be validated as shown in [Figure 90 on page 319](#).

o9-37: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, inbound request packets shall be validated as shown in [Figure 91 on page 320](#).

The following sections describe each of the validation checks and the responder's behavior / response.

9.7.4.1.1 RESPONDER - SPECIAL RULES FOR RELIABLE DATAGRAM CHECKING

o9-38: For RD within a HCA, when an inbound packet arrives, the receive queue must test its own RDD value against that of the EE Context over which the inbound packet arrived. If they do not match, the receive queue must drop the packet and schedule a NAK-Invalid RD Request. The P_Key and PSN to be used for returning the NAK shall be supplied by the EE Context.

For reliable datagram service, the PSN is checked by the responder's EE Context.

To a large extent, the responder's behavior in responding to a request is based on an interpretation of the incoming PSN.

Logically, a receive queue or EE Context maintains an expected PSN (ePSN). This is the PSN that the responder expects to find in the BTH of the next new request packet it receives. The rules that the responder uses to calculate its next expected PSN are the same as those used by the requester when it calculates the PSN value to insert in its next request packet.

Note: See [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#) for a description of the responder side behavior for each of the error conditions referenced in [Figure 90 Inbound Request Packet Validation, RC mode on page 319](#) and in [Figure 91 Inbound Request Packet Validation, RD mode on page 320](#),

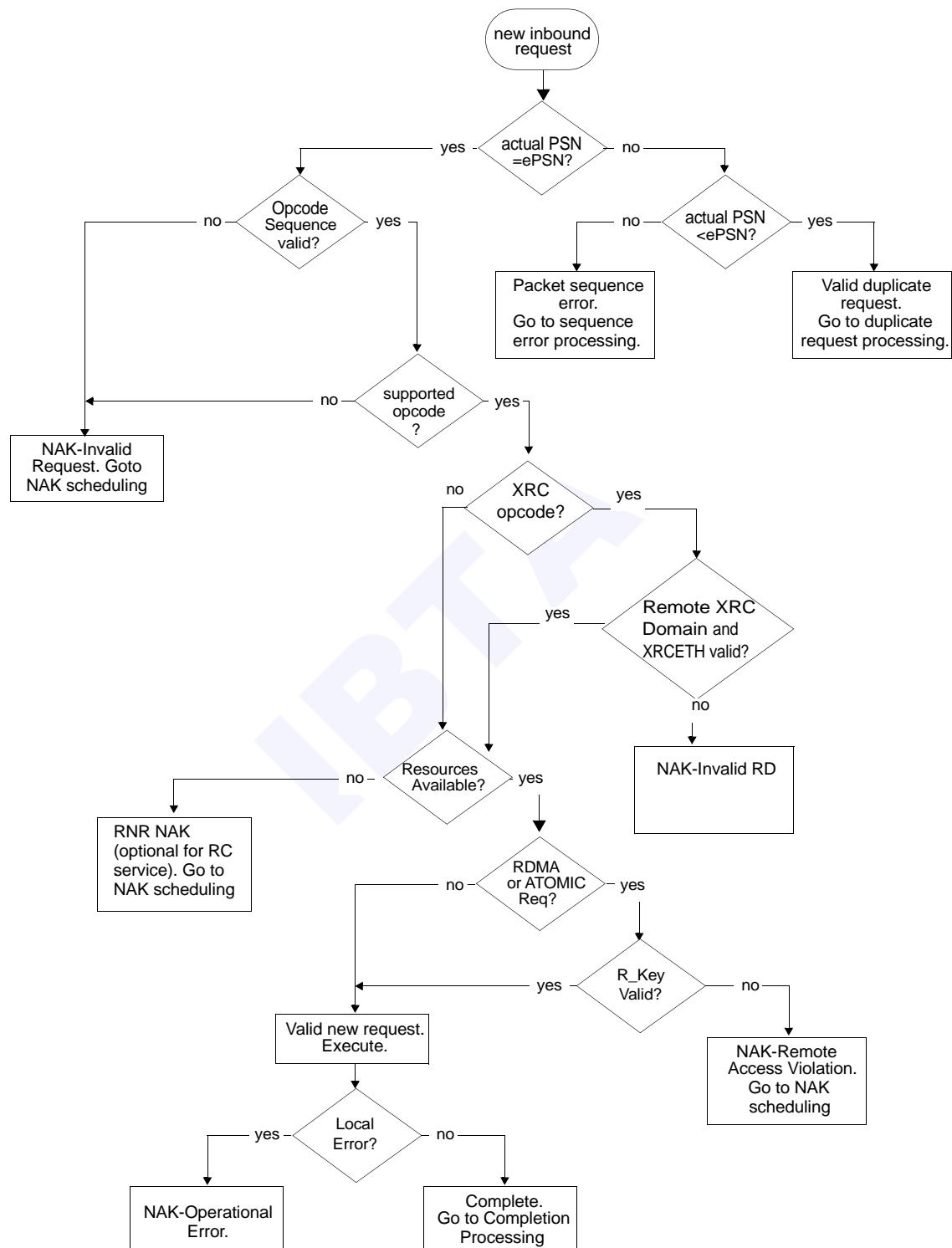


Figure 90

Inbound Request Packet Validation, RC

OM10528

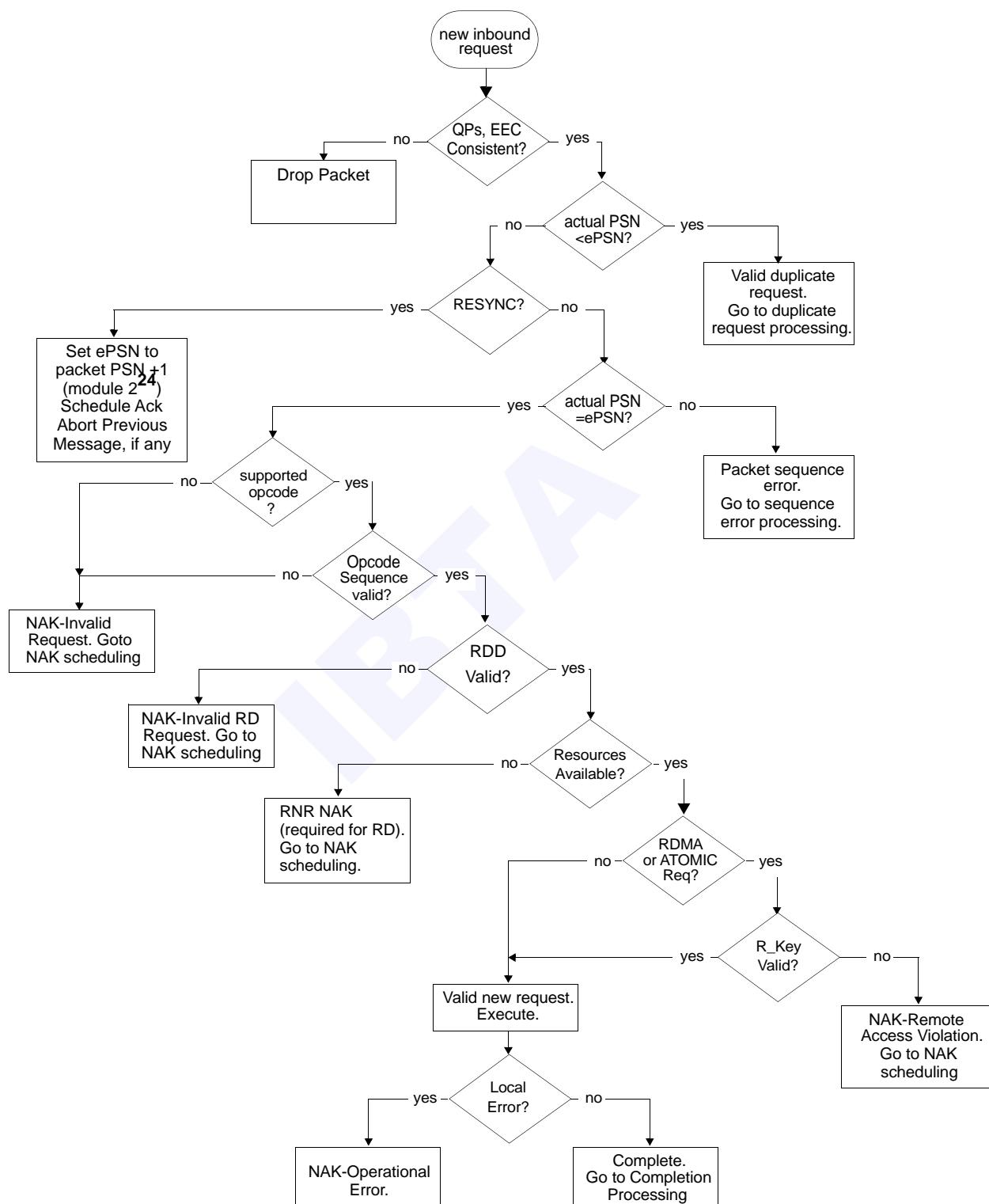


Figure 91 Inbound Request Packet Validation,

o9-38.a1: If Reliable Datagram service is implemented in a CA, a responder shall do the following when an inbound packet arrives:

- 1) If the responder receives a new request packet (i.e. PSN = expected PSN) with an opcode of “middle” or “last” (i.e., the responder has previously received a new request packet with an opcode of “first” and has not yet received a new request packet with an opcode of “last”), the responder shall validate that the source and destination QPns contained in the new request packet exactly match those of the most recently received “first” packet. If the source and destination QPns of the new “middle” or “last” request packet do not match those of the most recently received “first” request, the responder shall ignore the packet.
- 2) If the responder receives a duplicate request packet (i.e., the PSN is in the duplicate region), the responder shall validate that the source and destination QPns in the duplicate request packet exactly match those of the most recently received new request. If the source and destination QPns do not match those of the most recently received new request, the responder shall ignore the packet.

o9-38.a2: If Reliable Datagram service is implemented in a CA, when an inbound RESYNC request arrives, the responder shall do the following:

- 1) If the responder receives a RESYNC request, it shall accept the request regardless of the value of the source and destination QPns in the RESYNC request.
- 2) If the responder receives a RESYNC request, it shall accept that request regardless of the state of the opcode sequence (“first”, “middle”, etc.) of the currently executing request (i.e. the most recently received new request).
- 3) If the PSN of the RESYNC request is equal to or logically greater than the responder’s expected PSN (i.e. the RESYNC request is a new request), the responder shall:
 - a) Set its expected PSN equal to the PSN of the RESYNC request plus one (Modulo 2^{24}),
 - b) Use the PSN of the RESYNC request as the PSN of the response,
 - c) Abort any processing associated with the currently executing request if the currently executing request is incomplete (i.e. a Request packet with an opcode of “last” or “only” has not yet arrived). If such a currently executing request was a SEND RDMA WRITE with Immediate (and thus would have consumed a receive WQE), the partially consumed receive WQE shall be completed in error.

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- 4) If the PSN of the RESYNC request is logically less than the responder's expected PSN, the responder shall treat the RESYNC request as a duplicate request and thus shall not change its expected PSN. The responder shall use the PSN of the duplicate RESYNC request as the PSN of the response.

9.7.4.1.2 RESPONDER - PSN VERIFICATION

C9-74: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, and before executing the inbound request, the responder shall check the PSN by comparing the inbound BTH:PSN to the responder's expected PSN. The PSN shall be checked by the responder's receive queue.

o9-39: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, and before executing the inbound request, the responder shall check the PSN by comparing the inbound BTH:PSN to the responder's expected PSN. The PSN shall be checked by the responder's receive queue.

For reliable datagram service, the PSN is checked by the responder's EE Context.

To a large extent, the responder's behavior in responding to a request is based on an interpretation of the incoming PSN.

Logically, a receive queue or EE Context maintains an expected PSN (ePSN). This is the PSN that the responder expects to find in the BTH of the next new request packet it receives. The rules that the responder uses to calculate its next expected PSN are the same as those used by the requester when it calculates the PSN value to insert in its next request packet.

C9-75: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, a responder shall use the rules given in [9.7.3.1 Requester Side - Generating PSN on page 313](#) to calculate its expected PSN.

o9-40: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, a responder shall use the rules given in [9.7.3.1 Requester Side - Generating PSN on page 313](#) to calculate its expected PSN.

The responder's expected PSN is initialized at connection establishment time by the Communication Manager to any value between zero and 16,777,215. For proper operation, this initial value must match the initial next PSN value as loaded on the requester.

The initial expected PSN can only be set by the client when the queue is in the Initialized state. Attempts by the client to set the PSN when it is in any other state may be ignored by the transport layer.

C9-76: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, the HCA shall update its expected PSN only when the receive queue is in a state such that it is properly conditioned to receive request packets. For example, the transport does not modify the expected PSN when the queue pair is in the Initialized state.

o9-41: If Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, or XRC service is implemented in CA, the responder shall update its expected PSN only when the Receive Queue is in a state such that it is properly conditioned to receive request packets. For example, the transport does not modify the expected PSN when the queue pair is in the Initialized state.

o9-42: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, the responder shall update its expected PSN only when the EE Context is in a state such that it is properly conditioned to receive request packets.

When compared to its expected PSN, the actual PSN of an inbound request message may fall into one of three regions; it may be exactly equal to the responder's expected PSN, it may be logically "less" than the responder's expected PSN and thus fall into the duplicate region as shown in Figure 88, or it may fall outside both the valid region and the expected PSN "region", and thus be invalid.

Expected (new) Request: An inbound request packet received with a PSN that exactly matches the responder's expected PSN is a new request packet.

C9-77: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, a new request packet shall be validated normally and executed according to the rules governing order of execution. Once the request has been executed, a response shall be scheduled as specified in [9.7.5 Responder: Generating Responses on page 331](#).

o9-43: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, a new request packet shall be validated normally and executed according to the rules governing order of execution. Once the request has been executed, a response shall be scheduled as specified in [9.7.5 Responder: Generating Responses on page 331](#).

Note that it is not required to return a discrete acknowledge packet for each inbound request packet.

Once a packet with a valid expected PSN has been received, the responder advances its expected PSN by calculating the new expected

PSN, and slides the valid region window up to reflect the new range of valid PSNs.

Valid Duplicate Request: A PSN that falls within the valid region, but is not the expected PSN, is a valid duplicate request packet.

C9-78: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, the responder shall respond to valid duplicate requests as specified in [9.7.5.1.4 Acknowledging Duplicate Requests on page 336](#).

o9-44: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, then the responder shall respond to valid duplicate requests as specified in [9.7.5.1.4 Acknowledging Duplicate Requests on page 336](#).

[Table 44](#) summarizes those actions.

Table 44 Summary: Responder Actions for Duplicate PSNs

Duplicate Request Message	Responder Action
SEND or RDMA WRITE or RESYNC	Schedule acknowledge packet
RDMA READ	Re-execute request, schedule response
ATOMIC Operation	Do not re-execute request, after validating the request, return the saved results from the referenced ATOMIC Operation request.

Invalid Request: A packet with an actual received PSN outside the valid region and not in the expected “regions” is an invalid request. An invalid PSN value is generally an indication that one or more request packets have been lost in the fabric.

The responder’s detailed behavior in response to an invalid request request packet is as follows:

- The errant request packet is not executed.
- Any request packets received prior to the errant request must be executed and completed before the NAK-Sequence Error is issued since it acts as an implicit ACK for prior outstanding SEND or RDMA WRITE requests, and as an implicit NAK for outstanding RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation requests.
- Return a NAK-Sequence error to the requester.
- The responder does not update its expected PSN.

C9-79: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, when the actual PSN of an inbound request message is outside the valid region (Invalid Request), a NAK-Sequence Error shall be returned by the responder. Any request packets received prior to the errant request must be executed and completed before the NAK-Sequence Error is issued.

o9-45: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, and if the actual PSN of an inbound request message is outside the valid region (Invalid Request), then a NAK-Sequence Error shall be returned by the responder. Any request packets received prior to the errant request must be executed and completed before the NAK-Sequence Error is issued.

The responder resumes waiting for a valid inbound request packet that has a PSN equal to its expected PSN or within its valid region. If, while waiting for a valid new request, the responder receives any subsequent invalid request packets, those packets are simply dropped silently; no NAK is returned.

C9-80: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, after generating a NAK-Sequence Error, the responder shall not generate an ACK or NAK until it receives either a valid new request, or a valid duplicate request.

o9-46: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, then after generating a NAK-Sequence Error, the responder shall not generate an ACK or NAK until it receives either a valid new request, or a valid duplicate request.

There is no requirement that the queue be stopped or for a connected transport service that the connection be torn down.

9.7.4.1.3 RESPONDER - OP CODE SEQUENCE CHECK

A request packet must fit within a schedule of valid OpCode sequences. For Reliable Connected, XRC and Reliable Datagram services the responder shall check the sequence of packet OpCodes comprising the request message as follows:

- 1) If this is the first packet following establishment of the connection, then the packet OpCode must indicate either "first" or "only".
- 2) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating "first", then the current OpCode must indicate either "middle" or "last". It must also match the operation type specified in the last valid packet (Send, RDMA, ATOMIC Operation). It is an error if the current OpCode indicates "first" or "only", since that implies that the last packet of the previous message was missed.

- 3) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “middle”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “middle” or “last”. It must also match the operation type specified in the last valid packet (Send, RDMA, ATOMIC Operation). It is an error if the current OpCode indicates “first” or “only” packet since that implies that the last packet of the previous message was missed.
- 4) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “last”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “first” or “only”. It is an error if the current OpCode indicates either “middle” or “last”, since that implies that the first packet of the message was missed.
- 5) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “only”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “first” or “only”. It is an error if the current OpCode indicates either a middle packet or last packet since that implies that the first packet of the message was missed.

These rules are stated succinctly in the following table.

Table 45 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences

Previous Packet OpCode	Valid OpCodes for Current Packet
None e.g., first packet following connection establishment	“First” packet “Only” packet
“First” packet	“Middle” packet (message is 3 or more packets) “Last” packet (message is exactly 2 packets) Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
“Middle” packet	“Middle” packet “Last” packet Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
“Last” packet	“First” packet (1st packet of a new message) “Only” packet (1st packet of a new single packet msg)
“Only” packet	“First” packet “Only” packet

C9-81: For an HCA responder using Reliable Connected service, the responder shall check that the sequence of packet OpCodes comprising the request message conforms to the schedule shown in [Table 45 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 326](#). If the responder detects an invalid opcode sequence, it shall return a NAK-Invalid Request to the requester.

o9-47: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connected service, or a CA responder implements XRC service, the responder shall check that the sequence of packet OpCodes comprising the request message conforms to the schedule shown in [Table 45 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 326](#). If the responder detects an invalid opcode sequence, it shall return a NAK-Invalid Request to the requester.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
o9-48: If a CA responder implements Reliable Datagram service, the responder shall check that the sequence of packet OpCodes comprising the request message conforms to the schedule shown in [Table 45 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 326](#). If the responder detects an invalid opcode sequence, it shall return a NAK-Invalid Request to the requester.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
The detailed behavior in the presence of an invalid OpCode sequence is specified in Section [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
o9-49: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

9.7.4.1.4 RESPONDER OP CODE VALIDATION

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
C9-82: Before executing an inbound request, the responder shall validate the OpCode field of the BTH.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
The OpCode is checked for the following characteristics:

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
• The requested function (Send, RDMA, ATOMIC) is supported by this receive queue,
• If the request is for an RDMA READ or an ATOMIC Operation, there are sufficient resources available to receive it.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
As the packet was passed up to the transport layer, BTH OpCode field[7:5] was checked to ensure that the requested operation was for a reliable service. If it was not, then the packet was silently dropped. This check is specified in Section [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#). Thus, before the packet arrives at the queue pair for validation according to the rules in this section, it is already known to be a request for a reliable service.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
C9-83: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, if the request is for a function which this receive queue does not support, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
For example, if the queue pair is not configured to accept requests for RDMA, but the request is for an RDMA WRITE, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
o9-50: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, if the request is for a function which this receive queue does not support, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
C9-84: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, and the BTH OpCode field[4:0] specifies a Reliable Connection reserved opcode or a Reliable Datagram reserved opcode, a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

1
2
3
4
o9-51: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service are implemented in a
5 CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, and the
6 BTH OpCode field[4:0] specifies a Reliable Connection reserved opcode
7 or a Reliable Datagram reserved opcode or XRC reserved opcode, then
8 a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.
9
10

11
12
13
14
15
C9-85: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, if BTH Op-
16 Code field[4:0] specifies a first or middle request packet (e.g. SEND First,
17 or RDMA WRITE Middle), then the pad count bits shall be verified to be
18 b00, indicating no pad bytes are present. If the pad count bits are non-
19 zero, a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.
20
21

22
23
24
o9-52: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a
25 CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, if BTH Op-
26 Code field[4:0] specifies a first or middle request packet (e.g. SEND First,
27 or RDMA WRITE Middle), then the pad count bits shall be verified to be
28 b00, indicating no pad bytes are present. If the pad count bits are non-
29 zero, a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.
30
31

32
33
C9-86: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, if there are
34 insufficient resources to receive a new RDMA READ or ATOMIC Opera-
35 tion request, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.
36
37

38
39
o9-53: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a
40 CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, and if there
41 are insufficient resources to receive a new RDMA READ or ATOMIC Op-
42 eration request, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.
43
44

45 The behavior for returning a NAK-Invalid Request is as follows:
46
47

- 48 • The errant request packet is not executed.
49
- 50 • Any request packets received prior to the errant request must be
51 executed and completed before the NAK-Invalid Request is is-
52 sued. This is important since the NAK effectively coalesces re-
53 sponds to earlier outstanding request and acts as an implicit
54 response for prior outstanding SENDs, RDMA WRITEs, ATOMIC
55 Operations or RDMA READ requests. See Section [9.7.5.1.2 Co-](#)
56 [alesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#) for details.
57
- 58 • NAK-Invalid Request is returned.
59
- 60 • The responder does not update its expected PSN.
61

62
63
C9-87: For Reliable Connection service in an HCA responder, any re-
64 quest packets received prior to a packet containing an invalid opcode
65 must be executed and completed before a NAK-Invalid Request is issued
66 by the responder.
67
68

o9-54: If Reliable Datagram service or XRC service is implemented in a CA, or if Reliable Connection service is implemented in a TCA, then any request packets received prior to a packet containing an invalid opcode must be executed and completed before a NAK-Invalid Request is issued by the responder.

More detail on error behavior in the presence of an invalid request is given in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

9.7.4.1.5 RESPONDER R_KEY VALIDATION

A R_Key violation is caused by any or all of the following conditions for either a RDMA READ, RDMA WRITE, or ATOMIC Operation:

- The R_Key field of the RETH is invalid (for RDMA READ or WRITEs)
- The R_Key field of the AtomicETH is invalid (for ATOMIC Operations).
- The virtual address and length, or type of access specified, is outside the locally defined limits associated with the R_Key. For an RDMA WRITE request, the length check is conducted on a per packet basis, and is based on the LRH:PktLen field. For an RDMA READ request, the length check is based on the RETH:DMA Length field.
- For an HCA, an R_Key violation also includes a violation of the protection domain as defined in [10.2.3 Protection Domains on page 465](#).

C9-88: For an HCA responder using Reliable Connection service, for each zero-length RDMA READ or WRITE request, the R_Key shall not be validated, even if the request includes Immediate data.

o9-55: If an HCA responder implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, or if a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection/XRC and RDMA functionality the responder shall behave as follows. For each zero-length RDMA READ or WRITE request, the R_Key shall not be validated, even if the request includes Immediate data.

C9-89: If the responder's receive queue detects a R_Key violation, a NAK-Remote Access Error shall be returned to the requester using the PSN of the errant request packet.

C9-90: Any request packets received prior to a packet containing an R_Key violation shall be executed and completed before a NAK-Remote Access Error is issued by the responder.

See [9.7.5.2.4 Remote Access Error on page 350](#) for additional details.

9.7.4.1.6 RESPONDER - LENGTH VALIDATION

C9-91: The PktLen field of the LRH shall be checked to confirm that there is sufficient space available in the receive buffer specified by the receive WQE. If the buffer defined by the receive WQE is insufficient to hold an inbound SEND request then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

C9-92: The length of the packet shall also be validated by comparing it to the OpCode as follows:

If the OpCode specifies a “first” or “middle” packet, then the packet payload length must be a full PMTU size.

If the OpCode specifies a “only” packet, then the packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes in size. Thus, the only way to create a zero byte length transfer is by use of a single packet message.

If the OpCode specifies a “last” packet, then the packet payload length must be between one and PMTU bytes in size.

C9-93: If a packet is detected with an invalid length the request shall be an invalid request.

The responder’s behavior in such a case is specified in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

In addition to checking the LRH:PktLen field, the DMA Length field of the RETH is checked as follows.

For an RDMA WRITE request, the responder may optionally check the DMA Length field in the RETH to ensure that it does not specify a transfer length of greater than 2^{31} bytes. It may also, at the end of the transfer, verify that the sum of the packet payloads equalled the DMALen field in the RETH. If the responder detects either of these conditions, it may treat the request as an invalid request.

C9-94: For an HCA validating an inbound RDMA READ request, the DMA Length field shall be checked. If the request is for greater than 2^{31} bytes, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

o9-56: If a TCA implements RDMA operations, then for an inbound RDMA READ request, the DMA Length field shall be checked. If the request is for greater than 2^{31} bytes, then a NAK-Invalid Request shall be returned.

9.7.4.1.7 RESPONDER LOCAL OPERATION VALIDATION

A valid inbound request may still fail to complete due to a failure that is local to the responder, e.g. local memory translation error while accessing local memory. All local responder errors are reported to the requester as

NAK-Remote Operational Error. See [9.7.5.2.6 Remote Operational Error on page 351](#) for additional details.

9.7.5 RESPONDER: GENERATING RESPONSES

9.7.5.1 RESPONDER SIDE BEHAVIOR

This section specifies the required behavior that a responder must follow when generating acknowledge messages.

9.7.5.1.1 GENERATING PSNs FOR ACKNOWLEDGE MESSAGES

As the responder generates a response to each request, it shall identify the request with which the response is associated by inserting a PSN in the BTH of the response.

This allows the requester to correlate response packets it receives with its request. This basic concept is illustrated below in [Figure 92 Example: PSNs for Response Messages on page 331](#).

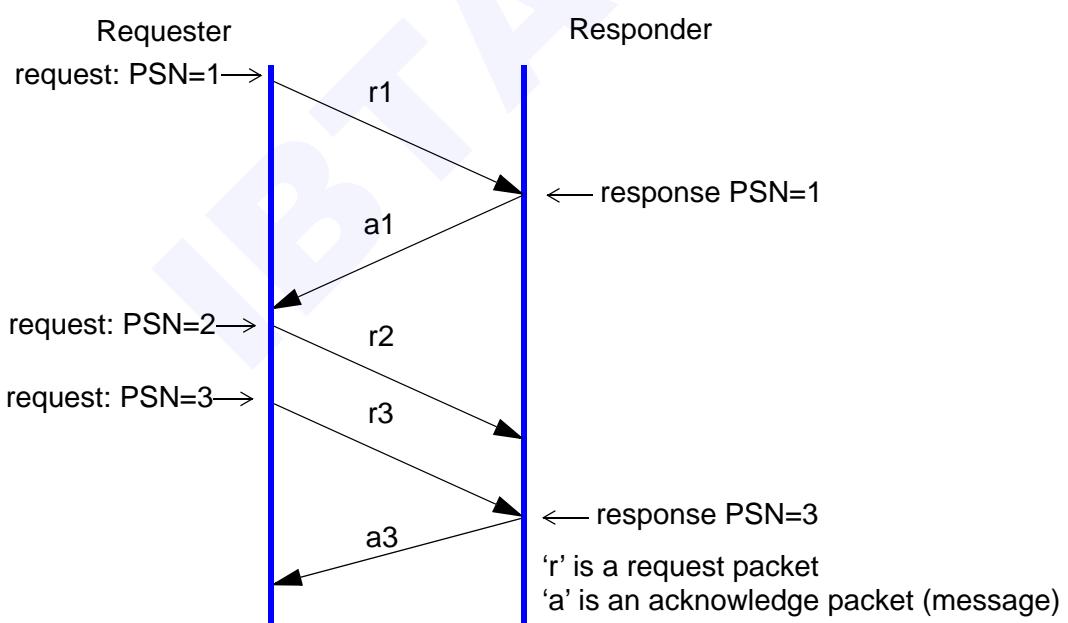


Figure 92 Example: PSNs for Response Messages

C9-95: For responses to SEND requests or RDMA WRITE requests the responder shall insert in the PSN field of the response the PSN of the most recent request packet being acknowledged.

"PSN of the most recent request", as used here and throughout Chapter 9, specifically means the PSN of the most recently received NEW request packet. (This distinguishes it from the PSN of a recently received dupli-

cate request). Thus, the PSN of the most recently received request marks the point of greatest forward progress, as perceived by the responder, while ignoring duplicate requests.

Because of the rules for coalescing acknowledges (given in Section 9.7.5.1.2), the PSNs for consecutive response packets may not necessarily be sequential.

C9-96: For HCA responses to RDMA READ requests, the PSNs of the response packets must be sequential and monotonically increasing beginning with the PSN of the original RDMA READ request message.

o9-57: If a TCA implements RDMA READ functionality, then for each RDMA READ response the PSNs of the response packets must be sequential and monotonically increasing beginning with the PSN of the original RDMA READ request message.

o9-58: Since ATOMIC Operation requests require an explicit response, and since an ATOMIC Operation request is restricted to a single packet, the PSN of the response packet must be identical to the PSN of the request.

9.7.5.1.2 COALEDSED ACKNOWLEDGE MESSAGES

It is not required that there be a unique, discrete response for each request packet. Instead, the responder may acknowledge several outstanding request packets with a single acknowledge packet. This is called acknowledge coalescing.

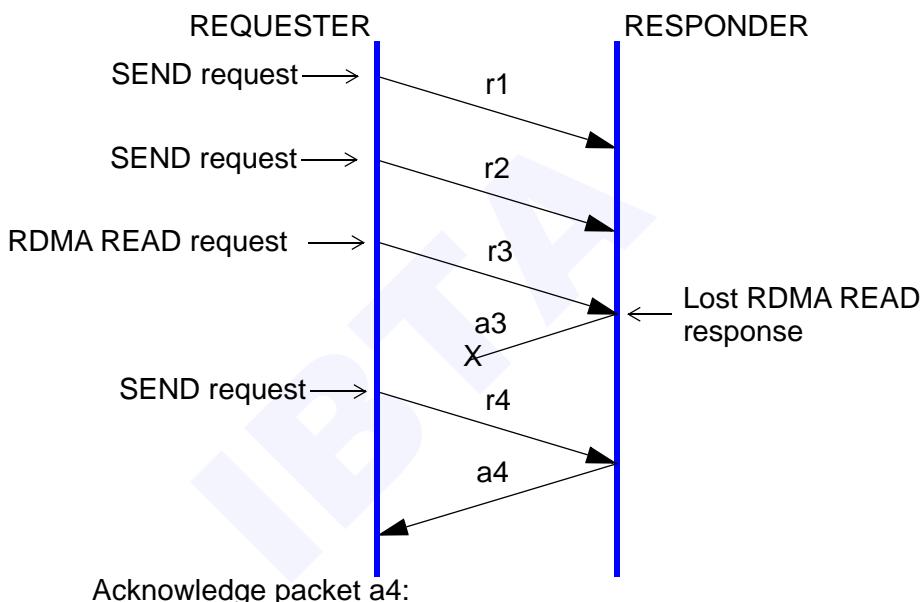
A given response packet acknowledges prior outstanding requests (i.e., those with earlier PSNs than the PSN contained in the BTH of the response packet) as follows:

- 1) If there is an outstanding RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation request with a PSN earlier than the PSN in the BTH of the response packet, then the response packet implies a negative acknowledgment for the oldest such outstanding RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation request. Any requests posted to the send queue subsequent to such an RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation request are not acknowledged. This is illustrated in [Figure 93 Requester Interpretation of Coalesced Acknowledges on page 333](#).
- 2) It implies a positive acknowledgment for all outstanding SEND or RDMA WRITE request packets with a PSN earlier than the PSN in the BTH of the response packet, unless such an outstanding SEND or RDMA WRITE request falls after an outstanding RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation request as described above.

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- 3) If the given response is an RDMA READ response message, it is the first (or only) packet of a RDMA READ response message that implicitly acknowledges prior outstanding requests.

- 4) The last (or only) packet of a RDMA READ response message explicitly acknowledges only the RDMA READ request.

These rules are illustrated in Figure 94.



- 1) implicitly acknowledges SEND requests r1 and r2,
- 2) implicitly NAKs RDMA READ request r3.
- 3) does not acknowledge SEND request r4.

Thus, acknowledges for requests r1 and r2 have been coalesced, and the requester must re-try requests r3 and r4.

Figure 93 Requester Interpretation of Coalesced

9.7.5.1.3 ACKNOWLEDGING RDMA READ REQUESTS

An RDMA READ response is different from a normal response in that it contains a data payload.

Every RDMA READ request message requires a discrete acknowledgement, called the RDMA READ response which consists of one or more packets.

C9-97: For an HCA, if an RDMA READ response contains more than one packet, the first and last packets must contain an AETH.

o9-59: In a TCA implementing RDMA, if an RDMA READ response contains more than one packet, the first and last packets must contain an AETH.

The AETH in the first packet implicitly acknowledges prior outstanding requests as specified in Section [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#). The AETH in the last packet acknowledges the RDMA READ request.

C9-98: For an HCA, if an RDMA READ response is itself a single packet, then that packet must contain an AETH.

o9-60: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, and an RDMA READ response is itself a single packet, then that packet must contain an AETH.

The AETH contained in a single packet RDMA READ response serves to both implicitly acknowledge prior outstanding requests as well as to explicitly acknowledge the RDMA READ request itself.

C9-99: An HCA responder shall generate RDMA READ response packet payload lengths which are consistent with the opcode as follows:

- 1) A packet with an opcode of “RDMA READ response only” shall be zero to (PMTU) bytes long.
- 2) A packet with an opcode of “RDMA READ response first” or RDMA READ response middle” shall be exactly (PMTU) bytes long.
- 3) A packet with an opcode of “RDMA READ response last” shall be one to (PMTU) bytes long.
- 4) Zero length RDMA READ requests are permitted.
- 5) A response to a zero length RDMA READ request shall consist of a single packet with an opcode of “RDMA READ response only”.

o9-61: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, it shall generate response packets with payload lengths as described in the previous compliance statement.

C9-100: If an HCA responder detects an error while in the process of returning a multi-packet RDMA READ response, it shall force a premature termination of the RDMA READ response by not transmitting any of the errant payload data and forcing the opcode of the packet on which the error occurred to “acknowledge” instead of an opcode of “RDMA READ response last”. The appropriate NAK code is inserted.

o9-62: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, and detects an error while in the process of returning a multi-packet RDMA READ response, it shall force a premature termination of the RDMA READ response by not transmitting any of the errant payload data and forcing the opcode of the packet on which the error occurred to “acknowledge” instead of an opcode of “RDMA READ response last”. The appropriate NAK code is inserted.

Due to the relaxed ordering rules for RDMA READ Requests, the responder is permitted to begin executing one or more SEND or RDMA WRITE requests that arrive after the RDMA READ request.

C9-101: For an HCA, before executing any of the requests following the RDMA READ request, the header fields of the RDMA READ request must be validated. These requests must not be acknowledged until the outstanding RDMA READ responses have been sent.

o9-63: Before executing any of the requests following the RDMA READ request, the header fields of the RDMA READ request must be validated. These requests must not be acknowledged until the outstanding RDMA READ responses have been sent.

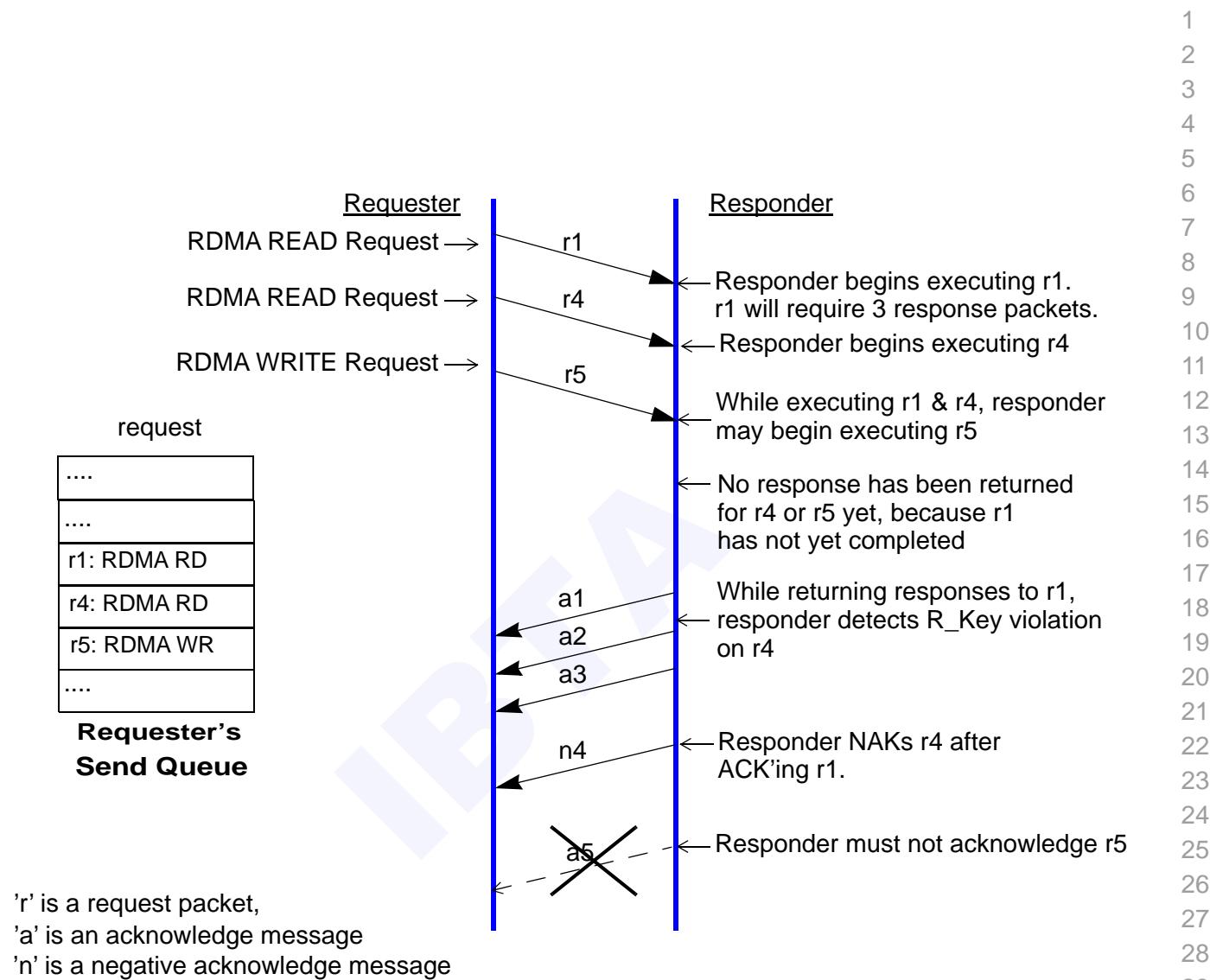


Figure 94 Relaxed Ordering Rules for RDMA READs

9.7.5.1.4 ACKNOWLEDGING DUPLICATE REQUESTS

After validating a duplicate request, the response to a duplicate request packet is as follows:

C9-102: After validating a duplicate request, if the duplicate packet is valid, the responder shall generate a response.

C9-103: Throughout the processing of the duplicate request, the responder shall not update its expected PSN; it remains set to the value it

had prior to the arrival of the duplicate request. This is true even if the responder detects an error while in the process of generating the response to the duplicate request.

Following generation of the appropriate response (as described in the next paragraphs), the responder resumes waiting for a new inbound packet with a PSN matching its expected PSN.

It is possible that the responder will receive another duplicate request while waiting for a new inbound packet. This is perfectly valid, and should be treated as simply another duplicate request. Furthermore, since it is a duplicate request, there is no requirement that the next request received be in sequential PSN order with the first duplicate request. However, the responder is required to maintain the same ordering rules for generating responses to duplicate requests as are required for normal new requests.

C9-104: In particular, a duplicate RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation request must be acknowledged with an explicit response prior to returning acknowledges for subsequent duplicate SEND or RDMA WRITE requests.

This is illustrated in [Figure 95 Maintaining the Order of Responses to Duplicate Requests on page 338](#).

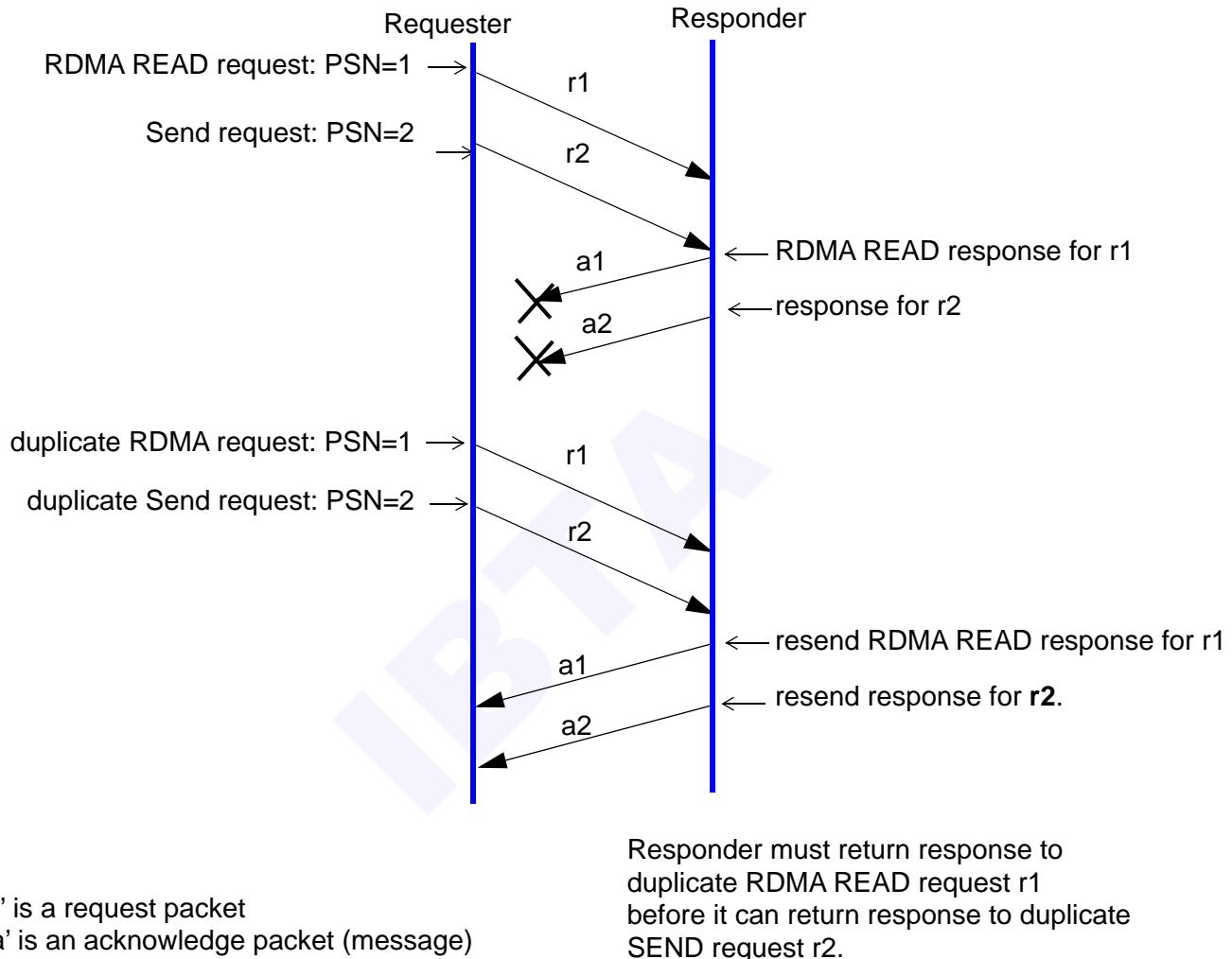


Figure 95 Maintaining the Order of Responses to Duplicate

The response to be generated is a function of the duplicate request message as follows:

- SEND, RESYNC or RDMA WRITE Request

C9-105: For an HCA which receives a duplicate inbound SEND or RDMA Write request, or for a TCA which receives a duplicate inbound SEND request, the responder shall not re-execute the request but only generates a response packet for the duplicate packet, pending responses for any

outstanding duplicate RDMA READ requests or ATOMIC Operation requests.

o9-64: If a TCA responder implements RDMA functionality, it shall not re-execute the RDMA WRITE request but only generate a response packet for the duplicate packet, pending responses for any outstanding duplicate RDMA READ requests or ATOMIC Operation requests.

The PSN of the acknowledge message must be the PSN of the most recently completed new request. One way to think of this process is as a logical extension of the ability to coalesce acknowledges. Indeed, the requester, on receiving a response to a duplicate request, treats it exactly as it would any other coalesced acknowledge; any outstanding duplicate RDMA READ or ATOMIC Operation requests are considered to be NAK'ed. In this case, by returning the PSN of the most recently completed request, the responder is informing the requester that it believes it has already seen and executed all requests between the duplicate request and the most recently completed request. This is illustrated in Figure 96.

C9-106: For duplicate SEND, RESYNC or RDMA WRITE requests, if the responder detects an error while in the process of returning the response, it shall silently drop the duplicate request. This is done in order to avoid confusion with any possible outstanding NAKs to new requests.

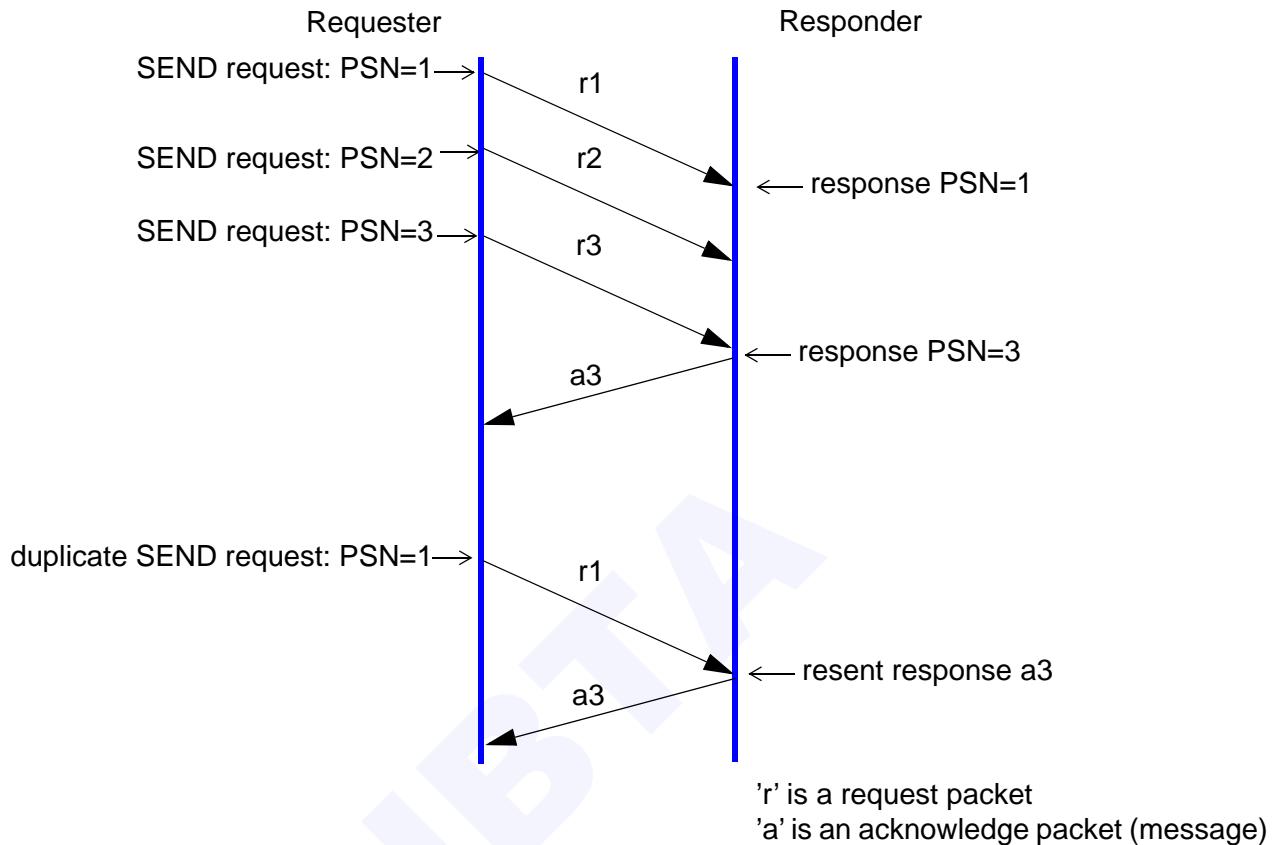


Figure 96 Acknowledging a Duplicate SEND Request

- RDMA READ Request

C9-107: An HCA responder must re-create the requested read response data. The resulting read data is returned to the requester in an RDMA READ response. The PSN of the first RDMA READ response packet shall be the same as the PSN of the duplicate request, with the PSNs for the subsequent response packets incrementing according to the normal rules for generating PSNs for RDMA READs.

C9-108: If an HCA responder detects an error while re-executing a duplicate RDMA READ request before returning the first response packet, the responder shall silently drop the duplicate request.

C9-109: If an HCA responder detects an error while re-executing a duplicate RDMA READ Request after returning one or more response packets, the RDMA READ response operation shall be aborted, i.e. no more response packets shall be returned.

When an RDMA READ Request is generated, a certain number of sequential PSN numbers are allocated based on the number of packets expected in the RDMA READ Response. These PSNs are used by the responder when generating the RDMA READ Response packet(s). Also, the original request contains a DMA Length defined in the RETH which represents the extent of the data being requested.

As described in Section [9.4.4 RDMA READ Operation on page 279](#), to be considered a duplicate RDMA READ Request, the PSN of the duplicate request must be within the responder's current duplicate PSN region. Furthermore, to be considered a valid duplicate RDMA READ Request, the PSN of the duplicate request must fall within the range of PSNs allocated to the original RDMA READ Response, and the amount of data requested in the duplicate request must be entirely contained within the extent of data requested in the original RDMA READ Request. In other words, the data requested in the duplicate RDMA READ Request must be a proper subset of the data requested in the original RDMA READ Request.

If the starting PSN and length of a duplicate RDMA READ Request does not fall within the range of PSNs allocated to the original RDMA READ Response, the request is invalid and the responder may silently drop the duplicate RDMA READ Request.

C9-110: A responder shall respond to all duplicate requests in PSN order; i.e. the request with the (logically) earliest PSN shall be executed first. If, while responding to a new or duplicate request, a duplicate request is received with a logically earlier PSN, the responder shall cease responding to the original request and shall begin responding to the duplicate request with the logically earlier PSN.

If a responder is interrupted by a duplicate request, it is not required to resume the interrupted request. It is the requester's responsibility to resend any unacknowledged requests.

o9-65: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, RDMA READ Responses shall conform to the previous 4 compliance statements for HCAs.

Following the duplicate RDMA READ response, the responder may acknowledge any subsequent duplicate Send or RDMA WRITE requests with the PSN of the most recently completed request. This is illustrated in Figure 97

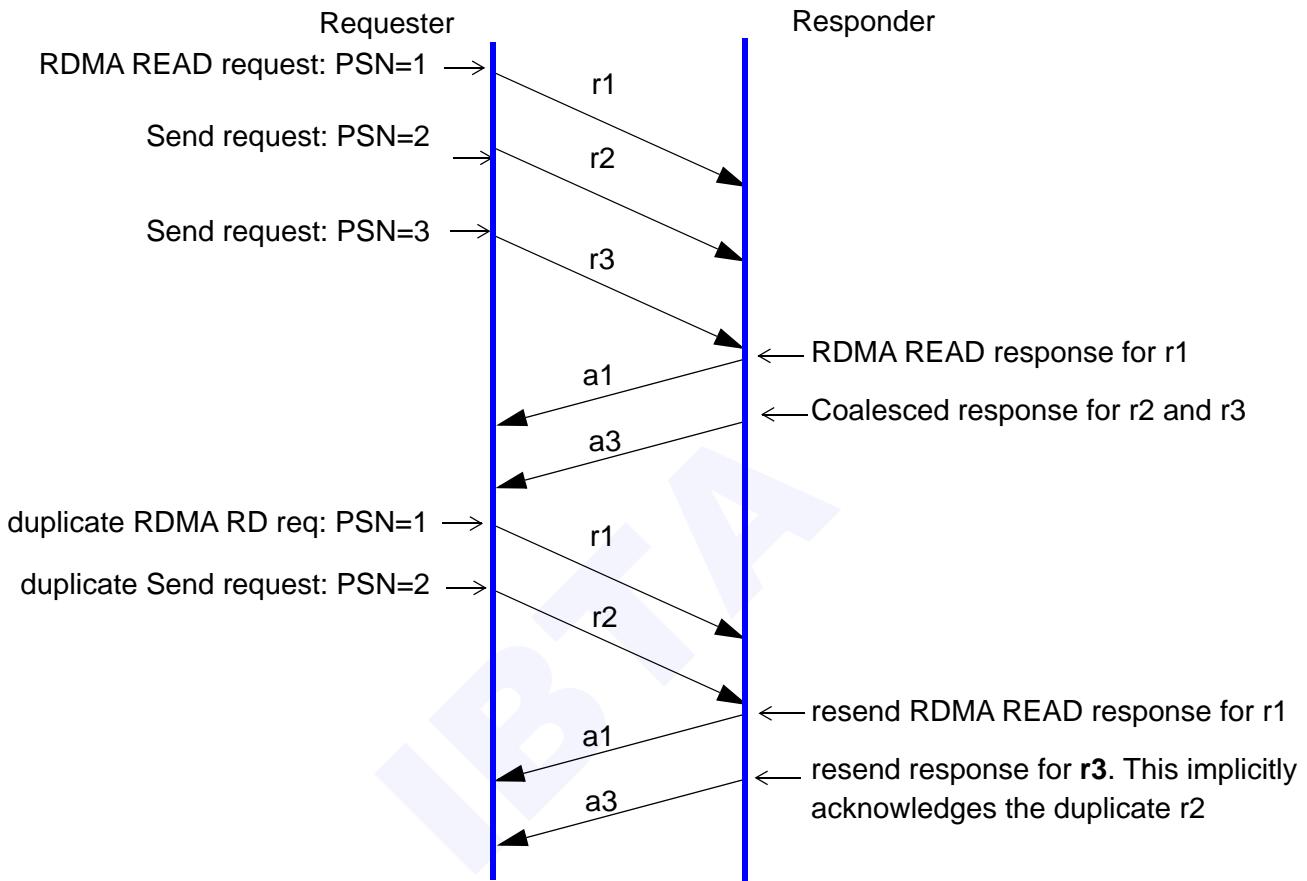


Figure 97 Acknowledging a Duplicate RDMA READ Request

- ATOMIC Operation Request

A given receive queue may have resources to support only a limited number of ATOMIC Operations. When a duplicate ATOMIC Operation request is received, the PSN of the duplicate request is compared to the PSNs of the recently executed ATOMIC Operations.

o9-66: If the PSN of the duplicate ATOMIC Operation request matches exactly the PSN of one of the recently executed ATOMIC Operations, the saved results of that operation shall be returned to the requester. The responder shall not re-execute the request.

1
2
3
4
o9-67: If the PSN of the duplicate ATOMIC Operation request does not
match the PSN of one of the recently executed ATOMIC Operations, the
request is invalid and the duplicate request packet shall be silently
dropped. This should never happen as long as the requester is observing
the limits on the number of outstanding ATOMIC Operation requests.

5
6
7
8
o9-68: If a local error prevents the responder from reproducing the orig-
inal ATOMIC Operation request data, the responder must silently drop the
duplicate request.

9
10
11
12
In all cases, the PSN returned in the acknowledge message is the
PSN of the duplicate request.

9.7.5.1.5 GENERATING NAKs

13
14
There are several circumstances that cause a responder to generate a
NAK.

15
16
C9-111: In all cases except for RDMA READ requests, the PSN of the
NAK packet shall contain the responder's expected PSN.

18
19
20
C9-112: In the case of an RDMA READ response packet, the PSN given
in the NAK response packet shall point to the RDMA READ response
packet which is being NAK'ed.

22
23
C9-113: When generating an RNR NAK, the PSN of the response packet
shall point to the PSN of the packet being RNR NAK'ed.

25
26
C9-113.a1: When generating a NAK, the packet containing the NAK code
shall have an opcode of Acknowledge.

28
29
30
31
This means that, even for an RDMA Read response, if the responder is
returning a NAK code, it does so by substituting a packet with an opcode
of Acknowledge instead of the normal opcode of RDMA Read Response
(first/middle/last/only).

32
33
34
Once the responder has returned a NAK-sequence error or an RNR NAK,
it waits for the requester to send a packet with the responder's expected
PSN.

35
The rules that the responder must follow are as follows:

36
37
C9-114: Once a NAK has been returned for a PSN sequence error, the
responder shall ignore all other new requests, except duplicate requests,
until it receives a valid request with a PSN that matches its expected PSN.
It shall not return any other NAK packets, except in response to a valid re-
quest with a PSN that matches its expected PSN.

C9-115: The responder must continue to respond to duplicate requests as specified above. However, the responder shall not return a NAK in response to an error condition occurring while processing a duplicate request.

9.7.5.1.6 ACKNOWLEDGE MESSAGE SCHEDULING

The scheduling of responses, per se, is not specified; however the requester may use the AckReq bit in the BTH to require the responder to schedule a response.

C9-116: When the responder receives a valid request packet with the AckReq bit set, it shall schedule a response packet for that request. The PSN of the response must be equal to or logically greater than (modulo 2^{24}) the PSN of the request.

After receiving a request message with the AckReq bit set, the responder still accepts request messages, (including additional ones marked with the AckReq bit set), while it is preparing to transmit the response packet. These additional request messages may result in a coalesced ACK when the responder is able to send the response. In this case, the single response message may satisfy several outstanding request messages.

When one or more requests arrive without the AckReq bit set, the responder may choose to deliberately coalesce its responses; it may even wait an unbounded time for additional requests, until one arrives that requires the scheduling of a response.

There are several places where the AckReq bit can be very useful to the requester. For example, if the requester is sending the last packet of the last request WQE posted to the send queue, it is advisable for the requester to set the AckReq bit or use some other mechanism to force the responder to return a response. If the requester does not do so, there is a possibility that the responder will choose to coalesce responses indefinitely. Some other mechanisms that the requester can use to ensure that the responder returns a response are:

- Always set the AckReq bit on the last (or only) packet of every message
- Follow a given request with a NOP with the AckReq bit set
- Retry the request for which a response was desired with the AckReq bit set.

For SEND or RDMA WRITE requests, an ACK may be scheduled before data is actually written into the responder's memory. The ACK simply indicates that the data has successfully reached the fault domain of the responding node. That is, the data has been received by the channel adapter and the channel adapter will write that data to the memory system

of the responding node, or the responding application will at least be informed of the failure.

The absence of the AckReq bit does not prohibit the responder from generating a response packet. As always, RDMA READ and ATOMIC Operation requests require explicit responses, thus the AckReq bit has no effect on requests.

9.7.5.1.7 RESPONSE FORMATS

Responses may take one of three forms:

- 1) An acknowledge packet for a normal SEND, RESYNC or RDMA WRITE operations,
- 2) RDMA READ responses, and
- 3) Acknowledge messages for ATOMIC Operations - see [9.4.5 ATOMIC Operations on page 283](#).

The key distinctions between the three forms is that the normal acknowledge packet (used for SENDs, RESYNCS and RDMA WRITES) does not carry a payload field, while the responses for both the RDMA READ and ATOMIC Operations do. This observation impacts both the format of the response and the rules for coalescing acknowledges.

An acknowledge packet contains the following information:

- A syndrome used to notify the requester of the success or failure of a given request message,
- A PSN value used by the requester to correlate the acknowledge message with its listing of outstanding requests,
- A Message Sequence Number used by the responder to notify the requester that request messages have been completed,
- Optional End-to-End flow control credits,
- Payload data in the case of a RDMA READ response or ATOMIC Operation response.

Each of the three forms is discussed in the following sections.

9.7.5.1.8 RESPONSE FORMAT FOR SEND, RESYNC OR RDMA WRITE REQUESTS

This format is used to acknowledge SEND, RESYNC or RDMA WRITE request packets. A normal acknowledge message comprises a single packet, and is shown in Figure 98.

LRH	GRH	BTH	RDETH	AETH	ICRC	VCRC
-----	-----	-----	-------	------	------	------

note 1: GRH may or may not appear, depending on the LRH Next Header field

note 2: RDETH appears only for reliable datagram operations

note 3: DETH, RETH, EOP, PYLD and IMM fields are prohibited

Figure 98 Response Format for SENDs, RDMA WRITES

9.7.5.1.9 RDMA READ RESPONSES

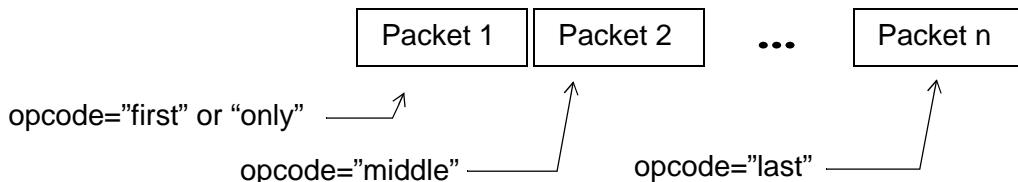
This response format, called a RDMA READ response, is used to acknowledge RDMA READ requests. A RDMA READ response message consists of one or more packets.

C9-117: For an HCA, the PSNs of the RDMA READ response packets must be sequential and monotonically increasing. If the response message consists of more than one packet, the first and last packets of the response message must contain an Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AETH).

o9-69: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, the PSNs of the RDMA READ response packets must be sequential and monotonically increasing. If the response message consists of more than one packet, the first and last packets of the response message must contain an Acknowledge Extended Transport Header (AETH).

C9-118: For an HCA, if the response message contains only a single packet (an “only” packet), then that packet must contain an AETH. This is illustrated in Figure 99.

o9-70: If a TCA implements RDMA functionality, and the response message contains only a single packet (an “only” packet), then that packet must contain an AETH as shown in Figure 99.



Each RDMA READ Response message comprises one or more packets.



Format for all middle packets. PYLD must be (PMTU) bytes long.



Format for first, last or only RDMA READ Response Packet.

If a first packet, PYLD shall be (PMTU) bytes long.

If an only packet, PYLD shall be zero to (PMTU) bytes long.

If a last packet, PYLD shall be one to (PMTU) bytes long.

If a last or only packet, PYLD may be one to (PMTU) bytes long.

note 1: GRH may or may not appear, depending on the LRH:Next Header field

note 2: RDETH appears only for reliable datagram operations

note 3: DETH, RETH, and IMM headers are prohibited

Figure 99

Acknowledge Message Format for RDMA READ

A RDMA READ Response message, besides acknowledging the RDMA READ request itself, also implicitly acknowledges requests preceding the RDMA READ request. The rules governing coalesced ACKs are given in Section [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#).

The arrival of either a first packet or an only packet triggers the implicit acknowledgements of any outstanding request messages as specified in section [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#). This is done

in order to reduce the latency to complete any outstanding request messages.

The arrival of a last packet or an only packet triggers the explicit acknowledgement of the RDMA READ request itself.

9.7.5.2 AETH FORMAT

Acknowledge syndromes are carried in the AETH of the acknowledgement message. The [Table 46 AETH Syndrome Field on page 348](#) below illustrates the syndrome field of the AETH.

C9-119: When generating an AETH, a HCA responder implementing RC service shall encode the AETH Syndrome Field as shown in [Table 46 AETH Syndrome Field on page 348](#).

o9-71: If a TCA responder implements RC service, or if a CA responder implements RD or XRC service, the responder shall encode the AETH Syndrome Field as shown in [Table 46 AETH Syndrome Field on page 348](#).

Table 46 **AETH Syndrome Field**

bit 7	bits 6:5	bits 4:0	Definition
0	0 0	C CCCC	ACK (C CCCC = credit count)
0	0 1	T TTTT	RNR NAK (T TTTT = timer value)
0	1 0	X XXXX	reserved
0	1 1	N NNNN	NAK (N NNNN = NAK code)

C9-119.a1: For an HCA, the msb of the AETH Syndrome Field is reserved and shall be set to zero.

o9-71.a1: For a TCA which provides RC or RD service or a CA which provides XRC service, the msb of the AETH Syndrome Field is reserved and shall be set to zero.

o9-72: If a CA implements Reliable Datagram service, the C CCCC bits are set to zero, since end to end credits are not defined for RD service.

The interpretation of bits [4:0] depends on the code contained in bits [6:5]. Bits [4:0] may contain a positive acknowledgment with or without end-to-end flow control credits (depending on whether the service is RC, XRC or RD) an RNR NAK timer value, a positive acknowledgment without end-to-end credits, or a NAK code.

C CCCC = encoded end-to-end flow control credits

T TTTT = RNR NAK Timer Field - see [Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field on page 354](#)

N NNNN = NAK Code - see [Table 47 NAK Codes on page 349](#)

Code 011 N NNNN (NAK) allows MSNs to be carried with NAK packets.

Acknowledge syndromes are carried in the AETH of the acknowledge message. The [Table 46 AETH Syndrome Field on page 348](#) above illustrates the syndrome field of the AETH.

9.7.5.2.1 END-TO-END FLOW CONTROL CREDIT FIELD

If bits [7:5] of the AETH Syndrome field are zero, then bits [4:0] of the AETH Syndrome field carries encoded end-to-end flow control credits from the responder to the requester. This field is only valid for reliable connections. The encoding 5b1111 means that the credit field is not valid. This encoding is also used for cases where the receive queue does not support End-to-End credits. See Section [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#) for further details.

9.7.5.2.2 NAK CODES

If bits [6:5] of the AETH Syndrome field are b11, then bits [4:0] carry a NAK code. The code guides the requester in selecting a recovery strategy. The following sections describe all the possible NAK Codes. Even though an RNR NAK has its own AETH syndrome (AETH[6:5] = b01), RNR NAK is also described in this section.

The list of valid NAK codes is provided in [Table 47: NAK Codes](#).

Table 47 **NAK Codes**

NAK Code (AETH bits 4:0)	Definition
0 0000	PSN Sequence Error
0 0001	Invalid Request
0 0010	Remote Access Error
0 0011	Remote Operational Error
0 0100	Invalid RD Request
0 0101 - 1 1111	reserved

C9-120: If a requester receives an acknowledge message containing a reserved code, it shall consider the acknowledge packet to be malformed and shall silently drop it. This may eventually cause the requester to time out while waiting for the missing acknowledge packet, at that time it will either re-transmit the original request message, or stop operations on that send queue.

9.7.5.2.3 PSN SEQUENCE ERROR

A sequence error occurs when a responder detects a packet that is out of PSN sequence, i.e. a PSN value that is neither equal to the expected PSN nor within the valid duplicate packet range.

C9-121: The responder, when it constructs NAK packet in response to a sequence error, must insert its expected PSN value in the PSN field of the BTH. This lets the requester back up its send queue to at least the point of the failure and begin re-sending request packets from that point forward.

A PSN sequence error may be retried by the requester a number of times. Once the retry count has expired, the requester's transport notifies its client that it did not succeed in transferring the message. The requester's required behavior once its retry count has expired is given in [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#). The following discussion specifies the behavior before the retry count has expired.

When the responder detects a sequence error there is no impact on the receive queue nor are any WQEs consumed. Instead, the receive queue simply returns the NAK packet to the requester and resumes waiting for an inbound request packet with the correct PSN value.

C9-122: Once a NAK packet for a sequence error has been returned to the requester, the responder shall discard all subsequent requests that do not contain the responder's expected PSN, except for valid duplicate requests.

C9-123: If the responder receives a request packet with a PSN that is logically less than its expected PSN (i.e. a valid duplicate request packet), it shall respond to that request according to the rules for duplicate packet processing.

9.7.5.2.4 REMOTE ACCESS ERROR

A R_Key violation is caused by any or all of the following conditions for either a RDMA READ, RDMA WRITE, or ATOMIC Operation:

- The R_Key field of the RETH is invalid.
- The virtual address and length or type of access specified is outside the locally defined limits associated with the R_Key.
- For an HCA, a protection domain violation is detected.

C9-124: For an HCA responder, when reporting an RDMA remote access error, the BTH field of the acknowledge message must contain the PSN of the request packet that caused the remote access error.

o9-73: If a TCA responder implements RDMA functionality, or if a CA responder supports ATOMIC operations, then when reporting a remote access error, the BTH field of the acknowledge message must contain the PSN of the request packet that caused the remote access error.

The responder's behavior on detecting an access error, beside generating a NAK-Remote Access Error packet, is specified in section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

The requester's behavior on receiving a NAK-Remote Access Error is specified in section [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#).

9.7.5.2.5 INVALID REQUEST

The requester has requested an operation that is outside the established usage of the transport service - generally, this is an OpCode that is not supported by the responder or a request whose length exceeds the available receive buffer space. For example, an RDMA request transmitted to a responder that does not support RDMA would cause an Invalid Request Error. An out-of-sequence OpCode may also cause a NAK-Invalid Request depending on the particular service.

C9-125: When reporting an invalid request, the BTH field of the acknowledge packet must contain the responder's expected PSN value, i.e., the PSN of the request packet that contained the invalid request.

The responder's behavior upon detecting an invalid request, besides generating a NAK-Invalid Request, is given in section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

The requester's behavior on receiving a NAK-Invalid Request is given in section [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#).

9.7.5.2.6 REMOTE OPERATIONAL ERROR

A remote operational error occurs when the responder encounters a situation that prevents its receive queue from completing the current request. The list of error conditions detectable by the responder, and reportable as a remote operational error, is not specified since it is implementation specific. Remote operational errors cannot be caused by anything the requester may have done. Rather, they reflect a fault in the responder.

C9-126: When reporting a remote operational error, the BTH field of the acknowledge message must contain the PSN of the request being executed at the time the responder detected the operational error.

The responder's behavior upon detecting an operational error, besides returning NAK-Remote Operational Error, is given in section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

The requester's behavior when it receives a NAK-Remote Operational Error is specified in section [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#).

9.7.5.2.7 INVALID RD REQUEST

This NAK code is generated when the responder detects a Q_Key or RDD violation while operating in RD service, or if the destination QP is not configured for RD service, or if the destination QP is not in a state where it can accept an inbound packet, or if Remote XRC Domain/XRCETH violation is detected for XRC service (see [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#))

C9-74: If the responder's EE Context detects an invalid P_Key, the request packet shall be silently dropped by the EE Context.

If no P_Key violation is detected, the EE Context forwards the packet to the receive queue specified in the BTH.

C9-127: If the QP as specified in the BTH is not configured for RD service, then a NAK-Invalid RD Request shall be returned.

The receive queue checks the Q_Key of the inbound request packet and also checks that its current RDD value matches that of the EE Context.

If the responder's receive queue detects an invalid Q_Key, or if the receive queue's RDD value does not match that of the EE Context, the responder shall return a NAK-Invalid RD Request to the requester.

The responder's behavior upon detecting either a Q_Key or RDD violation, beside generating a NAK-Invalid RD Request, is specified in section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

The requester's behavior in response to a NAK-Invalid RD Request is specified in section [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#).

9.7.5.2.8 RNR NAK

Under certain circumstances, a receive queue may be temporarily unable to accept an inbound request message. For example, there may not currently be a valid receive WQE posted to the receive queue. When this occurs, the responder may return a response indicating Receiver Not Ready (RNR NAK). Note: the responder may return an RNR NAK for any type of request (e.g. SEND, RDMA READ request, RDMA WRITE request, etc.). On receiving a RNR NAK, the requester may, after waiting for at least the interval specified in the RNR NAK, retry the same request. "The same request" means the precise same request message beginning with the packet with the same PSN as reported by the responder in its RNR NAK packet.

C9-128: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, after receiving an RNR NAK, the requester shall not substitute a different request message by reusing the same PSN.

o9-75: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service or CA implements XRC service, after receiving an RNR NAK, the requester shall not substitute a different request message by reusing the same PSN.

For Reliable Datagram service, the requester may either exactly repeat the request, move the EEC to the Error state, abandon the request or suspend the request as described in Section [9.7.8 Reliable Datagram on page 382](#).

C9-129: An HCA responder using Reliable Connection service, when generating an RNR NAK, shall indicate the appropriate interval in the timer field of the AETH. The value loaded in the timer field of the AETH shall be as shown in [Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field on page 354](#).

o9-76: If a CA responder implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, or if a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, it shall follow this rule: when generating an RNR NAK, the responder shall indicate the appropriate interval in the timer field of the AETH. The value loaded in the timer field of the AETH shall be as shown in [Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field on page 354](#).

C9-130: An HCA requester providing Reliable Connection service, after receiving a RNR NAK, must wait for at least the interval specified in the timer field of the AETH before retrying the request. If the requester fails to wait for the appropriate timeout interval before re-trying the request, the responder may silently drop the packet.

o9-76.a1: An HCA requester providing Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, after receiving a RNR NAK, must wait for at least the interval specified in the timer field of the AETH before retrying the request. If the requester fails to wait for the appropriate timeout interval before re-trying the request, the responder may silently drop the packet.

o9-76.a2: A TCA requester providing Reliable Connection service or XRC service, or a TCA requester providing Reliable Datagram service, after receiving a RNR NAK, must wait for at least the interval specified in the timer field of the AETH before retrying the request. If the requester fails to wait for the appropriate timeout interval before re-trying the request, the responder may silently drop the packet.

C9-131: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

C9-132: An HCA requester using Reliable Connection service shall maintain a 3 bit retry counter which is loaded during connection establishment with information provided by the responder. This counter is used to limit the number of times a requester can retry an operation which was RNR NAK'ed. When a RNR NAK response is received, if the RNR NAK retry counter is not equal to 7 (indicates infinite retry), the requester shall decrement the RNR NAK retry counter. Thereafter, when the retry timer expires, if the retry counter is non-zero, the requester may re-issue the request.

o9-77: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, or if a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection Service, it shall maintain a 3 bit retry counter which is loaded during connection establishment with information provided by the responder. This counter is used to limit the number of times a requester can retry an operation which was RNR NAK'ed. When a RNR NAK response is received, if the RNR NAK retry counter is not equal to 7 (indicates infinite retry), the requester shall decrement the RNR NAK retry counter. Thereafter, when the retry timer expires, if the retry counter is non-zero, the requester may re-issue the request.

A locally detected error is recorded by the requester if the retry counter has decremented to zero at the time that the RNR NAK retry timer expires. See Section [9.9.2.1 Requester Side Error Detection - Locally Detected Errors on page 424](#) for further details.

The timer field is encoded as shown in the Table below.

Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field

RNR Time	Delay in milliseconds	RNR Time	Delay in milliseconds
00000	655.36	10000	2.56
00001	0.01	10001	3.84
00010	0.02	10010	5.12
00011	0.03	10011	7.68
00100	0.04	10100	10.24
00101	0.06	10101	15.36

Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field

RNR Time	Delay in milliseconds	RNR Time	Delay in milliseconds
00110	0.08	10110	20.48
00111	0.12	10111	30.72
01000	0.16	11000	40.96
01001	0.24	11001	61.44
01010	0.32	11010	81.92
01011	0.48	11011	122.88
01100	0.64	11100	163.84
01101	0.96	11101	245.76
01110	1.28	11110	327.68
01111	1.92	11111	491.52

The use of RNR NAK for temporary problems that do not affect the whole message (such as a memory page not present) is not prohibited. In particular, for Reliable Datagram service, an RNR NAK returned in the middle of a SEND request message by a responder may result in the current message being abandoned by the requester and a new message being sent from another queue pair. This may result in unexpected incomplete messages at the responder. These incomplete messages are detected by the responder while executing a RESYNC request, thus allowing the responder to complete the partially completed WQE in error and begin receiving the new request.

A responder should use this feature as a mechanism to delay the incoming request when a local resource is unavailable only rarely. The RNR NAK mechanism consumes bandwidth in that an incoming packet will be aborted and will have to be re-sent.

9.7.6 REQUESTER: RECEIVING RESPONSES

9.7.6.1 VALIDATING INBOUND RESPONSE PACKETS

On receipt of an inbound acknowledge packet, a requester validates the packet as follows:

C9-133: To verify the integrity of the packet, the requester shall validate the packet as specified in Section [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#). Invalid packets shall be silently dropped by the requester.

C9-134: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the PSN shall be examined to detect out of order packets. Since acknowledges may be coalesced as described in section [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#), the PSN is used to detect coalesced responses.

o9-78: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, the PSN of each acknowledge packet shall be examined to detect out of order packets. Since acknowledges may be coalesced as described in section [9.7.5.1.2 Coalesced Acknowledge Messages on page 332](#), the PSN is used to detect coalesced responses.

C9-135: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the validity of the acknowledge syndrome shall be checked according to [Table 47 NAK Codes on page 349](#). A response packet containing a reserved NAK code shall be simply dropped.

o9-79: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, the validity of the acknowledge syndrome shall be checked according to [Table 47 NAK Codes on page 349](#). A response packet containing a reserved NAK code shall be simply dropped.

o9-79.a1: If a CA implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, when receiving a response packet, the requester shall check the destination QPn contained in the BTH against the expected QPn for the current EEC. If the response packet is not destined for the currently active requester side QP, it shall be dropped by the requester.

The requester must also insure that responses are appropriate for the type of operation being performed. For example, in certain congested fabric cases it is possible for an ACK to arrive when an RDMA READ or Atomic response is expected. This can happen even when the PSN contained in the response packet matches the requester's expected response PSN. The converse is also true.

Therefore, the requester should validate that the response packet received is consistent with the outstanding request. If it is not, the requester's behavior should be as described in [Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 428](#).

C9-135.a1: This compliance statement is obsolete.

If the packet is determined to be valid, it is processed by the requester. While processing the acknowledge packet, the requester may encounter local errors. The list of local errors that the requester may encounter when processing the acknowledge message is not specified since it is implementation specific, but includes any error due to a fault on the requester side. The required behaviors for this case are specified in [9.9.2 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 424](#).

Validating the PSN of an inbound response packet relies on identifying three critical points in the PSN sequence. These three points are:

- 1) Requester's maximum forward progress - the logically largest (modulo 2^{24}) PSN of any request sent by the requester. (This includes PSN space allocated for RDMA READ responses.) It marks the "right-hand" edge of the Valid Region.
- 2) Oldest unacknowledged request - the PSN of the oldest outstanding (unacknowledged) request. This represents the maximum forward progress made by the responder, as viewed by the requester. The significance of this PSN is that it marks the end of the duplicate region, i.e. responses with PSNs logically less than this are treated either as invalid or as duplicates.
- 3) Oldest valid request - this point marks the "left-hand" edge of the Valid Region.

See the figure below for an illustration of these three points.

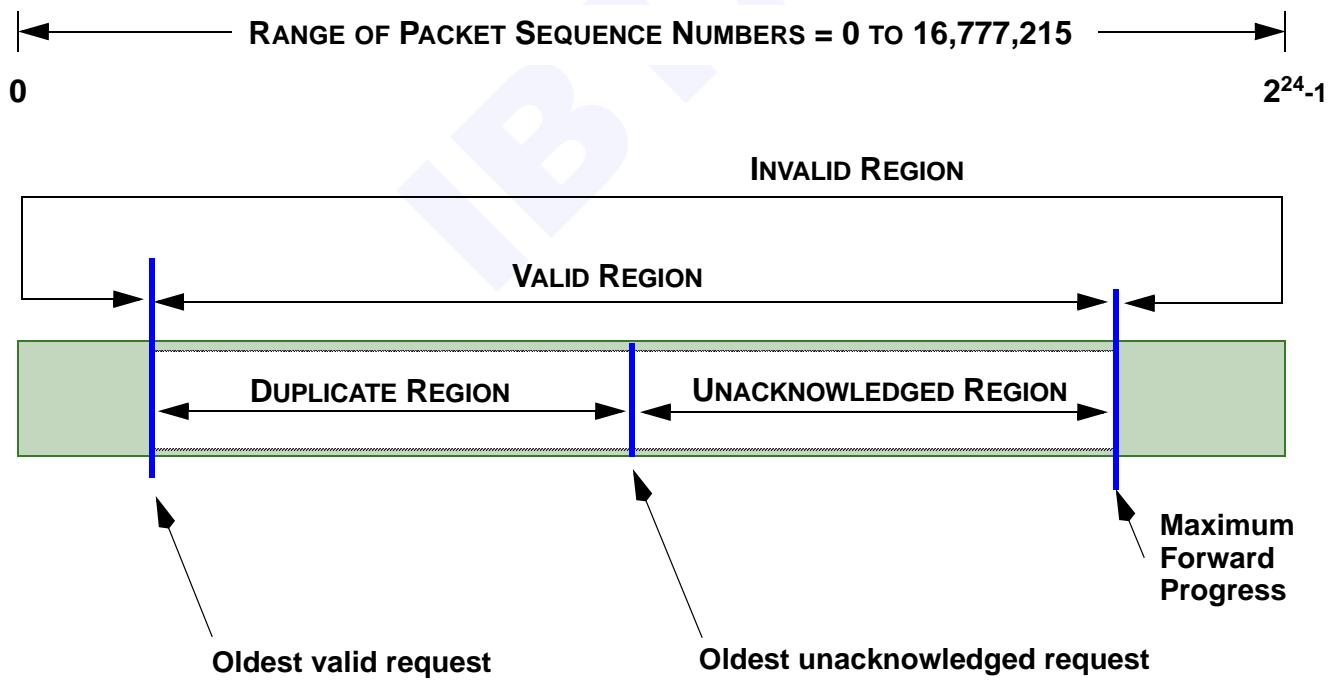


Figure 100

Response Packet PSN Regions

As is the case with request packets, each response packet carries a PSN. The requester, on receiving a response packet, checks the PSN to determine if the response is an expected response or a ghost acknowledge packet. Conceptually, the requester keeps track of the PSN of the oldest

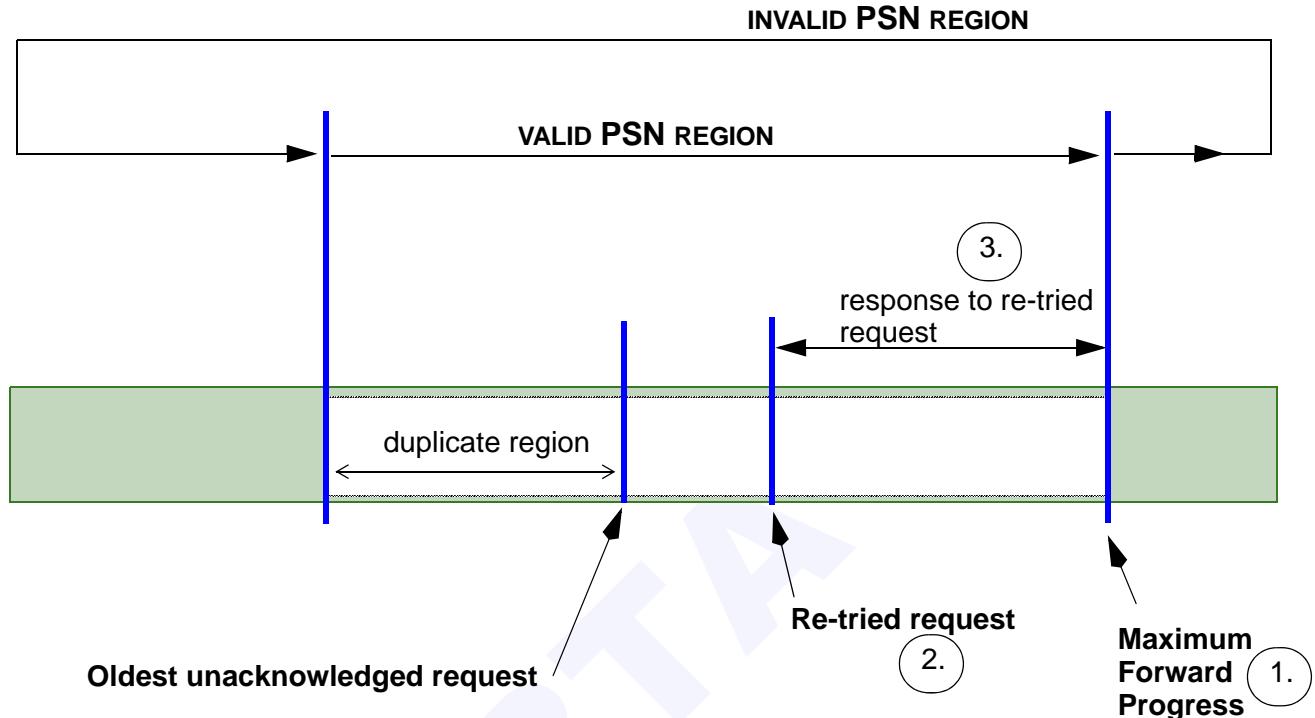
unacknowledged request packet and the logically largest (modulo 2^{24}) PSN sent to date including PSNs reserved for RDMA READ responses. These two PSNs define the endpoints of a range of PSNs identified in the figure above as the Unacknowledged Region. If the PSN of a response packet falls within that range then the packet is an expected response packet. If the response does not fall within that region, then it is considered either a duplicate response and is handled according to the rules defined in Section [9.7.5.1.4 Acknowledging Duplicate Requests on page 336](#), or it a ghost (invalid) acknowledge packet and is dropped by the requester.

C9-136: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, ghost acknowledge packets shall be dropped by the requester.

o9-80: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, or XRC service, ghost acknowledge packets shall be dropped by the requester.

9.7.6.1.1 PSNs FOR RETRIED REQUESTS

Under some circumstances (described below) the requester may need to retry a request. In PSN terms, this means that the requester may re-send a packet with a PSN which is logically less (modulo 2^{24}) than the maximum PSN transmitted to date. In the figure below, this is identified as the Re-tried request.



1. Requester advances to the point of maximum forward progress.
2. Due to timeout, the request “backs up” and re-tries a request.
3. Meanwhile, the responder may have continued to make progress. Thus, the response it returns may have a PSN logically greater than the PSN of the re-tried request. (However, it cannot be greater than the requester’s point of maximum forward progress.)

Figure 101 Three PSN Paradigm

During the process of retrying a request, the requester should maintain a means of marking the point of furthest PSN advance (high water mark) even though it is logically “backing up” the PSN sequence when it re-tries a request. This is necessary because the response to the re-tried request may have a PSN which is logically greater than the PSN of the re-tried request. This can happen because under some circumstances the responder might interpret the re-tried request as a duplicate request. If so, it (the responder) is obligated to return the PSN marking its furthest point of advance, which may be beyond the PSN of the re-tried request.

The need for the requester to maintain these three pointers (point of maximum advance, PSN of the oldest unacknowledged request, and the PSN of the re-tried request) is referred to as the three PSN paradigm. Although various implementations may find different ways of implementing the three PSN paradigm, nonetheless, a requester must account for the fact that a responder may return a response to a re-tried request with a PSN which is logically greater (further advanced) than the PSN of the re-tried request itself.

9.7.6.1.2 REQUESTER RESPONSE TO A NAK MESSAGE

The requester's reaction to a negative response message depends on the NAK code that is returned, and whether the queue pair is configured for reliable connected, XRC, or reliable datagram service.

A NAK-Sequence error triggers an automatic retry of the request. The PSN in the response packet is the requester's indication of the request packet that the responder believes it missed, thus, the requester can retry that request. To prevent the requester from retrying the same request forever, the requester maintains a 3 bit retry counter which is used to count the number of times a particular request packet has been retried and timed out. See Section [9.9.2.1 Requester Side Error Detection - Locally Detected Errors on page 424](#) for a full description of the retry counter.

C9-137: An HCA requester using Reliable Connection service shall decrement its 3 bit retry counter each time the responder returns a NAK-Sequence error for a given request packet. The counter shall be re-loaded whenever the given outstanding request is cleared. If automatic path migration is not supported, and if a NAK-Sequence error is returned once more, then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

o9-80.a1: An HCA requester which supports Reliable Datagram service or XRC service shall decrement its 3 bit retry counter each time the responder returns a NAK-Sequence error for a given request packet. The counter shall be re-loaded whenever the given outstanding request is cleared. If automatic path migration is not supported, and if a NAK-Sequence error is returned once more, then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

o9-81: A TCA requester which implements Reliable Connection service or Reliable Datagram service or XRC service shall decrement its 3 bit retry counter each time the responder returns a NAK-Sequence error for a given request packet. The counter shall be re-loaded whenever the given outstanding request is cleared. If automatic path migration is not supported, and if a NAK-Sequence error is returned once more, then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

o9-82: If a CA supports automatic path migration, then the following is required. If a NAK-Sequence error is returned after the retry counter has

1 decremented to zero, then the channel adapter shall attempt an automatic
2 path migration. Following the automatic path migration, the requester
3 shall reload the retry counter and begin the process over again. If the re-
4 quester still does not succeed in sending the request after several retries,
5 then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

6 For other NAK packets, the response of the send queue depends on
7 whether the queue is providing Reliable Datagram or Reliable Con-
8 nected/XRC service.

9
10 **Reliable Datagram Behavior:** Reliable datagrams require the use of an
11 EE Context that maintains the packet sequence numbers and thus en-
12 sures reliable delivery of requests. The rules for responding to a NAK en-
13 sure that the current PSN at the requester and the expected PSN at the
14 responder remain in sync. Therefore, the connection between the re-
15 quester's EE Context and responder's EE Context survives. This allows
16 the connection to continue to service other Send/Receive QPs.

17 Depending on the cause and the operation in question, the EE context
18 may undertake any of the following options after detecting a failed request
19 packet:

- 20
- 21 a) It may retry the same failed packet from the same QP (note that
22 not all NAKs can be retried, and for those that can be retried there
23 are limits to the number of times a retry is possible), or
 - 24 b) It may transition the QP and the EE Context to the Error state,
25 completing the failed request message in error, or
 - 26 c) It may place the current QP in the SQEr state and generate a RE-
27 SYNC request according to the rules detailed in Section [9.7.8 Reliable
28 Datagram on page 382](#). In this case, the failed WQE will
29 usually end up being completed in error.

30
31 This last strategy is designed to allow the requester side EE Context to
32 continue in service, thus avoiding the need to tear down the EE Context-
33 to-EE Context connection.

34
35 If the “same failed packet” is to be retried, the requester is not required to
36 begin its retransmission sequence beginning with the PSN indicated in the
37 responder’s NAK; instead, it may begin its retransmission with an earlier
38 request packet. These earlier request packets are treated by the re-
39 sponder as normal duplicate packets causing no ill side effects.

40
41 See section [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#) for a complete
42 description of the errors and the EE Context’s subsequent behavior.

C9-138: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the requester must receive and discard any duplicate acknowledge messages with no ill side effects.

o9-83: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, or XRC service, the requester must receive and discard any duplicate acknowledge messages with no ill side effects.

Reliable Connected Behavior: For reliable connections (including XRC), the requester has only two possible alternatives when it receives a NAK. It may either retry the same request packet, or it may mark the current WQE as completed in error and notify its client. Note that not all NAKs can be retried.

If the requester retries the same request packet, it is not required to begin its retransmission sequence beginning with the PSN indicated in the responder's NAK; instead, it may begin its retransmission with an earlier request packet. These earlier request packets are treated by the responder as normal duplicate packets causing no ill side effects.

9.7.6.1.3 DETECTING LOST ACKNOWLEDGE MESSAGES AND TIMEOUTS

Under some error conditions the requester does not receive an acknowledge message in response to one or more of its requests. This can occur for one of three reasons:

- 1) The responder generated an acknowledge message that was subsequently lost in the fabric, or,
- 2) The responder failed for some reason preventing it from generating an acknowledge message, or
- 3) The original request message was lost in the fabric before it was received by the responder.

All three of these conditions are detected by the requester as a lost acknowledge message.

Often, these errors are corrected automatically due to acknowledge coalescing; the next acknowledge received by the requester serves to implicitly acknowledge all outstanding requests.

However, there are several cases where a lost acknowledge message is not automatically recovered by the coalesced acknowledge rules. For example, a NAK message lost in the fabric will not be resolved via acknowledge coalescing because the responder side rules require that the responder may have no more than one NAK message outstanding at a given time.

C9-139: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, to detect missing responses, every Send queue is required to implement a Transport Timer to time outstanding requests.

o9-84: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA implements XRC service to detect missing responses, every Send queue is required to implement a Transport Timer to time outstanding requests.

o9-85: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, to detect missing responses, every EE Context is required to implement a Transport Timer to time outstanding requests.

Because of variabilities in the fabric, scheduling algorithms and architecture of the channel adapters and many other factors, it is not possible, nor desirable, to time outstanding requests with a high degree of precision. Nonetheless, the Transport Timer is an integral element of the ACK/NAK protocol by providing a deterministic means to detect lost requests or responses.

The requester need not separately time each request launched into the fabric, but instead simply begins the timer whenever it is expecting a response. Once started, the timer is restarted each time an acknowledge packet is received as long as there are outstanding expected responses. The timer does not detect the loss of a particular expected acknowledge packet, but rather simply detects the persistent absence of response packets.

The timer measures the lesser of:

- the time since the requester sent a packet with the AckReq bit set in the BTH,
- or the time since the last valid acknowledge packet arrived.

The operation is as follows.

The requester starts the timer running whenever the timer is not currently running AND:

- 1) The requester sets the AckReq bit in a Send or RDMA WRITE request or,
- 2) The requester generates an RDMA READ request or,
- 3) The requester generates an ATOMIC Operation request.

Thereafter, the requester restarts the timer each time it receives a new inbound acknowledge packet as long as there are still outstanding expected responses.

The timer is stopped whenever there are no outstanding expected responses.

An “expected response” is created by the requester by setting the AckReq bit in a request packet or by generating an RDMA READ request or an ATOMIC Operation request. An outstanding expected response is a response to any request packet which has the AckReq bit set in the BTH, or any RDMA READ request or ATOMIC Operation request, which has not been acknowledged.

Each QP has a single Local ACK Timeout value associated with it which is used to derive the Transport Timer timeout interval T_{tr} .

C9-140: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, the Transport Timer timeout interval, T_{tr} shall be defined to be 4.096 uS *
 $2^{(Local\ ACK\ Timeout)}$. Local ACK Timeout shall be a 5 bit value, with zero meaning that the timer is disabled. The minimum acceptable value of Local ACK Timeout, other than zero, shall be defined by the CA vendor. If a non-zero Local ACK Timeout value is loaded in QP context which is less than the minimum supported by the CA, then the CA may use its minimum value.

C9-141: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, a QP shall provide facilities to detect a timeout condition.

The timeout interval should begin after a request has been scheduled. The timeout condition, T_o , should be detected in no less than the timeout interval, T_{tr} , and no more than four times the timeout interval, $4T_{tr}$.

Thus, $T_{tr} \leq T_o \leq 4T_{tr}$.

Once a timeout for a given request packet is detected, the requester may retry the request.

C9-142: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, to prevent the requester from retrying the request forever, the requester shall maintain a 3 bit retry counter which is used to count the number of times a particular request packet has been retried and timed out. This counter shall be decremented each time the transport timer expires for a given request packet. The counter shall be re-loaded whenever a given outstanding request is cleared.

See Section [9.9.2.1 Requester Side Error Detection - Locally Detected Errors on page 424](#) for a full description of the retry counter.

C9-143: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, if automatic path migration is not supported, and if the transport timer expires

after the retry counter has decremented to zero, then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

o9-86: If automatic path migration is supported, and if the transport timer expires after the retry counter has decremented to zero, then the channel adapter shall attempt an automatic path migration. Following the automatic path migration, the requester shall reload the transport timer retry counter and begin the process over again. If the requester still does not succeed in sending the request after several retries, then the requester shall declare a locally detected error.

o9-87: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA implements XRC service, then the five preceding **HCA** compliance statements (that is, timeout rules for outstanding requests) shall be applicable to that TCA or CA.

o9-88: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, then the five preceding **HCA** compliance statements (that is, timeout rules for outstanding requests) shall be applicable to that CA. In that case, the functionality described applies to the EE Context rather than the Queue Pair.

9.7.6.1.4 DUPLICATE ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

[9.7.1 Packet Sequence Numbers \(PSN\) on page 305](#) describes how duplicate requests are generated. These requests may result in duplicate acknowledgments being returned by the responder. The responder may also send unsolicited Acknowledgments that appear to be "Ghost Acknowledgments" from the point of view of the requestor.

C9-144: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, if the responder is configured to generate end-to-end flow control credits, then the requester must extract end-to-end flow control credits from a duplicate acknowledgment.

o9-89: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, and if the responder is configured to generate end-to-end flow control credits, then the requester must extract end-to-end flow control credits from a duplicate acknowledgment.

C9-145: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, duplicate acknowledgments shall be discarded.

o9-90: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, duplicate acknowledgments shall be discarded.

See Section [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#) for a complete description.

9.7.7 RELIABLE CONNECTIONS

A reliable connection is a connection created between a single local QP and a single remote QP and that can guarantee that messages are delivered at most once, in order and without corruption (in the absence of unrecoverable errors) between the local and remote QPs.

Extended Reliable Connection Service (XRC) has many of the same characteristics as reliable connected service as described in section “[XRC](#)” on page 399.

Table 49 Reliable Connected Service Characteristics

Property / Level of Reliability	Support
Corrupt data detected	Yes
Data delivered exactly once (Except for an unrecoverable error - that is reported to the application)	Yes
Data order guaranteed	Yes
Data loss detected	Yes
RDMA Support	Yes - both Read and Write
State of Send/RDMA WRITE when request completed	Completion on remote end node
ATOMIC Support	Optional
Send with Invalidate Operation Type Support	Optional
Multi-packet message support	Yes
Number of messages in flight per QP	2^{23} (maximum)
Number of packets allowed in flight per QP	2^{23} (maximum)
Number of messages enqueued per QP	Implementation limited only
Maximum Message Size	2^{31} Bytes

The desired reliability characteristics are provided by application of packet sequence numbers and the ACK/NAK protocol.

C9-146: For an HCA, each QP configured for Reliable Connection service must conform to the requirements specified in section [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#), the characteristics given in [Table 49 Reliable Connected Service Characteristics on page 366](#), and any additional requirements given in this section.

o9-91: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

o9-91.a1: If a CA implements XRC service then it shall comply with the equivalent of compliance statements C9-146, C9-147, C9-148, C9-149 for XRC service.

9.7.7.1 GENERATING MSN VALUE

For Reliable Connected service, the Message Sequence Number is a number returned by the responder to the requester indicating the number of messages completed by the responder. The MSN is carried in the three least significant bytes of the AETH. The MSN is provided to the requester as a service to assist it in completing WQEs by informing the requester of the messages that have been completed by the responder.

C9-147: An HCA responder using Reliable Connection service shall return an MSN in the AETH of any response packet which contains an AETH.

o9-92: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, it shall return an MSN in the AETH of any response packet which contains an AETH.

Logically, the requester associates a sequential Send Sequence Number (SSN) with each WQE posted to the send queue. The SSN bears a one-to-one relationship to the MSN returned by the responder in each response packet. Therefore, when the requester receives a response, it interprets the MSN as representing the SSN of the most recent request completed by the responder to determine which send WQE(s) can be completed.

Note that SSN as described above is a logical concept only which is given to convey the concept of how the MSN is applied; an implementation is not required to implement it as described.

Following initialization, the first WQE posted to the Send queue has an SSN of one assigned to it. The responder initializes its MSN counter to zero. Thereafter, the responder increments its 24-bit MSN value whenever it completes execution of an inbound request message. This is illustrated in Figure below.

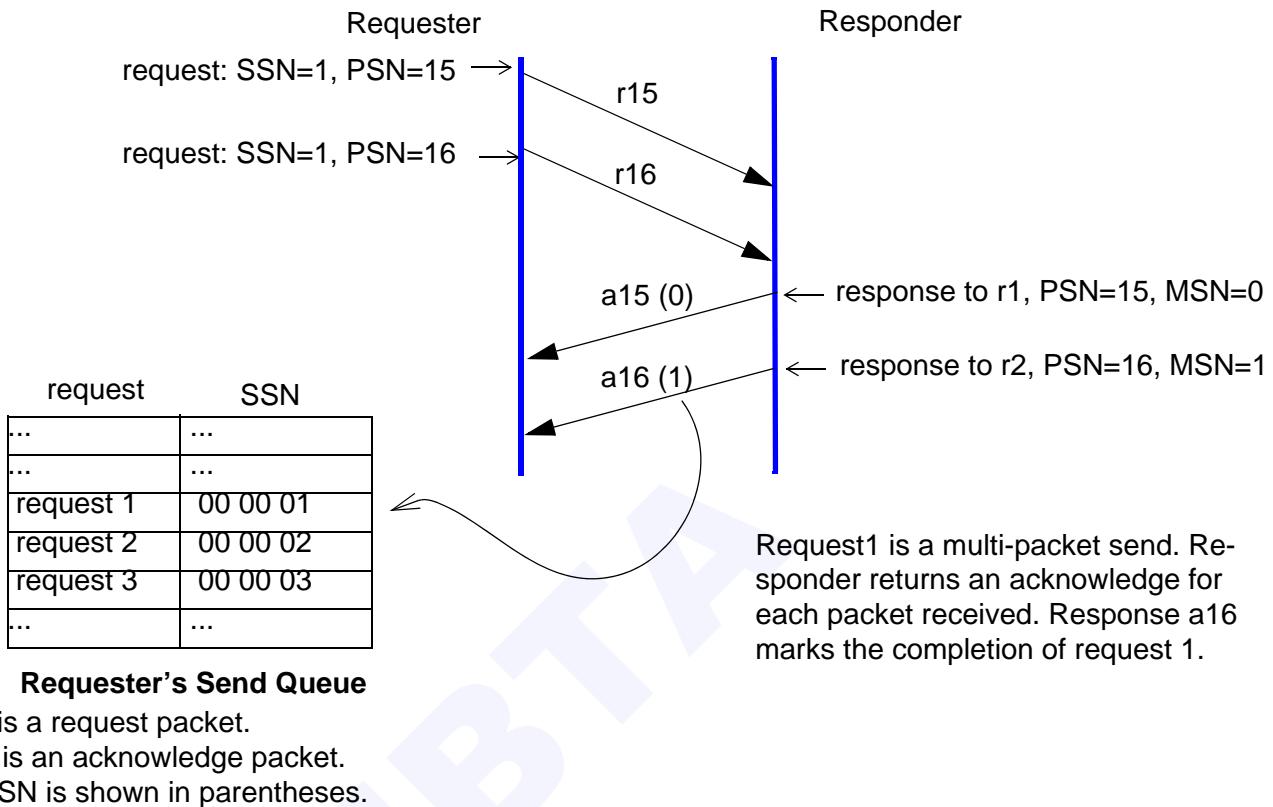


Figure 102

Responder Initializes MSN to

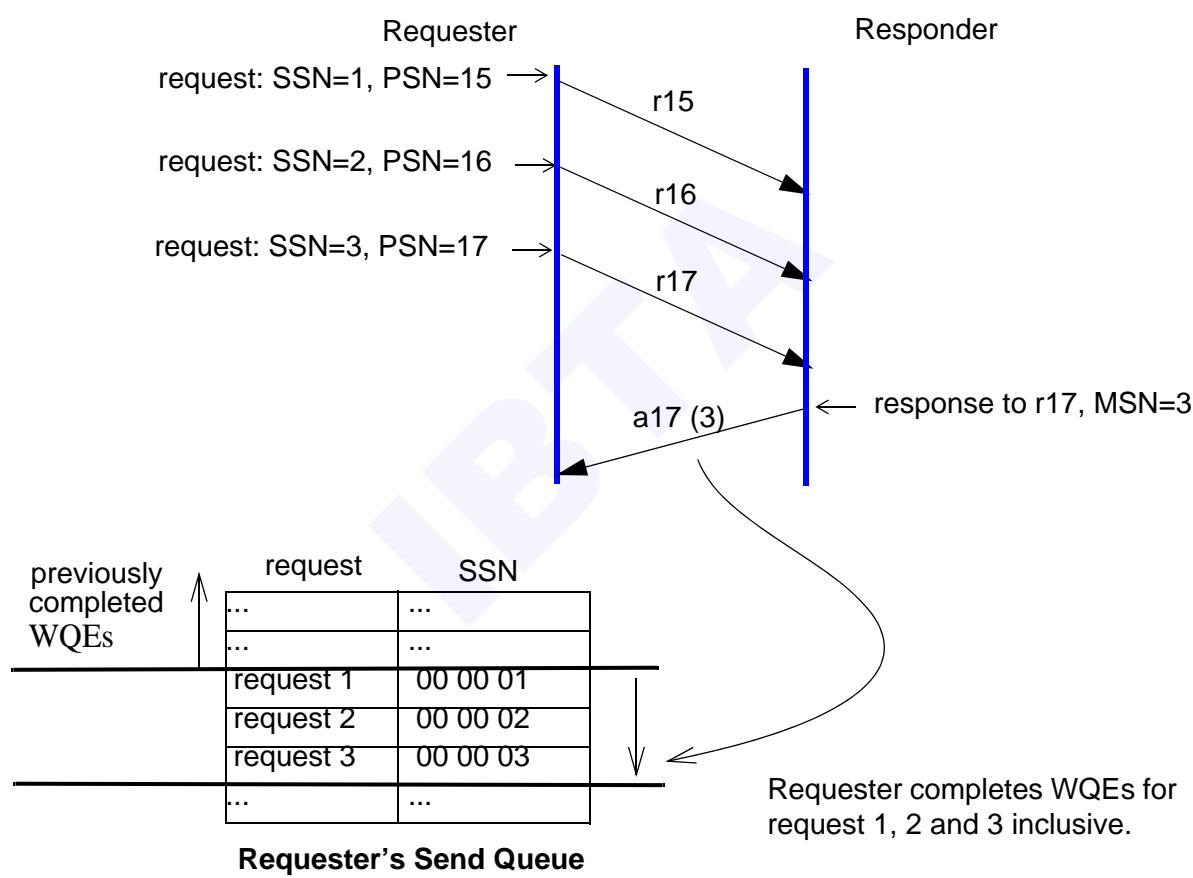
C9-148: An HCA responder using Reliable Connection service shall initialize its MSN value to zero. The responder shall increment its MSN whenever it has successfully completed processing a new, valid request message. The MSN shall not be incremented for duplicate requests. The incremented MSN shall be returned in the last or only packet of an RDMA READ or Atomic response. For RDMA READ requests, the responder may increment its MSN after it has completed validating the request and before it has begun transmitting any of the requested data, and may return the incremented MSN in the AETH of the first response packet. The MSN shall be incremented only once for any given request message.

o9-93: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, it shall calculate and update MSN as described in the preceding compliance statement.

9.7.7.1.1 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR ON RECEIVING A NEW MSN

As described above, the existence of a new MSN value in a response packet may be used by the requester as a signal to complete certain

WQEs posted to its send queue. Since the responder may choose to coalesce acknowledges, a single response packet may in fact acknowledge several request messages. Thus, when it receives a new MSN, the requester begins evaluating WQEs on its send queue beginning with the oldest outstanding WQE and progressing forward. This is illustrated in the figure below for the case where there are no outstanding RDMA READ requests or ATOMIC Operation requests on the send queue.

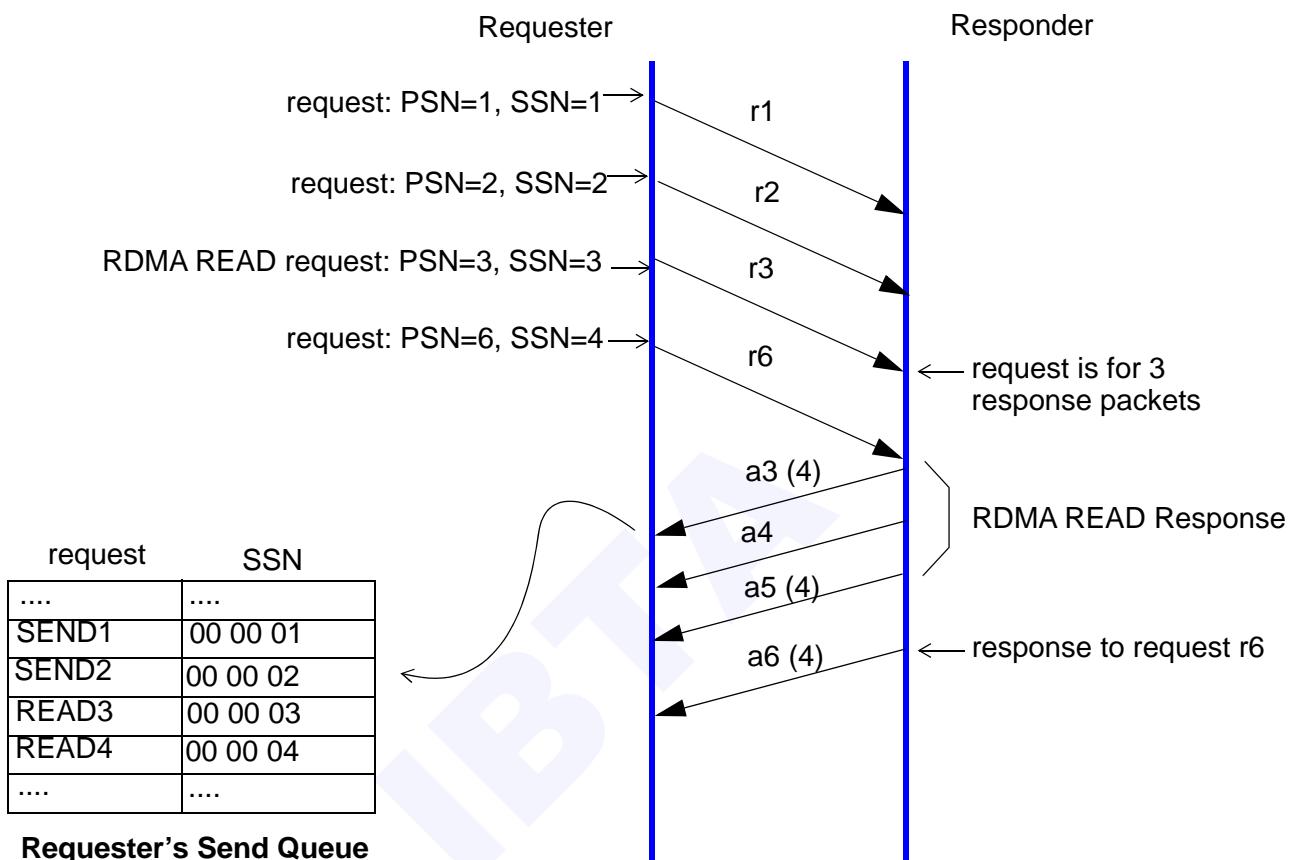


'r' is a request packet.
'a' is an acknowledge packet.
MSN is shown in parentheses.

Figure 103 Requester Behavior - Completing WQEs

For the case where there are outstanding RDMA READ requests or ATOMIC Operation requests, the situation is slightly more complex. In this case, the requester only completes outstanding WQEs up to either the first outstanding RDMA READ request, ATOMIC Operation request, or

WQE whose SSN matches the MSN in the response packet, whichever comes first. This is because both RDMA READ requests and ATOMIC



Requester's Send Queue

Since RDMA READS are loosely ordered, it is likely that the responder will “complete” SEND4 before it finishes returning the READ response data (a3, a4, a5). Nonetheless, a3 has an MSN of 4 indicating that it the responder has completed SEND1, SEND2 and SEND4.

However, the requester may only complete SEND1 and SEND2 because of the presence of READ3 in the send queue.

'r' is a request packet.

'a' is an acknowledge packet.

MSN is shown in parentheses.

Figure 104 Limitation on Completing Send Queue WQEs

Operation requests require an explicit response and thus cannot be completed until such an explicit response is received.

C9-149: For an HCA responder using Reliable Connection service, the MSN counter shall be inserted in the AETH regardless of whether the response is a positive acknowledgment, a negative acknowledgment or a duplicate acknowledgment.

1
2
3
4
o9-94: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, the
5 MSN counter shall be inserted in the AETH regardless of whether the re-
6 sponse is a positive acknowledgment, a negative acknowledgment or a
7 duplicate acknowledgment.

9.7.7.2 END-TO-END (MESSAGE LEVEL) FLOW CONTROL

8 IBA provides an end-to-end (or message level) flow control capability for
9 reliable connections that can be used by a responder to optimize the use
10 of its receive resources. Essentially, a requester cannot send a request
11 message unless it has appropriate credits to do so.

12 Encoded credits are transported from the responder to the requester in an
13 acknowledge message in the Syndrome field of the AETH. The credits
14 carried in the AETH are with respect to the MSN field of the same AETH;
15 therefore proper interpretation of the credit field also requires interpreta-
16 tion of the MSN field. See Section [9.7.5.2 AETH Format on page 348](#) for
17 a full description of the appropriate AETH fields.

18 Each credit represents the receive resources needed to receive one in-
19 bound request message. Specifically, each credit represents one WQE
20 posted to the receive queue. The presence of a receive credit does not,
21 however, necessarily mean that enough physical memory has been allo-
22 cated. For example, it is still possible, even if sufficient credits are avail-
23 able, to encounter a condition where there is insufficient memory available
24 to receive the entire inbound message.

25 The shared receive queue concept, on the other hand, allows a set of re-
26 ceive queues to draw from a common pool of receive WQEs - the shared
27 receive queue. Thus, there is no practical way for any of the individual re-
28 ceive queues to accurately gauge the number of WQEs available in the
29 shared receive queue. For this reason, the end-to-end flow control mech-
30 anism is disabled for any QP which is associated with a shared receive
31 queue.

- 32 1) The end-to-end credit mechanism applies only to Reliable Connected
33 service.
- 34 2) End-to-End credits are generated by a responder's receive queue
35 and consumed by a requester's send queue.
- 36 3) Requirements on a CA for supporting end-to-end flow control are
37 given in [Chapter 17: Channel Adapters on page 1187](#). HCA receive
38 queues must generate end-to-end credits (except for QPs that are
39 associated with a Shared Receive Queue), but TCA receive queues
40 are not required to do so. If the TCA's receive queue generates End-
41 to-End credits, then the corresponding send queue must receive and
42 respond to those credits.

- 4) Credits are issued on a per message basis, without regard to the size of the message.
- 5) End-to-End credits are carried in the AETH as an encoded 5-bit field.
- 6) The responder may send credits to the requester asynchronously by using an Unsolicited acknowledge packet. An unsolicited acknowledge packet is created by re-sending the most recently sent acknowledge packet.

C9-150: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C9-150.2.1](#):

C9-150.2.1: For QPs that are not associated with an SRQ, each HCA receive queue shall generate end-to-end flow control credits. If a QP is associated with an SRQ, the HCA receive queue shall not generate end-to-end flow control credits.

o9-95: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o9-95.2.1](#):

o9-95.2.1: Each TCA receive queue may generate end-to-end credits except for QPs that are associated with an SRQ. If a TCA supports SRQ, the TCA must not generate End-to-End Flow Control Credits for QPs associated with an SRQ.

C9-151: If a TCA's given receive queue generates End-to-End credits, then the corresponding send queue shall receive and respond to those credits. This is a requirement on each send queue of a CA.

9.7.7.2.1 TRANSFERRING CREDITS FROM RESPONDER TO REQUESTER

Two mechanisms are defined for transporting credits from the responder's receive queue to the requester's send queue. The credits can be piggy-backed onto an existing acknowledge message, or a special unsolicited acknowledge message can be generated by the responder. Piggybacked credits are those credits that are carried in the AETH field of an already scheduled acknowledge packet.

Piggybacked Credits:

Piggybacking of end-to-end credits refers to transferring credits to the requester in the AETH of a normal acknowledge packet. Credits are carried in AETH Syndrome[4:0]. Credits can be piggybacked onto any acknowledge packet when the MSN field in the AETH is also valid.

Unsolicited Acknowledge Packet:

From a PSN perspective, an unsolicited acknowledge message appears to the requester like a duplicate of the most recent positive acknowledge

message. However, it always has an opcode of Acknowledge even if the most recent positive acknowledge was an RDMA READ Response or Atomic Response. Since the ACK/NAK protocol prohibits the responder from sending duplicate negative acknowledge packets (NAKs), an unsolicited acknowledge cannot be created by re-sending a NAK packet.

An unsolicited acknowledge may be sent by the responder at any time. The requester's send queue simply recovers the credit field and the MSN from the most recently received acknowledge packet.

Since an unsolicited acknowledge packet appears to the requester as a duplicate response, it has no effect on the requester other than the transfer of the credits.

C9-152: The MSN field of the unsolicited acknowledge packet must have a valid MSN field.

9.7.7.2.2 NEGOTIATING CONNECTIONS: INITIAL CREDITS

For each connection established, the use (or not) of end-to-end flow control is established separately for each direction. The capabilities of the receive queue determine the flow control characteristics for that half of the connection.

C9-153: If the receive queue signals that it is expecting to generate credits, then the corresponding send queue must observe the end-to-end flow control rules. If, on the other hand, the receive queue signals that it will not generate end-to-end flow control credits, then the corresponding send queue may transmit request messages at will without regard for credits. This is a requirement on each send queue of a CA.

C9-154: If a TCA's receive queue does not generate End-to-End credits, it shall place the value 5b11111 in AETH Syndrome[4:0] signalling that the credit field is invalid.

o9-95.2.2: If a CA supports SRQ and a QP provides reliable connection service and is associated with an SRQ, then the QP must not generate end-to-end credits and shall place the value 5b11111 in AETH Syndrome[4:0] signalling that the credit field is invalid.

C9-155: When the receive queue is in the RESET state, the transport shall set the initial credit count to zero. Once the queue pair has transitioned to the INITIALIZED, RTR, SQD or RTS states, it shall increment its credit count for each receive WQE posted.

Once it is in the RTR, SQD or RTS states, the responder may transfer these credits to the requester by using unsolicited acknowledges.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Normally an unsolicited acknowledge is created by re-sending the most recently sent positive acknowledge packet with an updated credit field. At initialization time however, no acknowledge packets have yet been sent so the normal method for creating an unsolicited acknowledge cannot be used. Therefore, at initialization time, an unsolicited acknowledge is created by subtracting “1” from the initial PSN. Thus, if the PSN is initialized to 0x000000 when the receive queue is in RESET state, then the PSN of the initial unsolicited acknowledge shall be 0xFFFFFFF. “Initialization time”, in this context means the interval beginning when the receive queue has transitioned out of the RESET state and has not yet sent an acknowledge packet in either the RTR, SQD or RTS states.

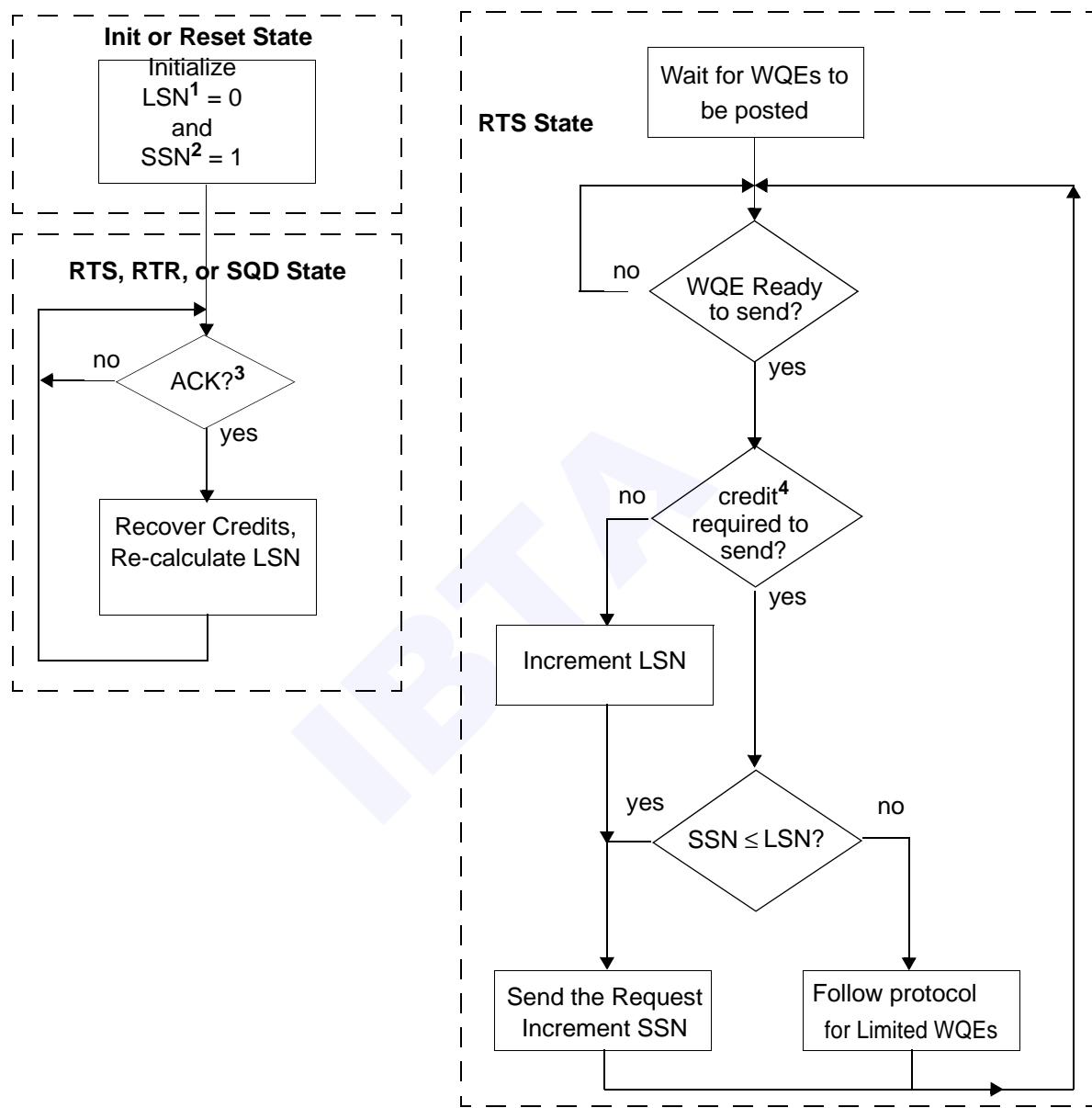
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
To the send queue which receives this initial unsolicited acknowledge packet, it will appear as a “ghost” acknowledge packet [Figure 100 Response Packet PSN Regions on page 357](#). The requester’s send queue may accept the MSN and credits contained in the unsolicited acknowledge packet but ignore the rest of the packet. This is an exception to the normal rules for ghost responses which require that ghost acknowledge packets be dropped.

23
24
25
26
27
28
29
The above paragraph notwithstanding, responsibility for recovering initial credits from the responder shall lie with the requester; if the responder provides initial credits by using an unsolicited acknowledge, the requester may accept those as its initial credits in satisfaction of its responsibility to recover initial credits.

30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
C9-156: If the responder does not provide initial credits, the requester shall behave as specified in Section [9.7.7.2.5 Requester Behavior - Limited Send WQEs on page 381](#)

40
41
42
Figures [Figure 105 Requester End-to-End Credit Processes on page 375](#) and [Figure 106 Responder End-to-End Credit Initialization Process on page 376](#) describe this behavior. Note that these figures do not depict all

normal state transitions for the receive and send queues. These are fully specified in the Software Interface chapter.



1) LSN = Limit Sequence Number. This is described below.

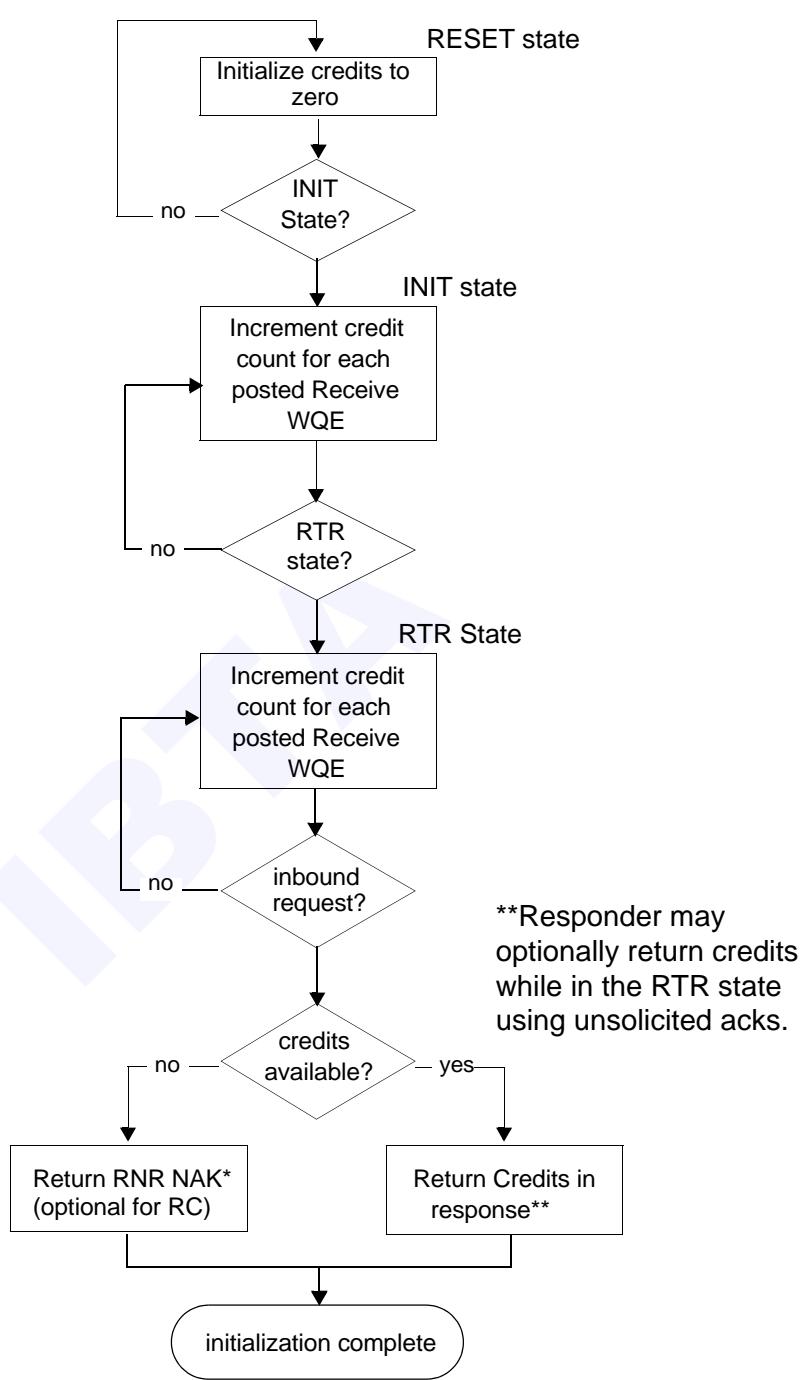
2) SSN = Send Sequence Number. This is described below.

3) Any ACK or unsolicited ACK with a valid MSN

4) a credit is required for a “Send” or “RDMA Write with immediate”.

Figure 105

Requester End-to-End Credit Processes

**Figure 106 Responder End-to-End Credit Initialization**

9.7.7.2.3 RESPONDER ALGORITHM FOR CALCULATING CREDITS

1
2
3
4
5
C9-157: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
[C9-157.2.1:](#)

6
7
8
9
10
11
12
C9-157.2.1: For an HCA using Reliable Connection service on a QP that
13 is not associated with an SRQ, the receive queue shall increment its credit
14 count for each WQE posted to the receive queue. It shall decrement its
15 credit count for each inbound request message received which consumes
16 a WQE. Thus, the responder does not adjust its credit count when it re-
17 ceives an inbound RDMA READ request, an RDMA WRITE request
18 without Immediate data or an ATOMIC Operation request. If the receive
19 queue is associated with an SRQ, the responder does not adjust its credit
20 count regardless of the WQEs that may be posted to the receive queue.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
o9-96: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, and if the re-
20 ceive queue generates end-to-end flow control credits, it shall increment
21 its credit count for each WQE posted to the receive queue. It shall decre-
22 ment its credit count for each inbound request message received which
23 consumes a WQE. Thus, the responder does not adjust its credit count
24 when it receives an RDMA READ request, an RDMA WRITE request
25 without Immediate data or an ATOMIC Operation request.

26
27
28
29
30
31
C9-158: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
[C9-158.2.1:](#)

32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
C9-158.2.1: For an HCA using Reliable Connection service on a QP that
32 is not associated with an SRQ, for each acknowledge message gener-
33 ated, either a normal acknowledge message or an unsolicited acknowl-
34 edge message, the receive queue shall insert its current encoded credit
35 count as shown in [Table 50 End-to-End Flow Control Credit Encoding on](#)
36 [page 378](#), in AETH Syndrome[4:0]. For example, if the receive queue has
37 five credits available, it shall insert the 5 bit value b00100 in the AETH. It
38 also includes its current MSN value. If the QP is associated with an SRQ,
39 the receive queue shall insert the 5 bit value 5b11111 in the AETH

40
41
42
o9-97: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, and if the re-
43 ceive queue generates end-to-end flow control credits, for each acknowl-
44 edge message generated, either a normal acknowledge message or an
45 unsolicited acknowledge message, it shall insert its current encoded
46 credit count as shown in [Table 50 End-to-End Flow Control Credit En-](#)
47 [coding on page 378](#), in AETH Syndrome[4:0]. For example, if the receive
48 queue has five credits available, it shall insert the 5 bit value b00100 in the
49 AETH. It also includes its current MSN value. If a TCA does not generate
50 end-to-end flow control, it shall insert the value as shown in [Table 50 End-](#)
51 [to-End Flow Control Credit Encoding on page 378](#) to indicate that the
52 credit count field is invalid.

9.7.7.2.4 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR

The presence or absence of credits limits the sender's ability to transmit requests which will consume a receive WQE (SEND requests or RDMA WRITE requests with immediate data).

C9-159: The send queue's behavior when it has no credits available to it shall be as specified in Section [9.7.7.2.5 Requester Behavior - Limited Send WQEs on page 381](#).

The requester may always send a request which does not consume a receive WQE (RDMA WRITE request without immediate data, RDMA READ request, or ATOMIC Operation request) without regard to credits.

C9-160: The requester shall not violate the normal transaction ordering rules as stated throughout this specification, particularly in Section [9.5 Transaction Ordering on page 291](#).

In particular, the requester may not search the send queue looking for requests which don't consume a receive WQE and transmit those requests out of order, nor may the requester violate the rules governing fenced WQEs.

The available credits are encoded and carried in AETH Syndrome[4:0]; the MSN is carried in the least significant 3 bytes of the AETH. [Table 50](#) below shows, for each valid encoded credit, the actual number of credits.

Table 50 End-to-End Flow Control Credit Encoding

Credit	Valued added to MSN to get LSN	Credit	Valued added to MSN to get LSN
00000	0	10000	256
00001	1	10001	384
00010	2	10010	512
00011	3	10011	768
00100	4	10100	1024
00101	6	10101	1536

Table 50 End-to-End Flow Control Credit Encoding

Credit	Value added to MSN to get LSN	Credit	Value added to MSN to get LSN
00110	8	10110	2048
00111	12	10111	3072
01000	16	11000	4096
01001	24	11001	6144
01010	32	11010	8192
01011	48	11011	12288
01100	64	11100	16384
01101	96	11101	24576
01110	128	11110	32768
01111	192	11111	invalid

Logically, the requester associates a sequential Send Sequence Number (SSN) with each WQE posted to the send queue. The SSN bears a one-to-one relationship to the MSN returned by the responder in each response packet. Thus, the requester interprets the MSN as representing the SSN of the most recent request completed by the responder.

C9-161: The encoded credit count returned by the responder in the AETH shall specify the number of receive WQEs posted to the responder's receive queue relative to the MSN unless the responder does not generate end-to-end flow control credits, in which case the "invalid" code is carried in the AETH.

Since the MSN is directly related to the requester's SSN, the credit count is a simple offset into the send queue from the SSN of the most recent request completed by the responder. Logically, the sum of the MSN plus the credit count is the requester's Limit Sequence Number (LSN). The requester may freely transmit any request whose SSN is less than or equal to the computed LSN.

If the responder returns the "invalid" code in the AETH instead of the credit count, then the requester may freely transmit requests at will. The "invalid" code is used by the responder to indicate that the AETH credit count field is not valid because the responder does not generate end-to-end credits. Even a responder which does generate end-to-end credits may choose to send the "invalid" code in the AETH. However, once a requester has received an "invalid" code in the AETH from the responder, the requester may choose to ignore the AETH credit count field for all future transactions on that connection. Thus, if a responder resumes returning valid credits after having signaled "invalid", the results may be unpredictable.

Any request whose SSN is greater than the current computed LSN is said to be limited. The send queue's behavior when it encounters a limited request is as specified in Section [9.7.7.2.5 Requester Behavior - Limited Send WQEs on page 381](#).

[Figure 107 Relating AETH values to the Send Queue on page 380](#) illustrates the relationship between the values returned by the responder in the AETH and the requester's send queue.

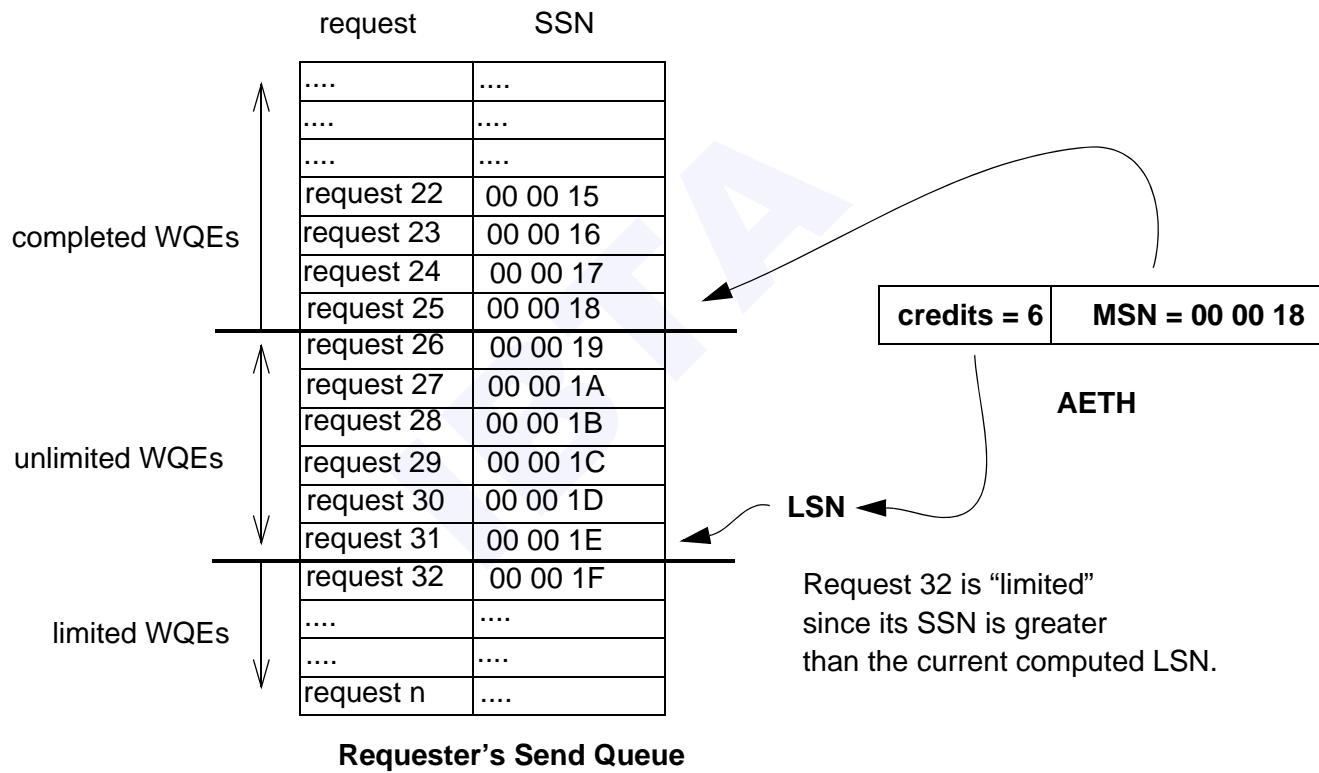


Figure 107 Relating AETH values to the Send Queue

The requester calculates a new LSN each time it receives an acknowledgement packet containing valid credits. The requester also dynamically adjusts the LSN by adding one to it for every request it wishes to send that does not consume a receive WQE (RDMA READ requests, RDMA WRITE requests without immediate data, or ATOMIC Operation requests). This adjustment is the mechanism which allows the requester to send requests that do not consume a receive WQE.

Any given implementation is not required to implement the LSN and SSN mechanisms described above, but must conform semantically to the behavior described.

9.7.7.2.5 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR - LIMITED SEND WQEs

C9-162: When the requester encounters a WQE on its send queue for which it has no available credits, that WQE is said to be limited. The send queue's behavior when it encounters a limited WQE shall be as follows:

- If the limited request WQE is an RDMA READ request, an RDMA WRITE request without immediate data, or an ATOMIC Operation request, it may be sent normally without regard to the availability of credits. The normal rules for ordering of requests still hold (i.e., the send queue may not search through the list of posted WQEs in an attempt to find unlimited WQEs to be sent out of order). After sending such a request, the requester increments its computed LSN value¹¹, since the sent request does not consume a receive WQE and thus does not consume a credit.
- If the limited request WQE is a SEND request, the send queue shall transmit no more than a single packet of the request message before it must stop transmission and wait for an acknowledge packet. To ensure that the responder will generate a response, the requester shall set the AckReq bit in that single packet.
- If the limited request WQE is an RDMA WRITE request with immediate data, the requester may transmit the entire request message before it must stop transmission and wait for an acknowledge packet. This is permitted because it is the single packet containing immediate data of the request that actually consumes the receive WQE. To ensure that the responder will generate a response, the requester shall set the AckReq bit in the last packet of the request message.

C9-163: For an HCA using Reliable Connection service, if the limited WQE is a SEND request, the send queue shall transmit no more than a single packet of the request message. Within this single packet, the Acknowledge Request (AckReq) bit of the BTH shall be set. The requester shall then stop transmission and wait for an acknowledge packet.

o9-98: If a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, and if the limited WQE is a SEND request, the send queue shall transmit no more than a single packet of the request message. Within this single packet, the Acknowledge Request (AckReq) bit of the BTH shall be set. The requester shall then stop transmission and wait for an acknowledge packet.

11. An interesting situation can occur that artificially limits the sender LSN with certain message patterns; if the sender does Send, RDMA, RDMA, RDMA with two credits from the receiver, it will increment the LSN by three. If after that, the response arrives with MSN+1 credit, the LSN will then be set back by two, putting the requestor into limit until the Ack from the RDMA's arrive.

o9-99: In an HCA using Reliable Connection service, or if a TCA implements Reliable Connection service, and if the limited request WQE is a RDMA WRITE request, the requester may transmit the entire request message before it must stop transmission and wait for an acknowledge packet. To ensure that the responder will generate a response, the requester shall set the Acknowledge Request (AckReq) bit in the last packet of the RDMA WRITE request.

C9-164: Since the responder's receive queue may generate an unsolicited acknowledge message at any time, the requester shall be prepared to receive an unsolicited acknowledge message from the responder at any time, provided that the receive queue has signalled that it will generate end-to-end flow control credits.

An unsolicited acknowledge is used solely for the purpose of transferring credits from the responder to the requester. On receiving an unsolicited acknowledge, the requester recalculates its LSN as specified above and responds accordingly. A lack of credits does not impact a requester's ability to re-transmit previously transmitted requests as part of its recovery from lost packets. End-to-end credits only limit the transmission of new request messages. For example, if the requester detects a timeout condition after having sent a single packet of a limited SEND request, it decrements its timeout retry counter as usual and retransmits the request.

9.7.8 RELIABLE DATAGRAM

Reliable Datagram provides reliable communication, i.e. the same level of reliability and error recovery as for Reliable Connection, using a one-to-many paradigm. A requestor's send queue may send sequential messages to different responders, at different QPs on the same or different nodes. A responder QP may receive messages from multiple requesters on the same or different endnodes. As with the Unreliable Datagram transport service, the source endnode and source QP are provided to the responder.

The motivation for using Reliable Datagram is to economize the QP name space for applications that engage in "all to all" communication. Consider N processor nodes, each with M processes. If all M processes wish to communicate with all the processes on all the nodes, a Reliable Connection service requires $M^2*(N-1)$ QPs on each node. By comparison, the Reliable Datagram service only requires M QPs + N "end-to-end" (EE) connections on each node for exactly the same communications.

Reliability is implemented using at least one "QP-like" context for each remote endnode - this is referred to as the End-to-End Context (EE Context or EEC). This context provides the information needed to locate the remote node, to serialize and exchange acknowledgments, and maintain reliability.

The Service still uses the QPs to provide the queues, WQE pointers, protection checking parameters etc. Together, a QP and an EEC contain the information needed to reliably move messages to a destination. But many QPs may use a single EEC for sending or receiving, and a QP may communicate through several different EECs, one chosen with each message.

When an application determines the target that it is to communicate with, it must first establish (or use an already established) an EE Context.

As with Reliable Connection, the local QPs to use for this service are established in the RD service mode by the application prior to use. Remote QPs are chosen in an application dependent manner.

Once the EE Context is created, the client may send a message to the responder QP via this EE Context. The client must specify the local EE context number, the responder QP, the Q_Key, and any additional message parameters. The implementation then “multiplexes” the messages from each source QP to the appropriate EEC, and sends the message. When the message arrives at the destination, the implementation uses the EE Context to validate the packet and “de-multiplexes” the message to the appropriate QP.

The Reliable Datagram service uses the methods (PSNs, ACK/NAK protocol etc.) as described previously in [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#).

9.7.8.1 RELIABLE DATAGRAM CHARACTERISTICS

Table 51 Reliable Datagram QP characteristics

Property / Level of Reliability	Support
Corrupt data detected	Yes
Data delivered exactly once (Except for an unrecoverable error; that is reported to the application)	Yes
Data order guaranteed to same destination QP from the same source QP	Yes
Data order guaranteed to different destinations from the same QP	Yes
Scalability (number of messages) on the service	Limited to number of EE Contexts in use between endnodes
Data loss detected	Yes
RDMA READ Support	Yes
RDMA WRITE Support	Yes
State of SEND/RDMA WRITE when request completed	Completion on remote end node

Table 51 Reliable Datagram QP characteristics

State of in-flight SEND/RDMA WRITE when unrecoverable error occurs	First one unknown, others not delivered
ATOMIC Support	Optional
Multi-packet message support	Yes
Multiple EE Context allowed between end-nodes (to provide traffic segregation for QOS)	Yes
Single SL / QoS assigned to EE Context	Yes
Number of messages in-flight per EEC	1
Number of messages in flight per QP	1
Number of messages enqueued per EEC / QP	Implementation limited only
Number of packets allowed in flight (architectural)	2^{23}
RD QP shall only communicate with RD QPs	Yes
Partition Key verification	On a per EEC basis
Protection verification (e.g. Q_Key, R_Key, etc.) and Addressing	On a per QP basis
Max Size of messages	2^{31}
Destination QP, Q_Key, and address supplied	On a per send WR basis
Source QP and address supplied	On a per receiver completion basis

o9-100: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide QP's capable of supporting RD. When operating in RD mode, these QPs allow sending sequential RD messages to different responders, at different destination QPs on the same or different nodes. When operating in RD mode, these QPs shall be capable of receiving RD messages from multiple requesters on the same or different endnodes.

o9-101: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide EEC's that allow the "multiplexing" of multi packet RD message traffic to and from multiple QPs while maintaining reliability (messages are delivered from a requester to a responder at most once, in order and without corruption, or the upper layer is notified.)

o9-102: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall ensure that an RD message has been completed at the sender (fully acknowledged or completed in error) before sending another message on the same EEC.

o9-103: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall ensure that an RD message has been completed at the sender (fully acknowledged or completed in error) before sending another message on the same QP.

o9-104: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall meet the requirements specified in [9.2.1 Operation Code \(OpCode\) on page 257](#) for coding of the RD OpCodes, [9.3.1 Reliable Datagram Extended Transport Header \(RDETH\) - 4 Bytes on page 262](#) for creation of that header, and [9.6 Packet](#)

[Transport Header Validation on page 292](#) and [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#) through 9.7.6 for reliable transports for processing RD messages.

o9-105: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall meet the requirements specified in [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#) while processing RD messages.

o9-106: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide support for setting up connections between EECs as defined in [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#), using the Management facilities as defined in [Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772](#).

o9-107: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall ensure that RD message errors or events that are not associated with the underlying EE Context (for example Q_Key or R_Key violations or RNR-NAK) shall not cause that EE Context to shut down or prevent the EE Context from processing other RD messages destined to other QPs.

o9-108: HCA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide support for Send, RDMA WRITE, RDMA READ, and ATOMICS in RD mode to the extent defined and reported in [11.2 Transport Resource Management on page 587](#).

o9-109: HCA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide support for EEC management as defined in [10.2.7 End-to-End Contexts on page 472](#) and [11.2.9 EE Context on page 636](#).

o9-110: HCA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide support for RDD domains as defined in [10.2.8 Reliable Datagram Domains on page 474](#), [11.2.1.7 Allocate Reliable Datagram Domain on page 596](#), and [11.2.1.8 Deallocate Reliable Datagram Domain on page 597](#).

Implementation note: For many implementations, an EEC will actually be a special "mode" of a general QP or EE context. For these implementations, the context number specified as a destination EEC must be set up in Reliable Datagram 'EEC' mode. Reliable Datagram packets arriving at a context (identified by the EE Context field in the header) that is not set up to "EE Context" mode, shall be silently dropped.

The responder QP context must be set to support Reliable Datagram transport service. If a Reliable Datagram packet arrives at a QP context that is not configured for RD operation, the responder shall respond with a "NAK Invalid RD Request".

An important distinction for this service is that errors that are not associated with the underlying EE Context do not result in shutting that EE Context down. Examples of these would be Q_Key or R_Key violations.

Similarly, the Receiver Not Ready (RNR NAK), caused by resources associated with the receiver's QP does not prevent the EE Context from processing other messages destined to other QPs.

Errors that are associated with the EE Context (retry limit exceeded, etc.), detected during a message transmission or reception, shall be reported in the WR completion.

Errors associated with the requestor or responder QP shall be reported in the WR completion with the usual error semantics. See [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#) for a more complete discussion on errors.

Since an end-to-end credit mechanism is not practical in a "connectionless" type of service, responders shall send a NAK Receiver Not Ready response if a requester's SEND arrives while the responder's Receive Queue is empty. See [9.7.5.2.8 RNR NAK on page 352](#) for additional details.

To preserve the ordering rules required of this service, and to keep the design complexity down, messages on this service are sent one at a time from the source QP with the requirement that each message acknowledgement be received at the requesting QP before the next message can be started.

9.7.8.2 EXAMPLE RD OPERATIONS

The following is not normative material, but is included to clarify this topic. These examples are based on an HCA implementation; other implementations are possible. TCAs, for instance may not utilize virtual memory and may modify other details of this example.

This implementation example maintains a standard send queue for WRs.

It also maintains a linked list of Send QPs, anchored at each EEC. This list contains QPs, each of which has a WR at the head of its Send Queue that is destined for the EEC.

In order to manage the orderly transmission of packets and messages, the implementation uses a scheduler. This scheduler maintains a list of those EEC that have packets to send. As each EEC gets to the head of the scheduler list, one or more packets are sent (depending on QoS and other factors not important here).

On the responder side, the implementation example maintains a standard set of Receive Queues.

The implementation also maintains space in each EEC to copy those parameters needed to process a single incoming message. These param-

Two views of “connectionless”, Reliable Datagram service. The figure to the right shows a software view of Reliable Datagram communication among 4 processes on 3 processors. In this example, there is no communication among processes E and processes C and D, otherwise, Process A can send to and receive from all the other processes.

The lower parts of the figure shows the multiple EE Contexts used by the CA to synthesize the Reliable Datagram service. Each context shows some of the state it uses to "connect" to the others.

The SendQ 4 state shows the destinations of three messages; the ReceiveQ states show the Queues after successful transmission of those messages.

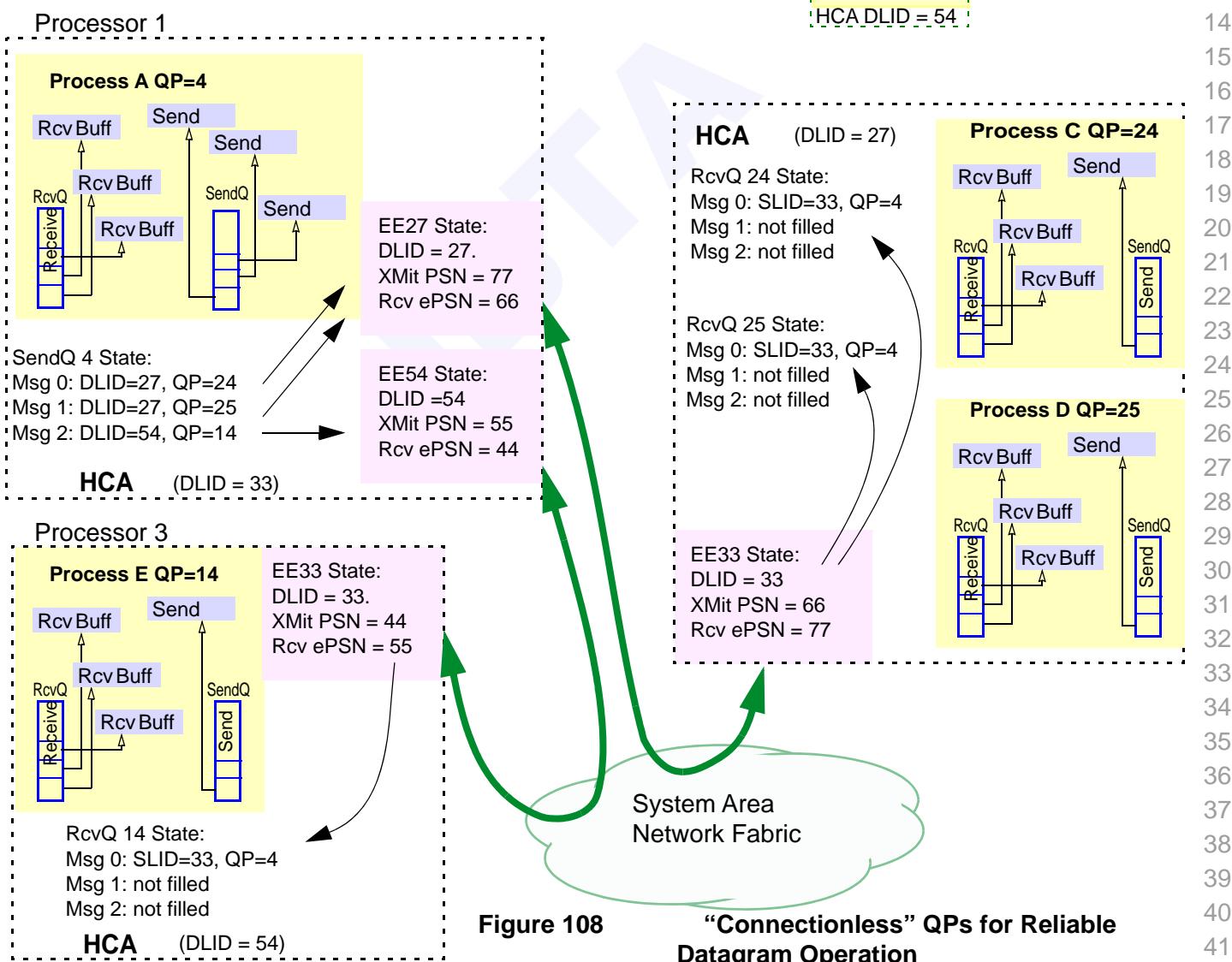


Figure 108

“Connectionless” QPs for Reliable Datagram Operation

ters are copied both from the QP (PD, CQ, Q_Key etc.) and the receive WQE (data segment L_Key, Virtual address, size etc.). The EEC then has enough information to process the entire message to completion with no further reference to the WQE or QP, even if the message contains many packets.

9.7.8.2.1 EXAMPLE OUTBOUND REQUEST

- 1) The client of the Reliable Datagram posts a send message (described by WQE) to the send queue of its QP. This consists of:
 - 2) the list of data segments (virtual address, L_Key and length) that describes the send message
 - 3) the local EE Context number
 - 4) the destination QP number
 - 5) the destination Q_Key
- 6) When the WQE reaches the head of the Send Queue (found by pointer from the QP context), the EE Context is located from the WQE and the QP is “linked” to the EECs “QP list” for processing (EEC contains enqueue and dequeue pointers, each QP contains link pointer to next QP to run. Take QP at enqueue pointer, update its “next” link to point to the new QP, adjust enqueue pointer to the newly linked QP).
7) If the EEC is not currently sending messages, the EEC is also placed into the scheduler.
8) When the EEC is scheduled to send a message, the HCA locates the WQE parameters by accessing the QP at the head of the EEC’s “QP list” (Take QP found at the Dequeue pointer) and using the QP’s work queue pointers.
9) HW uses the memory protection parameters of the enqueueing process (stored with the QP Context) and the virtual address etc. from the WQE. This allows the Send Queue HW to directly access the virtual address space of each process that posts send message buffers.
10) The HCA hardware reads the data buffer, builds the transport header (including the “Packet Sequence” number associated with the EE Context) and puts the packet onto the wire.
11) This process is repeated from step 3 until the entire message is sent. The “EE Context” is serviced according to the same scheduling algorithm used for Reliable Connection QPs.
12) When a message is completely sent, the CA waits until all Acknowledgments are in for the message.

- 8) Since the EEC must wait for a message ACK before continuing (only a single message outstanding at once), the EEC is scheduled with an appropriate timeout and the EE Context is updated.
- 9) When the last ACK has arrived and the WQE completed, the HCA determines if there are additional WQEs posted to the current QP (the one at the head of the EEC's QP list). If so, the next WQE is examined to locate the EEC for the QP's next message (this may be to a different EEC than the current). The CA then dequeues the QP from the current EEC's QP list, and enqueues it on the tail of the next message's EEC QP list. This is similar to step 2 above.
- 10) The EEC's QP list is examined to determine if any QP has work for this EEC.
- 11) The process repeats from step 3 until no more messages are available to send. At this point, the EEC is removed from the scheduler and set into an "inactive" state.

9.7.8.2.2 EXAMPLE INBOUND REQUEST

The inbound request needs to access the QP state associated with the responder's Receive Queue, the receive WQE, and the EE Context that maintains information about the source. Both QP and EEC are available in the header for this purpose.

The following lists the steps taken by the HCA to process an incoming request packet:

First or Only Packets

- 1) The incoming request packet arrives and is found to be un-corrupted and the first or only packet of the message.
- 2) The packet header specifies the destination QP number. This is the QP associated with the client of the Reliable Datagram service. This QP points to the receive queue, and a WQE, but does not have any sequence number information. The packet header also includes the "EE Context number" that is used to access the EE Context. The sequence number information is stored with the EE Context connected to the requesting host.
- 3) The incoming request's sequence number is compared against the state of the EE Context connected to the requesting node.
- 4) If the sequence number and other packet contents are correct, the destination QP's memory protection and WQE entry information are temporarily copied to the EE Context. This implementation is useful because other EECs may be targeting the same QP and other messages will end up in progress to the same QP. By copying the WQE and memory related information to the EEC, the QP is free to point to subsequent WQEs for additional messages. This is also the reason that receive WQEs may complete out of order.

- 5) The memory protection checks are done, and if the receive buffer is valid, the incoming request is written to memory (or in the case of a RDMA READ, stored for later processing).
- 6) The CA puts the EEC on the scheduler to send an ACK response.
- 7) If the packet was an “only”, then the CA completes the message using the EEC’s copy of WQE and QP values, with no additional references to the QP or WQE.
- 1) For subsequent packets from the same message, only the EE Context is accessed based on the header EEC number. This allows other EECs to utilize other WQEs from the QP Receive Queue independently.
- 2) If the sequence number and other header checks are correct, the memory protection checks are done, and if the receive buffer is valid, the incoming request data is written to memory.
- 3) The CA puts the EEC on the scheduler to send an ACK response.
- 4) If the packet was a “last”, then the CA completes the message using the EEC’s copy of WQE and QP values, with no additional references to the QP or WQE.

9.7.8.2.3 EXAMPLE OUTBOUND ACKNOWLEDGE

When the EEC gets to the head of the scheduler queue, the CA notes that an ACK must be sent, and sends it. If multiple packets have arrived before the EEC gets to the head of the scheduler, this creates a coalesced ACK. The EE Context’s last valid receive sequence number is sent in the ACK packet per the ACK/NAK rules.

If the operation was an RDMA read, then multiple response packets may be required. In this case, the EEC is placed back on the scheduler after each packet until the PSN of the responses reaches the expected PSN.

9.7.8.2.4 EXAMPLE INBOUND ACKNOWLEDGE

A returning ACK response indicates a request packet was successfully completed. When the ACK arrives, the EE Context is examined and the returned PSN is checked. If this is the expected (next sequential) ACK, the expected PSN is updated. If this is the last ACK of a message and all previous packets were acknowledged, then the message can be completed using the EEC’s copy of the QP and WQE information. If the ACK is not sequential, then the usual coalesced ACK rules apply. Since only a single message is outstanding at one time, only a single message is ever acknowledged at one time.

For RDMA READs, the CA uses the EEC’s copied QP protection information and WQE data segment information to store the data.

9.7.8.3 RELIABLE DATAGRAM OPERATIONS

The processing is very much the same as defined for Reliable connection service. The significant difference is for the treatment of repeated packets at the responder, and the rules for repeating a request at the requester. The differences are highlighted in *italics*.

9.7.8.3.1 SEND AND RDMA WRITE WITH IMMEDIATE DATA PROCESSING

SENDs and RDMA WRITEs with Immediate data are handled in the same way as for Reliable Connection service, *except that end-to-end credits are not returned to the sending QP.*

o9-111: CA's claiming support for Reliable datagram service shall use the NAK-RNR protocol to indicate an over-run of the Receive Queue for RD messages.

9.7.8.3.2 RDMA READ PROCESSING

RDMA READs are handled in the same way as for Reliable Connection service. Incoming requests are stored at the responder's "hidden resources", attached to the EE Context, and memory protection information is accessed or copied from the QP Contexts. *Unlike Reliable Connection service, the number of RDMA READ request messages outstanding from a single QP or EEC shall be limited to one.*

9.7.8.3.3 ATOMICS PROCESSING

Atomics are handled in the same way as for Reliable Connection service. Incoming requests are stored at the responder's "hidden resources", attached to the EE Context, and memory protection information is accessed or copied from the QP Contexts. *Unlike Reliable Connection service, the number of ATOMIC requests outstanding from a single QP or EEC shall be limited to one.*

9.7.8.4 ORDERING RULES

Receive Queues are FIFO queues. Once enqueued, WQEs shall begin processing in FIFO order, but *may be completed out of order*. The messages from any single source QP shall always be in order.

o9-112: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall provide upper layer support for out of order receive queue completion for RD messages.

Send queues are FIFO queues. Once enqueued, WQEs shall be processed for sending in the order they were enqueued.

o9-113: CA's claiming to support RD mode shall ensure that WQEs on the Send Queue in RD mode are completed in order whether they are targeting different destination QPs on the same or a different endnode or the same destination QP. The completions for WQEs shall always be returned to the transport consumer in FIFO order.

This does not mean that the implementation must place the data portions of the messages in memory in any particular order. As a result, the arrival order is not guaranteed until the message is marked complete on at least one side. An application shall expect that memory buffers are undefined until the message is completed.

Note that items queued on different QP's Send Queues on the same HCA for the same destination endnode or even the same destination QP are not ordered with respect to each other. For example, if WQE 'A' destined for destination 'X' and QP "75" is posted to QP 1, and WQE 'B' destined for destination 'X' and QP "75" is later posted to QP 2 of the same CA, there is no guarantee that 'A' will arrive before 'B' at the destination.

o9-114: For CA's claiming to support RD mode, upper layers must tolerate lack of ordering among RD messages from different send QPs. That is, items queued on different QP's Send Queues on the same HCA for the same destination endnode or even the same destination QP are not ordered with respect to each other.

9.7.8.5 HANDLING QP ERRORS - RESYNC

Since RD service allows multiple QPs to share a single EEC, it is desirable that a QP with an error localized to the QP, not effect the remainder of the QPs sharing the same EEC. To support this, RD service allows the EEC to "Abandon" or "Suspend" operations on a QP under certain error conditions.

A message is "Abandoned" if it is completed in error at the source QP, and the QPn is transitioned to the error state.

A message is "Suspended" if it is not completed at the source QP, but another message is started on the same EEC. When later resumed, the suspended message must be restarted from the beginning if it is a Send, or RDMA Write with immediate operation. If it is an RDMA Read or RDMA Write w/o Immediate, it can (implementation choice) be restarted where it left off, but must appear to be a new message to the responder.

"Suspend" and Restart only apply to RNR NAK conditions, where the responder is temporarily unable to perform the request associated with a particular QP, and the requestor can improve performance by sending messages from other QPs on the same EEC, while waiting for the RNR NAK timeout.

A requestor is not allowed to Suspend an Atomic operation.

For convenience, we will sometimes say a message is "aborted" when either "abandoned" or "suspended" is meant.

The concept of "Abandon" or "Suspend" does require the RD service to deal with a class of errors that can occur when packets associated with a message are delayed, repeated, or both. To deal with this problem, a RESYNC operation is required whenever a message is "Abandoned" or "Suspended". An example of this problem is shown in Figure 109 below where an RNR'd request is actually executed by the responder.

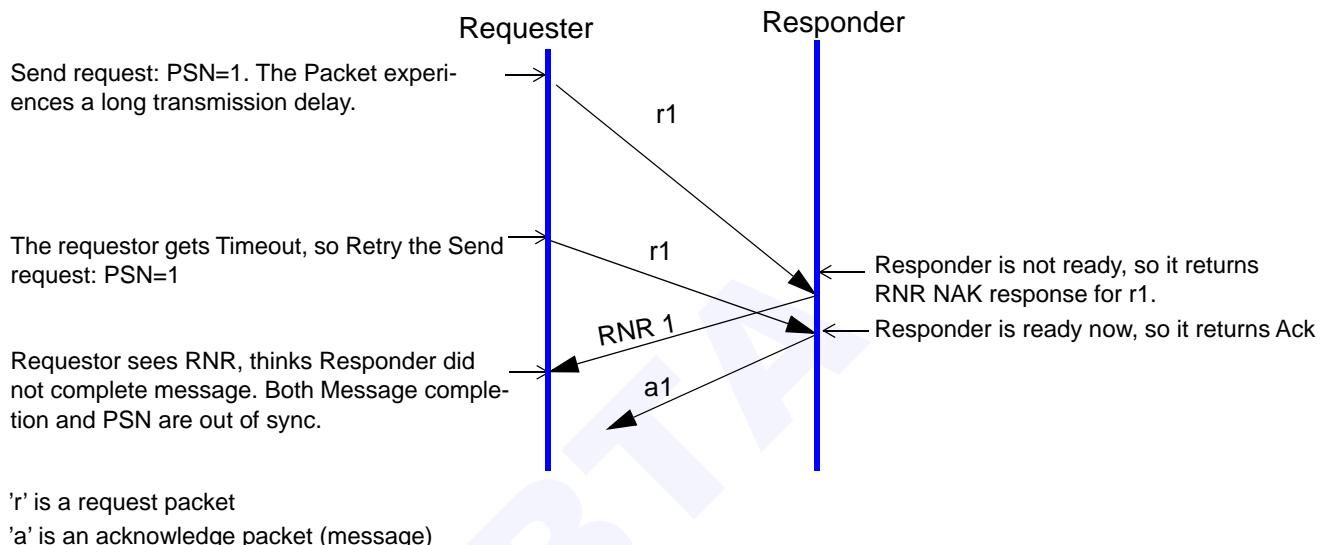


Figure 109 Loss of synchronization of the EEC on Suspend

If the requestor simply started a new message at the original PSN, data corruption could occur. In addition, the requestor, when it restarted the RNR NAK'd message later, the responder would get two copies.

To deal with this problem, a RESYNC is used following any error that affects a QP, but leaves the EEC able to continue operation. The RESYNC serves several purposes, it gets the PSNs on both ends of the EEC synchronized, it lets the responder know that the previous message, if incomplete, is to be abandoned, and it allows the requestor to determine with

certainty the status of the current message at the responder. The following flow chart shows the resynchronization process at the requestor.

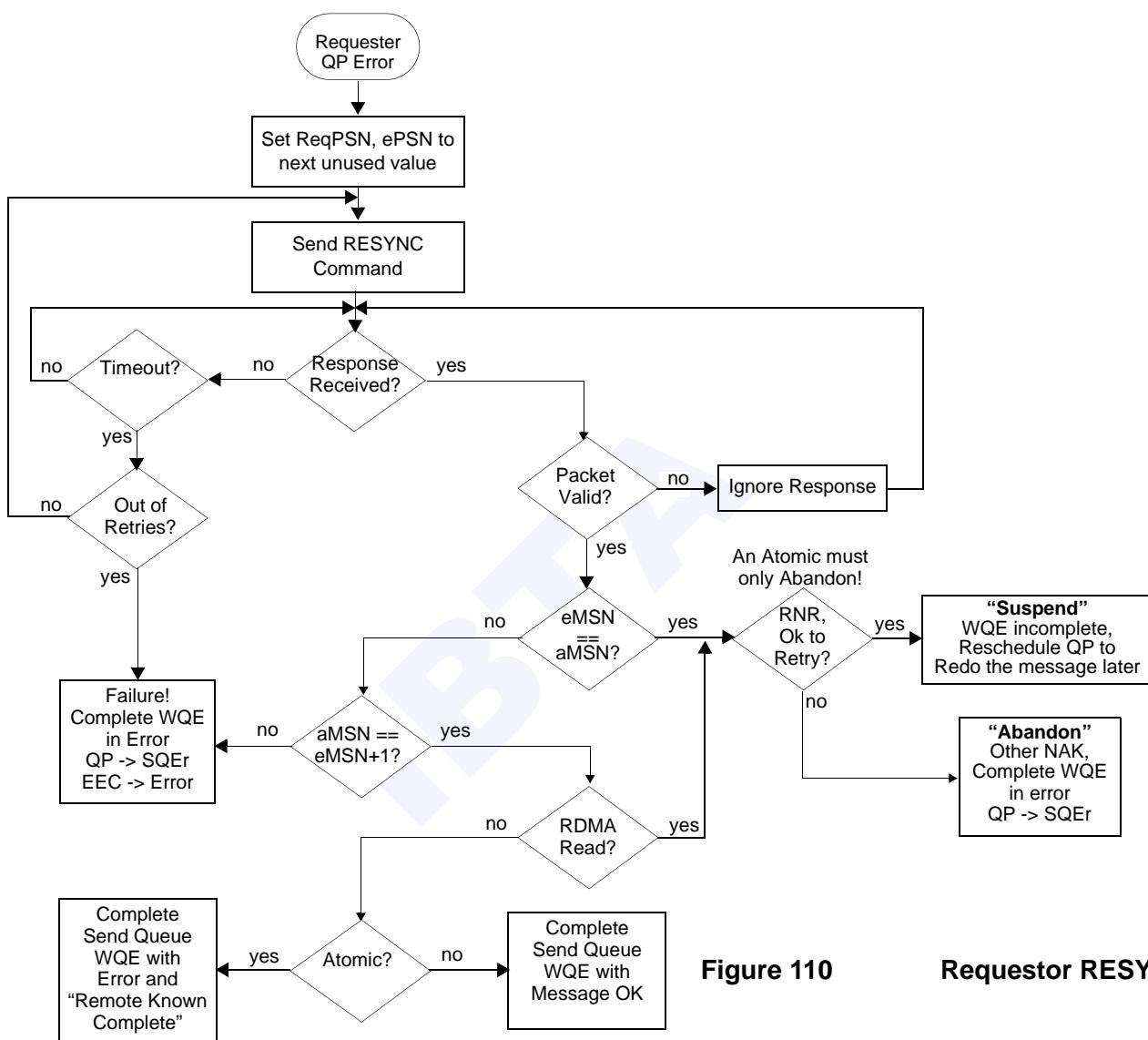


Figure 110 Requestor RESYNC

The following ladder diagram illustrates a RESYNC operation to correct the problem described in Figure 109. The RESYNC process allows getting both ends to agree on a appropriate PSN, to determine the status of the aborted message at the responder, and to inform the responder to abort a message in progress, if that is the case.

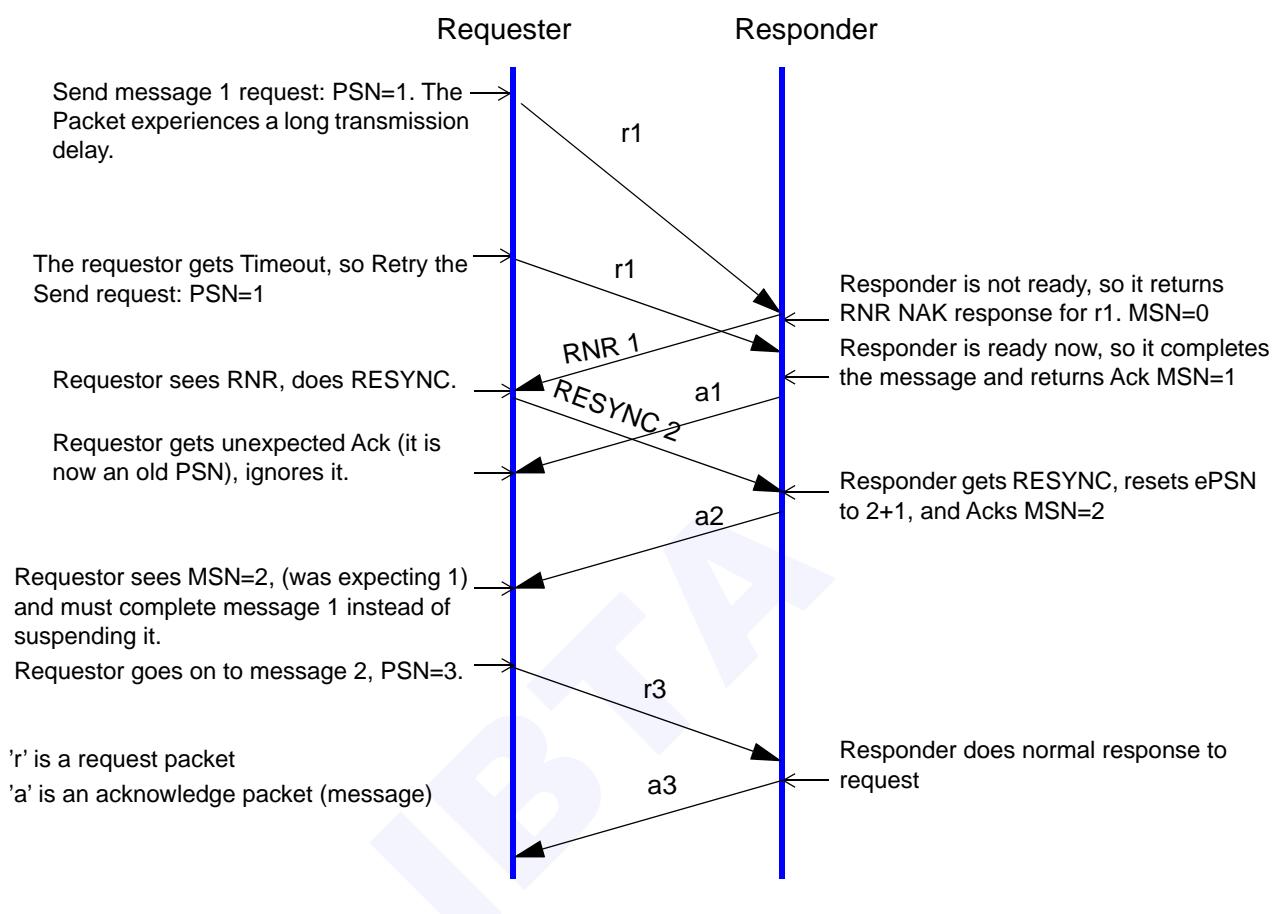


Figure 111

RESYNC detects unexpectedly complete message

Another problem that RESYNC corrects is dealing with “Ghost” packets. This is illustrated in where a multi-packet message has an error on an early packet, the requestor puts the Send Queue in SQEr, and the upper

layer eventually returns the Send Queue to RTS. Meanwhile, a fabric "event" causes a packet to be extremely delayed.

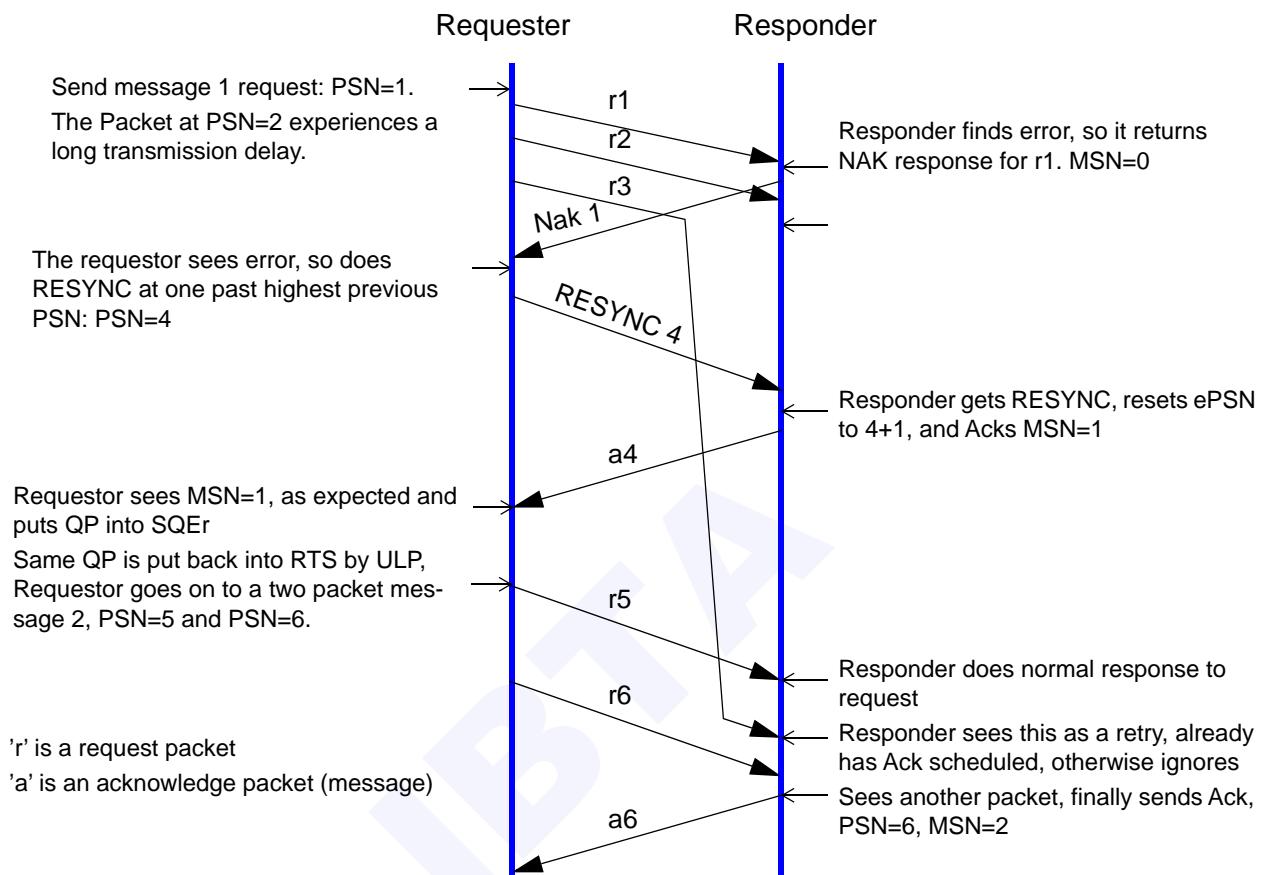


Figure 112 RESYNC prevents corruption by delayed packets

In the figure above, 'r3', being extremely delayed, arrives at the responder during packet processing of a message for the same QPs. In this case, the responder must see 'r3' as a retried packet. As such it is ignored, except to schedule an Ack, at least for Sends and RDMA Writes. For RDMA reads, the responder must create an explicit response. If a correct RDMA read was already in progress, it must be interrupted and a different response generated. This will create ghost responses at the requestor, and cause it to timeout on its RDMA Read request, with a retry to make a recovery. For an atomic, the response also appears as a ghost, or unexpected response at the requestor. In either case, it is dropped and the operation recovers.

If the RESYNC had not been performed, message 2 would have started with PSN=2. The reception of 'r3' at PSN=3 would have created a data corruption problem.

o9-114.a1: For CA's claiming to support RD mode, when a message in RD mode incurs a QP related error the requestor may either:

- 1) Transition the QP and EEC to the error state and complete the message in error, or
- 2) Implement the RESYNC process as described in [9.7.8.5 Handling QP errors - RESYNC on page 392](#).

The RESYNC request generation is described in [9.7.3.2.2 RESYNC Generation on page 315](#).

o9-114.a2: For CA's that support the RD transport service, following the sending of a RESYNC, the requestor shall wait for an Ack at the RESYNC PSN. No other response is valid.

As usual, the AckReq bit should be set to insure that the responder schedules a response.

RESYNC should be timed out and retried with the usual retry count if no correct response arrives as described in [9.7.6.1.3 Detecting Lost Acknowledge Messages and Timeouts on page 362](#).

As usual, the requestor updates the request PSN by one prior to sending another message from the EEC.

The RESYNC response may actually complete two messages, the previous message, and the "RESYNC" message.

9.7.8.6 RESPONDER GENERATION OF MSN

For Reliable Datagram service, the Message Sequence Number is a number returned by the responder to the requester indicating the number of messages completed by the responder at the EE context. The MSN is carried in the three least significant bytes of the AETH. The MSN assists the requester in completing WQEs by informing the requester of the messages that have been completed by the responder.

o9-114.a3: The Responder in CAs that implement Reliable Datagram service shall return an MSN in the AETH of every response packet.

o9-114.a4: A CA responder using Reliable Datagram service shall initialize its MSN value to zero. The responder shall increment its MSN whenever it has successfully completed processing a new, valid request message. The MSN shall not be incremented for duplicate requests. The incremented MSN shall be returned in the last or only packet of an RDMA READ or Atomic response.

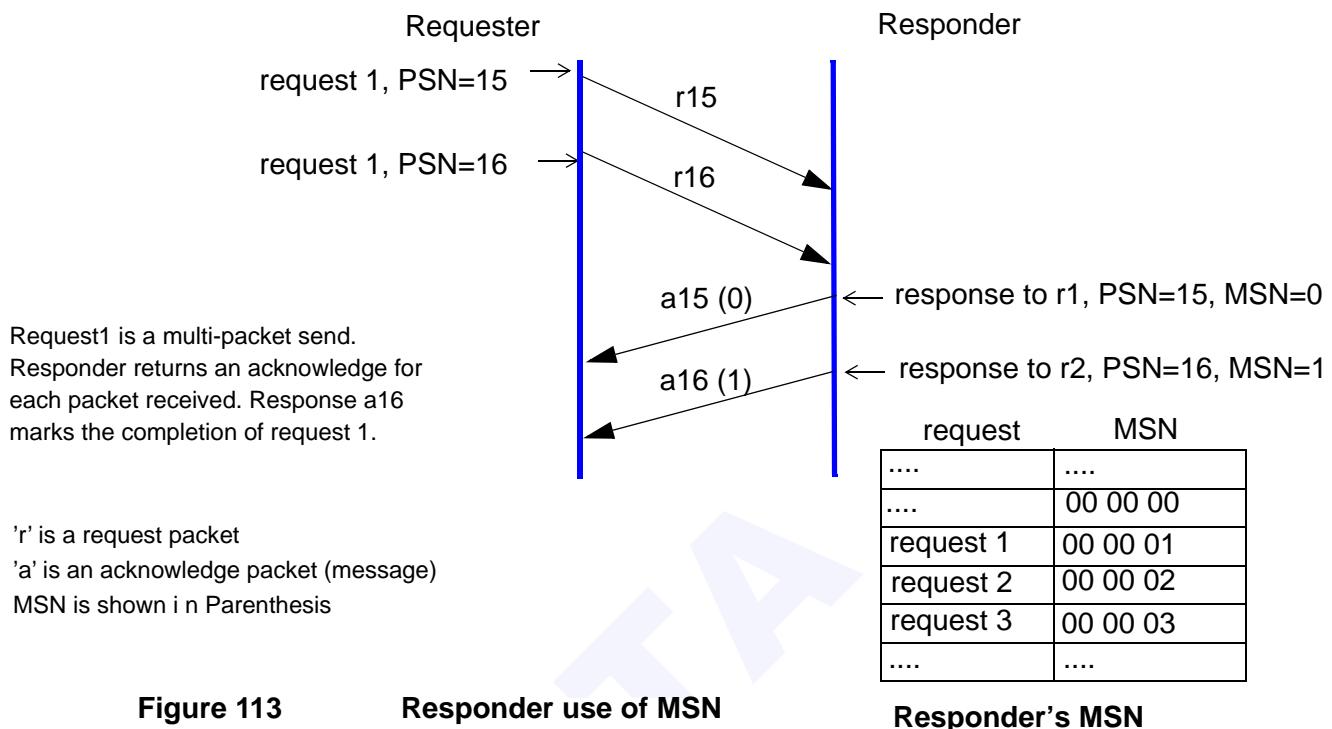


Figure 113

Responder use of MSN

9.7.8.6.1 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR ON RECEIVING A NEW MSN

The existence of a new MSN value in a response packet may be used by the requester as a signal to complete a message.

The MSN in the response to the "RESYNC" message may also be used to determine the completion status of the previous message:

- If, due to earlier retries, the previous message was actually completed, the MSN will be two higher than the last value, which was returned in the NAK response.
 - If the previous message was a Send or RDMA Write, it should be completed normally (meaning that it was not abandoned or suspended after all).
 - If the previous message was an RDMA Read, the requestor did not get the return data, so must still either suspend or abandon the message, depending on the error type.
 - If the previous message was an Atomic, it must be completed in Error, the additional information "Known Complete at Responder" may be returned to the upper layers.
 - If the MSN was as expected (one greater than last value), the previous message should be treated appropriately:

- Completed in error if it is abandoned, the additional information that the message was “Known incomplete at Responder”
- Not started if it is a Send, or RDMA Write with immediate, to be retried later
- Incomplete if it is an RDMA Read or RDMA Write without immediate to be restarted as a new message later

If the MSN was any other value, the response is corrupted, and the EEC should be put into the error state.

9.7.9 XRC

9.7.9.1 INTRODUCTION

XRC allows significant savings in the number of QPs required to establish all to all process connectivity in large clusters.

The established trend in multi core processors results in a direct increase in the number of processes that typically run on each endnode of a typical IB connected cluster. Multi core node systems are very common today with road maps showing even more cores per node in the not so distant future.

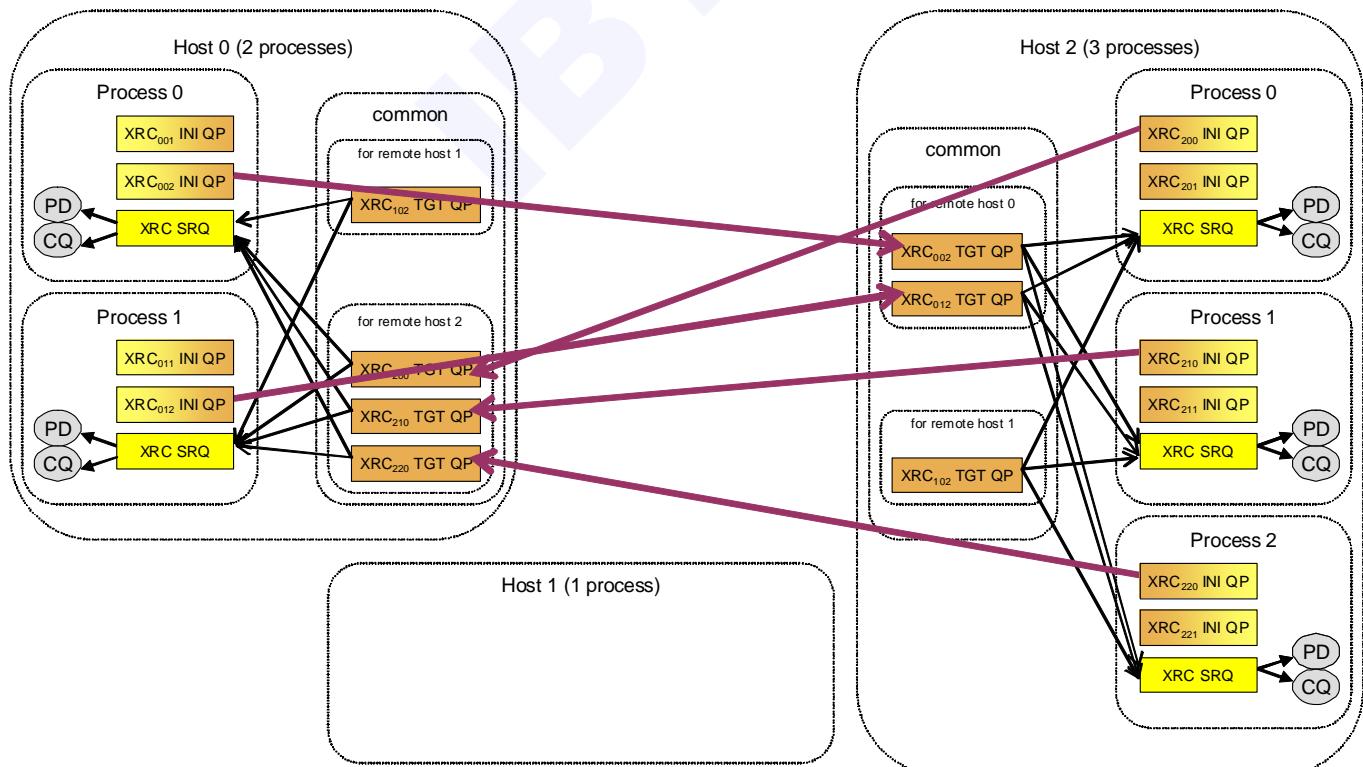


Figure 114

Extended Reliable Connected (XRC) Model

With the Reliable Connected (RC) Transport Service, the number of QPs required per endnode to achieve full process to process connectivity is equal to $N \cdot p \cdot p$ (where N is the number of nodes in the cluster and p the number of processes per node)¹². As the number of processes grows together with the number of cores per system, the number of RC QPs (and its associated memory resources) start to become of significant impact.

XRC is different from RD in several ways but first and foremost it eliminates the most significant limitation of the RD Transport Service which is the single outstanding message supported per EE context. With XRC there is no limit to the number of outstanding messages on the wire for a XRC QP. In order to achieve this, XRC QPs operate similarly to regular RC QPs on the requester side. There is no dynamic association between a SQ and EE context (as in RD) for XRC. The implication of this is that XRC QPs on the initiator side (denoted XRC INI QPs) are typically per process and are statically bound (through the connection context) to a single destination node.

The savings in the overall number of required QPs occurs because of the way XRC operates on the responder side. The responder connection context (denoted as XRC TGT QP) allows the requester process to send messages targeting multiple destination QPs (denoted XRC SRQs) which belong to the multiple processes on the destination node. So with a single (XRC INI) QP a process in one node can communicate with ALL processes on one remote node thus reducing by a factor of p the number of overall QPs required for full connectivity (as compared to when RC QPs are used).

XRC SRQs are the destination node per-process receive queues that can be targeted from multiple remote endnodes through the XRC TGT QPs. They are in a way equivalent to the receive queues in RD QPs and as such there is only one required per process that allows it to receive messages from any process on any node in the cluster. This mode of operation requires the requester side (XRC INI QP) to specify which XRC SRQ is being targeted for every posted request message. This information is carried on the wire by means of a new extended transport header as described in [Section 9.7.9, "XRC," on page 399](#).

In a similar way as RD QPs are limited to be used with RD EE contexts in their same Reliable Datagram Domain (RDD), the XRC Transport Service implements an equivalent XRC Domain mechanism that serves the same purpose. XRC TGT QPs can only be used as a conduit to access XRC SRQs that were setup on their same XRC Domain.

12. In some deployments, processes may not require QPs to communicate with other processes on the same node. In such cases the calculations for number of QPs required should use $N-1$ where N is used.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

Due to the shared nature of XRC SRQs (Receive WQEs could be fetched from multiple XRC TGT QPs), end to end credits can't be carried on ACK packets and the invalid credits code is used instead (similar to regular SRQs).

As described above, it can be observed that XRC operates similarly to RC on the requester side and as RD on the responder side and due to this asymmetry there are a few unique characteristics for the transport objects in the XRC Transport Service namely:

- XRC INI QPs are like regular RC QPs but do not have a responder side.
- XRC TGT QPs are similar to RD EECs but do not have a requester side.
- XRC SRQs are like RD QPs but do not have a requester side.

It is worth noting, that due to this asymmetry, XRC communication through a single XRC INI/TGT pair is one way.

One further aspect of XRC is that due to the fact that on the responder side XRC SRQs have no SQs, local operations such as Window binding, Fast register and Local invalidates are not covered and would need to be executed on an auxiliary RC QP when needed. Also Type 2 Windows are not supported with XRC.

From the above description it is straightforward to calculate how many of each of the XRC transport objects are required for full connectivity on a cluster of N nodes with p processes per node:

- Each process needs N XRC INI QPs. One to communicate with ALL processes at each remote node. Overall $N \cdot p$ XRC INI QPs are required per node.
- Each process needs one XRC SRQ which allows it to receive messages from any other process in the cluster. Overall p XRC SRQs are required per node.
- Assuming a homogeneous cluster where all N nodes have p processes, each node has $N \cdot p$ XRC TGT QPs which are the counterparts of the XRC INI QPs at the remote nodes that are used to target the processes in the local node.

So the total number of queues per node is: $N \cdot p$ XRC INI QPs, p XRC SRQs and $N \cdot p$ XRC TGT QPs.

9.7.9.2 XRC PACKET FORMAT RULES

o9-114.a5: All packets of a single XRC message SHALL carry the same exact XRCETH

o9-114.a6: The responder SHALL verify that the XRC Domain for the XRCSRQ identified by first/only inbound packet is the same as the XRC Domain of the XRC TGT QP.

The responder MAY verify that the XRCSRQ identified by middle/last packet is the same as for all previous packets in the message.

o9-114.a7: The responder SHALL use the PD from XRCSRQ identified by the XRC packet (instead of the PD of the XRC TGT QP).

o9-114.a8: If a receive WQE is required for the message, the responder SHALL fetch it from the RQ of the XRCSRQ pointed by the message.

o9-114.a9: If a completion is to be generated for the message, the responder SHALL use the CQ from XRCSRQ identified by the XRC packet.

o9-114.a10: The E2E credits (MSN field) in XRC ACK packets SHALL be set to 'invalid'.

9.8 UNRELIABLE SERVICE

IBA defines two types of unreliable service: Unreliable Connection (SEND, RDMA WRITE) and Unreliable Datagram (SEND only). These services have the following characteristics:

- 1) Requester receives no acknowledgment of message receipt
- 2) No packet order guarantees
- 3) Responder validates incoming packets as normal (validates appropriate header fields, CRC checks). A corrupted packet may be silently dropped, causing the message to be dropped.
- 4) On detecting an error in an incoming packet such as a dropped / out of order packet, the responder does not stop, but continues to receive incoming packets.
- 5) Responder considers the operation complete once it has received a complete message in correct sequence, all data has been committed to the local fault zone, and all appropriate validity checks (including variant and invariant CRC checks) have been completed. For Unreliable Connected service, the definition for a completed message is given in section [9.8.2.2.7 on page 416](#)
- 6) Requester considers a message operation complete once the "last" or "only" packet has been committed to the fabric.

9.8.1 VALIDATING AND EXECUTING REQUESTS

This section applies to both unreliable connection and unreliable datagram services. Where there are differences between the services, those differences are noted. The major differences between the two services are due to the fact that Unreliable Datagram service is restricted to single packet messages whereas Unreliable Connected service does not have this restriction. In addition, Unreliable Datagram service is restricted to using the Send function further simplifying the request validation process.

The following describes the requirements placed on a responder for validating an inbound request packet.

C9-165: The responder shall validate the various fields of the headers in order to verify the integrity of the packet. This validation process is specified in Section [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#). Packets containing invalid fields shall be silently dropped by the responder.

C9-166: For an HCA using Unreliable Connected service, the PSN shall be examined to detect out of order packets. By examining the PSN, the responder can determine whether the packet is a new request or an invalid packet. See Section [9.8.2.2.1 Responder - Validating the PSN on page 409](#) for a description of this check.

o9-115: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connected service, the PSN shall be examined to detect out of order packets. By examining the PSN, the responder can determine whether the packet is a new request or an invalid packet. See Section [9.8.2.2.1 Responder - Validating the PSN on page 409](#) for a description of this check.

C9-167: For an HCA using Unreliable Connected service, the responder shall examine the packet OpCode to determine that the packet OpCode sequence is valid. This check is not applicable to Unreliable Datagram since that service is restricted to single packet messages, thus the concept of a sequence of opcodes is not applicable.

o9-116: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connected service, the responder shall examine the packet OpCode to determine that the packet OpCode sequence is valid. This check is not applicable to Unreliable Datagram since that service is restricted to single packet messages, thus the concept of a sequence of opcodes is not applicable.

C9-168: The responder shall examine the packet OpCode to determine whether the requested operation is supported by this receive queue.

C9-169: The responder shall verify that it has sufficient resources available to receive the message. The necessary resources include a valid re-

ceive WQE (for a SEND or an RDMA Write with immediate data), and, for a SEND request, sufficient buffer space available to receive the request.

C9-170: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the request is for an RDMA WRITE operation, the responder shall examine the R_Key. If the packet is found to be valid, in order, and sufficient resources are available, it is executed by the responder. In the process of execution, the responder may encounter local errors.

o9-117: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if it supports RDMA operations, it shall behave as follows. If an inbound request is for an RDMA WRITE operation, the responder shall examine the R_Key. If the packet is found to be valid, in order, and sufficient resources are available, it is executed by the responder. In the process of execution, the responder may encounter local errors.

C9-171: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection or Unreliable Datagram services, or for a TCA responder using Unreliable Datagram service, the responder shall follow the sequence shown in Figure 115 when validating an inbound request packet.

o9-118: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, the responder shall follow the sequence shown in Figure 115 when validating an inbound request packet.

For Unreliable Connected service, these requirements are discussed in some detail in section [9.8.2.2 Responder Behavior on page 409](#). Packet validation for Unreliable Datagram service is discussed in [9.8.3.2 Responder Behavior on page 419](#).

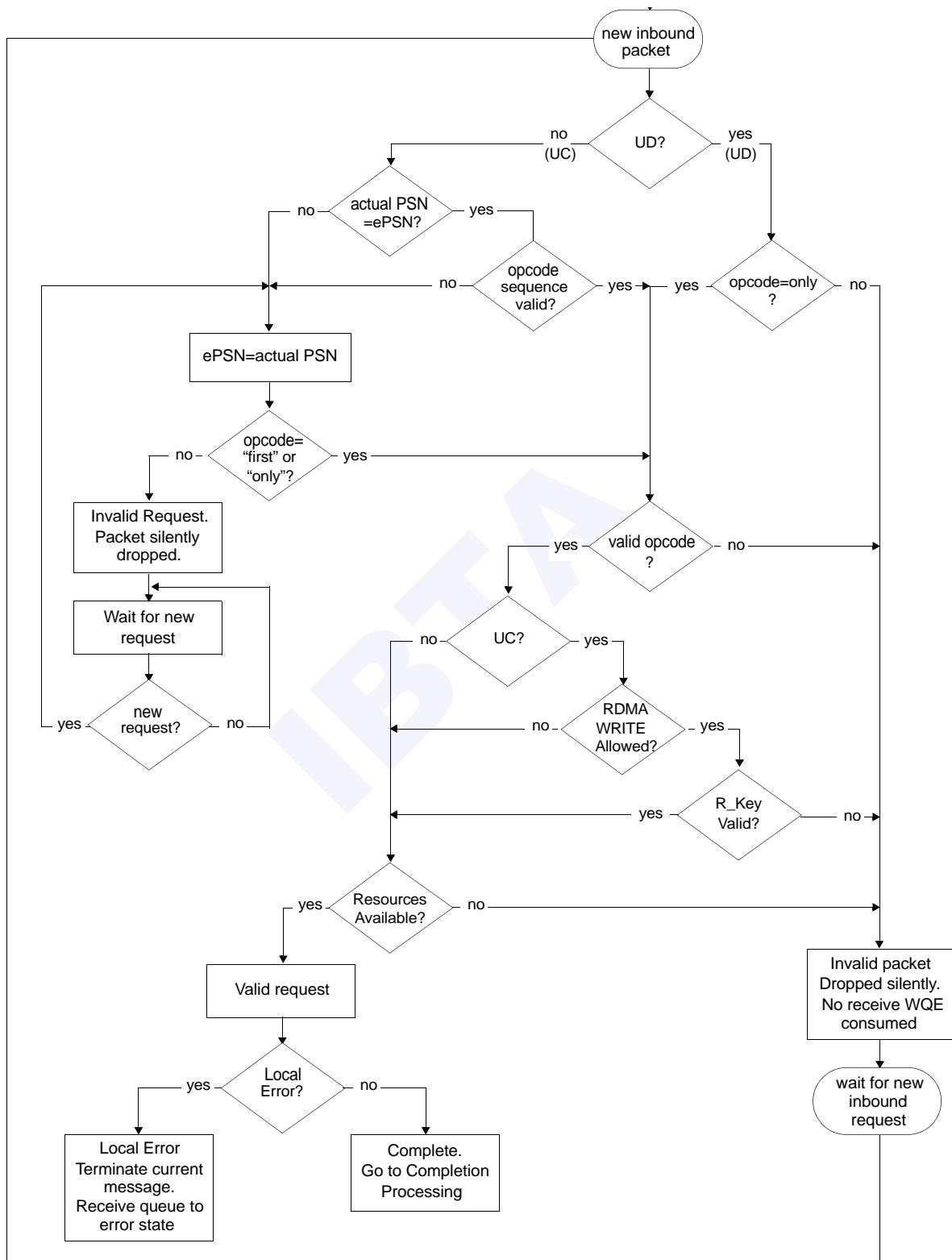


Figure 115

Unreliable Service: Inbound Packet Validation

OM10531

9.8.2 UNRELIABLE CONNECTIONS

An unreliable connection consists of a one-to-one correspondence between two QPs. Packets are sent from one QP to the other but no acknowledgments are generated by the destination QP. The chief characteristics are that there are no delivery guarantees made to the requester. The responder, however can detect data corruption and out of order packets.

The characteristics of Unreliable Connection service are summarized in [Table 52](#).

Table 52 Summary of Unreliable Connection Service Characteristics

Characteristic	Comment
Delivery guarantee	No guarantees to the requester. Responder may drop messages.
Ordering-requester	No guarantee. Requester cannot rely on msgs arriving in order.
Ordering-responder	Responder detects and drops out of order packets.
Ordering-responder	Dropped packets may cause the message to be dropped.
Ordering-responder	After dropping a packet, responder resumes with the first packet of a new message.
Supported Operations	Sends and RDMA WRITEs (with and without Immediate data)
Message size	Maximum 2^{31} bytes. Msgs may comprise multiple packets.

9.8.2.1 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR

This section specifies the requester's required behavior when generating request packets for Unreliable Connection service.

9.8.2.1.1 REQUESTER - GENERATING PSN

C9-172: For an HCA requester using Unreliable Connection service, the requester must place a value, called the current PSN, in the BTH:PSN field of every request packet.

o9-119: If a TCA requester implements Unreliable Connection service, the requester must place a value, called the current PSN, in the BTH:PSN field of every request packet.

During connection establishment, the transport layer's client must program the next PSN to any value between zero and 16,777,215.

C9-173: For an HCA requester using Unreliable Connection service, the initial PSN, as programmed by the transport layer's client, shall appear as the BTH:PSN in the first request packet generated by the requester.

o9-120: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connection service, the initial PSN, as programmed by the transport layer's client, shall appear as the BTH:PSN in the first request packet generated by the requester.

C9-174: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, the transport layer shall modify (update) the PSN only when the send queue is in a proper state to transmit request packets. For example, for an HCA, the transport layer does not update the next PSN while the queue pair is in the INITIALIZED state.

o9-121: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connection service, the transport layer shall modify (update) the PSN only when the send queue is in a proper state to transmit request packets.

C9-175: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, each request packet generated by the requester must have a PSN value that is an increment of “1” (modulo 2^{24}) of the PSN value of the preceding request packet.

o9-122: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connection service, each request packet generated by the requester must have a PSN value that is an increment of “1” (modulo 2^{24}) of the PSN value of the preceding request packet.

Table 53 Requester's Calculation of Next PSN

Current Request Packet	PSN for Next Request Packet
SEND, RDMA WRITE	current PSN + 1 (modulo 2^{24})

9.8.2.1.2 REQUESTER - GENERATING OPCODES

The opcodes generated by a requester must fit into a schedule of opcodes as shown below.

C9-176: For an HCA requester using Unreliable Connection service, the

Table 54 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences

Previous Packet OpCode	Valid OpCodes for Current Packet
None e.g., first packet following connection establishment	"First" packet "Only" packet
"First" packet	"Middle" packet (message is 3 or more packets) "Last" packet (message is exactly 2 packets) Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
"Middle" packet	"Middle" packet "Last" packet Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
"Last" packet	"First" packet (1st packet of a new message) "Only" packet (1st packet of a new single packet msg)
"Only" packet	"First" packet "Only" packet

requester must generate packet opcodes which fit within the schedule of valid OpCode sequences as shown in [Table 54 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 408](#). When generating a request packet, the BTH:Opcode shall be as specified in [Table 38 OpCode field on page 257](#).

o9-123: If a TCA requester implements Unreliable Connection service, the requester must generate packet opcodes which fit within the schedule of valid OpCode sequences as shown in [Table 54 Schedule of Valid OpCode Sequences on page 408](#). When generating a request packet, the BTH:Opcode shall be as specified in [Table 38 OpCode field on page 257](#).

9.8.2.1.3 REQUESTER - GENERATING PAYLOADS

The requester shall generate payload lengths as a function of the opcode as follows:

C9-177: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, if the OpCode specifies a "first" or "middle" packet, then the packet payload length must be a full PMTU size.

C9-178: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, if the OpCode specifies a "only" packet, then the packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes in size. Thus, the only way to create a zero byte length transfer is by use of a single packet message.

C9-179: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, if the OpCode specifies a "last" packet, then the packet payload length must be between one and PMTU bytes in size.

o9-124: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connection service, then it shall conform to the three preceding HCA requirements for OpCode.

9.8.2.1.4 COMPLETING A MESSAGE SEND OR RDMA WRITE

C9-180: For an HCA requester using Unreliable Connection service, the requester shall consider a message Send (or RDMA WRITE) complete when either of the following conditions occurs: The requester has committed the last byte of the VCRC field of the last packet to the wire (and detected no local errors associated with the message transfer), or the requester has detected a local error associated with the message transfer that causes the requester to terminate sending the request.

o9-125: If a TCA requester implements Unreliable Connection service, the requester shall consider a message Send (or RDMA WRITE) complete when either of the following conditions occurs: The requester has committed the last byte of the VCRC field of the last packet to the wire (and detected no local errors associated with the message transfer), or the requester has detected a local error associated with the message transfer that causes the requester to terminate sending the request.

Note that at the time that the requester completes the send WQE, the state of the memory at the responder is unknown. Likewise, if the requester detects a local error while sending the request packet, the state of the responder's memory is unknown.

9.8.2.2 RESPONDER BEHAVIOR

This section specifies the responder's required behavior when receiving inbound requests.

9.8.2.2.1 RESPONDER - VALIDATING THE PSN

The responder maintains an Expected PSN value (ePSN) that it uses to detect missing packets from a multi-packet request message and to detect dropped messages. Since the PSN of every inbound request packet is sequential and monotonically increasing for UC service, a break in the PSN sequence indicates a lost or dropped request packet.

C9-181: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, the responder shall maintain an Expected PSN value (ePSN). This is the PSN that the responder expects to find in the BTH of the next inbound request packet.

o9-126: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, the responder shall maintain an Expected PSN value (ePSN). This is the PSN that the responder expects to find in the BTH of the next inbound request packet.

The responder's expected PSN may be initialized at connection establishment time by the transport's client to any value between zero and 16,777,215. However, since the responder will accept any valid packet with an opcode of "first" or "only", and use the value of the PSN contained in such a packet as its expected PSN, it is not required that the responder's initial expected PSN be programmed. See Chapter [\(Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707\)](#) for a full description of the mechanism for loading the expected PSN at connection establishment time.

The initial expected PSN can only be set by the client when the queue is in the Initialized state. Attempts by the client to set the PSN when it is in any other state may be ignored by the transport layer.

C9-182: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, the transport layer shall modify (update) its expected PSN only when the receive queue is in a proper state to receive inbound request packets. For example, for an HCA, the transport layer does not modify the PSN when the queue pair is in the Initialized state.

o9-127: If a TCA implements Unreliable Connection service, the transport layer shall modify (update) its expected PSN only when the receive queue is in a proper state to receive inbound request packets. For example, for an HCA, the transport layer does not modify the PSN when the queue pair is in the Initialized state.

C9-183: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, an inbound request packet shall be declared out of order if its PSN does not exactly match the responder's current ePSN.

o9-128: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, an inbound request packet shall be declared out of order if its PSN does not exactly match the responder's current ePSN.

C9-184: An HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service shall behave as follows. If, during packet validation, an inbound request packet is discovered with an OpCode of "first" or "only", the responder shall accept the packet and shall accept the PSN of that request message as its new ePSN, regardless of whether the inbound packet is out of order or not. This shall be done regardless of the previous value of ePSN.

o9-129: A TCA responder implementing Unreliable Connection service shall behave as follows. If, during packet validation, an inbound request packet is discovered with an OpCode of "first" or "only", the responder shall accept the packet and shall accept the PSN of that request message as its new ePSN, regardless of whether the inbound packet is out of order or not. This shall be done regardless of the previous value of ePSN.

C9-185: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, before executing an inbound request, the responder shall check the PSN by comparing the PSN in the inbound BTH to the responder's expected PSN. The rules that the responder uses to calculate its next expected PSN shall be the same as those used by the requester when it calculates the PSN value to insert in its next request packet. These rules are given in [9.8.2.1.1 Requester - Generating PSN on page 406](#).

o9-130: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, before executing an inbound request, the responder shall check the PSN by comparing the PSN in the inbound BTH to the responder's expected PSN. The rules that the responder uses to calculate its next expected PSN shall be the same as those used by the requester when it calculates the PSN value to insert in its next request packet. These rules are given in [9.8.2.1.1 Requester - Generating PSN on page 406](#).

o9-131: If the PSN of the inbound message does not match the responder's ePSN, the responder may notify its client of the presence of one or more lost messages. The mechanism by which the responder notifies its client is outside the scope of this specification.

C9-186: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if a multi-packet message is in progress at the time that an out of order packet is detected, the current message shall be silently dropped. The responder then waits for the first packet of a new message. It is possible that the present packet (the out of order packet) is the first packet of a new message. If so, it shall be treated as a new message.

o9-132: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, if a multi-packet message is in progress at the time that an out of order packet is detected, the current message shall be silently dropped. The responder then waits for the first packet of a new message. It is possible that the present packet (the out of order packet) is the first packet of a new message. If so, it shall be treated as a new message.

A "new message" is denoted by an inbound request packet with an OpCode in the BTH of "first" or "only".

"Current message" means all the packets received since the most recently received "first" or "only" OpCode, excluding the present packet.

9.8.2.2 RESPONDER - OP CODE SEQUENCE CHECK

A request packet must fit within a schedule of valid OpCode sequences. The OpCode sequence is determined by examining the BTH:OpCode.

C9-187: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, the responder shall check the sequence of packet OpCodes as described in items (1) through (5) below:

- 1) If this is the first packet following establishment of the connection, then the packet OpCode must indicate either “first” or “only”. An OpCode of “middle” or “last” implies that at least the first packet of the current message was lost and denotes an invalid OpCode sequence.
- 2) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “first”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “middle” or “last”. It must also match the operation type specified in the last valid packet (SEND, RDMA WRITE). A current OpCode of “first” or “only” implies that at least the last packet of the previous message was lost and denotes an invalid OpCode sequence.
- 3) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “middle”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “middle” or “last”. It must also match the operation type specified in the last valid packet (SEND or RDMA WRITE request). A current OpCode of “first” or “only” implies that at least the last packet of the previous message was lost and denotes an invalid OpCode sequence.
- 4) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “last”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “first” or “only”. A current OpCode of “middle” or “last” implies that at least the first packet of the current message was lost and denotes an invalid OpCode sequence.
- 5) If the last valid packet received had an OpCode indicating “only”, then the current OpCode must indicate either “first” or “only”. A current OpCode of either “middle” or “last” implies that the first packet of the current message was missed and denotes an invalid OpCode sequence.

o9-133: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, the responder shall check the sequence of packet OpCodes as described in items (1) through (5) above.

The responder’s behavior in the presence of an invalid OpCode sequence is specified in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

C9-188: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the responder detects an invalid OpCode sequence, the current message shall be silently dropped. The responder then waits for a new inbound request packet with an OpCode of “first” or “only”; any other inbound request packet shall be silently dropped.

o9-134: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the responder detects an invalid OpCode sequence, the current message shall be silently dropped. The responder then waits for a new inbound request packet with an OpCode of “first” or “only”; any other inbound request packet shall be silently dropped.

“Current message” means all the packets received since the most recently received “first” or “only” OpCode, excluding the present packet.

C9-189: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the present packet, which caused the invalid OpCode sequence, has an OpCode of “first” or “only” it shall be treated as the first packet of a new request message.

o9-135: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the present packet, which caused the invalid OpCode sequence, has an OpCode of “first” or “only” it shall be treated as the first packet of a new request message.

The list of valid OpCode sequences is summarized in the following table.

Table 55 Summary: Valid OpCode Sequences

Previous Packet OpCode	Valid OpCodes for Current Packet
None e.g., first packet following connection establishment	“First” packet “Only” packet
“First” packet	“Middle” packet (message is 3 or more packets) “Last” packet (message is exactly 2 packets) Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
“Middle” packet	“Middle” packet “Last” packet Type of operation must match the previous OpCode
“Last” packet	“First” packet (1st packet of a new message) “Only” packet (1st packet of a new single packet msg)
“Only” packet	“First” packet “Only” packet

9.8.2.2.3 RESPONDER OPCODE VALIDATION

C9-190: For UC, the responder shall validate the requested function (SEND or RDMA WRITE) is supported by the receive queue and that the BTH:OpCode is not reserved before executing the request.

Note that the OpCode was also examined as part of packet validation in section [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#) to ensure that the inbound packet contains a request for Unreliable Connected service.

C9-191: Invalid UC requests shall be silently dropped by the responder per [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

9.8.2.2.4 RESPONDER REMOTE ACCESS VALIDATION

C9-192: This compliance statement has been obsoleted and replaced by [C9-192.2.1:](#)

C9-192.2.1: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the inbound request is for a RDMA WRITE and the requested DMA length in the RETH is non-zero, then the following conditions shall be checked:

- The R_Key field in the RETH is valid.
- The virtual address and length is within the locally defined limits associated with the R_Key. For an RDMA WRITE request, the length check is conducted on a per packet basis and is based on the LRH:PktLen field.
- The type of access specified (Write) is within the locally defined limits associated with the R_Key.
- For an HCA, the protection domain shall be checked according to the conditions defined in Section [10.2.3 Protection Domains on page 465](#).

A failure of any of these checks constitutes an R_Key violation. The responder's behavior in response to an R_Key violation is specified in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

o9-136: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service and RDMA functionality, it shall conform to the preceding HCA compliance statement.

C9-193: For an HCA using Unreliable Connection service, the R_Key field shall not be checked for a zero-length RDMA WRITE request, even if the request includes Immediate data.

o9-137: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service and RDMA functionality, the R_Key field shall not be checked for a zero-length RDMA WRITE request, even if the request includes Immediate data.

9.8.2.2.5 RESPONDER - LENGTH VALIDATION

C9-194: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, the PktLen field of the LRH shall be checked to confirm that there is sufficient space available in the receive buffer specified by the receive WQE. This check applies only to SENDs.

o9-138: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, the PktLen field of the LRH shall be checked to confirm that there is sufficient space available in the receive buffer specified by the receive WQE. This check applies only to SENDs.

The length of the packet shall also be validated by comparing it to the Op-Code as follows:

C9-195: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “first” or “middle” packet, then the packet payload length must be a full PMTU size.

o9-139: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “first” or “middle” packet, then the packet payload length must be a full PMTU size.

C9-196: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “only” packet, then the packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes in size. Thus, the only way to create a zero byte length transfer is by use of a single packet message.

o9-140: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “only” packet, then the packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes in size. Thus, the only way to create a zero byte length transfer is by use of a single packet message.

C9-197: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “last” packet, then the packet payload length must be between one and PMTU bytes in size.

o9-141: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the UC BTH:OpCode specifies a “last” packet, then the packet payload length must be between one and PMTU bytes in size.

C9-198: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

o9-142: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

C9-199: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, if the BTH:OpCode field[4:0] specifies a first or middle request packet (e.g. SEND First, or RDMA WRITE Middle), the pad count bits are verified to be b00, indicating no pad bytes are present. If the pad count bits are non-zero, the OpCode is invalid.

o9-143: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, and if the BTH:OpCode field[4:0] specifies a first or middle request packet (e.g. SEND First, or RDMA WRITE Middle), the pad count bits are verified to be b00, indicating no pad bytes are present. If the pad count bits are non-zero, the OpCode is invalid.

If a packet is detected with an invalid length the request is an invalid request. The responder’s behavior in such a case is specified in Section [9.9.3.1 Responder Side Error Response on page 439](#).

9.8.2.2.6 RESPONDER - LOCAL OPERATION VALIDATION

A valid inbound request may still fail to complete due to a failure that is local to the responder, e.g. local memory translation error while accessing local memory. A local error may cause the receive queue to transition to the error state. See [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#) for additional details.

9.8.2.2.7 COMPLETING A MESSAGE RECEIVE

The responder considers a given inbound message completed successfully when it has:

- Detected the beginning of a valid message as indicated by the presence of a “First packet” or “Only packet” OpCode in the BTH,
- Detected the end of the same valid message as indicated by the presence of a “Only packet” or “Last packet OpCode in the BTH, without a skip in the PSN sequence,
- Received all the packets between “First packet” and “Last packet” inclusive successfully and in order, or has successfully received an “Only packet”.
- Committed the message payload to the local fault zone without error, and,
- Successfully completed all appropriate validity checks (including variant and invariant CRC).

A failure detected during any of these steps may or may not cause the associated WQE to be completed in error. In some cases, such as a missing “first” packet, it is entirely likely that no WQE will be consumed by the responder. Note that, in the presence of errors, it is not possible to guarantee the state of the responder’s memory. Some or all of a given packet may have been committed to the responder’s memory before the error is detected.

Once an inbound message receive is completed successfully, the responder completes the current WQE.

9.8.3 UNRELIABLE DATAGRAMS

Unreliable Datagrams are a form of communication that allow a source QP to send each message to one of many destination QPs that may exist on the same or multiple destination endnodes.

- For each message to be sent, the requester must be supplied with the destination address (see [11.2.2.1 Create Address Handle on page 598](#)), the destination QP, the destination Q_Key etc. See [11.4.1.1 Post Send Request on page 663](#) for the parameters supplied for an HCA.

- The responder must deliver to the client the requester's address, QP etc. See [11.4.2.1 Poll for Completion on page 675](#) for more detail on HCA requirements.

Table 56 Unreliable Datagram QP characteristics

Property / Level of Reliability	Support
Corrupt data detected and dropped	Yes, silent drop on error
OpCode Service and command Validation	Yes, silent drop on error
Receive buffer overrun	Yes, reported as WR error
Data repeated	No
Data order guaranteed	No
Data loss detected	Not required
RDMA Support	No
ATOMIC Support	No
Immediate data support	Yes
Max Size of SEND messages	PMTU-sized packet - 256 - 4096 bytes of data payload. Any message that exceeds the PMTU will not be delivered.
State of SEND when request completed	Committed to transmission on the fabric

C9-200: Devices that source UD messages shall limit the UD message size to a single packet. The packet should be no larger than the PMTU between the source and destination (or it will be dropped).

C9-201: Devices that source and sink UD messages shall meet the requirements of the basic Unreliable Services (see [9.8 Unreliable Service on page 402](#) through [9.8.1 Validating and Executing Requests on page 403](#)).

C9-202: Devices that source and sink IBA UD messages shall meet the requirements specified in [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#).

9.8.3.1 REQUESTER BEHAVIOR

This section specifies the requester's required behavior when generating request packets.

C9-203: Devices that source UD messages shall meet the requirements specified in [9.8.3.1.1 Generating PSN on page 419](#) and [9.8.3.1.2 Completing a Message Send on page 419](#) while sending UD messages.

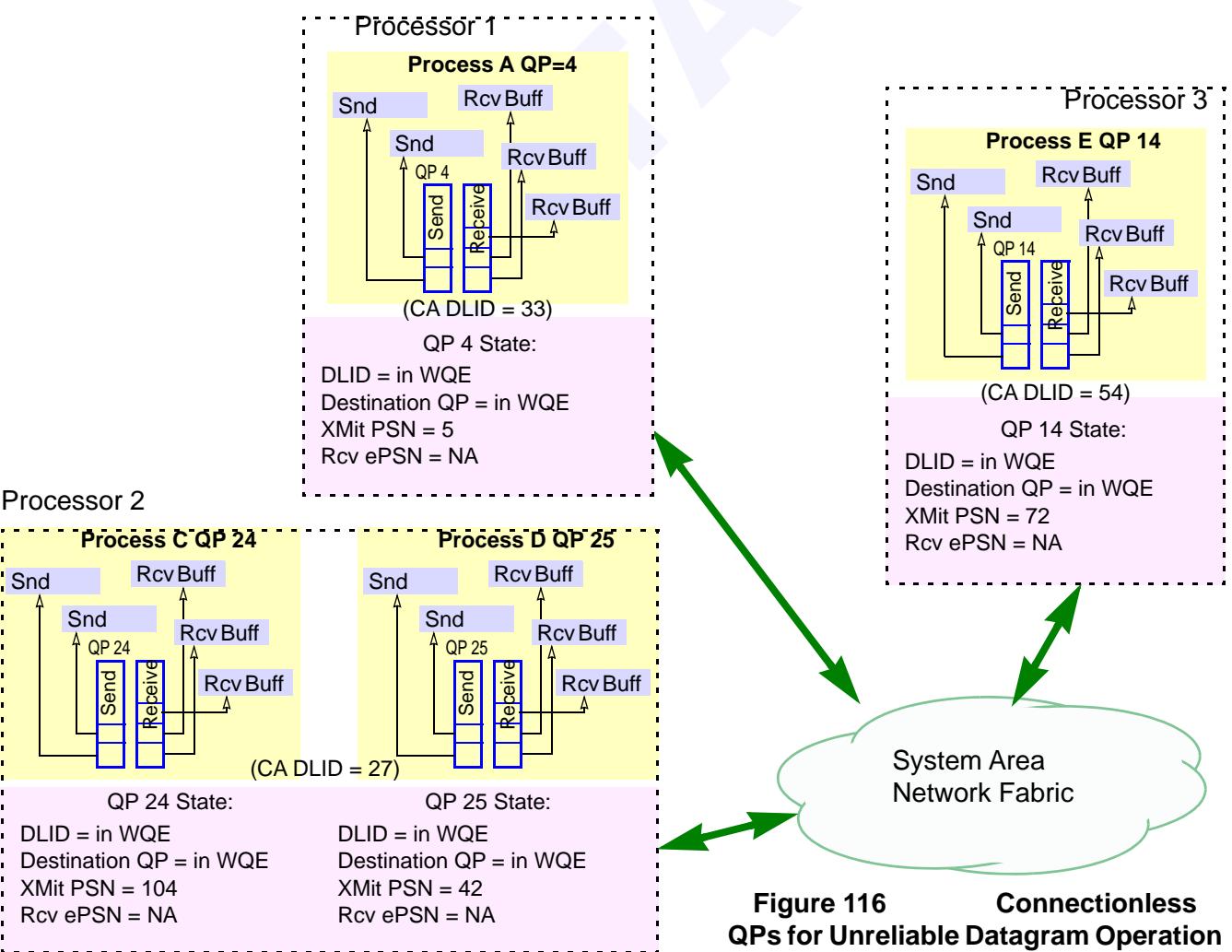
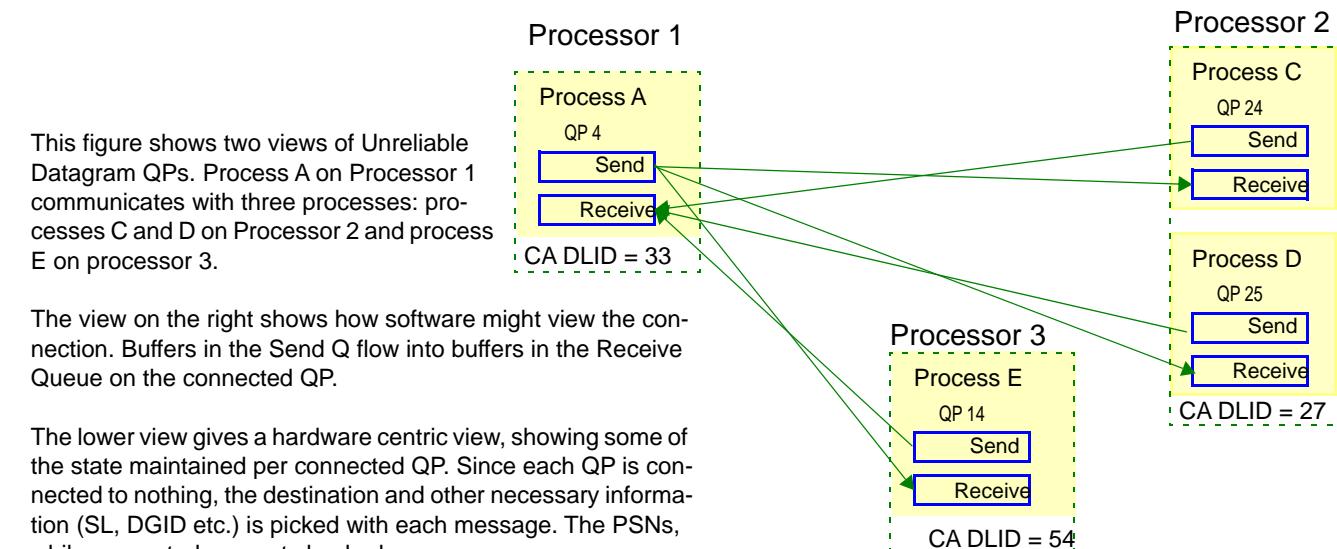


Figure 116
Connectionless
QPs for Unreliable Datagram Operation

9.8.3.1.1 GENERATING PSN

C9-204: For each request message on a UD transport service, the requester shall generate PSNs that is an increment of “1” (modulo 2^{24}) of the PSN value of the preceding request packet. The incrementing of PSN is not required for QP0 and QP1.

The initial PSN value shall be loaded by the transport’s client while the send queue is in the Initialized state and may be initialized to any 24-bit value. While in the process of transmitting request packets, the transport layer shall modify (update) the PSN only when the send queue is in the Ready to Send state.

9.8.3.1.2 COMPLETING A MESSAGE SEND

The requester shall consider a message Send complete when it has:

- Committed the last byte of the VCRC field of the packet to the wire, and detected no local errors associated with the message transfer.
- Detected a local error associated with the message transfer that causes the requester to terminate sending the request.

Note that at the time that the requester completes the send WQE, the state of the memory at the responder is unknown. Likewise, if the requester detects a local error while sending the request packet, the state of the responder’s memory is unknown.

9.8.3.2 RESPONDER BEHAVIOR

This section specifies the responder’s required behavior when receiving inbound requests.

9.8.3.2.1 RESPONDER - VALIDATING THE PSN

o9-144: For UD transport service, the responder may ignore the PSN field.

Some applications (e.g. multicast-based media streaming) may derive benefit from having the responder validate the PSN sequence to detect out-of-sequence packets. It is permissible for a responder implementation to do so, but is outside the scope of the IBA specification.

9.8.3.2.2 RESPONDER - LENGTH VALIDATION

C9-205: Before executing the request, the responder shall validate the Packet Length field of the LRH and the PadCnt of the BTH as described in [9.8.3.2.2: Responder - Length Validation](#).

The following characteristics shall be validated:

- The Length fields shall be checked to confirm that there is sufficient space available in the receive buffer specified by the receive WQE.

- The packet payload length must be between zero and PMTU bytes inclusive in size.

If a packet is detected with an invalid length, the request shall be an invalid request and it shall be silently dropped by the responder as specified in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#). The responder then waits for a new request packet.

9.8.3.2.3 RESPONDER OP CODE VALIDATION

C9-206: For UD, the responder shall validate the BTW:OpCode for the requested function (SEND) is supported by this receive queue and is not reserved before executing the request else the request is invalid.

C9-207: If a UD receive queue does not have an entry to hold an inbound SEND request, the request is invalid.

If the request is invalid, it shall be silently dropped by the responder as specified in Section [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#).

9.8.3.2.4 RESPONDER - LOCAL OPERATION VALIDATION

A valid inbound request may still fail to complete due to a failure that is local to the responder, e.g. local memory translation error while accessing local memory. A local error may cause the receive queue to transition to the error state. See [9.9.3 Responder Side Behavior on page 435](#) for additional details.

9.8.3.2.5 COMPLETING A MESSAGE RECEIVE

The responder considers a given inbound message completed successfully when it has:

- Committed the message payload to the local fault zone without error
- Successfully completed all appropriate validity checks (including variant and invariant CRC).

A failure detected during any of these steps may or may not cause the associated WQE to be completed in error. In some cases, such as an opcode or length error, no WQE will be consumed by the responder. Note that, in the presence of errors, it is not possible to guarantee the state of the responder's memory. Some or all of a given packet may have been committed to the responder's memory before the error is detected. Once an inbound message receive is completed successfully, the responder completes the current WQE.

9.8.4 RAW DATAGRAMS

The previous several sections describe the different transport protocols defined by the IBA specification. In addition to these, IBA allows other protocols to be carried by an IBA subnet. IBA datagrams that encapsulate such traffic are referred to as Raw Datagrams.

IBA defines two different methods to support Raw Datagrams. In Section [7.7.5 Link Next Header \(LNH\) - 2 bits on page 216](#) two bits in the local route header are used to specify the next header after the LRH. The following table describes the two LNH encodings that describe Raw Data-grams.

Link Next Header LNH(1:0)	
IBA_Transport	GRH (IPv6) header
0	1
0	0

Structure of the Raw Datagram

LRH	IPv6	Packet Payload	VCRC
LRH	RWH	Packet Payload	VCRC

Figure 117 Raw Datagrams

The first method of encoding a Raw Datagram is used only for IPv6 data-grams. The packet payload may contain any transport or network protocol defined by the IETF's encoding of the IPv6 header's "next header" field excluding any encoding indicating the next header is an IBA transport header.

C9-208: CAs shall not generate an outbound packet and will discard any inbound packet whose LRH indicates a Raw Datagram and whose IPv6 "next header" indicates an IBA transport. TCAs may report this error in any manner they choose.

The second method of encoding a Raw Datagram uses the IBA defined raw header (RWH). The RWH contains the 16-bit Ethertype field - the RWH is described in section [5.3 Raw Packet Format on page 179](#). The RWH is used to define the protocol header encapsulated in the packet payload. In general, the second method is used to allow protocols not supported by the IPv6 next header - it should be noted that either method may be used to transport IPv6 datagrams.

o9-145: If a CA implements Raw Datagram support, the Packet Payload of Raw Datagrams must always be of a modulo 4 size, since the LRH Packet length describes the length in 4 byte increments. Should the encapsulated payload size not be a multiple of 4 bytes, the payload shall be padded to a multiple of 4 bytes.

o9-146: If a CA implements Raw Datagram support, the QPs used to inject and consume Raw Datagrams shall be locally managed, i.e. the association of a QP with a given Raw Datagram service is implementation dependent.

o9-147: If a CA implements Raw Datagram support, it may support one or more QPs for Raw Datagram operations.

9.8.4.1 RAW DATAGRAM PACKET SIZE

The IBA MTU defines the maximum size of an IBA transport's data payload. The maximum size of an IBA packet is MTU+124 bytes¹³ (see [7.7.8 Packet Length \(PktLen\) - 11 bits on page 216](#)).

o9-148: If a CA implements Raw Datagram support, and since a Raw datagram does not use IBA transport headers, raw datagrams may have a packet payload larger than the supported MTU (see [Figure 117 Raw Datagrams on page 421](#)). The table below summarizes the maximum packet payload (and the corresponding value for the LRH PktLen field) for each of the two raw datagram types.

Table 57 Maximum Raw Datagram Packet Payload

MTU	IPv6 Raw Datagram		RWH Raw Datagram	
	Largest Possible Packet Payload ^a	Corresponding PktLen Value	Largest Possible Packet Payload ^b	Corresponding PktLen Value
256	332 Bytes	95	368 Bytes	95
512	588 Bytes	159	624 Bytes	159
1024	1100 Bytes	287	1136 Bytes	287
2048	2124 Bytes	543	2160 Bytes	543
4096	4172 Bytes	1055	4208 Bytes	1055

a. largest possible IPv6 raw packet payload = MTU + 124 (the largest packet header/CRC size) - 8 (LRH size) - 40 (IPv6 header size)

b. largest possible RWH raw packet payload = MTU + 124 (the largest packet header/CRC size) - 8 (LRH size) - 4 (RWH header size)

9.9 ERROR DETECTION AND HANDLING

IBA uses a layered error management architecture (LEMA) approach. Each level is responsible for detecting and managing errors appropriate to that layer before passing the packet or message up to the next layer in the stack.

Thus the transport layer responds to errors particular to the transport including errors in the packet header and failures to correctly transport a message.

Errors detected in the transport layer are reported to the transport's client. In this section, the interface between the transport layer and its client is shown conceptually as the send or Receive Queue. In the case of an

13. The 124B maximum packet header/CRC byte count does not include the VCRC field.

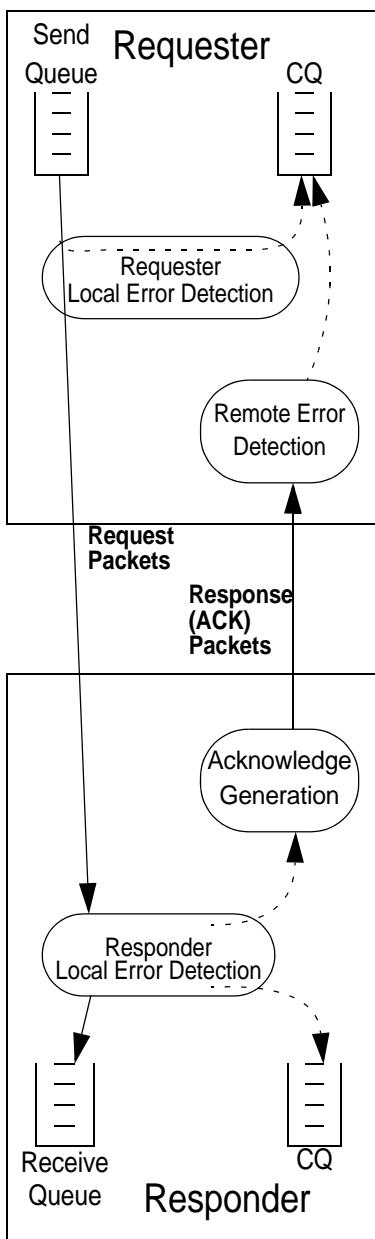


Figure 118 Requester/Responder Error Detection

9.9.1 REPORTING ERRORS TO THE VERBS LAYER

For an HCA, the IBA software interface defines three types of errors that can be reported through the verbs layer. These are called immediate errors, completion errors, and asynchronous errors. Of those three types, the transport layer is only capable of reporting completion errors or asynchronous errors. This is because immediate errors are detected by the verbs layer before the WQE ever gets posted to the transport layer. [Table 58 Software Error Types Detected by Transport Layer on page 424](#) sum-

HCA, the transport indicates errors to its client by writing a completion code to a Completion Queue Entry (CQE) on the Completion Queue (CQ). As usual TCAs are free to report errors (or not) as they see fit.

In order to simplify the discussion, error behavior is discussed separately for the requester and responder ends. This causes a slight amount of duplication between the summary tables in the following sections describing the errors for the requester and responder side. Specifically, overlaps occur when an error is detected by the responder and reported to the requester. These areas of overlap, however, are strictly confined to reliable classes of service.

Errors that are reported by the requester to its client fall into one of two classes. The first are Locally Detected errors; i.e., errors that are detected solely by the requester side. An example of a locally detected error is a protection fault detected by the requester while accessing its own local memory during a send request.

The second class is remotely detected errors, which are those errors detected by the responder and reported to the requester via a NAK syndrome in an Response packet. Remotely detected errors only apply to the reliable classes of service (reliable connected and reliable datagram).

Whereas there were two classes of errors for the requester side (locally and remotely detected), there are only locally detected errors on the responder side.

In response to a locally detected error, the responder side may be required to report the error to the requester, or it may be required to report the error to its local client, or both, or neither. The choice of to whom the error is reported is governed by the class of service (reliable versus unreliable), and the specific error that is detected.

The key focus of the following sections is to categorize all errors according to how errors are reported to the transport layer's client, and the behavior that the send (receive) queue must exhibit following detection of an error. Thus, this section is categorized according to not only where an error is detected, but to whom it is reported.

marizes the types of errors that an IBA transport can detect and report to the verbs layer. For more information on these error types, see [10.10.2 Error Handling Mechanisms on page 563](#).

Table 58 Software Error Types Detected by Transport Layer

IBA Software Defined Error Types	Detected by IBA Transport
Immediate Errors	no
Completion Errors - Interface check	yes
Completion Errors - Processing error	yes
Asynchronous Errors - Affiliated type	yes
Asynchronous Errors - Unaffiliated type	yes

There are two classes of completion errors: Interface checks and processing errors. An interface check is an error in the information supplied to the Channel Interface detected before data is placed onto the link. A processing error is an error encountered during the processing of the work request by the Channel Interface.

9.9.2 REQUESTER SIDE ERROR BEHAVIOR

As indicated above, the requester detects errors originating locally or remotely.

9.9.2.1 REQUESTER SIDE ERROR DETECTION - LOCALLY DETECTED ERRORS

A locally detected error reflects either an error condition that has occurred in the requester's channel interface, a missing response from the responder side (timeout) or excessive retries for sequence errors or RNR NAKs.

Locally detected errors at the requester can occur during request packet generation, during the processing of response packets, or due to a timeout.

C9-209: For an HCA requester using RC, UC, or UD service, and for a TCA requester using UD service, the requester shall behave as follows. For locally detected transport errors that are detected during transmission of request packets, a CA shall stop transmission for the affected QP, shall store the state associated with the error until any previous incomplete WQEs are completed, and finally complete the affected WQE. The QP shall be put into the error state if the error type requires this.

o9-149: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection or Unreliable Connection service, or XRC service, it shall behave as follows. For locally detected transport errors that are detected during transmission of request

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
packets, a CA shall stop transmission for the affected QP, shall store the state associated with the error until any previous incomplete WQEs are completed, and finally complete the affected WQE. The QP shall be put into the error state if the error type requires this.

o9-150: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram or XRC service, it shall behave as follows. For locally detected transport errors that are detected during transmission of request packets, a CA shall stop transmission for the affected EEC, shall store the state associated with the error until any previous incomplete WQEs are completed, and finally complete the affected WQE. The EEC shall be put into the error state if the error type requires this.

This is required to maintain the ordered completion of WQEs and to ensure that the error is properly reported in the WQE where the error occurred.

9.9.2.1.1 REQUESTER ERROR RETRY COUNTERS

C9-210: For an HCA using Reliable Connection service, in order to detect excessive retries, the requester shall maintain the RNR NAK and Error retry counters that perform the logical functions described in [9.9.2.1.1 Requester Error Retry Counters on page 425](#).

o9-151: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, or if a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, the requester shall behave as follows. In order to detect excessive retries, the requester shall maintain the RNR NAK and Error retry counters that perform the logical functions described in [9.9.2.1.1 Requester Error Retry Counters on page 425](#).

Implementations may implement these retry counters in any way they choose, but for clarity, they are here described as down counters, initialized to the number of retries allowed before terminating the operation and creating the final completion error. See [10.2.4.3 Modifying Queue Pair Attributes on page 468](#) for the programming of these counters in an HCA.

The RNR NAK retry counter is decremented each time the responder returns an RNR NAK. If the requester's RNR NAK retry counter is zero, and an RNR NAK packet is received, an RNR NAK retry error occurs. Each time an RNR NAK is cleared (i.e., an acknowledge message other than an RNR NAK is returned), the retry counter is reloaded. An exception to the following is if the RNR NAK retry counter is set to 7. This value indicates infinite retry and the counter is not decremented.

The Error retry counter is decremented each time the requester must retry a packet due to a Local Ack Timeout, NAK-Sequence Error, or Implied NAK. If the requester's retry counter decrements to zero, one of two things may be implemented.

If Automatic Path migration is not supported, or has already been completed, a “Transport Retry Counter Exceeded” error shall be reported in the completion.

o9-152: If a CA supports Automatic Path Migration, then, following a potentially recoverable error and its retries, the requester may migrate the connection or EE context and perform the Error retries again before finally reporting the completion in error. See [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#) for more information.

Each time a packet is properly acknowledged, the retry counter shall be reloaded.

9.9.2.2 REQUESTER SIDE ERROR DETECTION - REMOTELY DETECTED ERRORS

A remotely detected error occurs when the responder reports an error to the requester. Remotely detected errors are unique to reliable classes of service.

Remotely detected errors are reported via a NAK code carried in an acknowledge message. However, not all NAK codes result in an error being reported to the requester’s client.

Of the possible NAK codes, two (NAK-Sequence Error and NAK-RNR) indicate operations that should be retried automatically by the requester.

The NAK codes other than NAK-Sequence Error and NAK-RNR indicate failures that must be reported to the requester’s client immediately and cannot be retried.

9.9.2.3 SUMMARY - REQUESTER SIDE ERROR BEHAVIOR

[Table 59](#) lists all errors that are detected by the requester, including both locally and remotely detected errors. If the error is detected locally by the requester, the column labelled “Syndrome” contains the notation “locally detected error”. If the error is detected remotely by the responder, this column lists the NAK syndrome that was returned by the responder. The fault behavior class specifies the actions that the requester takes to report the error to its client.

Each fault behavior class is specified below in Sections [9.9.2.4.1](#) through [9.9.2.4.5](#). For convenience, the six possible classes of fault behaviors are summarized in [Table 60 Summary of Requester Fault Behavior Classes on page 430](#) below.

C9-211: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C9-211.1.1:](#).

C9-211.1.1: For the implemented subset of transport services, requesters shall conform to the error behavior as specified in [Table 59](#). Also, the requester's send queue shall behave as specified for each Fault Behavior Class shown in [Table 60](#) and each of the Requester Class Fault descriptions.

IBTA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior

Error	Description	Syndrome	Requestor Fault Behavior Class
Packet sequence error. Retry limit not exceeded.	Responder detected a PSN larger than it expected. Requester may retry the request.	NAK-Sequence Error	RC: Class A RD: Class A XRC: Class A^a else: NA
Packet sequence error. Retry limit exceeded.	Responder detected a PSN larger than it expected. The requestor performed retries, and automatic path migration and additional retries, if applicable, but all attempts failed.	NAK-Sequence Error	RC: Class B RD: Class D XRC: Class B else: NA
Implied NAK sequence error. Retry limit not exceeded.	Requestor detected an ACK with a PSN larger than the expected PSN for an RDMA READ or ATOMIC response. Requester may retry the request.	locally detected error	RC: Class A RD: Class A XRC: Class A else: NA
Implied NAK sequence error. Retry limit exceeded.	Requestor detected an ACK with a PSN larger than the expected PSN for an RDMA READ or atomic response. The requestor performed retries, and automatic path migration and additional retries, if applicable, but all attempts failed.	locally detected error	RC: Class B RD: Class D XRC: Class B else: NA
Local Ack Timeout error. Retry limit not exceeded.	No ACK response from responder within timer interval. Requester may retry the request.	locally detected error	RC: Class A RD: Class A XRC: Class A else: NA
Local Ack Timeout error. Retry limit exceeded.	No ACK response within timer interval. The requestor performed retries, and automatic path migration and additional retries, but all attempts failed.	locally detected error	RC: Class B RD: Class D XRC: Class B else: NA
RNR NAK Retry error. Retry limit not exceeded.	Responder returned RNR NAK. Requestor may retry the request.	RNR-NAK	RC: Class A RD: Class A XRC: Class A else: NA
RNR NAK Retry error. Retry limit exceeded.	Excessive RNR NAKs returned by the responder. Requestor retried the request "n" times, but received RNR NAK each time.	locally detected error	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else: NA
Unsupported OpCode.	Responder detected an unsupported OpCode.	NAK-Invalid Request	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else: NA
Unexpected OpCode.	Responder detected an error in the sequence of OpCodes, such as a missing "Last" packet. Note: there is no PSN error, thus this does not indicate a dropped packet.	NAK-Invalid Request	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else: NA

Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior (Continued)

Error	Description	Syndrome	Requestor Fault Behavior Class
Local Memory Protection Error.	Requester detected an implementation specific memory protection error in its local memory subsystem.	locally detected error	All: Class B
R_Key Violation	Responder detected an invalid R_Key while executing an RDMA Request	NAK-Remote Access Error	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else: NA
Remote Operation Error	Responder encountered an error, (local to the responder), which prevented it from completing the request.	NAK-Remote Operation Error	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else NA
Local Operation Error ^b - WQE	An error occurred in the requester's local channel interface that can be associated with a certain WQE.	locally detected error	All: Class B
Local Operation Error ^b - affiliated or unaffiliated	An error occurred in the requester's local channel interface that cannot be associated with a certain WQE.	locally detected error	All: Class C
Remote XRC Domain Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected a XRC Domain violation	NAK-Invalid RD ^c Request	XRC: Class B else NA
Remote XRCETH Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected a XRCETH violation (e.g. XRCSRQ does not exist or in wrong state, XRCETH in middle/last is different than XRCETH in first/only)	NAK-Invalid RD ^c Request	XRC: Class B else NA
Local RDD Violation	Requester's EE Context detected an invalid RDD on an outbound packet	locally detected error	RD: Class B else NA
Remote RDD Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected a RDD violation	NAK-Invalid RD Request	RD: Class B else NA
Remote Q_Key Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected a Q_Key violation	NAK-Invalid RD Request	RD: Class B else NA
Length error	RDMA READ response message contained too much or too little payload data.	locally detected error	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else NA
Bad response	Unexpected opcode for the response packet received at the expected response PSN. ^d	locally detected error	RC: Class B RD: Class B XRC: Class B else NA
Ghost Acknowledge	Requester received an acknowledge message at other than the expected response PSN.	locally detected error	RC: Class E RD: Class E XRC: Class E^e Else NA
CQ overflow	Despite actual execution of the message, and acknowledgement, the completion notification could not be written to the CQ.	locally detected error	All: Class F

- a. where Class A as defined in chapter 9 is interpreted to now support XRC INI QPs also (i.e. wherever it reads RC it should be interpreted as RC or XRC INI).
b. Local operations errors tend to be very implementation specific; not all CA's may have or detect these.
c. we are deliberately "overloading" this RD specific NAK syndrome as it matches the spirit of the error in question. There is no possible confusion since this is a XRC QP.
d. For example; RDMA read instead of Acknowledge, NAK code in AETH of an RDMA read, or "RDMA READ Response last" instead of middle. Note that there are specific exceptions that an implementation may elect to not treat as a bad response which are: Out of order RDMA READ Response Opcodes in the case where the requester had generated a duplicate RDMA READ Request, or the reception of an ACK instead of an RDMA READ Response of Atomic Response. This ACK may be the result of an unsolicited ACK sent by the responder that arrives at the requester before the expected RDMA READ or Atomic Response. The requester may drop this ACK packet with no ill effects.
e. where Class E as defined in chapter 9 is interpreted to now support XRC INI QPs also (i.e. wherever it reads RC it should be interpreted as RC or XRC INI).

Table 60 Summary of Requester Fault Behavior Classes

Fault Behavior Class	Current Send Queue WQE	Subsequent Send Queue WQEs	Final Send Queue State
Requester Class A	no impact	no impact	no change
Requester Class B	completed in error	flushed	error state
Requester Class C	completed in error ^a	flushed ^a	error state ^a
Requester Class D ^b	completed in error	flushed	error state
Requester Class E ^c	no impact	no impact	no change
Requester Class F	unknown	unknown	error state

a. It is possible that this class of error will render the entire HCA unable to continue work in which case the queue error states may be unknown.

b. Classes B and D are similar, however Class D applies to reliable datagram service only and also specifies that the requester's EE Context transition to the error state.

c. Classes A and E look similar, but Class A requires a retry, Class E results in no action.

9.9.2.4 REQUESTER SIDE ERROR RESPONSE

There are five different sets of error response behaviors that the requester must implement. Which behavior is executed for any given error is shown above in [Table 59](#). This section specifies the error response behaviors.

9.9.2.4.1 REQUESTER CLASS A FAULT BEHAVIOR

Class A errors are those that are recoverable by the transport through a retry mechanism. If the retry succeeds, there is no visible impact to the transport's client (e.g. verbs layer).

The only Class A errors are Packet Sequence Error, Implied NAK sequence error, Local Ack Timeout error and an RNR NAK. Packet Sequence Error and RNR NAK are both remotely detected. A Local Ack Timeout error and an Implied NAK sequence error are detected locally by the requester.

C9-212: For an HCA using Reliable Connection service, each time the transport retries a Requester Class A error, it shall decrement a retry counter. There is one retry counter associated with Packet Sequence Errors and Local Ack Timeout errors, and a different retry counter associated with RNR NAKs. As long as the retry count has not expired the transport may continue to retry these errors. The protocol for retrying these errors is given in Section [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#).

o9-153: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, each time the requester retries a Requester Class A error, it shall decrement a retry counter. There is one retry counter associated with Packet Sequence Errors and Local Ack Timeout errors, and a different retry counter associated with RNR NAKs. As long as the retry count has not expired the transport may continue to retry these errors. The protocol for retrying these errors is given in Section [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#).

C9-213: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, since Requester Class A errors are recoverable, the requester shall not report them to the transport's client unless the retry count expires.

o9-154: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, since Requester Class A errors are recoverable, the requester shall not report them to the transport's client unless the retry count expires.

See Section [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#) for a discussion of how errors are reported for an HCA once the retry count has expired.

```
IF (packet sequence error or Local Ack Timeout error)
THEN decrement Error retry counter.

IF (RNR NAK)
THEN decrement RNR NAK retry counter.

IF ~(packet sequence error or timeout error or RNR NAK)
THEN reload retry counters
```

```
IF (Error retry counter expired)
If (RC mode) GOTO Class B
Else GOTO Class D
IF (RNR NAK retry counter expired)
GOTO Class B
```

Figure 119

Requester Class A Fault

9.9.2.4.2 REQUESTER CLASS B FAULT BEHAVIOR

C9-214: In response to a Requester Class B error, for services other than Reliable Datagram, the requester shall complete the current WQE in error, transition the Send Queue to the error state and mark any subsequent WQEs posted to the Send Queue as flushed.

o9-154.a1: For CAs that implement Reliable Datagram service, the requestor, in response to a Requester Class B error, shall perform the actions described in Section [9.7.8.5 Handling QP errors - RESYNC on page 392](#). If, following the RESYNC process described, the message is still in error, the requester shall complete the current WQE in error, transition the Send Queue to the error state and mark any subsequent WQEs posted to the Send Queue as flushed.

For an HCA, the error is posted as “Completion - Processing type” with the appropriate error type (See [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#) for more details).

The queue shall be transitioned to the error state by the transport layer to prevent a race condition that can occur if the client (e.g. the verbs layer for an HCA) posts further WQEs to the Send Queue before it discovers that an error has occurred. This is consistent with the Send Queue state diagram as shown in [Figure 127 QP/EE Context State Diagram on page 484](#).

Finally, all WQEs in the Send Queue behind the failed WQE are also completed with the “Completed - Flushed in Error” status.

For RC, or XRC modes, note that some of these requests may have been committed to the wire by the requester, and may even have been executed and completed by the responder. It is not possible to prevent this since the responder may have executed the request before the requester detects a local error. Therefore, the responder’s local state must be considered unknown.

For reliable datagram service, the requester’s EE Context terminates the current message transfer, signals the error to the currently scheduled Send Queue, and removes the currently scheduled Send Queue from the scheduler. The EE Context then schedules the next Send Queue requesting service and proceeds. The Send Queue which caused the error behaves as described above.

C9-215: While the Send Queue is in the error state, it must silently discard any acknowledge messages that arrive.

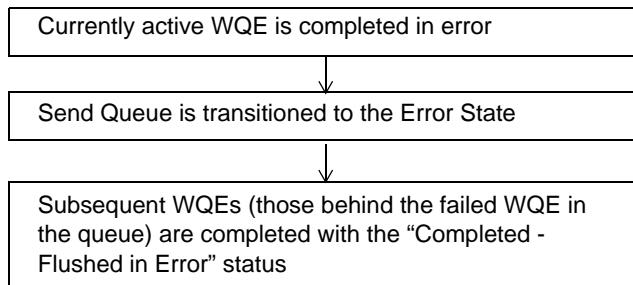


Figure 120 Requester Class B Fault Behavior

9.9.2.4.3 REQUESTER CLASS C FAULT BEHAVIOR

Since a Class C error cannot be associated with any particular WQE, it is not possible to mark a specific WQE as completed in error.

C9-216: If the Requester Class C error can be associated with a QP, the Send Queue shall be transitioned to the error state, and all uncompleted WQEs are completed with the “Completed - Flushed in Error” status.

o9-155: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, and if the Requester Class C error can be associated with an EE Context, its send side shall be transitioned to the error state, and for an HCA, the error posted is, “Affiliated Asynchronous Error”.

See [11.6.3.2 Affiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 692](#) for more details on HCA error reporting.

If the Requester Class C error cannot be associated with a particular resource, then the error may not be reportable in any detail or at all. See [11.6.3.4 Unaffiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 695](#) for HCA error handling in this case.

9.9.2.4.4 REQUESTER CLASS D FAULT BEHAVIOR

A Class D error only occurs for reliable datagram service.

o9-156: If a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service, it shall behave as follows. For the Requester Class D error class, the transport shall transition the requester’s EE Context to the error state, terminate the current message transfer, signal the error to the currently scheduled Send Queue, and de-queue the currently scheduled Send Queue. While remaining in error state, the EE Context continues to transition to error state any other Send Queue requesting service.

Each Send Queue (QP) behaves as though for a Class B error; it marks its current WQE as completed in error, transitions the QP to the error state, and flushes all subsequent WQEs.

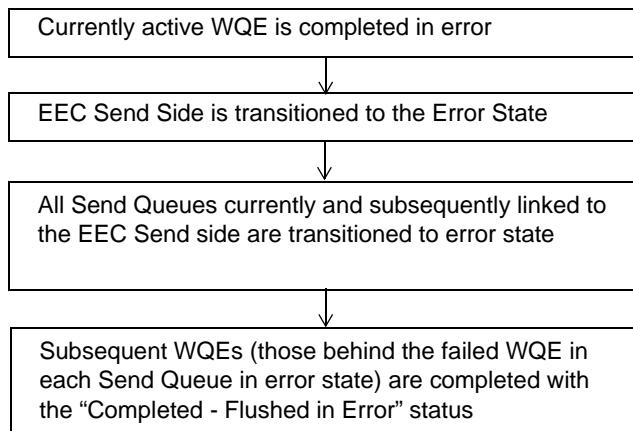


Figure 121 Requester Class D Fault Behavior

9.9.2.4.5 REQUESTER CLASS E FAULT BEHAVIOR

A Class E error occurs when the requester receives an acknowledge message with a PSN which does not match its expected PSN. These errors occur only for reliable classes of service.

These errors are not reported to upper layers.

An acknowledge message with an unexpected PSN is presumed to represent a “ghost” acknowledge message, or a duplicate acknowledge message.

A ghost acknowledge message is an acknowledge message that has been in the fabric long enough that it has survived the destruction of a connection and the subsequent establishment of a new connection.

A duplicate acknowledge message occurs when the requester, believing that its original request message is lost in the fabric, re-sends the request message. If both request messages eventually arrive at the responder, the responder may generate an acknowledge message for each of them.

C9-217: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, in response to a Requester Class E error, the requester shall drop the acknowledge message. There is, however, an exception to this rule. For reliable connected service, a duplicate acknowledge message may be used by the responder to carry end-to-end flow control credits to the requester (an “unsolicited acknowledge”). Thus, if the PSN of the acknowledge message is one less than the requester’s expected PSN, the requester must recover the end-to-end credits and discard the remainder

of the message. This behavior is detailed in section [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#).

o9-157: If a TCA requester implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA requester implements Reliable Datagram service or XRC service, in response to a Requester Class E error, the requester shall drop the acknowledge message. There is, however, an exception to this rule. For reliable connected service, a duplicate acknowledge message may be used by the responder to carry end-to-end flow control credits to the requester (an “unsolicited acknowledge”). Thus, if the PSN of the acknowledge message is one less than the requester’s expected PSN, the requester must recover the end-to-end credits and discard the remainder of the message. This behavior is detailed in [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control on page 371](#).

It should be noted that even if the Acknowledgment was an actual ghost, with wrong credits, the credit mechanism would eventually recover with no errors reported to the upper layers.

9.9.2.4.6 REQUESTER CLASS F FAULT BEHAVIOR

C9-218: A Requester Class F error occurs when the CQ is inaccessible or full and an attempt is made to complete a WQE. The Affected QP shall be moved to the error state and affiliated asynchronous errors generated as described in [11.6.3.1 Affiliated Asynchronous Events on page 691](#). The current WQE and any subsequent WQEs are left in an unknown state.

9.9.3 RESPONDER SIDE BEHAVIOR¹⁴

[Table 61](#) lists the errors that must be detected by the responder, and the Fault Behavior Class for each error. The Fault Behavior Class specifies whether the responder returns a NAK code, whether the error is reported to the local client, and the subsequent behavior of the Receive Queue. The syndrome column lists the NAK code that is returned to the requester.

For convenience, a summary of the fault behavior classes is shown in [Table 62 Summary of Responder Fault Class Behaviors on page 439](#).

The error detection for reliable service is described in section [9.7 Reliable Service on page 304](#), and error detection for unreliable service is specified in section [9.8 Unreliable Service on page 402](#).

C9-219: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C9-219.1.1](#):

14. For Unreliable services, a better title might be Receiver side Behavior.

C9-219.1.1: For the implemented subset of transport services, responders shall conform to the error behavior as specified in [Table 61](#). Also, the responder's Receive queue shall behave as specified for each Fault Behavior Class shown in [Table 62](#) and each of the sub-sections below.

Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary

Error	Description	Service	Syndrome	Fault Behavior Class
Malformed WQE	Responder detected a malformed Receive Queue WQE while processing the packet.	RC, RD, XRC	NAK-Remote Operational Error	Responder Class A
		Else	NA	Responder Class A
Unsupported or Reserved OpCode	Inbound request OpCode was either reserved, or was for a function not supported by this QP. E.G. RDMA or ATOMIC on QP not set up for this. For RC this is "QP Async affiliated"	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD ^d		Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		XRC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class K
		else	NA	Responder Class D
Misaligned ATOMIC	VA does not point to an aligned address on an atomic operation	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD ^d		Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		XRC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class K
Too many RDMA READ or ATOMIC Requests	There were more requests received and not ACKed than allowed for the connection	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD		Responder Class B
		XRC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class K
Out of Sequence Request Packet	PSN of the inbound request is outside the responder's valid PSN window.	RC, RD, XRC	NAK-Sequence error	Responder Class B
		UC	NA	Responder Class D
Out of Sequence OpCode, current packet is "first" or "Only"	The Responder detected an error in the sequence of OpCodes; a missing "Last" packet	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD ^d		Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		UC (non SRQ)	NA	Responder Class D1
		UC (SRQ)	NA	Responder Class E
		XRC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class K

Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary (Continued)

Error	Description	Service	Syndrome	Fault Behavior Class
Out of Sequence OpCode, current packet is not "first" or "Only"	The Responder detected an error in the sequence of OpCodes; a missing "First" packet	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD ^d		Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		UC	NA	Responder Class D
		XRC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class K
RESYNC Opcode incomplete WQE	The Responder has a partially complete WQE when a valid RESYNC arrives "Requestor Aborted"	RD	NA	Responder Class E
R_Key Violation	Responder detected an R_Key violation while executing an RDMA request.	RC	NAK-Remote Access Violation	Responder Class C
		RD ^d	NAK-Remote Access Violation	Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		UC (non SRQ)	NA	Responder Class D
		UC (SRQ)	NA	Responder Class E
		XRC	NAK-Remote Access Violation	Responder Class K
Local QP Error	Responder detected a local QP related error while executing the request message. The local error prevented the responder from completing the request. The local QP includes the shared receive queue, if one exists. A local QP error also occurs if a receive queue which is associated with a shared receive queue is unable to fetch a WQE from the shared receive queue due to an error condition in the shared receive queue.	RC, RD	NAK-Remote Operational Error	Responder Class A
		XRC	NAK-Remote Operational Error	Responder Class K
		Else	NA	Responder Class A
Q_Key Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected an invalid Q_Key in the request message ^a	RD ^d	NAK-Invalid RD Request	Responder Class B or Responder Class F
		UD	NA	Responder Class D
Packet Header Violation	Responder detected a header violation that requires a silent drop as described in 9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292	RC, RD UC, UD, XRC	none	Responder Class D
XRC Domain Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected an invalid XRC Domain	XRC	NAK-Invalid RD Request ^b	Responder Class K
Invalid XRCETH	XRC SRQ does not exist or is not in the right state or XRCETH in middle/last is different than XRCETH in first/only	XRC	NAK-Invalid RD Request ^a	Responder Class K

Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary (Continued)

Error	Description	Service	Syndrome	Fault Behavior Class
RDD Violation	Responder's Receive Queue detected an invalid RDD	RD	NAK-Invalid RD Request	Responder Class B
Invalid Dest QP	Dest QP does not exist or is not configured for RD service	RD	NAK-Invalid RD Request	Responder Class B
Resources Not Ready Error	A WQE or other resource is not currently available.	RC, RD, XRC	RNR-NAK ^c	Responder Class B
		UC ^d , UD	none	Responder Class D
Length errors	1) Inbound "Send" request message exceeded the responder's available buffer space: "Local Length Error" 2) RDMA WRITE request message contained too much or too little payload data compared to the DMA length advertised in the first or only packet. 3) Payload length was not consistent with the opcode: a: 0 byte <= "only" <= PMTU bytes b: ("first" or "middle") == PMTU bytes c: 1byte <= "last" <= PMTU bytes 4) Inbound message exceeded the size supported by the CA port	RC	NAK-Invalid Request	Responder Class C
		RD		Responder Class F
		XRC		Responder Class K
		UC (non SRQ)	NA	Responder Class D
		UC (SRQ)	NA	Responder Class E
		UD (non SRQ)	NA	Responder Class D
		UD (SRQ)	NA	Responder Class E
Invalid duplicate ATOMIC Request	A duplicate ATOMIC request packet is received, but the PSN does not match the PSN of a saved ATOMIC Request.	RC, RD, XRC	none	Responder Class D
CQ overflow	Despite actual execution of the message, and acknowledgement, the completion notification could not be written to the CQ.	XRC	none	Responder Class L
		else		Responder Class G
Local EEC Error	Responder detected a local EEC related error while executing the request message. The local error prevented the responder from completing the request.	RD	none	Responder Class H
Local XRC TGT QP Error	Responder detected a local XRC TGT QP related error while executing the request message. The local error prevented the responder from completing the request.	XRC	none	Responder Class K
Remote Invalidate Error	Incoming Send with Invalidate contains an invalid R_Key, or the R_Key contained in the IETH cannot be invalidated.	XRC	NA	Responder Class M
		RC		Responder Class J Fault Behavior

a. Q_Key violations require the incrementing of a counter and a potential trap as described in [10.2.5 Q_Keys on page 470](#)

b. we are deliberately "overloading" this RD specific NAK syndrome as it matches the spirit of the error in question. There is no possible confusion since this is a XRC QP.

c. A TCA which does not support the generation of RNR-NAK, should not simply delay responding beyond the usual response time.

- d. An RDMA Write with immediate in Unreliable Connected mode may perform the RDMA Write portion of the packet, before dropping the "immediate" portion because there is no WQE available.
- d. For some RD error cases, it is desirable for the responder to have the option to complete the receive WQE in error, rather than leave the WQE on the receive queue. For those cases, the responder is permitted to use Class F responder behavior instead of Class B error behavior. Class F differs from Class B primarily in that it allows the receive WQE to be completed in error.

Table 62 Summary of Responder Fault Class Behaviors

Fault Behavior Class	NAK Codes Returned	Current Receive WQE ^a	Subsequent Receive WQEs	Final Receive Queue State
Responder Class A	For reliable services: Remote Operational Error	WQE completed in error	flushed	error state
Responder Class B	Invalid Request Invalid RD Request Remote Access Violation Sequence error RNR-NAK	no WQE consumed	no impact	no change
Responder Class C	Invalid Request	completed in error	flushed	error state
Responder Class D, D1	none	no WQE consumed	no impact	no change
Responder Class E	none	may be completed in error ^b	may be completed in error ^c	no change
Responder Class F	Invalid Request Invalid RD Request Remote Access Violation	completed in error	no impact	no change
Responder Class G	none	unknown	unknown	error state
Responder Class H ^d	none	completed in error	no impact	no change
Responder Class J	None	Completed in error	Flushed	Error State
Responder Class K	Invalid Request Invalid RD Request Remote Access Violation Remote Operational Error	One or more WQEs may be completed in error	NA ^e	error state
Responder Class L	none	One or more WQEs may be completed in error	NA ^e	error state
Responder Class M	None	Completed in error	NA ^e	error state

a. A WQE is only completed if open for Sends and RDMA WRITE with Immediate data.

b. Disposition of the current receive WQE is dependent on whether the receive queue is associated with a shared receive queue or not. Please see section [9.9.3.1.6 Responder Class E Fault Behavior on page 444](#) for full details and associated compliance statements.

c. Disposition of subsequent receive WQEs is dependent on whether the receive queue is associated with a shared receive queue or not. Please see section [9.9.3.1.6 Responder Class E Fault Behavior on page 444](#) for full details and associated compliance statements.

d. This error class results in the EEC being put into the Error state.

e. Receive WQEs are never posted to XRC TGT QPs

9.9.3.1 RESPONDER SIDE ERROR RESPONSE

There are a total of thirteen classes of fault behavior described for the responder side. The fault behaviors are grouped according to whether or not

an error is reported to the client on the responder side, whether or not the error is reported to the requester via a NAK code, and whether or not a WQE is consumed from the Receive Queue.

9.9.3.1.1 RESPONDER CLASS A FAULT BEHAVIOR

Class A errors are traceable to a poorly formed or invalid WQE, or other error associated with the receiver QP. These errors are not caused by the sender.

C9-220: For a Responder Class A error, the error shall be reported to the responder's client, the QP is placed into the error state, and, for reliable services, a "NAK-Remote Operational Error" is generated.

For Reliable Datagram service, the EEC continues operation.

If the responder is an HCA, these errors are reported to the verbs layer as a "Completion error" or Affiliated Asynchronous error". See [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#) for a discussion of Completion errors and [10.10.2.3 Asynchronous Errors on page 564](#) for a discussion of Asynchronous errors.

If the responder detects a Class A error, its behavior is as follows:

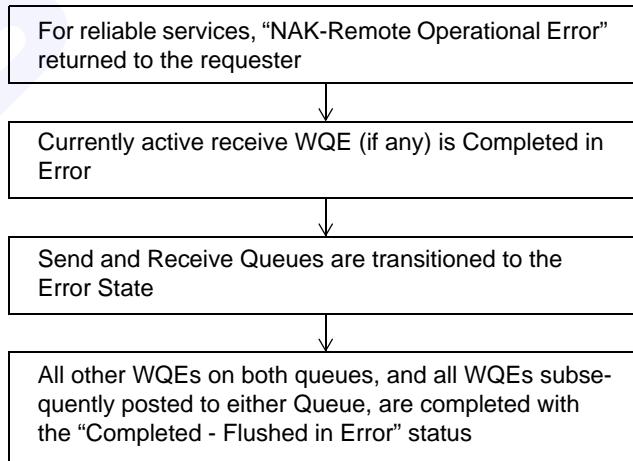


Figure 122 Transport Class A Responder Behavior

o9-157.2.1: In addition to the error behavior described above for Class A errors, if a Class A error is detected by a QP which is associated with a shared receive queue, both the WQE on which the error was originally detected and all subsequent WQEs on both the send and receive queues including WQEs subsequently fetched by the same receive queue from the associated shared receive queue, shall be marked in error. The QP on which the error was detected shall be transitioned to the error state. There

shall be no state change for the shared receive queue nor is there any change in state for any other receive queues sharing the same SRQ.

o9-157.2.2: If a Class A error is detected by a shared receive queue, the error shall be reported to the responder's client and the QP shall be placed in the error state. If the responder is an HCA, these errors are reported to the verbs layer as a "Completion error" or "Affiliated Asynchronous error".

Note that if the error is detected by the shared receive queue (as opposed to being detected by the receive queue), a "NAK-Remote Operational Error" may not be returned since the SRQ is not required to generate acknowledgements. This is slightly different from the case where the error is detected by the receive queue, in which case the receive queue is required to return a "NAK-Remote Operational Error".

o9-157.2.3: If a receive queue attempts to fetch a WQE from a shared receive queue which is in the error state, the QP shall be transitioned to the error state. If the responder is an HCA, this error is reported to the verbs layer as an "Affiliated Asynchronous error".

9.9.3.1.2 RESPONDER CLASS B FAULT BEHAVIOR

Class B errors are reported to the requester, but are not reported to the responder's local client.

C9-221: For an HCA requester using Reliable Connection service, and for a Responder Class B responder side error, the transport shall generate a NAK code, but shall not consume a WQE from the Receive Queue or transit the receive queue to the error state.

o9-158: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, or if a CA responder implements Reliable Datagram service, or XRC service, it shall behave as follows. For a Responder Class B responder side error, the transport shall generate a NAK code, but shall not consume a WQE from the Receive Queue or transit the receive queue to the error state.

Note that this fault behavior class is limited to reliable services only.

If the responder detects a Class B error, it behaves as follows:

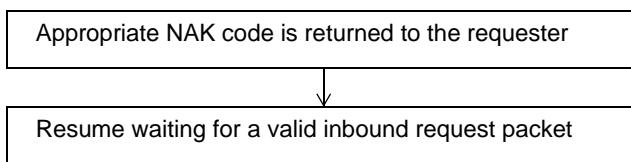


Figure 123

Responder Class B Fault Behavior

9.9.3.1.3 RESPONDER CLASS C FAULT BEHAVIOR

C9-222: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C9-222.1.1:](#)

C9-222.1.1: For an HCA responder using Reliable Connection service, for a Class C responder side error, the error shall be reported to the requester by generating the appropriate NAK code as specified in [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#). If the error can be related to a particular QP but cannot be related to a particular WQE on that receive queue (e.g. the error occurred while executing an RDMA Write Request without immediate data), the error shall be reported to the responder's client as an Affiliated Asynchronous error. See Section [10.10.2.3 Asynchronous Errors on page 564](#) for details. If the error can be related to a particular WQE on a given receive queue, the QP shall be placed into the error state and the error shall be reported to the responder's client as a Completion error. See Section [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#).

o9-159: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o9-159.1.1:](#)

o9-159.1.1: If a TCA responder implements Reliable Connection service, for a Class C responder side error, the error shall be reported to the responder's client and the QP is placed into the error state. A Class C error shall also be reported to the requester by generating the appropriate NAK code as specified in [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#).

The Receive Queue's behavior is as follows:

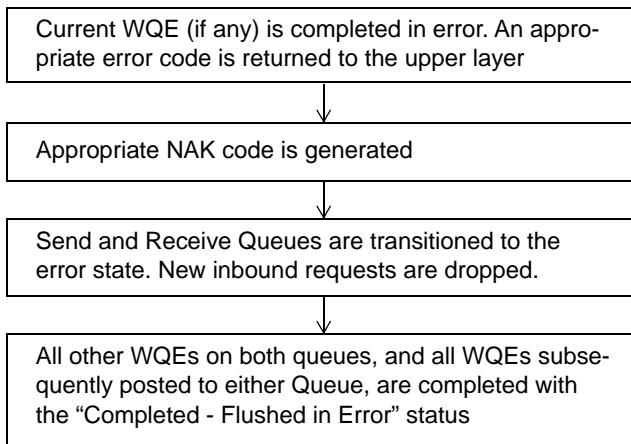


Figure 124 Transport Class C Receive Queue

See Section [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#) for more details on HCA error reporting.

9.9.3.1.4 RESPONDER CLASS D FAULT BEHAVIOR

C9-223: This compliance statement is obsolete and replaced by [C9-223.1.1](#).

C9-223.1.1: An inbound request packet which causes a Responder Class D error shall cause the Transport to respond as specified in [9.9.3.1.4: Responder Class D Fault Behavior](#).

In this case the transport shall:

- silently drop the packet (as detailed in [9.6: Packet Transport Header Validation](#))
- Not generate an ACK or NAK code to the requester
- Not notify the responder's client

9.9.3.1.5 RESPONDER CLASS D1 FAULT BEHAVIOR

An inbound request packet which causes a Class D1 error only occurs in Unreliable Connection mode.

C9-224: For an HCA responder using Unreliable Connection service, an inbound request packet which causes a Responder Class D1 error shall cause the Transport to respond as specified in [9.9.3.1.5: Responder Class D1 Fault Behavior](#).

In this case the transport shall:

- silently drop the packet
- Not notify the responder's client
- terminate the current message without consuming the current receive WQE (if any)
- wait for the first packet of a new message (which may be greater than the expected PSN.)

If the present packet, (which caused the Class D1 error) has a BTH opcode of "first" or "only"; it shall be treated as the first packet of a new message.

The Current WQE (if any) shall be reset to accept the next incoming Send or RDMA WRITE with Immediate message.

"Current message" means all the packets received since the most recently received "first" or "only" OpCode, excluding the present packet (which caused the Class D1 error).

A "new message" is denoted by a packet with a BTH opcode of "first" or "only".

1
2
3
4
o9-160: If a TCA responder implements Unreliable Connection service, it
5 shall conform to the Class D1 HCA responder behavior described in the
6 preceding compliance statement.
7

9.9.3.1.6 RESPONDER CLASS E FAULT BEHAVIOR

8
9 This fault class is intended primarily for services where a failure of a par-
10 ticular request packet should not impact the ability of the Receive Queue
11 to continue receiving messages.
12

13
14 **o9-161:** If a CA implements Reliable Datagram service, then a Responder
15 Class E error shall cause the responder to do the following:
16

- 17
18 1) Abort the current message, if it is not complete. This is done by ei-
19 ther:
20
21 a) Reset the WQE so that it can be reused for a future message
22 b) Mark the current WQE (if any) as completed in error “Requester
23 Aborted Error”
24
25 2) Receive the new inbound message. The Receive Queue shall con-
26 tinue operation without a transition to the error state.:
27

28 Current WQE (if any) may be reset or is completed in
29 error with an appropriate error code written to the
30 WQE

31 Resume waiting for a valid inbound request packet

32 **Figure 125 Transport Class E Receive Queue**

33 Compliance statement [o9-161.2.1](#): defines more stringent requirements
34 which apply only to a receive queue which is associated with a shared re-
35 ceive queue.
36

37 **o9-161.2.1:** If a QP implements Unreliable Datagram service and is asso-
38 ciated with a shared receive queue, then a Responder Class E error shall
39 cause the responder to do the following:
40

- 41 1) The WQE on the receive queue that detected the error shall be com-
42 pleted in error.
43
44 2) Subsequent receive WQEs that had already been fetched by the
45 same receive queue from an associated shared receive queue shall
46 also be completed in error. Other WQEs on the shared receive queue
47 but not fetched by the QP which detected the error remain un-
48 changed and are not completed in error.
49
50 3) The receive queue shall continue operation without a transition to the
51 error state.
52

- 4) The operation of the shared receive queue is not impacted by these errors.

o9-161.2.2: If a QP implements Unreliable Connected service and is associated with a shared receive queue, then a Responder Class E error shall cause the responder to do the following:

- 1) The WQE on the receive queue that detected the error, if any, shall be completed in error.
- 2) Subsequent receive WQEs that had already been fetched by the same receive queue from an associated shared receive queue shall also be completed in error. Other WQEs on the shared receive queue but not fetched by the QP which detected the error remain unchanged and are not completed in error.
- 3) The receive queue shall continue operation without a transition to the error state.
- 4) The operation of the shared receive queue is not impacted by these errors.

9.9.3.1.7 RESPONDER CLASS F FAULT BEHAVIOR

Class F error behavior is for RD service only and is used to both return a NAK code to the requester and to complete a WQE in error. There are several instances where an implementation has an option to select either Class B error behavior or Class F error behavior. For these cases, the only substantial difference between Class B and Class F is in the disposition of the receive WQE which is either completed in error or left on the receive queue to be re-used. For many implementations, it is significantly simpler to complete the receive WQE in error.

o9-162: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o9-162.1.1:](#)

o9-162.1.1: If a CA implements Reliable Datagram service, then a Responder Class F error shall be reported both to the requester and (when a receive WQE is involved) to the responder's client. The Transport shall return the appropriate NAK code as defined in [Table 61 on page 436](#) to the requester, and complete the current WQE (if any) in error. The Receive Queue shall continue operation without a transition to the error state.

In the case of an HCA, the error reported is a "Completion - Process Error".

Both the EEC and destination QP remain in operation.

The Receive Queue's behavior is as follows:

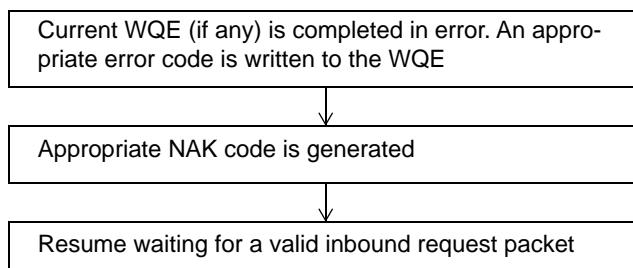


Figure 126 Transport Class F Receive Queue

9.9.3.1.8 RESPONDER CLASS G FAULT BEHAVIOR

A Class G error occurs when the CQ is inaccessible or full and an attempt is made to complete a WQE.

C9-225: A Responder Class G error occurs when the CQ is inaccessible or full and an attempt is made to complete a WQE. The Affected QP shall be moved to the error state and affiliated asynchronous errors generated as described in [11.6.3.2 Affiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 692](#). The current WQE and any subsequent WQEs are left in an unknown state.

9.9.3.1.9 RESPONDER CLASS H FAULT BEHAVIOR

Class H errors are traceable to a local error associated with the receiver EEC. These errors are not caused by the sender.

For a Responder Class H error, the error shall be reported to the responder's client, and the EEC is placed in the error state.

The currently active WQE should be completed in error.

If the responder is an HCA, these errors are reported to the verbs layer as either a Completion error (see Section [10.10.2.2 Completion Errors on page 563](#)) or an Affiliated Asynchronous error (see Section [10.10.2.3 Asynchronous Errors on page 564](#)).

9.9.3.1.10 RESPONDER CLASS J FAULT BEHAVIOR

This class of locally detected error occurs only for RC QPs. A Class J error is reported to the responder side client, but is not reported via a NAK code to the requester.

A responder class J error occurs when a responder receives a SEND with Invalidate request (either SEND last with Invalidate or SEND only with Invalidate) which contains an invalid R_Key in the IETH.

In terms of error precedence, all other errors associated with validating the packet headers and executing the SEND operation onto which the In-

validate is piggybacked are reported before an R_Key violation is reported.

o9-162.2.1: The following statements constitute the requirements for detecting and reporting an R_Key violation associated with a SEND with Invalidate request:

- 1) An R_Key violation, if one occurs, shall not be reported until such time as the SEND request onto which the invalidate has been piggy-backed has been successfully executed. Any errors resulting from executing the SEND request must be reported before an error resulting from the invalidate operation is reported.
- 2) If an error occurs due to execution of the underlying SEND operation, no error related to the invalidate operation shall be reported.
- 3) If the underlying SEND operation executes normally, a receive WQE shall be consumed regardless of the success or failure of the associated invalidate operation. In other words, as a result of executing the underlying SEND request onto which the invalidate has been piggy-backed, a receive WQE will have been consumed. Thus, even if the invalidate operation fails, the receive WQE is always consumed.
- 4) The receive WQE which receives the SEND with Invalidate request shall not be completed until the corresponding invalidate operation has been completed.
- 5) If an error is detected in the course of executing the invalidate operation, the following actions shall occur:
 - a) The WQE that experienced the SEND with Invalidate error is marked as completed in error.
 - b) The QP is transitioned to the Error State.
 - c) Subsequent WQEs on the same RQ are marked as completed - flushed in error.
 - d) No NAK is sent to the Requestor.

9.9.3.1.11 RESPONDER CLASS K FAULT BEHAVIOR

For an HCA XRC TGT QP, for a Class K responder side error, the error shall be reported to the requester by generating the appropriate NAK code as specified in [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#). The error shall be reported to the responder's client as an Affiliated Asynchronous error. See Section [Section 11.6.3 on page 690](#) for details and the XRC TGT QP shall be placed into the error state. In addition, If the error can be related to a particular WQE on a given XRC SRQ then a Completion error is generated in the XRC SRQ CQ. As a result of placing the XRC TGT QP into the error state, other receive WQEs in the same or different XRC SRQ may be completed in error.

9.9.3.1.12 RESPONDER CLASS L FAULT BEHAVIOR

A Class L error occurs when the CQ is inaccessible or full and an attempt is made to complete a WQE on a XRC SRQ.

The XRC TGT QP through which the packet was received shall be moved to the error state and affiliated asynchronous errors generated as described in [Section 11.6.3 on page 690](#). The current WQE and any subsequent WQEs on the XRC SRQ in question are left in an unknown state and the XRC SRQ is moved to the error state.

As a result of placing the XRC TGT QP into the error state, other receive WQEs on different XRC SRQ may be completed in error.

9.9.3.1.13 RESPONDER CLASS M FAULT BEHAVIOR

This class of locally detected error occurs only for XRC TGT QPs. A Class M error is reported to the responder side client, but is not reported via a NAK code to the requester.

A responder class M error occurs when a responder receives a SEND with Invalidate request (either SEND last with Invalidate or SEND only with Invalidate) which contains an invalid R_Key in the IETH.

In terms of error precedence, all other errors associated with validating the packet headers and executing the SEND operation onto which the Invalidate is piggybacked are reported before an R_Key violation is reported.

The following statements constitute the requirements for detecting and reporting an R_Key violation associated with a SEND with Invalidate request:

- 1) An R_Key violation, if one occurs, shall not be reported until such time as the SEND request onto which the invalidate has been piggy-backed has been successfully executed. Any errors resulting from executing the SEND request must be reported before an error resulting from the invalidate operation is reported.
- 2) If an error occurs due to execution of the underlying SEND operation, no error related to the invalidate operation shall be reported.
- 3) If the underlying SEND operation executes normally, a receive WQE shall be consumed regardless of the success or failure of the associated invalidate operation. In other words, as a result of executing the underlying SEND request onto which the invalidate has been piggy-backed, a receive WQE will have been consumed. Thus, even if the invalidate operation fails, the receive WQE is always consumed.

- 4) The receive WQE which receives the SEND with Invalidate request shall not be completed until the corresponding invalidate operation has been completed.
- 5) If an error is detected in the course of executing the invalidate operation, the following actions shall occur:
 - a) The WQE that experienced the SEND with Invalidate error is marked as completed in error.
 - b) The XRC TGT QP is transitioned to the Error State and affiliated asynchronous errors generated as described in [Section 11.6.3.1 on page 691](#).
 - c) As a result of placing the XRC TGT QP into the error state, other receive WQEs on different XRC SRQ may be completed in error.
 - d) No NAK is sent to the Requestor.

9.10 HEADER AND DATA FIELD SOURCE**9.10.1 FIELD SOURCE WHEN GENERATING PACKETS**

The following tables provide an indication of the source of the various header and data fields in the data packets for the various IBA services. The following terms are used in the table:

Link	This indicates the value is attached to the packet based on either a fixed value, or values dependent on the service, or values looked up based on parameters loaded into the logical port. Done by the link layer.
Tr	This indicates that the value is fixed or calculated by the transport layer.
QP	This indicates that the value is derived from the QP context
EE	This indicates that the value is derived from the EE context
QP+EE	This indicates that the values are derived from the QP and EE contexts
NA	Not Applicable
WQE	The value is directly or indirectly (via Address vector) derived from information in the WQE

Table 63 **Packet Fields and Parameters by Service**

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
LRH VL	The VL to use for requests. Based on SL and the port SL to VL mapping table.	link	link	link	link	link	link	link
LRH LVer	The version of the link level. This field depends on the revision of the device.	link	link	link	link	link	link	link
LRH SL	The SL to use for requests and responses	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE	WQE
LRH LNH IBA	IBA transport bit, indicates that BTH follows	1	1	1	1	1	0	0
LRH LNH GRH	GRH bit, indicates that a GRH follows	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	1	0
LRH DLID	Destination local ID used for routing	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE	WQE
LRH Packet Length	Length of the local packet; calculated by the transport based on the message length.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE
LRH SLID (high bits not covered by LMC)	Source local ID in outgoing packets. From the port. With LMC low order bits (0s) added, the value is called "Base LID".	link	link	link	link	link	link	link
LRH SLID (low bits covered by the LMC)	Source logical ID in outgoing packets. These LMC (as a number) bits are called the "path" bits.	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE	WQE
GRH IPVer"	CA's set to 6	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA
GRH Tclass	CA's set to 0; Alternately set according to application.	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA
GRH FlowLabel	CA's set to 0; Alternately set according to application.	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA

Table 63 Packet Fields and Parameters by Service (Continued)

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
GRH Paylen	Length of the global packet; calculated by the transport based on the message length.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA
GRH NxtHdr	CA's set to IBA (0x1B)	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	WQE ^a	NA
GRH HopLmt	CA's set to 0; Alternately set according to application.	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA
GRH SGID	Source Global ID, from the port table and the index found in:	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA
GRH DGID	Destination Global ID	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE ^a	NA
BTH OpCode	Depends on operation, set by the transport layer.	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH TVer	The version of the transport. This field depends on the revision of the device (0).	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH P_Key	Partition Key, from the port table and the Index found in:	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	NA	NA
BTH DestQP	Destination QP *For RD mode responses, this is from the Request Packet Source QP as stored in the EEC	QP	QP	QP	WQE*	WQE	NA	NA
BTH Pad	Length of packet pad; used to calculate actual data size. Calculated by the transport layer based on data size.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	NA	NA
BTH SE	Solicited Event	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	NA	NA
BTH M	Migrate. Set by the transport dependent on the migration state.	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH AckReq	Acknowledge request	Tr	0	Tr	Tr	0	NA	NA
BTH PSN	Packet Sequence Number	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	NA	NA
RDETH EEC	Destination EE Context	NA	NA	NA	EE	NA	NA	NA
DETH Q_Key	Key which protects datagram QPs	NA	NA	NA	WQE	WQE	NA	NA
DETH Source QP	Source QP. Set by transport for datagram services.	NA	NA	NA	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
RETH	All fields of the RDMA Extended Transport Header (when used) are taken from the WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	NA	NA	NA
XRCETH XRC SRQ	Destination XRC SRQ	NA	NA	WQE	NA	NA	NA	NA
AtomicETH	All fields of the ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (when used) are taken from the WQE	WQE	NA	WQE	WQE	NA	NA	NA

Table 63 Packet Fields and Parameters by Service (Continued)

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
AETH MSN	Message Sequence number (ACKs only)	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
AETH Syndrome	Acknowledge syndrome, computed based on operation for reliable services	QP	NA	QP+ XRC SRQ	EE+ QP	NA	NA	NA
AETH RNR-NAK timer (TTTTT)	This value is placed in the AETH.TTTTT field when sending an RNR NAK. It denotes the minimum time to wait before retrying the request.	QP	NA	QP	QP ^b	NA	NA	NA
AETH credit count (CCCCC)	This value is placed in the AETH.CCCCC field when sending an Ack in RC mode. It denotes the number of receive WQEs available to receive Send or RDMA write with immediate messages.	QP	NA	NA ^c	NA	NA	NA	NA
AtomicAckETH	ATOMIC data returned; the data is loaded as defined by the R_Key and Virtual Address, stored per WQE	WQE	NA	WQE	WQE	NA	NA	NA
IETH R_Key	This is the R_KEY that the responder is being asked to invalidate in a SEND with Invalidate operation.	WQE	NA	WQE	NA	NA	NA	NA
Immediate data	Dependent on operation	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	NA	NA
Payload	Dependent on operation	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE
ICRC	Calculated by transport; data dependent	link	link	link	link	link	NA	NA
VCRC	Calculated by transport; data dependent	link	link	link	link	link	link	link

a. Raw IP does not have a GRH, it has the similar looking IPv6 header. The Parameters are labeled GRH for convenience. This entire header is loaded from a data segment provided by the WQE.

b. The actual value of the TTTTT field depends on the reason for generating an RNR. For HCA's, when a WQE is not ready, this value comes from the QP. Otherwise, the value is determined by the implementor.

c. XRC responses carry invalid e2e credits

9.10.2 TRANSPORT CONNECTION PARAMETERS

The following are not sent “on the wire” but are needed to implement the protocol. This table is included to provide a better understanding of the parameters used by the transport layer to provide a connection. This list only

covers elements mentioned in the IBA specification, other elements may be needed to completely implement connections.

Table 64 Connection Parameters by Transport Service

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
Connect state	State of connection (Reset, RTR, RTS, Error etc.)	QP	QP	QP+ XRC SRQ	EE+ QP	QP	QP	QP
Port number	Used only if there is more than a single port	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	QP	QP
Global/Local header	Determines if global header is to be attached or not.	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	NA	NA
MTU	Max Size of the packets allowed on this connection.	QP	QP	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
RNR NAK retry time	Time before performing a retry due to RNR; this is initialized by the AETH.TTTTT field in the RNR-NAK, and counts down from there.	QP	NA	QP	QP or EE ^a	NA	NA	NA
RNR Retry init	Send Queue RNR retry count Initialization value	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
RNR Retry counter	Send Queue RNR Retry counter value	QP	NA	QP	QP	NA	NA	NA
Local ACK Timeout	The exponent used to calculate the delay before an ACK is declared "lost".	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
Error Retries	Send Queue retry count for sequence or time-out errors	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
MigState	Migration State (Migrated, Armed, ReArm)	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	NA	NA
Disable_E2E_Credits	Send queue use E2E protocol (depends on remote side's ability to send credits)	QP	NA	NA ^b	NA	NA	NA	NA
Path Speed (IPD)	Controls packet emission for slower links	QP	QP	QP	EE	WQE	WQE	WQE
PD	Protection Domain for this QP	QP	QP	XRC SRQ	QP	QP	QP	QP
XRC Domain	XRC Domain	NA	NA	QP+ XRC SRQ	NA	NA	NA	NA
RDD	Reliable Datagram Domain	NA	NA	NA	QP+ EE	NA	NA	NA
XmitPSN	Sequence number used when sending	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	NA	NA
AckPSN	Sequence number expected for the ACKs	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
Rx ePSN	Sequence number expected when receiving	QP	QP	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
RxAckPSN	Number of unacknowledged Rx packets	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
SSN	Transmit messages Sent Sequence Number	QP	NA	QP	NA	NA	NA	NA
Rx MSN	Message Sequence Number	QP	NA	QP	NA	NA	NA	NA
Rx credits	Rx queue elements posted	QP	NA	XRC SRQ	NA	NA	NA	NA
LSN	Limit Sequence number (credit accounting)	QP	NA	QP	NA	NA	NA	NA
SchQP_dequeue	QP at head of schedule queue (RD mode)	NA	NA	NA	EE	NA	NA	NA

Table 64 Connection Parameters by Transport Service (Continued)

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
SchQP_enqueue	QP at tail of schedule queue (RD mode)	NA	NA	NA	EE	NA	NA	NA
SchQP_Next	Pointer to next QP to be scheduled (RD mode)	NA	NA	NA	QP	NA	NA	NA
Num_RDMA_Reads	Number of RDMA READs or ATOMICs supported by remote side	QP	NA	QP	1	NA	NA	NA
RDMAR/VA/R_Key/Size or ATOMIC "result"	The "hidden" stored address(s) of RDMA READ request(s) or ATOMIC results	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
RDMA PSN# or ATOMIC PSN #	Sequence number of requested op, used to match response on a repeat, and store reply PSN	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
RDMAR/ATOMIC Use	Usage of the resource; 1=RDMAR, 0=ATOMIC	QP	NA	QP	EE	NA	NA	NA
Rx Completion Q		QP	QP	XRC SRQ	QP	QP	QP	QP
Tx Completion Q		QP	QP	XRC INIQP	QP	QP	QP	QP
Tx WQE pointer	Points to current Send WQE and its data segments for requests	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP
Tx ACK WQE pointer	Points to current Send WQE and its data segments for Completions	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP	QP
Rx WQE pointers	Points to current Receive descriptor	QP	QP	XRC SRQ	QP	QP	QP	QP

a. This value is stored with the QP or EE at the implementor's option; depending on whether the requester implements 'suspend' for RNR-NAK.

b. e2e credits are always invalid for XRC responses

9.10.3 PACKET HEADER AND DATA FIELD VALIDATION

The following tables provide an indication of the validation responsibility of the various header and data fields in the data packets for the various IBA services. The following terms are used in the table:

Link	This indicates the value is checked by the link layer.
Tr	This indicates that the value is checked against fixed values or used by the transport layer to select among choices.
QP	This indicates that the value is checked against values from the QP context
EE	This indicates that the value is checked against values from the EE context
NC	The value is Not checked
NA	Not Applicable

WQE The value is checked against information derived from the WQE

Table 65 **Packet Fields Validation Source by Service**

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
LRH VL	The VL on incoming packet.	link	link	link	link	link	link	link
LRH LVer	The version of the link level. This field depends on the revision of the device.	link	link	link	link	link	link	link
LRH SL	The SL to use for requests	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC
LRH LNH IBA	IBA transport bit, indicates that BTH follows	Tr(1)	Tr(1)	Tr(1)	Tr(1)	Tr(1)	Tr(0)	Tr(0)
LRH LNH GRH	GRH bit, indicates that a GRH follows	QP	QP	QP	EE	Tr	Tr(1)	Tr(0)
LRH DLID	Destination local ID used for routing This is always checked at the link layer against Base LID and LMC.	link QP	link QP	link QP	link EE	link	link	link
LRH Packet Length	Length of the local packet; checked against MTUCap and NeighborMTU at link, valid packet size at Transport, and data buffer size and protection values.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE
LRH SLID	Source local ID in ongoing packets.	QP	QP	QP	EE	NC ^a	NC ^a	NC ^a
GRH IPVer ^b	Checked for the value '6'	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr ^a	Tr ^{ab}	NA
GRH Tclass	Traffic Class	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC ^a	NC ^{ab}	NA
GRH FlowLabel	Flow label	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC ^a	NC ^{ab}	NA
GRH Paylen	Length of the global packet; may be checked against PMTU and LRH Packet Length at link, valid packet size at Transport, and data buffer size and protection values.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE ^a	WQE ^a ^b	NA
GRH NxtHdr	Checked for the value 0x1B	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr ^a	NC ^{ab}	NA
GRH HopLmt	Hop Limit	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC ^a	NC ^{ab}	NA
GRH SGID	Source Global ID	QP	QP	QP	EE	NC ^a	NC ^b	NA
GRH DGID	Destination Global ID	QP	QP	QP	EE	NC ^a	NC ^{ab}	NA
BTH OpCode	Depends on operation	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH TVer	The version of the transport.	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH P_Key	Partition Key; checked against the port partition table ^c	QP	QP	QP	EE	QP	NA	NA
BTH DestQP	Destination QP; checked against the valid set and QP mode by transport.	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH Pad	Length of packet pad; supplements LRH Packet Length.	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	WQE	NA	NA
BTH SE	Solicited Event; passed to upper layers for each message	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NA	NA
BTH M	Migrate. Checked and used by transport to select alternate path parameters	Tr	Tr	Tr	Tr	NC	NA	NA
BTH AckReq	Acknowledge request	Tr	NC	Tr	Tr	NC	NA	NA
BTH PSN	Packet Sequence Number	QP	QP	QP	EE	NC	NA	NA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

Table 65 Packet Fields Validation Source by Service (Continued)

Parameter	Description	RC	UC	XRC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET
RDETH EEC	Destination EE Context; checked against the valid set and EE mode by transport.	NA	NA	NA	Tr	NA	NA	NA
DETH Q_Key	Key which protects datagram QPs	NA	NA	NA	QP	QP	NA	NA
DETH Source QP	Source QP. Passed to upper layers for each message.	NA	NA	NA	NC	NC	NA	NA
RETH	All fields of the RDMA Extended Transport Header (when used) are validated against protection parameters associated with QP state.	QP	QP	XRC SRQ	QP	NA	NA	NA
AtomicETH	All fields of the ATOMIC Extended Transport Header (when used) are validated against protection parameters associated with QP state.	QP	NA	XRC SRQ	QP	NA	NA	NA
AETH MSN	Message Sequence number (ACKs only)	QP	NA	Tr	Tr	NA	NA	NA
AETH Syndrome	Acknowledge syndrome	Tr	NA	Tr	Tr	NA	NA	NA
AtomicAckETH	Atomic data returned; Passed to upper layers for each message.	NC	NA	NC	NC	NA	NA	NA
IETH R_Key	This is the R_KEY that the responder is being asked to invalidate in a SEND with Invalidate operation.	d	NA	d	NA	NA	NA	NA
XRCETH XRCSRQ	This is the XRC SRQ that is being targeted by the incoming packet in question	NA	NA	XRC SRQ	NA	NA	NA	NA
Immediate data	Dependent on operation; Passed to upper layers for each message.	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NA	NA
Payload	Dependent on operation; Passed to upper layers for each message.	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC
ICRC	Checked by transport	link	link	link	link	link	NA	NA
VCRC	Checked by Link layer; data dependent	link	link	link	link	link	link	link

- a. For HCAs, this information is provided to upper layers.
 b. Raw IP does not have a GRH, it has the similar looking IPv6 header. The Parameters are labeled GRH for convenience. This entire header is loaded from a data segment provided by the WQE
 c. For QP1, the P_Key need only be a member of the port's Partition table, it is not checked against a QP index.
 d. See details in [9.4.1.1.3 R_Key Validation for Remote Memory Invalidate on page 274](#)

9.11 STATIC RATE CONTROL

As the traffic load increases in a fabric, resource contention increases. Congestion management is used to smooth operation, improve fabric efficiency, improve effective bandwidth, and improve average packet latency in the face of such contention.

There are a variety of mechanisms to address this problem. This version of IBA defines two mechanisms: static rate control, defined in this section, and congestion control, defined in the congestion control annex. Future

1 versions of the specification may provide definition of additional mechanisms.
2

3 Static rate control is the ability of an endnode to keep the rate of data
4 sourcing into the fabric below a pre-configured value.

5 IBA supports Static Rate control in CAs to reduce congestion caused by
6 a higher-speed CA injecting packets onto a path within a subnet at a rate
7 that exceeds the path or destination CA's ability to sink. For example, a
8 CA with a 10 Gbps link transmitting packets to a CA with a 2.5 Gbps link
9 through an intermediate switch. In this case, the switch would be required
10 to introduce "back-pressure" (limit the link-level flow control credits re-
11 turned to the faster link) in order to prevent the slower link from being over-
12 run.

13 IBA provides three mechanisms to manage static rate control.
14

- 15 • Device provided port rate information (see [16.3.3.1 ClassPortInfo on](#)
16 [page 1159](#))
- 17 • SM supported reporting of best possible rates for a source/destina-
18 [tion pair \(see \[15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038\]\(#\)\).](#)
- 19 • CA "Inter Packet delay" parameters in the connection setup MADs
20 (described below)

21 **9.11.1 STATIC RATE CONTROL FOR HETEROGENEOUS LINKS**

22 A channel adapter has the ability to limit the rate of packets injected. This
23 rate is based on the subnet-local destination port.

24 **o9-163:** If a port can support injection into the fabric at a rate greater than
25 2.5 Gbits/sec, this port shall provide static rate control as defined in this
26 section.

27 The link rate supported is defined by the PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported
28 and PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported and optionally PortInfo:LinkSpeedExt-
29 Supported components. See [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#) for a de-
30 scription of these.

31 **o9-164:** If a port is configured for injection into the fabric at a rate greater
32 than 2.5 Gbits/sec, it shall not schedule a packet for injection into the local
33 subnet until a programmable amount of time has passed since the last
34 packet was scheduled for injection from this source port to the same des-
35 tination port.

36 The link rate supported is defined by the PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported
37 and PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported and optionally PortInfo:LinkSpeedExt-
38 Supported components. See [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#) for a de-
39 scription of these.

In the above, destination port refers to the full DLID (i.e. base DLID plus path bits) of the destination port within the local subnet, even for globally routed packets, while source port refers to the ingress port regardless of SLID (i.e. applies to all the SLIDs associated with this port).

The time to wait before transmitting a subsequent packet is based on the time it takes to transmit the current packet.

o9-165: If a port can support injection into the fabric at a rate greater than 2.5 Gbits/sec, the time to wait between scheduling packets destined for the same DLID and originating from the same port is determined by the Inter Packet Delay (IPD). Specifically, if a packet *b* is to be sent to the same DLID and using the same source port as packet *a*, then packet *b* shall not be scheduled until a time T_s has passed since packet *a* was scheduled, where T_s is calculated as: $(IPD + 1)$ multiplied by the time it takes to transmit the first packet. Further, the time it takes to transmit a packet is calculated as $LRH:PktLen * 4 / L_r$ where L_r is the port speed as obtained from the PortInfo:LinkWidthActive and PortInfo:LinkSpeedActive attributes.

The Inter Packet Delay (IPD) value is a real, non-negative number. The table below demonstrates the interpretation of IPD for some example values

.Note also that the above table is a sample and does not include all re-

Table 66 Inter Packet Delay

IPD	rate	Comment
0	100%	Suited for matched links
1	50%	
2	33%	Suited for 30 Gbps to 10 Gbps conversion
3	25%	Suited for 10 Gbps to 2.5 Gbps conversion
11	8%	Suited for a 30 Gbps to 2.5 Gbps conversion

quired IPDs. See [17.2.6 Static Rate Control on page 1198](#) for which values of IPD CAs are required to support.

C9-226: If a CA is requested to use an unsupported value, the CA shall pick a supported value, and return that value in the appropriate MADs or verbs.

If the requested IPD value is not supported, it is recommended that the CA use the nearest supported value that is larger than the requested value.

Each connected QP (EE context for RDs) should have a programmed IPD value. UDs should include the IPD in the WQE.

The same value of IPD should be programmed for each connected QP and WQE using the same port and same DLID. If different values of IPD are programmed, the CA may use any of these values for any of this traffic.

IBTA

CHAPTER 10: SOFTWARE TRANSPORT INTERFACE

10.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter describes the software transport layer of the IBA. The software transport defines the capabilities and behavior of the Channel Interface (CI), the presentation of the channel to the Verbs Consumer. This interface is implemented as a combination of the Host Channel Adapter (HCA), its associated firmware, and host software. Specification of the API used by the Verbs Consumer to access the capabilities of the CI is outside of the scope of this architecture.

A concept frequently encountered in this specification is that of Verbs Consumer. The precise meaning of the phrase varies, as a function of context, but it always means, as defined in the Glossary, the executing entity employing the capabilities of the CI to accomplish some objective. In some instances the Verb Consumer may be a OS kernel thread, in others a user-level application, and in still others, some special, privileged process. Where the difference is important to the correct behavior of an implementation, it is defined explicitly, as in [11.1 Verbs Introduction and Overview on page 583](#); elsewhere, it is left unspecified.

While the Partitioning section is not strictly part of the software transport layer, it describes ideas that connect intimately with the semantics of the Queue Pair (QP), and are therefore reasonably elaborated in this chapter. In addition, giving the descriptions of the necessary entities here ensures their inclusion in the architecture specification.

10.1.1 INTRODUCTION

The CI is the locus of interaction between the consumer of IBA services and the instantiation of an IBA fabric. Access to the HCA is via Verbs, which enable creation and management of QPs, management of the HCA, and coping with error indications from the CI that may be surfaced via the Verbs. All these activities must be carried out so as to enable Verbs consumers to enjoy the same level of protection and security as are guaranteed other entities supported by the host operating system.

Fundamental to CI interaction is management of HCAs, which includes arranging access to them, accessing and modifying selected of their attributes, and shutting them down. These activities are described below, and details of the corresponding Verbs layer semantics are given in the next chapter.

Entities with central importance to CI operation are QPs. They must be created, associated with protection domains, modified as required, and

destroyed to free up resources when no longer needed. In use, they provide repositories for addressing information needed by Verbs consumers, as well as protection information to guarantee the operational integrity of themselves and the host system. QPs provide for various modes of operation, depending upon the requirements of the consumer. Details of these modes, as well as the means of establishing them for a QP are described below, and corresponding Verbs semantics are detailed in the next chapter. For a graphical depiction of the QP, see [Figure 11 on page 106](#).

As a central mode of QP operation, direct, protected access to consumer memory is critical to realizing the performance potential of the IBA. This chapter describes the semantics of memory access defined for the architecture, detailing the ideas of memory regions and windows, and their registration, access keys for local and remote access to registered memory, and the management of errors that may arise in this context.

A Work Request (WR) is an elementary object in the software transport layer, used by consumers to enqueue Work Queue Elements (WQEs) to the Send and Receive queues of a QP. The WQE is what identifies the individual events of communication over the IBA fabric. A graphical depiction of the WQE and QP can be seen in [Figure 12 on page 107](#). The WR types, and the dynamics of their creation, use, and disposition via entries in Completion Queues (CQEs) are described in the sections to follow, as are the disposition of errors that may arise as they are used. Details of their contents are given in the next chapter.

10.2 MANAGING HCA RESOURCES

10.2.1 HCA

Verbs allow the Consumer to open an HCA, retrieve HCA attributes, modify HCA attributes that can be changed by the Consumer, and close the HCA.

Queue Pairs, Completion Queues and other resources associated with a specific HCA instance cannot be shared across multiple HCAs, even if they are managed by the same device driver software.

The intent of the architecture is to allow an implementation to pass Work Requests and Completion Status to and from a user space Consumer process to the HCA without kernel involvement.

10.2.1.1 OPENING AN HCA

The Verb used to open an HCA returns an opaque object or handle to uniquely reference each HCA so that Consumers can distinguish between HCAs in the endnode.

Opening an HCA prepares the HCA for use by the Consumer. Once opened an HCA cannot be opened again until after it has been closed.

10.2.1.2 HCA ATTRIBUTES

HCA Attributes are device characteristics. These attributes must be able to be retrieved by the Consumer. The full list of HCA Attributes are defined in [11.2.1.2 Query HCA on page 588](#).

Additional attributes associated with the Post-1.1 Verb Extensions defined in section 11.1.1 Verb Extensions are described in section [11.2.1.2 Query HCA on page 588](#).

10.2.1.3 MODIFYING HCA ATTRIBUTES

Modification of a restricted set of HCA attributes is permitted. This is primarily restricted to performance and error counter management information. Most HCA Attributes are either fixed or manipulated through the Fabric Management Interface or General Services Interface.

10.2.1.4 CLOSING AN HCA

Close restores the HCA to its initialized condition, and deallocates any resources allocated during the HCA open.

It is not the responsibility of the Channel Interface to track any resources which were not allocated by the HCA open.

10.2.2 ADDRESSING

10.2.2.1 SOURCE ADDRESSING

For global addressing, each HCA Source Port has a GID Table containing the valid GIDs for the Source Port. The GID Table is obtained via the Query HCA Verb.

C10-1: For each HCA Source Port, the CI **shall** maintain a GID Table containing the valid GIDs for the Source Port.

Each Address Vector contains a Source GID Index. The Source GID Index specifies an index into the Source GID Table. The entry referenced by the Source GID Index defines the Source GID associated with the Address Vector.

C10-2: For each GID Table, the first entry in the table **shall** contain the read-only invariant value of GID index 0.

For local addressing, IBA enables the use of multiple LIDs with each HCA port through the use of a Base LID, LMC and Path Bits.

C10-3: Each Address Vector **shall** contain specific Source Port LID Path Bits.

When the HCA constructs an SLID by taking the most significant bits from the port's Base LID and the least significant bits from an Address Vector's Path Bits, the port's LMC specifies how many bits come from the latter.

10.2.2.2 DESTINATION ADDRESSING

Addressing of destination endpoints is determined based on the Service Type of the QP:

C10-4: For Connection-oriented QPs, the destination address **shall** be stored in the QP Context, and **shall** be manipulated exclusively through the Modify Queue Pair Attributes Verbs.

o10-1: If the CI supports the RD Service, then for Reliable Datagram QPs, the destination address **shall** be stored in the EE Context, and **shall** be manipulated exclusively through the Modify EE Context Attributes Verb, and an EE Context **shall** be referenced by each individual Work Request (see 10.2.7 End-to-End Contexts).

o10-2: If the CI supports Raw Datagram Service, then for Raw QPs, the destination address **shall** be supplied via each individual Work Request.

o10-2.1.1: If the CI supports Address Handle port number checking, operations on unreliable datagram queue pairs that access an Address Handle **shall** be allowed only if the Queue Pair's primary physical port matches the physical port of the Address Handle. If there is a mismatch, the CI **shall** return either Invalid Address Handle as an immediate error or Local QP Operation Error as a completion error.

If the CI does not support Address Handle port number checking, and while processing operations on UD QPs, if the Queue Pair's primary physical port number does not match the physical port number in the Address Handle, then no error is generated because of the port number mismatch.

C10-5: For Unreliable Datagram QPs, the destination address of the node **shall** be contained in an Address Handle, and an Address Handle **shall** be referenced by each individual Work Request.

An Address Handle is a consumer-opaque object that refers to a local or global destination. Verbs are used to create, modify and destroy Address Handles. Address handles are associated with protection domains. Protection domains are described in 10.2.3 Protection Domains .

The verbs consumer should avoid modifying or destroying an Address Handle while there are outstanding WRs that reference that Address Handle. In any case the CI must process any WR, which references a destroyed or modified Address Handle, and complete it either successfully or in error (according to the normal CQE generation rules). The CA may

emit the packet only when the completion is successful, however, the destination address may be indeterminate. When the completion is in error, no packet is emitted at all.

C10-5.2.1: The CI **shall** process any WR that references an Address Handle which was modified or destroyed while the WR has been outstanding. The WR **shall** be completed either successfully or in error (normal CQE generation rules apply). A packet **shall** only emitted when the operation completes successfully, though the destination address may be indeterminate. If the completion is in error the CI **shall** not emit the packet and the reported completion return status **shall** be Local QP Operation Error.

C10-6: The CI **shall** support sending messages from a QP or EE addressed to the same or a different QP/EE on the same port in the sending HCA. Such messages **shall not** be transmitted through the fabric, but **shall** remain contained within that HCA.

No special addressing mechanisms are necessary to accomplish this; instead, the destination information in the source QP, EE, Address Vector, or Work Request is the same as that which any other node on the fabric would use to address the destination QP/EE.

Address Vector information can be obtained from Subnet Administration via the SubnAdmGet method on the PathRecord attribute. The PathRecord information is used as part of an Address Vector in an Address Handle, End to End Context or Queue Pair Context. This information is then taken from those locations as per [Table 67](#) to create the packet. If parameters other than those obtained from exactly one applicable PathRecord are used as part of an Address Vector, this can have undesirable consequences including, but not limited to, packet discard and connection teardown. Whenever PathRecord information is for a multicast destination or has a non-zero HopLimit, the Send Global Routing Header flag should be set in the Address Handle or EEC/QP.

10.2.2.3 LOOPBACK

Packet loopback is supported through self addressed packets as described in [17.2.2](#) and [C17-18](#). Self-addressed packet is a packet whose DLID and SLID address the same port of the same CA. Additionally, an HCA can optionally support a Loopback Indicator. When Loopback Indicator is supported, both Address Handles and QP/EE Address Vectors can use Loopback Indicator instead of Destination LID. When reaping completions for Datagrams based QPs, the Loopback Indicator is also reported if the origin of the message was Loopback.

Loopback Indicator addressing can be useful in cases where the Port LID is unassigned or might change, for example due to subnets merge. The

HCA shall loopback packets regardless of the Port state when the Loopback Indicator is used. The loopback takes place on a specific port, therefore, in a multiport channel adapter, loopback is only allowed between QPs that are attached to the same port.

When using the Loopback Indicator, the attributes: Path MTU, Source Path Bits and Static Rate are not used. The attribute Service Level can be used within the HCA for scheduling.

o10-6.2-1.1: If the CI supports the Loopback Indicator, the CI **shall** report it through the Query HCA Verb. The CI **shall** accept the Loopback Indicator as an input modifier to the Create Address Handle, Modify Address Handle, Modify QP and Modify EEC verbs. The CI **shall** support the Loopback Indicator as an output modifier of the Query QP, Query EEC and Poll for Completion verbs.

o10-6.2-1.2: If the CI supports the Loopback Indicator, the CI **shall** loopback packets on RC QPs, UC QPs and on EECs when the Loopback Indicator is set on the QP/EEC. The CI **shall** loopback packets on UD QPs when the Loopback Indicator is set on the Address Handle.

10.2.3 PROTECTION DOMAINS

A Protection Domain (PD) is used to associate Queue Pairs (QPs) and Shared Receive Queues with Memory Regions, as a means for enabling and controlling HCA access to Host System memory.

Additionally, a Protection Domain (PD) is used to associate Queue Pairs (QPs) with Unbound Memory Windows, as a means for enabling and controlling HCA access to Host System memory.

PDs are also used to associate Queue Pairs with Bound Memory Windows as follows:

- for Type 1 Memory Windows, the PD is used to associate the Queue Pairs to a Bound Type 1 Memory Window;
- for Type 2A Memory Windows, the QP Number is used to associate the Queue Pairs to a Bound Type 2A Memory Window; and
- for Type 2B Memory Windows, the PD and QP Number are used to associate the Queue Pairs to a Bound Type 2B Memory Window.

See section [10.6.7.2.2 Remote Access Through Memory Windows on page 524](#) for a description of the different Memory Window Types.

PDs are also used to associate Unreliable datagram queue pairs with Address Handles, as a means of controlling access to UD destinations. Queue Pairs are described in [11.2.5 Queue Pair on page 608](#). Memory

Regions and Memory Windows are described in detail in Section [11.2.10 Memory Management on page 644](#). PDs are specific to each HCA.

C10-7: Each Queue Pair in an HCA **shall** be associated with a single PD. Multiple Queue Pairs **shall** be able to be associated with the same PD.

o10-2.2.1: If the HCA supports SRQ, each Shared Receive Queue in an HCA **shall** be associated with a single PD. Multiple Shared Receive Queues and Queue Pairs **shall** be able to be associated with the same PD.

Note, the SRQ has its own PD. The SRQ may be associated with the same PD as used by one or more of its associated QPs or a different PD.

C10-8: Each Memory Region, Unbound Memory Window, or Address Handle **shall** be associated with a single PD. Multiple Memory Regions, Unbound Memory Windows, or Address Handles **shall** be able to be associated with the same PD.

C10-9: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-9.2.1: If a QP is not associated with an SRQ, operations on a Queue Pair that access a Memory Region **shall** be allowed only if the Queue Pair's PD matches the PD of the Memory Region.

o10-2.2.2: If the HCA supports SRQ and a QP is associated with an SRQ,

- incoming send operations that access a MR or PMR **shall** be allowed only if the SRQ's PD matches the PD of the Memory Region,
- incoming RDMA or Atomic operations that access an MR **shall** be allowed only if the QP's PD matches the PD of the Memory Region, and
- incoming RDMA, Atomic, or Invalidate operations that access a PMR **shall** be allowed only if the QP's PD matches the PD of the Memory Region.

Access to Memory Windows is dependent on the type of Memory Window selected by the Consumer when the Memory Window was Allocated through the Allocate Memory Window Verb (see section [11.2.10.9 Allocate Memory Window on page 657](#)).

C10-10: Operations on unreliable datagram queue pairs that access an Address Handle **shall** be allowed only if the Queue Pair's PD matches the PD of the Address Handle. If there is a mismatch, the Channel Interface **shall** return either Invalid Address Handle as an immediate error or Local QP Operation Error as a completion error.

10.2.3.1 ALLOCATING A PROTECTION DOMAIN

1 Protection Domains are allocated through the Verbs.

2 A PD is required when creating a Queue Pair, registering a Memory Re-

3 gion, allocating a Memory Window, or creating an Address Handle.

4 A PD has no IB architected attributes. Operating Systems are commonly
5 expected to enforce the policy that when a Verbs consumer creates a
6 Queue Pair, registers a Memory Region, allocates a Memory Window, or
7 allocates an Address Handle, it must specify a PD for association with the
8 IB resources owned by it (that is, that were allocated by it).

10.2.3.2 DEALLOCATING A PROTECTION DOMAIN

9 Protection Domains are deallocated through the Verbs.

10 **C10-11:** This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

11 **C10-11.2.1:** If the CI does not support SRQ, the PD **shall not** be deallo-
12 cated if it is still associated with any Queue Pair, Memory Region, Memory
13 Window, or Address Handle. If this is attempted, the Verbs **shall** return an
14 immediate error.

15 **C10-11.2.2:** If the CI supports SRQ, aPD **shall not** be deallocated if it is
16 still associated with any Queue Pair, Memory Region, Memory Window,
17 Address Handle, or Shared Receive Queue. If this is attempted, the Verbs
18 **shall** return an immediate error.

10.2.4 QUEUE PAIRS

19 The Verb consumer uses a Verb to submit a Work Request (WR) to a
20 Send queue or a Receive queue. Associated Send and Receive queues
21 are collectively called a Queue Pair (QP); these QPs drive the channel
22 interface. A QP, which is a component of the channel interface, is not di-
23 rectly accessible by the Verbs consumer and can only be manipulated
24 through the use of Verbs. See [10.8 Work Request Processing Model](#) for
25 a description of the WR submission process.

10.2.4.1 CREATING A QUEUE PAIR

26 Queue Pairs are created through the Verbs.

27 When a QP is created, a complete set of initial attributes must be specified
28 by the Consumer. The attributes that need to be defined when the QP is
29 created are denoted in [11.2.5.1 Create Queue Pair on page 608](#).

30 The maximum number of Work Queue Entries (WQEs) the Consumer ex-
31 pects to be outstanding on each work queue of the Queue Pair must be

specified when the QP is created. The actual number of entries is returned through the Channel Interface for each work queue.

When setting the maximum number of outstanding work requests on a work queue, the consumer must take into account that this number must be large enough to encompass the number of work requests on that queue that have not completed plus the number of completed work requests for that queue that have not been freed through the associated CQ (see [10.8.5.1 Freed Resource Count on page 552](#)). Note for unsignaled completions, the consumer cannot consider the work request completed until the work request has been confirmed completed as per [10.8.6 Unsigned Completions on page 554](#).

10.2.4.2 QUEUE PAIR ATTRIBUTES

Queue Pairs have attributes that can be retrieved through the Query Queue Pair Verb. The complete list of QP Attributes is described in [11.2.5.3 Query Queue Pair on page 618](#).

10.2.4.3 MODIFYING QUEUE PAIR ATTRIBUTES

Certain QP Attributes may be modified after the QP has been created. The subset of QP Attributes which can be modified are defined in [11.2.5.2 Modify Queue Pair on page 611](#).

It is possible to modify the QP Attributes with Work Requests outstanding on the QP. Any Work Requests outstanding on the specified QP may not execute properly when the attributes are changed.

When setting the maximum number of outstanding work requests on a work queue, the consumer must take into account that this number must be large enough to encompass the number of work requests on that queue that have not completed plus the number of completed work requests for that queue that have not been freed through the associated CQ (see [10.8.5.1 Freed Resource Count](#)). Note for unsignaled completions, the consumer cannot consider the work request completed until the work request has been confirmed completed as per [10.8.6 Unsigned Completions](#).

A CI may support the ability to modify the maximum number of outstanding Work Requests on a QP. If it does so, it must be able to support it while Work Requests are outstanding. In addition, it must support resizing both work queues on every QP. If immediate errors are returned, the work queue(s) must be in the same state as it was prior to the attempt to resize the work queue(s). It is understood that this may adversely affect performance, but it must not be the cause of immediate, completion or asynchronous errors, with the exception of immediate errors returned by the Modify Queue Pair Verb. Note that a resize operation may adversely affect other QPs attempting to communicate with the QP during the resize

operation in the form of timeouts and retries. It may also result in the loss of data in the form of dropped packets for unreliable service type QPs.

10.2.4.4 DESTROYING A QUEUE PAIR

Queue Pairs are destroyed through the Channel Interface.

When a QP is destroyed, any outstanding Work Requests are no longer considered to be in the scope of the Channel Interface. It is the responsibility of the Consumer to be able to clean up any associated resources.

Destruction of a QP releases any resources allocated below the Channel Interface on behalf of the QP. Outstanding Work Requests will not complete after this Verb returns.

o10-2.2.3: If the CI supports IBA Unreliable Datagram Multicast (see [10.5 Multicast Services on page 497](#)), and the Destroy Queue Pair Verb is invoked while the target QP is still attached to one or more multicast groups, the CI **shall** return an immediate error and the QP **shall not** be destroyed.

It is good programming practice to modify the QP into the Error state and retrieve the relevant CQEs prior to destroying the QP. Destroying a QP does not guarantee that CQEs of that QP are deallocated from the CQ upon destruction. Even if the CQEs are already on the CQ, it might not be possible to retrieve them. It is good programming practice not to make any assumption on the number of CQEs in the CQ when destroying a QP. In order to avoid CQ overflow, it is recommended that all CQEs of the destroyed QP are retrieved from the CQ associated with it before resizing the CQ, attaching a new QP to the CQ or reopening the QP, if the CQ capacity is limited.

If this QP is part of a connection, the connection should be released before the QP is destroyed. See section [12.9.4 State Diagram Notes on page 748](#) for further information.

Type 1 MWs are never bound to a QP. Therefore, Type 1 MWs do not affect the ability to destroy a QP.

o10-2.2.4: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management extensions and supports Type 2A Memory Windows, then the HCA **must** return an error if the Consumer attempts to destroy a QP while Type 2A MWs are still bound to the QP.

o10-2.2.5: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management extensions and supports Type 2B Memory Windows, then the HCA **must** allow the Consumer to destroy the QP while Type 2B MWs are still bound to the QP.

For a description of Memory Window types see section 10.6.7.2.2.

10.2.4.5 SPECIAL QPs

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
QPs designated as special are the SMI QP (QP0), GSI QP (QP1) and the Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype QPs. These QP types are special because they have different and more restrictive properties than QPs designed for more general use.

Incoming messages to the SMI or GSI QPs may be consumed below the Verbs by a subnet management agent (SMA) or general services agent (GSA), respectively. If a MAD is consumed below the Verbs, the semantics must be consistent from the Verbs Consumer's point of view.

C10-12: Any message processing performed below the Verbs, e.g., by a SMA, **must not** disturb any WQEs and CQEs posted on behalf of the Verbs Consumer.

C10-13: The CI **shall** allow direct access to the SMI and GSI QPs only by privileged mode Consumers.

SMI and GSI QPs can share a completion queue, but neither can share one with any QP that is not of the SMI or GSI type.

Multiple Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype QPs are allowed on a single HCA. However, the demultiplexing algorithm that is applied to receiving messages between QPs is outside the scope of this specification.

10.2.5 Q_KEYS

A Queue Key (Q_Key) is a construct used in Datagram Service QPs to validate a remote sender's right to access a local Receive Queue. They are set through the Modify Queue Pair Verb, as well as within Work Requests. The values used for Q_Keys are not managed below the Verbs. Q_Keys are contained in the headers for IB Datagram packets.

Q_Keys have the following properties:

- A Q_Key must be established in the QP Context before Receive Descriptors can be posted to a QP.
- The Q_Key is a modifier in the Post Send Request Verb.

C10-14: For UD Service type QPs, except QP0 and QP1, the Q_Key in the QP Context **shall** be used to validate incoming packets. If the Q_Key does not match, the packet **shall** be silently dropped. See Section [9.6.1.5.1](#) for rules on validating the Q_Key in incoming packets on QP0 and QP1.

o10-3: If the CI supports the RD Service, then for RD QPs, the Q_Key in the QP Context **shall** be used to validate incoming packets. If the Q_Key does not match, the packet **shall** be NAK'd. This NAK **shall** result in the

Send Queue at the remote node being placed into the appropriate error state as per the state diagram.

C10-15: A Q_Key **shall** be a modifier in the Post Send Request Verb for Datagram Service Type queue pairs. The Channel Interface **shall** examine the Q_Key in the Work Request. If the high order bit of the Q_Key is set, the outgoing packet **shall** contain the Q_Key from the QP Context. If the high order bit of the Q_Key is not set, the outgoing packet **shall** contain the Q_Key from the Work Request.

For the RD service class, Q_Key violation results in the source Send Queue transitioning to the error state. The destination has the option to support a Q_Key violation counter and trap. This optional counter may be queried and set through the Verbs.

Q_Keys are not enforced on Raw QPs.

10.2.6 COMPLETION QUEUES

A CQ can be used to multiplex work completions from multiple work queues across queue pairs on the same HCA.

C10-16: The CI **shall** support Completion Queues (CQ) as the notification mechanism for Work Request completions. A CQ **shall** have zero or more work queue associations. Any CQ **shall** be able to service send queues, receive queues, or both. Work queues from multiple QPs **shall** be able to be associated with a single CQ.

10.2.6.1 CREATING A COMPLETION QUEUE

Completion Queues are created through the Channel Interface.

The maximum number of Completion Queue Entries (CQE)s) that may be outstanding on a CQ must be specified when the CQ is created; this is known as the CQ's capacity. The actual capacity is returned through the Channel Interface. If the number of CQE's outstanding on a CQ is equal to its capacity, and another entry is added, the CQ overflows. It is the responsibility of the Consumer to ensure that the capacity chosen is sufficient for the Consumer's operations; it must, in any case, arrange to handle an error resulting from CQ overflow.

C10-17: Overflow of the CQ **shall** be detected and reported by the CI before the next WC is retrieved from that CQ. This error **must** be reported as an affiliated asynchronous error -- see [11.6.3.2 Affiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 692](#).

10.2.6.2 COMPLETION QUEUE ATTRIBUTES

The only Completion Queue attribute is the capacity of the CQ. This attribute can be retrieved through the Query Completion Queue Verb.

Note that no Verb is provided which retrieves a CQ's set of associated Work Queues; the consumer is responsible for keeping track of this information, if needed.

10.2.6.3 MODIFYING COMPLETION QUEUE ATTRIBUTES

It must be possible to change the capacity of the CQ through the Channel Interface while Work Requests are outstanding on the queues associated with the specified CQ. It is understood that this may adversely affect performance, but it must not be the cause of immediate or completion errors, with the exception of immediate errors returned by the Resize Completion Queue Verb.

10.2.6.4 DESTROYING A COMPLETION QUEUE

Completion Queues are destroyed through the Channel Interface.

C10-18: If the Verb to destroy a CQ is invoked while Work Queues are still associated with the CQ, the CI **shall** return an error and the CQ **shall** not be destroyed.

Destruction of a CQ releases any resources allocated below the Channel Interface on behalf of the CQ.

10.2.7 END-TO-END CONTEXTS

An End-to-End Context (EE Context) is a local HCA resource, used by the local HCA to track messages transferred between itself and another HCA, to support Reliable Datagram Service QPs. EE Contexts are established in an HCA by the Consumer through the Verbs.

o10-4: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** support an EE Context for use by the Consumer to provide the connection between two HCA ports. Each local EE Context **shall** be connected to exactly one destination EE Context.

The Consumer must establish a communication channel between a pair of EE Contexts, one on each HCA, before RD messaging can begin between the two HCAs. This communication channel must be established using the normal connection style semantics described in Chapter 12, Communication Services.

o10-5: If the CI supports RD Service, multiple connected EE Contexts (RD channels) **shall** be allowed between HCA port pairs. These EE Contexts are allowed to have either the same or different sets of attributes.

Any Work Requests outstanding on the specified EE Context may not execute properly when the attributes are changed.

The Consumer submits RD Work Requests to an RD type QP's Send Queue. The Work Request specifies the EE Context to use to perform the actual message transfer. Work Requests may be submitted to a single RD QP that specify different EE Contexts as long as the EE Context specified is in the same RDD as the RD QP.

It is the responsibility of the Consumer to create, modify and destroy the EE Context, to use the Communication Services to gather the information necessary to transition the EE Context through the states as well as to fill out the necessary attributes for use.

It is important to note that Verbs manipulating EE Contexts, such as Create EE Context and Modify EE Context, use an EE Context handle, but Communication Management and submission of Work Requests to the Send Queue require the EE Context number. This number can be retrieved through the Query EE Context Verb.

10.2.7.1 CREATING AN EE CONTEXT

EE Contexts are created through the Channel Interface.

When an EE Context is created, a complete set of initial attributes must be specified by the Consumer. The attributes that need to be defined when the EE Context is created are denoted in Section [11.2.9.1 Create EE Context on page 636](#).

10.2.7.2 EE CONTEXT ATTRIBUTES

EE Contexts have attributes that can be retrieved through the Query EE Context Verb.

The complete list of EE Context Attributes is described in Section [11.2.9.3 Query EE Context on page 641](#).

10.2.7.3 MODIFYING EE CONTEXT ATTRIBUTES

Certain EE Context Attributes may be modified after the EE Context has been created. The subset of EE Context Attributes which can be modified are defined in Section [11.2.9.2 Modify EE Context Attributes on page 636](#).

It is possible to modify the EE Context Attributes when Work Requests requiring the EE Context are outstanding. Any outstanding WR which requires the specified EE context may not execute properly when the attributes are changed.

10.2.7.4 DESTROYING AN EE CONTEXT

EE Contexts are destroyed through the Channel Interface.

When an EE Context is destroyed, any outstanding Work Requests which depend on the EE Context are expected to complete with an appropriate error.

Destruction of an EE Context releases any resources allocated below the Channel Interface on behalf of the EE Context.

If this EEC is part of a Reliable Datagram Channel, the RDC should be released before the EEC is destroyed. See section [12.9.4 State Diagram Notes on page 748](#) for further information.

10.2.8 RELIABLE DATAGRAM DOMAINS

A Reliable Datagram Domain (RDD) is a means to associate Queue Pairs with EE contexts.

o10-6: If the CI supports RD Service, each RD QP **shall** be associated with only one RDD. Multiple RD QPs **shall** be able to be associated with the same RDD.

o10-7: If the CI supports RD Service, each EE context **shall** be associated with only one RDD. Multiple EE contexts **shall** be able to be associated with the same RDD.

o10-8: If the CI supports RD Service, WRs which specify an EE Context on an RD Queue Pair **shall** be allowed only if the RDD in the EE Context matches the RDD in the QP. If the RDDs do not match, the initiator's work request will complete with a Local RDD Violation Error, with no effect on the destination's receive queue (see [11.6.2 Completion Return Status on page 687](#) for the correct error code).

o10-9: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** support at least two RDDs.

The purpose of defining the RDD construct is to ensure that it is possible reliably to separate user and kernel I/O RD traffic through an HCA. Note also that realizing that separation requires two EE contexts, as well.

10.2.8.1 ALLOCATING A RELIABLE DATAGRAM DOMAIN

Reliable datagram domains are allocated through the Channel Interface, using a privileged operation.

10.2.8.2 DEALLOCATING A RELIABLE DATAGRAM DOMAIN

Reliable datagram domains are deallocated through the Channel Interface.

o**10-10:** If the CI supports RD Service, an RDD **shall not** be deallocated if it is still associated with any Queue Pair or EE Context. If this is attempted, the CI **shall** return an immediate error.

10.2.9 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

The semantics defined in this section are applicable if the Consumer associates a QP to a Shared Receive Queue.

10.2.9.1 MOTIVATION FOR SUPPORTING SRQ

Without SRQ, an RC, UC or UD Consumer must post the number of receive WRs necessary to handle incoming receives on a given QP. If the Consumer cannot predict the incoming rate on a given QP, because, for example, the connection has a bursty nature, the Consumer must either: post a sufficient number of RQ WRs to handle the highest incoming rate for each connection, or, for RC, let message flow control cause the remote sender to back off until local Consumer posts more WRs.

Either approach is inefficient:

- Posting sufficient WRs on each QP to hold the possible incoming rate, wastes WQEs, and the associated Data Segments, when the Receive Queue is inactive. Furthermore, the HCA doesn't provide a way of reclaiming these WQEs for use on other connections.
- Letting the RC message flow control cause the remote sender to back off can add unnecessary latencies, specially if the local Consumer is unaware that the RQ is starving.

A Shared Receive Queue solves this problem by allowing multiple Queue Pairs to share Receive Work Requests and, more importantly, the Data Segments associated with Receive Work Requests. When an incoming Receive Message arrives on any QP that is associated with an SRQ, the HCA uses the next available SRQ WQE to receive the incoming data. The HCA returns Work Completions through the Completion Queue that is associated with the QP that received the incoming Send operation.

RC, UC or UD QPs can be associated with an SRQ.

10.2.9.2 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE CREATION

The Consumer creates an SRQ through the Create SRQ Verb.

When the SRQ is created through the Create SRQ verb:

- The Consumer requests the maximum number of WQEs that can be outstanding on the SRQ and the maximum number of scatter/gather elements per WQE on the SRQ. The CI returns the actual maximum

number of WQEs that can be outstanding on the SRQ and the actual number of scatter/gather elements per WQE on the SRQ. Each must be greater than or equal to the number requested.

The full list Create SRQ attributes is described in section [11.2.3.1 Create Shared Receive Queue on page 602](#).

10.2.9.3 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE MODIFICATION

The Consumer sets the SRQ Limit through the Modify SRQ verb. The SRQ Limit is armed when the Consumer sets the SRQ Limit to any value greater than zero. An SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event is generated whenever the number of SRQ WQEs is less than the SRQ Limit. The Consumer can use the SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event as an indicator that more WQEs need to be posted. The CI shall reset the SRQ Limit to zero when the SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event has been generated.

Note: A user mode Consumer can use the following sequence to reduce the number of user to privilege mode transitions upon SRQ and QP initialization:

- User mode Consumer invokes Create SRQ. This step requires a user-privileged-user mode transition. When the Create SRQ returns the Consumer is given an SRQ Handle.
- The user mode Consumer uses the SRQ Handle as an input modifier to the Post Receive verb, and posts Work Requests to the SRQ. The Consumer should post sufficient WRs, such that the total number of WRs is at least greater than the SRQ Limit the Consumer will set for SRQ.
- User mode Consumer invokes a combined Create QP and Modify SRQ, passing the SRQ Handle in the process. This step requires a user-privileged-user mode transition. A privileged mode Consumer turns the Create QP and Modify SRQ as two separate verb calls. The Create QP associates the newly create QP to the SRQ referenced by the SRQ Handle. The Modify SRQ sets the SRQ Limit for the SRQ referenced by the SRQ Handle.

Note, if the Consumer sets the SRQ Limit greater than zero on a Modify SRQ, the CI will re-arm the SRQ with the new SRQ Limit. The SRQ may be armed more than once through the Modify SRQ verb, even while it is already armed. The CI maintains one SRQ Limit value per SRQ and re-arming will overwrite this value.

Note: If the SRQ Limit is armed more than once, the Modify SRQ may return stating the SRQ Limit is armed, when in fact it is not and 1 or 2 Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Events may surface. If the Consumer arms the SRQ more than once and then receives an event, then there is

an ambiguity regarding which arming triggered the event. Therefore the Consumer should Query the SRQ to determine if the SRQ is still armed.

If the HCA supports the modification of the maximum number of outstanding SRQ WRs, then Consumer may request to change the maximum number of outstanding WRs through the Modify SRQ verb. The CI returns the actual maximum number of WQEs that can be outstanding on the SRQ, this value must be greater than or equal to the number requested.

o10-10.2.1: If the HCA supports modifying the maximum number of outstanding SRQ WRs, then for each SRQ supported by the HCA, the HCA **shall** allow the maximum number of outstanding SRQ WRs to be changed, even if WRs are still outstanding on the SRQ.

Similar to the QP resize operation, an SRQ resize may adversely affect HCA performance.

o10-10.2.2: If the HCA supports modifying the maximum number of outstanding SRQ WRs and the Consumer performs a resize operation through the Modify SRQ verb, then the HCA **shall not** return an error as a direct result of performing the Modify SRQ verb. The only exceptions are:

- when the SRQ size is decreased below the current number of outstanding WQEs on the SRQ, in this case, the CI **must** return an immediate error and not affect the SRQ state; and
- when the HCA supports modifying the maximum number of outstanding SRQ WRs and the Consumer performs a resize operation through the Modify SRQ verb that decreases the SRQ size below the SRQ Limit, the CI **must** return an immediate error and not affect the SRQ state.

When the local HCA is performing a resize operation, remote QPs that target local QPs associated with the SRQ being resized may experience message time-outs. These message timeouts may indirectly lead to connection teardown. Therefore, it is recommended that the Consumer either use a Consumer level message quiesce or a QP level Quiesce (i.e. through SQD) before resizing an SRQ.

10.2.9.4 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE DESTRUCTION

The Consumer destroys an SRQ through the Destroy SRQ Verb. The attributes of the Destroy SRQ Verb are described in [11.2.3.4 Destroy Shared Receive Queue on page 604](#).

o10-10.2.3: If the HCA supports SRQ and the Consumer invokes the Destroy SRQ verb while there are QPs still associated with the SRQ, the CI **shall** return an Immediate Error.

1 **o10-10.2.4:** If the HCA supports SRQ and the Consumer invokes the Destroy SRQ verb while there are WRs still outstanding on the SRQ, the HCA **shall** perform the destroy SRQ operation.

2 **o10-10.2.5:** If the HCA supports SRQ, when the CI successfully returns
3 from the Destroy SRQ verb, the CI **shall** free all resources associated with
4 the SRQ, including any WRs that were posted to the SRQ, but not com-
5 pleted.

10.2.9.5 SRQ STATES

9 The SRQ only has two states: Non-Error State and Error State.

10 In the Non-Error State: the Consumer is allowed to post Work Requests
11 to the SRQ; and QPs are allowed to retrieve Receive Queue WQEs from
12 the SRQ. In the Error State: the Consumer may be able to post Work Re-
13 quests to the SRQ; but QPs cannot retrieve Receive Queue WQEs from
14 the SRQ.

15 When an SRQ is created it is placed in the Non-Error State. If an SRQ Cata-
16 strophic Error occurs, the SRQ is placed in the Error State. Attempting to
17 Query or Modify an SRQ in the Error State shall return an Immediate Error.
18 The only way for the SRQ to exit the Error State is through a Destroy SRQ.
19 Upon successful completion of a Destroy SRQ, the SRQ exits the SRQ
20 State logic.

10.2.10 XRC SOFTWARE TRANSPORT INTERFACE

23 The XRC transport service offers semantics that are similar to those of RC
24 on the requester side and RD on the responder side. To that end new
25 transport service objects are defined below that closely resemble aspects
26 of the existing ones (RC and RD) namely:

- XRC INI QP
- XRC TGT QP
- XRC SRQ
- XRC Domain

27 Specifically, we use a XRC INI QP on the requester side connected to an
28 XRC TGT QP on the responder side. XRC INI and XRC TGT QPs are al-
29 located from the overall number of QPs that the HCA supports.

30 Each XRC message can target one XRC SRQ on the responder side
31 which is the actual RQ where receive WRs are posted. The choice of XRC
32 SRQ is on a per WR basis and the selected XRC SRQ number is a new
33 input modifier to the PostSend verb for XRC INI QPs. The selected XRC
34 SRQ number is carried on the XRC packets using a new extended trans-
35 port header as defined in [9.3.8 XRC Extended Transport Header](#).

([XRCETH](#) on page 267). XRC SRQs are allocated from a dedicated set as specified in Section [11.2.1.2 Query HCA](#) on page 588.

As implied by their names, XRC INI QPs do not have a responder side and XRC TGT QPs do not have a requester side. XRC SQ WRs (requests) are posted to XRC INI QPs while XRC RQ WRs are posted to XRC SRQs (and accessed through XRC TGT QPs).

XRC SRQs and XRC TGT QPs are associated by means of a XRC Domain which is identical in concept to the RDD of the RD transport service. A XRC packet that is received through a XRC TGT QP will be successfully processed if and only if the XRC Domain for the XRC TGT QP is the same as that of the XRC SRQ that the packet is targeting.

Since the responder CQ is the one defined for the XRC SRQ that is being targeted, there are no ordering guarantees for messages coming through a single XRC TGT QP that go to different XRC SRQs.

On an XRC SRQ, a successful poll of a WQE must guarantee that re-posting of a WQE is possible. That is, successful poll of a Work Completion that is associated with a Work Request posted through an XRC SRQ guarantees that posting of another Work Request to the same XRC SRQ is possible.

XRC SRQs do not support type 2 memory windows.

XRC INI and XRC TGT QPs follow the same QP states as RC QPs.

It is worth noting that even though XRC TGT QPs never generate requests, they still go to the RTS state for the purposes of path migration.

Error semantics follow a similar model than that of RC QPs with a few exceptions as described in the error section of this Annex. Upon errors, XRC TGT QPs generate asynchronous events. In addition, when relevant, XRC receive WQEs are flushed in error and those errors are affiliated with the SRQ to which the WQEs were originally posted.

PDs follow a similar model to that of RD QPs. Incoming XRC requests always use the PD of the XRC SRQ indicated in the XRC request (including for RDMA where no receive WQE from the XRC SRQ is consumed).

10.2.11 INFINIBAND HEADER DATA AND SOURCES

The following table lists each of the data items present in an IBA protocol header, as well as some internal state needed to send packets. For each Transport Service Type, it lists the source of that data or state. The sources for each of these are accessed through the Verbs. This table is provided to establish the correlation between the packet fields and the

constructs established through the Verbs. Note that the legend for Table 1
67 is Table 68, below.

Table 67 **Packet Fields, Queue Parameters, and their Sources**

Header	Field	RC/ XRC ^a	UC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET			
LRH	Virtual lane	Computed from SL and CAP SL->VL table								
LRH	LRH version	Fixed								
LRH	Service level	QP		EE	AV	WR				
LRH	LRH next header – IBA trans- port bit	Fixed=1				Fixed=0				
LRH	LRH next header – GRH bit	QP	EE	AV	Fixed=1	Fixed=0				
LRH	Destination local identifier	QP	EE	AV	WR					
LRH	Packet length	Computed from data/header length								
LRH	Source local identifier (part not covered by LMC)	CAP								
LRH	Source local identifier (part covered by LMC)	QP	EE	AV	WR					
LRH	Reserved	Fixed=0								
GRH	IP version	Fixed=6				N/A				
GRH	Traffic class	QP	EE	AV	N/A					
GRH	Flow label	QP	EE	AV	N/A					
GRH	Payload length	Computed from data/header length				N/A				
GRH	Next header	Fixed				N/A				
GRH	Hop limit	QP	EE	AV	N/A					
GRH	Source GID	Computed from CAP table and index in QP	Com- puted from CAP table and index in EE	Com- puted from CAP table and index in AV	N/A					
GRH	Destination GID	QP	EE	AV	N/A					
BTH	OpCode	WR				N/A				
BTH	BTH version	Fixed=0				N/A				
BTH	Partition key	QP	EE	QP	N/A					
BTH	Destination queue pair	QP	WR			N/A				

Table 67 Packet Fields, Queue Parameters, and their Sources (Continued)

Header	Field	RC/ XRC ^a	UC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET		
BTH	Pad count	Computed from data & header length				N/A			
BTH	Solicited event	WR				N/A			
BTH	Packet sequence number	Computed from QP state		Com- puted from EE state	Com- puted from QP state	N/A			
BTH	Reserved	Fixed=0				N/A			
RDETH	Remote EE context	N/A		EE	N/A				
RDETH	Reserved	N/A		Fixed=0	N/A				
DETH	Queue key	N/A		WR or QP depend- ing on WR		N/A			
DETH	Source queue pair	N/A		QP		N/A			
DETH	Reserved	Fixed=0				N/A			
RETH	Virtual address	WR			N/A				
RETH	R_Key	WR			N/A				
RETH	DMA length	WR			N/A				
AtomicETH	Virtual address	WR	N/A	WR	N/A				
AtomicETH	R_Key	WR	N/A	WR	N/A				
AtomicETH	Swap data	WR	N/A	WR	N/A				
AtomicETH	Compare data	WR	N/A	WR	N/A				
IETH	R_Key	WR	N/A						
AETH	Message sequence number	Com- puted	N/A	Com- puted	N/A				
AETH	Syndrome	Com- puted	N/A	Com- puted	N/A				
RWH	Reserved	N/A				Fixed			
RWH	EtherType	N/A				WR			
AtomicAck- ETH	Original remote data	Memory	N/A	Memory	N/A				
XRCETH ^b	XRC Extended Transport Header	WR	N/A						
ImmDT	Immediate Data	WR				N/A			
	Local EE context	N/A		WR	N/A				

Table 67 Packet Fields, Queue Parameters, and their Sources (Continued)

Header	Field	RC/ XRC ^a	UC	RD	UD	Raw IP	Raw ET					
	Port number	QP		EE	QP							
	Transport Timeout	QP	N/A	EE	N/A							
	Retry count	QP	N/A	EE	N/A							
	RNR retry count	QP	N/A	EE	N/A							
	PMTU	QP		EE	N/A							
	Maximum static rate	QP		EE	AV	WR						
	Protection domain	QP										
	Reliable datagram domain	N/A		QP/EE	N/A							
	Send PSN	QP		EE	N/A							
	Receive PSN	QP		EE	N/A							
	Outstanding atomics/RDMA reads supported at destination	QP	N/A	EE	N/A							
	Send CQ	QP										
	Receive CQ	QP										

a. Fields valid for RC and XRC except where noted as XRC only.

b. Valid for XRC only.

The following table is the legend for the previous one.

Table 68 Legend for Table 67

Abbreviation	Meaning
AETH	Acknowledgement extended transport header
AtomicAck-ETH	Atomic acknowledgement extended transport header
AtomicETH	Atomic extended transport header
AV	Part of the address vector object defined by the Verbs
BTH	Base transport header
CA	Property of the channel adapter
CAP	Property of the channel adapter port
Computed...	Calculated from other values as specified
DETH	Datagram extended transport header
DS	Field taken from data segment pointed to by work request

Table 68 Legend for Table 67 (Continued)

Abbreviation	Meaning
EE	Taken from the EE context (RD service only)
Fixed	Value is determined by the specification and is the same in all packets.
GRH	Global routing header
IETH	Invalidate Extended Transport Header
ImmDT	Immediate Data Extended Transport Header
LRH	Local routing header
Memory	Retrieved from host memory by CA
N/A	Not applicable to this Service Type
PMTU	Path maximum transfer unit
QP	Taken from Queue Pair state (the real QP in the case of RD service)
Raw	Raw Packet service
RC	Reliable Connected service
RD	Reliable Datagram service
RDETH	Reliable datagram extended transport header
RNR	Receiver not ready
RWH	Raw ethertype header
UC	Unreliable Connected service
UD	Unreliable Datagram service
WR	Taken from a Work Request

10.3 RESOURCE STATES**10.3.1 QUEUE PAIR AND EE CONTEXT STATES**

This section contains the QP and EE Context state diagram. The same state diagram is used for both QPs and EE Contexts. This section will use the term QP/EE for this and, where differences are important, will note them. This section will contain a definition of the QP/EE states. The QP/EE states defined here and the transition order between the states are shown in Figure 127. EE Contexts are created only for the Reliable Datagram Service Type, whereas QPs are used for all Transport Service Types.

Note that while QPs and EE Contexts share the same state diagram, the EE Context state has no relationship to the states of the sending and receiving RD QPs using that EE Context. The reader should not assume

that because a QP made a state transition that a EE Context associated with that RD QP will also transition, and vice versa.

Even though a subset of the states could occur in any order for some of the Transport Service Types, the states must transition in the order specified. This is to keep the state definitions consistent and error semantics simplified. The order chosen is that required to support the Reliable Connection Service Type, and to provide for completeness of the information needed to transfer data using an EE Context.

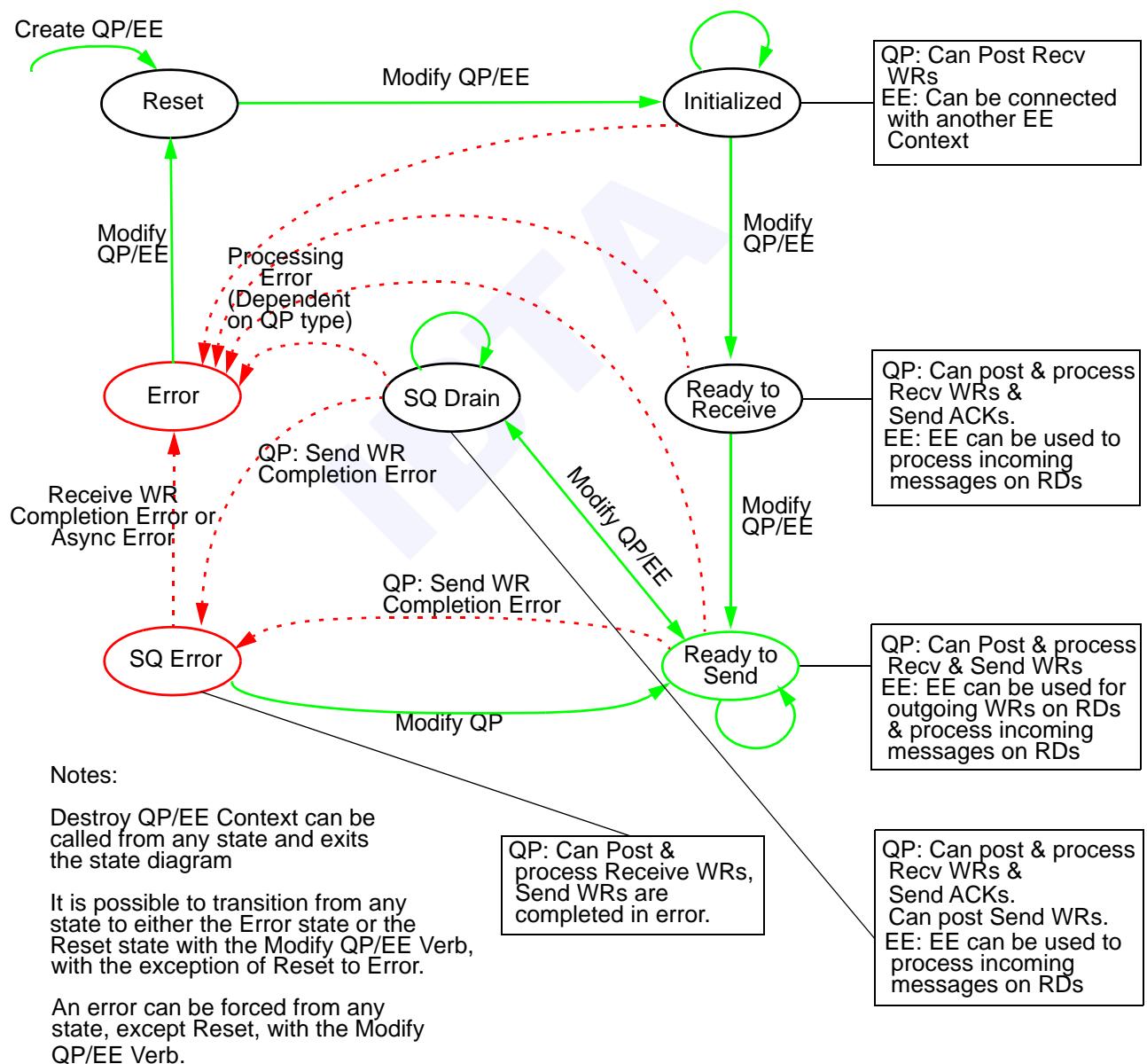


Figure 127 QP/EE Context State Diagram

Note, for QPs that are associated with an SRQ, the Consumer should take the QP through the Error State before invoking a Destroy QP or a Modify QP to the Reset State. The Consumer may invoke the Destroy QP without first performing a Modify QP to the Error State and waiting for the Affiliated Asynchronous Last WQE Reached Event. However, if the Consumer does not wait for the Affiliated Asynchronous Last WQE Reached Event, then WQE and Data Segment leakage may occur. Therefore, it is good programming practice to tear down a QP that is associated with an SRQ by using the following process:

- Put the QP in the Error State;
- wait for the Affiliated Asynchronous Last WQE Reached Event;
- either:
 - drain the CQ by invoking the Poll CQ verb and either wait for CQ to be empty or the number of Poll CQ operations has exceeded CQ capacity size; or
 - post another WR that completes on the same CQ and wait for this WR to return as a WC;
- and then invoke a Destroy QP or Reset QP.

o10-10.2.6: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management extensions and supports Type 2A Memory Windows, then the HCA **must** return an error if the Consumer attempts a Modify QP transition from any State to the Reset State while Type 2A MWs are still bound to the QP.

o10-10.2.7: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management extensions and supports Type 2B Memory Windows, then the HCA **must** allow the Consumer to transition the QP from the any State to the Reset State while Type 2B MWs are still bound to the QP.

It is important to understand that the QP/EE states are intended to be used as an integral part of the connection process. A thorough understanding of the connection process and the connection state diagram is assumed. This is discussed in detail in [12.9.7.1 Active States on page 751](#) and [12.9.7.2 Passive States on page 754](#).

C10-19: With one exception, the CI **shall** implement the Reset, Init, RTR, RTS, SQD, SQEr, and Error states for each QP. The CI **shall not** implement the SQEr state for RC QPs. Transitions between those states **must** be restricted to those shown in Figure 127.

o10-11: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** implement the Reset, Init, RTR, RTS, SQD, and Error states for each EE Context. Transitions between those states **must** be restricted to those shown in Figure 127.

10.3.1.1 RESET

The characteristics of the Reset state are:

C10-20: A newly created QP/EE **shall** be placed in the Reset state.

- It is possible to transition to the Reset state from any state by specifying the Reset state when modifying the QP/EE attributes.
- Any resources required to implement the QP/EE have been allocated. For example, some implementations require WQEs and/or control structures to be allocated.
- The Modify Queue Pair and Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs are the only way for the Verbs Consumer to cause a transition out of the Reset State, without destroying the EE/QP.

C10-21: Upon creation, or transition to the Reset state, all QP/EE attributes **must** be set to the initialization defaults, as documented in the Create Queue Pair and Create EE Context Verbs.

- Transition out of the Reset state can be effected by calling the Destroy Queue Pair or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

For EEs:

- It is an error for a Work Request to specify an EE Context in the Reset state.

o10-12: If the CI supports RD Service, and a Work Request is submitted to the Send Queue of an RD QP specifying an EE Context in the Reset state, the Work Request **shall** be completed in error.

- No work requests can be outstanding which use an EE Context in this state.

o10-13: If the CI supports RD Service, any incoming messages which target an EE in the Reset state **must** be silently dropped.

For QPs:

C10-22: If a Work Request is submitted to a Work Queue while its corresponding QP is in the Reset State, an immediate error **shall** be returned.

- The Work Queues are empty. No Work Requests are outstanding on the work queues.
- All Work Queue processing is disabled

C10-23: Incoming messages which target a QP in the Reset state **must** be silently dropped.

10.3.1.2 INITIALIZED (INIT)

The characteristics for the Initialized state are:

- The basic QP/EE attributes have been configured as defined in Modify Queue Pair and Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs.
- Transition into this state is only possible from the Reset state.
- The Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs are the only way for the Verbs Consumer to cause a transition out of the Init state, without destroying the EE/QP.
- Transition out of the Init state can be effected by calling the Destroy Queue Pair or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

For EEs:

o10-14: If the CI supports RD Service, any incoming messages which target an EE in the Init state **must** be silently dropped.

- It is an error for a Work Request to specify an EE Context in the Init state.

o10-15: If the CI supports RD Service, and a Work Request is submitted by the Consumer to the Send Queue of an RD QP specifying an EE Context in the Init state, the Work Request **shall** be completed in error.

For QPs:

- Work Requests may be submitted to the Receive Queue but incoming messages are not processed.

C10-24: The CI **shall** allow Work Requests to be submitted to a Receive Queue while its corresponding QP is in the Init State.

- It is an error to submit Work Requests to the Send Queue.

C10-25: If a Work Request is submitted to a Send Queue while its corresponding QP is in the Init State, an immediate error **shall** be returned.

- Work Queue processing on both queues is disabled.

C10-26: Incoming messages which target a QP in the Init state **must** be silently dropped.

10.3.1.3 READY TO RECEIVE (RTR)

The characteristics for the Ready to Receive state are:

C10-27: The CI **shall** support posting Work Requests to Receive Queue of a QP in the RTR state.

C10-28: Incoming messages targeted at a QP in the RTR state **shall** be processed normally.

o10-16: If the CI supports RD Service, and an incoming message is addressed to an EE Context in the RTR state, the message **shall** be processed normally.

- Transition into this state is possible only from the Init state, using the Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs.
- Transition out of the RTR state can be effected by calling the Destroy QP or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

For EEs:

- It is an error for a Work Request to specify an EE Context in the RTR state.

o10-17: If the CI supports RD Service, and a Work Request is submitted by the Consumer to the Send Queue of an RD QP specifying an EE Context in the RTR state, the Work Request **shall** be completed in error.

For QPs:

- Work Queue processing on the Send Queue is disabled. It is an error to post Work Requests to the Send Queue.

C10-29: If a Work Request is submitted to a Send Queue while its corresponding QP is in the RTR State, an immediate error **shall** be returned.

10.3.1.4 READY TO SEND (RTS)

Before transitioning to this state, the QP/EE communication establishment protocol must be completed.

The characteristics for the Ready to Send state are:

- The channel between the requester's QP/EE and responder's QP/EE has been established for connected Service Types and RD channels.
- Transition into this state is possible only from the RTR and SQD states.
- The Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs are the only way for the Verbs Consumer to cause a transition out of the RTS state, without destroying the EE/QP.
- Transition out of the RTS state can be effected by calling the Destroy Queue Pair or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

C10-30: The CI **shall** support posting Work Requests to a QP in the RTS state.

C10-31: Work Requests on a QP in the RTS state **shall** be processed normally.

C10-32: Incoming messages targeted at a QP in the RTS state **shall** be processed normally.

o10-18: If the CI supports RD Service, and an incoming or outgoing message utilizes an EE Context in the RTS state, the message **shall** be processed normally.

10.3.1.5 SEND QUEUE DRAIN (SQD)

The characteristics for the Send Queue Drain state are:

C10-33: The CI **shall** support posting Work Requests to a QP in the SQD state.

C10-34: Incoming messages targeted at a QP in the SQD state **shall** be processed normally.

o10-19: If the CI supports RD Service, and an incoming message utilizes an EE Context in the SQD state, the message **shall** be processed normally.

- Transition into this state is possible only from the RTS state, using the Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs.

C10-35: When transitioning into the SQD state, the QP/EE's send logic **must** cease processing any additional messages. It **must** also complete any outstanding messages on a message boundary, and process any incoming acknowledgements. The CI **must not** begin processing additional messages which had not begun execution when the state transition occurred.

C10-36: When all expected acknowledgements have been received, and processing of send queue work requests has ceased, and if event notification has been requested, an Affiliated Asynchronous Event **shall** be generated.

- The consumer can use the asynchronous event to determine when a state transition is possible.
- It is possible to enter the RTS state or error states from the SQD state via Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs.

- Attributes may be modified during the transition from SQD to RTS, but both sides must have received the affiliated asynchronous event in order to safely change attributes.

o10-19.a1: If the CI supports the ability to change the physical port associated with an RC QP when transitioning from SQD to RTS, the CI **shall** associate the physical port, if a different physical port is specified, with the QP before the transition from SQD to RTS has completed. The physical port is an optional attribute in the Modify QP verb during the transition from SQD to RTS.

o10-19.a2: If the CI supports RD service and supports the ability to change the physical port associated with the EE Context when transitioning from SQD to RTS, the CI **shall** associate the physical port, if a different physical port is specified, with the EE Context before the transition from SQD to RTS has completed. The physical port is an optional attribute in the Modify EE Context verb during the transition from SQD to RTS.

- It is also possible to transition out of the SQD state by calling the Destroy Queue Pair or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

For EEs:

- Work Queue processing on the Send side of the EE Context is disabled.

o10-20: If the CI supports RD Service, Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue of an RD QP, which specify an EE Context in the SQD state, **must not** be processed but **shall** remain enqueued.

- QPs associated with an EE do not transition to the SQD state automatically, nor is it inherently necessary they do so.

For QPs:

- Work Queue processing on the Send Queue is disabled.

C10-37: Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue of a QP in the SQD state **must not** be processed but **shall** remain enqueued.

SQD to SQD state transition can be performed when the SQ draining is completed, i.e. the CI has completed processing any outstanding message on a message boundary and processed any incoming acknowledgements, or while the SQ draining is in progress.

However, changing some of the optional attributes on a SQD to SQD transition if the SQ has not been fully drained is not allowed. The CI shall report an immediate error if the verbs consumer performs a SQD to SQD state transition and attempts to change such an optional attribute while the SQ has not been drained yet. Refer to [11.2.5.2](#) and [11.2.9.2](#) for the list

of attributes that can not be changed while the SQ is still draining. To determine if the SQ has been drained, Software can use the Affiliated Asynchronous Event or to use the Query QP or Query EE verb.

It is not allowed to perform SQD to RTS state transition if the SQ has not been drained yet. The CI shall report an immediate error if the consumer attempts to move the QP/EE from SQD to RTS if the SQ has not been drained.

10.3.1.6 SEND QUEUE ERROR (SQER)

The characteristics for the Send Queue Error state are:

- Transition into this state can only happen as the result of a Completion Error, which occurred during the processing of a Work Request on the Send Queue while in the RTS state.
- The transition into the Send Queue Error state applies to all QPs except for RC QPs.

C10-38: Receive Work Requests which were submitted to a Receive Queue prior to that queue's transition into the SQEr state **shall** continue to be processed normally. New Receives **must** be able to be posted to such a Receive Queue. Incoming messages which target a QP in the SQEr state **must** be processed normally.

C10-39: A Work Request which caused the Completion Error leading to the transition into the SQEr state **must** return the correct Completion Error Code for the error through the Completion Queue.

- This WR may have been partially or fully executed, and thus may have affected the state of the receiver, as follows:

Send operations may have been partially or fully completed; because of this, a completion queue entry may or may not have been generated on the receiver.

RDMA Read operations may have been partially completed; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the data segments of their Work Requests are indeterminate.

RDMA Write operations may have been partially completed; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the remote address of their Work Requests are indeterminate. If the operation specified Immediate Data, a completion queue entry may or may not have been generated on the receiver.

Atomic operations may, or may not have been attempted; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the remote address of the Work Request may have a value consistent with either event. At the local node, the contents of the memory lo-

cations pointed to by the data segments of their Work Requests are indeterminate.

C10-40: Work Requests on the Send Queue, subsequent to that which caused the Completion Error leading to the transition into the SQEr state, **must** return the Flush Error completion status through the Completion Queue.

- Depending on the Service Type of the QP, some of the subsequent WRs may have been in progress when the error occurred. This may have affected state on the remote node. The possible effects depend on the WR type as noted above.
- The Modify Queue Pair Verb can be used to transition from the SQEr state to the RTS state.
- The Modify Queue Pair Verb can be used to transition from the SQEr state to the Reset or the Error state.
- A Receive Queue Error or an Asynchronous Error will result in a transition to the Error State.
- Transition out of the SQEr state can be effected by calling the Destroy Queue Pair Verb, thus exiting the state diagram.

10.3.1.7 ERROR

The characteristics for the Error state are:

- Normal processing on the QP/EE is stopped.

C10-41: A Work Request which caused the Completion Error leading to the transition into the Error state **must** return the correct Completion Error Code for the error through the Completion Queue.

- This WR may have been partially or fully executed, and thus may have affected the state of the receiver, as follows:

Send operations may have been partially or fully completed; because of this, a completion queue entry may or may not have been generated on the receiver.

RDMA Read operations may have been partially completed; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the data segments of their Work Requests are indeterminate.

RDMA Write operations may have been partially completed; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the remote address of their Work Requests are indeterminate. If the operation specified Immediate Data, a completion queue entry may or may not have been generated on the receiver.

Atomic operations may, or may not have been attempted; because of this, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the remote address of the Work Request may have a value consistent

with either event. At the local node, the contents of the memory locations pointed to by the data segments of their Work Requests are indeterminate.

C10-41.2.1: Incoming messages which target a QP in the Error state **must** be silently dropped.

C10-42: Work Requests subsequent to that which caused the Completion Error leading to the transition into the Error state, including those submitted after the transition, **must** return the Flush Error completion status through the Completion Queue.

- Depending on the Service Type of the QP, some of the subsequent WRs may have been in progress when the error occurred. This may have affected state on the remote node. The possible effects depend on the WR type as noted above.
- The Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs, specifying a transition to the Reset state, are the only means to effect a transition from the Error state to the Reset state.
- Transition out of the Error state can also be effected by calling the Destroy Queue Pair or Destroy EE Context Verbs, thus exiting the state diagram.

For EEs:

- If a Work Request is in process when the error occurred, the Work Request is completed with a completion error.

o10-21: If the CI supports RD Service, and an RD Work Request uses an EE context which is in the error state, that WR **must** be completed in error. This **shall** place the Sending QP into the SQEr state.

- Errors that occur on an EE may not have a corresponding effect on the QP state.

For QPs:

- For Affiliated Asynchronous Errors, it may not be possible to continue to process Work Requests. In this case, outstanding Work Requests will not be completed.
- When handling the error notification, it is the responsibility of the Consumer to ensure that all error processing has completed prior to forcing the QP to reset.

10.4 AUTOMATIC PATH MIGRATION

Automatic Path Migration is an optional facility that enables connection recovery in the case of failures. Automatic path migration is available for Reliable Connected, Unreliable Connected and XRC QP Service Types and Reliable Datagram EE Contexts.

This section explains Automatic Path Migration from the software transport perspective. A hardware-centric description is contained in the Channel Adapter section, [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#).

The Modify Queue Pair and Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs provide the basic capability to load an alternate path and to transition the path migration states defined in [10.4.1 Path Migration State Diagram](#).

Automatic path migration is enabled or re-enabled by loading an alternate path on the pair of connected QP or EE Contexts and setting the path migration state to Rarm. The Communication Manager defines protocols and mechanisms, which may be used to enable or re-enable Automatic Path Migration on both the local and the remote, connected QP or EE Context. The Communication Manager support for Automatic Path Migration is described in [12.6 Communication Management Messages on page 712](#) and in [12.8 Alternate Path Management on page 739](#).

Once Automatic Path Migration has been enabled on both ends of a connected QP/EE, it is possible for the migration to be initiated by transitioning the QP/EE path migration state from Armed to Migrated either from above or below the Verbs interface. The policy used by the Verbs Consumer or the CI to determine when a path migration should be attempted is outside the scope of the architecture.

10.4.1 PATH MIGRATION STATE DIAGRAM

o10-22: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, the CI **shall** implement the Migrated, Rarm, and Armed path migration states for each Reliable Connected and Unreliable Connected queue pair. Transitions between those path migration states **must** be restricted to those shown in Figure 128.

o10-23: If Automatic Path Migration and Reliable Datagram service are supported, the CI **shall** implement the Migrated, Rarm, and Armed path migration states for each EE Context. Transitions between those path migration states **must** be restricted to those shown in Figure 128.

The path migration states apply to a QP or EE Context, but are only tangentially related to the QP/EE Context states described in [10.3.1 Queue Pair and EE Context States](#).

o10-24: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, and the Verbs Consumer attempts to change the path migration state from Migrated to Rarm during a transition to a QP/EE state other than RTS, an immediate error **shall** be returned.

o10-25: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, and the Verbs Consumer attempts to change the path migration state from Armed to Mi-

grated during a transition from a QP/EE state other than RTS or SQD, an immediate error **shall** be returned.

The relationship of the path migration states to the communication establishment process is defined in [12.9.7 State and Transition Definitions on page 751](#).

It is permissible to replace the existing alternate path with a new alternate path while the path migration state is Armed (Automatic Path Migration is enabled). The mechanism to load a new alternate path is the same as the one used to reload an alternate path after a path migration has occurred as described in [12.8: Alternate Path Management](#).

The path migration states are shown in Figure 128.

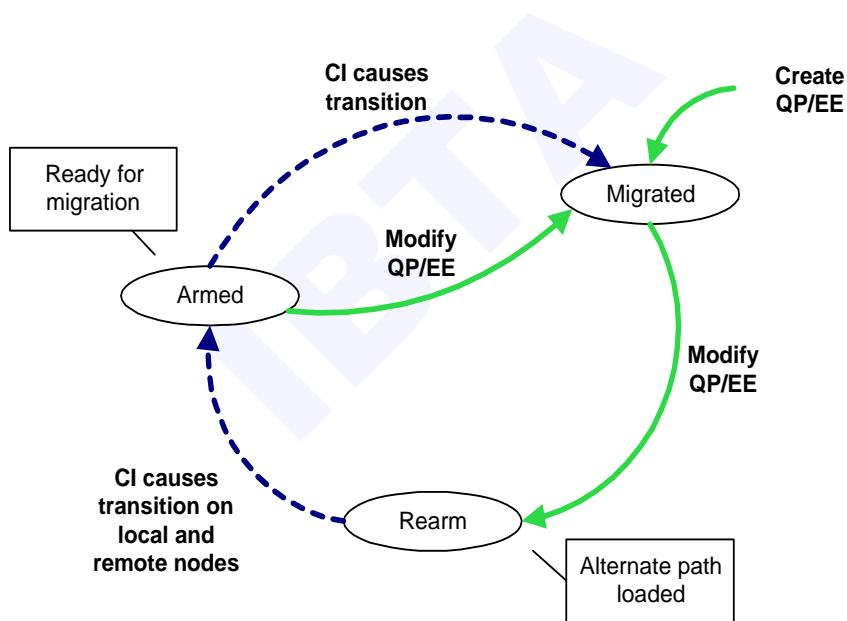


Figure 128 Path Migration State Diagram

10.4.1.1 MIGRATED

o10-26: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, the initial path migration state for a QP/EE **shall** be Migrated.

The Automatic Path Migration capability is suppressed while the state is set to Migrated.

The Verbs Consumer should leave the path migration state for the QP/EE to Migrated under the following circumstances:

- The local CI does not support Automatic Path Migration. If the Verbs Consumer attempts to change the path migration state using the Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs, an immediate error will be returned.
- The Verbs Consumer does not wish to enable Automatic Path Migration on the QP/EE pair.
- The remote CI does not support or desire Automatic Path Migration. If the Verbs Consumer changes the path migration state to Armed using the Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs, the path migration state for the QP/EE is changed accordingly and no errors are generated. The local CI shall not transition the QP/EE from Rarm to Armed. Handling this condition is outside of the scope of the architecture.

The Verbs Consumer or the CI may set the path migration state to Migrated when the current path migration state is Armed and the QP/EE state is SQD or RTS. The decision of when to migrate is a matter of policy, which is outside the scope of the architecture.

o10-27: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, a transition from Armed to Migrated **shall** result in a migration to the alternate path on the local QP/EE. The CI **shall** raise the Path Migrated affiliated asynchronous event and **shall** send the next data packet using this QP/EE on the new path with a migration request.

The remote, connected QP/EE validates this request as defined in section [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#).

o10-28: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, upon successfully validating an incoming packet's migration request, the CI **shall** set the path migration state for that QP/EE to Migrated, **shall** migrate to the alternate path, and **shall** also raise the Path Migrated affiliated asynchronous event for that QP/EE.

o10-29: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, upon failing to validate an incoming packet's migration request, the CI **shall not** modify the path migration state for that QP/EE, **shall not** migrate to the alternate path, but **shall** raise the Path Migration Request Failed affiliated asynchronous error for that QP/EE.

The Verbs Consumer should set the path migration state to Migrated only when the current path migration state is Armed and the QP/EE state is SQD or RTS. The Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs shall generate an immediate error when the Verbs Consumer at-

tempts to set the path migration state to Migrated under any other condition.

o10-30: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, the CI **shall** change the local path migration state to Migrated only when the current state is Armed and the QP/EE state is SQD or RTS.

10.4.1.2 REARM

Only the Verbs Consumer is allowed to initiate the transition from Migrated to Rarm using the Modify Queue Pair or Modify EE Context Attributes Verbs.

o10-31: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, the CI **shall not** change the local path migration state from Migrated to Rarm except at the request of the Verbs Consumer.

The Verbs Consumer should load or reload the alternate path and ensure the remote node has accepted the alternate path prior to transitioning the state from Migrated to Rarm. A transition to the Rarm state indicates to the CI that the Verbs Consumer believes this QP/EE is ready to be transitioned to the Armed state. An invalid or stale alternate path will not generate any errors when the Verbs Consumer transitions the state to Rarm. Handling this condition is outside the scope of the architecture.

o10-32: If Automatic Path Migration is supported, a transition to the Rarm state **shall** cause the CI to attempt to coordinate with the remote, connected QP/EE to move both the local and the remote connected QP/EE into the Armed state in a lock-step manner.

The details regarding how the CIs perform this transition are contained in [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#).

The QP/EEs at both ends of the connection must be in the Rarm state before the CI can transition them to the Armed state.

10.4.1.3 ARMED

The Armed state indicates that the CIs associated with the connected QP/EEs on both the local and the remote node are ready to perform a path migration.

10.5 MULTICAST SERVICES

Multicast is the ability to send a message to a single multicast address and have it delivered to multiple queue pairs which may be on multiple endports. A multicast address is defined by a MGID and a MLID. Multiple MGIDs can be associated with a single MLID. However, a given MGID cannot be associated with more than one MLID on the same subnet.

There are two types of multicast specified by IBA: IBA unreliable multicast, and raw packet multicast.

IBA Unreliable Multicast is an optional feature for HCAs. An HCA can be queried to determine the number of multicast groups supported by that HCA. The number of multicast groups is set to zero if the HCA does not support IBA unreliable multicast.

o10-33: If the CI supports IBA Unreliable Multicast, it **must** support at least one multicast group.

Raw packet multicast is an optional feature for HCAs. An HCA can be queried to determine whether it supports raw packet multicast.

10.5.1 MULTICAST GROUPS AND MULTICAST MESSAGE RECEPTION

A multicast group is a collection of endnodes which receive multicast messages sent to a single multicast address. Multicast groups are a fabric management responsibility and are targeted through the use of a multicast address.

10.5.1.1 IBA UNRELIABLE MULTICAST RECEPTION

o10-34: If the CI supports IBA Unreliable Multicast, a UD QP **must** be attached to a multicast group in order to receive IBA Multicast messages.

A QP is attached to or detached from a multicast group through the Verbs. The only function of the Attach QP to Multicast Verb is to assign a receive QP to the multicast group. If the HCA does not have the ability to allow the QP to attach to the multicast group, it shall return an immediate error indicating that there are insufficient resources.

One or more QPs, up to the maximum supported by the HCA, can be attached to each multicast group. In order to receive packets sent to the Multicast group, every QP attached to a particular multicast group should be a member of the same partition as the partition of the incoming packet.

Only Unreliable Datagram QPs can be used for IBA unreliable multicast. Therefore, all Unreliable Datagram semantics also apply to IBA unreliable multicast.

When a valid multicast packet is received successfully, the CI delivers the multicast packet to each UD QP that is associated with the multicast address as defined by the MGID and MLID of the incoming packet.

Note, the incoming multicast packet is received on all the UD QPs associated with the multicast address whether some of those UD QPs share an SRQ or not. That is, if a multicast packet arrives then all UD QPs as-

sociated with the packet's multicast address must receive the incoming packet, even if the UD QPs share the same SRQ.

For multiple UD QPs that attach to the same SRQ and have the same multicast address, when a multicast packet arrives that references the multicast UD QPs' multicast address, for each UD QP that is associated with the multicast address on the port the multicast packet was received, the CI must:

- retrieve a WQE from the SRQ; note, if a WQE is not available, then the incoming message will be dropped;
- receive (or copy) the incoming multicast packet into the UD QP's Receive Queue, and
- generate a Work Completion on the CQ associated with the UD QP.

10.5.1.2 RAW PACKET MULTICAST RECEPTION

Raw packet QPs are not attached to multicast groups in order to receive raw packet multicast messages. If an HCA supports only one raw IPv6 QP per port, all raw IPv6 multicast messages received on a port are delivered to that port's raw IPv6 QP; if multiple raw IPv6 QPs are supported, raw IPv6 multicast messages are delivered to a subset of those QPs based on an implementation-defined policy which is outside the scope of IBA. Similarly, if an HCA supports only one raw ethertype QP per port, all raw ethertype multicast messages received on a port are delivered to that port's raw ethertype QP; otherwise, the distribution of those messages is again implementation-defined.

Only raw packet QPs can be used for raw packet multicast. Therefore, all raw semantics also apply to raw packet multicast.

10.5.2 MULTICAST WORK REQUESTS

10.5.2.1 IBA UNRELIABLE MULTICAST WORK REQUESTS

IBA unreliable multicast Work Requests must be submitted through the Post Send Request Verb to a single destination multicast address. This destination multicast address is specified with an Address Handle as part of the Work Request. Any Unreliable Datagram QP can be used to initiate an IBA unreliable multicast Work Request. A QP is not required to be attached to a Multicast Group in order to initiate an IBA Unreliable Multicast Work Request.

Send is the only operation allowed on an Unreliable Datagram Send Work Queue. Atomic and RDMA operations are not allowed. Unreliable Datagram messages should be no larger than the PMTU between the requester and the responder. UD restrictions apply to IBA unreliable multicast.

10.5.2.2 RAW PACKET MULTICAST WORK REQUESTS

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Raw packet Multicast Work Requests must be submitted through the Post Send Request Verb to a single destination multicast address. This destination multicast address is specified as a modifier to the Post Send Request Verb. Any raw packet QP can be used to initiate a raw packet multicast Work Request.

11
12
13
Send is the only operation allowed on a raw packet Send Work Queue. Atomic and RDMA operations are not allowed. Raw packet messages should be no larger than the PMTU between the requester and the responder. Raw restrictions apply to Raw packet multicast.

10.5.3 MULTICAST DESTINATION ESTABLISHMENT

14
15
16
A multicast group is defined by a MGID.

17
18
19
20
21
o10-35: If the CI supports IBA Unreliable Multicast, then the CI **shall** drop all IBA Unreliable Multicast packets if the destination QP number is not 0xFFFFFFF.

22
23
24
Although the destination QP number of 0xFFFFFFF is used to target an unreliable multicast group in address handles and in multicast packets, any QP (with any valid QP number) can be used to receive the multicast so long as it is properly attached to the correct multicast group.

25
26
27
C10-43: The method for preparing a multicast address as a destination **shall be** the same as any other address specified in a Work Request on an Unreliable Datagram or Raw Packet Service Type.

28
29
Creating & Destroying multicast groups are fabric management issues. Permitting nodes to join and leave a multicast group is a fabric management issue. The MTU of a multicast group is the MTU specified when the multicast group is created and is a parameter in the multicast MAD.

30
31
32
o10-36: If the CI supports IBA Unreliable Multicast, then Multicast loopback, which is sending an IBA unreliable multicast message to a multicast group to which QPs within the sending node are attached, **must** be supported by the CI.

33
34
35
36
As with multicast reception, loopback for raw packet multicast depends on the number of raw packet queue pairs per port which an HCA supports. If an HCA supports only one raw queue pair of each type per port, then no loopback is performed; multicast messages sent on such a QP are not received on that same QP. If an HCA supports multiple raw QPs of each type per port, then multicast messages sent on one may or may not be received on another; the details of this are an implementation-defined policy which is outside the scope of IBA.

10.6 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

10.6.1 OVERVIEW

The InfiniBand™ Architecture provides sophisticated high performance operations like remote DMA and user mode IO. To achieve this goal, The InfiniBand™ Architecture has to specify appropriate memory management mechanisms. The overriding goals are performance, robustness and simplicity.

10.6.2 MEMORY REGISTRATION

An HCA, like a typical I/O bus host bridge, accesses Host System memory using what this specification refers to as physical memory addresses¹⁵. Physical address space for Host System memory is typically organized into pages of fixed or varying sizes, and a given logical data buffer that spans page boundaries usually has a non-contiguous physical address range.

Memory Registration provides mechanisms that allow Consumers to describe a set of virtually contiguous memory locations or a set of physically contiguous memory locations to the Channel Interface in order to allow the HCA to access them as a virtually contiguous buffer using Virtual Addresses.

All Consumers must explicitly register the memory locations containing data buffers before the HCA can access them.

C10-44: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-44.2.1: If the CI doesn't support the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification and the CI processes a WR or incoming RDMA or Atomic request that attempts to access memory locations that have not been registered, the CI **must not** perform the access, and the CI **must** return an appropriate error.

o10-36.2.1: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification and the CI:

- processes a WR that attempts to access memory locations that use the Reserved L_Key, but the QP is prohibited from using the Reserved L_Key, then the CI **must** not perform the access, and the CI **must** return an appropriate error;

15. On some Host Systems, such “physical addresses” are actually mapped by the Host System memory controller to provide features such as memory interleaving or memory sparing, but this specification still refers to them as physical addresses.

- processes a Post Send Queue WR that attempts to register memory locations through a Fast Register Physical MR, but the QP is prohibited from using Fast Register Physical MRs, then CI **must not** perform the access, and the CI **must** return an appropriate error;
- processes an incoming Send, RDMA, or Atomic request that attempts to access memory locations that do not have a valid registration (i.e is in the Invalid or Free State), then the CI **must not** perform the access, and the CI **must** return an appropriate error.

Registration may fail due to unavailability of the necessary Channel Interface resources. No memory is registered in this case.

C10-45: Registration **must** either fully succeed or fail in an atomic fashion.

10.6.2.1 MEMORY REGIONS

A set of memory locations that have been registered are referred to as a Memory Region.

The products of a memory registration operation are:

- MemoryRegionHandle

The Memory Registration Verbs produce a MemoryRegionHandle that is used to identify a specific Memory Region to the Memory Management Verbs.

- L_Key

The Memory Registration Verbs produce an L_Key. The L_Key, along with a Virtual Address that is within the bounds of the region is used in a Work Requests's data segment to identify a memory location within a specific Memory Region to the CI.

- R_Key

The Memory Registration Verbs produce, when requested, an R_Key. The R_Key, along with a Virtual Address that is within the bounds of the region is used in RDMA and Atomic operations to identify a memory location within a specific Memory Region to the CI.

- Virtual Address (VA) and Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA)

The Memory Registration Verbs are supplied (or in some cases produce) either a Virtual Address or a Zero Based Virtual Address. Both correspond to the first memory location in the set of memory locations supplied to the Memory Registration Verbs. However, for a Virtual Address, the first memory location of a Memory Region must have the Virtual Address modulo the buffer size of the first physical buffer equal the first byte offset. For a Zero Based Virtual

Address, the first memory location of a MR has a Virtual Address of zero.

When registering a Memory Region, the Consumer specifies the maximum number of memory locations that are to be reserved for future use in Memory Registrations or in Fast Register Physical MRs. For a more detailed description of the attributes associated with the Memory Registration, refer to the various Memory Registration Verbs in Chapter [11.2.10 Memory Management on page 644](#).

C10-45.2.1: The CI **must** allow memory registrations and Memory Windows to use Virtual Addresses.

o10-36.2.2: If the CI supports Zero Based Virtual Addresses (Zero Based VAs), the CI **must**:

- allow VA based Memory Windows to be bound to VA based Memory Regions,
- allow Zero Based VA Memory Windows to be bound to VA based Memory Regions, and
- return an error if the Consumer attempts to bind a Memory Window to a Zero Based VA Memory Region.

10.6.2.2 ALLOCATION OF MEMORY REGISTRATION RESOURCES

Allocation of an L_Key allows a Privileged Consumer to reserve, with the CI, memory registration resources for use in future Memory Region Registrations. L_Key allocation is performed through the Allocate L_Key verb.

The products of the Allocate L_Key are:

- MemoryRegionHandle

A MemoryRegionHandle that is used to identify a specific L_Key to the Memory Management Verbs.

- L_Key

The Allocate L_Key Verb produces an L_Key. The L_Key is not associated with a Memory Region until it is registered through: Register Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, or Fast Register Physical MR.

- R_Key

The Allocate L_Key Verb produces, when requested, an R_Key. The R_Key is not associated with a Memory Region until it is registered through: Reregister Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, or Fast Register Physical MR.

When Allocating Memory Registration resources, the Consumer specifies the maximum number of Physical Buffer List entries (see section [10.6.4.4.1 Physical Buffer lists on page 516](#)) that are to be reserved for

future use in Memory Registrations. For a more detailed description of the attributes associated with the Allocate L_Key Verb see section [11.2.10.1 Allocate L_Key on page 644](#).

10.6.2.3 MEMORY REGION TYPES

There are two types of Memory Regions: Non-Shared Memory Regions and Shared Memory Regions.

- Non-Shared Memory Region
 - A Non-Shared Memory Region has a valid Memory Registration that is associated with a set of physical memory locations which are not shared. A Non-Shared Memory Region is created through the following verbs: Register Memory Region, Register Physical Memory Region, and Fast Register Physical MR. A Non-Shared Memory Region is also created through the Reregister Memory Region or Reregister Physical Memory Region if the translations are changed.
 - Shared Memory Region
 - A Shared Memory Region has a valid Memory Registration that is associated with a set of physical memory locations which are shared. Upon successful return from the Register Shared Memory Region verb: the output Memory Region is a Shared Memory Region and the input Memory Region becomes a Shared Memory Region. A Shared Memory Region is converted into a Non-Shared Memory Region through the Reregister Memory Region and Reregister Physical Memory Region if the translations are changed. Changing a Shared MR to a Non-Shared MR does not affect the state of the other MRs that are sharing the PBL.

A Memory Region is used to refer to both a Non-Shared Memory Region and a Shared Memory Region.

Every Memory Region L_Key or R_Key has three possible states:

- Invalid State - No resources have been allocated for the L_Key or R_Key. An L_Key or R_Key in the Invalid State cannot be used to access host memory. An L_Key or R_Key that is in the Invalid State cannot be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate.
- Free State - A Physical Buffer List and PD have been associated with the L_Key or R_Key, but the L_Key or R_Key is not associated with a Memory Region. An L_Key or R_Key in the Free State cannot be used to access host memory. An L_Key or R_Key that is in the Free State can be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate.

- Valid State - The L_Key or R_Key is associated with a Memory Region. An L_Key or R_Key in the Valid State can be used to access host memory. An L_Key or R_Key that is in the Valid State can be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate.

The following table summarizes the states of Memory Regions L_Keys and R_Keys and the operations allowed on each state:

Table 69 Memory Region States Summary

Property / Operation Allowed	Invalid	Free	Valid
Resources Allocated	No	Yes	Yes
Zero length access	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed
Host Memory Access	Prohibited	Prohibited	Allowed
Remote Invalidate	Prohibited	Allowed	Allowed
Fast Register	Prohibited	Allowed	Prohibited
Local Invalidate	Prohibited	Allowed	Allowed

The following table summarizes Memory Regions L_Keys and R_Keys state transitions through the verbs and remote operations (non verbs operations are marked in *italic*):

Table 70 Memory Region State Transitions^a

State	Entered Through	Exited Through
Invalid	<i>Initial State</i> Deregister MR	Allocate L_Key Register MR Register PMR Register Shared MR
Free	Allocate L_Key Local Invalidate <i>Incoming Send with Invalidate</i>	Deregister MR Reregister MR Reregister PMR Fast Register
Valid	Register MR Reregister MR Register PMR Reregister PMR Fast Register Register Shared MR	Deregister MR Local Invalidate <i>Incoming Send with Invalidate</i>

a. Note: The MR returned as an output from the Reregister MR or Reregister PMR may either be the existing MR or a new MR. If the existing MR is returned, then it is placed in the Valid state. If a new MR is returned, then the existing MR is placed in the Invalid state and the new MR is in the Valid state. The table above refers to the existing MR state transitions when the MR is reused on a Reregister MR or Reregister PMR.

Note, when a Memory Region is successfully invalidated through either a Local Invalidate WR or an incoming Send with Invalidate Operation (Remove Invalidate), both the L_Key and R_Key, if any, associated with the Memory Region are placed in the Free State. See section 10.6.5 for a description of Invalidated L_Key.

o10-36.2.3: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** allow a Non-Shared Memory Region to be used as an input modifier for the following verbs: Reregister Memory Region, Query Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, Register Shared Memory Region, Bind Memory Window, Post Send Queue Bind Work Request, Fast Register Physical MR, and Deregister MR.

o10-36.2.4: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** allow a Shared Memory Region to be used as an input modifier for the following verbs: Reregister Memory Region, Query Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, Register Shared Memory Region, Bind Memory Window, Post Send Queue Bind WR, and Deregister MR.

o10-36.2.5: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** return an error if a Shared Memory Region is used as an input modifier for the Fast Register Physical MR or Local Invalidate.

10.6.3 ACCESS TO REGISTERED MEMORY

C10-46: The CI **shall** support the following access rights: Local Read, Local Write, Remote Read, and Remote Write.

o10-37: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** support the Remote Atomic access right.

10.6.3.1 LOCAL ACCESS TO REGISTERED MEMORY

A Memory Region is always accessible by the local HCA (i.e. a local HCA is an HCA in the same Host system as the Consumer) it was registered with, the type of access allowed depends on the Access Rights assigned to that Memory Region.

C10-47: The CI **shall** automatically include Local Read in every Memory Region's Access Rights.

The Consumer may request that Local Write be assigned to a Memory Region's Access Rights. If desired, policies related to preventing the as-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
signment of Local Write to a Memory Region can be implemented by the Consumer.

10.6.3.2 REMOTE ACCESS TO REGISTERED MEMORY

The Consumer may, in addition to the Local access rights, assign Remote access rights to a Memory Region. Remote access rights are Remote Read, Remote Write and Remote Atomic. Remote access rights are individually selectable and when selected, allow one or more specific operation types to access the Memory Region. The Consumer is not allowed to assign Remote Write or Remote Atomic to a Memory Region that has not been assigned Local Write.

C10-48: If a Memory Registration specifies Remote Write or Remote Atomic without specifying Local Write, the CI **must** return an Immediate Error.

10.6.3.3 LOCAL ACCESS KEYS

When resources are allocated to hold a set of memory locations an object called an L_Key is created by the CI and returned to the Consumer. The L_Key is associated with the reserved resources that will be used to hold a set of memory locations. It is considered to be a free L_Key, because it is not associated with any Memory Region. The L_Key returned from the Allocate L_Key, can be used as an input modifier for a Fast Register PMR to associate the L_Key with a Memory Region.

An L_Key is also created through the following Memory Registration verbs: Register Memory Region, Reregister Memory Region, Register Physical Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, and Register Shared Memory Region.

When a set of memory locations are registered, the L_Key used in the registration is associated with the set of registered memory locations. An L_Key that is associated with a specific set of memory locations is considered to be in the valid state. The Fast Register Physical MR does not create an L_Key, it simply associates an existing free L_Key to a set of memory locations.

The L_Key returned from a Memory Registration can be used as an input modifier for a Reregister Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, Post Send Local Invalidate WR, Bind Memory Window, Post Send Queue Bind Work Request, Shared Memory Region, and Fast Register Physical MR.

o10-37.2.1: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, the L_Key format **must** consist of:

- 24 bit index in the most significant bits of the L_Key, and

- 8 bit key in the least significant bits of the L_Key.
- o10-37.2.2:** If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, then when an L_Key is created:
- through a successful Allocate L_Key verb invocation, the CI **must** let the Consumer own the key portion of the returned L_Key;
 - through a successful Register Memory Region, Reregister Memory Region, or Register Shared Memory Region verb invocation, the CI **must not** let the Consumer own the key portion of the returned L_Key;
 - through a successful Register Physical Memory Region or Reregister Physical Memory Region verb invocation, the CI **must** let the Consumer choose between having the key portion of the L_Key owned by the Consumer or owned by the CI.

Note, the index portion of the L_Key is always owned by the CI.

Memory Regions are described to the CI for local access by either:

- a combination of a Virtual Address within that Memory Region and the L_Key that was returned to the Consumer when the region was registered; or
- If the CI supports the ZBVA Extension defined in this specification, a combination of an offset within that Memory Region and the L_Key that was returned to the Consumer when the region was registered.

10.6.3.4 REMOTE ACCESS KEYS

When resources are allocated to hold a set of memory locations and the Consumer selected Remote Access Enablement, an object called an R_Key is created by the CI and returned to the Consumer. The R_Key is associated with the reserved resources that will be used to hold a set of memory locations. It is considered to be a free R_Key, because it is not associated with any Memory Region. The R_Key returned from the Allocate L_Key, can be used as an input modifier for a Fast Register PMR to associate the R_Key with a Memory Region.

A Memory Region R_Key is also created through the following Memory Registration verbs: Register Memory Region, Reregister Memory Region, Register Physical Memory Region, Reregister Physical Memory Region, and Register Shared Memory Region.

When a set of memory locations are registered with Remote Access Rights, the R_Key used in the registration is associated with the set of registered memory locations. An R_Key that is associated with a specific set of memory locations is considered to be in the valid state. The Fast Register Physical MR does not create an R_Key, it simply associates an existing free R_Key to a set of memory locations.

The R_Key returned from a local Memory Registration can be used as an input modifier for a Reregister Physical Memory Region, Post Send Local Invalidate WR, and Fast Register Physical MR. The local Consumer can use an R_Key that was previously exposed by a remote Consumer as an input modifier of a Post Send with Local Invalidate WR.

o10-37.2.3: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, the R_Key format **must** consist of:

- 24 bit index in the most significant bits of the R_Key, and
- 8 bit key in the least significant bits of the R_Key.

o10-37.2.4: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, then when an R_Key, that is used in Memory Registration verbs, is created:

- through a successful Allocate L_Key verb invocation, the CI **must** let the Consumer own the key portion of the returned R_Key;
- through a successful Register Memory Region, Reregister Memory Region, or Register Shared Memory Region verb invocation, the CI **must not** let the Consumer own the key portion of the returned R_Key;
- through a successful Register Physical Memory Region or Reregister Physical Memory Region verb invocation, the CI **must** let the Consumer choose between having the key portion of the R_Key owned by the Consumer or owned by the CI.

Note, the index portion of the R_Key is always owned by the CI.

Note: For an L_Key that has an associated R_Key, if the R_Key is Consumer owned, then the key portion of the R_Key must equal the key portion of the L_Key. Additionally, either both the R_Key and L_Key are owned by the Consumer; or both are owned by the CI. Ownership cannot be intermixed.

Memory Regions are described to the CI for remote access by either:

- a combination of a Virtual Address within that Memory Region and the R_Key that was returned to the Consumer when the region was registered; or
- if the CI supports the ZBVA Extension defined in this specification, a combination of an offset within that Memory Region and the R_Key that was returned to the Consumer when the region was registered.

10.6.3.5 PROTECTION DOMAINS

A Protection Domain (PD) associates Memory Regions and Queue Pairs. Protection Domains are specific to each HCA. Each Memory Region must be associated with a single Protection Domain. Multiple Memory Regions

may be associated with the same PD. Each Queue Pair in an HCA must be associated with a single Protection Domain. Multiple Queue Pairs may be associated with the same PD. Access to Memory Regions described in Work Requests and Remote Operation requests are allowed only when the Protection Domain of the Memory Region and of the Queue Pair that is processing the request are identical. The setting of protection domains is expected to be controlled by a Privileged Consumer.

10.6.3.6 SCOPE OF ACCESS

Memory is registered for use on a specific HCA. L_Keys and R_Keys are specific to an HCA and do not grant access to the Memory Region by other local HCAs. The CI is not required to enforce that L_Keys or R_Keys associated with one HCA will always result in an error if used with a different HCA.

10.6.3.7 FAST REGISTRATION

When a QP is created, a Privileged Consumer can request that Fast Registration be enabled on the QP. If Fast Registration is enabled, the CI must allow the Consumer to perform Fast Registrations (i.e. Fast Register Physical MRs). If the QP does not have Fast Registration enabled and the Consumer attempts to perform a Fast Registration, the CI must return a Memory Management Operation Error.

A Fast Registration associates a free L_Key with a set of memory locations (see section [10.6.4.4.1 Physical Buffer lists on page 516](#) for a description of how Physical Buffers Lists are used to reference host memory locations). If the free L_Key has an accompanying free R_Key, and the Consumer requests Remote Access Rights, a Fast Registration associates the R_Key with a set of memory locations.

o10-37.2.5: For an HCA that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** return an error if:

- the set of memory locations passed in through the Fast Registration are not less than or equal to the resources reserved for memory locations by the verb that created the L_Key used in the Fast Registration;
- the PD associated with the L_Key passed in through the Fast Registration is not the same as the PD associated with the QP performing the Fast Registration;
- QP performing the Fast Registration does not have Fast Registration enabled;
- the L_Key passed in through the Fast Registration is in the Invalid or Valid State; or
- remote access is requested by the Consumer, but the R_Key is not enabled.

1 **o10-37.2.6:** If the HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the Fast Registration **must** take place before any subsequent Work Request on the same Send Queue is started.

2 Note, the Consumer may rely on having the Fast Registration complete
3 before the HCA begins processing any subsequent WQEs. After suc-
4 cessful posting, if the Fast Registration fails, then the QP goes to the Error
5 state and all subsequent WQEs are flushed.

6 When the Fast Registration completes successfully:

- 7
- 8 • the L_Key is considered to be in the Valid State, because the Memory
9 Registration was successfully applied to the Free State L_Key; and
 - 10 • if the Fast Registration:
 - 11 • requested an R_Key and the Free State L_Key has an accompa-
12 nying Free State R_Key, the R_Key is considered to be in the Val-
13 id State, because the Memory Registration was successfully
14 applied to the Free State R_Key.
 - 15 • did not request an R_Key, but an R_Key is associated with the
16 L_Key (e.g. the Allocate L_Key verb returned an R_Key), then a
17 remote node will not be allowed to access the Memory Region
18 through the R_Key.

19 When the Fast Registration does not complete successfully, the state of
20 the L_Key, and it's associated R_Key, is unaffected.

10.6.3.8 MULTIPLE REGISTRATION OF MEMORY REGIONS

21 The same set of memory locations may be registered multiple times, re-
22 sulting in multiple MemoryRegionHandles, L_Keys and R_Keys. Each
23 Registration is considered a separate and distinct Memory Region and
24 may be independently associated with a Protection Domain.

25 **C10-49:** The CI **shall** support independent registration of partially or com-
26 pletely overlapping sets of memory locations.

27 For cases where it's desired to have multiple registrations of a specific set
28 of memory locations, provision for optimizing the use of Channel Interface
29 resources is provided. See Section [11.2.10.8 Register Shared Memory
30 Region on page 656](#).

10.6.4 ADDRESSING MEMORY

10.6.4.1 VIRTUAL ADDRESSES (“POINTERS”)

31 Some processor architectures support global virtual address spaces of 80
32 bits or more. However, the virtual addresses (“pointers”) most applications
33 can readily manipulate and supply as parameters are typically either 32
34 bits or 64 bits, and actually serve as offsets into the handful of processor
35 memory pages.

memory “segments” associated with the process. Thus, the virtual address parameters passed in by Consumers at the Verbs layer must each be interpreted in the proper context of their associated process. The L_Key or R_Key that accompanies each virtual address parameter helps the CI identify the appropriate context.

The virtual addresses (“pointers”) that Consumers manipulate and pass as parameters are referred to simply as *Virtual Addresses* in this specification. The size of the Virtual Addresses used to specify a memory region to be registered and for local memory locations in Work Requests is implementation dependent. The size of Virtual Addresses used to specify remote memory locations in Work Requests is 64 bits.

10.6.4.2 VIRTUAL TO PHYSICAL TRANSLATIONS

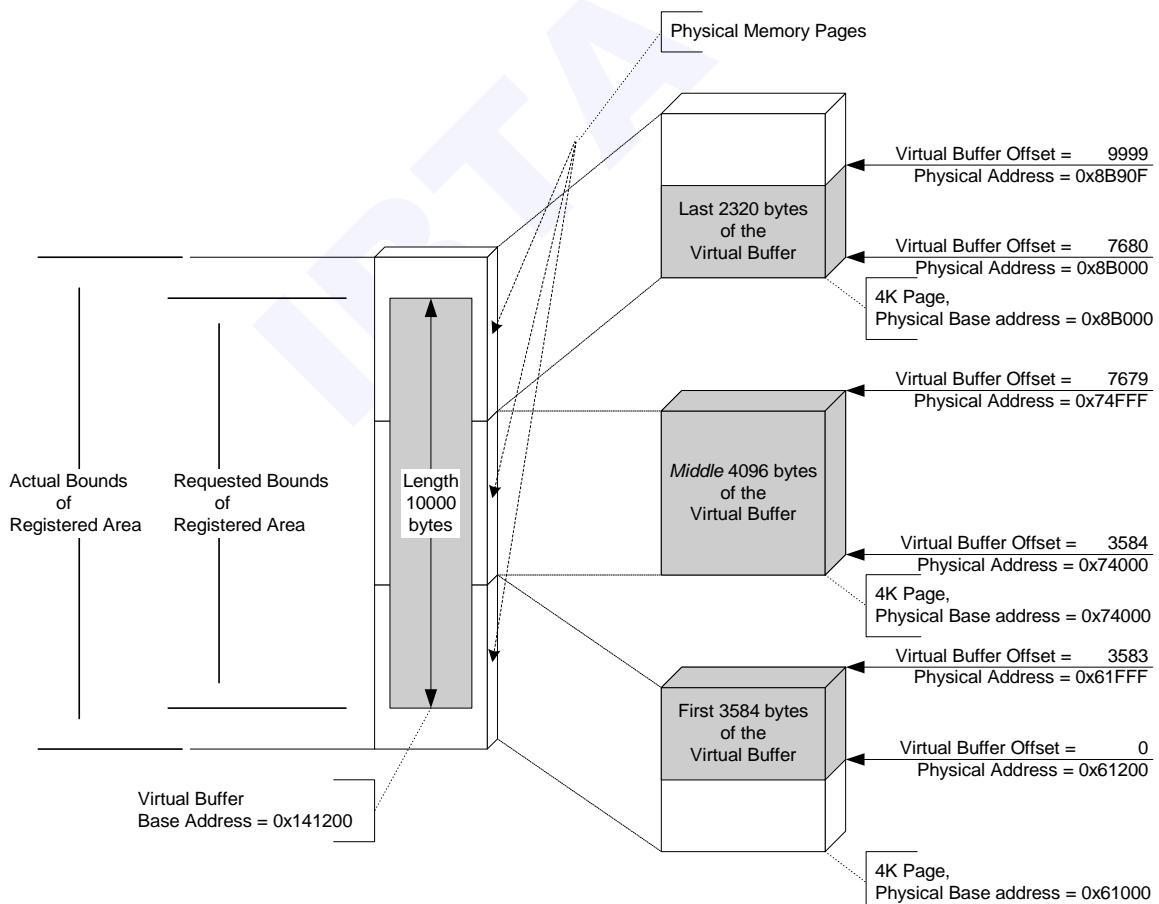


Figure 129 Registered Virtual Buffer to Physical Page Relationship

10.6.4.3 REGISTRATION OF VIRTUALLY ADDRESSED REGIONS

A virtually contiguous set of memory locations are specified by a Virtual Address that points to the first byte of the set and the length of the set in bytes. Figure 129 illustrates an example of a virtually contiguous set of memory locations backed by three physical pages. The size of the pages that back the region depend on the Host System hardware and Host Operating system.

The pages in the illustration are 4096 bytes each. The actual page size depends on the host hardware and host operating system.

In the example above, access to the memory locations at Virtual Addresses 0x141000 through 0x1411FF may be allowed even though they precede the first address of the region requested to be registered.

10.6.4.3.1 REGISTRATION OF ZERO BASED VIRTUAL ADDRESS (ZBVA) MEMORY REGIONS

The first byte of a ZBVA Memory Region is assigned a virtual address of zero. A ZBVA set of memory locations is specified by an offset from zero, which represents the start of the ZBVA, and the length of the set in bytes. The virtual addresses used in ZBVA Memory Regions do not have any relevant processor context.

10.6.4.3.2 RESERVED L_KEY

If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the Consumer can use the Reserved L_Key to identify Post Send and Post Receive Work Request Data Segments. A Data Segment referenced through the L_Key is referenced by a physical address that points to the start of the Data Segment and the length of the Data Segment.

Use of the Reserved L_Key is intended for local use by privileged mode Consumer. When a QP is created, the Consumer must either enable or disable memory access through Fast Register Physical MRs and the Reserved L_Key.

o10-37.2.7: For a CI that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, if the Consumer enables Fast Register Physical MR and Reserved L_Key access through the Create QP, then on that QP the CI **must** allow the Consumer to:

- use the Reserved L_Key in WRs, and
- use Fast Register Physical MRs.

Note, the Reserved L_Key is a local key and remote access cannot be performed through the Reserved L_Key.

o10-37.2.8: For a CI that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** return an error if the Consumer attempts to: bind a

Memory Window to the Reserved L_Key, Invalidate the Reserved L_Key, destroy the Reserved L_Key, or any type of Registration using the Reserved L_Key.

10.6.4.3.3 BYTE ALIGNMENT AND LENGTH OF MEMORY REGIONS

2
3
4
C10-50: The CI **shall** support arbitrary byte alignment for the virtually contiguous buffer being registered.

5
6
7
C10-51: The CI **shall** support arbitrary length for the virtually contiguous 8
buffer being registered, up to the limit specified by the HCA attribute.
9

10
11
The address translation and access rights of the region applies to each
12 complete physical buffer within that Memory Region.
13

- 14 If the HCA does not support the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI is not required to enforce access checks and rights for local or remote accesses with byte-level granularity.
- 15 If the HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI is required to enforce access checks and rights for local and remote accesses with byte-level granularity.

10.6.4.3.4 REGISTERED MEMORY RESIDENCY

16
17
C10-52: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.
18

19
20
C10-52.2.1: Using the Verbs defined in this specification, when a Memory
21 Region is registered through a Register Memory Region and Reregister
22 Memory Region, the CI **must** pin down in physical memory every physical
23 buffer within the Memory Region.
24

25
26 Prior to invoking a Register Physical Memory Region or Reregister Physical
27 Memory Region Verb, the Consumer should pin down in physical
28 memory every physical buffer within the Memory Region.
29

30
31 If the HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, when a
32 Memory Region is registered through a Fast Register PMR, the Con-
33 sumer should pin down in physical memory every physical buffer within
34 the Memory Region.
35

36
37 Pinning down in physical memory every physical buffer within a Memory
38 Region guarantees to the HCA that the Memory Region is physically res-
39 ident (not swapped out) and that the virtual to physical translation remains
40 fixed while the region is registered.
41

42
The Register Memory Region and Reregister Memory Region Verbs are
43 responsible for requesting that the OS pin the associated physical buffers
44 and for requesting from the OS any required per physical buffer Virtual to
45 Physical translation information. The Channel Interface is not required to
46 track physical buffers common to Multiple registrations. The Channel In-

terface must be able to assume that the OS service that accepts requests for pinning and unpinning physical buffers will maintain the appropriate reference counts on those physical buffers such that pinned physical buffers are not actually unpinned until the number of unpin requests equal the number of pin requests for any specific physical buffer.

The Register Memory Region and Reregister Memory Region Verbs are expected to request that the OS pin the physical buffers associated with the region every time a region is registered regardless of any association with previously registered regions. The Channel Interface is not prohibited from implementing optimizations that reduce the number of OS service requests it makes for pinning and unpinning memory.

10.6.4.4 REGISTRATION OF PHYSICALLY ADDRESSED REGIONS

As an alternative to specifying a Region by a contiguous range in the Consumer's virtual address space mapped by the processor, Privileged Consumers can specify a Region by a list of physically addressed buffers, which correspond to physical buffers mappable by the HCA. The Consumer also supplies a first byte offset that specifies where the Region begins within the first physical buffer.

There are two types of physically addressed regions: VA based "I/O Virtual Address" and Zero Based "I/O Virtual Address".

- For VA based IOVA, the Consumer supplies a requested "I/O Virtual Address" to be associated with the first byte of the Region, which is allowed to begin anywhere within the first physical buffer. The Channel Interface returns the I/O Virtual Address that is actually assigned for the Region. A Channel Interface that does not support the Base Memory Management Extensions is not required to assign the I/O Virtual Address requested by the Consumer, but is encouraged to do so wherever possible. A Channel Interface that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions must assign the IOVA passed in by the Consumer. If Base Memory Management Extensions are supported and page mode is used, then the Channel Interface must check that the IOVA modulo the buffer size of the first physical buffer matches the first byte offset.
- For Zero based IOVA on a Channel Interface that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the first byte of the Region, which is allowed to begin anywhere within the first physical buffer, is assigned the address of Zero.

The Consumer also supplies the length of the Region in bytes. The last byte of the Region, as specified by the Region length, must fall within the last physical buffer, but is allowed to fall anywhere within the last physical buffer.

The Virtual Address in this context is called an “I/O Virtual Address” since, depending on the Memory Management Extensions supported by the CI, it may not be mapped in the processor’s virtual address space, and might be used solely for local or remote accesses performed by the HCA.

The Maximum size of an I/O Virtual Address is 64 bits.

10.6.4.4.1 PHYSICAL BUFFER LISTS

C10-53: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

Two physical buffer lists are supported: page lists and block lists.

Page lists used for registration consist of one or more physically contiguous set of memory locations that must start and end on an CI supported page boundary.

C10-53.2.1: If a page list in a physical memory registration contains an element that does not start and end on a CI-supported page boundary, the CI **shall** return an error.

o10-37.2.9: Block lists used for registration consist of one or more physically contiguous set of memory locations that may have an arbitrary byte alignment, but **must** all be of the same size.

The Allocate L_Key verb reserves physical buffer list entries for use in future Memory Region Registrations.

o10-37.2.10: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** return the size reserved for physical buffer list from the following verbs: Allocate L_Key, Query Memory Region, Register Physical Memory Region, and Reregister Physical Memory Region.

All of the physical buffers in a physical buffer list must remain accessible by the CI until after the region has been invalidated or deregistered.

For the case where the physical buffers in the physical buffer list are actually the pinned physical buffers of a virtually addressed buffer, the Consumer is expected to keep those physical buffers pinned while the region is registered.

It is the responsibility of the Consumer to determine if and when, after deregistration the physical buffers should be unpinned. It is the responsibility of the Consumer to ensure proper operation in cases where the physical buffers in the physically addressed region are also in use in a virtually addressed region that has been registered.

10.6.4.5 MEMORY REGION ERROR CHECKING

1
2 It is an error for a Consumer to use Virtual Addresses that are outside of
3 the registered locations in a Memory Region.
4

10.6.4.5.1 ERROR CHECKING OF LOCAL ACCESSES TO MEMORY REGIONS

5
6 **C10-54:** This compliance statement has been obsoleted.
7

8
9 **o10-37.2.11:** For the Reserved L_Key, the CI **must** ensure that accesses
10 through the Reserved L_Key are enabled on the QP.
11

12 **C10-54.2.1:** If the CI doesn't support SRQ, the CI is **required** to ensure
13 that the memory locations being referenced using a Virtual Address and
14 L_Key are within a physical buffer of a Memory Region with the same PD
15 as the QP that is processing the WR.
16

17 **o10-37.2.12:** If the CI supports SRQ,
18

- 19
- 20 for a QP that is not associated with an SRQ or for a Send Queue of a
21 QP that is associated with an SRQ, the CI is **required** to ensure that
22 the memory locations being referenced using a Virtual Address and
23 L_Key are within a physical buffer of a Memory Region with the same
24 PD as the QP that is processing the WR, and
25
 - 26 for a Receive Queue of a QP that is associated with an SRQ, the CI
27 is **required** to ensure that the memory locations being referenced us-
28 ing a Virtual Address and L_Key are within a physical buffer of a
29 Memory Region with the same PD as the SRQ.
30

31 The CI is allowed to support finer-level granularity of local access control.
32

33 Generally, the CI is expected to perform validity checking of the Virtual Ad-
34 dress and appropriate memory key, L_Key or R_Key, for each Data Seg-
35 ment specified in the Work Request. The exceptions to this rule are as
36 follows:
37

38 **C10-54.1.1:** The CI **shall not** perform any protection checks for zero-
39 length Data Segments.
40

41 **C10-54.1.2:** For UD messages that do not contain a GRH, UC messages,
42 RC messages, and RD messages, the CI **shall not** perform any local pro-
tection checking for any Data Segments specified in the Work Request on
the receipt of a zero-length message. For UD messages that contain a
GRH, the CI **shall** perform the Data Segment checks and, if the check
pass, surface the GRH. If the checks don't pass, a completion error shall
be surfaced.
43

44 **C10-55:** The CI is **required** to ensure that the Local Access Rights of that
45 Memory Region allow the type of access requested.
46

It is strongly encouraged that the Channel Interface check and ensure that the Virtual Address is within the Memory Region to which the L_Key is associated and report any bounds violation at access time. It is not mandatory that the Channel Interface enforce such checking.

10.6.4.5.2 ERROR CHECKING OF REMOTE ACCESSES TO MEMORY REGIONS

C10-56: The CI is **required** to ensure that the memory locations being referenced using a Virtual Address and R_Key are within a Memory Region with the same PD as the QP that is processing the Remote Operation. The CI **shall** enforce this with a granularity not to exceed 4096 bytes.

C10-57: The CI is **required** to ensure that the Remote Access Rights of that Memory Region allow the type of access requested.

It is strongly encouraged that the Channel Interface check and ensure that the Virtual Address is within the Memory Region to which the R_Key is associated and report any bounds violation at access time. It is not mandatory that the Channel Interface enforce such checking.

10.6.5 INVALIDATION OF MEMORY REGIONS

When the Consumer no longer needs to access a Physical Memory Region, but wishes to retain the L_Key, and the R_Key (if an R_Key accompanied the L_Key), for use in future Memory Registrations, the Consumer may invalidate the Memory Region, through:

- a local Post Send Local Invalidate WR, or
- a remote Send with Invalidate Operation.

After a local or remote invalidation operation completes successfully, the L_Key is placed in the Free State. In this state the L_Key can no longer be used to access local memory, but it still has physical buffer list resources allocated.

Similarly, after a local or remote invalidation operation completes successfully, the R_Key is placed in the Free State. In this state the R_Key can no longer be used to access local memory, but it still has physical buffer list resources allocated.

For local Invalidates, the Consumer must supply the L_Key, R_Key, and Memory Region Handle for the Memory Region that is to be invalidated. The CI may use any of the three to perform the invalidation operation. The CI is not expected to perform consistency checks between these three input modifiers. For outbound Send with Invalidate, the Consumer must supply the remote R_Key for the remote Memory Region that is to be invalidated.

Memory locations that have been registered multiple times will be represented by multiple Memory Regions. The invalidation of single Memory Region prevents HCA access to those memory locations via the L_Key (and accompanying R_Key if any) associated with that Memory Region. Access to the memory locations via L_Keys and R_Keys associated with other Memory Regions is not affected.

o10-37.2.13: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, the CI **must**:

- support local Local Invalidate WRs and incoming Send with Invalidates;
- return an error if an invalidation operation is attempted on a Memory Region created through the: Register Memory Region; Reregister Memory Region, and Register Shared Memory Region verbs;
- return an error if an invalidation operation is attempted on a Memory Region that was used as an input modifier to a successful Register Shared Memory Region;
- support independent invalidation of partially or completely overlapping Registered Memory Regions.

o10-37.2.14: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively referencing memory locations in a Memory Region that is invalidated **must** fail with a protection violation.

o10-37.2.15: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, Work Requests that attempt to invalidate a Shared Memory Region **must** fail with a Memory Management Operation Error.

o10-37.2.16: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, incoming Send with Invalidate operations that attempt to invalidate a Shared Memory Region **must** fail.

o10-37.2.17: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, local and remote invalidation of a Memory Region **must** fail if the Memory Region still has Memory Windows bound to it.

o10-37.2.18: If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported, Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that attempt to access memory locations in a Memory Region that has been invalidated **must** fail with a protection violation.

Note, invalidation operation are allowed only on Non-Shared Physical Memory Regions. Therefore the Consumer should negotiate whether the R_Key associated with the MR can be invalidated or not.

The following table summarizes the basic rules for Fast-Registration and Invalidation of Memory Regions:

Table 71 Non-Shared Memory Regions Invalidation and Fast-Registration Rules

Key Ownership	Created Through	Local and Remote Invalidation	Fast Registration
CI	Register MR Reregister MR	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
Consumer	Allocate L_Key Register Physical MR Reregister Physical MR	Allowed	Allowed
CI	Register Physical MR Reregister Physical MR	Allowed	Not Allowed

10.6.5.1 INVALIDATION ORDERING

Two levels of local invalidation ordering are allowed: Relaxed ordered and Strongly ordered.

o10-37.2.19: Relaxed ordered - The invalidate operation may take place at any time after it has been posted to the Send Queue but **must** take place before a completion is generated and before any subsequent WQE has begun execution.

o10-37.2.20: If the CI supports Local Invalidate Fencing: Strongly ordered - The Invalidate operation **must** take place after all preceding WQEs on the same Send Queue have completed and before the next WQE (immediately after the Invalidate) on the same Send Queue begins execution.

o10-37.2.21: For incoming Send with Invalidate - The operation may take place anytime between the reception of the message and the completion of the message. The invalidate operation **must** be performed after all previous non RDMA Read messages have completed processing. The Invalidate operation does not have any ordering with subsequent messages that target the same connection. Note, subsequent messages that target the same connection may execute partially or completely before the invalidation takes place.

Note, when an outbound Send with Invalidate operation completes at the local CA, there is no guarantee that the Remote Invalidate completed successfully at the remote CA. However, when a Send Data Received is returned through a Work Completion and the Send operation was a Send with Invalidate, the (incoming) Invalidate is guaranteed to have been completed.

1 **o10-37.2.22:** If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, then for Non-Shared PMRs the CI **must** support Relaxed Invalidation Ordering and does not have to support Local Invalidate Fencing.

2 **o10-37.2.23:** If the CI supports Local Invalidate Fencing, then for Non-
3 Shared PMRs the CI **must** support:

- 4
 - 5 • Strong Invalidation Ordering when the Consumer sets the Local Invalidate Fence on an Local Invalidate WR; and
 - 6 • Relaxed Invalidation Ordering when the Consumer does not specify
7 the Local Invalidate Fence on an Local Invalidate WR.

8 **o10-37.2.24:** For Non-Shared PMRs, if the Responder CI supports the
9 Base Memory Management Extensions and the R_Key check fails on an
10 incoming Send with Invalidation operation, then at the Responder:

- 11
 - 12 • the R_Key **must not** be invalidated;
 - 13 • the incoming Send with Invalidate **must** generate a Completion Error,
14 and
 - 15 • the associated QP **must** be placed in the Error State.

10.6.6 Deregistration of Regions

19 When access to a Memory Region by a CI is no longer required, the Consumer
20 may reverse the registration process for that region. The process
21 of deregistering a Memory Region will revoke all HCA access rights to that
22 Memory Region.

23 Memory locations that have been registered multiple times will be represented
24 by multiple Memory Regions. The deregistration of single Memory
25 Region prevents HCA access to those memory locations via the L_Key
26 (and R_Key if any) associated with that Memory Region. Access to the
27 memory locations via L_Keys and R_Keys associated with other Memory
28 Regions is not affected.

29 **C10-58:** The CI **shall** support independent deregistration of partially or
30 completely overlapping Registered Memory Regions.

31 **C10-59:** Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that are in pro-
32 cess and actively referencing memory locations in a Memory Region that
33 is deregistered **must** fail with a protection violation.

34 **C10-60:** Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that attempt to ac-
35 cess memory locations in a Memory Region that has been deregistered
36 **must** fail with a protection violation.

37 The Verbs that cause a Memory Region to be deregistered are expected
38 to request that the OS unpin the pages associated with the region if a re-

quest to pin those physical buffers was performed when the region was registered, regardless of any association with previously registered regions. The Channel Interface is not prohibited from implementing optimizations that reduce the number of OS service requests it makes for pinning and unpinning memory.

10.6.7 MEMORY ACCESS CONTROL

The immediate Consumer of every memory registration related Verb is privileged code in the OS. In general, the OS is responsible for determining and enforcing access control policy for memory registrations it does on behalf of User-level Consumers. For instance, it is anticipated but not required that OSs will enforce policies similar to the following:

- A User-level Consumer has control over which of its memory areas can be accessed by HCA data transfer operations.
- A User-level Consumer can enable any local memory area it has access to for access by HCA data transfer operations.
- A User-level Consumer cannot enable HCA read access to memory areas that the Consumer itself doesn't have read access to.
- A User-level Consumer cannot enable HCA write access to memory areas that the Consumer itself doesn't have write access to.

When a Consumer creates QPs or CQs (through the appropriate Verbs), the HCA driver automatically allocates and pins any local memory needed for the associated control structures. Access by the HCA to these control structures is implicitly enabled. Access by the Consumer to these control structures is supported only indirectly through Verbs, and any Region Handles or L_Keys (if they exist) for the control structures are not exposed to the Consumer.

A Consumer controls which QPs can access which Memory Regions and which Memory Windows through the use of Protection Domains (PDs). Prior to creating any QPs, registering any Memory Regions, or allocating any Memory Windows, the Consumer will allocate one or more PDs. Then, when creating QPs, registering Memory Regions, or allocating Memory Windows, the Consumer specifies which PD each is associated with. QPs can only access Memory Regions or Memory Windows that are in the same PD.

10.6.7.1 LOCAL ACCESS CONTROL

With Sends and Receives, the Consumer explicitly specifies the buffers that are accessed through the local Data Segments it passes in the associated Work Requests. Each local Data Segment contains an address, its associated L_Key, and a length parameter. Multiple local Data Segments can be supplied for each send or receive where scatter/gather operation is desired.

Local Data Segments are also used for RDMA Write gather lists, RDMA Read scatter lists, and AtomicOp return values. Again each *local* Data Segment contains an *L_Key* which governs local access to the corresponding local Memory Region. However, the *remote* Data Segment associated with an RDMA Write, RDMA Read, or AtomicOp will contain an *R_Key* instead of an *L_Key*. This is discussed further below.

Two types of *local* access, read and write, are associated with Memory Regions. Send buffers and RDMA Write gather buffers require local read access. Receive buffers, RDMA Read scatter buffers, and AtomicOp return buffers require local write access.

Though memory registration is required to enforce local access only to page-level granularity, the local Data Segments used by Sends, Receives, RDMA Writes, RDMA Reads, and AtomicOps specify byte starting addresses and byte-count lengths. Thus the Consumer still has byte-level granularity of access control for local buffers accessed by these locally initiated operations. The Consumer can determine the actual range of access control enforced using the Query Memory Region Verb.

10.6.7.2 REMOTE ACCESS CONTROL

When a Consumer wants to allow remote agents to access its local memory using RDMA Writes, RDMA Reads, or AtomicOps, the Consumer must explicitly enable *remote* access and pass an appropriate *R_Key* to the remote agent for it to use when initiating these operations that target the Consumer's (local) memory.

A Consumer can use either of two mechanisms to enable remote access to its memory. The first mechanism involves enabling remote access when a Memory Region is registered. The second mechanism involves first allocating and then binding a Memory Window to an existing Memory Region. Either mechanism results in an *R_Key* with associated remote access rights for a specified memory area.

Three types of *remote* access — read, write, and atomic — are supported. RDMA Write requires write access at the remote target, RDMA Read requires read access at the remote target, and AtomicOps require atomic access at the remote target. While perhaps not obvious, it may make sense for a Consumer to allow atomic access but not allow write access, since AtomicOps are not required by the architecture to be atomic with respect to RDMA writes.

10.6.7.2.1 REMOTE ACCESS DIRECTLY WITH MEMORY REGIONS

When registering a Memory Region, a Privileged Consumer can generally specify any combination of remote access rights for the Region, including all or none. However, if a registration request does not specify local write

access to the region, the CI will return an error if remote write or remote atomic access is specified.

If any remote access rights are specified, the Verb will return an R_Key. This R_Key grants the specified remote access rights for the entire Memory Region as bounded by the byte starting address and byte length, but the granularity of the access control actually enforced by the Channel Interface is allowed to be up to 4096 bytes. The Consumer can determine the actual range of access control enforced using the Query Memory Region Verb. It is strongly encouraged that the Channel Interface enforce access control with byte-level granularity.

10.6.7.2.2 REMOTE ACCESS THROUGH MEMORY WINDOWS

When a Consumer needs more flexible control over remote access to its memory, the Consumer can use Memory Windows. Memory Windows are intended for situations where the Consumer:

- wants to grant and revoke remote access rights to a registered Region in a dynamic fashion with less of a performance penalty than using deregistration/registration or reregistration.
- wants to grant different remote access rights to different remote agents and/or grant those rights over different ranges within a registered Region.

To use a Memory Window, the Consumer allocates one and then binds it to a specified address range of an existing Memory Region that is enabled for use with Memory Windows. The range can include the entire Memory Region or any virtually contiguous subset of it. A Memory Window can only be bound to a Memory Region that belongs to the same Protection Domain.

C10-61: The CI **shall** enforce remote access control for Memory Windows with byte-level granularity.

When binding a Memory Window, a Consumer can request any combination of remote access rights for the Window. However, if the associated Region does not have local write access enabled and the Consumer requests remote write or remote atomic access for the Window, the Channel Interface must return an error either at bind time or access time. See [10.6.7.2.7 Error Checking at Window Bind Time](#) and [10.6.7.2.8 Error Checking at Window Access Time](#).

C10-62: If a Memory Region does not have local write access enabled, the CI **shall** return an error if a Memory Window Bind request specifies remote write or remote atomic access to that Region. The CI **shall** allow all other requested access rights for Memory Windows.

A Consumer is allowed and commonly expected to enable remote access rights when binding a Window that it may not have enabled when it registered the underlying Region — provided it doesn't violate the above rule regarding local write access. For example, a Consumer might register a Region with no remote access rights, and later bind one or more Windows to that Region that obviously would grant remote access rights.

Allocating or deallocating a Memory Window requires a kernel transition, and thus incurs the associated software overhead. *Binding* a Memory Window is performed with a Work Request posted to a send queue, and thus incurs far less software overhead with typical implementations.

C10-63: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-64: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-65: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-66: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

When a Memory Window is Allocated through the Allocate Memory Window Verb, if the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the Consumer selects either a [10.6.7.2.3 Type 1 Memory Windows on page 527](#) or a [10.6.7.2.4 Type 2 Memory Windows on page 529](#). Memory Window, without any qualifier, is used to refer to both Type 1 and Type 2 Memory Windows.

Type 1 Memory Windows are addressed only through Virtual Addresses. Type 2 Memory Windows are addressed through either Virtual Addresses or Zero Based Virtual Addresses (see section [10.6.2.1 Memory Regions on page 502](#) for a description of VA and ZBVA).

Every Memory Window R_Key has three possible states:

- Invalid State - No resources have been allocated for the R_Key. An R_Key in the Invalid State cannot be used to access host memory. An R_Key that is in the Invalid State cannot be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate.
- Free State - The R_Key is not associated with a Memory Region and cannot be used to access host memory. An R_Key that is in the Free State can be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate. Note: The Free state may not be implemented on Type 1 Memory Windows (see Table 72).
- Valid State - The R_Key is associated with a Memory Region. An R_Key in the Valid State can be used to access host memory. An R_Key that is in the Valid State can be invalidated through a Send with Invalidate.

The following table summarizes the states of Type 1 Memory Windows R_Keys and the operations allowed on each state:

Table 72 Type 1 Memory Windows States Summary

Property / Operation Allowed	Invalid	Free ^a	Valid
Resources Allocated	No	Yes	Yes
Bound to a Memory Region	No	No	Yes
Zero length access	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed
Host Memory Access	Prohibited	Prohibited	Allowed
Send with Invalidate	Prohibited	Prohibited	Prohibited
Local Invalidate	Prohibited	Prohibited	Prohibited
Post Send Bind MW	Prohibited	Prohibited	Prohibited
Bind Memory Window	Prohibited	Allowed	Allowed

a. The Free state may not be implemented on Type 1 Memory Windows, instead, the Valid state with the Memory Window length of zero can be used. For this type of implementation, an Unbound MW can be considered to be in the Free State.

The following table summarizes the states of Type 2 Memory Windows R_Keys and the operations allowed on each state:

Table 73 Type 2 Memory Windows States Summary

Property / Operation Allowed	Invalid	Free	Valid
Resources Allocated	No	Yes	Yes
Bound to a Memory Region	No	No	Yes
Zero length access	Allowed	Allowed	Allowed
Host Memory Access	Prohibited	Prohibited	Allowed
Send with Invalidate	Prohibited	Allowed	Allowed
Local Invalidate	Prohibited	Allowed	Allowed
Post Send Bind MW	Prohibited	Allowed	Prohibited
Bind Memory Window	Prohibited	Prohibited	Prohibited

The following table summarizes Type 2 Memory Windows R_Keys state transitions through the verbs and remote operations (non verbs operations are marked in *italic*):

Table 74 Type 2 Memory Windows State Transitions

State	Entered Through	Exited Through
Invalid	<i>Initial State</i> Deallocate MW	Allocate MW
Free	Allocate MW Local Invalidate <i>Incoming Send and Invalidate</i>	Deallocate MW Post Send Bind MW
Valid	Post Send Bind MW	Deallocate MW Local Invalidate <i>Incoming Send with Invalidate</i>

10.6.7.2.3 TYPE 1 MEMORY WINDOWS

Type 1 Memory Windows are Bound through the Bind Memory Window Verb. The CI owns the R_Key associated with a Type 1 Memory Window.

Type 1 Memory Windows have the same PD access control semantics as defined in the InfiniBand™ Architecture Specification, Volume 1, Release 1.1.

C10-66.2.1: An HCA **must** support Type 1 Memory Windows.

C10-66.2.2: Each time a given Type 1 Memory Window is bound through the Bind Memory Window Verb, the CI **shall** return an R_Key whose value is different from the immediate previous value. After the bind operation completes, any access attempts using the immediate previous R_Key **must** fail.

When the Type 1 Memory Window is bound through the Bind Memory Window, the Verb returns the new R_Key immediately after posting the Work Request, even though the actual binding operation performed by the HCA hasn't yet occurred.

Implementation Note: an envisioned implementation for an R_Key is to have it consist of two fields—an index field and a key field. The index field is used by the HCA to identify the associated Type 1 Memory Window resource, and remains constant. The key field is changed each time the R_Key is bound, which guarantees that the immediate previous R_Key is invalidated as required. The use of a sufficient size key field and suitable random number with each binding can provide some amount of protection against the holder of an inval-

idated R_Key being able to access the Type 1 Memory Window without authorization.

The Channel Interface software that prepares the Bind Work Request generates the new key value and places it in the Work Request for the HCA to record in its Type 1 Memory Window resource when processing the request. This way, the new R_Key value is fully determined and can be returned to the Consumer prior to the HCA processing the request.

It is not required that Channel Interfaces use this implementation.

For correct operation, a Consumer must ensure that no remote agent attempts to use a new R_Key before its associated binding has been completed by the HCA. One technique to accomplish this is for the Consumer to submit the Bind operation to the same Send Queue it uses to send the message that conveys the new R_Key to the remote agent.

The Bind operation has a unique ordering rule:

C10-66.2.3: Any Work Request posted to a Send Queue subsequent to an invocation of the Bind Memory Window Verb **shall not** begin execution until the Bind operation completes.

o10-37.2.25: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, any Work Request posted to a Send Queue subsequent to an invocation of the Bind Memory Window Verb **shall not** begin execution until the Bind operation completes. Local Invalidate WRs posted subsequent to a Bind Memory Window Verb are an exception (see section [10.8.3.3 Send Queue Ordering Rules on page 548](#)).

If the HCA detects an error with the Bind operation, it will put the QP into an error state. With the technique described earlier, the Bind operation is guaranteed to complete before the remote agent can possibly receive the new R_Key.

An envisioned common usage model is for a Type 1 Memory Window to be allocated once and then used for multiple bindings. When a previously bound Type 1 Memory Window is bound again, the previous R_Key and its associated bindings are automatically invalidated. Any remote agents needing to use the new Type 1 Memory Window bindings must use the new R_Key.

If the Consumer wants to invalidate a Type 1 Memory Window's bindings without deallocating the Type 1 Memory Window or enabling remote access to new areas, the Consumer can submit a Bind request specifying a length of zero.

C10-66.2.4: After a zero-length Type 1 Memory Window Bind completes, the CI **shall not** allow any remote access to be performed to that Type 1 Memory Window until a subsequent Bind re-enables remote access.

C10-66.2.5: The CI **shall** support multiple Type 1 Windows bound to the same Memory Region, each with independent remote access rights, and their associated areas **shall** be allowed to be overlapping or disjoint.

o10-37.2.26: For an HCA that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, Local Invalidate WRs **shall not** be allowed on Type 1 Memory Windows.

o10-37.2.27: For an HCA that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, if an incoming Send with Invalidate targets an R_Key associated with a Type 1 Memory Window, the CI **shall**:

- surface a Memory Management Operation completion error;
- not affect the state of the Type 1 Memory Window; and
- place the QP in the Error state.

10.6.7.2.4 TYPE 2 MEMORY WINDOWS

o10-37.2.28: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, the CI **must** support Type 2 Memory Windows.

Type 2 Memory Windows are Bound through the Post Send Bind Memory Window Work Request.

Two types of access controls are defined for Type 2 Memory Windows:

o10-37.2.29: If an HCA supports Type 2A Memory Window, then it **must** provide the following semantics for a Type 2A MW:

- Post Send Bind WRs are allowed if the Type 2A MW is in the Free state and the QP performing the Bind WR is associated with the same PD as the PD associated with R_Key referenced in the Bind WR.
- Invalidate operations are allowed if the Type 2A MW is in the Valid state and the QP Number (QPN) of the QP performing the Invalidate operation matches the QPN associated with the Bound Type 2A MW. Invalidate operations are also allowed if the Type 2A MW is in the Free state and the QP performing the Invalidate operation is associated with the same PD as the PD associated with the R_Key referenced in the Bind WR.

- MW access operations (i.e. RDMA Write, RDMA Reads, and Atomics) are only allowed if the Type 2A MW is in the Valid state and the QP Number (QPN) of the QP performing the MW access operation matches the QPN associated with the Bound Type 2A MW.

- A QP can be destroyed or placed in the Reset State only if it has no Type 2A MWs associated with the QP.

o10-37.2.30: If an HCA supports Type 2B Memory Window, then it **must** provide the following semantics for a Type 2B Memory Window:

- Post Send Bind WRs are allowed if the Type 2B MW is in the Free state and the QP performing the Bind WR is associated with the same PD as the PD associated with R_Key referenced in the Bind WR.
- Invalidate operations are allowed if the Type 2B MW is in the Valid state and the QP Number (QPN) and PD of the QP performing the Invalidate operation matches the QPN and PD associated with the Bound Type 2B MW. Invalidate operations are also allowed if the Type 2B MW is in the Free state and the QP performing the Invalidate operation is associated with the same PD as the PD associated with the R_Key referenced in the Bind WR.
- MW access operations (i.e. RDMA Write, RDMA Reads, and Atomics) are only allowed if the Type 2B MW is in the Valid state and the QP Number (QPN) and PD of the QP performing the MW access operation matches the QPN and PD associated with the Bound Type 2B MW.
- A QP can be destroyed or placed in the Reset State, even if it still has Type 2B MWs associated with it.

o10-37.2.31: If an HCA supports the Base Memory Management extensions, the HCA **shall** support either Type 2A or Type 2B MWs, but not both.

In this specification, the term Type 2 MW is used to describe semantics that are common to both Type 2A and Type 2B MWs.

A Type 2 MW that is in the Invalid State, cannot be used in a Bind or Invalidate operation.

o10-37.2.32: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions defined in this specification, the R_Key format for a Type 2 Memory Window **must** consist of:

- 24 bit index in the most significant bits of the R_Key, which is owned by the CI, and
- 8 bit key in the least significant bits of the R_Key, which is owned by the Consumer.

1
2
3
4
5
6
o10-37.2.33: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Exten-
sions, each time a given Type 2 Memory Window is bound through the
Post Send Bind Memory Window Work Request, the CI **shall** use the key
value provided by the Consumer for the bind operation. After the bind op-
eration completes, the R_Key **must** consist of the 24 bit index associated
with the Type 2 Memory Window and the 8 bit key supplied by the Con-
sumer in the Post Send Bind Memory Window Work Request.

7
8
9
10
o10-37.2.34: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Exten-
sions, the CI **must** return an error (either an immediate error or a comple-
tion error) if the Consumer attempts to use a Type 1 MW R_Key on a Post
Send Bind Memory Window Work Request (i.e. on a Type 2 MW).

11
12
13
14
o10-37.2.35: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Exten-
sions, the CI **must** return an error (either an immediate error or a comple-
tion error) if the Consumer attempts to use a Type 2 MW R_Key on a Bind
Memory Window verb (i.e. on a Type 1 MW).

15
16
17
18
19
20
21
When a Type 2 Memory Window is bound through the Post Send Bind
Memory Window Work Request, the CI does not return the R_Key. Note:
it is the Consumer's responsibility to remember the R_Key index gener-
ated by Allocate Memory Window and construct R_Key values for trans-
mission to the remote Consumer by combining the 24 bit index and the
Consumer-chosen 8 bit key.

22
23
24
25
26
For correct operation, a Consumer must ensure that no remote agent at-
tempts to use a new R_Key before its associated binding has been com-
pleted by the HCA. One technique to accomplish this is for the Consumer
to submit the Bind operation to the same Send Queue it uses to send the
message that conveys the new R_Key to the remote agent.

27
28
The Bind MW and Post Send Bind WR have a unique ordering rule:

29
30
31
32
o10-37.2.36: Any Work Request posted to a Send Queue subsequent to
a Post Send Bind WR **shall not** begin execution until the Post Send Bind
WR completes. Local Invalidate WRs posted subsequent to a Post Send
Bind WR are an exception (see section [10.8.3.3 Send Queue Ordering
Rules on page 548](#)).

33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

If the HCA detects an error with the Bind operation, it will put the QP into
an error state. With the technique described earlier, the Bind operation is
guaranteed to complete before the remote agent can possibly receive the
new R_Key.

An envisioned common usage model is for a Type 2 Memory Window to
be allocated once and then used for multiple bindings. Before a Type 2
Memory Window can be bound again, it must be invalidated through ei-
ther a local invalidate or a remote invalidate.

- The Local Invalidate WR is used to perform a local invalidate on a Type 2 Memory Window.
- An incoming Send with Invalidate Operation is used to perform a remote invalidate on a Type 2 Memory Window.

The same levels of invalidation ordering area allowed on Type 2 Memory Window invalidation as on Memory Regions (see section [10.6.5.1 Invalidation Ordering on page 520](#) for a description of Invalidation ordering).

Note, when an outbound Send with Invalidate operation completes at the local HCA, there is no guarantee that the Remote Invalidate completed successfully at the remote CA. However, when a Send Data Received is returned through a Receive Work Completion and the incoming Send operation was a Send with Invalidate, the (incoming) Invalidate is guaranteed to have been completed.

o10-37.2.37: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, then the CI **must** support Relaxed Invalidation Ordering for Type 2 MWs.

o10-37.2.38: If the CI supports Strong Invalidation Ordering, then for Type 2 MWs the CI **must**: support Strong Invalidation Ordering, and provide an Local Invalidate Fence bit for the Consumer to choose between Relaxed or Strong Invalidation Ordering on Local Invalidates.

o10-37.2.39: For a Type 2 MW, if the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions and the R_Key check fails on an incoming Send with Invalidation operation:

- the R_Key **must not** be invalidated;
- the incoming Send with Invalidate **must** generate a Completion Error, and
- the QP **must** go to the Error state.

o10-37.2.40: For a Type 2 MW, if the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions and the Consumer attempts to Invalidate a Type 2 Memory Window through either the invocation of a Bind Memory Window or a Post Send Bind WR with a length of zero, the CI **must** return an error.

o10-37.2.41: If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **shall** support multiple Type 1, Type 2, or both Type 1 and Type 2 Memory Windows bound to the same Memory Region, each with independent remote access rights, and their associated areas **shall** be allowed to be overlapping or disjoint.

Note, invalidation operation are allowed on Type 2 Memory Windows, but not on Type 1 Memory Windows. Therefore the local Consumer should

negotiate with the remote Consumer whether the R_Key associated with the MW can be invalidated or not.

The following tables depict the differences between type 2A and type 2B MWs. Other rules associated with Type 2A and Type 2B MWs also apply.

Table 75 Post Send Bind WR Rules

MW Type	MW State	PD Rule
Type 2A	Free	PD associated with R_Key in the Post Send Bind WR must be the same as the PD associated with the QP on which the WR was posted.
Type 2B	Free	

Table 76 Type 2 Memory Window Invalidiation Rules

MW Type	MW State	QP Rule	PD Rule
Type 2A	Valid	Invalidate operation only allowed via QP on which MW was bound	N/A
Type 2A	Free	N/A	Invalidate operation only allowed via QP associated with same PD as MW
Type 2B	Valid	Invalidate operation only allowed via QP on which MW was bound	
Type 2B	Free	N/A	

Table 77 Type 2 Memory Window Access Rules

MW Type	MW State	QP Rule	PD Rule
Type 2A	Valid	MW access operations only allowed via QP on which MW was bound	N/A
Type 2B	Valid	MW access operations only allowed via QP on which MW was bound	MW access operations only allowed if the PD associated with the R_Key is the same as the PD associated with the QP

The following table summarizes the basic rules for Memory Windows Invalidations (Note that fast registration is never allowed on Memory Windows):

Table 78 Memory Windows Invalidations Rules

MW Type	Key Ownership	Local and Remote Invalidations	Bind using already Bound MW
Type I	CI	Not Allowed	Allowed
Type II	Consumer	Allowed	Not Allowed

10.6.7.2.5 REBINDING OR DEALLOCATING ACTIVE WINDOWS

Under normal operation, it is improper for a Consumer to deallocate or change the binding of a Memory Window while it is being accessed by a remote agent. However, this can occur if remote agents misbehave, or it can occur under error recovery circumstances.

C10-67: Any Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively using a Memory Window *when its binding is changed* **must** fail with a protection violation.

C10-68: Once the Bind operation has been reported to the Consumer as having completed, the Channel Interface **must** guarantee that no additional accesses can be performed under the immediate previous binding.

C10-69: Any Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively using a Memory Window *when it is deallocated* **must** fail with a protection violation.

C10-70: Once the Deallocate Memory Window Verb completes, the Channel Interface **must** guarantee that no additional accesses can be performed through that Memory Window while it remains deallocated.

10.6.7.2.6 Deregistering Regions with Bound Windows

It is an error for a Consumer to deregister or reregister a Memory Region while it still has any Memory Windows bound to it. Such Windows are said to be “orphaned”. The Channel Interface must handle this error case as follows.

The Channel Interface is allowed to detect this error case and return an error without carrying out the deregister or reregister operation.

C10-71: If the CI allows a Memory Region deregister or reregister operation to create orphaned Windows, the CI **must** guarantee that any remote accesses attempted through the orphaned Windows will undergo the ac-

cess checks and enforcement described in [10.6.7.2.8 Error Checking at Window Access Time](#).

10.6.7.2.7 ERROR CHECKING AT WINDOW BIND TIME

The following checks must be performed at Memory Window “bind time”, which is either when the Channel Interface is executing the Bind Memory Window Verb that prepares and queues the associated Work Request, or when the HCA is processing that Work Request.

C10-72: The Channel Interface **must** check and enforce that the Memory Window and QP belong to the same PD.

C10-73: The Channel Interface **must** check and enforce that Memory Windows are allowed to be bound to the specified Memory Region.

C10-74: The Channel Interface **must** check and enforce write permissions with the specified Memory Region, as described in 10.6.7.2.2 Remote Access Through Memory Windows .

C10-75: The Channel Interface **must** perform address bounds checks and PD checks with regard to the specified Memory Region.

10.6.7.2.8 ERROR CHECKING AT WINDOW ACCESS TIME

When the HCA processes an inbound RDMA or Atomic request that accesses a:

C10-76: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-76.2.1: Type 1 Memory Window, the CI **must** check and enforce that the Memory Window and QP are associated with the same PD.

o10-37.2.42: For Type 2A Memory Windows, the CI **must** check and enforce that the Type 2A MW is in the Valid state and is associated with the QPN of the QP performing the inbound remote operation.

o10-37.2.43: For Type 2B Memory Windows, the CI **must** check and enforce that the Type 2B MW is in the Valid state and is associated with the QPN and PD of the QP performing the inbound remote operation.

C10-77: The Channel Interface **must** check and enforce the address bounds and access rights associated with the Window.

C10-78: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-79: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-79.2.1: The Channel Interface **must** check and enforce the access rights associated with each accessed physical buffer.

C10-79.2.2: For any previously undetected error cases where the Consumer orphaned the Window as described in [10.6.7.2.6 Deregistering Regions with Bound Windows on page 534](#), the Channel Interface **must** check and enforce that any physical buffers accessed are in some Memory Region that belongs to the same PD as the Window.

The Channel Interface is not required to enforce that such physical buffers are necessarily in the same Region to which the Window was bound. Again, it is strongly encouraged that the Channel Interface check and report these error cases at bind or deallocation time instead of access time.

10.6.7.2.9 ERROR CHECKING AT TYPE 2 MEMORY WINDOW INVALIDATE TIME

o10-37.2.44: When the HCA processes an inbound Send with Invalidate request that has an R_Key which references a Memory Window, the CI **must** check and enforce that:

- The Memory Window is a Type 2 Memory Window;
- if the R_Key references a Type 2 MW that is in the Free State, the PD associated with the Type 2 MW matches the PD that is associated with the QP (note, in this case, the invalidate will be treated as a no-op);
- if the R_Key references a Type 2A MW that is in the Valid State, the QPN associated with the type 2A MW matches the QPN of the QP that received the Send with Invalidate operation;
- if the R_Key references a Type 2B MW that is in the Valid State, the PD and QPN associated with the Type 2B MW matches the QPN and PD of the QP that received the Send with Invalidate operation.

10.7 WORK REQUESTS

Work Requests are used to submit units of work to the channel interface. There are different types of work requests supported and are abstracted throughout the Verbs.

How a work request targets its destination is dependent upon the work request and QP type. The target memory location is contained in the work requests's remote node address information (in the case of RDMA and Atomics) or in the remote receive QP WR's scatter/gather list (in the case of Send/Receive). The target QP depends on the QP type. Connected QPs have the destination QP contained in the local QP context. Datagram QPs have the destination QP contained as part of the work request. Raw QPs don't target a specific QP at the destination.

10.7.1 CREATING WORK REQUESTS

2 Work Requests are the only mechanism available to Consumers to generate work on work queues. Work requests are used only to pass the operation from the Consumer to the CI.

5 Work Requests are created by the Consumer above the Channel Interface using mechanisms provided by the OSV.

7 10.7.2 WORK REQUEST TYPES

9 The operations which may be posted to the Work Queues by the Consumer:

- 11 • Send/Receive
- 12 • RDMA Write
- 13 • RDMA Read
- 14 • Atomic Operations
- 15 • Bind Memory Window
- 16 • Local Invalidate - If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported.
- 17 • Fast Register Physical MR - If the Base Memory Management Extensions are supported.

21 The Base Queue Management Extensions also provide the Consumer with a mechanism to post a list of Work Requests to the Send Queue, Receive Queue, or Shared Receive Queue.

10.7.2.1 SEND/RECEIVE

25 **C10-80:** The CI **shall** support Send and Receive Operations on all Transport Service Types supported on the CI.

29 Sends must be posted to the Send Queue.

30 Receives must be posted to the Receive Queue.

32 **C10-81:** The responder's Receive QP **shall** consume a Work Request on reception of an incoming send message.

35 **C10-82:** The CI **shall** provide segmentation and reassembly for RC and UC Transport Service Types.

38 **o10-38:** If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** provide segmentation and reassembly for RD.

40 **o10-38.2.1:** If the CI supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the CI **must** support Send with Invalidate Operations on RC Service QPs.

10.7.2.2 RDMA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
There are two types of RDMA: RDMA Read and RDMA Write.

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
RDMA Read Operations are supported only on the three reliable Transport Service Types—Reliable Connection, Extended Reliable Connected and Reliable Datagram. RDMA Write Operations are supported on the three reliable Service Types plus the Unreliable Connection Service Type.

C10-83: The CI **shall** support RDMA Read Operations on the RC Transport Service Type.

C10-84: The CI **shall** support RDMA Write Operations on the RC and UC Transport Service Types.

o10-39: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** support both RDMA Read and Write Operations on the RD Transport Service Type.

RDMA Read and RDMA Write requests are submitted to the Send Queue.

C10-85: The responder's Receive Queue **shall not** consume a Work Request for an incoming RDMA Read.

C10-86: The responder's Receive Queue **shall** consume a Work Request when Immediate Data is specified in a successfully completed incoming RDMA Write.

C10-87: The responder's Receive Queue **shall not** consume a Work Request when Immediate Data is not specified in an incoming RDMA Write or the incoming RDMA Write was not successfully completed.

The target address of an RDMA request is the remote node's virtual address, a valid R_Key and length. The R_Key must be associated either a Memory Region or a Memory Window containing that virtual address.

Queue Pairs and Memory Regions or Memory Windows have RDMA Read attributes and RDMA Write attributes. These attributes are checked at the target end and are not checked at the source end.

C10-88: The CI **shall not** transfer data from an RDMA operation into the target memory unless the RDMA operation is enabled for the target QP.

o10-39.1.1: If the CI supports XRC Service, the CI **shall** support both RDMA Read and Write Operations on the XRC Transport Service Type.

10.7.2.3 ATOMIC OPERATIONS

IB Atomic Operations are architected as an optional feature to enable high-performance synchronization for distributed applications running on multiple hosts on the IB fabric.

Two operation types are supported: Compare & Swap and Fetch & Add. The operand size for these operations is 64 bits. It is the responsibility of the Channel Interface at the local endnode to do any transformation to match the endnode endian convention.

o10-40: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** support two types of Atomic operations, Compare & Swap and Fetch & Add.

o10-41: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI at the local endnode **shall** perform any byte ordering transformation required to match the endnode endian convention.

o10-42: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** implement Fetch & Add using two's complement arithmetic without saving the carry.

o10-43: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** return an error if the remote address of the Atomic operation is not aligned on a 64-bit boundary.

Atomic operations are legal only when the remote address specified in the Work Request is on a naturally-aligned 8-byte boundary. HCAs which do not support Zero-Based Virtual Address or Block List Physical Buffer List addressing must validate either virtual or physical address alignment. HCAs that do support Zero-Based Virtual Address or Block List Physical Buffer List addressing must validate physical address alignment. Consumers are responsible for ensuring that the memory range for an Atomic operation does not cross a page or block boundary in order to avoid transport errors.

It is up to the Consumer to interpret whether the numbers are signed or unsigned.

Atomic Operations are supported only on the three reliable Transport Service Types—Reliable Connection, Extended Reliable Connected and Reliable Datagram.

o10-44: If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** support Atomic operations for the RC Transport Service Type.

o10-45: If the CI supports Atomic operations and the RD Transport Service Type, then the CI **shall** support Atomic operations for an RD QP.

1 **o10-45.1.1:** If the CI supports Atomic operations and the XRC Transport
2 Service Type, then the CI **shall** support Atomic operations for the Initiator
3 XRC QP.

4 **o10-46:** If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall not** support
5 Atomic operations on any other Transport Service Types other than XRC,
6 RC and RD.

7 Atomic Operation requests are posted to the Send Queue. The Atomic
8 Operation request is made using the Post Send Request Verb. The results
9 are contained in the data segment. The completion status of the request
10 posted to the Send Queue indicates only if the Atomic Operation was suc-
11 cessfully attempted. The Consumer must check the result to determine if
12 a conditional operation took place.

13 **o10-47:** If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** return the re-
14 sults of the operation in the Data Segment.

16 If an HCA supports atomics, then all atomic operation requests made to
17 that HCA, referencing the same physical memory, are guaranteed to ap-
18 pear to be serialized with respect to each other. These operations may be
19 directed at one or more queue pairs.

20 **o10-48:** If the CI supports Atomic operations, the CI **shall** provide the ap-
21 pearance that all Atomic operation requests made to the same HCA, ref-
22 erencing the same physical memory are serialized with respect to each
23 other.

25 Atomic operation requests made to an HCA are not guaranteed to be se-
26 rialized with respect to RDMA operation requests made to it or other HCAs
27 in the system, or with respect to operations performed by other system
28 components such as processors. Because of this behavior, if atomic op-
29 erations on a particular area of memory are used to implement locks, all
30 accesses to that memory must be done using atomic operations. In par-
31 ticular, it is not safe to use an RDMA read or Send/Receive to see if a lock
32 is held, and it is not safe to use an RDMA write or Send/Receive to clear
33 a lock.

34 Optionally, some systems may choose to provide a stronger guarantee:
35 that all atomic operation requests made to all HCAs in the system, as well
36 as all atomic operations performed on memory by other system compo-
37 nents such as processors, referencing the same physical memory, are
38 guaranteed to appear to be serialized with respect to each other. Again,
39 these operations may be directed at one or several separate queue pairs.
40 The definition of an “atomic operation” as performed by a system compo-
41 nent which is not an HCA is implementation-dependent; for instance, a
42 processor might be required to execute a particular instruction to produce
43 an atomic operation.

o10-49: If the CI supports Atomic operations and the system provides Atomic access across the system, the CI **shall** provide the appearance that all Atomic operation requests that reference the same physical memory are serialized with respect to each other.

10.7.2.4 BIND MEMORY WINDOWS

The Bind Memory Window operation associates a previously allocated Memory Window to a specified address range within an existing Memory Region, along with a specified set of remote access privileges.

Bind Operations are supported only on the Reliable Connection, Unreliable Connection, and Reliable Datagram Service Types.

C10-89: The CI **shall** support Bind operations for RC and UC Transport Service Types.

o10-50: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** support Bind operations for the RD Transport Service Type.

Bind operations must be posted to the Send Queue. Binds affect only local HCA memory mapping resources and do not cause any packets to be issued over the link. No resources at the destination QP are affected.

10.7.2.5 LOCAL INVALIDATE

The Local Invalidate Operation is allowed on Non-Shared Physical Memory Regions or Type 2 Memory Windows for the RC, RD, UC, and XRC Service Types.

Local Invalidate Operations must be posted to the Send Queue. Local Invalidates Operations affect only local HCA memory mapping resources and do not cause any packets to be issued over the link. No resources at the destination QP are affected.

10.7.2.6 FAST REGISTER PHYSICAL MR

The Fast Register Physical MR Operation is allowed on Non-Shared Physical Memory Regions that were created with a Consumer owned key portion of the L_Key, and any associated R_Key, for the RC, RD, UC, and XRC Service Types.

When any Service Type QP is created, the Consumer selects whether to enable Fast Register Physical MR Operations or not. If the Consumer enabled Fast Register Physical MR Operations, Fast Register Physical MR Operations must be allowed.

Fast Register Physical MR Operations must be posted to the Send Queue. Fast Register Physical MR Operations affect only local HCA

memory mapping resources and do not cause any packets to be issued over the link. No resources at the destination QP are affected.

10.7.3 WORK REQUEST CONTENTS

A Work Request contains all of the information required to perform the requested operation.

The contents of a Work Request for an operation posted to the Send Queue are described in Section [11.4.1.1 Post Send Request on page 663](#). The contents of a Work Request for an operation posted to the Receive Queue are described in Section [11.4.1.2 Post Receive Request on page 673](#).

10.7.3.1 SIGNALLED COMPLETIONS

Work Requests always generate a Work Completion by default. This is referred to as a Signaled Completion. There is a mechanism where Work Requests posted to the Send Queue may not generate a Work Completion in the associated Completion Queue. This is referred to as an Unsigned Completion. In order to use Unsigned Completions, the QP has to be configured to support Unsigned Completions and the Work Request must use the Signaling Indicator to request an Unsigned Completion. Note that if a completion error occurs, a Work Completion will always be generated, even if the signaling indicator requests an Unsigned Completion.

C10-90: The CI **shall** support both signaled and unsigned completions.

C10-91: The CI **shall** generate a CQE when a Work Request completed under any of the following conditions:

- The Work Request completed in error.
- The Work Request was submitted to the Receive Queue.
- The Work Request was submitted to a Send Queue configured for only Signaled Completions.
- The Work Request was submitted to a Send Queue configured for Unsigned Completions but the Work Request requested a Signaled Completion.

C10-92: The CI **shall not** generate a CQE when all of the following conditions have been met for a completed Work Request that was submitted to the Send Queue:

- The Send Queue has been configured to support Unsigned Completions.
- The Work Request submitted to that Send Queue set the Signaling Indicator to request an Unsigned Completion

- That Work Request completed successfully.

Work Requests using Unsigned Completions can be determined to have been completed according to the rules in [10.8.6 Unsigned Completions](#).

10.7.3.2 SCATTER/GATHER

A scatter/gather list may contain zero or more Data Segments. The buffers specified in a Work Request scatter/gather list must be registered with the Channel Interface prior to submission. These buffers must be considered to be in the scope of the Channel Interface from the time submitted to a work queue until completion of the Work Request has been confirmed. See [10.8.5 Returning Completed Work Requests](#) and [10.8.6 Unsigned Completions](#) for a full description on when the completion of a Work Request is confirmed.

C10-93: If the total sum of all of the buffer lengths exceeds the maximum message payload size specified for an RC or UC QP, the CI **shall** report an error.

C10-93.1.1: If the total sum of all the buffer lengths specified for a UD message exceeds the MTU of the port as returned by QueryHCA, the CI **shall not** emit any packets for this message. Further, the CI shall not generate an error due to this condition.

o10-51: If the CI supports RD Service, and if the total sum of all of the buffer lengths exceeds the maximum message payload size specified for an RD QP, the CI **shall** report an error.

A Data Segment is defined by a Virtual Address, L_Key and Length.

C10-94: The CI **shall** support scatter lists for Receive and RDMA Read operations.

C10-95: The CI **shall** support gather lists for Send and RDMA Write operations.

The order in which the Channel Interface accesses the memory described by a scatter/gather list is not defined by the architecture. In particular, this means that after completion of a Work Request whose scatter list contains overlapping Data Segments, the contents of the overlapped memory are undefined.

10.8 WORK REQUEST PROCESSING MODEL

10.8.1 OVERVIEW

The Work Request processing model describes how requests are submitted, processed by the HCA, and the results returned to the Consumer.

10.8.2 SUBMITTING WORK REQUESTS TO A WORK QUEUE

1
2 Work Requests are submitted to the HCA through the Verbs abstraction.
3

4 Work Queue Elements are abstract. This means that they are not accessible
5 directly by the Consumer of the Channel Interface.
6

7 The intent of the architecture is to allow an implementation to pass Work
8 Requests from a User-level Consumer process to the HCA without kernel
9 involvement.
10

11 The QP can accept Send Work Requests only when the QP is in states
12 that allow them to be submitted. The rules are as follows:
13

14 **C10-96:** The QP **shall** process Work Requests submitted to the Send
15 Queue as described in the rules that follow:
16

- 17 • Return an immediate error if the QP is in the Reset, Init and RTR
18 states.
19
- 20 • Are processed when the QP is in the RTS state.
21
- 22 • Are completed in error, assuming that processing is able to continue
23 when the QP is in the SQEr or Error state.
24
- 25 • Are enqueued but not processed when the QP is in the SQD state.
26

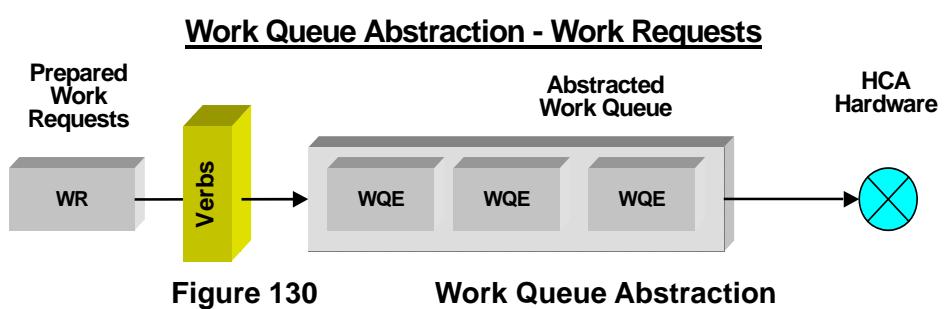
27 For QP's that are not associated with an SRQ, the QP can accept Receive
28 Work Requests only when the QP is in states that allow them to be sub-
29 mitted. The rules are as follows:
30

31 **C10-97:** This compliance statement has been obsoleted.
32

33 **C10-97.2.1:** If the QP is not associated with an SRQ, the QP **shall** pro-
34 cess Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue as described in the
35 rules that follow:
36

- 37 • Return an immediate error if the QP is in the Reset state.
38
- 39 • Are accepted, but incoming messages are not processed when the
40 QP is in the Init state.
41
- 42 • Are processed when incoming messages arrive and the QP is in the
RTR, RTS, SQD, or SQEr state.
43
- 44 • Are completed in error, assuming that processing is able to continue
when the QP is in the Error state.
45

46 Figure 130 shows the transformation of a Work Request into a WQE to be
47 processed by the HCA.
48



For QP's that are associated with an SRQ, the SRQ can accept Receive Work Requests regardless of the SRQ's state. However, if a Consumer's Post Receive Work Request exceeds the SRQ's capacity, an Immediate Error will be returned. The rules are as follows:

o10-51.2.1: If the HCA supports Shared Receive Queues, the SRQ **shall** process Work Requests submitted to it as described in the rules that follow:

- The HCA must return an Async error when an SRQ goes into an error state.
- Are accepted, but incoming messages are not processed (WQE is not retrieved from the SRQ) if the SRQ is not associated with any QP or the SRQ is in the Error state.
- Are processed when incoming messages arrive on a QP that is associated with an SRQ that is not in the error state and that QP is in the RTR, RTS, SQD, or SQEr state.
- Are accepted, but incoming messages are not processed (WQE is not retrieved from the SRQ) if the QP is in the Init, Reset, or Error state.

o10-51.2.2: If the HCA supports Shared Receive Queues and the Consumer posts a Receive WR on a QP that is associated with an SRQ, the CI **shall** return an Immediate Error.

The modifiers in the Work Request are instantiated into the next free WQE in the specified Work Queue and the CI is informed that a new WQE has been added to the queue.

10.8.2.1 SUBMITTING A LIST OF WORK REQUESTS

If the CI supports the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI must allow:

- a list of Send Queue Work Request to be submitted to the Send Queue,

- a list of Receive Queue Work Request to be submitted to the Receive Queue, and
- if the HCA supports SRQ, a list of Shared Receive Queue Work Requests to be submitted to the SRQ.

The CI must consume one WQE for each WR in the list of WRs. The CI must maintain the same order for the consumed WQEs as the order of the WRs in the list of WRs.

If the list of Work Requests are submitted to a Work Queue is larger than the number of free Work Queue Elements available on the Work Queue, the CI must return an Immediate Error. If an Immediate Error is detected in any Work Request within a list of WRs, the CI must:

- convert all WRs prior to the Immediate Error into WQEs and enqueue the WQEs onto the Work Queue;
- not convert into a WQE the WR that caused the Immediate Error;
- not convert into WQEs, any of the WR that immediately follow the WR that caused the Immediate Error;
- return the first Immediate Error encountered; and
- must return an indication of the Number of WRs that were successfully converted into WQEs and placed on the Work Queue.

10.8.3 WORK REQUEST PROCESSING

Processing of Work Requests submitted to a Work Queue are initiated in the order submitted. There is no ordering between WRs submitted to the send queue and WRs submitted to the receive queue. Send WRs are initiated in the same order they were passed to the Verbs layer with respect to other sends WRs submitted to the same send queue. Likewise, receive WRs are initiated in the same order they were passed to the Verbs layer with respect to other receive WRs submitted to the same receive queue.

Resources associated with a Work Request must be considered to be in the scope of the Channel Interface from the time the Work Request is submitted to a Work Queue until the completion for that Work Request has been confirmed. See [10.8.5 Returning Completed Work Requests](#) and [10.8.6 Unsigned Completions on page 554](#) for a description of when a Work Request completion is confirmed.

C10-98: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-98.2.1: The CI **shall** initiate Send, RDMA Read, RDMA Write and ATOMIC Operations Work Requests in the same order in which they were submitted to a single Send Queue. Work Requests posted to a Send Queue subsequent to a Bind Work Request **shall not** begin execution until the Bind Work Request completes. A Bind Work Request may begin execution before prior Work Requests have completed.

C10-99: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-99.2.1: For all Service types except RD and Service types that use an SRQ, Work Requests submitted to the same Receive Queue **shall** complete in the same order in which they were submitted.

Work Requests submitted to a single Send Queue complete in the same order as the requests were submitted, according to the Ordering Rules.

The exceptions to this rule are: 1) reliable datagrams are permitted to complete out of order on the Receive Queue 2) RC, UC and UD QPs that are associated with an SRQ may have Receive WRs completed out of order and 3) XRC SRQs may have Receive WRs completed out of order.

An SRQ can be associated with QPs that may or may not be enabled to use Reserved L_Key. When a WQE is retrieved from an SRQ that refers to memory locations through the Reserved L_Key and the targeted QP does not have Reserved L_Key enabled, the QP shall be put into the error state. The WQE that attempted the Reserved L_Key access will be completed in error, subsequent WQEs pulled from the SRQ onto the same RQ will be completed with Flushed error, and all other WQEs on the SRQ, including subsequently posted WQEs, are unaffected by the error.

10.8.3.1 RELIABLE DATAGRAM ORDERING RULES

Reliable datagrams originating from a specific Send Queue complete in the same order they were submitted when they are sent to the same Receive Queue.

o10-52: If the CI supports RD Service, Work Requests submitted to the same RD Send Queue **shall** complete in the same order in which they were submitted.

o10-53: If the CI supports RD Service, Work Requests submitted to the same RD Receive Queue **shall** complete in the same order in which they were submitted when the requests originate from the same remote RD Send Queue.

Receive completions from reliable datagrams sent from multiple Send Queues are allowed to be interleaved on the Receive Queue.

10.8.3.2 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE ORDERING RULES

If the HCA supports Shared Receive Queues, QPs associated with an SRQ, must dequeue WQEs from the SRQ in sequential order.

o10-53.2.1: If the HCA supports Shared Receive Queues, when the HCA receives a message that targets a QP associated with an SRQ, the HCA

shall retrieve the next available WQE from the SRQ and use it to receive the incoming message.

Multiple QPs that are associated with the same SRQ may dequeue WQEs from the same SRQ. As a result, multiple QPs dequeuing WQEs from a single SRQ destroys any Receive WR posting order that was present.

o10-53.2.2: If the HCA supports Shared Receive Queues:

- Work Requests submitted through the SRQ shall be returned as Work Completion through the CQ associated with the QP that received the incoming message;
- for Receive WRs submitted through the SRQ, Receive Work Completions on an RC or UC Service QP must be returned in the order the Send WRs were submitted on the remote Send Queue; and
- Successful poll of a WQE must guarantee that reposting of a WQE is possible. That is, successful poll of a Work Completion that is associated with a Work Request posted through an SRQ guarantees that posting of another Work Request to the same SRQ is possible.

10.8.3.3 SEND QUEUE ORDERING RULES

As shown in [Table 79 Work Request Operation Ordering](#), ordering semantics for WRs submitted to the Send Queue vary according to the operation type. Some operations can begin processing within the CI while other operations are still outstanding, potentially yielding out-of-order semantics for certain operation sequences. For cases enumerated below, in-order semantics can be guaranteed by setting the Fence Indicator for appropriate WRs. When the Fence Indicator is set for a given WR, that WR cannot begin to be processed until all prior RDMA Read and Atomic operations on the same Send Queue have completed.

C10-100: When the Fence Indicator has been set in a Work Request, the Send Queue shall not begin processing that Work Request until all prior RDMA Read and Atomic Operations on that Send Queue have completed.

Here are the cases where the Fence Indicator can be used to guarantee in-order semantics:

- An RDMA Read won't necessarily complete before subsequent Sends, RDMA Writes, or Atomics are initiated and observed by the target. If the target Consumer then modifies memory locations being returned by the RDMA read, the RDMA read could return the newly modified data instead of the original data. Setting the Fence Indicator for the subsequent operation in each case guarantees that the operation will not be observed by the target until all prior RDMA Reads complete.

- An RDMA Read can return data that's been modified by subsequent Sends, RDMA Writes, or Atomics if they target memory locations being returned by the RDMA Read. Setting the Fence Indicator on the subsequent operation in each case guarantees that the operation will not affect data being returned by a prior RDMA read.
- RDMA Read or Atomic operations won't necessarily complete before subsequent Sends, RDMA Writes, or Atomics are initiated and observed by the target. If one of the former operations completes in error on the initiator side because its ACKs fail to return successfully, the subsequent operation could still be observed by the target, and the target Consumer might take some undesired action. Setting the Fence Indicator on the subsequent operation in each case guarantees that it can't be observed by the target unless all prior RDMA Reads and Atomics complete successfully on the initiator side.
- RDMA Read operations may be executed at the target after subsequent Send and Invalidate operation already performed the invalidation at the target. That may cause the RDMA Read operation to fail. Setting the Fence Indicator on the subsequent operations guarantees that the RDMA Read will fully complete before the invalidation takes place.

The Bind operation has a unique ordering rule: any Work Request posted to a Send Queue subsequent to a Bind must not begin execution until the Bind operation completes. However, note that a Bind operation itself can begin execution in some cases before prior operations have necessarily completed. Also note, a Fast Register PMR or local Relaxed Ordered Invalidate operation submitted after a Bind operation, may be performed before the Bind operation is started.

o10-53.2.3: If the HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the invalidate operation may take place at any time after it has been posted to the Send Queue, but **must** take place before a completion is generated and before any subsequent WQE has begun execution.

o10-53.2.4: If the HCA supports Local Invalidate Fencing, when the Local Invalidate Fence Indicator has been set in a Local Invalidate Work Request, the Send Queue **shall not** begin processing that Work Request until all prior Work Requests on that Send Queue have completed. Additionally, the Send Queue **shall not** begin processing the Work Request immediately after the Local Invalidate Work Request, until the Local Invalidate Work Request has finished processing.

The Local Invalidate Fence Indicator can be used to guarantee in-order semantics. If the Memory Region referenced by the Local Invalidate is in use at the time the Local Invalidate operation is posted, the HCA may Invalidate the Memory Region. To prevent this from occurring, if the HCA supports fencing on Local Invalidate, the Local Invalidate Fence indicator can be set on the Local Invalidate operation. Setting the Local Invalidate

Fence indicator on the Local Invalidate will assure all previous WQEs on the same Send Queue that reference the Memory Region being Invalidated have completed before the Invalidate operation takes place.

Ordering guarantees for processing and completion notifications exist only between Work Requests submitted to the same queue. The ordering across multiple Work Queues is undefined.

C10-101: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-101.2.1: The CI **shall** provide the guarantees for processing and completion notifications between Work Requests submitted to the same Send Queue as specified by the ordering rules in [Table 79 Work Request Operation Ordering](#).

Ordering Rules:

- Receive Queues are FIFO queues with the exception of the reliable datagram and SRQ issues described above.
- Send Queues are FIFO queues, according to the rules in [Table 79 Work Request Operation Ordering](#). The Fence Indicator can be used to require strict ordering.

Table 79 **Work Request Operation Ordering**

Second Operation								
First Operation	Send	Bind Window	RDMA Write	RDMA Read	Atomic Op	Fast Register Physical MR	Local Invalidate	
	Send	#	#	#	#	#	NR	L
	Bind Window	#	#	#	#	#	NR	L
	RDMA Write	#	#	#	#	#	NR	L
	RDMA Read	F	F	F	#	F	NR	L
	Atomic Op	F	F	F	#	F	NR	L
	Fast Register Physical MR	#	#	#	#	#	#	L
	Local Invalidate	#	#	#	#	#	#	#

Table 80 Ordering Rules Key	
Symbol	Description
#	Order is always maintained.
NR	Order is not required to be maintained between the Fast Register and the previous operations.
F	Order maintained only if second operation has Fence Indicator set
L	Order maintained only if Invalidate operation has Local Invalidate Fence Indicator set

10.8.4 COMPLETION PROCESSING

The results from a Work Request operation are placed in a Completion Queue Entry (CQE) on the CQ associated with the Work Queue when the request has completed.

A CQE must be generated before a Work Completion can be returned to the Consumer. Note that not all Work Requests will generate a completion, due to unsignaled completions. The rules for when a CQE is generated are outlined in [10.8.5 Returning Completed Work Requests](#).

C10-102: For completed Work Requests that generate a Work Completion, the CI **shall** place that Work Completion on the CQ associated with the Work Queue.

A CQE is an internal representation of the Work Completion.

10.8.5 RETURNING COMPLETED WORK REQUESTS

All completions are abstracted through the Verbs. The only method of retrieving a Work Completion is through the Verbs.

Except for RD Receive Work Queues and Receive Work Queues associated with an SRQ, Work Completions are always returned in the order submitted to a given Work Queue with respect to other Work Requests on that Work Queue.

For QPs associated with an SRQ, Send Work Completions are always returned in the order submitted to a given work queue with respect to other Work Requests on that work queue. Receive Work Completions may be returned in a different order than the order submitted to the Shared Receive Queue.

Ordering rules of completion entries from multiple work queues associated with a given completion queue are not mandated by this specification.

A retrieved Work Completion is no longer in the domain of the Channel Interface. Therefore, a Work Completion can only be retrieved once.

C10-103: The CI **shall** not allow a specific Work Completion to be retrieved more than once.

The Work Completion contents are specified in [11.4.2.1 Poll for Completion on page 675](#).

A Consumer can find out when a Work Completion can be retrieved through polling or notification.

C10-104: The CI **shall** return a Work Completion for a Work Request that completed with a signaled completion.

C10-105: The CI **shall** return a Work Completion for a Work Request submitted to a Send Queue that completed in error.

C10-106: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-106.2.1: For QPs that are not associated with an SRQ, the CI **shall** return a Work Completion for the completion of a Work Request submitted to a Receive Queue.

o10-53.2.5: If the CI supports SRQ, for QPs that are associated with an SRQ, the CI **shall** return a Work Completion for the completion of a Work Request submitted to a Shared Receive Queue.

o10-53.2.6: If the CI supports SRQ, for a QP that is associated to an SRQ, Work Completions **shall** be returned to the Completion Queue that is associated with the QP's Receive Queue.

C10-107: The CI **shall not** access any buffers associated with the Work Request once the associated Work Completion has been retrieved.

10.8.5.1 FREED RESOURCE COUNT

One of the modifiers returned with the completion is a count that informs the Consumer of the number of work request resources freed by this completion. This applies only to Reliable Datagram Receive Queues. Work request resources refers to Channel Interface resources allocated on behalf of the Consumer, such as available WQEs for a given Work Queue, and not direct Consumer resources, such as buffers.

If this count is zero, this indicates that no receive queue work queue elements have been freed when this Work Completion was generated. If this count is greater than zero, the Consumer can assume that the counter indicates the number of work requests released from the RD RQ. This is

useful for the Consumer to keep track of the number of available work requests which can be outstanding.

Buffers associated with the outstanding work request associated with this work completion are no longer considered to be in the scope of the HCA, regardless of the Freed Resource Count.

For most implementations, this count is expected to be one with every work completion.

o10-54: If the CI supports RD Service, when a Work Completion associated with a Work Request posted to an RD RQ is retrieved, the CI **shall** return a count of the number of Work Request resources freed through the Verbs.

10.8.5.2 COMPLETION QUEUE ERRORS

Under certain conditions, a Completion Queue may encounter errors. Two types of CQ errors can occur: the CQ can overrun or it can become inaccessible. CQ errors are reported to the Consumer through Affiliated Asynchronous Errors, which are discussed in section [10.10.2.3 Asynchronous Errors on page 564](#).

CQ overflow occurs when the CQ attempts to generate a CQE and the CQ is already full. Inaccessible CQ is an implementation dependent error where a CQE can not be reported to the CQ, although the CQ is not full. The HCA detects CQ errors and surface them to the CI. When the consumer retrieves completions, the CI only reports good completions or indicates that the CQ is empty.

Following a CQ error, the consumer may still retrieve completions which were outstanding on the CQ at the time the error occurred. After all the outstanding completions have been returned, the CI will indicate that the CQ is empty. Corrupted CQEs are never returned to the consumer as Work Completions.

Following a CQ error, QPs can still be associated, through Create QP, with the CQ that has encountered the error. It is also allowed to modify, query and destroy QPs that are attached to a CQ that has encountered an error. Any attempt to query or resize a CQ that has encountered an error will report an immediate error. Destroy CQ is allowed on such a CQ.

When a CQ encounters an error, in order to be able to use the CQ again, the consumer should:

- Destroy all the QPs that are attached to the CQ
- Destroy the CQ
- Recreate the CQ through the Create Completion Queue verb

If the Consumer requests notification on a CQ that has experienced an Affiliated Asynchronous Error (i.e. a CQ that has overrun or become inaccessible), the CI will not report a completion event.

10.8.6 UNSIGNALLED COMPLETIONS

An unsignaled Work Request that completed successfully is confirmed when all of the following rules are met:

- A Work Completion is retrieved from the same CQ that is associated with the Send Queue to which the unsignaled Work Request was submitted.
- That Work Completion corresponds to a subsequent Work Request on the same Send Queue as the unsignaled Work Request.

C10-108: The CI **shall not** access buffers associated with an Unsigned Work Request once a Work Completion has been retrieved that corresponds to a subsequent Work Request on the same Send Queue.

10.8.7 ASYNCHRONOUS COMPLETION NOTIFICATION

The Consumer may register multiple completion notification routines, one per Completion Event, to be called when a new entry is added to the CQ using the Set Completion Event Handler Verb.

C10-109: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-109.2.1: A CI **shall** support registering a single CQ Event Handler per HCA. The CI must ensure that the Consumer can successfully set one completion event handler.

o10-54.2.1: If the CI supports the Base Queue Management Extensions, then the CI **must**:

- Support one or more Completion Event Handlers;
- Return the number of Completion Event Handlers supported by the HCA through the Query HCA verb;
- Through the Set Completion Event Handler Verb, associate a Completion Handler Address to a Completion Handler Identifier;
- Through the Set Completion Event Handler Verb, clear an existing Completion Event Handler; and
- Through the Create CQ verb, associate the Completion Handler Identifier to a CQ

C10-110: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C10-110.2.1: If HCA does not support the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI **shall** replace any previous handler associated with a

Completion Event identifier with the handler specified in a new Set Completion Event Verb notification.

o10-54.2.2: If HCA supports the Base Queue Management Extensions and the Consumer specifies a non-zero Completion Event Handler Address, the CI **shall** replace any previous handler associated with a Completion Event identifier with the handler specified in a new Set Completion Event Verb notification. If the Consumer specifies a zero Completion Event Handler Address, the CI shall clear any previous handler.

If the Consumer references an existing Completion Event Handler Identifier and clears a previous handler as described above, then the Consumer cannot use the same Completion Event Handler Identifier until it is returned from a Set Completion Event Handler Verb.

The Request Completion Notification Verb is set on a per-CQ basis. This is a one-shot notification; at most, one notification will be generated per call to this Verb. Once CQ notifications have been enabled, additional Request Completion Notification calls have no effect. The handler will be called once when the next entry is added to the CQ specified as a modifier to this Verb. The presence of Solicited Events may impact this behavior. See [11.4.2.2 Request Completion Notification on page 680](#) & [9.2.3 Solicited Event \(SE\) - 1 bit on page 260](#) for details.

C10-111: A CQ **shall** have at most one Completion Event notification request outstanding.

C10-112: A CI **shall** generate a single Completion Event when a CQ entry that satisfies the outstanding Completion Event request is added to the CQ.

C10-113: A CI **shall not** generate a Completion Event for existing CQ entries on the specified CQ at the time the completion notification request is registered.

A notification will not be generated until the next entry is added to the CQ.

The following sequence of calls should be used when using Request Completion Notification in order to ensure that a new CQ entry is not missed for the specified CQ.

- 1) Poll for Completion to dequeue existing CQ entries.
- 2) Request Completion Notification.
- 3) Poll for Completion to pick up any CQ entries that were added between the time the first Poll for Completion was called and the notification is enabled.

If a handler has not been registered, a notification will not be generated.

When the handler routine is invoked, an indication of which CQ has generated the completion notification will be supplied. Once the handler routine has been invoked, the Consumer must call Request Completion Notification again to be notified when a new entry is added to the CQ.

C10-114: For each Completion Event, the CI **shall** indicate which CQ caused the generation of that event.

The Consumer is responsible for polling the CQ to retrieve the work completion. This function is not performed automatically when the notification occurs.

10.9 PARTITIONING

This section discusses InfiniBand™ support for partitioning of an InfiniBand™ network. The Verb support for partitioning is contained in the Verbs that perform Queue Pair management, read Channel Interface (CI) content, and set it. These are documented in [11.2 Transport Resource Management on page 587](#).

In this discussion, the term “Partition Manager” (PM) refers to the function of the Subnet Manager that deals with partitioning for the CI being discussed; see [13.5 MAD Processing on page 818](#) for how SMPs are directed to that manager.

10.9.1 INTRODUCTION

Partitioning enforces isolation among systems sharing an InfiniBand™ fabric by requiring that packets contain a 16-bit Partition Key (P_Key) which must match a P_Key stored at the receiver or be discarded; see definition of “match” below ([10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#)). There are no Verbs that directly set the P_Keys sent or matched against in a CA. Verbs instead specify an index into a table of P_Keys: the P_Key_ix, specifying an entry in the P_Key Table. The contents of the P_Key Table are controlled by the subnet’s Partition Manager (PM), which sets them using Subnet Management Packets (SMPs) sent through the subnet’s Subnet Manager.

Subsections appearing below describe the P_Key Table, the matching process, and the way P_Keys are attached to packets. See [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#) for a description of the SMPs which set entries in the P_Key Table.

10.9.1.1 LIMITED AND FULL MEMBERSHIP

A collection of endnodes with the same P_Key in their P_Key Tables are referred to as being *members of a partition*, or *in a partition*. A P_Key Table can specify one of two types of partition membership: Limited or

Full. The high-order bit of the partition key is used to record the type of membership in a partition table: 0 for Limited, and 1 for Full. Limited members cannot accept information from other Limited members, but communication is allowed between every other combination of membership types.

10.9.1.2 SPECIAL P_KEYS

There are P_Keys that have special meaning: the default partition key, and the invalid partition keys.

C10-115: The P_Key value 0xFFFF **shall** represent the default partition key.

The default partition key provides Full membership in the default partition.

C10-116: The CI **shall** regard a P_Key as invalid if its low-order 15 bits are all zero. The CI **shall** mark a table entry as invalid by filling it with an invalid P_Key.

C10-117: The PM **must not** use these two P_Key values for any other purposes.

Any P_Key which is not invalid is referred to as valid. The default partition key is valid. A P_Key Table entry containing a valid P_Key is referred to as a valid P_Key Table entry.

10.9.1.3 OPERATION ACROSS SUBNETS

C10-118: Switches or Routers **shall not** modify P_Key values when packets are forwarded/routed within or between subnets.

C10-119: A packet's P_Key **must** match a P_Key stored at the destination CI or CA, or the packet **shall** be discarded; see the definition of "match" below ([10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#)).

In the above case a P_Key sourced in one subnet must be valid in another subnet. Since subnets may have different PMs, this must be arranged to happen, for example by human administration (analogous to assignment of static IP addresses) or by a program dialog between subnets' PMs. The definition of the messages used in such an inter-PM dialog is beyond the scope of this version of the specification.

10.9.2 THE PARTITION KEY TABLE (P_KEY TABLE)

C10-120: Each HCA port and switch SMA port **shall** contain a Partition Key Table (P_Key Table). The valid entries in the P_Key Table **shall** hold P_Keys for all the endnodes with which this CI can communicate.

If a switch or router supports the optional P_Key Enforcement feature, then each of its ports shall contain a Partition Key Table (P_Key Table).

C10-121: The P_Key Table size, meaning the maximum number of entries it can hold, **must** be greater than or equal to one and less than or equal to 65535.

The maximum number of entries that can be held in a P_Key Table can be obtained by using the Query HCA Verb or the NodeInfo SMP. (See [11.2.1.2 Query HCA on page 588](#) and [14.2.5.3 NodeInfo on page 894](#).)

C10-122: The CI **must not** provide any interface which allows software above the Verbs to alter the P_Key Table contents or change the validity of any entry in the P_Key Table, except through the use of SMPs.

Verbs allow host software to read entries in the P_Key Table. If the value read is an invalid partition key value, that entry is invalid.

SMPs sent to the endnode are used to read and write entries in the P_Key Table. The operations involved when a table is written are described in a later section.

C10-123: If non-volatile storage is not used to hold P_Key Table contents, then if a PM (Partition Manager) is not present, and prior to PM initialization of the P_Key Table, the P_Key Table **must** act as if it contains a single valid entry, at P_Key_ix = 0, containing the default partition key. All other entries in the P_Key Table **must** be invalid.

10.9.3 PARTITION KEY MATCHING

C10-124: The P_Key field of incoming packets received by an endnode **shall** be matched against a resident P_Key as described in the remainder of this section.

Also see [9.6.1.1.3 BTH:P_Key on page 297](#) and [18.2.1 Attributes on page 1211](#).

In the following, let M_P_Key (Message P_Key) be the P_Key in the incoming packet and E_P_Key (Endnode P_Key) be the P_Key it is being compared against in the packet's destination endnode.

- If:
 - neither M_P_Key nor E_P_Key are the invalid P_Key,
 - and the low-order 15 bits of the M_P_Key match the low order 15 bits of the E_P_Key;

- and the high order bit (membership type) of both the M_P_Key and E_P_Key are not both 0 (i.e., both are not Limited members of the partition)

then the P_Keys are said to *match*. In this case the incoming packet is accepted and processed normally.

- In all other cases the P_Keys are said to *not match*. The incoming packet must be treated as if it was sent to a nonexistent device, meaning:
 - no ACK is returned
 - optionally, a trap SMP is sent to the SM and a counter is incremented; see [10.9.4 Bad P_Key Trap and P_Key Violations Counter \(Optional\)](#)
 - there is no other effect on the target endnode.

10.9.4 BAD P_KEY TRAP AND P_KEY VIOLATIONS COUNTER (OPTIONAL)

o10-55: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

o10-55.1.1: If the CA ports and the GSI port for switches and routers support the trap SMP for P_Key Violations, then if a packet's P_Key does not match, the destination node **shall** send a trap SMP to the SM, specifying the partitioning class and the Bad P_Key Notification method, with one exception. The exception to this rule is if the port's PortInfo:MulticastPKey-TrapSuppressionEnabled is set to 1, the packet is a multicast packet, and the reason for the P_Key mismatch is that both the packet's and the port's P_Keys are limited members of the same partition, then the destination node **shall not** send a trap. If a trap is sent, the body of the trap SMP **must** contain the offending packet's headers fields as specified in [Table 149, "Traps," on page 887](#) and [Table 157, "Notice DataDetails For Traps 257 and 258," on page 892](#). Like all traps, this one **shall not** be sent at a frequency faster than the Subnet Timeout.

o10-56: If the CA ports and the GSI port for switches and routers support the trap SMP for P_Key Violations, then if another P_Key mismatch occurs before the trap can be sent, the data for the new mismatch **shall** replace the previously stored data.

o10-57: If the CA ports and the GSI port for switches and routers support a P_Key Violations counter, then it **shall** have the following characteristics:

- Its minimum size is one bit; its maximum size is 16 bits (unsigned).
- It is incremented whenever the P_Key on a message arriving on a given port does not match (as described in [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#)).

- When its value reaches all 1s, further incrementing does not change its value: i.e., it saturates.
- It is initialized by power on reset to zero.

The P_Key Violations counter can be read and set by using a SMP that accesses P_Key Violations component of the PortInfo attribute; see [14.2.5.1 Notices and Traps on page 887](#).

10.9.5 CI PARTITION SUPPORT

C10-125: Except for the subnet management QP (QP0) and QPs providing RD (Reliable Datagram) or Raw Datagram service, a P_Key **must** be associated with each QP before the QP is used. If a CI has multiple ports, the P_Key Table to which the P_Key index refers **shall** be the P_Key Table of the port that the QP is currently using.

This association is done through Verbs that specify the P_Key_ix of the key to use. If the CI supports automatic path migration, then both the primary and alternate P_Key_ix should map to the same partition key; otherwise APM may not function properly.

C10-126: The CI **shall** attach a QP's P_Key to all packets sent from the QP's send queue, except for SMPs, raw datagram packets and packets sent from RD QPs.

SMPs are always sent with the default P_Key, Raw datagram packets do not contain a P_Key, and packets from an RD QP get their P_Keys from the EE context associated with the RD QP.

C10-127: The CI **shall** compare the QP's P_Key to the P_Key contained in all incoming packets, except for raw packets and packets destined for QP0, QP1, and QPs providing RD service. See Section [10.9.8 Partition Enforcement on Management Queue Pairs on page 562](#) for rules on P_Key validation in incoming packets on QP0 and QP1.

The comparison is described in [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#). The exceptions to this are described in [10.9.8 Partition Enforcement on Management Queue Pairs](#) and [10.9.5.1 EE Context \(Reliable Datagram\) Support](#).

10.9.5.1 EE CONTEXT (RELIABLE DATAGRAM) SUPPORT

o10-58: If the CI supports the RD Service, then it **must** associate a P_Key with each EE Context before the EE Context is used. If a CI has multiple ports, the P_Key Table to which the P_Key index refers **shall** be the P_Key Table of the port that the EE Context is currently using.

o10-59: If the CI supports the RD Service, then the CI **must** attach an EE Context's P_Key to all outgoing Reliable Datagram (RD) packets emitted using that EE Context. All incoming packets using a given EE context

shall be compared with that EE Context's P_Key as described in [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#).

If the CI supports automatic path migration, then both the primary and alternate P_Key_ix should map to the same partition key; otherwise APM may not function properly.

As stated in that section: if the P_Keys match, the packet is processed normally; otherwise it is silently discarded and, optionally, a trap is issued and the Bad P_Key Counter is incremented as described in that section.

RD service is not used on management queue pairs, so this EE Context support does not apply to them.

10.9.5.2 PARTITION KEY CHANGES

C10-128: When the PM sends a message to a CI port requesting a change to the value of a P_Key Table element, the CI **must** return a response message indicating that the action has either been carried out successfully or not performed for some reason.

C10-129: The CI **shall** guarantee that, after the point in time when it sends a response message to the PM indicating success, the updated P_Key Table values will be used to process all subsequent incoming and outgoing packets traversing the associated port.

This behavior may have begun prior to the PM's receiving the success reply.

10.9.6 TCA PARTITION SUPPORT

C10-130: TCA support for partitioning **must** be the same as that for CIs, with the exception that association of a P_Key with a queue **shall** be done in response to messages that initiate creation of queue pairs, as part of establishing communication with another endnode.

In all other respects, the TCA behaves exactly like a CI in terms of multiple ports, incoming packets, outgoing packets, and changes to the P_Key Table.

10.9.7 FABRIC PARTITION SUPPORT

The switches in the InfiniBand™ fabric may optionally also enforce partitioning. How P_Keys are loaded into switches and how they are used is described in several sections of the chapter describing switches ([18.2.4.2.1 Inbound P_Key Enforcement on page 1215](#) and [18.2.4.4.1 Outbound P_Key Enforcement on page 1223](#)).

10.9.8 PARTITION ENFORCEMENT ON MANAGEMENT QUEUE PAIRS

1
2
3
4
5
6
The two types of management queues each treat partition enforcement in
a different way.

7
8
9
10
C10-131: Packets sent to the Subnet Management Interface QP **shall** al-
ways be accepted, regardless of the P_Key contained in the packet.

11
12
Isolation and security of management communication are not provided by
partitioning, but instead by checking of the Management Key.

13
14
15
16
Packets sent from a Subnet Management Interface QP may have any
P_Key; the default P_Key is used by convention, as described in the man-
agement sections.

17
18
19
20
C10-132: Packets sent to the General Service Interface QP (QP1) **shall**
be accepted if the P_Key in the packet matches any valid P_Key in the
P_Key Table of the port on which the packet arrived. Matching is defined
in [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching](#).

21
22
23
As stated in that section: if the P_Keys match, the packet is processed
normally; otherwise it is silently discarded and, optionally, a trap is issued
and the Bad P_Key Counter is incremented as described in that section.

24
25
26
C10-133: Packets sent from the Send Queue of a GSI QP **shall** attach a
P_Key associated with that QP, just as a P_Key is associated with non-
management QPs.

27
28
29
C10-134: Each switch **shall** also check P_Keys on its GSI QP. Switches
shall support a P_Key table with at least one entry against which the
P_Key of packets destined for the switch's GSI **shall** be matched, ac-
cording to the rules as stated in [C10-132](#): above.

10.9.9 RELATED ENFORCEMENT OF MANAGEMENT MESSAGE CHECKING

30
31
32
33
34
Checking of the M_Key (see [14.2.4 Management Key on page 877](#)) can
optionally be used to prevent anything but an authorized subnet manager
from reading any SM data from the SMI, and when the protection test fails,
silently discarding the packet that failed. Similarly preventing the writing of
SM data through the SMI, with silent discard, is mandatory.

35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
In addition, it is an option to store the M_Key(s), the M_KeyProtectBits
and the M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported, which control M_Key checking
and the lease period across power cycles (see [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#)). Thus, for example, system initialization techniques cannot assume
that a constant default value for that data is present except for first-power-
on from the factory.

10.10 ERROR HANDLING SEMANTICS AND MECHANISMS

This section describes the types of errors that are detected at the Channel interface and the response that is generated when those error events occur.

10.10.1 ERROR TYPES

Three classes of errors reported through the Verbs have been defined: immediate errors, completion errors and asynchronous errors. Each of these error classes are described in more detail under their respective headings within [10.10.2 Error Handling Mechanisms](#). A brief description of each error class follows.

Immediate errors are returned as status from the Verbs.

Completion errors are returned to the Verbs Consumer as status within a Work Completion.

Asynchronous errors are returned through an event handling mechanism.

10.10.2 ERROR HANDLING MECHANISMS

This section describes the mechanisms used to notify the Verb Consumer of errors in the requested operations.

10.10.2.1 IMMEDIATE ERRORS

C10-135: The CI **shall** return Immediate errors upon return of control from the Verb to the Consumer.

The details of these error types are included with each Verb described in the Verbs chapter.

C10-136: If an immediate error is returned from a Verb involved in posting Work Requests to a queue, the CI **shall** ensure that the Work Request has not been posted to the queue.

10.10.2.2 COMPLETION ERRORS

C10-137: A Work Request or WQE that is “completed in error” **shall** have the appropriate completion error returned in the Work Completion status.

The complete list of errors that can be returned in the Work Completion status is described in the Verbs chapter under the Completion Queue Operations ([11.4.2.1 Poll for Completion on page 675](#)).

There are two classes of completion errors: Interface checks and processing errors. An interface check is an error in the information supplied to the Channel Interface detected before data is placed onto the link. A

processing error is an error encountered during the processing of the work request by the Channel Interface.

10.10.2.3 ASYNCHRONOUS ERRORS

Consumers are notified about asynchronous errors through an asynchronous notification mechanism. In order to be notified when asynchronous errors occur, the Consumer must register a handler using the Set Asynchronous Event Handler Verb.

C10-138: After the asynchronous event handler is registered, all subsequent asynchronous errors **shall** result in a call to the error handler. Asynchronous errors that occur before the error handler is registered **shall** be lost.

The details of these errors are discussed in [11.6.3.2 Affiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 692](#) and [11.6.3.4 Unaffiliated Asynchronous Errors on page 695](#).

C10-139: Only one error handler **shall** be registered per HCA. Subsequent calls to the Set Asynchronous Error Handler Verb **shall** cause the previous handler address to be overwritten with the new handler address.

There are two Asynchronous error types:

- Unaffiliated Asynchronous Error. Not related to any specific WQ or CQ.

C10-140: This compliance statement has been deleted.

- Affiliated Asynchronous Error. Related to a specific WQ, CQ or EE context and unable to report the error in a completion. The QP or EE context is transitioned to the Error State.

10.10.3 EFFECTS OF ERRORS ON QP SERVICE TYPES

The different types of IB errors defined have varying effects on queue processing dependent upon the QP's Service Type.

It is important to note that catastrophic errors on the local QP have no direct effect on the remote QP. No attempt is made to send a message below the Verbs to tear down a connection just because a QP has encountered an error.

10.10.3.1 RELIABLE CONNECTION QPs:

C10-141: Immediate errors **shall not** affect QP processing since the Work Request never gets posted to the QP.

C10-142: For Send Queue completion errors, the Work Request on the Send Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by

the CI. The QP **shall be** placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work Requests **shall** be completed in error

In the case of local send queue errors, any and all Work Requests on the Send Queue in which the error occurred are completed in error by the Channel Interface. If the local error was an interface check, the remote, corresponding Receive Queue will not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion error. If the local error was a processing error, the remote, corresponding Receive Queue may or may not complete a Work Request in error. The condition of the local and remote memory when a completion error occurs on the send queue for RDMA and atomic operations is specified in [10.3.1.7 Error](#).

C10-143: For local Receive Queue completion errors, the Work Request on the Receive Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI. The QP **shall be** placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work Requests **shall** be completed in error.

C10-144: Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the QP processing being halted such that outstanding Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The QP **shall** be transitioned to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue **shall** be halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall** not be returned through the CQ.

C10-145: [Table 81 Completion Error Handling for RC Send Queues](#) and [Table 82 Completion Error Handling for RC Receive Queues](#) are a more detailed description of the RC error handling actions that **must** be supported by the CI according to the error and Work Queue type.

Descriptions of the error types used in the table are contained in [11.6.2 Completion Return Status on page 687](#).

Table 81 Completion Error Handling for RC Send Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State
Bad Response	Processing	Error	None
Local Length	Interface	Error	None
Local Length	Processing	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Interface	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	None
Local Protection	Interface	Error	None

Table 81 Completion Error Handling for RC Send Queues (Continued)

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State
Local Protection	Processing	Error	None
Memory Mgt. Operation	Interface	Error	None
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	Error	Error
Remote Access	Processing	Error	Error
Remote Operation	Processing	Error	Error
RNR NAK Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	Error	None
Transport Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

Table 82 Completion Error Handling for RC Receive Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local QP state	Effect on remote QP state
Local Access	Processing	Error	Error when NAK received
Local Length	Processing	Error	Error when NAK received
Local Protection	Processing	Error	Error when NAK received
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	Error when NAK received
Memory Mgt Operation	Interface	Error	None ^a
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	Error	Error when NAK received
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

a. In the case of Memory Management Operation Error on the local receive queue, no explicit NAK is sent. Therefore, there is no direct impact on the remote QP. However, the local QP transitions into the Error state as a result of this error, which may cause the remote QP to timeout while executing subsequent WQEs. Therefore, a remote QP timeout error may result when the local QP encounters a Memory Management Operation Error on its Receive Queue.

10.10.3.2 RELIABLE DATAGRAM QPs:

o10-60: If the CI supports RD Service, immediate errors **shall** have no effect on QP/EE processing since the Work Request never gets posted to the QP/EE.

o10-61: If the CI supports RD Service, completion errors on a Send Queue **shall** result in Send Queue processing being halted and the Send Queue state **shall** transition to the Send Queue Error State, as per the

state diagram. The Work Request where the error occurred **shall** be completed in error.

In the case of local send queue errors, any and all Work Requests on the Send Queue in which the error occurred are completed in error by the Channel Interface. If the local error was an interface check, the remote, corresponding Receive Queue will not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion error. If the local error was a processing error, the remote, corresponding Receive Queue may or may not complete a Work Request in error. The condition of the local and remote memory when a completion error occurs on the send queue for RDMA and atomic operations is specified in [10.3.1.6 Send Queue Error \(SQEr\)](#).

o10-62: If the CI supports RD Service, for local Receive Queue completion errors, the Work Request on the Receive Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI. All subsequent Work Requests **shall not** be affected by the error.

o10-63: If the CI supports RD Service, completion errors **shall** have no effect on the EE Context State.

o10-64: If the CI supports RD Service, Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the QP processing being halted such that outstanding Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The QP **shall** transition to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue **shall be** halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall** not be returned through the CQ.

o10-65: If the CI supports RD Service, when an Affiliated Asynchronous Error is associated only with the QP, the error **shall** have no effect on the EE context. If an Affiliated Error is associated with the EE context, the EE context **shall** transition to the Error state.

o10-66: If the CI supports RD Service, [Table 83 Completion Error Handling for RD Send Queues](#) and [Table 84 Completion Error Handling for RD Receive Queues](#) are a more detailed description of the RD error handling actions that **must** be supported by the CI for RD:

Table 83 **Completion Error Handling for RD Send Queues**

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State	Effect on Local EE State	Effect on Remote EE State	Error Handling Action
Bad Response	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1

Table 83 Completion Error Handling for RD Send Queues (Continued)

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State	Effect on Local EE State	Effect on Remote EE State	Error Handling Action
Invalid EE Context Number	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Invalid EE Context State	Processing	SQ Error	Indeterminate	EE Error	None	1,3
Local EE Context Operation	Processing	SQ Error	Indeterminate	EE Error	None	1,3
Local Length	Interface	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Local Length	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Local Protection	Interface	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Local Protection	Processing	SQ Error	Rcv WC Err	None	None	1, 2, 4
Local QP Operation	Interface	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Local QP Operation	Processing	SQ Error	Rcv WC Err	None	None	1, 2, 4
Local RDD Violation	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Memory Mgt Operation	Interface	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Remote Access	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	SQ Error	None if 1st packet. Opt Rcv WC Err if other than 1st packet.	None	None	1, 2
Remote Invalid RD Request	Processing	SQ Error	None if 1st packet. Opt Rcv WC Err if other than 1st packet.	None	None	1, 2
Remote Operation	Processing	SQ Error	Error	None	None	1,2
RNR NAK Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	SQ Error	None	None	None	1
Transport Timeout Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	SQ Error	None	Error	None	1
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None	None	None	None

Table 84 Completion Error Handling for RD Receive Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local QP state	Effect on remote QP state	Effect on local EE state	Effect on remote EE state	Error Handling Action
Invalid EE Context State	Processing	Rcv WC Err	SQ Error	EE Error	EE Error	1, 2, 3
Local EE Context Operation	Processing	Rcv WC Err	SQ Error	EE Error	EE Error	1, 2, 3
Local Length	Processing	Rcv WC Err	SQ Error	None	None	1,2
Local Protection	Processing	Rcv WC Err	SQ Error	None	None	1, 2
Local QP Operation	Processing	Rcv WC Err	SQ Error	None	None	1, 2
Remote Aborted	Processing	Rcv WC Err	Indeterminate ^a	None	None	1 ^b ,2
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	None if 1st packet. Opt Rcv WC Err if other than 1st packet.	SQ Error	None	None	1, 2
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None	None	None	None

a. May be in SQError or may retry the message later using a different RQ WQE.

b. Action 1 will only happen in the case where the requester abandoned the operation.

Error Handling Actions:

Uninvolved SQs and RQs are unaffected unless they attempt to use an EE-context or QP that is in the error state.

- 1) The SQ active over the EE-context at the time the error occurred goes to the SQEr state.
 - Receives for the RQ associated with the local SQ placed in SQEr state continue as normal (i.e. are not completed in error, unless they also experience a separate error).
 - Remainder of the WQEs in the SQ which experienced the error are returned in error via Work Completions (WCs).
- 2) RQ active over the EE-context at the time the error occurred has the WQE which experienced the error returned in error via a WC. The state of the QP associated with the RQ is not affected.
 - All other WQEs in that RQ continue as normal (i.e. are not completed in error, unless they also experience an error).
 - Sends for the SQ associated with the local RQ continue as normal (i.e. are not completed in error, unless they also experience a separate error).

- 3) Local EE-context is placed in the error state. Remote EE-context state is indeterminate (i.e. may not be in the error state, for example as a result of a source timeout).
 - EE-context cannot be resumed.
 - Must re-establish EE-context.
- 4) When a Local Protection or Operation SQ Error occurs on RD QPs, the CI on the local side shall emit an InfiniBand no-op (RDMA Write of length 0 with no immediate data) below the Verbs to the RD RQ associated with the local error, assuming the RD channel is still operational. This will cause the in-process RQ Work Request on the remote side to be completed in error. The Receive side cannot depend on receiving that message.

10.10.3.3 UNRELIABLE CONNECTED QPs:

C10-146: Immediate errors **shall** have no effect on QP processing since the Work Request never gets posted to the QP.

C10-147: Completion errors on a Send Queue **shall** result in Send Queue processing being halted and the Send Queue state **shall** transition to the Send Queue Error State, as per the state diagram. The Work Request where the error occurred **shall** be completed in error.

In the case of local send queue errors, any and all Work Requests on the Send Queue in which the error occurred are completed in error by the Channel Interface. The remote, corresponding Receive Queue will not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion error. The condition of the remote memory when a completion error occurs on the send queue for RDMA Write operations is specified in [10.3.1.6 Send Queue Error \(SQEr\)](#).

C10-148: For local Receive Queue completion errors, the Work Request on the Receive Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI. The QP is placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work Requests **shall** be completed in error.

C10-149: [Table 85 Completion Error Handling for UC Send Queues](#) and [Table 86 Completion Error Handling for UC Receive Queues](#) are a more detailed description of the UC error handling actions that **must** be supported by the CI according to the error and Work Queue type.

Descriptions of the error types used in the table are contained in [11.6.2 Completion Return Status on page 687](#).

Table 85 Completion Error Handling for UC Send Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State
Local Length	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local QP Operation	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	SQ Error	None
Memory Mgt Operation	Interface	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

Table 86 Completion Error Handling for UC Receive Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local QP state	Effect on remote QP state
Aborted	Processing	None	None
Local Length	Processing	Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

C10-150: Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the QP processing being halted such that outstanding Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The QP **shall** transition to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue **shall be** halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall not** be returned through the CQ.

10.10.3.4 UNRELIABLE DATAGRAM QPs:

C10-151: Immediate errors **shall** have no effect on QP processing since the Work Request never gets posted to the QP.

C10-152: Completion errors on a Send Queue **shall** result in Send Queue processing being halted and the Send Queue state **shall** transition to the Send Queue Error State, as per the state diagram. The Work Request where the error occurred **shall** be completed in error.

In the case of local send queue errors, any and all Work Requests on the Send Queue in which the error occurred are completed in error by the Channel Interface. The remote, corresponding Receive Queue will not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion error.

C10-153: For local Receive Queue completion errors, the Work Request on the Receive Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI. The QP is placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work Requests **shall** be completed in error.

C10-154: [Table 87 Completion Error Handling for UD Send Queues](#) and [Table 88 Completion Error Handling for UD Receive Queues](#) provide a more detailed description of the UD error handling actions that **must** be supported by the CI according to the error and Work Queue type.

Descriptions of the error types used in the table are contained in [11.6.2 Completion Return Status on page 687](#).

Table 87 Completion Error Handling for UD Send Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State
Local QP Operation	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	SQ Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

Table 88 Completion Error Handling for UD Receive Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local QP state	Effect on remote QP state
Aborted	Processing	None	None
Local Protection	Processing	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

C10-155: Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the QP processing being halted such that outstanding Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The QP **shall** transition to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue **shall be** halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has over-

flowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall not** be returned through the CQ.

10.10.3.5 RAW QPs:

2
3
4
C10-156: Immediate errors **shall** have no effect on QP processing since
5 the Work Request never gets posted to the QP.

6
7
8
C10-157: Completion errors on a Send Queue **shall** result in Send Queue
9 processing being halted and the Send Queue state **shall** transition to the
10 Send Queue Error State, as per the state diagram. The Work Request
where the error occurred **shall** be completed in error.

11 In the case of local send queue errors, any and all Work Requests on
12 the Send Queue in which the error occurred are completed in error by
13 the Channel Interface. The remote, corresponding Receive Queue will
14 not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion
15 error.

16 **C10-158:** For local Receive Queue completion errors, the Work Request
17 on the Receive Queue in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in
18 error by the CI. The QP is placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work
19 Requests **shall** be completed in error.

20 **C10-159:** [Table 89 Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Send](#)
21 [Queues](#) and [Table 90 Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Re-](#)
22 [ceive Queues](#) provide a more detailed description of the UC error han-
23 dling actions that **must** be supported by the CI according to the error and
24 Work Queue type.

25 Descriptions of the error types used in the table are contained in [11.6.2](#)
26 [Completion Return Status on page 687](#).

27
28 **Table 89 Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Send Queues**

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on Local QP State	Effect on Remote QP State
Local Length	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local QP Operation	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Interface	SQ Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	SQ Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

Table 90 Completion Error Handling for Raw Datagram Receive Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local QP state	Effect on remote QP state
Local Length	Processing	Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

C10-160: Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the QP processing being halted such that outstanding Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The QP **shall** transition to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue **shall be** halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall not** be returned through the CQ.

10.10.3.6 EXTENDED RELIABLE CONNECTED

o10-66.1.1: If the CI supports XRC service, Immediate errors **shall not** affect XRC Initiator QP or XRC SRQ processing since the Work Request never gets posted to the QP.

o10-66.1.2: If the CI supports XRC service, the Work Request on the XRC Initiator QP in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI. The QP **shall** be placed in the Error State. All subsequent Work Requests **shall** be completed in error.

In the case of local XRC Initiator QP errors, any and all Work Requests on the XRC INI QP in which the error occurred are completed in error by the Channel Interface. If the local error was an interface check, the remote corresponding XRC SRQ will not consume a Work Request and thus will not surface a completion error. If the local error was a processing error, the remote corresponding XRC SRQ may or may not complete a Work Request in error. The condition of the local and remote memory when a completion error occurs on the send queue for RDMA and atomic operations is specified in [10.3.1.7 Error on page 492](#).

o10-66.1.3: If the CI supports XRC service, the Work Request on the XRC SRQ in which the error occurred **shall** be completed in error by the CI.

o10-66.1.4: If the CI supports XRC service, completion errors **shall** have no effect on the XRC TGT QP state.

o10-66.1.5: If the CI supports XRC service, Affiliated Asynchronous Errors **shall** result in the processing being halted on the XRC object (XRC INI QP, XRC TGT QP or XRC SRQ) in question, such that outstanding

Work Requests are not completed successfully by the Channel Interface. The XRC object **shall** be transitioned to the Error State. Any request in progress on the corresponding Work Queue (if any) **shall** be halted and returned with a completion error, unless the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible. If the CQ has overflowed or become inaccessible, then request in progress **shall not** be returned through the CQ.

o10-66.1.6: If the CI supports XRC service, when an Affiliated Asynchronous Error is associated only with the XRC SRQ, the error **shall** have no effect on the XRC TGT QP. If an Affiliated Asynchronous Error is associated with the XRC TGT QP, the XRC TGT QP **shall** transition to the Error state.

o10-66.1.7: If the CI supports XRC service, [Table 91 Completion Error Handling for XRC Initiator QPs on page 575](#) and [Table 92 Completion Error Handling for XRC SRQs on page 576](#) are a more detailed description of the XRC error handling actions that must be supported by the CI according to the error and Work Queue type.

Descriptions of the error types used in the table are contained in [11.6.2 Completion Return Status on page 687](#).

Table 91**Completion Error Handling for XRC Initiator QPs**

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local XRC INI QP	Effect on remote XRC TGT QP ^a
Bad Response	Processing	Error	None
Local Length	Interface	Error	None
Local Length	Processing	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Interface	Error	None
Local QP Operation	Processing	Error	None
Local Protection	Interface	Error	None
Local Protection	Processing	Error	None
Memory Management Operation	Interface	Error	None
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	Error	Error
Remote Access	Processing	Error	Error
Remote Operation	Processing	Error	Error
XRC Violation Error	Processing	Error	Error
RNR NAK Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	Error	None

Table 91**Completion Error Handling for XRC Initiator QPs**

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local XRC INI QP	Effect on remote XRC TGT QP ^a
Transport Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	Error	None
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	None

a. Requestor completion errors can be associated with remote XRC SRQ WQE completion errors, but will not cause the remote XRC SRQ to go to Error state.

Table 92**Completion Error Handling for XRC SRQs**

Error Type	Completion Type	Effect on local XRC TGT SRQ ^a	Effect on local XRC TGT QP	Effect on remote XRC INI QP
Local Access	Processing	None	Error	Error when NAK received
Local Length	Processing	None	Error	Error when NAK received
Local Protection	Processing	None	Error	Error when NAK received
Local QP Operation	Processing	None ^b	Error ^b	Error when NAK received
Memory Management Operation	Processing	None	Error	None ^c
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	None	Error	Error when NAK received
XRC Violation Error	Processing	None	Error	Error when NAK received
Work Request Flushed	Processing	None	Error	None

a. In general on the responder side, errors will cause a particular WQE (if one is used for the operation) on an XRC SRQ to be completed in error, but will not cause the XRC SRQ itself to go to Error state. However, such an error might also cause the XRC TGT QP to go into Error state. That in turn may cause other WQEs on the same or different XRC SRQ to be completed in error.

b. In the case of a Responder Local QP Error (see [Table 94](#) below), the XRC SRQ will not change state, but the XRC TGT QP will go to the Error state. However, if caused by a Malformed WQE, the opposite will occur (XRC SRQ will go to the Error state and be flushed and the XRC TGT QP will be unaffected).

c. In the case of Memory Management Operation Error on the local receive queue, no explicit NAK is sent. Therefore, there is no direct impact on the remote XRC INI QP. However, since the XRC TGT QP does go to Error state, the XRC INI QP may experience timeout behavior.

10.10.4 EFFECTS OF TRANSPORT LAYER ERRORS

The different types of errors defined in the Transport Layer [9.9 Error detection and handling on page 422](#) have varying effects on the Software Transport Interface. Some Transport Layer errors are not visible through the CI. Other Transport Layer errors cause corresponding error(s) to be

reported through the Verbs. In general, a single Transport Layer error generates only one corresponding error completion (though other work requests may be flushed) or a single asynchronous error per resource (QP, EEC or CQ) involved in the error.

C10-160.2.1: A requestor CI **shall** conform to the behavior specified in [Table 93: Verbs Level Behavior for Requester Side Errors](#) for all Transport Layer errors specified in [Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 428](#).

Table 93**Verbs Level Behavior for Requester Side Errors**

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
Packet Sequence Error - Retry Limit Exceeded	RC, XRC	Transport Retry Counter Exceeded completion QP to Error state
Implied NAK Sequence Error - Retry Limit Exceeded		other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Local ACK Timeout Error - Retry Limit Exceeded	RD	Transport Retry Counter Exceeded completion QP to SQEr state EEC to Error state ^c other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
RNR NAK Retry Error - Retry Limit Exceeded	RC, XRC	RNR Retry Counter Exceeded completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	RNR Retry Counter Exceeded completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Unsupported OpCode Unexpected OpCode	RC, XRC	Remote Invalid Request Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Remote Invalid Request Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Local Memory Protection Error	RC, XRC	Local Protection Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	other	Local Protection Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
R_Key Violation	RC, XRC	Remote Access Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Remote Access Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion

Table 93 Verbs Level Behavior for Requester Side Errors (Continued)

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
Remote Operation Error	RC, XRC	Remote Operation Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Remote Operation Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Local Operation Error - WQE	RC, XRC	Local QP Operation Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Local QP Operation Error completion OR Local EE Context Operation Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	other	Local QP Operation Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Local Operation Error - Affiliated or Unaffiliated (only one of these cases will occur)	QP	Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	EEC	Local EE Context Catastrophic Asynchronous Error EEC to Error state ^c
	unknown resource	Local Catastrophic Asynchronous Error
Local RDD Violation	RD	Local RDD Violation Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Remote RDD Violation Remote Q_Key Violation	RD	Remote Invalid RD Request completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Length Error	RC, XRC	Local Length Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Local Length Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Bad Response	RC, XRC	Bad Response Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	RD	Bad Response Error completion QP to SQEr state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion

Table 93 Verbs Level Behavior for Requester Side Errors (Continued)

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
CQ Overflow	all	Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error AND CQ Asynchronous Error ^d QP to Error state current and other WQEs: completion can't be reported
Remote XRC Domain Violation Remote XRCETH Violation	XRC	XRC Violation Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs on Send Queue: Work Request Flushed Error completion
All other combinations of Transport Error and Service/Case from Table 56		no effect

- a. Transport errors in this table are those cases from [Table 59 Requester Side Error Behavior on page 428](#) with requester class B, C, D, or F behavior.
- b. If a particular transport service type is not listed, then either the error case does not apply to that service type or the error does not manifest any verb level behavior for that service type. For XRC, "QP" in the Service/Case or Verb Level Behavior columns refers to a XRC INI QP, and the "Send Queue" is that associated with an XRC INI QP.
- c. When other RD QPs linked to this EEC in the Error state request Send Queue service, those RD QPs will return an Invalid EE Context State completion and transition to the SQEr state.
- d. CQ Overflows are to be reported on both the CQ that overflowed as well as all QPs which caused an overflow to occur. When a CQ overflows for the first time, asynchronous errors are generated on both the QP generating the CQE as well as on the overflowing CQ. If the CQ overflows again due to the same QP, no new error is required to be generated. However, if the CQ overflows again due to a different QP (which has previously not caused an overflow), then the Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error must be reported on the new QP.

C10-160.2.2: A responder CI **shall** conform to the behavior specified in [Table 94: Verbs Level Behavior for Responder Side Errors](#) for all Transport Layer errors specified in [Table 61 Responder Error Behavior Summary on page 436](#).

Table 94 Verbs Level Behavior for Responder Side Errors

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
Malformed WQE	XRC	Local QP Operation Error completion XRC SRQ to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	other	Local QP Operation Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion

Table 94 Verbs Level Behavior for Responder Side Errors (Continued)

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
Unsupported or Reserved Opcode Out of Sequence Opcode - current packet is First or Only Out of Sequence Opcode - current packet is not First or Only	RC	Remote Invalid Request Error completion (if using Receive Queue WQE) OR Invalid Request Local Work Queue Asynchronous Error ^c QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
		Remote Invalid Request Error completion (if using Receive WQE) Invalid Request Local Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
	XRC	Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
Misaligned Atomic Too many RDMA Read or Atomic Requests	RC	Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
		Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
Resync Opcode Incomplete WQE	RD	Remote Aborted Error completion (or reset WQE for reuse)
R_Key Violation	RC	Local Access Error completion (if using Receive Queue WQE) OR Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error ^c QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
		Local Access Error completion (if using Receive WQE) Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
Local QP Error	XRC	Local QP Operation Error completion (if using Receive WQE) Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
		Local QP Operation Error completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
XRC Domain Violation	XRC	XRC Violation Error completion (if using Receive WQE) XRC Domain Violation Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
Invalid XRCETH	XRC	Invalid XRCETH Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f

Table 94 Verbs Level Behavior for Responder Side Errors (Continued)

Transport Error(s) ^a	Service/ Case ^b	Verbs Level Behavior
Length Errors	RC	Remote Invalid Request Error completion (if using Receive Queue WQE) OR Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error ^c QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	UD with SRQ	May cause Aborted Error completion on one or more WQEs
	UC with SRQ	May cause Aborted Error completion on one or more WQEs
	RD	Remote Invalid Request Error completion (if using Receive Queue WQE)
	XRC	Remote Invalid Request Error completion (if using Receive WQE) Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
CQ Overflow	XRC	Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC SRQ) CQ Asynchronous Error ^d XRC SRQ to Error state current and other WQEs: completion cannot be reported Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
	other	Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error AND CQ Asynchronous Error ^d QP to Error state current and other WQEs: completion cannot be reported
Local EEC Error	RD	Local EE Context Operation completion (if using Receive Queue WQE) OR Local EE Context Catastrophic Asynchronous Error ^c EEC to Error state ^e
Local XRC TGT QP Error	XRC	Local QP Operation Error completion (if using Receive WQE) Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
Remote Invalidate Error	RC	Memory Management Operation completion QP to Error state other WQEs: Work Request Flushed Error completion
	XRC	Memory Management Operation completion Local Access Violation Work Queue Asynchronous Error (affiliated with the XRC TGT QP) XRC TGT QP to Error state ^f
All other combinations of Transport Error and Service/Case from Table 58		no effect

- a. Transport errors in this table are those cases from section 9.9.3 - Table 58 with responder class A, C, E, F, G, H, J, K, L or M behavior. 1
- b. If a particular transport service type is not listed, then either the error case does not apply to that service type or the error does not manifest any verb level behavior for that service type. 2
- c. If a Receive Queue WQE was consumed by this operation, then a completion error is generated. Otherwise, the asynchronous error is generated. 3
- d. CQ Overflows are to be reported on both the CQ that overflowed as well as all QPs which caused an overflow to occur. When a CQ overflows for the first time, asynchronous errors are generated on both the QP generating the CQE as well as on the overflowing CQ. If the CQ overflows again due to the same QP, no new error is required to be generated. However, if the CQ overflows again due to a different QP (which has previously not caused an overflow), then the Local Work Queue Catastrophic Asynchronous Error must be reported on the new QP. 4
- e. When other RD QPs linked to this EEC in the Error state request Send Queue service, those RD QPs will return an Invalid EE Context State completion and transition to the SQE state. 5
- f. As a result of placing the XRC TGT QP into the Error state, other receive WQEs on the same or different XRC SRQ may be completed in error. 6

IBTA

CHAPTER 11: SOFTWARE TRANSPORT VERBS

11.1 VERBS INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

The Verbs described in this chapter provide an abstract definition of the functionality provided to a host by a host channel interface. Host CIs which are compliant with this specification must exhibit the semantic behavior described by the Verbs.

Since the Verbs define the behavior of the host CI, they may influence the design of software constructs, such as application programming interfaces (APIs), which provide access to the host CI. However, this specification explicitly does not define any such API. In particular, there is no requirement that an API used with a compliant host CI be semantically consistent with the Verbs.

11.1.1 VERB EXTENSIONS

This version of the specification adds the following list of Post-1.1 Verb Extensions to the InfiniBand™ Architecture Specification, Volume 1, Release 1.1:

- Base Queue Management Extensions:
 - enable a list of Work Requests to be submitted to the Send Queue or to the Receive Queue, and
 - enable multiple Completion Event Handlers per HCA.
- Shared Receive Queue:
 - enables multiple RC QPs or UD QPs to reduce the number of receive resources by using a Shared Receive Queue.
- Attachment of UC QPs to Shared Receive Queues, requires Shared Receive Queue to also be supported:
 - enables UC QPs to attach to Shared Receive Queues.
- Base Memory Management Extensions:
 - allow the Consumer to allocate Memory Region resources for use in future registrations,
 - allow the Consumer to perform non-pipelined¹⁶ local Memory Region registrations through the Send Queue,

16. For a queue operation, a non-pipelined operation may be performed before the preceding operations posted to the same queue complete.

- allow the Consumer to perform non-pipelined¹ local invalidations of registered Memory Regions and Memory Windows through the Send Queue,
- allow Consumer to perform remote invalidation of Memory Regions and Memory Windows,
- enable the direct access of physical addresses by the HCA through the use of a Reserved L_Key,
- provide the following additions to existing memory management verbs:
 - enable Memory Windows to be associated with a single QP,
 - enable the Consumer to own the key portion of the L_Key field for Memory Regions and the key portion of the R_Key for Memory Regions and Memory Windows,
 - explicitly define whether a Memory Region is Shared or Non-Shared.
- Block List based Physical Buffer List, requires Base Memory Management Extensions to also be supported.
- Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA), requires Base Memory Management Extensions to also be supported.
- Local Invalidate Fencing, requires Base Memory Management Extensions to also be supported.

o11-0.2.1: If the HCA supports an extension, then it must support all the verbs and modifiers associated with that extension in this specification.

11.1.2 VERB CLASSES

11.1.2.1 MANDATORY VS. OPTIONAL VERBS

Some Verbs are mandatory, and some are required only if an optional feature is supported.

C11-1: A CI **shall** support all Verbs classified as mandatory in [Verb Classes](#).

C11-2: If a CI claims conformance to an optional feature, the CI **shall** support all Verbs associated with that optional feature as indicated in [Verb Classes](#).

11.1.2.2 MANDATORY VS. OPTIONAL VERB FUNCTIONALITY

Some Verbs define functionality that applies only if certain optional features are supported.

C11-3: If a CI supports a given Verb, the CI **shall** support all functionality defined for that Verb that's not indicated as being optional.

C11-4: If a CI supports a given Verb and claims conformance to an optional feature, the CI **shall** support all functionality defined for that Verb that's associated with that optional feature.

11.1.2.3 CONSUMER ACCESSIBILITY

Verb Consumers are the direct users of the Verbs, and are sub-divided into two classes, Privileged and User-Level.

Privileged Consumers are typically those Consumers that operate at a privilege level sufficient to access OS internal data structures directly, and that have the responsibility to control access to the Channel Interface. All Verbs are available for use by Privileged Consumers.

User-Level Consumers are those Consumers that must rely on another agent, having a sufficient high level of privilege, to manipulate OS data structures. Only those Verbs specifically labeled as such are available for use by User-Level Consumers

Table 95 Verb Classes

Verb	Mandatory/Optional Classification	Consumer Accessibility
Open HCA	Mandatory	Privileged
Query HCA	Mandatory	Privileged
Modify HCA Attributes	Mandatory	Privileged
Close HCA	Mandatory	Privileged
Allocate Protection Domain	Mandatory	Privileged
Deallocate Protection Domain	Mandatory	Privileged
Allocate Reliable Datagram Domain	RD Service	Privileged
Deallocate Reliable Datagram Domain	RD Service	Privileged
Create Address Handle	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Modify Address Handle	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Query Address Handle	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Destroy Address Handle	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Create Shared Receive Queue	SRQ	Privileged
Modify Shared Receive Queue	SRQ	Privileged
Query Shared Receive Queue	SRQ	Privileged

Table 95 **Verb Classes (Continued)**

Verb	Mandatory/Optional Classification	Consumer Accessibility
Destroy Shared Receive Queue	SRQ	Privileged
Create Queue Pair	Mandatory	Privileged
Modify Queue Pair	Mandatory	Privileged
Query Queue Pair	Mandatory	Privileged
Destroy Queue Pair	Mandatory	Privileged
Get Special QP	Mandatory	Privileged
Create Completion Queue	Mandatory	Privileged
Query Completion Queue	Mandatory	Privileged
Resize Completion Queue	Mandatory	Privileged
Destroy Completion Queue	Mandatory	Privileged
Create EE Context	RD Service	Privileged
Modify EE Context Attributes	RD Service	Privileged
Query EE Context	RD Service	Privileged
Destroy EE Context	RD Service	Privileged
Allocate L_Key	Base MM Extensions	Privileged
Register Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Register Physical Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Query Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Deregister Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Reregister Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Reregister Physical Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Register Shared Memory Region	Mandatory	Privileged
Allocate Memory Window	Mandatory	Privileged
Query Memory Window	Mandatory	Privileged
Bind Memory Window	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Deallocate Memory Window	Mandatory	Privileged
Attach QP to Multicast Group	UD Multicast Service	Privileged
Detach QP from Multicast Group	UD Multicast Service	Privileged
Post Send Request	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged

Table 95 Verb Classes (Continued)

Verb	Mandatory/Optional Classification	Consumer Accessibility
Post Receive Request	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Poll for Completion	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Request Completion Notification	Mandatory	User-Level and Privileged
Set Completion Event Handler	Mandatory	Privileged
Set Asynchronous Event Handler	Mandatory	Privileged
Allocate XRC Domain	XRC transport service	Privileged
Deallocate XRC Domain	XRC transport service	Privileged
Create XRC Shared Receive Queue	XRC transport service	Privileged
Query XRC Shared Receive Queue	XRC transport service	Privileged
Modify XRC Shared Receive Queue	XRC transport service	Privileged
Destroy XRC Shared Receive Queue	XRC transport service	Privileged
Create XRC Target Queue Pair	XRC transport service	Privileged
Query XRC Target Queue Pair	XRC transport service	Privileged
Modify XRC Target Queue Pair	XRC transport service	Privileged
Destroy XRC Target Queue Pair	XRC transport service	Privileged

11.2 TRANSPORT RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

11.2.1 HCA

11.2.1.1 OPEN HCA

Description:

30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Opens the specified HCA and returns an opaque object or handle to uniquely reference each HCA so that Consumers can distinguish between HCAs in the endnode.

C11-5: The handles returned for different HCAs within a system **shall** all be unique.

Once opened, a specific HCA cannot be opened again until after it is closed. Opening the HCA prepares the HCA for use by the Consumer.

C11-6: If Open HCA is called for an HCA that is currently open, the CI shall return the HCA already in use error.

An HCA can be opened in either: block or page mode, but not both modes concurrently. All HCAs are required to support page mode. If an HCA is opened in block mode and if it does not support block mode, the Open HCA must return an immediate error.

Input Modifiers:

- The unique identifier for this HCA. The naming scheme is defined by the OSV.
- The type of Physical Buffer that will be used on the HCA: Block or Page.

Output Modifiers:

- A handle for the HCA instance used as a modifier to other Verbs to specify the desired target HCA.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA name.
 - HCA already in use.
 - Block type Physical Buffers are not supported.

11.2.1.2 QUERY HCA

Description:

Returns the attributes for the specified HCA.

The maximum values defined in this section are guaranteed not-to-exceed values. It is possible for an implementation to allocate some HCA resources from the same space. In that case, the maximum values returned are not guaranteed for all of those resources simultaneously.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.

Output Modifiers:

- The HCA attributes returned are:
 - Vendor specific information such as:
 - Vendor ID.
 - Vendor supplied Part ID.
 - Hardware version.

These three vendor specific items correspond to the information found in the components NodeInfo:VendorID, NodeInfo:DeviceID and NodeInfo:Revision respectively (see Section [14.2.5.3](#)).

HCA specific values:

- The maximum number of QPs supported by this HCA.
- The maximum number of outstanding work requests on any Work Queue supported by this HCA.
- The maximum number of scatter/gather entries per Work Request supported by this HCA, for all Work Requests other than Reliable Datagram Receive Queue Work Requests.
- The maximum number of scatter/gather entries per Reliable Datagram Receive Queue Work Request supported by this HCA. Zero if RD Service is not supported.
- The maximum number of CQs supported by this HCA.
- The maximum CQE capacity per CQ supported by this HCA.
- The maximum number of Memory Regions supported by this HCA.
- The largest contiguous block that can be registered by this HCA, specified in bytes.
- The maximum number of Protection Domains supported by this HCA.
- The memory page sizes supported by this HCA.
- Ability of this HCA to support Address Handle port number checking.
- Number of physical ports on this HCA.
- Port Attribute list (one list for each port on this HCA):
 - MTU and message size supported for each port of this HCA. The MTU contains the same information found in the PortInfo:MTUCap component for that port (see Section [14.2.5.6](#)).
 - Base LID & LMC for each port of this HCA. These values are valid only when the Port State of the port is Armed or Active. For other port states the values returned are indeterminate. (For more information on the port state see [14.4.5 Port State Transitions on page 1007](#)).
 - Contents and length of the Source GID Table. The value of Assigned GIDs are valid only when Port State is Armed or Active. For other states the value of assigned GIDs is indeterminate.

- PortState of each port of this HCA. see [7.2.7 State Machine Terms on page 189](#).
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Contents and length of the partition table. A partition table is required per port. The contents of the partition table are valid only when the Port State is Armed or Active. For other states the contents of the partition table are implementation dependent.
- The maximum number of virtual lanes supported by this HCA. This value represents the same information as the PortInfo:VLCap component for that port (see Section [14.2.5.6](#)).
- Optional Bad P_Key counter for each port supported by the HCA.
- Q_Key Violation counter for each port supported by the HCA.
- Optional InitTypeReply value (see PortInfo:InitTypeReply component in Section [14.2.5.6](#)). Shall be zero if InitTypeReply is not supported.
- Contents of the Subnet Manager address information for each port of this HCA. This is a table, with entries arranged on a per HCA port basis, which contains the LID and Service Level of the Subnet Manager for that port. If this has not been set by the Subnet Manager (Port State is Armed or Active), this should be set to the permissive LID (0xFFFF).
- Subnet Time Out value for this HCA port. (see [14.2.5.6 PortInfo](#))
- The following CapabilityMask bits for each port on this HCA as defined in the PortInfo CapabilityMask:
 - IsSM.
 - IsSMDDisabled.
 - IsSNMPTunnelingSupported.
 - IsDeviceManagementSupported.
 - IsVendorClassSupported.
 - IsClientReregistrationSupported.
- Maximum number of partitions supported by this HCA. The number of partitions supported must be at least one.
- Node GUID for this HCA.
- Optional System Image GUID. (See Section [14.2.5.3 NodeInfo](#))

- Indicator that the RNR-NAK generation for RC service is supported.
- The Local CA ACK Delay. This value specifies the maximum expected time interval between the local CA receiving a message and it transmitting the associated ACK or NAK. This is suggested for use in computing the “Local ACK Timeout” field in a CM REQ message, or the “Target ACK Delay” field in a CM REP message. See Local ACK Timeout and Target ACK Delay in [Message Field Details](#). The delay value in microseconds is computed using $4.096\mu s * 2^{(\text{Local CA ACK Delay})}$. The delay value is not a guaranteed upper bound for the CA’s response time, but rather one that can be used as a “maximum expected value” for timeouts.
- Shutdown port capability support indicator.
- InitType support indicator. Indicates InitTypeReply and ability to set InitType value is supported.
- Port Active event support indicator.
- Port Change event support indicator.
- System Image GUID support Indicator.
- Bad P_Key counter support indicator.
- Q_Key Violation counter support indicator.
- Max Responder Resources per QP: The maximum number of RDMA Reads & atomic operations that can be outstanding per QP with this HCA as the target. Shall apply to atomics only if this HCA supports atomic operations.
- Max Responder Resources per EEC: The maximum number of RDMA Reads & atomic operations that can be outstanding per EEC with this HCA as the target. Shall apply to atomics only if this HCA supports RD & atomic operations. For this version of the specification, this value is one.
- Max Responder Resources per HCA: The maximum number of resources used for RDMA Reads & atomic operations by this HCA with this HCA as the target. Shall apply to atomics only if this HCA supports atomic operations.
- Max Initiator Depth per QP: The maximum depth per QP for initiation of RDMA Read & atomic operations by this HCA. Shall apply to atomics only if this HCA supports atomic operations.
- Max Initiator Depth per EEC: The maximum depth per EEC for initiation of RDMA Read & atomic operations by this HCA. Shall apply to atomics only if this HCA supports RD & atomic operations. For this version of the specification, this value is one.

- Ability of this HCA to support atomic operations as well as serialization of atomic operations between itself and other system components such as processors and other HCAs. Three levels of atomicity are defined for this version of the specification:
 - Atomic operations not supported.
 - Atomicity is guaranteed only between QPs on this HCA only.
 - Atomicity is guaranteed between this HCA and any other component, such as CPUs and other HCAs.
- The maximum number of EE contexts that can be supported by this HCA. Shall be zero if the HCA does not support Reliable Datagrams.
- Maximum number of RDDs supported by this HCA. The number of RDDs supported must be at least two. Shall be zero if the HCA does not support Reliable Datagrams.
- The maximum number of Memory Windows supported by this HCA.
- The maximum number of Raw IPv6 Datagram QPs supported by this HCA. Shall be zero if Raw IPv6 Datagrams are not supported.
- The maximum number of Raw Ethertype Datagram QPs supported by this HCA. Shall be zero if Raw Ethertype Datagrams are not supported.
- Ability of this HCA to support modifying the maximum number of outstanding Work Requests per QP.
- Maximum number of multicast groups supported by this HCA. Shall be zero if this HCA does not support IBA unreliable multicast.
- Maximum number of QPs which can be attached to multicast groups for this HCA. Shall be zero if this HCA does not support IBA unreliable multicast.
- Maximum number of QPs per multicast group supported by this HCA. Shall be zero if this HCA does not support IBA unreliable multicast.
- Ability of this HCA to support raw packet multicast.
- Ability of this HCA to support automatic path migration.
- Maximum number of Address Handles supported by this HCA.
- Ability of this HCA to change the primary port for a QP or EEC when transitioning from SQD to SQD state.

- Ability of this HCA to support the Current QP State modifier for Modify Queue Pair.
- The ability of this HCA to support multiple Physical Buffer sizes per Memory Region. This output modifier is returned only if the Base Memory Management Extensions are not supported.
 - Ability of this HCA to support the Base Memory Management Extensions. If HCA supports the Base Memory Management Extensions:
 - Value of Reserved L_Key.
 - Maximum Physical Buffer List size supported by this HCA when invoking the Allocate L_Key verb.
 - List of Page sizes supported by this HCA.
 - Bound Type 2 Memory Window Association mechanism:
 - Type 2A - QP Number Association; or
 - Type 2B - QP Number and PD Association.
 - Type of Physical Buffer currently in use by this HCA: Page or Block.
 - Ability of this HCA to support multiple page sizes per Memory Region.
 - Ability of this HCA to support Block List Physical Buffer Lists.
 - Range of Block sizes supported by this HCA.
 - Ability of this HCA to support Zero Based Virtual Addresses.
 - Ability of this HCA to support Local Invalidate Fencing.
 - Ability of this HCA to support the Base Queue Management Extensions. If HCA supports the Base Queue Management Extensions:
 - Maximum number of CQ Event Handlers.
 - Ability of this HCA to support the Shared Receive Queues. If HCA supports the Shared Receive Queues:
 - Maximum number of SRQs.
 - Maximum number of WRs per SRQ.
 - Maximum number of Scatter/Gather entries per SRQ WR.
 - Ability to modify the maximum number of WRs per SRQ.
 - Ability of this HCA to attach UC QPs to SRQ.
 - The ability of the HCA to support Loopback Indicator on QP/EECs and Address Handles.

- Maximum number of XRC domains supported by this HCA.
Shall be zero if the HCA does not support XRC.
1
- If HCA supports the XRC Shared Receive Queues:
2
 - Maximum number of XRC SRQs.
3
 - Maximum number of WRs per XRC SRQ.
5
 - Maximum number of Scatter/Gather entries per XRC SRQ
6WR.
7
 - Ability to modify the maximum number of WRs per XRC
8SRQ.
9
- Verb Results:
10
 - Operation completed successfully.
11
 - Insufficient resources to complete this request.
12
 - Invalid HCA handle.
13

11.2.1.3 MODIFY HCA ATTRIBUTES

Description:

Modifies certain attributes in the HCA, as specified by a separate list
for each port on the HCA.

If any of the HCA attributes to be modified are invalid, none of the HCA
attributes shall be modified. An immediate error shall be returned and
the HCA state shall remain unchanged.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
25
- Optional System Image GUID.
26
- Port Attribute list (one list for each port on this HCA):
27
 - Optional Shutdown Port indicator. If the shutdown port indica-
29tor is set, then the port will transition to the Down state. (see
30PortState in Section [7.2.7](#))
31
 - Optional InitType value. (see PortInfo:InitType component in
32Section [14.2.5.6](#))
33
 - Q_Key Violation counter reset bit. This bit applies only if the
34HCA supports the Q_Key Violation counter. When this bit is
35set, the Q_Key Violation counter shall be cleared.
36
 - The following CapabilityMask bits as defined in the PortInfo
37CapabilityMask:
38
 - IsSM.
39
 - IsSNMPTunnelingSupported.
40
 - IsDeviceManagementSupported.
41

- IsVendorClassSupported.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Counter specified.

11.2.1.4 CLOSE HCA

Description:

Closes and resets the specified HCA. This Verb is responsible only for deallocating resources allocated by the Channel Interface to prepare the HCA for use by the Consumer. All other resources are no longer associated or connected with the CI and are the responsibility of the Consumer to handle as deemed necessary.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.

11.2.1.5 ALLOCATE PROTECTION DOMAIN

Description:

Allocates an unused Protection Domain object. Protection Domain objects are required when creating a Queue Pair, Shared Receive Queue, Address Handle, registering memory and allocating Memory Windows. A Protection Domain object provides an association between Queue Pairs, Shared Receive Queues, Address Handles, Memory Regions and Memory Windows.

Operations on an unreliable datagram queue pair are allowed only when the Protection Domain of the Queue Pair and the Protection Domain of the Address Handle contained in the work request are identical.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Protection Domain Object.

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.

11.2.1.6 DEALLOCATE PROTECTION DOMAIN

Description:

Returns a previously Allocated Protection Domain object for reuse by the Allocate Protection Domain Verb. The Protection Domain object cannot be deallocated if it is still associated with any Queue Pair, Memory Region or Memory Window, or Address Handle.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Protection Domain object.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - Protection Domain is in use.
 - Invalid HCA handle.

11.2.1.7 ALLOCATE RELIABLE DATAGRAM DOMAIN

Description:

Allocates an unused Reliable datagram domain object. Reliable datagram domain objects are required when setting up a reliable datagram Queue Pair and EE contexts. A reliable datagram domain object provides an association between Queue Pairs and EE contexts. Operations on a reliable datagram queue pair directed at an EE context are allowed only when the reliable datagram domain of the queue pair and the reliable datagram domain of the EE context are identical.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Reliable datagram domain object.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.

- Insufficient resources to complete request.
- Invalid HCA handle.
- Reliable Datagrams not supported.

11.2.1.8 DEALLOCATE RELIABLE DATAGRAM DOMAIN

Description:

Returns a previously allocated reliable datagram domain object for reuse by the Allocate Reliable Datagram Domain Verb. The reliable datagram domain object cannot be deallocated if it is still associated with a Queue Pair or an EE context.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Reliable datagram domain object.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid reliable datagram domain.
 - Reliable datagram domain is in use.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Reliable Datagrams not supported.

11.2.1.9 ALLOCATE XRC DOMAIN

Description:

Allocates an unused XRC Domain object. XRC domain objects are required when setting up a XRC TGT Queue Pair and XRC SRQs. A XRC Domain object provides an association between XRC TGT Queue Pairs and XRC SRQs. Operations on a XRC TGT QP directed at a XRC SRQ are allowed only when the XRC Domain of the XRC TGT QP and the XRC domain of the XRC SRQ are identical.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- XRC domain object.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.

	• Invalid HCA handle.	1
	• XRC not supported.	2
11.2.1.10 DEALLOCATE XRC DOMAIN		3
	Description:	4
	Returns a previously allocated XRC domain object for reuse by the Al-	5
	locate XRC Domain Verb. The XRC domain object cannot be deallo-	6
	cated if it is still associated with a Queue Pair or a SRQ.	7
	Input Modifiers:	8
	• HCA Handle.	9
	• XRC domain object.	10
	Output Modifiers:	11
	• Verb Results:	12
	• Operation completed successfully.	13
	• Invalid XRC Domain.	14
	• XRC domain is in use.	15
	• Invalid HCA handle	16
	• XRC not supported.	17
11.2.2 ADDRESS MANAGEMENT VERBS		18
	These Verbs create, manipulate and destroy address handles. These ad-	19
	dress handles are only used for Work Requests submitted to Unreliable	20
	Datagram Service Type QPs.	21
11.2.2.1 CREATE ADDRESS HANDLE		22
	Description:	23
	The purpose of the Create Address Handle Verb is to create an ad-	24
	dress handle for the address vector passed in through the Verbs. The	25
	normal completion for this Verb returns the address handle. The ad-	26
	dress handle is used to reference a local or global destination in all UD	27
	QP Post Sends.	28
	Input Modifiers:	29
	• HCA Handle.	30
	• Protection domain	31
	• Address vector, for UD transports only, containing:	32
	• Service level.	33
	• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	34

- Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID. DLID = 0xFFFF is illegal except when the destination QP is QP0. 1
- Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on Address Handles). DLID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive. 2
- For global destination: 3
 - Flow label. 4
 - Hop limit. 5
 - Traffic class. 6
 - Source GID index. 7
- For global destination or Multicast address: 8
 - Destination's GID or MGID. 9
- Maximum Static Rate. 10
- Source Path Bits. When the DLID = 0xFFFF, the processing described in [Section 14.2.2.1](#) applies, which may result in the Source Path Bits being ignored. 11
- Physical Port 12

Output Modifiers:

- Address Handle. 21
- Verb results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 22
 - Invalid HCA handle. 23
 - Invalid protection domain 24
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 25
 - Invalid Port 26
 - Invalid Address Vector 27
 - HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator 28

11.2.2.2 MODIFY ADDRESS HANDLE

Description:

The purpose of the Modify Address Handle Verb is to change an address vector associated with the address handle passed in by the Consumer.

If any of the Address Handle attributes to be modified are invalid, none of the Address Handle attributes shall be modified. An immediate error shall be returned and the Address Handle state shall remain unchanged.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle. 1
- Address Handle. 2
- Address vector, for UD transports only, containing:
 - Service level. 3
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag. 4
 - Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID. DLID = 0xFFFF is illegal except when the destination QP is QP0. 5
 - Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on Address Handles). DLID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive. 6
 - For global destination:
 - Flow label. 7
 - Hop limit. 8
 - Traffic class. 9
 - Source GID index. 10
 - For global destination or Multicast address:
 - Destination's GID or MGID. 11
 - Maximum Static Rate. 12
 - Source Path Bits. When the DLID = 0xFFFF, the processing described in [Section 14.2.2.1](#) applies, which may result in the Source Path Bits being ignored. 13
 - Physical Port 14

Output Modifiers:

- Verb results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 30
 - Invalid HCA handle. 31
 - Invalid address handle. 32
 - Invalid Port 33
 - Invalid Address Vector 34
 - HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator 35

11.2.2.3 QUERY ADDRESS HANDLE

Description:

The purpose of the Query Address Handle Verb is to obtain the address vector associated with the address handle passed in by the Consumer.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Address Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Address vector, for UD transports only, containing:
 - Service level.
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag.
 - Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.
 - Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on Address Handles). DLID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive.
 - For global destination:
 - Flow label.
 - Hop limit.
 - Traffic class.
 - Source GID index.
 - For global destination or Multicast address:
 - Destination's GID or MGID.
 - Maximum Static Rate.
 - Source Path Bits.
 - Protection domain
 - Physical Port
 - Verb results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid address handle.

11.2.2.4 DESTROY ADDRESS HANDLE

Description:

The purpose of the Destroy Address Handle Verb is to remove an address vector and its associated address handle from the CI. After the

address handle is removed, it can no longer be used to reference the destination.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Address Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid address handle.

11.2.3 SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

11.2.3.1 CREATE SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Creates an SRQ for the specified HCA.

A set of initial SRQ attributes must be specified by the Consumer.

o11-0.2.2: If the CI supports SRQ and any of the required initial attributes are illegal or missing, an error shall be returned and the SRQ shall not be created.

On success, a handle to the newly created SRQ is returned.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- Protection Domain.
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Shared Receive Queue.
- The maximum number of scatter elements the Consumer will specify in a Work Request submitted to the Shared Receive Queue.

Output Modifiers:

- The SRQ handle for the newly created SRQ.
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Shared Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)

- The actual number of scatter elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Shared Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested.
1
- Verb Results:
2
 - Operation completed successfully.
3
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
4
 - Invalid HCA handle.
5
 - Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability.
6
 - Maximum number of scatter elements requested exceeds HCA capability.
7
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
8
 - HCA does not support SRQ.
9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15

11.2.3.2 QUERY SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Returns the attributes of the specified SRQ.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
21
- SRQ Handle.
22

Output Modifiers:

- Protection Domain.
25
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Shared Receive Queue.
26
- The actual number of scatter elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Shared Receive Queue.
27
- SRQ Limit. If the SRQ Limit is armed, returns the current SRQ Limit. If the SRQ is not armed, returns zero.
28
- Verb Results:
29
 - Operation completed successfully.
30
 - Invalid HCA handle.
31
 - Invalid SRQ handle.
32
 - SRQ is in the Error State.
33
 - HCA does not support SRQ.
34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39

11.2.3.3 MODIFY SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Modifies the attributes of an SRQ for the specified HCA.	1
If any of the modify attributes are invalid, none of the attributes shall be modified.	2
Input Modifiers:	3
	4
• HCA handle.	5
• SRQ handle.	6
• The SRQ attributes to modify and their new values. The SRQ attributes that can be modified after the SRQ has been created are:	7
• The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Shared Receive Queue, if resizing of the SRQ is supported by the HCA.	8
• SRQ Limit. If the SRQ Limit is greater than zero, then it shall be armed upon returning from this verb.	9
Output Modifiers:	10
	11
• The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Shared Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)	12
• Verb Results:	13
• Operation completed successfully.	14
• Insufficient resources to complete request.	15
• Invalid HCA handle.	16
• Invalid SRQ handle.	17
• SRQ is in the Error State.	18
• HCA does not support resizing SRQ.	19
• Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability.	20
• SRQ Limit exceeds maximum number of Work Requests allowed on the SRQ.	21
• More outstanding entries on WQ than size specified.	22
• HCA does not support SRQ.	23

11.2.3.4 DESTROY SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Destroys an SRQ for the specified HCA.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- SRQ handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid SRQ handle.
 - SRQ still has QPs associated with it.
 - HCA does not support SRQ.

11.2.4 XRC SRQs

11.2.4.1 CREATE XRC SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Creates an XRC SRQ for the specified HCA.

A set of initial XRC SRQ attributes must be specified by the Consumer.

o11-0.1.1: If the CI supports XRC SRQ and any of the required initial attributes are illegal or missing, an error shall be returned and the XRC SRQ shall not be created.

On success, a handle to the newly created XRC SRQ is returned.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- XRC Domain
- Protection Domain. As opposed to regular SRQs where the QP PD is used for memory access validation, for XRC SRQs the XRC SRQ PD is used for memory access validation.
- CQ Handle. As opposed to regular SRQs where completions are reported to the CQ associated with the QP, completions for XRC SRQs are reported to the SRQ CQ.
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the XRC Shared Receive Queue.
- The maximum number of scatter elements the Consumer will specify in a Work Request submitted to the XRC Shared Receive Queue.
- Enable or disable Reserved L_Key operations.

Output Modifiers:

- The XRC SRQ handle for the newly created XRC SRQ. 1
- XRC SRQ number 2
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on 3
the XRC Shared Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is 4
guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. 5
(This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.) 6
- The actual number of scatter elements that can be specified in 7
Work Requests submitted to the XRC Shared Receive Queue. If 8
an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or 9
equal to the number requested. 10
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 11
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 12
 - Invalid HCA handle. 13
 - Invalid CQ handle. 14
 - Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA 15
capability. 16
 - Maximum number of scatter elements requested exceeds 17
HCA capability. 18
 - Invalid XRC Domain 19
 - Invalid Protection Domain. 20
 - HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 21

11.2.4.2 QUERY XRC SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Returns the attributes of the specified XRC SRQ.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 31
- XRC SRQ Handle. 32

Output Modifiers:

- XRC SRQ number 35
- XRC Domain 36
- Protection Domain. 37
- CQ Handle 38
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on 39
the XRC Shared Receive Queue. 40

- The actual number of scatter elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the XRC Shared Receive Queue. 1
- XRC SRQ Limit. If the XRC SRQ Limit is armed, returns the current XRC SRQ Limit. If the XRC SRQ is not armed, returns zero. 2
- Reserved L_Key operations enabled or disabled. 3
- Verb Results: 4
 - Operation completed successfully. 5
 - Invalid HCA handle. 6
 - Invalid XRC SRQ handle. 7
 - XRC SRQ is in the Error State. 8
 - HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 9

11.2.4.3 MODIFY XRC SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Modifies the attributes of an XRC SRQ for the specified HCA.

If any of the modify attributes are invalid, none of the attributes shall be modified.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 21
- XRC SRQ handle. 22
- The XRC SRQ attributes to modify and their new values. The XRC SRQ attributes that can be modified after the XRC SRQ has been created are:
 - The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the XRC Shared Receive Queue, if resizing of the XRC SRQ is supported by the HCA. 27
 - XRC SRQ Limit. If the XRC SRQ Limit is greater than zero, then it shall be armed upon returning from this verb. 28

Output Modifiers:

- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the XRC Shared Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.) 34
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 39
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 40
 - Invalid HCA handle. 41

- Invalid XRC SRQ handle. 1
- XRC SRQ is in the Error State. 2
- HCA does not support resizing XRC SRQ. 3
- Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability. 4
- XRC SRQ Limit exceeds maximum number of Work Requests allowed on the XRC SRQ. 5
- More outstanding entries on WQ than size specified. 6
- HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 7
- HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 8
- HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 9
- HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 10

11.2.4.4 DESTROY XRC SHARED RECEIVE QUEUE

Description:

Destroys an XRC SRQ for the specified HCA.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 16
- XRC SRQ handle. 17

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 21
 - Invalid HCA handle. 22
 - Invalid XRC SRQ handle. 23
 - HCA does not support XRC SRQ. 24

11.2.5 QUEUE PAIR

11.2.5.1 CREATE QUEUE PAIR

Description:

Creates a QP for the specified HCA.

A set of initial QP attributes must be specified by the Consumer.

C11-7: If any of the required initial attributes are illegal or missing, an error **shall** be returned and the Queue Pair **shall not** be created.

On success, a handle to the newly created QP and the QP number are returned.

o11-0.2.3: If an HCA supports SRQ, the CI must allow UD and RC QPs to be associated with an SRQ.

o11-7.2-1.1: If an HCA supports attachment of UC QPs to SRQ, the CI **must** allow UC QPs to be associated with an SRQ.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- SRQ Handle, if QP is to be associated to an SRQ. Ignored for XRC Initiator QP.
- The QP attributes that must be specified at QP create time are:
 - The CQ to be associated with the Send Queue.
 - The CQ to be associated with the Receive Queue. Ignored for XRC Initiator QP.
 - The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Send Queue.
 - The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Receive Queue. This value is ignored if the QP is associated with an SRQ or is an XRC Initiator QP.
 - The maximum number of scatter/gather elements the Consumer will specify in a Work Request submitted to the Send Queue.
 - The maximum number of scatter/gather elements the Consumer will specify in a Work Request submitted to the Receive Queue. This value is ignored if the QP is associated with an SRQ or is an XRC Initiator QP.
 - Reliable datagram domain to be associated with this QP. Applicable only to RD QPs.
 - The Signaling Type must be specified for the Send Queue on this QP. The valid types are:
 - Non-selectable: All Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue always generate a completion entry.
 - Selectable: Consumer must specify on each Work Request submitted to the Send Queue whether to generate a completion entry for successful completions.
 - The Consumer must specify a Protection Domain.
 - The Transport Service Type requested for this QP. Valid Service Types are:
 - Reliable Connection.
 - Reliable Datagram.
 - Unreliable Connection.
 - Unreliable Datagram.
 - XRC Initiator QP

- Enable or disable Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key operations.

Output Modifiers:

- The handle for the newly created QP.
- QP number.
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Send Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.) This value is not returned if an SRQ is associated with the QP or if this QP is an XRC Initiator QP.
- The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested.
- The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. This value is not returned if an SRQ is associated with the QP or if this QP is an XRC Initiator QP.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - Maximum number of scatter/gather elements requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - Invalid Service Type for this QP.
 - Invalid Reliable Datagram Domain.
 - Invalid SRQ handle.
 - HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions.
 - HCA does not support SRQ.

- HCA does not support attaching UC QPs to SRQ.
- HCA does not support XRC.

11.2.5.2 MODIFY QUEUE PAIR

4 Description:

5 **C11-8:** Upon invocation of this Verb, the CI **shall** modify the attributes for
6 the specified QP and then **shall** cause the QP to transition to the specified
7 QP state.

9 Only a subset of the QP attributes can be modified in each of the QP
10 states. Attributes allowed to be modified for the RC Transport Type are
11 also allowed to be modified for an XRC Initiator QP, unless otherwise
12 noted.

13 **C11-9:** If any of the QP attributes to be modified are invalid or the re-
14 quired state transition is invalid, none of the QP attributes **shall** be mod-
15 ified. An immediate error **shall** be returned and the QP state **shall** remain
16 unchanged.

17 Some QP attributes can be modified with outstanding Work Requests.
18 WRs can be outstanding on the Receive Queue when the QP is in the
19 Init, RTR, RTS, SQD & SQEr state and on the Send Queue when the
20 QP is in the RTS & SQD state. Any outstanding Work Request on a
21 Work Queue may not execute as expected if the QP modifiers are
22 changed. For instance, if RDMA Reads, which were successfully
23 posted, are outstanding when the QP is modified to no longer allow
24 RDMA Reads, some outstanding in-flight RDMA Reads may complete
25 while pending WRs may fail.

26 **C11-10:** The properties and requirements of the QP state transitions **shall**
27 be supported as shown in Table 96.

29 **Table 96** QP State Transition Properties

30 Transition	31 Required Attributes	32 Optional Attributes	33 Actions
34 Reset to 35 Init	36 Enable/disable RDMA ^a 37 and Atomic Operations. 38 P_Key index. 39 Primary Physical port. 40 Q_Key for uncon- 41 nected Service Types.	42 None.	43 Enable posting to the 44 Receive Queue.

Table 96 QP State Transition Properties (Continued)			
Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
Init to Init	None.	Enable/disable RDMA ^a and Atomic Operations. P_Key index. Primary Physical port. Q_Key for unconnected Service Types.	No transition.
Init to RTR	Remote Node Address Vector (Connected QPs only). Loopback Indicator. ^d Destination QP Number (RC/UC QPs only). RQ PSN. Number of responder resources for RDMA Read/atomic ops. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RC and RD QPs only).	Alternate path address information (RC/UC QPs only). Enable/disable RDMA ^a and Atomic Operations. P_Key index. Q_Key. Number of WQEs.	Activate receive processing.
RTR to RTS	Local ACK Timeout (RC QP only) Retry count (RC QP only) RNR retry count (RC QP only) SQ PSN. Number of Outstanding RDMA Read/atomic ops at destination.	Enable/disable RDMA ^a & Atomic Operations. Q_Key. Alternate path address information (RC/UC QPs only). Path migration state. Number of WQEs. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RC and RD QPs only).	Activate send processing.
RTS to RTS (no transition)	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA and Atomic Operations. ^a Q_Key. Alternate path address information (RC/UC QPs only). Path Migration state. Number of WQEs. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RC and RD QPs only).	No transition.

Table 96 QP State Transition Properties (Continued)

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
SQE to RTS	None.	Enable/disable RDMA & Atomic Operations. ^a Q_Key. Number of WQEs. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RD QPs only)	Activate send processing.
RTS to SQD	None.	None.	Deactivate send processing.
SQD to SQD	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA & Atomic Operations. ^a Remote Node Address Vector (Connected QPs only). ^{b c} Loopback Indicator ^d Alternate path address information (RC/UC QPs only). Path migration state. Number of Outstanding RDMA Read/atomic ops at destination. ^b Number of local RDMA Read/atomic responder resources. ^b Q_Key. P_Key index. ^b Local ACK Timeout (RC QP only). ^b Retry count (RC QP only). ^b RNR retry count (RC QP only). ^b Number of WQEs. Primary physical port associated with QP if HCA supports the capability to change the primary physical port for a QP when transitioning from SQD to SQD state. ^b Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RC and RD QPs only).	Modify QP attributes

Table 96 QP State Transition Properties (Continued)			
Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
SQD to RTS	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA and Atomic Operations. ^a Q_Key. Alternate path address information (RC/UC QPs only). Path migration state. Number of WQEs. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field (RC and RD QPs only).	Activate send processing.
Any State (except Reset) to Error	None.	None allowed.	Queue processing is stopped. Work Requests pending or in process are completed in error, when possible.
Any state to Reset	None.	None allowed.	QP attributes are reset to the same values after the QP was created. Outstanding Work Requests are removed from the queues without notifying the Consumer.

- a. If disable RDMA is requested while incoming RDMA to that queue are in process, it is indeterminate when the disable will take effect. It is up to the Consumer to coordinate the disable with the remote QPs.
 b. It is allowed to change this attribute only when the SQ is drained.
 c. When changing the Remote Node Address Vector, the Path MTU cannot be changed in the SQD2SQD transition.
 d. Supported only if indicated in Query HCA. Destination LID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- QP handle.
- The QP attributes to modify and their new values. The QP attributes that can be modified after the QP has been created are:
 - Next QP state. If specify the current state, only the QP attributes will be modified.
 - Enable or disable Send Queue Drained, Asynchronous Affiliated Event Notification. This modifier is only applicable when the next QP state chosen is SQD.

- Primary P_Key index. Not applicable on a Raw Datagram or Reliable Datagram QPs.
1
- The Q_Key that incoming Datagram messages are checked against and possibly used as the outgoing Q_Key (based on the WR Q_Key). This applies only to UD & RD QPs.
2
- PSN for Send QP. Applicable only for RC, UD & UC QPs.
3
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Send Queue, if resizing of the work queues is supported by the HCA.
4
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Receive Queue, if resizing of the work queues is supported by this HCA. This value is ignored if the QP is an XRC Initiator QP or the QP is associated with an SRQ.
5
- Primary physical port associated with this QP. Not applicable on RD QPs. Applicable for the SQD to SQD transition, if supported by the HCA. Applicable for the Init to Init transition on all QPs.
6
- PSN for Receive QP. Applicable only for RC & UC QPs.
7
- Enable or disable incoming RDMA Reads on this QP. Not applicable on Unreliable Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
8
- Enable or disable incoming RDMA Writes on this QP. Not applicable on UD Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
9
- Enable or disable incoming Atomic Operations on this QP. Not applicable on Unreliable Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
10
- Destination QP number. Applicable only to RC & UC QPs.
11
- Initiator Depth: Number of RDMA Reads & atomic operations outstanding at any time. Applicable only to RC QPs.
12
- Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. This value may be rounded up to a supported value, not to exceed the maximum value allowable for QPs for this HCA. Applicable only to RC QPs, but not applicable to XRC Initiator QPs.
13
- Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field Value. When a message arrives which is targeted at a local receive queue, and that receive queue has no receive work requests outstanding, the CI may respond to the initiator with an RNR NAK packet. This
14

The following attributes are not applicable if the QP specified is a Special QP: SMI QP (QP0), GSI QP (QP1), Raw IPv6 and Raw EtherType.
15

- Primary physical port associated with this QP. Not applicable on RD QPs. Applicable for the SQD to SQD transition, if supported by the HCA. Applicable for the Init to Init transition on all QPs.
16
- PSN for Receive QP. Applicable only for RC & UC QPs.
17
- Enable or disable incoming RDMA Reads on this QP. Not applicable on Unreliable Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
18
- Enable or disable incoming RDMA Writes on this QP. Not applicable on UD Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
19
- Enable or disable incoming Atomic Operations on this QP. Not applicable on Unreliable Service Type QPs or an XRC Initiator QP.
20
- Destination QP number. Applicable only to RC & UC QPs.
21
- Initiator Depth: Number of RDMA Reads & atomic operations outstanding at any time. Applicable only to RC QPs.
22
- Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. This value may be rounded up to a supported value, not to exceed the maximum value allowable for QPs for this HCA. Applicable only to RC QPs, but not applicable to XRC Initiator QPs.
23
- Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field Value. When a message arrives which is targeted at a local receive queue, and that receive queue has no receive work requests outstanding, the CI may respond to the initiator with an RNR NAK packet. This
24

modifier is the minimum value which shall be sent in the Timer Field of such an RNR NAK packet; it does not affect RNR NAKs sent for other reasons. If the value specified is not one of the RNR NAK Timer Field values defined in Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field on page 354 , the CI shall return an immediate error. Applicable only to RC and RD QPs, but not applicable to XRC Initiator QPs.	1
• Current QP State. This modifier is only valid when moving to the RTS state.	2
• Address vector, for RC & UC transports only, containing:	3
• Service level.	4
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	5
• Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	6
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs).	7
• Path MTU.	8
• Maximum Static Rate.	9
• Source Path Bits.	10
• For global destination:	11
• Traffic class.	12
• Flow label.	13
• Hop limit.	14
• Source GID index.	15
• Destination's GID.	16
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737). Applicable only to RC QPs.	17
• Retry count. Applicable only to RC QPs.	18
• RNR retry count. Applicable only to RC QPs.	19
• Alternate path address information, applicable only for RC & UC QPs when this CI support automatic path migration. Note: the path MTU for the alternate path must be the same as for the primary path. The specifics are:	20
• Alternate path P_Key index. The alternate path P_Key index should map to the same partition key as the primary P_Key index; otherwise APM may not function properly	21
• Alternate path Primary Physical port.	22
• Alternate path address vector, containing:	23

• Service level.	1
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	2
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	3
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs)	4
• Maximum Static Rate.	5
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737). Applicable only to RC QPs.	6
• Source Path Bits.	7
For global destination:	8
• Traffic class.	9
• Flow label.	10
• Hop limit.	11
• Source GID index.	12
• Destination's GID.	13
• Path Migration state. Valid only if this HCA supports automatic path migration. Valid states to set are:	14
• Migrated.	15
• Rarm.	16
Output Modifiers:	17
• The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Send Queue, if resizing of the work queues is supported by the HCA. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)	18
• The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.) This value is not returned if the QP is an XRC Initiator QP or if an SRQ is associated with the QP.	19
• Verb Results:	20
• Operation completed successfully.	21
• Insufficient resources to complete request.	22
• Invalid HCA handle.	23
• Invalid QP handle.	24

- Cannot change QP attribute. 1
- Atomic operations not supported. 2
- P_Key index out of range. 3
- P_Key index specifies invalid entry in P_Key table. 4
- Invalid QP state. 5
- Invalid path migration state. 6
- MTUCap of HCA port exceeded. 8
- Invalid Port. 9
- Invalid Service Type for this QP 10
- Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA 12 capability. 13
- Invalid RNR NAK Timer Field value. 14
- More outstanding entries on WQ than size specified. 15
- QP still has Type 2A MWs bound to it. 16
- HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator. 17

11.2.5.3 QUERY QUEUE PAIR

Description:

Returns the attribute list and current values for the specified QP. This QP handle can be any QP handle supplied by the Verbs. XRC Initiator QP Attributes are the same as for RC Transport Type QPs, except as noted below.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 28
- QP handle. 29

Output Modifiers:

- The QP attributes. The list of attributes returned by the query are:
 - The QP number. 33
 - SRQ Handle, returned if QP is associated with an SRQ. 34
 - Handle of the Completion Queue associated with the Send Queue. 35
 - Handle of the Completion Queue associated with the Receive Queue. 36
 - The actual number of outstanding requests supported on the Send Queue. 3738

- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue. This value is not returned if an SRQ is associated with the QP, or if this QP is an XRC Initiator QP.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- The actual number of scatter/gather entries supported on Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue. This value is not returned if an SRQ is associated with the QP, or if this QP is an XRC Initiator QP.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key operations enabled or disabled.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Current QP State. Where the state is one of the following:
 - Reset
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - Initialized
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - Ready to Receive (RTR)
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - Ready to Send (RTS)
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - SQ Error
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - SQ Drain (SQD)
The following modifiers are valid only when the QP is in the SQD state:
 - Send Queue Draining
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - Send Queue Drained
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
 - Error
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

The following attributes are not defined if the QP is in the Reset state.

- PSNs for Send & Receive QPs. Applicable only for RC & UC QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- RDMA Read enable.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- RDMA Write enable.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Atomic Operation enable.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Primary physical port associated with this QP. Not applicable on RD QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Primary P_Key index. Not applicable for RD & Raw Datagram QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Q_Key for the Receive Queue. Not applicable to RC, UC & Raw Datagram QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Reliable Datagram Domain. Applicable only to RD QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
- Destination QP number. Applicable only to RC & UC QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

- Initiator Depth: Number of RDMA Reads & Atomic Operations outstanding at any time on the destination QP. Applicable only to RC QPs.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
- Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. Applicable only to RC QPs, though not for an XRC initiator QP.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
- Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field Value. When a message arrives which is targeted at a local receive queue, and that receive queue has no receive work requests outstanding, the CI may respond to the initiator with an RNR NAK packet. This modifier is the minimum value which shall be sent in the Timer Field of such an RNR NAK packet; it does not affect RNR NAKs sent for other reasons. Applicable only to RC and RD QPs, though not for an XRC initiator QP.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Primary Address vector, for RC & UC transports only, containing:
 - Service level.
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag.
 - Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.
 - Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs)
 - Path MTU.
 - Maximum Static Rate.
 - Local ACK Timeout (see Sections [12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737](#) and [12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737](#)). Applicable only to RC QPs.
 - Retry count. Applicable only to RC QPs.
 - RNR retry count. Applicable only to RC QPs.
 - Source Path Bits.
 - For global destination:
 - Traffic class.
 - Flow label.
 - Hop limit.
 - Source GID index.
 - Destination's GID.
 - Alternate path address information, returned only for RC & UC QPs. Valid only when automatic path migration is enabled.
 - Alternate path P_Key index.

• Alternate physical port.	1
Path address vector, containing:	2
• Service level.	3
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	4
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	5
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs)	6
• Maximum Static Rate.	7
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737). Applicable only to RC QPs.	8
• Source Path Bits.	9
For global destination:	10
• Traffic class.	11
• Flow label.	12
• Hop limit.	13
• Source GID index.	14
• Destination's GID.	15
• Path migration state. Valid only if this HCA supports automatic path migration.	16
• Verb Results:	17
• Operation completed successfully.	18
• Invalid HCA handle.	19
• Invalid QP handle.	20
	21
	22
	23
	24
	25
	26
	27
	28
	29
	30
	31
	32
	33
	34
	35
	36
	37
	38
	39
	40
	41
	42

11.2.5.4 DESTROY QUEUE PAIR

Description:

Destroys the specified QP.

C11-11: Any resources allocated by the Channel Interface in order to process Work Requests on the QP **must** be deallocated as part of the destroy operation.

A QP instance is allowed to have Work Requests outstanding when a request to destroy the QP is made. When a QP is destroyed, any outstanding Work Requests are no longer considered to be in the scope of the Channel Interface. It is the responsibility of the Consumer to clean up resources associated with a Work Request.

C11-12: Incoming operations destined for a QP that has been destroyed shall be discarded.

The CI does not guarantee that CQEs generated for a QP prior to its destruction can be retrieved from the CQ after that QP has been destroyed.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- QP handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid QP handle.
 - QP still has Type 2A MWs bound to it.
 - The QP is still attached to one or more multicast groups.

11.2.6 GET SPECIAL QP

Description:

Returns the handle for the specified QP type for the specified HCA port. The special QP types include: SMI QP (QP0), GSI QP (QP1), Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype.

C11-13: This Verb **must** support QP0 and QP1.

HCA support for both Raw Datagram types is optional.

o11-1: If the HCA supports the Raw Datagram QP types, this Verb **must** also support them.

C11-14: Handles associated with the SMI QP and the GSI QP **must** only be given out once for each QP per HCA port. Subsequent invocations of this Verb, without an intervening Destroy QP, **must** return an error.

The single QP per port restriction does not apply to either Raw Datagram QP types.

o11-2: If Raw Datagram Service is supported, the number of Raw Datagram type QPs supported per port **shall** be returned by the Query HCA Verb.

Any fixed QP attributes for the specified QP type required by the specific implementation are set up before returning from this Verb. For ex-

ample, the appropriate Transport Service Type may need to be
initialized for the QP.

C11-15: SMI/GSI QPs **shall not** share a completion queue with any non-SMI/GSI QP. An attempt to do so **shall** result in an Invalid CQ Handle error.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- HCA port number.
- The QP type requested. The allowed types are:
 - SMI QP (QP0).
 - GSI QP (QP1).
 - Raw IPv6.
 - Raw Ethertype.
- The CQ to be associated with the Send Queue.
- The CQ to be associated with the Receive Queue.
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Send Queue.
- The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Receive Queue.
- The maximum number of scatter/gather elements the Consumer expects to specify in a Work Request submitted to the Send Queue.
- The maximum number of scatter/gather elements the Consumer expects to specify in a Work Request submitted to the Receive Queue.
- The Signaling Type for the Send Queue on this QP. The valid types are:
 - All Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue always generate a completion entry.
 - Consumer must specify on each Work Request submitted to the Send Queue whether to generate a completion entry for successful completions.
- Protection Domain.

Output Modifiers:

- QP handle.

- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Send Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported through the Verbs on the Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested. (This may require the Consumer to increase the size of the CQ.)
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue. If an error is not returned, this is guaranteed to be greater than or equal to the number requested.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Special QP type.
 - QP already in use (applies only to SMI and GSI QPs).
 - Number of available Raw Datagram QPs exceeded.
 - Invalid Port.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - Maximum number of scatter/gather elements requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - Raw Datagrams not supported.

11.2.7 XRC TARGET QP

11.2.7.1 CREATE XRC TARGET QP

Description:

Creates a XRC Target QP for the specified HCA.

A set of initial QP attributes must be specified by the Consumer.

On success, a handle to the newly created XRC QP and the XRC QP number are returned.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- XRC domain to be associated with this XRC TGT QP.

Output Modifiers:

- XRC TGT QP Handle.
- XRC QP Number.

Verb Results:

- Operation completed successfully.
- Insufficient resources to complete request.
- Invalid HCA Handle.
- Invalid XRC Domain.
- HCA does not support XRC.

11.2.7.2 MODIFY XRC TARGET QUEUE PAIR

Description:

Only a subset of the XRC Target QP attributes can be modified in each of the QP states.

Table 97 XRC Target QP State Transition Properties

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
Reset to Init	Enable/disable RDMA ^a and Atomic Operations. P_Key index. Primary Physical port.	None.	
Init to Init	None.	Enable/disable RDMA ^a and Atomic Operations. P_Key index. Primary Physical port.	No transition.

Table 97 XRC Target QP State Transition Properties (Continued)

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
Init to RTR	Remote Node Address Vector. Loopback Indicator. ^d Destination QP Number. RQ PSN. Number of responder resources for RDMA Read/atomic ops. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field	Alternate path address information. Enable/disable RDMA ^a and Atomic Operations. P_Key index.	Activate receive processing.
RTR to RTS	Local ACK Timeout SQ PSN.	Enable/disable RDMA ^a & Atomic Operations. Alternate path address information. Path migration state. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field.	Activate send processing.
RTS to RTS (no transition)	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA and Atomic Operations. ^a Alternate path address information. Path Migration state. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field.	No transition.
RTS to SQD	None.	None.	Deactivate send processing.

Table 97 XRC Target QP State Transition Properties (Continued)

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
SQD to SQD	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA & Atomic Operations. ^a Remote Node Address Vector. ^{b c} Loopback Indicator ^d Alternate path address information. Path migration state. Number of local RDMA Read/atomic responder resources. ^b P_Key index. ^b Local ACK Timeout. ^b Primary physical port associated with QP if HCA supports the capability to change the primary physical port for a QP when transitioning from SQD to SQD state. ^b Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field.	Modify QP attributes
SQD to RTS	None.	Enable/Disable RDMA and Atomic Operations. ^a Alternate path address information. Path migration state. Current QP State. Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field.	Activate send processing.
Any State to Error	None.	None allowed.	Queue processing is stopped. Work Requests pending or in process are completed in error, when possible.
Any state to Reset	None.	None allowed.	QP attributes are reset to the same values after the QP was created.

a. If disable RDMA is requested while incoming RDMA to that queue are in process, it is indeterminate when the disable will take effect. It is up to the Consumer to coordinate the disable with the remote QPs.

b. It is allowed to change this attribute only when the SQ is drained.

c. When changing the Remote Node Address Vector, the Path MTU cannot be changed in the SQD2SQD transition.

d. Supported only if indicated in Query HCA. Destination LID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- QP handle.
- The QP attributes to modify and their new values. The QP attributes that can be modified after the QP has been created are:
 - Next QP state. If specify the current state, only the QP attributes will be modified.
 - Enable or disable Send Queue Drained, Asynchronous Affiliated Event Notification. This modifier is only applicable when the next QP state chosen is SQD.
 - Primary P_Key index.
 - Send Queue PSN.
 - Primary physical port associated with this QP. Applicable for the SQD to SQD transition, if supported by the HCA. Applicable for the Init to Init transition on all QPs.
 - Receive Queue PSN.
 - Enable or disable incoming RDMA Reads on this QP.
 - Enable or disable incoming RDMA Writes on this QP.
 - Enable or disable incoming Atomic Operations on this QP.
 - Destination QP number.
 - Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. This value may be rounded up to a supported value, not to exceed the maximum value allowable for QPs for this HCA.
 - Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field Value. When a message arrives which is targeted at a local receive queue, and that receive queue has no receive work requests outstanding, the CI may respond to the initiator with an RNR NAK packet. This modifier is the minimum value which shall be sent in the Timer Field of such an RNR NAK packet; it does not affect RNR NAKs sent for other reasons. If the value specified is not one of the RNR NAK Timer Field values defined in [Table 48 Encoding for RNR NAK Timer Field on page 354](#), the CI shall return an immediate error.
 - Current QP State. This modifier is only valid when moving to the RTS state.
 - Address vector containing:
 - Service level.
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag.

• Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	1
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs).	2
• Path MTU.	3
• Maximum Static Rate.	4
• Source Path Bits.	5
• For global destination:	6
• Traffic class.	7
• Flow label.	8
• Hop limit.	9
• Source GID index.	10
• Destination's GID.	11
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737).	12
• Alternate path address information, applicable only when the QPs support automatic path migration. Note: the path MTU for the alternate path must be the same as for the primary path. The specifics are:	13
• Alternate path P_Key index. The alternate path P_Key index should map to the same partition key as the primary P_Key index; otherwise APM may not function properly	14
• Alternate path Primary Physical port.	15
• Alternate path address vector, containing:	16
• Service level.	17
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	18
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	19
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs)	20
• Maximum Static Rate.	21
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737). Applicable only to RC QPs.	22
• Source Path Bits.	23
For global destination:	24
• Traffic class.	25
• Flow label.	26

• Hop limit.	1
• Source GID index.	2
• Destination's GID.	3
• Path Migration state. Valid only if this HCA supports automatic path migration. Valid states to set are:	4
• Migrated.	5
• Rearm.	6
Output Modifiers:	7
• Verb Results:	8
• Operation completed successfully.	9
• Insufficient resources to complete request.	10
• Invalid HCA handle.	11
• Invalid QP handle.	12
• Cannot change QP attribute.	13
• Atomic operations not supported.	14
• P_Key index out of range.	15
• P_Key index specifies invalid entry in P_Key table.	16
• Invalid QP state.	17
• Invalid path migration state.	18
• MTUCap of HCA port exceeded.	19
• Invalid Port.	20
• Invalid Service Type for this QP	21
• Invalid RNR NAK Timer Field value.	22
• HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator.	23
11.2.7.3 QUERY XRC TARGET QUEUE PAIR	24
Description:	25
Returns the attribute list and current values for the specified QP. This QP handle can be any QP handle supplied by the Verbs.	26
Input Modifiers:	27
• HCA handle.	28
• QP handle.	29
Output Modifiers:	30
• The QP attributes. The list of attributes returned by the query are:	31

- The QP number. 1
- Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key operations enabled 2 or disabled. 3
- Current QP State where the state is one of the following: 4
 - Reset 5
 - Initialized 6
 - Ready to Receive (RTR) 7
 - Ready to Send (RTS) 9
 - SQ Drain (SQD) 10
The following modifiers are valid only when the QP is in 11
the SQD state:
 - Send Queue Draining 13
 - Send Queue Drained 14
 - Error 16
- The following attributes are not defined if the QP is in the Reset state. 17
 - PSNs for Send & Receive Queues. 19
 - RDMA Read enable. 20
 - RDMA Write enable. 21
 - Atomic Operation enable. 22
 - Primary physical port associated with this QP. 24
 - Primary P_Key index. 25
 - Destination QP number. 26
 - Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for 28 handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. 29
 - Minimum RNR NAK Timer Field Value. When a message arrives 30 which is targeted at a local receive queue, and that receive 31 queue has no receive work requests outstanding, the CI 32 may respond to the initiator with an RNR NAK packet. This 33 modifier is the minimum value which shall be sent in the Timer 34 Field of such an RNR NAK packet; it does not affect RNR 35 NAKs sent for other reasons. 36
 - Primary Address vector containing:
 - Service level. 38
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag. 39
 - Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = 40 final destination; otherwise LID = router LID. 41

• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs).	1
• Path MTU.	2
• Maximum Static Rate.	3
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737).	5
• Source Path Bits.	6
• For global destination:	7
• Traffic class.	8
• Flow label.	9
• Hop limit.	10
• Source GID index.	11
• Destination's GID.	12
• Alternate path address information. Valid only when automatic path migration is enabled.	13
• Alternate path P_Key index.	14
• Alternate physical port.	15
• Alternate path address vector, containing:	16
• Service level.	17
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	18
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	19
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on QPs)	20
• Maximum Static Rate.	21
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737).	22
• Source Path Bits.	23
• For global destination:	24
• Traffic class.	25
• Flow label.	26
• Hop limit.	27
• Source GID index.	28
• Destination's GID.	29

- Path migration state. Valid only if this HCA supports automatic path migration.
- XRC Domain
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid QP handle.

11.2.7.4 DESTROY XRC TARGET QUEUE PAIR

Description:

Destroys the specified QP.

C11-15.2-1.1: Incoming operations destined for a QP that has been destroyed **shall be discarded.**

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- QP handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid QP handle.

11.2.8 COMPLETION QUEUE**11.2.8.1 CREATE COMPLETION QUEUE**

Description:

Creates a CQ on the specified HCA.

The Consumer must specify the minimum capacity of the CQ.

The actual capacity of the specified CQ is returned on successful creation. The number returned differs only when the actual capacity is more than the Consumer requested. If the maximum capacity supported by the HCA is less than the capacity requested, an error is returned.

On success, a handle to the newly created Completion Queue is returned.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.

- The minimum capacity of the CQ.
- Completion Event Handler Identifier. If non-zero, associates the CQ with a Completion Event Handler.

Output Modifiers:

- The handle of the newly created CQ.
- The actual capacity of the CQ.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - CQ capacity requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - Invalid Completion Event Handler Identifier.
 - HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions.

11.2.8.2 QUERY COMPLETION QUEUE

Description:

Returns the capacity of the specified CQ.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.

Output Modifiers:

- The capacity of the CQ.
- Completion Event Handler Identifier. If zero, no Completion Event Handler is associated with the CQ.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - CQ has overrun or has become inaccessible.

11.2.8.3 RESIZE COMPLETION QUEUE

Description:

Modifies the capacity of the CQ.

C11-16: The CI **must** support resizing a CQ with outstanding Work Completions and while Work Requests are outstanding on queues associated

with the specified CQ. Completions **must not** be lost as a result of a resize.

The resize operation is allowed to adversely affect the performance while the CQ is being resized. The act of resizing is not allowed to directly generate completion or asynchronous errors.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.
- The minimum capacity of the CQ.

Output Modifiers:

- The actual capacity of the CQ.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - CQ capacity requested exceeds HCA capability.
 - More outstanding entries on CQ than capacity specified.
 - CQ has overrun or has become inaccessible.

11.2.8.4 DESTROY COMPLETION QUEUE

Description:

Destroys the specified CQ. Resources allocated by the Channel Interface to implement the CQ must be deallocated during the destroy operation.

C11-17: The CI **shall** return an error if this Verb is invoked while a Work Queue is still associated with the CQ.

Any completions that have not been retrieved from the CQ prior to being destroyed are discarded.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:

- Operation completed successfully. 1
- Invalid HCA handle. 2
- Invalid CQ handle. 3
- One or more Work Queues is still associated with the CQ. 4

11.2.9 EE CONTEXT

11.2.9.1 CREATE EE CONTEXT

Description:

Creates an EE Context for the specified HCA.

On success, a handle to the newly created EE Context is returned.

The values for Remote Node Address Handle, Send Sequence Number, Receive Sequence number are all zero. The EE Context is created in the Reset state.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 17
- Reliable Datagram Domain. 18

Output Modifiers:

- The handle for the newly created EE Context. 22
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 24
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 25
 - Invalid HCA handle. 27
 - Reliable Datagrams not supported. 28
 - Invalid Reliable Datagram Domain. 29

11.2.9.2 MODIFY EE CONTEXT ATTRIBUTES

Description:

o11-3: If the CI supports RD Service, upon invocation of this Verb the CI **shall** modify the attributes for the specified EE Context and then **shall** cause the EE Context to transition to the specified EE Context state.

Only a subset of the attributes can be modified once the EE Context has been created.

EE Context attributes can be modified with Work Requests outstanding which use the EE handle, but any such Work Requests might not execute correctly if the modifiers are changed.

WRs can be outstanding on the Receive Queue when the EE is in the Init, RTR, and RTS state and on the Send Queue when the EE is in the RTS state. Any outstanding Work Requests on the QP may not execute as expected if the EE modifiers are changed.

If any of the EE attributes to be modified are invalid or the requested state transition is invalid, none of the EE attributes shall be modified. An immediate error shall be returned and the EE state shall remain unchanged.

o11-4: If the CI supports RD Service, the properties and requirements of the EE Context state transitions **shall** be supported as shown in Table 98.

Table 98 EE Context State Transition Properties

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
Reset to Init	Primary Physical port. P_Key index.	None.	Enable posting to the receive queue.
Init to Init	None.	Primary Physical port. P_Key index.	No transition.
Init to RTR	Remote Node Address Vector. Loopback Indicator. ^c Destination EEC Number. RQ PSN. Number of responder resources for RDMA Read/atomic ops. (Note this is 1 for this revision.)	Alternate path address information. P_Key index.	Activate receive processing.
RTR to RTS	Local ACK Timeout. Retry count. RNR retry count. SQ PSN. Number of Outstanding RDMA Read/atomic ops at destination.	Alternate path address information. Path migration state.	Activate send processing.
RTS to RTS (no transition)	None.	Alternate path address information. Path migration state.	No transition.
RTS to SQD	None.	None.	Deactivate send processing.

Table 98 EE Context State Transition Properties (Continued)

Transition	Required Attributes	Optional Attributes	Actions
SQD to SQD	None.	Remote Node Address Vector (Connected QPs only). ^a ^b Loopback Indicator. ^c Alternate path address information. Path migration state. Local ACK Timeout. ^a Retry count. ^a RNR retry count. ^a Number of Outstanding RDMA Read/atomic ops at destination. ^a Number of local RDMA Read/atomic responder resources. ^a P_Key index. ^a Primary physical port associated with EE if HCA supports this capability. ^a	Modify EE attributes
SQD to RTS	None	Alternate path address information. Path migration state.	Activate send processing.
Any State (except Reset) to Error	None.	None allowed.	Queue processing is stopped. Work Requests in process are completed in error, when possible.
Any state to Reset	None.	None allowed.	EE attributes are reset to the same values after the EE was created. Outstanding Work Requests are removed from the queues without notifying the Consumer.

a. It is allowed to change this attribute only when the SQ is drained.

b. When changing the Remote Node Address Vector, the Path MTU cannot be changed in the SQD2SQD transition.

c. Supported only if indicated in Query HCA. Destination LID and Loopback Indicator are mutually exclusive.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.

- EE Context handle.
- The EE Context attributes to modify and their new values. The EE Context attributes that can be modified after the EE Context has been created are:
 - Primary physical port. Applicable for the Init to Init transition.
Applicable for the SQD to RTS transition, if supported by the HCA.
 - Primary path P_Key Index.
 - PSNs for Sends & Receives.
 - EE Context State.Enable or disable Send Queue Drained, Asynchronous Affiliated Event Notification. This modifier is only applicable when the next EE state chosen is SQD.
 - Initiator Depth: Number of RDMA Reads & Atomic Operations outstanding at any time on the destination EE.
 - Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations. This value may be rounded up to a supported value, not to exceed the maximum value allowable for EEs for this HCA. Note for this version of the specification, this value is one.
 - Destination EE Context number
 - Primary Address vector, containing:
 - Service level.
 - Send Global Routing Header Flag.
 - Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.
 - Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on EECs).
 - Path MTU.
 - Maximum Static Rate.
 - Source Path Bits.
 - For global destination:
 - Traffic class.
 - Flow label.
 - Hop limit.
 - Source GID index.
 - Destination's GID.
 - Local ACK Timeout (see Sections [12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737](#) and [12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737](#)).

• Retry count.	1
• RNR retry count.	2
• Alternate path address information. Valid only when automatic path migration is enabled.	3
• Alternate path P_Key index. Note that the alternate path P_Key index should map to the same partition key as the primary P_Key index; otherwise APM may not function properly.	4
• Alternate physical port.	5
Alternate path address vector, containing:	6
• Service level.	7
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	8
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	9
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on EECs).	10
• Maximum Static Rate.	11
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737).	12
• Source Path Bits.	13
For global destination:	14
• Traffic class.	15
• Flow label.	16
• Hop limit.	17
• Source GID index.	18
• Destination's GID.	19
• Path migration state. Valid only if this HCA supports automatic path migration. Valid states to set are:	20
• Migrated.	21
• Rearm.	22
Output Modifiers:	23
• Verb Results:	24
• Operation completed successfully.	25
• Insufficient resources to complete request.	26
• Invalid HCA handle.	27
• Invalid EE Context handle.	28

- Cannot change EE Context attribute. 1
- Invalid EE Context state. 2
- Invalid path migration state. 3
- Reliable Datagrams not supported. 4
- HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator. 5

11.2.9.3 QUERY EE CONTEXT

Description: 8

Returns the attribute list and current values for the specified EE Context. 9

Input Modifiers: 10

- HCA handle. 11
- EE Context handle. 12

Output Modifiers: 13

- The EE Context attributes. The list of attributes returned by the 14 query are:

- Current EE Context State. Where the state is one of the following: 15
 - Reset 16
 - Initialized 17
 - Ready to Receive (RTR) 18
 - Ready to Send (RTS) 19
 - SQ Error 20
 - SQ Drain (SQD) 21

The following modifiers are valid only when the EE Context is in the SQD state: 22

- Send Queue Draining 23
- Send Queue Drained 24
- Error 25

- EE Context Number. 26

The following attributes are not defined if the EE is in the Reset state. 27

- Primary physical port. 28
- Primary path P_Key Index. 29
- PSNs for Sends & Receives. 30
- Reliable Datagram Domain. 31

• Initiator Depth: Number of RDMA Reads & Atomic Operations outstanding at any time on the destination EE.	1
• Responder Resources: Number of responder resources for handling incoming RDMA Reads & atomic operations.	2
• Destination EE Context number.	3
• Primary Address vector, containing:	4
• Service level.	5
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	6
• Destination LID. If destination is in same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	7
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on EECs).	8
• Path MTU.	9
• Maximum Static Rate.	10
• Local ACK Timeout (see Sections 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737 and 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737).	11
• Retry count.	12
• RNR retry count.	13
• Source Path Bits.	14
• For global destination:	15
• Traffic class.	16
• Flow label.	17
• Hop limit.	18
• Source GID index.	19
• Destination's GID.	20
• Alternate path address information. Valid only when automatic path migration is enabled.	21
• Alternate path P_Key index.	22
• Alternate physical port.	23
Alternate path address vector, containing:	24
• Service level.	25
• Send Global Routing Header Flag.	26
• Destination LID. If the destination is in the same subnet, LID = final destination; otherwise LID = router LID.	27
• Loopback Indicator (if the HCA supports Loopback Indicator on EECs).	28

- Maximum Static Rate. 1
 - Local ACK Timeout (see Sections [12.7.33 Target ACK Delay on page 737](#) and [12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout on page 737](#)). 2
 - Source Path Bits. 3
- For global destination:
- Traffic class. 4
 - Flow label. 5
 - Hop limit. 6
 - Source GID index. 7
 - Destination's GID. 8
- Path migration state. Applicable only if this HCA supports automatic path migration. 9
- Verb Results: 10
 - Operation completed successfully. 11
 - Invalid HCA handle. 12
 - Invalid EE Context handle. 13
 - Reliable Datagrams not supported. 14

11.2.9.4 DESTROY EE CONTEXT

Description:

Destroys the specified EE Context. Any resources allocated by the Channel Interface for use by the EE Context are freed from use.

o11-5: If the CI supports RD Service, after this Verb is invoked, any outstanding or subsequently submitted Work Requests which depend on the EE Context **shall** complete with an Invalid EE Context Number error.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle. 30
- EE Context handle. 31

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 32
 - Invalid HCA handle. 33
 - Invalid EE Context handle. 34
 - Reliable Datagrams not supported. 35

11.2.10 MEMORY MANAGEMENT

Memory Management Verbs are partitioned into two categories:	1
1) Memory Region Verbs	2
• Allocate L_Key.	3
• Register Memory Region.	4
• Register Physical Memory Region.	5
• Query Memory Region.	6
• Deregister Memory Region.	7
• Reregister Memory Region.	8
• Reregister Physical Memory Region.	9
• Register Shared Memory Region.	10
• Fast Register Physical MR (a.k.a. Post Send Register Non-Shared MR)	11
• Local Invalidate	12
• Send with Invalidate	13
2) Memory Window Verbs	14
• Allocate Memory Window.	15
• Query Memory Window.	16
• Bind Memory Window.	17
• Post Send Bind Memory Window	18
• Deallocate Memory Window.	19

11.2.10.1 ALLOCATE L_KEY

Description:

Allocates physical buffer list resources for use in memory registrations. Note, the Consumer owns the key portion of the L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested, that is returned from this verb.

This verb either completes entirely or not at all.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Protection Domain.
- Requested size of the PBL resources to be allocated.
- Remote Access Requested. Requests that an R_Key be returned.

Output Modifiers:

- Memory Region Handle - used to identify this specific registered region to the Memory Management Verbs. 1
 - L_Key - used for local access. 2
 - R_Key - used for remote access. 3
- The R_Key is returned only when Remote Access was requested. 4
- Actual size of the PBL resources allocated. The actual size of the PBL resources allocated must be equal to or greater than the size of the PBL resources requested. 5
 - Verb Results: 6
 - Operation completed successfully. 7
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 8
 - Invalid HCA handle. 9
 - Invalid Protection Domain. 10
 - HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions. 11

11.2.10.2 REGISTER MEMORY REGION

Description:

Prepares a virtually addressed memory region for use by an HCA. A description of the registered memory suitable for use in Work Requests to describe locally accessible memory locations is returned. When specifically requested, a description of the registered memory suitable for use by inbound RDMA and/or atomic operations is returned.

This Verb depends on OSV supplied functions to perform the pinning of memory pages and creating the virtual to physical translations that represent the memory region.

The L_Key, and if requested R_Key, returned from this verb are owned by the CI.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle. 31
- Virtual Address - the address of the first byte of the region to be registered. The Maximum size of a Virtual Address is 64 bits. 32
- Length of region to be registered in bytes. 33
- Protection Domain to be assigned to the registered region. 34
- Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted. 35
 - Enable Local Write Access. 36
 - Enable Remote Write Access. 37

Remote Write Access requires Local Write Access to be enabled.	1
• Enable Remote Read Access.	2
• Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported).	3
Remote Atomic Operation Access requires Local Write Access.	4
• Enable Memory Window Binding.	5
Note: Local Read Access is always implied.	6
• Type of VA:	7
• Virtual Address	8
• Zero Based Virtual Address.	9
Output Modifiers:	10
• Memory Region Handle - used to identify this specific registered region to the Memory Management Verbs.	11
• L_Key - used for local access.	12
• R_Key - used for remote access.	13
The R_Key is returned only when Remote Access was requested.	14
• Verb Results:	15
• Operation completed successfully.	16
• Insufficient resources to complete request.	17
• Invalid HCA handle.	18
• Invalid Virtual Address.	19
• Invalid Length	20
• Invalid Protection Domain.	21
• Invalid Access Control specifier.	22
• HCA doesn't support ZBVA.	23
11.2.10.3 REGISTER PHYSICAL MEMORY REGION	24
Description:	25
Prepares a physically addressed Memory Region for use by an HCA. A description of the registered memory suitable for use in Work Requests to describe locally accessible memory locations is returned. When specifically requested, a description of the registered memory suitable for use by inbound RDMA and/or atomic operations is returned.	26

In addition to a list of physical buffers, the Consumer supplies a requested “I/O Virtual Address” to be associated with the first byte of the Region. The Consumer also supplies the length of the entire Region plus a byte offset that specifies where the Region begins within the first physical buffer.

If the CI doesn’t support the Base Memory Management extensions, the Channel Interface returns the I/O Virtual Address that is actually assigned for the Region. If the CI supports the Base Memory Management extensions, the CI returns the I/O Virtual Address supplied by the Consumer.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Key ownership requested. Consumer requests ownership of the key portion of L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested. Note, if the Consumer doesn’t request ownership of the key portion, then the L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested, returned from this verb cannot be used in a Fast Register Physical MR.
 - Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key.
- Physical Buffer List.

Starting physical address of each physical buffer.

- If the PBL is a Page Type, each buffer must begin and end on an HCA-supported page boundary.
- If the PBL is a Block Type, each buffer may begin at an arbitrary physical address

Page size. Used only if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR.

- Physical buffer size. All Block Sizes in the list must be the same for Block Type Physical Buffers. All Page Sizes in the list must be the same, if the HCA doesn’t support multiple page sizes per MR. Not applicable if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR. A buffer size must match one of the buffer sizes supported by the HCA.
- Total number of Physical Buffers in the list.
- Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address
 - Zero Based Virtual Address.
- If VA type is VA, the IOVA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region. Note, for ZBVA no IOVA is passed.
- Length of Region to be registered in bytes.
- Offset of Region’s starting IOVA within the first physical buffer.

- Protection Domain to be assigned to the registered region. 1
 - Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted. 2
 - Enable Local Write Access. 3
 - Enable Remote Write Access. 4Remote Write Access requires Local Write Access to be enabled. 5
 - Enable Remote Read Access. 6
 - Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported). 7
 - Enable Memory Window Binding. 8
- Note: Local Read Access is always implied. 9
- Output Modifiers: 10
- Memory Region Handle - used to identify this specific registered 11 region to the Memory Management Verbs. 12
 - I/O Virtual Address - IOVA actually assigned by the Channel Interface 13 for the first byte of the Region. The IOVA is returned if this verb completes successfully. 14
 - L_Key - used for local access. 15
 - R_Key - used for remote access. The R_Key is returned if the Access Control input modifier has any of the Remote Accesses enabled. 16
 - Actual size of the PBL resources allocated. The actual size of the 17 PBL resources allocated shall be greater than or equal to the size 18 of the PBL resources passed in by the Consumer as an input 19 modifier. 20
 - Verb Results: 21
 - Operation completed successfully. 22
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 23
 - Invalid HCA handle. 24
 - Invalid Physical Buffer List entry. 25
 - Invalid Length. 26
 - Invalid Offset. 27
 - Invalid Protection Domain. 28
 - Invalid Access Control specifier. 29

- HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions. 1
- HCA doesn't support ZBVA. 2
- HCA was not opened in Page mode. 3
- HCA was not opened in Block mode. 4
- HCA doesn't support multiple PB sizes per MR. 5

11.2.10.4 QUERY MEMORY REGION

Description:

Retrieves information about a specific memory region.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle. 13
- Memory Region Handle - as issued when region was registered. 14

Output Modifiers:

- L_Key. 17
- R_Key. R_Key is returned only if it was previously allocated. 18
- L_Key state. 19
- Ownership attributes for the key portion of L_Key and R_Key, if any R_Key exists for the Memory Region: Consumer owns vs. CI owns. 20
- Sharing attributes of the Memory Region: Shared vs. Not Shared. 21
- Actual number of allocated Physical Buffer List entries for Physical Memory Region referenced by the L_Key or R_Key. 22
- Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address 28
 - Zero Based Virtual Address. 29
- Actual Local Protection Bounds enforced by the Channel Interface. 30
- Actual Remote Protection Bounds enforced by the Channel Interface. 31

The Remote Protection Bounds are returned only when Local and Remote Access to the region was requested.

- Protection Domain assigned to the registered region. 35
- Access Control settings for the registered region. 36
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 37
 - Invalid HCA handle 38

- Invalid Memory Region handle.

11.2.10.5 DREGISTER MEMORY REGION

Description:

Removes a memory region from the HCA translation table. The region is unpinned if pinned in the associated registration Verb. This Verb is responsible only for deallocating resources allocated as part of the associated registration operation. All other resources are the responsibility of the Consumer.

It is an error for a Consumer to attempt to deregister a Memory Region while it still has any Memory Windows bound to it. Channel Interface implementations have options on how to deal with the error, described in [10.6.7.2.6 Deregistering Regions with Bound Windows on page 534](#).

Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively referencing memory locations in a Memory Region that is deregistered must fail with a protection violation. Work Requests or Remote Operation requests that attempt to access memory locations in a Memory Region that has been deregistered must fail with a protection violation.

This Verb depends on the availability of OSV supplied functions to perform the unpinning of memory pages.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Memory Region Handle - as issued when region was registered.

Output Modifiers:

No output modifiers.

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Memory Region handle.
 - Operation denied; Region still has bound Window(s)

11.2.10.6 REREGISTER MEMORY REGION

Description:

Modifies the attributes of an existing Memory Region. Any existing Region owned by the Consumer can be modified, regardless of which Verb created it initially¹⁷, or which Verb (if any) reregistered it most recently¹⁸. A description of the Memory Region suitable for use in Work Requests to describe locally accessible memory locations is returned.

When specifically requested, a description of the Memory Region suitable for use by inbound RDMA and/or atomic operations is returned.

This Verb conceptually performs the functions Deregister Memory Region followed by Register Memory Region. Where possible, resources below the Verb layer are expected to be reused instead of deallocated and reallocated. This Verb may be used to change the access rights and/or protection domain of a region, as well as changing the memory locations that are registered.

The L_Key and R_Key output modifiers from this Verb must be used in place of any previously issued for this region.

This Verb depends on the availability of OSV supplied functions to perform the pinning and unpinning of memory pages and creating the virtual to physical translations that represent the memory region.

It is an error for a Consumer to attempt to reregister a Memory Region while the Region still has any Memory Windows bound to it. Channel Interface implementations have options on how to deal with the error, as described in [10.6.7.2.6 Deregistering Regions with Bound Windows on page 534](#).

C11-18: If the CI returns the "Operation denied" (due to a bound Window) error, the CI **shall** make no change to the current registration.

C11-19: If the CI returns either the "Invalid HCA handle" or "Invalid Memory Region handle" error, the CI **shall** make no change to the current registration (assuming that it even exists).

C11-20: If the CI returns any other error, the CI **shall** invalidate both "old" and "new" registrations, and release any associated resources.

C11-21: For the error case where a remote agent is accessing a Memory Region while it is in the process of being reregistered, the CI **must** present the same semantics as a deregistration operation followed by a separate registration operation.

The L_Key, and if requested R_Key, returned from this verb are owned by the CI. Note, the L_Key, and any accompanying R_Key, that is passed in as an input modifier may have been owned by the Consumer. However, upon successful completion of this verb the CI owns the key portion of the L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested.

17. For instance, a Region created with Register Physical Memory Region can later be modified by Reregister Memory Region.

18. For instance, a Region modified by Reregister Physical Memory Region can later be modified by Reregister Memory Region.

A shared MR becomes a non-shared MR upon successful completion of this verb, if the Change Translation Input Modifier is set. Otherwise the shared MR remains a shared MR.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Memory Region Handle - as issued when region was registered.
- Change Request type - The following may be selected in any combination, the input modifiers required to support the request are listed below each request.
 - Change Translation.
Input Modifiers required.
 - Virtual Address.
 - Length.
 - Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address
 - Zero Based Virtual Address.
 - Change Protection Domain.
Input Modifiers required.
 - Protection Domain.
 - Change Access Control.
Input Modifiers required.
 - Access Control Selections.

Output Modifiers:

- Memory Region Handle - must be used for future references to this Memory Region. Might or might not be the same as the previous Region Handle.
- L_Key - used for local access.
- R_Key - used for remote access.
The R_Key is returned only when Remote Access was requested.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Memory Region handle.
 - Invalid Virtual Address.

- Invalid Length. 1
- Invalid Protection Domain. 2
- Invalid Access Control specifier. 3
- Operation denied; Region still has bound Window(s). 4
- HCA doesn't support ZBVA. 5

Usage Example:

- a) To modify only the Access Control of an already registered region, the Memory Region Handle, a Change Access Control Request and the new Access Control Selections input modifiers would be supplied to the Verb. 9
- b) To change the address translations of a region the Memory Region Handle, a Change Translation Request and the new Virtual Address and length input modifiers would be supplied to the Verb. 10
The pages previously pinned would be unpinned, the new memory region would be pinned and registered (and if requested bound) using the region's access controls and protection domain. 11
Previous translations would be removed or replaced as needed. 12

11.2.10.7 REREGISTER PHYSICAL MEMORY REGION

Description:

Modifies the attributes of an existing Memory Region. Any existing Region owned by the Consumer can be modified, regardless of which Verb created it initially¹⁹, or which Verb (if any) reregistered it most recently²⁰. A description of the Memory Region suitable for use in Work Requests to describe locally accessible memory locations is returned. When specifically requested, a description of the Memory Region suitable for use by inbound RDMA and/or atomic operations is returned.

This Verb conceptually performs the functions Deregister Memory Region followed by Register Physical Memory Region. Where possible, resources below the Verb layer are expected to be reused instead of deallocated and reallocated. This Verb may be used to change the access rights and/or protection domain of a region, as well as changing the memory locations that are registered.

Note, the L_Key, and any accompanying R_Key, that is passed in as an input modifier may have been owned by CI. If the Consumer requests ownership of the key portion of L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested, then upon successful completion of this verb the Con-

19. For instance, a Region created with Register Memory Region can later be modified by Reregister Physical Memory Region.

20. For instance, a Region modified by Reregister Memory Region can later be modified by Reregister Physical Memory Region.

sumer would own the key portion of the L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested.

The L_Key and R_Key output modifiers from this Verb must be used in place of any previously issued for this region. The CI can use any of the following three input modifiers to access the Memory Region: Memory Region Handle, L_Key, or R_Key. The CI is not expected to perform consistency checks between these three input modifiers.

It is an error for a Consumer to attempt to reregister a Memory Region while the Region still has any Memory Windows bound to it. Channel Interface implementations have options on how to deal with the error, as described in [10.6.7.2.6 Deregistering Regions with Bound Windows on page 534](#).

C11-22: For the Reregister Physical Memory Region Verb, the CI shall conform to all of the compliance statements contained in [11.2.10.6 Reregister Memory Region on page 650](#).

A shared MR becomes a non-shared MR upon successful completion of this verb, if the Change Translation Input Modifier is set. Otherwise the shared MR remains a shared MR.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Memory Region Handle
- L_Key
- R_Key. R_Key is supplied only if the L_Key has an accompanying R_Key.
- Change Request type - The following may be selected in any combination, the input modifiers required to support the request are listed below each request.
 - Change Translation. Input modifiers required:
 - Key ownership requested. Consumer requests ownership of the key portion of L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested. Note, if the Consumer doesn't request ownership of the key portion, then the L_Key and R_Key, if any was requested, returned from this verb cannot be used in a Fast Register Physical MR.
 - Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key.
 - Physical Buffer List.
 - Starting physical address of each physical buffer.
 - If the PBL is a Page Type, each buffer must begin and end on an HCA-supported page boundary.

- If the PBL is a Block Type, each buffer may begin at an arbitrary physical address

Page size. Used only if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR.

- Physical buffer size. All Block Sizes in the list must be the same for Block Type Physical Buffers. All Page Sizes in the list must be the same, if the HCA doesn't support multiple page sizes per MR. Not applicable if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR. A buffer size must match one of the buffer sizes supported by the HCA.
- Total number of Physical Buffers in the list.
- Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address
 - Zero Based Virtual Address.
- If VA type is VA, the IOVA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region. Note, for ZBVA no IOVA is passed.
- Length of Region to be registered in bytes.
- Offset of Region's starting IOVA within the first physical buffer.
- Change Protection Domain.
 - Protection Domain to be assigned to the registered region
- Change Access Control

Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted.

- Enable Local Write Access.
 - Enable Remote Write Access.
- Remote Write Access requires Local Write Access to be enabled.
- Enable Remote Read Access.
 - Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported).

Remote Atomic Operation Access requires Local Write Access.

- Enable Memory Window Binding.

Note: Local Read Access is always implied.

Output Modifiers:

- Memory Region Handle - used to identify this specific registered region to the Memory Management Verbs.
- I/O Virtual Address - IOVA actually assigned by the Channel Interface for the first byte of the Region. For an HCA that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, the returned IOVA is the same as the IOVA requested.
- L_Key - used for local access.
- R_Key - used for remote access. The R_Key is returned if the Access Control input modifier has any of the Remote Accesses enabled.
- Actual size of the PBL resources allocated. The actual size of the PBL resources allocated shall be greater than or equal to the size of the PBL resources passed in by the Consumer as an input modifier.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Physical Buffer List entry.
 - Invalid Length.
 - Invalid Offset.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - Invalid Access Control specifier.
 - HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions.
 - HCA doesn't support ZBVA.
 - HCA was not opened in Page mode.
 - HCA was not opened in Block mode.
 - HCA doesn't support multiple PB sizes per MR.

11.2.10.8 REGISTER SHARED MEMORY REGION

Description:

Given an existing Memory Region, a new independent Memory Region associated with the same physical memory locations is created, with the intention that the new Memory Region share HCA mapping resources to the extent possible. Through repeated calls to the Verb, an arbitrary number of Memory Regions can potentially share the same HCA mapping resources, all associated with the same physical memory locations. The memory region created by this verb behaves identically to memory regions created by the other memory registration verbs.

The Virtual Address, Protection Domain, and Access Rights specified for the new Memory Region need not be the same as those of the existing Memory Region. The lengths are by definition the same.

The Consumer supplies a requested Virtual Address to be associated with the first page in the new Memory Region, and the Channel Interface returns the Virtual Address that is actually assigned.

The L_Key, and if requested R_Key, returned from this verb are owned by the CI.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Memory Region Handle - of an already registered region.
- Virtual Address - requested by the Consumer for the first page of the buffer.
- Protection Domain.
- Access Control Selections.
- Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address
 - Zero Based Virtual Address.

Output Modifiers:

- Memory Region Handle - of the new Memory Region.
- Virtual Address - actually assigned by the Channel Interface for the first page.
- L_Key - used for local access.
- R_Key - used for remote access.

The R_Key is returned when Remote Access Rights are requested.

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Memory Region handle.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - Invalid Access Control specifier.
 - HCA doesn't support ZBVA.

11.2.10.9 ALLOCATE MEMORY WINDOW

Description:

This Verb allocates a memory window which is associated with a protection domain. It is not inherently associated with any memory region when allocated.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Protection Domain to be assigned to the Memory Window.
- Type of Memory Window: Type 1 or Type 2.

Output Modifiers:

- Window Handle - used to identify this specific Memory Window to other Memory Management Verbs.
- R_Key - an unbound R_Key for use in specifying the Window with the Bind Memory Window Verb.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Protection Domain.
 - HCA doesn't support Type 2 Memory Windows.

11.2.10.10 QUERY MEMORY WINDOW

Description:

This Verb returns the attributes associated with the specified memory window.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Window Handle - as issued by an Allocate Memory Window.

Output Modifiers:

- R_Key - the current R_Key associated with the Memory Window.
- Type of Memory Window: Type 1 or Type 2.
- R_Key state.
- Protection Domain associated with the Memory Window.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.

- Invalid Memory Window handle.

11.2.10.11 BIND MEMORY WINDOW

Description:

Posts a Work Request to a specified Send Queue, which binds a Memory Window to a specified VA range and remote access attributes based on an existing Memory Region. The QP Service Type must be either Reliable Connection, Unreliable Connection, or Reliable Datagram.

The specified VA range must either be the entire Memory Region or a subset of it. Remote Write Access or Remote Atomic Access must not be specified unless the Memory Region has Local Write Access. The QP, Memory Window, and Memory Region must belong to the same HCA and Protection Domain.

A previously bound Memory Window can be bound to a new VA range in the same or a different Memory Region, causing the previous binding to be invalidated. Binding a previously bound Memory Window to a zero-length VA range will invalidate the previous binding and return an R_Key that is in the unbound state.

The Bind operation has a unique ordering rule: any Work Request posted to a Send Queue subsequent to a Bind must not begin execution until the Bind operation completes.

Under normal operation, it is improper for a Consumer to change the binding of a Memory Window while it is being accessed by a remote agent. However, this can occur if remote agents misbehave, or it can occur under error recovery circumstances. Any Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively using a Memory Window when its binding is changed must fail with a protection violation. Once the Bind operation has been reported to the Consumer as having completed, the Channel Interface must guarantee that no additional accesses can be performed under the immediate previous binding.

If the bind memory window could not be completed due to an invalid input modifier, the previous bind memory window settings shall remain valid and none of the previous window's attributes shall be modified. An immediate or completion error shall be returned.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- QP Handle.
- The Work Request containing the information required to perform the request. The Work Request is defined as follows:
 - A user defined 64-bit Work Request ID.
 - Memory Window Handle.

- R_Key - The R_Key currently associated with the Memory Window. 1
- Memory Region Handle. 2
- L_Key - The L_Key for the Memory Region that the Memory Window will be associated with. 3
- Virtual Address - the address of the first byte of the bound range. The Maximum size of a Virtual Address is 64 bits. 4
- Length of range to be bound in bytes. 5
- Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted. 6

 - Enable Remote Write Access. Requires the Memory Region to have Local Write Access. 7
 - Enable Remote Read Access 8
 - Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported). Requires the Memory Region to have Local Write Access. 9

- Completion Notification Indicator. Must be specified if the Send Queue was created with a Signaling type of Selectable. Ignored if the Send Queue was created with a Signaling type of Non-Selectable. 10
- Fence indicator. If the fence indicator is set, then all prior RDMA Read and Atomic Work Requests on the queue must be completed before starting to process this Work Request. The Fence indicator only has an effect with the Reliable Connection and Reliable Datagram transport services. 11

Output Modifiers:

- R_Key - The R_Key associated with the new binding, whose value is different from that of the supplied R_Key. 12
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 13
 - Insufficient resources to complete request. 14
 - Invalid HCA handle 15
 - Invalid QP handle. 16
 - Invalid Service Type for this QP. 17
 - Invalid Memory Window handle. 18
 - Invalid R_Key. 19
 - Invalid Memory Region handle. 20

- Invalid L_Key. 1
- Invalid Virtual Address 2
- Invalid Length. 3
- Invalid Access Control specifier. 4
- Too many Work Requests posted. 5
- Invalid MW Type. Consumer attempted to perform a Bind operation on a Type 2 Memory Window. 6

11.2.10.12 DEALLOCATE MEMORY WINDOW

Description:

Under normal operation, it is improper for a Consumer to deallocate a Memory Window while it is being accessed by a remote agent. However, this can occur if remote agents misbehave, or it can occur under error recovery circumstances. Any Remote Operation requests that are in process and actively using a Memory Window when it is deallocated must fail with a protection violation. Once the deallocation Verb completes, the Channel Interface must guarantee that no additional accesses can be performed through that Memory Window.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle. 21
- Window Handle - as issued by an Allocate Memory Window. 22

Output Modifiers:

No output modifiers 25

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 27
 - Invalid HCA handle 28
 - Invalid Memory Window handle. 29

11.3 MULTICAST

11.3.1 ATTACH QP TO MULTICAST GROUP

Description:

Attaches the QP to the specified multicast group. The only function of this Verb is to assign the Receive Work Queue of this QP to the specified multicast group; after the attachment completes, this QP will be provided with a copy of every multicast message addressed to the group specified by the MGID and received on the HCA port with which the QP is associated. Creation of the multicast group, and reconfiguration of the fabric such that packets addressed to that group are

routed to a local HCA port, is described in [7.10 IBA and Raw Packet Multicast on page 235](#).

The Service Type of the specified QP must be Unreliable Datagram. It is an error to specify a QP with any other Service Type.

One or more QPs are allowed to be attached to a multicast group on the HCA. If the maximum number of multicast group attachments has already been reached for the HCA when a QP attempts to attach to the multicast group, an error is returned.

If an attempt is made to attach a particular QP to the same multicast group that it is already attached to, the operation will apparently succeed (i.e. return operation completed successfully). However, only one copy of each multicast message will be delivered to the attached QP.

The input modifier which determines the multicast group to attach to are the MGID and MLID. Both input modifiers must be supplied.

The IBA unreliable multicast feature is optional. This Verb is required only if IBA unreliable multicast is supported by the HCA.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Multicast group MLID.
- Multicast group MGID.
- QP Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Insufficient resources to complete request.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid multicast MLID.
 - Invalid Multicast group MGID.
 - Invalid QP handle.
 - Invalid Service Type for this QP.
 - Number of QPs attached to multicast groups exceeded.

11.3.2 DETACH QP FROM MULTICAST GROUP

Description:

Detaches the specified QP from a multicast group. The only function of this Verb is to detach the Receive Work Queue of this QP from the specified multicast group.

All of the input modifiers must be correct for the QP to be detached. If the QP is attached to a different multicast group or port, an error will be returned.

This Verb is required only if IBA unreliable multicast is supported by the HCA. The IBA unreliable multicast feature is optional.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA Handle.
- Multicast group MLID.
- Multicast group MGID.
- QP Handle.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid multicast MLID.
 - Invalid Multicast group MGID.
 - Invalid QP handle.
 - QP is not attached to multicast group MGID/MLID.

11.4 WORK REQUEST PROCESSING

11.4.1 QUEUE PAIR OPERATIONS

11.4.1.1 POST SEND REQUEST

Description:

Builds one or more WQEs for the Send Queue in the specified QP from the information contained in the list of Work Requests submitted by the Consumer. These WQEs are added to the end of the Send Queue and the HCA is notified that one or more WQEs are ready to be processed. If the HCA does not support the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI must support a list of size one.

Note: the Consumer can post up to the remaining capacity of a WQ without encountering a Too Many WRs Posted Immediate Error. If the Consumer posts more than the remaining capacity, an Immediate Error may be returned.

If the Send Queue is enabled for selectable completion notification, for each WR, the Consumer must specify whether a successful completion of the Work Request results in a completion entry on the CQ.

Control returns to the Consumer immediately after the WQEs have been submitted to the Send Queue and the HCA has been notified

that one or more WQEs are ready to process. When control returns, the Work Request is in the scope of the Consumer and will no longer be modified or accessed below the Channel Interface. However, for a Fast Register PMR operation the PBL is in the scope of the CI until the Work Request is returned as a Work Completion.

XRC Initiator QPs use the same attributes as RC QPs with the exception that Post Send Request is not supported by XRC Target QPs.

C11-23: If the CI does not support the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI **shall** return control to the Consumer immediately after the Work Request has been submitted to the Send Queue.

o11-5.2.1: If the CI supports the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI **shall** return control to the Consumer immediately after the list of Work Request has been submitted to the Send Queue.

C11-24: Once control has been returned to the Consumer the CI **shall not** modify or access any of the Work Requests.

Sends, RDMA and atomic operations can all take place on the same QP. Table 99 Operation Type Matrix shows which operations are allowed for each Service Type of the QP.

o11-5.2.2: For a CI that supports the Base Memory Management Extensions, if a QP is not enabled for Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key, and the Consumer attempts a Fast Register PMR or to use the Reserved L_Key, the CI **must** return the appropriate error.

C11-25: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C11-25.2.1: The CI **shall** support the operations based on QP Service type according to Table 99 Operation Type Matrix .

Table 99 Operation Type Matrix

	Send	RDMA Read	RDMA Write	Atomic Ops	Type 2 MW Bind ^a	Fast Register Physical MR ^a	Local Invalidate ^a
RC	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
UC	Yes	Not allowed	Yes	Not allowed	Yes	Yes	Yes
UD	Yes	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed
Raw	Yes	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed	Not allowed

Table 99**Operation Type Matrix (Continued)**

	Send	RDMA Read	RDMA Write	Atomic Ops	Type 2 MW Bind ^a	Fast Register Physical MR ^a	Local Invalidate ^a
XRC Initiator	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

a. Only supported if HCA supports Base Memory Management Extensions.

C11-25.2.2: The ordering and fencing considerations for Atomic Operations are the same as for RDMA Read.

Not all of the Input Modifiers are valid for all operations. Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix shows which of the Input Modifiers are valid for each operation. If Input Modifiers are specified that are not valid for a particular operation, they are ignored.

C11-26: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C11-26.2.1: The CI **shall** ignore all input modifiers in a Work Request that are not valid for the specified operation as shown in Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix .

Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix^a

	Send	RDMA Read	RDMA Write	Atomic Ops	Type 2 MW Bind	Fast Register Physical MR	Local Invalidate
Work Request ID	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required	Required
Completion notification indicator	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable	Required if Send Queue Signaling Type is Selectable
Scatter/Gather list	Required ^b	Required ^b	Required ^b	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
# of Data Segments	Required ^b	Required ^b	Required ^b	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Immediate Data	Optional except N/A for Raw Datagram QPs	N/A	Optional	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Fence Indicator	Optional for Reliable QPs	Optional for Reliable QPs	Optional for Reliable QPs	Optional for Reliable QPs	Optional for Reliable QPs	N/A	N/A
Remote Node Address	Address Handle Required for UD QPs, DLID, Source Path Bits & SL Required for Raw	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Remote Node QP # and Q_Key	Required for IB Datagram QPs ^c	Required for Reliable Datagram QPs	Required for Reliable Datagram QPs	Required for Reliable Datagram QPs	N/A	N/A	N/A
EE Context	Required for Reliable Datagram QPs	Required for Reliable Datagram QP	Required for Reliable Datagram QP	Required for Reliable Datagram QP	N/A	N/A	N/A

Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix^a (Continued)

	Send	RDMA Read	RDMA Write	Atomic Ops	Type 2 MW Bind	Fast Register Physical MR	Local Invalidate
Remote address	N/A	Required	Required	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Remote R_Key	Optional for Send w/ Inv. Only for RC.	Required	Required	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Atomic operands	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A
Solicited Event	Optional	N/A	Optional with Immediate Data	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Ethertype	Required for Raw Ether-type QPs	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Maximum Static Rate	Required for Raw and N/A for others	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Local Invalidate Fence	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Optional for RC, RD, and UC QPs
New key to use on L_Key and R_Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	N/A
MR Handle	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	Required for MR
MW Handle	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	Required for MW
PBL	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A
First Byte Offset	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A
Addressing Type	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	N/A
VA	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A	N/A
IOVA	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	N/A
L_Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	Required for MR

Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix^a (Continued)

	Send	RDMA Read	RDMA Write	Atomic Ops	Type 2 MW Bind	Fast Register Physical MR	Local Invalidate
Local R_Key	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	Required
Access Control	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	N/A
Length	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Required	Required	N/A
Remote XRC SRQ Number (for XRC INI QP WRs)	Required for Send, Send with Immediate and Send with Invalidate.	Required	Required	Required	N/A	N/A	N/A

a. Note: If the Service Type is not mentioned in a field in the above table, the modifier is not applicable for that Service Type.

b. Scatter/Gather list is allowed to have zero elements.

c. UD multicast uses a QPN of 0xFFFFFFF. See [07-16.1.1](#):

If an immediate error is returned, the QP state shall not be affected.

Input Modifiers:

This is the full list of modifiers for all of the operations available on the Send Queue. Not all modifiers can be used for all queue or operation types. See Table 99 Operation Type Matrix and Table 100 Work Request Modifier Matrix for details on which modifiers may be used for the specified queue and operation types.

- HCA handle.
- QP handle.
- A list of Work Requests. Where each entry consists a Work Request containing the information required to perform the Work Request. The WR modifiers that must be specified are dependent on the operation type specified. Each Work Request is defined as follows:
 - A user defined 64-bit Work Request ID.
 - Operation type. Valid operation types for Work Requests submitted to the Send Queue are:
 - Send
 - RDMA Read
 - RDMA Write
 - Compare & Swap (assuming the HCA supports atomic operations)

- Fetch & Add (assuming the HCA supports atomic operations) 1
- Fast Register Physical MR (assuming the HCA supports Fast Registration) 2
- Local Invalidate (assuming the HCA supports invalidate operations) 3
- Type 2 Memory Window Bind (assuming the HCA supports Type 2 Memory Windows) 4
- (Remote) Invalidate indicator. This indicator will select whether Invalidation will be included in the outgoing Send. 5
- R_Key that is to be included in the Send with Invalidate. 6
- Completion notification indicator. Must be specified and is only valid if the Send Queue was created with a Signaling Type of Selectable. 7
- Scatter/Gather list. The scatter/gather list can contain zero or more Data Segments. The list is specified only for Send and RDMA operations. Note that for Raw IPv6 QPs, the first 40 bytes of the buffer(s) referred to by the Scatter/Gather list must contain the IPv6 header of the outgoing message. 8
- Number of Data Segments in the scatter/gather list. This modifier is used only when the scatter/gather list must be specified. 9
- Immediate Data Indicator. This is set if Immediate Data is to be included in the outgoing request. Valid only for Send or Write RDMA operations. 10
- 4-byte Immediate Data. Valid only for Send or Write RDMA operations. 11
- Fence indicator. If the fence indicator is set, then all prior RDMA Read and Atomic Work Requests on the queue must be completed before starting to process this Work Request. The Fence indicator only has an effect with the Reliable Connection and Reliable Datagram transport services. 12
- Remote node address, required only for operations on Raw or IB Unreliable Datagram Service Types. 13
- QP number of the destination QP. Required only for operations on IB Datagram Service Types. Use 0xFFFFFFF for UD Multicast. See [o7-16.1.1](#): 14
- Remote XRC SRQ Number. Required only for certain operations on XRC INI QP. See [Remote XRC SRQ Number on page 668](#) for more details on supported operations. 15

- The Q_Key for the destination QP. Required only for operations on IB Datagram Service Types. See [10.2.5 Q_Keys on page 470](#) for more detail on how the CI determines which Q_Key to insert in the packet.
- Ethertype associated with the Work Request. Required only for Raw Ethertype QPs.
- Maximum Static Rate. Required only for Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype QPs.
- EE Context. Required only for Reliable Datagram QPs. Note that this is the EE Context number and not the EE Context Handle.
- Solicited Event Indicator. Valid only for RDMA Writes with immediate data or Sends.
- Remote address specified by an address and R_Key. Required and used only for RDMA and atomic operations. For Atomic operations, the address must point to a location that is 64-bit aligned.
- Compare & Swap (atomic) operation operands. If a Compare & Swap operation is specified, the following additional operands must be supplied:
 - Compare operand. Must be 64-bit.
 - Swap operand. Must be 64-bit.
 - A local Data Segment where a copy of the original contents of the remote memory operation will be deposited after the Compare & Swap operation completed at the remote endnode.
- Fetch & Add (atomic) operation operands. If a Fetch & Add operation is specified, the following additional operands must be supplied:
 - Add operand. Must be 64-bit.
 - A local Data Segment where a copy of the original contents of the remote memory operation will be deposited after the Fetch & Add operation completed at the remote endnode.
- Following are the input modifiers specific to the Bind Type 2 Memory Window Work Request:
 - New R_Key Key.
 - Memory Window Handle.
 - R_Key - The R_Key currently associated with the Memory Window.
 - Memory Region Handle.

- L_Key - The L_Key for the Memory Region that the Memory Window will be associated with. 1
- Type of VA: 2
 - Virtual Address 3
 - Zero Based Virtual Address. 4
- Virtual Address - For type 2 MWs, the address of the first byte of the bound range using the same VA base as the underlying MR. The Maximum size of a Virtual Address is 64 bits. 5
- Length of range to be bound in bytes. 6
- Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted. 7
 - Enable Remote Write Access. Requires the Memory Region to have Local Write Access. 8
 - Enable Remote Read Access 9
 - Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported). Requires the Memory Region to have Local Write Access. 10
- Following are the input modifiers specific to the Fast Register Physical MR Work Request: 11
 - Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key. 12
 - L_Key 13
 - R_Key - should be supplied if R_Key was assigned when MR was allocated. 14
 - Memory Region Handle 15
 - Physical Buffer List. It is recommended that the Consumer keeps the PBL available to the CI until the Fast Register Physical MR completes, because the CI may access the PBL until the Work Request is returned as a Work Completion. 16
- Starting physical address of each physical buffer. 17
 - If the PBL is a Page Type, each buffer must begin and end on an HCA-supported page boundary. 18
 - If the PBL is a Block Type, each buffer may begin at an arbitrary physical address 19
- Page size. Used only if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR. 20
 - Physical buffer size. All Block Sizes in the list must be the same for Block Type Physical Buffers. All Page Sizes in the list must be the same, if the HCA doesn't support 21

- multiple page sizes per MR. Not applicable if the HCA supports multiple page sizes per MR. A buffer size must match one of the buffer sizes supported by the HCA.
- Total number of Physical Buffers in the list.
 - Type of VA:
 - Virtual Address
 - Zero Based Virtual Address.
 - If VA type is VA, the IOVA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region. Note, for ZBVA no IOVA is passed.
 - Length of Region to be registered in bytes.
 - Offset of Region's starting IOVA within the first physical buffer.
 - Access Control - The following may be selected in any combination except as noted.
 - Enable Local Write Access.
 - Enable Remote Write Access.Remote Write Access requires Local Write Access to be enabled and the L_Key to have an accompanying R_Key.
 - Enable Remote Read Access.
 - Remote Read Access requires the L_Key to have an accompanying R_Key. - Enable Remote Atomic Operation Access (If Atomic Ops supported).
 - Remote Atomic Operation Access requires Local Write Access and the L_Key to have an accompanying R_Key. - Enable Memory Window Binding.
- Note: Local Read Access is always implied.
- Following are the input modifiers specific to the Local Invalidate Work Request:
 - Local Invalidate Fence Indicator
 - For a Memory Region
 - L_Key
 - R_Key - should be supplied if R_Key was assigned when MR was allocated.
 - Memory Region Handle

- For a Memory Window
- R_Key
- Memory Window Handle

Output Modifiers:

- Number of WQEs successfully posted to the SQ. If verb result is operation completed successfully, then all WQEs were posted. Otherwise the verb result refers to the WQE that experienced the first WR Immediate Error and was not posted.

- Verb Results:

- Operation completed successfully.
- Invalid HCA handle.
- Invalid QP handle.
- Too many Work Requests posted.
- Invalid operation type.
- Invalid QP state.

Note: This error is returned only when the QP is in the Reset, Init, or RTR states. It is not returned when the QP is in the Error or Send Queue Error states due to race conditions that could result in indeterminate behavior. Work Requests posted to the Send Queue while the QP is in the Error or Send Queue Error states are completed with a flush error.

- Invalid MW Type. Consumer attempted to perform either: a Bind or Invalidate operation on a Type 1 Memory Window; or a zero length Bind operation on a Type 2 Memory Window
- Invalid Scatter/Gather list format.
- Invalid Scatter/Gather list length.
- Atomic operations not supported.
- Invalid address handle.
- HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions.
- HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions.
- HCA doesn't support Local Invalidate Fencing.
- HCA does not support Block Type Physical Buffers or was not opened in this mode.
- HCA was not opened in Page mode.
- HCA doesn't support Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA).

11.4.1.2 POST RECEIVE REQUEST

Description:

Builds one or more WQEs for the Receive Queue in the specified QP or the SRQ from the information contained in the list of Work Request submitted by the Consumer. These WQEs are added to the end of the Receive Queue or the SRQ, and the HCA is notified that one or more WQEs are ready to be processed.

Note: the Consumer can post up to the remaining capacity of a WQ without encountering a Too Many WRs Posted Immediate Error. If the Consumer posts more than the remaining capacity, an Immediate Error may be returned.

Control returns to the Consumer immediately after the WQEs have been submitted to the Receive Queue or the SRQ and the HCA has been notified that one or more WQEs are ready to process. When control returns, the list of Work Requests is in the scope of the Consumer and will no longer be modified or accessed below the Channel Interface.

For the XRC Transport Service Type, Post Receive Request is supported for XRC SRQs. Post Receive Request is not supported for either XRC Initiator QPs or XRC Target QPs.

If the CI does not support the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI shall return control to the Consumer immediately after the Work Request has been submitted to the Receive Queue.

C11-26.2.2: If the CI supports the Base Queue Management Extensions, the CI **shall** return control to the Consumer immediately after the list of Work Request has been submitted to the Receive Queue.

o11-5.2.3: If the HCA supports SRQ, the CI **shall** return control to the Consumer immediately after the list of Work Request has been submitted to the SRQ.

If an immediate error is returned, the QP state or SRQ state shall not be affected.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- QP handle. Used when posting to a QP's Receive Queue and the QP is not associated with an SRQ.
- SRQ handle. Used when posting to an SRQ.
- A list of Work Requests. Where each entry consists a Work Request containing the information required to perform the Work Request. The WR modifiers that must be specified are dependent on the operation type specified. Each Work Request is defined as follows:

- A user defined 64-bit Work Request ID. 1
 - Operation type. The only valid operation for the Receive 2 Queue is the Receive operation. 3
 - Scatter/Gather list. This list can contain zero or more Data 4 Segments. 5
- Note that for UD QPs, the first 40 bytes of the buffer(s) referred 6 to by the Scatter/Gather list will contain the GRH of the in- 7 coming message. If no GRH is present, the contents of first 40 8 bytes of the buffer(s) will be undefined. The presence of the 9 GRH will be indicated by a bit in the Work Completion. 10
- Note that for Raw IPv6 QPs, the buffer(s) referred to by the 11 Scatter/Gather list will contain the IPv6 header(s) of the in- 12 coming message followed by the message payload. The first 13 40 bytes will be used for the IPv6 routing header. Other IPv6 14 headers may follow the routing header before the message 15 payload.
- Number of Data Segments in the scatter/gather list. 16

Output Modifiers:

- Number of WQEs successfully posted to the RQ or SRQ. If verb 19 result is operation completed successfully, then all WQEs were 20 posted. Otherwise the verb result refers to the WQE that experi- 21 enced the first WR Immediate Error and was not posted. 22
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully. 24
 - Invalid HCA handle. 25
 - Invalid QP handle. 26
 - Too many Work Requests posted. 27
 - Invalid operation type. 28
 - Invalid QP state. 29
 - Invalid Scatter/Gather list format. 30
 - Invalid Scatter/Gather list length. 31
 - HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions. 32
 - Invalid SRQ handle. 33
 - QP Handle used on a QP that is associated with an SRQ. 34

11.4.2 COMPLETION QUEUE OPERATIONS

11.4.2.1 POLL FOR COMPLETION

Description:

Polls the specified CQ for a Work Completion. A Work Completion indicates that a Work Request for a Work Queue associated with the CQ is done.

If an entry is present, the Work Completion at the head of the CQ is returned to the Consumer.

If an immediate error, associated with executing the Poll CQ verb itself, is returned, the CQ and QP state shall not be affected.

The following table defines, classifies and associates wire level protocol NAK codes with completion errors that are possible on Work Requests posted to the Send Queue. Completion errors are returned through the completion queue as work completions.

Completion for Send WRs posted to XRC Initiator QPs are same as for WRs posted to regular QPs, except as noted below.

Completions for Receive WRs posted to XRC SRQs are same as for WRs posted to regular SRQs except as noted below.

Note there are no completions associated with XRC TGT QPs as there are no WRs ever posted to XRC TGT QPs.

C11-27: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C11-27.2.1: The CI **shall** return completion errors for a Work Request in the associated Work Completion for errors described in Table 101 Completion Error Types for Send Queues .

Table 101 Completion Error Types for Send Queues

Error Type	Completion Type	Transport Errors returned by responder (RC)	Transport Errors sent by responder (RD)
Bad Response	Processing	N/A	N/A
Invalid (local) EE Context Number	Processing	N/A	N/A
Invalid (local) EE Context State	Processing	N/A	N/A
Local EE Context Operation	Processing	N/A	N/A
Local Length	Interface	N/A	N/A
Local Length	Processing	N/A	N/A
Local Protection	Interface	N/A	N/A
Local Protection	Processing	N/A	Possibly a NAK - Invalid Request
Local QP Operation	Interface	N/A	N/A
Local QP Operation	Processing	N/A	Possibly a NAK - Invalid Request
Local RDD Violation	Processing	N/A	N/A
Memory Management Operation	Interface	N/A	N/A

Table 101 Completion Error Types for Send Queues (Continued)

Error Type	Completion Type	Transport Errors returned by responder (RC)	Transport Errors sent by responder (RD)
Remote Access	Processing	NAK - Remote Access Violation	NAK - Remote Access Violation
Remote Invalid RD Request	Processing	N/A	NAK - Invalid RD Request
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	NAK - Invalid Request	NAK - Invalid Request
Remote Operation	Processing	NAK - Remote Operational Error	NAK - Remote Operational Error
RNR Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	N/A	N/A
Transport Retry Counter Exceeded	Processing	Possibly a NAK - Sequence Error	Possibly a NAK - Sequence Error
Work Request Flushed	Processing	N/A	N/A
XRC violation error	Processing	NAK-Invalid RD Request	

A Remote Q_Key violation and a Remote RDD Mismatch will both result in an Invalid RD Request completion error type for the requester's WQE. Since the same NAK code is returned in both cases, it is not possible for the requester to distinguish between them.

The following table defines, classifies and associates wire level protocol NAK codes with completion errors that are possible on Work Requests posted to the Receive Queue or Shared Receive Queue. Completion errors are returned through the completion queue as work completions.

A new "XRC violation error" is returned for requests that caused the responder to return a "NAK-Invalid RD Request" NAK. This could have been caused by either a Remote XRC Domain Violation or an XRCETH Violation as detailed in the transport section.

C11-28: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

C11-28.2.1: The CI **shall** generate the completion errors based on the NAK codes as shown in Table 102 Completion Error Types for RQs or SRQs .

Table 102 Completion Error Types for RQs or SRQs

Error Type	Completion Type	Transport Errors sent to Requester (RC)	Transport Errors sent to Requester (RD)
Invalid EE Context State	Processing	N/A	NAK - Invalid RD Request
Local Access	Processing	NAK - Remote Access Violation	NAK - Remote Access Violation
Local EE Context Operation	Processing	N/A	NAK - Invalid RD Request

Table 102 Completion Error Types for RQs or SRQs (Continued)

Error Type	Completion Type	Transport Errors sent to Requester (RC)	Transport Errors sent to Requester (RD)
Local Length	Processing	NAK - Remote Operational Error	NAK - Remote Operational Error
Local Protection	Processing	NAK - Remote Operational Error	NAK - Remote Operational Error
Local QP Operation	Processing	NAK - Remote Operational Error	NAK - Remote Operational Error
Aborted	Processing	N/A	Possibly RNR NAK
Remote Invalid Request	Processing	NAK - Invalid Request	NAK - Invalid Request
Work Request Flushed	Processing	N/A	N/A

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.

Output Modifiers:

- The Work Completion containing information relating to the completed Work Request if an entry is present on the CQ. If the status of the operation that generates the Work Completion is anything other than success, the contents of the Work Completion are undefined except as noted below. The contents of a Work Completion are:
 - The 64-bit Work Request ID set by the Consumer in the associated Work Request. This is always valid, regardless of the status of the operation.
 - The operation type specified in the completed Work Request.
 - The valid operation types are:
 - Send (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - RDMA Write (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - RDMA Read (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Compare and Swap (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Fetch and Add (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Fast Register Physical MR (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Local Invalidate (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Memory Window Bind (for WRs posted to the Send Queue)
 - Send Data Received (for WRs posted to the Receive Queue or Shared Receive Queue)

- RDMA with Immediate Data Received (for WRs posted to the Receive Queue or Shared Receive Queue)
- The number of bytes transferred.

The number of bytes transferred is returned in Work Completions for Receive Work Requests for incoming Sends and RDMA Writes with Immediate Data. This does not include the length of any immediate data.
- The number of bytes transferred is returned in Work Completions for Send Work Requests for RDMA Read and Atomic Operations.
- For the RQ of a UD QP that is not associated with an SRQ or for an SRQ that is associated with a UD QP, the number of bytes transferred is the payload of the message plus the 40 bytes reserved for the GRH. For the RQ of a UD QP that is not associated with an SRQ or for an SRQ that is associated with a UD QP, the 40 bytes is always included, whether or not the GRH is present.
- R_Key Invalidated Indicator. If set, Received Message Invalidated an R_Key. Note, if an incoming Send with Invalidate completed with a Memory Management Operation Error, then the R_Key was not Invalidated.
 - Invalidated R_Key. The R_Key invalidated by the Received Message.
- QP Number. Set if the Base Queue Management Extension or Shared Receive Queue Extension is supported.
- Immediate data indicator. This is set if immediate data is present (for WRs posted to the Receive Queue or Shared Receive Queue)
- 4-byte immediate data.
- Remote node address and QP. Returned only for Datagram services. The address information returned for incoming Datagrams is shown in Table 100 Datagram addressing information.

Table 103 Datagram addressing information

Reliable Datagrams	Unreliable Datagrams	Raw IPv6	Raw Ethertype
16-bit SLID	16-bit SLID	16-bit SLID	16-bit SLID
4-bit SL	4-bit SL	4-bit SL	4-bit SL
24-bit Source QP	24-bit Source QP		16-bit Ethertype

Table 103 Datagram addressing information

Reliable Datagrams	Unreliable Datagrams	Raw IPv6	Raw EtherType
24-bit local EE Number	DLID Path Bits ^a / Loopback Indicator ^b	DLID Path Bits ^a / Loopback Indicator ^b	DLID Path Bits ^a / Loopback Indicator ^b

a. Note: Not applicable for Multicast messages

b. Supported only if indicated in Query HCA

- GRH Present indicator, for UD RQs only. If this indicator is set, the first 40 bytes of the buffer(s) referred to by the Scatter/Gather list will contain the GRH of the incoming message. If it is not set, the contents of first 40 bytes of the buffer(s) will be undefined. Contents of the payload of the message will begin after the first 40 bytes
- P_Key index, for GSI only (for WRs posted to the Receive Queue).
- Status of the operation. This is always valid.
 - These status codes are covered in [Completion Return Status](#), with NAK codes reported according to [Completion Error Types for Send Queues](#) and [Completion Error Types for RQs or SRQs](#).
- Freed Resource Count (see [10.8.5.1 Freed Resource Count on page 552](#)). This is always valid, regardless of the status of the operation.
- Local XRC TGT QP Number. Returned only for completions of WRs posted to XRC SRQs.
- XRC SRQ number. Returned only for completions of WRs posted to XRC SRQs.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - CQ empty.

11.4.2.2 REQUEST COMPLETION NOTIFICATION

Description:

Requests the CQ event handler be called when the next completion entry of the specified type is added to the specified CQ. The handler is called at most once per Request Completion Notification call for a particular CQ. Any CQ entries that existed before the notify is enabled will not result in a call to the handler.

Completion Events are one of two types: solicited or unsolicited. A Solicited Completion Event occurs when an incoming Send or RDMA Write with Immediate Data message, with the Solicited Event header bit set causes a successful Receive Work Completion to be added to a CQ; or, when an unsuccessful Work Completion is added to a CQ. An Unsolicited Completion Event occurs when any other successful Receive Work Completion, or any successful Send Work Completion, is added to a CQ.

C11-29: The CI **shall** support both solicited and unsolicited Completion Event Types.

When the Consumer requests completion notification, it must specify whether the notification callback is invoked for either:

- the next Solicited Completion Event only, or
- the next Solicited or Unsolicited Completion Event.

C11-29.1.1: When “next Solicited Completion Event only” is outstanding, the CI shall invoke a notification callback when any of the following conditions occur:

- An incoming Send with the Solicited Event Header bit set causes a successful Receive Work Completion to be added to the specified CQ.
- An incoming RDMA Write with Immediate Data with the Solicited Event Header bit set causes a successful Receive Work Completion to be added to the specified CQ.
- An unsuccessful Send or Receive Work Completion is added to the specified CQ.

C11-29.1.2: When “next Solicited or Unsolicited Completion Event” is outstanding, the CI shall invoke a notification callback when any Work Completion is added to the specified CQ.

If a Request Completion Notification is pending, subsequent calls to Request Completion Notification for the same CQ prior to the completion event affect only when the notification occurs. A Request Completion Notification for the next completion event takes precedence over a Request Completion Notification for a solicited event completion for the same CQ.

If multiple calls to Request Completion Notification have been made for the same CQ and at least one of the requests set the type to the next completion, the CQ event handler will be called when the next completion is added to that CQ. The CQ event handler will be called only once, even though multiple CQ notification requests were made prior to the completion event for the specified CQ.

Once the CQ event handler is called, another completion notification request must be registered before the CQ event handler will be called again.

C11-30: When a completion notification request is outstanding on a CQ for a *solicited* completion type and another request for that CQ is made that specifies a notification for the *next* completion, the CI **shall** change the outstanding completion notification type to the *next* completion.

C11-31: When a completion notification request is outstanding on a CQ for the *next* completion and another notification request for that CQ is made, the CI **shall not** change the outstanding completion notification type.

A CQ event handler must be specified prior to calling this routine. If the CQ event handler has not been registered when the event is generated, the handler call will not be made.

When the CQ event handler is called, it only indicates a new entry was added to the specified CQ. The HCA and CQ handles are passed to the CQ event handler so the CQ event handler can determine which CQ caused it to be called.

Once the handler routine has been invoked, the Consumer must call Request Completion Notification again to be notified when a new entry is added to that CQ.

It is the responsibility of the Consumer to call the Poll for Completion Verb to retrieve a Work Completion.

Note: If the Consumer Requests Completion Notification on a CQ Handle that does not have a CQ Event Handler ID associated with the CQ, the operation will have no effect. That is, no completion event will be generated.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.
- Type of completion notification requested. The type is either the next completion or when a solicited completion occurs.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid CQ handle.
 - Invalid completion notification type.

11.5 EVENT HANDLING

11.5.1 SET COMPLETION EVENT HANDLER

Description:

Associates a Completion Handler Identifier with a Completion Event Handler Address. If the HCA supports the Base Queue Management Extensions, more than one CQ event handler can be registered per HCA.

For a given Completion Handler Identifier, additional calls to this Verb will overwrite the Completion Event Handler Address associated with the Completion Handler Identifier.

This call does not automatically request a notification on a completion event. The Request Completion Notification Verb must be called in order to request notification.

The parameters passed to the CQ event handler are:

- HCA handle.
- CQ handle.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- Completion Event Handler Address.
- Completion Event Handler Identifier:
 - If zero, the CI will create a Completion Handler Identifier and the Completion Event Handler Address will be assigned.
 - If non-zero, the CI will replace the Completion Event Handler Address associated with the existing Completion Handler identified by the Completion Event Handler Identifier. If the Completion Event Handler Address is zero, then the Completion Event Handler Address is cleared. Note: A completion event must not be generated when the CQ is associated with a cleared Completion Event Handler.

Output Modifiers:

- Completion Event Handler Identifier. Returned only if the input modifier “Completion Event Handler Identifier” is set to zero.
- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.
 - Invalid Completion Event Handler Identifier.
 - HCA doesn’t support Base Queue Management Extensions.

- Insufficient resources to complete request.

11.5.2 SET ASYNCHRONOUS EVENT HANDLER

Description:

Registers the asynchronous event handler. Only one asynchronous event handler can be registered per HCA. Additional calls to this Verb will overwrite the handler routine to be called. Additional calls will not generate an additional handler routine.

C11-32: The CI **shall** use the asynchronous event handler specified in this Verb even in the case where an existing asynchronous event handler has already been registered.

After the asynchronous event handler is registered, all subsequent asynchronous events will result in a call to the handler. Until an asynchronous event handler is registered, asynchronous events will be lost.

The parameters passed to the asynchronous event handler when it is invoked are:

- HCA handle.
- Event record. This contains information which indicates the resource type and identifier as well as which event occurred. See [Asynchronous Events](#) for more information.

Input Modifiers:

- HCA handle.
- Handler address.

Output Modifiers:

- Verb Results:
 - Operation completed successfully.
 - Invalid HCA handle.

11.6 RESULT TYPES

11.6.1 IMMEDIATE RETURN RESULTS

This section contains a list of the possible Verb return results. All results except “Operation completed successfully” are due to interface errors in the Immediate Error category. Not all Verbs return all results.

Successful return result:

- Operation completed successfully.

Resource errors:

• Insufficient resources to complete request.	1
• CQ capacity requested exceeds HCA capability.	2
• Maximum number of Work Requests requested exceeds HCA capability.	3
• Maximum number of scatter/gather elements requested exceeds HCA capability.	4
• Too many Work Requests posted.	5
• Number of available Raw Datagram QPs exceeded.	6
• Number of QPs attached to multicast groups exceeded.	7
• HCA already in use.	8
HCA attribute errors:	
• Invalid HCA name.	9
• Invalid HCA handle.	10
• MTUCap of HCA port exceeded.	11
• Invalid Port.	12
• Invalid Counter specified.	13
Address errors:	
• Invalid Address handle.	14
• Invalid Address Vector.	15
• HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator.	16
QP errors:	
• Invalid QP handle.	17
• Cannot change QP attribute.	18
• Invalid QP state.	19
• Invalid Service Type for this QP.	20
• QP is already in use.	21
• Atomic operations not supported.	22
• Raw Datagrams not supported.	23
• Reliable Datagrams not supported.	24
• Invalid operation type.	25
• Invalid Scatter/Gather list format.	26
• Invalid Scatter/Gather list length.	27
• Invalid path migration state.	28
• Invalid Special QP type.	29
• Invalid Address Handle	30

• More outstanding entries on WQ than size specified.	1
• The QP is still attached to one or more multicast groups.	2
• HCA does not support attaching UC QPs to SRQ.	3
• HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator.	4
CQ errors:	5
• Invalid CQ handle.	6
• More entries outstanding on CQ than capacity specified.	7
• One or more Work Queues still associated with the CQ.	8
• CQ empty.	9
• Invalid completion notification type.	10
• CQ has overrun or has become inaccessible.	11
EE Context errors:	12
• Invalid EE Context handle.	13
• Invalid EE Context state.	14
• Cannot change EE Context attribute.	15
• HCA does not support the Loopback Indicator.	16
QP or EE Context errors:	17
• Invalid path migration state.	18
• Reliable Datagram Domain is in use.	19
• Invalid Reliable Datagram Domain.	20
• Invalid RNR NAK Timer Field value.	21
Memory operation errors:	22
• Invalid Protection Domain.	23
• Protection Domain is in use.	24
• Invalid Virtual Address.	25
• Invalid Length.	26
• Invalid Physical Buffer List entry.	27
• Invalid Offset.	28
• Invalid L_Key.	29
• Invalid R_Key.	30
• Invalid Memory Region handle.	31
• Invalid Memory Window handle.	32
• Invalid Access Control specifier.	33
• Operation denied; Region still has bound Window(s)	34
Multicast errors:	35
	36
	37
	38
	39
	40
	41
	42

• Invalid multicast MLID.	1
• Invalid Multicast group MGID.	2
• QP is not attached to multicast group MGID/MLID.	3
Partition table errors:	4
• P_Key index out of range.	5
• P_Key index specifies invalid entry in the P_Key table.	6
Verb Extension related errors:	7
• HCA does not support Block Type Physical Buffers or was not opened in this mode.	9
• HCA was not opened in Page mode.	10
• HCA does not support Base Memory Management Extensions.	12
• HCA does not support Base Queue Management Extensions.	13
• HCA does not support Local Invalidate Fencing.	14
• HCA does not support multiple PB sizes per MR.	15
• HCA does not support SRQ.	16
• HCA does not support resizing SRQ.	17
• HCA does not support ZBVA.	18
• QP Handle used on a QP that is associated with an SRQ.	19
• QP still has Type 2A MW bound to it.	20
• Invalid Completion Event Handler ID.	21
• Invalid MW Type.	22
• Invalid SRQ handle.	23
• SRQ is in the Error State.	24
• SRQ Limit exceeds maximum number of Work Requests allowed on the SRQ.	25
• SRQ still has QPs associated with it.	26
The following are only returned for XRC Transport Type.	27
• XRC not supported	28
• Invalid XRC Domain	29
• XRC Domain is in use	30
11.6.2 COMPLETION RETURN STATUS	31
Describes the possible Work Completion status error return results.	32
These are errors that occur during the processing of a Work Request and can be reported in the Work Completion status.	33
• Success - Operation completed successfully.	34

- Local Length Error - Generated for a Work Request posted to the local Send Queue when the sum of the Data Segment lengths exceeds the message length for the channel adapter port. Generated for a Work Request posted to the local Receive Queue when the sum of the Data Segment lengths is too small to receive a valid incoming message or the length of the incoming message is greater than the maximum message size supported by the HCA port that received the message.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
- Local QP Operation Error - An internal QP consistency error was detected while processing this Work Request.
8
9
- Local EE Context Operation Error - An internal EE Context consistency error was detected while processing this Work Request.
10
11
- Local Protection Error - The locally posted Work Request's Data Segment does not reference a Memory Region that is valid for the requested operation.
12
13
14
- On a Reserved L_Key:
15
16
 - The Verbs Consumer does not have Reserved L_Key access enabled.
17
18
- Work Request Flushed Error - A Work Request was in process or outstanding when the QP transitioned into the Error State.
19
20
- Memory Management Operation Error - The Verbs Consumer had insufficient rights to perform the operation, because:
21
22
 - On a Fast-Register this includes:
23
24
 - The Verbs Consumer does not have Fast Register access enabled;
25
26
 - Requested PBL exceeds size of allocated PBL;
27
 - Remote access was requested, but L_Key does not have an accompanying R_Key; or
28
29
 - Memory access was attempted on an L_Key or R_Key that is in the Invalid State.
30
31
 - On a Memory Window this includes:
32
33
 - The Verbs Consumer has insufficient access rights;
34
 - A zero length Bind Memory Window or Post Send Bind WR operation on a Type 2 Memory Window
35
36
 - Verb Consumer attempted to Bind a MW to a Zero Based Virtual Address Memory Region.
37
38
 - On an Invalidate Operation this includes:
39
40
 - Memory access was attempted on an L_Key or R_Key that is in the Invalid State;
41
42

- Memory Region could not be Invalidated, because it is a Shared Memory Region;
- Memory Region can not be invalidated because it has bound Memory Window; or
- Memory Region could not be Invalidated, because it was created through a Register Memory Region or Reregister Memory Region.
- Memory Window could not be Invalidated, because it was a Type 1 Memory Window.

The following errors are reported only for Reliable QPs.

- Bad Response Error - An unexpected transport layer opcode was returned by the responder.
- Local Access Error - A protection error occurred on a local data buffer during the processing of a RDMA Write with Immediate Data operation sent from the remote node.
- Remote Invalid Request Error - The responder detected an invalid message on the channel. Possible causes include the operation is not supported by this receive queue, insufficient buffering to receive a new RDMA or Atomic Operation request, or the length specified in an RDMA request is greater than 2^{31} bytes.

In the case where the buffer size is insufficient to handle the request, the number of bytes transferred into the buffer is indeterminate. However, the CI shall not write beyond the buffer bounds.

- Remote Access Error - A protection error occurred on a remote data buffer to be read by an RDMA Read, written by an RDMA Write or accessed by an atomic operation. This error is reported only on RDMA operations or atomic operations.
- Remote Operation Error - The operation could not be completed successfully by the responder. Possible causes include a responder QP related error that prevented the responder from completing the request or a malformed WQE on the Receive Queue.
- Transport Retry Counter Exceeded - The local transport timeout retry counter was exceeded while trying to send this message.
- RNR Retry Counter Exceeded - The RNR NAK retry count was exceeded.

The following errors are reported only for RD QPs or EE Contexts.

- Local RDD Violation Error - The RDD associated with the QP does not match the RDD associated with the EE Context
- Remote Invalid RD Request - The responder detected an invalid incoming RD message. Causes include a Q_Key or RDD violation.

- Aborted Error - The operation was aborted:
 - For RD, the requester aborted the operation. One possible cause is the requester suspended the operation and will retry it later using a new Receive WQE. The other possible cause is the requester abandoned the operation and placed the requester QP in the SQEr state.
 - For UD or UC QPs associated with an SRQ, the responder aborted the operation.
- Invalid EE Context Number - An invalid EE Context number was detected.
- Invalid EE Context State - Operation is not legal for the specified EE Context state.

The following errors are only valid for XRC QPs.

- XRC Violation Error - returned for requests that caused the responder to experience an XRC Domain Violation (XRC SRQ is not in the same domain as the XRC TGT QP).

All the above completion errors are applicable for WRs submitted through the Post Send Request and Post Receive Request verbs, except for the Memory Window Bind Error status. WR submitted through the Bind Memory Window verb must complete with one of the following error codes: Success, Memory Window Bind Error, Local QP Operation Error or Work Request Flushed Error.

11.6.3 ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

This section describes the asynchronous events. Asynchronous events are separated into four categories: Affiliated asynchronous events, Affiliated asynchronous errors, Unaffiliated asynchronous events and Unaffiliated asynchronous errors. Both kinds of asynchronous errors are defined in [10.10.2.3 Asynchronous Errors on page 564](#).

Affiliated asynchronous events have been separated into two categories because the behavior of the QP/EE Context when the events occur are different.

C11-33: When an affiliated asynchronous error occurs, the CI **shall** cause the QP/EE to transition to the Error state.

C11-34: When an affiliated asynchronous event occurs, the CI **must** leave the QP/EE in the QP/EE State that it was in when the asynchronous event occurred.

Unaffiliated asynchronous errors are those which cannot be associated with a specific QP or EE Context.

The Verbs Consumer must register a handler as described in [Set Asynchronous Event Handler](#) to be notified that an asynchronous event has occurred. This mechanism is used to collect information about both events and the errors.

11.6.3.1 AFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

Affiliated asynchronous events are advisories to the Verb Consumer that the specified event has occurred on the specified QP or EE Context. Events in this category are not considered to be errors by the Channel Interface, so the QP/EE state remains unchanged.

- Path Migrated - Indicates the connection has migrated to the alternate path.
- Communication Established - Indicates the first packet has arrived for the Receive Work Queue where the QP/EE is still in the RTR state. The handle of the QP/EE, which was the destination of this packet is returned in the event record. This event may be used by the Communication Manager as shown in the state diagram in [12.9.6 Communication Establishment - Passive on page 750](#) and described in 12.9.7.2 Passive States . The Communication Manager may receive this event while it is already in the Established state; this is not an error.

C11-35: For RC and UC service, the CI **shall** generate a Communication Established Affiliated Asynchronous Event if the first packet arrives while the QP is still in the RTR state, and the first packet is processed with no errors. The CI is allowed to generate this Affiliated Asynchronous Event under some error conditions, but shall not generate the event unless inbound packet validation is error-free at least past the “actual PSN=ePSN?” box (see Figure 90, Figure 115).

o11-5.1.1: If the CI supports RD service, the CI **shall** generate a Communication Established Affiliated Asynchronous Event if the first packet arrives while the EEC is still in the RTR state, and the first packet is processed with no errors. The CI is allowed to generate this Affiliated Asynchronous Event under some error conditions, but shall not generate the event unless inbound packet validation is error-free at least past the “actual PSN=ePSN?) box (see Figure 91).

For UD and Raw service types, generation of the Communication Established Affiliated Asynchronous Event is allowed, but is strongly discouraged.

- Send Queue Drained - Indicates that the Send Queue of the specified Queue Pair or EE has completed the outstanding Messages in progress when the state change was requested and, if applicable,

has received all acknowledgements for those messages; The event is also generated if the transition to SQD has been aborted by a transition into SQError, Error or Reset state.

o11-5.2.4: If the HCA supports SRQ, for RC and UD service, the CI shall generate a SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event if SRQ Limit Event generation mechanism is armed and the SRQ Limit is reached. The SRQ Limit is reached whenever the number of SRQ WQEs is less than the SRQ Limit.

o11-35.2-1.1: If an HCA supports attachment of UC QPs to SRQ, the CI **shall** report SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event as specified in [o11-5.2.4](#):

The CI shall reset the SRQ Limit to zero when the event has been generated.

o11-5.2.5: If the HCA supports SRQ, for RC and UD service, the CI shall generate a Last WQE Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event on a QP that is in the Error State and is associated with an SRQ when either:

- a CQE is generated for the last WQE, or
- the QP gets in the Error State and there are no more WQEs on the RQ.

o11-5.2.6: If the HCA supports SRQ, for RC and UD service, the CI shall not generate a Last WQE Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event on a QP after the CI surfaced a Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error on the same QP.

o11-35.2-1.2: If an HCA supports attachment of UC QPs to SRQ, the CI **shall** report Last WQE Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event as specified in [o11-5.2.5](#): and [o11-5.2.6](#):

If the HCA experiences an Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error and the Last WQE Reached Affiliated Asynchronous Event does not occur, then the Consumer must destroy all QPs and the SRQ to reclaim all the WQEs associated with that QP.

11.6.3.2 AFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS ERRORS

- CQ Error - Indicates an error occurred when writing an entry to the Completion Queue.

C11-36: The CI **shall** generate a CQ Error when an error, other than CQ overrun, occurs while writing an entry to the CQ.

C11-37: The CI **shall** generate a CQ Error when a CQ overrun is detected.

This condition will result in an Affiliated Asynchronous Error for any associated Work Queues when they attempt to use that CQ. Completions can no longer be added to the CQ. It is not guaranteed that completions present in the CQ at the time the error occurred can be retrieved. Possible causes include a CQ overrun or a CQ protection error.

- Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error - An error occurred while accessing or processing the Work Queue that prevents reporting of completions.

C11-38: The CI **shall** generate a Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error when a Work Queue associated with a CQ that caused the CQ Error to be generated attempts to use that CQ.

C11-39: The CI **shall** generate a Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error when an error occurred while accessing or processing the Work Queue that prevents reporting of completions.

- Invalid Request Local Work Queue Error - The transport layer detected a transport OpCode violation at the Responder. Possible causes are: Unsupported or Reserved OpCode; or Out of Sequence OpCode.

C11-39.1.1: For RC Service, the CI **shall** generate an Invalid Request Local Work Queue Error when the transport layer detects a transport OpCode violation at the Responder. The Responder's affiliated QP **shall be** placed in the error state.

- Local Access Violation Work Queue Error - The transport layer detected a Request access violation at the Responder. Possible causes are: Misaligned Atomic; Too many RDMA Read or Atomic Requests; R_Key violation; or length errors without immediate data.

C11-39.1.2: For RC Service, the CI **shall** generate a Local Access Violation Work Queue Error when the transport layer detects a Request access violation at the Responder. The Responder's affiliated QP **shall be** placed in the error state.

- Local EE Context Catastrophic Error - An Error occurred while accessing or processing the EE Context that prevents reporting of completions.

o11-5.a1: If the CI supports RD Service, the CI **shall** generate a EE Context Catastrophic Error when an error occurred while accessing or processing the EE Context that prevents reporting of completions.

- Path Migration Request Error - Indicates the incoming path migration request to this QP/EE was not accepted. The validation process is defined in section [Migration Request](#).

1
2
3
o11-6: If the CI supports automatic path migration, the CI **shall** generate
4 a Path Migration Request Error when the incoming path migration request
5 to this QP/EE was not accepted.

- 6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- SRQ Catastrophic Error - An error occurred while processing or accessing the SRQ that prevents dequeuing a WQE from the SRQ and reporting of receive completions.

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

o11-6.2.1: If the HCA supports SRQ, the CI shall generate an SRQ Catastrophic Error, if an error, other than “Resource Not Ready”, prevents the HCA from dequeuing a WQE from the SRQ. When this error occurs the CI shall place the SRQ in the Error state.

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

o11-6.2.2: If the HCA supports SRQ, for a QP that is associated with an SRQ the CI shall generate a Local Work Queue Catastrophic Error and place the QP in the Error state, if either:

- 3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- an error, other than “Resource Not Ready”, prevents the HCA from dequeuing a WQE from the SRQ; or
 - a QP tries to dequeue a WQE from the SRQ, but the associated SRQ is already in the Error State.

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

The following describes the new Affiliated Asynchronous Errors for XRC TGT QPs:

- 3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- XRC Domain Violation - Responder’s Receive Queue detected an XRC Domain that does not match the XRC Domain of the XRC SRQ.
 - Invalid XRCETH - Responder detected that the XRC SRQ does not exist or is not in the right state or wire protocol violation.

11.6.3.3 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

- 3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Port Active - issued when the link becomes active.

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

o11-6.1.1: If the Port Active event is supported, the CI shall generate a Port Active event when the link is declared active.

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

Using the definitions for “available” and “unavailable” states in the Port Error description below, the “Port Active” event is generated when the link associated with an HCA port transitions from an unavailable to an available state.

- 3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Client Reregistration Event - issued when SM requests client reregistration (see [14.4.11 Client Reregistration on page 1011](#)).

3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

o11-6.2.3: If the CI indicates that the port supports client reregistration, the CI shall generate a Client Reregistration Event when the SMA receives this request from the SM.

- 3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Port Change Event - issued when port attributes change.

o11-39.2-1.1: If the optional Port Change event is supported, then the CI shall generate a Port Change event when any of the port attributes listed below change. The event will be accompanied with a set of flags indicating which of the port attributes have changed.

- SGID table - the SGID table has changed.
- P_Key table - the P_Key table has changed.
- MasterSM Lid - the Master SM LID has changed.
- MasterSM SL - the Master SM SL has changed.
- SubnetTimeout - the SubnetTimeout has changed.
- IsSMDDisabled - the IsSMDDisabled capability mask bit has changed.
- IsClientReregistrationSupported - the IsClientReregistrationSupported capability mask bit has changed.

11.6.3.4 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS ERRORS

- Local Catastrophic Error - An error occurred which cannot be attributable to any resource and CI behavior is indeterminate.

C11-40: The CI **shall** generate a Local Catastrophic Error when an error occurred which cannot be attributable to any resource and CI behavior is indeterminate.

- Port Error - Issued when the link is declared unavailable.

C11-41: The CI **shall** generate a Port Error when the link is declared unavailable. Port Errors **shall** have no effect on QP/EE State.

Using the definitions of [Link States](#), the “unavailable” states are considered to be: Down, Initialize and Armed. The “available” states are Active and ActDefer. The “Port Error” unaffiliated asynchronous error is generated when the link associated with an HCA port transitions from an available to an unavailable state.

11.6.4 VERB EXTENSION SUMMARY

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers lists all the verbs, modifiers, and verb results which must be supported by an implementation that supports any of the verb extensions in this specification. If an implementation does not support any of these verb extensions, then

that implementation will not support any of these new verbs, modifiers, and verb results.

Table 104

List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Open HCA	M	BL	Added: I: The type of Physical Buffer that will be used on the HCA. R: Block type Physical Buffers are not supported.

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Query HCA	M	VE	<p>Added: O: The ability of this HCA to support multiple Physical Buffer sizes per Memory Region.</p>
		BMM	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support the Base Memory Management Extensions. O: Value of Reserved L_Key. O: Maximum Physical Buffer List size supported by this HCA when invoking the Allocate L_Key verb. O: List of Page sizes supported by this HCA. O: Bound Type 2 Memory Window Association mechanism O: Ability of this HCA to support multiple physical buffer sizes per Memory Region.</p>
		BL	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support Block List Physical Buffer Lists. O: Range of Block sizes supported by this HCA.</p>
		ZBVA	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support Zero Based Virtual Addresses.</p>
		LIF	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support Local Invalidate Fencing.</p>
		BQM	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support the Base Queue Management Extensions. O: Maximum number of CQ Event Handlers.</p>
		SRQ	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to support the Shared Receive Queues. O: Maximum number of SRQs. O: Maximum number of WRs per SRQ. O: Maximum number of Scatter/Gather entries per SRQ WR. O: Ability to modify the maximum number of WRs per SRQ.</p>
		SRQUC	<p>Added: O: Ability of this HCA to attach UC QPs to SRQ.</p>
		Rereg	<p>Added: O: Client reregistration supported</p>
Modify HCA Attributes	M	NA	
Close HCA	M	NA	
Allocate Protection Domain	M	NA	

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Deallocate Protection Domain	M	NA	
Allocate Reliable Datagram Domain	R	NA	
Deallocate Reliable Datagram Domain	R	NA	
Create Address Handle	M	NA	
Modify Address Handle	M	NA	
Query Address Handle	M	NA	
Destroy Address Handle	M	NA	
Create Shared Receive Queue	N	SRQ	All
Modify Shared Receive Queue	N	SRQ	All
Query Shared Receive Queue	N	SRQ	All
Destroy Shared Receive Queue	N	SRQ	All
Create QP	M	SRQ	Added: I: SRQ Handle, if QP is to be associated to an SRQ. R: Invalid SRQ handle. Became optional: I: The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Receive Queue. I: The maximum number of scatter/gather elements the Consumer will specify in a Work Request submitted to the Receive Queue. O: The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue. O: The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue.
		BMM	Added: I: Enable or disable Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key operations.
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions. R: HCA does not support SRQ.

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Modify QP	M	SRQ	Became optional: I: The maximum number of outstanding Work Requests the Consumer expects to submit to the Receive Queue. O: The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue.
		BMM	Added: R: QP still has Type 2A MWs bound to it.
Query QP	M	SRQ	Added: O: SRQ Handle Became optional: O: The actual number of outstanding Work Requests supported on the Receive Queue. O: The actual number of scatter/gather elements that can be specified in Work Requests submitted to the Receive Queue.
		BMM	Added: O: Fast Register PMR and Reserved L_Key operations enabled or disabled.
Destroy QP	M	BMM	Added: R: QP still has Type 2A MWs bound to it.
Get Special QP	M	NA	
Create Completion Queue	M	BQM	Added: I: Completion Event Handler Identifier. R: Invalid Completion Event Handler Identifier.
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions.
Query Completion Queue	M	BQM	Added: O: Completion Event Handler Identifier
Resize Completion Queue	M	NA	
Destroy Completion Queue	M	NA	
Create EE Context	R	NA	
Modify EE Context Attributes	R	NA	
Query EE Context	R	NA	
Destroy EE Context	R	NA	
Allocate L_Key	N	BMM	All

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Register Memory Region	M	ZBVA	Added: I: Type of VA
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support ZBVA
Register Physical Memory Region	M	BMM	Added: I: Key ownership requested I: Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key. O: Actual size of the PBL resources allocated.
		ZBVA	Added: I: Type of VA Became optional: I: VA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region
		BL	Added: I: Physical Buffer Type Changed: I: Page size - used for lists with multiple page sizes I: Physical buffer size (The input modifier became per physical buffer) - used for lists containing buffers and same sized pages
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions. R: HCA doesn't support ZBVA. R: HCA doesn't support Block Type Physical Buffers or was not opened in this mode. R: HCA doesn't support multiple PB sizes per MR.
Query Memory Region	M	BMM	Added: O: L_Key state. O: Ownership attributes for the key portion of L_Key and R_Key. O: Sharing attributes of the Memory Region: Shared vs. Not Shared. O: Actual number of allocated Physical Buffer List entries.
		ZBVA	Added: O: Type of VA
Deregister Memory Region	M	NA	
Reregister Memory Region	M	ZBVA	Added: I: Type of VA
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support ZBVA

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Reregister Physical Memory Region	M	BMM	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key.</p> <p>I: Key ownership requested</p> <p>I: L_Key Key</p> <p>I: R_Key Key</p> <p>O: Actual size of the PBL resources allocated</p>
		ZBVA	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: Type of VA</p> <p>Became optional:</p> <p>I: VA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region</p>
		BL	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: Physical Buffer Type</p> <p>Changed:</p> <p>I: Page size - used for lists with multiple page sizes</p> <p>I: Physical buffer size (The input modifier became per physical buffer) - used for lists containing buffers and same sized pages</p>
		VE	<p>Added:</p> <p>R: HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions.</p> <p>R: HCA doesn't support ZBVA.</p> <p>R: HCA doesn't support Block Type Physical Buffers or was not opened in this mode.</p> <p>R: HCA doesn't support multiple PB sizes per MR.</p>
Register Shared Memory Region	M	ZBVA	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: Type of VA</p>
		VE	<p>Added:</p> <p>R: HCA doesn't support ZBVA</p>
Allocate Memory Window	M	BMM	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: Type of Memory Window.</p>
		VE	<p>R: HCA doesn't support Type 2 Memory Windows.</p>
Query Memory Window	M	BMM	<p>Added:</p> <p>O: Type of Memory Window.</p> <p>O: R_Key state.</p>
Bind Memory Window	M	BMM	<p>Added:</p> <p>R: Invalid MW Type</p>
Deallocate Memory Window	M	NA	
Attach QP to Multicast Group	U	NA	
Detach QP from Multicast Group	U	NA	

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Post Send Request	M	BQM	<p>Added:</p> <p>I: A list of Work Requests (1.1 required a single WR)</p> <p>O: Number of WQEs successfully posted to the SQ</p>
		BMM	<p>Changed:</p> <p>I: Operation type (Added: Fast Register Physical MR, Local Invalidate, Type 2 Memory Window Bind)</p> <p>Added:</p> <p>I: (Remote) Invalidate indicator.</p> <p>I: R_Key that is to be included in the Send with Invalidated.</p> <p>Added for Bind Type 2:</p> <p>I: New R_Key Key.</p> <p>I: Memory Window Handle.</p> <p>I: R_Key</p> <p>I: Memory Region Handle.</p> <p>I: L_Key</p> <p>I: Virtual Address</p> <p>I: Length of range to be bound in bytes.</p> <p>I: Access Control</p> <p>Added for Fast Register:</p> <p>I: Key to use on the new L_Key and R_Key.</p> <p>I: L_Key</p> <p>I: R_Key</p> <p>I: Memory Region Handle</p> <p>I: Physical Buffer List.</p> <p>I: Starting physical address of each physical buffer.</p> <p>I: Page size - used for lists with multiple page sizes</p> <p>I: Physical buffer size (The input modifier became per physical buffer) - used for lists containing buffers and same sized pages.</p> <p>I: Total number of Physical Buffers in the list.</p> <p>I: The VA requested by the Consumer for the first byte of the region.</p> <p>I: Length of Region to be registered in bytes.</p> <p>I: Offset of Region's starting IOVA within the first physical buffer.</p> <p>I: Access Control</p> <p>Added for Local Invalidate:</p> <p>I: L_Key</p> <p>I: R_Key</p> <p>I: Memory Region Handle</p> <p>I: Memory Window Handle</p> <p>R: Invalid MW Type</p>

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Post Send Request (cont'd)	M	ZBVA	Added for Bind Type 2: I: Type of VA. Added for Fast Register: I: Type of VA.
		LIF	Added for Local Invalidate: I: Local Invalidate Fence Indicator
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Memory Management Extensions. R: HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions. R: HCA doesn't support Local Invalidate Fencing. R: HCA does not support Block Type Physical Buffers or was not opened in this mode. R: HCA doesn't support Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA). R: QP Handle used on a QP that is associated with an SRQ.
Post Receive Request	M	BQM	Added: I: A list of Work Requests (1.1 required a single WR) O: Number of WQEs successfully posted to the RQ
		SRQ	Became Optional: I: QP handle Added: I: SRQ handle
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions. R: HCA doesn't support SRQ.
Poll for Completion	M	BQM or SRQ	Added: O: QP number
		BMM	Changed: O: The operation type (added: Fast Register Physical MR, Local Invalidate) Added: O: R_Key Invalidated Indicator. O: Invalidated R_Key.
Request Completion Notification	M	NA	

Table 104 List of Extended Verbs and Optional Modifiers (Continued)

Verb	1.1 Spec ^a	Ext. Verbs Group ^b	New Modifiers ^c
Set Completion Event Handler	M	BQM	Changed: I: Completion Event Handler Address (allowed to be zero) Added: I: Completion Handler Identifier R: Invalid Completion Event Handler Identifier. R: Insufficient resources to complete request.
		VE	Added: R: HCA doesn't support Base Queue Management Extensions.
Set Asynchronous Event Handler	M	NA	

a. 1.1 Spec Requirements - Legend:

M - Mandatory
N - Not Required
R - RD Service
U - UD Multicast

b. Extended Verbs Group - Legend:

NA - Not Applicable
VE - HCA supports any one of the Verb Extensions, but not the one being requested.
BQM - Base Queue Management
BMM - Base Memory Management
SRQ - Shared Receive Queue
SRQUC - Attachment of UC QPs to Shared Receive Queues
BLBL - Block List Physical Buffer List
ZBVA - Zero Based Virtual Address
LIF - Local Invalidate Fencing
Rereg - Client reregistration

c. New Modifiers - Legend:

I - Input Modifier
O - Output Modifier
R - Verb Result

11.6.5 XRC SUMMARY

[Table 105 List of XRC Verbs and Optional Modifiers on page 705](#) lists all the verbs, modifiers and verb results which must be supported by an implementation that supports XRC. If an implementation does not support

XRC, then that implementation will not support any of these new verbs, modifiers and verb results.

Table 105 List of XRC Verbs and Optional Modifiers

Verb	Modifiers ^a
Query HCA	O: max XRC domains O: max XRC SRQs max SGL per XRC SRQ WR ability to modify max WRs per XRC SRQ
Allocate XRC Domain	new verb
Deallocate XRC Domain	new verb
Create XRC SRQ	new verb
Query XRC SRQ	new verb
Modify XRC SRQ	new verb
Destroy XRC SRQ	new verb
Create QP	I : became ignored for XRC INI QPs: • SRQ Handle • CQ associated with RQ • max WRs for RQ • max SGL per recv WR I: Transport Service Type may also be XRC INI QP O: became not returned for XRC INI QPs: • actual max number of WRs on RQ • actual max SGL size for WRs on RQ R: HCA does not support XRC
Modify QP	XRC INI QPs use same attributes as RC, unless otherwise noted I: became ignored for XRC INI QPs: • max WRs for RQ • enable/disable RDMA-R/RDMA-W/Atomics • responder resources • Min RNR NAK Timer Field Value O: became not returned by XRC INI QPs: • actual max number of WRs on RQ

Table 105 List of XRC Verbs and Optional Modifiers

Verb	Modifiers ^a
Query QP	XRC INI QPs use same attributes as RC, unless otherwise noted O: became not returned by XRC INI QPs: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• actual max number of WRs on RQ• actual max SGL size for WRs on RQ• Responder Resources• Min RNR NAK Time Field Value
Create XRC TGT QP	new verb
Query XRC TGT QP	new verb
Modify XRC TGT QP	new verb
Destroy XRC TGT QP	new verb
Post Send	XRC INI QPs use same attributes as RC, unless otherwise noted I: Dst XRC SRQ Number - required for Send (all variants), RDMA-R, RDMA-W, Atomics
Post Recv	Post Recv supported on XRC SRQs O: Local XRC TGT QPN <ul style="list-style-type: none">• XRC SRQ Number

a. Legend:

- I - Input Modifier
- O - Output Modifier
- R - Verb Result

CHAPTER 12: COMMUNICATION MANAGEMENT

12.1 OVERVIEW

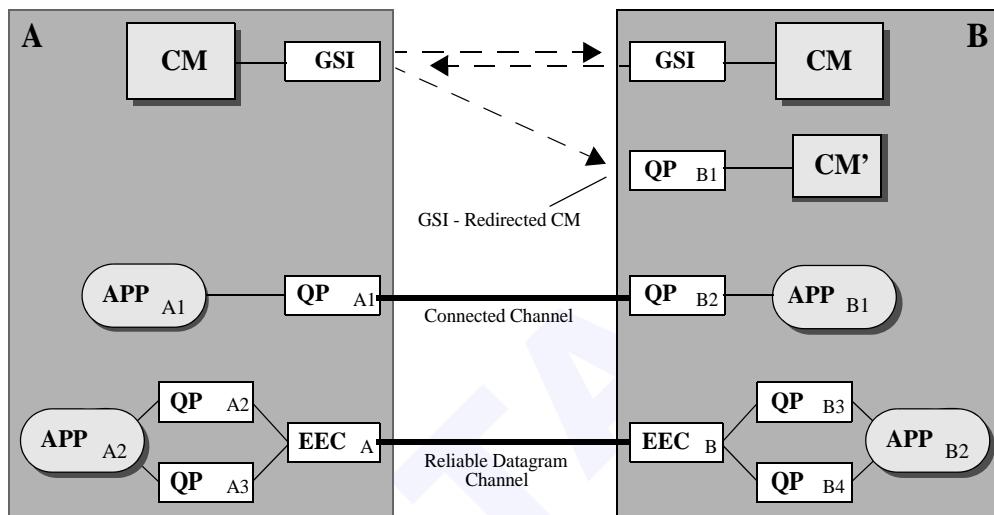


Figure 131 **Communication Management Entities**

Communication Management encompasses the protocols and mechanisms used to establish, maintain, and release channels for the IB Reliable Connection, Unreliable Connection, and Reliable Datagram transport service types. The Service ID Resolution Protocol (see section [12.11](#)) enables users of Unreliable Datagram service to locate Queue Pairs supporting their desired service.

Connections are managed over Queue Pairs other than those used for the connection, through the protocol described herein, between the Communication Managers (CMs) on each system. (See Figure 131) The CMs communicate using Management Datagrams (MADs), typically over the General Services Interface (GSI) on each system. This document defines CM external behaviors, but internal interfaces and implementations are outside the scope of the InfiniBand™ Architecture specification. Examples are intended to enable understanding, not to specify implementation.

At creation, QPs and EECs are not ready for communication. The attributes of the QP/EEC must be modified (see sections [11.2.5.2](#) and [11.2.9.2](#)) to support the desired communication characteristics and target(s).

Due to their nature, raw packet QPs do not need, and are not supported by, IB communication management.

The requirements on participating CMs are not equal. The initiating CM is responsible for collecting or calculating most of the information necessary to establish the connection. Much of the raw information is available from Subnet Administration, but some adjustments may be desirable, depending on the application of the channel.

CMs must maintain a certain amount of information for the lifetime of a connection. Details may be found in section [12.9.9](#).

CM MADs that fail the GMP check algorithm shown in [Figure 173 GMP Check](#) shall be silently dropped by the CM except where specifically noted in the sections that follow.

CM follows the standard management model documented in section [13.5.2 GSI Redirection](#) for handling the redirection of CM requests, with the exception that the responses for CM that contain the ClassPortInfo are not of the GetResp() method, but are rather of the Send() method. (See [13.4.5 Management Class Methods](#) for a description of the GetResp() and Send() methods. See [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo](#) for a description of the redirection information inside the ClassPortInfo.) The CM messages which contain ClassPortInfo are **REJ** (see [12.6.7 REJ - Reject](#)), **APR** (see [12.8.2 APR - Alternate Path Response](#)), **SPR** ([12.8.4 SPR - Suggest Path Response](#)) and **SIDR REP** (see [12.11.2 SIDR REP - Service ID Resolution Response](#)). It should be noted that it is not an error for a requestor that has been redirected to send a subsequent request to the GSI. It is inefficient to do so, however, as there is a high likelihood that the requestor will be redirected yet again.

C12-0.1.1: All messages defined in this version of the CM Protocol shall have the ClassVersion field in the MAD header for the message set to a value of 2. All messages defined in version 1.0a of the CM Protocol that was previously published by the IBTA shall have the ClassVersion field set to a value of 1.

If a CM implementation using ClassVersion 2 sends a request (e.g. a **REQ** message) to a CM implementation that only supports ClassVersion 1, the CM running ClassVersion 1 will not be able to reply, and the request will time out. If the CM implementation using ClassVersion 2 wants to have its request successfully processed by a CM implementation using ClassVersion 1, it must send its request MAD (and other MADs) to that CM using the ClassVersion 1 format and protocol.

A CM using ClassVersion 2 can definitively make the determination that it needs to use ClassVersion 1 to correspond with a remote CM by performing a Get(ClassPortInfo) to the remote CM. The ClassVersion used in

the MAD header for the Get(ClassPortInfo) MAD must be set to 1. The ClassVersion field in the returned GetResp(ClassPortInfo) MAD can then be examined to determine if the remote CM is supporting ClassVersion 1, or both ClassVersion 1 and ClassVersion 2. See [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#) for details.

12.2 ESTABLISHMENT

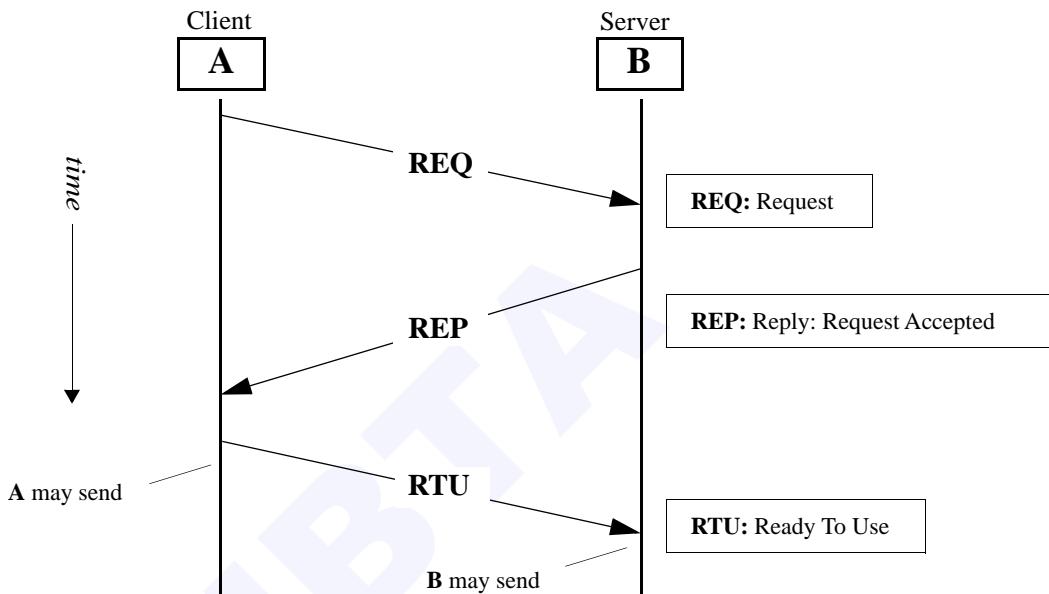


Figure 132 Sample Connection Establishment Sequence

Two models are supported by the Connection Establishment protocol: Active/Passive (Client/Server), and Active/Active (Peer to Peer).

As seen in Figure 131, the CMs on each system establish connections on behalf of their clients. The interactions between CMs and their clients are outside the scope of this specification.

In the Active/Passive model (shown in Figure 132), B's CM waits for connection requests on behalf of a server (e.g., a server process or an I/O controller) that waits (passive) for connections to be established by clients. The CM (A) for a prospective client (active) places the ServiceID that designates the desired service in the Request (**REQ**) message that begins the connection establishment sequence. The ServiceID allows the passive-side CM (B) to associate the request with the appropriate server entity. Should the **REQ** be accepted, B's CM returns the Queue Pair Number (QPN) (and End to End Context Number (EECN) for RD service) in a Response (**REP**) MAD. Whether QPs and EECs are pre-allocated or are allocated in response to a request is an implementation consideration that is outside the scope of the IBA specification.

In the Active/Active model, both entities begin as active (i.e., both send **REQ**), but one ultimately takes the passive role for establishing the connection. The selection of the passive entity is described in section [12.10.4](#).

Establishing a loopback connection between different QPs on the same CA is supported by the InfiniBand™ architecture. The specific mechanism used to set up a loopback connection is implementation dependent. (There are a variety of mechanisms that can be used to establish a loopback connection, including using the Connection Establishment protocol, or using the Modify Queue Pair verb to set the necessary state directly.)

12.2.1 QUIET TIME

Once a CM has initialized (which typically happens after a reboot), the CM should take care not to establish any connections until after the “quiet time”. The quiet time is the interval required to remove all packets from the network that pertain to connections the CM established during its previous incarnation. If the CM does not take care to avoid establishing connections during the quiet time, it is possible that unreported data corruption may occur due to a packet from a previous connection instance being successfully received by a new connection instance.

In the worst case scenario, packets pertaining to a connection can be active in the network for a period of $2 * \text{PortInfo:SubnetTimeout} + \text{Target ACK Delay}$. (See section [14.2.5.6 PortInfo](#) for details on PortInfo:SubnetTimeout, and [12.7.33 Target ACK Delay](#) for details on Target ACK Delay.) This is the minimum safe quiet time that the CM must wait after initialization before establishing new connections. The particular mechanism that the CM uses to wait for the quiet time is outside the scope of this specification. Possible mechanisms include:

- Having a tunable parameter that is loaded after the CM is initialized to tell the CM how long to wait.
- Having the CM store information in non-volatile storage about the maximum PortInfo:SubnetTimeout and maximum Target ACK Delay seen while the CM is running, and retrieving that information from non-volatile storage after the CM is initialized in its next incarnation.

12.3 AUTOMATIC PATH MIGRATION

The connection establishment messages specify the information necessary to support an (optional) alternate pair of endpoints to support Automatic Path Migration (APM). APM is described in section [17.2.8.1](#) and the support mechanisms are described in section [10.4](#). Channel Adapters that do not support APM may ignore the Alternate address information.

12.4 RELEASE

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
Connections are released through the exchange of Disconnect Request (**DREQ**) and Disconnect Reply (**DREP**) MADs. Communicating entities will likely wish to effect an orderly shutdown of their protocol before initiating the Disconnect sequence. After a connection is released, the CM shall cause each involved QP/EEC to be placed into the TimeWait state as defined in section [12.9.8.4](#).

15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
CMs shall maintain enough connection state information to detect an attempt to initiate a connection on a remote QP/EEC that has not been released from a connection with a local QP/EEC, or that is in the TimeWait state. Such an event could occur if the remote CM had dropped the connection and sent **DREQ**, but the **DREQ** was not received by the local CM. If the local CM receives a **REQ** that includes a QPN (or EECN if **REQ:RDC Exists** is not set), that it believes to be connected to a local QP/EEC, the local CM shall act as defined in section [12.9.8.3](#).

12.4.1 STALE CONNECTION

16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
A QP/EEC is said to have a stale connection when only one side has connection information. A stale connection may result if the remote CM had dropped the connection and sent a **DREQ** but the **DREQ** was never received by the local CM. Alternatively the remote CM may have lost all record of past connections because its node crashed and rebooted, while the local CM did not become aware of the remote node's reboot and therefore did not clean up stale connections.

12.5 SERVICE TYPES

12.5.1 SUPPORTED PROTOCOLS

24
25
26
27
28
29
The sections that follow contain message descriptions and state diagrams specifying how those messages are exchanged. The messages are used for the following purposes:

- To support connection establishment for RC, XRC and UC service types.
- To support end to end context establishment for RD service.

30
31
32
[Figure 131](#) illustrates the following relationships.

12.5.2 CONNECTED SERVICES

33
34
35
A channel is established for Reliable Connected (RC), Extended Reliable Connected (XRC) and Unreliable Connected (UC) service types by reaching agreement between the end CMs.

12.5.3 UNRELIABLE DATAGRAM SERVICE

36
37
38
Unreliable Datagram (UD) service allows a message to be sent to any destination, although there is no guarantee that the destination will re-

ceive or accept it. The ServiceID resolution facility (Section [12.11](#)) may be used to determine the appropriate target QP.

12.5.4 RELIABLE DATAGRAM

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Reliable Datagram (RD) service allows multiple Queue Pairs to communicate over a single RD channel (defined by a pair of EE contexts). One QP on each end is specified when an RD channel is established. A pair of applications using these QPs that wish to use additional QPs over that RDC do not need to use CM to associate those QPs. Application-specific messages could be sent over the original QPs to notify the other side of the QPNs of the new QPs.

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
Unless otherwise specified, an RD communication request implies the creation of a new RDC. Setting the **RDC Exists** field in the **REQ** message allows the sharing of the specified RDC. (See section [12.6.5](#)) When an RDC is shared, the state of the EE contexts that comprise the channel shall not be altered, regardless of the outcome of the communication request. An RDC shall not be shared until it has been established (i.e. the CM protocol must be run to successful completion on the EE contexts comprising the RDC before an RD QP can share the RDC).

12.5.5 EXTENDED RELIABLE CONNECTED SERVICE

19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
Extended Reliable Connected (XRC) is similar to RC, but is essentially one-way with XRC Initiator QP being the requestor and XRC Target QP the responder. Within the context of the Communication Management protocol, the XRC Initiator QP is associated with the Active side and the XRC Target QP is associated with the Passive side. This mapping allows XRC to still use message reception (or the RTU) to cause the transition from "REP Sent" to "Established" on the Passive side.

27
28
29
30
31
However, because the XRC passive side further de-multiplexes the XRC Target QP to multiple XRC SRQs, the CM protocol adopts some of the conventions of Reliable Datagram in the CM messages. In particular, the XRC Target QPN is placed in fields used for the Passive side EECN. The XRC SRQ number is placed in the fields used for the Passive side QPN.

32
33
34
35
36
After the XRC Initiator QP connection to the XRC Target QP is established, another XRC SRQ number may be supplied by using the "**RDC Exists**" mechanism (see [12.6.5](#)). This process may be repeated whenever new XRC SRQs are added.

12.6 COMMUNICATION MANAGEMENT MESSAGES

37
38
39
40
The following sections describe the set of messages used to support the communication establishment scenarios supported by the IBA:

- 41
a) Active client to passive server
- 42

- | | |
|--|---|
| b) Active client to active client | 1 |
| c) Active client to passive server (with third-party redirector) | 2 |

12.6.1 REQUIRED MESSAGES

All IBA hosts and all IBA targets that support RC, XRC, UC, or RD service types shall support the following messages:

- Request for Communication (**REQ**) (Section [12.6.5](#))
- Message Receipt Acknowledgement (**MRA**) (Section [12.6.6](#)) All IBA hosts and targets are required to be able to receive and act upon an **MRA**, but the ability to send an **MRA** is optional.
- Reject (**REJ**) (Section [12.6.7](#))
- Reply to Request for Communication (**REP**) (Section [12.6.8](#))
- Ready to Use (**RTU**) (Section [12.6.9](#))
- Request for Communication Release (**DREQ**) (Section [12.6.10](#))
- Reply to Request for Communication Release (**DREP**) (Section [12.6.11](#))

C12-1: A CA that supports Reliable Connected, Extended Reliable Connected, Unreliable Connected, or Reliable Datagram channels **shall** support their establishment using the CM protocol.

C12-2: For the states and messages it supports, a CM **shall** adhere to the CM protocol as defined in sections [12.9.7](#) and [12.9.8](#).

C12-3: CM message contents **shall** conform to the field descriptions in section [12.7](#).

C12-4: A CM **shall** support sending the **REJ** message in accordance with section [12.6.7](#), and **shall** support receiving the **REJ** message.

C12-5: A CM **shall**, upon receipt of an **MRA** message, behave in accordance with section [12.9.8.5](#).

o12-1: If a CM sends the **REQ** message, it **shall** do so in accordance with section [12.6.5](#).

o12-2: If a CM sends the **MRA** message, it **shall** do so in accordance with section [12.6.6](#).

o12-3: If a CM sends the **REP** message, it **shall** do so in accordance with section [12.6.8](#).

o12-4: If a CM sends the **RTU** message, it **shall** do so in accordance with section [12.6.9](#).

1 **o12-5:** If a CM sends the **DREQ** message, it **shall** do so in accordance
2 with section [12.6.10](#).
3

4 **o12-6:** If a CM sends the **DREP** message, it **shall** do so in accordance
5 with section [12.6.11](#).
6

7 **o12-7:** If a CM initiates connection requests (active role), it **shall** support
8 sending the **REQ**, **REJ**, **RTU**, **DREQ**, and **DREP** messages, and re-
9 sponding to the **REP**, **REJ**, **DREQ**, and **DREP** messages.
10

11 **o12-8:** If a CM accepts connection requests (passive role), it **shall** support
12 responding to the **REQ**, **REJ**, **RTU**, and **DREQ** messages, and sending
13 the **REP**, **REJ**, and **DREP** messages.
14

15 **o12-9:** If a CM sends the **DREQ** message, it **shall** be able to handle the
16 **DREP** message.
17

12.6.2 CONDITIONALLY REQUIRED MESSAGES

18 Support for these messages is required if non-management services are
19 provided on the Channel Adapter at other than fixed QPNs. Management
20 services include those provided through Subnet Management Packets
21 (see [14.2 Subnet Management Class](#)) or through General Management
22 Packets (see [Chapter 16: General Services](#)).
23

- Service ID Resolution Request (**SIDR_REQ**) (Section [12.11.1](#))
24
- Service ID Resolution Response (**SIDR REP**) (Section [12.11.2](#))
25

26 **o12-10:** If a CM sends the **SIDR_REQ** message, it **must** do so in accordance
27 with section [12.11.1](#).
28

29 **o12-11:** If a CM sends the **SIDR REP** message, it **must** do so in accordance
30 with section [12.11.2](#).
31

32 **o12-12:** If a CA provides services (other than Subnet Management and
33 General Services) using the UD service type at other than fixed QPNs, its
34 CM **must** support receiving, processing and replying to the **SIDR_REQ**
35 message as specified in section [12.11](#).
36

12.6.3 OPTIONAL MESSAGES

37 Support for these messages is optional:
38

- Load Alternate Path (**LAP**) (Section [12.8.1](#))
39
- Alternate Path Response (**APR**) (Section [12.8.2](#))
40
- Suggest Alternate Path (**SAP**) (Section [12.8.3](#))
41
- Suggest Path Response (**SPR**) (section [12.8.4](#))
42

1 **o12-13:** If a CM accepts **REQ** messages and agrees to perform Auto-
2 matic Path Migration, it **shall** support receiving, processing and replying
3 to the **LAP** message as specified in section [12.8](#).
4

5 **o12-14:** If a CM sends **REQ** messages with Alternate Port/Path informa-
6 tion, it **shall** support sending the **LAP** message as specified in section
7 [12.8](#) and **shall** support receiving and processing APR messages.
8

9 **o12-14.1.1:** If a CM supports alternate path suggestion, the CM **shall**
10 send **REQ** message with the SAP Supported bit set; The CM **shall** sup-
11 port sending and processing of the SAP and SPR messages as described
12 in section [12.8](#).
13

12.6.4 MESSAGE USAGE

14 Connected Transport Service Types require state information to be estab-
15 lished, maintained, and released at both ends of the connection. Con-
16 sumers can use the messages described in this section for that purpose.
17

18 By definition, unreliable datagram communications do not require any
19 connection state to be established, maintained, or released. However,
20 communication services are provided to allow local and remote QPs to be
21 associated based on a specific Service ID. (See section [12.11](#))
22

23 Reliable datagram communication requires Reliable Datagram Channels
24 to be created, maintained, and released between CAs.
25

26 When establishing the connection between the XRC Initiator QP and the
27 XRC Target QP, use the same fields for RC connection establishment, al-
28 ternate path management and suggest alternate path, except as modified
29 in the following sections.
30

31 The Communication Management information contained in each Man-
32 agement Datagram message is described below. The MAD header format
33 is defined in [16.7.1 MAD Format on page 1183](#).
34

35 **C12-5.1.1:** Except where explicitly stated otherwise in the sections that
36 follow, the “Status” field in the MAD header shall be set to 0 for all CM
37 MADs.
38

39 **C12-5.1.2:** All messages that are part of the same sequence in the CM
40 protocol shall have the same value placed into the TransactionID field in
41 their MAD header. The value chosen shall satisfy the uniqueness proper-
42 ties documented in [13.4.6.4 TransactionID usage](#).
43

44 There are five message sequences in the CM Protocol:
45

- Establishing communication: **REQ**, **REP**, **MRA** (sent either in response to **REQ** or **REP**), **REJ**, and **RTU**
- Loading an alternate path: **LAP**, **MRA** (sent in response to **LAP**), and **APR**
- Connection release: **DREQ** and **DREP**
- Service ID resolution: **SIDR_REQ** and **SIDR REP**
- Suggesting an alternate path: **SAP** and **SPR**.

C12-5.1.3: All responses generated by the CM protocol shall follow the rules for response generation that are enumerated in [13.5.4 Response Generation and Reversible Paths.](#)

All messages in the CM protocol with the exception of the following are considered responses:

- **REQ**
- **LAP**
- **DREQ**
- **SIDR_REQ**
- **REJ** when it is sent by the active side of the protocol from the Timeout or REP Wait state as a result of a CM protocol timeout.
- **SAP**

All of the messages in the CM protocol can contain private data. Since the CM protocol utilizes the unreliable datagram service to send its messages, it should be pointed out that successful reception of the final message in a CM protocol message exchange cannot be guaranteed. Consumers therefore cannot depend upon being able to successfully convey information in the private data of the final message in a message exchange. The final messages in the CM protocol are:

- **REJ**
- **RTU**
- **APR**
- **DREP**
- **SIDR REP**
- **SPR**

The messages defined below are used for both establishing connections and end to end context establishment. The message definitions are the union of the fields required for both of these purposes, and therefore there are some fields in the messages which are useful for connection establishment but not for end to end context establishment, and vice versa. This is done to decrease the total number of message types in the protocol. For

each field in a message, whether the field is intended to support connection establishment or end to end context establishment (or both) is noted.

12.6.5 REQ - REQUEST FOR COMMUNICATION

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
REQ is sent to initiate the communication establishment sequence. The initiator (**REQ** sender) provides the Port Address (GID and/or LID) and the Queue Pair Number that it will be using for its end of the channel. For Reliable Datagram Channel establishment, the EE Context Number is included.

The initiator is responsible for proposing the Port Addresses (Primary and optional Alternate) that the target (**REQ** recipient) is to use for the channel. Based on the path defined by those port addresses, the initiator provides timeout information and the Service Level to be used by the target for any messages that it initiates. The SL from initiator to target need not be the same as from target to initiator, but the SL that is contained within the **REQ** message is the one that the initiator would prefer the target use. Path information is available from Subnet Administration (see section [15.2.5.16 PathRecord](#)).

For service resolution and QP association over already existing Reliable Datagram Channels, **REQ:RDC Exists** must be set. When **REQ:RDC Exists** is set, the existing Reliable Datagram Channel shall not be altered either by the sender of the **REQ** or by the receiver of the **REQ**, and as a result many of the fields in the **REQ** message are not used in this case. Those fields are noted in the table below. All such unused fields shall be set to 0 by the sender, and shall be ignored by the receiver. In addition, when **REQ:RDC Exists** is set, the use of the Primary Remote/Local Port GID/LID fields is not to identify where the requestor wishes to establish the channel--the channel is already established--but rather to identify the pair of CAs that the existing channel is operating between.

When supplying an additional XRC SRQ number (after connection establishment of the XRC Initiator QP to XRC Target QP), use the "RDC Exists" conventions noted in the "Values" columns of [Table 106](#), including setting the "**RDC Exists**" field to 1.

Table 106 **REQ Message Contents**

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32	
(reserved)			4	8	
VendorID	See section 12.7.42	C, EE	5	24	
ServiceID	See section 12.7.3 .	C, EE	8	64	

Table 106 REQ Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Local CA GUID	See section 12.7.9	C, EE	16	64	
(reserved)			24	32	
Local Q_Key	See section 12.7.13	EE	28	32	
Local QPN	See section 12.7.12 .	C, EE	32	24	
Responder Resources	See section 12.7.29	C, EE	35	8	0 if RDC exists 0 for XRC
Local EECN	See section 12.7.14	EE	36	24	
Initiator Depth	See section 12.7.30	C, EE	39	8	0 if RDC exists
Remote EECN	See section 12.7.15	EE	40	24	XRC Target QPN if XRC RDC Exists
Remote CM Response Timeout	See section 12.7.4	C, EE	43	5	
Transport Service Type	See section 12.7.6 .	C, EE	43 [5]	2	
End-to-End Flow Control	See section 12.7.26	C	43 [7]	1	0 if RDC exists
Starting PSN	See section 12.7.31	C, EE	44	24	0 if RDC exists
Local CM Response Timeout	See section 12.7.5	C, EE	47	5	
Retry Count	See section 12.7.38	C, EE	47[5]	3	0 if RDC exists 0 for XRC
Partition Key	See section 12.7.24	C, EE	48	16	0 if RDC exists
Path Packet Payload MTU	See section 12.7.28	C, EE	50	4	0 if RDC exists
RDC Exists	Whether RDC already exists.	EE	50[4]	1	1 if RDC exists, 0 if RDC does not
RNR Retry Count	See section 12.7.39	C, EE	50[5]	3	0 if RDC exists 0 for XRC
Max CM Retries	See section 12.7.27	C, EE	51	4	
SRQ			51[4]	1	1 if SRQ exists 0 if SRQ does not 0 for XRC
Extended Transport Type	See section 12.7.41	C	51[5]	3	
Primary Local Port LID	See section 12.7.11 .	C, EE	52	16	
Primary Remote Port LID	See section 12.7.21 .	C, EE	54	16	
Primary Local Port GID	See section 12.7.10 .	C, EE	56	128	
Primary Remote Port GID	See section 12.7.20 .	C, EE	72	128	

Table 106 REQ Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Primary Flow Label	See section 12.7.18	C, EE	88	20	0 if RDC exists
(reserved)			90[4]	6	
Primary Packet Rate	See section 12.7.25	C, EE	91[2]	6	0 if RDC exists
Primary Traffic Class	See section 12.7.17	C, EE	92	8	0 if RDC exists
Primary Hop Limit	See section 12.7.19	C, EE	93	8	0 if RDC exists
Primary SL	See section 12.7.16	C, EE	94	4	0 if RDC exists
Primary Subnet Local	See section 12.7.7	C, EE	94 [4]	1	0 if RDC exists
(reserved)			94 [5]	3	
Primary Local ACK Timeout	See section 12.7.34	C, EE	95	5	0 if RDC exists
(reserved)			95[5]	3	
Alternate Local Port LID	See section 12.7.11	C, EE	96	16	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Remote Port LID	See section 12.7.23	C, EE	98	16	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Local Port GID	See section 12.7.10	C, EE	100	128	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Remote Port GID	See section 12.7.22	C, EE	116	128	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Flow Label	See section 12.7.18	C, EE	132	20	0 if RDC exists
(reserved)			134[4]	6	
Alternate Packet Rate	See section 12.7.25	C, EE	135[2]	6	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Traffic Class	See section 12.7.17	C, EE	136	8	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Hop Limit	See section 12.7.19	C, EE	137	8	0 if RDC exists
Alternate SL	See section 12.7.16	C, EE	138	4	0 if RDC exists
Alternate Subnet Local	See section 12.7.7	C, EE	138[4]	1	0 if RDC exists
(reserved)			138[5]	3	
Alternate Local ACK Timeout	See section 12.7.34	C, EE	139	5	0 if RDC exists
SAP Supported	See section 12.7.40	C, EE	139[5]	1	1 if SAP messages are processed
					0 if SAP messages are silently dropped
(reserved)			139[6]	2	
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35	C, EE	140	736	

12.6.6 MRA - MESSAGE RECEIPT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
MRA is sent in response to a **REQ** message when the recipient of the message anticipates that it will not be able to respond within the time specified by **REQ:Remote CM Response Timeout**, or in response to a **LAP** message when the recipient of the message anticipates that it will not be able to respond within the time specified by **LAP:Remote CM Response Timeout**. It is also sent in response to a **REP** message when the recipient of the message anticipates that it will not be able to respond within the time specified by **REQ:Local CM Response Timeout**. **MRA** is sent to prevent the other party in the communication establishment protocol from either unnecessarily timing out the communication establishment attempt or flooding the link with unnecessary retries.

Table 107 MRA Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte{Bit} Offset	Length, bits	Values
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32	
Remote CommunicationID	See section 12.7.2 .	C, EE	4	32	
Message MRAed	The message being MRAed.	C, EE	8	2	0x0 - REQ , 0x1 - REP 0x2 - LAP
(reserved)			8[2]	6	
ServiceTimeout	See section 12.7.32	C, EE	9	5	
(reserved)			9[5]	3	
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35 .	C, EE	10	1776	

12.6.7 REJ - REJECT

REJ indicates that the sender will not continue through the communication establishment sequence, and the reason why it will not.

Table 108 REJ Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 . If this REJ is being sent with Reason code 6 (Invalid Communication ID), this field should be set to be the same as the “Remote Communication ID” field in the received message that is being rejected.	C, EE	0	32	0 if REjecting a REQ and no MRA was sent
Remote CommunicationID	See section 12.7.2 . If this REJ is being sent with Reason code 6 (Invalid Communication ID), this field should be set to be the same as the “Local Communication ID” field in the received message that is being rejected.	C, EE	4	32	0 if REjecting due to REP timeout and no MRA was received
Message REjected	The message whose contents caused the sender to reject the communication establishment attempt. A REJ message is only sent in response to receiving a REQ , to receiving a REP , or because of a timeout occurring in the communication establishment sequence. In particular, REJ is never sent in response to receiving an MRA or RTU .	C,EE	8	2	0x0 - REQ . (The passive side uses this code when it receives a REQ and rejects the communication establishment attempt based on the contents of that REQ). 0x1 - REP . (The active side uses this code when it receives a REP and rejects the communication establishment attempt based on the contents of that REP). 0x2 - No message. (Both the active side and the passive side use this code when sending a REJ as a result of a CM protocol timeout.)
(reserved)			8[2]	6	

Table 108 REJ Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Reject Info Length	If non-zero, the length in bytes of valid Additional Reject Information. The sender is not required to provide Additional Reject Information even if the Reason code it places in the REJ message allows for it. If the sender decides not to provide Additional Reject Information, it shall set this field to a value of zero.	C, EE	9	7	
(reserved)			9[7]	1	
Reason	Error code indicating the reason for the sender's termination of the communication establishment process.	C, EE	10	16	
Additional Reject Information (ARI)	The information associated with the Reason code, as specified in section 12.6.7.2 . If the number of bits of information does not completely fill the number of bytes given in Reject Info Length (e.g. if the ARI field contains a 20-bit Flow Label), the bits are packed into bytes as defined in section 1.5.1 , and the remaining least significant bits of the last byte are all set to zero.	C, EE	12	576	
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35 .	C, EE	84	1184	

12.6.7.1 EXAMPLE REJ MESSAGE

The content of the fields of a **REJ** that rejects a **REQ** because of an unacceptable primary port LID and suggests that a primary port LID of 200 be used are shown in the table below.

Table 109 Example REJ Message

Field	Contents
Local Communication ID	0

Table 109 Example REJ Message (Continued)

Field	Contents
Remote Communication ID	0
Message REjected	0
Reason	13
Reject Info Length	2
Additional Reject Information (ARI)	200
PrivateData	empty

12.6.7.2 REJECTION REASON

Code	Reason	Description	Meaning of Additional Reject Information Field (when present)
1	No QP available	The REQ message required the recipient to allocate a QP, and none were available	
2	No EEC available	The REQ message required the recipient to allocate an EE context, and none were available. Also, shall be returned when the Passive side could not allocate the XRC Target QP.	
3	No resources available	The REQ message required the recipient to allocate resources other than QPs or EE contexts, and none were available	
4	Timeout	The CM protocol timed out waiting for a message	Local CA GUID. The recipient of a REJ message with this reason code must use this CA GUID to identify the sender, as it is possible that the Remote Communication ID in the REJ message may not be valid.
5	Unsupported request	Receiving CM does not support this request.	
6	Invalid Communication ID	The recipient received a CM message in which the Local Communication ID, Remote Communication ID, or both, were invalid.	
7	Invalid Communication Instance	The Local Communication ID, Remote Communication ID, QPN/EECN tuple does not refer to any valid communication instance.	

Code	Reason	Description	Meaning of Additional Reject Information Field (when present)
8	Invalid Service ID	The recipient of the REQ message does not recognize or does not support the service associated with the specified ServiceID	4
9	Invalid Transport Service Type	The recipient of the REQ message does not recognize or does not support the requested Transport Service Type	5
10	Stale connection	The recipient of the REQ/REP determined that it already had a connection with the "Local QPN" or "Local EECN" specified in the REQ/REP . Upon receiving a REJ with this reason, the REJ recipient shall cause the QP or EE context to be placed into the TimeWait state as described in section 12.9.8.4 .	6
11	RDC does not exist	The Reliable Datagram Channel described in the REQ (Local EECN/Remote EECN) does not exist at the CA identified by the Primary Remote Port LID (or Primary Remote Port GID when this is valid) specified in the REQ . Also, shall be returned in the "RDC Exists" case when an existing XRC Initiator QP to XRC Target QP connection cannot be identified.	7
12	Primary Remote Port GID rejected	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Primary Remote Port GID	8
13	Primary Remote Port LID rejected	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Primary Remote Port LID	9
14	Invalid Primary SL	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Primary SL	10
15	Invalid Primary Traffic Class	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Primary Traffic Class	11
16	Invalid Primary Hop Limit	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Primary Hop Limit	12
17	Invalid Primary Packet Rate	The recipient of the REQ message could not adjust its transmitter to send as slowly as would be required to comply with the requested Primary Packet Rate	13
18	Alternate Remote Port GID rejected	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Alternate Remote Port GID	14
19	Alternate Remote Port LID rejected	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Alternate Remote Port LID	15

Code	Reason	Description	Meaning of Additional Reject Information Field (when present)	
20	Invalid Alternate SL	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Alternate SL	Acceptable SL.	1 2 3 4 5
21	Invalid Alternate Traffic Class	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Alternate Traffic Class	Acceptable Traffic Class	6 7
22	Invalid Alternate Hop Limit	The recipient of the REQ message could not (or would not) accept the Alternate Hop Limit	Acceptable Hop Limit	8 9
23	Invalid Alternate Packet Rate	The recipient of the REQ message could not adjust its transmitter to send as slowly as would be required to comply with the requested Alternate Packet Rate	Minimum acceptable Packet Rate	10 11 12 13
24	Port and CM Redirection	The recipient of the REQ message supports the requested Service ID, but at the endpoint specified by the ARI. Further CM messages should be sent to that endpoint as well.	A ClassPortInfo data structure as documented in Section 13.4.8.1 describing where to send subsequent CM messages, and also describing the GID of the port to propose in the new REQ .	14 15 16 17 18 19
25	Port Redirection	The recipient of the REQ message supports the requested Service ID, but at the port specified by the ARI. Further CM messages shall be sent to the port to which the original REQ was sent.	GID of port to propose in new REQ .	20 21 22
26	Invalid Path MTU	The recipient of the REQ message cannot support the maximum packet payload size specified	Maximum acceptable packet payload size	23 24
27	Insufficient Responder Resources	The value of Responder Resources (for RDMA Read/Atomics) in the REP message was insufficient.		25 26 27
28	Consumer Reject	The consumer decided to reject the communication or EE context setup establishment attempt for reasons other than those listed in the other REJ codes. Typically this happens based upon information being conveyed in the PrivateData field of a message. It can also happen because the Consumer decided for reasons unrelated to any CM message it received to terminate the communication or EE context setup establishment attempt. This would therefore be the appropriate Reason code to use if the Consumer decided to destroy the QP or EEC in the midst of the communication or EE context setup establishment attempt.	Defined by the consumer	28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37
29	RNR Retry Count Reject	The recipient of the message rejects the RNR NAK Retry count value.		38 39 40 41 42

Code	Reason	Description	Meaning of Additional Reject Information Field (when present)
30	Duplicate Local Communication ID	The recipient of the REQ message determined that it already had a connection with the sender that was using the same Local Communication ID as was specified in the REQ .	
31	Unsupported Class Version	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the Class Version specified in the header for the MAD containing the REQ . When returning this code, the "Code for Invalid Field" portion of the Status field in the MAD header associated with this REJ message should contain a value of 1. (The class version specified is not supported.) See Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values for details.	Highest CM Class Version that is supported
32	Invalid Primary Flow Label	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Primary Flow Label	Acceptable Flow Label
33	Invalid Alternate Flow Label	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Alternate Flow Label	Acceptable Flow Label
34	Invalid Partition Key	The recipient of the REQ message does not support the requested Partition Key	
35	Required vendor option not supported	The device does not support a mandatory vendor option requested by initiator	Vendor connection options in AttributeModifier were rejected by responder
36-65535	Reserved	Reserved for future use	

12.6.8 REP - REPLY TO REQUEST FOR COMMUNICATION

REP is returned in response to **REQ**, indicating that the respondent accepts the ServiceID, proposed primary port, and any parameters specified in the PrivateData area of the **REQ**.

When **REQ:RDC Exists** is set in the **REQ** to which the **REP** is responding, the existing Reliable Datagram Channel shall not be altered either by the sender of the **REP** or by the receiver of the **REP**, and as a result many of the fields in the **REP** message are not used in this case. Those fields are noted in the table below. All such unused fields shall be set to 0 by the sender, and shall be ignored by the receiver.

When supplying an additional XRC SRQ number (after connection establishment of the XRC Initiator QP to XRC Target QP), use the "**RDC Exists**" conventions noted in the "Values" columns of [Table 110](#). Note that it is optional to supply an XRC SRQ number when establishing the XRC Initiator

QP to XRC Target QP connection, but it is mandatory in the "RDC Exists" case.

Table 110 REP Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32	
Remote Communication ID	See section 12.7.2 .	C, EE	4	32	Value present in REQ
Local Q_Key	See section 12.7.13	EE	8	32	
Local QPN	See section 12.7.12 .	C, EE	12	24	XRC SRQ number for XRC
VendorID [23:16]	See section 12.7.42	C, EE	15	8	
Local EE Context Number	See section 12.7.14	EE	16	24	XRC Target QPN for XRC
VendorID [15:8]	See section 12.7.42	C, EE	19	8	
Starting PSN	See section 12.7.31	C, EE	20	24	0 if RDC exists
VendorID [7:0]	See section 12.7.42	C, EE	23	8	
Responder Resources	See section 12.7.29	C, EE	24	8	0 if RDC exists
Initiator Depth	See section 12.7.30	C,EE	25	8	0 if RDC exists 0 for XRC
Target ACK Delay	See section 12.7.33	C, EE	26	5	0 if RDC exists
Failover Accepted	See section 12.7.36 .	C, EE	26[5]	2	0: Failover accepted, or RDC exists 1: Failover port rejected because failover is not supported. Alternate Path parameters were not checked. 2: Failover is supported and all Alternate Path parameters are valid, but the failover port was rejected for some other reason.
End-To-End Flow Control	See section 12.7.26	C	26[7]	1	0 if RDC exists 0 for XRC
RNR Retry Count	See section 12.7.39	C,EE	27	3	0 if RDC exists
SRQ			27[3]	1	1 if SRQ exists 0 if SRQ does not exist 1 for XRC
(reserved)			27[2]	4	
Local CA GUID	See section 12.7.9	C, EE	28	64	

Table 110 REP Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits	Values
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35	C, EE	36	1568	

12.6.9 RTU - READY To USE

RTU indicates that the connection is established, and that the recipient may begin transmitting.

Table 111 RTU Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, Bits
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32
Remote CommunicationID	See section 12.7.2 .	C, EE	4	32
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35	C, EE	8	1792

12.6.10 DREQ - REQUEST FOR COMMUNICATION RELEASE (DISCONNECTION REQUEST)

DREQ is sent to initiate the connection release sequence. DREQ is only sent to release connections between RC QPs, UC QPs, XRC QPs, or EE contexts.

Table 112 DREQ Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32
Remote CommunicationID	See section 12.7.2 .	C, EE	4	32
Remote QPN/EECN	See section 12.7.37	C, EE	8	24
(reserved)			11	8
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35	C, EE	12	1760

The values for Local and Remote Communication ID are those that were used to create the channel.

12.6.11 DREP - REPLY TO REQUEST FOR COMMUNICATION RELEASE

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
DREP is sent in response to **DREQ**, and signifies that the sender has received the **DREQ**.

Table 113 DREP Message Contents

Field	Description	Used for Purpose	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	C, EE	0	32
Remote CommunicationID	See section 12.7.2 .	C, EE	4	32
PrivateData	See section 12.7.35	C, EE	8	1792

12.7 MESSAGE FIELD DETAILS

The following table summarizes each of the message fields, and indicates where the consumer can find the contents necessary to populate the field.

Table 114 Message Field Origins

Field	Populated From
Local Communication ID	The consumer sending the message chooses this value. See section 12.7.1
Remote CommunicationID	The consumer replying to the message chooses this value. See section 12.7.2
Service ID	Assuming that the consumer uses the InfiniBand™ service naming facility, this comes from the ServiceRecord, as defined in section 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord .
Remote CM Response Timeout	The consumer should set this field to be large enough to allow enough time under normal circumstances for the recipient to be able to process the incoming message and have the response message traverse the path between source and destination. The service time at the recipient depends upon the service being requested, but the maximum time it could take to successfully traverse the path can be found in the PathRecord as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord . (How the particular path to be used is selected is a policy decision that is left up to the consumer.) The recommended upper bound on how long it should take any manager (including the CM) in the InfiniBand™ architecture to generate a response is documented in section 13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts .
Local CM Response Timeout	This timeout period needs to allow for the path between the source and destination to be traversed twice, and also to allow for the REP message to be processed. The amount of time it takes to service the REP message may depend upon the service that was requested, but the maximum time it could take to successfully traverse the path can be found in the PathRecord as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord . The recommended upper bound on how long it should take any manager (including the CM) in the InfiniBand™ architecture to generate a response is documented in section 13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts .

Table 114

Message Field Origins (Continued)

Field	Populated From
Transport Service Type	The consumer sets this based upon the type of service it is requesting: Reliable Connected, Unreliable Connected, Reliable Datagram or "Extended Transport Type" on page 739.
Subnet Local	This can be determined by comparing the PortInfo:GidPrefix fields associated with the Local Port GID and the Remote Port GID. The PortInfo record is defined in section 15.2.5.3 PortInfoRecord .
Local CA GUID	This information can be found in the NodeInfo:NodeGUID field, as defined in section 14.2.5.3 NodeInfo . (Which CA to use is a policy decision that is left up to the consumer.)
Local Port GID	This information can be found in the GidInfo record, as defined in section 15.2.5.18 GuidInfoRecord . (Which port on the CA to use and which of the available GIDs on the chosen port to use is a policy decision that is left up to the consumer.)
Local Port LID	This information can be found in the PortInfo:LID field, as defined in section 14.2.5.6 PortInfo . (Which port on the CA to use and which of the available LIDs on the chosen port to use is a policy decision that is left up to the consumer.)
Local QPN	The consumer can determine this for an HCA by querying the Queue Pair that it is offering up for connection establishment. The Query Queue Pair verb is defined in section 11.2.5.3 Query Queue Pair . (How this information is determined for a TCA is implementation-specific.)
Local Q_Key	The consumer can determine this for an HCA by querying the Queue Pair that it is offering up for connection establishment. The Query Queue Pair verb is defined in section 11.2.5.3 Query Queue Pair . (How this information is determined for a TCA is implementation-specific.)
Local EECN	The consumer can determine this for an HCA by querying the EE Context that it is offering up for communications establishment. The Query EE Context verb is defined in section 11.2.9.3 Query EE Context . (How this information is determined for a TCA is implementation-specific.)
Remote EECN	The data originates on the remote end of an existing connection, and is returned to the local end in a REP message. It is determined by the remote end in the same manner as the Local EECN.
Service Level	This information can be found in the PathRecord:SL field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Traffic Class	This information can be found in the PathRecord:TClass field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Flow Label	The purpose of this field is to identify a group of packets that must be delivered in order. See section 8.3 Global Route Header for a description of how this value is chosen.
Hop Limit	This information can be found in the PathRecord:HopLimit field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Primary Remote Port GID	This information can be found in the GidInfo record associated with the remote port, as defined in section 15.2.5.18 GuidInfoRecord . The port that should be targeted based on the service being requested can be found in the ServiceRecord, as defined in section 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord .

Table 114

Message Field Origins (Continued)

Field	Populated From
Primary Remote Port LID	This information can be found in the PortInfo:LID field associated with the remote port, as defined in section 14.2.5.6 PortInfo . The port that should be targeted based on the service being requested can be found in the ServiceRecord, as defined in section 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord .
Alternate Remote Port GID	This information can be found in the GidInfo record associated with the remote port, as defined in section 15.2.5.18 GuidInfoRecord . The port that should be targeted based on the service being requested can be found in the ServiceRecord, as defined in section 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord .
Alternate Remote Port LID	This information can be found in the PortInfo:LID field associated with the remote port, as defined in section 14.2.5.6 PortInfo . The port that should be targeted based on the service being requested can be found in the ServiceRecord, as defined in section 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord .
Partition Key	This information can be found in the PathRecord:P_Key field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Packet Rate	This information can be found in the PathRecord:Rate field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
End-to-End Flow Control	This field is used for RC Service Connections. For HCAs, if the RC QP is not associated with an SRQ, the End-to-End Flow Control bit must be set to one. For HCAs, if the RC QP is associated with an SRQ, the End-to-End Flow Control bit must be set to zero. Whether or not End-to-End Flow Control is supported by a TCA is an implementation option, and it is therefore outside the scope of the InfiniBand™ architecture to specify the origin of this field in a TCA. Note: 1 means e2e flow control supported, 0 means not supported.
SRQ	This field is used for RC and UC Service Connections. If QP is associated with an SRQ, this bit must be set to one. If the QP, is not associated with an SRQ, this bit must be set to zero.
Max CM Retries	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.27 .
Path Packet Payload MTU	This information can be found in the PathRecord:Mtu field, as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Responder Resources	The consumer can determine the maximum supported value for a QP/EEC by querying the HCA that will be used for communication. The Query HCA verb is defined in section 11.2.1.2 Query HCA
Initiator Depth	The consumer can determine the maximum supported value for a QP/EEC by querying the HCA that will be used for communication. The Query HCA verb is defined in section 11.2.1.2 Query HCA
Starting PSN	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.31 .

Table 114

Message Field Origins (Continued)

Field	Populated From
Service Timeout	The consumer should set this field to be large enough to allow enough time for it to complete the processing of the incoming message and have the response message that it sends out traverse the path between source and destination. The incoming message processing time depends upon the service being requested and potentially other state, but the maximum time it could take to successfully traverse the path can be found in the PathRecord as defined in section 15.2.5.16 PathRecord .
Target ACK Delay	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.33 Target ACK Delay .
Local ACK Timeout	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.34 Local ACK Timeout .
PrivateData	The contents of this field are outside the scope of what the InfiniBand™ specification defines; the usage (if any) of this field is specified by higher-level communications establishment protocols.
Failover Accepted	Set as per the description in section 12.7.36 Failover Accepted .
Remote QPN/EECN	This should be the same as the Local QPN/Local EECN returned in the REP message.
Retry Count	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.38 Retry Count .
RNR Retry Count	The value of this field is a policy decision that is outside the scope of Communication Management to define. The field is discussed in section 12.7.39 RNR Retry Count .
SAP Supported	The field describes whether the CM supports the alternate path suggestion as detailed in section 12.8

12.7.1 LOCAL COMMUNICATION ID

An identifier that uniquely identifies this connection from the sender's point of view. The sender must use the same identifier for all phases of communication establishment and release. It must not reuse a Local Communication ID for the life of the connection, or while any messages related to the connection could still be in the fabric. (How long a message related to the connection could still be in the fabric is touched upon in section [12.9.8.4](#).) The Communication ID allows the recipient to determine whether the message is a duplicate of an old message, or represents a new connection request.

12.7.2 REMOTE COMMUNICATION ID

An identifier that uniquely identifies this connection from the recipient's point of view. (As an example, for a **REP** message this would be the same as the Local Communication ID that was received in the **REQ** message.) The values in the Local and Remote Communication ID fields in the Communication Management MADs are exchanged between requests and replies.

The pair of (Local Communication ID, Remote Communication ID) is used to reference connections during establishment, failover management, and release. CM messages with invalid Communication IDs shall not be processed, and shall be rejected as specified in section [12.6.7](#).

12.7.3 SERVICEID

An identifier that specifies the service being requested. The ServiceID field specifies the service number desired by the requestor. These include, but are not limited to, the service numbers defined for typical TCP services. The mappings between services and ServiceIDs are outside the scope of Communication Management.

12.7.4 REMOTE CM RESPONSE TIMEOUT

The time, expressed as $(4.096 \mu\text{S} * 2^{\text{Remote CM Response Timeout}})$, within which the CM message recipient shall transmit a response to the sender. This value is unsigned. The recipient uses this information to determine whether it should send an **MRA**. (See section [12.9.8.5](#))

12.7.5 LOCAL CM RESPONSE TIMEOUT

The time, expressed as $(4.096 \mu\text{S} * 2^{\text{Local CM Response Timeout}})$, that the remote CM shall wait for a response from the local CM to a CM message sent by the remote CM. This value is unsigned. Note that whereas Remote CM Response Timeout is the time between receipt of a message and transmission of a response, Local CM Response Timeout includes that “turn-around” time, as well as round trip packet flight time. (See section [12.9.8.5](#)) The initiating CM is responsible for determining this value, through Subnet Management or other means.

12.7.6 TRANSPORT SERVICE TYPE

Specifies desired service type: Reliable Connected, Unreliable Connected, or Reliable Datagram. The field is encoded as follows:

0: RC

1: UC

2: RD

3: See [12.7.41 Extended Transport Type](#)

12.7.7 SUBNET LOCAL

0: Local and remote CA ports are on different subnets
1: Local and remote CA ports are on the same subnet

12.7.8 THIS SECTION HAS BEEN DELETED

This section has been deleted.

12.7.9 LOCAL CA GUID

The Node GUID of the sending Channel Adapter.

12.7.10 LOCAL PORT GID

The GID of the local CA port on which the channel is to be established. This field shall be valid regardless of whether the local and remote ports are on the same subnet or different subnets. If an alternate path is not to be specified, the **Alternate Local Port GID** field shall be set to zero. If this field is non-zero, it shall contain a valid GID.

12.7.11 LOCAL PORT LID

The LID of the local CA port on which the channel is to be established. When local and remote ports are on different subnets, this field must be the LID of the router that the passive side will target for the return path. If an alternate path is not to be specified, the **Alternate Local Port LID** field shall be set to zero.

12.7.12 LOCAL QPN

The QPN of the message sender's QP on which the channel is to be established. One Reliable Datagram QP may be associated with multiple EE contexts. A QPN must be specified when establishing an RD channel, but use of this QPN is not limited to this RDC. Once a consumer establishes a Reliable Datagram Channel, the consumer may use additional QPs over the RDC without an additional connection establishment exchange.

CM shall not be used to connect the Send Work Queue of a QP to the Receive Work Queue of the same QP. (If so desired, the consumer can do this using the Modify QP verb.) Attempting to do this may result in unpredictable behavior when doing connection establishment between peers.

12.7.13 LOCAL Q_KEY

(RD Only) The Q_Key for the QP specified by **Local QPN**.

12.7.14 LOCAL EECN

The EE Context Number for the message sender's end of the RD channel.

12.7.15 REMOTE EECN

The EE Context Number for the remote end of the existing Reliable Datagram channel. 0 if **REQ:RDC Exists** is not set. If **REQ:RDC Exists** is 1 for the XRC case, this field contains the XRC Target QPN.

12.7.16 SERVICE LEVEL

The value to be placed in the Service Level field for packets sent by the recipient. This Service Level is the one that the initiator would prefer the target use. For more information on Service Levels, see section [7.6.5 Service Level on page 204](#).

12.7.17 TRAFFIC CLASS

Defines Traffic Class for globally-routed packets.

12.7.18 FLOW LABEL

Defines Flow Label for globally-routed packets.

12.7.19 HOP LIMIT

The maximum number of hops a packet can make between subnets before being discarded. Whenever the Hop Limit field is non-zero, the corresponding channel EEC/QP should have the Send Global Routing Header flag set.

12.7.20 PRIMARY REMOTE PORT GID

The GID of the remote node's CA port on which the local node wishes to establish the channel. This field shall be valid regardless of whether the local and remote ports are on the same or different subnets. To reject this port, the remote node shall send **REJ** and may optionally suggest an acceptable port.

12.7.21 PRIMARY REMOTE PORT LID

The LID of the remote node's CA port on which the local node wishes to establish the channel. The remote node shall send **REJ** to reject this port, and may optionally suggest an acceptable port. The sender is responsible for ensuring that the LID and GID refer to the same port.

12.7.22 ALTERNATE REMOTE PORT GID

As in section [12.7.20](#). A CA that does not support automatic failover shall set the **REP**'Failover Accepted' field to one. If this field is non-zero, it shall contain a valid GID.

12.7.23 ALTERNATE REMOTE PORT LID

As in section [12.7.21](#). A CA that does not support automatic failover shall set the **REP** 'Failover Accepted' field to one.

12.7.24 PARTITION KEY

The Partition Key to be used for the channel being established. The field used in the REQ message is what the active side will use when sending packets on the established channel.

12.7.25 PACKET RATE

The maximum rate for the proposed path as obtained from the PathRecord:Rate field as defined in section [15.2.5.16 PathRecord](#).

12.7.26 END-TO-END FLOW CONTROL

Signifies whether the local CA actually implements End-to-End Flow Control (1), or instead always advertises 'invalid credits'(0). See section [9.7.7.2 End-to-End \(Message Level\) Flow Control](#) for more detail.

12.7.27 MAX CM RETRIES

Maximum number of times that either party can re-send a **REQ**, **REP**, or **DREQ** message. After re-sending for the maximum number of times without a response, the sending party should then terminate the protocol by sending a **REJ** message indicating that it timed out.

12.7.28 PATH PACKET PAYLOAD MTU

Specifies the maximum packet payload size, in bytes, for the channel being established. One of 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096. This value applies to both the primary and alternate paths.

12.7.29 RESPONDER RESOURCES

The maximum number of outstanding RDMA Read/Atomic operations the sender will support from the remote QP/EEC. This value may be zero. The maximum number that the HCA can support for a QP/EEC can be determined using the Query HCA verb. See section [11.2.1.2 Query HCA](#).

The recipient of the **REQ** message shall choose a local Initiator Depth that does not exceed the Responder Resources offered in the **REQ**. If the recipient of the **REQ** message is unwilling or unable to do so, it shall send a **REJ** message to discontinue the connection establishment.

The recipient of the **REP** message shall decide whether the Responder Resources offered in the **REP** are sufficient for the Initiator Depth the recipient of the **REP** wishes to use. If not, it shall send a **REJ** message to discontinue the connection establishment.

12.7.30 INITIATOR DEPTH

The maximum number of outstanding RDMA Read/Atomic operations the sender will have to the remote QP/EEC. This value may be zero. The maximum number that the HCA can support for a QP/EEC can be determined using the Query HCA verb. See section [11.2.1.2 Query HCA](#).

The recipient of the **REQ** message should try to choose a number of local Responder Resources that is greater than or equal to the Initiator Depth in the **REQ** message. If it is unwilling or unable to do so, it may send a

REP message containing fewer Responder Resources than the Initiator Depth in the REQ message.

12.7.31 STARTING PSN

The transport Packet Sequence Number at which the remote node (relative to the sender of the **REQ** or **REP** message) shall begin transmitting over the newly established channel. This value should be chosen to minimize the chance that a packet from a previous connection could fall within the valid PSN window.

12.7.32 SERVICE TIMEOUT

Present in the **MRA**. The maximum time required for the sender to send a **REP**, **RTU**, **APR**, or **REJ** (as appropriate). This value is expressed as $(4.096 \mu\text{S} * 2^{\text{Service Timeout}})$ from the time the **MRA** is posted to the Send queue. The recipient of the MRA shall wait the specified time, plus a packet lifetime, after receiving this message before timing out. (See section [12.9.8.5](#)) This value is unsigned.

12.7.33 TARGET ACK DELAY

$(4.096 \mu\text{S} * 2^{\text{Target ACK Delay}})$ represents the maximum expected time interval between the target CA's reception of a message and the transmission of the associated ACK or NAK. This is information furnished by the target to the recipient. It provides the recipient with information about the maximum message processing latency of the target, which is one component of the overall time it takes to get an ACK or NAK after having sent a request packet. (The other component is the network propagation delay, which depends upon the configuration of the switches and routers between the two endpoints as well as the congestion in the network.) The recipient of the message containing the Target ACK Delay should use this value along with the recipient's best estimate of the network propagation delay to determine how long to wait before timing out a packet transmission to the target. This value is unsigned.

12.7.34 LOCAL ACK TIMEOUT

Value representing the transport (ACK) timeout for use by the remote, expressed as $(4.096 \mu\text{S} * 2^{\text{Local ACK Timeout}})$. Calculated by **REQ** sender, based on $(2 * \text{PacketLifeTime} + \text{Local CA's ACK delay})$. Although the remote CA is not required to use this value for its ACK timeout, it is strongly encouraged to do so. PacketLifeTime represents the maximum expected time interval consumed by a packet traversing the path between source and destination CA. PacketLifeTime is contained in the PathRecord, as defined in section [15.2.5.16 PathRecord](#). Local ACK Timeout is unsigned.

If too small a value is chosen for the Local ACK Timeout, the number of packet transmission timeouts reported by the remote CA may increase,

which may increase the amount of work that is required in the CA to successfully send a packet. If too large a value is chosen, the amount of time that it takes to notice that a packet has not been successfully transmitted (e.g. due to a CRC error on the wire) will be increased, which may increase the amount of time it takes to recover from or report such errors.

12.7.35 PRIVATE DATA

Data that is opaque to the communication management protocol, passed from the sender to the recipient. The recipient may choose to accept or reject the request based on the private data. The format and meaning of the PrivateData field is specific to the ServiceID and message type, and is not specified within Communication Management.

12.7.36 FAILOVER ACCEPTED

Indicates whether the target of the **REQ** accepted or rejected the Alternate port address contained in the **REQ**. By sending the **REP**, the target accepts the connection request, but it may still reject the proposed failover port.

If failover is accepted, each CM shall cause the associated QP (for RC/UC) or EEC (for RD) specified by Local QPN to be placed in the REARM Migration State (see section [17.2.8.1 Automatic Path Migration Protocol](#)).

If failover is rejected, each CM shall cause the associated QP or EEC to be placed in the Migstate:MIGRATED state upon transition to the RTR state.

12.7.37 REMOTE QPN/EECN

The remote (relative to the sender) QPN or EECN, as appropriate, that is the subject of the message. Provides an additional check that the (Local Communication ID, Remote Communication ID) pair references the correct resource.

12.7.38 RETRY COUNT

The total number of times that the sender wishes the receiver to retry timeout, packet sequence, etc. errors before posting a completion error. See sections [9.9.2.1.1 Requester Error Retry Counters](#) and [9.9.2.4.1 Requester Class A Fault Behavior](#) for details of how the retry counter works.

12.7.39 RNR RETRY COUNT

The total number of times that the **REQ** or **REP** sender wishes the receiver to retry RNR NAK errors before posting a completion error. See sections [9.9.2.1.1 Requester Error Retry Counters](#) and [9.9.2.4.1 Requester Class A Fault Behavior](#) for details of how the RNR retry counter works.

12.7.40 SAP SUPPORTED

When set, the CM supports the alternate path suggestion. The CM will process incoming Suggest Alternate Path (SAP) messages and respond with Suggest Path Response (SPR) messages. A CM that does not support the alternate path suggestion shall clear this bit.

12.7.41 EXTENDED TRANSPORT TYPE

This field is only used when the Transport Service Type field indicates use of an "Extended" transport type. Otherwise, this field should be ignored.

The Extended Transport Type field specifies the desired service type.

The field is encoded as follows:

- 0: Must be used when the Transport Service Type field is not equal to 3
- 1: XRC
- 2-7: Reserved

12.7.42 VENDORID

Indicates how AttributeModifier bits are defined as indicated by the VendorID when ClassPortInfo.CapabilityMask.IsVendorECECapable is 1.

12.8 ALTERNATE PATH MANAGEMENT

IBA supports Automatic Path Migration (see section [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration](#)), in which a channel's traffic (RC, UC, RD, XRC) may be moved to a pre-determined alternate path. The initial alternate path is established at connection setup, but if a migration occurs, a new path needs to be specified before re-enabling migration.

Two messages are specific to loading an alternate path. **LAP - Load Alternate Path** carries the new path information. **APR - Alternate Path Response** informs the requester of the status of the **LAP** request. The requestor (i.e. the sender of the LAP message) must be the same side of the channel that was in the active/client role when the CM state for the channel changed to Established; the passive side of the channel shall not send a LAP message.

The **MRA** message may be sent by the **LAP** recipient if it is unable to send the **APR** message within the [Remote CM Response Timeout](#). As the **LAP** is idempotent, the message may be re-sent if there is no response, or if the Service Timeout is not met. The recipient **shall** return a failure status in the **APR** if the **LAP** request specifies an alternate path that is the same, in every respect, as the primary path. There is no limit on the number of **LAP** messages that a sender may have outstanding, but a sender shall have no more than one **LAP** outstanding per remote QP/EEC at any time.

The QP/EEC state changes requested by the **LAP** and **APR** messages may be effected through the ModifyQP or ModifyEE verbs (sections [11.2.5.2](#) and [11.2.9.2](#)). Only RC QP, UC QP, or EE context state shall be modified; the **LAP** and **APR** messages do not modify the state associated with RD QPs.

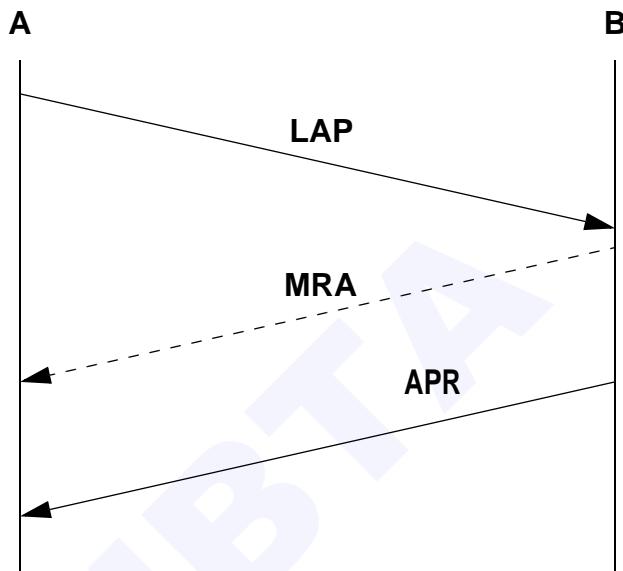


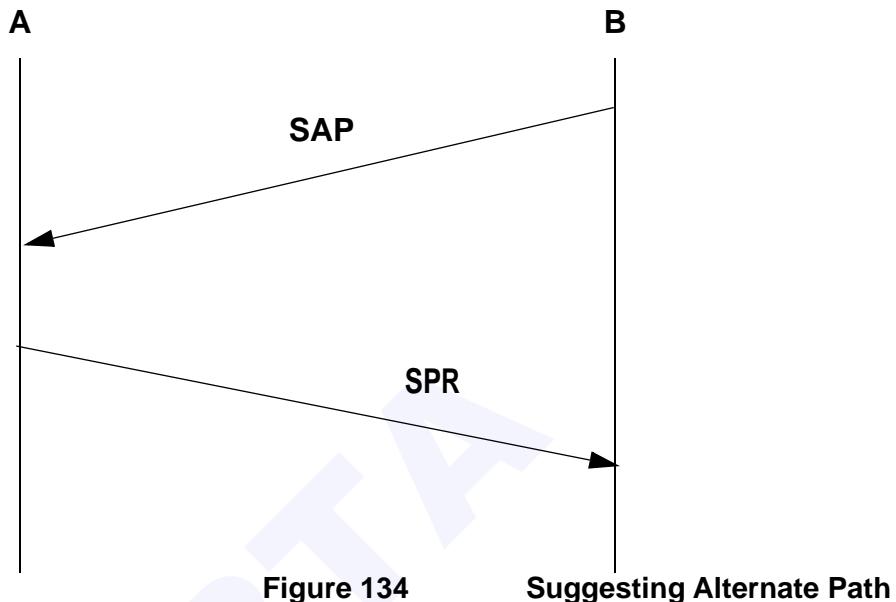
Figure 133 Loading alternate path

Two messages are specific to alternate path suggestion. **SAP – Suggest Alternate Path** carries an alternative local GID and LID that the passive side suggests to use for the alternate path. **SPR – Suggest Path Response** informs the requestor that the active side has acknowledged the suggestion. Alternate path suggestions allow the passive side to affect the choice of alternate paths according to local considerations or to notify the active side of local link changes. **SAP/SPR** messages are processed only for established connections and do not affect connection or APM states directly.

The active side is not required to honor the suggestion or take immediate action, but it must acknowledge the **SAP** or respond with proper error status; MRA is not supported for **SAP**.

Following the reception of **SAP**, if the active side has decided to modify the alternate path based on the **SAP**, it should do so using the **LAP/APR** mechanism. The passive side may resend a **SAP** if there is no response within **REQ:Local CM Response Timeout** or if a matching **SPR** has been received with status 3 (Alternate path suggestions are supported, but

cannot be processed at this time). A sender shall have no more than one **SAP** outstanding per remote QP/EEC at any time.



12.8.1 LAP - LOAD ALTERNATE PATH

LAP is an optional message used to change the alternate path information for a specific connection. It may be sent to update the alternate path information if fabric changes cause it to become invalid, or to load the “new” alternate path information after a path migration occurs. Loading alternate path information does not initiate the migration process for automatic failover; it just specifies which path is to be used when the path migration occurs.

Table 115 LAP Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1 .	0	32
Remote Communication ID	See section 12.7.2 .	4	32
(reserved)		8	32
Remote QPN/EECN	See section 12.7.37	12	24

Table 115 LAP Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Remote CM Response Timeout	See section 12.7.4	15	5
(reserved)		15[5]	3
(reserved)		16	32
Alternate Local Port LID	See section 12.7.11	20	16
Alternate Remote Port LID	See section 12.7.23	22	16
Alternate Local Port GID	See section 12.7.10	24	128
Alternate Remote Port GID	See section 12.7.22	40	128
Alternate Flow Label	See section 12.7.18	56	20
(reserved)		58[4]	4
Alternate Traffic Class	See section 12.7.17	59	8
Alternate Hop Limit	See section 12.7.19	60	8
(reserved)		61	2
Alternate Packet Rate	See section 12.7.25	61[2]	6
Alternate SL	See section 12.7.16	62	4
Alternate Subnet Local	See section 12.7.7	62[4]	1
(reserved)		62[5]	3
Alternate Local ACK Timeout	See section 12.7.34	63	5
(reserved)		63[5]	3
Private Data	See section 12.7.35	64	1344

12.8.2 APR - ALTERNATE PATH RESPONSE

APR is sent in response to a LAP request. MRA may be sent to allow processing of the LAP.

Table 116 APR Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local Communication ID	See section 12.7.1	0	32
Remote Communication ID	See section 12.7.2	4	32

Table 116 APR Message Contents (Continued)

Field	Description	Byte[Bit] Offset	Length, bits
Additional Information Length	If non-zero, the length in bytes of valid Additional Information. The sender is not required to provide Additional Information even if the AP status code it places in the APR message allows for it. If the sender decides not to provide Additional Information, it shall set this field to a value of zero.	8	8
AP status	See section 12.8.2.1	9	8
(reserved)		10	16
Additional Information	The information associated with the AP status code, as specified in section 12.8.2.1 . If the number of bits of information does not completely fill the number of bytes given in Additional Information Length (e.g. if the Additional Information field contains a 20-bit Flow Label), the bits are packed into bytes as defined in section 1.5.1 , and the remaining least significant bits of the last byte are all set to zero.	12	576
Private Data	See section 12.7.35	84	1184

12.8.2.1 AP STATUS

Value	Description	Meaning of Additional Information Field (when present)
0	Alternate path information loaded	
1	Invalid Remote/Local Communication ID	
2	Alternate paths not supported. Alternate path parameters were not checked.	
3	Alternate paths are supported and all Alternate Path parameters are valid, but the failover port was rejected for some other reason.	

Value	Description	Meaning of Additional Information Field (when present)
4	Alternate path information rejected - redirect	A ClassPortInfo data structure as described in section 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 . The LAP sender may use the information in the ClassPortInfo to resend the LAP to an entity that can process that message.
5	Proposed alternate path matches current primary path	
6	Remote QPN/EECN does not match with connection identified by Local/Remote Communication ID	
7	Proposed Alternate Remote Port LID rejected	LID of acceptable port
8	Proposed Alternate Remote Port GID rejected	GID of acceptable port
9	Proposed Alternate Flow Label rejected	Acceptable Flow Label
10	Proposed Alternate Traffic Class rejected	Acceptable Traffic Class
11	Proposed Alternate Hop Limit rejected	Acceptable Hop Limit
12	Proposed Alternate Packet Rate rejected	Minimum acceptable Packet Rate
13	Proposed Alternate SL rejected	Acceptable SL

12.8.3 SAP - SUGGEST ALTERNATE PATH

SAP is an optional message used by the passive side to suggest a different alternate-path for a specific connection. It may be sent to suggest a possible alternate path if no path is loaded yet, improve an existing alternate path (e.g., use a port whose link was not active when the existing alternate path was established), or request to modify an existing alternate path due to upper-layer management considerations. It can also be used to hint the active side that an existing alternate path had become invalid. The passive side is allowed to send **SAP** messages only if **REQ:SAP Supported** bit was set during connection establishment.

The SAP message contents is as appears in the following table:

Table 117 SAP Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local communication ID	See section 12.7.1	0	32
Remote communication ID	See section 12.7.2	4	32

Table 117 SAP Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[bit] Offset	Length, bits
(reserved)		8	32
Remote QPN/EECN	See section 12.7.37	12	24
(reserved)		15	40
Alternate Local Port LID	See section 12.7.11	20	16
(reserved)		22	16
Alternate Local Port GID	See section 12.7.10	24	128
(reserved)		40	192
Private Data	See section 12.7.35	64	1344

The local side refers to the sender's point of view (passive side).

12.8.4 SPR - SUGGEST PATH RESPONSE

SPR is sent in response to a **SAP** request. **SPR** is an optional message that shall be supported by a CM that supports path suggestion. The active side must respond such that the **SPR** is received within **REQ:Local CM Response Timeout**; MRA is not supported as a response to **SAP** messages.

The **SPR** message contents is as appears in the following table:

Table 118 SPR Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[bit] Offset	Length, bits
Local communication ID	See section 12.7.1	0	32
Remote communication ID	See section 12.7.2	4	32
Additional Information Length	If non-zero, the length in bytes of valid Additional Information. The sender is not required to provide Additional Information even if the Suggest AP status code it places in the SPR message allows for it. If the sender decides not to provide Additional Information, it shall set this field to a value of zero.	8	8
Suggest AP Status	See section 12.8.4.1	9	8
(reserved)		10	16
Additional Information	The information associated with the Suggest AP status code, as specified in section 12.8.4.1 . If the number of bits of information does not completely fill the number of bytes given in Additional Information Length (e.g. if the Additional Information field contains a 20-bit Flow Label), the bits are packed into bytes as defined in section 1.5.1 , and the remaining least significant bits of the last byte are all set to zero.	12	576

Table 118 SPR Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[bit] Offset	Length, bits
Private Data	See section 12.7.35	84	1184

12.8.4.1 SUGGEST AP STATUS

Value	Description	Meaning of Additional Information Field (when present)
0	Alternate path suggestion noted	
1	Invalid remote/local communication ID	
2	Alternate path suggestions not supported. SAP should not be sent any more for this connection.	
3	Alternate path suggestions are supported, but cannot be processed at this time. SAP may be retried at a later time.	
4	Suggested alternate path rejected – redirect.	A ClassPortInfo data structure as described in section 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 . The SAP sender may use the information in the ClassPortInfo to resend the SAP to an entity that can process that message.
5	Reserved	
6	Remote QPN/EECN doesn't match local/remote communication ID	
7-13	Reserved	

12.9 STATE TRANSITION DIAGRAMS FOR COMMUNICATION ESTABLISHMENT AND RELEASE

The diagrams in this section detail all valid states and state transitions in the IBA communication establishment and release protocols. Section [12.10](#) contains ladder diagrams which illustrate various paths through this state diagram.

The InfiniBand™ communication establishment and communication release protocols are structured so that they will always run to completion in a bounded amount of time. “Completion” for the communication establishment protocol means that the communication will either be established, or else the state of all parties involved in the communication will revert to idle as if no communication had ever been established. “Completion” for the communication release protocol means that the communication is released; this protocol never fails to run to completion.

The diagrams in this section assume that the Consumer runs the IBA communication establishment and release protocols to completion (successful or otherwise). It is legal, however, for the Consumer to destroy the QP or EEC involved in the communication establishment/release attempt before that attempt has run to completion. If this occurs, the Consumer whose QP or EEC has been destroyed has one of two options: they can ignore all incoming messages that pertain to the communication establishment/release attempt involving the QP or EEC (and let the communications establishment attempt timeout), or they can send a **REJ** message with a “Consumer Reject” Reason code if they are in a CM state (i.e. REP Rcvd, MRA(REP) Sent, REQ Rcvd, MRA Sent) that allows a **REJ** to be sent.

12.9.1 DIAGRAM DESCRIPTION

There is only one communication establishment protocol for InfiniBand™, with different messages used for different scenarios. The state diagrams are broken into an “active side” and a “passive side”. The active side of the protocol is the side that is trying to initiate a transition out of one of the terminal states (Idle and Established). The passive side of the protocol is the side that is responding to the active side.

12.9.2 INVALID STATE INPUT HANDLING

Several of the states in the CM protocols are ephemeral; the transition out of these states depends only upon a decision being made locally, not on any new input being received from the other party in the communication establishment or release attempt. The ephemeral states are:

- Peer Compare
- Timeout
- REJ Retry
- REP Rcvd
- DREQ Rcvd
- DREP Timeout
- REQ Rcvd
- REJ Sent
- RTU Timeout

The general rule for handling any input message that is received while in an ephemeral state is to hold that message pending until the CM protocol enters a non-ephemeral state.

In many of the non-ephemeral states of the InfiniBand™ communication establishment and release protocols, there is a defined set of input messages that can legally be received while in that state. Once the CM pro-

tocol has entered a non-ephemeral state, the general rule for handling an input message that cannot be legally received and acted upon while in that state is to ignore it. A CM shall not retry the **REQ**, **REP**, or **DREQ** messages more than the number of times specified by **REQ:Max CM Retries**.

12.9.3 TIMEOUTS

A lost or dropped message will ultimately result in a timeout. Since all parties will ultimately return to the idle state, there is no correctness requirement to do retries of a message send as a result of a timeout, although it is recommended. Senders of retried messages may not modify the contents of the messages between retries.

In the following state diagrams, "Timeout" represents a Response Timeout. Service Timeouts are specifically noted.

12.9.4 STATE DIAGRAM NOTES

All **REJs**, sent or received, cause a return to IDLE(active) or LISTEN(pas-
sive), possibly through the TimeWait state (see section [12.9.8.4](#)).

In the Active Communication Establishment diagram, the transition from the Peer Compare state to the Passive **REQ_Rcvd** state only happens if the ServiceID in the **REQ** received is the same as the ServiceID in the **REQ** that was sent. (See section [12.10.4](#) for details). Otherwise, a new connection establishment instance shall be started.

The ServiceID implicitly defines whether the service is client/server or peer to peer, but the server application must inform its CM so that the CM will handle the inbound **REQ** correctly.

When the Consumer wishes to destroy a QP or EEC that is in the Established CM state, it is good practice for the Consumer to first release the connection before destroying the QP or EEC. Doing so allows any state maintained by CM related to the QP or EEC in question to be cleaned up. A connection is released by moving from the Established state to the TimeWait state using one of the state transition sequences described in the sections that follow.

When the CM state is IDLE, LISTEN, or TimeWait, the QP or EE Context is allowed to be in any of the Error, Reset, or Initialized states. In these CM states, which particular state the QP or EE Context is in is outside the scope of this specification. The CM should avoid transitioning a QP from the Error state to the Reset state before it has notified the Consumer that the QP has entered the Error state, and given the Consumer an opportunity to dequeue any Work Completions that may be associated with that QP. If the CM doesn't follow this suggestion the Consumer may be unable to dequeue the Work Completions associated with a QP after the QP is transitioned to the Reset state.

12.9.5 COMMUNICATION ESTABLISHMENT AND RELEASE - ACTIVE

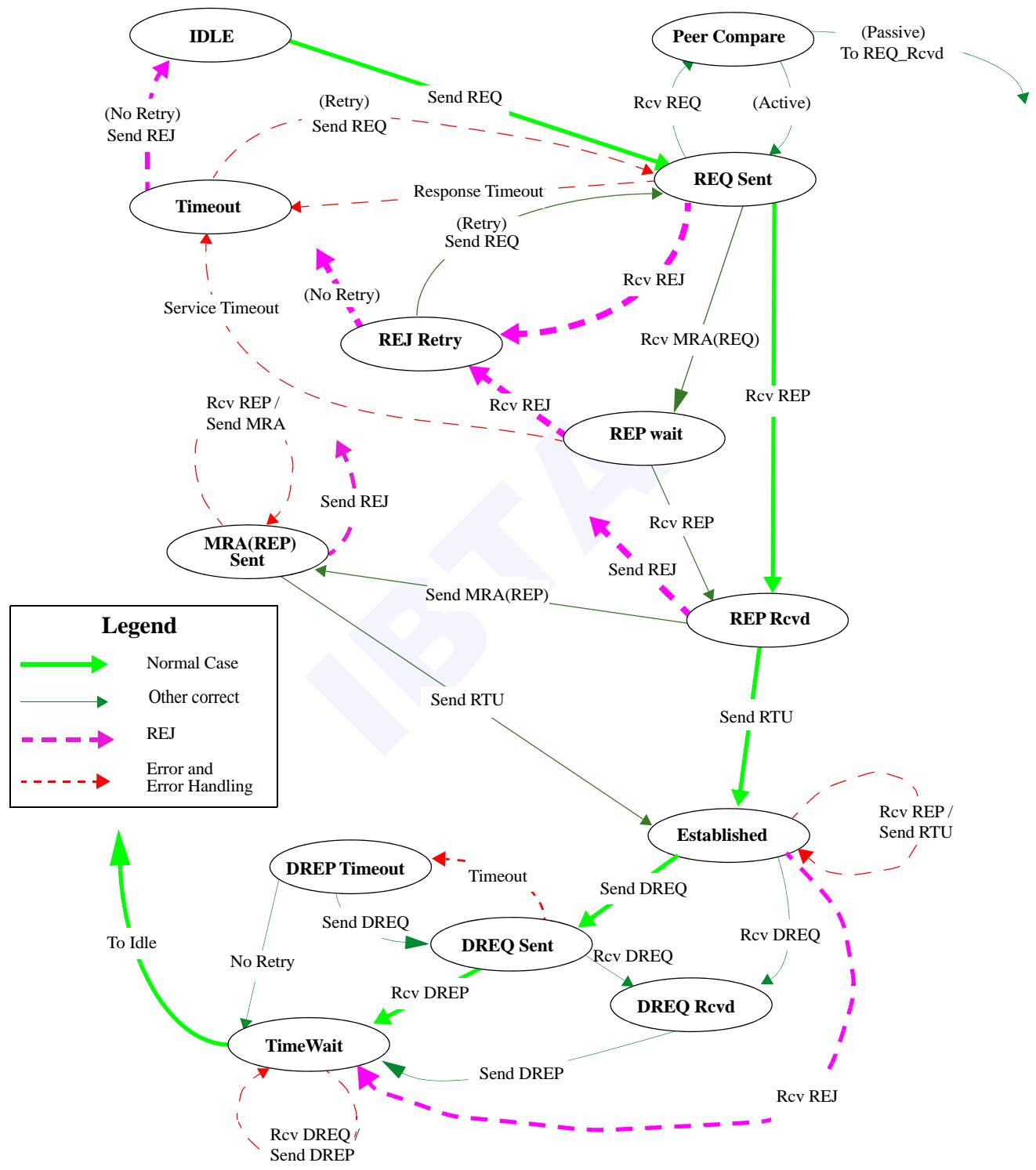


Figure 135

Communication Establishment(Active Side)

12.9.6 COMMUNICATION ESTABLISHMENT - PASSIVE

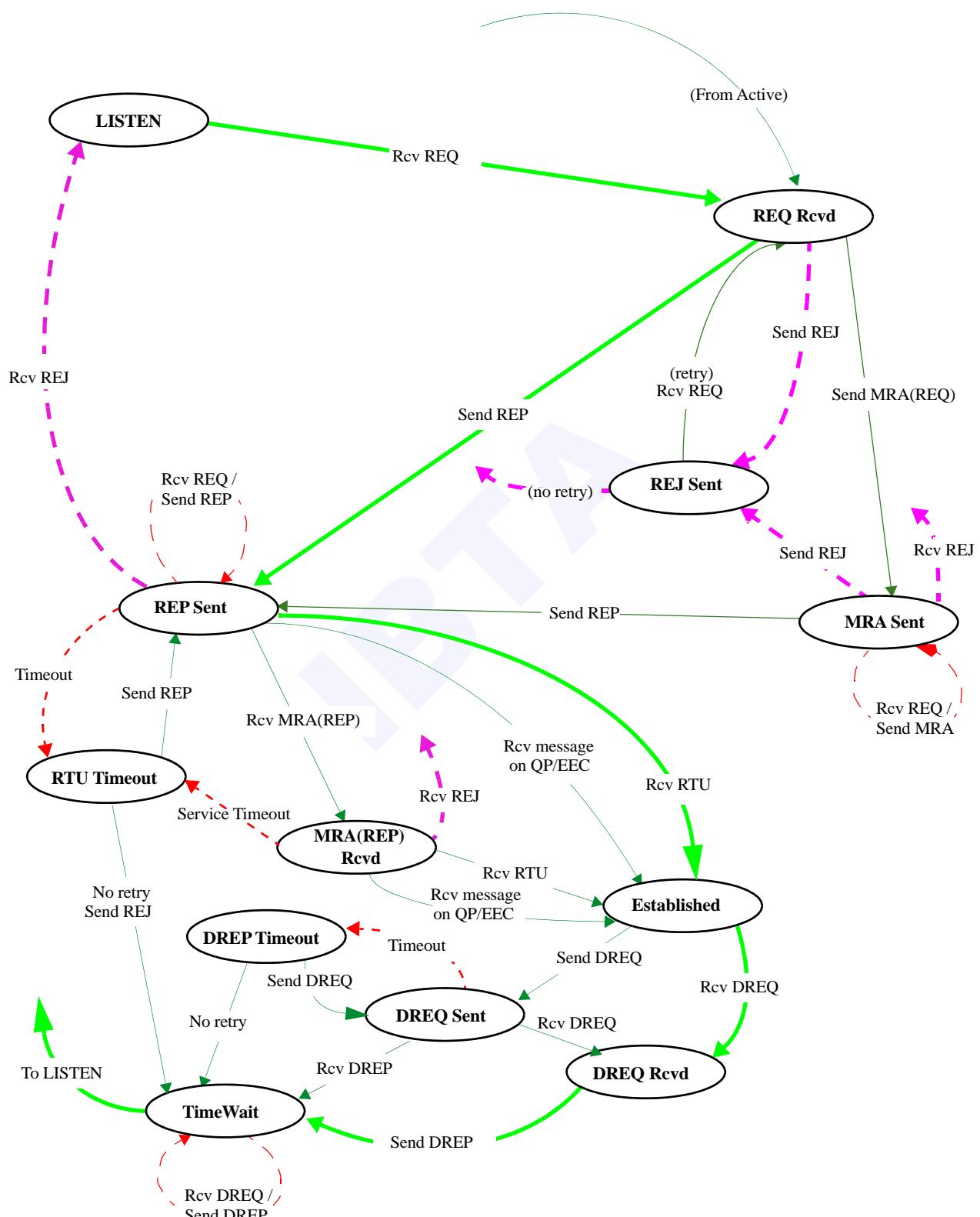


Figure 136

Communication Establishment(Passive Side)

12.9.7 STATE AND TRANSITION DEFINITIONS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
The following tables define each state and the possible transitions from
the state.

14
15
16
17
18
19
20
These tables define the protocol, and take precedence in the case of a
conflict with the state diagrams.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
20
In this table, “CEP” (Channel EndPoint) means QP when the protocol is
being used to establish or release connections between RC or UC QPs.
It means EE context when the protocol is being used to establish an RDC
between two EE contexts. If the protocol is being used to advertise an RD
QP for use over an existing RDC (i.e. if **REQ:RDC Exists** is set), there is
no CEP, and hence the state transitions to the CEP called out in this table
do not apply in this case. (The CM protocol state transitions continue to
apply, however.)

12.9.7.1 ACTIVE STATES

CM State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence
IDLE	Send REQ (default)	Send REQ / CM to REQ Sent / CEP to Initialized None
REQ Sent	Receive REP Receive REQ Receive MRA(REQ) Response Timeout Receive REJ (default)	CM to REP Rcvd / CEP to Ready to Receive IF (ServiceIDs match) to Peer Compare CM to REP wait CM to Timeout CM To REJ Retry None
Peer Compare	Entry	IF ((local CA GUID greater than remote CA GUID) OR ((CEP is a QP) AND (local QPN greater than remote QPN)) OR ((CEP is an EEC) AND (local EECN greater than remote EECN))) CM to REQ Sent ELSE CM to Passive:REQ Rcvd
REP wait		

CM State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence	
	Receive REP	CM to REP Rcvd / <i>CEP to Ready to Receive</i>	1 2
	Service Timeout	CM to Timeout	3 4
	Receive REJ	CM to REJ Retry	5 6
	(default)	None	7
REJ Retry			8 9 10
	Entry (Retry)	Send REQ / CM to REQ Sent	11
	Entry (No Retry)	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	12 13
REP Rcvd			14 15 16 17 18
	Send RTU	Send RTU / CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	19 20
	Send MRA(REP)	CM to MRA(REP) Sent	21 22
	Send REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	23 24
	(default)	None	25 26
MRA(Rep) sent			27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36
	Send RTU	Send RTU / CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	37 38 39 40 41 42
	Send REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REP	Send MRA	
	(default)	None	
Established			
	Receive DREQ	CM to DREQ Rcvd / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Send DREQ	CM to DREQ Sent / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REQ	See section 12.9.8.3.1	
	Receive REP	Send RTU	
	Receive REJ	CM to TimeWait / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	(default)	None	
DREQ Sent			
	Timeout	CM to DREP Timeout	
	Receive DREQ	CM to DREQ Rcvd	

CM State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence	
	Receive REP	CM to REP Rcvd / <i>CEP to Ready to Receive</i>	1 2
	Service Timeout	CM to Timeout	3 4
	Receive REJ	CM to REJ Retry	5 6
	(default)	None	7
REJ Retry			8 9 10
	Entry (Retry)	Send REQ / CM to REQ Sent	11
	Entry (No Retry)	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	12 13
REP Rcvd			14 15 16 17 18
	Send RTU	Send RTU / CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	19 20
	Send MRA(REP)	CM to MRA(REP) Sent	21 22
	Send REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	23 24
	(default)	None	25 26
MRA(Rep) sent			27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36
	Send RTU	Send RTU / CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	37 38 39 40 41 42
	Send REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REJ	CM to IDLE / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REP	Send MRA	
	(default)	None	
Established			
	Receive DREQ	CM to DREQ Rcvd / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Send DREQ	CM to DREQ Sent / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	Receive REQ	See section 12.9.8.3.1	
	Receive REP	Send RTU	
	Receive REJ	CM to TimeWait / <i>CEP to Error</i>	
	(default)	None	
DREQ Sent			
	Timeout	CM to DREP Timeout	
	Receive DREQ	CM to DREQ Rcvd	

CM State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence	
	Receive DREP	CM to TimeWait	1 2 3
	(default)	None	4
DREQ Rcvd			5
	Send DREP	CM to TimeWait	6 7
	(default)	None	8
TimeWait			9
	Entry	CM: Start Timer	10 11
	Receive DREQ	CM: Send DREP (if Max CM Retries not exceeded)	12 13
	Timer Expiration	CM to IDLE	14
	(default)	None	15
Timeout			16
	Entry (Retry) (Max Retries not exceeded)	Send REQ / CM to REQ Sent	17 18 19
	Entry (No Retry)	Send REJ / CM to IDLE / CEP to Error	20
DREP Timeout			21
	Entry (Retry) (Max Retries not exceeded)	Send DREQ / CM to DREQ Sent	22 23 24
	Entry (No Retry)	CM to TimeWait	25
	(default)	None	26 27

12.9.7.2 PASSIVE STATES

State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence	
LISTEN			31 32
	Receive REQ	CEP to Initialized / CM to REQ Rcvd	33 34
	(default)	None	35 36
REQ Rcvd			37
	Send REP	CEP to Ready to Receive / Send REP / CM to REP Sent	38 39
	Send MRA(REQ)	CM to MRA Sent	40 41 42

State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence	
	Send REJ	CM to REJ Sent	1 2
	(default)	None	3 4
MRA sent			5
	Send REP	<i>CEP to Ready to Receive / Send REP / CM to REP Sent</i>	6 7
	Send REJ	CM to REJ Sent	8
	Receive REJ	CM to LISTEN / <i>CEP to Error</i>	9
	Receive REQ	Send MRA	10 11
	(default)	None	12
REJ Sent			13 14
	(retry) Receive REQ	CM to REQ Rcvd	15
	(no retry)	CM to LISTEN / <i>CEP to Error</i>	16 17
REP Sent			18
	Receive RTU	CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	19
	Receive MRA(REP)	CM to MRA(REP) Rcvd	20 21
	Receive message on service CEP	CM To Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	22
	Receive REJ	CM to Listen / <i>CEP to Error</i>	23
	Timeout	CM to RTU Timeout	24 25
	Receive REQ	Send REP	26
	(default)	None	27 28
MRA(Rep) rcvd			29
	Receive RTU	CM to Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	30
	Service Timeout	CM to RTU Timeout	31 32
	Receive message on service CEP	CM To Established / <i>CEP to Ready to Send</i>	33
	Receive REJ	CM to LISTEN / <i>CEP to Error</i>	34 35
	(default)	None	36
Established			37 38
	Send DREQ	CM to DREQ Sent / <i>CEP to Error</i>	39
	Receive DREQ	CM to DREQ Rcvd / <i>CEP to Error</i>	40 41
			42

State	Event	Action/Transition Sequence
	Receive REQ (default)	See section 12.9.8.3.1 None
DREQ Rcvd	Send DREP (default)	CM to TimeWait None
DREQ Sent	Timeout Receive DREQ Receive DREP (default)	CM to DREP Timeout CM to DREQ Rcvd CM to TimeWait None
RTU Timeout	Retry REP No Retry (default)	CM to REP Sent Send REJ / CM to TimeWait / CEP to Error None
TimeWait	Entry Receive DREQ Timer Expiration (default)	CM: Start Timer CM: Send DREP (if Max CM Retries not exceeded) CM to IDLE None
DREP Timeout	Entry (Retry) (Max Retries not exceeded) Entry (No Retry) (default)	Send DREQ / to DREQ Sent CM to TimeWait None

12.9.8 STATE DETAILS

12.9.8.1 TIMEOUT

A message may be re-sent no more than **REQ:Max CM Retries**, but there is no requirement that it be re-sent that many times.

12.9.8.2 RTU TIMEOUT

If the Passive agent sends **REP** but does not receive either an **RTU** or a message on the CEP (QP or EEC, as appropriate), it transitions to **RTU Timeout**. If it has not exceeded **REQ:Max CM Retries**, the Passive agent may resend **REP**.

12.9.8.3 ESTABLISHED

12.9.8.3.1 REQ RECEIVED / REP RECEIVED

(RC, UC, XRC) A CM may receive a **REQ/REP** specifying a remote QPN in “**REQ:local QPN**”/“**REP:local QPN**” that the CM already considers connected to a local QP. A local CM may receive such a **REQ/REP** if its local QP has a stale connection, as described in section [12.4.1](#). When a CM receives such a **REQ/REP** it shall abort the connection establishment by issuing **REJ** to the **REQ/REP**. It shall then issue **DREQ**, with “**DREQ:remote QPN**” set to the remote QPN from the **REQ/REP**, until **DREP** is received or Max Retries is exceeded, and place the local QP in the TimeWait state.

(RD) A CM may receive a **REQ/REP** specifying a remote EECN in “**REQ:local EECN**”/“**REP:local EECN**” that the CM already considers connected to a local EEC. A local CM may receive such a **REQ/REP** if its local EEC has a stale connection, as described in section [12.4.1](#). When a CM receives such a **REQ/REP** it shall abort the connection establishment by issuing **REJ** to the **REQ/REP**. It shall then issue **DREQ**, with “**DREQ:remote EECN**” set to the remote EECN from the **REQ/REP**, until **DREP** is received or Max Retries is exceeded, and place the local EEC in the TimeWait state.

If a CM receives a **REQ/REP** as described above, if the **REQ/REP** has the same Local Communication ID and Remote Communication ID as are present in the existing connection and if the **REQ/REP** arrives within the window of time during which the active/passive side could be legally retransmitting **REQ/REP**, the CM should treat the **REQ/REP** as a retry and not initiate stale connection processing as described above.

12.9.8.4 TIMEWAIT

The **PathRecord:PacketLifeTime** (section [15.2.5.16 PathRecord](#)) field defines the maximum time that a packet can exist in the fabric.

The TimeWait timer shall be set to twice the **PathRecord:PacketLife-Time** value plus the remote’s Ack Delay.

The CM is responsible for placing QPs/EECs in the TimeWait state, for maintaining them in that state for a period not less than the TimeWait period, and for removing them afterward.

Receipt of a **DREQ** while in the TimeWait state shall not affect the TimeWait timer.

12.9.8.5 MESSAGE RECEIPT ACKNOWLEDGMENT (MRA)

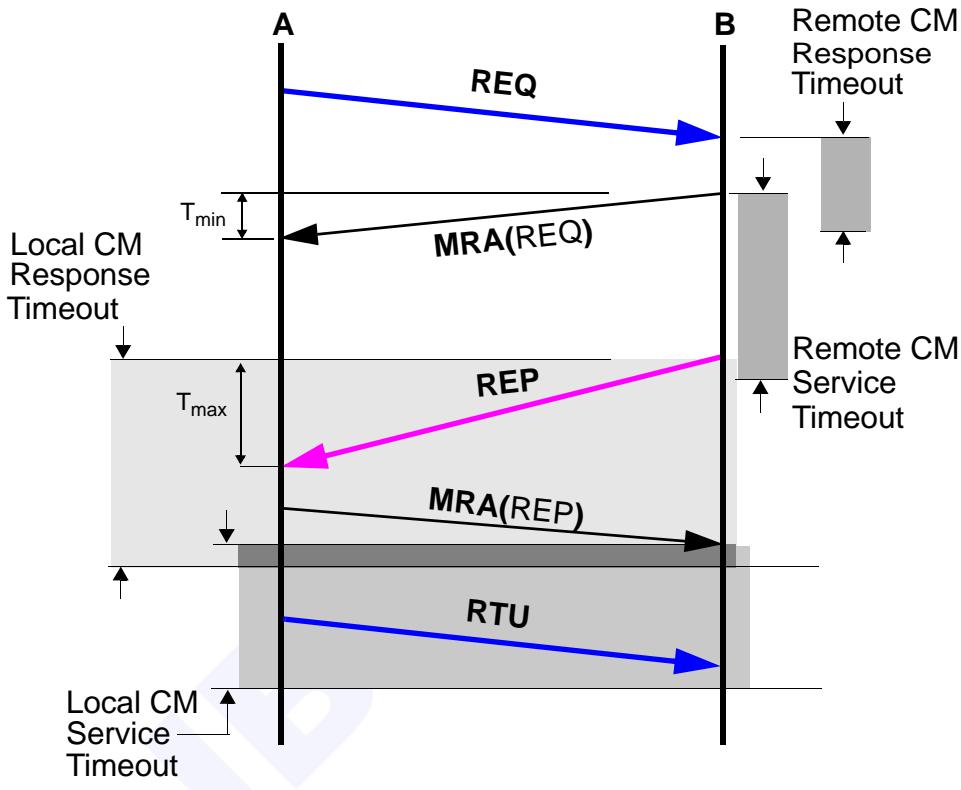


Figure 137 MRA Example

Figure 137 illustrates the use of the **MRA** message in a CM message exchange. 'Local' and 'Remote' are with respect to 'A'. Because B cannot return a **REP** or **REJ** to A within the **Remote CM Response Timeout**, B sends an **MRA(REQ)**, notifying A that B has received the **REQ** message and is processing it. The **MRA(REQ)** contains B's **CM Service Timeout** value. B completes its processing and sends the **REP** message to A before the expiration of the **Remote CM Service Timeout**.

Because packet flight times may differ due to fabric congestion, (e.g., the **MRA** may travel in the minimum possible time, and the **REP** in the maximum time, as shown by T_{\min} and T_{\max}), A shall allow an additional **PacketLifeTime** for the **REP** to arrive.

When A receives the **REP**, it realizes that the required processing will not allow it to transmit a **REJ** or **RTU** soon enough to arrive at B before the **Local CM Response Timeout** expires, so it sends an **MRA(REP)** containing its CM Service Timeout value. When it completes the REP pro-

cessing, A sends the **RTU**, which arrives before the **Local CM Service Timeout** expires.

Once an **MRA** is received, the CM shall not re-send the message acknowledged by the **MRA** sooner than the period of time represented by the applicable CM Service Timeout period plus PacketLifeTime.

12.9.8.6 TIMEOUTS AND RETRIES

In the communication establishment protocol, the sending of the **REQ**, **REP** and **DREQ** messages may be retried by the sender. The retry happens after the sender fails to receive a response message from the recipient within the appropriate response timeout period.

For the **REQ** message, the Remote CM Response Timeout period is the recipient's "turn-around" time. The **REQ** sender may consider the **REQ** (or response) lost after $(2 \times \text{PacketLifeTime} + \text{Remote CM Response Timeout})$. Upon receiving a **REQ**, the recipient must send a **REP**, **REJ**, or **MRA** by the Remote CM Response Timeout. The Service Timeout period begins when the **MRA** is sent, and a **REJ** or **REP** must be sent before it expires.

The Local CM Response Timeout tells the **REP** sender how long to wait for an **MRA**, **REJ**, or **RTU**. The Local CM Response Timeout value includes the round trip flight time. If the **REP** sender receives an **MRA**, it can expect the **REJ** or **RTU** within $(\text{Local CM Service Timeout} + \text{PacketLifeTime})$ after the **MRA**'s arrival.

The response timeout period for the **DREQ** message is the Local CM Response Timeout present in the original **REQ** message.

When the sender retries a message send, the recipient can potentially receive multiple copies of the same message. The recipient of a **REQ** (or **REP**) message should determine the amount of time it has to send a response based upon when it received the latest **REQ** (or **REP**) message; the remaining time it has to reply is thus reset back to the full response timeout period each time it receives a new **REQ** (or **REP**) for the same connection establishment attempt.

If the sender of a **REP** message receives another **REQ** message for the same connection establishment attempt, after it resends the **REP** message it should reset its response timeout period back to the full Local Response Timeout period that it received in the **REQ** message.

12.9.8.7 REJ RETRY

If the Active agent receives a **REJ** while it is in the **REQ Sent** or **REP Wait** state, the Active agent has the option to perform a retry. If the Active agent chooses not to retry, the CEP is put into the Error state and the Active

agent proceeds to the Idle state. If a retry is performed, the Active agent must re-send the **REQ** message using a different Local Communication ID than was used for the original **REQ** message that received the **REJ** in reply.

12.9.8.8 REJ SENT

When the Passive agent sends a **REJ**, it enters the REJ Sent state. If the Passive agent chooses not to retry its connection establishment attempt, it places the CEP into the Error state, which if the CEP is a Queue Pair will cause any Work Requests posted to the Receive Queue of the Queue Pair to be flushed. If the Passive agent wishes to avoid having its Work Requests flushed, it may instead stay in the REJ Sent state until it receives a **REQ**, at which time it proceeds to the REQ Rcvd state and connection establishment proceeds normally.

12.9.8.9 REP SENT / MRA(REP) RECEIVED

If the Passive agent receives a **LAP** for a connection while it is in the REP Sent or MRA(REP) Rcvd state, when/if the Passive agent times out and enters the RTU Timeout state it should take the "Retry REP" transition out of that state (assuming it has not exceeded the retry count specified in the **REQ** message). Receiving a **LAP** is a strong indication that the Active agent believes the connection has been established. By retrying the **REP**, the Passive agent informs the Active agent that the connection has in fact not been fully established, which will prompt the Active agent to retry the **RTU** so that it can be fully established. If the Passive agent does not retry the **REP**, it is possible that the Active agent will get stuck in a loop retrying its **LAP** message until the Passive agent ultimately times out the connection establishment attempt and sends a **REJ**.

12.9.9 CONNECTION STATE

Communication Managers shall maintain the following information for the life of a connection:

- Local Communication ID
- Remote Communication ID
- Local CM Response Timeout
- Remote CM Response Timeout
- Local QPN / Local EECN
- Remote CA QPN / Remote CA EECN
- Remote CA GUID
- Remote CM LID / Remote CM GID
- Max CM Retries
- ClassVersion, if multiple ClassVersions are supported

12.10 COMMUNICATION ESTABLISHMENT LADDER DIAGRAMS

The following ladder diagrams show the message exchanges for various communication establishment scenarios. These are not applicable to Unreliable Datagrams (see section [12.11](#) for Service ID Resolution).

12.10.1 ACTIVE CLIENT TO PASSIVE SERVER - BOTH CLIENT AND SERVER ACCEPT COMMUNICATION

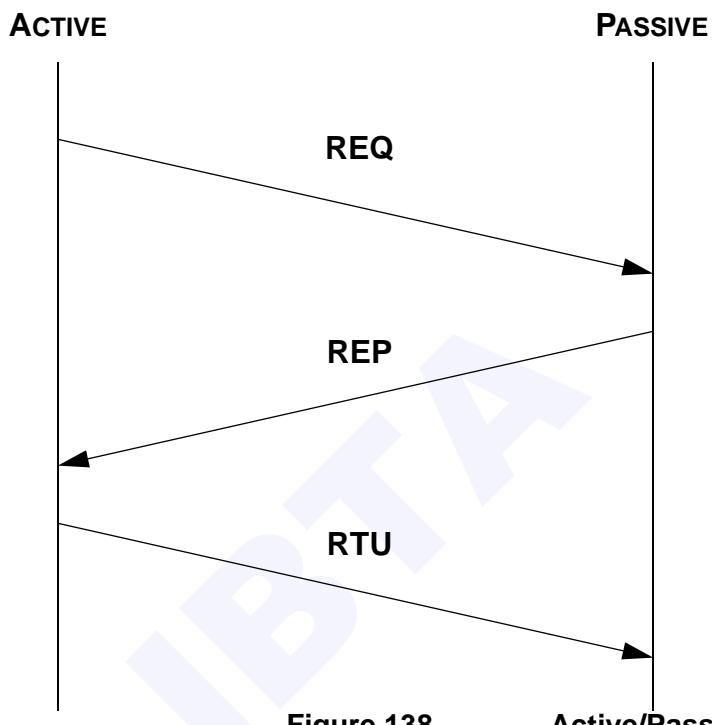


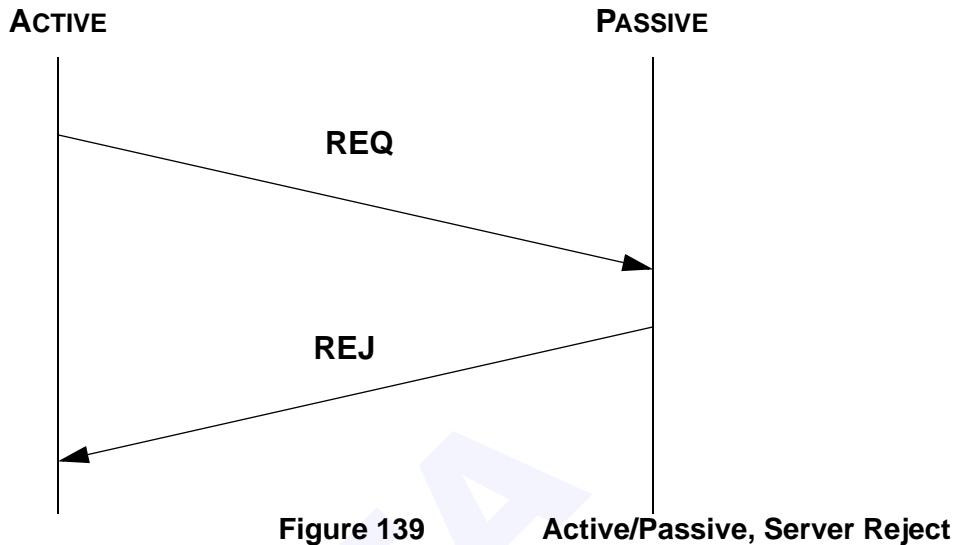
Figure 138 Active/Passive, Both Accept

For RC and UC service, the above exchange establishes the connection.

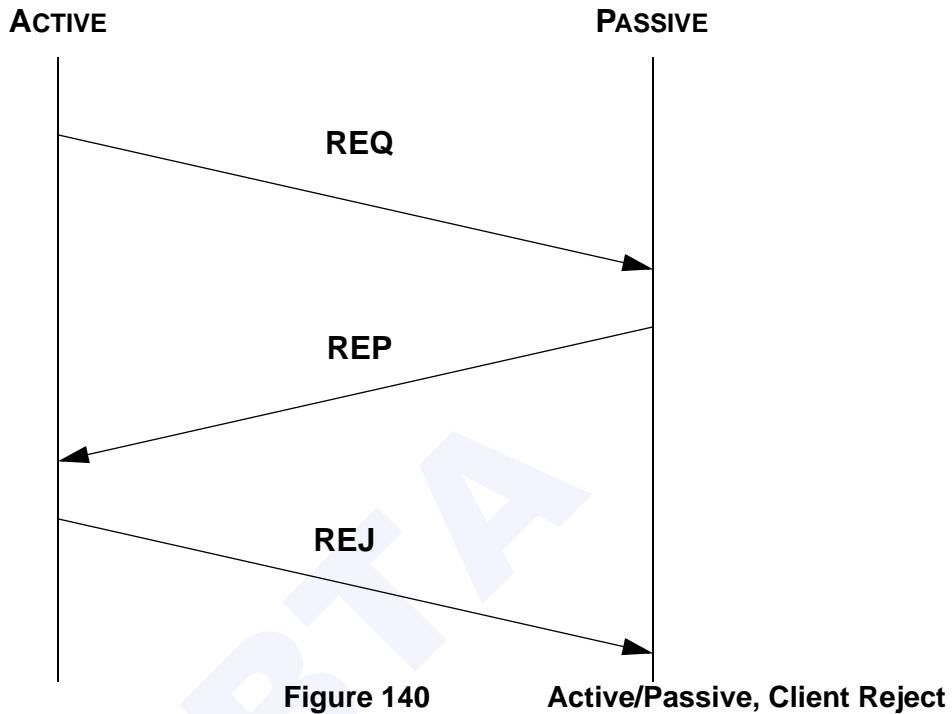
For RD service, the above exchange must be performed

- To establish a Reliable Datagram Channel between two EECs
- To resolve a Service ID and associate QPs for possible use over an existing RDC

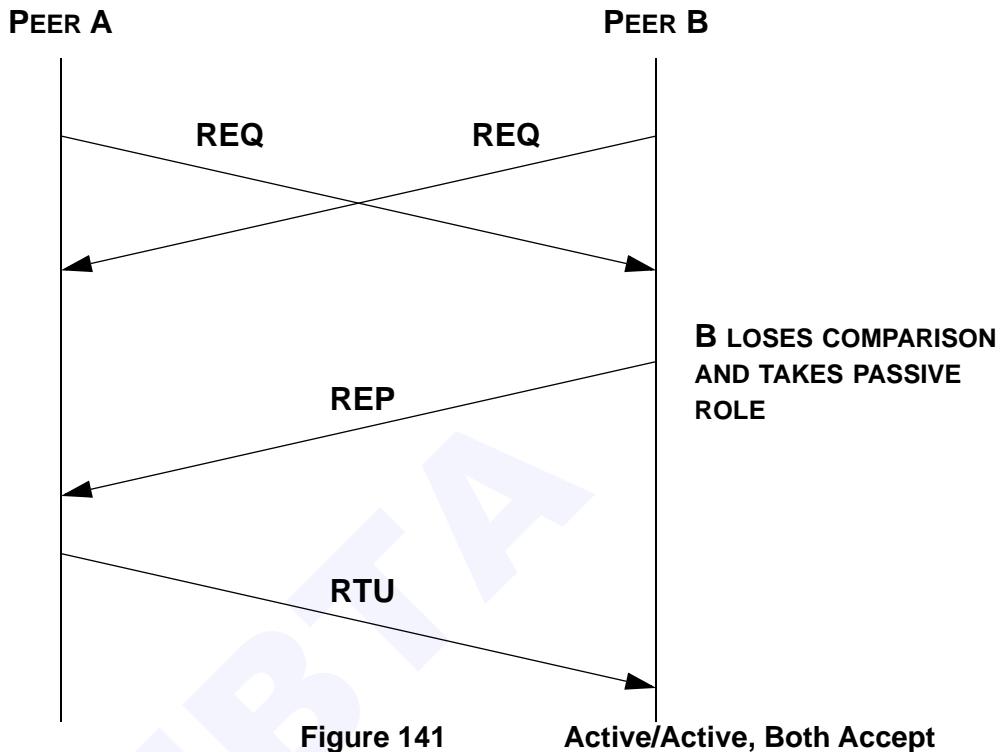
How cooperating applications exchange information on additional available QPs is specific to the applications.

12.10.2 ACTIVE CLIENT TO PASSIVE SERVER - SERVER REJECTS COMMUNICATION

The above exchange occurs when the passive server cannot or will not perform the requested action. The **REJ** message contains the reason why the action was not performed.

12.10.3 ACTIVE CLIENT TO PASSIVE SERVER - CLIENT REJECTS COMMUNICATION

The above exchange occurs when the requesting client decides not to continue with the requested action. (An example is a client that requires Automatic Path Migration support not provided by the server.) The **REJ** message contains the reason why the action was not continued.

12.10.4 PEER TO PEER - BOTH ACCEPT COMMUNICATION

The above exchange occurs when two peer entities attempt communication. In this case, the ServiceID in both **REQ** messages is the same. The ServiceID implicitly defines whether the service is client/server or peer to peer, but the application must inform the CM so that the CM will handle the inbound **REQ** correctly. (The CM protocol state transitions are different for a peer to peer communication establishment attempt than for a client/server communication establishment attempt. In particular, the Peer Compare state is only entered for a peer to peer communication establishment attempt. See section [12.9.7.1](#) for a description of the Peer Compare state.)

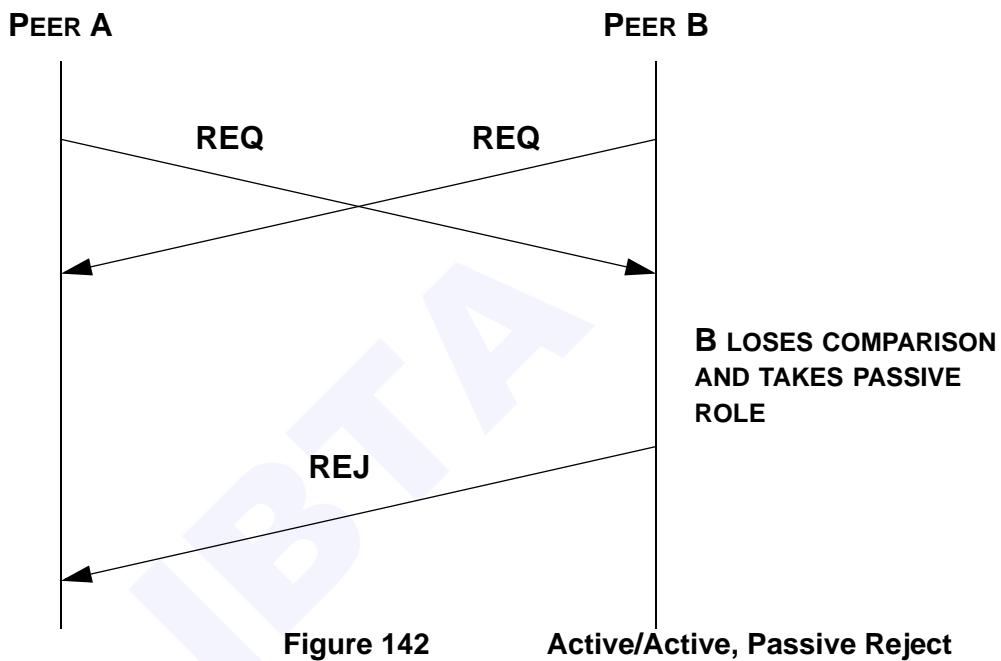
Peer A and Peer B compare their CA (Channel Adapter) GUIDs, treating each as a big-endian value, to decide which party will take the active side of the CM protocol. The peer with the numerically smaller GUID assumes the passive role in the remainder of the communication establishment protocol.

If the CA GUIDs match (e.g., two processes using the same CA), the peers compare their QPNs (using the **REQ:Local QPN** field) in the case of connection establishment between Connected Queue Pairs, or their EECNs (using the **REQ:Local EECN** field) in the case of Reliable Data-

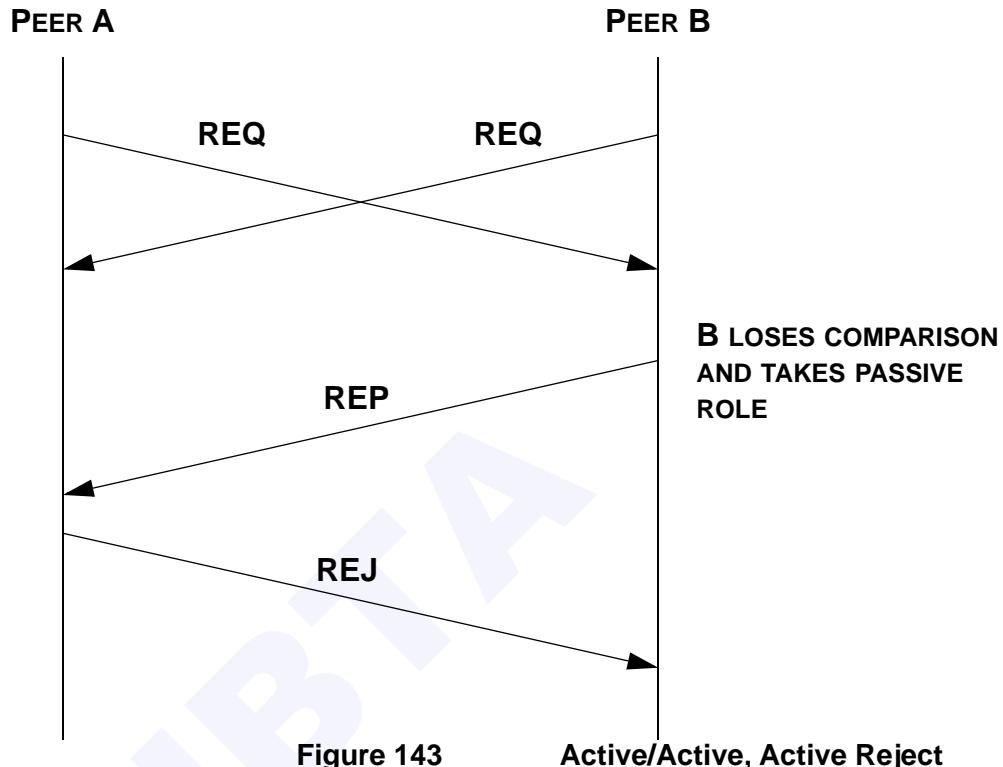
gram Channel establishment. The comparison is done treating each as a big-endian value, with the smaller QPN/EECN taking the passive role.

CM shall not be used to establish “loopback” channels on a single QP.

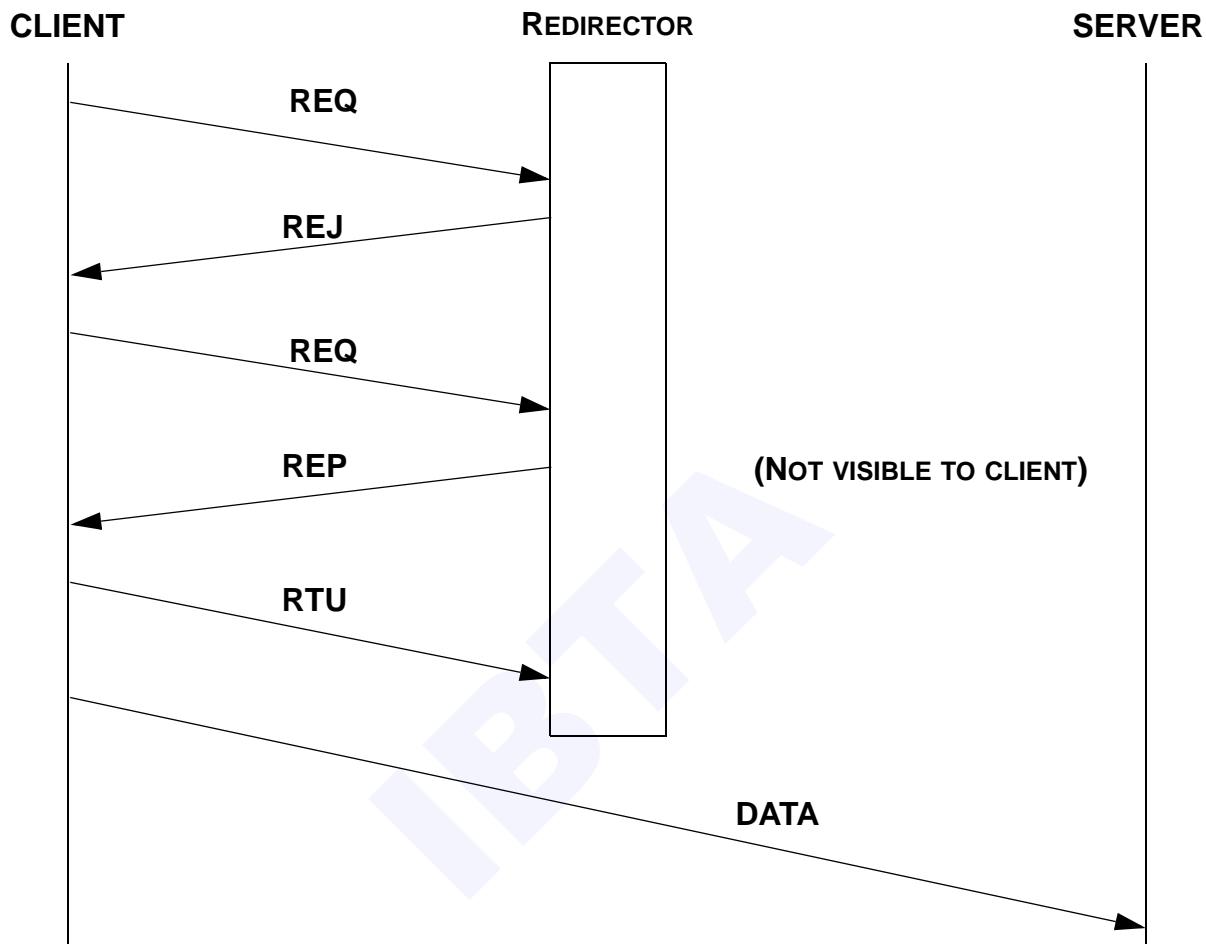
12.10.5 ACTIVE PEER TO ACTIVE PEER - PASSIVE REJECTS COMMUNICATION



The above exchange occurs when the 'losing' peer decides not to continue the requested action. The **REJ** message contains the reason the action was not continued.

12.10.6 ACTIVE PEER TO ACTIVE PEER - ACTIVE REJECTS COMMUNICATION

The above exchange occurs when the winning peer decides not to continue with the requested action. The **REJ** message contains the reason why the action was not continued. The peer receiving the **REJ** message returns to the IDLE state.

12.10.7 ACTIVE CLIENT TO PASSIVE SERVER WITH REDIRECTOR - ALL ACCEPT COMMUNICATION**Figure 144 Redirection, Accepted**

A redirector is a CM that provides CM services on behalf of an entity supported on a port other than the redirector CM's port. The port information for both endpoints is explicit in the **REQ** and **REP** messages, allowing the redirector to manage connections as a proxy for another entity.

The above exchange occurs when the redirector sends **REJ** with the Status "Port Redirection", indicating that the requested ServiceID is available at a different port. The requesting client (using a new Local Communication ID) sends a new **REQ** proposing the port specified in the **REJ**. All CM messages are exchanged between the client CM and the redirector, but traffic over the established connection goes between the client and the server.

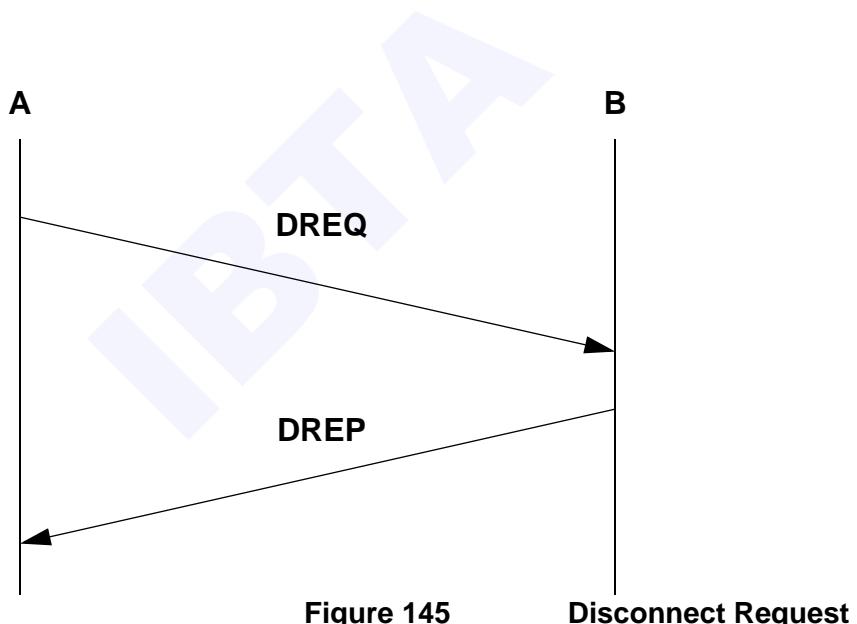
12.10.8 COMMUNICATION RELEASE

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
The following ladder diagram shows the message exchange for communication release.

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
Communication release as illustrated in this section is ungraceful. Upon receipt of a Disconnect Request, each CM shall cause the affected QP to be placed into the error state, causing pending work requests to complete with the Flush error status.

13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
Consumers are free to define and execute a more graceful communication release protocol that allows for an orderly shutdown of communications. Any such protocol shall utilize the communication release protocol illustrated below after the termination of normal message processing.

12.10.8.1 DISCONNECT REQUEST



Because the **DREQ** and **DREP** travel out of band relative to normal communications traffic, how operations currently in progress will be completed cannot be predicted.

12.11 SERVICE ID RESOLUTION PROTOCOL

36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Service ID Resolution (SIDR) provides a way for users of Unreliable Datagram (UD) service to determine a Queue Pair on the target port that supports a given Service ID.

GSAs shall support this protocol if non-management services are provided on the Channel Adapter at other than fixed QPNs. If this protocol is

not supported by a CM, the IsSIDRCapable bit shall be reset in the CapabilityMask component of the ClassPortInfo attribute for the CM. See [16.7.3 Attributes](#) for details.

The protocol consists of a single request and a single reply, using unreliable Management Datagrams (MADs) targeted to the GSI. SIDR messages are of the Communication Management class.

If the SIDR response returns a valid QPN, the returned QPN shall be in the partition identified by the P_Key in the header of the SIDR Request.

12.11.1 SIDR_REQ - SERVICE ID RESOLUTION REQUEST

SIDR_REQ requests that the recipient return the information necessary to communicate via UD messages with the entity specified by **SIDR_REQ:ServiceID**.

Table 119 SIDR_REQ Message Contents

Field	Description	Byte[Bit] Offset	Size, bits (Values)
RequestID	See section 12.11.1.1	0	32
Partition Key	See section 12.11.1.2	4	16
(reserved)		6	16
ServiceID	See section 12.11.1.3	8	64
Private Data	See section 12.11.1.4	16	1728

12.11.1.1 REQUESTID

A 32-bit value identifying the request. The target of the request shall return this value unchanged in the SIDR REP message. If a SIDR_REQ message is re-sent, the sender shall send the same RequestID. The SIDR_REQ recipient shall use the Source GID (or Source LID, if GRH not present) to distinguish between requests from different requestors that might have the same RequestID.

12.11.1.2 PARTITION KEY

The Partition Key that the sender wishes to use to access the service identified by Service ID.

12.11.1.3 SERVICE ID

The Service ID for which the sender wishes the responder to provide UD addressing information. See section [12.7.3](#) for more information.

12.11.1.4 PRIVATE DATA

Data that is opaque to the SIDR protocol for use by the requester and responder. For example, some systems may require that the PrivateData

area contain an authorization key before reporting the QP supporting certain ServiceIDs.

12.11.2 SIDR_REP - SERVICE ID RESOLUTION RESPONSE

2 SIDR_REP returns the information necessary to communicate via UD
3 messages with the entity specified by **SIDR_REQ:ServiceID**.

4 **Table 120 SIDR_REP Message Contents**

Field	Description	Byte [Bit] Offset	Length, bits
RequestID	See section 12.11.1	0	32
Status	See section 12.11.2.1	4	8
Additional Information Length	If non-zero, the length in bytes of valid Additional Information. The sender is not required to provide Additional Information even if the Status code it places in the SIDR_REP message allows for it. If the sender decides not to provide Additional Information, it shall set this field to a value of zero.	5	8
VendorID [23:8]	See section 12.11.2.4	6	16
QPN	See section 12.11.2.2	8	24
VendorID [7:0]	See section 12.11.2.4	11	8
ServiceID	See section 12.11.1.3	12	64
Q_Key	See section 12.11.2.3	20	32
Additional Information	See section 12.11.2.1	24	576
Private Data	See section 12.11.1.4	96	1088

12.11.2.1 STATUS

2 The Status field tells whether the QPN and Q_Key fields are valid, and if
3 not valid, the reason a valid QPN and Q_Key were not provided. De-
4 pending upon the value of the Additional Information Length field, the Ad-
5 dditional Information field may or may not have valid contents.

Value	Description	Meaning of Additional Information Field (when present)
0	QPN and Q_Key are valid	
1	Service ID not supported	
2	Rejected by Service Provider	

3	No QP available	1
4	Request should be redirected to the endpoint specified by ClassPortInfo. QPN and Q_Key are not valid.	2 3 4
5	Class Version specified in the header for the SIDR_REQ MAD is not supported. When returning this code, the "Code for Invalid Field" portion of the Status field in the MAD header associated with this SIDR REP message should contain a value of 1. (The class version specified is not supported.) See Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values for details.	5 6 7 8 9 10 11
6	Invalid Partition Key	12 13
7-255	Reserved	14

12.11.2.2 QPN

The QPN of the local QP on which the requested Service ID is supported. (Only valid if so indicated by Status field).

12.11.2.3 Q_KEY

The Q_Key for the QP returned in **QPN**.

12.11.2.4 VENDORID

VendorID indicates that common subset of vendor option bits are supported as indicated by that VendorID.

12.11.3 PATH INFORMATION

The information returned in the **SIDR REP** message is insufficient, by itself, to create a usable address handle. Specifically, the values for **PathRecord:Mtu** and **PathRecord:Rate** are required except when sending packet payloads no larger than the minimum PMTU, or when transmitting on a minimum-width link, respectively. These values are available through Subnet Administration (see section [15.2.5.16](#)).

CHAPTER 13: MANAGEMENT MODEL

13.1 INTRODUCTION

IBA management is built on top of four fundamental concepts. These include:

- management entities,
- agents,
- a messaging scheme,
- a collection of specific messages including message content, and related behaviors.

An agent is a conceptualization of a body of low level functionality embedded in all channel adapters, switches, and routers, which provides the means to set and query various parameters internal to the channel adapter, switch, or router.

Managers and interested parties are conceptualizations of high level bodies of functionality which provide for controlling or examining various aspects of subnet or fabric configuration and operation.

The messaging scheme provides for intercommunication between managers or interested parties and agents, and, in some cases, between agents. The messaging scheme specifies the basic message types and interfaces through which agents and managers exchange information.

Finally, specific messages and message sequences are defined in terms of message content and associated required behaviors. Messages are grouped into classes according to the type of management activity the messages support.

The specification of management operations is done from the viewpoint of specifying messages that may appear on the wire and specifying behaviors associated with those messages. The appearance of a message at a port implies a required action and, possibly, response. Additionally, the appearance of a message on the wire implies behavior of the entity that caused the message to be emitted. In particular, the behavior requirements in certain areas (e.g. subnet management, see [14.4 Subnet Manager on page 989](#)) imply the existence of certain entities (e.g. a subnet manager) which embody required behaviors with respect to the origination and consumption of various messages.

Various conceptualizations are used in specifying behaviors. However, the use of such conceptualizations in this and other management related chapters is purely a descriptive artifice. The conceptualizations themselves, do not convey normative requirements. Normative requirement specification is done by, and only by, specification of message formats and associated required behaviors. Finally, while some conceptualizations may suggest certain implementations, implementations are outside of the scope of the specification and no specific implementation is implied.

13.2 ASSUMPTIONS, AND SCOPE

13.2.1 ASSUMPTIONS

There are certain assumptions that underlie the management mechanisms specified herein. Proper operation of the management mechanisms and fulfillment of the objectives underlying these specifications is predicated upon the validity of these assumptions. While the assumptions themselves are not part of the specification, they are an essential element of the framework in which these specifications apply.

- The management operations specified herein provide for a level of interoperability such that an SM from any vendor can manage a heterogeneous collection of IBA-compliant channel adapters, switches, and routers from any set of vendors. However, compatibility and interoperability among SMs from different vendors is not supported. Migration from one vendor's SM to another's by way of system reinitialization, i.e., through a planned outage, is supported. Such migration assumes appropriate steps of transferring data between vendors' SMs have been accomplished prior to the re initialization.
- The management operations specified herein provide the means to conduct a variety of activities. Some of the mechanisms specified are optional. And, except as specifically stated, the specification of a means does not imply or require that the means be used. It is assumed that each fabric will be constructed, configured, and operated according to the needs of its user(s) and that constructors exercise diligence in selection of components to ensure the fabric possesses the characteristics required. For example, if a user requires multicast support but mixes components that do and do not support multicast, they may fail to achieve their requirements.

13.2.2 SCOPE

As noted above, a number of management classes are distinguished in the IBA management model. The classes include:

- Subnet management. Subnet management is the body of activity associated with discovering, initializing, and maintaining an IBA subnet. In addition, the subnet management sections specify methods for interfacing to a diagnostic framework for handling subnet and protocol errors. (See [14.2.5.14 VendorDiag](#) on page 42)

- [925](#)). In the following sections a subnet manager will be denoted by SM while a subnet management agent will be denoted by SMA.
- Subnet administration (SA): Subnet administration provides a means for management entities and applications to obtain information about fabric configuration and operation. (See [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#)). In the following sections subnet administration will be denoted by SA.
 - Communication management: Communication management provides the means to set up and manage communications between a pair of queue pairs or, in certain cases, to identify which queue pair to use for a certain service. (See [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#) and [16.7 Communication Management on page 1182](#)). In the following sections a communications manager will be denoted by CM.
 - Performance management: Performance management specifies a set of facilities for examining various performance characteristics of a fabric. (See [16.1 Performance Management on page 1079](#)).
 - Device management: Device management specifies the means for determining the kind and location of various kinds of devices on a fabric. (See [16.3 Device Management on page 1153](#)).
 - Baseboard management: Baseboard management specifies the means to effect, in-band (i.e. over the IBA fabric) low level system management operations. (See [16.2 Baseboard Management on page 1141](#) and InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Chapter 13, Hardware Management).
 - SNMP tunneling: SNMP tunneling specifies mechanisms to support transport of SNMP operations through an IBA fabric. (See [16.4 SNMP Tunneling on page 1166](#)).
 - Vendor specific: The vendor specific classes specify a basic framework within which a vendor can define vendor specific management communications and operations that are beyond the scope of the IBA. See [16.5 Vendor-specific on page 1172](#) for architectural details relating to use of specific values.
 - Application specific: The application specific classes specify a basic framework within which services can be defined which implement operations that are beyond the scope of the IBA. See [16.6 Application-specific on page 1178](#) for architectural details relating to use of specific values.

As a notational convenience, the set of classes as listed above but excluding subnet management are referred to as General Services. When referring to General Services Managers, the notation GSM may be used. When referring to General Services Agents, the notation GSA may be

used. According to the context in which it appears, GSM(s) or GSA(s) may refer to the group of all supported general services managers or agents on a channel adapter, switch, or router, or to any of the managers or agents in that group.

The IBA management services provided by the above classes support management of only the devices that comprise the IBA subnet. They do not support management of devices beyond the subnet. Specifically, they do not support management of tape drives, hard disk drives, network interfaces, etc. Mechanisms required to discover and power-manage devices that are accessed through an IBA channel adapter are provided within the above classes but provision of services specific to such devices is beyond the scope of the IBA.

IBA management provides a means of configuring and gathering information from IBA channel adapters, switches, and routers. The IBA Subnet Administration Service provides a means for other entities to determine the topology and configuration of the subnet. For example, operating systems or other higher level management entities may use IBA Subnet Administration services mechanisms to enforce operating system policies, or cluster policies, and so on, but such higher level entities and the policies they effect are outside the scope of IBA management services.

A variety of standards for communication of management information between managed elements and management applications exist today. These include Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Desktop Management Interface (DMI), and Common Information Model (CIM), as well as other standard and proprietary interfaces. Such standards may be layered on top of the IBA management model interfacing to it through services defined in the model. Alternatively, they may interface to IBA management elements through private interfaces. In either case, while the IBA management model provides means for such applications to obtain subnet topology and configuration information, such applications are outside the scope of IBA management.

Finally, the current IBA specification defines only the mechanisms required for proper operation of IBA fabrics and interoperation of IBA components. Specific applications, such as for enclosure management, can also be used in conjunction with non-IBA subsystems that are connected to the IBA subnet. Such applications may utilize the IBA subnet as a means of transport for the specific subsystem management data but such subsystem management services themselves are outside of the scope of the management services specified for IBA.

[Figure 146 Management Model on page 776](#), below, depicts an example subnet indicating graphically the relationships among the IBA managed

subnet and related services and higher level and lower level entities that may be found on an IBA fabric.

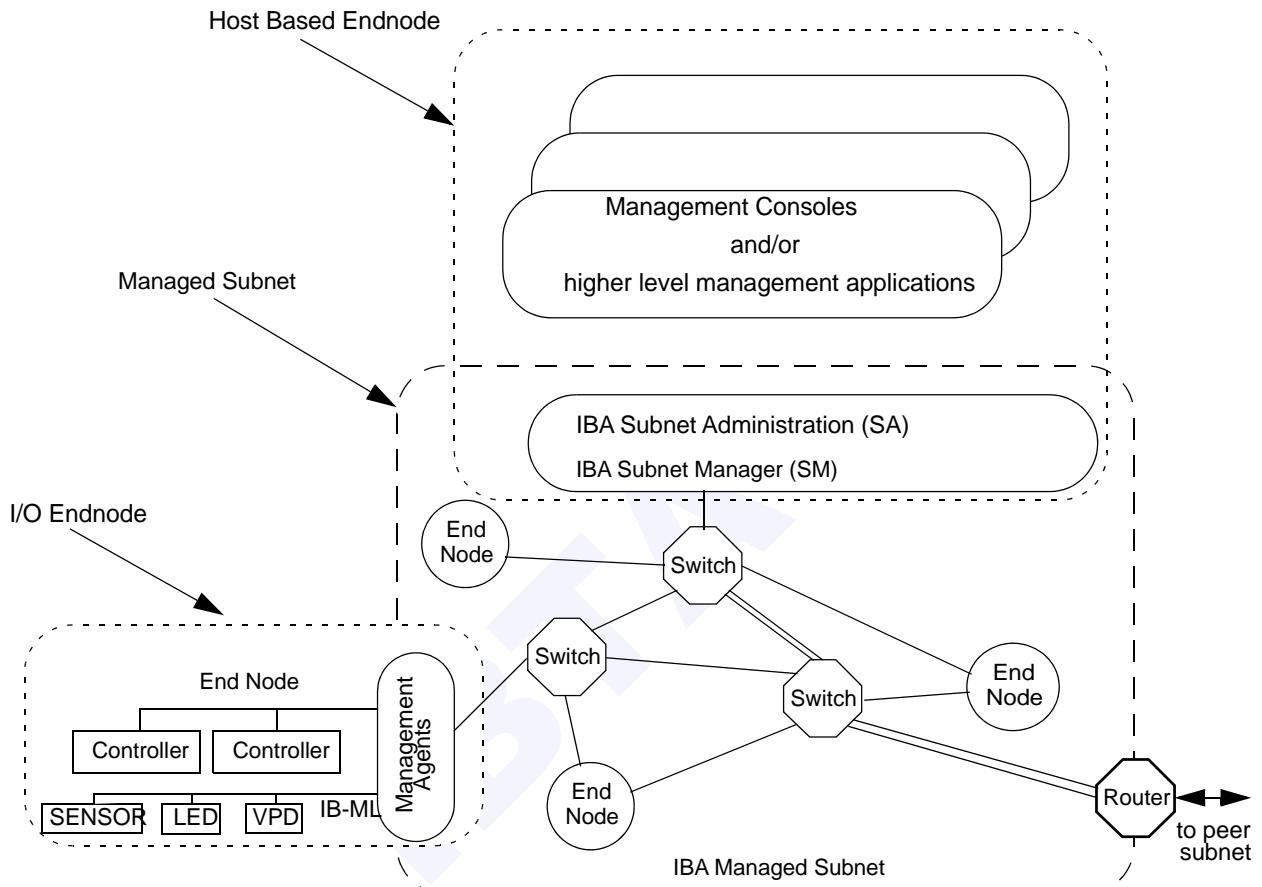


Figure 146 Management Model

This chapter provides an overview of the IBA management model, the management entities, and the corresponding interfaces. In addition this chapter defines requirements and specifies mechanisms common to all management activities. Subsequent chapters specify additional details associated with specific management classes. For each management class, the complete set of applicable requirements that must be satisfied and mechanisms that must be provided is the combination of those from this chapter with those in the corresponding class specific sections of the other chapters.

13.3 MANAGERS, AGENTS, AND INTERFACES

13.3.1 INTRODUCTION

IBA Management is organized around abstract functional entities referred to as *managers*, *agents*, and *interfaces*. Communication between managers and agents is performed through management messages referred

to as Management Datagrams (MADs). MADs are exchanged using the unreliable datagram transport service as defined in [9.8.3 Unreliable Data-grams on page 416](#).

Managers are conceptual functional entities that effect control over fabric elements or provide for gathering information from fabric elements. In general, managers may reside anywhere in a subnet although class specific constraints on the manner in which they logically interface to the fabric medium (e.g. SMs use QP0, see [13.5.1 MAD Interfaces on page 819](#)) may impose specific restrictions.

Agents are conceptual functional entities present in IBA channel adapters, switches, and routers that process management messages arriving at the ports of the IBA channel adapters, routers, and switches where they exist. The functionality represented by an agent effects required behaviors associated with MADs which arrive at the port or ports with which it is associated.

Abstractly, interfaces represent a target to which messages may be sent and through which messages will be processed or will be dispatched to an appropriate processing entity. For management interfaces, the associated processing entity is an agent or, in some cases, a manager. As such, an interface is a means to gain access to the functionality of agents and/or managers.

Management operations are divided into a set of classes. For a given class of activity, there is usually only a small number of managers on a subnet. Conceptually, for each supported class, there is one agent on each switch, channel adapter, and router on the IBA subnet.

Although the notions of agent, manager, and interface as described above, may suggest specific implementations, this specification only mandates behavior with respect to sourcing and sinking management messages, not how that behavior is achieved. The notion of an agent, manager, or interface, is a convenient descriptive artifice which encapsulates functional operations and behaviors associated with a particular class of activities. This specification does not require the existence of agents, managers, or interfaces per se. It does require that implementations exhibit the behaviors associated with the abstract agents, managers, and interfaces. How that is actually accomplished is implementation dependent.

The messages and behaviors relating to the subnet management class are further defined in [14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865](#). This class uses specialized MADs referred to as Subnet Management Packets (SMPs).

[Figure 147 Typical Subnet Manager/Agent Relationships on page 778](#) depicts a single subnet showing representative relationships among channel adapters, switches, subnet managers and agents.

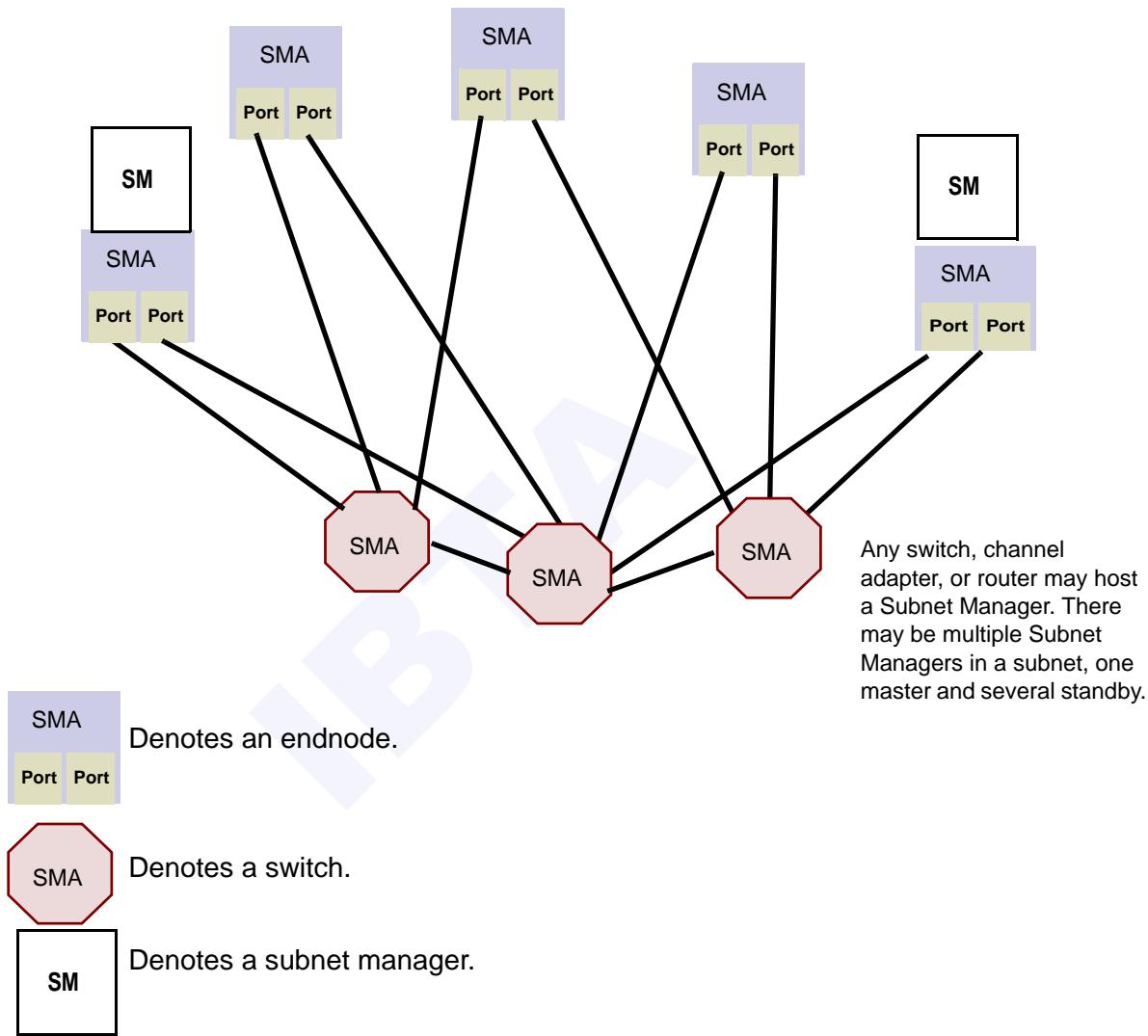


Figure 147 Typical Subnet Manager/Agent

The messages and behaviors relating to the subnet administration class are further defined in [15.2 SA MADs on page 1016](#) while the messages and behaviors relating to the other general services classes are further defined in the subsections of [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). These service classes use MADs referred to as General Services Management Packets (GMPs).

[Figure 148 Typical General Services Management/Agent Relationship on page 779](#) depicts a single subnet showing representative relationships between general service class managers and corresponding agents.

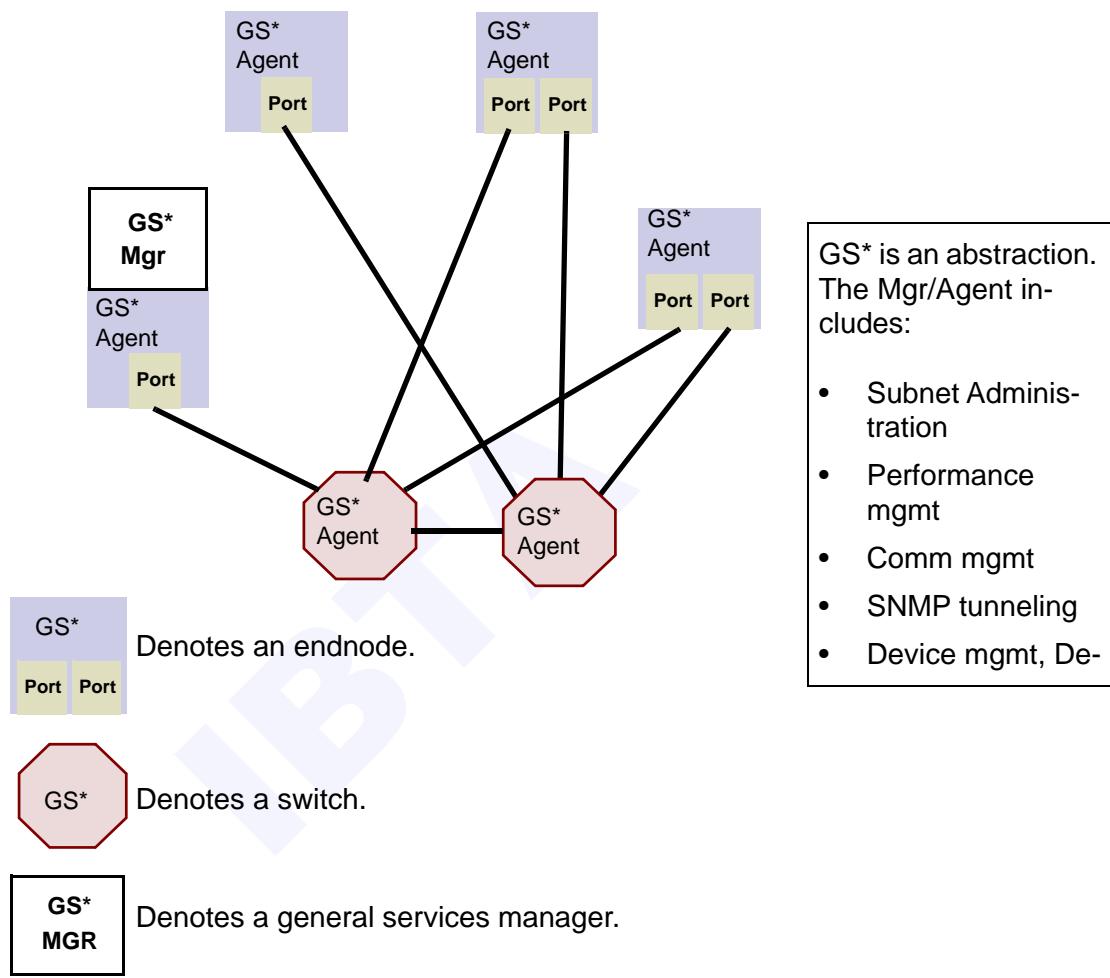


Figure 148 Typical General Services Management/Agent

13.3.2 REQUIRED MANAGERS AND AGENTS

C13-1: Each subnet **shall** have at least one logical SM.

Logical SMs may be single physical entities or may consist of multiple, possibly distributed, cooperating physical entities which collectively effect the appearance of a single SM to CAs, switches and routers on the subnet it manages.

If there is more than one entity capable of acting as a master SM, only one should function as a master SM during initialization.

See [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#) for additional specific requirements applicable to SMs during and after initialization.

There is a close relationship between SMs and SAs. This is described in [15.1.2 Relationship Between SA and the SM on page 1016](#).

IBA does not otherwise mandate the existence of, the location of, or, operational characteristics of GSMS. The class specific sections of [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#) define messages and agent behaviors available that GSMS depend on but there are no manager specific messages or related behaviors that GSMS must support.

C13-1.1.1: Every IBA compliant channel adapter, switch, or router **shall** support the functionality characterized as a Subnet Management Agent (SMA).

Supporting the functionality characterized as an SMA means that the channel adapter, switch, or router conforms to the compliance statements for the SMA specified in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#). The specific requirements for supporting this functionality at the various ports of the device are specified in the chapter covering the specific type of device. See [Chapter 17: Channel Adapters on page 1187](#), [Chapter 18: Switches on page 1209](#) and [Chapter 19: Routers on page 1228](#).

Every IBA compliant channel adapter, switch, or router supports the functionality characterized as the various GSAs for those general services specified to be mandatory in the class specific section of [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). Supporting the functionality characterized as a GSA means that the channel adapter, switch, or router conforms to the compliance statements for the GSA specified in the corresponding class-specific sections of [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). The specific requirements for supporting this functionality at the various ports of the device are specified in the chapter covering the specific type of device. See [Chapter 17: Channel Adapters on page 1187](#), [Chapter 18: Switches on page 1209](#) and [Chapter 19: Routers on page 1228](#).

13.4 MANAGEMENT DATAGRAMS

Management Datagrams (MADs) are the basic elements of the messaging scheme defined for management communications. MADs are classified into predefined management classes and for each MAD there is a specified format, use, and behavior. This section specifies characteristics, i.e. formats and associated behaviors, common to all MADs or common across multiple classes. MADs specific to a class are specified in class specific sections of [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#), [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#), and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

13.4.1 CONVENTIONS

C13-2: For all MADs, for both the fields in the MAD header as well as the fields in MAD attributes, bit placement follows the conventions specified

in [1.5 Document Conventions on page 81](#). In addition, the following conventions **shall** be observed.

- Fields within a MAD may be either fixed length or variable length within a fixed length location. A variable length field placed in a fixed length location is placed in the high order bits of the fixed length location and the remainder of that location is filled with zero.
- Reserved fields **shall** be filled with 0 by the requester and ignored by the receiver.
- When constructing a response MAD that contains all or part of the corresponding request MAD, it is acceptable to include the contents of reserved fields in the request MAD in the response MAD without regard to their content. That is, such fields need not be set to zero in the response MAD.
- In attribute descriptions in subsequent sections, fields specified as read only (RO) are not alterable by means of MADs. The mechanisms for setting such fields are implementation dependent and outside of the scope of the IBA. With respect to MADs that set values, recipients **shall** ignore any bits in the attribute in a request that correspond to RO components of the attribute being set.
- In attribute descriptions in subsequent sections, fields specified as read write (RW) are settable by means of MADs.

When the term “GID” is used in all attribute descriptions and other text throughout chapters [Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772](#), [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#), [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#), and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#), it refers only to a unicast GID unless otherwise specified.

13.4.2 MANAGEMENT DATAGRAM FORMAT

C13-3: The data payload (as used in [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#)) for all MADs **shall** be exactly 256 bytes.

C13-4: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-4.2-1.1: on page 781](#).

C13-4.2-1.1: The data payload **shall** include, and only include, the items defined in the MAD base format in [Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782](#), with semantics as described in [Table 121 Common MAD Fields on page 782](#).

In some releases, some attributes' definitions may not specify that they use all the space in all of the fields shown in [Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782](#), particularly the Data field. All such space shall be ignored by

the receiver. Note that unused space is not strictly reserved, since it need not be filled with zeros by the sender; thus vendor-specific information could be placed in that unused space. This is not recommended. Vendor-specific attributes or classes can be used for vendor-specific extensions, and doing so will ensure that their information will never be at risk of being overwritten by any future InfiniBand specification extensions that utilize this previously-unused space.

This includes the offset and alignment within that data area of any of the common attributes specified in [13.4.8 Management Class Attributes on page 797](#), which may vary by management class.

All MADs consist of a MAD header and MAD data. Except as noted, the MAD header definition is the same for all MADs. The contents of MAD data areas vary by management class and the specific attribute within the class

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0			
0	BaseVersion	MgmtClass	ClassVersion	R	Method		
4	Status		ClassSpecific				
8	TransactionID						
12							
16	AttributeID		AdditionalStatus				
20	AttributeModifier						
24	Data						
...							
252							

Figure 149 MAD Base Format

13.4.3 MANAGEMENT DATAGRAM FIELDS

[Table 121 Common MAD Fields on page 782](#) lists fields that are common to all MADs. Each class may specify additional class specific usage for certain of these fields.

Table 121 Common MAD Fields

Field Name	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
BaseVersion	8	0	Version of MAD base format. This shall be 1.
MgmtClass	8	8	Class of operation. See Table 122 Management Class Values on page 784 for definition and use.

Table 121

Common MAD Fields (Continued)

Field Name	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
ClassVersion	8	16	Version of MAD class-specific format. This shall be 1 unless otherwise specified in the relevant IBTA management class-specific sections of the specification.
R	1	24	Response bit. See 13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785 for definition and usage.
Method	7	25	Method to perform based on the management class. See 13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785 for definition and usage.
Status	16	32	Code indicating status of operation. See 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795 for definition and usage.
ClassSpecific	16	48	This field is reserved unless defined specifically in the management class. Some examples of such classes are the Subnet Management class and the Vendor-specific classes. See 14.2.1.2 SMP Data Format - Directed Route on page 867 for definition and usage for Subnet Management. For Vendor-specific classes, see 16.5.1 MAD Format on page 1173 .
TransactionID	64	64	Transaction identifier. See 13.4.6.4 TransactionID usage on page 794 . This field, if unused by the management class, shall be set to 0.
AttributeID	16	128	Defines objects being operated on by a management class. This field, if unused, shall be set to 0. See 13.4.8 Management Class Attributes on page 797 as well as class specific sections of Chapter 14: on page 865 , Chapter 15: on page 1015 , and Chapter 16: on page 1079 for definition and usage.
AdditionalStatus	16	144	Contains optional additional status. See Table 125 AdditionalStatus Ranges on page 796 .
AttributeModifier	32	160	Provides further scope to the attributes. Usage is determined by the management class and attribute. This field, when not used for the combination of management class and attribute specified in the header, shall be set to 0.
Data	1856	192	The data area, usage is defined within the scope of the management class.

13.4.4 MANAGEMENT CLASSES

C13-5: MADHeader:MgmtClass **shall** be one of the values defined in [Table 122 Management Class Values on page 784](#) not defined as reserved.

The functionality provided by specific classes is specified in [Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772](#), [Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772](#), and [Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772](#).

Table 122 Management Class Values

Management Class	Value	Description	Required Support for Class	Reference Section
Subn	0x01	Subnet Management class (LID routed)	All channel adapters, switches, and routers.	14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865
Subn	0x81	Subnet Management class (Directed route)	All channel adapters, switches, and routers.	14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865
SubnAdm	0x03	Subnet Administration class	All channel adapters, switches, or routers, hosting a subnet manager	15.2 SA MADs on page 1016
Perf	0x04	Performance Management class	All channel adapters, switches, and routers.	16.1 Performance Management on page 1079
BM	0x05	Baseboard Management class (tunneling of IB-ML commands through the IBA subnet)	All channel adapters, switches, and routers.	16.2 Baseboard Management on page 1141
DevMgt	0x06	Device Management class	Optional.	16.3 Device Management on page 1153
ComMgt	0x07	Communication Management class	All channel adapters that support RC, UC, XRC or RD.	16.7 Communication Management on page 1182
SNMP	0x08	SNMP Tunneling class (tunneling of the SNMP protocol through the IBA fabric)	Optional	16.4 SNMP Tunneling on page 1166
Vendor	0x09-0x0F 0x30-0x4F	Vendor Specific classes	Optional	16.5 Vendor-specific on page 1172
Application	0x10-0x2F	Application Specific classes. Refer to Annex “Application Specific Identifiers” for a listing of Application Specific Management class values currently assigned.	Optional	16.6 Application-specific on page 1178
	0x00 0x02 0x50-0x80 0x82-0xFF	Reserved		

With respect to the column labeled Required Support for Class, an indication that support is required indicates that at least some aspects of the class must be supported. Complete details of which aspects are mandatory and which aspects are optional are specified in the corresponding reference section.

13.4.5 MANAGEMENT CLASS METHODS

Methods define the operations that a management class supports. In addition to supporting methods common to multiple classes, each management class may define additional class specific methods.

The upper bit of the Method field is designated as the response bit (R). It is used to distinguish three types of messages based upon the type of method included in the header as follows:

- Message methods are methods for which no response is ever generated. The R bit is not set (i.e. it is 0) and the corresponding method with the R bit set is reserved and not used.
- Request methods are methods for which a response may be generated. The R bit is not set (i.e. it is 0) and the corresponding method with the R bit set is defined and potentially used to convey a response.
- Response methods are methods generated in response to receipt of a request method. The R bit is set (i.e. it is 1) and the corresponding method with the R bit not set is defined and used to trigger (request) the response.

See section [13.4.6 Management Messaging on page 787](#) for required request/response behavior.

C13-6: The method names and method values shown in [Table 123 Common Management Methods on page 786](#) shall be used in a manner consistent with the descriptions contained in [13.4.6 Management Messaging on page 787](#).

C13-7: The values assigned to the common methods shall not be used for any class-dependent method even if the common method is not supported.

C13-8: Class specific methods defined to be requests and responses shall conform to the request response definitions in this section, the request response requirements specified in Section [13.4.6.4 TransactionID](#)

[usage on page 794](#), and **shall** use the R bit according to the semantics of types of methods defined above.

Table 123 Common Management Methods

Name	Type	Value (including R bit)	Description
Get()	Request	0x01	Request (read) an attribute from a channel adapter, switch, or router. See 13.4.6.1.1 Get()/GetResp() on page 787 .
Set()	Request	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute in a channel adapter, switch, or router. See 13.4.6.1.2 Set()/GetResp() on page 788 .
GetResp()	Response	0x81	The response from an attribute Get() or Set() request. See 13.4.6.1.1 Get()/GetResp() on page 787 and 13.4.6.1.2 Set()/GetResp() on page 788 .
Send()	Message	0x03	Send a datagram. Does not require a response. See 13.4.6.1.3 Send() on page 789 .
Trap()	Message	0x05	An unsolicited datagram sent from a channel adapter, switch, or router indicating an event occurred that may be of interest. See 13.4.6.1.4 Trap() on page 789 and 13.4.9 Traps on page 811 .
Report()	Request	0x06	Used to forward an event/trap/notice to interested party. See 13.4.6.1.6 Report()/ReportResp() on page 790 and 13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814 .
ReportResp()	Response	0x86	Response to a Report(). See 13.4.6.1.6 Report()/ReportResp() on page 790 and 13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814 .
TrapRepress()	Message	0x07	Instruct a Trap() sender to cease sending a repeated Trap(). See 13.4.6.1.5 TrapRepress() on page 789 and 13.4.9 Traps on page 811 for usage.
		0x00, 0x04, 0x08- 0x0F, 0x80, 0x82- 0x85, 0x87-0x8F	Reserved.
		0x10-0x7F, 0x90- 0xFF	Class-specific methods. Use is defined by the class.

For Get(), Set(), GetResp(), and Send() methods, the combinations of method and attribute that are valid are class specific and are specified in the respective class sections in [Chapter 14: on page 865](#), [Chapter 14: on page 865](#), and [Chapter 16: on page 1079](#).

For Trap() and TrapRepress(), Report(), and ReportResp() methods, attribute usage is specified in Sections [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#), and [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#).

13.4.6 MANAGEMENT MESSAGING

13.4.6.1 METHODS AND MESSAGE SEQUENCING

Interactions using MADs are in a number of cases organized into request-response pairs such as Get()/GetResp(), Set()/GetResp(), and Report()/ReportResp(). In such cases, the requester may retry requests.

C13-8.1.1: The minimum interval between retries of request messages (all of which use the same TID) **shall** be greater than or equal to the response time specified in [C13-15.1.1: on page 793](#). The requester **shall** cease to retry a given request when it receives a matching response MAD (see [C13-19.1.1: on page 794](#)).

Whether a requester retries requests until it receives a matching response is vendor-specific. However, since requests (and all MADs) are unreliable datagrams, there can be no guarantee that the request has been received unless a response is received by the requester; so in the absence of a response, retries may be appropriate. The maximum number of retries performed before concluding that a response will never be received is also vendor-specific.

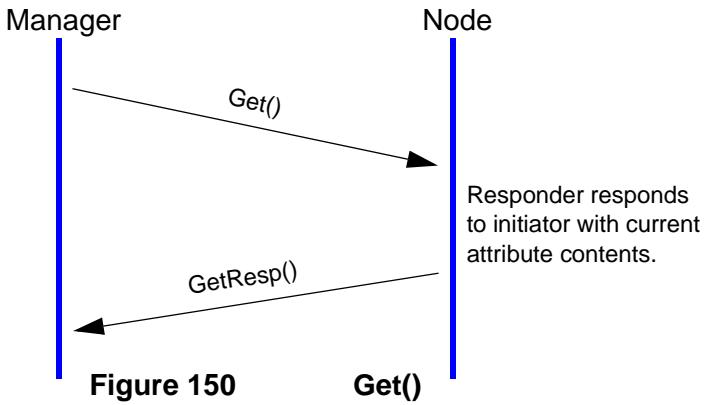
Responders generate responses as appropriate and required for each request MAD received as specified in sections [13.4.6.1.1 Get\(\)/GetResp\(\) on page 787](#), [13.4.6.1.2 Set\(\)/GetResp\(\) on page 788](#), and [13.4.6.1.6 Report\(\)/ReportResp\(\) on page 790](#).

C13-9: Responders **shall** not coalesce responses.

The subsequent ladder diagrams illustrate management request / response behavior for valid MADs. The operations defined below assume the receipt of a valid MAD. A MAD is valid if it satisfies all applicable validation checks as specified in Section [13.5.3 MAD Validation on page 825](#).

13.4.6.1.1 GET()/GETRESP()

Get() requests the read of an attribute from a channel adapter, switch, or router, as illustrated in [Figure 150 on page 787](#).



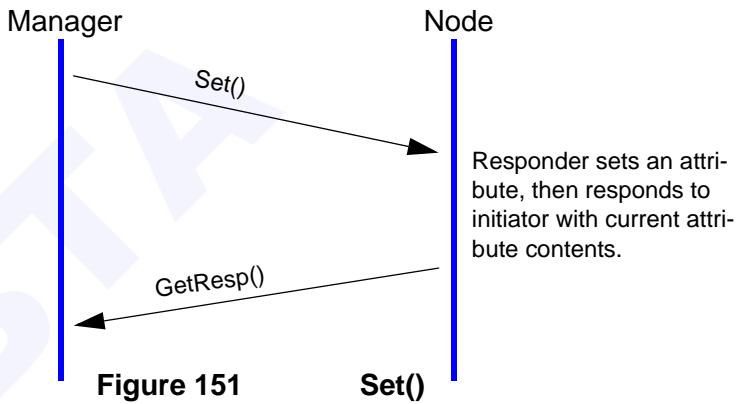
C13-10: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-10.1.1](#):

C13-10.1.1: In response to a valid Get(), the responder **shall** respond with a GetResp() MAD.

The attribute contained in the GetResp() is determined according to the specific MADHeader:MgmtClass and MADHeader:AttributeID in the request

13.4.6.1.2 SET()/GETRESP()

Set() informs the recipient to set values maintained by the recipient according to the values contained in the attribute conveyed in MAD-Header:Data, as illustrated in [Figure 151 on page 788](#).



C13-11: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-11.1.1](#):

C13-11.1.1: In response to a valid Set(), the responder **shall** respond with a GetResp() MAD.²¹

C13-12: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-12.1.1](#):

C13-12.1.1: The attribute contained in a GetResp() response to a Set() **shall** be the same as that maintained by the responder when the GetResp() is returned, except as specified in [C13-43: on page 824](#) (redirection) or where otherwise required by the class. Any externally visible effects that result from the Set(), such as attribute component values, **shall** have been made externally visible prior to returning the GetResp() except where otherwise required by the class.

21. Exception: A Set() of PortInfo:PortPhysicalState to Disabled does not require that a GetResp() be sent from the port which has been Disabled.

If one or more components of the attribute contained in a Set() have invalid values, the resultant attribute maintained by the recipient is typically implementation-specific, unless otherwise specified by the class. For example, some attribute components may be changed as specified by the Set() and some may not. Nevertheless, the attribute returned in the GetResp() will have the attribute contents maintained by the recipient.

Implementors must be aware that it is possible for retries of a Set() request to result in different GetResp() responses. For example, assume a Set() reached the responder and was successfully processed by the responder, but the corresponding GetResp() was dropped in the fabric. The sender then has no indication that the Set() was processed, and as a result may retry the Set(). Such a retry may result in a GetResp() with the Status field set to an error code because the Set() request was received twice by the responder. This may be the case for a Set() that causes some entity to be deleted from a table; the retried Set() will attempt to delete an entity that no longer exists and as a result returns an error.

13.4.6.1.3 SEND()

Send() sends data from one entity to another on a class specific basis. If the class specific operations require reliability on top of the unreliable datagram service, higher level protocols may be defined based upon exchanges of send type MADs. Such higher level protocols are class specific and are defined either in the class specific sections or other sections referred to therein.

13.4.6.1.4 TRAP()

Trap() indicates an event occurred at a channel adapter, switch, or router, as illustrated in [Figure 152 on page 789](#). See Section [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) for the specification of Trap() usage and behavior.

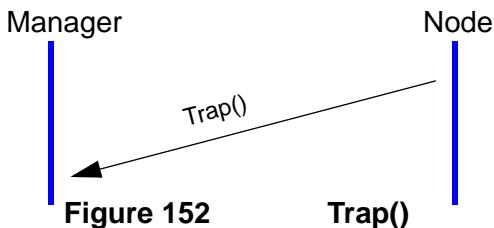


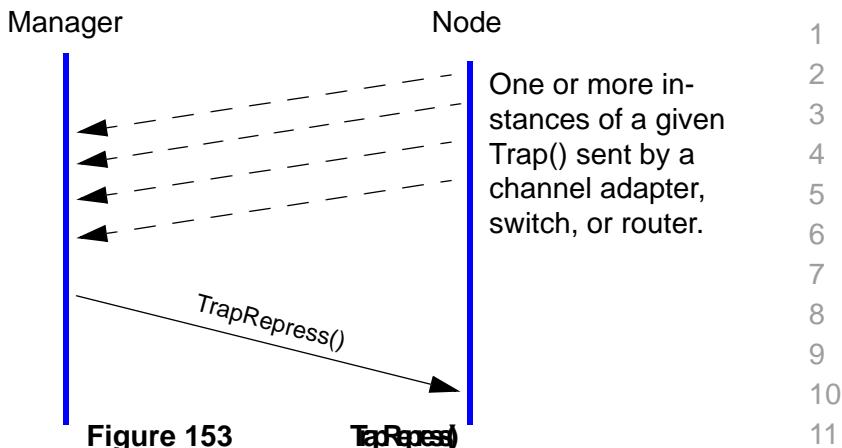
Figure 152

Trap()

13.4.6.1.5 TRAPREPRESS()

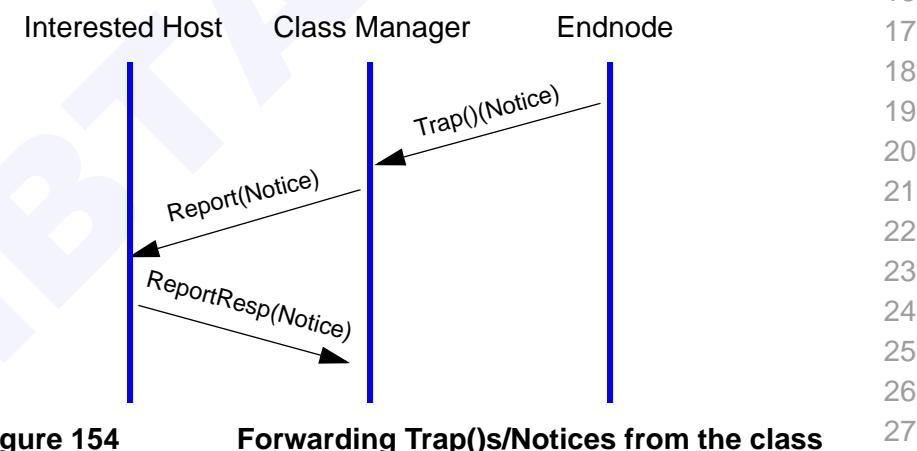
TrapRepress() instructs a Trap() sender to cease sending a Trap() it is currently sending. See Section [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) for a complete specification of traps and TrapRepress().

The intended usage of TrapRepress() is shown in [Figure 153 on page 790](#) below.



13.4.6.1.6 REPORT() / REPORTRESP()

`Report()` and `ReportResp()` MADs are used to forward traps directed to a GSM to parties who have subscribed for `Trap()` forwarding. See [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#) for the complete specification of the event forwarding mechanism.



C13-12.1.2: The recipient of a Report(Notice) MAD **shall** respond with a ReportResp() MAD with the transaction ID matching that used in the Report() and an empty notice attribute (see [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)) unless otherwise specified by a compliance statement for that class.

There are issues of ordering concerning when events occur and when Report()s of those events are received. For example: Assume event A is detected by a manager prior to event B. The manager could wait until a subscriber to both A and B has responded (via ReportResp()) to event A before Report()ing event B to that subscriber; or the manager could wait until all subscribers to event A have responded prior to Report()ing event B to any subscriber. Whether any such ordering is maintained is vendor-specific.

13.4.6.2 TIMERS AND TIMEOUTS

A management entity may use the IBA-defined management timeout and response time values to bound the amount of time a requester waits for a response.

Margins for measurement of management time periods are as follows:

- if the period is an upper bound, the margins are -0% and +15%
- if the period is a lower bound, the margins are -15% and +0%
- otherwise the margins are +/- 15%

13.4.6.2.1 PORTINFO:SUBNETTIMEOUT

PortInfo:SubnetTimeout specifies the maximum expected propagation delay, which depends upon the configuration of the switches, to reach any other port in the subnet from the port with which this instance of PortInfo is associated. The duration of time is calculated as

$$4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times 2^{\text{PortInfo:SubnetTimeout}}$$

requesters may use this value along with the appropriate RespTimeValue (see below), to determine how long to wait for a response to a request before taking other action.

Traps are subject to maximum Trap() rate injection constraints based upon PortInfo:SubnetTimeout. See [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) for the usage of PortInfo:SubnetTimeout with respect to traps.

13.4.6.2.2 RESPETIMEVALUE

The IBA defined RespTimeValue specifies the expected maximum time interval between reception of an MAD and transmission of the associated response or between the associated port's transmission of successive MADs that are part of a multiple MAD sequence. Requesters may use this value along with the appropriate SubnetTimeout (above), to determine how long to wait for a response to a request, or, how long to wait for a succeeding MAD in a multi MAD sequence, as described in [13.4.6.3 Timeout/Timer Usage on page 793](#). The duration of time is calculated as

$$4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times 2^{\text{RespTimeValue}}$$

where the applicable RespTimeValue is selected according to [C13-14: on page 792](#) below.

C13-13: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-13.1.1](#).

C13-13.1.1: The time period between beginning the reception of a request packet for a Get() of ClassPortInfo or PortInfo on a port and an agent's beginning the transmission of the corresponding response packet **shall** be less than or equal to 4.3 seconds.

Note that 4.3 seconds corresponds to a timer value of 20, since
 $4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times 2^{20} = 4.3 \text{ sec}$. The purpose of compliance statement C13-
13.1.1 is to provide a value that a requester can use in computing an appropriate timeout when initially acquiring the correct RespTimeValue.

C13-14: The RespTimeValue applicable to a given situation depends upon the operation being performed and the MAD sequences involved. The appropriate RespTimeValue **shall** be determined as follows:

- If MADHeader:MgmtClass is Subn or Directed Route Subn the applicable RespTimeValue is conveyed by PortInfo:RespTimeValue (see [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#) for the definition of PortInfo) of the relevant port as identified below.
- If MADHeader:MgmtClass is any other than Subn or Directed Route Subn, and the MADHeader:Method is not Report(), the applicable RespTimeValue is conveyed by ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValue (see [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#) for the definition of ClassPortInfo) of the relevant port as identified below.
- If the MADHeader:Method is Report(), the applicable RespTimeValue is conveyed by InformInfo:RespTimeValue (see [13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804](#) for the definition of InformInfo) specified by an event subscriber at the time of subscription.

C13-15: In the case of MAD sequences other than Report(), ReportResp(), the port used to determine the applicable RespTimeValue **shall** be determined as follows:

- For MAD request-response exchanges consisting of a single packet request followed by a single packet response, the applicable RespTimeValue associated with the responding port **shall** indicate the expected maximum interval between receipt of the request at that port and initiation of transmission of the corresponding response.
- For MAD request-response exchanges including a multipacket request sequence followed by a response, the applicable RespTimeValue associated with the sending port **shall** indicate the expected maximum interval between initiation of transmission of successive packets in the multipacket request sequence. The applicable RespTimeValue associated with the receiving port indicates the expected maximum interval between receipt of the last packet of the multipacket request sequence at that port and initiation of transmission of the corresponding response.
- For MAD request-response exchanges including a multipacket response, the applicable RespTimeValue associated with the responding port **shall** indicate the expected maximum interval between receipt of the last packet of the request at that port and initiation of transmission of the response. The applicable RespTimeValue associ-

ated with the responding port also indicates the expected maximum interval between the initiation of transmission of successive packets in the multipacket response sequence.

- For MAD request-response exchanges using the windowing protocol defined in [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#), the applicable RespTimeValue associated with the port originating the request **shall** indicate the expected maximum time within which the requester will request more packets following the last packet in a burst of response packets.
- For operations requiring transmission of a sequence of multiple MADs not classified as requests (e.g. a succession of Send()s conveying fragments of an SNMP frame), the applicable RespTimeValue associated with the port sending the sequence **shall** indicate the expected maximum interval between initiation of transmission of successive packets in the sequence.

C13-15.1.1: In the case of the MAD sequence Report(), ReportResp(), InformInfo:RespTimeValue specified by an event subscriber at the time of subscription **shall** indicate the expected interval between receipt of the Report() at that port and initiation of transmission of the corresponding ReportResp().

Send(), Trap(), or TrapRepress() do not have an associated response MAD (Send() MADs exchanged as part of a higher level protocol are not request/response sequences in this context). As such, the IBA-defined management timeout and response times are not applicable. Note that while TrapRepress() may be sent as a result of the sending of a Trap(). Trap() and TrapRepress() are classified as messages not as requests or responses and do not constitute a request/response sequence.

13.4.6.3 TIMEOUT/TIMER USAGE

In general, the expected maximum time interval between transmission of a request and receipt of the associated response is

$$4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times (2^{\text{CommTimeValueOut}} + 2^{\text{CommTimeValueIn}} + 2^{\text{RespTimeValue}})$$

where *RespTimeValue* is determined according to [13.4.6.2.2 RespTimeValue on page 791](#), and *CommTimeValueOut* and *CommTimeValueIn* are either:

- both equal to PortInfo:SubnetTimeout, if the path is entirely within a single subnet; or
- PathRecord:PacketLifeTime values, with *CommTimeValueOut* using the path from requester to responder, and *CommTimeValueIn* using the path from responder to requester (see [15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038](#)).

The use of PathRecord:PacketLifeTime is preferable when a path is known, since it will often be smaller than PortInfo:SubnetTimeout because it refers to a single path, not an upper bound on all paths. PacketLifeTime is, however, not always available; for example, it is not available before first contact has been made with Subnet Administration (see [15.4.1.2 Access Restrictions For Other Attributes on page 1070](#)).

C13-16: For request/response sequences, timers **shall** be started for each request transmitted and reset upon arrival of the corresponding response MAD.

C13-17: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

13.4.6.4 TRANSACTIONID USAGE

The contents of the TransactionID (TID) field are implementation-dependent.

C13-18: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-18.1.1:](#)

C13-18.1.1: When initiating a new operation, MADHeader:TransactionID **shall** be set to such a value that within that MAD the combination of TID, SGID, and MgmtClass is different from that of any other currently executing operation. If the MAD does not have a GRH, its SLID is used in the combination in place of an SGID. Repeated Trap() messages for the same event may be regarded as continuing a 'currently executing' operation as long as the Trap() can be repeated and no corresponding TrapRepress() has been received, or they may be regarded as initiating new operations.

C13-19: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-19.1.1:](#)

C13-19.1.1: Note that the above implies that recipients of messages **shall** use the combination of TID, SGID (or SLID), and MgmtClass to uniquely associate messages or message sequences, not just the TID.

C13-20: When constructing a request that consists of sequence of MADs, requesters **shall** set MADHeader:TransactionID in each MAD that is part of the sequence to an identical value.

C13-21: When constructing a response, responders **shall** set MAD-Header:TransactionID in the response equal to MADHeader:TransactionID in the corresponding request.

C13-22: Where a response is made up of multiple MADs, MAD-Header:TransactionID in each MAD in the response **shall** be set equal to MADHeader:TransactionID in the corresponding request.

C13-23: Where an operation defined for an IBA management class requires a sender to send a succession of MADs of type message to effect the operation (e.g. an SNMP PDU being tunneled through IBA), the sender **shall** set MADHeader:TransactionID in each MAD that is part of the sequence to an identical value.

13.4.7 STATUS FIELD

All MADs contain a status field. The status field is used in MADs of type response to convey information about the disposition of the request or conditions associated with disposition of the request.

The status field consists of 16 bits. The eight low order bits of the field are used for indications common to all classes. The eight high order bits of the field are used for class specific indications. Class specific status indications are defined in the class specific sections of [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#), [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#), and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

C13-24: For messages of type Response (see [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#)), the usage of the low order 8 bits **shall** be set as specified in [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#).

Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values

Bit	Name	Meaning
0	Busy	Temporarily busy. MAD discarded. This is not an error.
1	RedirectionRequired	Redirection. This is not an error.
2-4	Code for invalid field	0 - no invalid fields 1 - Bad version or class. Either a) the base version, the class version, or the combination of the two or b) the class itself, is not supported. 2 - The method specified is not supported 3 - The method/attribute combination is not supported 4-6: Reserved 7 - One or more fields in the attribute or attribute modifier contain an invalid value. Invalid values include reserved values and values that exceed architecturally defined limits.
5-7	Reserved	
8-15	Class Specific	The use of these bits is class specific.

C13-25: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

Except as stated in [C13-24: on page 795](#), the use of the status field is class-specific.

MADs can contain an optional AdditionalStatus field which is broken down into ranges according to [Table 125 AdditionalStatus Ranges on page 796](#).

Table 125 AdditionalStatus Ranges

Range	Description
0	No additional status
1-4095	IBA standard errors See Table 126 IBA Standard Error Ranges in AdditionalStatus on page 796
4096-64535	Vendor errors

Table 126 IBA Standard Error Ranges in AdditionalStatus

Range	Description
1-63	Additional common status for MADs See Table 127 Common MAD Status in AdditionalStatus on page 796
64-127	SM class attribute errors See 14.2.6.7 SM Class Additional Status on page 968
128-255	SM class AttributeModifier errors See 14.2.6.7 SM Class Additional Status on page 968
256-511	SM class attribute field errors See 14.2.6.7 SM Class Additional Status on page 968
512-575	PerfMgt class AttributeModifier errors See Table 315 PM Class AdditionalStatus for AttributeModifier errors on page 1139
576-607	PerfMgt class attribute field errors See Table 316 PM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors on page 1140
608-4095	Reserved for additional IBA standard MAD errors

Table 127 Common MAD Status in AdditionalStatus

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
1	Unsupported management base version	0x4

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
2	Unsupported management class	0x4
3	Reserved management class	0x4
4	Unsupported management class version	0x4
5	Reserved method	0x8
6	Unsupported method	0x8
7	Reserved attribute ID	0xc
8	Unsupported attribute ID	0xc
9	Invalid attribute modifier	0x1c
10-63	Reserved for additional common errors	

13.4.8 MANAGEMENT CLASS ATTRIBUTES

Attributes define the data which a management class manipulates. Each management class defines its own set of attributes.

Attributes are composite structures consisting of components typically representing hardware registers in channel adapters, switches, or routers. Each attribute is assigned a unique Attribute ID.

Depending upon the attribute, components may be read only, read/write, or reserved.

Some attributes have associated AttributeModifiers (AMs) which further qualify or modify the application of the attribute. The use of the AM is attribute-specific and usage is defined where the attribute is defined.

C13-26: When the AM is not used it **shall** be set to all zeroes.

It is not possible to selectively set a single component within an attribute. A Get() must be performed to obtain the whole attribute, the single component must be modified in the result and a Set() must be performed to write the whole attribute. No atomicity is implied or provided in this sequence of operations.

C13-27: A given attribute **shall** have the same format for the Get(), Set() and GetResp() methods if used with those methods.

There are three attributes which are common across multiple classes. [Table 128 Attributes Common to Multiple Classes on page 798](#) lists each

such attribute, its ID, and the classes where it is used. Attribute IDs less than 0x10 identify common attributes or are reserved. Attribute IDs equal to or greater than 0x10 identify attributes whose definitions are class specific. The structure and content of the common attributes is defined in the following subsections.

The overall offset and alignment of the common attributes are defined by the classes which use them. In particular, if a class specifies additional header data following the common MAD header, then when the class uses the common attributes their position and alignment in the MADs of that class may follow that additional header data.

C13-27.1.1: All managers **shall** use the Attribute IDs shown in [Table 128 Attributes Common to Multiple Classes on page 798](#) for the purposes indicated in that table. The content of the ClassPortInfo, Notice, and InformInfo attributes **shall** be as indicated in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#), [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#), and [13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804](#) respectively.

The structure and content of class-specific attributes are defined in the respective class specific sections of [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#), [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#), and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

The following common attributes are defined:

Table 128 Attributes Common to Multiple Classes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description	Where Used
	0x0000		Reserved	
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	General and port-specific information for a GS management class	The SA class and all supported GS classes on channel adapters, switches, and routers. See 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 .
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000-0xFFFFFFFF	Information regarding the associated Notice (or Trap()) in which case the AttributeModifier shall be 0)	All classes supporting traps/notices. See 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802 .
InformInfo	0x0003	0x00000000	Event Subscription	All classes having a class manager supporting event subscription. See 13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804 .
	0x0004-0x000E		Reserved	

Table 128 Attributes Common to Multiple Classes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description	Where Used
KeyInfo	0x000F	0x00000000	Management key information	GS classes where KeyInfo attribute is not specifically defined but a management key is supported as indicated by either an option bit in class specific capability mask or class version (e.g. classes: performance management, vendor specific, and application specific classes). See 13.4.8.4 Class Management Key and KeyInfo on page 806 .
	0x0010-0xFFFF		Class-dependent values.	Usage of values in this range is class specific and is specified in the class specific sections of Chapter 14: on page 865 , Chapter 15: on page 1015 , and Chapter 16: on page 1079 .

13.4.8.1 CLASSPORTINFO

C13-28: Channel adapters, switches, and routers implementing a GS class agent **shall** implement ClassPortInfo according to the definition specified in [Table 129 ClassPortInfo on page 800](#).

C13-29: The ClassPortInfo attribute **shall** be implemented for every GS class agent supported by a node; it **shall** be implemented on every port through which the GS class agent may be accessed.

C13-30: The ClassPortInfo attribute **shall** be implemented for the SA class by any node on which an SA is located; it **shall** be implemented on every port through which the SA class may be accessed.

The presence of ClassPortInfo for a management class confirms the availability of that management class on a particular channel adapter, switch, or router and provides information about the version of MADs supported by the class on that channel adapter, switch, or router. (Note: support for a given class can be determined directly from capability bits in PortInfo for the port in question. See [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#)).

The ClassPortInfo attribute also provides port-specific information for class services on a channel adapter, switch, or router. In addition to being available as the object of a Get() method specifying it as the target, ClassPortInfo is also returned as the result of any Get() or Set() if the requester is being redirected as described in [13.5.2 GSI Redirection on page 823](#).

ClassPortInfo contains information related to general services traps. If sending Trap() messages is supported on a channel adapter, switch, or router, and if Trap() sending is enabled for this port (nonzero TrapLID), ClassPortInfo defines the destination to which traps for the subject GS class applying to this port are to be sent. See [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#). Note that this applies only to general services traps. Subnet management traps do not use this mechanism.

For both redirection and traps, ClassPortInfo provides support for cross-subnet communications by including the information necessary to build a properly formed GRH, see [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.5.2 GSI Redirection on page 823](#).

Table 129 ClassPortInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
BaseVersion	RO	8	0	Current supported MAD Base Version. Indicates that this channel adapter, switch, or router supports up to and including this version.
ClassVersion	RO	8	8	Current supported management class version. Requirements for this channel adapter, switch, or router to support previous class versions is class-specific.
CapabilityMask	RO	16	16	Supported capabilities of this management class, bit set to 1 for affirmation of management support. Bit 0 - If 1, the management class agent generates Trap() MADs Bit 1 - If 1, the management class agent implements Get(Notice) and Set(Notice) Bit 2 - If 1, the management class agent implements additional class-specific capabilities (CapabilityMask2) Bit 3-7: reserved Bit 8-15: class-specific capabilities.
CapabilityMask2	RO	27	32	Bits 0-26: Additional class-specific capabilities.
RespTimeValue	RO	5	59	See 13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts on page 791 .
RedirectGID	RO	128	64	The GID a requester shall use as the destination GID in the GRH of messages used to access redirected class services. If redirection is not being performed, this shall be set to zero. Also, if the requester is subnet local, this may be set to zero to indicate LID redirection is to be used.
RedirectTC	RO	8	192	The Traffic Class a requester shall use in the GRH of messages used to access redirected class services. For more on the definition and significance of traffic class see 8.2.2.3 Service Levels on page 246 and 8.3.2 Traffic Class (TClass) - 8 bits on page 248
RedirectSL	RO	4	200	The SL a requester shall use to access the class services.
RedirectFL	RO	20	204	The Flow Label a requester shall use in the GRH of messages used to access redirected class services.

Table 129 ClassPortInfo (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RedirectLID	RO	16	224	If this value is non-zero, it is the DLID a requester shall use to access the class services. If this value is zero, the redirect requires the requester to use the supplied RedirectGID to request further path resolution from subnet administration. The RedirectGID, the RedirectQP and RedirectP_Key from this redirect response are all valid, but the RedirectSL, RedirectFL, RedirectTC, and RedirectLID will in general not be valid; they must be replaced using a PathRecord obtained from the SA. See the comment about redirection following this table.
RedirectP_Key	RO	16	240	The P_Key a requester shall use to access the class services.
Reserved	RO	8	256	Reserved
RedirectQP	RO	24	264	The QP that a requester shall use to access the class services.
RedirectQ_Key	RO	32	288	The Q_Key associated with the RedirectQP. This Q_Key shall be set to the well known Q_Key.
TrapGID	RW	128	320	The GID to be used as the destination GID in the GRH of Trap() messages originated by this service. If all zeroes, no GRH is inserted in Trap() messages.
TrapTC	RW	8	448	The Traffic Class to be placed in the GRH of Trap() messages originated by this service. For more on the definition and significance of traffic class see 8.2.2.3 Service Levels on page 246 and 8.3.2 Traffic Class (TClass) - 8 bits on page 248 .
TrapSL	RW	4	456	The SL that shall be used when sending Trap() messages originated by this service.
TrapFL	RW	20	460	The Flow Label to be placed in the GRH of Trap() messages originated by this service.
TrapLID	RW	16	480	The DLID to where Trap() messages shall be sent by this service. If all zeroes, traps shall not be sent from this port.
TrapP_Key	RW	16	496	The P_Key to be placed in the header for traps originated by this service.
TrapHL	RW	8	512	The Hop Limit to be placed in the GRH of Trap() messages originated by this service. This specifies the maximum number of routers through which the message containing the GRH specified here may pass. The default value is 255.
TrapQP	RW	24	520	The QP to which Trap() messages originated by this service shall be sent.
TrapQ_Key	RW	32	544	The Q_Key associated with the TrapQP. This Q_Key shall have the high order bit set. See 10.2.5 Q_Keys on page 470 for a description of the significance of setting the high order bit.

Comment About Redirection: Redirection may be fairly complex on certain fabric topologies. Simple InfiniBand CAs may not be able to fully resolve a path to another port it may supply, while complex InfiniBand

management applications may do this as a matter of course. In the former case the simple CA can send a redirect to a requester that sets the RedirectLID component in the ClassPortInfo Attribute to zero. A zero value RedirectLID indicates that the requester must request a PathRecord from the SA using the supplied RedirectGID and requester's own source information. Refer to [15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038](#).

13.4.8.2 NOTICE

The Notice attribute describes an exception or other channel adapter, switch, or router event. It is used by both the Trap() mechanism described in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and the Notice mechanism described in [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#).

C13-30.1.1: If a management class defines any Notice attributes, then the class manager **shall** support both the reception of Trap()s and the Notice Queue operations of polling and deleting entries, unless otherwise specified by a compliance statement for that class.

C13-30.1.2: An agent **shall** either send a Trap() or store a notice in its Notice Queue or both when the condition or event corresponding to the notice occurs, unless otherwise specified by a compliance statement for that class.

o13-1: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o13-1.1.1](#):

o13-1.1.1: Channel adapters, switches, and routers implementing Notice attributes **shall** conform to the definition specified in [Table 130 Notice on page 802](#).

Table 130 **Notice**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
IsGeneric	RO	1	0	If set to 1, notice is generic, else is vendor specific
Type	RO	7	1	Enumeration indicating type of Trap()/notice: 0 - Fatal 1 - Urgent 2 - Security 3 - Subnet Management 4 - Informational 5-0x7E - Reserved 0x7F - Empty notice. All other fields are meaningless.

Table 130 Notice (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
ProducerType / VendorID	RO	24	8	If generic, indicates the type of the event's producer: 1 - Channel Adapter 2 - Switch 3 - Router 4 - Class Manager 0, 5-0xFFFF - Reserved If not generic, indicates the 24 bit IEEE OUI ^a assigned to the vendor.
TrapNumber / DeviceID	RO	16	32	If generic, indicates a class-defined trap number. Number 0xFFFF is reserved. If not generic, this is Device ID information as assigned by device manufacturer.
IssuerLID	RO	16	48	In a GetResp(Notice) message: the base LID of the port from which this Notice is retrieved. In a Trap() message: the base LID of the port that emitted the Trap(). In a Report() message: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the Report() message resulted from a Trap() message or from polling a Notice Queue, the IssuerLID used in that case.• If the Report() message was fabricated by the class manager on behalf of a particular node, this may be the a LID of the subject node, as specified by the management class.• Otherwise, the base LID of the port emitting the Report() message (e.g., SM traps 64 and 65; see 14.2.5.1 "Notices and Traps" on page 887).
NoticeToggle	RW	1	64	For Notices retrieved from Notice Queues, alternates between zero and one after each Notice is cleared. See 13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813 . For Trap(s), this shall be set to 0. In a Report() message, this value is undefined.
NoticeCount	RW	15	65	For Notices retrieved from Notice Queues, indicates the number of notices queued on this channel adapter, switch, or router. See 13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813 . For Traps, this shall be set to 0. In a Report() message, this value is undefined.
DataDetails	RO	432	80	If generic, data details is disambiguated by management class and TrapNumber. Otherwise disambiguation is vendor defined.

Table 130 Notice (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
IssuerGID	RO	128	512	<p>This field shall only be present in Notice attributes sent in GMPs using the Report() method. It shall not be present in any other uses of the Notice attribute, such as those sent using the Trap() method and those sent using Set(Notice), Get(Notice), or GetResp(Notice) operations targeting a Notice Queue (see 13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813)^b.</p> <p>If IssuerGID is present, its value identifies the port that was the source of the event, i.e.:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the Report() is sent as a result of a Trap() or GetResp(Notice) that contained a GRH, then IssuerGID shall be a GID of the port identified by the SGID field in that GRH. • Otherwise, IssuerGID shall be set to a GID of the port identified by Issuer-LID.
ClassTrap-SpecificData	RO	see description	640	<p>This component exists only when defined for specific traps; see the class-specific trap descriptions for details of its use. This component never exists in SMPs.</p> <p>This component's length is that of the MAD payload after removing everything else, i.e., the class-specific header length and the 640 bits used by the other Notice components. For example: Since a Subnet Administration Notice may use up to 200 bytes of a SA GMP., the length of its ClassSpecificData is 120 bytes (200 bytes - 80 bytes). This length is a reason this field cannot be used in SMPs, since the length would be zero.</p>

- a. An OUI is a 24 bit globally unique assigned number referenced by various standards. OUI is used in the family of 802 LAN standards, e.g., Ethernet, Token Ring, etc. See <http://standards.ieee.org>.
- b. Trap(s), as well as Set(s) and Get(s) on Notice Queues, may be sent using SMPs. However, there is insufficient room for IssuerGID in Notice attributes carried by SMPs because of SMPs' provision for directed route information. There is sufficient room when Notice attributes are carried by GMPs.

Certain operations involving the Notice attribute require the use of an empty notice. See [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#) and [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#). An empty notice is a Notice attribute in which the type field is set to 0x7F. The only valid field in an empty notice is the type field, the contents of all others should be considered meaningless.

13.4.8.3 INFORMINFO

The InformInfo attribute provides information for subscribing to a class manager for event forwarding. See [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#).

o13-2: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o13-2.1.1](#):

o13-2.1.1: Channel adapters, switches, and routers implementing the InformInfo attribute **shall** conform to the definition specified in [Table 131 InformInfo on page 805](#).

Table 131 InformInfo

Component	Type	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GID	RW	128	0	Specifies specific GID to subscribe or unsubscribe for. Set to all zeroes if not desired. See 13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814 .
LIDRangeBegin	RW	16	128	Ignored if GID is nonzero. Specifies the lowest LID in a range of LID addresses to subscribe or unsubscribe for. Address 0xFFFF denotes all endpoints managed by the manager to which this InformInfo is directed.
LIDRangeEnd	RW	16	144	Ignored if GID is nonzero. Specifies the highest LID in a range of LID addresses to subscribe or unsubscribe for. Set to 0 if no range desired. Ignored if LIDRangeBegin is 0xFFFF.
Reserved	RO	16	160	Reserved
IsGeneric	RW	8	176	If set to 1, forward generic traps or notices. If set to 0, forward all vendor specific traps or notices. Values above 1 are undefined.
Subscribe	RW	8	184	If set to 1, subscribe If set to 0, unsubscribe. Values above 1 are undefined.
Type	RW	16	192	Enumeration indicating the type of the Trap() or notice. Valid values are: 0 - Fatal 1 - Urgent 2 - Security 3 - Subnet Management 4 - Informational 0xFFFF - forward all
TrapNumber /DeviceID	RW	16	208	If not generic, this is device ID information as assigned by device manufacturer. If generic, indicates trap number. Number 0xFFFF means forward any TrapNumber/DeviceID.
QPN	RW	24	224	Ignored except when subscribe=0 (an unsubscribe request). Queue pair to which Report(s) were sent as a result of a corresponding subscription. If no subscription for this Report() with this QPN exists, the request to unsubscribe performs no action and produces GetResp() with status indicating an invalid field value (see Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795).
Reserved	RO	3	248	Reserved
RespTimeValue	RO	5	251	See 13.4.6.2.2 RespTimeValue on page 791 .

Table 131 **InformInfo (Continued)**

Component	Type	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	256	Reserved
ProducerType/VendorID	RW	24	264	If generic, indicates the type of the event's producer: 1 - Channel Adapter 2 - Switch 3 - Router 4 - Class Manager 0,5-0xFFFFFE - Reserved 0xFFFFFFF - Indicates that all events produced or received by this manager should be forwarded. Implementing this behavior is optional; if not implemented, the usual response to invalid field values is returned (see Table 124, "MAD Common Status Field Bit Values," on page 795 .) If not generic, indicates the 24 bit IEEE OUI assigned to the vendor.

Nodes can unsubscribe from any subscriptions they have made by setting InformInfo:Subscribe to 0 and providing the relevant components of the InformInfo attribute. It is the node's responsibility to clean up any stale subscription on application failure. For example, if an application exits, the supervisor could send unsubscribe messages to all the managers that support event forwarding in its partitions. These messages would unsubscribe all the UD QPs that have the (privileged) reserved management Q_Key and were used by the application.

13.4.8.4 CLASS MANAGEMENT KEY AND KEYINFO

This section presents an optional generic Management Class Key mechanism that may be applied to the GS classes in order to protect the class agents from being accessed by an unauthorized manager. These mechanisms are optional and can be further customized by particular classes. However, the general concepts apply.

A management class may use a 64 bit Key to authorize its MADs. The initial key is set on each port by the initial class manager operating the subnet. The short key is enough to protect the network since the current manager may be notified via a trap or notice when an incoming MAD fails authorization. The recovery from a loss of the key is implemented by a timeout that expires after a programmable amount of time since the authentication failure, but is reset on any subsequent successful authorization. So the active manager can avoid losing its hold of the agents by accessing them.

The KeyInfo attribute may be used by the class manager to set and retrieve the port's Key and protection properties. This optional attribute is used for general service classes where key support was not available

(IBA 1.3 and earlier). Support is indicated by either an option bit in the class specific capability mask or implicitly by a class version.

Table 132 **KeyInfo**

Component	Type	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Key	RW	64	0	The 8-byte Key used in MADs by class manager when the agent supports this option bit in class specific capability mask or class version. A value of 0 means that no Key check is ever performed by the agent.
KeyProtectBit	RW	1	64	See 13.4.8.4.1.6 Levels of Protection on page 809 for details.
Reserved	RO	15	65	Reserved
KeyLeasePeriod	RW	16	80	Timer value used to indicate how long the KeyProtectBit is to remain non zero after a Set(KeyInfo) MAD that failed a Key check is dropped. The value of the timer indicates the number of seconds for the lease period. With a 16 bit counter, the period can range from 1 second to approximately 18 hours. 0 shall mean infinite.
KeyViolations	RW	16	96	Number of MADs that have been received at this port since power-on or reset that have been dropped due to a failed Key check if such a counter is implemented. Otherwise it shall be 0xFFFF. When the class manager sets this component to 0x0000, the counter is reset to 0x0000 and counting resumes. Setting the counter to a value other than zero results in the counter being left unchanged.

13.4.8.4.1 KEY

In order to authenticate that MADs originated from a trusted source, MADs must include a management Key. This can only be done if the agent supports this as indicated in either an option bit in class specific capability mask as in the case of performance management or class version as in the cases of vendor specific and application specific classes. This is subsequently referred to as the key protection option.

13.4.8.4.1.1 KEY ASSUMPTIONS

- 1) To use the correct key for each port, a class manager or a higher level manager keeps track of the keys for the ports that it is managing.
- 2) If a backup manager exists, it shares the Keys for ease of fail-over.
- 3) A manager sets the Key, KeyProtectBit, and KeyLeasePeriod in the KeyInfo Attribute with one Set(KeyInfo) MAD. A successful completion of this assignment indicates to a manager that it has taken ownership of the port.

13.4.8.4.1.2 KEY PROTECTION SCOPE

If the agent supports the key protection option, there is one Key per port. All access from a manager to an agent can be protected by the Key when

the agent supports this option. [Table 133 Key Protection Scope on page 808](#) shows the scope protected by the Key.

Table 133 Key Protection Scope

Source	Target Entity	Protection
Class manager	Reads and Writes to an agent	yes

13.4.8.4.1.3 KEY OPERATION

o13-30.2-1.1: The agent shall check the Key contained in the incoming MADs of the general service class if the agent supports the key protection option.

The success and effect of the check depends on the value of the Key-Info:Key and KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit of the agent and on the method and attribute contained in the incoming MAD.

Table 134 Key Check

agent Key	agent Key Protection Bit	MADs method	Success
zero	any	any	yes
non-zero	any	Set() or TrapRepress()	if MAD's Key equals agent's Key
non-zero	0	Get()	yes
non-zero	1	Get()	if MAD's Key equals agent's Key ^a

a. Even though the check succeeds, the Key value in the KeyInfo attribute **shall** be returned as zero.

o13-30.2-1.2: If the Key check fails, the agent **shall**:

- Drop the MAD.
- Increment a Key Violation counter if supported.
- Send a KeyViolation trap or generate a KeyViolation Notice.
- Start a countdown timer with the Key lease period value.

13.4.8.4.1.4 KEY INITIALIZATION

o13-30.2-1.3: At power up or reset, the KeyInfo:Key, KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit, and KeyInfo:KeyLeasePeriod shall be set to zero if the agent supports the key supported option.

A class manager may use Set(KeyInfo) to assign the subsequent Key-
Info:Key, KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit, and KeyInfo:KeyLeasePeriod.

13.4.8.4.1.5 KEY RECOVERY

o13-30.2-1.4: The Key lease period timer shall start when a Key check fails.

When a Key check fails, the port either sends a trap to the class manager or generates a Notice indicating the attempted access. This trap or notice serves as a request to the class manager to refresh the lease period by issuing a Set(KeyInfo). A successful Set(KeyInfo) will stop the timer and rearm it.

If the class manager that originally set the Key has gone away, then the lease period expires --- clearing the KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit and allowing a new class manager to read (and then set) the KeyInfo:Key.

The trap is sent using the Trap address vector defined in the port's Class-PortInfo attribute of the class (set of fields named Trap*). In the case where the TrapLID is zero (because no class manager has set it), the port has no class manager to send the trap to. In this case, the port does not send the trap and the lease period timer will expire, in absence of a subsequent Set(KeyInfo) from the original manager, allowing for eventual take over by a new class manager.

With Get(KeyInfo), any class manager can detect whether a KeyInfo:Key is set (although hidden) based on the KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit. If the KeyInfo:KeyProtectBit is set, the KeyInfo:Key is set and hidden. Otherwise, the returned KeyInfo:Key is the real one even if it is zero.

13.4.8.4.1.6 LEVELS OF PROTECTION

There are four different protection levels based on the Key, depending on the system requirements.

Table 135 Protection Levels

Key	KeyProtectBit	KeyLeasePeriod	Description
zero	any	any	No Protection provided. Any class manager can issue Sets, Gets and TrapRepress
non-zero	0	n/a	Protection provided, but allows class managers to read the KeyInfo:Key in this mode
non-zero	1	non-zero	Protection provided and does not allow anyone to read the Key in the node until the lease period has expired. The Key lease period is a mechanism to allow the Key to be protected only for a given amount of time.

Table 135 Protection Levels (Continued)

Key	KeyProtectBit	KeyLeasePeriod	Description
non-zero	1	zero	<p>Protection provided and does not allow the Key in the node to be read by other class managers.</p> <p>It must be noted that if the lease period was set to 0 (infinite) and the class manager that set it is no longer operational, there is no possibility for other class managers to ever read it. So if the Key is not provided by some unspecified way to the other class managers, the agent of this port will never be accessible again</p>

13.4.8.4.1.7 KEY RELATED TRAPS AND NOTICES**Table 136 Traps**

Name	Type	Number	Details
KeyViolation	Security	0x0000	See Table 137 Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap on page 810

o13-30.2-1.5: If the agent supports Traps, then the agent shall only use the Type listed in [Table 136 Traps on page 810](#).

o13-30.2-1.6: If the agent supports Traps, then the agent shall only use the Number listed in [Table 136 Traps on page 810](#) unless class has already defined trap number 0x0000.

Table 137 Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap

Component	Length (Bits)	Description
Source LID	16	Source Local Identifier, from the LRH of the offending MAD.
Method	8	Method, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Reserved	8	Reserved
Attribute ID	16	Attribute ID, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Attribute Modifier	32	Attribute Modifier, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Reserved	8	Reserved
QP	24	Destination Queue Pair number from the BTH of the offending MAD.
Key	64	Key specified in the offending MAD.
Source GID	128	The Source Global Identifier from the GRH of the offending MAD. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be binary zeroes.

Table 137**Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap**

Component	Length (Bits)	Description
Padding	128	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

o13-30.2-1.7: If the agent supports Traps as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the agent shall set the KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 137 Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap on page 810](#). Fields shall be filled with the information corresponding to the description of the trap.

o13-30.2-1.8: If the agent supports Notices as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the agent shall post the KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 137 Notice DataDetails for KeyViolation Trap on page 810](#) to the notice queue when a Key mismatch is detected.

o13-30.2-1.9: The notice shall only be visible on the port that detected the Key mismatch.

13.4.9 TRAPS

Traps are asynchronous notifications for the purpose of alerting an entity within another channel adapter, switch, or router about exception conditions or other events of interest at a given channel adapter, switch, or router within the subnet.

C13-31: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-30.1.2: on page 802](#).

The conditions and events corresponding to notices are defined by management classes, which also define whether these are optional or required for that class.

See [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#) for a description of Notice support.

For the subnet management class, traps originate at a CA, switch, or router and are always sent to the master subnet manager managing the originator. The managing SM is always on the same subnet since cross subnet communications is not allowed for subnet management class MADs. Subnet management traps are always allowed and there is no direct mechanism for preventing a CA, switch, or router from sending traps (note, there may be actions which as a side effect cause cessation of traps, i.e. downing a port, but these are not considered direct mechanisms).

For each GS management class, whether traps are allowed to be sent for that class is specified in ClassPortInfo for that class.

C13-32: If ClassPortInfo:TrapLID for a particular port and class is zero, traps **shall** not be generated from that port for that class.

o13-2.a1: If Trap() generation is supported, the destination address and certain other necessary message parameters **shall** be obtained from ClassPortInfo as indicated in [Table 129 ClassPortInfo on page 800](#) and the source LID **shall** be set to the PortInfo:LID of the originating port.

The destination for traps may be in the same subnet or in another subnet. If traps are to be delivered to a destination not in the same subnet, the ClassPortInfo:TrapGID is non zero and a GRH is required in the Trap() message. If ClassPortInfo:TrapGID is zero, the Trap() destination is within the same subnet and no GRH is included in the message.

If a GRH is required, the source GID in the GRH is the GIDIndex0 of the originating port and other fields in the GRH are either fixed or are given values drawn from counterpart fields in ClassPortInfo. [8.3 Global Route Header on page 248](#) specifies the requirements applicable to GRHs.

Traps are always sent to the destination identified in ClassPortInfo and only to that destination. It is the responsibility of any entity that sets ClassPortInfo fields to assure that the values programmed are consistent. That is, the combination of GID/DLID, P_Key, port, etc. must be consistent with addressing of and access rules applicable to the specified port.

Traps may be issued by any channel adapter, switch, or router on the subnet. Channel adapters, switches, and routers may repeat sending of a Trap()

o13-3: Channel Adapters, switches and routers **shall not** send traps for any given management class at a rate greater than the Trap() rate limit specified. For a given port, the Trap() rate limit **shall** be defined as the reciprocal of the time duration determined from PortInfo:SubnetTimeout for that port. See [13.4.6.2.1 PortInfo:SubnetTimeout on page 791](#).

o13-4: Traps **shall** contain the Notice attribute to identify the Trap(). The Notice attribute is described in [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#).

o13-5: Trap() originators **shall** use the same MADHeader:TransactionID value for all instances of repeated traps.

Recipients of traps may send TrapRepress() MADs to Trap() originators.

o13-5.1.1: A TrapRepress() MAD **shall** be constructed in accordance with [13.5.4 Response Generation and Reversible Paths on page 839](#) as if it were a response to the Trap() being repressed, except that the Q_Key shall be set to the Q_Key of the corresponding Trap().

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o13-6: Upon receipt of a valid TrapRepress() MAD, the Trap() originator **shall** cease sending the Trap() which matches the Trap() identified by the TrapRepress() MAD. A Trap() being repeatedly sent matches a Trap() identified in a TrapRepress() MAD when both MADHeader:TransactionID in the Trap() MAD matches MADHeader:TransactionID in the TrapRepress() MAD and the Notice attribute in the Trap() MAD matches the Notice attribute in the TrapRepress().

o13-7: If a TrapRepress() is received and no matching Trap() is being sent, the TrapRepress() **shall** be silently dropped and no other action taken.

Sending traps is optional, unless specified otherwise by a compliance statement.

Management classes supplement Trap() handling through the use of the event forwarding mechanism described in [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#).

Although Traps and the Notice Queue (NQ) mechanism (see [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#)) use the same Notice attribute to describe events or conditions, the Trap() mechanism and the notice queues mechanism are completely independent. There is no requirement that a Notice queue entry be generated when a Trap() is sent or vice versa.

13.4.10 NOTICE QUEUE

The NQ is a repository for storing Notice attributes (see [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)) associated with the occurrence of an event or the detection of a condition at a channel adapter, switch, or router. Notices in the NQ are queried or deleted using Get(Notice) and Set(Notice) methods respectively.

o13-8: The Notice Queue **shall** operate as a first in first out queue. For Get(Notice), the AM **shall** be 0. This selects the oldest notice attribute saved, that is, the Notice attribute on the top (or front) of the queue.

o13-9: Notice:NoticeCount in a returned Notice attribute **shall** always indicate the number of notices currently on the queue. Performing a Get(Notice) does not remove a Notice from the NQ. Notice:NoticeCount includes the notice returned in response to the Get().

o13-10: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o13-10.1.1](#):

o13-10.1.1: If the queue is empty, the Notice attribute returned **shall** be an empty Notice and Notice:NoticeCount **shall** contain 0. Otherwise the

recipient of a Get(Notice) **shall** return a copy of the oldest notice in the Notice attribute in the response.

To clear notices from the head of the Notice Queue, the requester sends a Set(Notice) MAD containing a Notice attribute with:

- Notice:NoticeToggle set to match Notice:NoticeToggle in the channel adapter's, switch's, or router's Notice attribute.
- Notice:NoticeCount set to the number of notices to delete.
- MADHeader:AM = 0

o13-11: Upon receipt of a Set(Notice) MAD, if the recipient implements an NQ, the recipient **shall** perform the following actions:

- If the NoticeToggle value in the Set(Notice) does not match the NoticeToggle value in the Notice attribute on the channel adapter, switch, or router, the Set(Notice) is silently discarded and no other action is taken.
- The oldest notice and successively newer notices up to a total number of notices indicated by Notice:NoticeCount in the Notice attribute contained in the Set(Notice) **shall** be deleted. If Notice:NoticeCount in the request Notice is greater than the number of notices on the queue, the queue is emptied.
- The response to the next Get(Notice) request **shall** return a Notice attribute that corresponds to the new top of the queue and Notice:NoticeCount in the response **shall** reflect the updated count of notices on the queue.
- Since the Notice Queue acts as a FIFO, the only valid value for MADHeader:AM is 0.

The attribute content is undefined in the GetResp() issued in response to a Set(Notice).

The types and number of notices captured by a channel adapter, switch, or router is implementation-dependent. The actual size of the Notice Queue is implementation specific and is not specified by the architecture. Behavior of a full Notice Queue when the channel adapter, switch, or router has another notice to queue is undefined.

Channel adapters, switches, and routers are not required to support the NQ mechanism.

13.4.11 EVENT FORWARDING

Entities can request that events be forwarded to them by subscribing for them. These events are instantiated by traps or notice queue entries. Traps are sent to the class manager, while notice queues are polled by the class manager.

1 Entities request notification via the event-forwarding subscription mechanism.
2 To subscribe, an interested entity sends a Set(InformInfo) request
3 to the class manager identifying the set of devices for which events are to
4 be forwarded. The set of devices can be identified by the GID or LID of a
5 specific port or a range of LIDs which encompasses many ports. The class
6 manager responds with a GetResp(InformInfo) message to confirm or
7 deny such forwarding.

8 It is optional for a class manager to implement event forwarding. However,
9 see [C13-32.1.1:](#).

10 **C13-32.1.1:** A manager for a class that defines either notices or traps
11 shall support event forwarding (see compliance statements [o13-12.1.1:](#)
12 [on page 815](#) through [o13-17.1.1: on page 817](#)). The SA shall perform this
13 function for the SM.

14 **o13-12:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
15 [o13-12.1.1:](#)

16 **o13-12.1.1:** A manager that supports event forwarding shall confirm a
17 valid request for event subscription (see [o13-14.1.1: on page 816](#)) by re-
18 sponding with an InformInfo attribute that is a copy of the data in the
19 Set(InformInfo) request.

20 **C13-32.2.1:** If a manager receives a duplicate Set(InformInfo) with In-
21 formInfo:Subscribe set to 1, one which has all the data in the attribute and
22 the source QPn identical to a prior successful Set(InformInfo), the dupli-
23 cate Set(InformInfo) shall be ignored except for returning the normal non-
24 error response to a successful Set(InformInfo).

25 **o13-13:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
26 [o13-13.1.1:](#)

27 **o13-13.1.1:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

28 Requesters wishing to subscribe to event forwarding may determine
29 which managers exist and their locations on the fabric by querying the SA.
30 See [15.4 Operations on page 1069](#) for a discussion of subnet administra-
31 tion including restrictions on access to and use of the SA.

32 The exchange of MADs to effect subscription to event forwarding is de-
33 picted in [Figure 155 Subscribing and unsubscribing for forwarding on](#)
34 [page 816](#) below.

35 **o13-14:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
36 [o13-14.1.1: on page 816.](#)

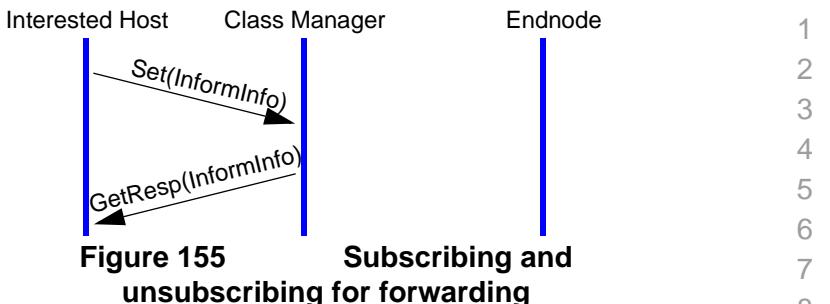


Figure 155 Subscribing and unsubscribing for forwarding

o13-14.1.1: Except for Set(InformInfo) requests with InformInfo:LID-RangeBegin=0xFFFF, managers that support event forwarding **shall**, upon receiving a Set(InformInfo), verify that the requester originating the Set(InformInfo) and a Trap() source identified by InformInfo:GID, or InformInfo:LIDRangeBegin through InformInfo:LIDRange-End, are permitted to access each other according to the current partitioning. The manager **shall** perform verification by verifying that a valid path exists between the requester and the Trap() source.

This verification can be accomplished by requesting a path between the requestor and a trap source using a SA query operation. If such a path exists, the Set(InformInfo) succeeds. If such a path does not exist, the GID or LID is invalid as a Trap() source. A GID or LID specifies an invalid Trap() source if the associated port is not accessible to the requester under current partitioning.

C13-32.2.2: Managers that support event forwarding **shall**, upon receiving a Set(InformInfo), verify that the requester is allowed to receive all the traps that it subscribes for. If a single Set(InformInfo) is used to subscribe to multiple traps, and the subscriber is not allowed to receive one or more of those traps, the entire Set(InformInfo) **shall** fail and no subscriptions shall be recorded.

o13-15: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o13-15.2.1: on page 816](#).

o13-15.2.1: If partition or other verification fails on Set(InformInfo), the manager receiving the request **shall** indicate in the response that the operation failed with an invalid attribute status value as defined in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#) and [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#).

o13-16: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

o13-17: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o13-17.1.1:](#)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o13-17.1.1: Managers that support event forwarding and have confirmed a request for event subscription **shall** forward corresponding events to the subscriber using a Report(Notice) MAD, as long as the subscriber and Trap() source are permitted to access each other according to current partitioning.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o13-17.2.1: Managers that support event forwarding and have confirmed a request for event subscription, yet on sending a Report(Notice) to the subscriber receive no ReportResp(Notice) after a vendor-chosen number of retries, or receive an invalid ReportResp(Notice), **shall** permanently discontinue all event forwarding caused by the Set(InformInfo) which created a subscription to that trap source.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o13-17.1.2: If a Set(InformInfo) specified a valid trap source at the time of subscription (see [o13-14.1.1: on page 816](#)), yet Trap() forwarding fails because the subscriber and trap source are no longer permitted to access each other according to current partitioning (see [o13-17.1.1: on page 817](#)), then the manager **shall** permanently discontinue all event forwarding caused by the Set(InformInfo) which created a subscription to that trap source, except if InformInfo:LIDRangeBegin was 0xFFFF; in the latter case, event forwarding is discontinued only for the now-invalid trap source.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Note that for the case where InformInfo:LIDRangeBegin is 0xFFFF, event forwarding from an invalid trap source may be subsequently resumed if partitioning changes such that it becomes possible for the subscriber and trap source to access each other.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Note also that “permanently discontinue all event forwarding” is meant to indicate that the subscription for forwarding is dropped by the manager; if the source later becomes reachable again by the subscriber, a new Set(InformInfo) is required to re-establish event forwarding, if that is what is desired. (This may not be desired; when the source becomes reachable again, it may have acquired new characteristics, such as new, different software functions, that make such forwarding inappropriate.)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
C13-32.1.2: When forwarding Notices to an event subscriber, a manager **shall** construct the Report(Notice) MAD using addressing information from the original Set(InformInfo) subscription operation as specified in [Table 138 Setting Report\(Notice\) MAD Fields on page 817](#).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Table 138 Setting Report(Notice) MAD Fields

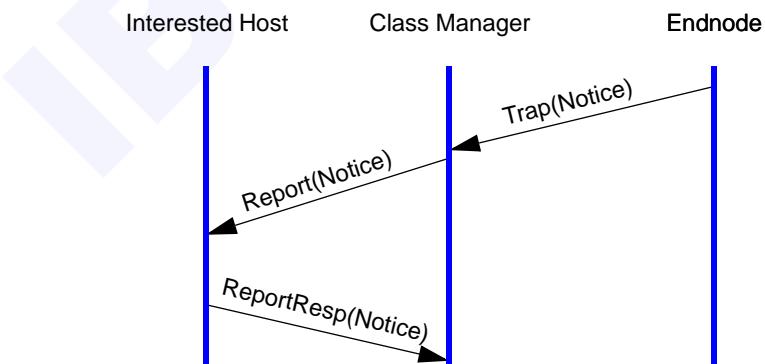
Components of a Report(Notice) used to forward an event	What that Report(Notice) component is set to: component values from the Set(InformInfo) that created the subscription to that event
LRH:DLID	LRH:SLID

Table 138 Setting Report(Notice) MAD Fields (Continued)

Components of a Report(Notice) used to forward an event	What that Report(Notice) component is set to: component values from the Set(InformInfo) that created the subscription to that event
LRH:SL	LRH:SL
BTH:P_Key	BTH:P_Key
BTH:DestinationQP	DETH:SourceQP
DETH:Q_Key	DETH:Q_Key
GRH:DGID ^a	GRH:SGID
GRH:FlowLabel ^a	GRH:FlowLabel
GRH:TClass ^a	GRH:TClass
GRH:HopLmt ^a	GRH:HopLmt

a. Present only if a GRH was present in Set(InformInfo).

[Figure 156 Forwarding Trap\(\)s/Notices from the Class Manager on page 818](#), depicts the MAD exchange associated with forwarding traps to a subscriber. The ReportResp() provides means for the class manager to assure that subscribers receive reports assuming communications with the subscriber is not failed.

**Figure 156 Forwarding Trap()s/Notices from the Class**

This forwarding service is available for all management classes. For the Subnet Management Class, event forwarding is not handled by the SM; it is handled indirectly through the SA, as detailed in [15.4.3 Event Forwarding Subsystem on page 1072](#).

13.5 MAD PROCESSING

Non-redirected MADs are distinguished from other packets by the destination queue pair specified in the packet. Two specific queue pair numbers are dedicated to supporting non redirected management operations.

Each of the dedicated queue pairs represents a unique interface to one or more management services. These interfaces and the behaviors related to associated services are specified in subsequent sections.

If redirection is in effect, redirected MADs may be directed to a queue pair different from either of the dedicated queue pairs. How a management service is associated with such a queue pair is implementation specific. Such MADs are standard packets and MADs arriving at a port are directed according to the standard procedures for directing packets to queue pairs.

13.5.1 MAD INTERFACES

[Figure 157 MAD Interface on page 819](#), below, depicts the general relationships among management entities and their interfaces to the wire. Note, the figure itself is meant to be representative of a basic channel adapter, switch, or router and is not meant to imply a specific implementation or to imply specific requirements or limitations.

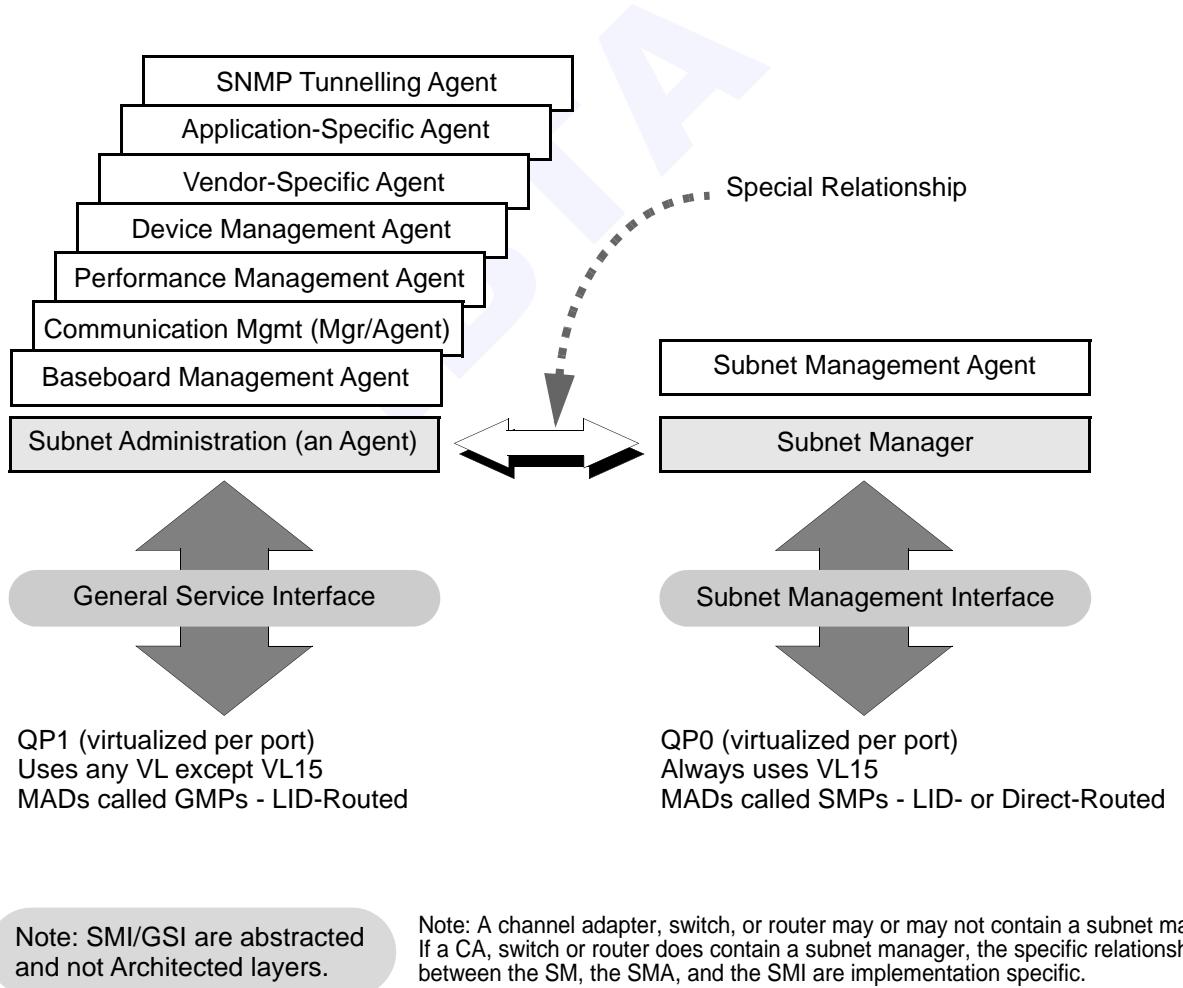


Figure 157 MAD Interface

As can be seen in [Figure 157 on page 819](#), QP0 is used for communication with the Subnet Manager (SM) and Subnet Management Agent (SMA); and QP1 is used for communication with General Services Agents.

Note that it is not required by IBA that GS managers use QP1 as the source QP used to send management packets to GS agents. GS managers may send packets from any QP other than QP0. QP1's primary purpose is to be a known QP target to which GS managers can send packets to initially contact a GS agent on a node. Redirection to another non-special QP can be used following that initial communication on QP1, if the agent does this. Such redirection may well be desirable on both functional and performance grounds; for example, the special P_Key matching on QP1 (see [9.6.1 Validating Header Fields on page 295](#)) may in many implementations impact the performance of packet reception on QP1.

Packets arriving at QP0 may be intended for either the SM, if one is present; or for the SMA. Similarly, packets arriving at QP1 may be intended for any of a number of management agents. Any implementation must therefore provide a dispatching function that routes packets on QP0 and QP1 to their appropriate destinations. Similarly, any implementation must also provide other low-level functions on packets received on or destined for those QPs (e.g., directed route processing for QP0). For convenience of description, all such functions are referred to in the specification as being carried out by the Subnet Management Interface (SMI) for QP0 and the General Services Interface (GSI) for QP1. Neither the SMI nor the GSI are architected elements required by any IBA implementation. Any operations stated in compliance statements as being performed "by" the SMI or GSI may be performed in any way that is consistent with the external effects of those compliance statements, specifically those effects which are detectable on communication links or on verb interfaces.

C13-33: For each endpoint, Subnet Management MADs to be processed at that port **shall** be destined to Queue Pair 0.

C13-34: For each endpoint, unless redirected (see [13.5.2 GSI Redirection on page 823](#)), SA or GS MADs to be processed by agents at that port **shall** be destined to Queue Pair 1.

Queue pairs 0 and 1 have unique semantics with respect to processing of messages specifying one of them as the destination queue pair. Implementations of QP0 and 1 are not required to follow the semantics associated with other queue pairs with respect to requirements such as posting and consumption of WQEs, manipulation of an associated completion queue, and so on. Messages arriving at QP0 or QP1 are processed in accordance with the requirements set forth in this section and following Sections: [13.5.3.1 MAD Validation for Subnet Management MADs on page 824](#)

[825](#), [13.5.3.2.1 MAD Validation at the GSI on page 827](#), and [13.5.3.2.2 MAD Validation at the SA and GSAs on page 828](#).

One way for the GSI of CAs supporting QPs other than QP0 and QP1 to perform this disambiguation is to require that all managers send and receive GMPs on QPs other than QP1. This disambiguates manager vs. agent GMPs by reserving QP1 for GMPs sent to agents. Whether this is done is vendor-dependent; it is not required by the InfiniBand architecture. It is, however, allowed. As a result, portability of manager implementations will be enhanced if their implementations do not require use of QP1 for sending GMPs.

13.5.1.1 PROCESSING SUBNET MANAGEMENT PACKETS (SMPs)

The Subnet Management Interface (SMI) is associated with QP0. QP0 is used exclusively for sending and receiving subnet management MADs. Communications with the SMA in a channel adapter, switch, or router is always through the SMI. If a channel adapter, switch, or router hosts a SM, then communications between that SM and the SMA of each channel adapter, switch, or router in the subnet is also through the SMI. Only SMAs and SM communicate through this interface. No other entities may do so.

The MADs of subnet management class are called SMPs.

C13-35: SMPs **shall** not travel beyond the boundaries of a subnet (i.e. through a router).

MADs with a destination queue pair of 0 are validated according to the rules specified in [13.5.3.1 MAD Validation for Subnet Management MADs on page 825](#).

Validated MADs arriving for QP0 are handled by the SMI. It is not specified how the SMI dispatches the SMPs between the SMA and a possible SM.

C13-36: On an HCA, SMPs not dispatched to the SMA **shall** be posted to the QP0 queue pair exposed above the verb layer.

C13-37: For SMPs dispatched to the SMA, a vendor **shall**

- either never post such SMPs,
- or, always post such SMPs,
- or, offer a vendor specific option to select whether such SMPs are never posted or are always posted,

where posting is with respect to the QP0 queue pair exposed above the verb layer.

13.5.1.2 PROCESSING GENERAL SERVICES MANAGEMENT PACKETS (GMPs)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
The General Services Interface (GSI) is associated with QP1. QP1 is re-
served exclusively for subnet administration and general services MADs.
Unless redirected, GSAs send and receive MADs by means of the GSI.
For a description of redirection see [13.5.2 on page 823](#). Depending upon
implementation, the GSI may also provide the interface through which a
class manager communicates with corresponding (class specific) GSAs
throughout the fabric.

9
10
11
12
13
14
The MADs defined for subnet administration and general services are re-
ferred to as GMPs. The GSI acts as a demultiplexor for GMPs, distributing
messages destined for QP1 to the appropriate service agent or class
manager, based upon MADHeader:MgmtClass in the MAD header. MADs
with a destination queue pair of 1 are validated according to the rules
specified in [13.5.3.2.1 MAD Validation at the GSI on page 827](#).

15
16
17
18
In those cases where the GSI provides an interface for both a class ser-
vice agent and the corresponding class manager, the determination of the
appropriate destination above the GSI demultiplexing is implementation
dependent.

19
20
21
Also note that GMPs are unicast in the current specification release. Fu-
ture specification revisions may extend GMPs to multicast.

22
23
On an HCA, the GSI is only aware of agents residing below the verb layer.

24
25
C13-38: GMPs dispatched to agents implemented below the verb layer
shall not be visible above the verb layer.

26
27
C13-39: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
[C13-39.1.1:](#)

28
29
C13-39.1.1: GMPs that are not dispatched to agents implemented below
the verb layer **shall** be visible above the verb layer. Their reception **shall**
consume, in a manner visible by verbs, Receive Work Requests previ-
ously posted to the QP on which they were received.

30
31
32
The SL used by a GMP is neither specified nor constrained by virtue of
the fact it is a GMP. The choice of SL is outside of the scope of these sec-
tions. Note that unlike SMPs which follow special and unique VL rules,
GMPs are standard unreliable datagrams subject to and only to the SL/VL
usage rules applicable to all unreliable datagrams.

33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
If redirection has been configured for a management class, GMPs des-
tined to the QP specified in the redirection are treated exactly the same
as any other unreliable datagram. Since the destination QP is not QP1,
they do not appear at the GSI but are delivered directly to the QP specified

in the redirection by the IB transport in the same manner as any other unreliable datagram.

C13-40: GSAs that are accessed using redirection **shall** validate arriving MADs according to the same rules as apply for queue pair 1.

Any management entity using a QP that has the well-known Q_Key (0x8001_0000) can assume all Unreliable Datagrams received on that QP are GMPs. This is a consequence of the fact that the well-known Q_Key is reserved for MADs, which is implied by the combination of [C9-48: on page 301](#), [C9-49: on page 301](#), [C13-51.1.1: on page 841](#), and [C13-52.1.1: on page 841](#).

GMPs may contain a GRH and may be forwarded across subnet boundaries. Whether or not a given class manager supports cross subnet communications with corresponding class service agents is implementation dependent.

[Table 139 Management Interfaces Summary on page 823](#) summarizes the properties associated with the above described management interfaces.

Table 139 Management Interfaces Summary

	Subnet Management Interface	General Services Interface
Queue Pair	QP0	QP1 (destination before redirection)
VL	VL 15	not VL15
Partitioning	not enforced	enforced
Q_Key	not enforced	enforced (Q_Key = 0x8001_0000)
Scope	Within subnet only	Routable across subnets
Class Key	Management Key (M_Key)	class dependent

13.5.2 GSI REDIRECTION

By default, the interface from the wire to class service agents is the GSI. A mechanism is provided by which the interface to a given class service agent may be relocated to another queue pair. This mechanism is called redirection and is specified in detail below. The SA as well as each GSA may individually support this mechanism or not. The ClassPortInfo attribute is used to indicate if redirection is supported, and, if so, contains redirection information for MADs of the subject class.

C13-41: If, for a class, redirection is not being used, any GMP destined to the associated class agent via QP1 **shall** be processed by that agent.

C13-42: For any request sent to QP1 with MADHeader:MgmtClass equal to the class value of a class being redirected, a response **shall** be returned containing ClassPortInfo for the class specified in the request.

C13-42.1.1: The response described in [C13-42](#): **shall** also occur when a request is sent to a location to which a class has already been redirected, if it is further redirected from there.

C13-43: The Status field in a response including ClassPortInfo because of redirection **shall** have the MADHeader>Status.RedirectionRequired bit set indicating that a ClassPortInfo attribute was returned rather than the expected attribute.

C13-43.1.1: When a request for a particular MADHeader:MgmtClass has been redirected to another location, that location **shall** continue to service requests for the MADHeader:MgmtClass until either the location becomes inoperable for some reason or the requests are redirected again away from that location.

A response with the MADHeader>Status.RedirectionRequired bit set indicates that the request was not performed and that the request must be issued to the alternate interface specified in ClassPortInfo.

Redirection may be used at any time, so requesters should always be prepared to be redirected.

It is permissible for different requesters for the same management class on a channel adapter, switch, or router to be redirected to a different interface. The redirection operation is depicted in [Figure 158 GSI Redirection on page 824](#).

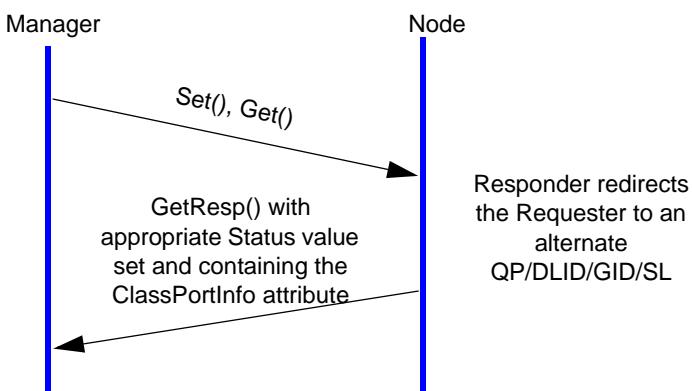


Figure 158 GSI Redirection

Redirection information is also available by doing a normal Get() specifying the class of interest in the MADHeader:MgmtClass field of the MAD header and ClassPortInfo as the attribute.

The ClassPortInfo attribute contains all of the information necessary to access the redirected service either from within the same subnet or from a different subnet. ClassPortInfo may be programmed to include all of the parameters a source needs to form a complete GRH.

C13-44: A GRH **shall** be included in redirected class messages only if the ClassPortInfo:RedirectGID is non zero.

If ClassPortInfo:RedirectGID is non-zero, and redirection is in effect, then a GRH also need not be used if the MAD does not have to exit a subnet.

It is the responsibility of any entity programming ClassPortInfo to assure that the parameters provided for accessing redirected services are consistent with address and access controls applicable to the redirected service.

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#).

13.5.3 MAD VALIDATION

Packets arriving at a port of a channel adapter, switch, or router are validated according to the validation rules specified in [5.2 Data Packet Format on page 168](#) and [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#). Only packets so validated are delivered to management entities. The contents of the data payload are further validated by management entities to validate that the data payload contains a valid MAD.

Valid MADs are delivered to appropriate management entities for processing.

13.5.3.1 MAD VALIDATION FOR SUBNET MANAGEMENT MADS

C13-45: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-45.1.1](#):

C13-45.1.1: Data payloads arriving at the SMI (QP0) **shall** be validated as indicated in the bulleted list below. Packets failing one or more of these check are discarded and no action is taken in response unless the method is a Get() or a Set(). For Get() and Set() methods, the return of a Get-Resp() when validation has failed is optional.

- The data payload length **shall** be 256 bytes
- LRH:VL **shall** be 15
- BTH:QP **shall** be 0
- BTH:OpCode **shall** be Send only UD
- MADHeader:BaseVersion **shall** be 1

- MADHeader:MgmtClass **shall** specify a class of Subn or Directed Route Subn
- MADHeader:Method **shall** specify a method supported by the class specified in MADHeader:MgmtClass
- MADHeader:AttributeID **shall** specify an attribute supported by the class specified in MADHeader:MgmtClass; and the MADHeader:Method/MADHeader:AttributeID combination **shall** be valid, e.g., the combination of method and attributeID is identified by "X" in the method/attribute map table of a class (e.g., [Table 148, "Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map," on page 885](#)).

o13-18: If a GetResp() is returned, any conditions detected that have corresponding codes assigned in [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#) **shall** be reflected by corresponding settings of bits in MADHeader>StatusField in the response.

If a channel adapter, switch, or router supports a subnet manager, some MADs may be destined for the SMA while others may be destined for the SM. The discrimination between the SMA as a destination and the SM as a destination is based on the class, the method, and the attribute. See [14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865](#), [Table 140 SM MAD Sources and Destinations on page 826](#) indicates which SMPs originate at an SM, which SMPs originate at an SMA, and which SMPs may be destined to SMAs or to SMs.

Table 140 SM MAD Sources and Destinations

MAD Type	Source	Destination	Notes
Get(*) ^a	SM	SMA	Applies for all attributes except SMIInfo
Get(SMIInfo)	SM	SM	Applies only for the SMIInfo attribute
Set(*) ^a	SM	SMA	Applies for all attributes except SMIInfo
Set(SMIInfo)	SM	SM	Applies only for the SMIInfo attribute
GetResp(*) ^a	SMA	SM	Applies for all attributes except SMIInfo
GetResp(SMIInfo)	SM	SM	Applies only for the SMIInfo attribute
Trap()	SMA	SM	Applies to all subnet management traps.
TrapRepress()	SM	SMA	Applies to all subnet management traps.

a. The asterisk is used to indicate any attribute other than SMIInfo.

This specification does not require that subnet managers be implemented in any particular way. It does require that subnet managers be able to originate and receive subnet management MADs. However an SM is realized, it must create and receive packets adhering to the on-the-wire formats specified.

C13-45.1.2: The SM **shall** only send packets with a source QP of 0 and a destination QP of 0, using VL15.

It is recommended that any packet received on QP 0 be discarded if its Source QP is different from zero.

C13-46: The SMI **shall** handle all Directed Route SMPs as described in [14.2.2 SMPs and Directed Route Algorithm on page 868](#).

13.5.3.2 MAD VALIDATION FOR SUBNET ADMINISTRATION AND GENERAL SERVICES

13.5.3.2.1 MAD VALIDATION AT THE GSI

C13-47: Data payloads arriving at the GSI (QP1) **shall** be validated as specified in the bulleted list below. Packets failing one or more of these checks are discarded and no action is taken in response unless the method is a Get() or a Set(). For Get() and Set() methods, the return of a GetResp() when validation has failed is optional.

- The data payload length must be 256 bytes.
- LRH:VL must not be 15
- BTH:QP must be 1
- BTH:OpCode must be Send only UD
- MADHeader:Baseversion must be 1
- MADHeader:MgmtClass must specify a class supported on the channel adapter, switch, or router.

o13-19: If a GetResp() is returned, any conditions detected that have corresponding codes assigned in [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#) **shall** be reflected by corresponding settings of the bits in MADHeader>StatusField of the response.

It is not specified how GMPs passing through the GSI are dispatched to the appropriate class agents that are supported and which are not redirected.

If a class is supported and if redirection has been configured for that class, the response to a request arriving at the GSI containing MADHeader:MgmtClass of a redirected class is to reply with the redirection information for the class as specified in [13.5.2 GSI Redirection on page 823](#).

On CAs implementing the verbs layer specified in [Chapter 11: Software Transport Verbs on page 583](#), GSMS may be implemented either below the verb layer or above the verb layer. For a GSM implemented above the verb layer and communicating via a source QP1, it is not specified how disambiguation between GMPs destined to GSAs on that CA and GMPs destined to that GSM is performed. The basis for such differentiation is both class and context dependent as well as implementation dependent.

C13-48: If a CA does not support operation of a GSM via QP1 from on top of its verb layer, that is, if it does not implement disambiguation of GMPs destined to a GSA below the verbs and GMPs destined to QP1 associated with a GSM implemented above the verbs, it **shall** not permit QP1 to be created above the verb layer.

See also [13.5.1.2 Processing General Services Management Packets \(GMPs\) on page 822](#).

Regardless of the implementation, the behavior of GSAs and GSMS with respect to the injection of messages on the wire, processing of messages from the wire, and responding to messages received must conform to the requirements of applicable sections in [Chapter 16: General Services](#).

Implicitly, implementations of SAs, GSMS and GSAs must be able to send GMPs destined to QP1.

13.5.3.2.2 MAD VALIDATION AT THE SA AND GSAs

Packets arriving at an SA or GSA via QP1 have already been validated as properly formed MADs.

Packets arriving at a SA or GSA via any QP other than QP1 have been redirected. Such packets have not been validated as properly formed MADs.

o13-20: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-48.1.1](#):

C13-48.1.1: Agents processing GMPs that have been redirected **shall** first validate the GMPs as follows:

- The data payload length **shall** be 256 bytes
- LRH:VL **shall not** be 15
- The BTH:OpCode **shall** be Send only UD
- MADHeader:BaseVersion **shall** be 1
- MADHeader:MgmtClass **shall** specify a class supported on the channel adapter, switch, or router.

C13-49: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-49.1.1](#):

C13-49.1.1: All packets arriving for processing at an SA or a GSA **shall** be further validated as follows:

- MADHeader:Method **shall** specify a method supported by the class specified in MADHeader:MgmtClass

- MADHeader:AttributeID must specify an attribute supported by the class specified in MADHeader:MgmtClass; and the MADHeader:Method/MADHeader:AttributeID combination must be valid, e.g., the combination of method and attributeID is identified by "X" in the method/attribute map table of the class.

C13-50: GMPs failing one or more validity checks **shall** be discarded unless the method is one for which a response is normally returned (such as Get(), Set(), or Report()). The return of a response when validation has failed is optional.

o13-21: If a GetResp() is returned, any conditions detected that have corresponding codes assigned in [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#) **shall** be reflected by corresponding settings of the bits in the status field of the response.

GSA are not required to check the validity of the attribute content.

Additional class specific checking requirements may be specified. Such requirements, if any, are defined in the class specific sections of [Chapter 15: Subnet Administration on page 1015](#) and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

13.5.3.3 CONSOLIDATED MAD VALIDATION FLOW DIAGRAMS

The figures which follow provide a consolidated view of the entire validation process for a SMP or GMP MAD. Both pseudo-code and flowcharts are used, depending on which afforded the greatest clarity. For completeness, it includes MAD tests specified in this chapter and [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#), as well as the subset of the LRH and GRH checks that apply to MADs. The latter were derived from the checks specified in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#), [Chapter 8: Network Layer on page 245](#) and [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#); those chapters should be considered authoritative if any discrepancy between this section and those chapters is noted.

The process begins at the start of [Figure 159, LRH Check, on page 829](#).

If

- ICRC and VCRC are good /* [C7-11](#): */
 - and LRH:Lver = 0 /* [C7-11](#): */
 - and ((LRH:LNH=0b10) & (LRH:PktLen =72)) | ((LRH:LNH=0b11) & (LRH:PktLen =82)) /* [C7-11](#); [C13-3](#): */
 - and LRH:DLID=PortInfo:LID or 0xFFFF /* [C7-11](#): */
 - and (VL is operational and PortState = (Active or Armed)) | (VL = 15 and DLID is unicast) /* [C7-11](#): */
 - and (VL is not 15) or (LNH indicates IBA local packet) /* [C7-11](#): */
- then go to [Figure 160, BTH Check, on page 830](#);
else, drop packet.

Figure 159 **LRH Check**

```

1 If BTH:DestQP= 0 /* C9-37:, C13-33:, C13-45.1.1: */
2 then
3     if
4         • BTH:Tver=0 /* C9-5:, C9-36: */
5         • and LRH:LNH!=0b11
6             then if
7                 • BTH:OpCode=0b01100100 (Send UD only) /* C13-45.1.1: */
8                 then go to Figure 163, SMP Check 1, on page 831
9                 else, go to Figure 161, BTH Check Extension, on page 830
10            else drop packet.
11        else if
12    • BTH:DestQP= 1 /* C9-37:, C13-34:, C13-47: */
13    then
14        if
15            • BTH:Tver=0 /* C9-5:, C9-36: */
16            • and LRH:LNH!=0b11
17                or [GRH is present (LRH:LNH=0b11) and GRH check succeeds (see Figure 162, GRH Check, on page 830)]
18            • and BTH:P_Key is valid /* C9-41:, C9-42: */
19            • and DETH:Q_Key= 0x8001_0000 /* C9-48:, C9-49: */
20            • and DLID!=0xFFFF /* C9-55: */
21            then if
22                • BTH:OpCode=0b01100100 (Send UD only) /* C13-47: */
23                then go to Figure 173, GMP Check, on page 838
24                else, go to Figure 161, BTH Check Extension, on page 830
25            else, drop packet.
26        else, drop packet.
27    else, drop packet.

```

Figure 160 BTH Check

```

28 if Method = Set() or Get() /* C13-45.1.1:, C13-47: */
29 then
30     • Optional:GetResp() with Bad Version /* C13-45.1.1:, C13-47: */
31     • drop packet.
32     else, drop packet.

```

Figure 161 BTH Check Extension

```

33 If
34     • GRH:IPVer=6 /* C8-2:, C9-45: */
35     • and GRH:PayLen=280 /* C8-6: */
36     • and GRH:NxtHdr=0x1B /* C8-7:, C9-44: */
37     • and GRH:DGID is my GID /* C8-11:, C9-46: */
38 then return into Figure 160, BTH Check, on page 830, indicating the check succeeded.
39 else return into Figure 160, BTH Check, on page 830, indicating the check failed (drop packet)

```

Figure 162 GRH Check

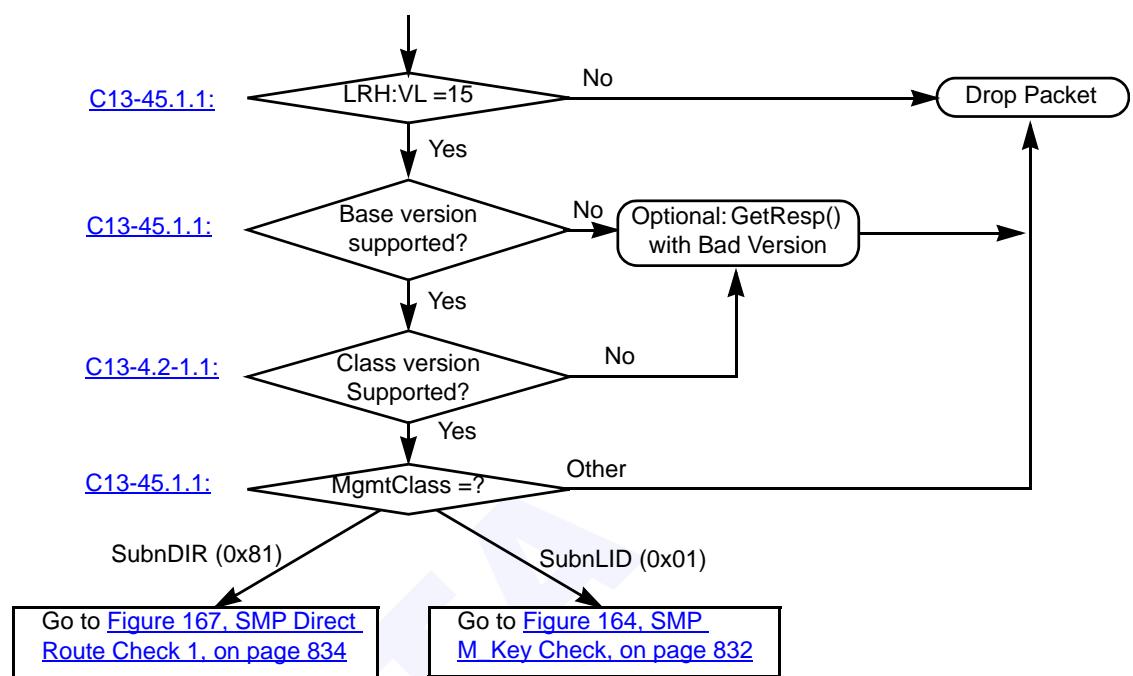


Figure 163

SMP Check 1

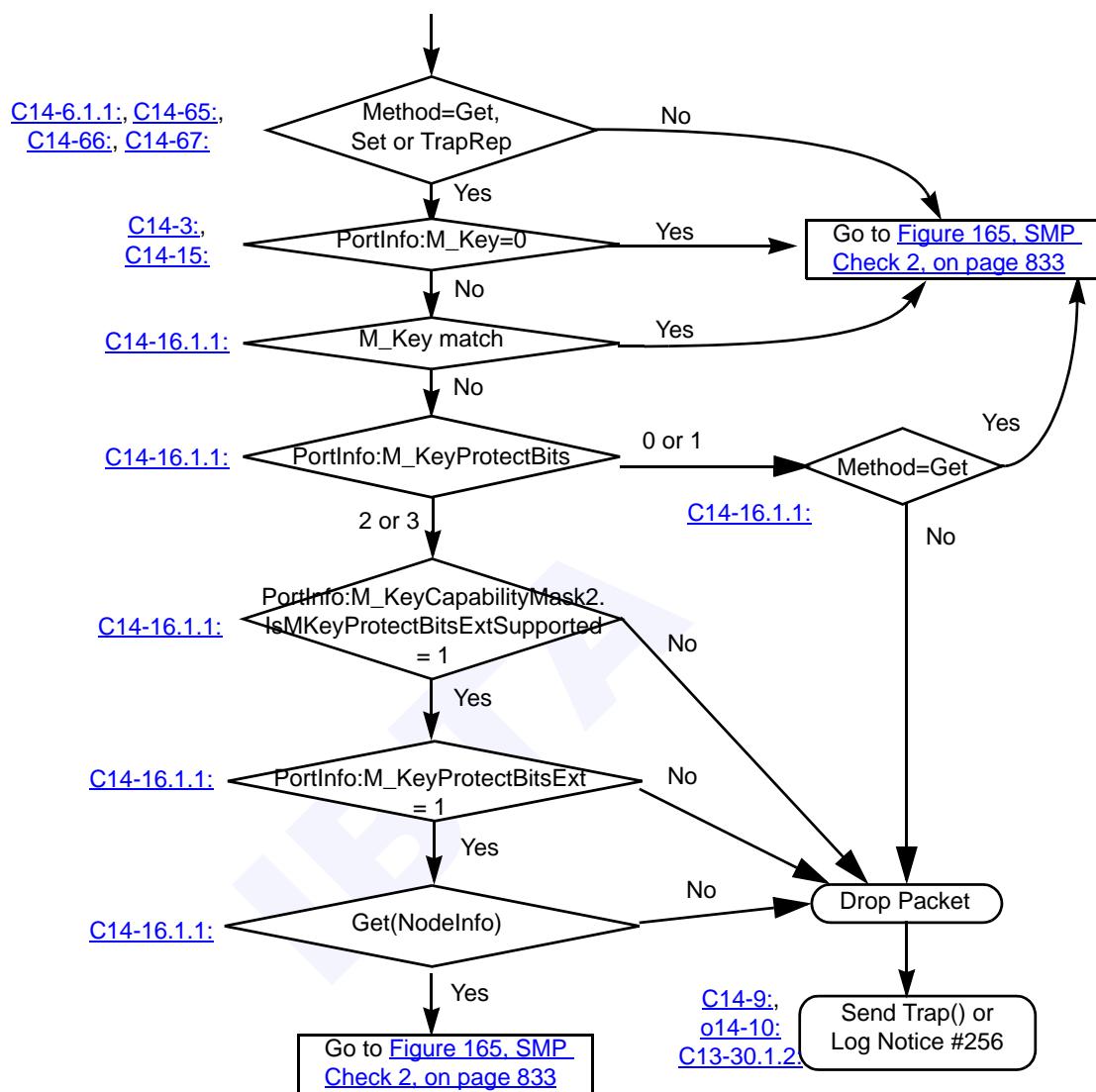
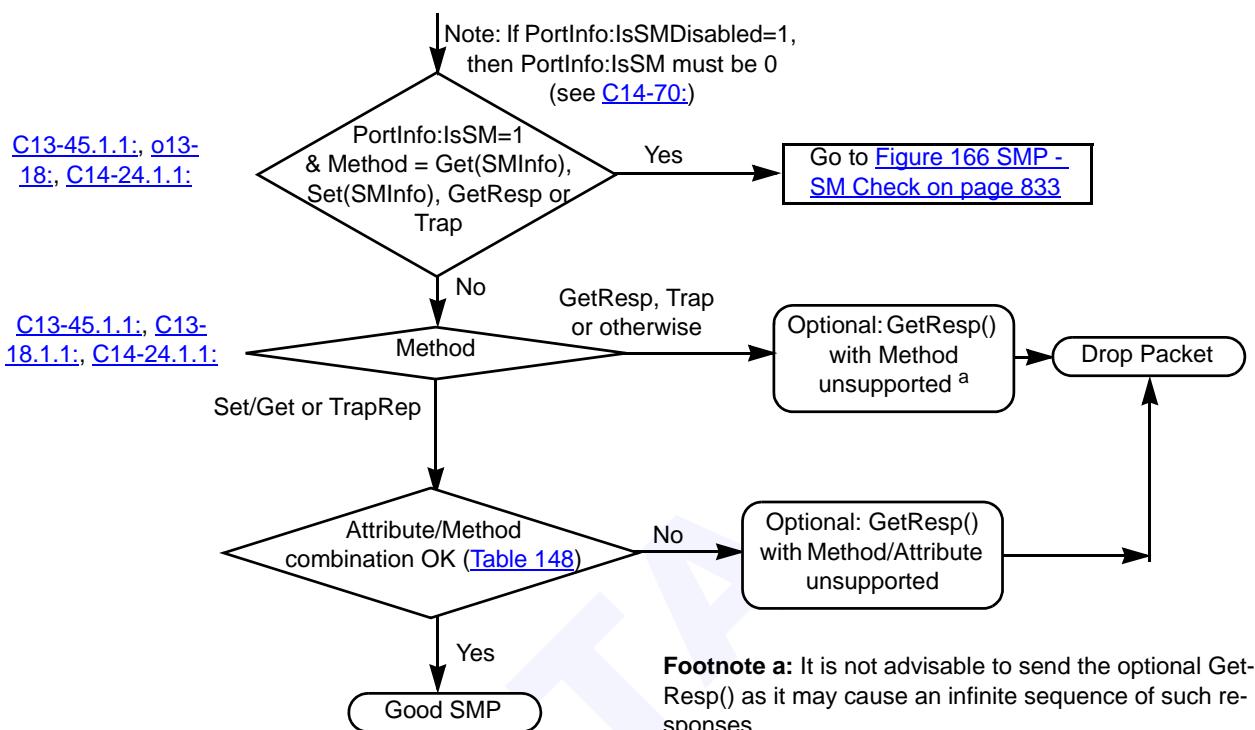


Figure 164 SMP M_Key Check



If either

- Method = GetResp
- and Code for Invalid Field of MAD Status is nonzero ([Table 124 on page 795](#)) /* [C14-38](#); */

or

- Attribute is supported ([Table 147 on page 882](#)) /* [C14-38](#); [C14-24.1.1](#); */
- and AttributID and Method combination corresponds ([Table 147 on page 882](#))

then GOOD SMP
else drop packet

Figure 166 SMP - SM Check

If

- Hop Pointer = Hop Count +1 (responder node) /* [C14-9](#): 4 */

then go to [Figure 164, SMP M_Key Check, on page 832](#).

else /* this means Hop count + 2 ≤ Hop pointer ≤ 255 */

- drop packet /* [C14-9](#): 5 */

Figure 169 SMP - Direct Route Check 3

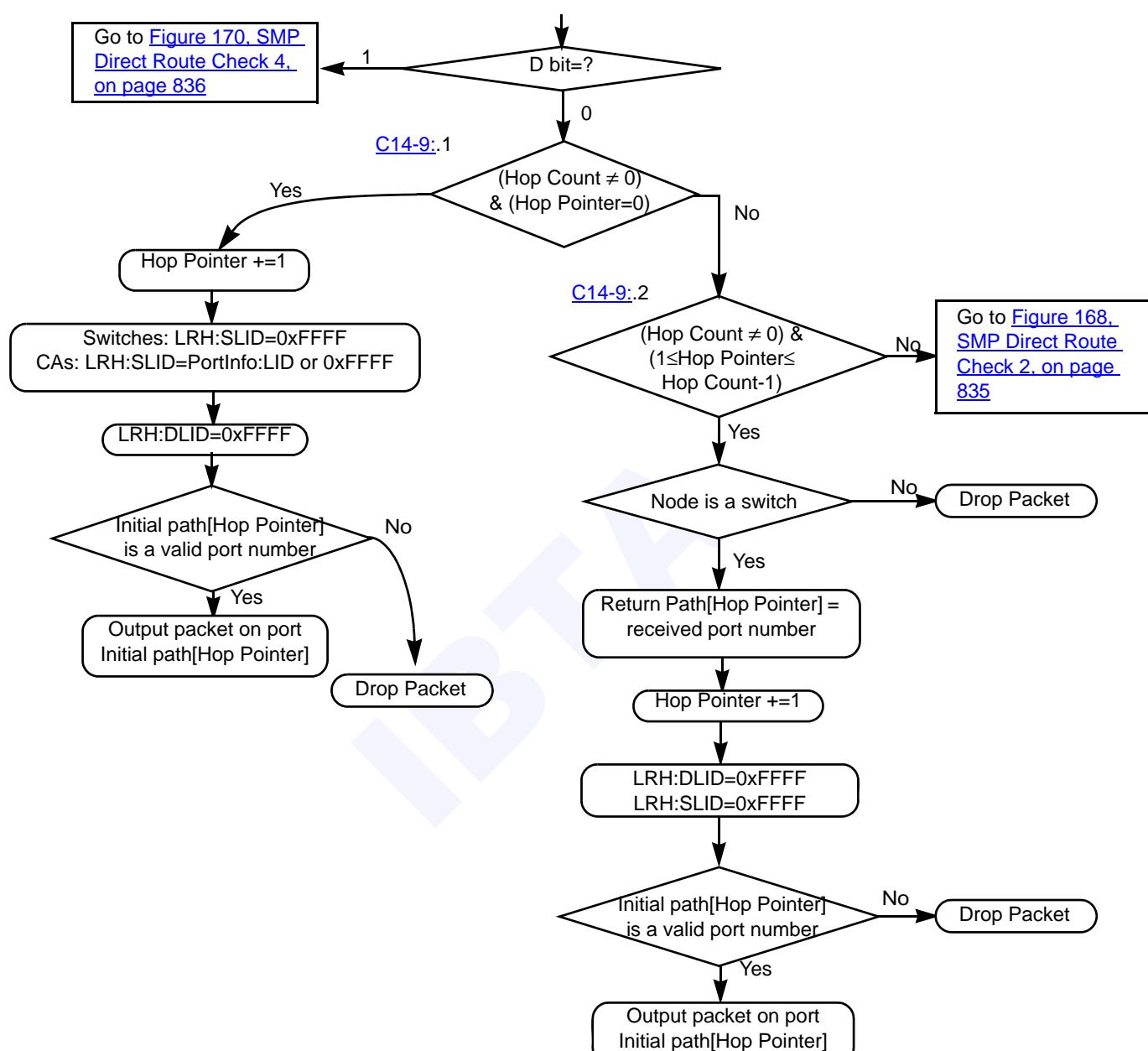


Figure 167

SMP Direct Route Check 1

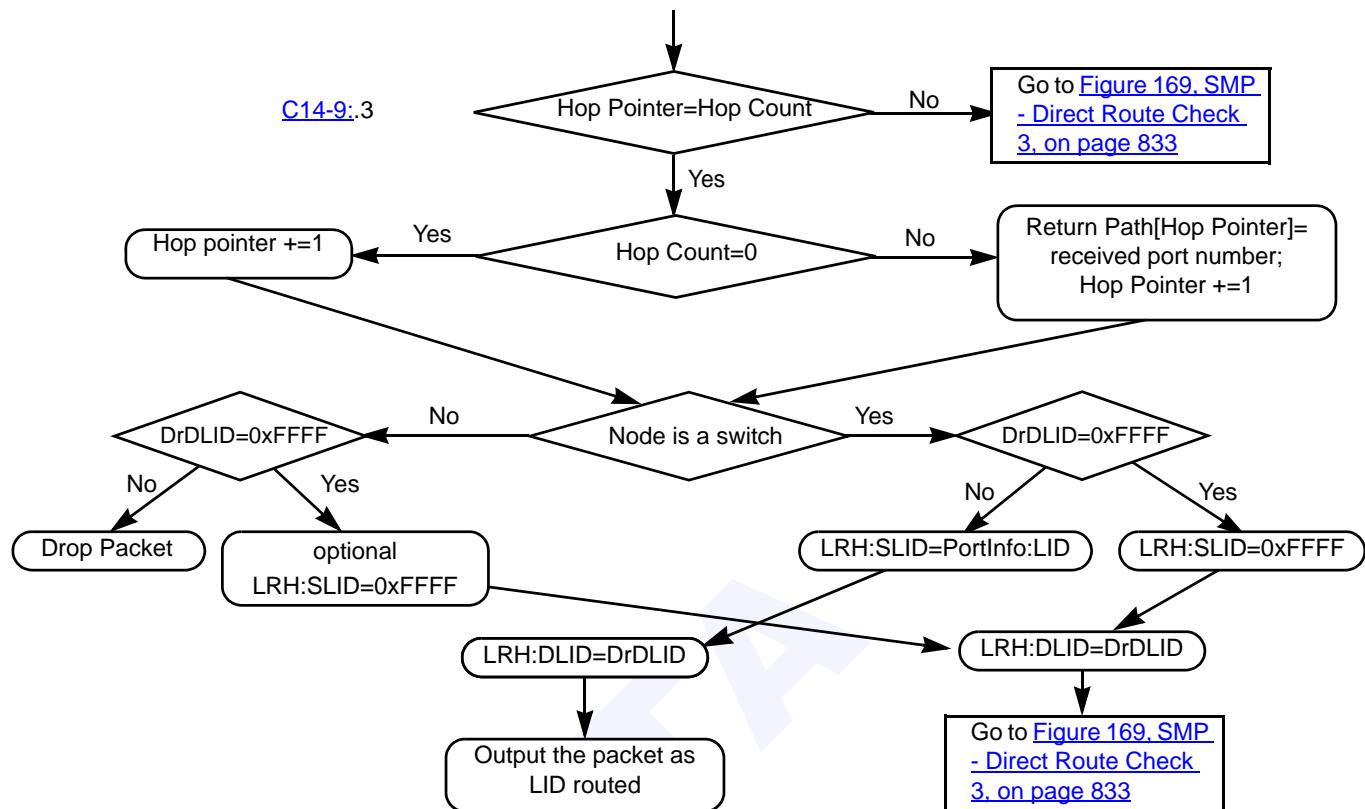


Figure 168

SMP Direct Route Check 2

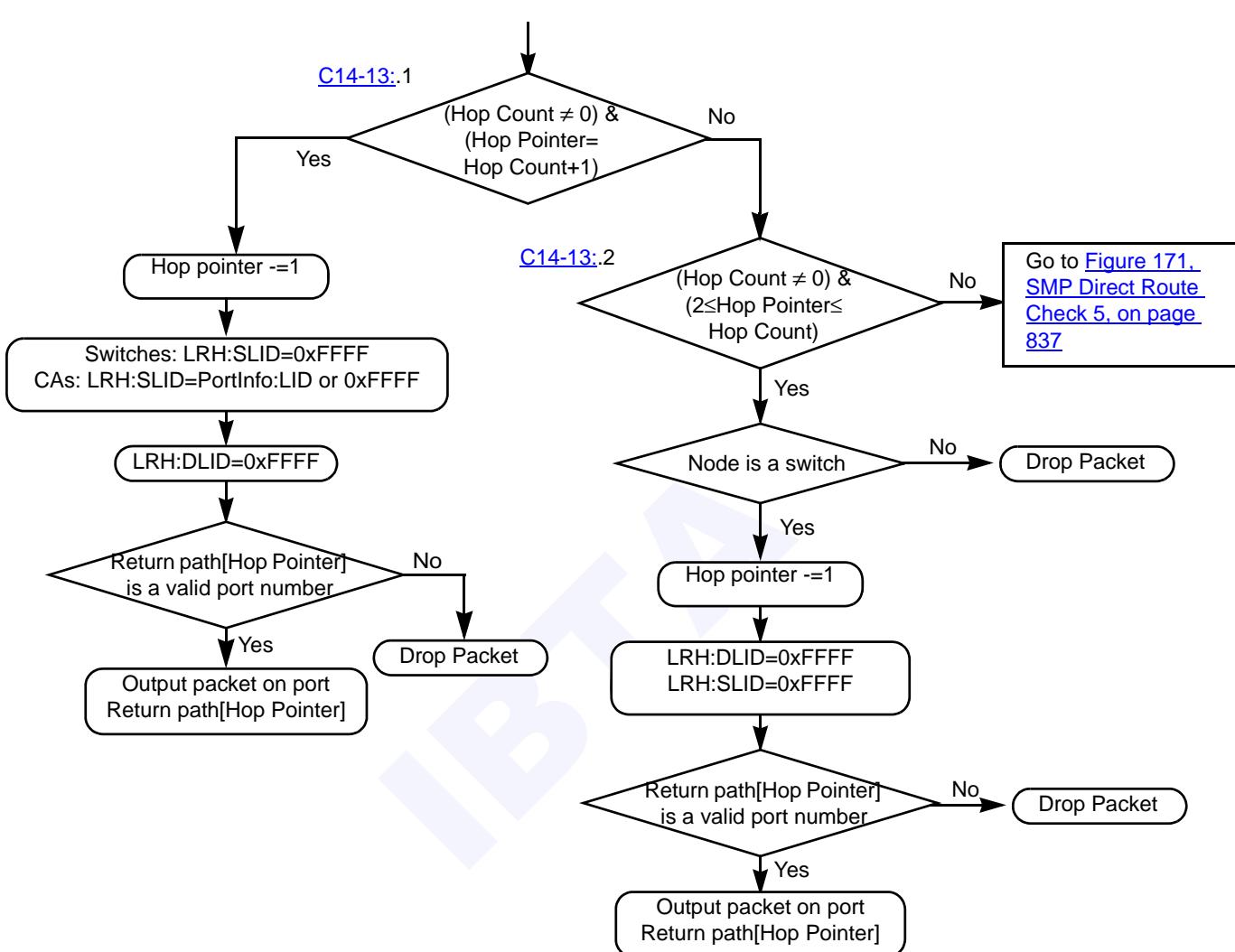


Figure 170

SMP Direct Route Check 4

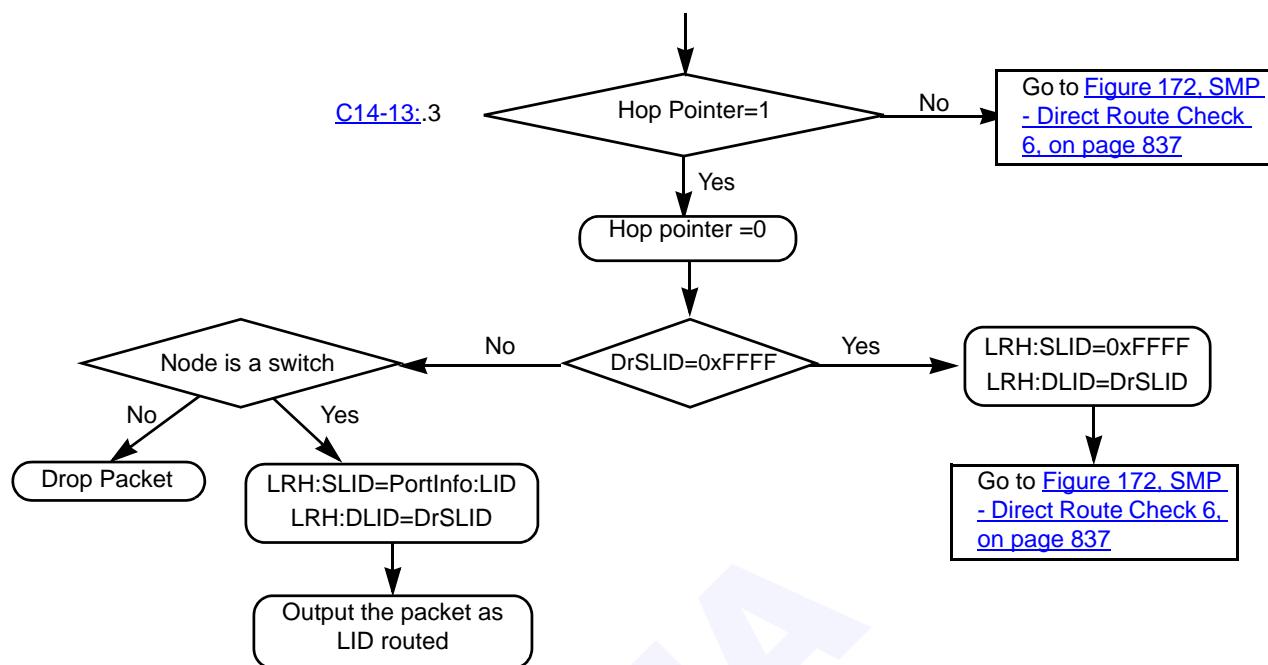


Figure 171

SMP Direct Route Check 5

If
• Hop pointer = 0 (requester node - SM) /* C14-13..4 */
then go to [Figure 164, SMP M_Key Check, on page 832](#).
else (Hop count + 2 ≤ Hop pointer ≤ 255) drop packet /* C14-3..5 */

Figure 172

SMP - Direct Route Check 6

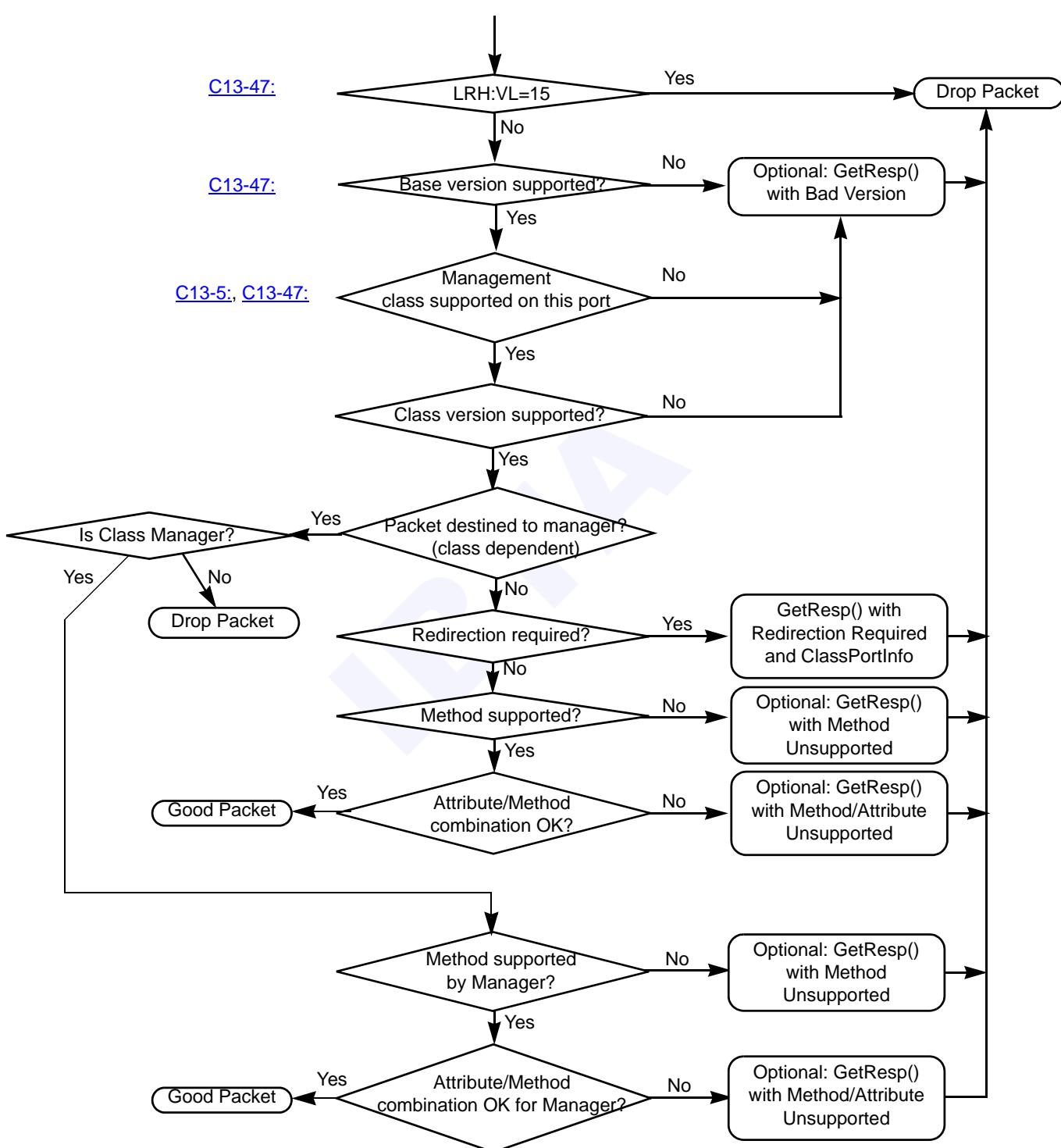


Figure 173 GMP Check

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

13.5.4 RESPONSE GENERATION AND REVERSIBLE PATHS

Some MAD methods require that the recipient return a response to the sender. Since in many situations the recipient will be unable or not equipped to obtain a path in the reverse direction from Subnet Administration, this requires the existence of a reversible path from sender to recipient. This section discusses reversible paths and response generation.

13.5.4.1 REVERSIBLE PATHS

Loosely, a reversible path is one for which a responder can construct a valid response packet that will reach the original sender using only header information present in the request packet. Not all paths in an IBA fabric are guaranteed to be reversible, and non-reversible paths in some topologies may not be as desirable as reversible paths. However, at least one reversible path must be available between every pair of endports in a subnet (see [14.4.3 Initialization Actions on page 998](#)). The reverse path constructed from the request headers may or may not traverse the same physical links as the forward path and might not be as efficient as a path to the same endpoint that was explicitly acquired from SA.

The following sections describe how a recipient constructs a response packet received on a reversible path. The sender may be in the local subnet or in a remote one, so a request packet may or may not include a GRH. Note that the initial subsections which follow describe constructing a response in general; MADs are not the only case that may require reversible path response generation. [13.5.4.5 Responses to MADs on page 840](#) indicates additional specific requirements for responding to MADs and sending requests that require responses.

The precise definition of a reversible path is a path for which the procedure described below will construct a packet that can be successfully transmitted back to the sender.

13.5.4.2 COMMON RESPONSE ACTIONS

A responder always takes the following actions in constructing a response packet:

- The SLID of the received packet is used as the DLID in the response packet.
- The Source QP of the received packet is used as the destination QP in the response packet.
- The SL specified in the received packet is used as the SL in the response packet.
- The responder's P_Key used to match the P_Key in the received packet is used as the P_Key in the response packet.

- Unless it can be determined by some other means that other values apply, the following values are also used:
 - MTU = 256 bytes
 - Rate = 2.5 Gb/s
 - QP = source QP of received packet
 - Q_Key = source Q_Key of received packet

13.5.4.3 CONSTRUCTING A RESPONSE WITHOUT A GRH

If the request packet does not contain a GRH, the response packet does not contain a GRH and is constructed as follows:

- Perform the actions specified in [13.5.4.2 Common Response Actions on page 839](#).
- Fields not otherwise specified in that section are filled in according to the requirements of the transport service. See [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#).

13.5.4.4 CONSTRUCTING A RESPONSE WITH A GRH

If the original request packet contained a GRH, then the response packet must contain a GRH. In this case the response packet is constructed as follows:

- Perform the actions specified in [13.5.4.2 Common Response Actions on page 839](#).
- Insert a GRH in the response packet with its fields set as follows:
 - The DGID is copied from the SGID in the GRH of the received packet.
 - FlowLabel and TrafficClass are copied from the GRH in the received packet.
 - HopLimit is set to 0xFF.
- Fields not otherwise specified in this section are filled in according to the requirements of the transport service. See [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#).

13.5.4.5 RESPONSES TO MADs

C13-50.1.1: A sender of a request MAD requiring a response **shall** send that request MAD using a reversible path.

Reversible paths can be acquired from the SA using PathRecord:Reversible (see [15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038](#)).

C13-51: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-51.1.1:](#)

C13-51.1.1: If the request MAD does not contain a GRH, the response MAD **shall** be constructed as described in [13.5.4.3 Constructing a Response Without a GRH on page 840](#) with the addition that, for GMPs received on the GSI or redirected, the well-known Q_Key (0x8001_0000) shall be used in the DETH.

C13-52: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C13-52.1.1:](#)

C13-52.1.1: If the request MAD contained a GRH, then the response MAD **shall** be constructed as described in [13.5.4.4 Constructing a Response With a GRH on page 840](#), with the addition that, for GMPs received on the GSI or redirected, the well-known Q_Key (0x8001_0000) shall be used in the DETH.

13.6 RELIABLE MULTI-PACKET TRANSACTION PROTOCOL

Management Datagrams necessarily use a least-common-denominator form of communication: minimal-MTU (256 byte) Unreliable Datagrams. However, there are circumstances where management classes must reliably transfer data in quantities greater than will fit in a single MAD. To facilitate this, IBA management defines a standard Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol (RMPP) that may be used by any class needing the ability to transfer large amounts of data (up to 2^{32} packets) in a single logical transaction. This section defines that protocol. The intent of the definition is to allow implementation of a single instance of the RMPP protocol engine that may be used by all management classes present at an end-port, freeing the class implementations from considering protocol elements such as retries, acknowledgements, timeout processing, etc.

RMPP is specified in terms of two communicating entities with complementary roles: A *Sender*, which is the source of the data transferred; and a *Receiver* which consumes the data transferred. The entities fulfilling the Sender and Receiver roles may be class managers, management agents, or entities with other relationships to the class (such as clients to a server class). Any of those entities may take on either role, or both roles—performing both at different times or even simultaneously, if multiple simultaneous RMPP transmissions are supported by the protocol implementation (they are allowed by the protocol).

RMPP implements a sliding window recovery protocol that is vaguely reminiscent of TCP: The Sender emits up to a predetermined number of packets (window size). The Receiver moves the window forward by replying to the Sender with acknowledgement messages. The window size always starts at 1; it may be changed by the Receiver to larger values, and later decreased, through a parameter carried by acknowledgement packets. The Receiver implicitly requests retransmissions by ceasing to acknowledge packets; when the Sender times out waiting for an acknowl-

edgement, it begins retransmission starting with the packet following the last one acknowledged.

13.6.1 MANAGEMENT CLASS USE OF RMPP

The specification of a management class that uses RMPP must include the following:

- The RMPP header. This must be present in every packet of the management class, immediately following the MAD Base Format Header, i.e., starting at byte 24 of every MAD of the class (see [13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843](#)). Any additional header information used by the class must follow the RMPP header.
- A specification of the types of transfers used. Receiver-initiated and Sender-initiated transfers are both possible, as is a double-sided RMPP transfer: Sender initiates an RMPP transfer, following which a response is returned as an RMPP transfer in the opposite direction (the two entities switch roles after completing the first transfer). See [13.6.6 Startup Scenarios on page 862](#).
- A specification of when the RMPP protocol is activated, i.e., when the bit RMPPFlags.Active=1 (see [13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843](#)) and which role (Sender, Receiver) is taken by which entity. RMPP does not specify which methods, attributes, etc., use the protocol. This specification is often most conveniently done by specifying particular methods which activate and use RMPP. (Note, a packet which causes RMPP to begin need not itself be part of the RMPP protocol, i.e., need not have RMPPFlags.Active=1; see, for example, [13.6.4 Ladder Diagram \(Example\) on page 851](#) and [13.6.6.1 Receiver-Initiated Transfer on page 863](#).) While it is not strictly required by RMPP that a particular method always use or initiate RMPP for every transfer, even for those that happen to fit in a single packet, such transfers will work and the specification will be simplified if this is done.
- Ensure that each RMPP transfer sequence be uniquely identified using a MAD Base Header TransactionID that remains constant through the entire transfer.

A common RMPP engine can examine each packet of a class using RMPP as they flow by, ignoring packets with RMPPFlags.Active=0 and pre-processing those with RMPPFlags.Active=1 for the class. That engine recognizes multiple packets belonging to the same RMPP transmission sequence by using the TransactionID (and other elements; see [13.6.5 Context & Dispatching on page 855](#)).

The responsibilities of the implementer of a class using the RMPP protocol will vary depending on the facilities made available by a vendor supplying the RMPP protocol engine implementation. However, it is likely that at least part of the RMPP header setup required must be indirectly or directly specified by the implementer.

The implementer of the protocol must adhere to all the compliance statements in this section: [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#).

13.6.2 RMPP PACKET FORMATS

The packet formats used by RMPP are described here. Note that RMPP does not define or describe any of the fields in the standard MAD header. In particular, the method, attribute, status, and other fields may be used in any way by the class that uses RMPP.

o13-21.1.1: If a management class uses RMPP, it **shall** use the header formats, packet formats, and field definitions described in [13.6.2 RMPP Packet Formats on page 843](#).

13.6.2.1 RMPP HEADER

o13-21.1.2: If a management class uses RMPP, it **shall** include the RMPP header shown in [Figure 174 RMPP Header Layout on page 843](#) in every MAD of that class type, in the position shown in that table, with the meanings documented in [Table 141 RMPP Header Fields on page 844](#).

o13-21.1.3: If a management class uses RMPP, and RMPPFlags.Active = 0, all other RMPP Header fields **shall** be reserved.

The standard definition of a “reserved” field defined in [13.4.1 Conventions on page 780](#) is implied in **o13-21.1.3**: Set to 0 when sent, and ignored when received.

o13-21.1.4: RMPPVersion **shall** have a value of 1 in all MADs containing an RMPP header with RMPPFlags.Active=1.

The contents of the Standard MAD header, including Method, Attribute, AttributeModifier, and Status, are class-specific.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0	Standard MAD Header (see Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782)			
...				
20				
24	RMPPVersion	RMPPType	RRespTime	RMPPFlags
28	Data1			
32	Data2			

Figure 174 RMPP Header Layout

Table 141 RMPP Header Fields

Field	Length (bits)	Description
RMPPVersion	8	Version of RMPP. Shall be set to the version of RMPP implemented.
RMPPType	8	Indicates the type of RMPP packet being transferred: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Not an RMPP packet; illegal if RMPPFlags.Active=1. • 1: DATA packet; shall be sent only from Sender to Receiver. • 2: ACK packet; shall be sent only from Receiver to Sender. • 3: STOP packet; may be sent in either direction • 4: ABORT packet; may be sent in either direction • 5-255: reserved.
RRespTime	5	Encodes a time value in the manner of ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValue (13.4.6.2.1 PortInfo:SubnetTimeout on page 791), with the exception that the value 32 (0x1F) is used to indicate that no time value is provided. The use of RRespTime is discussed in 13.6.3 Timeouts on page 849 .
RMPPFlags	3	Flags providing information about the packet: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 2: Last. If RMPPType = DATA, 1 indicates that this is the last packet of the transfer; 0 indicates it is not. If RMPPType is not DATA, shall be 0. • bit 1: First. If RMPPType = DATA, 1 indicates that this is the first packet of the transfer; 0 indicates it is not. If RMPPType is not DATA, shall be 0. • bit 0: Active. Shall be 1 on every packet that is part of an RMPP transmission sequence; shall be 0 otherwise. See o13-21.1.3: on page 843.
RMPPStatus	8	Status code, used by RMPP to signal error status or lack thereof. The values defined in 13.6.2.2 Status Codes on page 844 shall be used.
Data1	32	Meaning varies by RMPPType; see the following subsections
Data2	32	Meaning varies by RMPPType; see the following subsections.

13.6.2.2 STATUS CODES

o13-21.1.5: If a management class uses RMPP, it **shall** use the status codes shown in [Table 142 RMPPStatus Codes on page 845](#) to indicate the conditions described there. If a status code is received with an RMPPType value other than those it applies to, the Receiver **shall** discard the packet, terminate the protocol, and issue an RMPP ABORT packet with status code “Illegal Status” unless the illegal code appeared in an ABORT or STOP packet; in the latter case the Receiver **shall** discard the packet and terminate the protocol without issuing any additional packets.

Note that the status codes listed in [Table 142](#) represent only status of the RMPP protocol itself; other status information may be carried in the Base MAD Header Status field. Also note that in that same table, “transmitter of the packet” refers to the entity that sends the MAD containing the status code, i.e., the transmitter of the packet can be either a Sender or a Receiver.

Table 142 RMPPStatus Codes

RMPPStatus Value	Applies to RMPPTypes	Diagram Abbrev ^a	Name and Description
0	DATA, ACK		Normal. No errors or other conditions are being reported. Note that this is not an allowed status value for STOP and ABORT packets.
1	STOP	ResX	Resources Exhausted. The transmitter of the packet must terminate the protocol because it has exhausted its resources.
2-117			Reserved; reception of any RMPP packet containing any of these RMPPStatusValues shall cause the packet's recipient to emit an ABORT packet carrying RMPPStatusValue 124, "Illegal Status."
118	ABORT	T2L	Total Time Too Long. The total time taken by the entire transaction exceeded the time allocated.
119	ABORT		Inconsistent Last and PayloadLength. A packet was received with RMPPFlags.Last=1, but the total data transferred does not match the PayloadLength specified in the first packet of the transfer; or the length of data transferred in a packet equals or exceeds the PayloadLength initially specified, and RMPPLast=0 in that packet.
120	ABORT		Inconsistent First and SegmentNumber. A packet was received with RMPPFlags.First = 1 and SegmentNumber not 1, or SegmentNumber=1 and RMPPFlags.First not 1.
121	ABORT	BadT	Bad RMPPType. A packet was received containing an illegal RMPPType value.
122	ABORT	W2S	NewWindowLast Too Small. An ACK packet was received specifying a new WL value that is less than the current WL value.
123	ABORT	S2B	SegmentNumber Too Big. An ACK packet was received for a segment that has not been sent.
124	ABORT		Illegal Status. An RMPPStatus code that is undefined or applied to an invalid RMPPType was received by the transmitter of the packet.
125	ABORT	UnV	Unsupported Version. The transmitter of the packet does not support the version of RMPP designated by the RMPPVersion value it received.
126	ABORT	TMR	Too Many Retries. The vendor-specific limit on the number of retries was exceeded.
127	ABORT		Unspecified. An error in the protocol occurred that is not covered by any other status code. It is recommended that vendors use a vendor-specific code rather than "Unspecified" if feasible.
128-191	class-specific		Class-Specific. These codes are used to indicate conditions specific to the class using RMPP. Their reception may or may not indicate that the protocol should be terminated. It is recommended that these codes be used only for errors directly related to the class's use of RMPP; errors unrelated to RMPP should be indicated using class-specific encodings of the Status field of the standard MAD header.

Table 142

RMPPStatus Codes (Continued)

RMPPStatus Value	Applies to RMPPTypes	Diagram Abbrev ^a	Name and Description
192-255	STOP, ABORT		Vendor-Specific. These codes may be used to indicate vendor-specific errors that force termination of the protocol.

a. This is the abbreviation used in the flow diagrams ([13.6.5 Flow Diagrams on page 853](#)) to save space in those diagrams. Codes not used in the diagrams have no abbreviations. Code 0, “Normal,” is used where no code is indicated, so its abbreviation is blank.

13.6.2.3 DATA PACKET

The RMPP DATA packet is used to transfer data from the Sender to the Receiver. Its layout is shown in [Figure 175 RMPP DATA Packet Layout on page 846](#).

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0	Standard MAD Header (see Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782)			
...				
20				
24	RMPPVersion	RMPPType=DATA	RRespTime	RMPPFlags
28	SegmentNumber			
32	PayloadLength			
36	TransferredData (class specific)			
...				
252				

Figure 175

RMPP DATA Packet Layout

The **SegmentNumber** field is a unique identifier of the relative position of each packet within a multipacket request or response. RMPP packets with duplicate SegmentNumbers are considered duplicate packets and may be discarded. SegmentNumbers for multi-packet requests and responses begin at segment number 1. If RMPPFlags.First=1, SegmentNumber must be 1, and vice versa. If this is not the case, the Receiver emits an ABORT packet with an RMPPStatus of “Inconsistent First and Segment-Number” and terminates the transfer.

The **PayloadLength** field is valid only for the first and last packet of an RMPP transfer; if RMPPFlags.First=0 and RMPPFlags.Last=0, PayloadLength is ignored.

In the first packet of an RMPP transfer (RMPPFlags.First=1), PayloadLength may indicate the sum of the lengths, in bytes, of the Transferred-

Data fields in all packets of the entire multipacket response; this is done by using a nonzero value for PayloadLength in the first packet. If PayloadLength is zero in the first packet of an RMPP transfer, it indicates that the transfer continues until a packet is received with RMPPFlags.Last=1.

Note that PayloadLength counts all the bytes in the TransferredData field of the DATA packet format. If a class has additional header information contained in that area, the bytes used by that header information are counted in PayloadLength, even though they may appear to the class to not be usable data transferred. This applies in all cases, even when no data is actually transferred. For example, if a class has a 20-byte header in the RMPP TransferredData field, and RMPP is used to transfer no data at all, the PayloadLength is nevertheless 20.

In the last packet of an RMPP transfer (RMPPFlags.Last=1), PayloadLength indicates the number of valid bytes in the TransferredData field, allowing data transfers that are not an integral multiple of the length of the TransferredData field. A transfer terminates when either: (a) a packet containing RMPPFlags.Last=1 is received; or (b) a nonzero PayloadLength was given in the first packet of a transfer, and a packet is received containing sufficient TransferredData bytes to equal or exceed the PayloadLength originally provided. If case (b) occurs and RMPPFlags.Last is not 1 for that packet, the Receiver sends an ABORT packet with RMPPStatus of "Inconsistent Last and PayloadLength" and terminates the transfer.

The same packet may have both RMPPFlags.First=1 and RMPPFlags.Last=1. This indicates the case of a single-packet RMPP transfer. In this case PayloadLength must indicate the number of bytes of data contained in the TransferredData field of that packet. PayloadLength may be zero, indicating the case of no data transferred.

13.6.2.4 ACK PACKET

The RMPP ACK packet is used by the Receiver to acknowledge the receipt of data from the Sender, and to signal how many more packets the Receiver is able to accept before the Sender must pause, waiting for another ACK packet. The ACK packet layout is shown in [Figure 176 RMPP ACK Packet Layout on page 847](#).

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0		Standard MAD Header (see Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782)		
...				
20				
24	RMPVersion	RMPType=ACK	RRespTime	RMPPFlags
				RMPPStatus

Figure 176

RMPP ACK Packet Layout

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
28	SegmentNumber			
32	NewWindowLast			
36	Reserved			
...				
252				

Figure 176 RMPP ACK Packet Layout (Continued)

The **SegmentNumber** field identifies which packets have been received. A SegmentNumber value of S indicates that the Receiver has successfully received all packets with SegmentNumbers \leq S. After receiving an ACK packet with SegmentNumber = S, the Sender will discard any ACK packets with SegmentNumbers \leq S.

The **NewWindowLast** field indicates the SegmentNumber at which the Sender must pause, awaiting an ACK, before sending more packets. NewWindowLast must be greater than or equal to SegmentNumber and must be greater than or equal to any value of NewWindowLast previously sent in this RMPP sequence.

The SegmentNumber and NewWindowLast values received in an ACK cause the Sender to move the resend window in the transmission sequence; see [13.6.5.1 Context State Variables on page 853](#).

13.6.2.5 ABORT AND STOP PACKETS

The RMPP ABORT packet is used to signal a protocol violation and terminate the transmission sequence. The RMPP STOP packet terminates the transmission sequence for a reason allowed in the protocol, such as either side of a transfer running out of resources. The formats of these packet types are identical except for their RMPPType value and the RMPPStatus codes used, and some optional data. That format is shown in [Figure 177 RMPP ABORT & STOP Packet Layouts on page 848](#).

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0	Standard MAD Header (see Figure 149 MAD Base Format on page 782)			
...				
20				
24	RMPPVersion	RMPPType=ABORT or STOP	RRespTime	RMPPFlags
28	Reserved			

Figure 177 RMPP ABORT & STOP Packet Layouts

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
32			Reserved	
36			Optional Extended Error Data	
...				
252				

Figure 177

RMPP ABORT & STOP Packet Layouts (Continued)

The **Optional Extended Error Data** field may be used in conjunction with class-specific and vendor-specific error codes to transmit additional error information. If neither of those two types of codes are present, it is reserved.

13.6.3 TIMEOUTS

RMPP timeouts are based on four timeout values:

- PathRecord:PacketLifeTime: This is the maximum lifetime of a packet transferred from each participant to the other (possibly two different values) along a path. It is contained in the PathRecord attribute obtained from Subnet Administration that is used to obtain the parameters needed to send packets from one side to the other. (See [15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038](#).)
- PortInfo:SubnetTimeout. This is the maximum lifetime of a packet from an endpoint to any other endpoint in a subnet (see [13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts on page 791](#)). It may be used instead if the transfer is known to be within a single subnet or cases where the PacketLifeTime is unavailable. However, PacketLifeTime will in general be preferable since it may be smaller and is also valid across subnets.
- ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValue for the entity using RMPP. This is the processing time for the management agent or SA; see [13.4.6.2.2 RespTimeValue on page 791](#).
- RRespTime. This is a processing time communicated directly in the RMPP header; see [Table 141 RMPP Header Fields on page 844](#).

The above timeouts are used to calculate two timeout periods used by RMPP: the Response Timeout (Resp) and the Total Transaction Timeout (Ttime). Their calculation is described below. Note that Resp can be different for the Receiver and the Sender, since the entities on each side may have different processing times (e.g., different ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValues, when they have ClassPortInfo attributes).

13.6.3.1 RESPONSE TIMEOUT (RESP)

Resp (Response Timeout) is the maximum expected time for a packet to traverse the fabric, be processed on the other side, and a response returned to the original Sender. If it expires without the response being re-

ceived, it is assumed that either the original packet or the response was lost. Resp is defined as

$$4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times (2 \times 2^{PLT} + 2^{RTV})$$

where PLT is the PathRecord:PacketLifeTime of a port A sending a packet to a port B. The definition of RTV , loosely “response time value,” is more complex:

- At the start of each RMPP transfer sequence the value of RTV depends on the nature of the entity receiving the packet on port B:
 - If that entity has a ClassPortInfo attribute (e.g., is an agent), RTV is the entity’s ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValue.
 - Otherwise (the entity has no ClassPortInfo or is unreachable within the time constraints), RTV is 20, corresponding to a processing time of approximately 4.3 seconds.²²

It is recommended that a non-default RRespTime value be provided in Sender-initiated data transfers in order to avoid using the default as described above.

- During the transfer sequence, the entity on port B may change RTV , and hence Resp, by encoding a non-default RRespTime value in any RMPP packet; the value received is used to compute Resp for subsequent packets, until and unless it is changed again. Any such adjustments to RTV are specific to the RMPP transfer sequence in which they occur; they do not affect any other sequence.

Resp is used by the Sender when sending a DATA packet and expecting an ACK in return at the end of a transmission window. See [Figure 183, RMPP Receiver Termination Flow, on page 859](#) for the Sender behavior when this time period expires.

13.6.3.2 TOTAL TRANSACTION TIMEOUT (TTIME)

Ttime (Total Transaction Timeout) is a timeout of the entire duration of an RMPP data transfer sequence. It is used by the Receiver to abort an RMPP sequence in the event that the Sender becomes unresponsive.

Ttime is calculated by the Receiver after it receives the first DATA packet of the sequence, whose PayloadLength field may contain the total number of data bytes to be transferred (see [13.6.2.3 DATA Packet on page 846](#)). If the PayloadLength is provided in that first packet, Ttime is calculated as²³

where:

22. The value 20 is chosen to be consistent with [C13-13.1.1: on page 791](#), even though the entity being communicated with is not an agent. Communication that is not between managers and agents occurs, for example, between SA and its clients; those clients do not necessarily have ClassPortInfo attributes.

$$4.096 \mu\text{sec} \times 8 \times \left\lceil \frac{\text{Payloadlength}}{220} \right\rceil \times (2^{Ps} + 2^{Rr} + 2^{Pr} + 2^{RTV})$$

- the notation $\lceil \dots \rceil$ indicates rounding up the division
- Ps is the PacketLifeTime of the path used from Sender to Receiver
- Pr is the PacketLifeTime of the path used from Receiver to Sender
- Rr is the Receiver's own RespTimeValue
- RTV is the sender's response time value defined in [13.6.3.1 Response Timeout \(Resp\) on page 849](#).
- 220 is the number of data bytes transferred in a single RMPP DATA packet
- 8 is a multiplier to allow for lost packet retransmission.

If no indication of the PayloadLength is present, the class may define its own timeout. If that is not done, a default of 40 seconds is used.

13.6.4 LADDER DIAGRAM (EXAMPLE)

[Figure 178 RMPP Example on page 852](#) illustrates the packet flow for a Receiver-initiated RMPP transfer.

In [Figure 178](#), the Receiver initiates the multi-packet protocol by first (not shown in the diagram) creating a receive context for the transfer (see [13.6.5.1 Context State Variables on page 853](#)) and then sending a packet whose method or other characteristics informs the Sender class what data to transfer and the TransactionID to use for the transfer. That packet is not itself part of the RMPP transfer; its RMPPFlags.Active bit is 0.

When the request packet is sent, the Receiver initializes the response timer for the transaction, using the initial Response Timeout (described in [13.6.3.1 Response Timeout \(Resp\) on page 849](#)). If the Receiver does not receive a response packet after the response timer expires, it may retry the request a vendor-specific number of times; after all retries are exhausted, it terminates.

When the Sender has the data to send, it sends the first DATA packet; this has SegmentNumber=1 and RMPPFlags.First=1, and may contain a PayloadLength indicating the size of the total transfer. Since each transmission sequence begins with a window size of one, the Sender then waits for an ACK packet, using its Resp timeout for this transfer. If an ACK packet is not received in time, it may retry, ABORTing if retries fail.

23. This formula is intended to represent the total time to transfer a sequence of PayloadLength bytes with a window size of 1 and a multiplier of 8 to allow for retries. The use of larger window sizes will decrease the transfer time significantly.

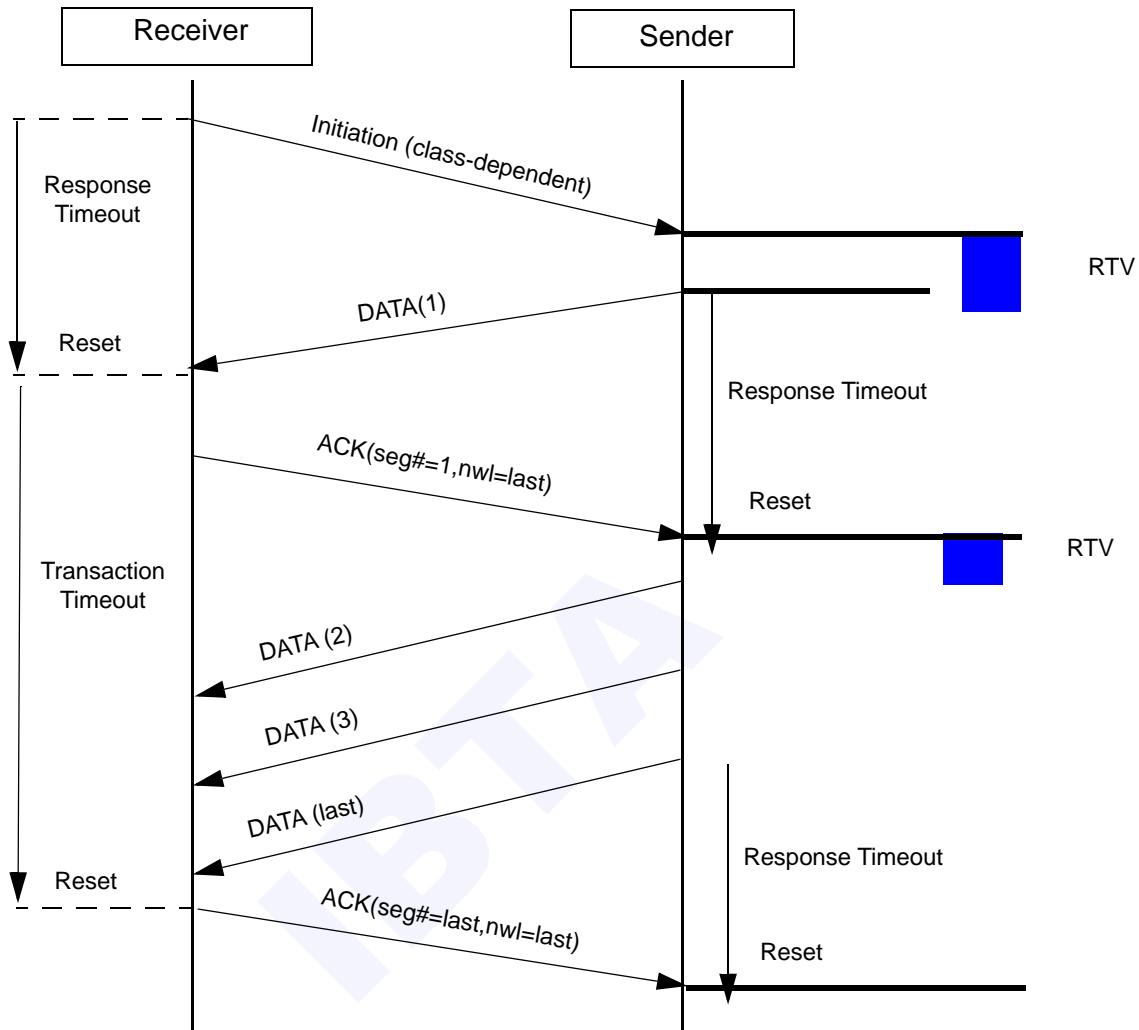


Figure 178 RMPP Example

When Receiver receives the initial DATA packet, it resets its original timer set for receiving the initial DATA packet and it sets a timer using the transaction timer (described in [13.6.3 Timeouts on page 849](#)) for the entire RMPP transaction. It then responds with an ACK packet that acknowledges receipt of SegmentNumber 1 and informs the Sender of a new window size, picking a value the Receiver deems appropriate; for example, it may allow sending a number of packets equal to the number of receive work requests it has enqueued for the transfer. In [Figure 178](#), for simplicity, the window size is set large enough to encompass the entire rest of the transfer. If it were not, additional ACKs and pauses between sending of DATA packets by the Sender would be necessary.

On receiving the ACK, the Sender begins transmission of a stream of DATA packets, starting with SegmentNumber=2. Each time a DATA packet is received, the Receiver can optionally send an ACK packet ac-

knowledging the receipt of DATA packets up to the SegmentNumber received (not illustrated.)

The Sender continues sending packets until all the packets up to the window size specified by the Receiver have been sent. In [Figure 178](#), this would be all the packets to be sent. The last packet sent has RMP-PFlags.Last=1, and PayloadLength set equal to the amount of data contained in the last packet. After sending the last packet in the window, the Sender initializes its timeout to Response Timeout and waits for an ACK packet.

The Receiver sends an ACK at the end of the window, indicating that the final packet of the window was successfully received. If this were the last packet sent, the Receiver resets its transaction timer, marks the transaction as successfully completed and sets a timer to delete the context after Response Timeout (described in [13.6.3.1 Response Timeout \(Resp\) on page 849](#)) to ensure that any subsequent resends by the Sender (due to lost ACK packets) does not result in the Sender incorrectly assuming that the transaction completed in error.

If an ACK is not received within the Sender's timeout, the Sender resends the DATA packets from the last acknowledged packet up to the end of the current window, with ABORT if the retries fail.

If the Receiver does not receive all the packets in this transaction within its transaction timer, it ABORTs the transaction and terminates

13.6.5 FLOW DIAGRAMS

The flow diagrams which follow define the characteristics of RMPP that are constant across all classes using this facility.

In order to be sufficiently detailed, this description contains constructs such as explicit state variables, assumptions about threading and state, etc. It is neither required nor expected that any implementation implement these literally. Rather, these constructs are intended only as a way to specifically describe the external behavior of the protocol to ensure on-the-wire interoperability among implementations.

13.6.5.1 CONTEXT STATE VARIABLES

The description assumes that each RMPP transaction operates in a context, meaning a collection of state variables specific to that transaction whose settings are modified during the course of the operation. Each set of such variables is associated with a tuple of {TID, GID, class} or {TID, LID, class} (see [13.4.6.4 TransactionID usage on page 794](#)), which is constant over the course of each RMPP transmission sequence and serves to uniquely identify that sequence. The number of such contexts simultaneously maintained is vendor-dependent; a minimum of one is required to

perform the protocol. Both the Sender and the Receiver will in any implementation contain state variables representing information beyond what is specified here.

The descriptions of window and state variables below refer to the SegmentNumber field of RMPP DATA and ACK packets, often abbreviated “seq#” in the diagrams and text of this section.

The state variables relating to the retry window are WF, WL, and NS on the Sender side; and ES on the Receiver side. The relationship between these and the current window is illustrated in [Figure 179 RMPP Window State Variable Relationships on page 854](#).

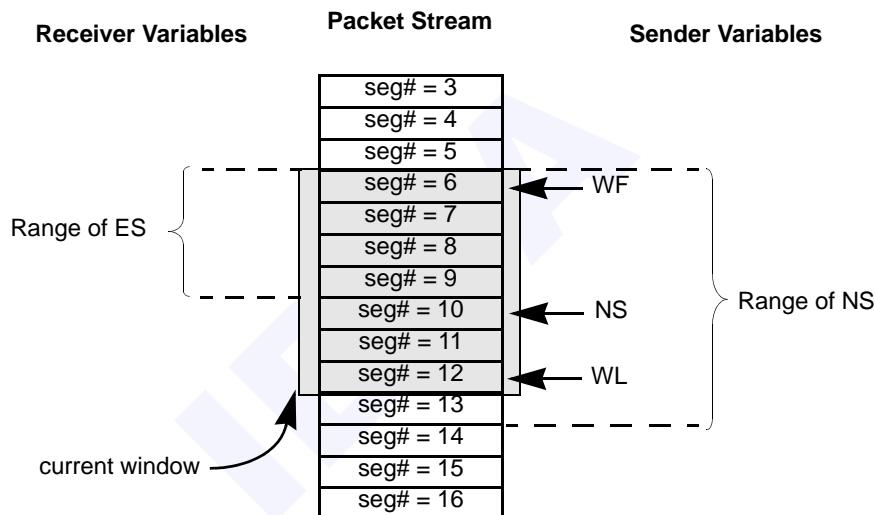


Figure 179 RMPP Window State Variable Relationships

- **WF** = Window First: Number of the segment that is the first packet in the current window.
 - **WL** = Window Last: Number of the segment that is the last packet in the current window.
 - **NS** = Next Segment number. The number of the segment that will be transmitted next.
 - **ES** = Expected Segment number. The seg# that the Receiver expects to receive in the next packet containing data.

If the protocol is operating correctly, it is always the case that $WF \leq WL$, $WF \leq NS \leq (WL+1)$, and $WF \leq ES < NS$. Should either side determine that those relationships are violated, the protocol terminates either by explicitly sending an ABORT packet or by timeout. For example, if the Sender receives an ACK acknowledging a packet that has not yet been sent, implying $ES \geq NS$, an ABORT is sent to the Receiver by the Sender.

Additional state variables used are:

- **IsDS** = Is Double-Sided. This is a boolean value (True or False) indicating whether the context is being used as the first half of a double-sided transfer (discussed in [13.6.6.3 Sender-Initiated Double-Sided Transfer on page 864](#)). It is present in both Receiver and Sender contexts.
- **Resp** = The current Resp timeout value, defined in [13.6.3.1 Response Timeout \(Resp\) on page 849](#). It is present in both Receiver and Sender contexts.
- **Ttime** = The current total transaction timeout value, as defined in [13.6.3.2 Total Transaction Timeout \(Ttime\) on page 850](#). It is present only in the Receiver context.

13.6.5.2 CONTEXT & DISPATCHING

[Figure 180 RMPP Dispatcher on page 855](#) illustrates the operation of the top-level dispatcher that resumes, and in some cases creates and starts RMPP operation within particular contexts.

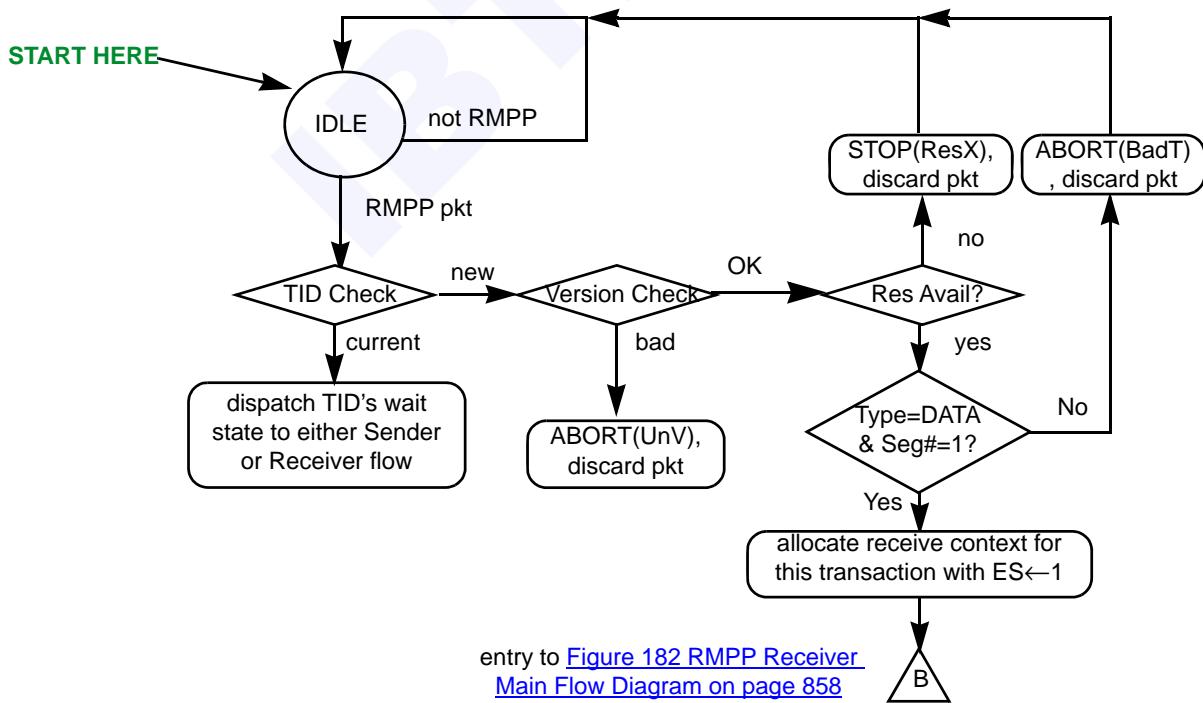


Figure 180 RMPP Dispatcher

o13-21.1.6: A class implementing RMPP **shall** exhibit the external, on-the-wire behavior implied by [Figure 180 RMPP Dispatcher on page 855](#).

Entry to [Figure 180](#) is at the point labelled START HERE.

The following abbreviations are used in [Figure 180](#):

- **Res Avail?** = the resources are available to allocate a new Receiver context.
- **TID Check** = combination of TID, SLID or SGID, and class of a packet identifies it as being part of a transfer that is either in process (current), or has been completed or terminated (old) or is neither of those two cases (new).
- **Version Check** = determines if the RMPPVersion in the packet indicates a version supported by this implementation.

When either the Receiver or the Sender protocols enter a wait state, they implicitly return to the IDLE state in the dispatcher.

If RMPP packets for a transmission sequence are received while that sequence's processing is under way—after it has been dispatched and before it has re-entered a wait—those packets are implicitly queued in the order in which they are received. When the processing of that sequence re-enters the wait state, it is re-dispatched with the next waiting packet.

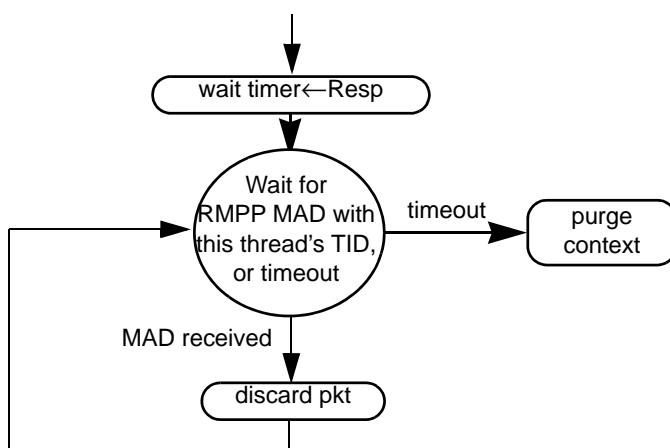
If RMPP packets are received for a transmission sequence that is not currently executing, but another transfer is currently executing, a separate thread and/or context may be created and dispatched; whether this is done is implementation-specific and may depend on the resources available.

When any currently in-process transmission sequence returns to its wait state, any other may be dispatched with a waiting packet. While the order of packets within any given transfer is preserved, ordering across sequences need not be preserved.

13.6.5.3 COMMON TERMINATION FLOW

Both the Sender and the Receiver use a common flow as their final termination operation to wait for any packets that may have been delayed in the network and as a result arrive after the protocol has terminated. That flow is shown in [Figure 181 RMPP Common Termination Flow on page 857](#). This flow is entered from several others, and is implicitly required whenever they are required. However, note that while [Figure 181](#) is not used for non-error termination in the Receiver case; it has its own termination for that situation.

Note that by the time the flow of [Figure 181](#) is entered, the transaction has completed. Receipt of an ABORT therefore has no effect; ABORT packets are discarded like all other packets.

**Figure 181****RMPP Common Termination Flow****13.6.5.4 RECEIVER FLOW DIAGRAM**

[Figure 182 RMPP Receiver Main Flow Diagram on page 858](#) shows the Receiver logical flow. In addition to what is shown there, Receiver can send a STOP message at any time and terminate this transaction. The processing at the end of a successful Receive operation is shown in [Figure 183 RMPP Receiver Termination Flow on page 859](#); it is separate from [Figure 182](#) only for convenience of representation.

o13-21.1.7: A class implementing RMPP **shall** exhibit the external, on-the-wire behavior implied by [Figure 182 RMPP Receiver Main Flow Diagram on page 858](#).

Entry to [Figure 182](#) is at the points labelled B, C or D, depending on how the transfer is initiated.

Abbreviations and notation used in [Figure 182](#) and [Figure 183](#):

- **terminate** = enter [Figure 181 RMPP Common Termination Flow on page 857](#). This is used in [Figure 182](#) only to terminate in error cases situations; normal termination enters [Figure 183](#).
- **MAD OK?** = partly class-specific test that various characteristics of the received MAD are appropriate. E.g.: Status in the Standard MAD Header is a value expected; method is a method expected; attribute is an attribute expected; etc. In addition, if the RRespTime value in the packet is not the default value, the Resp timeout for this sequence is adjusted accordingly (see [13.6.3.1 Response Timeout \(Resp\) on page 849](#)).
- **Type?** = dispatch based on RMPPType field.

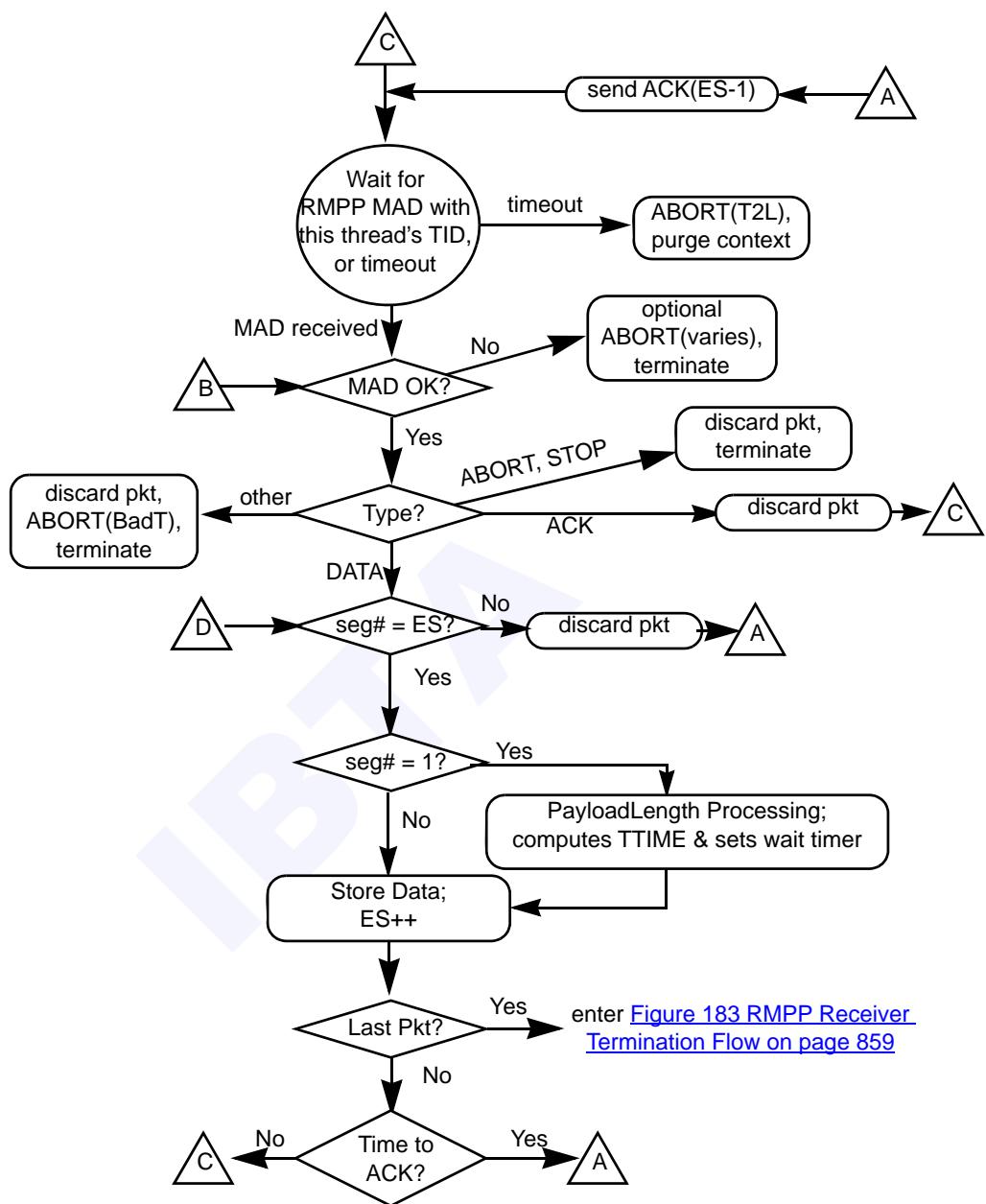
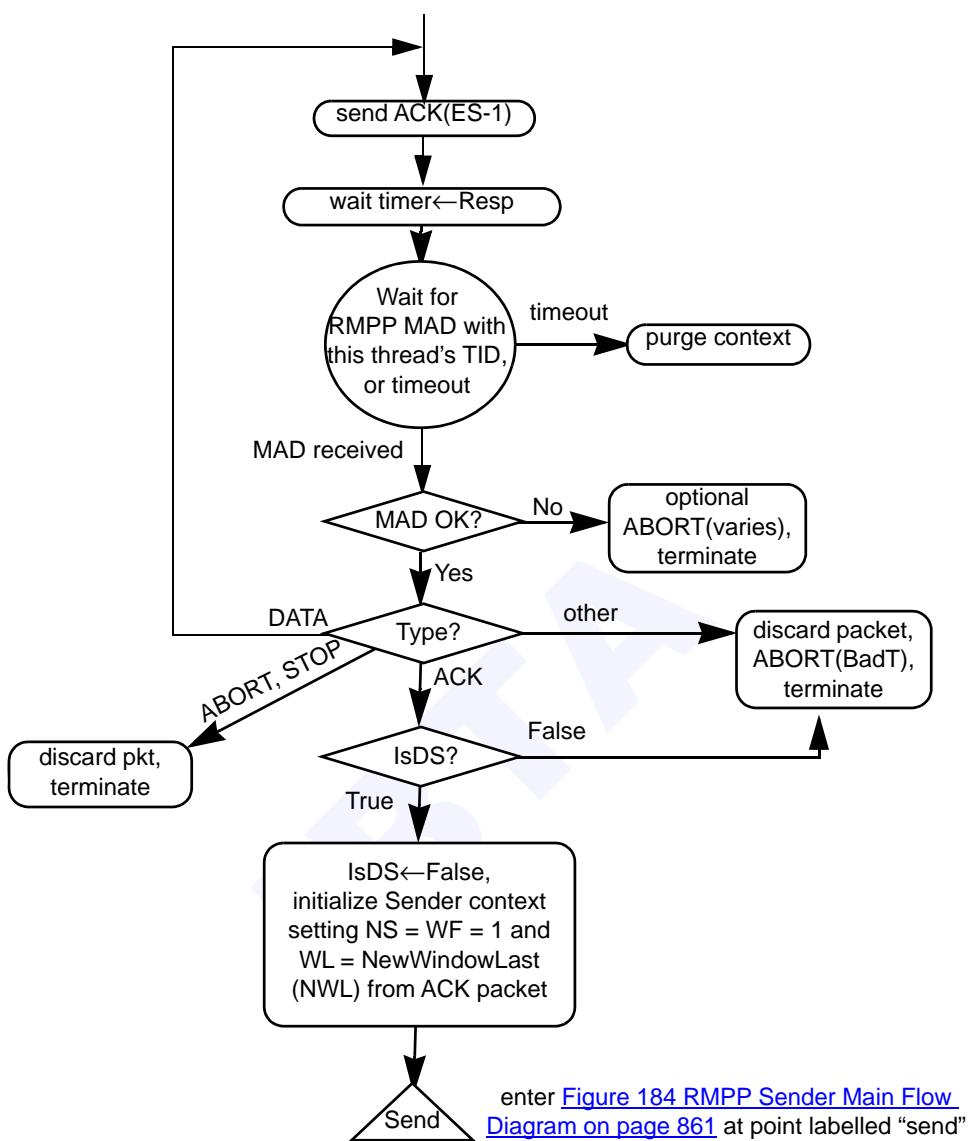


Figure 182 RMPP Receiver Main Flow Diagram

- **Last Pkt?** – based on either the RMPPFlags.Last value or on the payload length, the packet just received is determined to be the last packet of the transaction. Consistency of PayloadLength and flag settings is checked here and may result in an ABORT packet being sent; see discussion in [13.6.2.3 DATA Packet on page 846](#).

**Figure 183** RMPP Receiver Termination Flow

- **Time to ACK?** = the Receiver decides to send an ACK of the last-received segment. This must be done if the packet was the last in the current window; it may also be done at any time prior to that (vendor-specific).
- **Store Data** = the data transferred in the last-received packet is stored and/or transferred to the receiving agent or manager. If this was the last packet of a transmission, the PayloadLength indicates the amount of data contained in the packet; otherwise the entire data part of the packet (class-specific) is transferred.

- **Abort(*value*)** = an RMPP packet is sent with RMPPType=ABORT and RMPPStatus=*value*.
- **ACK(ES-1)** = an RMPP packet is sent with RMPPType=ACK, SegmentNumber=ES-1, and NewWindowLast = what the Receiver desires to indicate as the length of the current window.

13.6.5.5 SENDER MAIN FLOW DIAGRAM

Figure 184 RMPP Sender Main Flow Diagram on page 861 shows the Sender logical flow. In addition to what is shown there, Sender can send a STOP message at any time and terminate this transaction.

o13-21.1.8: A class implementing RMPP **shall** exhibit the external, on-the-wire behavior implied by [Figure 184 RMPP Sender Main Flow Diagram on page 861](#).

Abbreviations and notation used in [Figure 184](#):

- **terminate** = enter [Figure 181 RMPP Common Termination Flow on page 857](#).
- **MAD OK?** = identical to the “MAD OK?” processing of [13.6.5.4 Receiver Flow Diagram on page 857](#). The class-specific tests may, however, be different.
- **Retry?** = vendor-specific number of retries has not been exceeded.
- **send DATA, inc NS** = send one or more DATA packets and increment NS accordingly. E.g., enqueue send requests for DATA packets that transfer data using successive SequenceNumbers, incrementing NS by 1 for each enqueued request. The sending (or enqueueing) process should stop when either (a) NS reaches WL+1; or (a) all the data for this transmission sequence has been sent.
- **update WF, WL** = set WL to NewWindowLast in the incoming ACK packet and WF to SegmentNumber+1.
- **Type?** = dispatch based on RMPPType field.
- **seg#?** = dispatch based on the value of the segment # field in the MAD.

13.6.5.6 DIRECTION SWITCH

A switch from Sender to Receiver, and vice versa, is required as part of a double-sided transfer (see [13.6.6.3 Sender-Initiated Double-Sided Transfer on page 864](#)). The basic sequence for this direction switch is as follows (ignoring errors, retries, etc.):

- The original Receiver, on receipt of the final DATA packet of the initial sequence, sends an ACK of that packet (true whether it's double-sided or not).

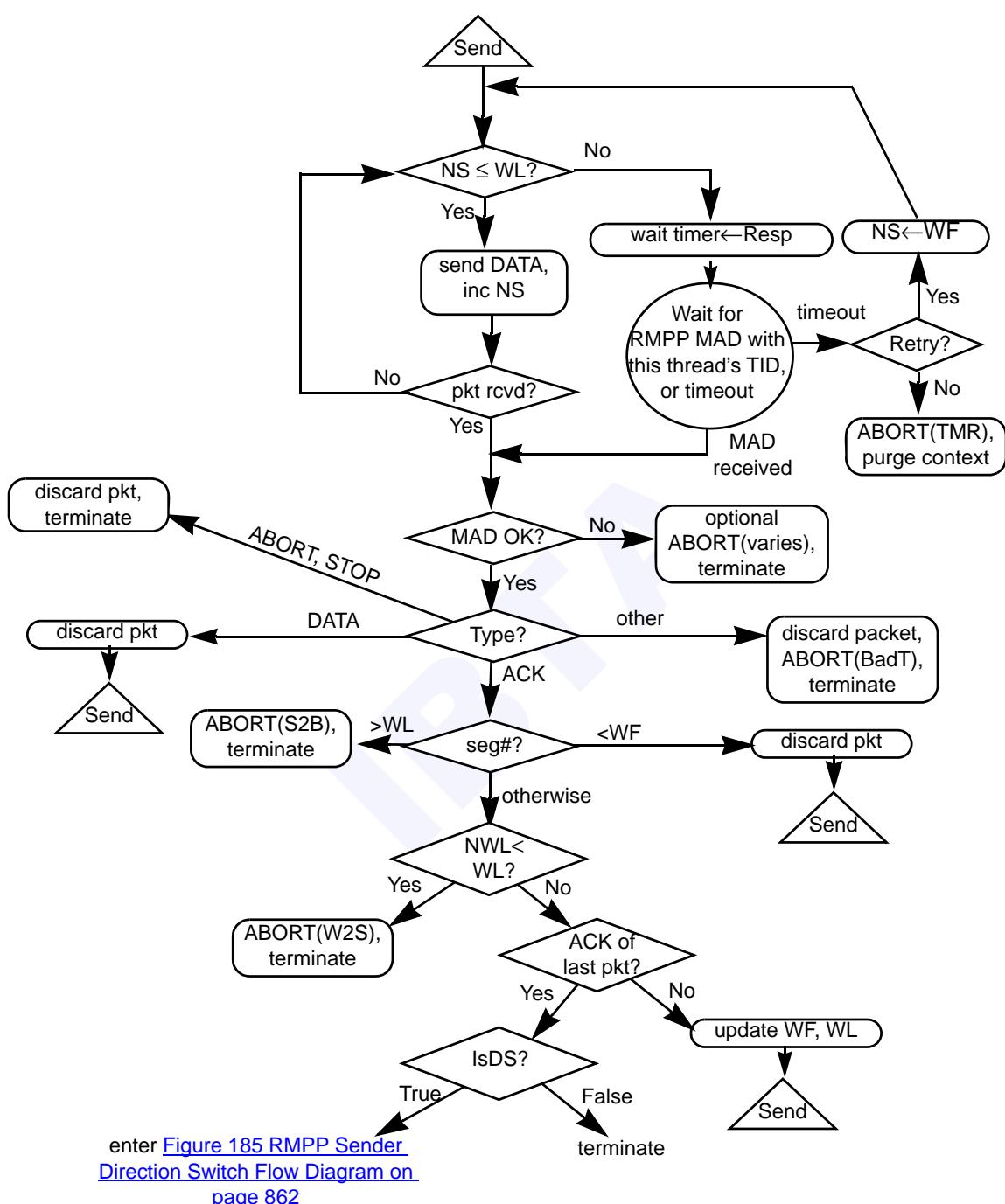


Figure 184

RMPP Sender Main Flow Diagram

- The original Sender, on receiving that ACK, responds with an ACK indicating a SegmentNumber of 0 and whatever window size it wishes to use initially; it then enters the Receiver Main Flow, becoming a Receiver, and begins receiving packets normally.
- The original Receiver, on receiving an ACK from the original Sender, enters the Sender Main Flow, becoming a Sender, and begins sending packets normally.

[Figure 185 RMPP Sender Direction Switch Flow Diagram on page 862](#) provides the details of the Sender direction switch operation. The Receiver direction switch flow is contained in [Figure 183 RMPP Receiver Termination Flow on page 859](#). The abbreviations and notation used in [Figure 185](#) are the same as those used in prior figures.

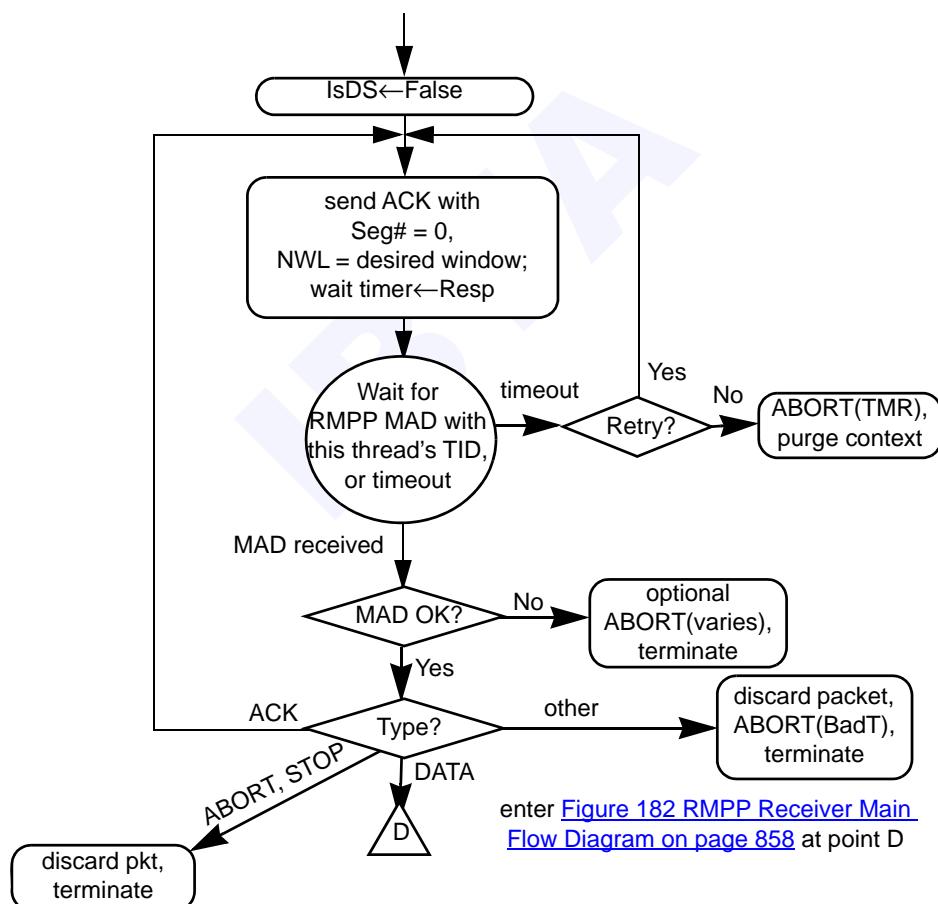


Figure 185

RMPP Sender Direction Switch Flow Diagram

13.6.6 STARTUP SCENARIOS

This section illustrates how RMPP transfers may be initiated. Other techniques than those described may be used; this is in general class-dependent.

13.6.6.1 RECEIVER-INITIATED TRANSFER

A Receiver may effectively initiate an RMPP transfer by sending a single-packet MAD which the receiving class interprets as a request for the initiation of an RMPP transfer. For example, this is what the GetTable() method of SA does.

A way for the Receiver to do this is to perform the following sequence. (Issues of allocating receive buffers, posting receive work requests, etc., are not covered.)

- 1) Allocate a TID for the operation.
- 2) Allocate a receive context for the receiving operation, setting ES = 1 and IsDS=0.
- 3) Register the context with the dispatcher, using the TID, LID or GID of this endport (the Receiver), and the class of either the Sender or the Receiver depending on whether which is a class manager or agent.
- 4) Operating in that context, perform the actions shown in [Figure 186 RMPP Receiver-Initiated Flow on page 863](#), ultimately either terminating or entering [Figure 182 RMPP Receiver Main Flow Diagram on page 858](#) at point B.

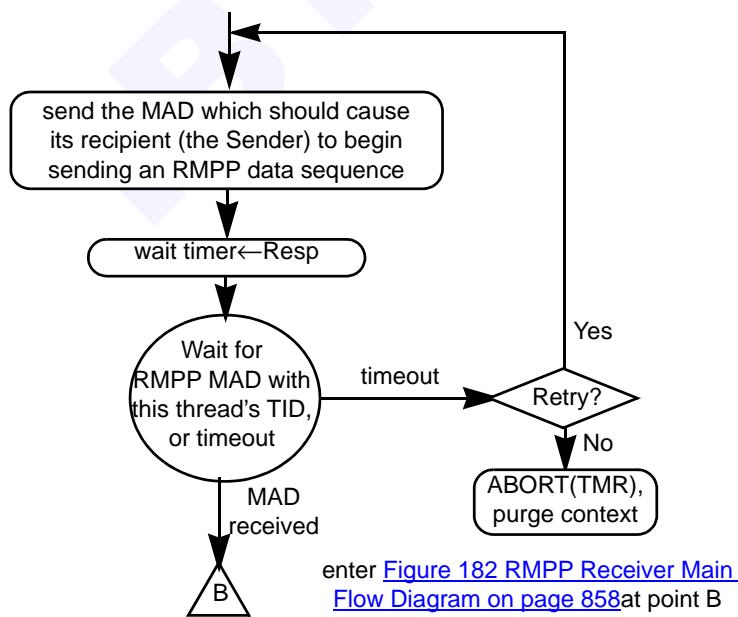


Figure 186 RMPP Receiver-Initiated Flow

On receiving the request MAD, the manager or agent on the Sender side should perform the steps described below in [13.6.6.2 Sender-Initiated Transfer on page 864](#), with the exception that instead of a new TID, it uses the TID provided in the request MAD. This will cause the first DATA packet to be sent (with RMPPFlags.Active=1), retried if needed. On receiving that

first DATA packet, the Receiver-side dispatcher dispatches the previously prepared context and the transfer has begun.

13.6.6.2 SENDER-INITIATED TRANSFER

A Sender may initiate an RMPP transfer performing the following sequence (issues of allocating send buffers, posting send work requests, etc., are not covered):

- 1) Allocate a TID for the operation.
- 2) Allocate a send context for the receiving operation, setting the state variables as follows:
 - WF = WL = NS = 1; IsDS = 0.
 - other state variables indicating the class, method, attribute, data source, etc., of the packets to be sent as appropriate to the class and the implementation.
- 3) Register the context with the dispatcher, using the TID, the LID of the endnode this operation is being performed on, and the class of the manager performing this request or the target of the request packet.
- 4) Enter the Sender state diagram at the point labelled Send.

This will cause the request packet to be sent, and retries performed appropriately. The Receiver-side context is allocated and initiated on receipt of the first RMPP packet as indicated in [Figure 180 RMPP Dispatcher on page 855](#).

13.6.6.3 SENDER-INITIATED DOUBLE-SIDED TRANSFER

It is also possible for a single transaction to involve an RMPP transfer sent in one direction followed by another RMPP transfer in the other direction, typically sent in response. This is used, for example, in the GetMulti() method of SA. This may be accomplished as follows:

- 1) Allocate a TID, initialize and register with the dispatcher both send and receive contexts as described in the prior two sections, steps 1, 2, and 3, except that in the Sender context, IsDS=1.
- 2) Begin the initial transfer by starting the send operation at the point labelled Send. The method or other indication should be interpreted on the other side as initiating a double-sided transfer, causing the receive context to set IsDS=1.
- 3) When the Send operation terminates, IsDS=1 in the initially-used Sender and Receiver contexts will cause a transfer in the opposite direction to be initiated, according to the sequence described in [13.6.5.6 Direction Switch on page 860](#).

CHAPTER 14: SUBNET MANAGEMENT

14.1 SUBNET MANAGEMENT MODEL

Each subnet has at least one subnet manager (SM). Each SM resides on a port of a CA, router, or switch and can be implemented either in hardware or software. When there are multiple SMs on a subnet, one SM will be the master SM. The remaining SMs must be standby SMs. There is only one SM per port.

The master SM is a key element in initializing and configuring an IB subnet. The master SM is elected as part of the initialization process for the subnet and is responsible for:

- Discovering the physical topology of the subnet
- Assigning Local Identifiers (LIDs) to the endnodes, switches, and routers
- Establishing possible paths among the endnodes
- Sweeping the subnet, discovering topology changes and managing changes as nodes are added and deleted.

The communication between the master SM and the SMAs, and among the SMs, is performed with subnet management packets (SMPs). SMPs provide a fundamental mechanism for subnet management.

There are two types of SMPs: LID routed and directed route. LID routed SMPs are forwarded through the subnet (by the switches) based on the LID of the destination. Directed route SMPs are forwarded based on a vector of port numbers that define a path through the subnet. Directed route SMPs are used to implement several management functions, in particular, before the LIDs are assigned to the nodes. SMPs are specified in [14.2 Subnet Management Class on page 865](#).

Every switch, CA, and router has a subnet management agent (SMA), managed by the master SM. SMA are specified in [14.3 Subnet Management Agent on page 975](#).

The details of operation for both master and standby SMs are described in [14.4 Subnet Manager on page 989](#)

14.2 SUBNET MANAGEMENT CLASS

This section defines the Subnet Management class of MADs. These MADs are also referred to as Subnet Management Packets, or SMPs. The purpose of this class is to provide subnet configuration, monitoring and

query of nodes within a subnet. SMPs are exchanged between a SM and SMAs on the subnet as described in [Table 140 SM MAD Sources and Destinations on page 826](#).

There are two management classes dedicated to subnet management.

C14-1: The subnet management classes **shall** be identified by the MAD-Header:MgmtClass value of 0x01 for the LID Routed class and 0x81 for the Directed Route class as listed in [Table 122 Management Class Values on page 784](#).

This section will describe class-specific methods, attributes, standard header fields and protocols for the Subnet Management Classes.

14.2.1 DATAGRAM FORMATS AND USE

C14-2: The datagrams in this class **shall** conform to the MAD format and usage rules as specified in [13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781](#).

14.2.1.1 SMP DATA FORMAT - LID ROUTED

LID Routed SMPs are routed through the subnet using the normal switch forwarding tables set up during subnet initialization.

C14-3: A LID routed SMP **shall** have a format shown in [Figure 187 on page 866](#) and [Table 143 on page 867](#).

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24			M_Key	
28				
32			Reserved (32 bytes)	
...				
60				
64			SMP Data (64 bytes)	
128			Reserved (128 bytes)	
252				

Figure 187

SMP Format (LID Routed)

Table 143

SMP Fields (LID Routed)

Object	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 .
M_Key	8 bytes	A 64 bit key, which is employed for SM authentication. Usage is defined in 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 .
Reserved	32 bytes	For aligning the SMP data field with the directed route SMP data field.
SMP Data	64 bytes	64 byte field of SMP data used to contain the method's attribute.
Reserved	128 bytes	Reserved.

14.2.1.2 SMP DATA FORMAT - DIRECTED ROUTE

Directed route SMPs are routed through the subnet from SMA to SMA using a store-and-forward technique between neighboring nodes. They are therefore not dependent on routing table entries. Directed route SMPs are primarily used for discovering the physical connectivity of a subnet before it has been initialized.

C14-4: A Directed Routed SMP **shall** have a format shown in [Figure 188 SMP Format \(Directed Route\) on page 867](#) and [Table 144 SMP Fields \(Directed Route\) on page 868](#).

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0		
0	Common MAD Header1					
4	D	Status	Hop Pointer	Hop Count		
...	Common MAD Header2					
20						
24	M_Key					
28						
32	DrSLID		DrDLID			
36	Reserved (28 bytes)					
...						
60						
64	SMP Data (64 bytes)					
128	Initial Path (64 bytes)					

Figure 188

SMP Format (Directed Route)

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
192			Return Path (64 bytes)	
...				
252				

Figure 188 SMP Format (Directed Route) (Continued)

Table 144 SMP Fields (Directed Route)

Object	Length	Description
Common MAD Header1	4 bytes	Bytes 0-3 of the common MAD as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 .
D	1 bit	Normally part of the class specific status field, this Direction bit is used by directed routing to determine direction of packet. If 0, the direction is outbound, from SM to node, or in the case of trap, from node to SM. If 1, the direction is inbound, from node to SM, or in the case of trap repress, from SM to node.
Status	15 bits	Code indicating status of method, as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795 . There are no SMP status bits (bits 14-8 must be zero).
Hop Pointer	1 byte	Hop Pointer is used to indicate the current byte of the Initial/Return Path field.
Hop Count	1 byte	Hop Count is used to contain the number of valid bytes in the Initial/Return Path. It indicates how many direct route ‘hops’ to take.
Common MAD Header2	16 bytes	Bytes 8-23 of common MAD as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 .
M_Key	8 bytes	A 64-bit key, which is employed for SM authentication. Usage is defined in 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 .
DrSLID	2 bytes	Directed route source LID. Used in directed routing.
DrDLID	2 bytes	Directed route destination LID. Used in directed routing.
Reserved	28 bytes	For the purpose of aligning the Data field on a 64 byte boundary.
Data	64 bytes	64-byte field of SMP data used to contain the method’s attribute.
Initial Path	64 bytes	64-byte field containing the initial directed path. Each byte in this field represents a physical port (not switch port 0).
Return Path	64 bytes	64-byte field containing the returning directed path. Each byte in this field represents a physical port (not switch port 0).

14.2.2 SMPs AND DIRECTED ROUTE ALGORITHM

Directed route SMPs provide a mechanism for forwarding management packets throughout a configured, unconfigured, or partially configured subnet. This mechanism can be used to discover nodes in the subnet,

1 perform diagnostics or verify link connectivity, bypassing the normal
2 switch LID forwarding mechanism.

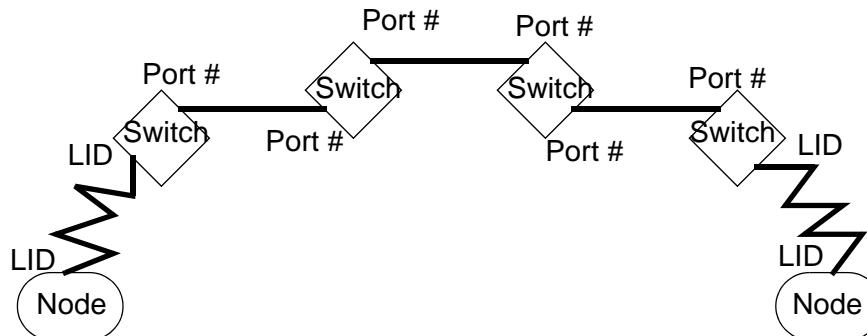
3 There are two components that support this mechanism in subnets: the
4 Permissive destination address and directed routing. The Permissive des-
5 tination address is defined in [4.1 Terminology And Concepts on page 159](#).
6 When a node, including switches, receives a packet with this address it
7 forwards it to its Subnet Management Interface. Directed routing permits
8 the definition of an explicit route, based on intervening switch port num-
9 bers, that a packet is to traverse throughout the subnet.

10 Directed routing, in general, progresses much more slowly than normal
11 switching. This is because each switch along the route has to perform
12 some processing on every directed routed packet. Moreover, the IBA per-
13 mits nodes to reserve a minimal amount of buffering for processing of
14 SMPs. As a result, SMPs may be discarded in the subnet if the injection
15 rate exceeds the buffering and processing capacity of the subnet and end-
16 nodes. Therefore, it is recommended that directed routing only be used
17 where necessary.

18 The directed routing algorithm provides a method to use normal LID
19 routing on either side of the directed route. No support is provided for
20 more than one directed route. It is not possible to specify two or more di-
21 rected routes with intervening LID routes. This is illustrated in [Figure 189](#)
22 [Complete route using directed routing on page 870](#). The complete route
23 between two nodes is made up of three parts, each of them potentially
24 empty:

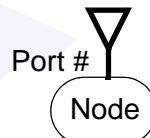
- 25 • From the source node to the source switch. This part uses LID rout-
26 ing, the source node and the source switch are identified by their
27 LIDs. There may be other switches between them but this portion of
28 the subnet has already been configured to allow LID routing.
- 29 • From the source switch to the destination switch. This part uses di-
30 rect routing. The route is specified by stating the port number a pack-
31 et must use to leave a switch. This portion of the subnet need not
32 have been configured to allow LID routing.
- 33 • From the destination switch to the destination node. This part uses
34 LID routing, the destination node and the destination switch are iden-
35 tified by their LIDs. There may be other switches between them but
36 this portion of the subnet has already been configured to allow LID
37 routing.

38 Since each part may be empty, there are eight combinations, although
39 only four are really useful:



SOURCE Figure 189 Complete route DESTINATION
using directed routing

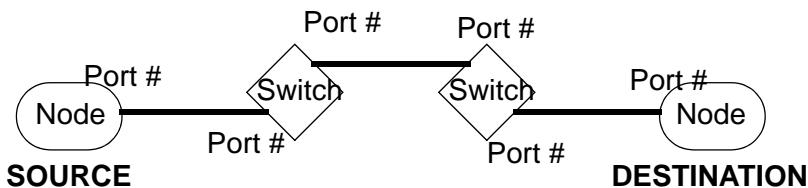
- All three parts are empty; this refers to the case when HopCount=0, DrSLID=0xFFFF and DrDLID=0xFFFF. This is used to loopback to oneself before a LID has been assigned. See [Figure 190 Loopback using directed routing on page 870](#).



SOURCE DESTINATION

Figure 190 Loopback using directed routing

- Both LID routed parts are empty. This is a pure directed route used in a portion of a subnet not configured for LID routing. See [Figure 191 Pure directed route on page 870](#).



SOURCE Figure 191 Pure directed DESTINATION

- One of the LID routed parts is empty. This is used when a portion of the subnet, either at the source or at the destination, has been configured for LID routing. See [Figure 192 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the source on page 871](#) and [Figure 193 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the destination on page 871](#).

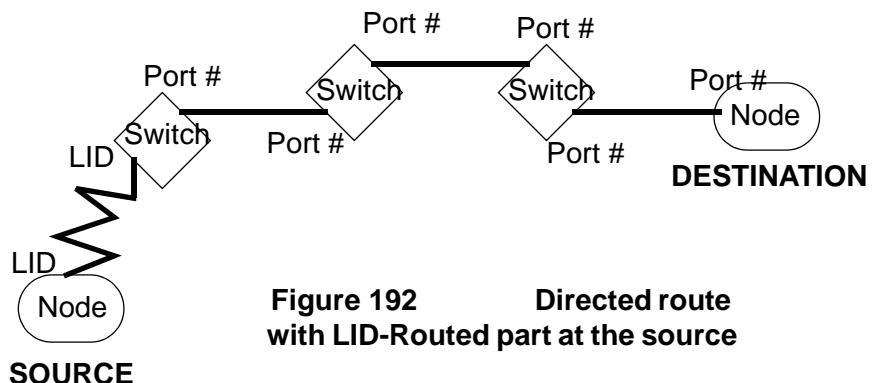


Figure 192 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the source

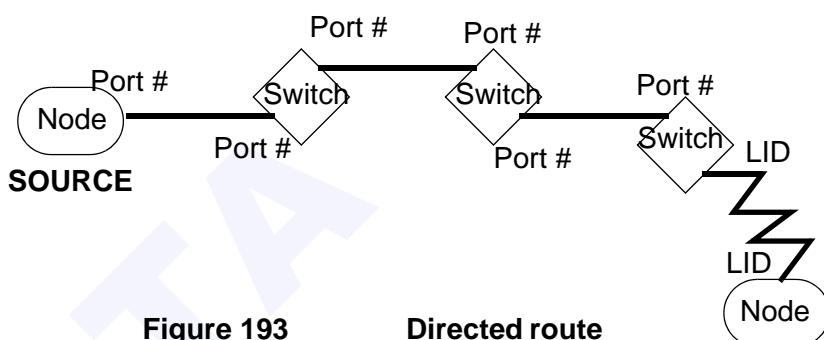


Figure 193 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the destination

- No part is empty. This is the general case as illustrated in [Figure 189 Complete route using directed routing on page 870](#) when portions of the subnet have been initialized both at the source and destination but not in between.

The following section describes how a directed route packet is initialized, how a return packet is initialized, and the algorithm used along the route by switches to forward the packets. Note that in the switched portions of a route, the nodes are not directly involved; the packet is switched along the path just as any other packet is.

14.2.2.1 OUTGOING DIRECTED ROUTE SMP INITIALIZATION

C14-5: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-5.1.1](#):

C14-5.1.1: A SM or SMA **shall** originate a directed route SMP.

C14-5.a1: The SM **shall** insure that all nodes on a LID routed segment **shall** be properly initialized for LID routing.

In the following sections, the source node where the SM or SMA originator resides is called the requester node, and the destination node is called the responder node, even when describing the return process. When directed

route is used, it refers to the directed route part only, not the complete route.

C14-6: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-6.1.1](#):

C14-6.1.1: The fields of the directed route SMP **shall** be initialized as follows:

- Mgmt Class **shall** be set to the directed route Subnet Management class as specified in [Table 122 Management Class Values on page 784](#).
- Method **shall** be set to SubnGet(), SubnSet(), or SubnTrap() as specified in [Table 123 Common Management Methods on page 786](#).
- D bit **shall** be set to 0.
- Hop Pointer **shall** be set to 0.
- Hop Count **shall** be set to the number of links traversed along the directed route part of the path. Valid values are from 0 to 63. In [Figure 189 Complete route using directed routing on page 870](#), this number would be 3. In [Figure 190 Loopback using directed routing on page 870](#), this number would be 0.
- If the directed route part starts from the requester node, i.e. there is no LID routed part at the source as illustrated in [Figure 190 Loopback using directed routing on page 870](#), [Figure 191 Pure directed route on page 870](#) or [Figure 193 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the destination on page 871](#), then the DrSLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. If the directed route does *not* start from the requester node, then DrSLID **shall** be set to the LID of the requester node, which must have been assigned.
- If the directed route ends at the responder node, i.e. there is no LID routed part at the destination as illustrated in [Figure 190 Loopback using directed routing on page 870](#), [Figure 191 Pure directed route on page 870](#) or [Figure 192 Directed route with LID-Routed part at the source on page 871](#), then the DrDLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. If the directed route does *not* end at the responder node, then the DrDLID **shall** be set to the LID of the responder node, which must have been assigned.
- Initial Path **shall** be set to an array of Hop Count port numbers corresponding to the ports at the starting end of hops, specifically, the port from which the SMP will start travelling on the inter-node link along the directed route. The array **shall** be laid out in the initial Path field so that the byte at offset 0 in that field is reserved and the following bytes are filled with the port numbers in order.

- Return Path **shall** be set to an array of Hop Count zeroes. The array **shall** be laid out in the Return Path field so that the byte at offset 0 in that field is reserved and the following bytes are filled with zeroes.
- All other fields **shall** be set the same way they are for a LID routed SMP.

C14-7: The data packet headers for the unreliable datagram encapsulating the directed route SMP **shall** be initialized as follows:

- If the directed route part starts from the requester node, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID or a LID of this port. If the directed route does *not* start from the requester node, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the LID of the requester node, which must have been assigned.
- LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID if the directed route part starts from the requester node. If not, it **shall** be set to the LID of the source switch in the directed route part. That LID must have been assigned and routing must have been initialized between that switch and the requester node.
- All other fields **shall** be set the same way they are for a LID routed SMP.

The SM or SMA will then hand the packet to the SMI. If the directed route part starts from the requester node, the SMI processes the packet as described in [14.2.2.2 Outgoing Directed Route SMP handling by SMI on page 873](#). Otherwise, the SMI will output the packet as it does any LID routed packet.

14.2.2.2 OUTGOING DIRECTED ROUTE SMP HANDLING BY SMI

C14-8: Any SMP arriving at the SMI with a MADHeader:MgmtClass set to 0x81 (Directed Route class) **shall** be processed by the SMI.

C14-9: The SMI **shall** handle outgoing directed route SMPs (D bit is 0) as defined by one of the following mutually exclusive cases:

- 1) If Hop Count is nonzero and Hop Pointer is zero, the SMI is at the beginning of the directed route portion of the path. The SMI **shall** alter the contents of the directed route SMP as follows:
 - The Hop Pointer **shall** be incremented by 1.
 - For switches, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. For CA's the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to a LID of this port or the Permissive LID.
 - LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.

The SMI **shall** output the packet on the port whose number is in the entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Initial Path. If that port number is invalid, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

2) If Hop Count is non zero and Hop Pointer is in the range $1 \leq \text{Hop Pointer} < \text{Hop Count}$, this SMI is an intermediate hop in the directed route portion of the path. If the node is not a switch, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP, otherwise the SMI **shall** alter the contents of the directed route SMP as follows:

- The entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Return Path array of port numbers **shall** be set to the port number where the SMP was received and then the Hop Pointer **shall** be incremented by 1.
- The LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.
- The LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.

The SMI **shall** output the packet on the port whose number is in the entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Initial Path. If that port number is invalid, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP.

3) If Hop Pointer is equal to Hop Count, the SMI is at the end of the directed route portion of the path. The SMI **shall** alter the contents of the directed route SMP as follows:

- If the Hop Count is zero, the Hop Pointer **shall** be incremented by 1. Otherwise, the entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Return Path array of port numbers **shall** be set to the port number where the SMP was received and then the Hop Pointer **shall** be incremented by 1.
- For switches, the LRH:SLID of the outgoing directed route SMP **shall** be altered as follows: If the DrDLID is the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. If the DrDLID is *not* the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the base LID of this node. For CA's, if the DrDLID is the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID may be set to the Permissive LID; otherwise, the SMP is silently dropped.
- The LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the DrDLID.

If the LRH:DLID is the Permissive LID, this node is the responder node and the SMI **shall** hand the packet to the SMA or SM, which may check that Hop Pointer is equal to HopCount+1.

If the LRH:DLID is *not* the Permissive LID, the SMI will output the packet as it does any LID routed packet.

- 4) If Hop Pointer is equal to Hop Count+1, this node is the responder node and the SMI **shall** hand the packet to the SMA or SM, which may check that Hop Pointer is equal to Hop Count+1.
- 5) If Hop Pointer is in the range $(\text{Hop Count}+1) < \text{Hop Pointer} \leq 255$, the SMI **shall** silently discard the SMP.

The handling of returning directed route SMPs (D bit is 1) is described in [14.2.2.3 Returning Directed Route SMP Initialization on page 875](#).

14.2.2.3 RETURNING DIRECTED ROUTE SMP INITIALIZATION

The SMA or SM receiving a directed route SMP processes it (with regard to handling of the method and attribute) as it does a LID routed SMP. The receiving SMA or SM may determine that it should send a response.

C14-10: This compliance is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-10.1.1](#):

C14-10.1.1: The fields of the directed route response SMP **shall** be initialized as follows:

- Method **shall** be set to SubnGetResp() or SubnTrapRepress() depending on the inbound method as specified in [Table 123 Common Management Methods on page 786](#).
- D bit **shall** be set to 1.
- Mgmt Class, Hop Pointer, Hop Count, DrSLID, DrDLID, Initial Path and Return Path **shall** be copied as is from the request SMP.
- All other fields **shall** be set the way they are set for a LID routed SMP.

C14-11: The data packet headers for the unreliable datagram encapsulating the directed route response SMP **shall** also be initialized as follows:

- If the directed route part starts from the responder node, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID or a LID of this port. If the directed route does not start from the responder node, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the LID of the responder node, which must have been assigned.
- The LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the LRH:SLID of the directed route request SMP.
- All other fields **shall** be set the way they are set for a LID routed SMP.

The SMA or SM will then hand the packet to the SMI. If the directed route part starts from the responder node, the SMI processes the packet as described in [14.2.2.4 Returning Directed Route SMP handling by SMI on page 875](#). Otherwise, the SMI will output the packet as it does any LID routed packet.

14.2.2.4 RETURNING DIRECTED ROUTE SMP HANDLING BY SMI

C14-12: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

C14-13: The SMI **shall** handle returning directed route SMPs (D bit is 1) as defined by one of the following mutually exclusive cases:

- 1) If Hop Count is non-zero and Hop Pointer is equal to Hop Count + 1, the SMI is at the beginning of the directed route portion of the path.

The SMI **shall** alter the contents of the directed route SMP as follows:

- Hop Pointer **shall** be decremented by 1.
- For switches, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. For CA's the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to a LID of this port or the Permissive LID.
- LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.

The SMI **shall** output the packet on the port whose number is in the entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Return Path. If that port number is invalid, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP.

- 2) If Hop Count is non-zero and Hop Pointer is in the range $2 \leq \text{Hop Pointer} \leq \text{HopCount}$, this SMI is an intermediate hop in the directed route portion of the path. If the node is not a switch, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP, otherwise, he SMI **shall** alter the contents of the directed route SMP as follows:
- Hop Pointer **shall** be decremented by 1.
 - The LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.
 - The LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID.

The SMI **shall** output the packet on the port whose number is in the entry indexed by Hop Pointer in the Return Path. If that port number is invalid, the SMI **shall** discard the SMP.

- 3) If Hop Pointer is equal to 1, the SMI is at the end of the directed route portion of the path. The SMI **shall** alter the fields of the directed route SMP as follows:
- HopPointer **shall** be decremented by 1.
 - For switches, the LRH:SLID of the returning directed route SMP **shall** be altered as follows: If the DrSLID is the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the Permissive LID. If the DrSLID is not the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID **shall** be set to the LID of this node. For CA's, if the DrSLID is the Permissive LID, the LRH:SLID may be set to the Permissive LID; otherwise, the SMP **shall** be silently dropped.
 - LRH:DLID **shall** be set to the DrSLID.

If the LRH:DLID is the Permissive LID, then this node is the requester node and the SMI must hand the packet to the SM which may check that HopPointer is equal to 0.

If the LRH:DLID is *not* the Permissive LID, the SMI will output the packet as it does any LID routed packet.

- 4) If Hop Pointer is equal to 0, this node is the requester node and the SMI must hand the packet to the SM, which may check that Hop Pointer is equal to 0.

- 5) If Hop Pointer is in the range ($\text{Hop Count} + 2 \leq \text{Hop Pointer} \leq 255$),
then the SMI **shall** silently discard the SMP.

The handling of outgoing directed route SMPs (D bit is 0) is described in [14.2.2.2 Outgoing Directed Route SMP handling by SMI on page 873](#).

14.2.3 METHODS

The Subnet Management class uses a subset of the common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

C14-13.1.1: Subnet management entities **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 145 Subnet Management Methods on page 877](#). All method type values not listed in the table are reserved.

Table 145 Subnet Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
SubnGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of an attribute.
SubnSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute.
SubnGetResp()	0x81	Response from a get or set request.
SubnTrap()	0x05	Notify an event occurred.
SubnTrapRepress()	0x07	Cease sending repeated Trap.

[Table 140 SM MAD Sources and Destinations on page 826](#) indicates which methods are applied to SMPs that originate at a SM, SMPs that originate at a SMA, and SMPs that may be destined to SMAs or to SMs.

C14-14: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

Subnet Management entities, the SMA and SM, support the methods listed in [Table 145 Subnet Management Methods on page 877](#).

14.2.4 MANAGEMENT KEY

SMPs are used to initialize and configure CAs, switches and routers, and are therefore considered privileged operations. As a result, there is a mechanism provided to authorize subnet management operations based on:

- a Key stored in the MADHeader:M_Key of the LID routed and Directed route subnet management class datagram as shown in [Figure 187 SMP Format \(LID Routed\) on page 866](#) and [Figure 188 SMP Format \(Directed Route\) on page 867](#), respectively.
- a Key kept locally on each port in the PortInfo:M_Key component of the PortInfo attribute that is described in [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
Authentication is performed by the management entity at the destination
port and is achieved by comparing the key contained in the SMP with the
key residing at the destination port. This key is known as the Management
Key (M_Key).

8
9
10
11
12
13
C14-15: An M_Key contained in the MADHeader:M_Key of the SMP **shall**
not be checked at the receiving port with the PortInfo:M_Key set to zero.
As a result, no authentication is performed.

14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
If the PortInfo:M_Key is nonzero, authentication at the receiving port and
access to the port attributes is determined by the contents of the
PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits and PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if
PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported is set to 1 as
described in [14.2.4.1 Levels of Protection on page 878](#). Finally, M_Keys
can be lost, so Key recovery is provided by the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePe-
riod components and is described in [14.2.4.2 Lease Period on page 879](#).

22
23
24
25
26
27
Note that M_Key components of PortInfo are undefined for switch phys-
ical ports. M_Key checking for switch physical port attributes is performed
using PortInfo:M_Key of switch port 0.

14.2.4.1 LEVELS OF PROTECTION

28
29
30
31
C14-16: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
[C14-16.1.1:](#)

32
33
34
35
36
C14-16.1.1: If the PortInfo:M_Key is non-zero, the management entity re-
siding at the port **shall** perform authentication determined by the contents
of the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits, PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if sup-
ported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExt-
Supported = 1 and the behaviors described in [Table 146 Protection Levels
on page 878](#).

37
38
39
40
41
42
Table 146 Protection Levels

PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits	Description
0	SubnGet(*) shall succeed for any key in the MADHeader:M_Key and SubnGetResp(PortInfo) shall return the contents of the PortInfo:M_Key component. SubnSet(*) and SubnTrapRepress(*) shall fail if MAD-Header:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port.
1	SubnGet(*) shall succeed for any key in the MADHeader:M_Key and SubnGetResp(PortInfo) shall return the contents of the PortInfo:M_Key component set to zero if MADHeader:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port. SubnSet(*) and SubnTrapRepress(*) shall fail if MAD-Header:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port.

Table 146 Protection Levels (Continued)

PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits	Description
2	SubnSet(*) and SubnTrapRepress(*) shall fail if MAD-Header:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port. SubnGet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port if M_KeyProtectBitsExt is not supported as indicated by PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 0 or M_KeyProtectBitsExt is 0 when supported. All SubnGet(*) other than SubnGet(NodeInfo) shall fail if MADHeader:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port if M_KeyProtectBitsExt is 1 when supported.
3	SubnSet(*) and SubnTrapRepress(*) shall fail if MAD-Header:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port. SubnGet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port if M_KeyProtectBitsExt is not supported as indicated by PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 0 or M_KeyProtectBitsExt is 0 when supported. All SubnGet(*) other than SubnGet(NodeInfo) shall fail if MADHeader:M_Key does not match the PortInfo:M_Key component in the port if M_KeyProtectBitsExt is 1 when supported. This function is identical to the function of PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits = 2. It is retained only for backward compatibility.

14.2.4.2 LEASE PERIOD

A Lease Period is specified by setting the contents of the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod component. It is intended to allow an M_Key to 'expire' if the master SM inadvertently goes away without sharing the M_Key with backup SMs and there is no other out-of-band recovery mechanism available.

C14-17: The lease period timer **shall** start counting down toward zero on a port when a SMP is received for which the M_Key check was performed according to [Table 146 Protection Levels on page 878](#) and failed. If the lease timer countdown is already underway, it **shall** not be interrupted by the arrival of that SMP.

C14-18: The PortInfo:M_KeyViolations component **shall** be incremented on a port when a SMP is received by that port for which the M_Key check was performed according to [Table 146 Protection Levels on page 878](#) and failed. The incrementing **shall** stop when the component reaches all 1s.

Furthermore, an M_Key violation trap/notice must be generated as described in [14.3.9 M_Key mismatch on page 984](#) indicating that the lease timer has started counting. In response to that trap, the master SM may refresh the Lease Period. If the master SM that originally set the M_Key has gone away, the Lease Period may expire.

C14-19: The lease period counter **shall** cease counting down and **shall** be reset to the value contained in PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod component on a port when any SMP is received with MADHeader:M_Key that matches the PortInfo:M_Key.

C14-20: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-20.1.1](#):

C14-20.1.1: The PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits and PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1 **shall** be set to zero when the lease period counter transitions from non-zero to zero.

When the lease period expires, clearing the M_Key Protection bits will allow any SM to read (and then set) the M_Key.

C14-21: When the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod is set to zero, the lease period **shall** never expire.

Whether there is an out-of-band mechanism to reset data protected with a lease period of zero is outside the scope of the specification.

14.2.4.3 NOTES ON EXPECTED USAGE

- The SM is responsible for keeping track of the M_Keys for the nodes that it is managing, to make sure that it uses the correct key for each node.
- If standby SMs exist in the subnet for redundancy, then the M_Keys may be shared so that failover to another SM can be accommodated easily.
- An SM may have exclusive access to a node (or set of nodes), by using an M_Key which is only known by that SM and the particular node(s).
- SubnSet() is always protected by this mechanism as it can affect the state of the node. SubnGet() is protected only if PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits and PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1 are appropriately set. Note that there is a setting of M_KeyProtectBitsExt that protects all SubnGet() other than SubnGet(No-deInfo).

14.2.4.4 UPDATE PROCEDURE

Node protection/ownership is assigned in one “atomic” operation.

C14-22: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-22.1.1](#):

C14-22.1.1: The PortInfo:M_Key, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1, and the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod components in the PortInfo Attribute **shall** be set in one SubnSet(PortInfo) method.

A returned SubnGetResp(PortInfo) with a status of zero indicates to the SM that it has taken ownership of the node.

14.2.4.5 INITIALIZATION

C14-23: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-23.1.1:](#)

C14-23.1.1: When initially powered-up or reset, the PortInfo:M_Key, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1, and the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod components of an endport **shall** be set to zero if NVRAM is not used or to a value stored in NVRAM.

If the M_Key related components are not stored in NVRAM, the PortInfo:M_Key, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits, the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1, and the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod components may be set by any master SM during subnet initialization. Initialization of M_KeyLeasePeriod to a value of zero (infinite) notwithstanding, whenever a port's M_Key-related components are not stored in NVRAM, any subnet manager can successfully read and then set the port's M_Key during subnet initialization.

14.2.4.6 SMI

The SMI will not check the M_Key in the header of a SMP since that is the responsibility of the management entities that reside behind the SMI.

14.2.5 ATTRIBUTES

In the SMP, attributes can be up to 64 bytes long. [Table 147 Subnet Management Attributes \(Summary\) on page 882](#) summarizes the subnet management attributes and [Table 148 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map on page 885](#) indicates which methods apply to each attribute.

C14-24: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-24.1.1:](#)

C14-24.1.1: Subnet management entities **shall** support the attributes and methods as listed in [Table 147 Subnet Management Attributes \(Summary\) on page 882](#) and [Table 148 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map on page 885](#).

on page 885. All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 147: Subnet Management Attributes \(Summary\)](#) are reserved.

Table 147 Subnet Management Attributes (Summary)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier	Description	Applicable To
Notice	0x0002	0x0000_0000	Information regarding the associated Notice or Trap(). See 14.2.5.1 Notices and Traps on page 887 .	All Endports on All Nodes
NodeDescription	0x0010	0x0000_0000	Node Description String. See 14.2.5.2 NodeDescription on page 894 .	All Nodes
NodeInfo	0x0011	0x0000_0000	Generic Node Data. See 14.2.5.3 NodeInfo on page 894 .	All Ports on All Nodes
SwitchInfo	0x0012	0x0000_0000	Switch Information. See 14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on page 895 .	Switches
GUIDInfo	0x0014	GUID Block	Assigned GUIDs. See 14.2.5.5 GUIDInfo on page 897 .	All Endports
PortInfo	0x0015	Port Number	Port Information. See 14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898 .	All Ports on All Nodes
P_KeyTable	0x0016	Port Number/P_Key block	Partition Table. See 14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable on page 918 .	All Ports on All Nodes
SLtoVLMappingTable	0x0017	Input/Output Port Number	Service Level to Virtual Lane mapping Information. See 14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 918 .	All Ports on All Nodes (optional ^a)
VLArcitrationTable	0x0018	Output Port/Component	List of Weights. See 14.2.5.9 VLArcitrationTable on page 921 .	All Ports on All Nodes (optional ^b)
LinearForwardingTable	0x0019	Block Identifier	Linear Forwarding Table Information. See 14.2.5.10 LinearForwardingTable on page 922 .	Switches (optional ^c)
RandomForwardingTable	0x001A	Block Identifier	Random Forwarding Table Information. See 14.2.5.11 RandomForwardingTable on page 922 .	Switches (optional ^c)
MulticastForwardingTable	0x001B	Block Identifier	Multicast Forwarding Table Information. See 14.2.5.12 MulticastForwardingTable on page 923 .	Switches (optional)
LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable	0x001C	Index	Supported combinations of Link-SpeedEnabled and LinkWidthEnabled per port. See 14.2.5.16 LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable on page 927 .	All nodes (optional)

Table 147 Subnet Management Attributes (Summary) (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier	Description	Applicable To
VendorSpecificMadsTable	0x001D	Index	Listing of vendor-specific MADs supported by the port. See 14.2.5.17 VendorSpecificMadsTable on page 929 .	All nodes (optional)
HierarchyInfo	0x001E	Index/Port Number	Hierarchy Information as described in Hierarchy Information on page 1887	All nodes (optional)
SMInfo	0x0020	0x0000_0000 - 0x0000_0005	Subnet Management Information. See 14.2.5.13 SMInfo on page 924 .	All nodes hosting an SM
VendorDiag	0x0030	0x0000_0000 - 0x0000_07FF	Vendor Specific Diagnostic. See 14.2.5.14 VendorDiag on page 925 .	All Ports on All Nodes
LedInfo	0x0031	0x0000_0000	Turn on/off LED. See 14.2.5.15 LedInfo on page 926 .	All nodes (optional)
CableInfo	0x0032	Address/AddLength/Port Number	Information about cable. See 14.2.5.18 CableInfo on page 930 .	All Cabled Ports on All Nodes (optional)
PortInfoExtended	0x0033	Port Number	Extended port information. See 14.2.5.19 PortInfoExtended on page 933 .	All Ports on All Nodes (optional)

Table 147 Subnet Management Attributes (Summary) (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier	Description	Applicable To
SwitchPortStateTable	0x0034	0x0000_0000 - 0x0000_0001	PortState summary for switch ports. See 14.2.5.20 SwitchPort-StateTable on page 937 .	Switches (optional ^d)
VirtualizationInfo	0x0040	0x0000_0000	Describes the virtualization capabilities of the node and allows the SM to enable virtualization. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VNodeInfo	0x0041	VPort index	Describes the properties of the VHCA node. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VNodeDescription	0x0042	VPort index	Provides the node description of the VHCA. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VPortInfo	0x0043	VPort index	Describes the properties of the VHCA VPort and enables SM to configure it. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VPortGUIDInfo	0x0044	VPort index/ GUID block number	VPort assigned GUIDS. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VPortPartitionTable	0x0045	VPort index/ P_Key block number	VPort partition table. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
VPortState	0x0046	VPorts block number	Provides the means to query summarized PortState of the virtual links. See Annex A18: Virtualization	HCA
EnhQoSArbiterInfo	0x0050	0x0000_0000	Enhanced QoS arbiter information. See 14.2.5.21 EnhQoSArbiter-Info on page 937	All nodes(optional ^e)
EnhPortVLArbiter	0x0051	Type/Port Number	Enhanced Port VL arbiter information See 14.2.5.22 EnhPortVLArbiter on page 938	All nodes(optional ^f)
EnhSLArbiter	0x0052	Port Number	Enhanced SL arbiter information See 14.2.5.23 EnhSLArbiter on page 942	All nodes(optional ^g)
	0xFF00- 0xFFFF	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Range reserved for Vendor Specific attributes.	

a. Optional on ports that support only one data VL.

b. Prohibited on ports that support only one data VL.

c. LinearForwardingTable and RandomForwardingTable are mutually exclusive, but one is required.

d. Only supported on ports indicating IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported in PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.

Table 148 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
Notice	X	X	X	X
NodeDescription	X	X ^a		
NodeInfo	X			
SwitchInfo	X	X		
GUIDInfo	X	X		
PortInfo	X	X		
P_KeyTable	X	X		
SLtoVLMappingTable	X	X		
VLArcitrationTable	X	X		
LinearForwardingTable	X	X		
RandomForwardingTable	X	X		
MulticastForwardingTable	X	X		
LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable	X			
VendorSpecificMadsTable	X			
HierarchyInfo	X	X		
SMIInfo	X	X		
VendorDiag	X			
LedInfo	X	X		
CableInfo	X	X		
PortInfoExtended	X	X		
SwitchPortStateTable	X ^b			
VirtualizationInfo	X	X		
VNodeInfo	X			
VNodeDescription	X	X		
VPortInfo	X	X		
VPortGUIDInfo	X	X		
VPortPartitionTable	X	X		
VPortState	X			
EnhQoSArbiterInfo	X	X		
EnhPortVLArbiter	X	X		

Table 148 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
EnhSLArbiter	X	X		

a. Only supported on ports indicating IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported in PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.

b. Only supported on ports indicating IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported in PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.

Several of the SM attributes described in the sections that follow (LinearForwardingTable, RandomForwardingTable, MulticastForwardingTable, VLArbitrationTable, GUIDInfo, and P_KeyTable) are used to load and read contents of tables in switches and CAs. Each of those attributes uses a block of table entries and an offset into the table specified using the MadHeader:AttributeModifier component. Successive block elements are loaded or read starting at the specified offset.

The number of table entries in a block is fixed, and the offset (Attribute-Modifier) is specified in units of block size. Also, there is no requirement that the actual table lengths, as indicated by related Cap or Top components, be an integer multiple of the block size.²⁴

As long as some of a block's entries address valid table entries, this is not an error. The block elements corresponding to invalid table entries are ignored on write and read back as all zeros.

However, if none of the block entries address valid table entries, it must mean that the AttributeModifer value specifies an offset that is past the end (Cap or Top) of the table. In this case a MADHeader>Status.Code of 7 is returned, since that is the status code for an invalid attribute modifier value (see [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#)). The attribute contents accompanying that Status Code are implementation-specific.

24. All of the table attributes except LinearForwardingTable and MulticastForwardingTable when IsMulticastFDBTop option is supported use a Cap component only. For example, SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap is used for RandomForwardingTable. The LinearForwardingTable uses both a Cap and a Top. See [14.2.5.10 LinearForwardingTable on page 922](#). The MulticastForwardingTable also uses both a Cap and a Top when IsMulticastFDBTop option is indicated in the CapabilityMask of the PortInfo attribute. Otherwise, it only uses a Cap. See [14.2.5.12 MulticastForwardingTable on page 923](#). This implies that the last, i.e., largest offset, block that is loaded or read from a table may overflow past the end of a table, implicitly addressing table entries that are invalid. When the table size happens to be less than the block size, such a "last" block will also be the first, and only valid, block.

14.2.5.1 NOTICES AND TRAPS

This attribute is a common attribute described in [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#). The following traps are defined for the Subnet Management class.

Table 149 **Traps**

Trap Number	Type ^a	Kind of Sending Node	DataDetails
64	Informational	subnet manager	<GIDADDR> is now in service; see 14.4.9 In and Out of Service Traps on page 1010
65	Informational	subnet manager	<GIDADDR> is out of service; see 14.4.9 In and Out of Service Traps on page 1010
66	Informational	subnet manager	New multicast group with multicast address <GIDADDR> is now created; see 14.4.10 Multicast Group Create/Delete Traps on page 1011
67	Informational	subnet manager	Multicast group with multicast address <GIDADDR> is now deleted; see 14.4.10 Multicast Group Create/Delete Traps on page 1011
68	Informational	subnet manager	The paths indicated by <PATH_REC> and <COMP_MASK> are no longer valid; a node may be advised to <WAIT_FOR_REPATH> (trap 69) before requesting replacements. See 14.4.12 UnPath/RePath Traps on page 1012 .
69	Informational	subnet manager	Paths indicated by <PATH_REC> and <COMP_MASK> have been recomputed. See 14.4.12 UnPath/RePath Traps on page 1012 .
128	Urgent	switch	Link state of at least one port of switch at <LIDADDR> has changed. See 14.3.6 Port State Change on page 979 .
129	Urgent	any	Local Link Integrity threshold reached at <LIDADDR><PORTNO>
130	Urgent	any	Excessive Buffer Overrun threshold reached at <LIDADDR><PORTNO>
131	Urgent	switch	Flow Control Update watchdog timer expired at <LIDADDR><PORTNO>
144	Informational	any	The CapabilityMask, NodeDescription, LinkWidthEnabled, or LinkSpeedEnabled at <LIDADDR> has been modified. If the change indicates a CapabilityMaskChange, the new value is <CAPABILITYMASK>. For OtherLocalChanges, CapabilityMask is filled in as well as the other relevant local changes to be indicated. This trap is optional; For CapabilityMask-Change, see 14.3.11 Change CapabilityMask on page 985 . For other local changes, see 14.3.13 Other Local Changes on page 986 .
145	Informational	any	The SystemImageGUID at <LIDADDR> has been modified and its new value is <SYSTEMIMAGEGUID>. This trap is optional; see 14.3.12 Change SystemImageGUID on page 985
256	Security	any	Bad M_Key, <MKEY> from <LIDADDR> attempted <METHOD> with <ATTRIBUTEID> and <ATTRIBUTEMODIFIER>; if MAD was directed route, see C14-24.1.2: on page 888 and C14-24.1.3: on page 888
257	Security	any	Bad P_Key, <KEY> from <LIDADDR1>/<GIDADDR1>/<QP1> to <LIDADR2>/<GIDADDR2>/<QP2> on <SL>.
258	Security	any	Bad Q_Key, <KEY> from <LIDADDR1>/<GIDADDR1>/<QP1> to <LIDADR2>/<GIDADDR2>/<QP2> on <SL>.

Table 149 Traps (Continued)

Trap Number	Type ^a	Kind of Sending Node	DataDetails
259	Security	switch	Bad P_Key <PKEY> from <LIDADDR1>/<GIDADDR1>/<QP1> to <LIDADDR2>/<GIDADDR2>/<QP2> on <SL> at switch <LIDADDR> external port <PORTNO>, where the validity of all the above fields is indicated by <DataValid>. This trap is optional; see 14.3.7 P_Key Mismatch on Switch External Ports on page 982 .
1144	Informational	HCA	VPort Local Change. See Annex A18: Virtualization
1146	Urgent	HCA	VPort State Change. See Annex A18: Virtualization
1257	Security	HCA	VPort P_Key Violation. See Annex A18: Virtualization
1258	Security	HCA	VPort Q_Key Violation. See Annex A18: Virtualization

a. For these traps, the type field is ignored in all MADs using the Notice attribute.

Traps use the layouts shown in the tables below for the DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData components of their Notice attributes.

C14-24.1.2: Unless the Directed Route Notice option is implemented by an SMA as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsDRNoticeSupported, all components of all SMP Notice DataDetails for Trap 256 whose name begins with the letters “DR” **shall** be ignored on read; their content is unspecified.

C14-24.1.3: If the Directed Route Notice option is implemented by an SMA (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsDRNoticeSupported=1), and an M_Key violation is caused as a result of the arrival of a LID Routed SMP, the SMA **shall** set to 0 the DRNotice attribute of the associated Notice's DataDetails. If the M_Key violation was caused by the arrival of a Directed Route SMP, the SMA **shall** set the following notice attributes in the associated Notice's DataDetails as specified below:

- DRNotice **shall** be set to 1.
- DRPathTruncated **shall** be set to 0 if the return path of the directed route SMP is short enough to fit completely in the Notice's DRNotice-ReturnPath component; otherwise DRPathTruncated **shall** be set to 1.
- DRHopCount **shall** be set to the number of hops placed in this Notice.
- DRSLID **shall** be set to the DrSLID component of the Directed Route SMP.
- The ReturnPath of the SMP **shall** be placed in the DRNoticeReturnPath field. The lowest-offset ReturnPath byte **shall** be placed in the lowest offset DRNoticeReturnPath byte; the second-lowest in the

second-lowest; etc. If the ReturnPath is too long to fit in the Notice's DRNoticeReturnPath, the highest offset bytes of the ReturnPath are not recorded.

Generation of this Notice takes place in the SMA, after the Directed Route SMP has been processed by the SMI.

Table 150 Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67

Field	Length(bits)	Description
Reserved	48	Reserved
GIDADDR	128	Global Identifier
Padding	256	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 151 Notice DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData For Traps 68 and 69

Component	Field	Length (bits)	Description
DataDetails	COMP_MASK	64	This field has the same format as, and is used exactly like, the ComponentMask component of an SA request (15.2.1.2 SA Header Fields on page 1017), along with the <PATH_REC> field, to define the paths identified to by this Notice.
DataDetails	WAIT_FOR_REPATH	1	Trap number 69 (RePath): Reserved. Trap number 68 (UnPath): If 1, the node receiving this trap is advised to wait until it receives a RePath Notice before querying SA for a path matching <PATH_REC> and <COMP_MASK>. If 0, no such advice is given.
DataDetails	Padding	367	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.
ClassTrapSpecificData	PATH_REC	512	This field has the same format as the PathRecord attribute of SA (see 15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038). It is used with <COMP_MASK> to define the paths identified to by this Notice.

Table 152 Notice DataDetails For Trap 128

Field	Length(bits)	Description
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
Padding	32	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 152 Notice DataDetails For Trap 128 (Continued)

Field	Length(bits)	Description
PortMask	256	Bit mask of ports with changed port state since last time switch's local accumulated PortMask of ports which changed port state was cleared if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsEnhancedTrap128Supported is set to 1. Otherwise, field is padding. See 14.3.6.1 Enhanced Trap 128 Support on page 979.
Padding	128	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 153 Notice DataDetails For Traps 129, 130 and 131

Field	Length(bits)	Description
Reserved	16	Reserved
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
PORTNO	8	Port number
Padding	392	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144

Field	Length (bits)	Description
Reserved	16	Reserved
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
Reserved	15	Reserved
OtherLocalChanges	1	0 - CapabilityMaskChange 1 - OtherLocalChanges
CAPABILITYMASK	32	Contents of the CapabilityMask at <LIDADDR>
Reserved	10	Reserved (for OtherLocalChanges) ^a
CapabilityMask2Change	1	PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 changed
HierarchyInfoChange	1	HierarchyInfo has changed
SMPriorityChange	1	SM priority changed
LinkSpeedEnabledChange	1	PortInfo:LinkSpeedEnabled and/or PortInfo:Link-SpeedExtEnabled changed

Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 (Continued)

Field	Length (bits)	Description
LinkWidthEnabledChange	1	PortInfo:LinkWidthEnabled changed
NodeDescriptionChange	1	NodeDescription changed
CapabilityMask2	16	Contents of the CapabilityMask2 at <LIDADDR>
PortInfoExtendedChange	1	PortInfoExtended changed
Padding	319	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

a. Note that a SM should be prepared to receive a trap with bits set that are reserved (ignored on read), and further, should be prepared to receive a trap which might have no bits set that reflect a defined attribute component change bit. In the latter case, behavior is implementation dependent, but the SM does need to repress the trap.

This allows future use of currently reserved bits while still allowing either the SM or the SMA to be upgraded while the other is not. If the SM is upgraded, the SMA will simply never send traps with the new bits; if the SMA is upgraded, the SM will accept the trap with the new bits and will continue to function, but may not handle the trap as well as an upgraded SM would.

Table 155 Notice DataDetails For Trap 145

Field	Length(bits)	Description
Reserved	16	Reserved
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
Reserved	16	Reserved
SYSTEMIMAGEGUID	64	Contents of the SystemImage-GUID at <LIDADDR>
Padding	320	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 156 Notice DataDetails For Trap 256

Field	Length(bits)	Description
Reserved	16	Reserved
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
DRSLID	16	DrSLID of the directed route SMP causing this Notice, if any. See C14-24.1.3: on page 888
METHOD	8	Method
Reserved	8	Reserved
ATTRIBUTEID	16	Attribute ID
ATTRIBUTEMODIFIER	32	AttributeModifier

Table 156 Notice DataDetails For Trap 256 (Continued)

Field	Length(bits)	Description
MKEY	64	M_Key
Reserved	8	Reserved
DRNotice	1	Indicates whether this Notice results from a directed route SMP See C14-24.1.3: on page 888 .
DRPathTruncated	1	Indicates that the DRNoticeReturnPath is truncated. See C14-24.1.3: on page 888 .
DRHopCount	6	Number of bytes in the DRNotice-ReturnPath. See C14-24.1.3: on page 888 .
DRNoticeReturnPath	240	ReturnPath from the directed route SMP. See C14-24.1.3: on page 888 .

Table 157 Notice DataDetails For Traps 257 and 258

Field	Length(bits)	Description
Reserved	16	Reserved
LIDADDR1	16	Local Identifier
LIDADDR2	16	Local Identifier
KEY	32	Q_Key or P_Key. If P_Key, the 16 most significant bits of the field shall be set to 0 and the 16 least significant bits of the field shall be set to the P_Key.
SL	4	Service Level
Reserved	4	Reserved
QP1	24	Queue Pair
Reserved	8	Reserved
QP2	24	Queue Pair
GIDADDR1	128	Global Identifier. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be filled with zeroes.

Table 157 Notice DataDetails For Traps 257 and 258

Field	Length(bits)	Description
GIDADDR2	128	Global Identifier. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be filled with zeroes.
Padding	32	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Table 158 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259

Field	Length(bits)	Description
DataValid	16	Indicates validity of optional data fields; 0 = field invalid; 1 = field valid: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• bit 0: LIDADDR1• bit 1: LIDADDR2• bit 2: PKEY• bit 3: SL• bit 4: QP1• bit 5: QP2• bit 6: GIDADDR1• bit 7: GIDADDR2• bits 8-15: Reserved
LIDADDR1	16	Local Identifier
LIDADDR2	16	Local Identifier
PKEY	16	P_Key
SL	4	Service Level
Reserved	4	Reserved
QP1	24	Queue Pair
Reserved	8	Reserved
QP2	24	Queue Pair
GIDADDR1	128	Global Identifier. Shall be set to zero to indicate lack of a GRH in the offending packet when DataValid bit 6 is 1.
GIDADDR2	128	Global Identifier. Shall be set to zero to indicate lack of a GRH in the offending packet when DataValid bit 7 is 1.
SWLIDADDR	16	Local Identifier of switch

Table 158 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259 (Continued)

Field	Length(bits)	Description
PORTNO	8	Port Number
Padding	24	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

14.2.5.2 NODEDESCRIPTION**Table 159 NodeDescription**

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
NodeString	RO or RW ^a	512	UTF-8 encoded string to describe node in text format.

a. RW when PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported is set to 1

The contents of the NodeDescription attribute are the same for all ports on a node.

When PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported is set to 1, if NodeDescription is set, trap 144 (NodeDescription changed) is generated.

14.2.5.3 NODEINFO

The NodeInfo Attribute provides fundamental management information common to all CAs, routers, and switches. It **shall** be implemented by all nodes. The value of some NodeInfo components varies by port within a node.

Table 160 NodeInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
BaseVersion ^a	RO	8	0	Supported MAD Base Version. Indicates that this node supports up to and including this version. Set to 1.
ClassVersion ^a	RO	8	8	Supported Subnet Management Class (SMP) Version. Indicates that this node supports up to and including this version. Set to 1.
NodeType ^a	RO	8	16	1: Channel Adapter 2: Switch 3: Router 0, 4 - 255: Reserved
NumPorts ^a	RO	8	24	Number of physical ports on this node.

Table 160 NodeInfo (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
SystemImage-GUID ^a	RO	64	32	GUID associating this node with other nodes controlled by common supervisory code. Provides a means for system software to indicate the availability of multiple paths to the same destination via multiple nodes. Set to zero if indication of node association is not desired. The SystemImageGUID may be the NodeGUID of one of the associated nodes if that node is not field-replaceable.
NodeGUID ^a	RO	64	96	GUID of the HCA, TCA, switch, or router itself. All ports on the same node shall report the same NodeGUID. Provides a means to uniquely identify a node within a subnet and determine co-location of ports.
PortGUID ^b	RO	64	160	GUID of this port itself. One port within a node can return the NodeGUID as its PortGUID if the port is an integral part of the node and is not field-replaceable.
PartitionCap ^a	RO	16	224	Number of entries in the Partition Table for CA, router, and the switch management port. This is at a minimum set to 1 for all nodes including switches.
DeviceID ^a	RO	16	240	Device ID information as assigned by device manufacturer.
Revision ^a	RO	32	256	Device revision, assigned by manufacturer.
LocalPortNum	RO	8	288	The number of the link port which received this SMP.
VendorID ^a	RO	24	296	Device vendor, per IEEE.

a. Value **shall** be the same for all ports on a node.b. Value **shall** differ for each end port on a CA or router, but the same for all ports of a switch.

14.2.5.4 SWITCHINFO

The SwitchInfo Attribute provides management information specific to switch nodes. It **shall** be implemented by all switches.

Table 161 SwitchInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LinearFDBCap	RO	16	0	Number of entries supported in the Linear Unicast Forwarding Table (starting at LID=0x0000 going up). LinearFDBCap = 0 indicates that there is no Linear Forwarding Table.
RandomFDBCap	RO	16	16	Number of entries supported in the Random Unicast Forwarding Table. RandomFDBCap = 0 indicates that there is no Random Forwarding Table.
MulticastFDBCap	RO	16	32	Number of entries supported in the Multicast Forwarding Table (starting at LID=0xC000 going up).

Table 161 **SwitchInfo (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LinearFDBTop	RW	16	48	Indicates the top of the linear forwarding table. Packets received with unicast DLIDs greater than this value are discarded by the switch. A valid LinearFdbTop is less than LinearFdbCap. This component applies only to switches that implement linear forwarding tables and is ignored by switches that implement random forwarding tables.
DefaultPort	RW	8	64	Forward to this port all the unicast packets from the other ports whose DLID does not exist in the random forwarding table, see Chapter 18:: Switches . If set to a non-existent port, subsequent responses may contain any non-existent port number.
DefaultMulticastPrimaryPort	RW	8	72	Forward to this port all the multicast packets from the other ports whose DLID does not exist in the forwarding table, see 18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222 . If set to a non-existent port, subsequent responses may contain any non-existent port number.
DefaultMulticast-NotPrimaryPort	RW	8	80	Forward to this port all the multicast packets from the Default Primary port whose DLID does not exist in the forwarding table, see 18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222 . If set to a non-existent port, subsequent responses may contain any non-existent port number.
LifeTimeValue	RW	5	88	Sets the time a packet can live in the switch, see 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 .
PortStateChange	RW	1	93	It is set to one anytime the PortState component in the PortInfo of any ports transitions from Down to Initialize, Initialize to Down, Armed to Down, or Active to Down as a result of link state machine logic. Changes in Port-state resulting from SubnSet() do not change this bit. This bit is cleared by writing one, writing zero is ignored.
OptimizedSLtoVL-MappingProgramming	RO	2	94	Bit 0: When set to 1, indicates switch supports wildcarded optimized SLtoVLMappingTable programming. When set to 0, indicates that the switch does not support wildcarded optimized SLtoVLMappingTable programming. See 14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 918 . Bit 1: When set to 1, indicates switch supports port masked optimized SLtoVLMappingTable programming. When set to 0, indicates that the switch does not support port masked optimized SLtoVLMappingTable programming. See 14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 918 .
LIDsPerPort	RO	16	96	Specifies the number of LID/LMC combinations that may be assigned to a given external port for switches that support the Random Forwarding table.

Table 161 **SwitchInfo (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PartitionEnforce- mentCap	RO	16	112	Specifies the number of entries in the partition enforcement table per physical port. Zero indicates that partition enforcement is not supported by the switch.
InboundEnforce- mentCap	RO	1	128	Indicates switch is capable of partition enforcement on received packets
OutboundEnforce- mentCap	RO	1	129	Indicates switch is capable of partition enforcement on transmitted packets
FilterRawInbound- Cap	RO	1	130	Indicates switch is capable of raw packet enforcement on received packets
FilterRawOut- boundCap	RO	1	131	Indicates switch is capable of raw packet enforcement on transmitted packets
EnhancedPort0	RO	1	132	When set to 1, indicates switch port 0 supports enhanced functions (TCA port). When set to 0, indicates switch port 0 is a base switch port 0.
Reserved	RO	3	133	Reserved
Reserved	RO	8	136	Reserved
MulticastFDBTop	RW	16	144	Indicates the upper bound of the range of the multicast forwarding table. Packets received with MLIDs greater than MulticastFDBTop are considered to be outside the range of the Multicast Forwarding Table (see 18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222). A valid MulticastFDBTop is less than MulticastFDCCap + 0xC000. This component applies only to switches that implement the optional multicast forwarding service. A switch shall ignore the MulticastFDBTop component if it has the value zero. The initial value for MulticastFDBTop shall be set to zero. A value of 0xBFFF means there are no MulticastForwardingTable entries.
Reserved	RO	352	160	Reserved

14.2.5.5 GUIDINFO

The GUIDInfo Attribute provides the means for setting the assigned local scope EUI-64 identifiers of channel adapter, router, and switch management ports. These local scope EUI-64 identifiers are concatenated with a subnet prefix to form GIDs that are described in [4.1.1 GID Usage and Properties on page 160](#).

The AttributeModifier is a pointer to a block of 8 GIDs to which this attribute applies. Valid values are from 0 to 31 and are further limited by the size of the GUIDCap of the port; see [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#). The GUID Block Element at offset zero of the first GUIDBlock (AttributeModifier = 0) is read-only and is a copy of the PortGUID component.

The attribute selected corresponds to the port that received the SMP.

Table 162 GUIDInfo

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
GUIDBlock	RW	512	List of 8 GUID Block Elements.

Table 163 GUID Block Element

Component	Length(bits)	Description
GUID	64	GUID to be assigned to port.

14.2.5.6 PORTINFO

The PortInfo Attribute provides port-specific management information. It **shall** be implemented for every port on a node. Note that the values of some PortInfo components vary by node type and by port within a node.

The AttributeModifier is partitioned as follows:

- bit 31 - SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds
- bits 30-8 **must** be reserved
- bits 7-0 select the port upon which the operation specified by the SMP is performed.

For ports supporting extended link speeds (indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask), SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds tells the SMA that the SM supports extended (as well as any original) link speeds. When 0, SMA overloads the QDR bits in the original link speed components (LinkSpeedActive, LinkSpeedEnabled, and LinkSpeedSupported) when an extended speed is active when responding to the SM. When 1, the actual values of the original link speed components are used in responses to the SM.

Note: See [14.3.14 SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds on page 986](#) for more information on SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds.

For switches, channel adapters, and routers, the range of values for port is between 0 to N, where N is the number of ports and:

- For channel adapters and routers the value of zero indicates that the operation is performed on the port that received the SMP. Otherwise, if the value is non-zero and does not match the port number where the SMP is received, the PortInfo attribute is RO and the M_Key is checked for both the port where the SMP was received and the port selected by the AttributeModifier.
- For switches, a value of zero selects the management port. Otherwise, if the value is non-zero, a physical port is selected.

C14-24.2.1: If PortInfo:Portstate=Down, then

- a SubnGet(PortInfo) **shall** produce valid data for PortInfo:PortState and PortInfo:PortPhysicalState; whether any other component has valid data is vendor-dependent.
- a SubnSet(PortInfo) **shall** make any changes it specifies to PortInfo:PortPhysicalState; any other result is vendor-dependent.

In [Table 164: PortInfo](#), the “Used By” columns indicate how and whether a component is used by a particular type of port: Channel Adapter (CA), Router (Router), Switch external port (Sw Ext.), Base Switch Port 0 (Base SP0) and Enhanced Switch Port 0 (Enh. SP0). The notation used in the columns is: X = required; 0 = must be 0; 1 = must be 1; and blank = unused.

Table 164 PortInfo

Component	Used By						Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0					
M_Key	X	X		X	X	RW	64	0		The 8-byte management key. See 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 .
GidPrefix	X	X		X	X	RW	64	64		GID prefix for this port.
LID	X	X		X	X	RW	16	128		The base LID of this port.
MasterSMLID	X	X		X	X	RW	16	144		The LID of the master SM that is managing this port.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
CapabilityMask	X	X	X	X	RO	32	160		Supported capabilities of this port. A bit set to 1 for affirmation of supported capability. 0: Reserved 1: IsSM 2: IsNoticeSupported 3: IsTrapSupported 4: IsOptionalIPDSupported ^a 5: IsAutomaticMigrationSupported 6: IsSLMappingSupported ^b 7: IsMKeyNVRAM (supports M_Key in NVRAM) 8: IsPKeyNVRAM (supports P_Key in NVRAM) 9: IsLEDInfoSupported 10: IsSMdisabled 11: IsSystemImageGUIDSupported 12: IsPKeySwitchExternalPortTrapSupported 13: IsCableInfoSupported ^c 14: IsExtendedSpeedsSupported 15: IsCapabilityMask2Supported 16: IsCommunicationManagementSupported 17: IsSNMPTunnelingSupported 18: IsReinitSupported 19: IsDeviceManagementSupported 20: IsVendorClassSupported 21: IsDRNoticeSupported 22: IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported 23: IsBootManagementSupported 24: IsLinkRoundTripLatencySupported 25: IsClientReregistrationSupported 26: IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported 27: IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableSupported 28: IsVendorSpecificMadsTableSupported 29: IsMulticastPKeyTrapSuppressionSupported ^d 30: IsMulticastFDBTopSupported 31: IsHierarchyInfoSupported
DiagCode	X	X	X	X	RO	16	192		Diagnostic code, as described in 14.2.5.6.1 Interpretation of DiagCode on page 915 .

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
M_KeyLeasePeriod	X	X	X	X	RW	16	208		Specifies the initial value of the lease period timer in seconds. The lease period is the length of time that the M_Key Protection bits are to remain non zero after a SubnSet(PortInfo) fails a M_Key check. See 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 .
LocalPortNum	X	X	X	X	X	RO	8	224	The number of the link port which received this SMP.

Table 164

PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkWidthEnabled	X	X	X	X	RW	8	232		Enabled link width, indicated as follows: 0: No State Change; valid only on Set() 1: 1x 2: 4x 3: 1x or 4x 4: 8x 5: 1x or 8x 6: 4x or 8x 7: 1x or 4x or 8x 8: 12x 9: 1x or 12x 10: 4x or 12x 11: 1x or 4x or 12x 12: 8x or 12x 13: 1x or 8x or 12x 14: 4x or 8x or 12x 15: 1x or 4x or 8x or 12x If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported is set to 1: 16: 2x 17: 1x or 2x 18: 2x or 4x 19: 1x or 2x or 4x 20: 2x or 8x 21: 1x or 2x or 8x 22: 2x or 4x or 8x 23: 1x or 2x or 4x or 8x 24: 2x or 12x 25: 1x or 2x or 12x 26: 2x or 4x or 12x 27: 1x or 2x or 4x or 12x 28: 2x or 8x or 12x 29: 1x or 2x or 8x or 12x 30: 2x or 4x or 8x or 12x 31: 1x or 2x or 4x or 8x or 12x 32-254: Reserved Otherwise: 16 - 254: Reserved

Table 164 **PortInfo (Continued)**

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkWidthEnabled (cont'd)									255: Set to LinkWidthSupported value; response contains actual LinkWidthSupported. Changes to this component do not take effect immediately. See InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.
LinkWidthSupported	X	X	X	X	RO	8	240		Supported link width, indicated as follows: 1: 1x 3: 1x or 4x 7: 1x or 4x or 8x 11: 1x or 4x or 12x 15: 1x or 4x or 8x or 12x If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported is set to 1: 17: 1x or 2x 19: 1x or 2x or 4x 23: 1x or 2x or 4x or 8x 27: 1x or 2x or 4x or 12x 31: 1x or 2x or 4x or 8x or 12x 0, 2, 4-6, 8-10, 12-14, 16, 18, 20-22, 24-26, 28-30, 32-255: Reserved Otherwise: 0, 2, 4-6, 8-10, 12-14, 16-255: Reserved
LinkWidthActive	X	X	X	X	RO	8	248		Currently active link width, indicated as follows: 1: 1x 2: 4x 4: 8x 8: 12x If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported is set to 1: 16: 2x 0, 3, 5-7, 9-15, 17-255: Reserved Otherwise: 0, 3, 5-7, 9-255: Reserved

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkSpeedSupported	X	X	X	X	RO	4	256		Supported link speed, indicated as follows: 1: 2.5 Gbps 3: 2.5 or 5.0 Gbps 5: 2.5 or 10.0 Gbps (or higher when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 7: 2.5 or 5.0 or 10.0 Gbps (or higher when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 0, 2, 4, 6, 8-15: Reserved Note: See 14.3.14 SMSupportsExtendedLink-Speeds on page 986 for more information on SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds.
PortState	X	X	X	X	RW	4	260		Port State. Enumerated as: 0: No State Change; valid only on Set(). 1: Down (includes failed links) 2: Initialize 3: Armed 4: Active 5 - 15: Reserved When writing this field, only legal transitions are valid. See 7.2 Link States on page 187 .
PortPhysicalState	X	X	X	X	RW	4	264		0: No state change; valid only on Set() 1: Sleep 2: Polling 3: Disabled 4: PortConfigurationTraining 5: LinkUp 6: LinkErrorRecovery 7: Phy Test 8 - 15: Reserved When writing this field, only values 0, 1, 2, and 3 are valid. Other values are ignored. See InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkDownDefaultState	X	X	X	X	RW	4	268	0: No state change; valid only on Set() 1: Sleep 2: Polling 3 - 15: Reserved See InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.	
M_KeyProtectBits	X	X	X	X	RW	2	272	See 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 .	
M_KeyProtectBitsExt	X	X	X	X	RW	3	274	0: Don't allow SubnGet(NodeInfo) when M_KeyProtectBits 2 or 3 and MADHeader: MKey doesn't match PortInfo:MKey 1: Allow SubnGet(NodeInfo) when M_KeyProtectBits 2 or 3 regardless of whether MADHeader: MKey matches PortInfo:MKey 2-7: Reserved See 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877	
LMC	X	X	0	X	RW	3	277	LID mask count for multipath support; its usage is described in 7.11 Subnet Multipathing on page 242 .	
LinkSpeedActive	X	X	X	X	RO	4	280	Currently active link speed, indicated as follows: 0: Reserved (when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 0: Extended speed active (when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 1 in request/response AM) 1: 2.5 Gbps 2: 5.0 Gbps 4: 10.0 Gbps (or higher when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 3, 5-15: reserved Note: Either LinkSpeedActive or LinkSpeedExtActive should be non zero when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 1 in request/response AM. Note: See 14.3.14 SMSupportsExtendedLink-Speeds on page 986 for more information on SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds.	

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkSpeedEnabled	X	X	X	X	RW	4	284		Enabled link speed, indicated as follows: 0: No State Change; valid only on Set() 1: 2.5 Gbps (also when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 on set, disable any extended speeds) 3: 2.5 or 5.0 Gbps (also when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 on set, disable any extended speeds) 5: 2.5 or 10.0 Gbps (or higher when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 7: 2.5 or 5.0 or 10.0 Gbps (or higher when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM) 2, 4, 6, 8-14 Reserved 15: Set to LinkSpeedSupported value; response contains actual LinkSpeedSupported. In addition to the LinkSpeedSupported value, when SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds is set to 0 in request/response AM, response contains QDR indication if an extended speed is enabled. Note: See 14.3.14 SMSupportsExtendedLink-Speeds on page 986 for more information on SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds. Changes to this component do not take effect immediately. See InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.
NeighborMTU	X	X	X	X	RW	4	288		Active maximum MTU enabled on this port for transmit: 1: 256 2: 512 3: 1024 4: 2048 5: 4096 0, 6 - 15: reserved
MasterSMSL	X	X	X	X	RW	4	292		The administrative SL of the master SM that is managing this port.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
VLCap	X	X	X	X	RO	4	296		Virtual Lanes supported on this port, indicated as follows: 1: VL0 2: VL0, VL1 3: VL0 - VL3 4: VL0 - VL7 5: VL0 - VL14 0, 6 - 15: reserved
InitType	X	X	X	X	RO	4	300		Optional; shall be 0 if not implemented. Type of initialization requested by this port before SM moves it to Active or Armed state. See 14.4.4 Node Reinitialization on page 1002 . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• bit 0: NoLoad. 0 = Port is requesting that its attributes be initialized (see 14.4.3 Initialization Actions on page 998). 1 = Port is requesting that no data be loaded into its attributes at all, asserting that the last-loaded data still exists and is valid.• bit 1: PreserveContent. 0 = Port makes no request regarding content of the data that is loaded into its attributes. 1 = Port is requesting that all such data, if loaded, be set to the most recent content loaded by the SM.• bit 2: PreservePresence. 0 = Port is requesting that all settable SA attributes referencing this port (see Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025) be removed prior to activating this port and Report()s of in/out of service (trap numbers 64/65) be sent. 1 = Port is requesting that all such data be preserved, and Report()s of in/out of service (trap numbers 64/65) not be sent for this port.• bit 3: DoNotResuscitate. 0 = bits 0, 1, and 2 of this field are valid; initialization of this port should begin based on their values. 1 = bits 0, 1, and 2 are not valid; port is requesting that reinitialization of this port, and any Report()s of in/out of service (trap numbers 64/65) be delayed until this bit is set to 0.
VLHighLimit	X	X	X	X	RW	8	304		Limit of High Priority component of VL Arbitration Table, as defined in 7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208 .reserved when PortInfo EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled == 1

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
VLArcitrationHighCap	X	X	X	X	RO	8	312		VL/Weight pairs supported on this port in the VLArcitration table for high priority. Shall be 1 to 64 if more than one data VL is supported on this port, 0 otherwise. See 7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208 reserved when PortInfo EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled == 1
VLArcitrationLowCap	X	X	X	X	RO	8	320		VL/Weight pairs supported on this port in the VLArcitration table for low priority. Shall be N to 64 if more than one data VL is supported on this port, 0 otherwise, N being the number of data VLs supported. See 7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208 reserved when PortInfo EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled == 1
InitTypeReply	X	X		X	RW	4	328		<p>Written by the SM prior to changing the port to Active or Armed state. Optional; shall be set to all 0s if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsReinitSupported=0 or SA's Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsReinitSupported=0). Indicates the type of initialization performed. See 14.4.4 Node Reinitialization on page 1002.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> bit 0: NoLoadReply. 0 = Port attributes were initialized (see 14.4.3 Initialization Actions on page 998). 1 = No data was loaded into the port attributes. bit 1: PreserveContentReply. 0 = No information is available regarding content of the data loaded into the port attributes. 1 = The data loaded into the port attributes was set to the content most recently loaded by the SM. bit 2: PreservePresenceReply. 0 = All settable SA attributes referencing this port (see Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025) were removed prior to activating this port and Report(s) of in/out of service (trap numbers 64/65) were sent. 1 = All such data existing when this port was last active was not removed and Report(s) of in/out of service (trap numbers 64/65) were not sent. bit 3: Reserved.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0			
MTUCap	X	X	X	X	RO	4	332	Maximum MTU supported by this port. 1: 256 2: 512 3: 1024 4: 2048 5: 4096 0, 6 - 15: reserved
VLStallCount		X		RW	3	336		Specifies the number of sequential packets dropped that causes the port to enter the VLStalled state. The result of setting the VLStallCount to a value of zero is undefined. Refer to 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 for details.
HOQLife	X	X		RW	5	339		Sets the time a packet can live at the head of a VL queue. For switches, refer to 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 for details. For routers, refer to 19.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing Errors on page 1239 for details.
OperationalVLs	X	X	X	X	RW	4	344	Virtual Lanes operational on this port, indicated as follows: 0: No change; valid only on Set() 1: VLO 2: VLO, VL1 3: VLO - VL3 4: VLO - VL7 5: VLO - VL14 6 - 15: reserved Changing OperationalVLs in certain PortStates may cause flow control update errors which may initiate Link/Phy retraining.
PartitionEnforcementInbound		X		RW	1	348		Indicates support of optional partition enforcement. If set to one, enables partition enforcement on packets received on this port. Zero disables partition enforcement on packets received on this port.
PartitionEnforcementOutbound	X			RW	1	349		Indicates support of optional partition enforcement. If set to one, enables partition enforcement on packets transmitted from this port. Zero disables partition enforcement on packets transmitted on this port.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
FilterRawInbound		X		RW	1	350			Indicates support of optional raw packet enforcement. If set to 1, raw packets arriving on this port are discarded. If set to 0, inbound raw packets are not discarded; they are processed normally. See C18-16: on page 1215 .
FilterRawOutbound		X		RW	1	351			Indicates support of optional raw packet enforcement. If set to 1, raw packets departing on this port are discarded. If set to 0, outbound raw packets are not discarded; they are processed normally. See C18-52: on page 1225 .
M_KeyViolations	X	X	X	X	RW	16	352		Counts the number of SMP packets that have been received at this port that have had invalid M_Keys, since power-on or reset. Increments till count reaches all 1s and then shall be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. Setting this component to any value other than zero results in undefined behavior; however, it is recommended that any attempt to set the counter to a non-zero value results in it being left unchanged.
P_KeyViolations	X	X	X	X	RW	16	368		Counts the number of packets that have been received at this port that have had invalid P_Keys, since power-on or reset. Refer to 10.9.4 Bad P_Key Trap and P_Key Violations Counter (Optional) on page 559 for usage description. Increments till count reaches all 1s and then shall be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. Setting this component to any value other than zero results in undefined behavior; however, it is recommended that any attempt to set the counter to a non-zero value results in it being left unchanged.
Q_KeyViolations	X	X	X	X	RW	16	384		Counts the number of packets that have been received at this port that have had invalid Q_Keys, since power-on or reset. See 10.2.5 Q_Keys on page 470 for usage description. Increments till count reaches all 1s and then shall be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. Setting this component to any value other than zero results in undefined behavior; however, it is recommended that any attempt to set the counter to a non-zero value results in it being left unchanged.
GUIDCap	X	X	X	X	RO	8	400		Number of GUID entries supported in the GUIDInfo attribute for this port.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
ClientReregister	X	X		X	X	RW	1	408	Optional: shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsClientReregistrationSupported = 0). Used by SM to request end-node client reregistration of SA subscriptions. See 14.4.11 Client Reregistration on page 1011 .
MulticastPKeyTrap-SuppressionEnabled	X	X	X		X	RW	2	409	Bit 0: Shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMulticastPKeyTrapSuppressionSupported = 0). Used by SM to instruct port not to generate Bad P_Key Traps (257 in the case of an endpoint, or 259 in the case of a switch external port), when a multicast packet is discarded due to the packet not meeting the rule set by 10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558 for trap 257 and 18.2.4 Packet Relay Requirements on page 1213 for trap 259. See 10.9.4 Bad P_Key Trap and P_Key Violations Counter (Optional) on page 559 and 14.3.7 P_Key Mismatch on Switch External Ports on page 982 . Bit 1: Reserved
SubnetTimeOut	X	X		X	X	RW	5	411	Specifies the maximum expected subnet propagation delay, which depends upon the configuration of the switches, to reach any other port in the subnet and shall also be used to determine the maximum rate which SubnTrap()s can be sent from this port. The duration of time is calculated based on $(4.096 \mu\text{sec} * 2^{\text{SubnetTimeOut}})$.
PartitionTopEnabled	X	X	X	X	X	RW	1	416	Indicates support of optional partition top. If set to one, enables partition top, zero disables partition top. Reserved if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsPartition-TopSupported == 0
EnhancedQoSArbiter-Enabled	X	X	X		X	RW	1	417	Indicates support of optional enhanced QoS arbiter. If set to one, enables optional enhanced QoS arbiter, zero disables enhanced QoS arbiter. Reserved if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsEnhanced-QoSArbiterSupported == 0
Reserved	X	X	X	X	X	RO	1	418	Reserved
RespTimeValue	X	X		X	X	RO	5	419	Specifies the expected maximum time between the port reception of a SMP and the transmission of the associated response. The duration of time is calculated based on $(4.096 \mu\text{sec} * 2^{\text{RespTimeValue}})$.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LocalPhyErrors	X	X	X	X	RW	4	424		Threshold value. When the count of marginal link errors exceeds this threshold, the local link integrity error shall be detected as described in 7.12.2 Error Recovery Procedures on page 244 .
OverrunErrors	X	X	X	X	RW	4	428		Threshold value. When the count of buffer overruns over consecutive flow control update periods exceeds this threshold as described in 7.12 Error detection and handling on page 242 , the excessive buffer overrun error shall be detected as described in that section.
MaxCreditHint	X	X	X	X	RO	16	432		Optional; shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLinkRoundTripLatency-Supported = 0). This value provides a vendor-dependent indication of the maximum number of credits available per VL on the Port.
Reserved	X	X	X	X	X	RO	8	448	Reserved
LinkRoundTripLatency	X	X	X	0	RO	24	456		Optional; shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLinkRoundTripLatency-Supported = 0). This value represents a measurement of the round-trip latency of the link attached to this port. It is an unsigned 24-bit integer counting 4 nsec. intervals. This value might not be accurate to better than +/- 4 nsec. A value of 0 is valid when implemented, and indicates a latency of up to 4 nsec. LinkRoundTripLatency is reset to 0xFFFFFFF whenever this port transitions to PortState = Down. Each time a link heartbeat reply (ACK) is received on this port when PortState is not Down, this value is set to the minimum of (a) the prior value of this attribute; and (b) the time elapsed since the corresponding heartbeat (SND) was sent. Note that while the value of this component will never increase, it may change over time due to varying queueing delays associated with traffic load. Note that this component is always 0 for Enhanced SP 0. See InfiniBand Architecture Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
CapabilityMask2	X	X	0	X	X	RO	16	480	<p>Additional supported capabilities of this port. Valid only if IsCapabilityMask2Supported bit is set in CapabilityMask. A bit set to 1 indicates affirmation of supported capability.</p> <p>0: IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported^e 1: IsPortInfoExtendedSupported 2: IsVirtualizationSupported 3: IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported 4: IsLinkWidth2xSupported^f 5: IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported^g 6: IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported 7: IsEnhancedTrap128Supported 8: IsPartitionTopSupported 9: IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported 10-15: Reserved</p>
LinkSpeedExtActive	X	X	X	X	RO	4	496		<p>If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported, currently active extended link speed, indicated as follows:</p> <p>0: No extended speed active 1: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) 2: 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported, 4: 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 3, 5-15: Reserved Otherwise, 3-15: Reserved</p>

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkSpeedExtSupported	X	X	X	X	RO	4	500		If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported, supported extended link speeds, indicated as follows: 0: No extended speed supported 1: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) 2: 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) 3: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) or 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported, 4: 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 5: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 6: 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 7: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR), 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 8-15: Reserved Otherwise, 4-15: Reserved
Reserved	X	X	X	X	X	RO	3	504	Reserved

Table 164 PortInfo (Continued)

Component	Used By					Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0				
LinkSpeedExtEnabled	X	X	X	X	RW	5	507		If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported, currently enabled extended link speed, indicated as follows: 0: On Set(), no state change 0: On GetResp(), no extended speed enabled 1: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) 2: 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) 3: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) or 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported, 4: 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 5: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 6: 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 7: 14.0625 Gbps (FDR), 25.78125 Gbps (EDR) or 53.125 Gbps (HDR) 8-29: Reserved Otherwise, 4-29: Reserved 30: Disable extended link speeds/Extended link speeds disabled (special case for o14-12.a3:) 31: Set to LinkSpeedExtSupported value; response contains actual LinkSpeedExtSupported (special case for o14-12.a3:)

- a. IsOptionalIPDSupported is ignored, and support for the optional IPD values (see [Table 377, "Static Rate Control IPD Values," on page 1198](#)) is assumed to be present, if PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported is other than 1, or if PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported is other than 1, 3, or 11.
- b. In the case of either Base or Enhanced SP0, IsSLMappingSupported specifies whether the SLtoVLMappingTable is supported by both SP0 and by the switch's external ports. Must be 1 if any switch port supports more than 1 data VL.
- c. When this bit is set for Base SP0 or Enhanced SP0 of a given switch, it will indicate that this CapabilityMask bit shall be used by all Sw Ext ports of the device. SP0 itself shall not support CableInfo queries. Note that trap 144, CapabilityMask change, shall not be applicable to Sw Ext ports.
- d. For switch port 0, indicates whether IsMulticastPKeyTrapSuppression supported on port 0 and the external ports of that switch.
- e. IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported requires that a NodeDescription that was set is persistent across any reinitialization (e.g., reset or reboot of node, etc.).
- f. Indicates that 2x link widths including relevant SA rates are supported.
- g. Indicates that HDR link speed including relevant SA rates is supported. When IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 1, IsExtendedSpeeds in PortInfo:CapabilityMask must also be set to 1.

14.2.5.6.1 INTERPRETATION OF DIAGCODE

Endpoints of an IBA network will have functions attached to the non-IBA side of those endpoints. The 16-bit PortInfo:DiagCode field provides both generic and vendor-specific diagnostic status for those non-IBA functions.

It is valid only on endpoints and all bits set to zero means the function status is good. Any non-zero value means there are possible error conditions. Additional status information specific to a particular management class may also be provided, depending on the function, but PortInfo:DiagCode is always present.

The PortInfo:DiagCode can provide three levels of diagnostic data:

- A high level, universal set of status codes. A PortInfo:DiagCode of all zeroes indicates no exception conditions exist. Nonzero values of bits 3-0 of PortInfo:DiagCode have the same meanings for all non-IBA attached functions; these meanings are documented below in [Table 165 Standard Encoding of DiagCode Bits 3-0 on page 917](#).
- An optional, high level vendor-specific diagnostic code in bits 14-4 of PortInfo:DiagCode. Interpretation of this field requires knowledge of the diagnostic codes supported by the functions behind the endpoint.
- An optional, more detailed vendor-specific port attribute pointed to by PortInfo:DiagCode. Availability of this information is indicated by bit 15 of PortInfo:DiagCode and the pertinent port attribute is then pointed to by bits 14-4.

[Figure 194 DiagCode Fields on page 916](#) summarizes the structure and interpretation of PortInfo:DiagCode fields.

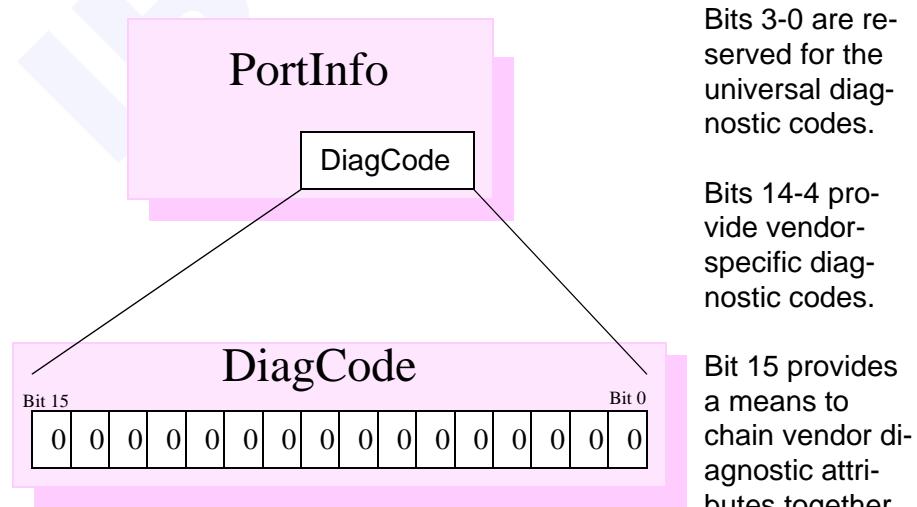


Figure 194 DiagCode Fields

The error information in bits 3-0 is interpreted in a standard fashion for all endpoints as shown in [Table 165 Standard Encoding of DiagCode Bits 3-0 on page 917](#).

Table 165 Standard Encoding of DiagCode Bits 3-0

DiagCode Bits 3-0	Description
0x0	Function Ready
0x1	Performing Self Test
0x2	initializing
0x3	soft error - function has a non-fatal error and may be used
0x4	hard error - function may not be used
0x5 - 0xF	reserved

Bits 14-4 of PortInfo:DiagCode are used for vendor-specific modifiers to the standard diagnostic information, as shown in [Figure 195 Example of DiagCode Bits on page 917](#).

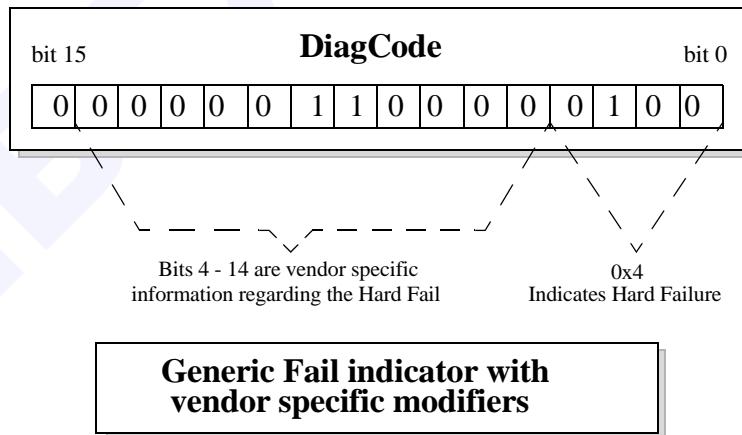


Figure 195 Example of DiagCode

If bit 15, the IndexForward bit, is zero (0), bits 14-4 of the PortInfo:Diag-Code represent a vendor-specific diagnostic code. Interpretation of the returned information is outside the scope of this specification. Further diagnostic information might be provided in known locations in one or more vendor-specific attributes.

If the IndexForward bit is set, bits 14-4 of the PortInfo:DiagCode field are used to index into the VendorDiag Attribute data for vendor-specific diagnostic information. This allows dynamic chaining of diagnostic information based on the type of exception. Bits 14-4 are interpreted as an Attribute-Modifier to be specified with an SubnGet(VendorDiag) to the port being examined as defined in [14.2.5.14 VendorDiag on page 925](#).

14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable

The P_KeyTable Attribute provides the means for assigning the P_Keys for ports.

The AttributeModifier is divided in two halves:

- The least significant 16 bits are a pointer to a block of 32 P_Key entries to which this Attribute applies. Valid values are 0 - 2047, and are further limited by the size of the P_Key table for that node (specified by the PartitionCap for CAs, routers, and switch management ports or PartitionEnforcementCap for external ports on switches). See [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#).
- For switches, the upper 16 bits select the switch port, where valid values are 1 - 254 to select physical ports and zero to select the switch management port.

For CA and router, the upper 16 bits are ignored and the operation is performed on the port that received the SMP.

Table 166 P_KeyTable

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
P_KeyTable Block	RW	512	List of 32 P_Key Block Elements.

Table 167 P_Key Block Element

Component	Length (bits)	Description
Membership-Type	1	If set to zero, the P_Key is limited type and the endnode may accept a packet with a matching full P_Key, but may not accept a packets with a matching limited P_Key. If set to one, the P_Key is full type and the endnode may receive packets with matching full or limited P_Key. A full description is in 10.9.1.1 Limited and Full Membership on page 556 .
P_KeyBase	15	Base value of the P_Key that the endnode will use to check against incoming packets.

14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable

The SLtoVLMappingTable Attribute provides the means for setting the SL to VL Mapping of a switch, CA, and router and its usage is described in [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#).

For a switch, this attribute is specific to an input port and output port combination to which the specific SL to VL mapping applies. However, to allow for more efficient programming, a switch may allow the SM to set this at-

tribute for multiple input port and output port combinations with a single SubnSet(SLtoVLMappingTable) operation as follows:

- bits 31-21 must be reserved.
- bits 20-18 must be zero for SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 0. If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 1, then for a SubnSet() operation with bit 20 set to 1, bit 19 selects the port range of the InputPortMask, bit 18 selects the port range of the OutputPortMask, and bits 17 and 16 are ignored.
- bits 17 and 16 must be zero for SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming is 0.
- If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 1, then for a SubnSet() operation, bit 20 indicates that the port masked mode of optimized SLtoVLMapping table programming is being utilized. In this mode, the provided SLtoVLMapping table will be set for all combinations of the input and output ports that are specified in the masks. Ports beyond NodeInfo:NumPorts in either the input or output port mask are invalid. Additionally, for the output port mask, port 0 is only valid when enhanced switch port 0 is supported.
- If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 1, then for a SubnSet() operation with bit 20 set to 0, bit 17 indicates that the input port portion of the AM **shall** be ignored, and the operation **shall** be applied to the SLtoVLMapping tables for ALL input ports on this switch. Thus, by setting bit 17 to 1, the SM may program the SLtoVLMappingTable attribute for all input ports.
- If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if bits 20 and 17 are 0, bits 15-8 of the AttributeModifier specify the input port which can be 1 to N, where N selects the physical port or 0 to indicate that the input port is the management port.
- If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 1, then for a SubnSet() operation with bit 20 set to 0, bit 16 indicates that the output port portion of the AM **shall** be ignored, and the operation **shall** be applied to the SLtoVLMapping tables for ALL output ports on this switch. Thus, by setting bit 16 to 1, the SM may program the SLtoVLMappingTable attribute for all output ports.
- If SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if bits 20 and 16 are 0, bits 7-0 of the AttributeModifier specify the output port which can be 1 to N, where N selects the physical port. For implementations supporting enhanced switch port 0, N = 0 indicates the management port.

- If PortInfo.CapabilityMask2. IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 1 and Portinfo EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled ==1 and EnhQoSArbiter-Info.QoSArbiterSLCap != 15, an SL above the cap should be considered as unauthorized thus, mapped to VL15 as described in [Table 19 SLtoVLMappingTable Behavior on page 206](#)

For CA and router, this attribute corresponds to the port receiving the SMP (the AttributeModifier is ignored).

Table 168 SLtoVLMappingTable

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
SL0toVL	RW	4	0	The number of the VL on which packets using SL0 are output. 15 forces the packets to be dropped.
SL1toVL	RW	4	4	The VL associated with SL1
SL2toVL	RW	4	8	The VL associated with SL2
SL3toVL	RW	4	12	The VL associated with SL3
SL4toVL	RW	4	16	The VL associated with SL4
SL5toVL	RW	4	20	The VL associated with SL5
SL6toVL	RW	4	24	The VL associated with SL6
SL7toVL	RW	4	28	The VL associated with SL7
SL8toVL	RW	4	32	The VL associated with SL8
SL9toVL	RW	4	36	The VL associated with SL9
SL10toVL	RW	4	40	The VL associated with SL10
SL11toVL	RW	4	44	The VL associated with SL11
SL12toVL	RW	4	48	The VL associated with SL12
SL13toVL	RW	4	52	The VL associated with SL13
SL14toVL	RW	4	56	The VL associated with SL14
SL15toVL	RW	4	60	The VL associated with SL15
Reserved	RO	192	64	Reserved
InputPortMask	RW	128	256	If AM bit 20 is 0, the input port mask is ignored. If AM bit 20 is 1, specifies input port mask. If AM bit 19 is 0, specifies the input port mask for ports 127 - 0. If AM bit 19 is 1, specifies the input port mask for ports 254 - 128. In a query response: undefined

Table 168 SLtoVLMappingTable (Continued)

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OutputPortMask	RW	128	384	If AM bit 20 is 0, the output port mask is ignored. If AM bit 20 is 1, specifies output port mask. If AM bit 18 is 0, specifies the output port mask for ports 127 - 0. If AM bit 18 is 1, specifies the output port mask for ports 254 - 128. In a query response: undefined

14.2.5.9 VLARBITRATIONTABLE

The VLArbitrationTable Attribute provides the means for setting the VL Arbitration for ports on CAs, routers and switches; its usage is described in [7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208](#).

The AttributeModifier is divided in two halves. The upper 16 bits specify the part of the tables that is accessed.

- 1 - lower 32 entries of the low priority VL Arbitration Table.
- 2 - upper 32 entries of the low priority VL Arbitration Table.
- 3 - lower 32 entries of the high priority VL Arbitration Table.
- 4 - upper 32 entries of the high priority VL Arbitration Table.
- 0, 5-65535 - reserved.

For switches, the least significant 16 bits of the AttributeModifier specify the external port or enhanced (not base) port 0 in bits 7-0; and bits 15-8 are reserved.

For CA and router, this attribute corresponds to the port receiving the SMP (the lower 16 bits of the AttributeModifier are ignored).

The size of the VLArbitrationTable, based on PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap and PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap, further limits the valid values. See [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#)

Table 169 VLArbitrationTable

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
VL/Weight pairs	RW	512	0	Lists of 32 VL/Weight Block elements, for which there may be up to 64 in total for a given priority.

Table 170 VL/Weight Block Element

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	4	0	Reserved

Table 170

VL/Weight Block Element (Continued)

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
VL	4	4	VL associated with element.
Weight	8	8	Weight associated with element, as defined in 7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208 , zero indicates that this element is skipped.

14.2.5.10 LINEARFORWARDINGTABLE

The LinearForwardingTable Attribute provides the means for setting the linear forwarding table of a switch for the Unicast LIDs.

The AttributeModifier is a pointer to a block of 64 LIDs to which this attribute applies. Valid values are from 0 to 767, and are further limited by the size of the LinearForwardingTable of the switch. An implementation may choose either SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap or SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop to denote the size of the LinearForwardingTable. See [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#).

Table 171

LinearForwardingTable

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
LinearForwarding-Table Block	RW	512	List of 64 Port Block Elements.

Table 172

Port Block Element

Component	Length(bits)	Description
Port	8	Port to which packets with the LID corresponding to this entry are to be forwarded.

14.2.5.11 RANDOMFORWARDINGTABLE

The RandomForwardingTable Attribute provides the means for setting the random forwarding table of a switch for the Unicast LIDs.

The AttributeModifier is a pointer to a block of 16 LID/port pairs to which this Attribute applies. Valid values are from 0 to 3071, and are further limited by the size of the RandomForwardingTable of the switch based on SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap. See [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#). If an invalid port number is written into an entry that has the Valid bit set to 1, packets sent to the LIDs specified in the entry will be discarded and that entry's Port **shall** be read back as 0xFF to indicate that an invalid port number was used. If two or more entries specify LID ranges that overlap based on LMCs, and the Valid bit for these entries is set to 1, switch for-

warding behavior for packets sent to these LIDs is implementation-dependent.

Table 173 RandomForwardingTable

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
RandomForwardingTable Block	RW	512	List of 16 LID/Port Block Elements.

Table 174 LID/Port Block Element

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LID	16	0	Base LID.
Valid	1	16	This LID/Port pair is valid. Note that setting this parameter to 0 allows the removal of entries.
LMC	3	17	the LMC of this LID.
Reserved	4	20	Reserved
Port	8	24	Port to which packets with this LID/LMC corresponding to this entry are to be forwarded.

14.2.5.12 MULTICASTFORWARDINGTABLE

This MulticastForwardingTable Attribute provides the means for setting the multicast forwarding table of a switch.

The nine low-order bits of the AttributeModifier are a pointer to a block of 32 PortMask entries to which this attribute applies. Valid values are limited by the size of the MulticastForwardingTable of the switch based on SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap; see [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#). If MulticastFDBTop is supported (see IsMulticastFDBTopSupported in [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#)), an implementation may instead use SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBTop as the maximum MLID of the MulticastForwardingTable. See [Figure 196 MulticastForwardingTable Bit Layout on page 924](#) for how blocks of PortMasks are mapped into MulticastForwardingTable entries.

The four high-order bits of the AttributeModifier indicate the position (p) of the 16-bit PortMask entry of this Attribute. Each PortMask entry specifies only 16 bits of the 256 possible bits of a port mask of a maximum size switch. (see [Figure 196 MulticastForwardingTable Bit Layout on page 924](#)). Valid values of the position bits are limited by the number of ports on the switch. PortMask bits in a block that are beyond the number of switch ports are ignored on write and read back as zero.

The remaining 19 bits (bits 27:9) of the AttributeModifier **shall** be set to zero.

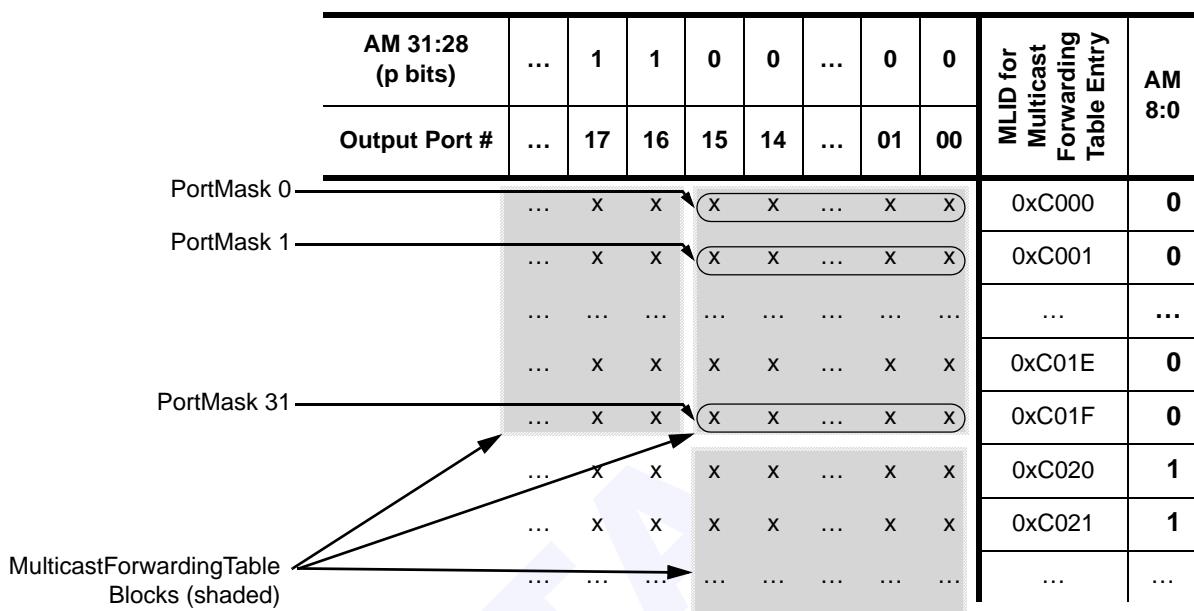


Figure 196 MulticastForwardingTable Bit Layout

Table 175 MulticastForwardingTable

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
MulticastForwardingTable Block	RW	512	List of 32 PortMask Block Elements.

Table 176 PortMask Block Element

Component	Length(bits)	Description
PortMask	16	16 bits starting at position $16 \times p$ of the PortMask associated with this LID where each bit in the PortMask shall refer to a port number that is equal to $16 \times p$ plus the position of the bit within the PortMask. For example, when p equals zero, the least significant bit of the PortMask refers to port 0 and when p equals one, the least significant bit of the PortMask refers to port 16. An incoming packet with this LID is forwarded to all ports for which the bit in the PortMask is set to 1.

14.2.5.13 SMINFO

The SMInfo attribute is used by Subnet Managers to exchange information during subnet discovery and polling as described in [14.4 Subnet Man-](#)

[ager on page 989](#). This attribute **shall** be available on a port where a Subnet Manager resides.

Table 177 SMInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GUID	RO	64	0	PortGUID of the port where the SM resides.
SM_Key	RO	64	64	Key of this SM. This is shown as 0 unless the requesting SM is authenticated (see 14.4.7 Authentication on page 1009).
ActCount	RO	32	128	Counter that increments each time the SM issues an SMP or performs other management activities. Used as a “heartbeat” indicator by standby SMs.
Priority	RO	4	160	Administratively assigned priority for this SM. Can be reset by master SM. Zero is lowest priority. An out-of-band mechanism for setting this value shall be provided. The default value, if not set by the out-of-band mechanism, shall be zero.
SMState	RO	4	164	Enumerated value indicating this SM’s state. Enumerated as follows: 0 - not active 1 - discovering 2 - standby 3 - master 4-15 - Reserved

14.2.5.14 VENDORDIAG

The VendorDiag Attribute provides a way to obtain vendor specific diagnostic information. The interpretation of the VendorDiag:DiagData is specific to the port in question. It is accessible from ports on CAs, routers, and the management port on a switch.

Table 178 VendorDiag

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
NextIndex	RO	16	0	Next AttributeModifier to get to diagnostic Info. Set to zero if this is last or only diagnostic data.
DiagData	RO	496	16	Vendor specific diagnostic information. Format is undefined.

[14.2.5.6.1 Interpretation of DiagCode on page 915](#) describes how the PortInfo:DiagCode forwarding mechanism is used to obtain the address modifier for the VendorDiag attribute during interpretation of diagnostic codes. An example of the use of the IndexForward bit, bit 15 of the PortInfo:DiagCode component, is shown in [Figure 197 Index Forwarded Diagnostic Information on page 926](#).

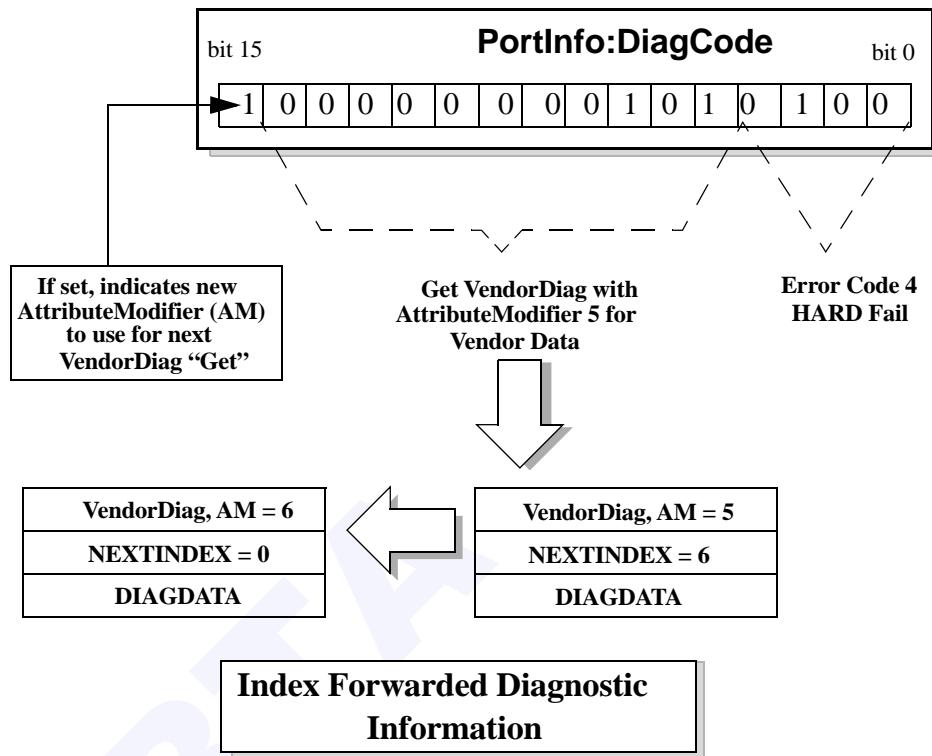


Figure 197 Index Forwarded Diagnostic Information

In the above example the PortInfo:DiagCode with the IndexForward bit set indicates that VendorDiag AttributeModifier 5 of this port contains vendor-specific diagnostic information. When VendorDiag AttributeModifier 5 is retrieved, the VendorDiag:NextIndex value indicates more data at AttributeModifier 6. The retrieval of AttributeModifier 6 returns a VendorDiag:NextIndex of 0, indicating the end of the diagnostic data.

14.2.5.15 LEDINFO

The LedInfo Attribute provides the ability to turn on or off a LED optionally provided by a CA, router, and switch using SMPs. This LED is not specified and the implementation of this LED is vendor-specific. It has no association with LEDs that are specified by this or other volumes of the IB

specification. A CA, router, and switch **shall** indicate its support of this attribute in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.

Table 179 **LedInfo**

Component	Type	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LedMask	RW	1	0	Set to 1 for LED on, and 0 for LED off. The response packet shall indicate actual LED state.
Reserved	RO	31	1	Reserved

14.2.5.16 LINKSPEEDWIDTHPAIRSTABLE

The LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable optional attribute provides the means for a device to describe its limited support for link speed and width combinations. Although most devices do support all combinations of the individually supported widths and speeds, some do not. An example would be a device which has PortInfo.LinkWidthEnabled of 1x, 4x, 8x and PortInfo.LinkSpeedEnabled of 2.5 Gbps, 5.0 Gbps and 10.0 Gbps but, due to limited internal bandwidth of the device, the 8x/10.0 Gbps combination is not supported. Such a device should use the LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable optional attribute to report that limitation.

o14-24.2-1.2: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o14-24.2-1.3](#):

o14-24.2-1.3: A device which does not support setting of all combinations of PortInfo.LinkWidthEnabled, PortInfo.LinkSpeedEnabled, and PortInfo.LinkSpeedExtEnabled **shall** provide a detailed table of its supported link speed and link width combinations using the LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attribute. For devices which support all combinations of link speed and link width (as indicated by the PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported, PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported, and PortInfo:LinkSpeedExtSupported), the LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attribute is optional. A device not supporting setting of all combinations of PortInfo.LinkWidthEnabled, PortInfo.LinkSpeedEnabled, and PortInfo.LinkSpeedExtEnabled **shall** report its support for the LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable by setting the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableSupported bit to 1.

The LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attribute is read-only. A device may report up to 256 LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attributes indexed from 0 to 255.

- Bit 31 of the attribute modifier: SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds

For ports supporting extended link speeds (indicated in the capability mask), this bit tells the SMA that the SM supports extended (as well as any original) link speeds. When 0, SMA sets Speed-10 bits when responding to the SM. When 1, the actual values of the Speed-10 are used in responses to the SM.

Note: See [14.3.14 SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds on page 986](#) for more information on SMSupportsExtendedSpeeds.

- Bits 30:8 of the attribute modifier must be 0.
- Bits 7:0 of the attribute modifier: Index. When used for SubnGet(LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable), this indicates the specific LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable to be retrieved.

The LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable.NumTables component is only valid in response to a SubnGet(LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable) with an Index of zero.

The LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable.PortMask component specifies which of the device ports are described by this attribute. Having the same port mask bit set for multiple LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attributes (different Index parameters) is illegal.

Table 180 **LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable**

Component	Type	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
NumTables	RO	8	0	When Index is 0, number of LinkSpeedWidthPairTable attributes supported by the node When Index is non-0: Reserved.
PortMask	RO	256	8	Defines which ports are associated with this table. Bit 0 represents port 0, bit 1 represents port 1, etc.
Speed-2.5	RO	8	264	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is 2.5 Gbps. The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkWidthSupported component.
Speed-5	RO	8	272	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is 5.0 Gbps. The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkWidthSupported component.
Speed-10	RO	8	280	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is 10.0 Gbps. The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkWidthSupported component.
Speed-FDR	RO	8	288	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is FDR (14.0625 Gbps). The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkSpeedExt-Supported component.
Speed-EDR	RO	8	296	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is EDR (25.78125 Gbps). The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkSpeedExt-Supported component.
Speed-HDR	RO	8	304	A bit mask defining all possible link width values when the link speed is HDR (53.125 Gbps). The bits follow the coding defined by the PortInfo.LinkSpeedExt-Supported component. Field is reserved if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDSupported is not set to 1.
Reserved	RO	200	312	Reserved

14.2.5.17 VENDORSPECIFICMADSTABLE

In this section, a "vendor-specific MAD" means the combination of an OUI, a MgmtClass, and an Attribute ID and "vendor-specific attribute range" means a combination of an OUI, a MgmtClass, and a starting and ending AttributelD (attribute range).

The VendorSpecificMadsTable optional attribute provides a means for a device's SMA to indicate which vendor-specific MADs are supported by the device. Since firmware and software from multiple vendors may be present within a single system, and each level of software may support certain vendor-specific MADs, it is not enough to examine the VendorID of a device to determine what MADs are supported. Additionally, a single vendor may support different MADs on different devices, or with different versions of software which are not detectable by using only communications defined by the InfiniBand architecture specification.

Polling to determine which vendor-specific MADs are supported by a device can be time consuming. The VendorSpecificMadsTable attribute solves this problem by giving a device a mechanism for declaring which vendor-specific attribute ranges are supported.

o14-24.2-1.4: If a port supports the VendorSpecificMadsTable attribute as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsVendorSpecificMadsTableSupported bit to 1, it shall respond to SubnGet(VendorSpecificMadsTable), either with a valid table indicating support for certain OUI / Class / Attribute range combinations, or an error status.

The VendorSpecificMadsTable attribute is read-only. Each SubnGet(VendorSpecificMadsTable) can indicate support for up to 7 vendor-specific attribute ranges. By using the AttributeModifier as an index from 0 to 255, a device may indicate support for up to 1,792 vendor-specific attribute ranges.

A SubnGet(VendorSpecificMadsTable) has the following properties:

- Bits 31-8 of the AttributeModifier must be reserved.
- Bits 7-0 of the AttributeModifier: Index. When used for SubnGet(VendorSpecificMadsTable), this indicates the specific group of 7 VendorSpecificMadsTable entries to be retrieved.

The VendorSpecificMadsTable.NumEntries component is only valid in response to a SubnGet(VendorSpecificMadsTable) with an Index of zero.

If the VendorSpecificMadsTable.NumEntries component indicates support for more than 7 VendorSpecificMadsTableEntries, then the Index in the AttributeModifier is used to determine which group of (up to) 7 entries is to be returned. If the Index is 0, then entries 0-6 are returned, if the

Index is 1, then, entries 7-13 are returned, and so on. The contents of any entries beyond the value of the NumEntries component are reserved.

Table 181 VendorSpecificMadsTable

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
NumEntries	16	0	When Index (low 8 bits of AM) is 0, total number of VendorSpecificMadsTable entries supported by the port
Reserved	48	16	Reserved
VendorSpecificMadsTableBlock	448	64	Block of 7 VendorSpecificMadsTableEntries

Table 182 VendorSpecificMadsTableEntry

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OUI	24	0	The OUI of the Vendor providing servicing of the vendor-specific MAD.
Class	8	24	The MgmtClass of the specific MAD supported for this entry.
StartAttribute	16	32	The starting AttributeID of the specific MAD supported for this entry.
EndAttribute	16	48	The ending AttributeID of the specific MAD supported for this entry. If 0 or same as StartAttribute, then only 1 attribute is supported.

By placing an entry in the VendorSpecificMadsTable for a port, a vendor is advertising support for the particular combination of the MgmtClass and AttributeID range specified. The semantics of using the Class / Attribute range combination, including which methods are supported are vendor specific.

Additionally, for classes 0x09 - 0x0F, if the same Class / Attribute pair appears more than once in the VendorSpecificMadsTable, the behavior is not specified; it is the responsibility of the multiple vendors involved to ensure that any conflicts are resolved in a meaningful way. For Classes 0x30 - 0x4F, no conflict exists, since the OUI is part of the Vendor MAD Fields.

14.2.5.18 CABLEINFO

The CableInfo optional attribute provides management information about cables via access to cable EEPROM data. A device shall report its support for this attribute via the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCableInfoSupported being 1. The value for this capability may change as a result of cable insertion and removal, which will also result in PortInfo.PortPhysicalState changes. If the port supports CapabilityMask change traps, when PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCableInfoSupported changes, a trap 144 CapabilityMaskChange shall be sent. See [14.3.11 Change CapabilityMask](#).

on page 985 for more information. Upon a link state change, a switch shall first update the capability mask for the given port and then send only a link state change trap.

The AttributeModifier contains the following fields:

- bit 31 - Reserved
- bits 30-19 - Address - The first byte to be accessed by the given operation.
- bits 18-13 - AddLength - How many additional bytes will be accessed by the given operation (e.g., 0 -> a total of 1 byte is accessed, 63 -> a total of 64 bytes is accessed)
- bits 12-8 - Reserved
- bits 7-0 - switch port, where valid values are 1-254 to select physical ports. The values zero (switch management port) and 255 are reserved.

For CA and router, the lower 8 bits are ignored and the operation is performed on the port that received the SMP.

Reset on read fields within the accessed address range shall be processed as follows:

- Neither a Get(CableInfo) nor a Set(CableInfo) request shall alter the field
- The value for the field supplied in a Set(CableInfo) request shall be ignored
- GetResp(CableInfo) shall report a value of 0 for the field

Addressing for each cable style will be mapped onto a linear 4096 byte address space. Devices shall support access starting at any arbitrary address within the valid address range for the given device, provided the address range specified does not cross a 128 byte page boundary.

Combinations of Address and AddLength which cross a page boundary or which access pages beyond those supported by the given device shall result in a MAD Status of "One or more fields in the attribute or attribute modifier contain an invalid value", see [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#).

For QSFP devices, the address shall be interpreted as follows:

address 0-127 - lower 128 bytes (byte 127 [page select byte] will be undefined for this query and SMA is expected to manipulate this byte as needed)

address 128-255 - page 0 upper 128 bytes (Example fields of interest are vendor, model, serial numbers and technology/configuration information)

address 256-383 - page 1 upper 128 bytes

address 384-511 - page 2 upper 128 bytes

address 512-639 - page 3 upper 128 bytes

address 640-4095 - reserved

Definition of the meaning of individual bytes within the QSFP specification is beyond the scope of this specification. For further information consult the QSFP specification, SFF-8436.

For CXP devices, the address shall be interpreted as follows:

address 0-127 - TX lower page (required), byte 0-127, address A0

address 128-255 - TX upper page 0 (required), byte 128-255, address A0

address 256-383 - TX upper page 1 (optional), byte 128-255, address A0

address 384-511 - RX lower page (optional), byte 0-127, address A8

Note: RX upper page 0 is identical to TX upper page 0 and doesn't need to be included

address 512-639 - RX upper page 1 (optional), byte 128-255, address A8

address 640-4095 - reserved

Definition of the meaning of individual bytes within the CXP specification is beyond the scope of this section. For further information, consult IBTA version 1.3.1 Volume 2 Chapter 8.

Note: For both CXP and QSFP standards, byte 128 in Cable Info Query will indicate module type and hence imply format for rest of address range.

Note: Future expansion of software and hardware for other cable types will be possible provided the new devices provide a unique value in byte 128. Given history of CXP and QSFP both having this, it is very likely to be viable for future cable standards, in which case address mapping for any future cable standards can be defined such that byte 128 points to an appropriate identifier.

Table 183 **CableInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
CableData	RO or RW - See corresponding cable specification	512	Cable Data bytes

When AddLength is less than 63, the corresponding bytes in the Set shall be ignored and 0 shall be returned for the corresponding bytes in the Get-Resp.

Note: It is left to the implementation as to whether a Get performs a direct Cable EEPROM access at I2C defined speeds or if the implementation caches or pre-fetches information to permit a rapid response for static fields.

CableData fields in a Set which correspond to read only fields in the cable, as defined by the referenced QSFP or CXP cable specification, shall be ignored.

14.2.5.19 PORTINFOEXTENDED

The PortInfoExtended optional attribute provides extended port specific information.

A device shall report its support for this attribute setting the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported to 1.

The AttributeModifier is partitioned as follows:

- bits 31-8 are reserved
- bits 7-0, the AM:PortNumber field, select the port upon which the operation specified by the SMP is performed.

The rules by which the AM:PortNumber is used, for example the expected response for a port that is in Down state, are the same as defined for the PortInfo attribute in Table 152 PortInfo on page 870. The “Used By” columns indicate how and whether a component is used by a particular type of port: Channel Adapter (CA), Router (Router), Switch external port (Sw Ext.), Base Switch Port 0 (Base SP0) and Enhanced Switch Port 0 (Enh. SP0). The notation used in the columns is: X = required; 0 = must be 0; 1 = must be 1; and blank = unused.

o14-24.2-1.5: If the port supports Traps as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported, and the port supports PortInfoExtended as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported bit to one, then the SMA shall send a Trap 144 to the SM when any PortInfoExtended field is changed locally, not as a result of a SubnSet(),

for example by means beyond the specification. The PortInfoExtended-Changed bit in Trap 144 DataDetails should be set to one.

o14-24.2-1.6: If the port supports Notices as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, and the port supports PortInfoExtended as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoExtended-Supported bit to one, then the SMA shall log a Notice using Notice:Trap-Number 144 when any PortInfoExtended field is changed locally, not as a result of a SubnSet(), for example by means beyond the specification.

Table 184 PortInfoExtended

Component	Used By					Description			
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	
CapabilityMask						RO	32	0	Extended capabilities supported by this port. This field is valid for all port types, but specific bits may be valid for limited port types. X X X 0 0 X X X X X
FECModeActive	X X X					RO	16	32	The active FEC mode of this port. This is a numeric field indicating the current mode by providing the mode bit number. For example, if the active mode is RS-FEC - RS(528,514), the value read will be 2. A value of 0 means no FEC mode is active.
FDRFECModeSupported	X X X					RO	16	48	Supported FEC capabilities for FDR speed. Each bit represents a mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: No FEC - this speed can operate without FEC 1: Fire-Code 2: RS-FEC - RS(528,514) 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4-15: Reserved For valid FEC modes, see InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.

Table 184 PortInfoExtended

Component	Used By					Description			
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	
FDRFECModeEnabled	X	X	X			RW	16	64	Enabled FEC capabilities for FDR speed. Each bit enables a specific mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: No FEC - this speed can operate without FEC 1: Fire-Code 2: RS-FEC - RS(528,514) 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4-15: Reserved in the sense that no mapping to a specific mode is defined Setting this field to 0xffff sets this field to the value provided by the supported mode field for this speed. Setting this field to 0x0000 means no change. Setting an unsupported mode (bit to 1) as described in InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter yields an illegal value error.
EDRFECModeSupported	X	X	X			RO	16	80	Supported FEC capabilities for EDR speed. Each bit represents a mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: No FEC - this speed can operate without FEC 1: Fire-Code 2: RS-FEC - RS(528,514) 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4-15: Reserved For valid FEC modes, see InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.
EDRFECModeEnabled	X	X	X			RW	16	96	Enabled FEC capabilities for EDR speed. Each bit enables a specific mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: No FEC - this speed can operate without FEC 1: Fire-Code 2: RS-FEC - RS(528,514) 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4-15: Reserved in the sense that no mapping to a specific mode is defined Setting this field to 0xffff sets this field to the value provided by the supported mode field for this speed. Setting this field to 0x0000 means no change. Setting an unsupported mode (bit to 1) as described in InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter yields an illegal value error.

Table 184 PortInfoExtended

Component	Used By					Description			
	CA	Router	Sw Ext.	Base SP0	Enh. SP0	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	
HDRFECModeSupported	X	X	X			RO	16	112	Supported FEC capabilities for HDR speed. Each bit represents a mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: Reserved 1: Reserved 2: Reserved 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4: RS-FEC - RS(544,514) 5-15: Reserved For valid FEC modes, see InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter.
HDRFECModeEnabled	X	X	X			RO	16	128	Enabled FEC capabilities for HDR speed. Each bit enables a specific mode. The bit to mode map is: 0: Reserved 1: Reserved 2: Reserved 3: Low latency RS-FEC 4: RS-FEC - RS(544,514) 5-15: Reserved in the sense that no mapping to a specific mode is defined Setting this field to 0xffff sets this field to the value provided by the supported mode field for this speed. Setting this field to 0x0000 means no change. Setting an unsupported mode (bit to 1) as described in InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter yields an illegal value error.
Reserved for Future Speed 2 FECMode-Supported	X	X	X			RO	16	144	Reserved
Reserved for Future Speed 2 FECModeEnabled	X	X	X			RO	16	160	Reserved
PartitionTop	X	X	X	X	X	RW	16	176	Indicates the upper bound of the partitions in use in the partition Reserved if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPartition-TopSupported is 0 or PortInfo.IsPartition-TopEnabled == 0
Reserved	X	X	X	X	X	RO	320	192	Reserved

14.2.5.20 SWITCHPORTSTATETABLE

This attribute provides the means to query summarized PortState for switch ports. Bit 0 of the attribute modifier is used for the block number. Block number is capped by NodeInfo:NumPorts/128. Each block contains PortState for 128 ports. Bits 31-1 of the attribute modifier are reserved.

Table 185 SwitchPortStateTable

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
PortStateBlock	RO	512	List of 128 PortState Block Elements.

Table 186 PortState Block Element

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
PortState	RO	4	PortState. associated with the port number AM[0] * 128 + index into PortStateBlock. Port 0 PortState is reserved if base switch port 0 (SwitchInfo:EnhancedPort0 is set to 0).

14.2.5.21 ENHQOSARBITERINFO

The EnhQoSArbiterInfo attribute provides the SM with information about device capability to support different enhanced QoS arbiter features.

Table 187 EnhQoSArbiterInfo

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
EnhQoSCapabilityMask	RO	32	0	Supported capabilities of this port. A bit set to 1 for affirmation of supported capability. 0:reserved 1: IsPortRateLimiterSupported 2: IsVLGroup0RateLimiterSupported ^a 3: IsRateLimiterSupportedOnAllVLGroups ^a 4: IsVLGroupBandwidthShareSupported 5: IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported 6: IsPortVLRateLimiterSupported 7: IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported 8: IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported 9-31: reserved
NumberOfVLGroupsCap	RO	4	32	Supported number of VL groups
QoSArbiterSLCap	RO	4	36	Highest SL value supported, reserved whenEnhQoSCapabilityMask. IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 and EnhQoSCapabilityMask. IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0

Table 187 **EnhQoSArbiterInfo**

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
Reserved	RO	12	40	Reserved
RateLimiterGranularityCap	RO	4	48	Supported rate limiter units: 1: Mbps 2: Mbps, Gbps 3: Mbps, Gbps, 10s Gbps 0,4-15: Reserved
RateLimiterGranularityEnabled	RW	4	52	Enabled rate limiter units: 1: Mbps 2: Gbps 3: 10s Gbps 0,4-15: Reserved 0x1 is the default value
Reserved	RO	456	56	Reserved

a. IsRateLimiterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 1 means that IsVLGroup0RateLimiterSupported shall be ignored

Note: Please review comment [• on page 920](#) in the Section [14.2.5.8 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 918](#)

14.2.5.22 ENHPORTVLARBITER

The EnhPortVLArbiter attribute provides for configuring and querying of bandwidth allocation and/or rate limiting for VL groups VLs as well as VL groups and port configuration

AttributeModifier consists of the following fields:

- Bits 31-30 contain the config type provided in the attribute. Config Type of 0 for VLGroupsArbiterConfig and Config Type of 1 for VLArbiterConfig. Config Types 2 and 3 are reserved.
- Bits 29-8 are reserved.
- Bits 7-0 is the port number for switches. Reserved for CA and router ports where operation is performed on port that received SMP.

Table 188 **VLGroupsArbiterConfig^a**

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
VLGroupMask	RW	8	0	Bits 7:0 - Setting for VL group indicated by bit number (0-7) Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise
Reserved	RO	24	8	Reserved

Table 188 VLGroupsArbiterConfig^a

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
PortRateLimiter	RW	20	32	<p>Maximum bandwidth allowed averaged over time In units of EnhQoSArbiterInfo.</p> <p>RateLimiterGranularityEnabled 0x0 -indicates unlimited (no rate limit)</p> <p>If a RateLimit above the current link rate is requested in a Set(), GetResp() returns the current link rate</p> <p>Default is 0x0.</p>
Reserved	RO	12	52	Reserved
VLGroup0VLMask	RW	16	64	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 0 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup1VLMask	RW	16	80	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 1 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup2VLMask	RW	16	96	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 2 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup3VLMask	RW	16	112	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 3 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup4VLMask	RW	16	128	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 4 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup5VLMask	RW	16	144	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 5 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup6VLMask	RW	16	160	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 6 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>
VLGroup7VLMask	RW	16	176	<p>Bits 14:0 - VL indicated by bit number (0-14) in group 7 if bit is 1 and in other group if bit is 0</p> <p>Bit 15 - Reserved</p> <p>Valid in Set()/GetResp(), reserved otherwise</p>

Table 188 VLGroupsArbiterConfig^a

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthPerVLGroup0	RW	32	192	VLGroup0 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup1	RW	32	224	VLGroup1 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup2	RW	32	256	VLGroup2 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup3	RW	32	288	VLGroup3 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup4	RW	32	320	VLGroup4 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup5	RW	32	352	VLGroup5 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup6	RW	32	384	VLGroup6 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
BandwidthPerVLGroup7	RW	32	416	VLGroup7 BW See "BandwidthPerVLGroup fields description"
Reserved	RO	64	448	Reserved

a. If active VL is not mapped to any VL Group it will be mapped by default to VL Group 0

Table 189 BandwidthPerVLGroup element

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthShare	RW	12	0	Relative BW share allocated. This field has no units. The BW is shared between all elements at this level, relative to their BandwidthShare. Default is 0x0.
RateLimit	RW	20	12	Maximum bandwidth allowed averaged over time in units of EnhQoSArbiterInfo. RateLimiterGranularityEnabled 0x0 indicates unlimited (no rate limit). If a RateLimit above the current link rate is requested in a Set(), GetResp() returns the current link rate. Default is 0x0.

Table 190 VLArbiterConfig

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
VLMask	RW	16	0	Bits 14:0 - Bandwidth for VL indicated by bit number (0-14) is valid if bit is 1 Bit 15 - Reserved Valid in Set() / GetResp(), reserved otherwise
Reserved	RO	16	16	Reserved
BandwidthPerVL0	RW	32	32	VL0 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL1	RW	32	64	VL1 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL2	RW	32	96	VL2 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL3	RW	32	128	VL3 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL4	RW	32	160	VL4 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL5	RW	32	192	VL5 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL6	RW	32	224	VL6 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL7	RW	32	256	VL7 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL8	RW	32	288	VL8 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL9	RW	32	320	VL9 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL10	RW	32	352	VL10 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL11	RW	32	384	VL11 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL12	RW	32	416	VL12 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL13	RW	32	448	VL13 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"
BandwidthPerVL14	RW	32	480	VL14 BW See "BandwidthPerVL fields description"

Table 191 BandwidthPerVL element

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthShare	RW	12	0	Relative BW share allocated. This field has no units. The BW is shared between all elements at this level, relative to their BandwidthShare. Default is 0x0.
RateLimit	RW	20	12	Maximum bandwidth allowed averaged over time in units of EnhQoSArbiterInfo. RateLimiterGranularityEnabled 0x0 indicates unlimited (no rate limit). If a RateLimit above the current link rate is requested in a Set(), GetResp() returns the current link rate. Default is 0x0.

14.2.5.23 ENHSLARBITER

The EnhSLArbiter attribute provides for configuring and querying of bandwidth allocation and/or rate limit for SLs per port

The AttributeModifier consists of the following fields:

- Bits 31-8 are reserved
- Bits 7-0 is the port number for switches. Reserved for CA and router ports where operation is performed on port that received SMP

Table 192 EnhSLArbiter

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthPerSL0	RW	32	0	SL0 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL1	RW	32	32	SL1 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL2	RW	32	64	SL2 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL3	RW	32	96	SL3 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL4	RW	32	128	SL4 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL5	RW	32	160	SL5 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL6	RW	32	192	SL6 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"

Table 192 EnhSLArbiter

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthPerSL7	RW	32	224	SL7 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL8	RW	32	256	SL8 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL9	RW	32	288	SL9 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL10	RW	32	320	SL10 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL11	RW	32	352	SL11 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL12	RW	32	384	SL12 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL13	RW	32	416	SL13 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL14	RW	32	448	SL14 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"
BandwidthPerSL15	RW	32	480	SL15 bandwidth See "BandwidthPerSL fields description"

Table 193 BandwidthPerSL element

Component	Access	Length	Offset	Description
BandwidthShare	RW	12	0	Relative BW share allocated. This field has no units. The BW is shared between all elements at this level, relative to their BandwidthShare. Default is 0x0.
RateLimit	RW	20	12	Maximum bandwidth allowed averaged over time in units of EnhQoSArbiterInfo. RateLimiterGranularityEnabled 0x0 indicates unlimited (no rate limit) If a RateLimit above the current link rate is requested in a Set(), GetResp() returns the current link rate Default is 0x0.

14.2.6 SUBNET MANAGEMENT MAD STATUS

This section provides a consolidated interpretation of a large number of status-code-related compliance statements in the IBTA Specification Volume 1, Chapters 13, 14, and 16. It is provided to aid interoperability.

Note, however, that [14.2.5.17 VendorSpecificMadsTable on page 929](#) is not compliance.

Further note that in this release of the specification, errors related to the HierarchyInfo attribute have not been entered into these consolidated tables.

Following the error condition definitions and their respective error status handling specified here satisfies the minimum requirement for being compliant to all the IB compliance rules relating to the MAD Status. Any additional error conditions and error handling that are beyond what are specified here, without violating any IB compliance rules, can be considered optional to the implementation.

14.2.6.1 STATUS PRECEDENCE

In this implementation approach, there is an implicit precedence among various status settings. The higher the status value, the lower its precedence. This status precedence implementation is only one of many possible implementations. It does not violate nor override any of the compliance rules defined. Other implementations may return an error status without following this status precedence. Instead, if multiple errors were detected, any one of the error status may be returned in the Get-Resp().

Table 194 Status Precedence

Precedence (0x1 is highest)	Status[4: 2]	Violations
1	0x1	Bad version.
2	0x2	The method specified is not supported.
3	0x3	The method/attribute combination is not supported.
4	0x7	One or more fields in the attribute or attribute modifier contain an invalid value.
5	0x0	None of above violations were found.

14.2.6.2 SMP VERSION NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x1)

Table 195 Version Errors in SMPs

Fields	Invalid Values
BaseVersion	outside the vendor specification
ClassVersion	outside the vendor specification

Table 195 Version Errors in SMPs (Continued)

Fields	Invalid Values
BaseVersion + ClassVer- sion	outside the vendor specification

14.2.6.3 SMP METHOD NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x2)

Upon receiving a request packet with a method that is unsupported by the receiving entity, any of the following are acceptable:

- Packet is silently discarded without a response
- Packet is returned as status 2 with the R bit in the method field set to one without regarding the overall meaning of the method field.
- Packet is returned as status 2 with the GetResp() method

14.2.6.4 SMP METHOD/ATTRIBUTE COMBINATION NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x3)**Table 196 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map Errors**

Attribute	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
Notice	error if PortInfo:Capability- Mask.IsNoticeSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:Capability- Mask.IsNoticeSupported = 0, otherwise valid	valid	valid
NodeDescription	valid	error if PortInfo:Capability- Mask2.IsSetNodeDescrip- tionSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
NodeInfo	valid	error	error	error
SwitchInfo	valid if NodeInfo:Node- Type is Switch, otherwise error	valid if NodeInfo:Node- Type is Switch, otherwise error	error	error
GUIDInfo	valid	valid	error	error
PortInfo	valid	valid	error	error
P_KeyTable	valid	valid	error	error
SLtoVLMappingTable	error if PortInfo:Capability- Mask.IsSLMappingSup- ported = 0, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:Capability- Mask.IsSLMappingSup- ported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
VLArbitrationTable	error if PortInfo:VLCap = 1, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:VLCap = 1, otherwise valid	error	error
LinearForwardingTable	error if SwitchInfo:Lin- earFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error if SwitchInfo:Lin- earFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error	error

Table 196 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map Errors (Continued)

Attribute	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
RandomForwarding-Table	error if SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error if SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error	error
MulticastForwarding-Table	error if SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error if SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap = 0 or NodeInfo:NodeType is not Switch, otherwise valid	error	error
LinkSpeedWidth-PairsTable	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error	error
VendorSpecificMadsTable	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsVendorSpecificMadsTableSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error	error
SMInfo	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsSMdisabled = 0 AND PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsSM = 0, otherwise valid ^a	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsSMdisabled = 0 AND PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsSM = 0, otherwise valid ^a	error	error
VendorDiag	valid	error	error	error
LedInfo	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsLEDInfoSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsLEDInfoSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
CableInfo	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsCableInfoSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsCableInfoSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
PortInfoExtended	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
SwitchPortStateTable	error if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error	error

Table 196 Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map Errors (Continued)

Attribute	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
Vendor Specific attributes with AttributeID ranging from 0xFF00 to 0xFFFF	error if Vendor Specific attributes are not supported by this method	error if Vendor Specific attributes are not supported by this method	error if Vendor Specific attributes are not supported by this method	error if Vendor Specific attributes are not supported by this method
EnhQoSArbiterInfo	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	error	error
EnhPortVLArbiter	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	error	error
EnhSLArbiter	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	Error if PortInfo.capabilityMask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0 , otherwise valid	error	error
None of above	error	error	error	error

a. packet discard if PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled = 1.

14.2.6.5 SMP ATTRIBUTEMODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 197 SMP AttributeModifier Errors**

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier for Switch with BSP0	Invalid AttributeModifier for CA/Router/Switch with ESP0
Notice	AM[31:0] > 0x0	AM[31:0] > 0x0
NodeDescription	AM[31:0] > 0x0	AM[31:0] > 0x0
NodeInfo	AM[31:0] > 0x0	AM[31:0] > 0x0
SwitchInfo ^a	AM[31:0] > 0x0	AM[31:0] > 0x0
GUIDInfo	AM[31:0] > ((PortInfo:GUIDCap-1) / 8) ^b	AM[31:0] > ((PortInfo:GUIDCap-1) / 8) ^b

Table 197 SMP AttributeModifier Errors (Continued)

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier for Switch with BSP	Invalid AttributeModifier for CA/Router/Switch with ESP0
PortInfo ^c	When PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 0, AM[31:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts	When PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 0, AM[31:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	When PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1, AM[30:8] != 0 or AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts	When PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1, AM[30:8] != 0 or AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts
P_KeyTable	AM[31:16] ^a > NodeInfo:NumPorts	AM[31:16] ^a > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	AM[15:0] > ((NodeInfo:PartitionCap or SwitchInfo:PartitionEnforcementCap-1) / 32) ^b	AM[15:0] > ((NodeInfo:PartitionCap or SwitchInfo:PartitionEnforcementCap-1) / 32) ^b
SLtoVLMapping-Table ^a	AM[31:21] > 0x0	AM[31:21] > 0x0
	For SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 0, AM [20:18] > 0x0	For SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 0, AM [20:18] > 0x0
	For SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, AM [17:16] > 0x0	For SubnGet() operations, or if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, AM [17:16] > 0x0
	For SubnSet() operations if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if AM[20] and AM[17] are 0, AM[15:8] (input port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts	For SubnSet() operations if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if AM[20] and AM[17] are 0, AM[15:8] (input port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	For SubnSet() operations if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if AM[20] and AM[16] are 0, AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts	For SubnSet() operations if SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0, or if AM[20] and AM[16] are 0, AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	For SubnSet() operations if AM[20] and AM[16] are 0, AM[7:0] (output port) = 0x0	

Table 197 SMP AttributeModifier Errors (Continued)

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier for Switch with BSP0	Invalid AttributeModifier for CA/Router/Switch with ESP0
VLArcitrationTable	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts) ^a (AM[7:0] (output port) = 0x0) ^a if ((AM[31:16]==0) OR (AM[31:16]>4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap == 0) AND (AM[31:16]== either 0x3 or 0x4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap == 0) AND (AM[31:16]== either 0x1 or 0x2)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap <= 32) AND (AM[31:16]==0x4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap <= 32) AND (AM[31:16]==0x2))	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts) ^a if ((AM[31:16]==0) OR (AM[31:16]>4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap == 0) AND (AM[31:16]== either 0x3 or 0x4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap == 0) AND (AM[31:16]== either 0x1 or 0x2)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap <= 32) AND (AM[31:16]==0x4)) if ((PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap <= 32) AND (AM[31:16]==0x2))
LinearForwarding-Table ^a	AM[31:0] > (either (SwitchInfo:LinearFDB-Cap-1) or ^d SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop) / 64) ^b AM[31:0] > 767	AM[31:0] > (either (SwitchInfo:LinearFDB-Cap-1) or ^d SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop) / 64) ^b AM[31:0] > 767
RandomForwarding-Table ^a	AM[31:0] > ((SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap-1) / 16) ^b AM[31:0] > 3071	AM[31:0] > ((SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap-1) / 16) ^b AM[31:0] > 3071
MulticastForwarding-Table ^a	AM[31:28] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts/16) ^b AM[8:0] > ((SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap-1) / 32) ^b	AM[31:28] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts/16) ^b AM[8:0] > ((SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap-1) / 32) ^b
LinkSpeedWidth-PairsTable	When port does not support extended link speeds, for Set(), AM[31:0] != 0; for Get(), AM[31:0] > LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable:NumTables When port supports extended link speeds, for Set(), AM[30:0] != 0; for Get(), AM[30:0] > LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable:NumTables	When port does not support extended link speeds, for Set(), AM[31:0] != 0; for Get(), AM[31:0] > LinkWidthSpeedPairsTable:NumTables When port supports extended link speeds, for Set(), AM[30:0] != 0; for Get(), AM[30:0] > LinkWidthSpeedPairsTable:NumTables
VendorSpecificMadsTable	AM[31:8] != 0 or AM[7:0] > max(((Vendor-SpecificMadsTable:NumEntries - 1) / 7), 0)	AM[31:8] != 0 or AM[7:0] > max(((Vendor-SpecificMadsTable:NumEntries - 1) / 7), 0)
SMInfo ^e	For Set(), AM[31:0]!= 0x1,0x2,0x3,0x4,0x5 OR invalid SMInfo state transitions For Get(), AM[31:0]!= 0x0	For Set(), AM[31:0]!= 0x1,0x2,0x3,0x4,0x5 OR invalid SMInfo state transitions For Get(), AM[31:0]!= 0x0
VendorDiag	AM[31:0] > 0x0000_07FF	AM[31:0] > 0x0000_07FF
LedInfo	AM[31:0] > 0x0	AM[31:0] > 0x0

Table 197 SMP AttributeModifier Errors (Continued)

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier for Switch with BSP0	Invalid AttributeModifier for CA/Router/Switch with ESP0
CableInfo	(AM[7:0] (port) > NodeInfo.NumPorts) ^a (AM[7:0] (port) = 0x0) ^a ((AM[30:19](address) & 0x7F)!= ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) & 0x7F)) ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) > max device address ^f ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) > 0xFFFF)	(AM[7:0] (port) > NodeInfo.NumPorts) ^a (AM[7:0] (port) = 0x0) ^a ((AM[30:19](address) & 0x7F)!= ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) & 0x7F)) ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) > max device address ^f ((AM[30:19](address) + AM[18:13](addl- length)) > 0xFFFF)
PortInfoExtended ^g	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts
SwitchPortStateTable	AM[0] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts / 128) ^b	AM[0] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts / 128) ^b
EnhQoSArbiterInfo	AM[31:0] > 0	AM[31:0] > 0
EnhPortVLArbiter	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:Num- Ports) Or (AM[7:0] (output port) == 0x0) Or (AM[31:30] > 1)	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:Num- Ports) Or (AM[31:30] > 1)
EnhSLArbiter	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:Num- Ports) Or (AM[7:0] (output port) == 0x0)	(AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:Num- Ports)

a. For switch only.

b. Integer division with fraction truncated.

c. For CAs or routers, when port does not support extended link speeds, when AM is non-zero and not matching the port number where the SMP is received, all attribute components become RO. In such case, no status 7 due to illegal attribute components is possible. For CAs or routers, when port supports extended link speeds, when AM[7:0] is non-zero and not matching the port number where the SMP is received, all attribute components become RO. In such case, no status 7 due to illegal attribute components is possible.

d. Up to the implementation of choice. Using SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap allows updates to the LinearForwardingTable beyond the SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop before moving the SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop.

e. For SM only.

f. Max device address is largest supported CableInfo address for the given cable type. For both CXP and QSFP devices, this is presently 639.

g. For CAs or routers, when AM[7:0] is non-zero and not matching the port number where the SMP is received, all attribute components become RO. In such case, no status 7 due to illegal attribute components is possible.

14.2.6.6 SMP ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)

The Following tables list SMP attribute components that are of concern to the SM attribute component errors. These errors can only be detected

while performing SubnSet() operations targeting RW components. Some RO components are also listed because of their special characteristics.

Table 198 Notice Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
NoticeToggle	no invalids, error handling statements exist for non-matching NoticeToggle
NoticeCount	no invalids, error handling statements exist for NoticeCount > Notice queue depth

Table 199 NodeDescription Attribute Component Errors

No component errors.

Table 200 NodeInfo Attribute Component Errors

All RO components, no component errors.

Table 201 SwitchInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for Switch
LinearFDBTop	\geq SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap
DefaultPort	no invalids
DefaultMulticastPrimaryPort	no invalids
DefaultMulticastNotPrimary-Port	invalid if port is valid and same as DefaultMulticastPrimaryPort
LifeTimeValue	no invalids
PortStateChange	no invalids
MulticastFDBTop	$1 \leq$ MulticastFDBTop $< 0xFFFF$ OR MulticastFDBTop \geq (SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap + 0xC000)

Table 202 GUIDInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
GUID	no invalids

Table 203 PortInfo (CA/Router/Switch Port0) Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
M_Key	no invalids	no invalids
GidPrefix	no invalids	no invalids
LID	= 0x0000 ≥ 0xC000	= 0x0000 or 0xFFFF when PortState is either Armed or Active ^a ≥ 0xC000 and < 0xFFFF
MasterSMLID	= 0x0000 ≥ 0xC000	= 0x0000 or 0xFFFF when PortState is either Armed or Active ^a ≥ 0xC000 and < 0xFFFF
M_KeyLeasePeriod	no invalids	no invalids
LinkWidthEnabled (LWE)	N/A	Any value of LWE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, the second tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the third tests for bits set in LinkWidthEnabled which are not also set in LinkWidthSupported): 0x10 ≤ LWE ≤ 0xFE if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported set to 0 or 0x20 ≤ LWE ≤ 0xFE if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported set to 1 ((LWE & LWS) = 0) and (LWE != 0) and (LWE != 255) ((LWE & ~LWS) != 0) and (LWE != 255) ^f where "LWS" refers to LinkWidthSupported, "&" refers to a bitwise logical "AND" operation, and "~" refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.
PortState	N/A	0x2, ≥ 0x5 set to Arm while in Down ^b set to Active while in Initialize, or Down ^c
PortPhysicalState	N/A	0x3 ^d , ≥ 0x4
LinkDownDefaultState	N/A	≥ 0x3
M_KeyProtectBits	no invalids	no invalids
M_KeyProtectBitsExt	2-7 if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1	2-7 if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExtSupported = 1
LMC	≥ 0x1	no invalids

Table 203 PortInfo (CA/Router/Switch Port0) Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
LinkSpeedEnabled (LSE)	N/A	<p>Any value of LSE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, the second tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the third tests for bits set in LinkSpeedEnabled which are not also set in LinkSpeedSupported):</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(LSE != 0) and (((LSE & 1) = 0) or (0x8 <= LSE <= 0xE)) ((LSE & LSS) = 0) and (LSE != 0) and (LSE != 15) ((LSE & ~LSS) != 0) and (LSE != 15)^f</p> <p>where “LSS” refers to LinkSpeedSupported, “&” refers to a bitwise logical “AND” operation, and “~” refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.</p>
NeighborMTU	N/A	<p>> PortInfo:MTUCap</p> <hr/> <p>= 0</p> <hr/> <p>> 5</p>
MasterSMSL	no invalids	no invalids
VLHighLimit	N/A	no invalids
InitTypeReply	no invalids	no invalids
HOQLife	N/A	no invalids ^e
OperationalVLs	N/A	<p>> PortInfo:VLCap</p> <hr/> <p>> 5</p>
M_KeyViolations	no invalids	no invalids
P_KeyViolations	no invalids	no invalids
Q_KeyViolations	no invalids	no invalids
SubnetTimeOut	no invalids	no invalids
LocalPhyErrors	N/A	no invalids
OverrunErrors	N/A	no invalids

Table 203 PortInfo (CA/Router/Switch Port0) Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
LinkSpeedExtEnabled (LSEE)	N/A	If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1, any value of LSEE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first two test for reserved values, the third tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the fourth tests for bits set in LinkSpeedExtEnabled which are not also set in LinkSpeedExtSupported): $(0x4 \leq LSEE \leq 0x1D)$ if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedH-DRSupported is set to 0 $(0x8 \leq LSEE \leq 0x1D)$ if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedH-DRSupported is set to 1 $((LSEE \& LSES) = 0)$ and $(LSEE \neq 0)$ and $(LSEE \neq 31)$ and $(LSEE \neq 30)$ $((LSEE \& \sim LSES) \neq 0)$ and $(LSEE \neq 31)$ and $(LSEE \neq 30)$ ^f where "LSES" refers to LinkSpeedExtSupported, "&" refers to a bitwise logical "AND" operation, and "\sim" refers to a bitwise inversion of the component. For the purposes of the second test, LSES is extended with a 5th 0 bit. For the purposes of the third test, LSEE is masked to 4 bits.
EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled	NA	(EnhancedQoSArbiterEnabled == 1 and PortInfo.capability- Mask2.IsEnhancedQoSArbiterSupported == 0)

- a. Behavior is implementation-dependent for PortStates other than Armed or Active.
b. Vendor-dependent when setting to Arm while in Arm.
c. Vendor-dependent when setting to Active while in Active.
d. Invalid only for the enhanced switch port 0.
e. For router only.
f. An equally acceptable implementation would eliminate the third test

Table 204 PortInfo (Switch External Port) Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
LinkWidthEnabled (LWE)	Any value of LWE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, the second tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the third tests for bits set in LinkWidthEnabled which are not also set in LinkWidthSupported): $0x10 \leq LWE \leq 0xFE$ if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported set to 0 or $0x20 \leq LWE \leq 0xFE$ if PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported set to 1 $((LWE \& LWS) = 0)$ and $(LWE \neq 0)$ and $(LWE \neq 255)$ $((LWE \& \sim LWS) \neq 0)$ and $(LWE \neq 255)$ ^g where "LWS" refers to LinkWidthSupported, "&" refers to a bitwise logical "AND" operation, and "\sim" refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.

Table 204 PortInfo (Switch External Port) Attribute Component Errors (Continued)

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
PortState	0x2, $\geq 0x5$ set to Arm while in Down ^a set to Active while in Initialize, or Down ^b
PortPhysicalState	$\geq 0x4$
LinkDownDefaultState	$\geq 0x3$
LMC	N/A
LinkSpeedEnabled (LSE)	Any value of LSE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, the second tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the third tests for bits set in LinkSpeedEnabled which are not also set in LinkSpeedSupported): $(LSE \neq 0) \text{ and } (((LSE \& 1) = 0) \text{ or } (0x8 \leq LSE \leq 0xE))$ $((LSE \& LSS) = 0) \text{ and } (LSE \neq 0) \text{ and } (LSE \neq 15)$ $((LSE \& \sim LSS) \neq 0) \text{ and } (LSE \neq 15)$ ^c where "LSS" refers to LinkSpeedSupported, "&" refers to a bitwise logical "AND" operation, and " \sim " refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.
NeighborMTU	> PortInfo:MTUCap = 0 > 5
VLHighLimit	no invalids
VLStallCount	no invalids
HOQLife	no invalids
OperationalVLs	> PortInfo:VLCap > 5
PartitionEnforcementIn-bound	set to 1 when SwitchInfo:InboundEnforcementCap is 0
PartitionEnforcementOut-bound	set to 1 when SwitchInfo:OutboundEnforcementCap is 0
FilterRawInbound	set to 1 when SwitchInfo:FilterRawInboundCap is 0
FilterRawOutbound	set to 1 when SwitchInfo:FilterRawOutboundCap is 0
LocalPhyErrors	no invalids
OverrunErrors	no invalids

Table 204 PortInfo (Switch External Port) Attribute Component Errors (Continued)

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
LinkSpeedExtEnabled (LSEE)	If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1, any value of LSEE such that any of the expressions below are true (the first two test for reserved values, the third tests for situations where no bits would be enabled, and the fourth tests for bits set in LinkSpeedExtEnabled which are not also set in LinkSpeedExtSupported): $(0x4 \leq LSEE \leq 0x1D)$ if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 0 $(0x8 \leq LSEE \leq 0x1D)$ if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 1 $((LSEE \& LSES) = 0) \text{ and } (LSEE \neq 0) \text{ and } (LSEE \neq 31) \text{ and } (LSEE \neq 30)$ $((LSEE \& \sim LSES) \neq 0) \text{ and } (LSEE \neq 31) \text{ and } (LSEE \neq 30)$ ^c where "LSES" refers to LinkSpeedExtSupported, "&" refers to a bitwise logical "AND" operation, and "\sim" refers to a bitwise inversion of the component. For the purposes of the second test, LSES is extended with a 5th 0 bit. For the purposes of the third test, LSEE is masked to 4 bits.

- a. Vendor-dependent when setting to Arm while in Arm.
b. Vendor-dependent when setting to Active while in Active.
c. An equally acceptable implementation would eliminate the third test.

Table 205 P_Key Block Element in P_KeyTable Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
MembershipType	no invalids
P_KeyBase	no invalids

Table 206 SLtoVLMappingTable Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
SL0toVL	no invalids
SL1toVL	no invalids
SL2toVL	no invalids
SL3toVL	no invalids
SL4toVL	no invalids
SL5toVL	no invalids
SL6toVL	no invalids

Table 206 SLtoVLMappingTable Attribute Component Errors (Continued)

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
SL7toVL	no invalids
SL8toVL	no invalids
SL9toVL	no invalids
SL10toVL	no invalids
SL11toVL	no invalids
SL12toVL	no invalids
SL13toVL	no invalids
SL14toVL	no invalids
SL15toVL	no invalids
InputPortMask	Bit in port mask set beyond bit for NodeInfo:NumPorts
OutputPortMask	Bit in port mask set beyond bit for NodeInfo:NumPorts. Port 0 is only valid for enhanced switch port 0.

Table 207 VLArbitrationTable Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
VL	no invalids
Weight	no invalids

Table 208 LinearForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
Port	> NodeInfo:NumPorts, read back as 0xFF No error status!

Table 209**RandomForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors**

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
LID	no invalids
Valid	no invalids
LMC	no invalids
Port	> NodeInfo:NumPorts when Valid = 0x1 No error status!

Table 210**Multicast ForwardingTable Attribute Component Errors**

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
PortMask	PortMask bits corresponding to ports that are beyond NodeInfo:NumPorts are read back as 0x0 No error status!

Table 211**LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable Attribute Component Errors**

All RO components, no component errors.

Table 212**VendorSpecificMadsTable Attribute Component Errors**

All RO components, no component errors.

Table 213**SMInfo Attribute Component Errors**

All RO components, no component errors.

Table 214**VendorDiag Attribute Component Errors**

All RO components, no component errors.

Table 215**LedInfo Attribute Component Errors**

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
LedMask	no invalids

Table 216**Vendor Specific Attribute Component Errors**

No component errors.

Table 217 CableInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
CableData	no invalids

Table 218 PortInfoExtended Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
FDRFECModeEnabled	Any value such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, and the second tests for bits set in FDRFECModeEnabled which are not also set in FDRFECModeSupported): $> 15^a$ and $\neq 0xffff$ $(FDRFECModeEnabled \& \sim FDRFECModeSupported) \neq 0$ where “<&” refers to a bitwise logical “AND” operation, and “<~” refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.
EDRFECModeEnabled	Any value such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, and the second tests for bits set in EDRFECModeEnabled which are not also set in EDRFECModeSupported): $> 15^{a_1}$ and $\neq 0xffff$ $(EDRFECModeEnabled \& \sim EDRFECModeSupported) \neq 0$ where “<&” refers to a bitwise logical “AND” operation, and “<~” refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.
HDRFECModeEnabled	Any value such that any of the expressions below are true (the first tests for reserved values, and the second tests for bits set in HDRFECModeEnabled which are not also set in HDRFECModeSupported): $> 31^{a_2}$ and $\neq 0xffff$ $(HDRFECModeEnabled \& \sim HDRFECModeSupported) \neq 0$ where “<&” refers to a bitwise logical “AND” operation, and “<~” refers to a bitwise inversion of the component.
PartitionTop	If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2:IsPartitionTopSupported is set to 1 and PortInfo:IsPartitionTopEnable is set to 1 For end port, ($PartitionTop > NodeInfo: PartitionCap$) OR ($PartitionCap == 0$) For switch physical port, ($PartitionTop > SwitchInfo: PartitionEnforceCap$)

a. Consult InfiniBand Architecture Specification Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface chapter for valid combinations.

**Table 219 PortState Block Element in
SwitchPortStateTable Component Errors**

Component
No component errors

Table 220 EnhQoSArbiterInfo attribute component errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
RateLimiterGranularityEnabled	NA	EnhQoSArbiterInfo.RateLimiterGranularityEnabled > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.RateLimiterGranularityCap or EnhQoSArbiterInfo.RateLimiterGranularityEnabled == 0

Table 221 EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
VLGroupMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and bit set for group number above EnhQoSArbiterInfo.NumberOfVLGroupsCap
VLGroup0VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup1VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup2VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup3VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup4VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup5VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup6VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
VLGroup7VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and (VL mapped to more than one VLGroup OR for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap)
BandwidthPerVLGroup0. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsVL- Group0RateLimiterSupported == 0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0)
BandwidthPerVLGroup1. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0

Table 221 EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerVLGroup2. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup3. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup4. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup5. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup6. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup7. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsRateLim- iterSupportedOnAllVLGroups == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup0. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup1. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup2. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup3. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0

Table 221 EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerVLGroup4. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup5. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup6. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVLGroup7. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==0 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsVL- GroupBandwidthShareSupported == 0
PortRateLimiter	NA	AM[31:30] ==0 and PortRateLimiter!=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPor- tRateLimiterSupported == 0
VLMask	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and bit set for VL number above PortInfo:VLCap
BandwidthPerVL0. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL1. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL2. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL3. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL4. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL5. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0

Table 221 EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerVL6. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL7. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL8. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL9. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL10. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL11. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL12. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL13. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL14. RateLimit	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and RateLimit !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVL- RateLimiterSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL0. Bandwidth- Share	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL1. Bandwidth- Share	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL2. Bandwidth- Share	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL3. Bandwidth- Share	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0

Table 221 EnhPortVLArbiter attribute component

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerVL4. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL5. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL6. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL7. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL8. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL9. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL10. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL11. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL12. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL13. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0
BandwidthPerVL14. BandwidthShare	NA	AM[31:30]==1 and BandwidthShare !=0 and EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask. IsPortVLBandwidthShareSupported == 0

Table 222 EnhSLArbiter attribute component errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerSL0.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL1.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL2.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL3.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL4.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL5.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL6.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL7.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL8.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL9.Bandwidth-Share	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL10.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL11.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)

Table 222**EnhSLArbiter attribute component errors**

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerSL12.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL13.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL14.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL15.BandwidthShare	NA	BandwidthShare !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLBandwidthShareSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL0.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL1.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL2.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL3.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL4.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL5.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL6.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL7.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL8.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS-CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)

Table 222**EnhSLArbiter attribute component errors**

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value for BSP0	Invalid Set() Component Value for CA/Router/ESP0
BandwidthPerSL9.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL10.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL11.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL12.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL13.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL14.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)
BandwidthPerSL15.RateLimit	NA	RateLimit !=0 and (EnhQoSArbiterInfo.EnhQoS CapabilityMask.IsPortSLRateLimiterSupported == 0 Or SL > EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap)

14.2.6.7 SM CLASS ADDITIONAL STATUS

Table 223

SM Class Additional Status for attribute errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
64	SM class Notice get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported is 0	0xc
65	SM class Notice set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported is 0	0xc
66	SM class NodeDescription set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported is 0	0xc
67	SM class NodeInfo set	0xc
68	SM class SwitchInfo get but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
69	SM class SwitchInfo set but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
70	SM class SLtoVLMappingTable get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSLMappingSupported is 0	0xc
71	SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSLMappingSupported is 0	0xc
72	SM class VLArbitrationTable get but PortInfo:VLCap is 1	0xc
73	SM class VLArbitrationTable set but PortInfo:VLCap is 1	0xc
74	SM class LinearForwardingTable get but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
75	SM class LinearForwardingTable set but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
76	SM class LinearForwardingTable get but SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap is 0	0xc
77	SM class LinearForwardingTable set but SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap is 0	0xc
78	SM class RandomForwardingTable get but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
79	SM class RandomForwardingTable set but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
80	SM class RandomForwardingTable get but SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap is 0	0xc
81	SM class RandomForwardingTable set but SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap is 0	0xc
82	SM class MulticastForwardingTable get but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
83	SM class MulticastForwardingTable set but NodeInfo:NodeType is not a switch	0xc
84	SM class MulticastForwardingTable get but SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap is 0	0xc
85	SM class MulticastForwardingTable set but SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap is 0	0xc
86	SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableSupported is 0	0xc
87	SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable set	0xc

Table 223

SM Class Additional Status for attribute errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
88	SM class VendorSpecificMadsTable get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsVendorSpecificMadsTableSupported is 0	0xc
89	SM class VendorSpecificMadsTable set	0xc
90	SM class SMInfo get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled is 0 AND PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSM is 0	0xc
91	SM class SMInfo set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled is 0 AND PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSM is 0	0xc
92	SM class VendorDiag set	0xc
93	SM class LedInfo get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLEDInfoSupported is 0	0xc
94	SM class LedInfo set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsLEDInfoSupported is 0	0xc
95	SM class CableInfo get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCableInfoSupported is 0	0xc
96	SM class CableInfo set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCableInfoSupported is 0	0xc
97	SM class PortInfoExtended get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported is 0	0xc
98	SM class PortInfoExtended set but PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoExtendedSupported is 0	0xc
99	SM class SwitchPortStateTable get but PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported is 0	0xc
100	SM class SwitchPortStateTable set	0xc
101	SM class VPortState set	0xc
102	SM class VNodeInfo set	0xc
103	SM class VNodeDescription set but VPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSetNodeDescription is 0	0xc
104	SM class EnhQoSArbiterInfo set but PortInfo.EnhQoSArbiterEnabled is 0	0xc
105	SM class EnhVLPortArbiter set but PortInfo.EnhQoSArbiterEnabled is 0	0xc
106	SM class EnhSLArbiter set but PortInfo.EnhQoSArbiterEnabled is 0	0xc
107-127	Reserved for additional SM class attribute errors	0xc

Table 224 SM Class Additional Status for AttributeModifier errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
128	AM[31:0] > 0 for SM class Notice	0x1c
129	AM[31:0] > 0 for SM class NodeDescription	0x1c
130	AM[31:0] > 0 for SM class NodeInfo	0x1c
131	AM[31:0] > 0 for SM class SwitchInfo	0x1c
132	AM[31:0] > ((PortInfo:GUIDCap-1) / 8) for SM class GUIDInfo	0x1c
133	AM[31:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class PortInfo but PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsExtendedSpeeds is 0	0x1c
134	AM[30:8] != 0 for SM class PortInfo but PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtended-Speeds is 1	0x1c
135	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class PortInfo but PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsExtendedSpeeds is 1	0x1c
136	AM[31:16] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class P_KeyTable for NodeInfo:Node-Type switch	0x1c
137	AM[15:0] > ((NodeInfo:PartitionCap or SwitchInfo:PartitionEnforcementCap-1)/32) for SM class P_KeyTable	0x1c
138	AM[31:21] > 0 for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable	0x1c
139	AM[20:18] > 0 for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable get or SwitchInfo:Optimized-SLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 1 is 0	0x1c
140	AM[17:16] > 0 for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable get or SwitchInfo:Optimized-SLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 is 0	0x1c
141	AM[15:8] (input port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set with SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 = 0	0x1c
142	AM[15:8] (input port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set with AM[20] and AM[17] both 0	0x1c
143	AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class SLtoVLMapping-Table set with SwitchInfo:OptimizedSLtoVLMappingProgramming bit 0 = 0	0x1c
144	AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class SLtoVLMapping-Table set with AM[20] and AM[16] both 0	0x1c
145	AM[7:0] (output port) = 0 for SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set of BSP0 with AM[20] and AM[16] both 0	0x1c
146	AM[7:0] (output port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class VLArbitrationTable	0x1c
147	AM[7:0] (output port) = 0 for SM class VLArbitrationTable for BSP0	0x1c
148	AM[31:16] = 0 for SM class VLArbitrationTable	0x1c
149	AM[31:16] > 4 for SM class VLArbitrationTable	0x1c

Table 224 SM Class Additional Status for AttributeModifier errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
150	AM[31:16] = either 3 or 4 for SM class VLArbitrationTable with PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap 0	0x1c
151	AM[31:16] = either 1 or 2 for SM class VLArbitrationTable with PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap 0	0x1c
152	AM[31:16] = 4 for SM class VLArbitrationTable with PortInfo:VLArbitrationHighCap <= 32	0x1c
153	AM[31:16] = 2 for SM class VLArbitrationTable with PortInfo:VLArbitrationLowCap <= 32	0x1c
154	AM[31:0] > ((SwitchInfoLinearFDBCap - 1)/64) for SM class LinearForwardingTable	0x1c
155	AM[31:0] > (SwitchInfoLinearFDBTop/64) for SM class LinearForwardingTable	0x1c
156	AM[31:0] > 767 for SM class LinearForwardingTable	0x1c
157	AM[31:0] > ((SwitchInfoRandomFDBCap - 1)/16) for SM class RandomForwardingTable	0x1c
158	AM[31:0] > 3071 for SM class RandomForwardingTable	0x1c
159	AM[31:28] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts/16) for SM class MulticastForwardingTable	0x1c
160	AM[8:0] > ((SwitchInfoMulticastFDBCap - 1)/32) for SM class MulticastForwardingTable	0x1c
161	AM[31:0] != 0 for SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable set when port does not support extended link speeds	0x1c
162	AM[31:0] > LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable:NumTables for SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable get when port does not support extended link speeds	0x1c
163	AM[30:0] != 0 for SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable set when port supports extended link speeds	0x1c
164	AM[30:0] > LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable:NumTables for SM class LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable get when port supports extended link speeds	0x1c
165	AM[31:8] != 0 for SM class VendorSpecificMadsTable	0x1c
166	AM[7:0] > max(((VendorSpecificMadsTable:NumEntries - 1) / 7), 0) for SM class VendorSpecificMadsTable	0x1c
167	AM[31:0] != 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or invalid SMInfo state transition for SM class SMInfo set	0x1c
168	AM[31:0] != 0 for SM class SMInfo get	0x1c
169	AM[31:0] > 0x7FF for SM class VendorDiag	0x1c
170	AM[31:0] > 0 for SM class LedInfo	0x1c

Table 224 SM Class Additional Status for AttributeModifier errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
171	AM[7:0] (port) > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class CableInfo	0x1c
172	AM[7:0] (port) = 0 for SM class CableInfo	0x1c
173	((AM[30:19] (address) & 0x7F) != ((AM[30:19] (address) + AM[18:13] (addl length)) & 0x7F)) for SM class CableInfo	0x1c
174	((AM[30:19] (address) + AM[18:13] (addl length)) > max device address) for SM class CableInfo	0x1c
175	((AM[30:19] (address) + AM[18:13] (addl length)) > 0xFFFF) for SM class CableInfo	0x1c
176	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for SM class PortInfoExtended	0x1c
177	AM[0] > (NodeInfo:NumPorts / 128) for SM class SwitchPortStateTable	0x1c
178	AM[9:0] > (VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap/128) for SM class VPortState	0x1c
179	AM[31:16] > VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap for SM class VPortInfo	0x1c
180	AM[31:16] > VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap for SM class VNodeInfo	0x1c
181	AM[31:16] > VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap for SM class VNodeDescription	0x1c
182	AM[31:16] > VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap for SM class VPortGUIDTable	0x1c
183	AM[4:0] > ((VPortInfo:GUIDCap-1)/8) for SM class VPortGUIDTable	0x1c
184	AM[31:16] > VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap for SM class VPortPartitionTable	0x1c
185	AM[15:0] > ((VNodeInfo:PartitionCap-1)/32) for SM class VPortPartitionTable	0x1c
186	AM[31:30]>1 for EnhPortVLArbiter	0x1c
187	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for EnhPortVLArbiter	0x1c
188	AM[7:0] > NodeInfo:NumPorts for EnhSLArbiterSL	0x1c
189	AM[31:0] > 0 for EnhQoSArbiterInfo	0x1c
190-255	Reserved for additional SM class attribute modifier errors	0x1c

Table 225 SM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
256	SM class SwitchInfo set with LinearFDBTop >= SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap	0x1c
257	SM class SwitchInfo set with DefaultMulticastNotPrimaryPort valid and same as DefaultMulticastPrimaryPort	0x1c

Table 225 SM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
258	SM class SwitchInfo set with $1 \leq \text{MulticastFDBTop} < 0xBFFF}$	0x1c
259	SM class SwitchInfo set with $\text{MulticastFDBTop} \geq (\text{SwitchInfo:MulticastFDB-Cap} + 0xC000)$	0x1c
260	SM class PortInfo set LID = 0 for BSP0	0x1c
261	SM class PortInfo set LID = 0 or 0xFFFF when PortState is either Armed or Active for CA/router/ESPO	0x1c
262	SM class PortInfo set LID $\geq 0xC000$ for BSP0	0x1c
263	SM class PortInfo set LID $\geq 0xC000$ and $< 0xFFFF$ for CA/router/ESPO	0x1c
264	SM class PortInfo set MasterSMLID = 0 for BSP0	0x1c
265	SM class PortInfo set MasterSMLID = 0 or 0xFFFF when PortState is either Armed or Active for CA/router/ESPO	0x1c
266	SM class PortInfo set MasterSMLID $\geq 0xC000$ for BSP0	0x1c
267	SM class PortInfo set MasterSMLID $\geq 0xC000$ and $< 0xFFFF$ for CA/router/ESPO	0x1c
268	SM class PortInfo set $0x10 \leq \text{LinkWidthEnabled} \leq 0xFE$ if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported is 0	0x1c
269	SM class PortInfo set $0x20 \leq \text{LinkWidthEnabled} \leq 0xFE$ if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported is 1	0x1c
270	SM class PortInfo set $((\text{LinkWidthEnabled} \& \text{LinkWidthSupported}) = 0)$ and $(\text{LinkWidthEnabled} != 0)$ and $(\text{LinkWidthEnabled} != 255)$	0x1c
271	SM class PortInfo set $((\text{LinkWidthEnabled} \& \sim \text{LinkWidthSupported}) != 0)$ and $(\text{LinkWidthEnabled} != 255)$	0x1c
272	SM class PortInfo set PortState = 2 or PortState ≥ 5	0x1c
273	SM class PortInfo set PortState set to Arm while in Down	0x1c
274	SM class PortInfo set PortState set to Active while in Initialize or Down	0x1c
275	SM class PortInfo set PortPhysicalState = 3 for ESP0	0x1c
276	SM class PortInfo set PortPhysicalState ≥ 4	0x1c
277	SM class PortInfo set LinkDownDefaultState ≥ 3	0x1c
278	SM class PortInfo set LMC ≥ 1 for BSP0	0x1c
279	SM class PortInfo set $(\text{LinkSpeedEnabled} != 0)$ and $((\text{LinkSpeedEnabled} \& 1) = 0)$ or $(8 \leq \text{LinkSpeedEnableId} \leq 0xE)$	0x1c
280	SM class PortInfo set $((\text{LinkSpeedEnabled} \& \text{LinkSpeedSupported}) = 0)$ and $(\text{LinkSpeedEnabled} != 0)$ and $(\text{LinkSpeedEnabled} != 15)$	0x1c

Table 225 SM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
281	SM class PortInfo set ((LinkSpeedEnabled & ~LinkSpeedSupported) != 0) and (LinkSpeedEnabled != 15)	0x1c
282	SM class PortInfo set NeighborMTU > PortInfo:MTUCap for CA/router/ESPO	0x1c
283	SM class PortInfo set NeighborMTU = 0	0x1c
284	SM class PortInfo set NeighborMTU > 5	0x1c
285	SM class PortInfo set OperationalVLs > PortInfo:VLCap	0x1c
286	SM class PortInfo set OperationalVLs > 5	0x1c
287	SM class PortInfo set 4 <= LinkSpeedExtEnabled <= 0x1D if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is 0	0x1c
288	SM class PortInfo set 8 <= LinkSpeedExtEnabled <= 0x1D if PortInfo:Capability-Mask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is 1	0x1c
289	SM class PortInfo set ((LinkSpeedExtEnabled & LinkSpeedExtSupported) = 0) and (LinkSpeedExtEnabled != 0) and (LinkSpeedExtEnabled != 31) and (LinkSpeedExtEnabled != 30)	0x1c
290	SM class PortInfo set ((LinkSpeedExtEnabled & ~LinkSpeedExtSupported) != 0) and (LinkSpeedExtEnabled != 31) and (LinkSpeedExtEnabled != 30)	0x1c
291	SM class PortInfo set PartitionEnforcementInbound 1 when SwitchInfo:InboundEnforcementCap is 0	0x1c
292	SM class PortInfo set PartitionEnforcementOutbound 1 when SwitchInfo:OutboundEnforcementCap is 0	0x1c
293	SM class PortInfo set FilterRawInbound 1 when SwitchInfo:FilterRawInbound-Cap is 0	0x1c
294	SM class PortInfo set FilterRawOutbound 1 when SwitchInfo:FilterRawOutboundCap is 0	0x1c
295	SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set InputPortMask with bit set beyond bit for NodeInfo:NumPorts	0x1c
296	SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set OutputPortMask with bit set beyond bit for NodeInfo:NumPorts	0x1c
297	SM class SLtoVLMappingTable set OutputPortMask with bit 0 set for Bspo	0x1c
298	SM class PortInfoExtended set FDRFECModeEnabled > 15 and != 0xFFFF	0x1c
299	SM class PortInfoExtended set (FDRFECModeEnabled & ~FDRFECModeSupported) != 0	0x1c
300	SM class PortInfoExtended set EDRFECModeEnabled > 15 and != 0xFFFF	0x1c
301	SM class PortInfoExtended set (EDRFECModeEnabled & ~EDRFECModeSupported) != 0	0x1c

Table 225 SM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
302	SM class PortInfoExtended set HDRFECModeEnabled > 15 and != 0xFFFF	0x1c
303	SM class PortInfoExtended set (HDRFECModeEnabled & ~HDRFECModeSupported) != 0	0x1c
304	SM class VPortInfo set PortState = 2 or PortState >= 5	0x1c
305	SM class VPortInfo set PortState set to Arm while in Down	0x1c
306	SM class VPortInfo set PortState set to Active while in Initialize or Down	0x1c
307	SM class VPortInfo set LID = 0 or 0xFFFF when PortState is either Armed or Active if LIDRequired is 1	0x1c
308	SM class VPortInfo set LID >= 0xC000 and < 0xFFFF if LIDRequired is 1	0x1c
309	EnhPortVLArbiter.VLGroupMask set above cap	0x1c
310	EnhPortVLArbiter VL is mapped to more than one VL group	0x1c
311	EnhPortVLArbiter VLGroup bandwidth share set while not supported	0x1c
312	EnhPortVLArbiter VLGroup rate limiter set while not supported	0x1c
313	EnhPortVLArbiter Port rate limiter set while not supported	0x1c
314	EnhPortVLArbiter VL bandwidth share set while not supported	0x1c
315	EnhPortVLArbiter VL rate limiter set while not supported	0x1c
316	EnhSLArbiterSL SL bandwidth share set while not supported	0x1c
317	EnhSLArbiterSL SL rate limiter set while not supported	0x1c
318	EnhSLArbiterSL set bandwidth share for SL above EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSL-Cap	0x1c
319	EnhSLArbiterSL set rate limiter for SL above EnhQoSArbiterInfo.QoSArbiterSLCap	0x1c
320-511	Reserved for additional SM class attribute field errors	0x1c

14.3 SUBNET MANAGEMENT AGENT

Each CA and router, and switch will have a Subnet Management Agent (SMA) that communicates with the SMI and SM as described in [13.3.2 Required Managers and Agents on page 779](#). The SMA will respond and generate SMPs as described in [Table 140 SM MAD Sources and Destinations on page 826](#). This section describes the detailed requirements of SMA behavior where the operations defined below assume the receipt of

a valid SMP. A SMP is valid if it satisfies all applicable validation checks as specified in [13.5.3 MAD Validation on page 825](#).

14.3.1 SUBNGET()

A SMA may receive a SMP from the subnet containing a SubnGet() at any time. The requester, the master SM, will fill the MADHeader:M_Key field of the SMP header with a M_Key that matches the value of the M_Key of the port corresponding to the receiving SMA if it expects the receiving SMA to check it.

A SMP containing a SubnGetResp() is returned according to the rules in [14.3.3 SubnGetResp\(\) on page 976](#).

14.3.2 SUBNSET()

An SMA may receive a SMP from the subnet containing a SubnSet() at any time. The requester, the master SM, will fill the MADHeader:M_Key field of the SMP header with a M_Key that matches the value of the M_Key of the port corresponding to the receiving SMA if it expects the receiving SMA to check it.

C14-25: If the PortInfo:M_Key component is zero, the SMA **shall** update the appropriate components with the contents of the attribute contained in the SMP.

C14-26: If the PortInfo:M_Key component is non-zero and M_Key matching, if required, is successful according to the rules specified in [14.2.4 Management Key on page 877](#), the SMA **shall** update the appropriate components with the contents of the attribute contained in the SMP.

C14-27: The SMA **shall** ignore requests to change non-settable (RO) components of attributes.

A SMP containing a SubnGetResp() is returned according to the rules in [14.3.3 SubnGetResp\(\) on page 976](#).

14.3.3 SUBNGETRESP()

C14-28: When the SMA receives a validated SubnGet() or SubnSet() and the PortInfo:M_Key component is zero, then the SMA **shall** generate a SubnGetResp().

C14-29: When the SMA receives a validated SubnGet() or SubnSet() and the PortInfo:M_Key component is non-zero and M_Key matching, if required, is successful according to the rules specified in [14.2.4 Management Key on page 877](#), then the SMA **shall** generate a SubnGetResp(), otherwise the request is silently discarded.

C14-30: If the SMA generates a SubnGetResp(), it **shall** fill the attribute identified in the request with the appropriate contents of component information.

C14-31: If the SMA generates a SubnGetResp(), it **shall** use the MAD-Header:TransactionID obtained from the request SMP in the response SMP.

C14-32: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.

If the SMA generates a SubnGetResp(), the content of MAD-Header:M_Key in the SMP header is undefined. It could, for example, be copied without change from the request or zeroed out. If the SMA generates a SubnGetResp(), it should send the SMP containing the SubnGet-
Resp() in less than PortInfo:RespTimeValue of the receiving port, where requirements for response time are described in [13.4.6.2 Timers and Tim-
outs on page 791](#).

After transmission of the response, the SMA discards any residual state associated with that SMP.

14.3.4 SUBNTRAP()

Traps may be issued by any port on the subnet. Ports that support this mechanism will indicate this by setting the PortInfo:CapabilityMask:Is-TrapSupported bit.

o14-1: This optional compliance is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-1.1.1](#):

o14-1.1.1: If the SMA or SM generates a SubnTrap(), it **shall** fill the M_Key field of the SMP with zero.

o14-2: This optional compliance is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-2.1.1](#):

o14-2.1.1: If the SMA or SM generates a sequence of traps, the interval between successive traps **shall** not be smaller than the subnet timeout, which is specified by the PortInfo:SubnetTimeOut component.

This mechanism is used to limit the number of traps sent on the subnet.

o14-3: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-3.2.2](#):

o14-3.2.1: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-3.2.2](#):

1
2
3
4
o14-3.2.2: If the SMA or SM generates a trap, it **shall** send it only in the
5 following circumstances:
6
7
8
9

- 10 • if the SMA or SM resides on a CA or router, PortInfo:PortState is Active
11 for the port on which the trap is to be sent
12 • if the SMA or SM resides on a switch with an Enhanced Switch Port
13 0, PortInfo:PortState is Active for Enhanced Switch Port 0
14 • if the SMA or SM resides on a switch with Base Switch Port 0, PortIn-
15 fo:PortState is Active for the external switch port on which the trap will
be sent.

16 **o14-3.a1:** This optional compliance is obsolete and has been deleted; see
17 [C7-46](#):
18

19 This section describes the application of the architected traps for subnet
20 management event reporting. The entire list of subnet management class
21 traps are described in [14.2.5.1 Notices and Traps on page 887](#).
22

14.3.5 SUBNTRAPREPRESS()

23 An SMA or SM may receive a SMP from the subnet containing a Subn-
24 TrapRepress() in reaction to a SubnTrap() sent by the SMA or SM itself.
25 The requester, the master SM, will fill the MADHeader:M_Key field of the
26 SMP header with a M_Key that matches the value of the M_Key of the
27 port corresponding to the receiving SMA or SM if it expects the receiving
28 SMA or SM to check it.
29

30 **o14-3.a2:** This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been
31 replaced by [o14-32.3.1.1](#):
32

33 **o14-32.3.1.1:** If the PortInfo:M_Key component is zero, the SMA or SM
34 **shall** process the SubnTrapRepress() according to [13.4.9 Traps on page](#)
35 [811](#).
36

37 **o14-3.a3:** This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been
38 replaced by [o14-32.3.2.1](#):
39

40 **o14-32.3.2.1:** If the PortInfo:M_Key component is non-zero and M_Key
41 matching, if required, is successful according to the rules specified in
42 [14.2.4 Management Key on page 877](#), the SMA or SM **shall** process the
SubnTrapRepress() according to [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#).
43

44 **o14-3.a4:** This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been
45 replaced by [o14-32.3.3.1](#):
46

47 **o14-32.3.3.1:** The SMA or SM **shall** not send any message in response to
48 a valid SubnTrapRepress() message.
49

14.3.6 PORT STATE CHANGE

1 Switches are capable of reporting port state changes.
2

3 **o14-4:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed.
4

5 **o14-5:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
6 [o14-5.1.1:](#)
7

8 **o14-5.1.1:** If a switch supports Traps (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrap-
9 Supported is one), its SMA shall send trap 128 to the SM indicated by the
10 PortInfo:MasterSMLID under any condition that would cause
11 SwitchInfo:PortStateChange to be set to one. (See [14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on](#)
12 [page 895.](#))
13

14 **o14-6:** This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by
15 [o14-6.1.1:](#)
16

17 **o14-6.1.1:** If a switch supports Notices (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNotic-
18 eSupported is one), its SMA shall log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber
19 128 under any condition that would cause SwitchInfo:PortStateChange to
20 be set to one. (See [14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on page 895.](#))
21

22 The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 152](#)
23 [Notice DataDetails For Trap 128 on page 889.](#)
24

14.3.6.1 ENHANCED TRAP 128 SUPPORT

25 Enhanced trap/notice support for port state change is indicated by
26 PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsEnhancedTrap128Supported being set to
27 one. If enhanced trap 128 is supported, rather than just a trap/notice indicating
28 that some port on switch changed port state, a bit mask which includes the changed ports is also included with the trap/notice.
29 Additionally, the SMA maintains a local accumulated PortMask of ports
30 which have changed port state which have not been acknowledged by the
31 SM. This section describes how these port masks are managed by the
32 SMA.
33

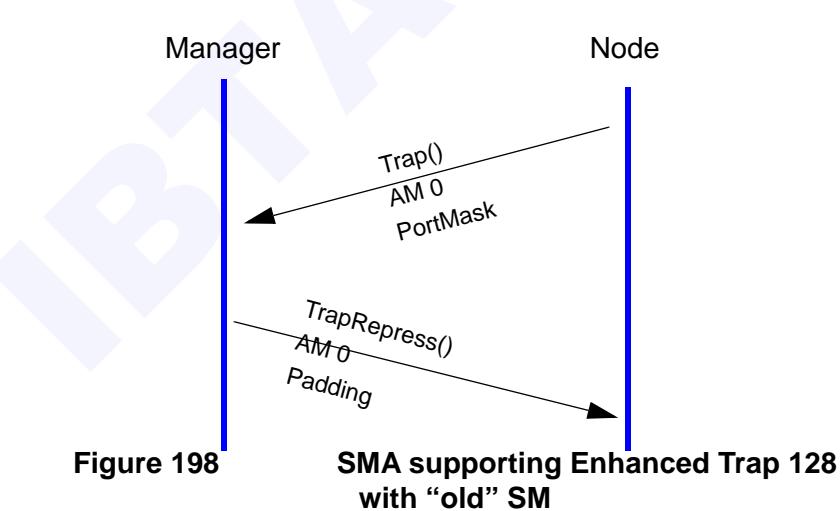
34 **o14-6.a1:** If a switch supports enhanced trap 128 (PortInfo:Capability-
35 Mask2.IsEnhancedTrap128Supported is one) in addition to Traps
36 (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported is one), its SMA shall include a
37 bit mask of ports whose port state has changed since last time it's local
38 accumulated PortMask of ports which changed port state was cleared.
39

40 **o14-6.a2:** If a switch supports enhanced trap 128 (PortInfo:Capability-
41 Mask2.IsEnhancedTrap128Supported is one) in addition to Notices
42 (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupport is one), its SMA shall include in
the Notice a bit mask of ports whose port state has changed since the previous
Notice for trap 128 that was added to the Notice Queue.
43

In this section, an SM which does not support SMAs which support the enhanced trap 128 option is termed an “old” SM and an SM which supports SMAs which support the enhanced trap 128 option is termed a “new” SM. This section describes how an SMA which supports the enhanced trap 128 option interacts with both “old” and “new” SMs.

A “new” SM can tell whether SMA supports the enhanced trap 128 option or not but an “old” SM cannot. Furthermore, an SMA supporting the enhanced 128 option cannot tell whether the SM understands the port mask enhanced version of trap 128 or not prior to sending the trap/notice.

For traps, an “old” SM sends TrapRepress() with AttributeModifier 0. In this case, there is only padding in Notice in TrapRepress() and SMA will clear the local accumulated PortMask of ports with pending link state changes and no additional trap is sent until ports subsequently change port state. This is the same as how the original trap 128 works. See [Figure 198 SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with “old” SM on page 980](#).



A “new” SM sends the TrapRepress() with AttributeModifier 1 as well as the PortMask it received in the Trap(). Upon receipt of the TrapRepress() with AttributeModifier 1, the SMA will reset any ports in the local accumulated PortMask of ports with pending link state changes. If the local accumulated PortMask is 0, there is no additional trap to send (See [Figure 199 SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with “new” SM - No additional port state changes on page 981](#)) but if there are any remaining ports set to 1 in the local accumulated PortMask, the SMA will send another Trap() with the current local accumulated PortMask of ports with pending link state changes with a new TID (See [Figure 200 SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with “new” SM - Additional port state changes on page 982](#)). Note that the SMA should ensure that SwitchInfo:PortStateChange is set to one prior to sending any subsequent trap 128s because the local accumulated PortMask is not 0.

Notices are stored in a Notice Queue (NQ) which is a FIFO for events. Notices are similar to Traps in that the AttributeModifier is 0 for Get(), Set(), and GetResp(). No change is needed to the Notice mechanism for enhanced trap 128.

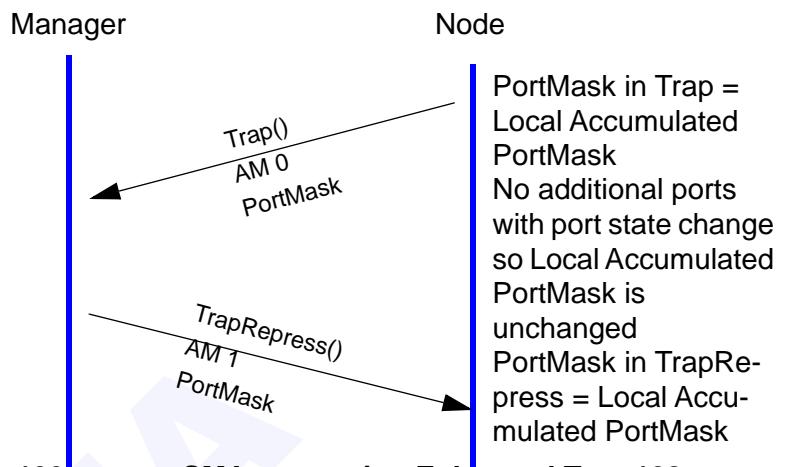


Figure 199
SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128
with “new” SM - No additional port state changes

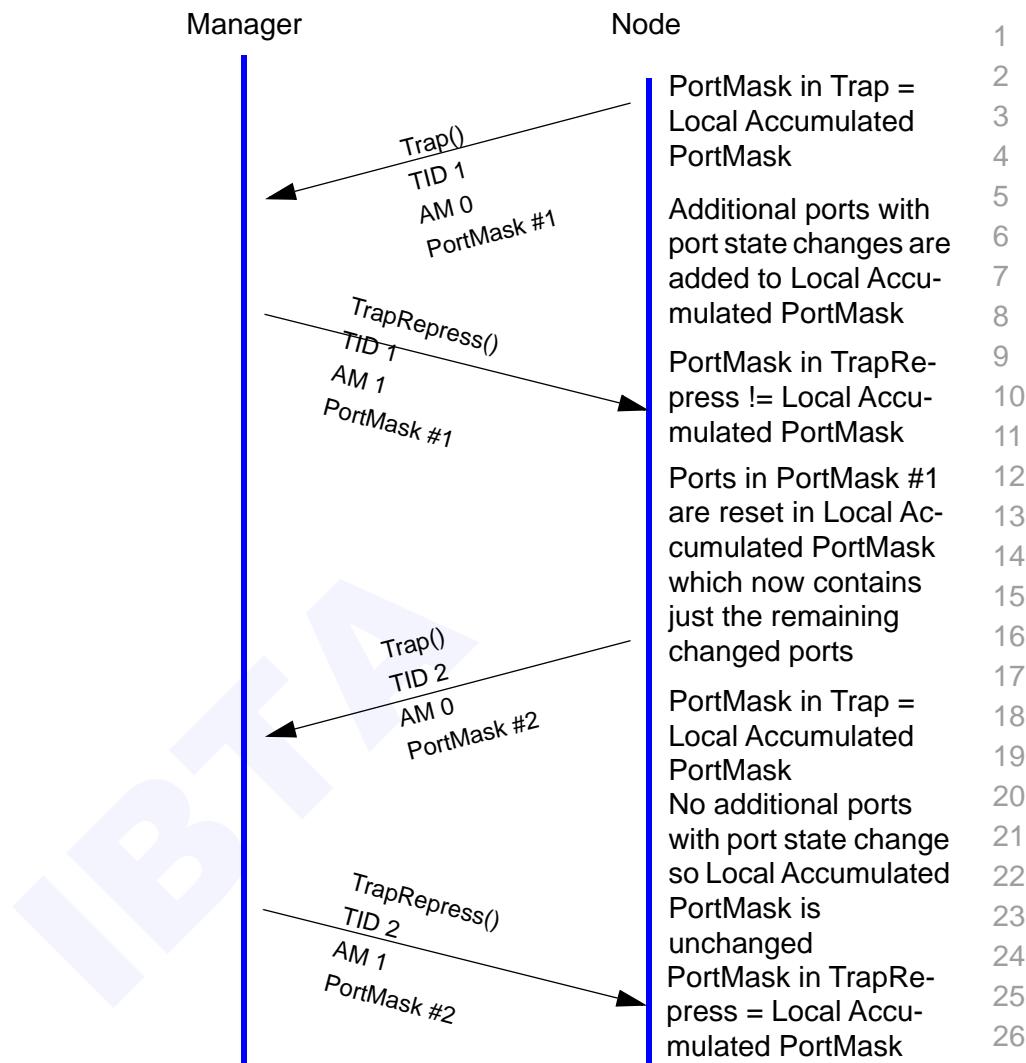


Figure 200 SMA supporting Enhanced Trap 128 with “new” SM - Additional port state changes

14.3.7 P_KEY MISMATCH ON SWITCH EXTERNAL PORTS

P_Key mismatch happens when a P_Key residing in the headers of an incoming or outgoing packet on a switch external port does not match any entry of the P_KeyTable for that switch external port as described in [18.2.4 Packet Relay Requirements on page 1213](#).

o14-6.1.2: If the switch management port's PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPKeySwitchExternalPortTrapSupported is set, the SMA on the switch management port **shall** monitor P_Key mismatches on each switch external port according to [18.2.4 Packet Relay Requirements on page 1213](#).

o14-6.1.3: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-6.2.1](#):

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
o14-6.2.1: If the switch management port's PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsP-KeySwitchExternalPortTrapSupported and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported are set, and if a P_Key mismatch is detected according to [18.2.4 Packet Relay Requirements on page 1213](#), then the SMA **shall** send a trap 259 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID, with one exception. The exception to this rule is if the switch external port's PortInfo:MulticastPKeyTrapSuppressionEnabled is set and the packet is a multicast packet, in which case the SMA shall not send a trap. If a trap is sent, the DataDetails of the trap shall be filled with information from [Table 158 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259 on page 893](#) for P_Key mismatches on a switch external port.

11
12
13
o14-6.1.4: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-6.2.2](#).

14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
o14-6.2.2: If the switch management port's PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsP-KeySwitchExternalPortTrapSupported and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported are set, and if a P_Key mismatch is detected according to [18.2.4 Packet Relay Requirements on page 1213](#), then the SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 259, with one exception. The exception to this rule is if the switch external port's PortInfo:MulticastPKeyTrapSuppressionEnabled is set and the packet is a multicast packet, in which case the SMA shall not log a notice. If a Notice is logged, the DataDetails of the Notice shall be filled with information from [Table 158 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259 on page 893](#) for P_Key mismatches on a switch external port.

14.3.8 TRANSPORT KEY MISMATCH

25
26
27
28
29
30
Transport key mismatch happens when a key residing in the headers of an incoming packet does not match the key for the destination QP during packet validation as described in [9.6 Packet Transport Header Validation on page 292](#).

31
32
33
C14-33: The SMA **shall** monitor P_Key and Q_Key mismatches detected by the transport services on that port.

34
35
36
37
38
C14-34: If a P_Key or Q_Key mismatch occurs, the SMA **shall** report the current count via the contents of PortInfo:P_KeyViolations or PortInfo:Q_KeyViolations components of the PortInfo attribute (see [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#)).

39
40
41
42
o14-7: If the port supports Traps as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported, the SMA **shall** send a trap 257 or 258 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID for P_Key and Q_Key mismatches, respectively.

- o14-8: If the port supports Notices as indicated the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, the SMA **shall** log a notice for P_Key and Q_Key mismatches using Notice:TrapNumber 257 or 258.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 157 Notice DataDetails For Traps 257 and 258 on page 892](#) for P_Key and Q_Key mismatches, respectively.

14.3.9 M_KEY MISMATCH

As a result of the M_Key residing in the SMP header, the SMA is responsible for checking it. The SMA will perform an M_Key check as described in [14.2.4.1 Levels of Protection on page 878](#). If the check fails and a lease period countdown is not already in effect, the SMA starts a lease period countdown as described in [14.2.4.2 Lease Period on page 879](#).

- o14-9: If a port receives a SMP for which an M_Key mismatch is detected, then, if the port supports Traps as indicated in PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported, the SMA of that port **shall** send a trap 256 to the SM indicated by PortInfo:MasterSMLID.

- o14-10: If a port receives a SMP for which an M_Key mismatch is detected, then, if the port supports Notices as indicated PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, the SMA of that port **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 256.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 156 Notice DataDetails For Trap 256 on page 891](#).

14.3.10 LINK LAYER ERRORS

The link layer performs error detection and recovery as described in [7.12 Error detection and handling on page 242](#). The SMA is responsible for monitoring the Local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun, and flow control update errors detected by the link layer of the port.

- o14-11: When a Local Link Integrity error occurs on a port that supports Traps (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported is set), the port's SMA **shall** send Trap 129 to the SM at the address contained in PortInfo:MasterSMLID; when an Excessive Buffer Overrun error occurs, Trap 130 **shall** be sent; and when a Flow Control Update error occurs, Trap 131 **shall** be sent.

- o14-12: If the port supports Notices as indicated the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, the SMA **shall** log a notice using Notice:TrapNumber 129, 130, or 131, respectively, when the Local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun, or flow control update counters increment.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 153 Notice DataDetails For Traps 129, 130 and 131 on page 890](#) for Local link integrity, excessive buffer overrun, and flow control update counter changes, respectively.

14.3.11 CHANGE CAPABILITYMASK

The PortInfo:CapabilityMask component is RO and therefore cannot be changed by the SM. However, the PortInfo:CapabilityMask may be modified at runtime under normal subnet operational conditions by entities on an endnode. The SMA is responsible for monitoring and reporting changes in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.

o14-12.1.1: If the port supports Traps as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported and the port is capable of sending the CapabilityMask trap as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported bit, then the SMA **shall** send a trap 144 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID when the PortInfo:CapabilityMask is modified at runtime.

o14-12.1.2: If the management port supports Notices as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported and the port is capable of logging the CapabilityMask notice as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported, the SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 144 when the PortInfo:CapabilityMask is modified at runtime.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 on page 890](#) for CapabilityMask changes.

14.3.12 CHANGE SYSTEMIMAGETRUEGUID

The NodeInfo:SystemImageGUID component is RO and therefore cannot be changed by the SM. However, it may be modified at runtime under normal subnet operational conditions by entities on an endnode. The SMA is responsible for monitoring and reporting changes in the NodeInfo:SystemImageGUID.

o14-12.1.3: If the port supports Traps and SystemImageGUID (as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSystemImageGUIDSupported) then the SMA shall send a trap 145 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID when the NodeInfo:SystemImageGUID is modified at runtime.

o14-12.1.4: If the management port supports Notices and SystemImageGUID (as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSystemImageGUIDSupported) then the SMA

shall log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 145 when the NodeInfo:SystemImageGUID is modified at runtime.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 155 Notice DataDetails For Trap 145 on page 891](#) for SystemImageGUID changes.

14.3.13 OTHER LOCAL CHANGES

Aside from elements covered by [14.3.11](#) and [14.3.12](#), there are other attributes or components which may be changed locally without the knowledge of the SM. Attributes or components in these attributes may be modified locally at runtime under normal subnet operational conditions by entities on an endnode. If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported is 1, the SMA is responsible for monitoring and reporting these changes, which include changes other than CapabilityMask described in [Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 on page 890](#).

o14-34.2-1.1: If the port supports Traps as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported, and the port is capable of sending the enhanced (for other local changes) version of Trap 144 as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported, then the SMA **shall** send a Trap 144 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID when a local change other than CapabilityMask included in [Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 on page 890](#) is modified by an entity on the sending port's endnode at runtime.

o14-34.2-1.2: If the management port supports Notices as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, and the port is capable of logging the OtherLocalChanges notice as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported, the SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 144 when a local change other than CapabilityMask included in [Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 on page 890](#) is modified at runtime.

The contents of the trap or notice is filled with information from [Table 154 Notice DataDetails For Trap 144 on page 890](#) for other local changes.

14.3.14 SMSUPPORTSEXTENDEDLINKSPEEDS

In order to support extended link speeds with both SMs which predate extended link speed support (termed “old SM”) and SMs which include this support (termed “new SM”), several SM class attributes now partition the AttributeModifier such that the high order bit (bit 31) is the SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds bit. These attributes are [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#) and [14.2.5.16 LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable on page 927](#).

SMA extended link speed backward interoperability mode, representing extended link speeds by overloading the QDR bits with extended speed

information, is introduced to allow old SMs to interoperate with the new hardware.

SMs that support extended link speeds (new SMs) may set SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds to 1 to avoid the backward compatibility mode of the PortInfo and LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable attributes detailed in the subsequent paragraphs.

An SM can determine whether a port is capable of supporting extended link speeds by inspecting the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported bit. An SM shall not set SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds bit in the AttributeModifier when a port does not indicate such support.

Both SMs supporting or not supporting the new extended link speeds are thus capable of managing a subnet containing ports that support extended link speeds (as well as original link speeds). In both cases, these ports can come up at a compatible extended speed.

The following subsections detail the behavior of the SMA in terms of the SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds AttributeModifier (AM) bit for the affected SM class attributes.

14.3.14.1 PORTINFO

SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds is needed to determine whether or not ports with an active extended link speed really support QDR.

o14-12.a1: If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 0 and a PortInfo request is received by the SMA with AM.SSMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, an error (status 7) is returned.

The following pseudo code describes the behavior of the SMA when a PortInfo request is received based on the AM.SSMSupportsExtendedSpeeds bit. In the below pseudo code, LSA means LinkSpeedActive, LSE means LinkSpeedEnabled, LSS means LinkSpeedSupported. LSEA means LinkSpeedExtActive, LSEE means LinkSpeedExtEnabled, and LSES means LinkSpeedExtSupported.

```
If (PortInfo AM.SSMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds) {  
    Return actual LSA, LSE, LSS, LSEA, LSEE, LSES  
} else {  
    Overload the LSA QDR bit by setting it if any LSEA bit is set  
    Overload the LSE QDR bit by setting it if any LSEE bit is set (exclude  
    special LSEE values of 30 and 31)  
    Overload the LSS QDR bit by setting it if any LSES bit is set  
    Return actual LSEA, LSEE, LSES  
}
```

o14-12.a2: If the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1 and a PortInfo request is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, then the actual LinkSpeedActive, LinkSpeedEnabled, and LinkSpeedSupported as well as the actual LinkSpeedExtActive, LinkSpeedExtEnabled, and LinkSpeedExtSupported are returned in the response.

o14-12.a3: If the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported bit is set to 1 and a PortInfo request is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 0, then the QDR bit of LinkSpeedActive, LinkSpeedEnabled, and LinkSpeedSupported is also set to 1 in the response if the corresponding extended link speed field (LinkSpeedExtActive, LinkSpeedExtEnabled, and LinkSpeedExtSupported respectively) have any set extended link speed bits excluding the special cases. Additionally, the actual LinkSpeedExtActive, LinkSpeedExtEnabled, and LinkSpeedExtSupported are also returned.

It is important to note that any “overloaded” QDR bits are only in the SMA responses to the SM and do not affect link autonegotiation.

o14-12.a4: If the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 0 and a PortInfo set request that disables QDR in LinkSpeedEnabled is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 0, in addition to disabling QDR, any extended link speeds are also disabled.

o14-12.a5: If the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1 and a PortInfo set request that disables QDR in LinkSpeedEnabled is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, only QDR is disabled.

14.3.14.2 LINKSPEEDWIDTHPAIRSTABLE

SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds is used by the SMA to determine whether or not Speed-10 bits need to be “overloaded” in the response.

o14-12.a6: If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 0 and a LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable request is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, an error (status 7) is returned.

o14-12.a7: If PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is set to 1 and a LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable request is received by the SMA with AM.SMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, then the actual Speed-10 bits are returned in the response. Additionally, the actual Speed-FDR and Speed-EDR bits are also returned if extended link speeds are supported.

o14-34.3.3.1: If PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 1 and a LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable request is received by the SMA with AM.SSMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 1, then the actual Speed-10 bits are returned in the response. Additionally, the actual Speed-FDR, Speed-EDR, and Speed-HDR bits are also returned if extended link speeds are supported.

o14-12.a8: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-34.3.4.1](#):

o14-34.3.4.1: When a LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable request is received by the SMA with AM.SSMSupportsExtendedLinkSpeeds set to 0, if an extended link speed is active, then in addition to the actual Speed-10 bits, the SMA response includes any “overloaded” bits for widths that the SMA wants to indicate are supported for the “overloaded” QDR speed. These should be similar to the ones indicated in Speed-FDR, Speed-EDR, and, if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 1, Speed-HDR. Additionally, the actual Speed-FDR, Speed-EDR, and Speed-HDR bits are also returned. Speed-HDR bits are only returned if PortInfo.CapabilityMask2.IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported is set to 1.

14.4 SUBNET MANAGER

There may be one or more Subnet Managers operating on a subnet as described in [13.3.2 Required Managers and Agents on page 779](#). There may be several SMs on a particular node, each residing on different subnets.

C14-35: An SM **shall** always be associated with one port and one subnet.

C14-35.1.1: A Subnet Manager (SM) **shall** indicate its presence on the subnet by setting the IsSM bit in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask on the port where it resides (see [Table 164 PortInfo on page 899](#)).

The mechanism for activating an SM is beyond the scope of the specification. The ability to modify the IsSM bit is provided by the Verbs for HCAs (see [11.2.1.3 Modify HCA Attributes on page 594](#)) and is otherwise beyond the scope of the specification.

Each SM is always in a particular state: Master, Standby, Discovering or Not-active.

The algorithm used to initialize the subnet, the algorithm for adding/deleting routes in response to subnet changes, the mechanisms for failover from master SM to standby SM, and the mechanism for transfer of mastership from master SM to standby SM are beyond the scope of the specification. However, there are mechanisms specified in this section that may be used to support these operations.

C14-36: An SM **shall** comply with the state machine shown in [Figure 201 SMIInfo State Transitions on page 991](#) during its startup and **shall** become either a master or standby SM.

Correct execution of the state machine ensures that there be only one Master SM on a subnet at any time and that after startup, a SM becomes either a Standby or Master on the subnet.

Furthermore, the state machine specifies how a single Master SM is maintained during subnet topology changes, packet loss, addition/removal of SMs, and subnet mergers. Subsequent sections include the specification of optional mechanism that may be used by SMs to communicate and a description of some SM operations on the subnet, but none of these are required for SM compliance.

14.4.1 SM STATE MACHINE

The behavior of the SM is specified in terms of the SM state machine. This section starts by defining the specific mechanisms used by the SM: the SMIInfo attribute, control packets that SMs may exchange, a set of timers, and the exception conditions reported to the higher layer (administrator).

Each SM provides a SMIInfo attribute that is specified in [Table 177 SMIInfo on page 925](#) and is exported from the port where it resides.

C14-37: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-37.1.1:](#)

C14-37.1.1: The SMIInfo:Priority and SMIInfo:SM_Key **shall** be configurable only through an out-of-band mechanism that is outside the scope of this specification.

C14-37.1.2: The SM **shall** keep the SMIInfo:Priority provided to it (see [C14-37.1.1:](#)) in nonvolatile memory.

The contents of the components in the SMIInfo attribute determine which SM in a multi-SM subnet becomes Master: the one with the highest Priority and the lowest GUID.

Each Standby SM should be ready to become Master when the current Master fails (or gets disconnected). Also, mastership will be handed over when the Master detects another SM with a higher Priority (or same Priority and lower GUID), e.g., during merger of two subnets. Handover takes place only between SMs that have the right SM_Key.

Under certain circumstances, e.g., when the number of Standby SMs becomes an obstacle to scalability, then a Master SM may force other SMs to become Not-active.

C14-38: In order to assure interoperability, each SM **shall** respond to SubnGet(SMInfo) or SubnSet(SMInfo) with a SubnGetResp(SMInfo).

[Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#) summarizes the states that a SM may represent in the SMInfo:SMState.

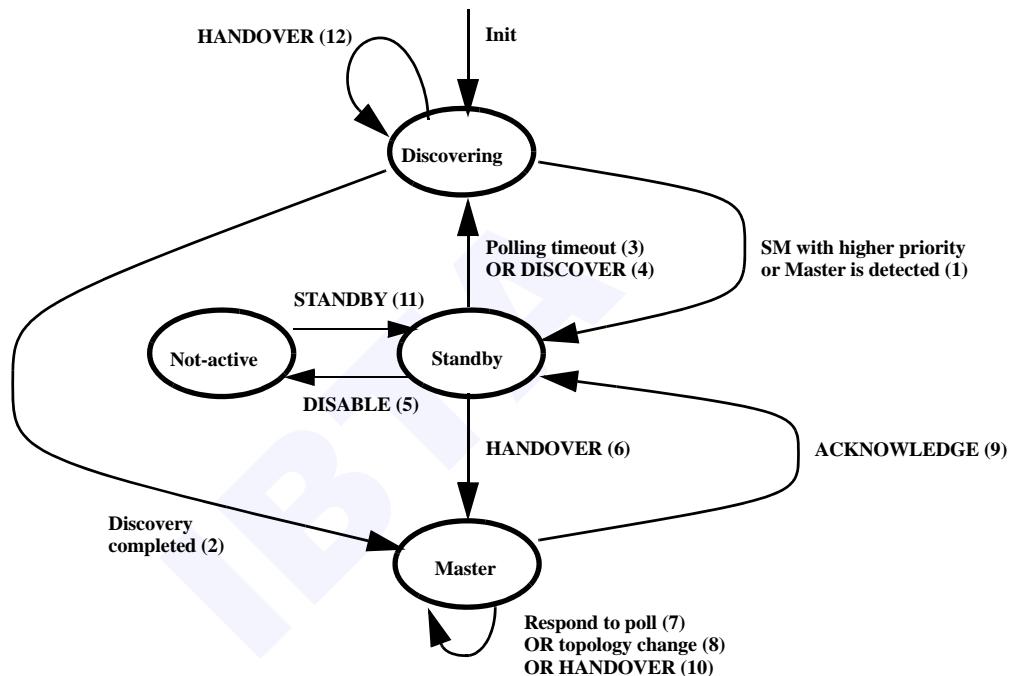


Figure 201 **SMInfo State**

The state transitions correspond to the event numbers in the text below. The following sections describe the behavior of the SM in each of the states and the (externally driven) events that cause state changes.

14.4.1.1 CONTROL PACKETS

Control packets may be exchanged between SMs using a SMP that contains a SubnSet(SMInfo) where the MADHeader:AttributeModifier is used to select from one of the following actions specified in [Table 226 SM Control Packets on page 992](#). The SM is not required to generate these control packets and may use mechanisms that are beyond the scope of the specification to implement similar functions, however, a SM is required to correctly respond to them.

Table 226 SM Control Packets

MADHeader:AttributeModifier	Description
1	HANOVER: Is used to initiate the process of handing over Mastership to a higher priority Standby SM or Master.
2	ACKNOWLEDGE: Is used to acknowledge the handover
3	DISABLE: Is used to disable a Standby SM.
4	STANDBY: Is used to return a Not-active SM to Standby.
5	DISCOVER: Causes a Standby SM to go to Discovering.

C14-38.1.1: An SM that receives a SubnSet(SMInfo) control packet requesting an invalid state transition **shall** ignore the requested action and return a SubnGetResp(SMInfo) with a MADHeader:Status code of 7.

Invalid state transition control packets include those with a MADHeader:AttributeModifier of 1, 3, 4, or 5 that were not sent by the Master SM; or those with a MADHeader:AttributeModifier of 2 that were not sent by a Standby SM; or those requesting a state transition that is not present in [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#). When an invalid state transition control packet is received by an SM, that SM may also want to notify a higher layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification).

14.4.1.2 DISCOVERING STATE

DISCOVERING is the initial state.

C14-39: At startup, a SM **shall** enter the DISCOVERING state.

C14-40: In the DISCOVERING state, the SM **shall** perform repetitive SubnGet(*) to find all nodes and SMs on the subnet.

Section [14.4.2 Subnet Discovery Actions on page 997](#) summaries many of the attributes that are collected during discovery. The SM will typically use direct-routed SMPs to reach all the endnodes. The sequence of discovery is implementation specific and beyond the scope of the specification.

C14-41: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-41.1.1:](#)

C14-41.1.1: An SM in the DISCOVERING state **shall** yield and change its SMInfo:SMState to STANDBY if it finds another SM that either:

- has SMInfo:SMState = MASTER;

- or is in a state other than NOT-ACTIVE and has either a higher Priority than its own or the same Priority and a lower GUID.

See [Figure 201 SMIInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 1. At this point the SM stops the discovery and starts operating as a Standby SM.

C14-42: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-41.1.1](#):

C14-42.1.1: An SM in the DISCOVERING state **shall** assume the role of a Master by changing its SMIInfo:SMState to MASTER if it completes the discovery process without finding a Master or a higher priority (lower GUID) SM that is in a state other than NOT-ACTIVE.

C14-43: The master SM **shall** initially send to all the nodes on the subnet SubnSet(PortInfo) SMPs with PortInfo:MasterSMLID and PortInfo:MasterSMSL that specify a path to itself.

See [Figure 201 SMIInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 2.

C14-44: If the SM discovers that it does not have a M_Key required to configure a CA, switch, or router on the subnet it **shall** notify the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification).

C14-44.1.1: If a SM in the DISCOVERING state receives a HANDOVER control packet, i.e., a SubnSet(SMIInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 1, it **shall** return a SubnGetResp(SMIInfo).

See [Figure 201 SMIInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 12.

14.4.1.3 STANDBY STATE

C14-45: Standby SMs **shall** not configure the subnet.

C14-46: Each Standby SM **shall** poll the Master SM with SubnGet(SMIInfo) SMPs, addressed to its PortInfo:MasterSMLID. As long as the Standby determines that the Master is alive, it stays in SMIInfo:SM-State = STANDBY.

The minimum interval between polling is set by the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification). The actual interval may be longer for Standby SMs with lower Priority or when there is a larger number of Standby SMs on the subnet. The actual polling interval is installation specific and is not specified in the architecture. The Master may use the optional control packets to disable Standby SMs if it determines that there is excessive polling in the subnet.

C14-47: If the Standby SM does not receive a SubnGetResp(SMIInfo) that indicates progress in the ActCount, within the number of retries that is set

1 by the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification), then it should conclude that the Master is no longer alive (or accessible) and it **shall** change its SMInfo:SMState back to DISCOVERING.
2
3

4 See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 3.
5
6

7 **C14-48:** If a Standby SM receives a DISCOVER packet, i.e. a
8 SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 5,
9 then it **shall** change its SMInfo:SMState to DISCOVERING.
10
11

12 See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 4.
13
14

15 **C14-49:** If a Standby SM receives a DISABLE packet, i.e., a
16 SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 3,
17 then it **shall** change its SMInfo:SMState to NOT-ACTIVE.
18
19

20 See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 5. This allows
21 the Master to disable Standby SMs if it determines that the amount
22 of polling creates a scalability problem.
23
24

25 Event 6 specifies the Standby SM behavior when a Master SM determines
26 that the Standby SM has higher priority and the correct SM_Key, and subsequently
27 relinquishes mastership to that Standby SM. The Master's behavior is specified in [14.4.1.5 Master State on page 995](#).
28
29

30 **C14-50:** If a Standby SM receives a HANDOVER control packet, i.e., a
31 SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 1,
32 it **shall** return a SubnGetResp(SMInfo).
33
34

35 The steps necessary to take control of the subnet are beyond the scope
36 of specification. However, the standby SM may, for example, perform the
37 following operations:
38
39

- 40 1) The standby SM receiving the HANDOVER control packet obtains
41 necessary topology information, possibly obtaining data defined as
42 required record attributes specified in [15.2.5.1 Summary of Attributes
on page 1023](#) from subnet administration residing with the current
Master SM.
43
44 2) The standby SM should send to all the nodes on the subnet a
45 SubnSet(PortInfo) with MasterSMLID and MasterSMSL that specify a
46 path to itself.
47
48 3) The standby SM may send the current Master SM an AC-
49 KNOWLEDGE control packet, i.e. an SubnSet(SMInfo) with MAD-
50 Header:AttributeModifier set to the value of 2.
51
52 4) If the standby SM does not receive a SubnGetResp(SMInfo), it
53 should notify the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope
54 of the specification), then it should conclude that the Master is no longer alive (or
55 accessible) and it **shall** change its SMInfo:SMState back to DISCOVERING.
56
57

of the specification). This is an indication that the Master may have died in the middle of an unsuccessful hand over.

- 5) After receiving a SubnGetResp(SMInfo), it assumes the role of a Master by changing its SMInfo:State to MASTER. See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 6.

14.4.1.4 NOT-ACTIVE STATE

C14-51: If a SM is in the NOT-ACTIVE state, it **shall** indicate this by setting the SMInfo:SMState to NOT-ACTIVE.

C14-52: If the SM is in the NOT-ACTIVE state, it **shall** not send SubnSet() or SubnGet() SMPs.

C14-53: If the SM is in the NOT-ACTIVE state, it **shall** respond to SubnSet(SMInfo) and SubnGet(SMInfo) SMPs.

C14-54: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-54.1.1](#).

C14-54.1.1: If the SM is in the NOT-ACTIVE state and it receives a STANDBY packet, i.e., a SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:Attribute-Modifier set to the value of 4, it **shall** change its state to STANDBY.

See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 11.

14.4.1.5 MASTER STATE

The Master starts its operation by topology discovery, LID verification and assignment (if applicable), path verification and calculation, etc. (as specified in [14.4.3 Initialization Actions on page 998](#)).

C14-55: Only the Master SM **shall** configure subnet nodes.

C14-56: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

C14-57: If the M_Key protection mechanism, as described in [14.2.4.1 Levels of Protection on page 878](#), is being used, the Master SM **shall** sweep the subnet at a rate that will refresh the lease period of every port on the subnet.

Section [14.4.6 Subnet Sweeping on page 1008](#) describes the sweep activities.

C14-58: The Master **shall** increment the SMInfo.ActCount every time it performs a management operation or issues an SMP.

When the SM in Master state receives a valid SubnGet(SMInfo) or SubnSet(SMInfo), it should respond with a SubnGetResp(SMInfo) when

M_Key matching, if required, is successful as described in [14.4.7 Authentication on page 1009](#). This is required in order to support the Standby polling mechanism.

C14-59: If during the sweep the Master detects a topology change, then it **shall** perform the operations listed below:

- If the change is a link going down, then the Master needs to possibly establish new paths and send new MasterSMLID/SLs to the affected nodes. The details are beyond the scope of the specification.
- If the Master detects a new link, then it starts discovering the subnet beyond the new links, using (partially) direct routed SMPs.
If the SM discovers that it does not have a M_Key required to configure a CA, switch, or router on the subnet, it will notify the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification).

C14-60: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-60.2.1](#):

C14-60.2.1: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-60.2-1.2](#):

C14-60.2-1.2: If a Master SM finds another Master SM with lower priority (or same priority and higher GUID), it **shall** complete the discovery to ensure that it is the highest priority (or same priority and lower GUID) on the subnet, and if so it **shall** wait for the other Master (or Masters) to relinquish control of its portion of the subnet.

C14-61: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-61.1.1](#):

C14-61.1.1: If the Master SM finds an SM that is in a state other than NOT-ACTIVE, has a higher priority (or same priority and lower GUID), and has the appropriate SM_Key; then it **shall** complete the discovery or sweep in order to determine the highest priority SM (with an appropriate SM_Key) in the new part of the subnet (if applicable) and it **shall** relinquish control of its portion of the subnet to that SM.

The steps necessary to transfer control of the subnet from one master SM to another is beyond the scope of specification, however, the master SM may use the optional control packets to perform the handover process as follows:

- It may complete operations in progress.

- It sends the higher priority SM a HANOVER packet, i.e. a SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 1.
- It continues responding to polls from Standby SMs until it receives an ACKNOWLEDGE packet, i.e., a SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 2 from the higher priority SM.
- When it receives an ACKNOWLEDGE packet, it will change its SMInfo:SMState to STANDBY and return a SubnGetResp(SMInfo). See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 9.
- If it does not receive an ACKNOWLEDGE packet, then it informs the higher-layer (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification).

C14-61.2.1: If a Master SM determines that a higher priority Master SM does not have the proper SM_Key, then it **shall** not relinquish mastership of its portion of the subnet, and **shall** not change the state of the subnet.

C14-61.2.2: If a Master SM determines that a lower priority Master SM has not performed a handover within a vendor-specific time period, then it **shall** not change the state of the subnet.

Should a Master SM determine the occurrence of the conditions described in either [C14-61.2.1](#): or [C14-61.2.2](#): it should report the occurrence to a higher level protocol (through an interface beyond the scope of the specification). An acceptable technique for determining whether or not a Master SM will ever do a HANOVER can include polling of the Master SM as would normally be done by a standby SM (see [C14-46](#):).

C14-61.2.3: If a SM in the MASTER state receives a HANOVER control packet, i.e., a SubnSet(SMInfo) with MADHeader:AttributeModifier set to the value of 1, it shall return a SubnGetResp(SMInfo). See [Figure 201 SMInfo State Transitions on page 991](#), number 10.

14.4.2 SUBNET DISCOVERY ACTIONS

The SM collects information from the attributes and records them for later use during configuration of the subnet. The discovery algorithm is outside the scope of the specification, however, discovery may consist of:

- probing the subnet with directed route packets
- loading a topology database from persistent storage
- a combination of information that is loaded from persistent storage and obtained by probing subnet nodes

During discovery, the SM scans the attributes described in [14.2.5 Attributes on page 881](#) to obtain information not limited to the following:

- VLs on each Port 1
- MTU of the Port 2
- Link Width on each Port 3
- Link Speed on each Port 4
- Physical topology, connectivity of links between nodes 5
- P_Key table sizes 6
- GUID table sizes 7
- support for various capabilities 8
- device type: switch, CA, or router 9
- power-on diagnostic status 10
- for switches,
 - size of switch linear-forwarding or random-forwarding tables 11
 - support for multicast forwarding table and size 12
 - presence of the optional VL arbitration table 13
 - presence of the optional SL-to-VL mapping table 14

14.4.3 INITIALIZATION ACTIONS

The algorithms and policies that are necessary to set many of the subnet attributes are outside the scope of the specification. However, there is a core set of attributes that the SM is responsible for setting in order to make the subnet functional.

C14-62: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C14-62.1.1:](#)

C14-62.1.1: The Master SM **shall** initialize the subnet components specified in the following [Table 227 Initialization on page 998](#).

Table 227 Initialization

Component	Description
PortInfo:LID	The SM shall assign a unicast LID address to each endpoint on the subnet. LID usage is described in 4.1.2 Channel Adapter, Switch, and Router Addressing Rules on page 164 and 4.1.3 Local Identifiers on page 164 . The SM shall also set up the forwarding tables of the switches in the subnet such that each base LID of a port on a CA, Router, or switch port 0 is reachable from any other port on the subnet within the boundaries set by partitions.
PortInfo:LMC	The SM shall assign an LMC for each CA and router port on the subnet. LMC usage is described in 4.1.3 Local Identifiers on page 164 . The SM may program the LMC on a port to any value between 0 and 7 to allow use of multiple LIDs in addressing the port. The SM shall not assign overlapping ranges of LIDs based on LMCs to different ports.

Table 227

Initialization (Continued)

Component	Description
PortInfo:GidPrefix	The SM shall assign a Subnet Prefix for the subnet based on the presence of a router and the rules specified in 4.1.3 Local Identifiers on page 164 .
PortInfo:OperationalVL	The SM shall initialize the VL tables for CAs, switches and routers. The SM will examine the supported VLs in the PortInfo:VLCap at both ends of every link and sets the maximum number of VLs by setting the PortInfo:OperationalVL at each end to the smaller of the two supported number of VLs. The description of VL initialization resides in 7.6.7 Initialization and Configuration on page 207 . In the case of an enhanced switch port 0, there is, effectively, just one end of the link; in that case OperationalVLs may be set to any value allowing any number of VLs up to and including the VLCap of the port.
PortInfo:NeighborMTU	The SM shall initialize the port MTU for CAs, switches and routers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For other than an enhanced switch port 0, the SM shall examine the supported MTU size in the PortInfo:MTUCap at both ends of every link and set the maximum MTU parameter on the ports in their PortInfo.NeighborMTU at each end to the smaller of the two supported sizes. In the case of an enhanced switch port 0, there is, effectively, just one end of the link; in that case NeighborMTU shall be set to any value up to and including the MTUCap of the port.
PortInfo:SubnetTimeOut	The SM shall set the maximum trap generation rate for all nodes in the subnet by initializing the PortInfo.SubnetTimeOut component in all ports as described in 13.4.6.2.1 PortInfo:SubnetTimeout on page 791 .
PortInfo:MasterSMLID	The SM shall store the LID of the port where it resides in the PortInfo:MasterSMLID of each port on the subnet.
PortInfo:MasterSMSL	The SM shall store the SL required for sending a non-SMP message to the SM using that SL in the PortInfo:MasterSMSL of each port on the subnet
PortInfo:PortPhysicalState	The default state on power-on is polling as described in Volume 2.
PortInfo:LinkDownDefault-State	The default state on power-on is polling as described in Volume 2.
PortInfo:VLHighLimit	The SM shall set the Limit of High-Priority limit for the number of bytes of high-priority packets that can be transmitted if the ports on both ends of a link may be operated with multiple data VLs as described in 7.6 Virtual Lanes Mechanisms on page 199
PortInfo:M_Key	The SM may initialize the PortInfo:M_Key for each port on the subnet as described in 14.2.4.5 Initialization on page 881 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits	The SM may initialize the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits for each port on the subnet as described in 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBit-sExt	The SM may initialize the PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt for each port on the subnet as described in 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod	The SM may initialize the PortInfo:M_KeyLeasePeriod for each port on the subnet as described in 14.2.4 Management Key on page 877 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.

Table 227

Initialization (Continued)

Component	Description
PortInfo:M_KeyViolations	The SM shall clear the PortInfo:M_KeyViolations component for all ports on the subnet.
PortInfo:P_KeyViolations	The SM shall clear the PortInfo:P_KeyViolations component for all ports on the subnet.
PortInfo:Q_KeyViolations	The SM shall clear the PortInfo:Q_KeyViolations component for all ports on the subnet.
PortInfo:VLStallCount	The SM shall set a value for the PortInfo:VLStallCount as described in 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:HOQLife	The SM shall set a value for the PortInfo:HOQLife as described in 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 . The rules for assigning these values is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:DiagCode	The SM may check the PortInfo:DiagCode of every port on the subnet. The rules for correcting faults detected on ports is outside the scope of the specification.
PortInfo:InitTypeReply	If the SM implements Reinitialization (SA's ClassPortInfo:lsReinitSupported = 1), it shall set these bits in PortInfo in accordance with the initialization performed prior to activating a port. See 14.4.4 Node Reinitialization on page 1002 . Otherwise, these bits shall be set to 0.
GUIDInfo	The SM may assign GUIDs to ports to form GIDs as described in 4.1.1 GID Usage and Properties on page 160 . There is one pre-assigned read-only GUID for each port that has the same value as NodeInfo:PortGUID.
SwitchInfo:LinearFDBTop	On a switch that supports a linear forwarding table, the SM will program the highest LID to port mapping used as described in 14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on page 895 .
SwitchInfo:DefaultPort	On a switch that supports a random forwarding table, the SM shall set the default port as described in 18.2.4.3.2 Random Forwarding Table Requirements on page 1220 . The rules for assigning these values are outside the scope of the specification.
SwitchInfo:DefaultMulticast-PrimaryPort	The SM shall set the <i>DefaultMulticastPrimaryPort</i> as described in 18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222 . The rules for assigning these values are outside the scope of the specification.
SwitchInfo:DefaultMulticast-NotPrimaryPort	The SM shall set the <i>DefaultMulticastNotPrimaryPort</i> as described in 18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222 . The rules for assigning these values are outside the scope of the specification.
SwitchInfo:LifeTimeValue	The SM shall set a value for the LifeTimeValue as described in 18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226 . The rules for assigning these values are outside the scope of the specification.
VLArbitrationTable	VL arbitration described in 7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208 shall be set by the SM for the output link of each CA, switch, and router.
SLtoVLmappingTable	The application of VL is described in 7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205 . The SM will initialize the SL-to-VL mapping tables. The rules for assigning these values are outside the scope of the specification. The SM shall check for the existence of the SLtoVLmappingTable and initializes it, if present.

Table 227

Initialization (Continued)

Component	Description
P_KeyTable	The SM may initialize the P_Key table by setting entries in the P_KeyTable attribute for ports. It may also enable P_Key checking in switches. The policy for assigning P_Keys is in general outside the scope of the specification. However, the SM shall ensure that one of the P_KeyTable entries in every node contains either the value 0xFFFF (the default P_Key, full membership) or the value 0x7FFF (the default P_Key, partial membership). The purpose of this specific P_Key value is to provide communication with Subnet Administration (see 15.4.2 Locating Subnet Administration on page 1071).
LinearForwardingTable	Unicast forwarding tables will be set by the SM based on route policy decisions and Switch capabilities. The SM shall setup LID-to-port mappings if the Switch supports a Linear Forwarding Table as indicated by the SwitchInfo:LinearFDBCap component.
RandomForwardingTable	If the Switch supports a Random Forwarding Table as indicated by the SwitchInfo:RandomFDBCap component, the SM shall set up LID/LMC range to port mappings based on route policy decisions.
MulticastForwardingTable	If a Switch supports a Multicast Forwarding Table as indicated by the SwitchInfo:MulticastFDBCap component, the SM may setup LID to multi-port mappings in the Multicast Forwarding Table based on route policy decisions.
EnhQoSArbiterInfo	Rate limiter granularity shall be set by the SM otherwise value will be set to the defaults as described in the MAD layout See 14.2.5.21 EnhQoSArbiterInfo on page 937
EnhPortVLArbiter	Port, VL and VL group arbitration described in link to EnhPortVLArbiter shall be set by the SM for the output link of each CA, Switch and router otherwise values will be set to default as described in the MAD layout See 14.2.5.22 EnhPortVLArbiter on page 938 VLs shall be mapped into VLGroup0. If SM doesn't set Bandwidth share for any VLGroups or VLs, then the traffic classes should get even bandwidth share.
EnhSLArbiter	SL arbitration described in link to EnhSLArbiter shall be set by the SM for the output link of each CA, Switch and router otherwise values will be set to default as described in the MAD layout See 14.2.5.23 EnhSLArbiter on page 942 If SM doesn't set Bandwidth share for any SLs, then the traffic classes should get even bandwidth share.

C14-62.1.2: When establishing the contents of switch forwarding tables and SL to VL maps, the subnet manager **shall** ensure that no cyclic flow control dependencies exist in the fabric.

Cyclic dependencies in flow control can cause deadlock and subsequent failure of an IBA fabric. There are a number of routing methods that may be employed to prevent these dependencies. These include pruned and fat tree structures, dimension order routing in meshes and hyper cubes, and use of multiple virtual lanes to break the flow control cycle in routing loops. While IBA does not specify a particular routing method, whatever method is utilized must ensure deadlock-free operation.

C14-62.1.3: The SM **shall** ensure that no packet entering a subnet at any port with any combination of SL and DLID can cause subnet deadlock.

This can be accomplished even if the subnet manager utilizes virtual lanes to break cyclic flow control dependencies by putting appropriate entries in the switches' SL to VL mapping tables to ensure that improper use of SLs by nodes originating traffic (for example, nodes utilizing an SL inconsistent with path records provided by the Subnet Administration) are discarded.

The above compliance statement does not imply that the subnet is required to deliver packets with improper SLs. It is permissible to discard such packets.

C14-62.1.4: From every endpoint within the subnet, the SM **shall** provide at least one reversible path to every other endpoint. See [13.5.4 Response Generation and Reversible Paths on page 839](#).

14.4.4 NODE REINITIALIZATION

Any of the types of nodes in an IBA network may require reinitialization, meaning reloading of attributes set by the SM as part of subnet initialization. This may occur for a variety of reasons involving failure of microcode, software, and hardware. This is true for any type of node: HCA, TCA, switch, or router; and it may extend beyond the node itself to data held by the SM and/or SA about the node, such as the node's subscriptions to events, membership in multicast groups, and service records identifying services on the failed node.

The degree of reinitialization required optimally depends on the circumstances of the fault. For example, the following types of distinct errors could occur:

- 1) Supervisor failure, for example, failure of the operating system, hypervisor, or switch/router microcode. In this case, the supervisor will presumably reboot and reinitialize all information internal to the node. (The SM has no ability to control this.) This case is effectively equivalent to a hot unplug of the port, followed by hot plugging it. All SM/SA data, like subscriptions, should be removed in this case. There is benefit to reloading the port's attributes with data similar to what it previously contained, but that benefit is not overwhelming; for example, using the same LID previously used may eliminate reprogramming of some switch tables.
- 2) A channel adapter failure exhibiting itself to the supervisor as, for example, a failure of verbs to perform as expected; but without any failure of the supervisor. In this situation, there may be significant added value an SM vendor can provide in being able to reload the port with exactly the same data it contained previously, and in not

eliminating any SM/SA stored data. If that is done and the CA re-started quickly, while connections to other ports will likely have to be recreated, the supervisor may not have to terminate and restart applications, a potentially very lengthy and disruptive operation.

- 3) A port failure exhibiting itself only in that a port's SMA becomes unresponsive to the SM: MADs sent to the SMA do not return responses or return anomalous responses. The CA may otherwise be operating normally, but the SM has little choice but to force down the link to that port (by forcing down a switch port attached to it), since it has lost control of that port. Like case 2, there may be great value in reinitializing the port exactly as it was previously, if the supervisor can take advantage of that fact to avoid disruption.
- 4) The link attached to a port goes down due to an error that cannot be corrected transparently by automatic retraining, such as the loss of a physical lane—for example, a 4x link is reduced to a 1x link. In this case the value loaded by the SM will not change (LinkWidthSupported still says 4x, so the SM will set LinkWidthEnabled to either allow 1x and 4x or just 1x as it wishes), but the LinkWidthActive will come up as 1x at most, causing probable widespread changes in PathMTUs elsewhere.

Of course, combinations of any the above could occur simultaneously.

The handling of all such cases begins when the SM is signalled that some form of reinitialization is required by the port going “down,” i.e., its PortInfo:PortState goes to the Down state. This can occur naturally (e.g., case 4), be forced by a supervisor using the [11.2.1.3 Modify HCA Attributes on page 594](#) or equivalent TCA function to signal case 1 or case 2; or be forced by the SM itself in case 3 by writing the Down value to the PortInfo:PortState. When the SM does not force the link down, the SM can detect it either in the course of a subnet scan or by receiving trap 128, see [Table 149 Traps on page 887](#).

Subsequent actions depend on whether the SM, the port, or both implement the Reinitialization option as indicated by the SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsReinitSupported (for the SM; see [15.2.1.3 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities on page 1018](#)) and the port's PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsReinitSupported (for the port; see [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#)).

If the SM does not support reinitialization, the action taken is vendor-specific.

If both the SM and the port support Reinitialization, the SM then determines the type of initialization desired by inspecting the PortInfo:InitType component, set by the supervisor by using the [11.2.1.3 Modify HCA Attributes on page 594](#) or equivalent TCA function. The bits of this field represent requests by the supervisor to not reload any data (NoLoad), preserve

the prior content of the port's attributes (PreserveContent), and/or preserve subscriptions and all other SM/SA data referencing that port (PreservePresence).

o14-12.1.5: If the SM supports Reinitialization, and a port does not, then the SM **shall** reinitialize a port that has entered the down state as if the port did support Reinitialization and had set all its PortInfo:InitType bits to 0; and **shall** set all InitTypeReply bits to 0.

It may not, however, be possible for the SM to honor one or more of these requests. For example, the SM may not have kept any record of the prior content of that port's attributes; whether it does so is vendor value-add. Even if the SM retains prior loaded data, it may be impossible to reload with exactly the same data; for example, the values of P_Keys loaded into the port's P_Key Table may have changed since the port was last active; or the LID it was assigned may have been reused for another port. The PortInfo:InitTypeReply component enables the SM to signal the supervisor which, if any, of its requests were honored.

o14-12.1.6: If both the SM and a port to be reinitialized support Reinitialization, and the SM did successfully perform an action requested by any of the PortInfo:InitType component bits, the SM **shall** set the corresponding PortInfo:InitTypeReply bit to 1 (except for DoNotResuscitate, which has no corresponding reply bit; see below). Otherwise the SM shall set the corresponding reply bit to 0 (except for DoNotResuscitate; see below).

It is possible that the most convenient thing for the SM to do is to reload the port with attribute data it previously contained, even though the port did not request this explicitly by setting PortInfo:InitType.PreserveContent to 1.

o14-12.1.7: If both the SM and a port to be reinitialized support Reinitialization, and the SM did reload data identical to the data most recently loaded into the port's attributes, then the SM **shall** set PortInfo:InitType.PreserveContentReply to 1. The SM **shall not** set any other PortInfo:InitType reply bit to 1 unless the corresponding PortInfo:InitType request bit was 1.

The use of PreservePresence, in particular, has the potentially valuable effect but has a restriction and an additional implication. Its value is in allowing a short CA failure to be less disruptive to operation of a port. Connections made to that port will probably be broken and must be re-established; but other state data like reservations, service record registrations, etc., can remain in force and their possible cached status in other nodes is not affected.

However, PreservePresence should not be honored by the SM if it is unable to also reinitialize the port with exactly the same data it had previously (i.e., if it was unable to honor NoLoad or PreserveContent). Doing so means that data cached in other places may not, in fact, be valid when the port resumes operation.

o14-12.1.8: If both the SM and a port to be reinitialized support Reinitialization, and the SM has reloaded the port with data not known to be the same as the data previously (e.g., it could not honor NoLoad or PreserveContent requests by a port), the SM **shall not** honor a PreservePresence request by that port.

Additionally, honoring PreservePresence has the additional implication that Report()s for trap number 65, indicating a port is out of service, not be issued. If those Report()s were issued, other nodes holding data related to this port, such as managers holding subscriptions to traps, would in all likelihood eliminate that data since they've been informed that the node is no longer reachable.

o14-12.1.9: If both the SM and a port to be reinitialized support Reinitialization, and the SM was able to honor a PreservePresence request, Report()s for trap 65 (and 64) **shall not** be issued.

Otherwise, the definition of the trap number 64 event (see [14.4.9 In and Out of Service Traps on page 1010](#)) implies that a link going down should cause Report()s of trap 65 be sent for the port attached to that link; and when the port is reinitialized, Report()s of trap 64 should be sent.

PreservePresence has no effect on the ServiceLease processing of ServiceRecords by SA. I.e., even if a PreservePresence request was honored, ServiceRecord entries in SA may have been deleted because their ServiceLease period expired while a port was down.

PortInfo:InitType also provides the DoNotResuscitate bit. This exists to eliminate a possible race between the SM, reading the PortInfo:InitType bits; and the supervisor, setting them. DoNotResuscitate requests the SM to delay reinitializing the port until this bit is set to 0. Setting this bit to 1 immediately following port activation, and leaving it set to 1 while operating, should (in the absence of some other failures) guarantee that the SM will see that bit set to 1 when the SM first accesses the port after a link down. As a result, the SM will not preemptively reinitialize the port while the supervisor is assessing the situation, figuring out how it wants the other initialization bits set. DoNotResuscitate being 1 also tells the SM that trap 65 (out of service) should not be immediately Report()ed, since PreservePresence may be requested; and that SM/SA resources used by this port should not be recovered, for the same reason. After this bit becomes zero, the settings of PortInfo:InitType may or may not cause trap 65 to be reported and resources to be reclaimed. There is no corresponding reply

bit for DoNotResuscitate, since a node is notified resuscitation by an event (see [11.6.3 Asynchronous Events on page 690](#)). As was true of the other PortInfo:InitType bits, the SM may not honor a DoNotResuscitate request, and it likely should not do so after some (vendor-specific) time has passed. For example, the supervisor could have failed in a manner that left the node in a coma but the DoNotResuscitate bit reporting “1” forever.

[Table 228 PortInfo:InitType Interpretations on page 1006](#) shows the interpretation of all possible combinations of PortInfo:InitType bits. In that table, the phrase “preserve the port’s external presence” refers to preserving all SM/SA data related to that port and refraining from sending Report()s of trap numbers 64 and 65.

Table 228 PortInfo:InitType Interpretations

NoLoad	InitType Bits			Interpretation	
	Preserve-Content	Preserve-Presence	DoNot-Resuscitate	Send trap # 64/65 report & release SM/SA resources?	
any	any	any	1	wait	Port is requesting that the SM delay reinitialization while DoNotResuscitate is 1, including the possible Report()ing of trap #s 64 and 65 and the releasing of SM/SA resources associated with this port.
0	0	0	0	Y	Port is oblivious to reinitialization issues; SM reinitializes it, and may do so in any way that is convenient.
0	0	1	0	N if content preserved; otherwise Y	Port does not request that all data be the same as the most recent content loaded by the SM; but if it is (by choice of the SM), then the port’s external presence should be preserved.
0	1	0	0	Y	Port is requesting that it be reloaded and all data be the same as the most recent content loaded by the SM; but its external presence should not be maintained.
0	1	1	0	N if content preserved; otherwise Y.	Port is requesting that it be reloaded and all data be the same as the most recent content loaded by the SM and that its external presence should be maintained.
1	0	0	0	Y	Port is requesting that no data be loaded into its attributes at all, asserting that the last-loaded data still exists and is valid; but if it is loaded, SM may do so in any way that is convenient.
1	0	1	0	N if content preserved; otherwise Y.	Port is requesting that no data be loaded into its attributes; but if this request is not honored, SM may do so in any way that is convenient.
1	1	0	0	Y	Port is requesting that no data be loaded into its attributes; if this request is not honored, port requests that all data be the same as the most recent content loaded by the SM.

Table 228

PortInfo:InitType Interpretations (Continued)

InitType Bits				Interpretation
NoLoad	Preserve-Content	Preserve-Presence	DoNot-Resuscitate	Description
Send trap # 64/65 report & release SM/SA resources?				
1	1	1	0	N if content preserved; otherwise Y. Port is requesting that no data be loaded into its attributes; if this request is not honored, port requests that all data be the same as the most recent content loaded by the SM.

Finally, it should be noted that reinitialization is in many circumstances a work around for a problem that ultimately must be diagnosed and corrected. Since reinitialization may itself destroy information needed for diagnosis, it is important to maintain adequate logging facilities that record reasons for reinitialization problems. For example: Did a supervisor force a port down because the supervisor ran into internal problems, or did it do so because it noticed some form of problem with the other side of the link? Without a supervisor-maintained log of the reason for the forced downing of the link, it may be very difficult to separate those cases after the fact.

14.4.5 PORT STATE TRANSITIONS

When power is applied to a device, its ports attempt to reach an operational state according to the steps described in the InfiniBand Architecture specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface Chapter and [6.2 Services provided by the Physical Layer. on page 182](#). A physical subnet is established when a group of devices are connected together and the state of a set of ports reaches operational state.

C14-63: A SM **shall** determine that a subnet is operational when the PortInfo:Portstate on the port where it resides is at the initialize state.

The SM may access the management entities of remote CAs, switches, and routers while the ports along the physical links are in initialize state since the SMI on that port will recognize a packet on QP0 and VL15, with a LID destination address 0xFFFF as referring to the SMA.

The SM may change the state of a port to active, armed, initialize or down that are described in [14.4.5 Port State Transitions on page 1007](#).

The SM may perform most port and device configuration activities while the PortInfo:Portstate is in the initialize state. However, all control and configuration options are also available in the armed state and the active state. In addition to the link level behaviors, the PortInfo:Portstate has an additional role because it is manipulated by the SM to communicate to endnodes the readiness of the subnet. CAs and Routers may start

sending packets on the subnet if one of its ports enters the active state. As a result, moving a port from active state is likely to be disruptive to subnet activity.

An SM that becomes the master SM may enable transmission of packets through the subnet at any time. This is accomplished after establishing routes by setting the switch forwarding tables and initializing the other attributes as described in [14.4.3 Initialization Actions on page 998](#) for CAs, switches, and routers along those routes, and then setting the PortInfo:Portstate to armed for the ports along those routes. The SM changes the state of an Endnode from armed to active to signal to the Endnode that it may begin to send packets. Ports on switches and along that route and endnodes that are destinations of those packets will transition from armed to active automatically as described in [14.4.5 Port State Transitions on page 1007](#).

The SM may reset port related state by:

- 1) setting the PortInfo:LinkDownDefaultState to *polling* state
- 2) setting the PortInfo:Portstate to the down state.

The PortInfo:Portstate should return to the initialize state after clearing its state as described by the link state machine in [Figure 50 Link State Machine on page 189](#).

14.4.6 SUBNET SWEEPING

C14-64: After the subnet is up and running, the SM **shall** periodically gather information about topology changes, PortInfo:CapabilityMask changes, and Notices reported by nodes.

This is referred to as sweeping the subnet. The frequency of subnet sweeps is undefined for this architecture, as it will vary due to topology and other implementation considerations.

The SM detects topology changes by examining the port state of nodes in the subnet. For example, when the value of the PortInfo.Portstate component of a port changes from down to initialize, the SM will use directed routed packets to probe the other end of the link on that port to determine what has been added to the subnet. Conversely, if the PortInfo.Portstate component changes from active to down, the SM may perform operations such as updating switch forwarding tables to delete routes to the end-node(s) that are no longer accessible. To speed up detection of port state changes, switches support a SwitchInfo:PortStateChange component, described in [Table 161 SwitchInfo on page 895](#), that the SM may examine. If the state of this component indicates that the state of one of the switch ports has changed, the SM may proceed to check the status of each port on that switch.

The SM detects changes in state of other SMs in the subnet by examining the SMIInfo attribute of ports which have the PortInfo:Capability-Mask.IsSM bit set to 1.

14.4.7 AUTHENTICATION

During initialization of a SMP, the SM may fill in the MADHeader:M_Key field of the SMP with the value that matches the M_Key stored in the destination port if it expects the destination management entity to check it.

C14-65: The SM **shall** not check the MADHeader:M_Key stored in a SubnGetResp(*)).

C14-66: If the SM receives a validated SMP containing a SubnSet(SMIInfo) or SubnGet(SMIInfo) and the PortInfo:M_Key component is zero, then the SM **shall** generate a SubnGetResp.

C14-67: If the SM receives a validated SMP containing a SubnSet(SMIInfo) or SubnGet(SMIInfo), and the PortInfo:M_Key component is non-zero, and M_Key matching, if required, is successful according to the rules specified in [14.2.4 Management Key on page 877](#), then the SM **shall** generate a SubnGetResp(). Otherwise the SubnSet(SMIInfo) or SubnGet(SMIInfo) is silently discarded.

C14-68: When a Master SM receives a SMP containing a SubnTrap(), it **shall** not check that the MADHeader:M_Key field matches the PortInfo:M_Key of the port where the SMP was received.

The SMIInfo:SM_Key is used by the Master SM to authenticate other standby SMs and master SMs, in the case of a subnet merge, on the subnet. Exactly how the key is used is implementation specific. A SM should fill the SM_Key in the SMIInfo:SM_Key component in a response if it expects the requesting SM to check it.

The SM Key used for SM authentication is independent of the SM Key in the SA header used for SA authentication.

14.4.8 SM DISABLE MECHANISM

C14-69: If a SM can reside on a port, a vendor defined, out-of-band mechanism **shall** be provided that when asserted will disable the capability of running a SM from that port and the state of the mechanism **shall** be indicated in the Portinfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled bit.

C14-70: When the Portinfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled bit is asserted, the port behavior **shall** be:

- SubnSet(SMIInfo) or SubnGet(SMIInfo) sent to that port **shall** be discarded

- SubnSet(*) or SubnGet(*) **shall** not be sent from that port
- The PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSM bit for that port **shall** not be set.

C14-71: When PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled is not asserted, the port behavior **shall** be:

- SubnSet(SMInfo) or SubnGet(SMInfo) sent to that port will be forwarded to management entities if the appropriate entity is operational
- SubnSet(*) or SubnGet(*) may be sent by management entities from the port
- The PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSM bit is controlled by management entities behind that port.

C14-72: The state of the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled on a port **shall** be changeable at any time while the port is operational.

The mechanism for changing the state of the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled bit is beyond the scope of the specification.

Changing the state of PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSMdisabled bit from asserted to not-asserted while the port is otherwise operational allows assertion of the /sSM bit in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask and allows activation of an SM behind the port (see [14.4 Subnet Manager on page 989](#)).

14.4.9 IN AND OUT OF SERVICE TRAPS

Trap numbers 64 and 65, indicating when an endpoint comes in or out of service (see [Table 149 Traps on page 887](#)), are never used in SubnTrap() SMPs sent on a subnet; the corresponding events are generated within the Master SM itself, and so do not have to be signalled to the SM by SubnTrap() messages. These trap numbers are only used to allow the SM to report the events to endnodes through the Subnet Administration (see [15.4.3 Event Forwarding Subsystem on page 1072](#)) using SubnAdmReport() GMPs. They may also appear in the corresponding SubnAdmReportResp() GMPs.

The events reported by these Notice(s) indicate that an endpoint's reachability from a subscribing endpoint has changed. Endpoint A is reachable from subscriber endpoint B if there is a PathRecord with source B and destination A (see [15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038](#)). Endpoint reachability may change as a result of changes to restrictions on access through partitioning, or endpoints commencing or ceasing participation on the subnet. These events are a logical equivalent of hot plug and unplug as seen from the viewpoint of the subscriber.

C14-72.1.1: When an endpoint A becomes reachable from an endpoint B that has subscribed to trap 64, the SM **shall** cause the SA to send a SubnAdmReport() to B using trap number 64 with the associated Notice attri-

bute DataDetails providing the GID of A as described in [Table 150 Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67 on page 889](#)

C14-72.1.2: When an endpoint A ceases to be reachable from an endpoint B that has subscribed to trap 65, the SM **shall** cause the SA to send a SubnAdmReport() to B using trap number 65 with the associated Notice attribute DataDetails providing the GID of A as described in [Table 150 Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67 on page 889](#).

14.4.10 MULTICAST GROUP CREATE/DELETE TRAPS

Trap numbers 66 and 67, indicating when a multicast group is created or deleted, are events that are generated by the SA when a multicast group is created or deleted (see [15.2.5.17 MCMemberRecord on page 1050](#)). These trap numbers are used to report these events through the SA using SubnAdmReport() GMPs. These traps are similar to trap numbers 64/65 (see [14.4.9 In and Out of Service Traps on page 1010](#)) in that they are never used in SubnTrap() SMPs sent on a subnet. These traps are optionally supported by the SA as indicated by the SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsUDMulticastSupported bit.

o14-12.1.10: If SA supports UD multicast, then if an endpoint has subscribed to trap 66 for a specific or wildcarded MGID, the SA **shall** send a SubnAdmReport() to that endpoint when a multicast group is created with a matching MGID (as specified in [15.2.5.17 MCMemberRecord on page 1050](#)) using trap 66 with the associated Notice attribute DataDetails as described in [Table 150 Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67 on page 889](#).

o14-12.1.11: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [o14-12.a9](#):

o14-12.a9: If SA supports UD multicast, then if an endpoint has subscribed to trap 67 for a specific or wildcarded MGID, the SA **shall** send a SubnAdmReport() to that endpoint when the multicast group is deleted (see [o15-0.2-1.9](#)) as specified in [15.2.5.17 MCMemberRecord on page 1050](#) using trap 67 with the associated Notice attribute DataDetails as described in [Table 150 Notice DataDetails For Traps 64, 65, 66 and 67 on page 889](#).

14.4.11 CLIENT REREGISTRATION

Client reregistration allows the Subnet Manager to request that a client re-register all subscriptions previously requested from this port. The SM may request this at any time of any port supporting this option. A reason for the SM doing this might be that the SM suffered a failure and as a result lost its own records of such subscriptions.

The SM class uses the PortInfo attribute to affect client reregistration. A port indicates it supports client reregistration for the SM class by setting PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsClientReregistrationSupported = 1.

o14-12.2.1: If a port supports client reregistration (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsClientReregistrationSupported = 1), the SMA **shall** respond to a SubnSet(PortInfo) with PortInfo:ClientReregister=1 as follows:

- a SubnGetResp(PortInfo) **shall** be returned with PortInfo:ClientReregister =1
- an asynchronous unaffiliated event of type Client Reregistration **shall** be generated (see [11.6.3.3 Unaffiliated Asynchronous Events on page 694](#)).

o14-12.2.2: Compliance statement [o14-12.2.1](#): is the only situation in which any SMA **shall** return a PortInfo with ClientReregister=1; in all other cases, it **shall** be 0.

14.4.12 UNPATH/REPATH TRAPS

Trap numbers 68 (UnPath) and 69 (RePath), indicating when paths become invalidated or recreated, are events generated by SA. SA uses these trap numbers to report these events via SubnAdmReport() GMPs. These traps are similar to trap numbers 64/65 (see [14.4.9 In and Out of Service Traps on page 1010](#)) in that they are never used in SubnTrap() SMPs sent on a subnet. These traps are optionally supported by SA as indicated by SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsUnPathRePathSupported bit.

UnPath and RePath are generated by SA to inform endpoints of changes or planned changes in the usability of paths. For example, changes in path availability might be reported when:

- A change in subnet topology is planned, causing some of the existing paths to become invalid, possibly temporarily. This may include invalidation of multicast group paths. It may occur if planned maintenance on a switch is about to be done, and this maintenance would disconnect part of the subnet.
- The LID or LIDs assigned to particular ports will change. This may occur when the LMC of a port is about to be altered.

These traps may also be used to respond to link failures of various kinds, but their utility may be limited by the inability to deliver Notices due to the unavailability of the link that failed.

A use to which UnPath/RePath may be put is the avoidance of foreseeable errors by letting endnodes know before the event that certain paths will become unusable. If those paths will not be available for some time, use of UnPath/RePath will relieve load on SA because, without RePath,

endnodes would have no choice but to poll SA repeatedly for replacement paths until the path or paths are available

o14-72.2-1.1: If SA supports UnPath/RePath, as indicated by SA's Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsUnPathRePathSupported bit being 1, and if an endpoint has subscribed to trap number 68, and if vendor-specific policy determines that endpoints be notified of existing or impending path outages, SA **shall** send a SubnAdmReport(Notice) to the subscribed endpoint. The Notice sent **shall** use trap number 68 as described in [Table 149 Traps on page 887](#) with DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData as described in [Table 151 Notice DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData For Traps 68 and 69 on page 889](#), using the fields PATH_REC and COMP_MASK to define the paths which have or will become invalid. If vendor-specific SA policy is to advise the node receiving this trap to wait until it receives a RePath Notice before requesting replacement path information, SA **shall** set the WAIT_FOR_REPATH bit in the Notice's DataDetails to 1; otherwise that bit **shall** be set to 0.

[o14-72.2-1.1:](#) does not define when or whether SA should send a SubnAdmReport(Notice); it only says what SA must do when such messages are sent. The circumstances under which those Notices are reported are vendor-specific; those circumstances depend on the classes of errors or events to which a vendor has decided to respond using UnPath/RePath.

o14-72.2-1.2: If SA supports UnPath/RePath, as indicated by SA's Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsUnPathRePathSupported bit being 1, and if an endpoint has subscribed to trap 69, and if there are paths which were indicated as invalid by a prior UnPath Notice with WAIT_FOR_REPATH set to 1, and some of those paths have not been revalidated since that Notice by prior RePath Notices, and some of those still-unvalidated paths are now valid, then SA **shall** send a SubnAdmReport(Notice) to that endpoint. The Notice sent **shall** use trap number 69 as described in [Table 149 Traps on page 887](#) with DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData as described in [Table 151 Notice DataDetails and ClassTrapSpecificData For Traps 68 and 69 on page 889](#), using the fields PATH_REC and COMP_MASK to define the paths which are now valid.

In implementing [o14-72.2-1.1:](#) and [o14-72.2-1.2:](#), SA must adhere to the restrictions on access defined in [15.4.1.1 Access Restrictions For Path-Records on page 1069](#), since it is transmitting a PathRecord attribute in the Notice DataDetails; the endpoint receiving the Notice is effectively a requester as the term is used in [C15-3.1.21:](#). Using the COMP_MASK to wildcard the SGID and/or DGID, indicating “all GIDs,” is not a violation of these restrictions since it does not provide information about any particular endpoint. Such wildcarding is allowed even if the subset of paths that actually require recreation involve only endnodes that do not share a P_Key pairwise with the endnode receiving the Notice. Using wildcards in this way will result in PathRecord requests to SA that are not strictly nec-

essary; but this use of wildcards may be desirable to avoid extensive partition membership calculations.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

IBTA

CHAPTER 15: SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

15.1 INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

All compliance statements in this chapter from releases prior to 1.1 are obsolete and have been deleted from the specification.

This chapter defines IBA Subnet Administration (SA) and its functions: the MADs used, and the functions with which they are associated.

C15-0.1.1: Every IBA subnet **shall** provide SA.

15.1.1 SA FUNCTION

Through the use of Subnet Administration class MADs, SA provides access to and storage of information of several types, some optional.

C15-0.1.2: The information that **shall** be provided by SA is specified in [Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes \(Summary\) on page 1023](#).

The types of information involved are:

- Information that endnodes require for operation in a subnet. Such information includes paths between endnodes, notification of events, service attributes, etc. This information is required.
- Information that is non-algorithmic, typically. Information that cannot be recovered algorithmically by inspection of the network after a power-on or initialization event. Such information includes partitioning data, M_Keys, SL to VL mappings, etc. This information is required to allow off-line migration from one vendor's subnet management implementation to another's. This is required.
- Information that may be useful to other management entities such as standby SMs, who may, for example, wish to use it to maintain synchronization with the master SM. Such information includes subnet topology data, switch forwarding tables, etc. This is optional.

In order to perform these activities, SA includes two functions:

- A query subsystem required to identify the information to be sent and received
- An event-forwarding subsystem that forwards SM-received traps and notices to subscribed parties.

The actual SA implementation is outside the scope of architecture. The actual access QP and DLID may be redirected by the GSI.

15.1.2 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN SA AND THE SM

Much, but not all, of the information provided by SA is created or collected by the SM. SA must therefore have a close relationship with the master SM. That relationship is defined as follows:

- SA is part of the SM. Its functions are discussed separately from the SM only for convenience of description. This descriptive convenience is not intended to imply or require any particular implementation organization of the SM (or SA) by any vendor.
- As is the case for any class of IB management, SA functions may be implemented on a node separate from the one holding the SM; whether this is done is vendor-specific. If any SM function is implemented at a location different from the one identified as holding the SM, including but not limited to SA functions, any or all communication between that function and any other SM elements is vendor-specific.

C15-0.1.3: Should an SM be elected master SM, all of its components **shall** also be implicitly elected master, including but not limited to SA, however they may be implemented. If an SM ceases to be master, all of its components, including but not limited to SA, all **shall** cease responding to messages from client nodes.

15.1.3 OVERVIEW

The remainder of this chapter first defines the MADs used by SA. It also defines the operation of SA. The SA operations described include locating SA and SA methods and their operation. Also described are identification of information attributes, access restrictions that must be implemented, and event forwarding.

15.2 SA MADS

This section defines the MADs sent and received by SA.

C15-0.1.4: The SA MADs are GMPs and **shall** conform to MAD use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#).

15.2.1 SA MAD FORMAT

C15-0.1.5: Subnet Administration **shall** use the datagram format shown in [Figure 202 Subnet Administration Format on page 1017](#) with the fields specified in [Table 229 Subnet Administration Fields on page 1017](#).

C15-0.1.6: The MADHeader:ClassVersion component for the SA class **shall** be 2 for this version of the specification.

15.2.1.1 SA HEADER

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0		
0	Standard MAD Header with RMPP header (see Figure 174 RMPP Header Layout on page 843)					
...						
32						
36	SM_Key					
40						
44	AttributeOffset		Reserved			
48	ComponentMask					
52						
56	SubnetAdminData (200 bytes)					
...						
252						

Figure 202

Subnet Administration Format

15.2.1.2 SA HEADER FIELDS

Table 229 Subnet Administration Fields

Field	Length	Description
SM_Key	64 bits	<p>Subnet Manager verification key: Used to authenticate a request as being from a trusted source. This key is independent of the SM Key used for SM authentication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For SA requests this field shall be either zero or a valid SM_Key. Zero is never a valid SM_Key; validity is otherwise vendor-defined. If neither of these values is present, the request shall be discarded, and it is recommended that suitable note of this occurrence be made by the SM For SA responses, this field shall be set to zero. Refer to Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865 and 15.4.1 Restrictions on Access on page 1069.
AttributeOffset	16 bits	<p>In an RMPP DATA packet: Number of 8-byte words from the beginning of an attribute to the beginning of the next attribute. To compute the offset in bytes, multiply AttributeOffset by eight. AttributeOffset shall not change during any single RMPP transfer. If zero attributes are returned on an RMPP transfer, shall be zero.</p> <p>Otherwise: ignored</p>
Reserved	16 bits	Reserved

Table 229**Subnet Administration Fields (Continued)**

ComponentMask	64 bits	Used to indicate attribute components to be used for SA operations. Bit 0 maps to first attribute component, bit 1 the second attribute component, and so forth. A bit set to one indicates attribute component is used to form a SA operation, otherwise field is to be ignored. Refer to 15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072 . Note that components which do not fit entirely inside an RMPP segment span the current and next RMPP segment(s). ComponentMask is ignored on responses.
SubnetAdminData	1600 bits	Data field where attribute content is stored.

15.2.1.3 SA-SPECIFIC OPTIONAL CAPABILITIES

[Table 230 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities on page 1019](#) specifies the use of class-specific bits of ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask and ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 by the Subnet Administration class:

C15-0.1.7: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C15-0.2-1.1](#):

C15-0.2-1.1: Subnet Administration **shall** behave in accordance with the descriptions in [Table 230 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities on page 1019](#).

See [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#) for an overall description of ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask and ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.

15.2.2 SUMMARY OF METHODS

[Table 231 Subnet Administration Methods on page 1020](#) summarizes the methods provided by the Subnet Administration class. Several of these are common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#); some are unique to this class. Subnet Administration methods are described in more detail in [15.4 Operations on page 1069](#).

C15-0.1.8: SA **shall** support all the methods listed in [Table 231 Subnet Administration Methods on page 1020](#). All Method Type Values not listed in the table are reserved.

15.2.3 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION STATUS VALUES

For SA, values for the class-specific status bits (see [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#)) have the meaning specified in [Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings on page 1021](#).

15.2.4 ATTRIBUTES AND ATTRIBUTE TABLES

In common with all management classes, the AttributeID component of the standard MAD header identifies the format and semantics of the data in each MAD. The format and semantics of SA attributes are described in detail in section [15.2.5 Attributes on page 1022](#).

Table 230 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities

Name	Location ^a	Bit	Description
IsSubnetOptionalRecordsSupported	CM	8	If this value is 1, SA shall support all attributes listed as optional in Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) on page 1023 , except for MCMemberRecord, TraceRecord, and MultiPathRecord. This bit shall not be used to indicate support a subset of those attributes. If this value is 0, SA shall support none of the above attributes and methods.
IsUDMulticastSupported	CM	9	If this value is 1, SA shall support MCMemberRecord as described in Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) on page 1023 .
IsMultiPathSupported	CM	10	If this value is 1, SA shall support the TraceRecord and MultiPathRecord attributes as described in Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) on page 1023 , as well as SubnAdmGetTraceTable(), SubnAdmGetMulti(), and SubnAdmGetMultiResp() methods, as listed in Table 231 Subnet Administration Methods on page 1020 .
IsReinitSupported	CM	11	If this value is 1, reinitialization shall be supported by the SM/SA for this port, as described in 14.4.4 Node Reinitialization on page 1002 .
IsGIDScopedMultiPath-Supported	CM	12	If this value is 1, SA shall support scoping of SGID and DGID in MultiPathRecord as described in 15.2.5.20 MultiPathRecord on page 1061 .
IsPortInfoCapMask-MatchSupported	CM	13	If this value is 1, SA shall support matching the PortInfo:CapabilityMask component as described in 15.2.5.3 PortInfoRecord on page 1027 .
IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecordSupported	CM	14	If this value is 1, SA shall support LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord as described in Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) on page 1023
IsPAServicesSupported	CM	15	If this value is 1, partition agnostic services shall be supported by the SA as described in 15.2.5.14.1 ServiceP Key on page 1033 .
IsUnPathRePathSupported	CM2	0	If this value is 1, SA shall support UnPath/RePath as described in 14.4.12 UnPath/RePath Traps on page 1012
IsQoSSupported	CM2	1	If this value is 1, SA shall support QoS-enhanced attributes as in A13.5 Subnet Administration on page 1869
IsReversePathPKey-MemberBitSupported	CM2	2	If this value is 1, SA shall support reversible path (PathRecord) responses including ReversePathPKeyMemberBit.
IsMulticastFDBTopSupported	CM2	3	If this value is 1, SA shall support (larger) SwitchInfoRecord with MulticastFDBTop component.
IsHierarchyInfoSupported	CM2	4	If this value is 1, SA shall support HierarchyInfo attributes as in Table 623 HierarchyInfo Attribute on page 1895
IsAdditionalGUIDsSupported	CM2	5	If this value is 1, SA shall support the ability to add and remove additional port GUIDs via SubnAdmSet/SubnAdmDelete(GUIDInfoRecord) as described in 15.2.5.18 GuidInfoRecord on page 1059
IsFullPortInfoRecord-Supported	CM2	6	If this value is 1, SA shall support "full" PortInfoRecords. A "full" PortInfoRecord contains PortInfo of length 512 bits (see Table 236 PortInfoRecord on page 1027). The SA shall fill in a value of 0 for options not supplied by the SMA in the "full" PortInfoRecord.
IsExtendedSpeedsSupported	CM2	7	If this value is 1, SA shall support extended link speeds.
IsMulticastServiceRecordsSupported	CM2	8	If this value is 1, SA shall support multicast ServiceRecords.
IsCableInfoRecordSupported	CM2	9	If this value is 1, SA shall support the CableInfoRecord as described in Table 259 CableInfoRecord on page 1065

Table 230 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities

Name	Location ^a	Bit	Description
IsPortInfoCapMask2-MatchSupported	CM2	10	If this value is 1, SA shall support matching the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 component as described in Table 236 PortInfoRecord on page 1027 .
IsPortInfoExtendedRecordSupported	CM2	11	If this value is 1, SA shall support the PortInfoExtendedRecord as described in Table 260 PortInfoExtendedRecord on page 1066 .
IsSendOnlyFullMember-Supported	CM2	12	If this value is 1, SA shall support the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember as described in Table 254 MCMemberRecord on page 1050 .
IsLinkWidth2xSupported	CM2	13	If this value is 1, SA shall support 2x link widths.
IsVirtualizationSupported	CM2	14	If this value is 1, SA shall support the SA virtualization extensions in Annex A18: Virtualization
IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported	CM2	15	If this value is 1, SA shall support HDR speeds.
IsEnhancedQoSArbiter-Supported	CM2	16	If this value is 1, SA shall support enhanced QoS arbiter records as described in Table 261 EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord on page 1066 In Table 262 EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord on page 1066 In Table 263 EnhVLArbiterRecord on page 1067 In Table 264 EnhSLArbiterRecord on page 1067

a. CM: this bit is in ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask; CM2: this bit is in ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2

Table 231 Subnet Administration Methods

Method Type	Value	Optional/ Required	Description
SubnAdmGet()	0x01	Required	Request a get (read) of an attribute from a node
SubnAdmGetResp()	0x81	Required	The response from an attribute get or set request
SubnAdmSet()	0x02	Required	Request a set (write) of an attribute in a node. The responder shall issue a SubnAdmGetResp() as its response.
SubnAdmReport()	0x06	Required	Forward an event previously subscribed for
SubnAdmReportResp()	0x86	Required	Reply to a SubnAdmReport() method
SubnAdmGetTable()	0x12	Required	Table request
SubnAdmGetTableResp()	0x92	Required	Table request response
SubnAdmGetTraceTable()	0x13	Optional	Request path trace table
SubnAdmGetMulti()	0x14	Optional	Multi-packet request
SubnAdmGetMultiResp()	0x94	Optional	Multi-packet response
SubnAdmDelete()	0x15	Required	Request to delete an attribute
SubnAdmDeleteResp()	0x95	Required	Response to SubnAdmDelete() method

Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings

Name	Value	Meaning
NO_ERROR	0	No class-specific error
ERR_NO_RESOURCES	1	Insufficient resources to complete the request. This error may be returned for any SA request which could not be processed due to insufficient resources.
ERR_REQ_INVALID	2	Supplied request or update is invalid.
ERR_NO_RECORDS	3	No records match query. May be returned only by a SubnAdmGet-Resp(). Never returned as an RMPP response because it is valid to transfer zero records with an RMPP transaction..
ERR_TOO_MANY_RECORDS	4	Too many records match query.
ERR_REQ_INVALID_GID	5	Invalid GID in SA request.
ERR_REQ_INSUFFICIENT_COMPONENTS	6	Request did not contain the required components.
ERR_REQ_DENIED	7	Request is denied. This error may be returned for a SubnAdm-Method(Attribute) that would violate a policy maintained by SA.
ERR_REQ_PRIORITY_SUGGESTED	8	Requested QoSClass could not be supplied. Suggested QoSClass for a subsequent request is supplied in the response as a hint for what would be an acceptable request. This error shall be provided in a response to PathRecord or MultiPathRecord requests if the QoSClass component mask bit was set in the request and the requested QoSClass could not be met.
Reserved	9-255	Reserved; reception of any of these status codes shall be considered an error.

C15-0.1.9: For every subnet node, port, and link discovered by the SM, SA **shall** make available all the attributes necessary to describe the state of that node, port, or link. The exact attributes available will depend upon the type of entity. If the SM discovers that a node, port, or link is no longer accessible or down, the attributes describing it **shall** no longer be available from SA.

There is a class of SA attributes which have characteristics different from attributes found in other management classes. In addition, unlike other classes, SA can return tables of attributes. This section describes those characteristics and the tables.

15.2.4.1 EMBEDDED ATTRIBUTES

A significant function of SA is to allow user programs and other entities to use GMPS to obtain data known by the SM. For this reason, in many cases the data formats and semantics used by SA are actually the formats and semantics defined by the SM; in effect, SM attribute data is often embedded in SA attributes.

The SM data embedded in an attribute may be stored in SA, or stored in the SM, or obtained on demand from the nodes which contain it, or otherwise obtained. Which is done for any attribute is implementation-dependent. The format and semantics of the embedded SM data is neither defined by SA nor described in this chapter, but rather defined and described by the SM; see [14.1 Subnet Management Model on page 865](#) for that information.

15.2.4.2 RECORD IDENTIFIER (RID) FIELDS

In addition to embedded data, SA attributes contain additional information which identifies the entity whose attribute is embedded. For example, PortInfoRecord contains, in addition to the SM-defined PortInfo data itself, the LID of the switch containing the port whose PortInfo is referred to, and the Port Number of that port on that switch. The fields containing that identifying information are referred to as the Record Identifier fields (RID fields). RID fields are always at the start of an attribute. The specific RID fields used for a particular attribute depend on the type of attribute. The individual attribute descriptions define each attribute's RID fields in detail.

The LIDs used in RID fields may in effect be aliased. This happens because use of the LMC facility for subnet multipathing (see [7.11 Subnet Multipathing on page 242](#)) can map multiple LIDs to the same port. All such aliased values are valid RID field values: Given a RID field containing a LID that can be used to communicate with a given port, SA must reference information about that port. This is true both for queries and for methods that write data. Attributes returned from a query, however, contain the base LID.

C15-0.1.10: Any LID usable to route a packet to a port may be used in a query as the LID component in a RID, and **shall** identify the port to which it routes.

C15-0.1.11: Query responses **shall** contain a port's base LID in any LID component of a RID.

15.2.4.3 TABLES

Collections of attributes transferred to or from subnet administration are called tables. These tables consist of a single type of attribute, such as NodeRecords.

15.2.5 ATTRIBUTES

This section first provides a summary of all the SA attributes, and then lists the data format of each, with descriptions where warranted.

15.2.5.1 SUMMARY OF ATTRIBUTES

C15-0.1.12: SA **shall** support the attributes and methods listed as required in [Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes \(Summary\) on page 1023](#), and [Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025](#), respectively. All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 233: Subnet Administration Attributes \(Summary\)](#) are reserved.

Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Optional / Required	Embedded Attribute	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	R	n	Class information. See 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
Notice	0x0002	R	n	Notice information. See 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802
InformInfo	0x0003	R	n	Subscription (Inform) information ^a . See 13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804
NodeRecord	0x0011	R	Y	Container for NodeInfo. See 15.2.5.2 NodeRecord on page 1027
PortInfoRecord	0x0012	R	Y	Container for PortInfo. See 15.2.5.3 PortInfoRecord on page 1027
SLtoVLMappingTableRecord	0x0013	R	Y	Container for SLtoVLMappingTable entry. See 15.2.5.4 SLtoVLMappingTableRecord on page 1029
SwitchInfoRecord	0x0014	O	Y	Container for SwitchInfo. See 15.2.5.5 SwitchInfoRecord on page 1029
LinearForwardingTableRecord	0x0015	O	Y	Container for LinearForwardingTable entry. See 15.2.5.6 LinearForwardingTableRecord on page 1029
RandomForwardingTableRecord	0x0016	O	Y	Container for RandomForwardingTable entry. See 15.2.5.7 RandomForwardingTableRecord on page 1030
MulticastForwardingTableRecord	0x0017	O	Y	Container for MulticastForwardingTable entry. See 15.2.5.8 MulticastForwardingTableRecord on page 1030
SMInfoRecord	0x0018	O	Y	Container for SMInfo. See 15.2.5.10 SMInfoRecord on page 1031
LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord	0x0019	O	Y	Container for LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable. See 15.2.5.21 LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord on page 1065
InformInfoRecord	0x00F3	O	Y	Container for InformInfo. See 15.2.5.12 InformInfoRecord on page 1031 .
LinkRecord	0x0020	O	n	Inter-node linkage information. See 15.2.5.13 LinkRecord on page 1032
GuidInfoRecord	0x0030	O	Y	Container for a port's GUIDInfo. See 15.2.5.18 GuidInfoRecord on page 1059

Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Optional / Required	Embedded Attribute	Description
ServiceRecord	0x0031	R	n	Information on advertised services. See 15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033
P_KeyTableRecord	0x0033	R	Y	Container for P_Key Table. See 15.2.5.11 P_KeyTableRecord on page 1031
PathRecord	0x0035	R	n	Information on paths through the subnet. See 15.2.5.16 PathRecord on page 1038
VLArbitrationTableRecord	0x0036	R	Y	Container for VLArbitrationTable entry. See 15.2.5.9 VLArbitrationTableRecord on page 1030
MCMemberRecord	0x0038	O	n	Multicast member attribute. See 15.2.5.17 MCMemberRecord on page 1050
TraceRecord	0x0039	O	n	Path trace information. See 15.2.5.19 TraceRecord on page 1060
MultiPathRecord	0x003A	O	n	Request for multiple paths. See 15.2.5.20 MultiPathRecord on page 1061
ServiceAssociationRecord	0x003B	O	n	ServiceRecord ServiceName/ServiceKey association. See 15.2.5.15 ServiceAssociationRecord on page 1037
HierarchyInfoRecord	0x003C	O	Y	Container for HierarchyInfo. See Table 627 HierarchyInfoRecord on page 1898
CableInfoRecord	0x003D	O	Y	Container for CableInfo entry. See 15.2.5.22 CableInfoRecord on page 1065
PortInfoExtendedRecord	0x003E	O	Y	Container for PortInfoExtended. See 15.2.5.23 PortInfoExtendedRecord on page 1066
VirtualizationInfoRecord	0x0040	O	Y	Container for VirtualizationInfo. See Annex A18: Virtualization
VNodeRecord	0x0041	O	Y	Container for VNodeInfo and VNodeDescription. See Annex A18: Virtualization
VPortInfoRecord	0x0042	O	Y	Container for VPortInfo. See Annex A18: Virtualization
VPortGUIDRecord	0x0043	O	Y	Container for VPortGUIDInfo. See Annex A18: Virtualization
VPortPartitionTableRecord	0x0044	O	Y	Container for VPortPartitionTable. See Annex A18: Virtualization
EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord	0x0050	O	Y	Container for EnhQoSArbiterInfoTable See 15.2.5.24 EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord on page 1066
EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord	0x0051	O	Y	Container for EnhVLGroupsArbiterTable See 15.2.5.25 EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord on page 1066

Table 233 Subnet Administration Attributes (Summary) (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Optional / Required	Embedded Attribute	Description
EnhVLArbiterRecord	0x0052	O	Y	Container for EnhVLArbiterTable See 15.2.5.26 EnhVLArbiterRecord on page 1067
EnhSLArbiterRecord	0x0053	O	Y	Container for EnhSLArbiterTable See 15.2.5.27 EnhSLArbiterRecord on page 1067

a. ComponentMask is ignored for InformInfo.

The AttributeModifier (see [Table 121 Common MAD Fields on page 782](#)) from the common header is not used with Subnet Administration attributes unless stated otherwise in the attribute description.

[Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025](#) associates SA attributes with methods.

Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map

Attribute	Get	Set	Report	GetTable	GetTraceTable	GetMulti	Delete
ClassPortInfo	X						
Notice			X				
InformInfo		X					
NodeRecord	X			X			
PortInfoRecord	X			X			
SLtoVLMappingTableRecord	X			X			
SwitchInfoRecord	X			X			
LinearForwardingTableRecord	X			X			
RandomForwardingTableRecord	X			X			
MulticastForwardingTableRecord	X			X			
VLArcitrationTableRecord	X			X			
SMInfoRecord	X			X			
LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord	X			X			
InformInfoRecord	X			X			

Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map (Continued)

Attribute	Get	Set	Report	GetTable	GetTraceTable	GetMulti	Delete
LinkRecord	X			X			
GUIDInfoRecord ^a	X	X		X			X
ServiceRecord	X	X		X			X
P_KeyTableRecord	X			X			
PathRecord	X			X			
MCMemberRecord	X	X		X			X
TraceRecord ^b					X		
MultiPathRecord						X	
ServiceAssociationRecord	X			X			
HierarchyInfoRecord	X			X			
CableInfoRecord	X			X			
PortInfoExtendedRecord	X			X			
VirtualizationInfoRecord	X			X			
VNodeRecord	X			X			
VPortInfoRecord	X			X			
VPortGUIDInfoRecord	X			X			
VPortPartitionTableRecord	X			X			
EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord	X			X			
EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord	X			X			
EnhVLArbiterRecord	X			X			
EnhSLArbiterRecord	X			X			

a. SubnAdmSet and SubnAdmDelete of GUIDInfoRecord are supported if SA:ClassPortInfo.CapabilityMask2 indicates IsAdditionalGUIDsSupported.

b. TraceRecord is returned only in SubnAdmGetTableResp(), see [15.4.9 SubnAdmGetTraceTable\(\): Trace a Path on page 1077](#)

The detailed layouts of all the SA-specific attributes follows. Attributes which are containers for Subnet Management attributes require little description beyond their layout; others have more extensive descriptions

15.2.5.2 NODERECORD**Table 235** **NodeRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	Reserved	16	16 Reserved
NodeInfo	320	32	NodeInfo attribute contents; see Table 160 NodeInfo on page 894
NodeDescription	512	352	NodeDescription attribute contents; see Table 159 Node-Description on page 894

There is one NodeRecord for each endpoint on a subnet.

Note: If a channel adapter or router has multiple ports on the same subnet, there will be multiple NodeRecords available for that node from SA, one for each possible PortGUID value of NodeInfo for that node on that subnet.

15.2.5.3 PORTINFORECORD**Table 236** **PortInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	EndpointLID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	PortNum	8	16 For a switch: port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	Options	8	24 Bit 7: indicates whether query is QDR overloaded or "pure" • 0 means QDR overloaded query • 1 means "pure" (not QDR overloaded) query Bits 0-6: Reserved
PortInfo	480 ^a 512 ^b	32	PortInfo attribute contents; see Table 164 PortInfo on page 899

a. When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsFullPortInfoRecordSupported is 0

b. When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsFullPortInfoRecordSupported is 1

o15-0.2-1.2: If SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMatchSupported is 1, then the AttributeModifier of the SubnAdmGet() and SubnAdmGetTable() methods affects the matching behavior on the PortInfo:CapabilityMask component. If the high-order bit (bit 31) of the AttributeModifier is set to 1, matching on the CapabilityMask component will not be an exact bitwise match as described in [15.4.4 Administration Query](#).

[Subsystem on page 1072](#). Instead, matching will only be performed on those bits which are set to 1 in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask embedded in the query.

In [o15-0.2-1.2](#); bits in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask embedded in the query that are set to 0 are bitwise wildcards for purposes of matching.

This gives a requester the ability to select desired capabilities and query for ports which support those capabilities.

If SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPortInfoCapMaskMatchSupported is 0, or if bit 31 of the AttributeModifier is 0, then any matching performed on the PortInfo:CapabilityMask component is as described in [15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072](#).

o15-0.a1: If SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is 1 and Options bit 7 is 0 and the requested port's PortInfo:Link-SpeedExtActive is not 0, the PortInfoRecord returned to the requester must have QDR bit on in the LinkSpeedSupported, LinkSpeedEnabled, and LinkSpeedActive components of the contained PortInfo.

o15-0.a2: If SA's ClassPortInfo:IsExtendedSpeedsSupported is 1 and Options bit 7 is 1 and the requested port's PortInfo:LinkSpeedExtActive is not 0, the PortInfoRecord returned to the requester contains the Link-SpeedSupported, LinkSpeedEnabled, and LinkSpeedActive components of the contained PortInfo without overloading QDR.

o15-0.a3: If SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoCapMask2-MatchSupported is 1, then the AttributeModifier of the SubnAdmGet() and SubnAdmGetTable() methods affects the matching behavior on the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 component. If the high-order bit (bit 31) of the AttributeModifier is set to 1, matching on the CapabilityMask2 component will not be an exact bitwise match as described in [15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072](#). Instead, matching will only be performed on those bits which are set to 1 in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 embedded in the query.

In [o15-0.a3](#); bits in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 embedded in the query that are set to 0 are bitwise wildcards for purposes of matching. This gives a requester the ability to select desired capabilities and query for ports which support those capabilities.

If SA's ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsPortInfoCapMask2MatchSupported is 0, or if bit 31 of the AttributeModifier is 0, then any matching performed on the PortInfo:CapabilityMask2 component is as described in [15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072](#).

15.2.5.4 SLtoVLMappingTableRecord**Table 237 SLtoVLMappingTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0
	InputPortNum	8	16 For a switch: input port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	OutputPortNum	8	24 For a switch: output port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
Reserved	32	32	Reserved
SLtoVLMappingTable	64	64	SLtoVLMappingTable attribute contents; see Table 168 SLtoVLMappingTable on page 920

15.2.5.5 SWITCHINFORECORD**Table 238 SwitchInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 LID of switch port 0
	Reserved	16	16 Reserved
SwitchInfo	160/136	32	SwitchInfo attribute contents. Length(bits) is 160 if SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMulticastFDBTopSupported is 1, otherwise Length(bits) is 136; see Table 161 SwitchInfo on page 895 . For switches with PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMulticastFDBTopSupported of 0, SwitchInfo.MulticastFDBTop in SwitchInfoRecord should be reported as 0.

15.2.5.6 LINEARFORWARDINGTABLERECORD**Table 239 LinearForwardingTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 LID of switch port 0
	BlockNum	16	16 LinearForwardingTable block number
	Reserved	32	32 Reserved
LinearForwardingTable	512	64	Contents of LinearForwardingTable block # BlockNum contents; see Table 171 LinearForwardingTable on page 922

15.2.5.7 RANDOMFORWARDINGTABLERECORD**Table 240 RandomForwardingTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 LID of switch port 0
	BlockNum	16	16 RandomForwardingTable block number; see Table 174 LID/Port Block Element on page 923
Reserved	32	32	Reserved
RandomForwarding-Table	512	64	Contents of RandomForwardingTable block # BlockNum; see Table 173 RandomForwardingTable on page 923

15.2.5.8 MULTICASTFORWARDINGTABLERECORD**Table 241 MulticastForwardingTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 LID of switch port 0
	Position	4	16 Position field of this attribute as defined in 14.2.5.12 MulticastForwardingTable on page 923 .
	Reserved	3	20 Reserved.
	BlockNum	9	23 Pointer to a block of 32 PortMask entries for this attribute. See 14.2.5.12 MulticastForwardingTable on page 923
Reserved	32	32	Reserved
MulticastForwarding-Table	512	64	Contents of MulticastForwardingTable block identified by BlockNum and Position; see Table 175 MulticastForwardingTable on page 924

15.2.5.9 VLARBITRATIONTABLERECORD**Table 242 VLArbitrationTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	OutputPortNum	8	16 For a switch: output port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	BlockNum	8	24 VL/Weight block number; see Table 170 VL/Weight Block Element on page 921
Reserved	32	32	Reserved

Table 242**VLAuditTableRecord (Continued)**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
VLAuditTable	512	64	Contents of VLAuditTable block # BlockNum; see Table 169 VLAuditTable on page 921

15.2.5.10 SMIInfoRecord**Table 243****SMInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	0	LID of the port
	Reserved	16	Reserved
SMInfo	168	32	SMInfo attribute contents; see Table 177 SMInfo on page 925

15.2.5.11 P_KeyTableRecord**Table 244****P_KeyTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	0	For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	BlockNum	16	P_Key Table block number
	PortNum	32	For a switch: port number For a CA or router: reserved
Reserved	24	40	Reserved
P_Key Table	512	64	Contents of P_KeyTable block number BlockNum; see Table 166 P_KeyTable on page 918

15.2.5.12 InformInfoRecord**Table 245****InformInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	SubscriberGID	0	GID of the subscriber port
	Enum	128	Identifier unique among all subscriptions requested through port
Reserved	48	144	Reserved

Table 245 **InformInfoRecord (Continued)**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
InformInfo	288	192	InformInfo attribute contents; see Table 131 InformInfo on page 805

15.2.5.13 LINKRECORD**Table 246** **LinkRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	FromLID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of a port connected by a link to another port. For a switch: LID of a switch port 0 whose port number FromPort is connected by a link to another port.
	FromPort	8	16 For a CA or router: 0 For a switch: port number, other than port 0
ToPort	8	24	If the port specified by FromLID/FromPort is connected by a link to <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a CA or router port: ToPort is 0 • a switch port: ToPort is the port number of that switch port
ToLID	16	32	If the port specified by FromLID/FromPort is connected by a link to <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a CA or router port: ToLID is the LID of that CA or router port • a switch port: ToLID is the LID of port 0 of that switch In a query request, any LID of a port can be requested as the ToLID. In a query response, only the base LID of a port is returned as the ToLID.

LinkRecords are synthesized by SA to serve as informational topology data for management entities in need of such data. It is intended to identify physical links between specific port pairs. The “From” side of the LinkRecord refers to where the link departs and the “To” side of the LinkRecords refers to where the link arrives. Note that since links are bidirectional, two LinkRecords will be synthesized for each link in a subnet.

15.2.5.14 SERVICERECORD

Table 247 ServiceRecord

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	ServiceID	64	0 The identifier of the service specified by ServiceGID
	ServiceGID	128	64 The port GID or MGID for the service. An MGID can be used as the ServiceGID if SA Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMulticastServiceRecords-Supported is set to 1. Otherwise, MGID as ServiceGID is rejected as invalid.
	ServiceP_Key	16	192 The P_Key used in contacting the service.
Reserved	16	208	Reserved for alignment.
ServiceLease	32	224	Lease period remaining for this service, in seconds. 0xFFFFFFFF is an indefinite lease.
ServiceKey	128	256	Key value that may be associated with the ServiceName; see discussion following.
ServiceName	512	384	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated character string used to identify the service (e.g., "BIS.IBTA").
Note: more than one	ServiceData8.1 ... ServiceData8.16	8x16=128 896	Data for this ServiceRecord; content is opaque to SA. One ComponentMask bit per byte. See discussion.
	ServiceData16.1 ... ServiceData16.8	16x8=128 1024	Data for this ServiceRecord; content is opaque to SA. One ComponentMask bit per 16 bits. See discussion.
	ServiceData32.1 ... ServiceData32.4	32x4=128 1152	Data for this ServiceRecord; content is opaque to SA. One ComponentMask bit per 32 bits. See discussion.
	ServiceData64.1 ... ServiceData64.2	64x2=128 1280	Data for this ServiceRecord; content is opaque to SA. One ComponentMask bit per 64 bits. See discussion.

ServiceRecords provide a first level or “bootstrap” advertisement of basic services that cannot be found prior to a query of SA. These could be services such as a boot service or a name service. Managers which define events (trap numbers) should create ServiceRecords so entities wishing to subscribe to their events can find them. ServiceRecords are not intended to substitute for a full function, highly scalable, network directory service.

15.2.5.14.1 SERVICEP_KEY

The ServiceP_Key is a P_Key which may be used to contact the service. As required by [15.4.1.2 Access Restrictions For Other Attributes on page 1070](#), SA returns to a requesting port only ServiceRecords whose ServiceP_Key matches an entry in that port’s P_Key Table.

The ServiceP_Key component determines how partition membership affects access to ServiceRecords. There are two cases: When the ServiceP_Key is defined, and when it is undefined.

A ServiceRecord's ServiceP_Key is said to be defined if the ServiceRecord has ever been successfully SubnAdmSet() using a ComponentMask in which the bit designating the ServiceP_Key was set to one. Otherwise, the ServiceP_Key is said to be undefined.

C15-0.2-1.3: SA **shall** reject as invalid any attempt to create, modify, or delete a ServiceRecord using a SubnAdmSet() in which the ComponentMask bit designating the ServiceP_Key is set to one, and the ServiceP_Key value in the supplied ServiceRecord is an invalid P_Key (see [10.9.1.2 Special P_Keys on page 557](#)). If a ServiceRecord's ServiceP_Key is defined, a ServiceRecord query will return its contents only to ports which have the ServiceRecord's ServiceP_Key value in their P_Key Tables, except for trusted requests; see [15.4.1.2: Access Restrictions For Other Attributes](#)

C15-0.1.13: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C15-0.2-1.4](#):

C15-0.2-1.4: SA **shall** reject as invalid any attempt to create, modify, or delete a ServiceRecord in which the ServiceP_Key is defined and its value does not match a P_Key in the P_Key Tables of both the port identified by the ServiceGID and the port from which the request came. Matching of P_Keys is defined in [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558](#). In what follows, "share a P_Key" is defined as in [C15-3.1.21: on page 1069](#).

o15-0.a4: SA **shall** reject as invalid any attempt to create, modify, or delete a ServiceRecord in which the ServiceP_Key is defined and its value does not match a P_Key in the P_Key Table of the port from which the request came when an MGID is supplied as the ServiceGID.

o15-0.2-1.5: If the SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPAServicesSupported is 1 [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#), and if a ServiceRecord's ServiceP_Key is undefined, a ServiceRecord query **shall** return its contents only to ports which share a P_Key with the port identified by the ServiceRecord's ServiceGID.

o15-0.2-1.6: If the SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPAServicesSupported is 1 [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#), SA **shall** reject as invalid any attempt to create, modify, or delete a ServiceRecord with an undefined ServiceP_Key when the port from which the request came does not share a P_Key with the port identified by the ServiceRecord's ServiceGID.

The only distinction between the two compliance statements above is that queries are not rejected as invalid if they happen to return no data.

o15-0.a5: If the SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPAServicesSupported is 1 [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#), and if a ServiceRecord's ServiceP_Key is undefined, SA **shall** reject as invalid a ServiceRecord creation with an MGID specified in the ServiceRecord's ServiceID.

The P_Key-related compliance statements above are conditions on creation, modification, and deletion of ServiceRecords that apply in addition to the ServiceKey-related compliance statements that appear later. Both (a) the P_Keys must be appropriate and (b) the ServiceKey conditions must hold; otherwise the operation is rejected by SA.

15.2.5.14.2 SERVICEKEY

The ServiceKey may be used to allow authentication of the creation, replacement and deletion of ServiceRecords with selected ServiceNames.

C15-0.1.14: SA **shall** provide a means for associating ServiceNames with ServiceKeys.

This association is vendor-specific. Implementations may differ in such aspects as how the association is created and maintained; how many different associations may be held by SA; whether a ServiceName may be associated with multiple ServiceKeys; whether different ServiceNames may have the same ServiceKey; etc. The set of {ServiceName, ServiceKey} associations can be retrieved, but not SubnAdmSet(), by using the ServiceAssociationRecord; see [15.2.5.15 ServiceAssociationRecord on page 1037](#).

C15-0.1.15: Requests to SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) or SubnAdmDelete(ServiceRecord) **shall** be performed as if the procedure described below were used. In what follows, Ns is the ServiceName in the attribute supplied with the MAD, Ks is the ServiceKey, and Rs is the RID. In all cases it is assumed that the ComponentMask is appropriately set.

- 1) If no {ServiceName, ServiceKey} association exists with ServiceName=Ns, ignore Ks and perform the requested operation, i.e.:
 - a) If the method is SubnAdmDelete(), then
 - i) if there is a stored ServiceRecord with a RID matching Rs, then delete that stored ServiceRecord.
 - ii) otherwise reject the operation.
 - b) If the method is SubnAdmSet(), then
 - i) if there is a stored ServiceRecord with a RID matching Rs, replace that stored ServiceRecord with the one supplied.

- ii) otherwise add the supplied ServiceRecord.
- 2) Otherwise, if Ks does not equal any ServiceKey associated with Ns, i.e., no {Ns, Ks} association exists, then reject the operation.
- Note, having passed step 2 means that in steps 3 and 4, an {Ns, Ks} association is known to exist.
- 3) If the method is SubnAdmSet(), then:
 - a) if there is no stored ServiceRecord with a RID matching Rs, add the supplied ServiceRecord.
 - b) if there is a stored ServiceRecord with a RID matching Rs and a ServiceKey matching Ks, then replace the stored ServiceRecord with the one supplied.
 - c) otherwise, reject the operation
- 4) If the method is SubnAdmDelete(), then:
 - a) if there is a stored ServiceRecord with a RID matching Rs and a ServiceKey matching Ks, then delete that ServiceRecord.
 - b) otherwise, reject the operation.

An implication of [C15-0.1.15](#): is that requests to add, delete, or replace a ServiceRecord, whether successful or not, have no effect on associations. SubnAdmSet()s and SubnAdmDelete()s do not change which ServiceNames are associated with ServiceKeys or whether specific ServiceNames are associated with specific ServiceKeys. In particular, adding a ServiceRecord with a previously unassociated ServiceName does *not* create a new association. When there is no association with a ServiceName, the ServiceKey is always ignored.

Queries of ServiceRecords, e.g., using SubnAdmGet() or SubnAdmGetTable() methods, match the ServiceKey like any other component. It is anticipated that most queries will use the ComponentMask to wildcard ServiceKey.

As specified in [15.4.1.2 Access Restrictions For Other Attributes on page 1070](#), SA returns ServiceRecords with the ServiceKey replaced by 0 except when responding to a trusted subnet manager.

15.2.5.14.3 SERVICELEASE

ServiceLease values that are long or indefinite can conceivably span a time period that includes subnet reinitialization, including reinitialization of SA. Whether such ServiceRecords are nonvolatile, i.e., whether or not reinitialized SA begins with those ServiceRecords in place, is vendor-dependent.

SA may impose a maximum ServiceLease. That is, it may reject attempts to write ServiceRecords with a ServiceLease period that is indefinite or

larger than some amount. Whether this is done, and the way the maximum is determined, is vendor-dependent.

C15-0.1.16: SA **shall** begin counting down each non-indefinite ServiceLease period immediately on creation or modification of a ServiceRecord. The ServiceLease value returned in a ServiceRecord query **shall** be the time remaining in its ServiceLease.

C15-0.1.17: When a ServiceRecord's ServiceLease period expires, SA **shall** delete the ServiceRecord.

15.2.5.14.4 SERVICE DATA

The ServiceData8.1 through ServiceData64.2 components together constitutes a 64-byte area in which any data may be placed. It is intended to be a convenient way for a service to provide its clients with some initial data.

In addition, this 64-byte area is formally divided into a total of 30 components—16 8-bit components, then 8 16-bit components, etc.—thereby assigning ComponentMask bits to variously-sized segments of the data. This allows query operations to be used which match parts of the ServiceData, making it possible, for example, for service-specific parts of the ServiceData to serve as a binary-coded extension to the ServiceName for purposes of lookup.

Since the breakup of ServiceData into components is purely formal (no semantics apply to it); and since the matching performed in a query is a simple bitwise match; it's the case that adjacent formal components of ServiceData can in effect be arbitrarily concatenated into larger entities if convenient. For example, a 32-bit binary value to be used in matching could occupy the first four bytes of ServiceData (components ServiceData8.1 through ServiceData8.4). It can be matched against by setting to 1 the first four bits of ComponentMask corresponding to those first four formal ServiceData components. The client doing the lookup must, of course, be cognizant of the way the service it is requesting uses these components.

15.2.5.15 SERVICE ASSOCIATION RECORD

Table 248 ServiceAssociationRecord

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
ServiceKey	128	0	Key value that may be associated with the ServiceName; see discussion following.
ServiceName	512	128	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated character string used to identify the service (e.g., "BIS.IBTA").

This attribute cannot be modified using SubnAdmSet(). Its purpose is to allow SA of another vendor to obtain all the {ServiceName, ServiceKey} associations currently stored in SA by using a SubnAdmGetTable(ServiceAssociationRecord) with a ComponentMask of all zeros.

15.2.5.16 PATHRECORD

Table 249 PathRecord

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
ServiceID8MSB	8	0		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsQoSSupported is set to one, on a SubnAdmGet or SubnAdmGetTable used to determine parameters for Communication Management, ServiceID8MSB should be specified according to the 8 most significant bits of the ServiceID to be used in the subsequent CM REQ message. Otherwise, reserved.
ServiceID56LSB	56	8		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsQoSSupported is set to one on a SubnAdmGet or SubnAdmGetTable used to determine parameters for Communication Management, ServiceID56LSB should be specified according to the corresponding 56 least significant bits of the ServiceID to be used in the subsequent CM REQ message. Otherwise, reserved.
DGID	128	64		Destination GID to establish path to (see 8.3.8 Destination Global Identifier (DGID) - 128 bits on page 249)
SGID	128	192	X	Source GID to establish path from; shall be a unicast GID (see 8.3.7 Source Global Identifier (SGID) - 128 bits on page 249)
DLID	16	320		Destination LID
SLID	16	336		Source LID; shall be a unicast LID
RawTraffic	1	352		Raw Packet path 0 - IB Packet (P_Key must be valid) 1 - Raw Packet traffic (No P_Key)
Reserved	3	353		Reserved
FlowLabel	20	356		Flow Label (see 8.3.3 Flow Label (FlowLabel) - 20 bits on page 249)
HopLimit	8	376		Hop limit (see 8.3.6 Hop Limit (HopLmt) - 8 bits on page 249)
TClass	8	384		Traffic Class (see 8.3.2 Traffic Class (TClass) - 8 bits on page 248)

Table 249

PathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
Reversible	1	392		<p>In a query request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 indicates that a reversible path is required; see 13.5.4 Response Generation and Reversible Paths on page 839 • 0 indicates that reversibility is not required <p>In a query response:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 indicates the path is reversible • 0 indicates the path is not reversible
NumbPath	7	393	X	<p>In a SubnAdmGetTable() query request: Maximum number of paths to return for each unique SGID-DGID combination. If more paths that satisfy the PathRecord query exist for a given SGID-DGID combination, only NumbPath paths shall be returned (implementation defined).</p> <p>In a SubnAdmGet() query request, ignored; a value of 1 is used.</p> <p>In a query response: undefined.</p>
P_Key	16	400		Partition Key for this path
QoSClass	12	416		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsQoSSupported is set to one, the type and priority value for QoS as described in A13.5.3.1.3 QoSClass on page 1871 . Otherwise, reserved.
SL	4	428		Service level
MtuSelector	2	432		<p>In a query request:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3-largest MTU available <p>If MTU is specified (i.e., the ComponentMask bit for MTU is 1):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0-greater than MTU specified 1-less than MTU specified 2-exactly the MTU specified <p>Otherwise, this component is ignored in a query request.</p> <p>In a query response: value shall be 2 indicating path has exactly the MTU specified.</p>

Table 249

PathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
Mtu	6	434		<p>Enumeration of the MTU required:</p> <p>1: 256</p> <p>2: 512</p> <p>3: 1024</p> <p>4: 2048</p> <p>5: 4096</p> <p>0,6-63: reserved</p> <p>In a query request, if MtuSelector is not specified (i.e., the ComponentMask bit for MtuSelector is 0) or if it is specified and has a value of 3, this component is ignored.</p>
RateSelector	2	440		<p>In a query request:</p> <p>3-largest rate available</p> <p>If Rate is specified (i.e., the ComponentMask bit for Rate is 1):</p> <p>0-greater than Rate specified</p> <p>1-less than Rate specified</p> <p>2-exactly the Rate specified</p> <p>Otherwise, this component is ignored in a query request.</p> <p>In a query response: value shall be 2 indicating path has exactly the Rate specified.</p>

Table 249

PathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
Rate	6	442		<p>Enumeration of the rate:</p> <p>2: 2.5 Gb/sec.</p> <p>3: 10 Gb/sec.</p> <p>4: 30 Gb/sec.</p> <p>5: 5 Gb/sec.</p> <p>6: 20 Gb/sec.</p> <p>7: 40 Gb/sec.</p> <p>8: 60 Gb/sec.</p> <p>9: 80 Gb/sec.</p> <p>10: 120 Gb/sec.</p> <p>When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsExtendedSpeedsSupported,</p> <p>11: 14 Gb/sec. (FDR 1x)</p> <p>12: 56 Gb/sec. (FDR 4x)</p> <p>13: 112 Gb/sec. (FDR 8x)</p> <p>14: 168 Gb/sec. (FDR 12x)</p> <p>15: 25 Gb/sec. (EDR 1x)</p> <p>16: 100 Gb/sec. (EDR 4x)</p> <p>17: 200 Gb/sec. (EDR 8x)</p> <p>18: 300 Gb/sec. (EDR 12x)</p> <p>0, 1, 19-63: reserved</p> <p>When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported and IsExtendedSpeedsSupported,</p> <p>19: 28 Gb/sec. (FDR 2x)</p> <p>20: 50 Gb/sec. (EDR 2x)</p> <p>0, 1, 21-63: reserved</p> <p>When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLink-SpeedHDRSupported and IsExtendedSpeedsSupported,</p> <p>20: 50 Gb/sec. (HDR 1x)</p> <p>21: 400 Gb/sec. (HDR 8x)</p> <p>22: 600 Gb/sec. (HDR 12x)</p> <p>0, 1, 19, 23-63: reserved</p>

Table 249

PathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
Rate (cont'd)				<p>When SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsLinkWidth2xSupported, IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported, and IsExtendedSpeedsExtended,</p> <p>16: 100 Gb/sec. (EDR 4x, HDR 2x)</p> <p>17: 200 Gb/sec. (EDR 8x)</p> <p>18: 300 Gb/sec. (EDR 12x)</p> <p>19: 28 Gb/sec. (FDR 2x)</p> <p>20: 50 Gb/sec. (EDR 2x, HDR 1x)</p> <p>21: 400 Gb/sec. (HDR 8x)</p> <p>22: 600 Gb/sec. (HDR 12x)</p> <p>0, 1, 23-63: reserved</p> <p>Rate values 19-22 only returned if port(s), depending on reversibility, indicate support for HDR and/or 2x in PortInfo:CapabilityMask2. Otherwise, return next lower rate which is supported.</p> <p>Otherwise:</p> <p>0, 1, 11-63: reserved</p> <p>In a query request, if RateSelector is not specified (i.e., the ComponentMaskBit for RateSelector is 0) or if it is specified and has a value of 3, this component is ignored.</p> <p>SA shall return to an endpoint only PathRecord:Rate values that the endpoint can support, as indicated by the values provided in that endpoint's PortInfo components LinkSpeedSupported, LinkSpeedExtSupported, and LinkWidthSupported, unless PortInfo:OptionalIPDSupported=1; in the latter case, any rate value not to exceed the rate of the path can be returned.</p>
PacketLife- TimeSelector	2	448		<p>In a query request:</p> <p>3-smallest PacketLifeTime available</p> <p>If PacketLifeTime is specified (i.e., the Component-Mask bit for PacketLifeTime is 1):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0-greater than PacketLifeTime specified 1-less than PacketLifeTime specified 2-exactly the PacketLifeTime specified <p>Otherwise, this component is ignored in a query request.</p> <p>In a query response: value shall be 2 indicating path has exactly the PacketLifeTime specified.</p>

Table 249

PathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
PacketLifeTime	6	450		<p>Maximum time for a packet to traverse this path, where time in microseconds is derived from time = $4.096 \text{ usec} * 2^{\text{PacketLifeTime}}$.</p> <p>In a query request, if PacketLifeTimeSelector is not specified (i.e., the ComponentMask bit for PacketLifeTimeSelector is 0) or if it is specified and has a value of 3, this component is ignored.</p> <p>For loopback paths, shall be zero.</p>
Preference	8	456		<p>In responses containing multiple paths: Indicates an order of preference among paths returned that overrides differences that may be indicated by MTU, Rate, and/or PacketLifetime. Larger numbers indicate worse paths. Identical numbers indicate no preference among paths aside from that which may be clear from other PathRecord fields. The precise meaning of this field and the features on which it is based is implementation dependent.</p> <p>In all requests, and in responses containing only a single path, Reserved.</p>
ReversePathP- KeyMemberBit	2	464		<p>If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsReversePathPKeyMemberBitSupported set to 1, and PathRecord:Reversible is also set to 1, then this field has the following meaning:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 3 - the reverse path supports both full and opposite membership as the forward path 2 - the reverse path has opposite membership to the forward path, that is, if the forward path has limited membership, the reverse path has full and conversely 1 - reserved 0 - both reverse and forward paths can have only full membership
Reserved	46	466		Reserved

The PathRecord is used to request routing information between end-nodes. Its results are required to create connections and perform other tasks. The data returned in a PathRecord is usually generated, based on the routing algorithm used by the SM.

For unicast communication, a PathRecord specifying a path from SGID A to DGID B exists if all the following conditions hold:

- there is a LID-routed path from port A to port B,
- PortInfo:PortState of port A is Active,

- PortInfo:PortState is Armed or Active for all intermediate switch and router ports in the path from port A to port B, and
- PortInfo:PortState of port B is Armed or Active.

For multicast communication, a PathRecord specifying a path from SGID A to MGID (multicast GID) B exists if PortInfo:PortState of port A is Active, and port A belongs to the multicast group with MGID B.

These PathRecords, having an MGID as the DGID, are only returned in response to a PathRecord query if the DGID is explicitly specified. If the DGID is wildcarded, such PathRecords are not returned. This applies in particular to “bus walk” queries described later in this section.

Requesters of PathRecords can use the Administration Query Subsystem ([15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072](#)) to request paths with desired properties. Using the ComponentMask, the requester can build a SubnAdmGetTable() request and supply the known fields in the attribute; the reply from SA will supply the response entries which match the request. For example, setting the ComponentMask so as to ignore everything but SGID and NumbPaths in a SubnAdmGetTable() request will cause SA to return up to NumbPaths PathRecords from each set of paths from the specified SGID to each DGID reachable from it.

In calculating PMTU, SL, and rate for a path terminating at a base switch port 0, the PortInfo components for that base switch port 0 are ignored. Hence, it is recommended to return a rate of 2.5 Gb/sec and an MTU of 256 bytes for a path terminating at BSP0.

It is legal to request a PathRecord from a port to itself. Such “loopback” PathRecords are useful for diagnostic purposes as well as for normal traffic between clients on the same endnode. SA handles such queries as though the port were connected by a point-to-point link to another port having identical capabilities. This implies that certain characteristics, for example NeighborMTU, may be implicitly changed; this is feasible because loopback traffic never reaches the physical link.

Normally the DGID is known (or at some point learned, as with, e.g., name service). But during a “boot” sequence, it may be useful to leave it unspecified, thus returning paths to all endnodes reachable from an SGID.

The equivalent of an operating system’s “bus walk” operation, used to find out which device slots are populated, can be accomplished using a single PathRecord query. For example, consider a SubnAdmGetTable(PathRecord) query with:

- SGID set to a GID of some port
- NumbPath set to 1

- ComponentMask all 0 except for SGID and NumbPath positions, which are 1.

Then SA will return a table containing paths from the physical port identified by the SGID to every physical port reachable from that SGID port, given the partitioning in force when the query is done (see [15.4.1 Restrictions on Access on page 1069](#)). Multiple paths to each physical destination port may be returned: Each physical destination port may have multiple GUIDs if its PortInfo:GUIDCap is greater than 1, and each of those defines a separate GID.

Since NumbPath=1, and is defined as the number of paths connecting each SGID and DGID, there will be only one path returned to each reachable DGID even if both the SGID port and the DGID port have multiple LIDs (i.e., their LMC values are not 0).

ComponentMask matching for PathRecord queries involves several exceptions to the matching mechanism specified in [C15-3.1.28](#). Refer to the descriptions in [Table 249 PathRecord on page 1038](#) for details on using NumbPath, MtuSelector/Mtu, RateSelector/Rate, and PacketLifeTimeSelector/PacketLifeTime in query requests.

The following example shows a PathRecord query request, seeking as many as two paths with a specified set of characteristics. [Table 250 Example PathRecord Request MAD Header Fields on page 1045](#) shows the header fields of this request; only those header fields whose values differ from the defaults are shown.

Table 250 Example PathRecord Request MAD Header Fields

Component	Value	Description
MADHeader:MgmtClass	0x03	Specifying SubnAdm class
MADHeader:Method	0x12	Specifying SubnAdmGetTable()
MADHeader:TransactionID	0x0000000011223344	Transaction ID (to be returned in the response)
MADHeader:AttributeID	0x0035	Specifying PathRecord
RMPPHeader:RMP-PFlags.Active	0	Information flags:RMPP is not active
SAHeader:SM_Key	0	SM_Key value is zero; see 15.4.1 Restrictions on Access on page 1069
SAHeader:ComponentMask	0x000000000000F904C	Selecting those components to be used; see ComponentMask Bit column in Table 251 on page 1046 :

[Table 251 Example PathRecord Request Data on page 1046](#) shows what the data fields in the request would look like if up to two paths are requested to a particular port. The GID of that port is assumed already avail-

able; it might, for example, be the port on which some service is located, obtained by doing a lookup of a ServiceRecord. The specifications for the paths being requested are:

- the MTU is no larger than 1024,
- the rate must be at 2.5 Gb/sec.,
- the path must be in the partition to which the requester has access,
- using service level 8,
- for any PacketLifeTime cost,
- for any TClass,
- for IB traffic,
- any flow label,
- or any number of “hops”

Table 251 Example PathRecord Request Data

Component	Component Mask Bit	Value	Meaning/Implication
Reserved	0	0	
Reserved	0	0	
DGID	1	GID	GID of the port to which paths are requested
SGID	1	Requester GID	GID of the port from which requested paths are to begin
DLID	0	0	Indicates to SA that the path may be to any port on the destination node.
SLID	0	0	Indicates to SA that the path may be from any port on the local node.
RawTraffic	1	0	IB traffic (P_Key will be valid)
Reserved	0	0	ignored - set to 0
FlowLabel	0	0	Flow Label
HopLimit	0	0	Hop Limit
TClass	0	0	Traffic Class
Reversible	0	0	Non-reversible path is acceptable
NumbPath	1	2	Requesting only 2 paths which meet these specifications
P_Key	0	0	No P_Key specified for this path
Reserved	0	0	
SL	1	0x8	Desired SL for this path (SL 8)

Table 251**Example PathRecord Request Data**

Component	Component Mask Bit	Value	Meaning/Implication
MtuSelector	1	1	Paths must have an MTU less than 2048
Mtu	1	4	Mtu is less than 2048, i.e., 1024 or lower
RateSelector	1	2	Path rate must be exactly 2.5Gb/sec.
Rate	1	2	Rate is equal to 2.5Gb/sec.
PacketLife-TimeSelector	0	0	Return paths with any PacketLifeTime
PacketLife-Time	0	0	
Preference	0	0	Not used on requests
Reserved	0	0	Padding

For this example the following is a possible resulting response header and the PathRecords found in the data field of the response; again, only the fields whose values differ from defaults are shown:

Table 252**Example PathRecord Response MAD Header Fields**

Component	Value	Meaning/Implication
MADHeader:MgmtClass	0x03	Specifying SubnAdm class
MADHeader:Method	0x92	SubnAdmGetTableResp()
MADHeader:Status	0	Good Status
MADHeader:TransactionID	0x0000000011223344	Same as in request
MADHeader:AttributeID	0x0035	Specifying PathRecord
RMPPHeader:RMPPType	1	Specifying a data packet
RMPPHeader:RRespTime	0x1F	No time value provided
RMPPHeader:RMPPFlags.First	1	Information flags: first packet
RMPPHeader:RMPPFlags.Last	1	Information flags: last packet
RMPPHeader:RMPPFlags.Active	1	Information flags: RMPP is active
RMPPHeader:RMPPStatus	0	Normal data packet status
RMPPHeader:SegmentNumber	00000001	First segment
RMPPHeader:PayLoadLength	148	2*8*AttributeOffset + sizeof (SAHeader) in bytes
SAHeader:SM_Key	0x0	SM_Key value from query

Table 252 Example PathRecord Response MAD Header Fields (Continued)

Component	Value	Meaning/Implication
SAHeader:AttributeOffset	0x08	Offset from an attribute to the next in the data, in 8-byte words
SAHeader:ComponentMask	0x000000000000F904C	ComponentMask from query

The following are the attributes in the data field of the resulting response:

Table 253 Example PathRecord Response Data

Component	Value	Meaning/Implication
Reserved	0	
Reserved	0	
DGID	GID	GID of the port at which this path ends
SGID	Requester GID	GID of the port from which this path is to begin
DLID	0x0008	The LID assigned to the port where this path ends
SLID	0x000A	The LID assigned to the port where this path begins
RawTraffic	0	IB traffic (P_Key will be valid)
Reserved	0	ignored - set to 0
FlowLabel	0	Flow Label
HopLimit	0	Default Hop Limit since this is an intra-subnet DGID
TClass	0	Traffic Class
Reversible	0	Path is not reversible
NumbPath	0	Ignored - set to 0
P_Key	0x1234	P_Key in use for this path
Reserved	0	Ignored - set to 0
SL	0x8	SL of this path is 8
MtuSelector	2	Path Mtu is exact
Mtu	3	Specified Mtu is exactly 1024
RateSelector	2	Path rate is exact
Rate	2	Path rate is exactly 2.5Gb
PacketLifeTimeSelector	2	Path PacketLifeTime is exact.
PacketLifeTime	2	Path PacketLifeTime is $4.096\mu\text{sec} \times 2^2 = 16.384\mu\text{sec}$ exactly.
Preference	0	0

Table 253 Example PathRecord Response Data (Continued)

Component	Value	Meaning/Implication
Reserved	0	
Reserved	0	
Reserved	0	
DGID	GID	GID of the port at which this path ends
SGID	Requester GID	GID of the port from which this path is to begin
DLID	0x0009	The LID assigned to the port where this path ends
SLID	0x000A	The LID assigned to the port where this path begins
RawTraffic	0	IB traffic (P_Key will be valid)
Reserved	0	Ignored - set to 0
FlowLabel	0	FlowLabel
HopLimit	0	Default HopLimit since this is an intra-subnet DGID
TClass	0	Traffic Class
Reversible	0	Path is not reversible
NumbPath	0	Ignored - set to 0
P_Key	0x1234	P_Key in use for this path
Reserved	0	Ignored - set to 0
SL	0x8	SL of this path is 8
MtuSelector	2	Path Mtu is exact
Mtu	2	Path Mtu is exactly 512
RateSelector	2	Path rate is exact
Rate	2	Path rate is exactly 2.5Gb/sec.
PacketLifeTimeSelector	2	Path PacketLifeTime is exact.
PacketLifeTime	0x0A	Path PacketLifeTime is $4.096\mu\text{sec} * 2^{10} = 4.2\text{msec}$ exactly.
Preference	0	0
Reserved	0	Reserved

15.2.5.17 MC MEMBER RECORD**Table 254** MCMemberRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	MGID	128	0 Multicast GID address for this multicast group. See discussion below
	PortGID	128	128 Valid GID of the endpoint joining this multicast group.
Q_Key	32	256	Q_Key to be used by this multicast group.
MLID	16	288	Multicast LID for this multicast group, assigned by SA at creation time.
MTUSelector	2	304	Semantics identical to PathRecord component MtuSelector on page 1039
MTU	6	306	Semantics identical to PathRecord component Mtu on page 1040
TClass	8	312	Semantics identical to PathRecord component TClass on page 1038
P_Key	16	320	Partition key for this multicast group. This partition key may indicate full or limited membership (see 10.9.1.1 Limited and Full Membership on page 556).
RateSelector	2	336	Semantics identical to PathRecord component RateSelector on page 1040
Rate	6	338	Semantics identical to PathRecord component Rate on page 1041
PacketLifeTimeSelector	2	344	Semantics identical to PathRecord component PacketLifeTimeSelector on page 1042
PacketLifeTime	6	346	Maximum estimated time for a packet to traverse a path within the multicast group.
SL	4	352	Semantics identical to PathRecord component SL on page 1039
FlowLabel	20	356	Semantics identical to PathRecord component FlowLabel on page 1038
HopLimit	8	376	Semantics identical to PathRecord component HopLimit on page 1038
Scope	4	384	Semantics identical to MGID Address Scope Table 3 Multicast Address Scope on page 163 . See discussion below
JoinState	4	388	Join/Leave Status. See discussion below. bit 0: FullMember: Include/delete this endpoint from the multicast group as a member sender and receiver. bit 1: NonMember: Include/delete this endpoint from the multicast group as a non-member sender and receiver. bit 2: SendOnlyNonMember: Include/delete this endpoint from the multicast group as a non-member sender only. bit 3: SendOnlyFullMember: If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsSendOnlyFullMemberSupported is set to 1, include/delete this endpoint from the multicast group as a full-member sender only. Otherwise reserved.

Table 254 MCMemberRecord (Continued)

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
ProxyJoin	1	392	<p>Proxy join: This is computed by the SA. It is ignored on SubnAdmSet(), and always returned as zero except for the case of a trusted request (see 15.4.1.2 Access Restrictions For Other Attributes on page 1070).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: Join was performed by the endpoint identified by PortGID. • 1: Join was performed on behalf of the endpoint identified by PortGID by another port within the same partition.
Reserved	23	393	Reserved

An entity that wishes to create, join or leave an IBA multicast group, can do so using the SubnAdmSet() and SubnAdmDelete() methods with the MCMemberRecord attribute. This section only defines the interface to SA and SM that provides them with the information needed to set up routing of multicast packets. In order for an endnode to receive multicast packets, other additional operations need to be performed at that endnode; see [10.5 Multicast Services on page 497](#).

Note: This version of the specification does not provide management support for raw multicast.

SubnAdmSet() method is used to create or join a multicast group. SubnAdmDelete() method is used to delete or leave a multicast group.

o15-0.1.1: If SA supports UD multicast, then a SubnAdmSet(MCMemberRecord) which would result in the port being added to the multicast group implies that the SM **shall** program routers and switches with the new multicast information. If the SM is unable to program the fabric with the new multicast information, SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_NO_RESOURCES in its response to the corresponding SubnAdmSet() method.

The ProxyJoin component is used by SA to keep track of join requests for multicast groups by ports other than the port specified by PortGID, and to ensure that only ports within the partition can delete a MCMemberRecord for the port specified by PortGID, and then only if it was a proxy join. In the case of a non-proxy join, SA allows only the port specified by PortGID to request the deletion.

o15-0.1.2: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.1](#):

o15-0.2.1: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a SubnAdmSet() or SubnAdmDelete() method that would modify an existing MCMemberRecord, SA **shall not** modify that MCMemberRecord and **shall**

return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID in response in the following cases:

- Saved MCMemberRecord.ProxyJoin is not set and the request is issued by a requester with a GID other than the Port-GID.
- Saved MCMemberRecord.ProxyJoin is set and the requester is not part of the partition for that MCMemberRecord.

o15-0.1.3: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a SubnAdmSet() or SubnAdmDelete() method without the required components as specified below, SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INSUFFICIENT_COMPONENTS in its response. Exactly which components are required depends upon the type of request.

In [15.2.5.17.2 Creating a Multicast Group on page 1053](#) and [15.2.5.17.3 Joining a Multicast Group on page 1055](#) below, the term “unrealizable” is used. “Unrealizable” means that a requested multicast group creation or join is impossible because the request specifies properties that are physically impossible to achieve given the hardware configuration of the subnet. For example, creation of a group with an MTU or Rate larger than that supported anywhere in a subnet is unrealizable, as is a group with a PacketLifeTime shorter than that required to deliver packets between any of the endnodes of the subnet. Similarly, a join request is unrealizable if, for example, there is no path to the port joining which is able to support the MTU, Rate, etc., of the multicast group.

15.2.5.17.1 GROUP MEMBERSHIP

An endpoint must specify the type of multicast subscription or deletion that it wants. The MCMemberRecord:JoinState component indicates the membership qualities a port wishes to add (in joining or creating a group) or remove (in leaving a group). The meanings of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState bits are:

- FullMember: Group messages are routed both to and from the port. The port is considered a member for purposes of group creation and deletion, i.e.: if no member ports with FullMember=1 remain, the group may be deleted; otherwise it may not.
- NonMember: Group messages are routed both to and from the port. The port is not considered a member for purposes of group creation/deletion.
- SendOnlyNonMember: Group messages are only routed from the port; none are routed to the port. The port is not considered a member for purposes of group creation/deletion.
- SendOnlyFullMember: Group messages are only routed from the port; none are routed to the port. The port is considered a member for purposes of group creation/deletion.

Any combination of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState bits may be 1. When multiple bits are 1, the qualities of the port's type of membership are the union of the qualities specified by the bits that are 1. For example, if either or both of MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember and MCMemberRecord:JoinState.NonMember are 1, group messages are routed both to and from the port no matter what value MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyNonMember has; and if MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember is 1, the port is counted as a member for purposes of creation/deletion no matter what the settings of MCMemberRecord:JoinState.NonMember or MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyNonMember may be.

MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember bit must be set to 1 in the SubnAdmSet() request that creates a multicast group. Subsequent join or leave requests referencing that multicast group can contain any combination of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState bits. When SA receives a join request with the same RID as an already existing MCMemberRecord, SA updates the MCMemberRecord:JoinState component of the MCMemberRecord to be the logical OR of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState in the request with the current JoinState maintained for that MCMemberRecord. When SA receives a leave request, it updates the referenced MCMemberRecord's MCMemberRecord:JoinState components to be the logical AND of the MCMemberRecord's current MCMemberRecord:JoinState with the logical NOT of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState in the request. If this leave request causes there to be no MCMemberRecord for a multicast group that has either the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember bit set, the multicast group may be deleted by the SM/SA.

15.2.5.17.2 CREATING A MULTICAST GROUP

In what follows in this subsection, “MGID undefined” means either the MGID bit in the component mask is not set, or if the MGID bit in the component mask is set, the MGID component of MCMemberRecord:MGID is 0.

o15-0.1.4: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.2](#):

o15-0.2.2: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2-1.7](#):

o15-0.2-1.7: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.3.1](#):

o15-0.3.1: If SA supports UD multicast, then SA **shall** create a multicast group if it receives a SubnAdmSet() method for a MCMemberRecord, with the MGID undefined and the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFull-

Member bit set to 1. The required components in the MCMemberRecord for the group to be created are P_Key, Q_Key, SL, FlowLabel, TClass, JoinState and PortGID (see [o15-0.1.3:](#)) with the corresponding bits in the ComponentMask set. All other components may be wildcarded. This results in an implicit join for the port specified by PortGID.

o15-0.1.5: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2-1.8:](#)

o15-0.2-1.8: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a request to create a multicast group with the MGID undefined, the MGID that it creates **shall** be of the following format:

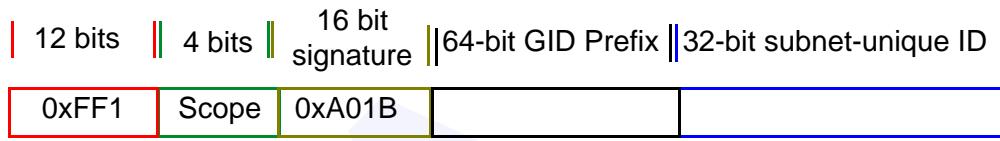


Figure 203 SA-Created Multicast GID

where the Scope bits are provided by the client in the MCMemberRecord:Scope component and the 32-bit subnet-unique ID is chosen by SA such that MGIDs generated by SA **shall** be unique among multicast groups existing at any given time within the scope used²⁵. If the multicast group creator does not provide the Scope component, SA **shall** choose the scope bits for the MGID with the broadest possible scope allowed as specified by the GID prefix.

o15-0.1.6: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.3:](#)

o15-0.2.3: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.3.2:](#)

o15-0.3.2: If SA supports UD multicast, then SA **shall** create a multicast group if it receives a SubnAdmSet() method for a MCMemberRecord with a valid MGID specified, there does not exist a multicast group with that MGID and the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember bit is set to 1. The required components in the MCMemberRecord for the group to be created **shall** be P_Key, Q_Key, SL, FlowLabel, TClass, JoinState and PortGID (see [o15-0.1.3:](#)) with the corresponding bits in the ComponentMask set. All other components may be wildcarded. This results in an implicit join for the port specified by PortGID. The Scope component is ignored in this case.

25. Uniqueness across different SAs within a fabric is guaranteed by inclusion of the GID prefix

A multicast GID is considered to be invalid if:

- it does not comply with the rules as specified in [4.1.1 GID Usage and Properties on page 160](#)
- it contains the SA-specific signature of “0xA01B” and has the link-local scope bits set.

Additional cases of invalidity may appear for non-local subnets and may be provided in future revisions of the specification.

The entity may also supply the other components such as HopLimit, MTU etc. during group creation time. If these components are not provided during group creation time, SA will provide them for the group. The values chosen are vendor-dependent and beyond the scope of the specification.

o15-0.1.7: If SA supports UD multicast, then a request to create a multicast group with an invalid MGID **shall** result in SA returning an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID_GID in its response.

o15-0.1.8: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a request that would result in the creation of a multicast group with components specified that are unrealizable for its subnet, SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID in its response.

o15-0.1.9: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.3.3](#):

o15-0.3.3: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a request which would create a multicast group and neither the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.FullMember bit nor, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember bit are set to 1, SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID in its response.

15.2.5.17.3 JOINING A MULTICAST GROUP

o15-0.1.10: This statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.4](#):

o15-0.2.4: If SA supports UD multicast, then SA **shall** cause an endpoint to join an existing multicast group if:

- it receives a SubnAdmSet() method for a MCMemberRecord, and
- the MGID is specified and matches an existing multicast group, and
- the MCMemberRecord:JoinState is not all 0s, and
- PortGID is specified and

- all other components match that existing group, either by being wildcarded or by having values identical to those specified by the component mask and in use by the group with the exception of components such as ProxyJoin and Reserved, which are ignored by SA.

o15-0.1.11: If SA supports UD multicast, then if an endpoint joins a multicast group as specified in [o15-0.1.10](#), SA **shall** replace the endpoint's current MCMemberRecord:JoinState component with the logical OR of the MCMemberRecord:JoinState component with the endpoint's current MCMemberRecord:JoinState component if the endpoint had joined this multicast group before.

o15-0.1.12: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.3.4](#).

o15-0.3.4: If SA supports UD multicast, then if an endpoint joins a multicast group as defined in [o15-0.2.4](#) and [o15-0.1.11](#) and has only the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyNonMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:JoinState.SendOnlyFullMember bit set to 1, then SA **shall** cause that endpoint to join the multicast group as a sender only.

o15-0.1.13: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a join request for a multicast group with components specified or wildcarded that are unrealizable for the port specified by PortGID, SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID in its response.

15.2.5.17.4 LEAVING & DELETING A MULTICAST GROUP

In [o15-0.1.14](#) and [o15-0.1.15](#) below, the term "valid MC deletion MAD" means a SubnAdmDelete(MCMemberRecord) MAD in which the ComponentMask bits are set and the values are as specified for the following components:

- the MAD's PortGID and MGID components match the PortGID and MGID of a stored MCMemberRecord;
- and the MAD's JoinState component contains at least one bit set to 1 in the same position as that stored MCMemberRecord's JoinState has a bit set to 1, i.e., the logical AND of the two JoinState components is not all zeros;
- and the MAD's JoinState component does not have some bits set which are not set in the stored MCMemberRecord's JoinState component;
- and either
 - the stored MCMemberRecord:ProxyJoin is reset (0), and the MAD's source is the stored PortGID;

- or the stored MCMemberRecord:ProxyJoin is set (1), (see [o15-0.1.2:](#)); and the MAD's source is a member of the partition indicated by the stored MCMemberRecord:P_Key.

o15-0.1.14: If SA supports UD multicast, then if it receives a valid MC deletion MAD, SA **shall** compute the logical AND of the matching stored MCMemberRecord:JoinState with the logical NOT of the MAD's Join-State, and then:

- if the result is all 0s, SA **shall** cause the port to leave the multicast group. The port specified by the MAD's PortID **shall** be removed from the multicast group specified by MGID or from all the multicast groups of which it is a member if the MGID is wildcarded;
- if the result is not all 0s, SA **shall** update the stored MCMemberRecord:JoinState to contain that result

In the below compliance statement ([o15-0.3.3:](#)), “full member” represents a port record that has JoinState with either MCMemberRecord:Join-State.FullMember bit or, if supported, the MCMemberRecord:Join-State.SendOnlyFullMember bit, or both, set to 1.

o15-0.2-1.9: If SA supports UD multicast, then if SA receives a valid MC deletion MAD that removes the last full member, SA **shall** delete all records belonging to that multicast group. If this port was the last full member, SA may release all resources associated with it, including resources that may exist in the fabric itself. The exact time at which this operation is done is vendor-specific. When the last full member leaves the group, SA **shall** forward Trap 67 (see [14.4.10 Multicast Group Create/Delete Traps on page 1011](#)) to subscribing endports.

o15-0.1.15: If SA supports UD multicast, then if it receives a SubnAdmDelete(MCMemberRecord) which is not a valid MC deletion MAD, then SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID in its response and **shall** take no other action.

15.2.5.17.5 QUERYING A MULTICAST GROUP

SA can be queried for multicast groups by sending a SubnAdmGet() or a SubnAdmGetTable() request to it using the SA query mechanism (see [15.4.4 Administration Query Subsystem on page 1072](#)). What SA returns in response to a query of multicast groups depends strongly upon whether the request is or is not a trusted request; the degree of trust affects both the data returned in each attribute and the set of attributes that are returned. See [C15-3.2-1.17:](#)

o15-0.1.16: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.5:](#)

o15-0.2.5: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by the bullet concerning MCMemberRecords in [C15-3.2-1.17](#):

15.2.5.17.6 P_KEYS IN MULTICAST GROUP OPERATIONS

The MCMemberRecord attribute is employed to Create, Join, Leave or Query multicast groups. A variety of P_Key values may be involved in these operations. This section is intended to clarify the access restrictions imposed by the various P_Keys in the different tasks involving the MCMemberRecord attribute.

There are several P_Key values involved in MCMemberRecord operations:

- SA P_Key: any of the P_Keys in ports serving SA
- Requester P_Key: a P_Key table entry of the port sending the request to SA
- MAD P_Key: the actual P_Key value in the MAD header
- Attribute P_Key: a component of the request MCMemberRecord (considered if the corresponding ComponentMask bit is set to one)
- Multicast Group P_Key: a component of the Multicast Group Record stored by SA – if the Multicast Group has been created

All requests are subject to incoming P_Key check between the MAD P_Key and the SA P_Key, following compliance statement [C10-132](#):

All requests are also subject to the general rule of not providing any information regarding objects (Ports or Multicast Groups) to an untrusted requester unless that requester shares a P_Key with the referenced objects. See compliance statement [C15-3.2.15](#):

15.2.5.17.6.1 CREATE REQUESTS

A SubnAdmSet(MCMemberRecord) which is intended to result in creating a new multicast group is required to provide an Attribute P_Key (see [o15-0.3.1](#)) which is checked to be shared with the Requester P_Key. If an Attribute P_Key is provided and is so shared, the created multicast group will hold that P_Key in the Multicast Group P_Key.

15.2.5.17.6.2 JOIN REQUESTS

A join request, that is, a SubnAdmSet(MCMemberRecord) for an existing multicast group, **shall** be validated to be realizable (see [o15-0.1.13: on page 1056](#)), thus a Requester P_Key and the Multicast Group P_Key must be shared. If an Attribute P_Key is provided in the request it serves as a request filter and is checked to be bitwise identical to the joined Multicast Group P_Key, as described in [C15-3.2.18](#):

Note that the first validation means that a limited membership Multicast Group P_Key will force all joined ports to have a matching full membership P_Keys.

15.2.5.17.6.3 QUERY REQUESTS

A Multicast Group query is subject to the trusted / non-trusted rules described in [C15-3.2-1.17](#): If an Attribute P_Key is provided in the request it serves as a request filter and is checked to be bitwise identical to the joined Multicast Group P_Key, as described in [C15-3.2.18](#).

15.2.5.18 GUIDINFORECORD

Table 255

GuidInfoRecord

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0
	BlockNum	8	16
	Reserved	8	24
Reserved	32	32	Reserved
GUIDInfo	512	64	GUIDInfo attribute contents; see Table 162 GUIDInfo on page 898

An entity that wishes to add or remove additional port GUIDs can do so using the SubnAdmSet() and SubnAdmDelete() methods with the GUIDInfoRecord attribute. This causes the SM to set the updated GUIDs in the specified port via the SM GUIDInfo attribute.

SubnAdmSet() method is used to add additional port GUIDs. SubnAdmDelete() method is used to remove previously added additional port GUIDs.

o15-0.a6: If SA supports additional port GUIDs, then both SubnAdmSet(GUIDInfoRecord) and SubnAdmDelete(GUIDInfoRecord) are supported.

o15-0.a7: If SA supports additional port GUIDs, the component mask for SubnAdmSet(GUIDInfoRecord) and SubnAdmDelete(GUIDInfoRecord) is required to include both LID and block number. If the component mask does not include both of these, SA **shall** return an error status of ER-R_REQ_INSUFFICIENT_COMPONENTS in its response to the corresponding method.

o15-0.a8: If SA supports additional port GUIDs, for a SubnAdmSet(GUIDInfoRecord), the component mask indicates which GUID

indices are to be set. A GUID can either be added or replaced. In the request, a GUID of 0 indicates that the GUID for this index is to be assigned by the SM. In the response, a GUID of 0 indicates that the GUID requested for this index was not accepted by the SA.

o15-0.a9: If SA supports additional port GUIDs, for a SubnAdmDelete(GUIDInfoRecord), the component mask indicates which GUID indices are to be removed.

o15-0.a10: If SA supports additional port GUIDs, the SA **shall** return an error status of ERR_REQ_INVALID to any attempt to set or delete block number 0 index 0.

15.2.5.19 TRACERECORD

Table 256 TraceRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GIDPrefix	64	0	GID Prefix of the subnet within which the IDComponents are consistent. See discussion below.
IDGeneration	16	64	Generation of the IDs used in this attribute; see discussion below.
Reserved	8	80	Reserved
NodeType	8	88	Values and interpretation identical to NodeInfo:NodeType (see Table 160 NodeInfo on page 894).
NodeID	64	96	ID of the Node
ChassisID	64	160	ID of the chassis or power domain, or 0 if ChassisGUID or equivalent information is unavailable.
EntryPortID	64	224	If NodeType is channel adapter: ID of the port used. If NodeType is router: ID of Entry Port. Otherwise: Reserved.
ExitPortID	64	288	If NodeType is router, and path continues past this router: ID of the exit port of the router. Otherwise: Reserved
EntryPort	8	352	If NodeType is switch: number of the entry port. Otherwise: Reserved.
ExitPort	8	360	If NodeType is switch, and path continues past this switch: number of the exit port. Otherwise: Reserved.

The TraceRecord attribute is used to describe the route a path takes from, to, or through a single node. The entire path is described by a table of TraceRecords returned as a response to the SubnAdmGetTraceTable()

method. For purposes of this discussion, let *IDComponent* be any of the TraceRecord components NodeID, ChassisID, EntryPortID, or ExitPortID.

o15-0.1.17: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced with [o15-0.2.6](#):

o15-0.2.6: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMultiPathSupported is 1 for SA, then IDComponents of a TraceRecord **shall not** be GUIDs of the entities they identify. IDComponents **shall** be comparable, i.e.: Given any two TraceRecords obtained from the same SA (as indicated by their having the same TraceRecord:GIDPrefix) with identical TraceRecord:ID-Generation values; and given corresponding IDComponents in each of the TraceRecords (both are ChassisIDs, or both NodeIDs, etc.); then the values of the two IDComponents **shall** be identical if they identify the same entity, and **shall** be different if they identify different entities.

Any identification scheme satisfying [o15-0.2.6](#): may be used. For example, a separately maintained identifier set could be used, a formal encryption function could be applied to GUIDs, an informal method could be used to obfuscate GUIDs such as XORing them with a word of alternating 0's and 1's, etc. How well the IDComponent values used mask the identities of the entities they represent is vendor-specific.

It is the responsibility of SA from which a path trace is requested to coordinate with SAs of other subnets, if necessary, to provide useful, comparable TraceRecords to the requester. Note that while it may be convenient in some implementations, it is not necessary for all of the TraceRecords in a path trace to come from the same SA nor to have identical IDGeneration values.

The IDGeneration field may be changed by SA when modifications must be made to the mapping of entities to identifiers. As a result, programs using this facility may need to re-request path traces using SubnAdmGetTraceTable() to obtain TraceRecords whose IDComponents can be compared.

15.2.5.20 MULTIPATHRECORD

Table 257 MultiPathRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RawTraffic	1	0	Semantics identical to PathRecord component RawTraffic on page 1038
Reserved	3	1	Reserved
FlowLabel	20	4	Semantics identical to PathRecord component FlowLabel on page 1038

Table 257 MultiPathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
HopLimit	8	24	Semantics identical to PathRecord component HopLimit on page 1038
TClass	8	32	Semantics identical to PathRecord component TClass on page 1038
Reversible	1	40	Semantics identical to PathRecord component Reversible on page 1039
NumbPath	7	41	In a query request: Maximum number of paths to return between SGIDs and DGIDs. If more paths that satisfy the query exist between the SGIDs and the DGIDs, only NumbPath paths shall be returned (implementation defined). In a query response: undefined.
P_Key	16	48	Semantics identical to PathRecord component P_Key on page 1039
QoSClass	12	64	Semantics identical to PathRecord component QoSClass on page 1039
SL	4	76	Semantics identical to PathRecord component SL on page 1039
MtuSelector	2	80	Semantics identical to PathRecord component MtuSelector on page 1039
Mtu	6	82	Semantics identical to PathRecord component Mtu on page 1040
RateSelector	2	88	Semantics identical to PathRecord component RateSelector on page 1040
Rate	6	90	Semantics identical to PathRecord component Rate on page 1041
PacketLife-TimeSelector	2	96	Semantics identical to PathRecord component PacketLifeTimeSelector on page 1042
PacketLifeTime	6	98	Semantics identical to PathRecord component PacketLifeTime on page 1043
ServiceID8MSB	8	104	Semantics identical to PathRecord ServiceID8MSB component ServiceID8MSB on page 1038
Independence-Selector	2	112	1 - paths that are as fault-independent as possible 0, 2, 3 - reserved

Table 257 MultiPathRecord (Continued)

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GIDScope	6	114	<p>Scope of GIDs:</p> <p>If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsGIDScopedMultiPathSupported = 0, shall be 0.</p> <p>Otherwise, treat this component as two 3-bit sub-fields.</p> <p>The first 3-bit MSB field named SGIDScope defines how SGIDs are to be selected and the second LSB 3-bit field, named DGIDScope defines how DGIDs are to be selected. The codes used for these two fields are:</p> <p>For the SGIDScope field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = use the explicit SGID provided in the query SGID1..SGIDn 1 = choose SGIDs from the same Node (HCA) as in SGID1 2 = choose SGIDs from the same System (same SystemImage-GUID) as in SGID1; No preference for using different nodes is required. 3 = choose SGIDs from the same System (same SystemImage-GUID) as in SGID1; Prefer selecting different nodes (use separate HCAs if possible) 4-7 = reserved <p>For the DGIDScope field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = use the explicit DGID provided in the query DGID1..DGIDn 1 = choose DGIDs from the same Node (HCA) as in DGID1 2 = choose DGIDs from the same System (same SystemImage-GUID) as in DGID1; No preference for using different nodes is required. 3 = choose DGIDs from the same System (same SystemImage-GUID) as in DGID1; Prefer selecting different nodes (use separate HCAs if possible) 4-7 = reserved
SGIDCount	8	120	Number of SGIDs at the start of the SDGIDn array below. Shall be at least 1.
DGIDCount	8	128	Number of DGIDs following SGIDs in the SDGIDn array below. Shall be at least 1.
ServiceID56LSB	56	136	Semantics identical to PathRecord ServiceID56LSB component ServiceID56LSB on page 1038
SDGID1	128	192	Source GID 1; shall be a unicast GID.
SDGID2	128	320	Source or Destination GID 2; shall be a unicast GID.
...	128	...	Source or Destination GIDs; shall be unicast GIDs.
SDGIDn	128	192 + 128×(n-1)	Last Destination GID; shall be a unicast GID. The total number of SGIDs shall equal SGIDCount + DGIDCount.

o15-3.2-1.10: SDGID<n> ComponentMask bits **shall** be ignored.

The MultiPathRecord attribute can be used to request multiple paths between a set of sources and a set of destinations, for example to find independent paths suitable for increasing availability and/or performance. It may also be used to request a single path between any of a set of sources and any of a set of destinations. There is no requirement that the number of sources be equal to the number of destinations.

o15-0.1.18: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-3.2-1.11](#):

o15-0.2.7: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-3.2-1.11](#):

o15-3.2-1.11: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMultiPathSupported is 1 for SA, then SA **shall** respond to a SubnAdmGetMulti() containing a MultiPathRecord attribute with a set of zero or more PathRecords satisfying the constraints indicated in the MultiPathRecord received. The PathRecord Attribute ID **shall** be used in the response.

o15-3.2-1.12: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMultiPathSupported is 1 for SA, then in MultiPathRecord, the SGIDCount and DGIDCount components **shall** be present in the ComponentMask; the SDGIDn components **shall** be ignored in the ComponentMask.

Since the length of the list of SDGID elements in MultiPathRecord may vary from use to use, the length of the MultiPathRecord attribute is variable. Its size may exceed the maximum size that will fit in an SA MAD (192 bytes). Its minimum and maximum lengths are 56 bytes and 8184 bytes, respectively, corresponding to the minimum and maximum values of the SGIDCount and DGIDCount fields (respectively 1 and 255). The SubnAdmGetMulti() method allows this variability by using the reliable multi-packet protocol [15.3 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 1067](#) to both send an attribute and receive the response.

The purpose of the IndependenceSelector component is to allow requesting paths that are fault-independent of each other, and therefore are, for example, appropriate for use as alternate paths in Automatic Path Migration (see [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#)).

If fewer paths are requested than exist between the sources and the destinations, it is recommended that among the paths that satisfy the other specified qualities, those paths with better preferences be returned.

15.2.5.21 LINKSPEEDWIDTHPAIRSTABLERECORD**Table 258** LinkSpeedWidthPairsTableRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router, LID of the port. For a switch, LID of switch port 0.
	Reserved	8	16 Reserved
	Index	8	24 LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable Index parameter.
LinkSpeedWidth-PairsTable	512	32	LinkSpeedWidthPairsTable contents; see Table 180 Link-SpeedWidthPairsTable on page 928

15.2.5.22 CABLEINFORECORD**Table 259** CableInfoRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	EndPortID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port For a switch: LID of switch port 0
	PortNum	8	16 For a switch: port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	AddlLength	7	24 How many additional bytes will be accessed by the given operation (e.g., 0 -> a total of 1 byte is accessed, 127 -> a total of 128 bytes is accessed)
	Reserved	1	31 Reserved
	Address	12	32 The first byte to be accessed by the given operation
	Reserved	20	44 Reserved
CableInfo	1024	64	CableInfo attribute contents; see Table 183 CableInfo on page 933

Any Reset on Read fields within the CableInfo are returned as 0 and not reset within the device.

CableInfoRecords **shall** only exist for non-SP0 ports whose PortInfo.CapabilityMask.IsCableInfoSupported is 1.

15.2.5.23 PORTINFOEXTENDEDRECORD**Table 260** PortInfoExtendedRecord

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	EndportLID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	PortNum	8	16 For a switch: port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	Options	8	24 Reserved
PortInfoExtended	512	32	PortInfoExtended attribute contents; see Table 184 PortInfoExtended on page 934

15.2.5.24 ENHQOSARBITERINFORECORD**Table 261** EnhQoSArbiterInfoRecord^a

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	Reserved	16	Reserved
EnhQoSArbiter- Info	512	32	<u>EnhQoSArbiterInfo</u> attribute content: See link to Table 187 EnhQoSArbiterInfo on page 937

a. [o15-3.2-1.13:](#)**15.2.5.25 ENHVLGROUPSARBITERRECORD****Table 262** EnhVLGroupsArbiterRecord^a

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	OutputPort- Num	8	16 For a switch: output port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	Reserved	8	24 Reserved
VLGroupsArbiter- Config	512	32	<u>VLGroupsArbiterConfig</u> attribute content: See link to Table 188 VLGroupsArbiterConfig on page 938

a. [o15-3.2-1.13:](#)

15.2.5.26 ENHVLAARBITERRECORD**Table 263** **EnhVLArbiterRecord^a**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	OutputPort-Num	8	16 For a switch: output port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	Reserved	8	24 Reserved
VLArbiterConfig	512	32	<u>VLArbiterConfig</u> attribute content: See link to Table 190 VLArbiterConfig on page 941

a. [o15-3.2-1.13:](#)**15.2.5.27 ENHSLARBITERRECORD****Table 264** **EnhSLArbiterRecord^a**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a CA or router: LID of the port. For a switch: LID of switch port 0.
	OutputPort-Num	8	16 For a switch: output port number For a channel adapter or router: reserved
	Reserved	8	24 Reserved
EnhSLArbiter	512	32	<u>EnhSLArbiter</u> attribute content: See link to Table 192 EnhSLArbiter on page 942

a. [o15-3.2-1.13:](#)

o15-3.2-1.13: The SA Shall return a value of No Records if EnhQoSSupported is set but the SM has not enabled it.

15.3 RELIABLE MULTI-PACKET TRANSACTION PROTOCOL

SA uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol (RMPP) defined in [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#) in conjunction with the methods SubnAdmGetTable(), SubnAdmGetTableResp(), SubnAdmGetTraceTable(), SubnAdmGetMulti(), and SubnAdmGetMultiResp().

The AttributeOffset field of the SA header is used in all RMPP DATA packets as described in [Table 229 Subnet Administration Fields on page 1017](#).

C15-3.1.18: SA **shall** respond to SubnAdmGetTable() and SubnAdmGetTraceTable() requests by performing the Sender role in a receiver-initiated RMPP transmission sequence as described in [13.6.6.1 Receiver-Initiated Transfer on page 863](#).

- The method used for all packets sent from the Receiver to the Sender **shall** be SubnAdmGetTable() or SubnAdmGetTraceTable(), depending on which initiated the transfer.
- The method used for all packets sent from the Sender to the Receiver **shall** be SubnAdmGetTableResp().
- The attribute contents in all packets except RMPP DATA packets **shall** be ignored following the initial SubnAdmGetTable() or SubnAdmGetTraceTable().
- Transfers initiated by SubnAdmGetTable() **shall** use the Attribute ID present in the initiating SubnAdmGetTable() for all packets of the protocol, unless specified otherwise for the attribute used in the initiating SubnAdmGetTable().
- Transfers initiated by SubnAdmGetTraceTable **shall** use the PathRecord Attribute ID for all packets sent from the Receiver to the Sender, and the TraceRecord Attribute ID for all packets sent from the Sender to the Receiver.

C15-3.1.19: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [C15-3.2-1.14](#):

C15-3.2-1.14: SA **shall** respond to a SubnAdmGetMulti() request by performing a double-sided RMPP transmission sequence as described in [13.6.6.3 Sender-Initiated Double-Sided Transfer on page 864](#), as follows:

- The method used for all packets sent from the Requester to the Responder **shall** be SubnAdmGetMulti().
- The method used for all packets sent from the Responder to the Requester **shall** be SubnAdmGetMultiResp().
- The attribute contents in all packets except RMPP DATA packets **shall** be ignored following the initial SubnAdmGetMulti().
- The attribute ID used in all packets from the Responder to the Requester **shall** be the attribute ID used from the Requester to the Responder unless otherwise indicated by the attribute.

C15-3.1.20: The initial DATA packet of all RMPP transmission sequences to or from SA **shall** specify exactly the PayloadLength of the data transferred.

Note that this PayloadLength must include not just the lengths of the SubnetAdminData data, but also 20 additional bytes per packet sent to account for the SA headers following the RMPP header (SM_Key),

AttributeOffset, Reserved, ComponentMask); and any additional padding between multiple attributes as indicated by the AttributeOffset field.

15.4 OPERATIONS

This section describes the operational aspects of SA.

15.4.1 RESTRICTIONS ON ACCESS

There are two types of access restrictions involved in SA: Authenticating the requester of information, and restricting the data that the requester is allowed to receive. These are discussed below.

The SA access restrictions described here are based on partition membership, and are intended to implement this rule: If access to data is allowed by partition membership, that access is granted; but if it is disallowed, the requester should remain unaware of the existence of that information and of the network elements containing that information. Additionally, in no event is authentication information made available to untrusted requests. That a node's PortInfo:M_Key, PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBits, and PortInfo:M_KeyProtectBitsExt if supported as indicated by PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsMKeyProtectBitsExt-Supported = 1 may prohibit access to some data by SMPs without a valid M_Key has no bearing on SA access restrictions.

15.4.1.1 ACCESS RESTRICTIONS FOR PATHRECORDS

C15-3.1.21: Subnet Administration **shall** return to a requester only path attributes for which the source port, destination port, and requester all share a P_Key pairwise. See the remainder of this section ([15.4.1.1 Access Restrictions For PathRecords on page 1069](#)) for a detailed explanation.

- Two ports share a P_Key when there is at least one valid P_Key in one port's P_Key Table that matches a P_Key in the other port's P_Key Table. (See [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558](#) for the definition of P_Key matching, and [10.9.1.2 Special P_Keys on page 557](#) for the definition of a valid P_Key.)
- “Pairwise” means that P_Key sharing **shall** be present between three pairs of ports: path source port and path destination port; path source port and a port of the requester; path destination port and a port of the requester. Each of the three matches may be based on the matching of different P_Keys.
- The path source and destination ports used to determine sharing are the ones that are implicit in the SGID (or SLID) and DGID (or DLID) of the path.
- All ports involved in this determination **shall** be on the subnet administered by the Subnet Administration to which the request is directed.

15.4.1.2 ACCESS RESTRICTIONS FOR OTHER ATTRIBUTES

The term “trusted request” used in the following compliance statements refers to a request that contains a valid SM_Key in the SM_Key component of the SA header.

C15-3.1.22: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [C15-3.2.15](#):

C15-3.2.15: When a requester node sends a trusted request to SA, the requested data **shall** be returned. When a requester node sends a non-trusted request for data to SA that would provide information about a subject node, SA **shall** return only data providing information about subject nodes or SA registrations (such as MCMemberRecords and ServiceRecords) with which the requester shares a P_Key, with exceptions noted below in [C15-3.1.23](#):

Sharing is defined as follows:

- Two endpoints share a P_Key when there is at least one valid P_Key in one endpoint's P_Key Table that matches a P_Key in the other endpoint's P_Key Table. (See [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558](#) for the definition of P_Key matching, and [10.9.1.2 Special P_Keys on page 557](#) for the definition of a valid P_Key.)
- All endpoints involved in this determination must be on the subnet administered by the Subnet Administration to which the request is directed.
- An endpoint shares a P_Key with an SA service record registration when there is at least one valid P_Key in the endpoint's P_KeyTable that matches the P_Key in the SA service record registration. (See [10.9.3 Partition Key Matching on page 558](#) for description of a P_Key match)

As an example of a case where SA might return data that provides information about other nodes that is covered by [C15-3.1.22](#), consider [Table 247 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#). That attribute contains a ServiceGID component that identifies an endpoint. [C15-3.1.22](#): implies that SA does not return a ServiceRecord containing a ServiceGID which identifies an endpoint that does not share a P_Key with the endpoint to which the ServiceRecord is returned.

C15-3.1.23: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [C15-3.2-1.17](#):

C15-3.2.16: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [C15-3.2-1.17](#):

C15-3.2-1.17: Subnet Administration **shall** follow the following additional rules concerning data access:

- PortInfoRecords **shall** always be provided with the M_Key component set to 0, except in the case of a trusted request, in which case the actual M_Key component contents **shall** be provided.
- P_KeyTableRecords and ServiceAssociationRecords **shall** only be provided in responses to trusted requests.
- ServiceRecords **shall** always be provided with the ServiceKey component set to 0, except in the case of a trusted request, in which case the actual ServiceKey component contents **shall** be provided.
- InformInfoRecords **shall** always be provided with the QPN set to 0, except for the case of a trusted request, in which case the actual subscriber QPN **shall** be returned.
- If SA supports UD Multicast, then MCMemberRecords are treated in a special way with respect to trusted or untrusted requests. For all types of queries:
 - Requests that are not trusted **shall** provide MCMemberRecords with the PortGID, JoinState and ProxyJoin components set to 0.
 - Trusted requests **shall** provide the actual contents of MCMemberRecords' PortGID, JoinState, and ProxyJoin components.

In addition:

- Requests that are not trusted **shall** provide only one MCMemberRecord for each multicast group matching the query. Which MCMemberRecord is provided is vendor dependent.
- Trusted requests **shall** provide all MCMemberRecords that match the query; in many cases this will include all the MCMemberRecords currently associated with a multicast group.
- TraceRecords **shall** be returned to any endnode requesting them.
- SubnAdmSet(InformInfo) subscriptions for SM security traps (see [Table 149 on page 887](#)) **shall** be provided only if they come from a trusted source.

15.4.2 LOCATING SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

C15-3.1.24: It **shall** be possible to determine the location of SA from any endpoint by sending a GMP to QP1 (the GSI) of the node identified by the endpoint's PortInfo:MasterSMLID, using in the GMP the base LID of the endpoint as the SLID, the endpoint's PortInfo:MasterSMSL as the SL, the well-known Q_Key (0x8001_0000), and whichever of the default P_Keys (0xFFFF or 0x7FFF) was placed in the endpoint's P_Key Table by the SM ([Table 227 Initialization on page 998](#)).

C15-3.1.25: A SubnAdmGet(ClassPortInfo) sent according to [C15-3.1.24](#): **shall** return all information needed to communicate with Subnet

Administration. Alternatively, valid GMPs for SA sent according to [C15-3.1.24](#): **shall** either return redirection responses providing all such information, or **shall** be normally processed by SA.

15.4.3 EVENT FORWARDING SUBSYSTEM

The set of traps or notices that may be reported by SA are described in [14.2.5.1 Notices and Traps on page 887](#). Note: In sending Notices, SA must abide by access restrictions; see [o13-14.1.1: on page 816](#) and [C15-3.2-1.17: on page 1071](#).

C15-3.1.26: Event forwarding operations directed at SA **shall** conform to the common methods as described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

15.4.4 ADMINISTRATION QUERY SUBSYSTEM

In the administration query subsystem the 64 bit ComponentMask in the SA MAD is used in query operations to specify particular attribute components to query. The ComponentMask can refer to only an entire component, not elements or parts of a component.

C15-3.1.27: For query operations, bit 0 of the ComponentMask **shall** refer to the first component of the SA attribute, bit 1 **shall** refer to the second component, and so forth. For purposes of this bit numbering, “component” **shall** mean either:

- a named attribute component as defined by the attribute tables in this chapter, including rows in which the “Component” column is named “Reserved,” but not including rows solely referring to attribute components defined by tables in other chapters ([14.2.5.3 NodeInfo on page 894](#) is often referenced); call the latter rows “reference rows.”
- a named component of attributes defined by the table in another chapter that is directly referred to by a reference row; if multiple such components are referenced in the same SA attribute, the numbering proceeds sequentially across them.

In other words, the bit numbering used in ComponentMask acts as if SA reference rows are replaced by the attributes they reference, as if a textual macro expansion had been performed (to just one level of embedding).

For example, in querying a PortInfoRecord (see [15.2.5.3 PortInfoRecord on page 1027](#)), bit 7 of the ComponentMask refers to PortInfo:CapabilityMask (see [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#)). As another example, in querying a LinearForwardingTableRecord (see [15.2.5.6 LinearForwardingTableRecord on page 1029](#)), ComponentMask bit 3 identifies an entire LinearForwardingTableBlock (see [Table 171 LinearForwardingTable on page 922](#)), but no ComponentMask bits correspond

to individual Port Block Elements (see [Table 172 Port Block Element on page 922](#)). Also, this chapter's table entry in LinearForwardingTableRecord named "LinearForwardingTable" does not itself use a bit position.

C15-3.1.28: This compliance statement is obsolete and is replaced by statement [C15-3.2.18](#).

In the compliance statement below, "query" means any request (all request methods in [Table 231 Subnet Administration Methods on page 1020](#) other than SubnAdmReport) made of SA.

C15-3.2.18: The rules for matching using the ComponentMask are as follows:

- When a ComponentMask bit is 1 in a query, the corresponding component in all responses **shall** be bitwise identical to the value provided in the query.
- When a ComponentMask bit is 0 in a query, the value of the corresponding component **shall not** be considered in choosing responses. This is called "wildcarding," and a component whose ComponentMask bit is 0 is said to have been "wildcarded."
- Exceptions:
 - Reserved fields **shall not** be considered in choosing responses to a query.
 - Particular attribute components may specify matching rules that do not correspond to the above (for example, PathRecord:MtuSelector).

ComponentMask matching is used in read, set, or delete operations, unless otherwise specified for the individual attribute. A ComponentMask of all ones means that all components are used for a query. The result of using a ComponentMask of all zeros in a query request is that all attributes of the queried attribute type are returned, except for those not allowed according to [15.4.1 Restrictions on Access on page 1069](#). For some attributes, e.g., PathRecords, some bits of the ComponentMask must be set to 1 in query operations.

Each attribute should describe the use of ComponentMask in RMPP segments beyond the first one. In the event that this is not described, the default is that ComponentMask in RMPP segments beyond the initial one is unused.

For the event forwarding subsystem the ComponentMask is unused.

15.4.5 SUBNADMGETTABLE() / SUBNADMGETTABLERESP()

SubnAdmGetTable() is used to request an attribute table. Operations are allowed on a specific table only, specified by attribute identifier.

An example SubnAdmGetTable() query for PathRecords is shown in [Table 250 Example PathRecord Request MAD Header Fields on page 1045](#). An example query for NodeRecords with a NodeType of 3 is shown in [Table 265 on page 1074](#); as with [Table 250](#), only header fields whose values differ from their defaults are shown:

Table 265 SubnAdmGetTable query for all NodeRecords with a specific NodeType

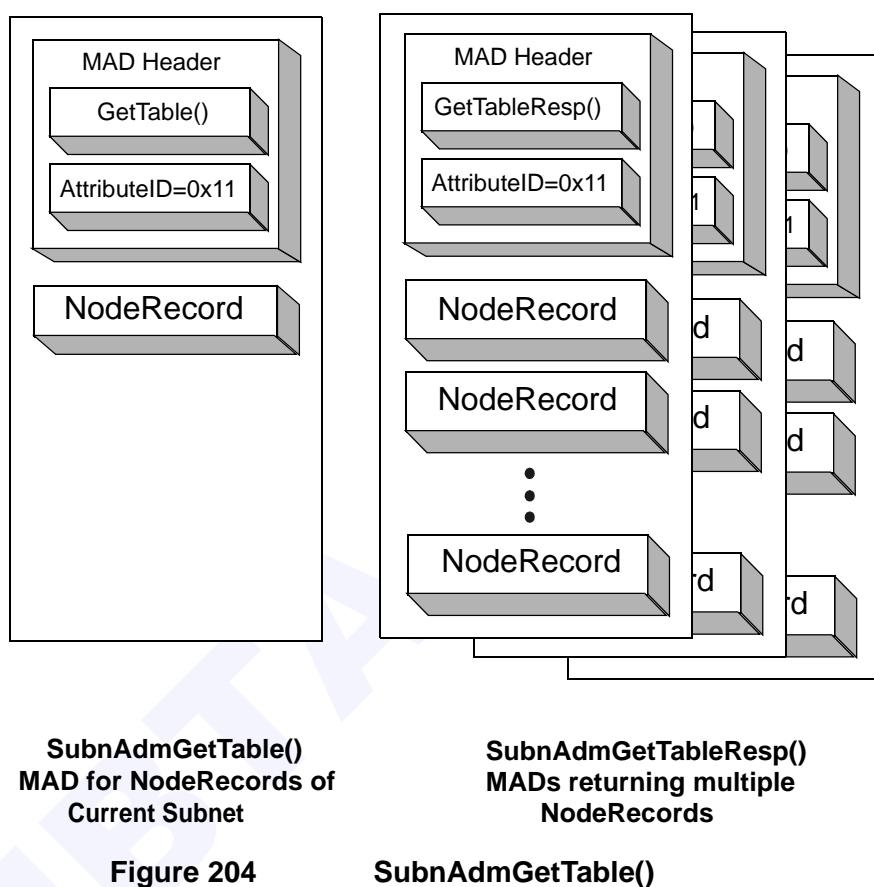
Component	Value	Interpretation
MADHeader:MgmtClass	0x03	Specifying SubnAdm class
MADHeader:Method	0x12	Specifying SubnAdmGetTable()
MADHeader:TransactionID	0x0000000011223344	Transaction ID (to be returned in the response)
MADHeader:AttributeID	0x0011	Specifying NodeRecord
RMPPHeader:RMPPFlags.Active	0	Information flags:RMPP is not active
SAHeader:SM_Key	0	SM_Key value not needed for this query
SAHeader:ComponentMask	0x0000000000000010	Selecting those components to be used; only bit 4 is needed.
NodeRecord:NodeType	3	Obtain all NodeRecords with NodeType value of 3, i.e., all routers.

Subnet Administration uses the SubnAdmGetTableResp() to respond to all SubnAdmGetTable() queries.

C15-3.1.29: SA **shall** indicate a refused request by returning a SubnAdmGetTableResp() with the status field providing the reason for refusal.

A SubnAdmGetTable() and the corresponding SubnAdmGetTableResp() is illustrated schematically in [Figure 204 SubnAdmGetTable\(\) Example on page 1075](#). Subsequent SubnAdmGetTableResp() MADs of this transaction will have the RMPP header entry values set to indicate place in the data stream (see [13.6.2 RMPP Packet Formats on page 843](#)). The continuation of the data is to be reassembled by the requester in its own data area.

The attributes for a SubnAdmGetTableResp() for the example of [Figure 204 SubnAdmGetTable\(\) Example on page 1075](#) are contained within a SA MAD as depicted. Note that attributes may be broken across successive response MADs.



15.4.6 SUBNADMGET() / SUBNADMGETRESP(): GET AN ATTRIBUTE

C15-3.1.30: In response to a SubnAdmGet(), if a single attribute would be returned based on the access rules specified in [15.4.1 Restrictions on Access on page 1069](#) and the matching of components specified by the ComponentMask, then SubnAdmGetResp() **shall** return that attribute with a zero status value.

C15-3.1.31: If SubnAdmGet() fails to satisfy [C15-3.1.30](#), SubnAdmGetResp() **shall** return with the status field providing the reason for failure (see [Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings on page 1021](#)).

[Table 266 SubnAdmGet\(\) query for a Particular NodeRecord on page 1076](#) shows an example SubnAdmGet() query which obtains a NodeRe-

cord given its PortGUID; as with [Table 250 on page 1045](#), only header fields whose values differ from their defaults are shown::

Table 266 SubnAdmGet() query for a Particular NodeRecord

Component	Value	Interpretation
MADHeader:MgmtClass	0x03	Specifying SubnAdm class
MADHeader:Method	0x01	Specifying SubnAdmGet()
MADHeader:TransactionID	0x0000000011223344	Transaction ID (to be returned in the response)
MADHeader:AttributeID	0x0011	Specifying NodeRecord
RMPPHeader:RMPPFlags.Active	0	Information flags:RMPP is not active
SAHeader:SM_Key	0	SM_Key value not needed for this query
SAHeader:ComponentMask	0x0000000000000080	Selecting those components to be used; only bit 7 is needed.
NodeRecord:PortGUID	0x0000000000000004	Obtain NodeRecord with given PortGUID.

15.4.7 SUBNADMSET(): SET AN ATTRIBUTE

C15-3.1.32: In response to a SubnAdmSet(), if the attribute contained in that MAD is added to SA, a SubnAdmGetResp() **shall** be returned containing the added attribute. Rules for adding an attribute of a given type are specified in the corresponding attribute definition sections.

Note that attributes for which SubnAdmSet() is not supported ([Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025](#)) implicitly cannot be added.

C15-3.2-1.19: If a SubnAdmSet() request results in multiple records being affected, a status of ERR_TOO_MANY_RECORDS **shall** be returned in the SubnAdmGetResp().

C15-3.1.33: If SubnAdmSet() fails to satisfy [C15-3.1.32](#); SubnAdmGetResp() **shall** return with the status field providing the reason for failure (see [Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings on page 1021](#)).

15.4.8 SUBNADMDELETE(): DELETE AN ATTRIBUTE

The SubnAdmDelete() method provides a means for deleting an attribute that had been added to SA using SubnAdmSet(). [Table 234 Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map on page 1025](#) specifies the attributes for which SubnAdmDelete() is supported. Note that attributes for which SubnAdmDelete() is not supported cannot be deleted. Rules for deleting an attribute are specified in the corresponding attribute definition sections.

C15-3.2-1.20: If a SubnAdmDelete() request results in multiple records being affected, a status of ERR_TOO_MANY_RECORDS **shall** be returned in the SubnAdmGetResp().

15.4.9 SUBNADMGETTRACETABLE(): TRACE A PATH

The SubnAdmGetTraceTable() method, with SubnAdmGetTableResp(), provides a means for comparing paths provided by SA in order to determine in detail the degree to which they use the same nodes, ports, links, or chassis. It may be used, for example, as a way to check or select a desired degree of failure independence among a set of paths.

The PathRecord given to SubnAdmGetTraceTable() must be completely specified and must specify an existing path that the requester is allowed to access.

o15-0.1.19: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.8](#).

o15-0.2.8: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMultiPathSupported is 1 for SA, then SA **shall** reject as invalid any SubnAdmGetTraceTable() request which contains a PathRecord that does not describe a valid path; or has a multicast GID or LID as a source or destination component; or does not describe a path the requester is allowed to access according to the rules specified in [15.4.1.1 Access Restrictions For PathRecords on page 1069](#); or does not have all of its components specified, i.e., any bit of the ComponentMask referring to a PathRecord component is 0. In any of these cases, SA **shall** respond with a SubnAdmGetTableResp() indicating a zero-length table and a status code indicating an ERR_REQ_INVALID. (See [Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings on page 1021](#).)

Given a valid PathRecord in a SubnAdmGetTraceTable() request that describes an existing path, SA uses SubnAdmGetTableResp() to return the path's elements as a table of TraceRecords, starting at the source and terminating at the destination.

o15-0.1.20: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by statement [o15-0.2.9](#).

o15-0.2.9: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMultiPathSupported is 1 for SA, then if SubnAdmGetTraceTable() is sent to SA with a PathRecord valid for SubnAdmGetTraceTable() (see [o15-0.1.19](#)), then SA **shall** respond with a SubnAdmGetTableResp() method that returns a table of TraceRecord attributes. The TraceRecords of that table **shall** describe every node traversed by the path sent to SA, and how that path traverses each node. The order of TraceRecords in that table **shall** be the order that a packet sent on that path would traverse those nodes, starting with the path's source node and ending with its destination node.

15.4.10 **SUBNADMGETMULTI() / SUBNADMGETMULTIRESP(): SEND & RECEIVE MULTIPLE PACKETS**

2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
SubnAdmGetMulti() is used when the reliable multipacket protocol (RMPP) is used to send an attribute or attributes to SA from a client. SubnAdmGetMultiResp() then, in response, uses RMPP to send an attribute or attributes from SA to the client. In contrast, for example, RMPP is used by SubnAdmGetTable() only to send attributes from SA to the client.

CHAPTER 16: GENERAL SERVICES

This chapter describes the range of management services that the IBA provides under general services, except for the Subnet Administration which is described in the previous chapter. General management services provide the following management classes:

- Performance Management - provides methods that enable a manager to retrieve performance statistics and error information from IBA components.
- Baseboard Management - provides a means to transport messages to components beyond the subnet, to “out of band” components. An example might be to chassis temperature monitoring and control hardware on an IBA channel adapter.
- Device Management - provides the means to perform I/O controller / I/O unit management. This class defines the mechanisms to send and receive device management packets between two subnet-attached points, typically between an HCA and a TCA. The TCA provides an interface to the I/O controller and I/O device.
- SNMP Tunneling - provides a set of methods, data formats and attributes to support SNMP tunneling. The SNMP packet is embedded in the IBA-compliant management datagram.
- Vendor Specific - provides a set of general purpose methods. Vendors are free to define new methods and attributes, however they must conform to management datagram formats and restrictions described herein.
- Application Specific - provides a set of general purpose methods. Applications are free to define new methods and attributes, however they must conform to management datagram formats and restrictions described herein.
- Communication Management - provides the mechanisms to establish, terminate, and migrate connections between nodes, and provides basic service ID resolution.

16.1 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

C16-1: The Performance Management Agent is mandatory on all nodes.

The Performance Management class provides mechanisms to enable a performance management entity to retrieve performance and error statistics from InfiniBand components. Performance quantities are divided into two classes:

- Mandatory for all ports of all nodes (TCAs, HCAs, Switches, and Routers). These quantities are deemed necessary to support fundamental instrumentation and performance analysis of a multi-vendor InfiniBand fabric
- Optional. These quantities may be implemented at the vendor's discretion, and are described here as an aid to standardization.

16.1.1 MAD FORMAT

C16-2: The datagrams in the Performance class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 205 Performance Management MAD Format on page 1080](#) and [Table 267 Performance Management MAD Fields on page 1080](#) below.

The performance management class supports an optional PM_Key as indicated in ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsPMKeySupported. If the PM_Key option is not supported, PM_Key field in the MAD format in [Figure 205 Performance Management MAD Format](#) is a reserved field.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24				PM_Key
28				
32				Reserved
...				
60				
64				Data
...				
252				

Figure 205 Performance Management MAD Format

Table 267

Performance Management MAD Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
PM_Key	8 bytes	Performance Management Key is used to validate the source of the Performance Management MADs, see 13.4.8.4 Class Management Key and KeyInfo on page 806 for definition and use.
Reserved	32 bytes	Reserved

Table 267 Performance Management MAD Fields (Continued) (Continued)

Field Name	Length	Description
Data	192 bytes	Attribute data is mapped bit for bit from the format described in the following sections to the start of this data field. If the attribute is smaller than the data field, the content of the remainder of the data field is unspecified.

16.1.1.1 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 268 Performance Management Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Class-specific bits are reserved

16.1.2 METHODS

The Performance Management class uses a subset of the common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

C16-2.1.1: A Performance Management Agent **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 269 Performance Management Methods on page 1081](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

Table 269 Performance Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
PerformanceGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of a class specific information attribute.
PerformanceSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of a class specific information attribute.
PerformanceTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent from the PMA to the PerfMgr indicating that an event occurred. Contains the Notice Attribute as defined in 16.1.4.1 Traps and Notices on page 1106 to identify the trap. Only valid when PMA supports IsPMKeySupported option.
PerformanceTrapRepress	0x07	Instruct trap sender to cease sending a repeated trap notification. Only valid when PMA supports IsPMKeySupported option.
PerformanceGetResp()	0x81	Response from a Get() or Set() request.

16.1.3 MANDATORY ATTRIBUTES

C16-2.1.2: A Performance Management Agent **shall** support the mandatory attributes listed in [Table 270 Mandatory Performance Management Attributes on page 1082](#) and [Table 271 Mandatory Performance Management Attributes on page 1083](#).

ment Attribute / Method Map on page 1082. All attribute IDs not listed in Table 270: Mandatory Performance Management Attributes and Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104 are reserved.

The attributes are described in detail in the sections following the table. The use model for these attributes is described in [16.1.3.6 Typical Performance Attribute Use Model on page 1102](#).

Table 270 Mandatory Performance Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	See 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
PortSamplesControl	0x0010	Selects one of n independent sampling mechanisms; zero (0) shall be implemented.	Port Performance Data Sampling Control. See 16.1.3.2 PortSamplesControl on page 1083
PortSamplesResult	0x0011	Selects one of n independent sampling mechanisms; zero (0) shall be implemented.	Port Performance Data Sampling Results. See 16.1.3.4 PortSamplesResult on page 1097
PortCounters	0x0012	0x00000000	Port Basic Performance & Error Counters. See 16.1.3.5 PortCounters on page 1098
Reserved	0x0013-0x0014	0x00000000-0xFFFFFFFF	Reserved

Table 271 Mandatory Performance Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	Performance Get()	Performance Set()	Performance Trap()	PerformanceTrapRepress()
ClassPortInfo	X			
PortSamplesControl	X	X		
PortSamplesResult	X			
PortCounters	X	X		

16.1.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#).

Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799

Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask (Continued)

Bits	Name	Meaning
8	AllPortSelect	If reported as 1, indicates that all attributes containing the PortSelect component support setting it to 0xFF to gather data from all ports at once. If reported as 0, using 0xFF in PortSelect results in undefined behavior.
9	IsExtendedWidthSupported	The PortSamplesResultExtended and PortCountersExtended attributes are supported
10	IsExtendedWidthSupportedNoIETF	The PortSamplesResultExtended and PortCountersExtended attributes are supported, with the exception of the PortUnicastXmitPkts, PortUnicastRcvPkts, PortMultiCastXmitPkts, and PortMultiCastRcvPkts components. This bit is ignored if IsExtendedWidthSupported is set.
11	SamplesOnlySupported	PortSamplesControl quantities that can be sampled but not polled are available
12	PortCountersXmitWaitSupported	PortCounters:PortXmitWait supported
13	IsInhibitLimitedPkeyMulticastConstraintErrors	If IsInhibitLimitedPkeyMulticastConstraintErrors is set to 1, then PortCounters:PortXmitConstraintErrors does not contain counts of multicast packets with a limited P_Key on a port where only that same limited P_Key and not the full member P_Key is allowed on that port.
14	IsRSFECCountersSupported	Indicates that PortExtendedSpeedsCounters supports the RS-FEC counters.
15	IsQP1DroppedSupported	PortCounters:QP1Dropped supported

Table 273 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2

Bits	Name	Meaning
0	IsPMKeySupported	PM_Key supported ^a
1	IsAdditionalPortCountersExtended-Supported	When set to 1, the additional counters are supported in PortCountersExtended. Note that this bit can only be set along with IsExtendedWidthSupported or IsExtendedWidthSupportedNoIETF. The 64 bit version of the QP1Dropped counter is supported if both IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported and IsQP1DroppedSupported bits are set to 1.
2	IsVirtualizationSupported	Indicates that virtualization is supported. See Annex A18: Virtualization

a. Applicable to PMA and VPort PMA (See [Annex A18: Virtualization](#))

16.1.3.2 PORTSAMPLESCONTROL

The PortSamplesControl attribute is mandatory. It provides a means of initiating a sample and selecting, for one selected port during the specified interval, quantities to be sampled such as:

- The amount of data sent and received
- The number of packets sent and received
- The transmit queue depth at the start of the interval

The complete list of quantities that can be sampled using this mechanism is given in [Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091](#).

Sampling is initiated by means of a PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl). Sampling status and results are obtained by means of a PerformanceGet(PortSamplesResult).

To support random sampling that is decoupled from MAD latencies and other port activities at either the sender or receiver, the PortSamplesControl attribute provides a means to specify a delayed start time for the sample interval. See the SampleStart component in [Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085](#).

Performance sampling operations are based on a standard time interval called a tick. A tick is a multiple of the time needed to transfer one byte on an IBA lane, i.e., the symbol time (see Vol. 2 Glossary). For example, for links operating at IBA SDR (Single Data Rate), the symbol time is 4 nsec. independent of the width of the link. Implementers have available a range of multipliers of the basic tick interval.

The AttributeModifier selects one of several possible independent sampling mechanisms.

C16-3: All nodes **shall** implement PortSamplesControl ([Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085](#)) and PortSamplesResult ([Table 276 PortSamplesResult on page 1097](#)) corresponding to an AttributeModifier of zero. Implementation of additional sets of PortSamplesControl and PortSamplesResult permits simultaneous sampling of multiple ports, and **shall** use ascending AttributeModifier values starting with one (1). The number of additional sets implemented is defined in PortSamplesControl.SampleMechanisms.

C16-4: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C16-4.1.1](#):

C16-4.1.1: For each sampling mechanism, at least one and up to 15 counters **shall** be implemented

o16-4.2-1.1: If any bit is set to 1 in PortSamplesControl:SamplesOnlyOptionMask, the corresponding bit **shall** not be set to 1 in the PortSamplesControl:OptionMask.

o16-4.2-1.2: If any component of an optional Performance Management attribute corresponds to a bit set to 1 in PortSamplesControl:SamplesOn-

lyOptionMask, then **no** bit corresponding to any component of that attribute **shall** be set to 1 in PortSamplesControl:OptionMask..

Table 274 PortSamplesControl

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OpCode	RW	8	0	Used to select a specific packet op code (as found in BTH) when sampling optional quantities that are op code specific. If OpCode is 0xFF, all op codes are sampled as one otherwise only one op code can be sampled at a time, although multiple quantities can be sampled for the same op code.
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port that will be sampled. For a channel adapter or router, PortSelect refers to an endpoint with the only valid value being the port number of which the request was received. For a switch, PortSelect refers to a switch port with valid values ranging from 0 to the number of ports in the switch. However, 0 is only valid for the enhanced switch management port; it is ignored for the base management port. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause samples from all valid ports (as defined in the previous paragraph) to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
Tick	RO	8	16	Indicates the node's sampling clock interval as a multiple of the symbol time, the time needed to transfer one byte on an IBA lane. For example, for links operating at IBA SDR (Single Data Rate), the symbol time is 4 nanoseconds, independent of the width of the link. The encoding is: 0x00 = 1x symbol time (4 nanoseconds for SDR) 0x01 = 2x symbol time ... 0xFF = 256x symbol time To maximize utility of the performance attributes, implementers are encouraged to choose the smallest practical tick size.
Reserved	RO	5	24	Reserved

Table 274

PortSamplesControl (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterWidth	RO	3	29	<p>Indicates the actual width in bits of the following components:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SampleStart• SampleInterval• PortSamplesResult:Counter0 to 14 <p>The encoding is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">0 = 16 bits1 = 20 bits2 = 24 bits3 = 28 bits4 = 32 bits5-7 = reserved <p>Counters smaller than 32 bits shall be implemented as the least significant bits of the corresponding 32-bit attribute component, with the unimplemented upper bits of the component returning zeroes for Get and ignored for Set. CounterWidth only affects the width of Counter0 to Counter14 in PortSamplesResult; it has no effect on the width of Counter0 to Counter14 in PortSamplesResultExtended.</p>
Reserved	RO	2	32	Reserved
CounterMask0	RO	3	34	<p>A bitmask that determines the capabilities of PortSamplesResult:Counter0.</p> <p>Bit 0 = supports all mandatory quantities; shall be 1</p> <p>Bit 1 = supports optional quantities</p> <p>Bit 2 = supports vendor-defined quantities</p>
CounterMasks1to9	RO	27	37	<p>An array of nine 3-bit bitmasks, each of which determines the capabilities of an optional counter in PortSamplesResult. The most significant 3-bit field corresponds to PortSamplesResult:Counter1; the least significant field corresponds to PortSamplesResult:Counter9</p> <p>Encoding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Bit 0 = supports all mandatory quantitiesBit 1 = supports optional quantitiesBit 2 = supports vendor-defined quantities <p>All bits zero means the counter is not implemented</p>
Reserved	RO	1	64	Reserved.
CounterMasks10to14	RO	15	65	<p>An array of five 3-bit bitmasks, each of which determines the capabilities of an optional counter in PortSamplesResult. The most significant 3-bit field corresponds to PortSamplesResult:Counter10; the least significant field corresponds to PortSamplesResult:Counter14</p> <p>Encoding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Bit 0 = supports all mandatory quantitiesBit 1 = supports optional quantitiesBit 2 = supports vendor-defined quantities <p>All bits zero means the counter is not implemented</p>

Table 274

PortSamplesControl (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
SampleMechanisms	RO	8	80	<p>The number of independent sample mechanisms implemented (i.e., sets of PortSamplesControl and PortSamplesResult), minus one:</p> <p>0 = one sample mechanism is available (addressed via AttributeModifier zero)</p> <p>1 = two sample mechanisms are available, AttributeModifiers 0 and 1</p> <p>...</p> <p>255 = 256 sample mechanisms are available, addressed via AttributeModifiers 0 through 255</p> <p>Providing multiple sampling mechanisms is optional. N sample mechanisms would permit N independent samples to be run simultaneously. The result of using an AttributeModifier value of 0xFFFFFFFF is vendor-specific.</p>
Reserved	RO	6	88	Reserved
SampleStatus	RO	2	94	<p>Indicates the status of sampling:</p> <p>0 = sampling is complete and the results are available from the PortSamplesResult attribute</p> <p>1 = the SampleStart timer is running. All sample counter values in PortSamplesResult are undefined</p> <p>2 = sampling is underway. All sample counter values in PortSamplesResult are undefined</p> <p>3 = reserved</p> <p>While SampleStatus is non-zero, a PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl) will not affect PortSamplesControl and will return the existing values of all components</p>

Table 274

PortSamplesControl (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OptionMask	RO	64	96	A bit mask indicating which optional InfiniBand performance quantities are implemented, if any. See Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091 for a description of each quantity or set of quantities: Bit 0 (LSB) = reserved. Bit 1 = PortXmitQueue[n] Bit 2 = PortXmitDataVL[n] Bit 3 = PortRcvDataVL[n] Bit 4 = PortXmitPktVL[n] Bit 5 = PortRcvPktVL[n] Bit 6 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortLocalPhysicalErrors Bit 7 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortMalformedPacketErrors Bit 8 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortBufferOverrunErrors Bit 9 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortDLIDMappingErrors Bit 10 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortVLMappingErrors Bit 11 = PortRcvErrorDetails:PortLoopingErrors Bit 12 = PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortInactiveDiscards Bit 13 = PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortNeighborMTUDiscards Bit 14 = PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortSwLifetimeLimitDiscards Bit 15 = PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortSwHOQLifetimeLimitDiscards Bit 16 = PortOpRcvCounters:PortOpRcvPkts Bit 17 = PortOpRcvCounters:PortOpRcvData Bit 18 = PortFlowCtlCounters:PortXmitFlowPkts Bit 19 = PortFlowCtlCounters:PortRcvFlowPkts Bit 20 = PortVLOpPackets:PortVLOpPackets[n] Bit 21 = PortVLOpData:PortVLOpData[n] Bit 22 = PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors:PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors[n] Bit 23 = PortVLXmitWaitCounters:PortVLXmitWait[n] Bit 24 = PortUnicastXmitPkts Bit 25 = PortUnicastRcvPkts Bit 26 = PortMulticastXmitPkts Bit 27 = PortMulticastRcvPkts Bit 28 = PortExtendedSpeedsCounters Bits 29 - 47 Reserved Bit 48 = SwPortVLCongestion:SWPortVLCongestion[n] Bit 49 = PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvFECN Bit 50 = PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvBECN Bit 51 = PortSLRcvFECN:PortSLPktRcvFECN[n] Bit 52 = PortSLRcvBECN:PortSLPktRcvBECN[n] Bit 53 = PortXmitConCtrl:PortXmitTimeCong Bit 54 = PortVLXmitTimeCong:PortVLXmitTimeCong[n] Bit 55 = PortXmitDataSL[n] Bit 56 = PortRcvDataSL[n]

Table 274

PortSamplesControl (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OptionMask (cont'd)				<p>Bit 57 = PortXmitDataSLExt[n] Bit 58 = PortRcvDataSLExt[n] Bits 59-63 Reserved. Performance quantities that are counted per VL are limited to the actual number of VLs implemented. The result of selecting an unimplemented quantity is all zeroes. See Annex Annex A10: Congestion Control on page 1797 for descriptions of the counters designated by bits 49 - 54. See A13.6 Performance Counters on page 1872 for descriptions of counters designated by bits 55 & 56</p>
VendorMask	RO	64	160	A bitmask indicating which vendor-specific counters are implemented. Shall be zero if the node does not support any vendor-specific counters, otherwise use is vendor-defined
SampleStart	RW	32	224	<p>Determines when the sampling interval starts. When Set, this value is loaded into a timer and the following events occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SampleStatus is set to 1 • Counters in PortSamplesResult are set to zero • The timer begins decrementing once per tick <p>When the timer reaches zero, timing stops and the following events occur</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The PortXmitQueue quantities if selected are latched • PortSamplesResult counters are started • SampleStatus is set to 2 • The SampleInterval timer is started <p>The SampleStart timer allows a performance application to randomize the sample start time and insure decoupling from node or network events. Values used will typically be 10's of milliseconds. It is the fine granularity of this interval with respect to the link rate that makes decoupling possible</p>
SampleInterval	RW	32	256	<p>Determines the length of the sampling interval. When Set, this value is loaded into a timer. When the SampleStart counter reaches zero, this timer begins decrementing once per tick. When it reaches zero, timing stops and the following events occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PortSamplesResult counters are stopped and the resulting values made available • SampleStatus is set to zero
Tag	RW	16	288	<p>Used by a performance application when it does a Performance-Set(PortSamplesControl) to uniquely identify its sample run in case of a collision with another performance application</p> <p>When an application wishes to start a sample run, it should pick a random Tag value and do a PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl). If the returned value of Tag does not match the selected value, another application is using the sampling mechanism. In this case the first application should wait for a suitable time and retry its sample</p>

Table 274**PortSamplesControl (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect0	RW	16	304	Selects quantity to be sampled by PortSamplesResult:Counter0 as defined in Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091 . If an unimplemented quantity is selected, a Get to PortSamplesResult:Counter0 returns zeroes
CounterSelect1	RW	16	320	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter1
CounterSelect2	RW	16	336	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter2
CounterSelect3	RW	16	352	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter3
CounterSelect4	RW	16	368	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter4
CounterSelect5	RW	16	384	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter5
CounterSelect6	RW	16	400	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter6
CounterSelect7	RW	16	416	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter7
CounterSelect8	RW	16	432	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter8
CounterSelect9	RW	16	448	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter9
CounterSelect10	RW	16	464	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter10
CounterSelect11	RW	16	480	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter11
CounterSelect12	RW	16	496	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter12
CounterSelect13	RW	16	512	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter13
CounterSelect14	RW	16	528	Similar to CounterSelect0; selects quantity to be sampled by Port-SamplesResult:Counter14
Reserved	RO	32	544	Reserved
SamplesOnlyOptionMask	RO	64	576	If SamplesOnlySupported = 1: A bit mask indicating which optional performance quantities are supported in samples-only mode, if any. See Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091 for a description of each quantity or set of quantities. Refer to OptionMask on page 1088 for a definition of the bits in this component. If SamplesOnlySupported = 0: Reserved.

Table 274

PortSamplesControl (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	896	640	Reserved

16.1.3.3 COUNTERSELECT VALUES

Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091 lists the values that can be used in the CounterSelect[n] components of the PortSamplesControl attribute to select a particular quantity to sample.

Quantities that can be sampled are divided into 3 ranges:

- Mandatory quantities (0x0000 - 0x3FFF).

C16-5: Mandatory quantities for performance sampling **shall** be implemented on ports as specified by PortSamplesControl:PortSelect.

- Optional quantities (0x4000 - 0xBFFF).

o16-1: If provided, optional quantities for performance sampling **shall** be implemented as described.

- Vendor quantities (0xC000 - 0xFFFF). Vendors may define and implement their own quantities in this range

Table 275

CounterSelect Values

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
Mandatory Quantities		
0x0000	Reserved	Reserved
0x0001	PortXmitData	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on all VLs during the sampling interval from the port selected by PortSelect. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195). It excludes all link packets. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported in units of four octets.

Table 275**CounterSelect Values (Continued)**

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x0002	PortRcvData	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on all VLs during the sampling interval at the port selected by PortSelect. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195). It excludes all link packets. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported in units of four octets.
0x0003	PortXmitPkts	Total number of packets transmitted on all VLs from this port. This may include packets with errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195), and excludes link packets.
0x0004	PortRcvPkts	Total number of packets (this may include packets containing errors; see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195) and excluding link packets, received on all VLs during the sampling interval on the port selected by PortSelect.
0x0005	PortXmitWait	The number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect had data to transmit but no data was sent during the entire tick either because of insufficient credits or because of lack of arbitration.
0x0006-0x3FFF	Reserved	Reserved.

Table 275

CounterSelect Values (Continued)

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
Optional InfiniBand Quantities		
<p>There are 2 mechanisms for accessing optional Performance Management quantities. The first mechanism is polling via an optional attribute which allows direct access to the underlying free-running counter reflecting the quantity. The second is sampling via the PortSamplesControl and PortSamplesResult/PortSamplesResultExtended attributes. If the bit corresponding to a quantity is set in the PortSamplesControl:OptionMask component then both mechanisms for accessing that quantity are supported. If the bit corresponding to a quantity is set in the PortSamplesControl:SamplesOnlyOptionMask then only the sampling mechanism for accessing that quantity is supported. For quantities such as PortXmitQueue[n]] which have no corresponding optional attribute, only the sampling mechanism can be supported, and thus, the corresponding bit should only be set in the SamplesOnlyOptionMask component, and never in the OptionMask component.</p> <p>All values between 0x4000 and 0xBFFF not listed here or in an annex are reserved and the result of sampling is all zeroes</p>		
0x4n00	PortXmitQueue[n]	<p>Contains the transmit queue depth in bytes on VL “n” of the port selected by PortSelect at the time the SampleStart timer expired</p> <p>The goal of measuring queue depths is to enable software to compute the average time data waits for transmission inside a node. Ideally, a node should increment a counter upon arrival of each byte that is destined for a given output port and should decrement the counter upon departure of each byte from the output port. In practice, this will be impossible to implement precisely. Implementers are encouraged to measure queue depths as accurately as practical and to document any systematic measurement errors.</p> <p>Note that an implementation can compensate for an inherent delay in accounting for arriving bytes by introducing an equal delay in accounting for departing bytes</p>
0x4n01	PortXmitDataVL[n]	<p>Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on VL “n” from the port selected by PortSelect. This includes all octets between the start of packet and end of packet delimiters. It excludes all control groups and VCRCs.</p> <p>Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets</p>
0x4n02	PortRcvDataVL[n]	<p>Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on input VL “n” on the port selected by PortSelect. This includes all octets between the start of packet and end of packet delimiters. It excludes all control groups and VCRCs.</p> <p>Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets</p>
0x4n03	PortXmitPktVL[n]	Total number of packets transmitted on VL “n” from the port selected by PortSelect with or without errors.
0x4n04	PortRcvPktVL[n]	Total number of packets received on input VL “n” from the port selected by PortSelect with or without errors.

Table 275 CounterSelect Values (Continued)

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x4005	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortLocalPhysicalErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x4006	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortMalformedPacketErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x4007	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortBufferOverrunErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x4008	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortDLIDMappingErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x4009	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortVLMappingErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x400A	PortRcvErrorDetails:PortLoopingErrors	See Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
0x400B	PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortInactiveDiscards	See Table 281 PortXmitDiscardDetails on page 1108 .
0x400C	PortXmitDiscardDetails:PortNeighborMTUDiscards	See Table 281 PortXmitDiscardDetails on page 1108 .
0x400D	PortXmitDiscard-Details:PortSwLifetimeLimitDiscards	See Table 281 PortXmitDiscardDetails on page 1108 .
0x400E	PortXmitDiscard-Details:PortSwHOQLifetimeLimitDiscards	See Table 281 PortXmitDiscardDetails on page 1108 .
0x400F	PortOpRcvCounters:PortOpRcvPkts	See Table 282 PortOpRcvCounters on page 1109 . The op code to be sampled is selected by PortSamplesControl:OpCode.
0x4010	PortOpRcvCounters:PortOpRcvData	See Table 282 PortOpRcvCounters on page 1109 . The op code to be sampled is selected by PortSamplesControl:OpCode.
0x4011	PortFlowCtlCounters:PortXmitFlowPkts	See Table 283 PortFlowCtlCounters on page 1110 .
0x4012	PortFlowCtlCounters:PortRcvFlowPkts	See Table 283 PortFlowCtlCounters on page 1110
0x4n13	PortVLOpPackets:PortVLOpPackets[n]	See Table 284 PortVLOpPackets on page 1111 . The op code to be sampled is selected by PortSamplesControl:OpCode
0x4n14	PortVLOpData:PortVLOpData[n]	See Table 285 PortVLOpData on page 1112 . The op code to be sampled is selected by PortSamplesControl:OpCode
0x4n15	PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors:PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors[n]	See Table 286 PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors on page 1114 .

Table 275 CounterSelect Values (Continued)

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x4n16	PortVLXmitWaitCounters:PortVLXmitWait[n]	See Table 287 PortVLXmitWaitCounters on page 1115
0x4017	PortUnicastXmitPkts	See Table 290 PortCountersExtended on page 1120
0x4018	PortUnicastRcvPkts	See Table 290 PortCountersExtended on page 1120
0x4019	PortMulticastXmitPkts	See Table 290 PortCountersExtended on page 1120
0x401A	PortMulticastRcvPkts	See Table 290 PortCountersExtended on page 1120
0x4n30	SwPortVLCongestion:SWPortVLCongestion[n]	See Table 288 SwPortVLCongestion on page 1117
0x4040	SyncHeaderErrorCounter	Count of errored block sync header on one or more lanes
0x4041	UnknownBlockCounter	Count of the following errors: a) An errored block sync header is detected on one or more lanes b) Control block with unknown Block type is detected on one or more lanes c) Errored control block is detected on one or more lanes (i.e., idle block) with one or more bytes without idle data (0x00)
0x405n	ErrorDetectionCounterLane<n>	A per lane count of the EDPL errors on that lane Note: ErrorDetectionCounterLLane<n> is in decimal whereas CounterSelect value (lane) n is in hex
0x406n	FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane<n>	A per lane count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on that lane Note: FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane<n> is in decimal whereas CounterSelect value (lane) n is in hex
0x407n	FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane<n>	A per lane count of the uncorrectable errors detected on that lane Note: FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane<n> is in decimal whereas CounterSelect value (lane) n is in hex
0x5001	PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvFECN	See PortPktRcvFECN on page 1837
0x5002	PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvBECN	See PortPktRcvBECN on page 1837
0x5n03	PortSLRcvFECN:PortSLPktRcvFECN[n]	See Table 585 PortSLRcvFECN on page 1838
0x5n04	PortSLRcvBECN:PortSLPktRcvBECN[n]	See Table 586 PortSLRcvBECN on page 1839
0x5005	PortXmitConCtrl:PortXmitTimeCong	See PortXmitTimeCong on page 1841
0x5n06	PortVLXmitDataRoot:PortVLXmitTimeCong[n]	See Table 588 PortVLXmitTimeCong on page 1841

Table 275**CounterSelect Values (Continued)**

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x5n07	PortXmitDataSL[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL[n] from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
0x5n08	PortRcvDataSL[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL[n] on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
0x5n09	PortXmitDataSLExt[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL[n] from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
0x5n0A	PortRcvDataSLExt[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL[n] on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
Vendor-Defined Quantities		
Semantics for vendor-defined quantities are not part of this specification.		
0xC000-0xFFFF	Reserved	Reserved for vendor-specific counters

16.1.3.4 PORTSAMPLESRESULT

This mandatory attribute reports the results of a particular sample controlled and initiated via the PortSamplesControl attribute.

Table 276 **PortSamplesResult**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Tag	RO	16	0	<p>Read-only copy of PortSamplesControl:Tag.</p> <p>The Tag mechanism provides a means for performance applications to detect collisions when using the sampling mechanism. After successfully initiating a sample run, an application should wait until the sample should have completed, then repeat a Performance-Get(PortSamplesResult) until SampleStatus is zero. If after any Get the Tag value in the result does not match the value set by the application at the start of the run, another application has already started a new sample. In this case the first application should wait for a suitable time and retry its sample</p>
Reserved	RO	14	16	Reserved
SampleStatus	RO	2	30	Read-only copy of PortSamplesControl:SampleStatus. Provided here to minimize traffic while application is polling for sample completion
Counter0	RO	32	32	Mandatory counter. When PortSamplesControl:SampleStatus is zero, contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect0. Undefined when PortSamplesControl:SampleStatus is non-zero. The actual number of valid (least significant) bits in the counter is defined by PortSamplesControl:CounterWidth
Counter1	RO	32	64	Optional counter. All zeroes if not implemented; otherwise similar to Counter0. Contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect1
Counter2	RO	32	96	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect2
Counter3	RO	32	128	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect3
Counter4	RO	32	160	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect4
Counter5	RO	32	192	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect5
Counter6	RO	32	224	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect6
Counter7	RO	32	256	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect7
Counter8	RO	32	288	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect8

Table 276 PortSamplesResult (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Counter9	RO	32	320	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect9
Counter10	RO	32	352	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect10
Counter11	RO	32	384	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect11
Counter12	RO	32	416	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect12
Counter13	RO	32	448	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect13
Counter14	RO	32	480	Similar to Counter1; contains the result of sampling the quantity selected by PortSamplesControl:CounterSelect14

16.1.3.5 PORTCOUNTERS**C16-6:** The PortCounters attribute of the Performance class is mandatory.

PortCounters provides basic performance and exception statistics for a port selected by PortCounters:PortSelect.

C16-7: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C16-7.2-1.1](#):**C16-7.2-1.1:** When initially powered up or reset, the value of all counters contained in PortCounters on all ports of a node **shall** be set to zero. During operation, instead of overflowing, they **shall** stop at all ones. At any time, writing (Set) zero into a counter **shall** cause the counter to be reset to zero.

Note that writing (Set) anything other than zero into a counter results in undefined behavior.

Note that although PortCounters is mandatory, it contains components that are optional.

Table 277 PortCounters

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved

Table 277 PortCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port that will be accessed. For a channel adapter or router, PortSelect refers to an endpoint with the only valid value being the port number on which the request was received. For a switch, PortSelect refers to a switch port with valid values ranging from 0 to the number of ports in the switch. However, 0 is only valid for the enhanced switch management port; it is ignored for the base switch management port.</p> <p>If simultaneous gathering of data from all ports is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:Capability-Mask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause results from all valid ports (as defined in the previous paragraph) to be accumulated. PerformanceSet(PortCounters) with PortSelect set to 0xFF shall alter the contents of the counters selected by CounterSelect for all valid ports. Each component in the PortCounter Attribute in PerformanceGetResp(PortCounters) that is returned in response to PerformanceGet(PortCounters) or PerformanceSet(PortCounters) with PortSelect set to 0xFF shall contain the sum of counter values corresponding to that component of all valid ports.</p> <p>When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are affected by the operation. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bit 0 - SymbolErrorCounter Bit 1 - LinkErrorRecoveryCounter Bit 2 - LinkDownedCounter Bit 3 - PortRcvErrors Bit 4 - PortRcvRemotePhysicalErrors Bit 5 - PortRcvSwitchRelayErrors Bit 6 - PortXmitDiscards Bit 7 - PortXmitConstraintErrors Bit 8 - PortRcvConstraintErrors Bit 9 - LocalLinkIntegrityErrors Bit 10 - ExcessiveBufferOverrunErrors Bit 11 - VL15Dropped Bit 12 - PortXmitData Bit 13 - PortRcvData Bit 14 - PortXmitPkts Bit 15 - PortRcvPkts
SymbolErrorCounter	RW	16	32	Total number of minor link errors detected on one or more physical lanes. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface.
LinkErrorRecovery-Counter	RW	8	48	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has successfully completed the link error recovery process. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface.

Table 277 PortCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LinkDownedCounter	RW	8	56	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has failed the link error recovery process and downed the link. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface.
PortRcvErrors	RW	16	64	<p>Total number of packets containing an error that were received on the port. These errors include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Local physical errors (ICRC, VCRC, LPCRC, and all physical errors that cause entry into the BAD PACKET or BAD PACKET DISCARD states of the packet receiver state machine) • Malformed data packet errors (LVer, length, VL) • Malformed link packet errors (operand, length, VL) • Packets discarded due to buffer overrun
PortRcvRemotePhysicalErrors	RW	16	80	Total number of packets marked with the EBP delimiter received on the port.
PortRcvSwitchRelayErrors	RW	16	96	<p>Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay. Reasons for this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DLID mapping (see the description of PortDLIDMappingErrors in Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107) • VL mapping • Looping (output port = input port)
PortXmitDiscards	RW	16	112	<p>Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because the port is down or congested. Reasons for this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Output port is not in the active state • Packet length exceeded NeighborMTU • Switch Lifetime Limit exceeded • Switch HOQ Lifetime Limit exceeded <p>This may also include packets discarded while in VLStalled State.</p>
PortXmitConstraintErrors	RW	8	128	<p>Total number of packets not transmitted from the switch physical port for the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FilterRawOutbound is true and packet is raw • PartitionEnforcementOutbound is true and packet fails partition key check or IP version check <p>If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsInhibitLimitedPKeyMulticastConstraintErrors is set to 1, then counts of multicast packets with a limited P_Key transmitted on a port where only that same limited P_Key and not the full member P_Key is allowed on that port are not included in this counter.</p>

Table 277 PortCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvConstraintErrors	RW	8	136	Total number of packets received on the switch physical port that are discarded for the following reasons: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FilterRawInbound is true and packet is raw• PartitionEnforcementInbound is true and packet fails partition key check or IP version check
CounterSelect2	RW	8	144	On Set(), selects which of the following optional counters are affected by the operation. On Get(), ignored. Bit 0 - PortXmitWait Bit 1 - QP1Dropped Bits 2 through 7 - reserved
LocalLinkIntegrityErrors	RW	4	152	The number of times that the count of local physical errors exceeded the threshold specified by LocalPhyErrors; see 7.12.1 Error Detection on page 242 and Table 164 PortInfo on page 899 .
ExcessiveBufferOverrunErrors	RW	4	156	The number of times that OverrunErrors consecutive flow control update periods occurred, each having at least one overrun error; see 7.12.1 Error Detection on page 242 and Table 164 PortInfo on page 899 .
QP1Dropped	RW	16	160	Number of QP1 MADs (packets) dropped due to resource limitations (e.g., lack of buffers or receives posted) on the port. Only valid on end ports.
VL15Dropped	RW	16	176	Number of incoming VL15 packets dropped due to resource limitations (e.g., lack of buffers) in the port
PortXmitData	RW	32	192	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on all VLs from the port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195). It excludes all link packets. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.

Table 277 PortCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvData	RW	32	224	<p>Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on all VLs at the port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the VCRC, and may include packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195). It excludes all link packets.</p> <p>When the received packet length exceeds the maximum allowed packet length specified in C7-45, the counter may include all data octets exceeding this limit.</p> <p>Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.</p>
PortXmitPkts	RW	32	256	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of packets transmitted on all VLs from the port. This may include packets with errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195), and excludes link packets.
PortRcvPkts	RW	32	288	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of packets, including packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195), and excluding link packets, received from all VLs on the port.
PortXmitWait	RW	32	320	<p>If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.PortCountersXmitWaitSupported is set to 1, the number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect had data to transmit but no data was sent during the entire tick either because of insufficient credits or because of lack of arbitration.</p> <p>Otherwise, undefined.</p>

16.1.3.6 TYPICAL PERFORMANCE ATTRIBUTE USE MODEL

This section describes how PerformanceGet() and PerformanceSet() can be used to read and reset the performance counters.

PortSamplesControl and PortSamplesResult are used together to sample one or more quantities over a specified period of time:

The application can first determine the node's sampling capabilities via a PerformanceGet(PortSamplesControl). This will return the number and width of available counters, the quantities that can be sampled, and the basic time interval (tick). From these the application can compute the maximum sample interval that will not cause counter overflow.

C16-8: This Compliance Statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

To perform a sampling operation, the performance manager will typically perform the following sequence:

- Select a random value for SampleStart. The SampleStart timer allows a performance application to randomize the sample start time and insure decoupling from node or network events. Values used will typically be 10's of milliseconds.
- Select a random Tag value. This value is used to detect collisions among multiple independent performance applications accessing the same node
- Select a SampleInterval value, the quantities to be sampled, and the counter that will be assigned to count each quantity.
- Do a PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl). If the returned value of Tag does not match the selected value, another application is using the sampling mechanism. In this case the first application **must** wait for a suitable time and retry the PerformanceSet().
- Once the sample has been successfully started, the application should wait until the SampleStart and SampleInterval timers should have expired, then repeat PerformanceGet(PortSamplesResult) until SampleStatus is zero. If at any time the returned Tag value no longer matches the application's chosen value, regardless of SampleStatus, it means another application has gained control of the sampling mechanism. In this case the first application could restart the sampling process.
- If the PMA has indicated support for Extended Counters by setting the ClassPortInfo:IsExtendedWidthSupported or ClassPortInfo:IsExtendedWidthSupportedNoIETF bit, then the sample result may be obtained by either PerformanceGet(PortSamplesResult) or PerformanceGet(PortSamplesResultExtended). In the case of PortSamplesResult, the width of the counters is determined by the previous result of the PerformanceGetResp(PortSamplesControl). In the case of PortSamplesResultExtended, the width of the counters is determined by PortSamplesResultExtended:ExtendedWidth.

If more than one set of sampling mechanisms is implemented, the additional ones are addressed using non-zero AttributeModifier values. The previous use model applies to each pair of PortSamplesControl and PortSamplesResult, treating each as an independent entity.

16.1.4 OPTIONAL ATTRIBUTES

Performance Management defines the optional Attributes and Attribute-Modifier use summarized in [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#). They are described in detail in the sections following the table. All quantities in these attributes which have a corresponding OptionMask bit set can also be sampled via the PortSample-

sControl mechanism. The optional Attributes available are reflected by the OptionMask in the PortSamplesControl attribute.

The behavior of all optional counters is as specified in [C16-7: on page 1098](#), as applied to any counters in the optional attributes.

o16-2: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

o16-2.1.1: If any components of an optional Performance Management attribute is supported according to PortSamplesControl:OptionMask, then that attribute **shall** be supported by a Performance Management Agent, as indicated in [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#) and [Table 279 Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1106](#).

o16-8.2-1.1: If any component of an optional Performance Management attribute corresponds to a bit set to 1 in PortSamplesControl:SamplesOnlyOptionMask, then any access to the attribute as indicated in [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#) and [Table 279 Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1106](#) **shall** result in either a value of zero or an error status being returned. Valid results are only available through the PortSamplesControl and Port-SamplesResult/PortSamplesResultExtended attributes.

Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Provides information regarding the associated Notice or Trap. See 16.1.4.1 Traps and Notices on page 1106 . Only valid when PMA supports IsPMKey-Supported option.
KeyInfo	0x000F	0x00000000	Provides PM_Key information for a port. See 13.4.8.4 Class Management Key and KeyInfo on page 806 . Only valid when PMA supports IsPMKey-Supported option.
PortRcvErrorDetails	0x0015	0x00000000	Port Detailed Error Counters. See 16.1.4.2 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107 .
PortXmitDiscardDetails	0x0016	0x00000000	Port Transmit Discard Counters. See 16.1.4.3 PortXmitDiscardDetails on page 1108 .
PortOpRcvCounters	0x0017	0x00000000	Port Receive Counters per Op Code. See 16.1.4.4 PortOpRcvCounters on page 1109 .
PortFlowCtlCounters	0x0018	0x00000000	Port Flow Control Counters. See 16.1.4.5 PortFlowCtlCounters on page 1110 .

Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
PortVLOpPackets	0x0019	0x00000000	Port Packets Received per Op Code per VL. See 16.1.4.6 PortVLOpPackets on page 1111 .
PortVLOpData	0x001A	0x00000000	Port Data Received per Op Code per VL. See 16.1.4.7 PortVLOpData on page 1112 .
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	0x001B	0x00000000	Port Flow Control update errors per VL. See 16.1.4.8 PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors on page 1114
PortVLXmitWaitCounters	0x001C	0x00000000	Port Ticks Waiting to Transmit Counters per VL. See 16.1.4.9 PortVLXmitWaitCounters on page 1115 .
PortCountersExtended	0x001D	0x00000000	Extended Port Basic Performance & Error Counters. See 16.1.4.12 PortCountersExtended on page 1120
PortSamplesResultExtended	0x001E	Selects one of n independent sampling mechanisms; zero (0) shall be implemented.	Extended Port Performance Data Sampling Results. See 16.1.4.11 PortSamplesResultExtended on page 1119
PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	0x001F	0x00000000	Extended speeds port counters. See 16.1.4.13 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters on page 1125 .
SwPortVLCongestion	0x0030	0x00000000	Switch Port Congestion per VL. See 16.1.4.10 SwPortVLCongestion on page 1117 .
PortRcvConCtrl	0x0031	0x00000000	See Table 584 PortRcvConCtrl on page 1837
PortSLRcvFECN	0x0032	0x00000000	See Table 585 PortSLRcvFECN on page 1838
PortSLRcvBECN	0x0033	0x00000000	See Table 586 PortSLRcvBECN on page 1839
PortXmitConCtrl	0x0034	0x00000000	See Table 587 PortXmitConCtrl on page 1841
PortXmitTimeCong	0x0035	0x00000000	See Table 588 PortVLXmitTimeCong on page 1841
PortXmitDataSL	0x0036	0x00000000	See A13.6.6 PortXmitDataSL on page 1876
PortRcvDataSL	0x0037	0x00000000	See A13.6.7 PortRcvDataSL on page 1878
PortXmitDataSLExt	0x0038	0x00000000	See A13.6.8 PortXmitDataSLExt on page 1879
PortRcvDataSLExt	0x0039	0x00000000	See A13.6.9 PortRcvDataSLExt on page 1881
VPortCounters	0x0040	0x00000000	VPort performance counters. See Annex A18: Virtualization

Table 279 Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	Performance Get()	Performance Set()	Performance Trap()	Performance TrapRepress
Notice	X	X	X	X
KeyInfo	X	X		
PortRcvErrorDetails	X	X		
PortXmitDiscardDetails	X	X		
PortOpRcvCounters	X	X		
PortFlowCtlCounters	X	X		
PortVLOpPackets	X	X		
PortVLOpData	X	X		
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	X	X		
PortVLXmitWaitCounters	X	X		
PortSamplesResultExtended	X			
PortCountersExtended	X	X		
PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	X	X		
SwPortVLCongestion	X	X		
PortRcvConCtrl	X	X		
PortSLRcvFECN	X	X		
PortSLRcvBECN	X	X		
PortXmitConCtrl	X	X		
PortXmitTimeCong	X	X		
PortXmitDataSL	X	X		
PortRcvDataSL	X	X		
PortXmitDataSLExt	X	X		
PortRcvDataSLExt	X	X		
VPortCounters	X	X		

16.1.4.1 TRAPS AND NOTICES

Notice and Trap Queues allow a PMA to inform a Performance Manager of a PM_Key violation.

o16-2.a1: A Performance Management Agent shall support either a Trap or a Notice Queue if it supports the IsPMKeySupported option.

It is expected that a Performance Manager will be capable of supporting both Trap and Notice Queues.

Traps and Notice Queues are described in detail in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#). Performance Management will use the common framework and this section serves only to describe behavior that is unique to the Performance Management class.

16.1.4.2 PORTRCVERRORDETAILS

Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported. Statistics are accumulated for all VLs on a port.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <p>Bit 0 - PortLocalPhysicalErrors</p> <p>Bit 1 - PortMalformedPacketErrors</p> <p>Bit 2 - PortBufferOverrunErrors</p> <p>Bit 3 - PortDLIDMappingErrors</p> <p>Bit 4 - PortVLMappingErrors</p> <p>Bit 5 - PortLoopingErrors</p> <p>Bits 6 to 15 - Reserved</p>
PortLocalPhysicalErrors	RW	16	32	Total number of packets received on the port that contain local physical errors (ICRC, VCRC, LPCRC, and all physical errors that cause entry into the BAD PACKET or BAD PACKET DISCARD states of the packet receiver state machine).
PortMalformedPacket-Errors	RW	16	48	<p>Total number of packets received on the port that contain malformed packet errors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Data packets: LVer, length, VL• Link packets: operand, length, VL
PortBufferOverrunEr-rors	RW	16	64	Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded due to buffer overrun.

Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortDLIDMappingErrors	RW	16	80	Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay due to DLID mapping errors. DLID mapping errors occur when (a) DLID_Check=invalid as specified in Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195 ; or (b) for any of the discard reasons specified in C18-36 ; C18-40 ; C18-41 ; and C18-51 . This applies to switches only.
PortVLMappingErrors	RW	16	96	Packet discards due to VL mapping behavior are not considered errors, so the behavior of this counter is implementation-dependent. However, it is recommended that this counter be used to count the total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay due to VL mapping behavior 7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205
PortLoopingErrors	RW	16	112	Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay due to looping errors (output port = input port). This applies to switches only.

16.1.4.3 PORTXMITDISCARDDETAILS**Table 281** PortXmitDiscardDetails

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. Statistics are accumulated for all VLs on a port. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortInactiveDiscards Bit 1 - PortNeighborMTUDiscards Bit 2 - PortSwLifetimeLimitDiscards Bit 3 - PortSwHOQLifetimeLimitDiscards Bits 4 to 15 - Reserved

Table 281 PortXmitDiscardDetails (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortInactiveDiscards	RW	16	32	Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because it is not in the active state.
PortNeighborMTUDiscards	RW	16	48	Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because packet length exceeded the PortInfo:NeighborMTU.
PortSwLifetimeLimitDiscards	RW	16	64	Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because the Switch Lifetime Limit was exceeded. Applies to switches only.
PortSwHOQLifetime-LimitDiscards	RW	16	80	Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because the switch HOQ Lifetime Limit was exceeded. Applies to switches only.

16.1.4.4 PORTOPRCVCOUNTERS**Table 282** PortOpRcvCounters

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OpCode	RW	8	0	Selects the op code (as found in BTH) for which the statistics are reported. 0xFF means all op codes.
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. Statistics are accumulated for all VLs on a port. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortOpRcvPkts Bit 1 - PortOpRcvData Bits 2 to 15 - Reserved
PortOpRcvPkts	RW	32	32	Total number of packets received without error on the port selected by PortSelect containing the opcode selected by OpCode.

Table 282 PortOpRcvCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortOpRcvData	RW	32	64	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received without error on all VLs from the port selected by PortSelect containing the opcode selected by OpCode. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and VCRC. It excludes all link packets. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.

16.1.4.5 PORTFLOWCTL COUNTERS**Table 283** PortFlowCtlCounters

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortXmitFlowPkts Bit 1 - PortRcvFlowPkts Bits 2 to 15 - Reserved
PortXmitFlowPkts	RW	32	32	Total number of flow control packets transmitted on the port selected by PortSelect
PortRcvFlowPkts	RW	32	64	Total number of flow control packets received on the port selected by PortSelect

16.1.4.6 PORTVLOPPACKETS**Table 284** PortVLOpPackets

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OpCode	RW	8	0	Selects the op code (as found in BTH) for which the statistics are reported. 0xFF means all op codes.
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortVLOpPackets0 Bit 1 - PortVLOpPackets1 Bit 2 - PortVLOpPackets2 Bit 3 - PortVLOpPackets3 Bit 4 - PortVLOpPackets4 Bit 5 - PortVLOpPackets5 Bit 6 - PortVLOpPackets6 Bit 7 - PortVLOpPackets7 Bit 8 - PortVLOpPackets8 Bit 9 - PortVLOpPackets9 Bit 10 - PortVLOpPackets10 Bit 11 - PortVLOpPackets11 Bit 12 - PortVLOpPackets12 Bit 13 - PortVLOpPackets13 Bit 14 - PortVLOpPackets14 Bit 15 - PortVLOpPackets15
PortVLOpPackets0	RW	16	32	The total number of packets received without error on VL 0 of the port selected by PortSelect containing the opcode selected by OpCode
PortVLOpPackets1	RW	16	48	Similar count for VL1
PortVLOpPackets2	RW	16	64	Similar count for VL2
PortVLOpPackets3	RW	16	80	Similar count for VL3
PortVLOpPackets4	RW	16	96	Similar count for VL4
PortVLOpPackets5	RW	16	112	Similar count for VL5
PortVLOpPackets6	RW	16	128	Similar count for VL6

Table 284 PortVLOpPackets (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortVLOpPackets7	RW	16	144	Similar count for VL7
PortVLOpPackets8	RW	16	160	Similar count for VL8
PortVLOpPackets9	RW	16	176	Similar count for VL9
PortVLOpPackets10	RW	16	192	Similar count for VL10
PortVLOpPackets11	RW	16	208	Similar count for VL11
PortVLOpPackets12	RW	16	224	Similar count for VL12
PortVLOpPackets13	RW	16	240	Similar count for VL13
PortVLOpPackets14	RW	16	256	Similar count for VL14
PortVLOpPackets15	RW	16	272	Similar count for VL15

16.1.4.7 PORTVLOPDATA

Table 285 PortVLOpData

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OpCode	RW	8	0	Selects the op code (as found in BTH) for which the statistics are reported. 0xFF means all op codes.
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.

Table 285 PortVLOpData (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <p>Bit 0 - PortVLOpData0 Bit 1 - PortVLOpData1 Bit 2 - PortVLOpData2 Bit 3 - PortVLOpData3 Bit 4 - PortVLOpData4 Bit 5 - PortVLOpData5 Bit 6 - PortVLOpData6 Bit 7 - PortVLOpData7 Bit 8 - PortVLOpData8 Bit 9 - PortVLOpData9 Bit 10 - PortVLOpData10 Bit 11 - PortVLOpData11 Bit 12 - PortVLOpData12 Bit 13 - PortVLOpData13 Bit 14 - PortVLOpData14 Bit 15 - PortVLOpData15</p>
PortVLOpData0	RW	32	32	<p>Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received without error on VL 0 from the port selected by PortSelect containing the opcode selected by OpCode. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet and VCRC. It excludes all link packets.</p> <p>Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets</p>
PortVLOpData1	RW	32	64	Similar count for VL1
PortVLOpData2	RW	32	96	Similar count for VL2
PortVLOpData3	RW	32	128	Similar count for VL3
PortVLOpData4	RW	32	160	Similar count for VL4
PortVLOpData5	RW	32	192	Similar count for VL5
PortVLOpData6	RW	32	224	Similar count for VL6
PortVLOpData7	RW	32	256	Similar count for VL7
PortVLOpData8	RW	32	288	Similar count for VL8
PortVLOpData9	RW	32	320	Similar count for VL9
PortVLOpData10	RW	32	352	Similar count for VL10
PortVLOpData11	RW	32	384	Similar count for VL11

Table 285 PortVLOpData (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortVLOpData12	RW	32	416	Similar count for VL12
PortVLOpData13	RW	32	448	Similar count for VL13
PortVLOpData14	RW	32	480	Similar count for VL14
PortVLOpData15	RW	32	512	Similar count for VL15

16.1.4.8 PORTVLXMITFLOWCTLUPDATEERRORS**Table 286** PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors0 Bit 1 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors1 Bit 2 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors2 Bit 3 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors3 Bit 4 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors4 Bit 5 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors5 Bit 6 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors6 Bit 7 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors7 Bit 8 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors8 Bit 9 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors9 Bit 10 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors10 Bit 11 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors11 Bit 12 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors12 Bit 13 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors13 Bit 14 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors14 Bit 15 - PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors15
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors0	RW	2	32	Total number of flow control update errors on VL 0 on the port selected by PortSelect

Table 286 PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors1	RW	2	34	Similar count for VL1
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors2	RW	2	36	Similar count for VL2
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors3	RW	2	38	Similar count for VL3
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors4	RW	2	40	Similar count for VL4
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors5	RW	2	42	Similar count for VL5
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors6	RW	2	44	Similar count for VL6
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors7	RW	2	46	Similar count for VL7
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors8	RW	2	48	Similar count for VL8
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors9	RW	2	50	Similar count for VL9
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors10	RW	2	52	Similar count for VL10
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors11	RW	2	54	Similar count for VL11
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors12	RW	2	56	Similar count for VL12
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors13	RW	2	58	Similar count for VL13
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors14	RW	2	60	Similar count for VL14
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors15	RW	2	62	Similar count for VL15

16.1.4.9 PORTVLXMITWAITCOUNTERS**Table 287 PortVLXmitWaitCounters**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved

Table 287 PortVLXmitWaitCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortVLXmitWait0 Bit 1 - PortVLXmitWait1 Bit 2 - PortVLXmitWait2 Bit 3 - PortVLXmitWait3 Bit 4 - PortVLXmitWait4 Bit 5 - PortVLXmitWait5 Bit 6 - PortVLXmitWait6 Bit 7 - PortVLXmitWait7 Bit 8 - PortVLXmitWait8 Bit 9 - PortVLXmitWait9 Bit 10 - PortVLXmitWait10 Bit 11 - PortVLXmitWait11 Bit 12 - PortVLXmitWait12 Bit 13 - PortVLXmitWait13 Bit 14 - PortVLXmitWait14 Bit 15 - PortVLXmitWait15
PortVLXmitWait0	RW	16	32	Total number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect had data to transmit on VL0 but no data was sent during the entire tick either because of insufficient credits or because of lack of arbitration.
PortVLXmitWait1	RW	16	48	Similar count for VL1
PortVLXmitWait2	RW	16	64	Similar count for VL2
PortVLXmitWait3	RW	16	80	Similar count for VL3
PortVLXmitWait4	RW	16	96	Similar count for VL4
PortVLXmitWait5	RW	16	112	Similar count for VL5
PortVLXmitWait6	RW	16	128	Similar count for VL6
PortVLXmitWait7	RW	16	144	Similar count for VL7
PortVLXmitWait8	RW	16	160	Similar count for VL8
PortVLXmitWait9	RW	16	176	Similar count for VL9

Table 287 PortVLXmitWaitCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortVLXmitWait10	RW	16	192	Similar count for VL10
PortVLXmitWait11	RW	16	208	Similar count for VL11
PortVLXmitWait12	RW	16	224	Similar count for VL12
PortVLXmitWait13	RW	16	240	Similar count for VL13
PortVLXmitWait14	RW	16	256	Similar count for VL14
PortVLXmitWait15	RW	16	272	Similar count for VL15

16.1.4.10 SwPORTVLCONGESTION

o**16-2.1.2:** SwPortVLCongestion **shall** not be supported by nodes other than switches.

Table 288 SwPortVLCongestion

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>

Table 288 **SwPortVLCongestion (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bit 0 - SWPortVLCongestion0 Bit 1 - SWPortVLCongestion1 Bit 2 - SWPortVLCongestion2 Bit 3 - SWPortVLCongestion3 Bit 4 - SWPortVLCongestion4 Bit 5 - SWPortVLCongestion5 Bit 6 - SWPortVLCongestion6 Bit 7 - SWPortVLCongestion7 Bit 8 - SWPortVLCongestion8 Bit 9 - SWPortVLCongestion9 Bit 10 - SWPortVLCongestion10 Bit 11 - SWPortVLCongestion11 Bit 12 - SWPortVLCongestion12 Bit 13 - SWPortVLCongestion13 Bit 14 - SWPortVLCongestion14 Bit 15 - SWPortVLCongestion15
SWPortVLCongestion0	RW	16	32	<p>Total number of packets to be transmitted on VL 0 of the output port selected by PortSelect that were discarded because of congestion. This includes the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switch Lifetime Limit exceeded • Switch HOQ Lifetime Limit exceeded
SWPortVLCongestion1	RW	16	48	Similar count for VL1.
SWPortVLCongestion2	RW	16	64	Similar count for VL2.
SWPortVLCongestion3	RW	16	80	Similar count for VL3.
SWPortVLCongestion4	RW	16	96	Similar count for VL4.
SWPortVLCongestion5	RW	16	112	Similar count for VL5.
SWPortVLCongestion6	RW	16	128	Similar count for VL6
SWPortVLCongestion7	RW	16	144	Similar count for VL7
SWPortVLCongestion8	RW	16	160	Similar count for VL8
SWPortVLCongestion9	RW	16	176	Similar count for VL9
SWPortVLCongestion10	RW	16	192	Similar count for VL10
SWPortVLCongestion11	RW	16	208	Similar count for VL11
SWPortVLCongestion12	RW	16	224	Similar count for VL12
SWPortVLCongestion13	RW	16	240	Similar count for VL13

Table 288 SwPortVLCongestion (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
SWPortVLCongestion14	RW	16	256	Similar count for VL14
SWPortVLCongestion15	RW	16	272	Similar count for VL15 (always 0)

16.1.4.11 PORTSAMPLESRESULTEXTENDED**Table 289** PortSamplesResultExtended

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Tag	RO	16	0	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Tag on page 1097
Reserved	RO	14	16	Reserved
SampleStatus	RO	2	30	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component SampleStatus on page 1097
ExtendedWidth	RO	2	32	<p>Indicates the actual width in bits of the PortSamplesResultExtended:Counter0 to 14, if supported. Ignored if IsExtendedWidthSupported capability bit is 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00 = reserved • 01 = 48 bits • 10 = 64 bits • 11 = reserved <p>Counters smaller than 64 bits shall be implemented as the least significant bits of the corresponding 64-bit attribute component, with the unimplemented upper bits of the component returning zeroes for Get() and ignored for Set().</p>
Reserved	RO	30	34	Reserved
Counter0	RO	64	64	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter0 on page 1097
Counter1	RO	64	128	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter1 on page 1097
Counter2	RO	64	192	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter2 on page 1097
Counter3	RO	64	256	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter3 on page 1097
Counter4	RO	64	320	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter4 on page 1097
Counter5	RO	64	384	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter5 on page 1097

Table 289 PortSamplesResultExtended (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Counter6	RO	64	448	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter6 on page 1097
Counter7	RO	64	512	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter7 on page 1097
Counter8	RO	64	576	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter8 on page 1097
Counter9	RO	64	640	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter9 on page 1098
Counter10	RO	64	704	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter10 on page 1098
Counter11	RO	64	768	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter11 on page 1098
Counter12	RO	64	832	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter12 on page 1098
Counter13	RO	64	896	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter13 on page 1098
Counter14	RO	64	960	Semantics identical to PortSamplesResult component Counter14 on page 1098

16.1.4.12 PORTCOUNTERS EXTENDED

o16-8.2-1.2: If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedWidthSupported is 1, then when initially powered-up or reset, the value of all counters contained in PortCountersExtended on all ports of a node shall be set to zero. Similarly, if ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedWidthSupportedNoETF is 1, then when initially powered-up or reset, the value of all counters covered by

ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsExtendedWidthSupportedNoETF on all ports of a node shall be set to zero. In either case, during operation, instead of overflowing, these counters shall stop at all ones. At any time, writing (Set) zero into a counter shall cause the counter to be reset to zero.

Note that writing (Set) anything other than zero into a counter results in undefined behavior..

Table 290 PortCountersExtended

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved

Table 290 PortCountersExtended (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Semantics identical to PortCounters component PortSelect on page 1099
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set()), selects which counters are affected by the operation. When reading (Get()), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bit 0 - PortXmitData• Bit 1 - PortRcvData• Bit 2 - PortXmitPkts• Bit 3 - PortRcvPkts• Bit 4 - PortUnicastXmitPkts• Bit 5 - PortUnicastRcvPkts• Bit 6 - PortMulticastXmitPkts• Bit 7 - PortMulticastRcvPkts• Bits 8-15 - Reserved
CounterSelect2	RW	32	32	<p>If IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1, when writing (Set()), selects which counters are affected by the operation and when reading (Get()), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bit 0 - SymbolErrorCounter• Bit 1 - LinkErrorRecoveryCounter• Bit 2 - LinkDownedCounter• Bit 3 - PortRcvErrors• Bit 4 - PortRcvRemotePhysicalErrors• Bit 5 - PortRcvSwitchRelayErrors• Bit 6 - PortXmitDiscards• Bit 7 - PortXmitConstraintErrors• Bit 8 - PortRcvConstraintErrors• Bit 9 - LocalLinkIntegrityErrors• Bit 10 - ExcessiveBufferOverrunErrors• Bit 11 - VL15Dropped• Bit 12 - PortXmitWait• Bit 13 - QP1Dropped• Bits 14-31 - Reserved <p>Otherwise, reserved</p>
PortXmitData	RW	64	64	Semantics identical to PortCounters component PortXmitData on page 1101 , except that if this attribute is supported, this component is not optional.
PortRcvData	RW	64	128	Semantics identical to PortCounters component PortRcvData on page 1102 , except that if this attribute is supported this component is not optional.
PortXmitPkts	RW	64	192	Semantics identical to PortCounters component PortXmitPkts on page 1102 , except that if this attribute is supported this component is not optional.

Table 290 PortCountersExtended (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvPkts	RW	64	256	Semantics identical to PortCounters component PortRcvPkts on page 1102 , except that if this attribute is supported this component is not optional.
PortUnicastXmitPkts	RW	64	320	Total number of unicast packets transmitted on all VLs from the port. This may include unicast packets with errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195), and excludes link packets.
PortUnicastRcvPkts	RW	64	384	Total number of unicast packets, including unicast packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195), and excluding link packets, received from all VLs on the port.
PortMultiCastXmitPkts	RW	64	448	Total number of multicast packets transmitted on all VLs from the port. This may include multicast packets with errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195).
PortMultiCastRcvPkts	RW	64	512	Total number of multicast packets, including multicast packets containing errors (see Figure 51 Packet Receiver State Machine on page 193 and Figure 52 Data Packet Check machine on page 195) received from all VLs on the port.
SymbolErrorCounter	RW	64	576	Total number of minor link errors detected on one or more physical lanes. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.
LinkErrorRecovery-Counter	RW	64	640	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has successfully completed the link error recovery process. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.
LinkDownedCounter	RW	64	704	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has failed the link error recovery process and downed the link. Refer to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Link/Phy Interface. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.

Table 290 PortCountersExtended (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvErrors	RW	64	768	<p>Total number of packets containing an error that were received on the port. These errors include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Local physical errors (ICRC, VCRC, LPCRC, and all physical errors that cause entry into the BAD PACKET or BAD PACKET DISCARD states of the packet receiver state machine)• Malformed data packet errors (LVer, length, VL)• Malformed link packet errors (operand, length, VL)• Packets discarded due to buffer overrun <p>Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
PortRcvRemotePhysical-Errors	RW	64	832	Total number of packets marked with the EBP delimiter received on the port. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.
PortRcvSwitchRelayErrors	RW	64	896	<p>Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay. Reasons for this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DLID mapping (see the description of PortDLIDMappingErrors in Table 280 PortRcvErrorDetails on page 1107)• VL mapping• Looping (output port = input port) <p>Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
PortXmitDiscards	RW	64	960	<p>Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because the port is down or congested. Reasons for this include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Output port is not in the active state• Packet length exceeded NeighborMTU• Switch Lifetime Limit exceeded• Switch HOQ Lifetime Limit exceeded <p>This may also include packets discarded while in VLStalled State.</p> <p>Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>

Table 290 PortCountersExtended (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortXmitConstraintErrors	RW	64	1024	<p>Total number of packets not transmitted from the switch physical port for the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FilterRawOutbound is true and packet is raw • PartitionEnforcementOutbound is true and packet fails partition key check or IP version check <p>If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsInhibitLimitedPKeyMulticastConstraintErrors is set to 1, then counts of multicast packets with a limited P_Key transmitted on a port where only that same limited P_Key and not the full member P_Key is allowed on that port are not included in this counter.</p> <p>Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
PortRcvConstraintErrors	RW	64	1088	<p>Total number of packets received on the switch physical port that are discarded for the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FilterRawInbound is true and packet is raw • PartitionEnforcementInbound is true and packet fails partition key check or IP version check <p>Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
LocalLinkIntegrityErrors	RW	64	1152	<p>The number of times that the count of local physical errors exceeded the threshold specified by LocalPhyErrors; see 7.12.1 Error Detection on page 242 and Table 164 PortInfo on page 899. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
ExcessiveBufferOver-runErrors	RW	64	1216	<p>The number of times that OverrunErrors consecutive flow control update periods occurred, each having at least one overrun error; see 7.12.1 Error Detection on page 242 and Table 164 PortInfo on page 899. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
VL15Dropped	RW	64	1280	<p>Number of incoming VL15 packets dropped due to resource limitations (e.g., lack of buffers) in the port. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1.</p>
PortXmitWait	RW	64	1344	<p>Number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect had data to transmit but no data was sent during the entire tick either because of insufficient credits or because of lack of arbitration.</p> <p>Only valid when PortCountersXmitWaitSupported and IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported are set to 1.</p>
QP1Dropped	RW	64	1408	<p>Number of QP1 MADs (packets) dropped due to resource limitations (e.g., lack of buffers or receives posted) on the port. Only valid when IsAdditionalPortCountersExtendedSupported is set to 1. When valid, 0 if not end port or when IsQP1DroppedSupported is set to 0.</p>

16.1.4.13 PORTEXTENDEDSPEEDSCOUNTERS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o16-8.2-1.3: If extended link speeds are supported, then when initially powered up or reset, the value of all counters contained in PortExtended-SpeedsCounters on all ports of a node shall be set to zero. During operation, instead of overflowing, they shall stop at all ones. At any time, writing (Set) zero into a counter shall cause the counter to be reset to zero.

Note that writing (Set) anything other than zero into a counter results in undefined behavior..

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the extended speeds counters are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
Reserved	RO	48	16	Reserved

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	64	64	<p>When writing (Set()), selects which counters are affected by the operation. When reading (Get()), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bit 0 - SyncHeaderErrorCounter• Bit 1 - UnknownBlockCounter• Bit 2 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane0/Reserved^a• Bit 3 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane1/Reserved^a• Bit 4 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane2/Reserved^a• Bit 5 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane3/Reserved^a• Bit 6 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane4/Reserved^a• Bit 7 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane5/Reserved^a• Bit 8 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane6/Reserved^a• Bit 9 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane7/Reserved^a• Bit 10 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane8/Reserved^a• Bit 11 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane9/Reserved^a• Bit 12 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane10/Reserved^a• Bit 13 - ErrorDetectionCounterLane11/Reserved^a• Bit 14 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane0/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane0^b• Bit 15 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane1/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane1^b• Bit 16 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane2/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane2^b• Bit 17 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane3/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane3^b• Bit 18 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane4/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane4^b• Bit 19 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane5/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane5^b• Bit 20 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane6/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane6^b• Bit 21 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane7/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane7^b• Bit 22 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane8/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane8^b• Bit 23 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane9/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane9^b• Bit 24 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane10/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane10^b• Bit 25 - FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane11/FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane11^b• Bit 26 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane0/Reserved^b• Bit 27 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane1/Reserved^c

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bit 28 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane2/ Reserved^c • Bit 29 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane3/ Reserved^c • Bit 30 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane4/ Reserved^c • Bit 31 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane5/ Reserved^c • Bit 32 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane6/ Reserved^c • Bit 33 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane7/ Reserved^c • Bit 34 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane8/ Reserved^c • Bit 35 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane9/ Reserved^c • Bit 36 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane10/ Reserved^c • Bit 37 - FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane11/ Reserved^c • Bit 38 - PortFECCorrectableBlockCounter/ Reserved^d • Bit 39 - PortFECUncorrectableBlockCounter/ Reserved^d • Bit 40 - PortFECCorrectedSymbolCounter/ Reserved^d • Bits 41-63- Reserved
SyncHeaderErrorCounter	RW	16	128	Count of errored block sync header on one or more lanes
UnknownBlockCounter	RW	16	144	Count of the following errors: a) An errored block sync header is detected on one or more lanes b) Control block with unknown block type is detected on one or more lanes c) Errored control block is detected on one or more lanes (i.e., idle block with one or more bytes without idle data (0x00))
ErrorDetectionCounterLane0	RW	16	160	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 0 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane1	RW	16	176	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 1 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
ErrorDetectionCounterLane2	RW	16	192	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 2 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane3	RW	16	208	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 3 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane4	RW	16	224	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 4 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane5	RW	16	240	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 5 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane6	RW	16	256	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 6 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane7	RW	16	272	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 7 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane8	RW	16	288	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 8 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane9	RW	16	304	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 9 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane10	RW	16	320	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 10 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
ErrorDetectionCounterLane11	RW	16	336	Count of the EDPL errors on lane 11 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane0	RW	32	352	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 0 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane0				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 0 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane1	RW	32	384	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 1 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane1				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 1 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane2	RW	32	416	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 2 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane2				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 2 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane3	RW	32	448	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 3 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane3				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 3 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane4	RW	32	480	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 4 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane4				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 4 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane5	RW	32	512	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 5 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane5				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 5 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane6	RW	32	544	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 6 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane6				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 6 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane7	RW	32	576	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 7 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane7				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 7 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane8	RW	32	608	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 8 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane8				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 8 when RS-FEC is active.

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane9	RW	32	640	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 9 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane9				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 9 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane10	RW	32	672	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 10 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane10				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 10 when RS-FEC is active.
FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane11	RW	32	704	Count of the correctable errors detected and corrected on lane 11 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane11				Count of the corrected symbols on lane 11 when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane0	RW	32	736	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 0 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane1	RW	32	768	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 1 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane2	RW	32	800	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 2 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane3	RW	32	832	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 3 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane4	RW	32	864	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 4 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane5	RW	32	896	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 5 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane6	RW	32	928	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 6 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.

Table 291 PortExtendedSpeedsCounters (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane7	RW	32	960	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 7 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane8	RW	32	992	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 8 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane9	RW	32	1024	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 9 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane10	RW	32	1056	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 10 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane11	RW	32	1088	Count of the uncorrectable errors detected on lane 11 when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is active.
PortFECCorrectableBlockCounter	RW	32	1120	Count of the RS-FEC correctable blocks for this port.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
PortFECUncorrectableBlockCounter	RW	32	1152	Count of the RS-FEC uncorrectable blocks for this port.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
PortFECCorrectedSymbolCounter	RW	32	1184	Count of the RS-FEC corrected symbols for this port.
Reserved	RO			Reserved when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0.
Reserved	RO	320	1216	Reserved

- a. ErrorDetectionCounterLane<n> when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0. Reserved when RS-FEC is active. Where <n> is 0 through 11.
- b. FECCorrectableBlockCounterLane<n> when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0. FECCorrectedSymbolCounterLane<n> when RS-FEC is active. Where <n> is 0 through 11.
- c. FECUncorrectableBlockCounterLane<n> when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is set to 0. Reserved when RS-FEC is active. Where <n> is 0 through 11.
- d. Reserved when RS-FEC is not active or IsRSFECCountersSupported is 0.

16.1.5 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STATUS

This section provides a consolidated interpretation of a large number of status-code-related compliance statements in [Chapter 13: Management](#)

[Model on page 772](#) and [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). It is provided here for convenience of reference only.

Also, use of the acronym PM in this section is intended to refer to Performance Management, not Partition Manager, as defined in [Chapter 2: Glossary on page 84](#).

In the following sections, an error status definition is specified. This definition provides a minimal requirement to report PM errors. Note that adhering to this definition will satisfy all IB compliance rules. Any additional error conditions and error handling that are beyond what are specified in this section, without violating any IB compliance rules, are considered as additional efforts and therefore optional to the implementation.

16.1.5.1 MANDATORY PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS

In this implementation, there is an implicit precedence among various status settings. The higher the status value, the lower its precedence. Note that this status precedence approach is only one possible implementation. Other implementations may exist. This implementation does not violate nor override any of the defined compliance rules. Other implementations may return an error status without following this status precedence. If multiple errors were detected, any error status bit may be returned in the GetResp().

Table 292 Mandatory PM Attribute Status

Precedence (0x1 is highest)	Status[4:2]	Violations
1	0x1	BaseVersion, ClassVersion, or their combinations is not supported by the vendor.
2	0x2	A request packet has been received with the method neither is a PerformanceGet() nor a PerformanceSet(). This packet may be discarded without a response or returned as status 2 with the "R" bit of the method field set to one without regarding the overall meaning of the method field or returned as status 2 with PerformanceGetResp().
3	0x3	It is not in any of the method/attribute combinations listed in Table 293 on page 1132.
4	0x7	Containing at least one invalid component and/or AttributeModifier. See following sections for more details.
5	0x0	None of above violations were found.

Table 293 Valid Mandatory PM Method/Attribute Combinations

Valid Attribute/Method Combinations
See Table 271 Mandatory Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1082 for valid mandatory PM Method/Attribute combinations

16.1.5.1.1 PM ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 294 PM AttributeModifier Errors**

Attribute Name	AttributeModifier Violations
ClassPortInfo	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSamplesControl	SampleMechanisms ≤ AttributeModifier ≤ 0xFFFF_FFFE
PortSamplesResult	SampleMechanisms ≤ AttributeModifier ≤ 0xFFFF_FFFE
PortCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000

16.1.5.1.2 PM ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 295 PerformanceSet(ClassPortInfo) Component Errors**

Violations
N/A

Table 296 PerformanceSet(PortSamplesControl) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
OpCode ^a	<p>Any of the reserved OpCode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpCode = 00010101 • OpCode = 00011000 to 00011111 • OpCode = 00101100 to 00111111 • OpCode = 01010110 to 01011111 • OpCode = 01100000 to 01100011 • OpCode = 01100110 to 01111111 • OpCode = 10000000 to 10111111
	Any of the unsupported manufacturer specific OpCodes
PortSelect	<p>PortSelect = 0x0^b</p> <p>0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts</p>
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^c

a. Only when sampling optional quantities that are OpCode specific.

b. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0

c. Only if AllPortSelect = 0

Table 297 PerformanceGet(PortSamplesControl) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0 or optionally if all ports don't have same component values.

Table 298 PerformanceGet/PerformanceSet(PortCounters) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

16.1.5.2 OPTIONAL PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS

In this implementation, there is an implicit precedence among various status settings. The higher the status value, the lower its precedence. This status precedence implementation is only one possible implementation. It does not violate nor override any of the defined compliance rules. Other implementations may return an error status without following this status precedence. If multiple errors were detected, any error status bit may be returned in the GetResp().

Table 299 Optional PM Attribute Status

Precedence (0x1 is highest)	Status[4:2]	Violations
1	0x1	BaseVersion, ClassVersion, or their combinations is not supported by the vendor.
2	0x2	Not PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet(). Base on the current specification, this error cannot be reported and the packet will be discarded.
3	0x3	It is not in any of the method/attribute combinations listed in Table 300 on page 1135.
4	0x7	Containing at least one invalid component and/or AttributeModifier. See following sections for more details.
5	0x0	None of above violations were found.

Table 300 Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations

Valid Attribute/Method Combinations
See Table 279 Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1106 for valid Method/Attribute combinations

16.1.5.2.1 PM ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 301 PM AttributeModifier Errors**

Attribute Name	AttributeModifier Violations
PortRcvErrorDetails	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitDiscardDetails	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortOpRcvCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortFlowCtlCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortVLOpPackets	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortVLOpData	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortVLXmitWaitCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
SwPortVLCongestion	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSamplesResultExtended	SampleMechanisms <= AttributeModifier <= 0xFFFF_FFFE
PortCountersExtended	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
SwPortVLCongestion	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortRcvConCtrl	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSLRcvFECN	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSLRcvBECN	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitConCtrl	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitTimeCong	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitDataSL	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortRcvDataSL	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitDataSLExt	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortRcvDataSLExt	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000

16.1.5.2.2 PM ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 302 PerformanceSet(PortRcvErrorDetails) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 303 PerformanceSet(PortXmitDiscardDetails) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 304 PerformanceSet(PortOpRcvCounters) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
OpCode	Any of the reserved OpCode: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OpCode = 00010101 to 00011111 • OpCode = 00101100 to 00111111 • OpCode = 01010110 to 01011111 • OpCode = 01100000 to 01100011 • OpCode = 01100110 to 01111111 • OpCode = 10000000 to 10111111 Any of the unsupported manufacturer specific OpCodes
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 305 PerformanceSet(PortFlowCtlCounters) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

- a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.
b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 306 PerformanceSet(PortVLopPackets) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
OpCode	Any of the reserved OpCode: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• OpCode = 00010101 to 00011111• OpCode = 00101100 to 00111111• OpCode = 01010110 to 01011111• OpCode = 01100000 to 01100011• OpCode = 01100110 to 01111111• OpCode = 10000000 to 10111111
	Any of the unsupported manufacturer specific OpCodes
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

- a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.
b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 307 PerformanceSet(PortVLopData) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
OpCode	Any of the reserved OpCode: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• OpCode = 00010101 to 00011111• OpCode = 00101100 to 00111111• OpCode = 01010110 to 01011111• OpCode = 01100000 to 01100011• OpCode = 01100110 to 01111111• OpCode = 10000000 to 10111111
	Any of the unsupported manufacturer specific OpCodes
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

- a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.
b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 308 PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 309 PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitWaitCounters) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 310 PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 311 PerformanceSet(PortSamplesResultExtended) Component Errors

Violations
N/A

Table 312 PerformanceSet(PortCountersExtended) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 313 PerformanceSet(PortExtendedSpeedsCounters) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 314 PerformanceGet Component Errors for all optional attributes with PortSelect component

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

16.1.5.3 PM CLASS ADDITIONAL STATUS**Table 315 PM Class AdditionalStatus for AttributeModifier errors**

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
512	AM != 0 for PerfMgt class ClassPortInfo	0x1c
513	SampleMechanisms <= AM <= 0xFFFFFFFF for PerfMgt class PortSamplesControl	0x1c
514	SampleMechanisms <= AM <= 0xFFFFFFFF for PerfMgt class PortSamplesResult	0x1c
515	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortCounters	0x1c
516	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortRcvErrorDetails	0x1c
517	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortXmitDiscardDetails	0x1c
518	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortOpRcvCounters	0x1c
519	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortFlowCtlCounters	0x1c

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
520	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortVLOpPackets	0x1c
521	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortVLOpData	0x1c
522	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortVLXmitFlowCtlUpdateErrors	0x1c
523	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortVLXmitWaitCounters	0x1c
524	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class SWPortVLCongestion	0x1c
525	SampleMechanisms <= AM <= 0xFFFFFFFF for PerfMgt class PortSamplesResultExtended	0x1c
526	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortCountersExtended	0x1c
527	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortExtendedSpeedsCounters	0x1c
528	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortRcvConCtrl	0x1c
529	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortSLRcvFECN	0x1c
530	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortSLRcvBECN	0x1c
531	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortXmitConCtrl	0x1c
532	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortXmitTimeCong	0x1c
533	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortXmitDataSL	0x1c
534	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortRcvDataSL	0x1c
535	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortXmitDataSLExt	0x1c
536	AM !=0 for PerfMgt class PortRcvDataSLExt	0x1c
537	AM != 0 for PerfMgt class VPortCounters	0x1c
538-575	Reserved for additional PerfMgt class attribute modifier errors	0x1c

Table 316 PM Class AdditionalStatus for attribute field errors

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
576	PerfMgt class PortSelect = 0 for BSP0	0x1c
577	PerfMgt class 0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts	0x1c

Addl Status Code	Description	MAD Status
578	PerfMgt class PortSelect = 0xFF if AllPortSelect is 0	0x1c
579	PerfMgt class reserved OpCode	0x1c
580	PerfMgt class unsupported manufacturer OpCode	0x1c
581-607	Reserved for additional PerfMgt class attribute field errors	0x1c

16.2 BASEBOARD MANAGEMENT

C16-9: All nodes **shall** have a Baseboard Management Agent.

C16-9.1.1: The Baseboard Manager (BM) **shall** register its services with the SA via SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecords) using the ServiceName “BaseboardManager.IBTA”. See [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#) and Service Names in the Annex “Application Specific Identifiers.”

This section describes the Management Datagrams used to transport Baseboard Management commands across the fabric. For more information regarding Hardware Management of IB Modules, non-Modules (IB devices whose packaging are different from an IB Module form factor), and Chassis, see InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management.” A simplified overview is presented here.

The SM and SMA are shown in [Figure 206 Baseboard Management Architecture on page 1142](#) strictly to indicate that Baseboard Management and Subnet Management are independent, separate entities in the fabric providing non-overlapping functionality.

The Baseboard Manager is a software entity that manages the hardware via Baseboard Management messages. From the BM, these messages are tunneled (encapsulated in MADs) through the IBA fabric to the Baseboard Management Agent (BMA), which then recognizes the message and forwards it to the Module Management Entity (MME). The MME processes the embedded Baseboard Management commands. In some cases, this results in the MME generating corresponding messages and transactions on a present InfiniBand Management Link (IB-ML). IB-ML messages may interface with a present Chassis Management Entity (CME).

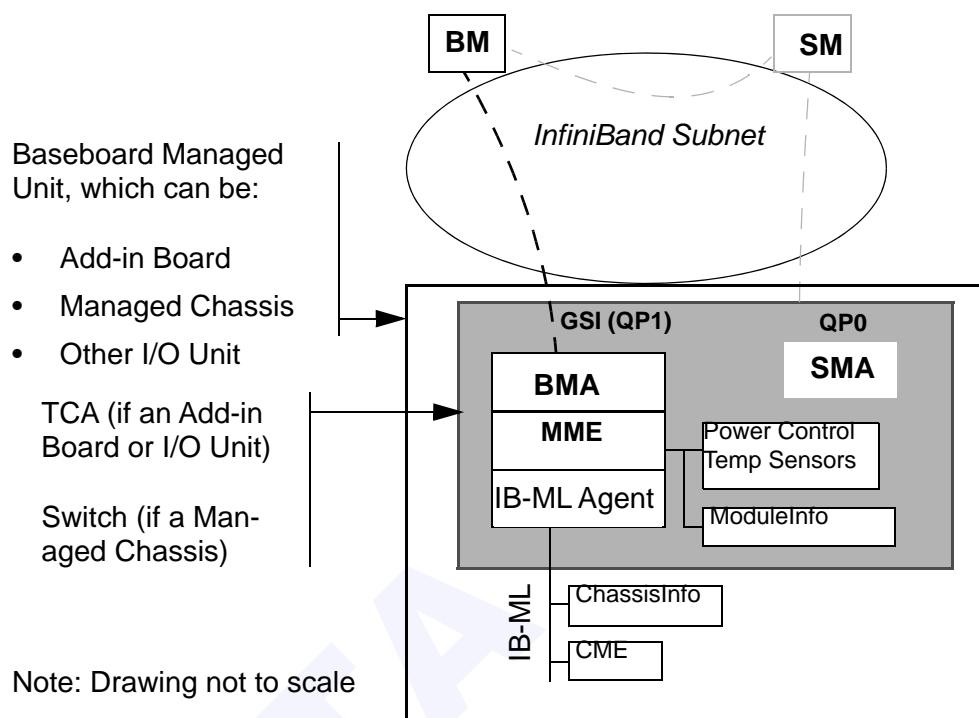


Figure 206

Baseboard Management

The BM may use Subnet Administration to retrieve information regarding the nodes discovered in the IBA subnet, such as addresses, capabilities, types.

Subnet Administration provides basic discovery information that is common to all IBA endnodes, regardless of the type of Endnode in the subnet as described above. It does not provide information beyond this, such as VPD, chassis management data, and any other information under Baseboard Management control. This information is “discovered” through baseboard management.

A Baseboard Managed Unit can be either an IB-Module as defined in Volume 2 of the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, a form factor other than what is defined in Volume 2 (a non-Module), or a Managed Chassis. Protocol-aware IB-Modules handle the send/receive of the Baseboard Management MADs. The MADs are addressed using the LID of any endport of the IB device on the Module. A Managed Chassis may contain a switch which handles the send/receive of the Baseboard Management MADs. The MADs are addressed using the LID of the switch.

16.2.1 MAD FORMAT

C16-10: The datagrams in the Baseboard management class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Data-](#)

grams on page 780 and further customized in [Figure 207 Baseboard Management MAD Format on page 1143](#) and [Table 317 Baseboard Management MAD Fields on page 1143](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24				B_Key
28				
32				Reserved
...				
60				
64				Data
...				
252				

Figure 207 Baseboard Management MAD Format

Table 317 Baseboard Management MAD Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
B_Key	8 bytes	BM specific key. See 16.2.4 B_Key General Use on page 1150 for definition and use.
Reserved	32 bytes	Reserved
Baseboard Management Data	192 bytes	Attribute data as defined in the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Management Command Section, which is refined by the Attribute ID and the AttributeModifier. See Table 320 Baseboard Management Attributes on page 1146 for valid Attribute ID and Modifier values.

16.2.1.1 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 318 Baseboard Management Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Class-specific bits are reserved

16.2.2 METHODS

The Baseboard Management class uses a subset of the common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

C16-10.1.1: A Baseboard Management Agent **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 319 Baseboard Management Methods on page 1144](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

Table 319 Baseboard Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
BMGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of an attribute
BMSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute
BMGetResp()	0x81	Response from a Get() or Set() request
BMSend()	0x03	Send Baseboard Management attribute (this can be the attribute for an encapsulated Baseboard Management request [command] or response.)
BMTrap()	0x05	Notify an event occurred
BMTrapRepress()	0x07	Block repetition of notification
BMReport()	0x06	Forward an event previously subscribed for
BMReportResp()	0x86	Reply to a BMReport() method

[Figure 208 BM Initiated IB-ML Command on page 1145](#) is an example of a transaction. Its semantics are described in the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management,” Section “Management Commands.”

Requests and response capabilities are symmetric; i.e., BMSend() may be used to send a request from the MME as well as a response. Similarly, the Baseboard Manager may use BMSend() to deliver a response. [Figure 209 IB-ML Initiated Command on page 1145](#) illustrates the path that would be taken if a CME generated a request to the Baseboard Manager by delivering the request via a module’s IB-ML -to- IB functionality.

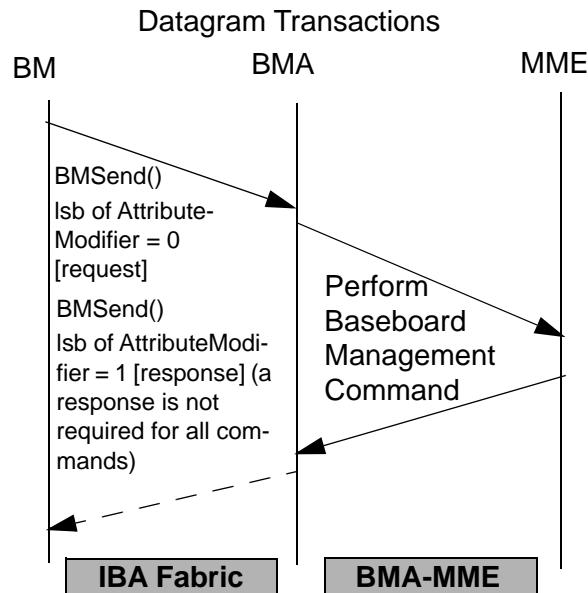


Figure 208 BM Initiated IB-ML

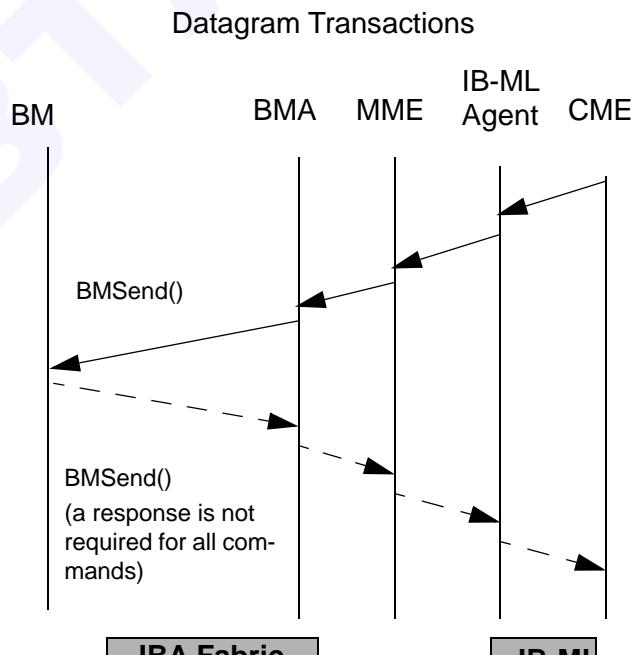


Figure 209 IB-ML Initiated

16.2.3 ATTRIBUTES

C16-10.1.2: A Baseboard Management Agent **shall** support the attributes listed in [Table 320 Baseboard Management Attributes on page 1146](#), [Table 321 Baseboard Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1147](#) and the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hard-

ware Management.” All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 320: Baseboard Management Attributes](#) are reserved.

Table 320 Baseboard Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier ^a	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	General and port-specific information for the BM class. See 16.2.3.1 ClassPortInfo on page 1147 .
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Information regarding a Trap. See 16.2.3.2 Notice on page 1148 .
BKeyInfo	0x0010	0x00000000	B_Key information for the node. See 16.2.3.3 BKeyInfo on page 1149 .
WriteVPD	0x0020	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
ReadVPD	0x0021	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
ResetIBML	0x0022	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
SetModulePMControl	0x0023	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
GetModulePMControl	0x0024	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
SetUnitPMControl	0x0025	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
GetUnitPMControl	0x0026	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
SetIOPCPMControl	0x0027	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	See the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management” for all these attributes.
GetIOPCPMControl	0x0028	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
SetModuleState	0x0029	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
SetModuleAttention	0x002A	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
GetModuleStatus	0x002B	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
IB2IBML	0x002C	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
IB2CME	0x002D	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
IB2MME	0x002E	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	
OEM	0x002F	0x00000000 / 0x00000001	

a. Where two AttributeModifiers are listed, the least significant bit of the AttributeModifier is used to differentiate BMSend() requests from responses. Refer to InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management” for more details.

Table 321 Baseboard Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	BMGet()	BMSet()	BMSend()	BMTrap()
ClassPortInfo	X	X		
Notice	X	X		X
BKeyInfo	X	X		
WriteVPD			X	
ReadVPD			X	
ResetIBML			X	
SetModulePMControl			X	
GetModulePMControl			X	
SetUnitPMControl			X	
GetUnitPMControl			X	
SetIOPCMControl			X	
GetIOPCMControl			X	
SetModuleState			X	
SetModuleAttention			X	
GetModuleStatus			X	
IB2IBML			X	
IB2CME			X	
IB2MME			X	
OEM			X	

16.2.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). Class-specific bits of the Baseboard Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask are defined in [Table 322 Baseboard Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1147](#).

Table 322 Baseboard Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
8	IsIBMLSupported	Direct Access to IB-ML is supported

Table 322 Baseboard Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask (Continued)

Bits	Name	Meaning
9	IsBKeyNVRAM	B_Key is in NVRAM
10-15		Reserved

16.2.3.2 NOTICE

The Notice attribute is described in [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#).

Table 323 Baseboard Management Traps

Name	Type	Number	DataDetails
BKeyViolation	Security	259	Bad B_Key, <B_Key> from <LIDADDR>/<GIDADDR>/<QP> attempted <METHOD> with <ATTRIBUTEID> and <ATTRIBUTEMODIFIER>
BMTraps	Informational	260	<BMTrapDataLength> <BMTrapType> <BMTrapTypeModifier> <BMTrapData>

o16-3: The BKeyViolation trap uses the following layout for the DataDetails component of the Notice attribute, see [Table 324 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259 on page 1148](#). Fields **shall** be filled with the information corresponding to the description of a given trap.

Table 324 Notice DataDetails For Trap 259

Field	Length(bits)	Description
LIDADDR	16	Local Identifier
METHOD	8	Method
Reserved	8	Reserved
ATTRIBUTEID	16	Attribute ID
ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER	32	AttributeModifier
Reserved	8	Reserved
QP	24	Queue Pair
BKEY	64	B_Key
GIDADDR	128	Global Identifier. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be filled with zeroes.
Padding	128	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

o16-3.1.1: The BMTraps use the layout shown in [Table 325 Notice DataDetails For Trap 260 on page 1149](#) for the DataDetails component of the

Notice attribute. Fields **shall** be filled with the information corresponding to the description of a given trap.

Table 325 Notice DataDetails For Trap 260

Field	Length(bits)	Description
BMTrapDataLength	8	Number of TrapData bytes to included
BMTrapType	8	Indicates reason for trap 0x00= Generic MME 0x01 = OEM MME 0x02 = CME_RTR 0x03 = WRE 0x04 = Generic CME 0x05 = OEM CME All others - reserved
BMTrapTypeModifier	24	Varies based on TrapType: • holds 3-byte OEM ID if Trap Type is OEM MME or OEM CME • holds SlotSelector, 0x00, 0x00 if TrapType is CME_RTR • holds 0x00, 0x00, 0x00 (reserved) if TrapType is Generic MME, WRE, or Generic CME
BMTrapData	8*TrapDataLength	Data bytes for TrapType of OEM MME or OEM CME.
Padding	392-(8*TrapDataLength)	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

16.2.3.3 BKEYINFO

Table 326 BKeyInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
B_Key	RW	64	0	The 8-byte Baseboard Management key used in all BM MADs by all valid BMs. A value of 0 means no B_Key check is ever done by the BMA.
B_KeyProtectBit	RW	1	64	See 16.2.4.3 B_Key Operation on page 1151 for details.
Reserved	RW	15	65	Reserved
B_KeyLeasePeriod	RW	16	80	Timer value used to indicate how long the B_Key ProtectBit is to remain non zero after a BMSet(BKeyInfo) MAD that failed a B_Key check is dropped. The value of the timer indicates the number of seconds for the lease period. With a 16 bit counter, the period can range from one second to approximately 18 hours. 0 shall mean infinite. See 16.2.4.5 B_Key Recovery on page 1152 for details.

Table 326 BKeyInfo (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
B_KeyViolations	RO	16	96	Number of MADs that have been received at this node since power-on or reset that have been dropped due to a failed B_Key check if such a counter is implemented. Otherwise this shall be 0xFFFF.

16.2.3.4 IB-ML ATTRIBUTES

See *InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management”, Section “Management Commands”* for a description of the BM class specific attributes and their format.

16.2.4 B_KEY GENERAL USE

The BM includes the Baseboard Management Key (B_Key) in the BM MAD to obtain authorization. The B_Key is used to authenticate a trusted source. This model assumes that the fabric has some level of physical security.

16.2.4.1 B_KEY ASSUMPTIONS

- 1) To use the correct key for each node, the BM or a higher-level B_Key manager keeps track of the keys for the nodes that it is managing.
- 2) If a backup BM exists, it shares the B_Keys for ease of fail-over.
- 3) A BM may have exclusive access to a set of nodes, by using a B_Key which is only known by that BM and those particular nodes. Since nodes reply to Baseboard Manager’s requests using their own B_Key, if a Baseboard Manager assigns more than one B_Key to devices on its management domain, it needs to run on an HCA whose BMA can respond to all such B_Keys.
- 4) The BM sets the B_Key, B_KeyProtectBit, and B_KeyLeasePeriod in the BKeyInfo Attribute with one BMSet(BkeyInfo) MAD. A successful completion of this assignment indicates to the BM that it has taken ownership of the node.

16.2.4.2 B_KEY PROTECTION SCOPE

Each BMA in a node has one B_Key. [Table 327 B_Key Protection Scope on page 1151](#) shows the scope protected by that B_Key. The semantics are explicitly defined in InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2, Chapter “Hardware Management.”

Table 327 B_Key Protection Scope

Source	Targeted Entity	Protection
BM	Read and Writes to <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ClassPortInfo (e.g., BM LID in TrapLID) • BKeyInfo (e.g., B_Key, B_KeyProtectBit) 	yes
BM	Attributes causing reads from and writes to IB-ML <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ModuleInfo^a • IB-module Specific Data • ChassisInfo^b • CME^b • Other IB-ML devices 	yes
IB-ML Managed Unit	Attributes causing reads from and writes to IB-ML <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IB-module VPD • IB-module Specific Data • ChassisInfo^b • Other IB-ML devices 	no

a. The IB-Module vendor protects the factory-programmed portion of ModuleInfo against writes even if a proper B_Key is provided.

b. The Chassis vendor protects the factory-programmed portion of ChassisInfo against writes even if a proper B_Key is provided. If further protection is desired, the CME or the Chassis provides it.

16.2.4.3 B_KEY OPERATION

C16-11: The BMA **shall** check the B_Key contained in incoming MADs.

The success and effect of the check depends on the value of the BKey-Info:B_Key and BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit of the BMA and on the method and attribute contained in the incoming MAD.

Table 328 B_Key Check

BMA's B_Key	BMA's B_Key Protection Bit	MAD's method	Success
zero	any	any	yes
non-zero	any	BMSet(), BMSend()	if MAD's B_Key equals BMA's B_Key
non-zero	0	BMGet()	yes
non-zero	1	BMGet()	yes ^a

a. Even though the check succeeds, the B_Key value in the BKeyInfo attribute **shall** be returned as zero.

C16-12: If B_Key check fails, the BMA **shall**:

- 1) Drop the MAD.

- 2) Increment a B_Key Violation counter if supported.
- 3) Send a BKeyViolation trap if traps are supported by the BMA.
- 4) Start a countdown timer with the B_Key lease period value.

16.2.4.4 B_KEY INITIALIZATION

C16-13: At power up or reset, the BKeyInfo:B_Key, BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit and BKeyInfo:B_KeyLeasePeriod **shall** be set to zero if NVRAM is not used; otherwise, they **shall** be set to the values stored in NVRAM.

If the B_Key-related components are not stored in NVRAM, the BKeyInfo:B_Key, BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit and BKeyInfo:B_KeyLeasePeriod components may be set by the BM. Initialization of BKeyInfo:B_KeyLeasePeriod to a value of zero notwithstanding, whenever a port's B_Key-related components are not stored in NVRAM, a BM may use BMSet(BKeyInfo) to assign the subsequent BKeyInfo:B_Key, BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit and BKeyInfo:B_KeyLeasePeriod.

16.2.4.5 B_KEY RECOVERY

The B_Key lease period timer starts when a B_Key check fails. At this time, the node sends a trap to the BM (if traps are supported and if the BM stored its information in the trap components of the ClassPortInfo attribute). This trap serves as a request to the BM to refresh the lease period by issuing a BMSet(BKeyInfo). A successful BMSet(BKeyInfo) will stop the timer and will rearm it.

If the BM that originally set the B_Key has gone away, then the lease period expires—clearing the BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit and allowing anyone to read (and then set) the BkeyInfo:B_Key.

In the case where a node starts with NVRAM, BKeyInfo:B_Key and BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit set and the TrapLID is zero (because no BM has come around to set it), the node has no BM to send the trap to. In this case, the node does not send the trap and the lease period timer will expire, causing eventual take over by a new BM.

With the BMGet(BKeyInfo), any BM can detect whether a BKeyInfo:B_Key is set (although hidden) based on the BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit. If the BKeyInfo:B_KeyProtectBit is set, the BKeyInfo:B_Key is set and hidden. Otherwise the returned BKeyInfo:B_Key is the real one even if it is zero.

16.2.4.6 LEVELS OF PROTECTION

There are four different protection levels based on the B_Key, depending on the system requirements.

Table 329 Protection Levels

B_Key	B_KeyProtectBit	B_KeyLeasePeriod	Description
0	any	any	No protection provided. Any BM can issue sets and sends.
non-zero	0	n/a	Protection provided, but allows BMs to read the BKeyInfo:B_Key in the node.
non-zero	1	non-zero	Protection provided and does not allow anyone to read the B_Key in the node until the lease period has expired. The B_Key lease period is a mechanism to allow the B_Key to be protected only for a given amount of time.
non-zero	1	0	Protection provided and does not allow the B_Key in the node to be read by other BMs. It must be noted that if the lease period was set to 0 (infinite) and the BM that set it dies, there is no possibility for other BMs to ever read it. So if the B_Key is not provided by some unspecified way to the other BMs, the BMA of this node will never be accessible again.

16.3 DEVICE MANAGEMENT

The Device Management Agent is optional.

o16-3.1.2: If there is a Device Manager, it **shall** register its services with the SA via SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) using the ServiceName “Device-Manager.IBTA.” See [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#) and Service Names in the Annex “Application Specific Identifiers.”

IO Devices and I/O controllers (IOC) are not directly connected to the IBA fabric. An I/O Unit (IOU) containing one or more IOCs is attached to the fabric via a TCA. The TCA is responsible for receiving packets from the fabric and delivering complete, valid messages to IOCs, and vice-versa. The TCA might use memory resources supplied by the IOC to assemble the packet and notify the IOC when the complete packet is available for consumption. IOC is then responsible for executing I/O requests such as network sends and receives or disk reads and writes over a device specific interface such as Ethernet or SCSI.

This section does not address direct management of end devices such as disk drives but focuses on the infrastructure, related methods, data formats and attributes to support IOU/IOC management over the fabric. This section defines mechanisms to send and receive device management packets between two fabric attachment points such as a HCA and a TCA. The mechanisms required to translate MADs into a format that the end devices understand and how the data is delivered and retrieved from an end device is device-specific and therefore is not addressed in this specification.

The IBA is based on message passing. For IOU and IOC, the messages fall into three classes: fabric configuration, unit management/configuration, and I/O transaction:

- Fabric configuration messages that are processed by the Subnet Management Agent (SMA) are defined in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#).
- Messages specific to configuring and managing a device that are received through the General Services Interface (GSI) are described in this section.
- IO transaction messages are not defined in this document. I/O transaction messages include those messages used by an initiator to request I/O services from an IOC, messages containing user or application data, and messages used by the IOC to provide a completion notification (ending status) to the requester. Also included in this class are in-band configuration messages (parameters, etc.) directed only to an IOC, and not to the larger IOU as a whole. These messages travel as I/O requests but perform management functions specific to the I/O controller.

Although this chapter tends to use language implying that an IOU “contains” IOCs, there are no restrictions on how IOCs are connected to, or served by, the TCA. [Figure 210 Architectural Model for an I/O Unit on page 1154](#) provides the architectural and connection models for an IOU, consisting of a TCA and one or more IOCs.

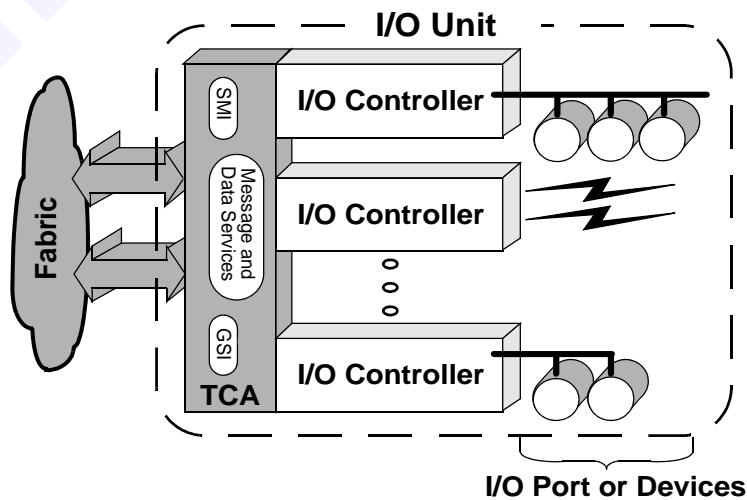


Figure 210 Architectural Model for an

16.3.1 MAD FORMAT

o16-4: The datagrams in the Device Management class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 211 Device Management MAD](#)

[Format on page 1155](#) and [Table 330 Device Management MAD Fields on page 1155](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0	Common MAD Header			
...				
20				
24	Reserved			
...				
60				
64	Data			
...				
252				

Figure 211 Device Management MAD Format

Table 330 Device Management MAD Fields

Field	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Reserved	40 bytes	Reserved
DevMgt Data	192 bytes	192 bytes of Device Management payload. The structure and content depends upon the Method, Attribute and AttributeModifier fields in the header.

16.3.1.1 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). Some class-specific bits are defined.

Table 331 Device Management Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8	NoResponse	IOC Not responding
9	NoServiceEntries	Service Entries are not supported
10-14	-	Reserved
15	GeneralFailure	IOC General Failure

16.3.2 METHODS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Among the services that a TCA provides to an initiating client is a mechanism to deliver detailed information about the I/O resources (e.g., IOCs) supported by the IOU. This information transcends a simple count of the number of IOCs supported to provide details of each IOC such as a GUID, a vendor-unique ID, product revision levels, and other information that is specific to a given IOC. The purpose of the detailed information is to let a system configuration manager allocate the IOU's resources to various clients located on the IBA fabric, and to provide a common way for host resource managers to determine the characteristics of IOUs and IOCs. This allows the proper driver to be associated with each controller.

11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
The profiles are requested and returned through the GSI, which is an unreliable datagram service. The actual access QP and DLID may be redirected by the GSI. The IOUnitInfo attribute contains information on the number of IOCs the unit can support (IOUnitInfo:MaxControllers). This value is the length of the IOUnitInfo:ControllerList, which has an entry for every possible controller "slot" (which may be physical or logical). Each entry in the ControllerList component shows whether a controller is present. For each controller, the IOControllerProfile attribute contains information such as the type of controller and the identity of the IOC's vendor. Each controller has a ServiceEntries attribute associated with it. ServiceEntries is a table of ServiceIDs that the controller advertises to its clients. The format of the IOUnitInfo, IOControllerProfile and ServiceEntries structures are defined in [16.3.3 Attributes on page 1157](#).

22
23
24
25
26
27
o16-4.1.1: If the Device Management Class is supported, the Device Management Agent **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 332: Device Management Methods](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

28
29
30
Table 332 Device Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
DevMgtGet()	0x01	Request an IOU to return (read) Device Management class attributes such as profile or a list of controllers currently installed.
DevMgtSet()	0x02	Request an IOU to set (write) an attribute. The object will issue a DevMgtGetResp() as a response.
DevMgtGetResp()	0x81	IOU responds to an attribute Get or Set request.
DevMgtTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent to the Device Management entity. Contains the Notice Attribute as defined in 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802 to identify the trap.
DevMgtTrapRepress()	0x07	Block repetition of notification.
DevMgtReport()	0x06	Forward an event previously subscribed for
DevMgtReportResp()	0x86	Reply to a DevMgtReport() method

16.3.3 ATTRIBUTES

This section specifies the format of the attributes used for managing the IOU. Messages used as part of I/O transactions are not specified in this document. The term “device” refers to actual devices sitting behind IOCs. The way they are numbered is implementation-specific

o16-4.1.2: If the Device Management class is implemented, the Device Management Agent **shall** support the attributes listed in [Table 333 Device Management Attributes on page 1157](#) and [Table 334 Device Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1158](#). All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 333: Device Management Attributes](#) are reserved.

Table 333 Device Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier ^a	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x0000_0000	See 16.3.3.1 ClassPortInfo on page 1159 .
Notice	0x0002	0x0000_0000	See 16.3.3.2 Notice on page 1159 .
IOUnitInfo	0x0010	0x0000_0000	List of all IOCs present in a given IOU. Each IOU may support up to 0xFF controllers. See 16.3.3.3 IOUnitInfo on page 1160 .
IOControllerProfile	0x0011	0x0000_0001-0x0000_00FF	IOC Profile Information. AttributeModifier identifies the IOC. See 16.3.3.4 IOControllerProfile on page 1160 .
ServiceEntries	0x0012	0x0001_0000-0x00FF_FFFF	List of supported services and their associated Service IDs. See 16.3.3.5 ServiceEntries on page 1163 . Each IOC has a table with at most 255 ServiceEntries. The AttributeModifier is structured as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the upper 16 bits identify the IOC• the lower 16 bits specify a range of up to four Service Entries to be retrieved. The lower 8 bits specify the beginning of the range and the upper 8 bits specify the end of the range.
Reserved	0x0013-0x001F	0x0000_0000-0xFFFF_FFFF	Reserved
DiagnosticTimeout	0x0020	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Response indicates maximum time for completion of diagnostic test. Target device is identified by the AttributeModifier. Tests not completing within this period may indicate device failure. Specified in multiples of milliseconds. See 16.3.3.6 DiagnosticTimeout on page 1163 .

Table 333 Device Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier ^a	Description
PrepareToTest	0x0021	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	<p>A Set with this Attribute instructs the device specified by the Attribute-Modifier to prepare for diagnostic test.</p> <p>A Get of this Attribute will result in the appropriate Response Status being set as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0x0000 = Ready for diagnostic test 0x0100 = Invalid AttributeModifier 0x0200 = Device not ready 0x0400 = Device not responding 0x0800 = Diagnostics not supported 0x1000 - 0x8000 = Reserved <p>See 16.3.3.7 PrepareToTest on page 1163.</p>
TestDeviceOnce	0x0022	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	<p>A Set instructs the device specified by the AttributeModifier to initiate a single diagnostic test and run it once.</p> <p>Vendor-unique attributes (AttributeID values 0xFF00 - 0xFFFF) may be defined to initiate specific test instructions.</p> <p>See 16.3.3.8 TestDeviceOnce on page 1163.</p>
TestDeviceLoop	0x0023	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	<p>A Set instructs the device specified by the AttributeModifier to initiate a single diagnostic test and run it continuously in a loop.</p> <p>Vendor-unique attributes (AttributeID values 0xFF00 - 0xFFFF) may be defined to initiate specific test instructions.</p> <p>See 16.3.3.9 TestDeviceLoop on page 1164.</p>
DiagCode	0x0024	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Vendor-specific diagnostic information for the device specified by the AttributeModifier. See 16.3.3.10 DiagCode on page 1164 .
Reserved	0x0025-0xFEFF	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Reserved
Vendor specific	0xFF00-0xFFFF	0x0000_0000 - 0xFFFF_FFFF	Vendor-unique attribute values may be defined to deliver specific test instructions.

a. The AttributeModifier for a diagnostic attribute specifies the I/O component. An AttributeModifier of zero specifies the I/O unit itself. If IOUnitInfo:DiagDeviceID is one, the least significant 8 bits of a non-zero AttributeModifier designates the IOC. Other bits of the AttributeModifier (except the msb) are implementation specific and can be used to identify additional I/O components such as secondary I/O ports. The recommended practice is that if the additional bits are zero, then the diagnostic attribute applies to the IOC itself and non-zero values specify secondary I/O components.

Table 334 Device Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	DevMgtGet()	DevMgtSet()	DevMgtTrap()
ClassPortInfo	X	X	
Notice	X	X	X
IOUnitInfo	X		

Table 334 Device Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	DevMgtGet()	DevMgtSet()	DevMgtTrap()
IOControllerProfile	X		
ServiceEntries	X		
DiagnosticTimeout	X		
PrepareToTest	X	X	
TestDeviceOnce		X	
TestDeviceLoop		X	
DiagCode	X		

16.3.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 335 Device Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
8-15	-	Class-specific bits are reserved

16.3.3.2 NOTICE

The Notice attribute is described in [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#). It is used for one optional generic trap.

Table 336 Device Management Traps

Name	Type	Number	DataDetails
ReadyToTest	Informational	514	Device <DEVICE> readiness is <STATUS>, where status is the same as would have been returned by a Get(PrepareToTest) with device as the AttributeModifier.

o16-5: Device Management Traps use the following layout for the Data-Details component of the Notice attribute, see [Table 337 Notice DataDetails For Trap 514 on page 1159](#). Fields **shall** be filled with the information corresponding to the description of a given trap.

Table 337 Notice DataDetails For Trap 514

Field	Length(bits)	Description
STATUS	16	Readiness status

Table 337 Notice DataDetails For Trap 514 (Continued)

Field	Length(bits)	Description
DEVICE	32	Device number
Padding	384	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

16.3.3.3 IOUNITINFO**Table 338 IOUnitInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Change_ID	RO	16	0	Incremented, with rollover, by any change to ControllerList.
Max Controllers	RO	8	16	Number of slots in ControllerList.
Reserved	RO	6	24	Reserved
DiagDeviceID	RO	1	30	A zero indicates that the AttributeModifier in diagnostic attributes is I/O unit vendor-specific. A one indicates that the AttributeModifier's least significant 8 bits identify the IOC Slot Number. This when this bit is one, diagnostics are per IOC. When this bit is zero, the I/O unit vendor defines how the AttributeModifier is interpreted. This allows diagnostics to be executed on objects behind the IOC.
Option ROM	RO	1	31	Indicates presence of Option ROM. 1 = Present; 0 = Absent.
ControllerList	RO	1024	32	A series of 4-bit nibbles with each representing a slot in the IOU. Each 4-bit nibble can take the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 = IOC not installed• 0x1 = IOC present• 0x2-0xE = reserved• 0xF = slot does not exist Bits 7-4 of the first byte (lowest offset) represent slot 1, bits 3-0 represent slot 2, bits 7-4 of the second byte represent slot 3, bits 3-0 represent slot 4, and so on.

16.3.3.4 IOCONTROLLERPROFILE**Table 339 IOControllerProfile**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GUID	RO	64	0	An EUI-64 GUID used to uniquely identify the controller. This could be the same one as the Node/Port GUID if there is only one controller.
VendorID	RO	24	64	IO controller vendor ID, IEEE format

Table 339 IOControllerProfile (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	88	Reserved for alignment
locDeviceID	RO	32	96	A number assigned by the vendor to identify the type of controller. This can be used by an Operating System to select a device driver.
Device Version	RO	16	128	A number assigned by the vendor to identify the device version.
Reserved	RO	16	144	Reserved for alignment.
Subsystem VendorID	RO	24	160	ID of the vendor of the enclosure, if any, in which the I/O controller resides in IEEE format; otherwise zero.
Reserved	RO	8	184	Reserved for alignment.
SubsystemID	RO	32	192	A number identifying the subsystem where the controller resides.
IOClass	RO	16	224	0x0000-0xFFFF = Reserved for I/O classes encompassed by the InfiniBand Architecture. Refer to Annex "Application-Specific Identifiers." 0xFFFF = Vendor-specific.
IOSubclass	RO	16	240	0x0000-0xFFFF = Reserved for I/O subclasses encompassed by the InfiniBand Architecture. Refer to Annex "Application-Specific Identifiers." 0xFFFF = Vendor-specific. This shall be set to 0xFFFF if the I/O Class component is set to 0xFFFF.
Protocol	RO	16	256	0x0000-0xFFFF = Reserved for I/O protocols encompassed by the InfiniBand Architecture. Refer to Annex "Application-Specific Identifiers." 0xFFFF = Vendor-specific. This shall be set to 0xFFFF if the I/O Class component is set to 0xFFFF.
Protocol Version	RO	16	272	Protocol specific.
Reserved	RO	16	288	Reserved
Reserved	RO	16	304	Reserved
Send Message Queue Depth	RO	16	320	Maximum depth of the Send Message Queue.
Reserved	RO	8	336	Reserved for alignment
RDMA Read Queue Depth	RO	8	344	Maximum depth of the per-channel RDMA Read Queue.
Send Message Size	RO	32	352	Maximum size of Send Messages in bytes.
RDMA Transfer Size	RO	32	384	Maximum size of outbound RDMA transfers initiated by the IOC - in bytes.

Table 339 IOControllerProfile (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Controller Operations Capability Mask	RO	8	416	Supported operation types of this I/O controller. A bit set to 1 for affirmation of supported capability. Bit: Name; Description 0: ST; Send Messages To IOCs 1: SF; Send Messages From IOCs 2: RT; RDMA Read Requests To IOCs 3: RF; RDMA Read Requests From IOCs 4: WT; RDMA Write Requests To IOCs 5: WF; RDMA Write Requests From IOCs 6: AT; Atomic Operations To IOCs 7: AF; Atomic Operations From IOCs
Reserved	RO	8	424	Reserved
Service Entries	RO	8	432	Number of entries in the ServiceEntries table.
Reserved	RO	72	440	Reserved
ID String	RO	512	512	UTF-8 encoded string for identifying the controller to operator.

An I/O Controller represents a QP consumer on the target side that provides a particular I/O function via an I/O protocol. The IOControllerProfile attribute provides information that enables a host to identify the I/O function and load the appropriate I/O driver. The IOC function can be matched with a proprietary driver by its vendor information components or with a generic driver by its Class, Subclass, and protocol components (Refer to Annex A1 "I/O Annex" for driver matching rules).

Each IOC lists one or more ServiceEntries, and each ServiceEntry identifies an instance of I/O service that the IOC provides. Examples of why an IOC might have multiple services entries are (1) when the IOC supports multiple protocols; (2) when the IOC uses a different QP for each set of I/O resources it provides; and (3) when the IOC supports different service criteria. For example, an IOC that supports SCSI RDMA Protocol (SRP) would provide a service entry for each SCSI target port and if the IOC supported another protocol (such as a proprietary I/O protocol) it would also provide additional ServiceEntries for that protocol. Additionally, if that IOC supports one or more management protocols (such as for a JBOD or RAID configuration program) it might also have additional ServiceEntries for them.

16.3.3.5 SERVICEENTRIES**Table 340 ServiceEntries**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
ServiceName_1	RO	320	0	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated name of the service.
ServiceID_1	RO	64	320	An identifier of the associated Service.
ServiceName_2	RO	320	384	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated name of the service.
ServiceID_2	RO	64	704	An identifier of the associated Service.
ServiceName_3	RO	320	768	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated name of the service.
ServiceID_3	RO	64	1088	An identifier of the associated Service.
ServiceName_4	RO	320	1152	UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated name of the service.
ServiceID_4	RO	64	1472	An identifier of the associated Service.

16.3.3.6 DIAGNOSTICTIMEOUT**Table 341 DiagnosticTimeout**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
MaxDiagTime	RO	32	0	Maximum time to finish a diagnostic operation in milliseconds

16.3.3.7 PREPARETOTEST**Table 342 PrepareToTest**

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
-	-	-	-	This attribute does not have any components

16.3.3.8 TESTDEVICEONCE**Table 343 TestDeviceOnce**

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
-	-	-	-	This attribute does not have any components

16.3.3.9 TESTDEVICELOOP**Table 344** **TestDeviceLoop**

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
-	-	-	-	This attribute does not have any components

16.3.3.10 DIAGCODE**Table 345** **DiagCode**

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
DiagCode	RO	16	0	16-bit diagnostic code. A value of 0x0000 means "device operational"; all other values are IOU vendor-specific.
Vendor-specific				

16.3.4 DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC FRAMEWORK

Device Diagnostics allows the identification of faults in devices behind the target channel adapter. As such, it complements other sections of this specification that describe how problems at the fabric and node level may be identified and isolated.

The device diagnostic framework is intended to support tests within an active fabric. It is versatile enough, however, to accommodate vendor-unique approaches that may include retrieval of power-on data. It should be noted that some, and perhaps most, devices may not permit simultaneous use of I/O transaction messages and diagnostics. Unless data is flushed from internal buffers, for example, corruption or loss of user data might occur. Further, it is expected that the diagnostics tests would require setting the device to an initial, known state. For that reason, provision will be made to put the device into a "ready" state prior to test, which will likely cause I/O transactions to be held off. This may, in turn, cause established connections to time out, and other management notices to be sent.

In general, device diagnostics should be used with great care, and with full understanding of the potential impact to I/O transactions to the target device. It is best used during periods of initial configuration, major maintenance, or as a tool of last resort.

16.3.4.1 BEHAVIORS

The Device Management class of MADs (see [16.3 Device Management on page 1153](#)) is used for diagnostics. Within that class, standard methods as defined in [Table 332 Device Management Methods on page 1153](#).

[1156](#) are utilized. Attributes specific to device diagnostics are defined by which vendor-supplied tests may be invoked, and the results of completed tests then determined. The AttributeModifier indicates the object under test. If IOUnitInfo:DiagDeviceID is one, then a non-zero AttributeModifier (ignoring the MSB) indicates the IOC and a zero AttributeModifier (ignoring the MSB) indicates the entire IOU. Results are reported in the DiagCode attribute. The first 16 bits provide an overall status of the device under test; a value of zero indicates that the device is operational, and all other values are vendor-specific. The attribute data following the 16-bit DiagCode is vendor-specific.

The PrepareToTest attribute within the DevMgtSet() method places the device into a test-ready state. The time required to complete this step is not predictable, as it may involve flushing data from cache memory, reinitializing SCSI ports, etc. The device indicates its readiness for test by signaling the IOU to send an Informational Trap.

Alternatively, a DevMgtGet() method on this attribute will return information pertaining to the specific device's ability or readiness for test. This allows the status to be polled on a periodic basis, or to determine that the device does not support diagnostic tests.

Two modes are provided for initiating diagnostics: single test mode and continuous test mode. In single test mode, a single test sequence is initiated by setting an appropriate AttributeModifier for the TestDeviceOnce attribute, with MSB=0. The DevMgt Agent rejects a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) with AttributeModifier MSB=1. Once initiated, this vendor-defined test will run to completion. Because tests will vary by device technology and by vendor, the time-to-completion is inherently unpredictable. To detect errant devices which are unable to complete their diagnostic test, a DiagnosticTimeout attribute may be retrieved in advance of test initiation, which indicates the maximum allowable period for completion. Results of the completed diagnostic test are obtained through the DiagCode attribute of the DevMgtGetResp() method.

The continuous test mode can assist in detecting problems that are transient in nature, be used to initiate endurance-related tests. The continuous-test mode is initiated by setting an appropriate AttributeModifier for the TestDeviceLoop attribute, with MSB=1. Results of the last completed diagnostic test are obtained through the DiagCode attribute of the DevMgtGetResp() method.

The DevMgt Agent aborts the continuous test mode when it receives a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) with AttributeModifier MSB=0. In this case the DiagCode is indeterminate. The DevMgt Agent terminates the continuous test mode after it completes the current pass when it receives a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) with AttributeModifier MSB=0. In this case the DiagCode is valid.

Interpretation of results obtained through the DevMgtGetResp() method is vendor-specific.

It is beyond the scope of this specification to define a set of white-box, technology-specific diagnostic tests. Rather, the intent is to allow initiation of a vendor-supplied test sequence, for which the expected outcome would be either success or failure. The DiagCode format, however, allows flexibility for the vendor to provide specific, coded information about the test results.

16.4 SNMP TUNNELING

The SNMP Tunneling Agent is optional.

This section describes the Management Datagrams used to report native SNMP tunneling over the IBA.

SNMP, or Simple Network Management Protocol, consists of a set of standards for network management, a protocol, and a database specification to uniformly address managed information objects.

SNMP tunneling is a supported option to the InfiniBand architecture as a Management Datagram service. Devices advertise support for the SNMP tunneling service by use of the IsSNMPSupported Capability in PortInfo Attribute. If the value is non-zero a given device may be queried via the GSI for the QP and LID to access the SNMP service. Note that this capability allows for another port to supply SNMP tunneling services by proxy.

This section describes the required class-dependent behavior of the datagrams in this class.

16.4.1 MAD FORMAT

o16-6: The datagrams in the SNMP tunneling class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 212 SNMP Tunneling MAD Format on page 1166](#) and [Table 346 SNMP Tunneling MAD Fields on page 1167](#) below.

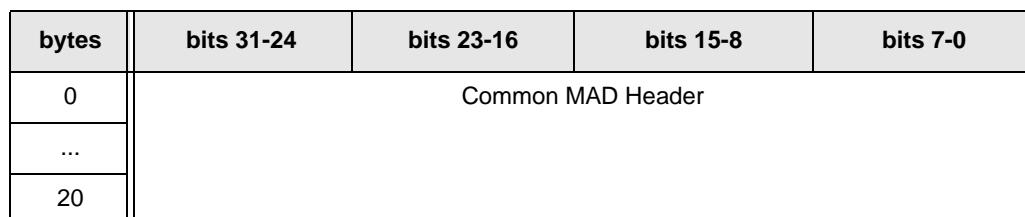


Figure 212 SNMP Tunneling MAD Format

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0		
24	Reserved					
...						
52						
56	Raddress					
60	Payload Length	Segment Number	Source LID			
64	Data					
...						
252						

Figure 212 SNMP Tunneling MAD Format (Continued)**Table 346** SNMP Tunneling MAD Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Reserved	32 bytes	Reserved
Raddress	4 bytes	Opaque address field that is used by SNMP agent to forward SNMP packets using SNMP redirect features.
Payload Length	1 byte	Number of valid data bytes in the SNMP segment being transferred.
Segment Number	1 byte	Segment number of a segmented SNMP packet.
Source LID	2 bytes	Local address of the SNMP packet sender.
Data	192 bytes	Attribute data is mapped bit for bit from the format described in the following sections to the start of this data field. If the attribute is smaller than the data field, the content of the remainder of the data field is unspecified.

16.4.1.1 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 347 SNMP Tunneling Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Reserved (class-specific bits)

16.4.2 METHODS

This class utilizes the common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#)

o16-6.1.1: If the SNMP Tunneling Management Class is supported, the SNMP Tunneling Agent **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 348: SNMP Tunneling Methods](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

Table 348 **SNMP Tunneling Methods**

Method Type	Value	Description
SnmpGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of an Attribute.
SnmpSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of an Attribute.
SnmpGetResp()	0x81	Response from a Get() or Set() request.
SnmpSend()	0x03	Send an Attribute to a node.

16.4.3 ATTRIBUTES

o16-6.1.2: If the SNMP Tunneling Management class is implemented, the SNMP Tunneling Management Agent **shall** support the attributes listed in [Table 349 SNMP Tunneling Attributes on page 1168](#) and [Table 350 SNMP Tunneling Attribute / Method Map on page 1168](#). All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 349: SNMP Tunneling Attributes](#) are reserved.

Table 349 **SNMP Tunneling Attributes**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x0000_0000	See 16.4.3.1 ClassPortInfo on page 1169 .
(none)	0x0010	any	Use of this attribute is vendor-specific
		0x0000_0001	First SNMP segment
		0x0000_0002	Intermediate SNMP segment
		0x0000_0003	Last SNMP segment
PduInfo	0x0011	0x0000_0004	First and Last SNMP segment
		0x8000_0001	First redirected SNMP segment
		0x8000_0002	Intermediate redirected SNMP segment
		0x8000_0003	Last redirected SNMP segment
		0x8000_0004	First and Last redirected SNMP segment

Table 350 **SNMP Tunneling Attribute / Method Map**

Attribute Name	SnmpGet()	SnmpSet()	SnmpSend()
ClassPortInfo	X		

Table 350 SNMP Tunneling Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	SnmpGet()	SnmpSet()	SnmpSend()
CommunityInfo			X
PduInfo			X

16.4.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 351 SNMP Tunneling ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
8-15	-	Reserved (class-specific bits)

16.4.3.2 OBSOLETE SECTION

This section is obsolete and has been deleted

16.4.3.3 PDUINFO

Table 352 PduInfo

Component	Settability	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PduData	RO	1536	0	Data Segment of an SNMP message

16.4.4 OPERATIONS

This Figure is obsolete and has been deleted

Figure 213 This Figure is Obsolete and Has Been Deleted

A packet consists of one or more segments. If necessary, a packet will be segmented at the source, transmitted, and reassembled at the target. Using the SNMP datagram, the source specifies the SnmpSend method, PduInfo Attribute, then sets the AttributeModifier, segment number (if the packet is segmented), and the payload length fields to delimit and account for segments.

o16-7: When SNMP packets **shall** be segmented into multiple MADs, the data field of all but the last MAD transferred **shall** be completely filled (192 bytes of data).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
o16-8: If any segment of a multiMAD transfer is not received within the timeout as specified in [13.4.6.3 Timeout/Timer Usage on page 793](#), then that entire MAD **shall** be discarded.

o16-9: The Transaction ID field of all the MADs of the SNMP packet **shall** be the same, and **shall** conform to the uniqueness of Transaction IDs as described in [13.4.6.4 TransactionID usage on page 794](#).

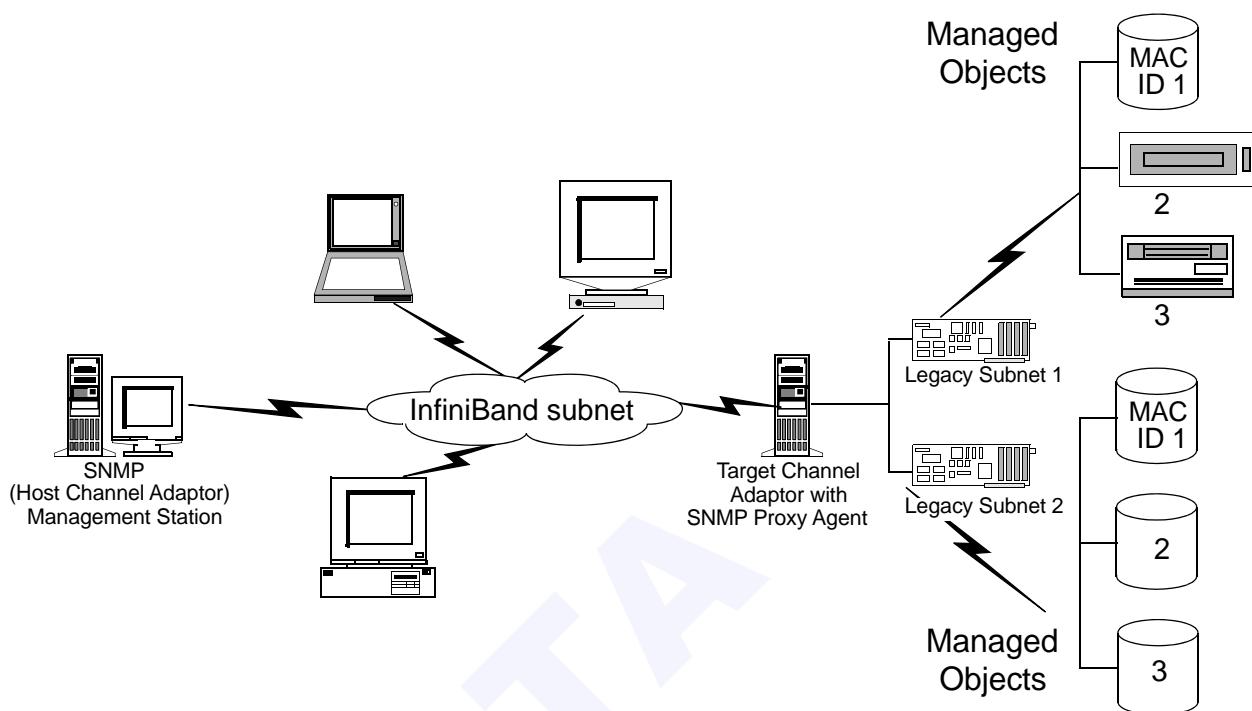
Because the destination is already known by the sender of the MAD packet, there is no need to include it in the MAD packet. However, because the sender may be expecting a response from the agent receiving this SNMP request, the original source LID is provided so the agent knows where to send a reply.

The SNMP management class can transfer a packet of up to 49,152 bytes. This is enough to accommodate any incoming SNMP/UDP packet and allow for flexibility if management packets arrive from a transport other than TCP/UDP.

o16-10: When the pieces are reassembled, the SNMP Message **shall** be extracted and passed up to the agent or manager for processing.

If a MAD is marked First and Last with the AttributeModifier, it is the only segment in the packet. No segmentation has occurred so no reassembly is required, and the SNMP packet is extracted and passed up to the next layer.

If SNMP Redirect is specified in the AttributeModifier, the packet is meant for a target managed by the proxy agent processing the packet. The proxy agent will need to parse the packet to extract the Raddress value of the final destination to reformat the PDU for further transport along the new interconnect.

16.4.4.1 SNMP TARGETS FOR BEYOND THE INFINIBAND ENDNODE**Figure 214** **SNMP Proxy Agents**

To target a remote managed object not directly connected to the InfiniBand fabric requires the use of an SNMP Proxy Agent. See [Figure 214 SNMP Proxy Agents on page 1171](#). The basic function of a Proxy Agent is to receive SNMP packets passed up from the InfiniBand Endnode SNMP agent and forward them to that remote managed agent. These remote agents are, as such, not directly connected to the InfiniBand fabric and thus cannot be managed through it unless an intermediate device acts on its behalf to receive and send over the unsupported interconnect.

o16-11: The InfiniBand architecture **shall** be able to accommodate such legacy transports by redirecting SNMP packets destined for these managed nodes.

SNMP targeting for beyond the InfiniBand Endnode (such as an InfiniBand device attached to a TCA that supports SNMP) is accomplished by an SNMP redirect. An SNMP packet destined for such a redirection will contain one of the SNMP redirect features and specify the destination address in the raddress field of the SNMP class datagram. This will allow the Proxy SNMP Agent to reassemble the SNMP packet from its fragments (if any) so it may re-encode the packet for the legacy transport over which it travels to reach its final destination.

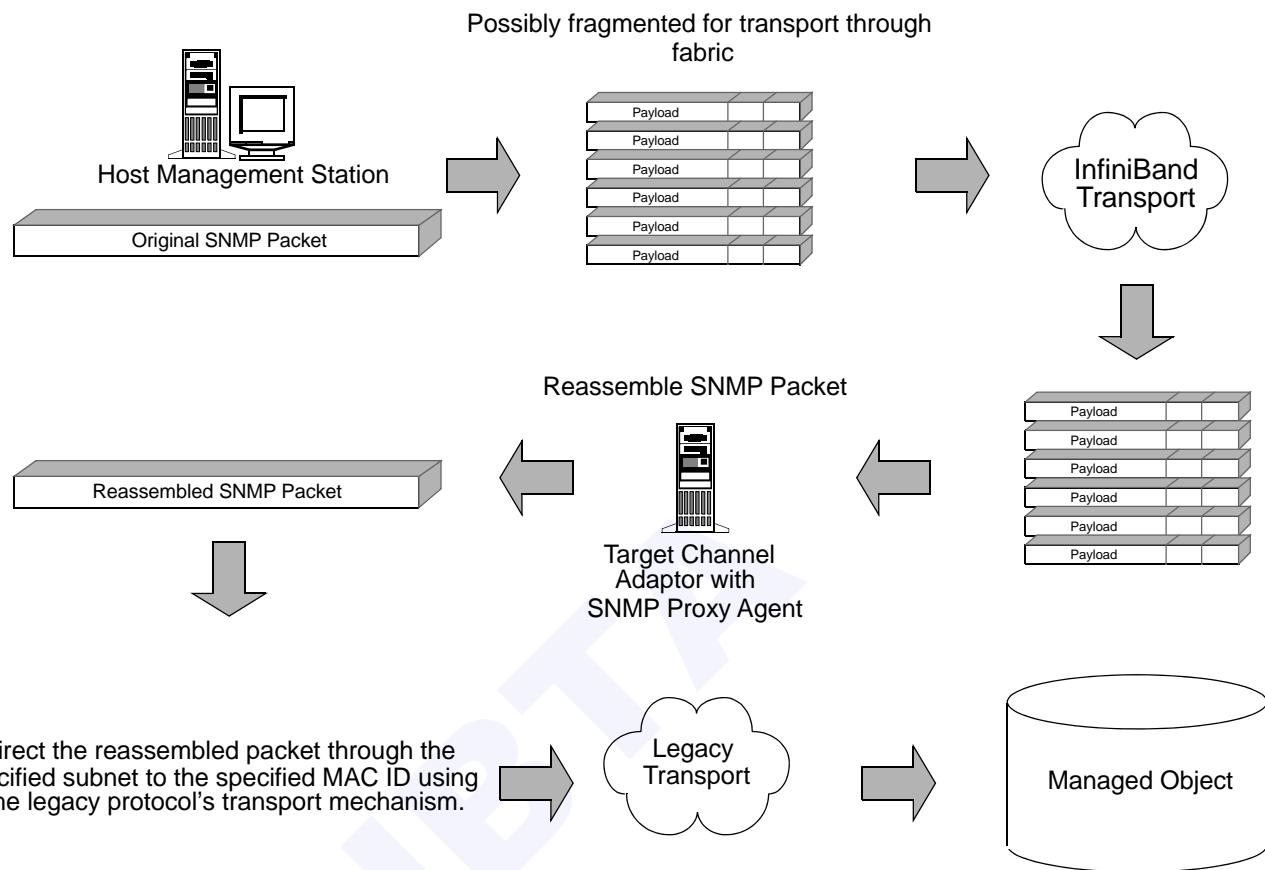


Figure 215 **SNMP PDU Segmentation**

16.4.4.2 TRAP EVENT SUBSCRIPTION

A node may request SNMP traps from a given node be sent to it. This is done by setting the ClassPortInfo Attribute with the LID and QP appropriately. The SNMP agent will transmit the Trap PDU as a sequence of SNMP datagrams to the destination node. It is not using the method Trap() but the method Send() with the Trap PDU as the SNMP Data.

16.5 VENDOR-SPECIFIC

The Vendor-specific Agent is optional.

Vendor-specific operations can be defined using the vendor-specific management classes.

Vendors are free to define new methods and attributes and their use, provided that they conform to the common MAD format and methods defined herein, and do not conflict with the stated restrictions on method and attribute utilization. Vendor-specific classes will never be used to define management operations that are encompassed by the InfiniBand Architecture.

16.5.1 MAD FORMAT

1
2
3
4
o16-12: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been re-
placed by [o16-12.1.1](#); and .

5
6
7
The MADHeader:ClassVersion component for the Vendor class is subject
to vendor versioning.

8
9
The MADHeader:ClassSpecific component for the Vendor class is vendor
defined.

10
11
12
13
14
15
o16-12.1.1: For Vendor-Specific classes 0x09-0x0F, the datagrams in
these Vendor-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD format and use
as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further
customized in [Figure 216 Vendor MAD Format \(Classes 0x09-0x0F\) on
page 1173](#) and [Table 353 Vendor MAD Fields \(Classes 0x09-0x0F\) on
page 1173](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24				Data
...				
252				

24
25
Figure 216

26
27
Vendor MAD Format (Classes 0x09-0x0F)

28
29
Table 353 Vendor MAD Fields (Classes 0x09-0x0F)

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Data	232 bytes	The interpretation of the data is vendor-class specific.

30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
3 In order to support the key protection option, there is the following format
which requires a different vendor class version. If the non Vend_Key MAD
format was implemented by vendor and if manager backward compatibility
is required, the VS agent should support multiple class versions.

40
41
42
o16-13.2-1.1: For Vendor-Specific classes 0x09-0x0F with Vend_Key, the
datagrams in these Vendor-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD
format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#)
and further customized in [Figure 217 Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key](#)

[\(Classes 0x09-0x0F\) on page 1174](#) and [Table 354 Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key \(Classes 0x09-0x0F\) on page 1174](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24			Vend_Key	
28				
32			Data	
...				
252				

Figure 217 **Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key (Classes 0x09-0x0F)**

Table 354 Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key (Classes 0x09-0x0F)

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Vend_Key	8 bytes	Vendor Key
Data	224 bytes	The interpretation of the data is vendor-class specific.

o16-12.1.2: For Vendor-Specific classes 0x30-0x4F, the datagrams in these Vendor-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 218 Vendor MAD Format \(Classes 0x30-0x4F\) on page 1174](#).

[page 1175](#) and [Table 355 Vendor MAD Fields \(Classes 0x30-0x4F\) on page 1175](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0			
0	Common MAD Header						
...							
20							
24	RMPP Header						
28							
32							
36	Reserved	OUI					
40	Data						
...							
252							

Figure 218 Vendor MAD Format (Classes 0x30-0x4F)

Table 355 Vendor MAD Fields (Classes 0x30-0x4F)

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
RMPP Header	12 byte	RMPP Header as described in 13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843
Reserved	1 byte	Reserved
OUI	3 bytes	IEEE assigned Vendor OUI
Data	216 bytes	The interpretation of the data is vendor-class specific.

In order to support the key protection option, there is the following format which requires a different vendor class version. If the non Vend_Key MAD format was implemented by vendor and if manager backward compatibility is required, the VS agent should support multiple class versions.

o16-13.2-1.2: For Vendor-Specific classes 0x30-0x4F with Vend_Key, the datagrams in these Vendor-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 219 Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key](#).

[\(Classes 0x30-0x4F\) on page 1176](#) and [Table 356 Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key \(Classes 0x30-0x4F\) on page 1176](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0			
0	Common MAD Header						
...							
20							
24	RMPP Header						
28							
32							
36	Reserved	OUI					
40	Vend_Key						
44							
48	Data						
...							
252							

Figure 219 Vendor MAD Format with Vend_Key (Classes 0x30-0x4F)

Table 356 Vendor MAD Fields with Vend_Key (Classes 0x30-0x4F)

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
RMPP Header	12 byte	RMPP Header as described in 13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843
Reserved	1 byte	Reserved
OUI	3 bytes	IEEE assigned Vendor OUI
Vend_Key	8 bytes	Vendor Key
Data	208 bytes	The interpretation of the data is vendor-class specific.

16.5.2 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). Class-specific bits are defined by the Vendor.

Table 357 Vendor Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Class-specific bits defined by Vendor

16.5.3 METHODS

Vendor classes support the common methods.

Table 358 Vendor Class Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
VendorGet()	0x01	Request an attribute to return (read) from a target.
VendorSet()	0x02	Request a target to set (write) an attribute. The object will issue a VendorGetResp() as a response.
VendorGetResp()	0x81	Target responds to an attribute Get()/Set() request.
VendorSend()	0x03	Send a datagram. Does not require a response.
VendorTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent to the vendor entity. Contains the Notice Attribute as defined in 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802 to identify the trap.
VendorTrapRepress()	0x07	Block repetition of notification.

Vendor-specific methods can be added as desired by vendor, providing there is no collision with reserved methods in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

16.5.4 ATTRIBUTES

o16-13: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

The Vendor classes may optionally support the attributes Notice and InfoInfo. All other attributes are vendor-defined.

Table 359 Vendor Class Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	See 16.5.4.2 ClassPortInfo on page 1178
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Provides information regarding the associated Notice or Trap. See 16.5.4.1 Traps and Notices on page 1178 . Only valid when VSA supports key option as indicated by class version.
KeyInfo	0x000F	0x00000000	Provides Vend_Key information for a port. See 13.4.8.4 Class Management Key and KeyInfo on page 806 . Only valid when VSA supports key option as indicated by class version.
Vendor defined	0x0010 - 0xFFFF	0x00000000-0xFFFFFFFF	

Table 360**Vendor Attribute / Method Map**

Attribute Name	VendorGet()	VendorSet()	VendorSend()	VendorTrap()
ClassPortInfo	X	X (if traps defined)		
Notice	X	X	X	X
KeyInfo	X	X		
Vendor defined			Vendor defined	

16.5.4.1 TRAPS AND NOTICES

Notice and Trap Queues allow a VSA to inform a Vendor Specific Manager of a Vend_Key violation.

o16-13.2-1.3: A Vendor Specific Agent shall support either a Trap or a Notice Queue if it supports the key supported option as indicated in the class version.

It is expected that a Vendor Specific Manager will be capable of supporting both Trap and Notice Queues.

Traps and Notice Queues are described in detail in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#). Vendor Specific Management will use the common framework and this section serves only to describe behavior that is unique to the Vendor Specific class.

16.5.4.2 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). Class-specific bits are defined by Vendor.

Table 361**Vendor ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask**

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
8-15	-	Class-specific bits defined by Vendor

16.6 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC

The Application-specific Agents are optional.

Application-specific operations can be defined using the application-specific management classes.

Applications are free to define new methods and attributes and their use, provided that they conform to the common MAD format and methods de-

fined herein, and do not conflict with the stated restrictions on method and attribute utilization. Application-specific classes may be used to define application management operations that are encompassed by the InfiniBand Architecture. Vendors should not use application-specific classes to define vendor-specific behavior; instead vendor-specific management classes should be used.

16.6.1 MAD FORMAT

o16-14: The datagrams in these Application-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Data-grams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 220 Application MAD Format on page 1179](#) and [Table 362 Application MAD Fields on page 1179](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24				Data
...				
252				

Figure 220 Application MAD Format

Table 362 Application MAD Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Data	232 bytes	Interpretation of the data is application-class specific

In order to support the key protection option, there is the following format which requires a different application class version. If the non App_Key MAD format was implemented by application and if manager backward is required, the AS agent should support multiple class versions.

o16-13.2-1.4: The datagrams in these Application-specific classes **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Data-grams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 221 Application](#)

[MAD with App_Key Format on page 1180](#) and [Table 363 Application MAD with App_Key Fields on page 1180](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				Common MAD Header
...				
20				
24				App_Key
28				
32				Data
...				
252				

Figure 221 Application MAD with App_Key Format

Table 363 Application MAD with App_Key Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
App_Key	8 bytes	Application Key
Data	224 bytes	Interpretation of the data is application-class specific

16.6.1.1 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). Class-specific bits are defined by the Application.

Table 364 Application Status Field

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Class-specific bits defined by Application

16.6.2 METHODS

Application classes support the common methods.

Table 365 Application Class Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
AppGet()	0x01	Request an attribute to return (read) from a target.
AppSet()	0x02	Request a target to set (write) an attribute. The object will issue a AppGetResp() as a response.
AppGetResp()	0x81	Target responds to an attribute Get()/Set() request.
AppSend()	0x03	Send a datagram. Does not require a response.
AppTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent to the application entity. Contains the Notice Attribute as defined in 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802 to identify the trap.
AppTrapRepress()	0x07	Block repetition of notification.

Application-specific methods can be added as desired by application, providing there is no collision with reserved methods in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

16.6.3 ATTRIBUTES

o16-15: This optional compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

The Application classes may optionally support the attributes Notice and InformInfo. All other attributes are application-defined.

Table 366 Application Class Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	See 16.6.3.2 ClassPortInfo on page 1182
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Provides information regarding the associated Notice or Trap. See 16.6.3.1 Traps and Notices on page 1182 . Only valid when ASA supports key option as indicated by class version.
KeyInfo	0x000F	0x00000000	Provides App_Key information for a port. See 13.4.8.4 Class Management Key and KeyInfo on page 806 . Only valid when ASA supports key option as indicated by class version.
Application defined	0x0011 - 0xFFFF	0x00000000-0xFFFFFFFF	

Table 367**Application Attribute / Method Map**

Attribute Name	AppGet()	AppSet()	AppSend()	AppTrap()
ClassPortInfo	X	X		
Notice	X	X	X	X
KeyInfo	X	X		
Application defined	Application defined			

16.6.3.1 TRAPS AND NOTICES

Notice and Trap Queues allow an ASA to inform an Application Specific Manager of an App_Key violation.

o16-13.2-1.5: An Application Specific Agent shall support either a Trap or a Notice Queue if it supports the key supported option as indicated in the class version.

It is expected that an Application Specific Manager will be capable of supporting both Trap and Notice Queues.

Traps and Notice Queues are described in detail in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#). Application Specific Management will use the common framework and this section serves only to describe behavior that is unique to the Application Specific class.

16.6.3.2 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). Class-specific bits are defined by Application.

Table 368**Application ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask**

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
8-15	-	Class-specific bits defined by Application

16.7 COMMUNICATION MANAGEMENT

C16-14: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been deleted.

Communication Management is described in [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#). The Communication Management functions required for nodes are described in that chapter. Proper use of the messages defined in this section is subject to the protocols and state machines defined in that chapter.

16.7.1 MAD FORMAT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
C16-15: The datagrams in the Communication Management class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further customized in [Figure 222 Communication Management MAD Format on page 1183](#) and [Table 369 Communication Management MAD Fields on page 1183](#) below.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0	Common MAD Header			
...				
20				
24	Data			
...				
252				

Figure 222 **Communication Management MAD Format**

Table 369 **Communication Management MAD Fields**

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Data	232 bytes	Attribute data is mapped bit for bit from the format described in the following sections to the start of this data field. If the attribute is smaller than the data field, the content of the remainder of the data field is unspecified.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
C16-15.1.1: The MADHeader:ClassVersion component for the CM class **shall** be 2 for this version of the specification.

16.7.1.1 STATUS FIELD

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). No class-specific bits are defined.

Table 370 **Communication Management Status Field**

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.7 Status Field on page 795
8-15	-	Reserved (class-specific bits)

16.7.2 METHODS

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
The Communication Management class supports the methods identified in [Table 371 Communication Management Methods on page 1184](#) below.

C16-15.1.2: The Communication Management Class **shall** support the methods listed in [Table 371: Communication Management Methods](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

Table 371 Communication Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
ComMgtGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of an attribute
ComMgtSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute.
ComMgtGetResp()	0x81	Response from a Get() or Set() request.
ComMgtSend()	0x03	Send a connection management message.

16.7.3 ATTRIBUTES

The Attributes/AttributeModifiers specified in this section describe the mappings of message parameters defined in [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#) into the standard MAD header/payload format. The set of attributes supported by the Communication Management class is listed [Table 372 Communication Management Attributes on page 1184](#).

C16-15.1.3: The Communication Manager **shall** support the attributes and methods listed in [Table 372 Communication Management Attributes on page 1184](#) and [Table 373 Communication Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1185](#). All attribute IDs not listed in [Table 372: Communication Management Attributes](#) are reserved.

Table 372 Communication Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	Refer to 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799
ConnectRequest	0x0010	See foot-note ^a	Refer to 12.6.5 REQ - Request for Communication on page 717
MsgRcptAck	0x0011	0x00000000	Refer to 12.6.6 MRA - Message Receipt Acknowledgment on page 720
ConnectReject	0x0012	0x00000000	Refer to 12.6.7 REJ - Reject on page 720
ConnectReply	0x0013	See foot-note ^a	Refer to 12.6.8 REP - Reply to Request for Communication on page 726
ReadyToUse	0x0014	0x00000000	Refer to 12.6.9 RTU - Ready To Use on page 728
DisconnectRequest	0x0015	0x00000000	Refer to 12.6.10 DREQ - Request for communication Release (Disconnection REQuest) on page 728
DisconnectReply	0x0016	0x00000000	Refer to 12.6.11 DREP - Reply to Request for communication Release on page 729

Table 372 Communication Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute-Modifier	Description
ServiceIDResReq	0x0017	0x00000000	Refer to 12.11.1 SIDR REQ - Service ID Resolution Request on page 769
ServiceIDResReqResp	0x0018	See foot-note ^a	Refer to 12.11.2 SIDR REP - Service ID Resolution Response on page 770
LoadAlternatePath	0x0019	0x00000000	Refer to 12.8.1 LAP - Load Alternate Path on page 741
AlternatePathResponse	0x001A	0x00000000	Refer to 12.8.2 APR - Alternate Path Response on page 742
SuggestAlternatePath	0x001B	0x00000000	Refer to 12.8.3 SAP - Suggest Alternate Path on page 744
SuggestPathResponse	0x001C	0x00000000	Refer to 12.8.4 SPR - Suggest Path Response on page 745

a. 0x00000000 if ClassPortInfo.CapabilityMask.IsVendorECECapable is 0
 Vendor CM options if ClassPortInfo.CapabilityMask.IsVendorECECapable is 1

[Table 373 Communication Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1185](#) indicates the methods with which each of the attributes is valid.**Table 373** Communication Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute	ComMgtGet()	ComMgtSet()	ComMgtSend()
ClassPortInfo	X		
ConnectRequest			X
ConnectReply			X
ReadyToUse			X
MsgRcptAck			X
ConnectReject			X
DisconnectRequest			X
DisconnectReply			X
LoadAlternatePath			X
AlternatePathResponse			X
ServiceIDResReq			X
ServiceIDResReqResp			X
SuggestAlternatePath			X
SuggestPathResponse			X

The normative definitions of the attribute components and the operational requirements and constraints applicable thereto are defined in [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#).

16.7.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). In addition, bits 8 through 12 of the CapabilityMask component are defined:

Table 374 Communication Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 Class-PortInfo on page 799
8	Reserved	Reserved
9	IsReliableConnectionCapable	The CM associated with this port supports the establishment and release of connections between Reliable Connected Queue Pairs. It will accept and respond to all mandatory messages as defined in 12.6.1 Required Messages on page 713 .
10	IsReliableDatagramCapable	The CM associated with this port supports the establishment and release of reliable datagram channels between EE Contexts. It will accept and respond to all mandatory messages as defined in 12.6.1 Required Messages on page 713 .
11	IsVendorECECapable	The CM associated with this port supports vendor end to end connection (ECE) negotiation.
12	IsUnreliableConnectionCapable	The CM associated with this port supports the establishment and release of connections between Unreliable Connected Queue Pairs. It will accept and respond to all mandatory messages as defined in 12.6.1 Required Messages on page 713 .
13	IsSIDRCapable	The CM associated with this port will respond to incoming Service ID Resolution requests as defined in 12.11 Service ID Resolution Protocol on page 768 .
14	IsXRCCapable	The CM associated with this port supports the establishment and release of connections between XRC Initiator and Target QPs. It will accept and respond to all mandatory messages as defined in Section 12.5.5 Extended Reliable Connected Service on page 712 .
15	Reserved	Reserved

CHAPTER 17: CHANNEL ADAPTERS

17.1 OVERVIEW

This section specifies the minimum requirements for an IBA channel adapter. Channel adapters (CA) are the source and terminus of IBA packets that traverse the IBA switching fabric. Channel adapters are either Host Channel Adapters (HCAs) or Target Channel Adapters (TCAs). In a typical system, the HCAs are used by the host processors to connect to the IBA fabric whereas the TCAs are used by an I/O adapter to connect to the IBA fabric.

The key difference between a Host Channel Adapter and a Target Channel Adapter is in the way the client (whether the client is hardware or software) interfaces to the transport layer. Specifically, the HCA supports the IBA Verbs layer whereas the TCA uses an implementation dependent interface to the transport layer.

C17-1: An HCA shall support the IBA verbs layer interface.

Previous sections of the specification have described the various layers comprising an IBA Channel Adapter (physical, link, network, and transport layers). All channel adapters share a common architecture for the physical, link, network and transport layers. See Figure 223 below. From the point of view of the physical communications link, an HCA and TCA are identical.

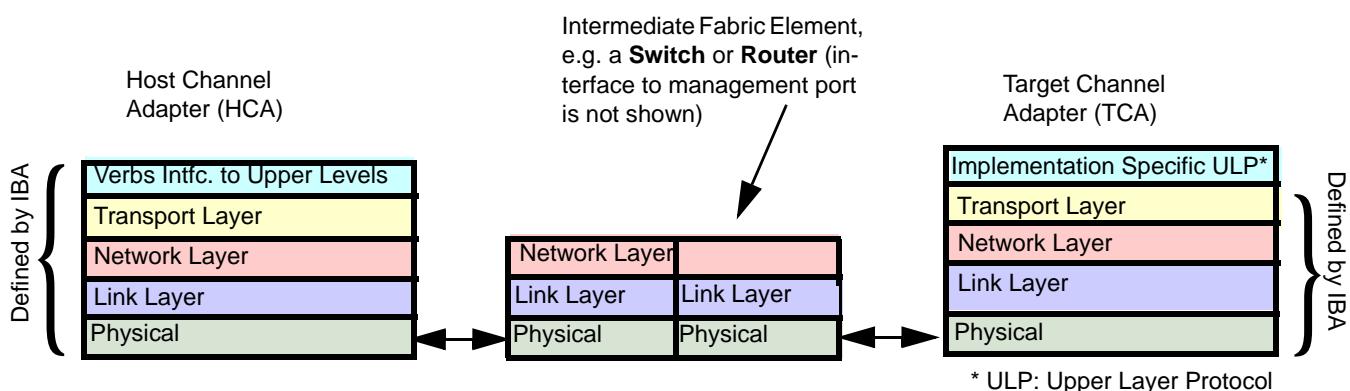


Figure 223 IBA Architecture Layers

This chapter lists the common functionality in all CAs as well as the differences between HCAs and TCAs. There are also differences in required minimum functionality. These issues are addressed in the following sections.

17.2 COMMON FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

17.2.1 MULTIPLE PORTS PER CHANNEL ADAPTER

A Channel Adapter²⁶ may have one or more ports. A CA's port provides the physical, link and network protocol layers of the IBA CA. A channel adapter with multiple ports shares the transport layer functionality amongst the ports. For example, a QP (a transport layer construct) can be configured to work with any of the ports on the CA. The following figures show the physical representation as well as the architectural layering.

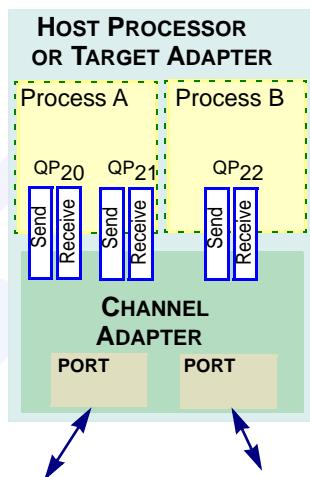


Figure 224 Multiport CA

A two ported Channel Adapter. The CA has one block of QPs, memory translation tables etc. that interact with the IBA fabric through the two ports.

Transport Layer Protocols	
Network	Network
Link	Link
Physical	Physical

Figure 225 Multiport CA Architectural Layers

A two ported CA showing a common transport layer and independent Network, Link and Physical Layers for each port.

It is desirable for a channel adapter to have multiple ports for several reasons:

26. Unless specifically mentioned, the term Channel Adapter refers to both an HCA and a TCA.

- **Increased bandwidth from a single CA.** e.g. an HCA with a high performance host memory interface can support the bandwidth of several IBA links. By adding relatively low cost IBA ports the HCA can multiply its throughput with relatively little additional cost. See [Figure 227 on page 1190](#).
- **Redundant paths for fault tolerant communications.** In a system with multiple paths between source and destination, a CA's multiple ports may be used to tolerate faults in the fabric's switches and links. See [Figure 228 on page 1190](#) and [Figure 229 on page 1191](#).
- **Support direct links to TCAs.** in a low cost, switchless topology the ports of an HCA might be directly wired to TCAs. See [Figure 230 on page 1191](#).

17.2.1.1 TOPOLOGIES SUPPORTED WITH MULTI-PORTED CHANNEL ADAPTERS

The following diagrams show several basic ways a multi ported CA could be attached to the rest of the system. These diagrams are by no means the only topologies supported -- they are examples only. Note that multiple ports on a CA may either connect to multiple subnets or to the same subnet.

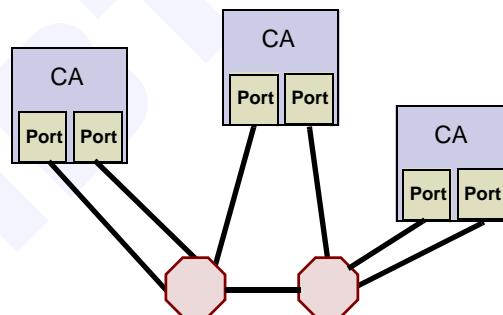


Figure 226

Multiported CAs Connected to Single

Each box representing a CA is expected to have a single block of QPs along with the associated memory translation tables, QP state etc.

C17-2: A multiported CA shall be capable of connecting to one or more subnets.

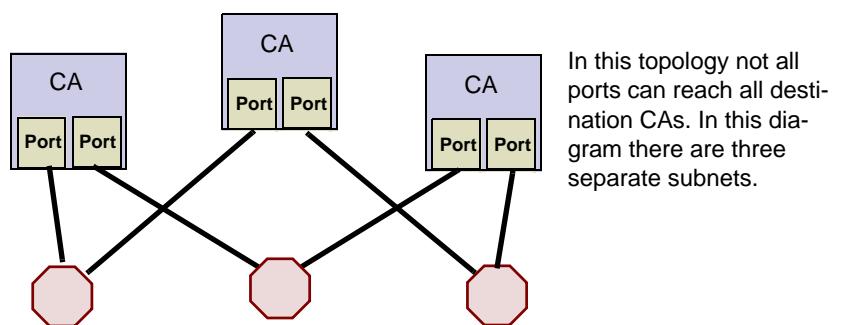


Figure 227 Multiported CAs Connected to Multiple

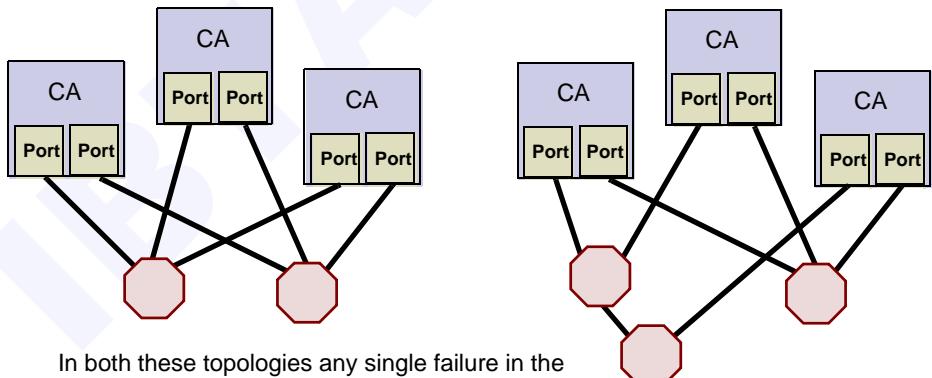


Figure 228 Fault Tolerant Connections to Independent

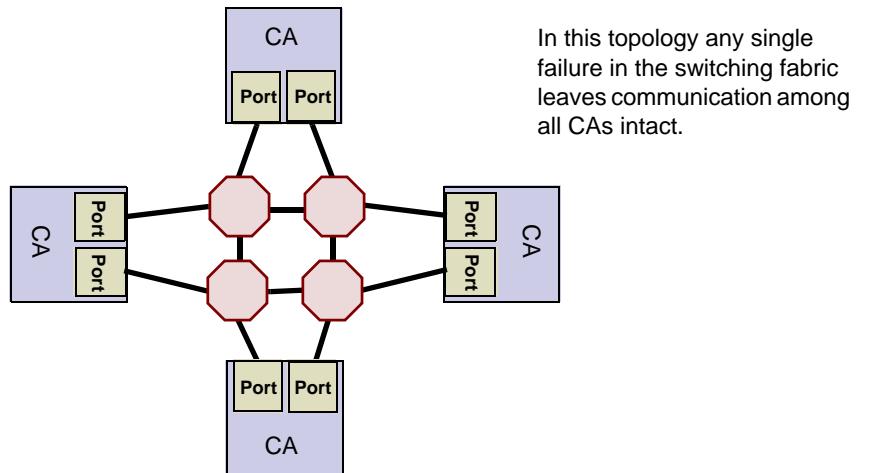


Figure 229 Fault Tolerant Connection to a Single

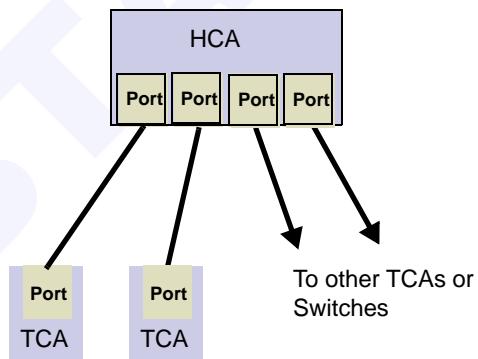


Figure 230 Multiported HCA with Direct Connections to

17.2.1.2 ASSOCIATION OF QPs WITH PORTS

C17-3: While a CA may have many QPs and many ports, each QP shall generate request packets, service returning response packets, and respond to arriving request packets through exactly one port, at any point in time.

To ensure packet ordering within a QP for connected or reliable transport services, packets are required to take the same path between a source and destination. This requires that all requests and responses use a consistent port, base SLID, DLID, VL and SL. A connected or reliable transport QP remains bound with one port until path migration for error recovery or load balancing purposes occurs or the connection goes away.

Aside from valid packets requesting path migration as described in Section [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#), incoming request and response packets arriving at a port other than the port currently bound to the appropriate QP may be discarded.

For an HCA using the unreliable datagram transport service, the verbs layer specifies the remote address with each outgoing work request. Since the QP is only bound to one port, the client of the verbs layer must be certain the destination is reachable from that port. In certain topologies not all destinations are reachable from all ports (see [Figure 227 on page 1190](#)).

Incoming Unreliable Datagram packets may only target a QP if that QP is bound to the port on which the datagram arrived.

The Reliable Datagram service uses an end-to-end context to ensure correct delivery for every channel adapter with which it communicates. The EE context, like a Reliable Connection QP, is bound to one port (at least until path migration is used to rebind the EE context with a new port). But since a RD QP can communicate with multiple EE contexts, the RD QP can in effect be transmitting and receiving packets from multiple ports.

17.2.1.3 PORT ATTRIBUTES AND FUNCTIONS

Certain attributes and functions are associated with each port. Typically these belong to the physical, link, and network layers that are unique to the port. The table below itemizes these as well as describes some transport layer functionality unique to each port. Each attribute or function is intended to be applied individually to each port.

Table 375 Port Attributes & Functions

Attribute/Function	HCA	TCA
Physical Interface	The HCA and TCA shall support one or more of the IBA defined physical interfaces. (See the IBA Specification, Volume 2)	
Static Rate Control (limiting the BW to a particular destination CA)	required on ports supporting bandwidths above 2.5 Gbps	
Support for multipathing (see Section 7.11 Subnet Multipathing on page 242)	required	required

Table 375 Port Attributes & Functions (Continued)

Attribute/Function	HCA	TCA
P_Key Checking on inbound Request and Inbound Response Packets (see Section 10.9 Partitioning on page 556)	Shall validate incoming packet's P_Key with the P_Key bound to the destination QP ^a . A CA shall maintain a P_Key table (see Section 10.9.2 The Partition Key Table (P_Key Table) on page 557) per port. Each table shall have at least one P_Key entry. HCA requires no OS involvement to set the P_Key (i.e. P_Key is set directly by a Subnet Manager control packet.)	
Validation of incoming packet's DLID and, if the GRH is present, DGID	required	required
Support for QP0 and QP1	required on each port	required on each port
Port Numbering	Ports are numbered starting from one and if there are multiple ports, they are numbered sequentially. MADs use port number zero as a wild-card port number that matches whatever port the packet arrived at. See 14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898 .	
GID Support	Each port has at least one GID. The maximum number of GIDs per port is implementation specific. See the discussion on GIDs in Section 4.1 Terminology And Concepts on page 159 .	

a. excluding Raw Datagram QPs (because raw datagrams don't have a P_Key). Also PKey checking for QP0 and QP1 are slightly different. See Section [10.9.8 Partition Enforcement on Management Queue Pairs on page 562](#) for more information.

C17-4: Static rate controls, as listed in Section [17.2.6 Static Rate Control on page 1198](#), are required on each port that supports a data rate above 2.5 gbps.

C17-5: Each port shall validate the incoming P_Key in an IB Transport packet with the P_Key bound to the destination QP (other than QP0 and QP1).

C17-6: The CA shall maintain a P_Key table per port supporting at least one and at most 65,535 P_Key entries.

C17-7: An HCA shall require no OS involvement to set the P_Key table; the P_Key table shall be set directly by Subnet Manager MADs.

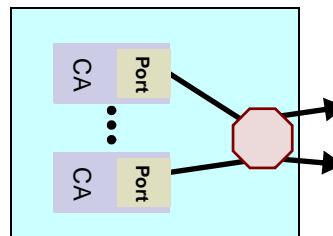
C17-7.a1: A CA may support up to 254 ports. For a CA supporting N ports, the ports shall be numbered from 1 to N.

C17-8: Each port shall support at least one GID.

17.2.1.4 SWITCHING PACKETS THROUGH MULTIPLE PORTS

If a Channel Adapter has multiple ports, the CA does not route packets from one port to the other. Such a packet forwarding function is defined as a switch.

An implementation may choose to package a switch and multiple IBA ports together, as shown in the figure below.



The overall box shows the boundary of the combined switch and Channel Adapter. This boundary could be a single IC or board. The boundary also represents the fault zone for that device.

Figure 231

Multiple Single Ported CAs with an Embedded Switch

17.2.2 CHANNEL ADAPTER ATTRIBUTES

The previous section described attributes of a channel adapter's ports. This section describes attributes of the whole channel adapter.

This specification only sets the minimum functionality of an HCA or TCA. For example, only two QPs are required (both for management). A practical HCA or TCA would undoubtedly support more QPs, but this section only specifies architectural minimum requirements. The following summarizes various required and optional Channel Adapters attributes (see also section [11.2.1.2 Query HCA on page 588](#)).

Table 376 Channel Adapter Attributes

Attribute	HCA	TCA
Support for multiple ports.	Optional	Optional
Source/Sink packets with a LRH (for communication within the subnet)	Required for all QPs.	
Source/Sink packets with a GRH (for communication across subnets)	Required for all QPs other than QP0.	
Transport Services Supported	HCA shall be capable of supporting the Unreliable Datagram, Reliable Connection, and Unreliable Connection transport service on any QP supported by the HCA.	Aside from supporting Unreliable Datagram for the two required management QPs, support for any other transport service (or QP) is optional.

Table 376**Channel Adapter Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute	HCA	TCA
Atomic Operations Supported	Optional to generate requests or responses	
Other Operations Supported	If a transport service is supported, then the CA must support all the operations defined for that transport service (excluding atomic operations).	TCAs are not general purpose and may customize the operations supported to suit their function (e.g. a TCA with Reliable Connection Service may generate RDMA requests but not respond to incoming RDMA requests)
Solicited Events (see Section 9.2.3 Solicited Event (SE) - 1 bit on page 260 and Section 11.4.2.2 Request Completion Notification on page 680)	Required to both generate solicited events and to receive them.	Optional
MTU	<p>CAs shall support one of the following sets of MTUs (for all Transport Service Classes):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 256 Bytes • 256, 512 Bytes • 256, 512, 1024 Bytes • 256, 512, 1024, 2048 Bytes • 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096 Bytes <p>For UD and Raw the WQE determines the packet size. The maximum packet size is limited by MTUCap and NeighborMTU. For RD the EE context specifies the MTU.</p> <p>For RC, XRC, and UC the QP specifies the MTU.</p>	Selection of MTU for TCAs is implementation specific.
End-to-End Flow Control (reliable connection transport service only)	<p>HCA receive queues that are not associated with an SRQ shall generate E-to-E flow control credits</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i.e. HCAs throttle inbound requests to prevent inbound Sends arriving at an empty receive queue. <p>HCA receive queues that are associated with an SRQ shall not generate E-to-E flow control credits</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i.e. HCAs shall not throttle inbound requests <p>HCA send queue shall receive and respond to inbound credits</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i.e. remote node may throttle the HCA's outbound requests. 	<p>TCA receive queues may generate E-to-E flow control credits.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i.e. TCA need not throttle inbound requests. <p>TCA send queue shall receive and respond to inbound credits.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • i.e. remote node may throttle the TCA's outbound requests.

Table 376**Channel Adapter Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute	HCA	TCA
Multicast	Generating IBA Raw Multicast packets is optional. Receiving IBA Raw Multicast packets is optional. Generating IBA Unreliable Datagram Multicast packets is optional ^a . Receiving IBA Unreliable Datagram Multicast packets is optional.	
Automatic Path Migration	It is optional to either generate or respond to an automatic path migration request.	
Memory Protection	HCA's provide memory protection as described in Section 10.6 Memory Management on page 501 .	Optional
Loopback Support	Self addressed packets ^b shall be allowed and shall not go out onto the wire. That is, self addressed packets must work even if no external switch is present	Optional

a. It is expected that any implementation of the Unreliable Datagram transport service will trivially support the generation of multicast packets.

b. A self-addressed packet is a packet whose DLID and SLID (while not necessarily identical) address the same port of the same CA. A self-addressed packet may or may not have the same source and destination QP. IB does not define a specific "loopback" address.

C17-9: All channel adapters shall be able to source and sink (to all QPs) locally routed packets (i.e. no GRH).

C17-10: All channel adapters shall be able to source and sink (to all QPs other than QP0) globally routed packets (i.e. packets with a GRH).

C17-11: HCAs shall be capable of supporting the Unreliable Datagram, Reliable Connection, and Unreliable Connection transport service on any QP supported by the HCA.

C17-12: If a transport service is supported by an HCA, then that HCA must support all the operations defined for that transport service (excluding atomic operations).

C17-13: An HCA shall be able to generate and receive a solicited event.

C17-14: CAs shall support one of the following sets of MTUs (for all Transport Service Classes):

256 Bytes

256, 512 Bytes

256, 512, 1024 Bytes

256, 512, 1024, 2048 Bytes
256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096 Bytes

C17-15: This compliance statement has been obsoleted and replaced by
[C17-15.2.1:](#)

C17-15.2.1: HCA receive queues that are not associated with an SRQ,
shall generate E-to-E flow control credits. HCA receive queues that are
associated with an SRQ, shall not generate E-to-E flow control credits.

C17-16: HCA send queue shall receive and respond to inbound E-to-E
flow control credits.

o17-1: This compliance statement has been obsoleted and replaced by
[o17-1.2.1:](#)

o17-1.2.1: TCA receive queues that are not associated with an SRQ may
generate E-to-E flow control credits. TCA receive queues that are associ-
ated with an SRQ, shall not generate E-to-E flow control credits.

C17-17: TCA send queue shall receive and respond to inbound E-to-E
flow control credits.

o17-2: A CA may be capable of generating multicast packets.

o17-3: A CA may be capable of receiving multicast packets.

o17-4: A CA may be capable of generating and responding to the Auto-
matic Path Migration protocol.

C17-18: HCAs shall allow packets with a destination address the same as
that of the port on which the packet is issued. Such a loopback packet
shall not go onto the wire.

17.2.3 DEADLOCK PREVENTION

Each CA shall not cause deadlock in the fabric. This condition is met by

- The CA will not continuously and permanently assert backpres-
sure (i.e. fail to grant link credits).
- The CA shall not assert backpressure on a port's inbound link as
the result of receiving backpressure on that port's outbound link.

C17-19: For deadlock prevention, the CA shall not continuously and per-
manently assert backpressure (i.e. fail to grant link credits).

C17-20: For deadlock prevention, the CA shall not assert backpressure
on a port's inbound link as the result of receiving backpressure on that
port's outbound link.

17.2.4 CHECKING INCOMING PACKETS

All CA's are required to validate each incoming packet before committing the packet to the CA's state.

C17-21: The CA shall check for link, network and transport layer errors in all incoming packets.

17.2.5 NON-VOLATILE STATE

C17-22: All channel adapters shall maintain a EUI-64 port GUID and a EUI-64 CA GUID (See [Chapter 4: Addressing on page 158](#)) in nonvolatile memory such that the GUID is the same each time the CA is powered on.

C17-23: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been removed

Other uses of the nonvolatile memory are optional.

The type of non volatile memory in a CA is not specified and might be a local disk drive or on-chip memory.

IBA does not require a CA to remember connection state information across power cycles.

17.2.6 STATIC RATE CONTROL

A CA shall support static rate control (see section [9.11 Static Rate Control on page 456](#)) if its raw bandwidth is greater than 2.5 Gbps. The Inter-packet Delay (IPD) values supported (see [Table 66 on page 458](#)) must allow slowing the packet rate to all of the standard link rates. The table below indicates the values of IPD that shall be supported

Table 377 Static Rate Control IPD Values

PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported	PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported	Required IPDs	Optional IPDs ^a
1	1	0	-
1	3	0, 1	-
1	5 or 7	0, 1, 3	-
3	1	0, 3	1
3	3	0, 1, 3, 7	-
3	5 or 7	0, 1, 3, 7, 15	-

Table 377 Static Rate Control IPD Values (Continued)

PortInfo:LinkWidthSupported	PortInfo:LinkSpeedSupported	Required IPDs	Optional IPDs ^a
7	1	0, 1, 3, 7	-
7	3	0, 1, 3, 7, 15	-
7	5 or 7	0, 1, 2, 3, 7, 15, 31	-
11	1	0, 2, 3, 11	1, 5, 7
11	3	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 15, 23	-
11	5 or 7	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 15, 23, 31, 47	-
15	1	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11	-
15	3	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 15, 23	-
15	5 or 7	0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 15, 23, 31, 47	-
Any	FDR or higher	See comment ^b	-

a. Support for these optional values is indicated by setting the PortInfo:CapabilityMask:IsOptionalIPDSupported bit.

Note, the optional values are to grandfather implementations done prior to the Architectural Release 1.2. New implementations should support these optional IPD values.

b. The port must support IPDs corresponding to the ratio between any link speed supported by that port, and any combination of a standard link width and a standard link rate (for example, as specified by PathRecord.Rate) lower than said supported speed. For example, for a 4x FDR port and path rate of 4x QDR, the required IPD is $(14.0625 \times 4) / ((128/130) / ((10 \times 4) \times (8/10))) - 1 = 0.73$

17.2.7 MANAGEMENT MESSAGES

Each port of every channel adapter shall support two QPs for management commands:

- QP0, used by the Subnet Management Agent for sending and receiving Subnet Management Packets (SMPs).
 - This QP uses the Unreliable Datagram transport service.
 - SMP packets arriving before the current packet's command completes may be dropped (i.e. the minimum queue depth of QP0 is one).
- QP1, used for the General Services Interface (GSI).
 - This QP uses the Unreliable Datagram transport service.

- All traffic to and from this QP uses any VL other than VL15.
- GSI packets arriving before the current packet's command completes may be dropped (i.e. the minimum queue depth of QP1 is one).

C17-24: Each port of every CA shall support QP0 for use by the SMA and QP1 for use by the GSA.

All QPs for a given CA, except QP0 and QP1 have unique numbers. QP0 and QP1 are special in that each port has its own QP0 and QP1.

The rest of the (non RD) QPs on a CA may be bound with any one port. The binding of a QP (other than QP0 or QP1) with a port is maintained until such time that automatic path migration (see [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#)) or path migration requested by MADs associates the QP with a different port.

The management QPs are special because they are used by the Subnet Manager and other management applications. See Section [13.5.1 MAD Interfaces on page 819](#).

Since each port may be on a different subnet it must communicate with a different Subnet Manager and related management application. The Subnet Manager and other nodes using the GSI use the well known QP numbers (0 and 1) to establish communication.

17.2.7.1 SUBNET MANAGEMENT

All CAs shall respond to incoming Subnet Management Packets from the Subnet Manager. CAs shall also generate the required traps defined as part of the SMA.

The IBA does not require nor preclude a CA from being a Subnet Manager. If a node does host a Subnet Manager, it must meet the requirements as specified in section [14.4 Subnet Manager on page 989](#).

17.2.7.2 GENERAL SERVICES

All CAs shall respond to mandatory GSI MADs defined in [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). Any HCA or TCA may initiate MADs to another CA.

17.2.8 AUTOMATIC PATH MIGRATION

The reliable or connected transport services (Reliable Connection, XRC, Reliable Datagram, and Unreliable Connection) use the same path for a given connection (or in the case of RD for a given pair of end-to-end contexts). This ensures data is delivered in the proper order. Path migration refers to the requestor and responder agreeing to use a new path. The source and destination QPs remain the same but the ports and path

through the fabric may change. Path migration may be used to recover from a bad path (sometimes this is referred to as Failover) or for other reasons such as load balancing.

Automatic path migration may be supported by HCAs and TCAs. If supported, Automatic path migration works for QPs using the RC, XRC, RD, and UC transport services.

Automatic path migration provides a fast mechanism for path migration. When a connection is established the two CA's use Communication Management MADs to establish the primary and alternate path (See sections [10.4 Automatic Path Migration on page 493](#) and [12.8 Alternate Path Management on page 739](#)). Automatic path migration is a mechanism whereby either CA can signal the other to switch from the primary path to the alternate path.

At connection establishment time the CA is set with the following information to determine a path:

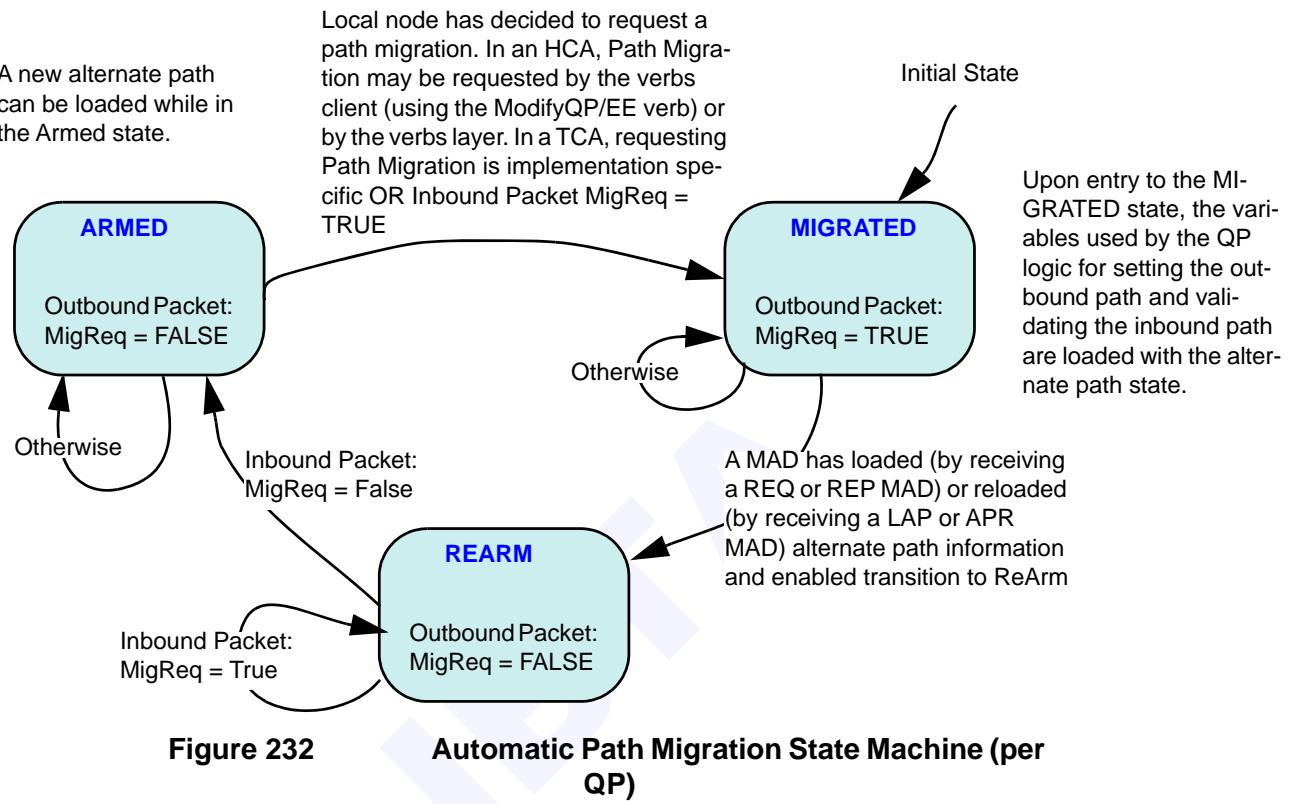
- DLID of the responding CA
- Destination GID of the responding CA
- SL
- source port (i.e. the base SLID and path bits for outbound request and response packets)

At connection establishment the CAs may be given two sets of path information, one for the primary path and another for the alternate path. The alternate path may use the same or different source and destination ports as that used by the primary path.

17.2.8.1 AUTOMATIC PATH MIGRATION PROTOCOL

The automatic path migration protocol uses a single bit in the BTH called MigReq (Migrate Request) and a 3-state state machine associated with each connected QP supporting automatic path migration. If automatic path migration is not supported by either QP of the connection, the state

machines of the two QP's remain in the MIGRATED state. See figure below.



17.2.8.1.1 INITIALIZATION

At connection setup time, the primary and alternate path states are assigned to each CA.

The Automatic Path Migration State Machine is initialized to the MIGRATED state whether or not Automatic Path Migration is supported by either QP of the connection.

17.2.8.1.2 MIGRATION REQUEST

Either CA may request an automatic path migration. Reasons for requesting automatic path migration are outside the scope of the IBA specification but may include load balancing or using an alternate path to recover from excessive errors.

The CA requesting automatic path migration transitions its state machine to the MIGRATED state. Once in the MIGRATED state the CA generates all new packets (both request and response packets) using the path that was previously initialized as the alternate path. The CA may refuse to accept incoming request or response packets arriving from the original path.

Once in the MIGRATED state, all outbound packets (both requests and responses) on that QP have the MigReq (Migrate Request) bit in the BTH set to TRUE.

17.2.8.1.3 MIGRATION RESPONSE

A CA whose QP is in the ARMED state that receives a packet (either request or response packet) with the MigReq bit set validates the incoming packets path bits with the alternate path information (i.e. checks the SLID, DLID, SGID, DGID against the alternate path state). If the validation passes the QP transitions to the MIGRATED state.

Upon entry to the MIGRATED state, the primary path used by the QP logic for setting the outbound path and validating the inbound path are loaded with the alternate path state. At this point all request and response packets from both CAs are using the alternate path.

17.2.8.1.4 RE-ENABLING MIGRATION

Migration is re-enabled via management intervention. First the alternate path variables are reloaded with new alternate paths. Then, based on a command from a management entity, the QP state is set to REARM. This causes the MigReq bit in outbound packets to be set false. Upon receiving an inbound packet with MigReq set false, the QP state is set to ARMED. Migration at this point is now re-enabled.

17.3 HOST CHANNEL ADAPTER

A HCA is differentiated from a TCA in that it supports the architecturally defined IBA Verbs Layer. As such, an HCA (and its vendor specific and OS specific driver SW) shall support the functionality of the Verbs Layer chapter.

17.3.1 LOOPBACK

An HCA shall be able to internally loopback a packet sent to itself. That is, the verbs layer can specify a packet to be delivered to the same port (possibly a different QP though). The packet shall be delivered without the packet appearing on the port's physical link. This loopback shall be able to function without requiring the presence of an external switch.

InfiniBand does not reserve a special LID value to indicate loopback. Instead, the DLID (and DGID if present) of a loopback packet should be the LID (and GID) of the port on which the packet was emitted. For loopback packets, a channel adapter implementation may ignore other path information, such as MTU, that is not otherwise needed for the receive buffer or for the completion queue as specified in section [11.4.2.1 Poll for Completion on page 675](#).

On an HCA with multiple ports, a packet may be sent onto the wire from one port with the DLID in the packet targeting a different port. This is not

considered loopback and follows all the normal rules for sending packets. An external switch is required for such a packet transfer, there is no requirement that a packet be routed internally from one port to another.

Loopback packets for diagnostic purposes that traverse an external switch are performed by using the directed routed subnet management packets.

17.4 TARGET CHANNEL ADAPTER

A channel adapter that attaches an I/O node to the fabric is a Target Channel Adapter (TCA). In most regards, a TCA is indistinguishable from an HCA when viewed from the perspective of the IBA wire semantics. However, there are certain characteristics and requirements that distinguish a TCA from an HCA. This section describes some of the differences between a target channel adapter and a host channel adapter, specifies functionality required of a TCA, and specifies minimum requirements on a TCA.

This section also describes the role of the target channel adapter in supporting its clients. Figure 233 illustrates the relationship of the target channel adapter in an I/O node. The client of the target channel adapter's services is one or more I/O controllers.

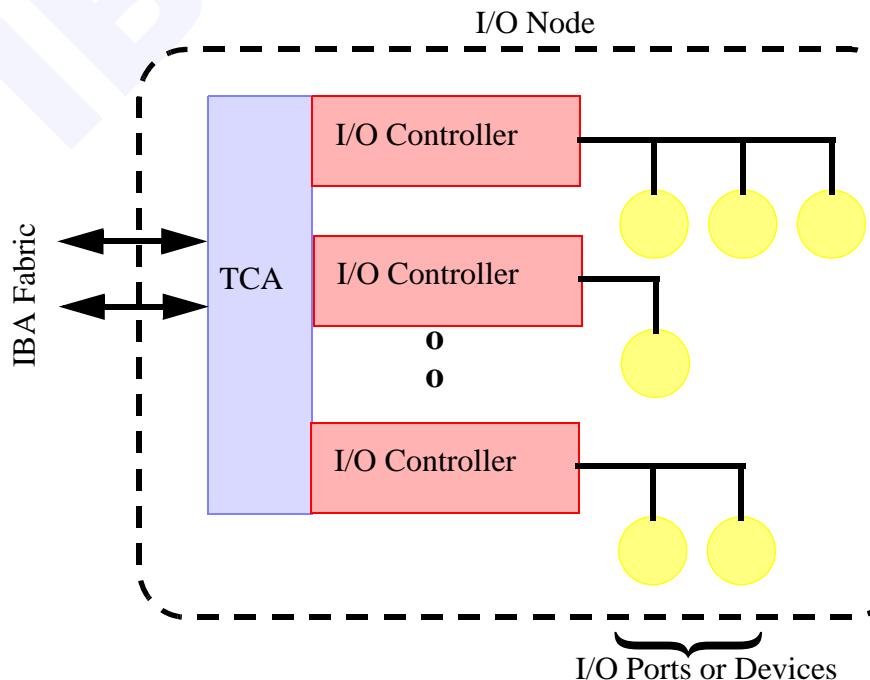


Figure 233 Generic I/O Node Model

17.4.1 CONTRAST TO A HOST CHANNEL ADAPTER

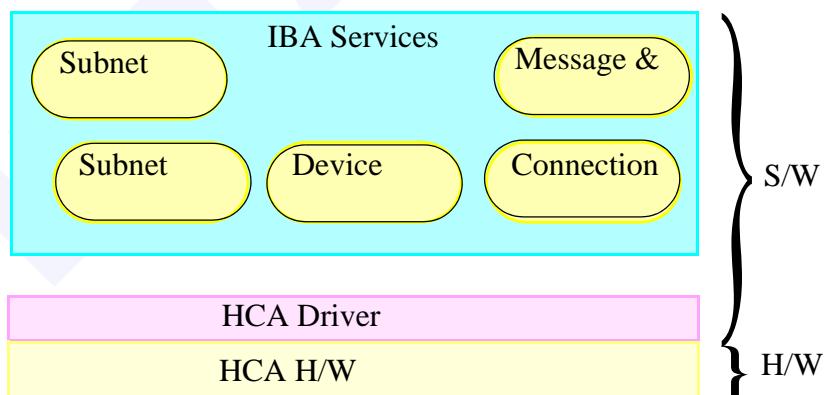
1
2
3
4
Unlike a host node, the execution environment for an I/O node is not nec-
essarily associated with a general purpose processor. In fact, it can be en-
tirely in hardware without any software environment.

5
6
7
8
9
For a host channel adapter, IBA specifies the semantics of the client inter-
face characteristics (i.e., verbs) in order to support run time binding with
the host's operating system and allow each component (HCA, OS, appli-
cation) to be architected and distributed independently. But a target
channel adapter can be bound to the I/O controller as part of the design
process and distributed together. Thus the architecture does not specify
any particular relationship between the target channel adapter and the I/O
controller. This freedom promotes diversity and the ability to employ any
queuing and notification mechanism that best serves the I/O function.

10
11
12
13
14

15
16
17
18
In the host environment, as illustrated, IBA service is separated into layers with the
HCA hardware and the HCA driver being referred to as the host channel adapter.
Thus the IBA services are not included in the requirements for the HCA. Instead, re-
quirements for IBA services are applied to the host platform in general and not the
HCA vendor.

19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28



29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Figure 234 Host Environment - Split Responsibility

In the target environment, as illustrated, IBA services are not separated from TCA channel functionality, and thus the target channel adapter includes the IBA services. Thus the term target channel adapter is abstracted to mean all of the IBA mechanisms in the I/O node (target). TCAs may be implemented using software and hardware or hardware alone.

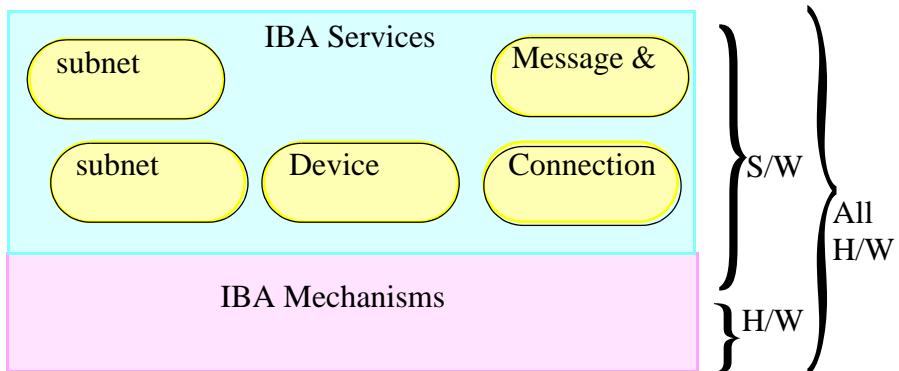


Figure 235 Target Environment - TCA Responsibility

A host channel adapter provides a generic service to its application “clients”. Therefore, IBA requires that an HCA provide full channel functionality. This is because the HCA vendor does not have prior knowledge of what applications will run over its channels.

However, since a target channel adapter vendor may have prior knowledge of the way the target channel adapter will be applied, the hardware vendor can reasonably restrict a TCA’s capabilities to only what is necessary for its clients.

17.4.1.1 MEMORY PROTECTION

IBA does not require that a TCA make any of its memory, or the memory associated with its attached I/O controllers directly accessible to another channel adapter. That is, there is no requirement that a TCA be capable of accepting inbound Atomic or RDMA READ or WRITE requests. If the TCA does expose its memory, or that of its attached I/O controllers, the architecture does not require that the TCA provide any form of memory protection, nor prescribe any particular mechanism for registering or protecting access to that memory other than the mechanism provided in the transport layer.

17.4.2 DEVICE ADMINISTRATION

Device administration packets allow an I/O node’s resources to be discovered and managed. In particular they provide the ability for a host to discover and invoke I/O services provided by I/O nodes.

A key distinction between a host and an I/O node lies in the method by which the I/O node's resources and capabilities are discovered, and the method by which connections to the TCA, and hence to the I/O resources on the node, are established. A complete set of messages is defined in Section [16.3 Device Management on page 1153](#) for the purpose of allowing a consumer of the I/O node's services to discover the range of services offered by the I/O node.

Since a TCA is not required to support all IBA transport services, a particular TCA has associated with it a set of attributes defining its capabilities and the services it supports. Normally, these attributes are discovered by negotiation between peer channel adapters during the process of establishing a connection.

In the case of an I/O node which does not necessarily have the compute power and resources to participate in a complex negotiation, IBA defines a simple method by which a host or other intelligent I/O node can discover the target's attributes and establish connections accordingly.

Thus, IBA defines a rich set of I/O node attributes that can be read by an intelligent channel adapter and used during connection establishment in order to free the target from complex connection negotiation protocols. The host discovers target attributes directly, thus avoiding negotiation during connection establishment.

Each target may support the set of target/I/O device attribute discovery messages as defined in Section [16.3.3 Attributes on page 1157](#).

IBA does not specify the semantics nor methods between a TCA and its clients for conveying device information but it does specify the mechanisms and encoding for conveying that information.

IBA does not specify the semantics nor queueing models for the I/O controller to post messages, receive messages, and invoke RDMA Read, Write, and Atomic operations between a TCA and its clients.

IBA is I/O protocol agnostic. That is, how an I/O controller chooses to apply the services provided by the TCA is outside the scope of IBA as long as the usage corresponds to the rules for class of service and quality of service.

17.4.3 FABRIC LOOPBACK

A TCA does not have the same internal loopback requirement as does the HCA. Being a special purpose device, how the TCA handles packets addressed to itself is an implementation specific decision.

Loopback for diagnostic purposes that traverses an external switch is performed by using directed routed subnet management packets (just as done by the HCA)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

IBTA

CHAPTER 18: SWITCHES

18.1 OVERVIEW

This chapter specifies the requirements related to IBA switches.

Packets may be forwarded within a subnet (intra-subnet) and between subnets (inter-subnet). IBA switches are the fundamental forwarding component for intra-subnet routing (inter-subnet routing is provided by IBA routers, described later in this specification). Switches interconnect links by forwarding packets between the links.

Switches are transparent to the end stations and are not directly addressed (except for subnet management operations). To this end, every destination port within the network is configured with one or more unique Local Identifiers (LID's). From the point of view of a switch, a LID represents a path from the input port through the switch. Switch elements are configured with forwarding tables. Packets are addressed to their ultimate destination on the subnet using a destination LID (DLID), not to intervening switches. Individual packets are forwarded within a switch to an outbound port or ports based on the packet's DLID field and the Switch's forwarding table.

IBA switches are required to support unicast forwarding and may support multicast forwarding. In addition, IBA switches support a form of source routing, referred to as Directed Routing, for forwarding subnet management packets. This enables the configuration of a subnet without valid forwarding entries in the switches (e.g. a subnet power-up).

A Subnet Manager (SM) configures switches including loading their forwarding tables. The entity that communicates with the SM for the purpose of configuring the switch is referred to as the Subnet Management Agent (SMA). Every switch is required to have a subnet management agent. Individual switches within a power domain can be made observable to the SM via multiple instantiation of SMAs. Likewise, an SMA can be constructed that configures multiple switches and exports the multiple switches to the SM as a single switch; however, from the SM's perspective, such a configuration is a single switch.

Switches must also support a Subnet Management Interface (SMI) as specified in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#) and a General Services Interface (GSI) as specified by [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#). There are various mandatory and optional requirements of these interfaces that are specified in the respective chapters.

18.1.1 SWITCH PORT 0

IBA switches, in addition to external (or physical or data) ports, numbered 1 up to 254, have a special port which is numbered port 0 and also sometimes referred to as the management port. It is a unique port type in InfiniBand, being different from other IB ports (switch external ports, CA ports, or router ports being the other port types). There are now two subtypes of switch port 0 which are realizable by the IB architecture.

In addition to the base switch port 0, there is an optional enhanced switch port 0. Enhanced switch port 0 provides an additional architectural alternative to adding a switch port and a CA, either integrated or as separate components. Additionally, base switch port 0 is now more rigidly specified.

Switch port 0 is a virtual port as it is not required to be physically instantiated. It is exempted from compliance with the physical layer requirements specified in [Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on page 182](#), but is required to be compliant with the link layer requirements specified in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#). Port 0 adheres to all IBA switch port requirements specified in [Chapter 18: Switches on page 1209](#) with the exception that it may deviate from these requirements in any combination of the following ways:

- Port 0 is not required to be physically instantiated.
- Port 0 is not required to implement the IB physical layer electrical, optical, or mechanical requirements.
- Enhanced port 0 link speed will be set to the nearest InfiniBand equivalent, e.g. A PCI link may have the Linkwidth set to 1x.
- Enhanced port 0 PortPhysicalState shall support Linkup only.
- Port 0 is not required to implement IB link level flow control.

Further requirements for Port 0:-

- Port 0 is either in enhanced or base mode, an enhanced port can't be reduced to a base port dynamically.

It also complies with the requirements of [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#) related to unreliable datagram service.

Enhanced switch port 0 is indicated by the EnhancedPort0 component in SwitchInfo SM attribute.

The direction of data flow to and from enhanced switch port 0, is viewed in the switch frame of reference. Data received by enhanced port 0 is controlled by the transmit components of PortInfo, and data transmitted from enhanced port 0 is controlled by the receive components of PortInfo.

18.2 DETAILED FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

18.2.1 ATTRIBUTES

This section describes the major architecturally defined attributes of switches that are left as implementation choices.

Unicast Forwarding Table:

C18-1: For the forwarding of unicast packets, a switch shall implement either a linear forwarding table or a random forwarding table, but not both.

C18-2: A switch shall implement a unicast forwarding table with at least one entry and no more than 49,152 entries.

Two forms of an unicast forwarding table are defined: linear and random. All switches support one and only one of these forwarding table types. In either case, the required size for the unicast forwarding table is not specified by IBA and may vary between implementations. However, a valid range of table sizes is specified. Switches that implement the random form may also choose to limit the number of entries that may be assigned to a given port. This is further described in section [18.2.4.3 Packet Relay on page 1217](#).

Multicast Support:

o18-1: The replication of multicast packets to multiple ports by switches is optional.

o18-2: A switch that implements the switch multicast replication service shall implement a multicast forwarding table with at least one entry and no more than 16383 entries.

IBA defines a switch multicast service that provides for the replication of packets by switches and their subsequent forwarding to multiple ports. The implementation of this service is optional. If implemented, IBA does not specify the size for the multicast forwarding table, and therefore the number of multicast groups a switch is capable of supporting. Consequently, the size of this table may vary by implementation. However, a valid range of table sizes is specified. Additional multicast requirements are specified in section [18.2.4.3.4 Optional Multicast Relay on page 1223](#).

Virtual lanes:

C18-3: Switches shall implement the subnet virtual lane (also referred to as virtual lane 15).

o18-3: Switches may implement a single buffer resource shared by all ports for the subnet management virtual lane.

All switches implement the subnet management virtual lane (which is numbered virtual lane 15). Additionally, switches implement one, two, four, eight, or 15 data virtual lanes. These virtual lanes are numbered sequentially starting with zero. Unlike data virtual lanes, buffering for virtual lane 15 may be shared by all ports and may be shared by packet reception and transmission. This is described in [7.6 Virtual Lanes Mechanisms on page 199](#).

SL to VL mapping:

o18-4: Switches that implement more than one data virtual lane shall implement the SL to VL mapping function specified in this chapter.

o18-5: Switches that implement one data virtual lane may implement the SL to VL mapping function specified in this chapter.

SL to VL mapping is required on switches that support more than one virtual lane in addition to virtual lane 15. It is optional on switches that support only one virtual lane in addition to virtual lane 15. The specific requirements of this table are described in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#).

P_Key Enforcement:

o18-6: Switches may implement the Inbound P_Key Enforcement Service specified in this chapter.

o18-7: Switches may implement the Outbound P_Key Enforcement Service specified in this chapter.

Switches may enforce partitions on ingress to and/or egress from the switch. This mechanism is described in sections [18.2.4.2.1 Inbound P_Key Enforcement on page 1215](#) and [18.2.4.4.1 Outbound P_Key Enforcement on page 1223](#).

Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) size:

C18-4: Switches shall be capable of forwarding LID routed packets of size from the minimum valid packet up to 382 bytes on the management virtual lane.

C18-5: Switches shall support one of the MTU sizes specified in [Table 22 Packet Size on page 217](#) across all ports on the switch.

C18-6: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [C18-6.1.1](#):

C18-6.1.1: With the exception of packets arriving on the management virtual lane, switches shall be capable of forwarding packets of size from the

minimum valid packet (Raw packets may be excluded) up to the supported MTU plus 126 bytes.

[Table 22 Packet Size on page 217](#) specifies a choice of MTU that may be supported by IBA devices. Switch implementations support one of the specified MTU sizes for the entire switch. Switches are capable of forwarding packets whose size varies up to the maximum size indicated in the table for the implemented MTU size plus an additional 126 bytes.

Link Physicals:

IBA specifies various physical layer options. Switches may implement any of these options on any port and there is no requirement that all ports of a switch implement nor operate with the same physical options. Switches conform to the detailed requirements for physical layer support as specified in [Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on page 182](#).

18.2.2 INITIALIZATION

C18-7: Upon power-up, a switch shall be initialized to the following state:

- All initialization of attributes as required in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#).
- Physical and link layers shall be reset.
- All virtual lane queues shall be cleared.
- P_Key enforcement, if implemented, shall be disabled for all ports.
- The NeighborMTU component of each PortInfo attribute shall be initialized to indicate 256 byte MTU as specified in [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#).

Note that a switch contains many tables, some of which are optional. These include the forwarding table, the SL to VL mapping table, the multicast forwarding table, P_Key tables, etc. There is no requirement for a switch to initialize any of these tables; the subnet manager is responsible for appropriate initialization.

18.2.3 CONFIGURATION

Switches are configured via a subnet manager. Switches support the required subnet management operations and may support the optional subnet management operations specified in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#).

18.2.4 PACKET RELAY REQUIREMENTS

The primary function of IBA switches is the relay of packets between links. This section specifies the requirements for supporting this function. This section assumes normal operation; required operation under error conditions is specified in section [18.2.5 Error Handling on page 1225](#).

To simplify the explanation of switch requirements, this section is divided into several architectural functions. This division does not imply a particular implementation; it is done solely to enhance the organization of the specification.

18.2.4.1 SWITCH PORTS

C18-8: Each port on an IBA Switch except port 0 shall comply with the physical layer requirements specified in [Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on page 182](#).

C18-9: Each physically instantiated external port on an IBA Switch shall comply with the link layer requirements specified in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#) of this specification.

C18-10: Base switch port number 0 shall, at a minimum, support the forwarding of packets to and from the switch's Subnet Management Interface and General Services Interface.

C18-10.a1: A switch may support up to 254 physical ports. For a switch supporting N physical ports, the ports shall be numbered from 1 to N.

C18-11: Port number 0 shall comply with the requirements of [Chapter 9: Transport Layer on page 253](#) related to unreliable datagram service.

o18-8: Port 0 shall adhere to all IBA switch port requirements specified in this chapter with the exception that it may deviate from these requirements in any combination of the following ways:

- Port 0 is not required to be physically instantiated.
- Port 0 is not required to implement the IB physical layer electrical, optical, or mechanical requirements.
- Port 0 is not required to implement IB link level flow control.

C18-12: This compliance statement is obsolete.

C18-13: This compliance statement is obsolete.

C18-14: This compliance statement is obsolete.

Base switch port 0 is assigned a LID similar to that of channel adapters; however, unlike channel adapters, this port does not support multipathing and an LMC value cannot be assigned. The LID is assigned using the LID component of the PortInfo attribute. Refer to [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#) for details on these requirements.

C18-14.a1: Enhanced switch port 0 shall comply with TCA compliances in chapter 17 with the exception of the following:

- Physical interfaces
- Port Numbering

18.2.4.2 RECEIVER QUEUING

The receiver queueing function receives packets from the link layer defined in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#).

C18-15: The virtual lane into which an individual packet is queued shall be the one corresponding to the VL field in the packet's Local Route Header.

C18-16: This compliance statement is obsolete.

o18-8.a1: If the FilterRawInbound component of the receiving port's PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then the switch shall discard all packets received on that port in which the LNH field of the LRH contains binary 00 or binary 01 (i.e. raw packets).

C18-17: Switches shall not discard packets in lieu of implementation of the link level flow control as specified in section [7.9 Flow Control on page 232](#).

18.2.4.2.1 INBOUND P_KEY ENFORCEMENT

The implementation of the inbound P_Key enforcement service in switches is optional. This section specifies the requirements of the service if implemented.

Inbound P_Key verification is enabled and disabled for each port individually based on the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo attribute.

o18-9: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to zero, then the inbound P_key enforcement service shall be disabled for packets received on the corresponding port.

o18-10: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, it shall maintain a separate list of P_Keys associated with each port.

o18-11: If a switch provides both the inbound P_Key enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service, then the list of P_Keys associated with each port shall be the same list for both the inbound P_Key enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service.

o18-12: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, the P_Key table associated with each port shall be capable of containing be-

tween one and 65535 P_Keys, inclusive (the exact number is left as an implementation parameter).

o18-13: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, the P_Key table associated with each port shall be programmable using the P_KeyTable attribute defined in [14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable on page 918](#).

o18-14: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet received on a virtual lane other than 15 shall either be discarded or truncated such that it contains no data past the BTH if the value in the P_Key field in the BTH does not match one of the entries in the receiving port's P_Key list and either of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 11 and IPVer field in the GRH contains 6.
- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 10.

For the purpose of inbound P_Key enforcement, a P_Key matches an entry in the P_Key table if and only if it is not the invalid P_Key one of the following conditions are true:

- The P_Key membership bit in the packet is full and there is an entry in the P_Key table that equals all 16 bits of the P_Key
- The P_Key membership bit in the packet is limited and there is an entry in the P_Key table whose 15 bits exclusive of the membership bit equal those bits in the P_Key.

o18-15: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet received on a virtual lane other than 15 shall either be discarded or truncated in length such that it contains no more than 64 bytes if all of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field of the LRH contains binary 11.
- IPVer field of the GRH does not contain 6.

o18-16: If a switch provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet that is too short to contain a BTH and that the LNH field contains binary 11 shall be discarded or shall be forwarded with the EBP delimiter appended and with the inverse of the valid VCRC.

Raw packets, i.e. packets in which the LNH field of the LRH contains binary 00 or binary 01, are not subject to P_Key enforcement and are not discarded nor truncated by this mechanism.

18.2.4.3 PACKET RELAY

1
2
3
4
Packet relay refers to the operation of transferring a packet from the virtual
lane on the inbound port to the virtual lane on one or more a outbound
ports.

5
6
7
C18-18: A switch shall relay each unicast packet from the data virtual
lane(s) in which it was received to the output port indicated by the unicast
forwarding table entry corresponding to the packet's DLID field.

8
9
10
A switch performs this relay function regardless of the state of the desti-
nation port. In certain states, the destination port will discard the packet.
This is described in detail in [7.2 Link States on page 187](#).

11
12
13
14
C18-19: Each packet received on virtual lane 15 in switches that imple-
ment independent buffering for virtual lane 15 on each port shall be re-
layed to the virtual lane 15 on the output port indicated by the unicast
forwarding table entry corresponding to the packet's DLID field.

15
16
17
18
C18-20: If a LID routed packet is relayed to the same port on which it was
received, it shall be discarded.

19
20
21
22
23
(Note: Directed route packets are permitted to be transmitted from the
port from which they were received. This does not violate the above re-
quirement since the packet is actually relayed from the received port to
port 0, the SMI; then it is received from port 0 and transmitted out the orig-
inal port).

24
25
26
C18-21: No packet contents shall be modified by the switch except as re-
quired by this specification.

27
28
29
This chapter specifies various conditions under which a packet may or
must be truncated in length. These conditions do not imply that the Pk-
tLen or PayLen fields may be modified.

30
31
32
C18-22: Packets received on ports other than port 0 with a DLID equal to
the permissive address shall be forwarded to port 0.

33
34
35
(Note: A switch performs this forwarding of packets received with the per-
missive DLID regardless of whether it implements a linear forwarding
table or a random forwarding table for unicast packets.)

36
37
38
o18-17: If base switch port 0, the SMI, or GSI of a switch does not contain
sufficient free buffering to receive the packet, the packet may be dis-
carded.

39
40
41
A special address, the permissive address (see [4.1 Terminology And Con-
cepts on page 159](#)) is defined by IB to permit the subnet manager to com-

municate with the SMI without knowledge of the LID assigned to the SMI.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Packets with the permissive address received on ports other than 0 are always forwarded to port 0.

C18-23: Packets with the permissive address received on port 0 (i.e. generated by the SMI) shall be forwarded to the port specified by the SMI.

The mechanism for the SMI to specify the port is not defined by IB and may vary by implementation.

o18-18: Switches that support more than one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15), shall set the value of the VL field in the local route header as defined in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#).

o18-19: Switches that support one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15), may implement VL Mapping as defined in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#).

o18-20: Switches that support more than one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15), shall relay packets to the VL of the output port as defined in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#) if the corresponding VL is implemented on the output port.

o18-21: Switches that support more than one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15), shall discard packets if the output VL as defined in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#) is not implemented on the output port.

o18-22: Switches that support only one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15) shall not modify the VL field.

C18-24: Switches that support only one virtual lane in addition to the management virtual lane (virtual lane 15) shall relay packets to the VL of the output port indicated by the VL field in the LRH.

For switches that support only one data virtual lane, the link layer will discard all packets that do not contain either 0 or 15 in the VL field, therefore, there is no need for the relay function to modify the VL field in this case.

C18-25: Except for virtual lane 15, if the virtual lane on the outbound port does not contain sufficient space for the packet to be relayed, then the packet shall remain in the virtual lane on the inbound port until sufficient space is available or until the switch lifetime limit mechanism permits the discard of the packet.

C18-26: If the relay function is unable to relay packet from an inbound port to an outbound port due to lack of sufficient space in the outbound VL, the

relay function shall continue to relay packets from other virtual lanes destined for virtual lanes on outbound ports with sufficient space.

o18-23: In switches that implement independent buffering on each port for virtual lane 15, if when relaying virtual lane 15 packets the virtual lane on the output port does not contain sufficient space for the packet to be re-relayed, then the packet may be discarded.

C18-27: Packets shall be transmitted on a given port and SL in the same order as they were received from a given port except that ordering between unicast and multicast packets is not required.

o18-24: The relay function may, but is not required to, relay packets in the inbound portion of virtual lanes that are behind packets that are blocked due to insufficient space in the outbound portion of virtual lanes.

The method of arbitration when multiple inbound VLs have packets destined for the same outbound VL is left to the implementor, but the arbitration should service all inbound ports fairly.

C18-28: The forwarding table shall be configured in one of two ways, linear or random, as defined in section [18.2.4.3.1 Linear Forwarding Table Requirements on page 1219](#) and [18.2.4.3.2 Random Forwarding Table Requirements on page 1220](#).

C18-29: Switches shall conform to the requirements in section [18.2.4.3.3 Required Multicast Relay on page 1222](#).

o18-25: Switches may implement the requirements in section [18.2.4.3.4 Optional Multicast Relay on page 1223](#).

C18-30: A switch that does not implement the optional multicast relay shall set the MulticastFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute to zero.

18.2.4.3.1 LINEAR FORWARDING TABLE REQUIREMENTS

This section describes the requirements related to the linear forwarding table. The linear forwarding table provides a simple map from LID to destination port. Conceptually, the table itself contains only destination ports; the LID acts as an index into the table from which the packet's destination address is obtained.

C18-31: In switches that implement the linear forwarding table, the linear forwarding table shall contain a port entry for each LID starting from zero and incrementing by one up to the size of the forwarding table.

C18-32: In switches that support the linear forwarding table, the size of the linear forwarding table shall be advertised in the LinearFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute.

C18-33: In switches that support the linear forwarding table, the RandomFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute shall be set to zero.

C18-34: In switches that implement the linear forwarding table, the linear forwarding table shall be programmable using the LinearForwardingTable attribute as described in [14.2.5.10 LinearForwardingTable on page 922](#).

Note that forwarding to switch port 0 (including the SMI/GSI) is enabled by programming the corresponding entries in the forwarding table to port 0. Setting the LID component of the PortInfo attribute does not automatically load this value in the forwarding table.

C18-35: A switch that implements a linear forwarding table shall support the SM programmable LinearFDBTop component of the SwitchInfo attribute as described in [14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on page 895](#).

C18-36: Switches that implement linear forwarding tables shall discard all unicast packets that meet any of the following conditions:

- the packet's DLID value is greater than the value of LinearFDBTop and is not the permissive address
- the packet's DLID is outside the range supported by the linear forwarding table and is not the permissive address
- the port number in the forwarding table corresponding to the packet's DLID is set to a port that does not exist.

18.2.4.3.2 RANDOM FORWARDING TABLE REQUIREMENTS

This section describes the requirements related to the random forwarding table. Conceptually, the random forwarding table acts as a “content addressable memory”; it is loaded with both LIDs and destination ports. The table is “addressed” by a packet’s LID and the corresponding destination port is returned. A switch implementation can limit the number of LIDs that correspond to a given port to as few as one. This enables the implementation of a “leaf” switch, i.e., a switch that supports only the connection of CA’s to all ports but one. Such a switch requires a very small forwarding table (one LID per port). Such limitations are neither mandated nor prohibited by this specification.

C18-37: In switches that implement the random forwarding table, the random forwarding table shall provide for the storage of a set of unicast LID/LMC pairs and corresponding destination port entries.

C18-38: Switches that implement the random forwarding table shall maintain a DefaultPort value which shall be programmable via the DefaultPort component of the SwitchInfo attribute (see [14.2.5.4 SwitchInfo on page 895](#) for additional detail).

C18-39: Packets that arrive on ports other than the port indicated by DefaultPort with a unicast DLID field that does not match an entry in the random forwarding table and is not equal to the permissive address shall be forwarded to the port indicated by DefaultPort.

C18-40: If the DefaultPort value is a port that does not exist then packets that would otherwise be forwarded to this port shall be discarded.

C18-41: Packets that arrive on the port indicated by DefaultPort with a unicast DLID field that is not the permissive address and does not match an entry in the random forwarding table shall be discarded.

Matching an entry in the table means that the packet's DLID matches the LID in the table excluding the LMC least significant bits.

C18-42: Switches that implement the random forwarding table shall advertise the size of the table, i.e. the number of LID/LMC pairs that it may contain, in the RandomFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute.

C18-43: Switches that implement the random forwarding table shall set the LinearFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute to zero.

o18-26: Switches that implement a random forwarding table may limit the number of LID/LMC pairs that can be assigned to a given port.

C18-44: If a switch that implements the random forwarding table limits the number of LID/LMC pairs that can be assigned to a given port, then it shall set the LIDsPerPort component of the SwitchInfo component to the number of LIDs that is supported per port.

C18-45: If a switch that implements the random forwarding table does not impose such limitation on the number of LID/LMC pairs that can be assigned to a given port, it shall set the value of the LIDsPerPort component the same as the RandomFDBCap component.

C18-46: In switches that support the random forwarding table, the random forwarding table shall support exactly one LID/LMC entry.

(Note: The preceding compliance statement implies that if a LID/LMC pair is loaded into multiple entries of the random forwarding table such that the LID/LMC is not uniquely associated with a single output port, the output port used for packets sent to this LID/LMC is not guaranteed.)

Note: Switches that implement a Random Forwarding Table shall
1
discard all unicast packets for which the port number in the
2
forwarding table entry corresponding to the packet's DLID is set
3
to a port identifier that does not exist.
4

Note that forwarding to switch port 0 (including the SMI/GSI) is enabled
5
by programming an entry in the forwarding table to port 0. Setting the LID
6
component of the PortInfo attribute does not automatically load this value
7
in the table.
8

The LIDsPerPort component does not apply to port 0.
9

18.2.4.3.3 REQUIRED MULTICAST RELAY

C18-47: All switches shall maintain values for a default primary multicast
13
port and a default non-primary multicast port.
14

All switches maintain values for default primary multicast port and a de-
16
fault non-primary multicast port regardless of whether the switch supports
17
multicast forwarding and regardless of the type of unicast forwarding table
18
implemented.
19

C18-48: Switches shall allow the SM to set the values of the default pri-
20
mary multicast port and a default non-primary multicast port using the De-
21
faultMulticastPrimaryPort and DefaultMulticastNotPrimaryPort
22
components of the SwitchInfo attribute.
23

C18-49: All multicast packets that are received on ports other than the de-
25
fault multicast primary port shall be forwarded to the default multicast pri-
26
mary port if any of the following conditions are true:
27

- 28 • The switch does not implement a multicast forwarding table.
29
- 30 • The switch implements a multicast forwarding table and the multicast
31 DLID in the packet is outside the range of the multicast forwarding ta-
32 ble.
33
- 34 • The switch implements a multicast forwarding table and the entry in
the forwarding table corresponding to the packet's DLID is zero.
35

C18-50: All multicast packets that are received on the default multicast
35
primary port shall be forwarded to the default multicast non-primary port if
36
any of the following conditions are true:
37

- 38 • The switch does not implement a multicast forwarding table.
39
- 40 • The switch implements a multicast forwarding table and the multicast
41 DLID in the packet is outside the range of the multicast forwarding ta-
42 ble.
43

- The switch implements a multicast forwarding table and the entry in the forwarding table corresponding to the packet's DLID is zero.

C18-51: If either the default multicast primary port or default multicast non-primary port is set to a port that does not exist then multicast packets that would otherwise be forwarded to the corresponding port shall be discarded.

18.2.4.3.4 OPTIONAL MULTICAST RELAY

This section describes the requirements for the optional replication of multicast packets.

o18-27: The replication of packets as part of multicast relay is optional.

o18-28: Switches that support multicast packet replication shall implement a multicast forwarding table that contains a port entry for each multicast LID starting from 0xc000 and sequentially incrementing to include the total number of multicast entries supported.

o18-29: In switches that support multicast packet replication, the number of multicast entries supported in the multicast forwarding table shall be at least one and no greater than 16383.

o18-30: In switches that support multicast packet replication, the number of multicast entries supported in the multicast forwarding table shall be advertised in the MulticastFDBCap component of the SwitchInfo attribute.

o18-31: In switches that support multicast packet replication, if the DLID of a packet is a multicast LID, then the switch shall relay the packet to the set of ports, excluding the port on which the packet was received, indicated by the multicast forwarding table entry corresponding to the packet's DLID field.

A switch performs this relay function regardless of the state of the destination port. In certain states, the destination port will discard the packet. This is described in detail in [7.2 Link States on page 187](#).

o18-32: In switches that support multicast packet replication, the virtual lane field shall be updated in each replicated packet in the same manner as for unicast packets.

18.2.4.4 TRANSMITTER QUEUING

Relayed packets are queued in the outbound portion of virtual lanes.

18.2.4.4.1 OUTBOUND P_KEY ENFORCEMENT

The implementation of the outbound P_Key enforcement service in switches is optional. This section specifies the requirements of the service if implemented.

Outbound P_Key verification shall be enabled and disabled for each port individually based on the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo attribute.

o18-33: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to zero, then the outbound P_key enforcement service shall be disabled for packets received on the corresponding port.

o18-34: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, it shall maintain a separate list of P_Keys associated with each port.

o18-35: If a switch provides both the inbound P_Key enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service, then the list of P_Keys associated with each port shall be the same list for both the inbound P_Key enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service.

o18-36: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, the P_Key table associated with each port shall be capable of containing between one and 65535 P_Keys, inclusive (the exact number is left as an implementation parameter).

o18-37: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, the P_Key table associated with each port shall be programmable using the P_KeyTable attribute defined in [14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable on page 918](#).

o18-38: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet to be transmitted on a virtual lane other than 15 on that port shall either be discarded or truncated such that it contains no data past the BTH if the value in the P_Key field in the BTH does not match an entry in the transmitting port's P_Key list and either of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 11 and IPVer field in the GRH contains 6.
- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 10.

For the purpose of outbound P_Key enforcement, a P_Key matches an entry in the P_Key table if and only if the P_Key is not the invalid P_Key and one of the following conditions are true:

- The P_Key membership in the packet bit is limited and there is an entry in the P_Key table whose membership bit is full and whose remaining 15 bits equal those of the P_Key
- The P_Key membership bit in the packet is full and there is an entry in the P_Key table whose 15 bits exclusive of the membership bit equal those bits in the P_Key.

o18-39: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet to be transmitted on a virtual lane other than 15 of that port shall either be discarded or truncated in length such that it contains no more than 64 bytes if all of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field of the LRH contains binary 11.
- IPVer field of the GRH does not contain 6.

o18-40: If a switch provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet that is too short to contain a BTH and that the LNH field contains binary 11 shall be discarded or shall be forwarded with the EBP delimiter appended and with the inverse of the valid VCRC.

Raw packets, i.e. packets in which the LNH field of the LRH contains binary 00 or binary 01, are not subject to P_Key enforcement and are not discarded nor truncated by this mechanism

18.2.4.5 PACKET TRANSMISSION

C18-52: This compliance statement is obsolete.

o18-40.a1: If the FilterRawOutbound component of the transmitting port's PortInfo attribute is set to one, then the switch shall discard all packets to be transmitted on that port in which the LNH field of the LRH contains binary 00 or binary 01 (i.e. raw packets).

C18-53: Each packet shall be transmitted with a valid VCRC field computed as specified in section [7.8.2 Variant CRC \(VCRC\) - 2 Bytes on page 219](#), unless required otherwise in this chapter or in chapter [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#).

C18-54: Each packet shall be transmitted with an egp character appended unless required otherwise in this chapter.

C18-55: Switches shall support the requirements specified in [7.6.9 VL Arbitration and Prioritization on page 208](#).

18.2.5 ERROR HANDLING

This section specifies required operation under error conditions. Like the previous section, this section is divided into several architectural functions. This division does not imply a particular implementation; it is done solely to enhance the organization of the specification.

18.2.5.1 SWITCH PORTS

1 **C18-56:** This compliance statement is obsolete.

2 **C18-57:** This compliance statement is obsolete.

3 There are no additional switch port error handling requirements.

18.2.5.2 RECEIVER QUEUING

4 There are no additional receiver queuing error handling requirements.

18.2.5.3 PACKET RELAY

5 There are no additional packet relay error handling requirements.

18.2.5.4 TRANSMITTER QUEUEING

6 The transmitter packet discard is based on, among other things, two time values: Switch Lifetime Limit (SLL) and Head of Queue Lifetime Limit (HLL).

7 SLL is defined as $4.096\text{us} * 2^{\text{LV}}$ if $0 \leq \text{LV} \leq 19$, +5% / -55%. LV is the Life-TimeValue component of the SwitchInfo attribute. If LV > 19, then SLL is to be interpreted as infinite.

8 HLL is defined as $4.096\text{us} * 2^{\text{HL}}$ if $0 \leq \text{HL} \leq 19$, +5% / -55%. HL is the HO-QLife component of the PortInfo attribute. If HL > 19, then HLL is to be interpreted as infinite.

9 **C18-58:** The transmitter queueing function shall discard any packet that meets any of the following conditions:

- 10 • The packet has been at the head of the Virtual Lane (i.e. the position to be transmitted next), and has not begun transmission within HLL.
- 11 • The packet is queued to a VL that is in the VL stalled state. If VL-StallCount sequential packets are discarded from a given VL due to exceeding the HLL requirement above, the VL shall enter the VL stalled state. A VL shall leave the VL stalled state $8 * \text{HLL}$ after entering it. VLStallCount component is provided in the PortInfo attribute.
- 12 • The size of the packet as indicated by the PktLen field exceeds the MTU supported by the neighbor device as indicated by the Neighbor-MTU component of the PortInfo attribute.

13 **C18-59:** If a switch by virtue of its implementation cannot guarantee that any packet entering it will be transmitted within 2.5 ms, measured first bit in to first bit out and assuming flow control credit is continuously available, then it shall discard any packet that has not begun transmission within SLL measured from the time the first bit was received by the switch.

o18-41: If a switch by virtue of its implementation can guarantee that any packet entering it will be transmitted within 2.5 ms, measured first bit in to first bit out and assuming flow control credit is continuously available, then it may discard any packet that has not begun transmission within SLL measured from the time the first bit was received by the switch.

18.2.5.5 PACKET TRANSMISSION

C18-60: Each packet to be transmitted that is truncated in length as permitted or specified by any condition in this chapter be corrupted as specified in [7.3 Packet Receiver States on page 191](#).

18.2.6 SUBNET MANAGEMENT AGENT REQUIREMENTS

C18-61: Switches shall support a Subnet Management Interface (SMI) as specified in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#).

C18-62: Switches shall support a General Services Interface (GSI) as specified by [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

There are various mandatory and optional requirements of these interfaces that are specified in the respective chapters.

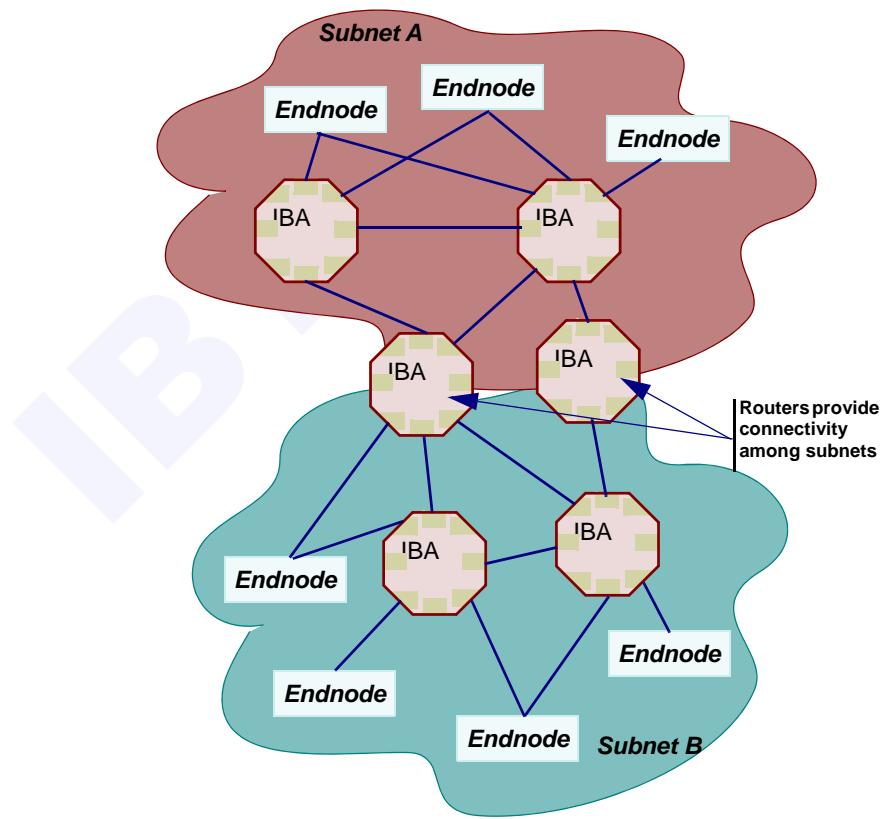
C18-63: Switches shall implement P_Key checking on the GSI as specified in section [10.9.8 Partition Enforcement on Management Queue Pairs on page 562](#).

CHAPTER 19: ROUTERS

19.1 OVERVIEW

IBA Routers are IBA packet relay devices, that operate at the network layer of the IBA addressing hierarchy to interconnect multiple locally addressed subnets. As the top level in the hierarchy, IBA Routers rely on global identifiers (GIDs).

Figure 236 Reference of Routers Connecting Subnets



IBA Router usage is meant to satisfy:

- 1) Scalability
- 2) Local address space reuse
- 3) Containment of failures and topology changes
- 4) Confinement of fabric management scope to subnets

In fulfilling these objectives, IBA Routers also allow the IBA semantics, and QoS characteristics to be extended across IBA subnets.

IBA Routers are required to support unicast routing and may support multicast routing. The specification of the routing forwarding mechanisms in this chapter is presently limited to unicast routing.

IBA Routers use destination based routing, where every destination port within the global fabric is assigned one or more unique Global Identifiers (GID). From the point of view of a Router, a GID represents either an end-node port or another router's port on a directly attached subnet. A GID does not necessarily represent a path through the fabric, as the Router is allowed to spread traffic over several paths based on other packet header criteria.

A Router is visible to IBA nodes on the directly attached subnets, and it is transparent to nodes on any remote subnet. The Subnet Manager address resolution function makes local routers visible to endnodes; endnodes in turn use this information when addressing packets to a local router LID on their way to a remote destination. Routers on the same subnet are also visible to each other, both for the purpose of implementing a routing protocol, and also when routing packets through other routers as the next hop. Finally, routers on a subnet are also visible to Subnet Managers on their respective directly attached subnets.

Each Router port must support a Subnet Management Interface (SMI) (see [13.5.1.1 Processing Subnet Management Packets \(SMPs\) on page 821](#)) and a General Services Interface (GSI) (see [13.5.1.2 Processing General Services Management Packets \(GMPs\) on page 822](#)). There are various mandatory and optional requirements of this interface that are specified in the management chapter. Subnet Managers assign LIDs to IBA Router ports and provide a service to find a path to other endnodes or routers. The Router Management section of the Management chapter defines the attributes of the interactions between Subnet Managers and Routers.

19.2 DETAILED FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS

The present IBA Router specification does not cover the routing protocol nor the messages exchanged between routers. Future revisions of this chapter will complete such control functions.

19.2.1 ATTRIBUTES

IBA Routers reside at the boundaries between subnets, and are configured separately per port by different Subnet Managers and at different times. Subnet managers supply IBA Routers with LIDs/LMCs (for each

port separately), and additional path information like SL to VL mappings and MTU values.

Unicast Routing Table:

C19-1: A router shall implement a unicast routing table with at least as many entries as the number of router ports.

IBA Routers have routing tables for their active routes. These tables are hierarchical and include explicit endnode routes (e.g. last hop to end-node), prefix routes (aggregate route for entire subnet), and possibly default routes (routes for unknown prefixes). The size of the unicast routing table is implementation dependent.

Virtual lanes:

C19-2: Routers shall implement the subnet management virtual lane (also referred to as virtual lane 15).

C19-3: Router ports shall implement data virtual lanes as specified in [7.6 Virtual Lanes Mechanisms on page 199](#), in addition to the subnet management virtual lane, numbered virtual lane 15.

C19-4: Virtual lane 15 shall be implemented independently for each router port.

C19-5: Routers shall not route any VL15 packets between router ports.

SL to VL mapping:

C19-6: Routers that implement more than one data virtual lane shall implement the SL to VL mapping function specified in this chapter.

o19-1: Routers that implement one data virtual lane may implement the SL to VL mapping function specified in this chapter.

Per port SL to VL mapping is required on Routers that support more than one virtual lane in addition to virtual lane 15. It is optional on Routers that support only one virtual lane in addition to virtual lane 15.

Tclass to SL mapping:

C19-7: Routers shall preserve the Tclass value when routing.

SL values may be replaced when routing into a different subnet. The Tclass value is preserved, as it represents the Class of Service with end-to-end IBA scope. The Tclass to SL mapping function is not defined by the present specification revision.

P_Key Enforcement:	1
o19-2: Routers may implement the Inbound P_Key Enforcement Service specified in this chapter.	2
o19-3: Routers may implement the Outbound P_Key Enforcement Service specified in this chapter.	3
Routers may enforce partitions on ingress to and/or egress from the Router.	4
Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) size:	5
C19-8: Each router port shall independently support one of the MTU sizes specified in Table 22 Packet Size on page 217 .	6
C19-9: Routers shall be capable of routing packets of size from the minimum valid packet size up to the supported MTU of the intervening ports plus 126 bytes.	7
Table 22 Packet Size on page 217 specifies a choice of MTU that may be supported by IBA devices. Router implementations independently support one of the specified MTU sizes for each port. Packets exceeding the MTU size of the participating links may be discarded or truncated. Each port provides sufficient buffering for each data VL to advertise credit for at least one packet with MTU payload.	8
Link Physicals:	9
IBA specifies various physical layer options. Routers may implement any of these options on any port and there is no requirement that all ports of a Router implement nor operate with the same physical options. Routers shall conform to the detailed requirements for physical layer support as specified in Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on page 182 .	10
End-to-end data integrity:	11
Although IBA routers modify some packet headers during routing, none of these headers affects the value of the ICRC, and IBA Routers shall preserve the original ICRC rather than recomputing its value locally.	12
19.2.2 INITIALIZATION	13
C19-10: Upon power-up, a router shall be initialized to the following state:	14
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• All initialization defined in Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772 and applicable to routers.• Physical and link layers reset.	15

- All virtual lane queues shall be cleared.
- Other routing table entries and all queues (and any other table type structures) shall be cleared.

19.2.3 CONFIGURATION

Routing tables - Entries may be derived from any combination of externally configured routes and autonomously computed routes. In particular, routers rely on the SM database for routes to endnodes on directly attached subnets.

SL mapping tables - SL to VL mapping tables exist at every router port.

Tclass mapping - Any necessary configuration of the Tclass end-to-end class of service role in determining the local SL value is configured into the router.

19.2.4 PACKET RELAY MODEL

The logical abstraction for IBA packet routing is that of packet by packet routing and is given by:

```
if
    i) ((BASE DLID == router port BASE LID) AND
        ii) (LRH:Next Header == GRH) AND
            iii) (Destination GID does not equal router GID) AND
                iv) (Destination GID matches entry in route table) AND
                    v) (VCRC OK) AND (Hop count > 1))
then {
    i) Replace DLID with value from routing table
    ii) Replace SLID with LID of output port
    iii) Replace SL, considering Tclass (among other possible criteria)
    iv) Map SL to VL using per output port table
    v) Decrement Hop count
    vi) Recompute VCRC, preserve ICRC
}
```

Note: Routers may also check ICRC, or just rely on the end-to-protection of endnodes checking ICRC.

The above abstraction, combined with the Network layer Addressing model, dictates a longest match against the destination GID. Implementa-

tions may exploit the addressing model to relax this function to a combination of a 64-bit longest match for prefix type entries, and either a 64-bit or 128-bit fixed length match for explicit routes, depending on the uniqueness scope of the lowest 64 bits of the GID.

19.2.4.1 PATH SELECTION

A Router may support multiple paths to a given DGID. These may include paths via the same next-hop and/or different next-hops as well as different paths within the subnet (LMC based) to a given GID.

An IBA Router may actively use multiple paths with equal or different costs, as long as it does not affect ordering by separating packets of a given session. To allow IBA Routers to have different degrees of sophistication in determining what packets may be separated, a session is used in a deliberately vague way.

The baseline assumption is that endpoints will use identical GRH:FlowLabel values for sequences of packets whose relative ordering is important, therefore a possible session representation at the router would be the (**DGID, SGID, TClass, SL, FlowLabel**) tuple. A router may use other attributes to select a path but once selected that path will continue to be used for subsequent packets unless a management event dictates a new path.

19.2.4.2 ROUTER PORTS

A router with N physical ports, associates PORTINFO attributes to its physical ports based on the Port Number Attribute Modifier value, ranging between 1 and N.

C19-11: Each port on an IBA Router shall comply with the physical layer requirements specified in [Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on page 182](#).

C19-12: Each port on an IBA Router shall comply with the link layer requirements specified in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#) of this specification.

C19-13: Each port on an IBA Router shall implement the Subnet Management PORTINFO Attribute specified in [14.2.5.6 PortInfo on page 898](#).

C19-14: Each port on an IBA Router shall have at least one GID assigned to it.

19.2.4.3 RECEIVER QUEUING

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
The receiver queueing function receives packets from the link layer de-
fined in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#).

8
9
10
11
C19-15: The virtual lane into which an individual packet is queued shall
be the virtual lane whose virtual lane number matches the VL field in the
packet's Local Route Header.

12
13
C19-16: If the FilterRawInbound component of the receiving port's
PortInfo attribute is set to one, then the Router shall discard all packets
received on that port in which the LNH field of the LRH contains a binary
00 or binary 01 (i.e. raw packets).

19.2.4.3.1 INBOUND P_KEY ENFORCEMENT

14
15
The implementation of the inbound P_Key enforcement in Routers is op-
tional. This section defines its requirements if implemented.

16
17
18
Inbound P_Key verification shall be enabled and disabled for each port in-
dividually based on the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the
PortInfo attribute.

19
20
21
o19-4: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and
the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is
set to zero, then the inbound P_key enforcement service shall be disabled
for packets received on the corresponding port.

22
23
o19-5: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, it
shall maintain a separate list of P_Keys associated with each port.

24
25
26
o19-6: If a router provides both the inbound P_Key enforcement service
and the outbound P_Key enforcement service, then the list of P_Keys as-
sociated with each port shall be the same list for both the inbound P_Key
enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service.

27
28
29
o19-7: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, the
P_Key table associated with each port shall be capable of containing be-
tween 1 and 65535 P_Keys, inclusive (the exact number is left as an im-
plementation parameter).

30
31
32
o19-8: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service, the
P_Key table associated with each port shall be programmable using the
P_KeyTable attribute defined in [14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable on page 918](#).

33
34
35
o19-9: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and
if the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is
set to one, then any packet received on a virtual lane other than 15 shall
either be discarded or truncated such that it contains no data past the BTH

if the value in the P_Key field in the BTH is not contained in the receiving port's P_Key list and either of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 11 and IPVer field in the GRH contains 6.
- LNH field in the LRH contains binary 10.

o19-10: If a router provides the inbound P_Key enforcement service and if the PartitionEnforcementInbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is set to one, then any packet received on a virtual lane other than 15 shall either be discarded or truncated in length such that it contains no more than 64 bytes if all of the following conditions are true:

- LNH field of the LRH contains binary 11.
- IPVer field of the GRH does not contain 6.

Raw packets are not subject to P_Key enforcement and shall not be discarded nor truncated by this mechanism.

19.2.4.4 PACKET RELAY

Packet relay refers to the operation of transferring a packet from the virtual lane on the inbound port to the virtual lane on a outbound port. The output virtual lane selection is specified later in this section. The relay function is performed regardless of the state of the destination port. In certain port states the destination port will discard the packet.

C19-17: A router shall relay each unicast packet from the virtual lane zero through fourteen (if implemented) in which it was received to the output port indicated by the routing table entry corresponding to the packet's DGID field.

C19-18: Packets received on virtual lane 15 shall not be relayed to output ports.

A packet may be relayed to the same port on which it was received, this is necessary to support some routing scenarios like endnodes using one out of several routers on the subnet as a default router.

o19-11: Routers that support more than one virtual lane, in addition to virtual lane 15, shall set the value of the VL field in the local route header by first considering the GRH Tclass field to derive a SL value for the subnet attached to the output port and then using the SL to VL mapping scheme as defined in section [7.6.6 VL Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#).

C19-19: Routers shall always recognize and map a Tclass value of 0 to a best effort SL.

C19-20: Each packet relayed from an inbound port shall be placed on the virtual lane of the outbound port specified by the SL to VL mapping. If the new value of VL does not correspond to a configured VL on the outbound port, the packet shall be discarded. Also, packets received with a VL not configured for the port shall be discarded.

C19-21: If the virtual lane on the outbound port does not contain sufficient space for the packet to be relayed, then the packet shall remain in the virtual lane on the inbound port until sufficient space is available or until the router lifetime limit mechanism permits the discard of the packet.

C19-22: If the relay function is unable to relay packet from an inbound port to an outbound port due to lack of sufficient space in the outbound VL, the relay function shall continue to relay packets from other virtual lanes destined for virtual lanes on outbound ports with sufficient space.

C19-23: Packets shall be transmitted on a given port and SL in the same order as they were received from a given port.

o19-12: The relay function may, but is not required to, relay packets in the inbound portion of virtual lanes that are behind packets that are blocked due to insufficient space in the outbound portion of virtual lanes.

The method of arbitration when multiple inbound VLs have packets destined for the same outbound VL is left to the implementor, but the arbitration should service all inbound ports fairly.

C19-24: Routers shall not continuously assert backpressure (i.e. fail to grant link credits). Regardless of what congestion policy an IBA router associates to its relay function, routers shall not cause deadlock in the fabric.

C19-25: Packets whose Hop count is less than 2 shall be discarded.

C19-26: The Hop count of every relayed packet is decremented by one.

19.2.4.5 TRANSMITTER QUEUING

Relayed packets shall be queued in the outbound portion of virtual lanes.

19.2.4.5.1 OUTBOUND P_KEY ENFORCEMENT

The implementation of the outbound P_Key enforcement service in routers is optional. This section specifies the requirements of the service if implemented.

Outbound P_Key verification shall be enabled and disabled for each port individually based on the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo attribute.

1 **o19-13:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and
2 the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute is
3 set to zero, then the outbound P_key enforcement service shall be dis-
4 abled for packets received on the corresponding port.

5 **o19-14:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, it
6 shall maintain a separate list of P_Keys associated with each port.

7 **o19-15:** If a router provides both the inbound P_Key enforcement service
8 and the outbound P_Key enforcement service, then the list of P_Keys as-
9 sociate with each port shall be the same list for both the inbound P_Key
10 enforcement service and the outbound P_Key enforcement service.

11 **o19-16:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, the
12 P_Key table associated with each port shall be capable of containing be-
13 tween 1 and 65535 P_Keys, inclusive (the exact number is left as an im-
14 plementation parameter).

15 **o19-17:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service, the
16 P_Key table associated with each port shall be programmable using the
17 P_KeyTable attribute defined in [14.2.5.7 P_KeyTable on page 918](#).

19 **o19-18:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and
20 if the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute
21 is set to one, then any packet to be transmitted on a virtual lane other than
22 15 on that port shall either be discarded or truncated such that it contains
23 no data past the BTH if the value in the P_Key field in the BTH is not con-
24 tained in the transmitting port's P_Key list and either of the following con-
25 ditions are true:

- 26 • LNH field in the LRH contains binary 11 and IPVer field in the GRH
27 contains 6.
- 28 • LNH field in the LRH contains binary 10.

29 **o19-19:** If a router provides the outbound P_Key enforcement service and
30 if the PartitionEnforcementOutbound component of the PortInfo Attribute
31 is set to one, then any packet to be transmitted on a virtual lane other than
32 15 of that port shall either be discarded or truncated in length such that it
33 contains no more than 64 bytes if all of the following conditions are true:

- 35 • LNH field of the LRH contains binary 01 or binary 11.
- 36 • IPVer field of the GRH does not contain 6.

38
39 Raw packets, i.e. packets in which the LNH field of the LRH contains bi-
40 nary 00 or 01, are not subject to P_Key enforcement and are not dis-
41 carded nor truncated by this mechanism.

19.2.4.6 PACKET TRANSMISSION

1
2
3
4
5
C19-27: If the FilterRawOutbound component of the transmitting port's
PortInfo attribute is set to one, then the router shall discard all packets to
be transmitted on that port in which the LNH field of the LRH contains a
binary 00 or binary 01 (i.e. raw packets).

6
7
8
C19-28: Routers shall perform SL to VL mapping as defined in [7.6.6 VL
Mapping Within a Subnet on page 205](#). This mapping is based on the out-
bound SL to be used for the packet.

9
10
11
C19-29: Packet shall be transmitted with a valid VCRC field computed as
specified in section [7.8.2 Variant CRC \(VCRC\) - 2 Bytes on page 219](#), un-
less required otherwise in this chapter.

12
13
C19-30: Each packet shall be transmitted with an EGP character ap-
pended unless required otherwise in this chapter.

14
15
16
Routers shall support the requirements specified in [7.6.9 VL Arbitration
and Prioritization on page 208](#).

19.2.5 ERROR HANDLING

17
18
19
20
21
This section specifies required operation under error conditions for each
of the conceptual functions.

19.2.5.1 ROUTER PORTS ERRORS

22
23
24
25
C19-31: Each port on an IBA router shall comply with the physical layer
error requirements specified in [Chapter 6: Physical Layer Interface on
page 182](#).

26
27
28
29
C19-32: Each port on an IBA router shall comply with the link layer error
requirements specified in [Chapter 7: Link Layer on page 186](#) of this spec-
ification.

19.2.5.2 RECEIVER QUEUING ERRORS

30
31
32
33
The receiver queueing function may discard any packet that meets any of
the following conditions:

- 34
35
36
37
38
39
 - There is insufficient space in the virtual lane to receive a packet of the
size indicated in the PktLen field in the local route header.
 - The size of the packet indicated by the PktLen field in the local route
header indicates that the packet exceeds the MTU size supported by
the Router port.

40
41
42
The receiver queueing function may discard any packet if its transmission
has not been initiated and if the packet meets any of the following condi-
tions:

- There is insufficient space in the virtual lane to receive the packet. 1
 - The packet exceeds the MTU size supported by the output port. 2
 - A VCRC error was detected on reception. 3
 - The length of the received packet was different from that indicated by LRH:PktLen. 4
 - The packet has a framing error. 5
 - The packet was received with an EBP delimiter appended. 6
 - The length of the packet was too short to contain a LRH, GRH, and a VCRC. 7
- C19-33:** Any packet that exceeds the MTU size supported by the output port and that is not discarded shall be truncated to any size that meets the MTU size limitation of the port. 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13

19.2.5.3 PACKET RELAY ERRORS

C19-34: Packets with no GRH, or with a GRH version not supported by the Router shall be discarded.

19.2.5.4 TRANSMITTER QUEUEING ERRORS

C19-35: Routers shall implement the Packet Lifetime limits and Head of Queue Lifetime Limit mechanisms defined for IBA Switches in [18.2.5.4 Transmitter Queueing on page 1226](#).

The Packet Lifetime limit is determined from the LifeTimeValue component of the RouterInfo attribute using the same formula as the Switch Lifetime Limit. The Head of Queue Lifetime Limit is determined from the HOQLife component of the PortInfo attribute using the same formula as its switch counterpart.

The above mentioned limits on packet lifetime inside IBA routers and switches are meant to help drain packets from the IBA fabric before they can present a hazard to the IBA transport layer finite sequence number space. These limits are not defined as congestion management mechanisms, and should not be reached in normal circumstances, even in congestion scenarios.

19.2.5.5 PACKET TRANSMISSION ERRORS

C19-36: Each packet to be transmitted that was received with an error indicated by the link layer shall be transmitted with an EBP character appended and the VCRC field shall contain the one's complement of the valid VCRC.

o19-20: Each packet to be transmitted that was received with an error indicated by the link layer may be truncated in length.

C19-37: Each packet to be transmitted that is truncated in length as permitted or specified by any condition in this chapter be corrupted as specified in [7.3 Packet Receiver States on page 191](#).

19.2.6 SUBNET MANAGEMENT AGENT REQUIREMENTS

C19-38: Each router port shall implement a Subnet Management Interface (SMI) as specified in [[Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#)].

C19-39: Routers shall support a General Services Interface (GSI) as specified in [Chapter 16: General Services on page 1079](#).

The General Services Interface is used, for example, for GID to LID address resolution.

CHAPTER 20: VOLUME 1 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

20.1 COMPLIANCE DEFINITION

This chapter specifies the Compliance Categories that are approved for labeling various products that contain InfiniBand content. This will allow vendors to label their products and claim InfiniBand compliance without creating confusion in the marketplace. This chapter addresses compliance to the feature set defined by Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Specification.

20.1.1 PRODUCT APPLICATION

Each product that has InfiniBand content **may** claim InfiniBand Compliance to one or more of the Categories defined in the Compliance Summaries of the InfiniBand Specification. A product **shall not** simply claim “InfiniBand Compliant”.

Each claim of compliance **shall** be a list of one or more valid InfiniBand Compliance Categories from Volume 1 or Volume 2. It’s appropriate for some products to include Compliance Categories from both Volumes 1 and 2.

The valid Volume 1 Compliance Categories are defined below.

Those for Volume 2 are defined in *InfiniBand Architecture Specification, Volume 2 Chapter “Volume 2 Compliance Summary”*.

20.2 VOLUME 1 COMPLIANCE CATEGORIES

Volume 1 Compliance Categories refer to the functionality of each entity defined in Volume 1. [Table 378 on page 1242](#) lists all valid Volume 1 Compliance Categories along with their full names.

Because optional functionality may be associated with a given Compliance Category, zero or more Compliance Qualifiers may be associated with that Category. Table 378 lists all valid Qualifiers under each Category. Qualifiers shown in ***bold italics*** indicate functionality that is actually non-optional for that specific category, but those Qualifiers may still appear in some of the Compliance Statements listed under that Category.

[Table 379 on page 1243](#) lists Volume 1’s complete set of Qualifiers along with their full names. [Section 20.2.1](#) discusses Qualifiers in more depth.

Each Category has a dedicated section in this chapter that contains, among other things, a complete reference list of Volume 1 compliance

statements that directly apply to that category. Table 378 provides a reference to each section, including a hypertext link with on-line versions of the spec.

Table 378 Volume 1 Compliance Categories

Category	Full Name	Valid Qualifiers	Reference
HCA-CI	Host Channel Adapter - Channel Interface	VLS, RC , UC , RD, RawD, APM, UDMcast, RawDMcast, RDMA , Atomics, P_Key traps, P_Key counters, Notice, Trap, BMM, BQM, SRQ, LIF, BL, ZBVA, SDP, VE, OptPC	Section 20.3 on page 1246
TCA	Target Channel Adapter	VLS, RC, UC, RD, RawD, APM, UDMcast, RawDMcast, RDMA, Atomics, P_Key traps, P_Key counters, Notice, Trap, OptPC	Section 20.4 on page 1261
SW	Switch	VLS, UDMcast, P_Key SRE, P_Key SRE_In, P_Key SRE_Out, Notice, Trap, P_Key SEPT, OptPC	Section 20.5 on page 1270
RTR	Router	VLS, RawD, UDMcast, RawDMcast, P_Key SRE, Notice, Trap, RMPP, OptPC	Section 20.6 on page 1274
SM	Subnet Manager	Trap, DRN, SysG, Reln	Section 20.7 on page 1278
SA	Subnet Administration	UDMcast, Trap, SAOPT, RMPP, MPath	Section 20.8 on page 1280
CM	Communication Manager	APM	Section 20.9 on page 1281
PFM	Performance Manager	Trap, Notice	Section 20.10 on page 1282
VM	Vendor-Defined Manager	Trap, Notice, RMPP	Section 20.11 on page 1283
OMA	Optional Management Agent	Trap, Notice, AMA, DMA, SNMP, VMA	Section 20.12 on page 1284

20.2.1 VOLUME 1 COMPLIANCE QUALIFIERS

Compliance Qualifiers indicate which compliance statements apply only if a product supports an optional feature or specified combination of optional features.

Some compliance statements apply to multiple Compliance Categories, and thus appear in the Compliance Statement List under each applicable Category. Some of these “shared” compliance statements include Qualifiers associated with functionality that is optional in some Categories and mandatory in others. In each Category where the functionality is mandatory, the associated Qualifier is shown in ***bold italics*** for that Category’s “Valid Qualifier’s” entry in Table 378.

20.2.1.1 CLAIMING SUPPORT FOR OPTIONAL FEATURES

C20-1: If a product claims to support a given optional feature, the product **must** comply with **all** compliance statements that apply to that optional feature.

For example, an HCA-CI that claims to support Reliable Datagram Service must comply with all statements under the HCA-CI Compliance Statement List that apply, given the RD Qualifier.

A product **shall not** include in its list of supported *optional* features any features that are in fact *mandatory* for the Category the product claims compliance to. Qualifiers for these mandatory features are shown in ***bold italics*** in Table 378. For example, Reliable Connection Service is mandatory for HCA-CI, so RC must not be included in an HCA-CI's list of supported optional features even though the product must still meet all RC requirements.

A product may claim support for multiple optional features, in which case the product must comply with all compliance statements that apply to the particular set of optional features claimed by the product, noting that some compliance statements apply only for specific combinations of qualifiers.

Table 379 lists and describes the Volume 1 Compliance Qualifiers that a product can claim compliance to. To abbreviate the optional support, one or more Qualifiers can be listed after the Category in braces. For example, a Target Channel Adapter that supports Reliable Datagram Service and also Automatic Path Migration can be abbreviated with TCA{RD,APM}

Table 379 Volume 1 Compliance Qualifiers

Qualifier	Description
AMA	Application-specific Management Agent
APM	Automatic Path Migration
Atomics	Atomic Operations
BL	Block List PBL
BMM	Base Memory Management Extensions
BQM	Base Queue Management Extensions
DM	Device Manager
DMA	Device Management Agent
DRN	Directed Route Notices
LIF	Local Invalidate Fencing
MPath	Multipath requests

Table 379 Volume 1 Compliance Qualifiers (Continued)

Qualifier	Description
Notice	Standard Format & Queue for Data About Events
OptPC	Optional Performance Counters
P_Key counters	Counters for P_Key Violations
P_Key SEPT	P_Key Switch External Port Trap
P_Key SRE	P_Key Enforcement by Switches or Routers
P_Key SRE_In	Inbound P_Key Enforcement by Switches or Routers
P_Key SRE_Out	Outbound P_Key Enforcement by Switches or Routers
P_Key traps	Trap Generation for P_Key Violations
RawD	Raw Datagram Service
RawDMcast	Raw Datagram Multicast
RC	Reliable Connection Service
RD	Reliable Datagram Service
RDMA	Remote Direct Memory Access
ReIn	Reinitialization
RMPP	Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol
SAOPT	Subnet Administration Bulk Update Facilities
SDP	Sockets Direct Protocol
SNMP	SNMP Tunneling Agent
SRQ	Shared Receive Queue
SysG	System GUID
Trap	Asynchronous Event Notification
UC	Unreliable Connection Service
UDMcast	Unreliable Datagram Multicast
VE	Any of the Verb Extensions
VLS	Port Supporting More than One Data VL
VMA	Vendor-specific Management Agent
XRC	eXtended Reliable Connected transport service
ZBVA	Zero Based VA

If an optional compliance statement does not contain a valid qualifier, refer to the text of the optional compliance statement to determine its applica-

bility. The text of a compliance statement always takes precedence over the compliance qualifier.

20.2.1.2 COMPLIANCE STATEMENTS WITH MULTIPLE QUALIFIERS

Some compliance statements contain combinations of Qualifiers, and apply only if the specified combination is true. For example, a compliance statement beginning with “RD and Atomics:” applies only if *both* RD and Atomics are supported. If a compliance statement begins with “RD or Atomics:”, the statement **shall** apply if *either* RD or Atomics is supported.

20.2.2 COMPLIANCE STATEMENT LISTS

Within each Compliance Category section is a list of the compliance statements that apply to that particular category. Here is a sample list entry:

- o9-16: RD: PSN Insertion for Reliable Svc Pkts. Page 231

20.2.2.1 HYPERTEXT LINKS

Online versions of this specification have hypertext links present before each of the lines in the Compliance Statement lists. These links are indicated by the “●” at the beginning of the line and will lead to the actual statement in the body of the specification that contains the details for each of the compliance entries.

Each Compliance Statement List entry also contains the page number for use with hard-copy versions of the specification.

20.2.2.2 COMPLIANCE STATEMENT LABELS

All formal compliance statements throughout the specification are labeled so they can be uniquely identified. Each label begins with either a “C” or an “o”, indicating whether the compliance statement applies in all cases with respect to its category or whether the compliance statement is qualified with respect to optional features. The “o” is uncapitalized to make it more easily distinguishable from the “C” in Compliance Statement Lists.

The next portion of the label is the number of the chapter in which the formal compliance statement appears. The final portion of the label is a compliance statement number, which starts with “1” in each chapter. “C” and “o” compliance statements are numbered independently.

20.2.2.3 COMPLIANCE STATEMENT TITLES

Each line within a Compliance Statement List contains a brief title for the respective compliance statement. Because of the limited space and lack of context, each title is only intended to convey the topic of the compliance statement, and not necessarily convey its actual requirements.

Compliance statements that apply only to optional functionality is indicated by the presence of one or more Qualifiers at the beginning of the

title, followed by a colon. For example, the above sample Compliance Statement Title contains the “RD” qualifier.

20.2.3 COMMON REQUIREMENTS

Some Compliance Categories share common requirements, such as those that apply to all ports. To avoid unnecessary duplication, certain common requirement sets have been collected and referenced by the appropriate Compliance Categories instead of replicating those lists of requirements under each separate Category.

20.3 HCA-CI COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of HCA-CI, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant HCA-CI **shall** meet all Section [Common Port Requirements on page 1284](#) and all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

Some compliance statements in the HCA-CI Category contain requirements that apply to both mandatory and optional features. For instance, some compliance statements mention both QPs and EE Contexts, though EE Contexts are relevant only if RD Service is supported. In such cases, the requirements on an optional feature apply only if the product claims to support the optional feature.

● C4-1:	EUI-64 Assignment	Page 159
● C4-2:	EUI-64 Assignment - At Least One per Port	Page 160
● C4-3:	GID Usage and Properties	Page 160
● C4-4:	Addressing Rules	Page 164
● C4-5:	LID (Local Identifier) Usage and Properties	Page 164
● o5-1:	RD: Reliable Datagram ETH Format.	Page 174
● o5-2:	RDMA: RDMA ETH Format	Page 175
● o5-3:	Atomics: Atomic Extended Transport Hdr Format	Page 176
● o5-3.a1:	Sender shall set XRCETH fields.	Page 176
● o5-4:	Atomics: Atomic ACK ETH Format	Page 177
● o5-5:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Rules	Page 179
● o5-6:	RawD: EtherType Usage in RWH	Page 179
● o5-7:	RawD: Raw Packet Length Rule	Page 180
● o5-8:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Format	Page 180
● C7-7:	Packet Discard Required if Link Checks Fail	Page 192
● C7-21:	VL15 Buffer(s) required For each Port	Page 202
● o7-5:	SL-to-VL Mapping Table Size	Page 206
● o7-17:	RawDMcast: Raw Multicast Operational Rules.	Page 240
● C7-66:	Link Layer DLID Check - Use Base LID Only	Page 242
● C8-1:	Rules for Including a GRH in Packets	Page 249
● o8-1:	Optional Use of GRH in Packets.	Page 250
● C9-2:	Transport - Opcode, Header, and Payload Table	Page 257
● C9-3:	Solicited Event Bit Invokes CQ Event Handler	Page 260
● C9-4:	Solicited Event Bit - Excluded from Hdr Validation	Page 260
● C9-5:	BTH TVer Field Value	Page 261
● C9-6:	BTH - Reserve 8 Field Value.	Page 261
● C9-7:	BTH - Reserve 7 Field Value.	Page 262
● o9-2:	RD: RDETH - Reserve Field Value	Page 262

● C9-8:	DETH - Reserve Field Value	Page 263	1
● C9-9:	RETH - DMA Length Field Value Limits	Page 264	2
● o9-3.a1:	XRC: Sender shall set XRCETH fields.	Page 267	3
● C9-10:	SEND Operation Size Limits	Page 268	4
● C9-11:	Segmentation and Reassembly of RC and UC.	Page 268	5
● o9-4:	RD: Segmentation and Reassembly	Page 269	6
● C9-12:	SEND Operation - UD Allows only Single Packets	Page 269	7
● C9-13:	Multi-Packet Messages - Do Not Interleave	Page 271	8
● C9-14:	SEND Request - Required IBA Headers.	Page 271	9
● C9-15:	SEND Response - Required IBA Headers	Page 271	10
● o9-5.2.1:	BMM: header validation order for remote invalidate.	Page 273	11
● o9-5.2.2:	BMM: R_Key validation for Remote Invalidate	Page 274	12
● C9-15.a1:	RD: Resync data payload length shall be zero.	Page 275	13
● C9-16:	RDMA WRITE - DMA Length Limits	Page 275	14
● C9-17:	RDMA WRITE Segmenting/Reassembly	Page 276	15
● C9-18:	Multi-packet RDMA WRITE Rule	Page 278	16
● C9-19:	RDMA WRITE Request - Req'd Headers	Page 278	17
● C9-20:	RDMA WRITE Resp. - Req'd Headers	Page 279	18
● C9-21:	RDMA READ Response Segments/Reassembly	Page 279	19
● C9-22:	RDMA READ DMA Length Limits	Page 279	20
● C9-23:	RDMA READ Request - Req'd Headers	Page 282	21
● C9-24:	RDMA READ Response - Req'd Headers	Page 282	22
● o9-15:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op Request - Req'd Headers.	Page 285	23
● o9-16:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op Response - Req'd Headers	Page 285	24
● o9-17:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op - QP Atomicity Rule	Page 286	25
● o9-18:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op - Enhanced Atomicity Rule.	Page 286	26
● C9-25:	Transmission of Requests - Ordering Rule	Page 291	27
● C9-26:	Transmission of Message - Data Payload Order	Page 291	28
● C9-27:	Acknowledge Packets - Strong Ordering	Page 291	29
● o9-19:	RD: Acknowledge Packets - Strong Ordering	Page 291	30
● C9-28:	Responder - Order of Request Execution	Page 291	31
● C9-29:	Receipt of Requests - Order of Completion	Page 292	32
● C9-30:	Requester - Order of WQE Completion	Page 292	33
● C9-31:	Requester - WQE Fence Attribute Behavior	Page 292	34
● C9-32:	WQE Order of Completion vs. Execution	Page 292	35
● o9-20:	RDMA: Responder RDMA WRITE Buffer Rule.	Page 292	36
● o9-21:	RDMA: Responder RDMA READ Buffer Rule.	Page 292	37
● o9-21.a1:	SEND: Don't depend on responder buffer until complete	Page 292	38
● C9-33:	Receive Queue - Buffer Content Validity.	Page 292	39
● C9-34:	Transport Layer - Packet Header Validation	Page 293	40
● C9-35:	Transport Layer - IBA Packts - Header Validation.	Page 293	41
● C9-37:	BTH Validation - Dest QP and QP State	Page 295	42
● o9-22:	RD: BTH Validation - Dest QP and State vs. EEC	Page 295	43
● o9-23:	UDMcast: Well-known Destination QP Value	Page 295	44
● C9-38:	BTH Validation - Request Checked vs. QP.	Page 295	45
● C9-39:	BTH Validation - Silent Drop Rule	Page 296	46
● C9-40:	Obsolete	Page 296	47
● o9-23.2.1:	RD: BTH Validation - Behavior	Page 296	48
● C9-41:	Transport Layer - BTH P_Key - QP0 Rule	Page 297	49
● C9-42:	Transport Layer - BTH P_Key - QP1 Rule	Page 297	50
● C9-43:	Transport Layer - Required P_Key Validation.	Page 297	51
● o9-24:	RD: Transport Layer - Required P_Key Validation	Page 297	52
● C9-43.1.1:	GRH - Validate the presence of the GRH for UD services	Page 298	53
● C9-43.1.2:	Validate the presence of the GRH	Page 298	54
● C9-44:	GRH - NxtHdr Field - Validation	Page 298	55
● C9-45:	GRH - IPVers Field - Validation	Page 298	56
● C9-46:	GRH - Dest QP UD, SGID/DGID non-Validation.	Page 298	57
● C9-47:	obsolete.	Page 299	58
● C9-47.1.1:	GRH - SGID/DGID Field - Validation.	Page 299	59
● o9-24.a1:	XRC: XRCETH shall be validated.	Page 300	60
● C9-47.2.1:	Silently drop RD packets if CA does not support RD	Page 300	61

● o9-25:	RD: RDETH - EE Context Field Value - Validation	Page 300	1
● o9-26:	RD: RDETH - EE Context - Validation Behavior	Page 301	2
● C9-48:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - Ignored for QP0	Page 301	3
● C9-49:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - QP1Rule	Page 301	4
● C9-50:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - Validation.	Page 301	5
● C9-51:	Transport Layer - ACK depends on Valid Keys.	Page 302	6
● C9-52:	Transport - LRH - SLID/DLID Field Validation.	Page 302	7
● C9-53:	Transport - LRH - DLID Field Validation	Page 302	8
● C9-54:	Transport - LRH - SLID Field Validation	Page 302	9
● C9-55:	Transport - LRH Validation - Permissive LID Rule	Page 302	10
● C9-56:	Transport Layer - SLID Invalid if Multicast	Page 303	11
● C9-57:	Transport Layer - LID Validation - UC/RC Serv.	Page 303	12
● o9-28:	RD: Transport Layer - LID Validation.	Page 303	13
● C9-58:	Packet Validation - IBA Unreliable Multicast	Page 303	14
● C9-59:	Packet Validation - IBA Unreliable Multicast - QP	Page 303	15
● C9-60:	Requesters - WQE Completion Responsibility	Page 305	16
● C9-61:	Send Queue PSNs - Allowed Outstanding Qty	Page 308	17
● C9-62:	PSN Insertion for Reliable Service Packets	Page 309	18
● o9-29:	RD: PSN Insertion for Reliable Svc Pkts.	Page 310	19
● C9-63:	Responder - Behavior - RC Service	Page 312	20
● o9-30:	RD: Responder - Behavior - RD Service.	Page 312	21
● C9-64:	BTH - PSN Field Value for RC Service	Page 313	22
● o9-31:	RD: BTH - PSN Field Value for RD Service	Page 313	23
● C9-65:	BTH - Initial PSN for RC Service	Page 313	24
● o9-32:	RD: BTH - Initial PSN for RD Service	Page 313	25
● C9-66:	Requester - PSN Value - RC Service	Page 314	26
● o9-33:	RD: Requester - PSN Value - RD Service.	Page 314	27
● o9-34:	RD: Validation of EEC RDD Against Send Queue	Page 315	28
● o9-35:	RD: EEC vs QP - RDD Mismatch Behavior	Page 315	29
● o9-35.a1:	RD: Generating PSNs for Resync requests	Page 315	30
● o9-35.a2:	RD: Source and destination QPns in a Resync request	Page 316	31
● C9-67:	Requester - BTH OpCode Field Value Rules	Page 317	32
● C9-68:	Requester - BTH OpCode Field Value Table.	Page 317	33
● C9-69:	Requester - Packet PayLen - First/Middle	Page 317	34
● C9-70:	Requester - Packet PayLen - Only	Page 317	35
● C9-71:	Requester - Packet PayLen - Last	Page 317	36
● C9-72:	Requester - RETH DMALen Field - Limits	Page 317	37
● C9-73:	HCA Responder - Validation of Inbound RC Requests.	Page 318	38
● o9-37:	RD: Responder - Validation of Inbound RD Req.	Page 318	39
● o9-38:	RD: EEC vs Receive Queue - RDD Check.	Page 318	40
● o9-38.a1:	RD: Validating an inbound RD request	Page 321	41
● o9-38.a2:	RD: responder actions for Resync request - behavior	Page 321	42
● C9-74:	Responder - Validation of Inbound RC Req. PSN.	Page 322	43
● o9-39:	RD: Responder - Valid. of Inbound RD Req. PSN	Page 322	44
● C9-75:	Responder - ePSN Calculation Rule.	Page 322	45
● o9-40:	RD: Responder - ePSN Calculation Rule	Page 322	46
● C9-76:	Responder - ePSN Update - Rec. Queue State	Page 323	47
● o9-42:	RD: Responder - ePSN Update - Rec. Queue	Page 323	48
● C9-77:	Responder - New Request - RC Exec/Response	Page 323	49
● o9-43:	RD: Responder - New Req. - Exec/Response	Page 323	50
● C9-78:	Responder - Valid Duplicate Req Behavior.	Page 324	51
● o9-44:	RD: Responder - Valid Duplicate Req Behavior	Page 324	52
● C9-79:	Resp. - Inbound PSN Outside of Valid Region	Page 325	53
● o9-45:	RD: Resp. - Inbound PSN Outside Valid Region.	Page 325	54
● C9-80:	Resp. - Behavior after NAK Sequence Error.	Page 325	55
● o9-46:	RD: Resp. - Behavior after NAK Sequence Error	Page 325	56
● C9-81:	Responder - Validation of OpCode Seq.	Page 326	57
● o9-48:	RD: Responder - Validation of OpCode Seq.	Page 327	58
● o9-49:	RD: Responder - New Request Rule	Page 327	59
● C9-82:	Responder - BTH OpCode Field - Validation	Page 327	60
● C9-83:	Resp. - Request of Unsupported Fcn - Behavior	Page 327	61
● o9-50:	RD: Resp. - Request of Unsupported Fcn	Page 327	62

● C9-84:	Resp. - Reserved OpCode Error - Behavior	Page 327	1
● o9-51:	XRC: Resp. - Reserved OpCode Error - Behavior	Page 328	2
● C9-85:	Resp. - Incorrect Pad Count Error - Behavior	Page 328	2
● o9-52:	RD: Resp. - Incorrect Pad Count Error - Behavior	Page 328	3
● C9-86:	Resp. - Insufficient Res. Error - Behavior	Page 328	3
● o9-53:	RD: Resp. - Insufficient Res. Error - Behavior.	Page 328	4
● C9-87:	Resp. - NAK Response - Completion Rule	Page 328	4
● o9-54:	RD: Resp. - NAK Response - Completion Rule	Page 329	5
● C9-88:	Resp - R_Key Unchecked - Zero-len. RDMA	Page 329	6
● o9-55:	RD: Resp - R_Key Unchecked - Zero-len. RDMA.	Page 329	7
● C9-89:	R_Key Violation Behavior	Page 329	7
● C9-90:	R_Key Violation Behavior - Completion Rule	Page 329	8
● C9-91:	LRH - PktLen Validation - WQE buffer	Page 330	9
● C9-92:	LRH PktLen Validation - OpCode Check v. MTU	Page 330	9
● C9-93:	LRH PktLen Validation - Invalid Request Resp.	Page 330	10
● C9-94:	DMA Length Field Validation - Behavior	Page 330	10
● C9-95:	PSN Field Value - SEND/RDMA WRITE Resp.	Page 331	11
● C9-96:	PSN Field Value - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 332	12
● o9-58:	Atomics: PSN Field Value - ATOMIC Op Resp.	Page 332	13
● C9-97:	AETH MSN Field Value - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	13
● C9-98:	AETH Header - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	14
● C9-99:	BTH OpCode Field Value - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	14
● C9-100:	RDMA READ Response - Error Behavior	Page 334	15
● C9-101:	Request Processing - Order after RDMA READ	Page 335	16
● C9-102:	Response is Required.	Page 336	17
● C9-103:	Update of ePSN - Error Behavior	Page 336	17
● C9-104:	Response to ATOMIC or RDMA READ Request.	Page 337	18
● C9-105:	Duplicate SEND or RDMA WRITE Behavior.	Page 338	19
● C9-106:	Duplicate SEND/RDMA WRITE - Error Behavior	Page 339	19
● C9-107:	Recreate READ Response Data.	Page 340	20
● C9-108:	Recreate READ Request Resp. - Error Behavior	Page 340	21
● C9-109:	Recreate READ Request Resp. - Errors - Abort	Page 340	21
● C9-110:	Recreate READ Response Req. - Order	Page 341	22
● o9-66:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Op Req. Behavior	Page 342	23
● o9-67:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Op Req. Error.	Page 343	23
● o9-68:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Req. - Local Error.	Page 343	24
● C9-111:	NAK PSN Field Value - Except for RDMA READ	Page 343	25
● C9-112:	NAK PSN Field Value - RDMA READ	Page 343	25
● C9-113:	RNR NAK - PSN Field Value.	Page 343	26
● C9-113.a1:	NAK packets must have an acknowledge opcode.	Page 343	27
● C9-114:	Wait for first valid ePSN after Sequence Error	Page 343	27
● C9-115:	Response to Duplicate Requests - except NAK	Page 344	28
● C9-116:	BTH AckReq Field - Behavior	Page 344	28
● C9-117:	PSN Field Value - RDMA READ Response	Page 346	29
● C9-118:	AETH requirement	Page 346	30
● C9-119:	AETH Syndrome - Defined Values	Page 348	31
● o9-71:	RD: AETH Syndrome - Defined Values.	Page 348	31
● C9-119.a1:	msb of the AETH Syndrome field shall be set to zero .	Page 348	32
● o9-72:	RD: AETH Syndrome credit count field for RD	Page 348	33
● C9-120:	Request - Malformed ACK Message Rule	Page 349	33
● C9-121:	Responder - PSN Field Value - Sequence Error.	Page 350	34
● C9-122:	NAK Sequence Error - Subsequent Behavior.	Page 350	35
● C9-123:	PSN Field Value - Duplicate Request - Behavior	Page 350	35
● C9-124:	BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Access Error.	Page 350	36
● o9-73:	Atomics: BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Access.	Page 351	37
● C9-125:	BTH Field Value - NAK Invalid Request	Page 351	37
● C9-126:	BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Operational Err.	Page 351	38
● o9-74:	RD: EEC Field Value - P_Key mismatch.	Page 352	39
● C9-127:	Dest QP Field Value - NAK Invalid RD Request	Page 352	39
● C9-128:	Requester - PSN Uniqueness - RNR NAK	Page 353	40
● C9-129:	AETH Field Value - RNR NAK Timer - RC	Page 353	41
● o9-76:	RD: AETH Field Value - RNR NAK Timer	Page 353	42

● C9-130:	Requester/Responder - RNR NAK behavior	Page 353	1
● o9-76.a1:	RD: Requester/Responder - RNR NAK Behavior	Page 353	2
● C9-131:	Obsolete	Page 353	3
● C9-132:	RNR NAK Retry - Counting and Behavior	Page 354	4
● o9-77:	RD: RNR NAK Retry - Counting and Behavior	Page 354	5
● C9-133:	Packet Header Validation - Transport	Page 355	6
● C9-134:	ACK PSN Field Value - Order Detection	Page 355	7
● o9-78:	RD: ACK PSN Field Value - Order Detection	Page 356	8
● C9-135:	ACK Syndrome Field Value - Error Behavior	Page 356	9
● o9-79:	RD: ACK Syndrome Field Value - Error Behavior	Page 356	10
● o9-79.a1:	RD: validating the destination QP for response packets	Page 356	11
● C9-135.a1:	obsolete	Page 356	12
● C9-136:	Ghost ACKs - Req'd Behavior	Page 358	13
● o9-80:	RD: Ghost ACKs - Req'd Behavior	Page 358	14
● C9-137:	Repeated NAK Seq. Errors - Behavior	Page 360	15
● o9-80.a1:	RD: Repeated NAK-Seq. Errors - Behavior	Page 360	16
● o9-82:	APM: Path Migration on repeated NAK-Sequence errors	Page 360	17
● C9-138:	Requester - Duplicate ACK Behavior	Page 362	18
● o9-83:	RD: Requester - Duplicate ACK Behavior	Page 362	19
● C9-139:	ACK/NAK Timer - Outstanding SEND Req.	Page 363	20
● o9-85:	RD: ACK/NAK Timer - Outstanding SEND Req.	Page 363	21
● C9-140:	Timeout Interval - Local ACK Timeout Basis	Page 364	22
● C9-141:	QP Timeouts for Reliable Connection Service	Page 364	23
● C9-141:	Timeout Rule - Based on Timeout Interval	Page 364	24
● C9-142:	Retry Counter - Outstanding Request Timeout	Page 364	25
● C9-143:	Retry Counter - Decrement to Zero - Behavior	Page 364	26
● o9-86:	APM: Retry Counter - Decr. to Zero - Behavior	Page 365	27
● o9-88:	RD: Timeout Rules for Outstanding Requests	Page 365	28
● C9-144:	End-to-End Flow Control Credit - Dupl. ACKs	Page 365	29
● C9-145:	Duplicate ACKs - Behavior	Page 365	30
● C9-146:	Reliable Connection and Reliable Service	Page 366	31
● C9-147:	AETH MSN Field Value - RC Service	Page 367	32
● C9-148:	Responder - MSN Calculation	Page 368	33
● C9-149:	AETH MSN Field Value	Page 370	34
● C9-150:	Obsolete	Page 372	35
● C9-150.2.1:	Receive Queue - End-to-End Flow Control Credit	Page 372	36
● C9-151:	End-to-End Flow Control - Send Queue Behavior	Page 372	37
● C9-152:	AETH - MSN Field Value - Unsolicited ACK	Page 373	38
● C9-153:	End-to-End Flow Control Rules	Page 373	39
● o9-95.2.2:	SRQ: AETH credit field value	Page 373	40
● C9-155:	End-to-End Credit - Usage	Page 373	41
● C9-156:	End-to-End Flow Control - Lack of Initial Credit	Page 374	42
● C9-157:	Obsolete	Page 377	43
● C9-157.2.1:	End-to-End Flow Control Credit - Calc/Update	Page 377	44
● C9-158:	Obsolete	Page 377	45
● C9-158.2.1:	End-to-End Flow Control Credit - AETH Encoding	Page 377	46
● C9-159:	Requester - Send Queue Behavior - Credit Limit	Page 378	47
● C9-160:	Requester Behavior - Transaction Ordering Rules	Page 378	48
● C9-161:	End-to-End Flow Control - Encoded Count	Page 379	49
● C9-162:	Requester Behavior - Send Queue - WQE Limit	Page 381	50
● C9-163:	SEND Request - Limited WQE Case - 1 Pkt	Page 381	51
● o9-99:	RDMA WRITE - Request Xmt - AckReq bit	Page 382	52
● C9-164:	Requester - Ability to Receive Unsolicited ACK	Page 382	53
● o9-100:	RD: QP Availability, Capabilities	Page 384	54
● o9-101:	RD: EEC Support and Capabilities	Page 384	55
● o9-102:	RD: RD Message Completion - Single Msg EEC	Page 384	56
● o9-103:	RD: RD Message Completion - Single Msg QP	Page 384	57
● o9-104:	RD: OpCode, ETH, Transport Validation, etc.	Page 384	58
● o9-105:	RD: Error Detection and Handling	Page 385	59
● o9-106:	RD: Communication Management Support	Page 385	60
● o9-107:	RD: EE Context - Ability to Avoid Shutdown	Page 385	61
● o9-108:	RD: SEND/READ/WRITE Support	Page 385	62

● o9-109:	RD: EEC Management Support	Page 385	1
● o9-110:	RD: RDD Domain Support	Page 385	2
● o9-111:	RD: NAK-RNR Behavior for Over-run Condition	Page 391	3
● o9-112:	RD: Out of Order Receive Queue Completion	Page 391	4
● o9-113:	RD: Send Queue - WQE Completion Order	Page 391	5
● o9-114:	RD: Upper Layers - Tolerate of Out of Order Pkts.	Page 392	6
● o9-114.a1:	RD: Use of Resync for QP errors	Page 397	7
● o9-114.a2:	RD: Resync Requester response requirements	Page 397	8
● o9-114.a3:	RD: AETH MSN Field Value	Page 397	9
● o9-114.a4:	RD: Responder - MSN Calculation.	Page 397	10
● o9-114.a5:	XRC: All packets of XRCETH message have same XRCETH. Page 401		11
● o9-114.a6:	XRC: XRC matching between packets and TGT QP	Page 402	12
● o9-114.a7:	XRC: PD from XRCSRQ used not PD of the XRC TGT QP. Page 402		13
● o9-114.a8:	XRC: Receive WQE fetched from RQ of XRCSRQ.	Page 402	14
● o9-114.a9:	XRC: CQ from XRCSRQ identified by XRC packet used	Page 402	15
● o9-114.a10:	XRC: E2E credits in XRC ACK packets set to invalid.	Page 402	16
● C9-165:	Transport - Packet Header Validation	Page 403	17
● C9-166:	UC Service - PSN Examination.	Page 403	18
● C9-167:	UC Service - OpCode Examination.	Page 403	19
● C9-168:	BTH OpCode Validation - Support for Request.	Page 403	20
● C9-169:	Inbound Request - Resources to Receive	Page 403	21
● C9-170:	RETH R_Key Validation - Behavior.	Page 404	22
● C9-171:	Inbound Request Packet - Validation - UC & UD	Page 404	23
● C9-172:	BTH PSN Field Value - Current PSN	Page 406	24
● C9-173:	BTH PSN Field Value - First Request Packet	Page 406	25
● C9-174:	PSN Update/Modify - Transport Control	Page 407	26
● C9-175:	BTH PSN Field Value - Calculation.	Page 407	27
● C9-176:	Packet OpCode - First/Middle/Last/Only - UC	Page 408	28
● C9-177:	Packet Payload Len - First or Middle OpCode, UC.	Page 408	29
● C9-178:	Packet Payload Length - Only OpCode - UC	Page 408	30
● C9-179:	Packet Payload Length - Last OpCode - UC	Page 408	31
● C9-180:	Message Completion Rule - SEND/WRITE	Page 409	32
● C9-181:	Expected PSN Value - UC.	Page 409	33
● C9-182:	Expected PSN Update/Modify.	Page 410	34
● C9-183:	Inbound Request Packet - Ordering - Detection	Page 410	35
● C9-184:	Inbound Request Packet - New ePSN	Page 410	36
● C9-185:	BTH PSN Inbound Pkt - Compare to ePSN - UC	Page 411	37
● o9-131:	Notification to Client, One or More Lost Messages.	Page 411	38
● C9-186:	Message Drop/Restart Rule	Page 411	39
● C9-187:	Inbound Request - OpCode Check - UC	Page 411	40
● C9-188:	Invalid OpCode Behavior - UC	Page 412	41
● C9-189:	Invalid OpCode Behavior - New Message - UC	Page 413	42
● C9-190:	Unreliable Connection - Valid Function Check	Page 413	43
● C9-191:	Invalid UC Request - Behavior	Page 413	44
● C9-192:	RETH R_Key Check - non-zero DMA Length	Page 413	45
● C9-192.2.1:	RETH R_Key Check - non-zero DMA Length	Page 414	46
● C9-193:	RETH R_Key Field Value - zero-length WRITEx	Page 414	47
● C9-194:	LRH PktLen Check - Sufficient Receive Buffer	Page 414	48
● C9-195:	LRH PayLen Check - BTH OpCode First/Middle	Page 415	49
● C9-196:	LRH PayLen Check - BTH OpCode Only	Page 415	50
● C9-197:	LRH PayLen Check - BTH OpCode Only	Page 415	51
● C9-198:	obsolete.	Page 415	52
● C9-199:	Pad Count Check - BTH OpCode First/Middle	Page 415	53
● C9-200:	Message Size Limit - Unreliable Datagram.	Page 417	54
● C9-201:	Basic Services - Unreliable Datagram Reqmts.	Page 417	55
● C9-202:	Unreliable Datagram Error Handling.	Page 417	56
● C9-203:	PSN Generation and Message Completion - UD	Page 417	57
● C9-204:	PSN Calculation - Unreliable Datagram	Page 419	58
● o9-144:	Responder - PSN Treatment - UD	Page 419	59
● C9-205:	Responder Length Validation - UD	Page 419	60

● C9-206:	BTH OpCode Field Value - Validation - UD	Page 420	1
● C9-207:	Inbound SEND Request - Queue Entry - UD	Page 420	2
● C9-208:	Packet Headers - Raw vs. IPv6 NxtHdr	Page 421	3
● o9-145:	RawD: Packet Payload and LRH PktLend Pad	Page 421	4
● o9-146:	RawD: Association of QPs with a Raw Service	Page 421	5
● o9-147:	RawD: QPs Supporting Raw Service	Page 422	6
● o9-148:	RawD: Maximum Raw Datagram Pkt Payload	Page 422	7
● C9-209:	Requester - Locally Det. Xmt Error - RC/UC/UD	Page 424	8
● o9-150:	RD: Requester, Transmit - Locally Detected Error	Page 425	9
● C9-210:	Requester - Excessive Retry Detection - RC	Page 425	10
● o9-151:	RD: Requester - Excessive Retry Detection	Page 425	11
● o9-152:	APM: Migration Attempt Allowed following Errors	Page 426	12
● C9-211:	Requester - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 426	13
● C9-211.1.1:	Requester - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 427	14
● C9-212:	Requester - Class A Error Behavior - RC	Page 431	15
● o9-153:	RD: Requester - Class A Error Behavior	Page 431	16
● C9-213:	Requester - Class A Errors - Client Rule - RC	Page 431	17
● o9-154:	RD: Requester - Class A Errors - Client Rule	Page 431	18
● C9-214:	Requester - Class B Error - Behavior	Page 432	19
● o9-154.a1:	RD: Response to a Requestor Class B Error	Page 432	20
● C9-215:	Requester - Class B Error - Discard ACKs	Page 432	21
● C9-216:	Requester - Class C Error Behavior	Page 433	22
● o9-155:	RD: Requester - Class C Error Behavior	Page 433	23
● o9-156:	RD: Requester - Class D Error - Behavior	Page 433	24
● C9-217:	Requester - Class E Error - Behavior - RC	Page 434	25
● o9-157:	RD: Requester - Class E Error - Behavior	Page 435	26
● C9-218:	Requester - Class F Error - Behavior	Page 435	27
● C9-219:	Obsolete	Page 435	28
● C9-219.1.1:	Responder - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 436	29
● C9-220:	Responder - Class A Error - Behavior	Page 440	30
● o9-157.2.1:	SRQ: Responder Class A fault behavior	Page 440	31
● o9-157.2.2:	SRQ: responder Class A fault behavior	Page 441	32
● o9-157.2.3:	SRQ: Responder Class A fault behavior	Page 441	33
● C9-221:	Responder - Class B Error - Behavior - RC	Page 441	34
● o9-158:	RD: Responder - Class B Error - Behavior	Page 441	35
● C9-222:	Obsolete	Page 442	36
● C9-222.1.1:	Responder - Class C Error - Behavior	Page 442	37
● C9-223:	Obsolete	Page 443	38
● C9-223.1.1:	Responder - Class D Error - Behavior	Page 443	39
● C9-224:	Responder - Class D1 Error - Behavior	Page 443	40
● o9-161:	RD: Responder - Class E Error - Behavior	Page 444	41
● o9-161.2.1:	SRQ: Responder Class E error behavior for SRQs	Page 444	42
● o9-161.2.2:	SRQ: Responder Class E error behavior for SRQs	Page 445	43
● o9-162:	Obsolete	Page 445	44
● o9-162.1.1:	RD: Responder - Class F Error - Behavior	Page 445	45
● C9-225:	Responder - Class G Error - Behavior	Page 446	46
● o9-162.2.1:	BMM: R_Key violations on a SEND with Invalidate	Page 447	47
● o9-163:	Static Rate Control - Required Support Criterion	Page 457	48
● o9-164:	Static Rate Control - Programmed Injection Rate	Page 457	49
● C10-1:	GID Table reqs for HCA Source Ports	Page 462	50
● C10-2:	Requirements for first entry in GID table	Page 462	51
● C10-3:	Address Vectors and Source Port LID Path Bits	Page 462	52
● C10-4:	Destination addresses for RC & UC QPs	Page 463	53
● o10-1:	RD: destination address reqs wrt EECs	Page 463	54
● o10-2:	RawD: destination address reqs wrt WRs	Page 463	55
● o10-2.1.1:	AH port number checking reqs	Page 463	56
● C10-5:	Destination addrs, Addr_Handles for UD QPs	Page 463	57
● C10-6:	Sending messages that target sending HCA port	Page 464	58
● o10-6.2-1.1:	Loopback Indicator Support	Page 465	59
● o10-6.2-1.2:	Loopback Indicator - Looping Back Packets	Page 465	60
● C10-7:	QP & PD associations	Page 466	61
● o10-2.2.1:	SRQ: SRQ & PD Association	Page 466	62

● C10-8:	Region/Window/Addr_Handle & PD associations	Page 466	1
● C10-9.2.1:	PD check between QP & Region/Window	Page 466	2
● o10-2.2.2:	SRQ: PD check between SRQ & Region/Window	Page 466	3
● C10-10:	PD check between UD QP & Addr_Handle	Page 466	4
● C10-11.2.1:	PD deallocation while PD still associated	Page 467	5
● C10-11.2.2:	SRQ: PD deallocation while PD still associated	Page 467	6
● o10-2.2.3:	CI: Destroy while UD QP is attached to Multicast group	Page 469	7
● o10-2.2.4:	BMM: Destroy QP fails if Type 2A MW still bound	Page 469	8
● o10-2.2.5:	BMM: Destroy QP allowed if Type 2B MW still bound	Page 469	9
● C10-12:	Processing below verbs disturbing WQEs/CQEs	Page 470	10
● C10-13:	Access to SMI/GSI by privileged Consumers	Page 470	11
● C10-14:	Q_Key checking on UD QPs	Page 470	12
● o10-3:	RD: Q_Key checking & NAK reqs	Page 470	13
● C10-15:	Q_Key selection on UD/RD outbound packets	Page 471	14
● C10-16:	CQ basic requirements	Page 471	15
● C10-17:	CQ behavior on overflow	Page 471	16
● C10-18:	Destroying a CQ while CQ still associated	Page 472	17
● o10-4:	RD: EEC basic requirements	Page 472	18
● o10-5:	RD: multiple EECs between HCA port pairs	Page 472	19
● o10-6:	RD: RD QP and RDD associations	Page 474	20
● o10-7:	RD: EEC and RDD associations	Page 474	21
● o10-8:	RD: RDD check between RD QPs & EECs	Page 474	22
● o10-9:	RD: minimum number of RDDs	Page 474	23
● o10-10:	RD: deallocating RDD while RDD still associated	Page 475	24
● o10-10.2.1:	SRQ: Modifying max number of SRQ WRs	Page 477	25
● o10-10.2.2:	SRQ: SRQ Resize Immediate Error Exceptions	Page 477	26
● o10-10.2.3:	SRQ: Destroy fails if QPs still associated	Page 477	27
● o10-10.2.4:	SRQ: Destroy allowed if WRs still outstanding	Page 478	28
● o10-10.2.5:	SRQ: Destroy frees SRQ resources	Page 478	29
● o10-10.2.6:	BMM: Reset transition fails if Type 2A MWs still bound	Page 485	30
● o10-10.2.7:	BMM: Reset transition when Type 2B MWs still bound	Page 485	31
● C10-19:	Req'd States & Transitions for QPs	Page 485	32
● o10-11:	RD: Req'd States & Transitions for EECs	Page 485	33
● C10-20:	Initial State for newly created QP/EE	Page 486	34
● C10-21:	Default attributes for QP/EE and when to set	Page 486	35
● o10-12:	RD: SQ WRs referencing EEC in Reset State	Page 486	36
● o10-13:	RD: incoming msgs targeting EEC in Reset State	Page 486	37
● C10-22:	WR submitted to QP in Reset State	Page 486	38
● C10-23:	Incoming messages targeting QP in Reset State	Page 486	39
● o10-14:	RD: incoming msgs targeting EEC in Init State	Page 487	40
● o10-15:	RD: SQ WRs referencing EEC in Init State	Page 487	41
● C10-24:	RQ WRs submitted to QP in Init State	Page 487	42
● C10-25:	SQ WRs submitted to QP in Init State	Page 487	43
● C10-26:	Incoming msgs targeting QP in Init State	Page 487	44
● C10-27:	RQ WRs posted to QP in RTR State	Page 487	45
● C10-28:	Incoming msgs targeting QP in RTR State	Page 488	46
● o10-16:	RD: incoming msgs targeting EEC in RTR State	Page 488	47
● o10-17:	RD: SQ WRs referencing EEC in RTR State	Page 488	48
● C10-29:	SQ WR posted to QP in RTR State	Page 488	49
● C10-30:	WRs posted to QP in RTS State	Page 489	50
● C10-31:	WRs processed by QP in RTS State	Page 489	51
● C10-32:	Incoming msgs targeting QP in RTS State	Page 489	52
● o10-18:	RD: incoming/outgoing msgs w/ EEC in RTS	Page 489	53
● C10-33:	WR posting to QP in SQD State	Page 489	54
● C10-34:	Incoming msgs targeting QP in SQD State	Page 489	55
● o10-19:	RD: incoming msgs targeting EEC in SQD State	Page 489	56
● C10-35:	Reqs for QP/EE transitioning to SQD State	Page 489	57
● C10-36:	AAEvent generation after transition to SQD State	Page 489	58
● o10-19.a1:	RC: Physical Port Change Support	Page 490	59
● o10-19.a2:	RD: Physical Port Change Support	Page 490	60
● o10-20:	RD: SQ WRs referencing EEC in SQD State	Page 490	61
● C10-37:	SQ WRs posted to QP in SQD State	Page 490	62

● C10-39: WC for SQ WR that caused transition to SQE _r	Page 491	1
● C10-40: SQ WRs subsequent to one causing SQE _r	Page 492	2
● C10-41: WC for WR that caused transition to Error State	Page 492	3
● o10-21: RD: SQ WR referencing EEC in Error State	Page 493	4
● o10-22: APM: req'd path migration States & Transitions	Page 494	5
● o10-23: APM and RD: req'd path mig States & Transitions	Page 494	6
● o10-24: APM: reqs for Migrated to Rarm transition	Page 494	7
● o10-25: APM: reqs for Armed to Migrated transition	Page 494	8
● o10-26: APM: initial path migration State	Page 495	9
● o10-27: APM: behavior for Armed to Migrated transition	Page 496	10
● o10-28: APM: handling valid incoming migration requests	Page 496	11
● o10-29: APM: handling invalid incoming mig requests.	Page 496	12
● o10-31: APM: reqs for transition from Migrated to Rarm	Page 497	13
● o10-32: APM: req'd behavior following transition to Rarm	Page 497	14
● o10-33: UDMcast: minimum number of mcast groups	Page 498	15
● o10-34: UDMcast: reqs for QP to receive mcast msgs	Page 498	16
● o10-35: UDMcast: reqs if incoming Dest QPN not valid.	Page 500	17
● C10-43: Preparing/specifying mcast group dest address	Page 500	18
● o10-36: UDMcast: reqs for UD Multicast loopback	Page 500	19
● C10-44.2.1: Accesses to unregistered memory locations.	Page 501	20
● o10-36.2.1: BMM: Memory Management Operation Errors	Page 501	21
● C10-45: Registrations succeed or fail in atomic fashion	Page 502	22
● C10-45.2.1: Virtual Addresses allowed on MR and MW	Page 503	23
● o10-36.2.2: ZBVA: Allowed use of Zero Based VA	Page 503	24
● o10-36.2.3: BMM: Non-Shared MR usage	Page 506	25
● o10-36.2.4: BMM: Shared MR usage	Page 506	26
● o10-36.2.5: BMM: Shared MR not allowed in Fast Register	Page 506	27
● C10-46: Req'd memory access rights	Page 506	28
● o10-37: Atomics: support for Remote Atomic access right	Page 506	29
● C10-47: Local Read memory access right is automatic	Page 506	30
● o10-37.2.1: BMM: L_Key format	Page 507	31
● o10-37.2.2: BMM: L_Key ownership semantics	Page 508	32
● o10-37.2.3: BMM: R_Key format	Page 509	33
● o10-37.2.4: BMM: R_Key creation semantics	Page 509	34
● o10-37.2.5: BMM: Fast Register error cases	Page 510	35
● o10-37.2.6: BMM: Fast Register ordering	Page 511	36
● C10-49: Registration of overlapping memory areas	Page 511	37
● o10-37.2.7: BMM: QP use of Reserved L_Key and Fast Register .	Page 513	38
● o10-37.2.8: BMM: Disallowed use of Reserved L_Key	Page 513	39
● C10-50: Registering arbitrarily aligned buffers	Page 514	40
● C10-51: Registering arbitrary length buffers	Page 514	41
● C10-52.2.1: Reqs for pinning Memory Region pages	Page 514	42
● C10-53.2.1: Physical buffer alignment & length reqs	Page 516	43
● o10-37.2.9: BL: Byte alignment and size of Blocks	Page 516	44
● o10-37.2.10: BMM: Return size of reserved PBL	Page 516	45
● o10-37.2.11: BMM: Reserved L_Key access semantic	Page 517	46
● C10-54.2.1: General reqs wrt local accesses to Regions	Page 517	47
● o10-37.2.12: SRQ: PD Semantics	Page 517	48
● C10-54.1.1: Zero-length Data Segments checks	Page 517	49
● C10-54.1.2: Zero-length message protection checks	Page 517	50
● C10-55: Local access rights checking against Region	Page 517	51
● C10-56: General reqs wrt remote accesses to Regions	Page 518	52
● C10-57: Remote access rights checking against Region	Page 518	53
● o10-37.2.13: BMM: Invalidation semantics	Page 519	54
● o10-37.2.14: BMM: Fail upon attempting access of MR in Inv state	Page 519	55
● o10-37.2.15: BMM: Shared MRs cannot be invalidated	Page 519	56
● o10-37.2.16: BMM: Shared MRs cannot be remotely invalidated .	Page 519	57
● o10-37.2.17: BMM: Invalidate fails if MWs still bound to MR	Page 519	58
● o10-37.2.18: BMM: Access to MR in invalidate state fails	Page 519	59
● o10-37.2.19: BMM: Local Invalidate Ordering	Page 520	60
● o10-37.2.20: LIF: Ordering rule for Fenced Local Invalidate	Page 520	61
● o10-37.2.21: BMM: Send with invalidate ordering	Page 520	62

● o10-37.2.22:BMM: Must support Relaxed Invalidation Ordering	Page 521	1
● o10-37.2.23:LIF: Local Invalidate Fence Ordering rules	Page 521	2
● o10-37.2.24:BMM: R_Key check fail on Send w/ Inv.	Page 521	3
● C10-58: Deregistration of overlapping Memory Regions	Page 521	4
● C10-59: Deregistration while access in progress	Page 521	5
● C10-60: Accesses after deregistration completes	Page 521	6
● C10-61: Granularity of remote access control to Windows	Page 524	7
● C10-62: Access rights checks for Bind Window	Page 524	8
● C10-66.2.1:Type-1 MW are mandatory	Page 527	9
● C10-66.2.2:Previous R_Key after a Bind Window completes	Page 527	10
● C10-66.2.3:Execution of SQ WRs subsequent to a Bind.	Page 528	11
● o10-37.2.25:BMM: Type 1 MW ordering rules.	Page 528	12
● C10-66.2.4:Zero-length Bind semantics	Page 529	13
● C10-66.2.5:Reqs for Windows bound to same Region	Page 529	14
● o10-37.2.27:BMM: Type 1 MW cannot be invalidated	Page 529	15
● o10-37.2.28:BMM: Must support Type 2 MW	Page 529	16
● o10-37.2.29:BMM: Type 2A MW semantics.	Page 529	17
● o10-37.2.30:BMM: Type 2B MW semantics	Page 530	18
● o10-37.2.31:BMM: HCA supports Type 2A or 2B, not both	Page 530	19
● o10-37.2.32:BMM: Type 2 MW R_Key format.	Page 530	20
● o10-37.2.33:BMM: R_Key value used on Post Send Bind MW	Page 531	21
● o10-37.2.34:BMM: Type 1 not allowed in Post Send.	Page 531	22
● o10-37.2.35:BMM: Type 2 not allowed in Bind Verb	Page 531	23
● o10-37.2.36:BMM: Type 2 MW ordering rules.	Page 531	24
● o10-37.2.37:BMM: Must support Relaxed Invalidation Ordering	Page 532	25
● o10-37.2.38:LIF: Local Invalidate Fence bit.	Page 532	26
● o10-37.2.39:BMM: R_Key check semantics	Page 532	27
● o10-37.2.40:BMM: zero length invalidate of Type 2 MW fail	Page 532	28
● o10-37.2.41:BMM: Reqs for Windows bound to same Region	Page 532	29
● C10-67: Window changes while access in progress.	Page 534	30
● C10-68: Previous binding after a Bind completes.	Page 534	31
● C10-69: Window deallocation while access in progress.	Page 534	32
● C10-70: Accesses after Window deallocation completes	Page 534	33
● C10-71: Reqs if CI allows orphaned Windows	Page 534	34
● C10-72: Bind-time PD check between QP & Window.	Page 535	35
● C10-73: Bind-time check that Region allows Binds	Page 535	36
● C10-74: Bind-time check of Region write permissions	Page 535	37
● C10-75: Bind-time check of Region addr bounds & PD	Page 535	38
● C10-76.2.1:PD check between QP & Region/Window	Page 535	39
● o10-37.2.42:BMM: PD check for Type 2A MW	Page 535	40
● o10-37.2.43:BMM: PD check for Type 2B MW	Page 535	41
● C10-77: Window access-time checks of bounds & rights	Page 535	42
● C10-79.2.1:Window access-time checks for each page	Page 536	43
● C10-79.2.2:Special access-time checks if orphaned Window	Page 536	44
● o10-37.2.44:BMM: R_Key checks for Type 2 MW	Page 536	45
● C10-80: Service Types supporting Send and Receive	Page 537	46
● C10-81: RQ WR consumption with incoming Send msg	Page 537	47
● C10-82: Service Types req'd to support SAR	Page 537	48
● o10-38: RD: SAR support.	Page 537	49
● o10-38.2.1:BMM: Send with Invalidate for RC QPs.	Page 537	50
● C10-83: RDMA Read support on RC	Page 538	51
● C10-84: RDMA Write support on RC and UC	Page 538	52
● o10-39: RD: RDMA Read & RDMA Write support	Page 538	53
● C10-85: RQ WR with incoming RDMA Read	Page 538	54
● C10-86: RQ WR with incoming RDMA Write	Page 538	55
● C10-87: RQ WR with incoming RDMA Write; more cases	Page 538	56
● C10-88: Target QP check with incoming RDMA	Page 538	57
● o10-39.1.1:XRC: CI RDMA rules for XRC	Page 538	58
● o10-40: Atomics: required Atomic operations	Page 539	59
● o10-41: Atomics: Endian byte ordering accommodation	Page 539	60
● o10-42: Atomics: Fetch&Add requirements	Page 539	61
● o10-43: Atomics: if remote addr not 64-bit aligned.	Page 539	62

● o10-44:	Atomics: support on RC	Page 539	1
● o10-45:	Atomics and RD: Atomic support on RD	Page 539	2
● o10-45.1.1:XRC:	Atomics and XRC: Atomic support on XRC.	Page 540	2
● o10-46:	Atomics: Service Types not supported	Page 540	3
● o10-47:	Atomics: op result returned in Data Segment	Page 540	3
● o10-48:	Atomics: atomicity of requests through same HCA.	Page 540	4
● o10-49:	Atomics: atomicity of requests across system	Page 541	4
● C10-89:	Service Types supporting Bind Memory Window	Page 541	5
● o10-50:	RD: Bind Memory Window support.	Page 541	6
● C10-90:	Signaled and unsignaled completion support	Page 542	7
● C10-91:	Reqs for generating CQE when a WR completes.	Page 542	7
● C10-92:	Conditions for not generating CQE for SQ WR.	Page 542	8
● C10-93:	If max msg payload size exceeded for RC or UC	Page 543	9
● C10-93.1.1:UD	msg exceeding MTU not emitted	Page 543	9
● o10-51:	RD: If max msg payload size exceeded for RD	Page 543	10
● C10-94:	Scatter list support for Receives & RDMA Reads	Page 543	10
● C10-95:	Gather list support for Sends & RDMA Writes.	Page 543	11
● C10-96:	Rules for SQ WR processing	Page 544	12
● C10-97.2.1:Rules	for RQ WR processing	Page 544	12
● o10-51.2.1:SRQ:	Rules for SRQ WR processing	Page 545	13
● o10-51.2.2:SRQ:	WRs posted to SRQ, not RQ	Page 545	14
● C10-98.2.1:WRs	to single queue initiated in order	Page 546	14
● C10-99.2.1:RQ	WR completion order rule	Page 547	15
● o10-52:	RD: SQ WRs complete in order	Page 547	16
● o10-53:	RD: rule for RQ WRs completing in order	Page 547	16
● o10-53.2.1:SRQ:	WQE consumption by incoming Sends	Page 547	17
● o10-53.2.2:SRQ:	SRQ Semantics	Page 548	18
● C10-100:	Fence Indicator effect on SQ WRs	Page 548	19
● o10-53.2.3:BMM:	Invalidate ordering.	Page 549	19
● o10-53.2.4:LIF:	Fence Indicator effect on Local Invalidate WR.	Page 549	20
● C10-101.2.1:Table	of ordering rules for WRs on same SQ	Page 550	21
● C10-102:	WQ WCs placed on associated CQ	Page 551	21
● C10-103:	Given WC not retrieved more than once.	Page 552	22
● C10-104:	WR with signaled completion generates WC	Page 552	23
● C10-105:	SQ WR completing in error generates WC	Page 552	23
● C10-106.2.1:RQ	WR completion generates WC	Page 552	24
● o10-53.2.5:SRQ:	SRQ WR completion generates WC	Page 552	25
● o10-53.2.6:SRQ:	SRQ WRs returned thru associated CQ	Page 552	25
● C10-107:	WR buffer access once associated WC retrieved.	Page 552	26
● o10-54:	RD: WR freed resource count returned with WC	Page 553	27
● C10-108:	Buffer access rule for Unsigned WRs.	Page 554	27
● C10-109.2.1:Single	CQ Event Handler per HCA	Page 554	28
● o10-54.2.1:BQM:	Multiple Event Handlers	Page 554	29
● C10-110.2.1:CQ	Event Handler replacement	Page 554	29
● o10-54.2.2:BQM:	replacement of a CQ Event Handler	Page 555	30
● C10-111:	Outstanding Completion Event notify requests	Page 555	31
● C10-112:	Rule for Completion Event generation	Page 555	31
● C10-113:	Rule for when not to generate Completion Event	Page 555	32
● C10-114:	Completion Event indicates responsible CQ.	Page 556	33
● C10-116:	Invalid P_Key definition & use in table entry.	Page 557	33
● C10-119:	Received packet discarded if P_Key mismatch	Page 557	34
● C10-120:	Each port contains P_Key table	Page 557	35
● C10-121:	P_Key Table size reqs.	Page 558	35
● C10-122:	Mechanisms to change P_Key Table contents	Page 558	36
● C10-123:	P_Key Table initialization wrt non-volatile storage	Page 558	36
● C10-124:	P_Key checking for incoming packets	Page 558	37
● C10-125:	P_Key and P_Key Table associations with QPs	Page 560	38
● C10-126:	P_Key for packets from a QP's SQ; exceptions	Page 560	39
● C10-127:	Incoming packet P_Key checking against QP.	Page 560	39
● o10-58:	RD: P_Key & P_Key Table association with EEC.	Page 560	40
● o10-59:	RD: P_Key attachment & checking wrt EEC.	Page 560	41
● C10-128:	Response to SMP requesting P_Key change.	Page 561	42

● C10-129:	Timing req for using updated P_Key Table values	Page 561	1
● C10-131:	No P_Key checking on packets sent to SMI	Page 562	2
● C10-132:	Special P_Key checking for packets sent to GSI	Page 562	2
● C10-133:	P_Key for packets sent from GSI	Page 562	3
● C10-135:	Immediate error return of control timing	Page 563	3
● C10-136:	WR with immediate error not posted to WQ	Page 563	4
● C10-137:	WC for WR completed in error	Page 563	4
● C10-138:	Async errors before/after event handler regist	Page 564	5
● C10-139:	Async error handler registration & replacement	Page 564	6
● C10-141:	RC immediate error effect on QP processing	Page 564	7
● C10-142:	RC SQ completion error effect on SQ & WR.	Page 564	7
● C10-143:	RC RQ completion error effect on QP & WRs.	Page 565	8
● C10-144:	RC AAError effect on QP & WRs	Page 565	9
● C10-145:	Tables - Compl error handling for RC SQs/RQs	Page 565	9
● o10-60:	RD: immediate error effect on QP/EE processing.	Page 566	10
● o10-61:	RD: SQ completion error effect on SQ & WR	Page 566	10
● o10-62:	RD: RQ compl error effect on curr/subseq WRs	Page 567	11
● o10-63:	RD: completion error effect on EEC State.	Page 567	12
● o10-65:	RD: AAError effect on QP and EEC	Page 567	12
● o10-66:	RD: Tables - compl error handling for RD SQ/RQ.	Page 567	13
● C10-146:	UC immediate error effect on QP processing	Page 570	14
● C10-147:	UC completion error effect on SQ & WR.	Page 570	14
● C10-148:	UC RQ completion error effect on QP & WRs.	Page 570	15
● C10-149:	Tables - compl error handling for UC SQ/RQ	Page 570	16
● C10-150:	UC AAError effect on QP & WRs	Page 571	16
● C10-151:	UD immediate error effect on QP & WR	Page 571	17
● C10-152:	UD SQ completion error effect on SQ & WR.	Page 571	18
● C10-153:	UD RQ completion error effect on QP & WRs.	Page 572	19
● C10-154:	Tables - completion error handling on UD SQ/RQ	Page 572	19
● C10-155:	UD AAError effect on QP & WRs	Page 572	20
● C10-156:	RawD immediate error effect on QP & WR	Page 573	21
● C10-157:	RawD SQ completion error effect on SQ & WR	Page 573	21
● C10-158:	RawD RQ completion error effect on QP & WRs	Page 573	22
● C10-159:	Tables - compl error handling for RawD SQ/RQ	Page 573	23
● C10-160:	RawD AAError effect on QP & WRs	Page 574	23
● o10-66.1.1:XRC:	Immediate Errors for XRC Service.	Page 574	24
● o10-66.1.2:XRC:	completion errors and the error state.	Page 574	25
● o10-66.1.3:XRC:	XRC SRQ error completions	Page 574	25
● o10-66.1.4:XRC:	completion errors effects on an XRC TGT QP. .	Page 574	26
● o10-66.1.5:XRC:	Asynch Error effects on XRC Work Requests..	Page 574	27
● o10-66.1.6:XRC:	Asynch Error effects on XRC TGT QPs and SRQs. Page	575	28
● o10-66.1.7:XRC:	XRC Completion Error Handling detailed descriptions. Page	575	29
● C10-160.2.1:CI:	Requestor Error Behavior Conformance	Page 577	30
● C10-160.2.2:CI:	Responder Error Behavior Conformance	Page 579	31
● o11-0.2.1:VE:	Semantics for support for a verb extension	Page 584	31
● C11-1:	Table indicating mandatory verbs	Page 584	32
● C11-2:	Table indicating verbs req'd for optional features	Page 584	33
● C11-3:	Verb functionality not indicated as being optional	Page 584	33
● C11-4:	Verb functionality associated w/ optional features	Page 585	34
● C11-5:	HCA handles for different HCAs are unique	Page 587	35
● C11-6:	If Open HCA called for already opened HCA	Page 587	35
● o11-0.2.2:SRQ:	Create SRQ required initial attributes	Page 602	36
● o11-0.1.1:XRC:	XRC SRQ is not create if bad parametes are passed. Page	605	37
● C11-7:	Create QP required initial attributes	Page 608	38
● o11-0.2.3:SRQ:	UD and RC QPs allowed to associate with SRQ	Page 608	39
● o11-7.2-1.1:SRQUC:	QPs attachment to SRQ	Page 608	39
● C11-8:	Modify QP's general behavior	Page 611	40
● C11-9:	Modify QP's behavior if invalid request	Page 611	41
● C11-10:	Table - QP State Transition Properties	Page 611	42

● C11-11:	Destroy QP deallocates associated resources	Page 621	1
● C11-12:	Destroy QP's effect on WRs & incoming ops	Page 622	2
● C11-13:	Get Special QP supports QP0 & QP1	Page 622	3
● o11-1:	RawD: Get Special QP supports RawD QPs	Page 622	4
● C11-14:	Get Special QP reqs wrt SMI & GSI QP handles	Page 622	5
● o11-2:	RawD: Query HCA returns # suppt'd RawD QPs	Page 622	6
● C11-15:	Special rule for CQs associated with SMI/GSI	Page 623	7
● C11-15.2-1.1:XRC:	Ops destined for a destroyed QP discarded.	Page 633	8
● C11-16:	Resize CQ requirements.	Page 634	9
● C11-17:	Destroy CQ behavior if any WQs still associated	Page 635	10
● o11-3:	RD: Modify EEC Attributes general behavor.	Page 636	11
● o11-4:	RD: Table - EEC State Transition Properties.	Page 637	12
● o11-5:	RD: Destroy EEC's effect on WRs	Page 643	13
● C11-18:	Rereg MR behavior if "Operation denied"	Page 651	14
● C11-19:	Rereg MR behavior if invalid handle	Page 651	15
● C11-20:	Rereg MR behavior if other errors.	Page 651	16
● C11-21:	Rereg MR behavior if access in progress	Page 651	17
● C11-22:	Reregister Physical MR Verb Compliance	Page 654	18
● o11-5.2.1:	Post Send list requirement for return of control timing .	Page 664	19
● C11-24:	WR access or modification after posting.	Page 664	20
● o11-5.2.2:BMM:	QP not enabled for Fast Reg or Rsv L_Key	Page 664	21
● C11-25.2.1:	Post Send Table - req'd ops for service types.	Page 664	22
● C11-25.2.2:	Atomic ordering	Page 665	23
● C11-26.2.1:	Post Send table - req'd input modifiers for ops	Page 666	24
● C11-26.2.2:	Post Receive list req for return of control timing	Page 674	25
● o11-5.2.3:	SRQ: Post Receive req for return of control timing	Page 674	26
● C11-27:	Post Rcv req for return of control timing	Page 676	27
● C11-27.2.1:	Poll for Comp table - completion err types for SQs.	Page 676	28
● C11-28.2.1:	Poll for Comp table - completion err types for RQs.	Page 677	29
● C11-29:	Rqst Comp Notif req'd Completion Event Types.	Page 681	30
● C11-29.1.1:	Solicited Completion Event callback invocation	Page 681	31
● C11-29.1.2:	Completion Event invocation rules	Page 681	32
● C11-30:	Rqst Comp Notif changing to "next" completion	Page 682	33
● C11-31:	Req Comp Notif not changing from "next" comp.	Page 682	34
● C11-32:	Set Async EH req'd use of new event handler	Page 684	35
● C11-33:	Affiliated Async Error effect on QP/EE State	Page 690	36
● C11-34:	Affiliated Async Event effect on QP/EE State.	Page 690	37
● C11-35:	Communication Established AAEvent generation.	Page 691	38
● o11-5.1.1:	Communication Established AAEvent generation.	Page 691	39
● o11-5.2.4:	SRQ: SRQ Limit Reached Affiliated Async Event	Page 692	40
● o11-35.2-1.1:	SRQUC: Limit Reached Affiliated Async Event	Page 692	41
● o11-5.2.5:	SRQ: Last WQE Reached Affiliated Async Event	Page 692	42
● o11-5.2.6:	SRQ: No Last WQE Reached after Catastrophic Error.	Page 692	43
● o11-35.2-1.2:	SRQUC: Last WQE Reached Affiliated Async Event	Page 692	44
● C11-36:	AAError - CQ Error generation condition & timing	Page 692	45
● C11-37:	AAError - CQ Error generation timing for overrun.	Page 692	46
● C11-38:	AAError - Catastrophic error condition & timing	Page 693	47
● C11-39:	AAError - Catastrophic error condition & timing	Page 693	48
● C11-39.1.1:	Invalid Request Local Work Queue Error condition	Page 693	49
● C11-39.1.2:	Local Access Violation Work Queue Error condition	Page 693	50
● o11-5.a1:	RD: AAError - Catastrophic EEC error condition	Page 693	51
● o11-6:	APM: AAError - APM error condition	Page 694	52
● o11-6.2.1:	SRQ: SRQ Catastrophic Error	Page 694	53
● o11-6.2.2:	SRQ: QP Catastrophic Affiliated Async Error	Page 694	54
● o11-6.1.1:	Port Active Event generation.	Page 694	55
● o11-39.2-1.1:	Port Change Event Generation	Page 695	56
● C11-40:	UAError - Catastrophic Error conditions	Page 695	57
● C11-41:	UAError - Port Error condition.	Page 695	58
● C12-1:	CM protocol support req'd with RC, UC, XRC, and RD	Page 713	59
● o12-12:	Conditions when SIDR_REQ msg support req'd	Page 714	60
● C13-1.1.1:	SMA required on CAs, switches, routers.	Page 780	61
● C13-28:	ClassPortInfo Required for each Agent.	Page 799	62

● C13-29:	ClassPortInfo Required For Each Agent Port	Page 799	1
● C13-30.1.2:	Agent must do Trap or Notice Queue if Notices	Page 802	2
● o13-1:	Obsolete	Page 802	3
● o13-1.1.1:	Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format	Page 802	4
● o13-2:	Obsolete	Page 804	5
● o13-2.1.1:	Trap or Notice: InformInfo format	Page 805	6
● C13-32:	Trap: No Traps Without TrapDLID Target	Page 812	7
● o13-2.a1:	Trap: parameters from ClassPortInfo and PortInfo	Page 812	8
● o13-3:	Trap: Maximum Rate of Generation	Page 812	9
● o13-4:	Trap: Use of Notice Attribute	Page 812	10
● o13-5:	Trap: Transaction ID setting	Page 812	11
● o13-6:	Trap: Response to TrapRepress	Page 813	12
● o13-7:	Trap: TrapRepress Dropped if No Matching Trap	Page 813	13
● o13-8:	Notice: Notice Queue is FIFO	Page 813	14
● o13-9:	Notice: NoticeCount semantics	Page 813	15
● o13-10:	Obsolete	Page 813	16
● o13-10.1.1:	Notice: Returning a Notice from Notice Queue	Page 813	17
● o13-11:	Notice: Response to Set(Notice)	Page 814	18
● C13-33:	SM MADs (SMPs) appear on QP0	Page 820	19
● C13-34:	GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	20
● C13-36:	SMPs Not Dispatched to SMA Appear on QP0	Page 821	21
● C13-37:	SMP Processing Above/Below the Verb Layer	Page 821	22
● o13-21.1.1:	RMPP: Required packet formats	Page 843	23
● o13-21.1.2:	RMPP: RMPP header	Page 843	24
● o13-21.1.3:	RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header	Page 843	25
● o13-21.1.4:	RMPP: version = 1	Page 843	26
● o13-21.1.5:	RMPP: status codes	Page 844	27
● o13-21.1.6:	RMPP: dispatcher behavior	Page 855	28
● o13-21.1.7:	RMPP: Receiver behavior	Page 857	29
● o13-21.1.8:	RMPP: Sender behavior	Page 860	30
● C14-8:	Directed Route SMPs Processed by the SMI	Page 873	31
● C14-12:	Obsolete	Page 875	32
● C14-13.1.1:	Required SMA methods	Page 877	33
● C14-14:	Obsolete	Page 877	34
● C14-15:	M_Key not Checked When PortInfo:M_Key = 0	Page 878	35
● C14-16:	M_Key checks when PortInfo:M_Key is not zero	Page 878	36
● C14-17:	Lease Period Timer Countdown	Page 879	37
● C14-18:	PortInfo:M_KeyViolations Counting	Page 879	38
● C14-19:	Lease Period Counting Halts on valid M_Key	Page 880	39
● C14-20:	M_KeyProtectBits When Lease Period Expires	Page 880	40
● C14-21:	M_KeyLeasePeriod 0 = Lease Never Expires	Page 880	41
● C14-22:	M_Key, ProtectBits, & LeasePeriod Set Together	Page 880	42
● C14-23:	Init of M_Key, ProtectBits & LeasePeriod	Page 881	43
● C14-24:	Obsolete	Page 881	44
● C14-24.1.1:	SMA Required Attributes	Page 881	45
● C14-24.1.2:	DRN: Ignore DataDetails if not supported	Page 888	46
● C14-24.1.3:	DRN: DataDetails if supported	Page 888	47
● o14-24.2-1.2:	Detailed link speed / width combinations	Page 927	48
● o14-24.2-1.4:	VendorSpecificMadsTable SubnGet response	Page 929	49
● o14-24.2-1.5:	PortInfoExtended local change trap	Page 933	50
● o14-24.2-1.6:	PortInfoExtend local change notice	Page 934	51
● C14-25:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is 0	Page 976	52
● C14-26:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is not 0	Page 976	53
● C14-27:	Req to Change RO Components Ignored	Page 976	54
● C14-28:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key is 0	Page 976	55
● C14-29:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key non0	Page 976	56
● C14-30:	SubnGetResp Content	Page 977	57
● C14-31:	SubnGetResponse TransactionID	Page 977	58
● C14-32:	Obsolete	Page 977	59
● o14-1:	Obsolete	Page 977	60
● o14-1.1:	Trap: SubnTrap M_Key field	Page 977	61
● o14-2:	Obsolete	Page 977	62

● o14-2.1.1:Trap: Trap Generation Interval	Page 977	1
● o14-3: Obsolete	Page 977	2
● o14-3.2.1:Trap: Only Sent When Portstate is Active	Page 977	2
● o14-3.a1: Trap: SMA sets trap source LID	Page 978	3
● o14-3.a2: Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key is 0	Page 978	3
● o14-3.a3: Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key non0	Page 978	4
● o14-3.a4: Trap: No TrapRepress response	Page 978	4
● o14-4: Obsolete	Page 979	5
● o14-5: Obsolete	Page 979	6
● o14-5.1.1:Trap: Trap 128 on Port State Change	Page 979	7
● o14-6: Obsolete	Page 979	7
● o14-6.1.1:Notice: Logged on Port State Change	Page 979	8
● o14-6.1.2:P_Key SEPT: Mismatches monitored	Page 982	9
● o14-6.1.3:Obsolete	Page 982	9
● o14-6.2.1:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	10
● o14-6.1.4:P_Key SEPT and Notice: Notice 259 logged	Page 983	11
● o14-6.2.2:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	11
● C14-33: P_Key and Q_Key Mismatches Monitored	Page 983	12
● C14-34: P_Key or Q_Key Violation Count Reporting	Page 983	13
● o14-7: Trap: P_Key, Q_Key Violation =Trap 257, 258	Page 983	13
● o14-8: Notice: Must Log P_Key & Q_Key Violations	Page 984	14
● o14-9: Trap: trap 256 On M_Key Mismatch	Page 984	15
● o14-10: Notice: M_Key mismatch is logged	Page 984	15
● o14-11: Trap: trap 129, 130, or 131 When Link Problems	Page 984	16
● o14-12: Notice: Must Log Link Problems	Page 984	16
● o14-12.1.1:Trap and CMN: trap 144 when cap. mask changes	Page 985	17
● o14-12.1.2:Notice and CMN: log when cap. mask changes	Page 985	18
● o14-12.1.3:Trap and SysG: trap if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	19
● o14-12.1.4:Notice and SysG: log if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	19
● o14-34.2-1.1:OtherLocalChanges Trap	Page 986	20
● o14-34.2-1.2:OtherLocalChanges Notice	Page 986	21
● C16-1: PM Agent is mandatory on all nodes	Page 1079	22
● C16-2: PM MAD format	Page 1080	22
● C16-2.1.1:PMA required methods	Page 1081	23
● C16-2.1.2:Performance Management Agents Mandatory Attributes	Page 1081	24
● C16-3: PortSamplesControl, PortSamplesResult Req'd	Page 1084	25
● C16-4: Obsolete	Page 1084	25
● C16-4.1.1:Each sampler must have >=1 & <=15 counters	Page 1084	26
● o16-4.2-1.1:SampOnly: No overlap between option masks	Page 1084	26
● o16-4.2-1.2:SampOnly: option masks can't share comp'ts	Page 1084	27
● C16-5: PMA Mandatory quantities: all ports, all nodes	Page 1091	28
● o16-1: OptPC: Optional Performance Counters: Attributes	Page 1091	28
● C16-6: PortCounters Attribute is Mandatory	Page 1098	29
● C16-7.2-1.1:Counters power-up 0 and stick at all 1s	Page 1098	30
● o16-2: Obsolete	Page 1104	31
● o16-2.1.1:OptPC: Optional Performance Management Attributes	Page 1104	31
● o16-8.2-1.1:SampOnly: Sampled only attributes	Page 1104	32
● o16-2.1.2:OptPC: SwPortVLCongestion only on switches	Page 1117	33
● o16-8.2-1.2:ExtWidth: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1120	33
● o16-8.2-1.3:ExtSpeed: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1125	34
● C16-9: BMA Mandatory on all nodes	Page 1141	35
● C16-10: BM datagram format	Page 1142	36
● C16-10.1.1:BMA required methods	Page 1144	37
● C16-10.1.2:Baseboard Management Agent attributes and Method	Page 1145	37
● o16-3: Trap or Notice: BKeyViolation DataDetails	Page 1148	38
● o16-3.1.1:Trap or Notice: BMTrap DataDetails	Page 1148	39
● C16-11: BMA checks B_Key	Page 1151	40
● C16-12: BMA Action when B_Key check Fails	Page 1151	41
● C16-13: B_Key, B_Key Protection, B_Key lease at reset	Page 1152	41
● C17-1: Verbs Layer (Channel Interface) is Mandatory	Page 1187	42

● C17-2:	Multiport CAs Shall Support Multiple Subnets	Page 1189	1
● C17-3:	Association of QPs with Ports	Page 1191	2
● C17-4:	Static Rate Control - Ports above 2.5 Gbps	Page 1193	3
● C17-5:	CA Ports Must Validate P_Keys on Packets	Page 1193	4
● C17-6:	P_Key Table Size per Port	Page 1193	5
● C17-7:	Setting P_Key Table - No OS Involvement	Page 1193	6
● C17-7.a1:	CA Port numbering	Page 1193	7
● C17-8:	Each Port Must Support at least One GID	Page 1193	8
● C17-9:	All QPs Shall Source and Sink Local Packets	Page 1196	9
● C17-10:	Except QP0, All QPs Shall Handle GRH Packets	Page 1196	10
● C17-11:	UD, RC and UC Transport Required on All QPs	Page 1196	11
● C17-12:	Transport Services - Support Rules	Page 1196	12
● C17-13:	Solicited Event Rule	Page 1196	13
● C17-14:	MTU Support - Valid Sets	Page 1196	14
● C17-15:	Obsolete	Page 1197	15
● C17-15.2.1:	Receive Queues - E-to-E Flow Control Credit	Page 1197	16
● C17-16:	Send Queues - E-to-E Flow Control Credit	Page 1197	17
● o17-2:	UDMcast: Generation	Page 1197	18
● o17-3:	UDMcast: Receiving	Page 1197	19
● o17-4:	APM: Respond to, Generate Auto Path Migrate	Page 1197	20
● C17-18:	Loopback Allowed, but Can't Go on the Wire	Page 1197	21
● C17-19:	Backpressure Rule to avoid Deadlock	Page 1197	22
● C17-20:	Backpressure Inbound/Outbound - Deadlock	Page 1197	23
● C17-21:	Inbound Pkts - Link/Network/Transport Check	Page 1198	24
● C17-22:	EUI-64 GUID In Non-Volatile Memory	Page 1198	25
● C17-23:	Obsolete	Page 1198	26
● C17-24:	QP0 and QP1 Support Req'd for Every Port	Page 1200	27
● CA4-24:	Obsolete	Page 1377	28

20.4 TCA COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of TCA, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant TCA **shall** meet all Section [Common Port Requirements on page 1284](#) and all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C4-1:	EUI-64 Assignment	Page 159	27
● C4-2:	EUI-64 Assignment - At Least One per Port	Page 160	28
● C4-3:	GID Usage and Properties	Page 160	29
● C4-4:	Addressing Rules	Page 164	30
● C4-5:	LID (Local Identifier) Usage and Properties	Page 164	31
● o5-1:	RD: Reliable Datagram ETH Format	Page 174	32
● o5-2:	RDMA: RDMA ETH Format	Page 175	33
● o5-3:	Atomics: Atomic Extended Transport Hdr Format	Page 176	34
● o5-3.a1:	Sender shall set XRCETH fields	Page 176	35
● o5-4:	Atomics: Atomic ACK ETH Format	Page 177	36
● o5-5:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Rules	Page 179	37
● o5-6:	RawD: EtherType Usage in RWH	Page 179	38
● o5-7:	RawD: Raw Packet Length Rule	Page 180	39
● o5-8:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Format	Page 180	40
● C7-7:	Packet Discard Required if Link Checks Fail	Page 192	41
● C7-21:	VL15 Buffer(s) required For each Port	Page 202	42
● o7-5:	SL-to-VL Mapping Table Size	Page 206	43
● o7-17:	RawDMcast: Raw Multicast Operational Rules	Page 240	44
● C7-66:	Link Layer DLID Check - Use Base LID Only	Page 242	45
● C8-1:	Rules for Including a GRH in Packets	Page 249	46
● o8-1:	Optional Use of GRH in Packets	Page 250	47
● C9-2:	Transport - Opcode, Header, and Payload Table	Page 257	48

● o9-1:	Solicited Event Bit may Invoke CQ Event Handler	Page 260	1
● C9-4:	Solicited Event Bit - Excluded from Hdr Validation	Page 260	2
● C9-5:	BTH TVer Field Value	Page 261	3
● C9-6:	BTH - Reserve 8 Field Value.	Page 261	4
● C9-7:	BTH - Reserve 7 Field Value.	Page 262	5
● o9-2:	RD: RDETH - Reserve Field Value	Page 262	6
● C9-8:	DETH - Reserve Field Value.	Page 263	7
● o9-3:	RDMA: RETH - DMA Length Field Value Limits	Page 264	8
● o9-3.a1:	XRC: Sender shall set XRCETH fields.	Page 267	9
● C9-10:	SEND Operation Size Limits	Page 268	10
● o9-5:	Segmentation and Reassembly of RC, UC, RD	Page 269	11
● C9-12:	SEND Operation - UD Allows only Single Packets	Page 269	12
● C9-13:	Multi-Packet Messages - Do Not Interleave	Page 271	13
● C9-14:	SEND Request - Required IBA Headers.	Page 271	14
● C9-15:	SEND Response - Required IBA Headers	Page 271	15
● o9-5.2.1:	BMM: header validation order for remote invalidate.	Page 273	16
● o9-5.2.2:	BMM: R_Key validation for Remote Invalidate	Page 274	17
● C9-15.a1:	RD: Resync data payload length shall be zero.	Page 275	18
● o9-6:	RDMA: RDMA WRITE - DMA Length Limits	Page 275	19
● o9-7:	RDMA: RDMA WRITE Segmenting/Reassembly	Page 276	20
● o9-8:	RDMA: Multi-packet RDMA WRITE Rule	Page 278	21
● o9-9:	RDMA: RDMA WRITE Request - Req'd Headers	Page 278	22
● o9-10:	RDMA: RDMA WRITE Resp. - Req'd Headers	Page 279	23
● o9-11:	RDMA: RDMA READ Segments/Reassembly	Page 279	24
● o9-12:	RDMA: RDMA READ DMA Length Limits	Page 279	25
● o9-13:	RDMA: RDMA READ Request - Req'd Headers	Page 282	26
● o9-14:	RDMA: RDMA READ Response - Req'd Headers	Page 282	27
● o9-15:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op Request - Req'd Headers	Page 285	28
● o9-16:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op Response - Req'd Headers	Page 285	29
● o9-17:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op - QP Atomicity Rule	Page 286	30
● o9-18:	Atomics: ATOMIC Op - Enhanced Atomicity Rule	Page 286	31
● C9-25:	Transmission of Requests - Ordering Rule	Page 291	32
● C9-26:	Transmission of Message - Data Payload Order	Page 291	33
● o9-19:	RC: Acknowledge Packets - Strong Ordering	Page 291	34
● o9-19:	RD: Acknowledge Packets - Strong Ordering	Page 291	35
● C9-28:	Responder - Order of Request Execution	Page 291	36
● C9-29:	Receipt of Requests - Order of Completion	Page 292	37
● C9-30:	Requester - Order of WQE Completion	Page 292	38
● C9-31:	Requester - WQE Fence Attribute Behavior	Page 292	39
● C9-32:	WQE Order of Completion vs. Execution	Page 292	40
● o9-20:	RDMA: Responder RDMA WRITE Buffer Rule	Page 292	41
● o9-21:	RDMA: Responder RDMA READ Buffer Rule	Page 292	42
● o9-21.a1:	SEND: Don't depend on responder buffer until complete	Page 292	43
● C9-33:	Receive Queue - Buffer Content Validity	Page 292	44
● C9-34:	Transport Layer - Packet Header Validation	Page 293	45
● C9-35:	Transport Layer - IBA Packts - Header Validation	Page 293	46
● C9-37:	BTH Validation - Dest QP and QP State	Page 295	47
● o9-22:	RD: BTH Validation - Dest QP and State vs. EEC	Page 295	48
● o9-23:	UDMcast: Well-known Destination QP Value	Page 295	49
● C9-38:	BTH Validation - Request Checked vs. QP	Page 295	50
● C9-39:	BTH Validation - Silent Drop Rule	Page 296	51
● C9-40:	Obsolete	Page 296	52
● o9-23.2.1:	RD: BTH Validation - Behavior	Page 296	53
● C9-41:	Transport Layer - BTH P_Key - QP0 Rule	Page 297	54
● C9-42:	Transport Layer - BTH P_Key - QP1 Rule	Page 297	55
● C9-43:	Transport Layer - Required P_Key Validation	Page 297	56
● o9-24:	RD: Transport Layer - Required P_Key Validation	Page 297	57
● C9-43.1.1:	GRH - Validate the presence of the GRH for UD services	Page 298	58
● C9-43.1.2:	Validate the presence of the GRH	Page 298	59
● C9-44:	GRH - NxtHdr Field - Validation	Page 298	60
● C9-45:	GRH - IPVers Field - Validation	Page 298	61

● C9-46:	GRH - Dest QP UD, SGID/DGID non-Validation	Page 298	1
● C9-47:	obsolete	Page 299	2
● C9-47.1.1:	GRH - SGID/DGID Field - Validation	Page 299	3
● o9-24.a1:	XRC: XRCETH shall be validated	Page 300	4
● C9-47.2.1:	Silently drop RD packets if CA does not support RD	Page 300	5
● o9-25:	RD: RDETH - EE Context Field Value - Validation	Page 300	6
● o9-26:	RD: RDETH - EE Context - Validation Behavior	Page 301	7
● C9-48:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - Ignored for QP0	Page 301	8
● C9-49:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - QP1Rule	Page 301	9
● C9-50:	DETH - Q_Key Field Value - Validation	Page 301	10
● C9-51:	Transport Layer - ACK depends on Valid Keys	Page 302	11
● C9-52:	Transport - LRH - SLID/DLID Field Validation	Page 302	12
● C9-53:	Transport - LRH - DLID Field Validation	Page 302	13
● C9-54:	Transport - LRH - SLID Field Validation	Page 302	14
● C9-55:	Transport - LRH Validation - Permissive LID Rule	Page 302	15
● C9-56:	Transport Layer - SLID Invalid if Multicast	Page 303	16
● o9-27:	RC or UC: Transport Layer - LID Validation	Page 303	17
● o9-28:	RD: Transport Layer - LID Validation	Page 303	18
● C9-58:	Packet Validation - IBA Unreliable Multicast	Page 303	19
● C9-59:	Packet Validation - IBA Unreliable Multicast - QP	Page 303	20
● C9-60:	Requesters - WQE Completion Responsibility	Page 305	21
● C9-61:	Send Queue PSNs - Allowed Outstanding Qty	Page 308	22
● o9-29:	RC: PSN Insertion for Reliable Svc Pkts	Page 310	23
● o9-29:	RD: PSN Insertion for Reliable Svc Pkts	Page 310	24
● o9-30:	RC: Responder - Behavior - RC Service	Page 312	25
● o9-30:	RD: Responder - Behavior - RD Service	Page 312	26
● o9-31:	RD: BTH - PSN Field Value for RD Service	Page 313	27
● o9-31:	RC: BTH - PSN Field Value for Reliable Svc	Page 313	28
● o9-32:	RC or RD: BTH - Initial PSN for Reliable Service	Page 313	29
● o9-33:	RD: Requester - PSN Value - RD Service	Page 314	30
● o9-33:	RC: Requester - PSN Value - Reliable Svc	Page 314	31
● o9-34:	RD: Validation of EEC RDD Against Send Queue	Page 315	32
● o9-35:	RD: EEC vs QP - RDD Mismatch Behavior	Page 315	33
● o9-35.a1:	RD: Generating PSNs for Resync requests	Page 315	34
● o9-35.a2:	RD: Source and destination QPns in a Resync request	Page 316	35
● C9-67:	Requester - BTH OpCode Field Value Rules	Page 317	36
● C9-68:	Requester - BTH OpCode Field Value Table	Page 317	37
● C9-69:	Requester - Packet PayLen - First/Middle	Page 317	38
● C9-70:	Requester - Packet PayLen - Only	Page 317	39
● C9-71:	Requester - Packet PayLen - Last	Page 317	40
● o9-36:	RDMA: Requester - RETH DMALen Field - Limits	Page 317	41
● o9-36.a1:	RC: TCA Responder - validation of in bound RC Request Page 318	Page 318	42
● o9-37:	RD: Responder - Validation of Inbound RD Req	Page 318	43
● o9-38.a1:	RD: Validating an inbound RD request	Page 321	44
● o9-38.a2:	RD: responder actions for Resync request - behavior	Page 321	45
● o9-39:	RD: Responder - Valid. of Inbound RD Req. PSN	Page 322	46
● o9-39:	RC: Responder - Inbound Request PSN Chk	Page 322	47
● o9-40:	RD: Responder - ePSN Calculation Rule	Page 322	48
● o9-40:	RC: Responder - ePSN Calculation Rule	Page 322	49
● o9-41:	RC: Responder - ePSN Update - Rec. Queue	Page 323	50
● o9-42:	RD: Responder - ePSN Update - Rec. Queue	Page 323	51
● o9-43:	RC: Responder - New Request - Exec/Response	Page 323	52
● o9-43:	RD: Responder - New Req. - Exec/Response	Page 323	53
● o9-44:	RC: Responder - Valid Duplicate Req Behavior	Page 324	54
● o9-44:	RD: Responder - Valid Duplicate Req Behavior	Page 324	55
● o9-45:	RC: Resp. - Inbound PSN Outside Valid Region	Page 325	56
● o9-45:	RD: Resp. - Inbound PSN Outside Valid Region	Page 325	57
● o9-46:	RC: Resp. - Behavior after NAK Sequence Error	Page 325	58
● o9-46:	RD: Resp. - Behavior after NAK Sequence Error	Page 325	59
● o9-47:	RC: Responder - Validation of OpCode Seq	Page 326	60
● o9-48:	RD: Responder - Validation of OpCode Seq	Page 327	61

● o9-49:	RD: Responder - New Request Rule	Page 327	1
● C9-82:	Responder - BTH OpCode Field - Validation	Page 327	2
● o9-50:	RC: Resp. - Request of Unsupported Fcn	Page 327	2
● o9-50:	RD: Resp. - Request of Unsupported Fcn	Page 327	3
● o9-51:	RC: Resp. - Reserved OpCode Error - Behavior	Page 328	3
● o9-51:	XRC: Resp. - Reserved OpCode Error - Behavior	Page 328	4
● o9-52:	RC: Resp. - Incorrect Pad Count Error - Behavior	Page 328	5
● o9-52:	RD: Resp. - Incorrect Pad Count Error - Behavior	Page 328	5
● o9-53:	RC: Resp. - Insufficient Res. Error - Behavior.	Page 328	6
● o9-53:	RD: Resp. - Insufficient Res. Error - Behavior.	Page 328	7
● o9-54:	RC: Resp. - NAK Response - Completion Rule	Page 329	8
● o9-54:	RD: Resp. - NAK Response - Completion Rule	Page 329	8
● o9-55:	RC and RDMA: Resp - R_Key Unchecked	Page 329	9
● o9-55:	RD and RDMA: Resp - R_Key Unchecked	Page 329	10
● C9-89:	R_Key Violation Behavior	Page 329	11
● C9-90:	R_Key Violation Behavior - Completion Rule	Page 329	12
● C9-91:	LRH - PktLen Validation - WQE buffer	Page 330	13
● C9-92:	LRH PktLen Validation - OpCode Check v. MTU	Page 330	14
● C9-93:	LRH PktLen Validation - Invalid Request Resp.	Page 330	15
● o9-56:	RDMA: DMA Length Field Validation - Behavior	Page 330	16
● C9-95:	PSN Field Value - SEND/RDMA WRITE Resp.	Page 331	17
● o9-57:	RDMA: PSN Field Value - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 332	18
● o9-58:	Atomics: PSN Field Value - ATOMIC Op Resp.	Page 332	19
● o9-59:	RDMA: AETH MSN Field - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	20
● o9-60:	RDMA: AETH Header - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	21
● o9-61:	RDMA: BTH OpCode Field - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 334	22
● o9-62:	RDMA: RDMA READ Response - Error Behavior.	Page 335	23
● o9-63:	RDMA: Request Process - Order - RDMA READ	Page 335	24
● C9-102:	Response is Required.	Page 336	25
● C9-103:	Update of ePSN - Error Behavior	Page 336	26
● C9-104:	Response to ATOMIC or RDMA READ Request.	Page 337	27
● C9-105:	Duplicate SEND Behavior	Page 338	28
● o9-64:	RDMA: Duplicate RDMA WRITE Behavior	Page 339	29
● C9-106:	Duplicate SEND/RDMA WRITE - Error Behavior	Page 339	30
● o9-65:	RDMA: RDMA READ Responses - Duplicates	Page 341	31
● o9-66:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Op Req. Behavior	Page 342	32
● o9-67:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Op Req. Error.	Page 343	33
● o9-68:	Atomics: Duplicate ATOMIC Req. - Local Error.	Page 343	34
● C9-111:	NAK PSN Field Value - Except for RDMA READ	Page 343	35
● C9-112:	NAK PSN Field Value - RDMA READ	Page 343	36
● C9-113:	RNR NAK - PSN Field Value.	Page 343	37
● C9-113.a1:	NAK packets must have an acknowledge opcode.	Page 343	38
● C9-114:	Wait for first valid ePSN after Sequence Error	Page 343	39
● C9-115:	Response to Duplicate Requests - except NAK	Page 344	40
● C9-116:	BTH AckReq Field - Behavior	Page 344	41
● o9-69:	RDMA: PSN Field Value - RDMA READ Resp.	Page 346	42
● o9-70:	RDMA: AETH Requirement.	Page 347	43
● o9-71:	RD: AETH Syndrome - Defined Values.	Page 348	44
● o9-71:	RC: AETH Syndrome - Defined Values.	Page 348	45
● o9-71.a1:	RC or RD: msb of the AETH Syndrome field set to zero	Page 348	46
● o9-72:	RD: AETH Syndrome credit count field for RD	Page 348	47
● C9-120:	Request - Malformed ACK Message Rule	Page 349	48
● C9-121:	Responder - PSN Field Value - Sequence Error.	Page 350	49
● C9-122:	NAK Sequence Error - Subsequent Behavior.	Page 350	50
● C9-123:	PSN Field Value - Duplicate Request - Behavior	Page 350	51
● o9-73:	RDMA: BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Access.	Page 351	52
● o9-73:	Atomics: BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Access.	Page 351	53
● C9-125:	BTH Field Value - NAK Invalid Request	Page 351	54
● C9-126:	BTH Field Value - NAK Remote Operational Err.	Page 351	55
● o9-74:	RD: EEC Field Value - P_Key mismatch.	Page 352	56
● C9-127:	Dest QP Field Value - NAK Invalid RD Request	Page 352	57
● o9-75:	RC: Requester - PSN Uniqueness - RNR NAK	Page 353	58

● o9-76:	RD: AETH Field Value - RNR NAK Timer	Page 353	1
● o9-76:	RC: AETH Field Value - RNR NAK Timer	Page 353	2
● o9-76.a2:	RC or RD: behavior after receiving an RNR NAK	Page 353	3
● o9-77:	RD: RNR NAK Retry - Counting and Behavior	Page 354	4
● o9-77:	RC: RNR NAK Retry - Counting and Behavior	Page 354	5
● C9-133:	Packet Header Validation - Transport	Page 355	6
● o9-78:	RC: ACK PSN Field Value - Order Detection	Page 356	7
● o9-78:	RD: ACK PSN Field Value - Order Detection	Page 356	8
● o9-79:	RC: ACK Syndrome Field Value - Error Behavior	Page 356	9
● o9-79:	RD: ACK Syndrome Field Value - Error Behavior	Page 356	10
● o9-79.a1:	RD: validating the destination QP for response packets	Page 356	11
● C9-135.a1:	obsolete	Page 356	12
● o9-80:	RC: Ghost ACKs - Req'd Behavior	Page 358	13
● o9-80:	RD: Ghost ACKs - Req'd Behavior	Page 358	14
● o9-81:	RC or RD: Repeated NAK Seq. Errors - Behavior	Page 360	15
● o9-82:	APM: Path Migration on repeated NAK-Sequence errors	Page 360	16
● o9-83:	RC: Requester - Duplicate ACK Behavior	Page 362	17
● o9-83:	RD: Requester - Duplicate ACK Behavior	Page 362	18
● o9-84:	RC: ACK/NAK Timer - Outstanding SEND Req.	Page 363	19
● o9-85:	RD: ACK/NAK Timer - Outstanding SEND Req.	Page 363	20
● o9-87:	RC: Timeout Rules for Outstanding Requests	Page 365	21
● o9-88:	RD: Timeout Rules for Outstanding Requests	Page 365	22
● o9-89:	RC: End-to-End Flow Control Credit - Dupl. ACKs	Page 365	23
● o9-90:	RC: Duplicate ACKs - Behavior	Page 365	24
● o9-91:	RC: obsolete	Page 366	25
● o9-92:	RC: AETH MSN Field Value - RC Service	Page 367	26
● o9-93:	RC: Responder - MSN Calculation	Page 368	27
● o9-94:	RC: AETH MSN Field Value	Page 371	28
● o9-95:	Obsolete	Page 372	29
● o9-95.2.1:	SRQ: No E-E flow control credits for SRQ RQs	Page 372	30
● C9-151:	End-to-End Flow Control - Send Queue Behavior	Page 372	31
● C9-152:	AETH - MSN Field Value - Unsolicited ACK	Page 373	32
● C9-153:	End-to-End Flow Control Rules	Page 373	33
● C9-154:	End-to-End Flow Control - Syndrome for Disable	Page 373	34
● o9-95.2.2:	SRQ: AETH credit field value	Page 373	35
● C9-155:	End-to-End Credit - Usage	Page 373	36
● C9-156:	End-to-End Flow Control - Lack of Initial Credit	Page 374	37
● o9-96:	RC: End-to-End Flow Control Credit Calc/Update	Page 377	38
● o9-97:	RC: End-to-End Flow Control Credit - AETH	Page 377	39
● C9-159:	Requester - Send Queue Behavior - Credit Limit	Page 378	40
● C9-160:	Requester Behavior - Transaction Ordering Rules	Page 378	41
● C9-161:	End-to-End Flow Control - Encoded Count	Page 379	42
● C9-162:	Requester Behavior - Send Queue - WQE Limit	Page 381	43
● o9-98:	RC: SEND Request - Limited WQE Case - 1 Pkt	Page 381	44
● o9-99:	RDMA WRITE - Request Xmt - AckReq bit	Page 382	45
● C9-164:	Requester - Ability to Receive Unsolicited ACK	Page 382	46
● o9-100:	RD: QP Availability, Capabilities	Page 384	47
● o9-101:	RD: EEC Support and Capabilities	Page 384	48
● o9-102:	RD: RD Message Completion - Single Msg EEC	Page 384	49
● o9-103:	RD: RD Message Completion - Single Msg QP	Page 384	50
● o9-104:	RD: OpCode, ETH, Transport Validation, etc.	Page 384	51
● o9-105:	RD: Error Detection and Handling	Page 385	52
● o9-106:	RD: Communication Management Support	Page 385	53
● o9-107:	RD: EE Context - Ability to Avoid Shutdown	Page 385	54
● o9-111:	RD: NAK-RNR Behavior for Over-run Condition	Page 391	55
● o9-112:	RD: Out of Order Receive Queue Completion	Page 391	56
● o9-113:	RD: Send Queue - WQE Completion Order	Page 391	57
● o9-114:	RD: Upper Layers - Tolerate of Out of Order Pkts	Page 392	58
● o9-114.a1:	RD: Use of Resync for QP errors	Page 397	59
● o9-114.a2:	RD: Resync Requester response requirements	Page 397	60
● o9-114.a3:	RD: AETH MSN Field Value	Page 397	61
● o9-114.a5:	XRC: All packets of XRCETH message have same XRCETH.	Page 397	62

Page 401	
● o9-114.a6:XRC: XRC matching between packets and TGT QP.	Page 402
● o9-114.a7:XRC: PD from XRCSRQ used not PD of the XRC TGT QP.	Page 402
● o9-114.a8:XRC: Receive WQE fetched from RQ of XRCSRQ.	Page 402
● o9-114.a9:XRC: CQ from XRCSRQ identified by XRC packet used	Page 402
● o9-114.a10:XRC: E2E credits in XRC ACK packets set to invalid.	Page 402
● C9-165: Transport - Packet Header Validation	Page 403
● o9-115: UC: PSN Examination for Packet Validation	Page 403
● o9-116: UC: OpCode Examination	Page 403
● C9-168: BTH OpCode Validation - Support for Request	Page 403
● C9-169: Inbound Request - Resources to Receive	Page 403
● o9-117: UC and RDMA: R_Key Validation - Behavior	Page 404
● C9-171: Inbound Request Packet - Validation - UD	Page 404
● o9-118: UC: Inbound Request Packet - Validation	Page 404
● o9-119: UC: BTH PSN Field Value - Current PSN	Page 406
● o9-120: UC: BTH PSN Field Value - First Request Packet	Page 407
● o9-121: UC: PSN Update/Modify - Transport Control	Page 407
● o9-122: UC: BTH PSN Field Value - Calculation	Page 407
● o9-123: UC: Packet OpCode - First/Middle/Last/Only	Page 408
● o9-124: UC: Packet Payload Length - OpCode	Page 409
● o9-125: UC: Message Completion Rule - SEND/WRITE	Page 409
● o9-126: UC: Expected PSN Value	Page 409
● o9-127: UC: Expected PSN Update/Modify	Page 410
● o9-128: UC: Inbound Request Pkt - Ordering - Detection	Page 410
● o9-129: UC: Inbound Request Packet - New ePSN	Page 410
● o9-130: UC: BTH PSN Inbound Pkt - Compare to ePSN	Page 411
● o9-131: Notification to Client, One or More Lost Messages	Page 411
● o9-132: UC: Message Drop/Restart Rule	Page 411
● o9-133: UC: Inbound Request - OpCode Check	Page 412
● o9-134: UC: Invalid OpCode Behavior	Page 412
● o9-135: UC: Invalid OpCode Behavior - New Message	Page 413
● C9-190: Unreliable Connection - Valid Function Check	Page 413
● C9-191: Invalid UC Request - Behavior	Page 413
● o9-136: UC and RDMA: RETH R_Key Validation	Page 414
● o9-137: UC and RDMA: RETH R_Key - zero-len WRITE	Page 414
● o9-138: UC: LRH PktLen Check - Sufficient Recv Buffer	Page 414
● o9-139: UC: LRH PayLen Check - OpCode First/Middle	Page 415
● o9-140: UC: LRH PayLen Check - OpCode Only	Page 415
● o9-141: UC: LRH PayLen Check - OpCode Last	Page 415
● o9-142: UC and RDMA: obsolete	Page 415
● o9-143: UC: Pad Count Check - OpCode First/Middle	Page 415
● C9-200: Message Size Limit - Unreliable Datagram	Page 417
● C9-201: Basic Services - Unreliable Datagram Reqmts	Page 417
● C9-202: Unreliable Datagram Error Handling	Page 417
● C9-203: PSN Generation and Message Completion - UD	Page 417
● C9-204: PSN Calculation - Unreliable Datagram	Page 419
● o9-144: Responder - PSN Treatment - UD	Page 419
● C9-205: Responder Length Validation - UD	Page 419
● C9-206: BTH OpCode Field Value - Validation - UD	Page 420
● C9-207: Inbound SEND Request - Queue Entry - UD	Page 420
● C9-208: Packet Headers - Raw vs. IPv6 NxtHdr	Page 421
● o9-145: RawD: Packet Payload and LRH PktLend Pad	Page 421
● o9-146: RawD: Association of QPs with a Raw Service	Page 421
● o9-147: RawD: QPs Supporting Raw Service	Page 422
● o9-148: RawD: Maximum Raw Datagram Pkt Payload	Page 422
● C9-209: Requester - Locally Det. Xmt Error - UD	Page 424
● o9-149: RC or UC: Requester - Locally Det. Xmt Error	Page 424
● o9-150: RD: Requester, Transmit - Locally Detected Error	Page 425
● o9-151: RD: Requester - Excessive Retry Detection	Page 425
● o9-151: RC: Requester - Excessive Retry Detection	Page 425
● o9-152: APM: Migration Attempt Allowed following Errors	Page 426

● C9-211:	Requester - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 426	1
● C9-211.1.1:	Requester - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 427	2
● o9-153:	RC: Requester - Class A Error Behavior	Page 431	3
● o9-153:	RD: Requester - Class A Error Behavior	Page 431	4
● o9-154:	RC: Requester - Class A Errors - Client Rule	Page 431	5
● o9-154:	RD: Requester - Class A Errors - Client Rule	Page 431	6
● C9-214:	Requester - Class B Error - Behavior	Page 432	7
● o9-154.a1:	RD: Response to a Requestor Class B Error	Page 432	8
● C9-215:	Requester - Class B Error - Discard ACKs	Page 432	9
● C9-216:	Requester - Class C Error Behavior	Page 433	10
● o9-155:	RD: Requester - Class C Error Behavior	Page 433	11
● o9-156:	RD: Requester - Class D Error - Behavior	Page 433	12
● o9-157:	RC: Requester - Class E Error - Behavior	Page 435	13
● o9-157:	RD: Requester - Class E Error - Behavior	Page 435	14
● C9-218:	Requester - Class F Error - Behavior	Page 435	15
● C9-219:	Obsolete	Page 435	16
● C9-219.1.1:	Responder - Error Behavior and Fault Class Table	Page 436	17
● C9-220:	Responder - Class A Error - Behavior	Page 440	18
● o9-157.2.1:	SRQ: Responder Class A fault behavior	Page 440	19
● o9-157.2.2:	SRQ: responder Class A fault behavior	Page 441	20
● o9-157.2.3:	SRQ: Responder Class A fault behavior	Page 441	21
● o9-158:	RC: Responder - Class B Error - Behavior	Page 441	22
● o9-158:	RD: Responder - Class B Error - Behavior	Page 441	23
● o9-159:	Obsolete	Page 442	24
● o9-159.1.1:	RC: Responder - Class C Error - Behavior	Page 442	25
● C9-223:	Obsolete	Page 443	26
● C9-223.1.1:	Responder - Class D Error - Behavior	Page 443	27
● o9-160:	UC: Responder - Class D1 Error - Behavior	Page 444	28
● o9-161:	RD: Responder - Class E Error - Behavior	Page 444	29
● o9-161.2.1:	SRQ: Responder Class E error behavior for SRQs.	Page 444	30
● o9-161.2.2:	SRQ: Responder Class E error behavior for SRQs.	Page 445	31
● o9-162:	Obsolete	Page 445	32
● o9-162.1.1:	RD: Responder - Class F Error - Behavior	Page 445	33
● C9-225:	Responder - Class G Error - Behavior	Page 446	34
● o9-162.2.1:	BMM: R_Key violations on a SEND with Invalidate.	Page 447	35
● o9-163:	Static Rate Control - Required Support Criterion	Page 457	36
● o9-164:	Static Rate Control - Programmed Injection Rate	Page 457	37
● C10-119:	Received packet discarded if P_Key mismatch	Page 557	38
● C10-121:	P_Key Table size reqs.	Page 558	39
● C10-123:	P_Key Table initialization wrt non-volatile storage	Page 558	40
● C10-124:	P_Key checking for incoming packets	Page 558	41
● C10-130:	Partitioning reqs same as for CI; exception	Page 561	42
● C10-131:	No P_Key checking on packets sent to SMI	Page 562	43
● C10-132:	Special P_Key checking for packets sent to GSI	Page 562	44
● C10-133:	P_Key for packets sent from GSI	Page 562	45
● C11-15.2-1.1:	XRC: Ops destined for a destroyed QP discarded.	Page 633	46
● C12-1:	CM protocol support req'd with RC, UC, XRC, and RD	Page 713	47
● o12-12:	Conditions when SIDR_REQ msg support req'd	Page 714	48
● C13-1.1.1:	SMA required on CAs, switches, routers.	Page 780	49
● C13-28:	ClassPortInfo Required for each Agent	Page 799	50
● C13-29:	ClassPortInfo Required For Each Agent Port	Page 799	51
● C13-30.1.2:	Agent must do Trap or Notice Queue if Notices	Page 802	52
● o13-1:	Obsolete	Page 802	53
● o13-1.1.1:	Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format	Page 802	54
● o13-2:	Obsolete	Page 804	55
● o13-2.1.1:	Trap or Notice: InformInfo format	Page 805	56
● C13-32:	Trap: No Traps Without TrapDLID Target	Page 812	57
● o13-2.a1:	Trap: parameters from ClassPortInfo and PortInfo	Page 812	58
● o13-3:	Trap: Maximum Rate of Generation	Page 812	59
● o13-4:	Trap: Use of Notice Attribute	Page 812	60
● o13-5:	Trap: Transaction ID setting	Page 812	61
● o13-6:	Trap: Response to TrapRepress	Page 813	62

● o13-7:	Trap: TrapRepress Dropped if No Matching Trap	Page 813	1
● o13-8:	Notice: Notice Queue is FIFO	Page 813	2
● o13-9:	Notice: NoticeCount semantics	Page 813	3
● o13-10:	Obsolete	Page 813	4
● o13-10.1.1:	Notice: Returning a Notice from Notice Queue	Page 813	5
● o13-11:	Notice: Response to Set(Notice)	Page 814	6
● C13-33:	SM MADs (SMPs) appear on QP0	Page 820	7
● C13-34:	GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	8
● C13-37:	SMP Processing Above/Below the Verb Layer	Page 821	9
● o13-21.1.1:	RMPP: Required packet formats	Page 843	10
● o13-21.1.2:	RMPP: RMPP header	Page 843	11
● o13-21.1.3:	RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header	Page 843	12
● o13-21.1.4:	RMPP: version = 1	Page 843	13
● o13-21.1.5:	RMPP: status codes	Page 844	14
● o13-21.1.6:	RMPP: dispatcher behavior	Page 855	15
● o13-21.1.7:	RMPP: Receiver behavior	Page 857	16
● o13-21.1.8:	RMPP: Sender behavior	Page 860	17
● C14-8:	Directed Route SMPs Processed by the SMI	Page 873	18
● C14-12:	Obsolete	Page 875	19
● C14-13.1.1:	Required SMA methods	Page 877	20
● C14-14:	Obsolete	Page 877	21
● C14-15:	M_Key not Checked When PortInfo:M_Key = 0	Page 878	22
● C14-16:	M_Key checks when PortInfo:M_Key is not zero	Page 878	23
● C14-17:	Lease Period Timer Countdown	Page 879	24
● C14-18:	PortInfo:M_KeyViolations Counting	Page 879	25
● C14-19:	Lease Period Counting Halts on valid M_Key	Page 880	26
● C14-20:	M_KeyProtectBits When Lease Period Expires	Page 880	27
● C14-21:	M_KeyLeasePeriod 0 = Lease Never Expires	Page 880	28
● C14-22:	M_Key, ProtectBits, & LeasePeriod Set Together	Page 880	29
● C14-23:	Init of M_Key, ProtectBits & LeasePeriod	Page 881	30
● C14-24:	Obsolete	Page 881	31
● C14-24.1.1:	SMA Required Attributes	Page 881	32
● C14-24.1.2:	DRN: Ignore DataDetails if not supported	Page 888	33
● C14-24.1.3:	DRN: DataDetails if supported	Page 888	34
● o14-24.2-1.2:	Detailed link speed / width combinations	Page 927	35
● o14-24.2-1.4:	VendorSpecificMadsTable SubnGet response	Page 929	36
● o14-24.2-1.5:	PortInfoExtended local change trap	Page 933	37
● o14-24.2-1.6:	PortInfoExtend local change notice	Page 934	38
● C14-25:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is 0	Page 976	39
● C14-26:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is not 0	Page 976	40
● C14-27:	Req to Change RO Components Ignored	Page 976	41
● C14-28:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key is 0	Page 976	42
● C14-29:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key non0	Page 976	43
● C14-30:	SubnGetResp Content	Page 977	44
● C14-31:	SubnGetResponse TransactionID	Page 977	45
● C14-32:	Obsolete	Page 977	46
● o14-1:	Obsolete	Page 977	47
● o14-1.1.1:	Trap: SubnTrap M_Key field	Page 977	48
● o14-2:	Obsolete	Page 977	49
● o14-2.1.1:	Trap: Trap Generation Interval	Page 977	50
● o14-3:	Obsolete	Page 977	51
● o14-3.2.1:	Trap: Only Sent When Portstate is Active	Page 977	52
● o14-3.a1:	Trap: SMA sets trap source LID	Page 978	53
● o14-3.a2:	Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key is 0	Page 978	54
● o14-3.a3:	Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key non0	Page 978	55
● o14-3.a4:	Trap: No TrapRepress response	Page 978	56
● o14-4:	Obsolete	Page 979	57
● o14-5:	Obsolete	Page 979	58
● o14-5.1.1:	Trap: Trap 128 on Port State Change	Page 979	59
● o14-6:	Obsolete	Page 979	60
● o14-6.1.1:	Notice: Logged on Port State Change	Page 979	61
● o14-6.1.2:	P_Key SEPT: Mismatches monitored	Page 982	62

● o14-6.1.3:Obsolete	Page 982	1
● o14-6.2.1:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	2
● o14-6.1.4:P_Key SEPT and Notice: Notice 259 logged	Page 983	3
● o14-6.2.2:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	4
● C14-33: P_Key and Q_Key Mismatches Monitored	Page 983	5
● C14-34: P_Key or Q_Key Violation Count Reporting	Page 983	6
● o14-7: Trap: P_Key, Q_Key Violation =Trap 257, 258	Page 983	7
● o14-8: Notice: Must Log P_Key & Q_Key Violations	Page 984	8
● o14-9: Trap: trap 256 On M_Key Mismatch	Page 984	9
● o14-10: Notice: M_Key mismatch is logged	Page 984	10
● o14-11: Trap: trap 129, 130, or 131 When Link Problems	Page 984	11
● o14-12: Notice: Must Log Link Problems	Page 984	12
● o14-12.1.1:Trap and CMN: trap 144 when cap. mask changes	Page 985	13
● o14-12.1.2:Notice and CMN: log when cap. mask changes	Page 985	14
● o14-12.1.3:Trap and SysG: trap if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	15
● o14-12.1.4:Notice and SysG: log if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	16
● o14-34.2-1.1:OtherLocalChanges Trap	Page 986	17
● o14-34.2-1.2:OtherLocalChanges Notice	Page 986	18
● C16-1: PM Agent is mandatory on all nodes	Page 1079	19
● C16-2: PM MAD format	Page 1080	20
● C16-2.1.1:PMA required methods	Page 1081	21
● C16-2.1.2:Performance Management Agents Mandatory Attributes	Page 1081	22
● C16-3: PortSamplesControl, PortSamplesResult Req'd	Page 1084	23
● C16-4: Obsolete	Page 1084	24
● C16-4.1.1:Each sampler must have >=1 & <=15 counters	Page 1084	25
● o16-4.2-1.1:SampOnly: No overlap between option masks	Page 1084	26
● o16-4.2-1.2:SampOnly: option masks can't share comp'ts	Page 1084	27
● C16-5: PMA Mandatory quantities: all ports, all nodes	Page 1091	28
● o16-1: OptPC: Optional Performance Counters: Attributes	Page 1091	29
● C16-6: PortCounters Attribute is Mandatory	Page 1098	30
● C16-7.2-1.1:Counters power-up 0 and stick at all 1s	Page 1098	31
● o16-2: Obsolete	Page 1104	32
● o16-2.1.1:OptPC: Optional Performance Management Attributes	Page 1104	33
● o16-8.2-1.1:SampOnly: Sampled only attributes	Page 1104	34
● o16-2.1.2:OptPC: SwPortVLCongestion only on switches	Page 1117	35
● o16-8.2-1.2:ExtWidth: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1120	36
● o16-8.2-1.3:ExtSpeed: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1125	37
● C16-9: BMA Mandatory on all nodes	Page 1141	38
● C16-10: BM datagram format	Page 1142	39
● C16-10.1.1:BMA required methods	Page 1144	40
● C16-10.1.2:Baseboard Management Agent attributes and Method	Page 1145	41
● o16-3: Trap or Notice: BKeyViolation DataDetails	Page 1148	42
● o16-3.1.1:Trap or Notice: BMTrap DataDetails	Page 1148	43
● C16-11: BMA checks B_Key	Page 1151	44
● C16-12: BMA Action when B_Key check Fails	Page 1151	45
● C16-13: B_Key, B_Key Protection, B_Key lease at reset	Page 1152	46
● C17-2: Multiport CAs Shall Support Multiple Subnets	Page 1189	47
● C17-3: Association of QPs with Ports	Page 1191	48
● C17-4: Static Rate Control - Ports above 2.5 Gbps	Page 1193	49
● C17-5: CA Ports Must Validate P_Keys on Packets	Page 1193	50
● C17-6: P_Key Table Size per Port	Page 1193	51
● C17-8: Each Port Must Support at least One GID	Page 1193	52
● C17-9: All QPs Shall Source and Sink Local Packets	Page 1196	53
● C17-10: Except QP0, All QPs Shall Handle GRH Packets	Page 1196	54
● C17-14: MTU Support - Valid Sets	Page 1196	55
● o17-1: Receive Queues - E-to-E Flow Control Credit	Page 1197	56
● o17-1.2.1:Receive Queues - E-to-E Flow Control Credit	Page 1197	57
● C17-17: Send Queue - E-to-E Flow Control Credit	Page 1197	58
● o17-2: UDMcast: Generation	Page 1197	59
● o17-3: UDMcast: Receiving	Page 1197	60

● o17-4:	APM: Respond to, Generate Auto Path Migrate	Page 1197	1
● C17-19:	Backpressure Rule to avoid Deadlock	Page 1197	2
● C17-20:	Backpressure Inbound/Outbound - Deadlock	Page 1197	2
● C17-21:	Inbound Pkts - Link/Network/Transport Check	Page 1198	3
● C17-22:	EUI-64 GUID In Non-Volatile Memory	Page 1198	3
● C17-23:	Obsolete	Page 1198	4
● C17-24:	QP0 and QP1 Support Req'd for Every Port	Page 1200	5

20.5 SWITCH COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Switch, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Switch **shall** meet all Section [Common Port Requirements on page 1284](#) and all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C4-1:	EUI-64 Assignment	Page 159	14
● C4-3:	GID Usage and Properties	Page 160	15
● C4-4:	Addressing Rules	Page 164	16
● C4-5:	LID (Local Identifier) Usage and Properties	Page 164	16
● C7-1.a1:	Forwarding of data pkts during armed to active transition	Page 188	17
● C7-5:	How to Corrupt a Packet	Page 192	17
● o7-1:	Truncation is Allowed when Corrupting a Packet	Page 192	18
● C7-6:	Packet Truncation Rule	Page 192	19
● C7-9:	Packet Check Rule for Management Packets	Page 194	19
● C7-22:	VL15 Buffer(s) required For Each Switch	Page 202	20
● C7-24:	Inbound VL15 Packets Stay in VL15 Going Out	Page 202	20
● C7-33:	SL on Packets Must be Invariant in a Subnet	Page 204	21
● o7-6:	VLS: SL-to-VL Mapping Rules	Page 206	22
● o7-7:	Obsolete	Page 206	22
● o8-1:	Optional Use of GRH in Packets	Page 250	23
● C10-118:	P_Key value not modified in forwarded packet	Page 557	24
● C10-120:	SMA port contains P_Key table	Page 557	25
● C10-134:	General partitioning requirements for GSI QP	Page 562	25
● C13-1.1.1:	SMA required on CAs, switches, routers	Page 780	26
● C13-28:	ClassPortInfo Required for each Agent	Page 799	27
● C13-29:	ClassPortInfo Required For Each Agent Port	Page 799	27
● C13-30.1.2:	Agent must do Trap or Notice Queue if Notices	Page 802	28
● o13-1:	Obsolete	Page 802	28
● o13-1.1.1:	Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format	Page 802	29
● o13-2:	Obsolete	Page 804	30
● o13-2.1.1:	Trap or Notice: InformInfo format	Page 805	30
● C13-32:	Trap: No Traps Without TrapDLID Target	Page 812	31
● o13-2.a1:	Trap: parameters from ClassPortInfo and PortInfo	Page 812	31
● o13-3:	Trap: Maximum Rate of Generation	Page 812	32
● o13-4:	Trap: Use of Notice Attribute	Page 812	32
● o13-5:	Trap: Transaction ID setting	Page 812	33
● o13-6:	Trap: Response to TrapRepress	Page 813	34
● o13-7:	Trap: TrapRepress Dropped if No Matching Trap	Page 813	35
● o13-8:	Notice: Notice Queue is FIFO	Page 813	35
● o13-9:	Notice: NoticeCount semantics	Page 813	36
● o13-10:	Obsolete	Page 813	36
● o13-10.1.1:	Notice: Returning a Notice from Notice Queue	Page 813	37
● o13-11:	Notice: Response to Set(Notice)	Page 814	38
● C13-33:	SM MADs (SMPs) appear on QP0	Page 820	38
● C13-34:	GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	39
● C13-37:	SMP Processing Above/Below the Verb Layer	Page 821	40
● o13-21.1.1:	RMPP: Required packet formats	Page 843	41
● o13-21.1.2:	RMPP: RMPP header	Page 843	41
● o13-21.1.3:	RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header .	Page 843	42

● o13-21.1.4:RMPP: version = 1	Page 843	1
● o13-21.1.5:RMPP: status codes	Page 844	2
● o13-21.1.6:RMPP: dispatcher behavior	Page 855	3
● o13-21.1.7:RMPP: Receiver behavior	Page 857	4
● o13-21.1.8:RMPP: Sender behavior	Page 860	5
● C14-8: Directed Route SMPs Processed by the SMI.	Page 873	6
● C14-12: Obsolete	Page 875	7
● C14-13.1.1:Required SMA methods	Page 877	8
● C14-14: Obsolete	Page 877	9
● C14-15: M_Key not Checked When PortInfo:M_Key = 0	Page 878	10
● C14-16: M_Key checks when PortInfo:M_Key is not zero	Page 878	11
● C14-17: Lease Period Timer Countdown	Page 879	12
● C14-18: PortInfo:M_KeyViolations Counting	Page 879	13
● C14-19: Lease Period Counting Halts on valid M_Key	Page 880	14
● C14-20: M_KeyProtectBits When Lease Period Expires	Page 880	15
● C14-21: M_KeyLeasePeriod 0 = Lease Never Expires	Page 880	16
● C14-22: M_Key, ProtectBits, & LeasePeriod Set Together	Page 880	17
● C14-23: Init of M_Key, ProtectBits & LeasePeriod	Page 881	18
● C14-24: Obsolete	Page 881	19
● C14-24.1.1:SMA Required Attributes	Page 881	20
● C14-24.1.2:DRN: Ignore DataDetails if not supported	Page 888	21
● C14-24.1.3:DRN: DataDetails if supported	Page 888	22
● o14-24.2-1.2:Detailed link speed / width combinations	Page 927	23
● o14-24.2-1.4:VendorSpecificMadsTable SubnGet response	Page 929	24
● o14-24.2-1.5:PortInfoExtended local change trap	Page 933	25
● o14-24.2-1.6:PortInfoExtend local change notice	Page 934	26
● C14-25: PortInfo Set when M_Key is 0	Page 976	27
● C14-26: PortInfo Set when M_Key is not 0	Page 976	28
● C14-27: Req to Change RO Components Ignored	Page 976	29
● C14-28: SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key is 0	Page 976	30
● C14-29: SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key non0	Page 976	31
● C14-30: SubnGetResp Content	Page 977	32
● C14-31: SubnGetResponse TransactionID	Page 977	33
● C14-32: Obsolete	Page 977	34
● o14-1: Obsolete	Page 977	35
● o14-1.1:Trap: SubnTrap M_Key field	Page 977	36
● o14-2: Obsolete	Page 977	37
● o14-2.1.1:Trap: Trap Generation Interval	Page 977	38
● o14-3: Obsolete	Page 977	39
● o14-3.2.1:Trap: Only Sent When Portstate is Active	Page 977	40
● o14-3.a1:Trap: SMA sets trap source LID	Page 978	41
● o14-3.a2:Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key is 0	Page 978	42
● o14-3.a3:Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key non0	Page 978	43
● o14-3.a4:Trap: No TrapRepress response	Page 978	44
● o14-4: Obsolete	Page 979	45
● o14-5: Obsolete	Page 979	46
● o14-5.1.1:Trap: Trap 128 on Port State Change	Page 979	47
● o14-6: Obsolete	Page 979	48
● o14-6.1.1:Notice: Logged on Port State Change	Page 979	49
● o14-6.1.2:P_Key SEPT: Mismatches monitored	Page 982	50
● o14-6.1.3:Obsolete	Page 982	51
● o14-6.2.1:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	52
● o14-6.1.4:P_Key SEPT and Notice: Notice 259 logged	Page 983	53
● o14-6.2.2:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	54
● C14-33: P_Key and Q_Key Mismatches Monitored	Page 983	55
● C14-34: P_Key or Q_Key Violation Count Reporting	Page 983	56
● o14-7: Trap: P_Key, Q_Key Violation =Trap 257, 258	Page 983	57
● o14-8: Notice: Must Log P_Key & Q_Key Violations	Page 984	58
● o14-9: Trap: trap 256 On M_Key Mismatch	Page 984	59
● o14-10: Notice: M_Key mismatch is logged	Page 984	60
● o14-11: Trap: trap 129, 130, or 131 When Link Problems	Page 984	61
● o14-12: Notice: Must Log Link Problems	Page 984	62

● o14-12.1.1:Trap and CMN: trap 144 when cap. mask changes	Page 985	1
● o14-12.1.2:Notice and CMN: log when cap. mask changes	Page 985	2
● o14-12.1.3:Trap and SysG: trap if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	3
● o14-12.1.4:Notice and SysG: log if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	3
● o14-34.2-1.1:OtherLocalChanges Trap	Page 986	3
● o14-34.2-1.2:OtherLocalChanges Notice	Page 986	4
● C16-1: PM Agent is mandatory on all nodes.	Page 1079	5
● C16-2: PM MAD format.	Page 1080	5
● C16-2.1.1:PMA required methods	Page 1081	6
● C16-2.1.2:Performance Management Agents Mandatory Attributes	Page 1081	7
● C16-3: PortSamplesControl, PortSamplesResult Req'd.	Page 1084	8
● C16-4: Obsolete	Page 1084	9
● C16-4.1.1:Each sampler must have >=1 & <=15 counters	Page 1084	9
● o16-4.2-1.1:SampOnly: No overlap between option masks	Page 1084	10
● o16-4.2-1.2:SampOnly: option masks can't share comp'ts	Page 1084	11
● C16-5: PMA Mandatory quantities: all ports, all nodes.	Page 1091	11
● o16-1: OptPC: Optional Performance Counters: Attributes	Page 1091	12
● C16-6: PortCounters Attribute is Mandatory.	Page 1098	13
● C16-7.2-1.1:Counters power-up 0 and stick at all 1s.	Page 1098	13
● o16-2: Obsolete	Page 1104	14
● o16-2.1.1:OptPC: Optional Performance Management Attributes	Page 1104	14
● o16-8.2-1.1:SampOnly: Sampled only attributes.	Page 1104	15
● o16-2.1.2:OptPC: SwPortVLCongestion only on switches	Page 1117	16
● o16-8.2-1.2:ExtWidth: Extended cntrs power-up 0 &stick at all 1s.	Page 1120	17
● o16-8.2-1.3:ExtSpeed: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s. Page	1125	18
● C16-9: BMA Mandatory on all nodes.	Page 1141	19
● C16-10: BM datagram format	Page 1142	20
● C16-10.1.1:BMA required methods	Page 1144	20
● C16-10.1.2:Baseboard Management Agent attributes and Method	Page 1145	21
● o16-3: Trap or Notice: BKeyViolation DataDetails	Page 1148	21
● o16-3.1.1:Trap or Notice: BMTrap DataDetails	Page 1148	22
● C16-11: BMA checks B_Key	Page 1151	23
● C16-12: BMA Action when B_Key check Fails	Page 1151	23
● C16-13: B_Key, B_Key Protection, B_Key lease at reset	Page 1152	24
● C18-1: Forwarding Table - Linear or Random, Not Both	Page 1211	25
● C18-2: Unicast Forwarding Table - Size Limits	Page 1211	25
● o18-1: UDMcast: Packet Replication by Switch	Page 1211	26
● o18-2: UDMcast: Multicast Forwarding Table - Size.	Page 1211	27
● C18-3: VL15 is Required.	Page 1211	28
● o18-3: VL15 Buffer Resource May Be Shared	Page 1211	28
● o18-4: VLs: SLtoVL Mapping Function.	Page 1212	29
● o18-5: SL to VL Mapping - Single Data VL	Page 1212	29
● o18-6: P_Key SRE_In: Inbound P_Key Enforcement	Page 1212	30
● o18-7: P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound P_Key Enforcement.	Page 1212	31
● C18-4: Size Requirement for Forwarding VL15 Packets	Page 1212	31
● C18-5: Legal MTU Configurations - Across All Ports	Page 1212	32
● C18-6: Obsolete	Page 1212	33
● C18-6.1.1:Size Requirement for Forwarding Data Packets	Page 1212	33
● C18-7: Switch Initialization Rules	Page 1213	34
● C18-8: Physical Layer Compliance (Excludes Port 0)	Page 1214	35
● C18-9: Link Layer Compliance	Page 1214	35
● C18-10: Packet Relay - Port 0 Rule	Page 1214	36
● C18-11: Port 0 Behavior - Transport Requirements	Page 1214	37
● o18-8: Port 0 Behavior - Differences from Other Ports.	Page 1214	38
● C18-12: Obsolete	Page 1214	38
● C18-13: Obsolete	Page 1214	39
● C18-14: Obsolete	Page 1214	40
● C18-14.a1:Enhanced Switch Port 0 - Shall Comply With TCA	Page 1214	40
● C18-15: Receiver Queueing - Packet VL Field Rule.	Page 1215	41
● C18-16: Receiver Queueing - Inbound Raw Packet Filter	Page 1215	42

● o18-8.a1:	Receiver Queueing - Inbound Raw Packet Filter	Page 1215	1
● C18-17:	Link Layer Flow Control - No Excuse for Discard	Page 1215	1
● o18-9:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound Enforcement Disabled.	Page 1215	2
● o18-10:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound P_Key List is Per Port	Page 1215	3
● o18-11:	P_Key SRE_In: P_Key Port's List Same for In/Out.	Page 1215	3
● o18-12:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound P_Key Table Size Per Port	Page 1215	4
● o18-13:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound P_Key List - Programmable	Page 1216	5
● o18-14:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound Enforcement - IBA Packets	Page 1216	5
● o18-15:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound Enforcement - Raw Pkts	Page 1216	6
● o18-16:	P_Key SRE_In: Inbound Enforcmt - IBA Pkt Discard	Page 1216	7
● C18-18:	Data Packet Relay Rule	Page 1217	7
● C18-19:	VL15 Packet Relay Rule	Page 1217	8
● C18-20:	Packet Relay - Same Port Rules.	Page 1217	9
● C18-21:	Modification of Data Within Packet Disallowed.	Page 1217	9
● C18-22:	Forwarding Rule - Permissive Address in DLID	Page 1217	10
● o18-17:	Port 0/SMI/GSI - Packet Discard Rule	Page 1217	10
● C18-23:	Packet Transmission - From Port 0 to Other Ports	Page 1218	11
● o18-18:	VLs: SL to VL Mapping - Change VL Field in LRH	Page 1218	12
● o18-19:	SL to VL Mapping - Single Data VL.	Page 1218	12
● o18-20:	VLs: SL to VL Mapping - Outbound VL Rule.	Page 1218	13
● o18-21:	VLs: SL to VL Mapping - Discard Rule	Page 1218	14
● o18-22:	Single Data VL - Packet Relay - VL Field Rule	Page 1218	15
● C18-24:	Single Data VL - Packet Relay - Outbound VL	Page 1218	15
● C18-25:	non-VL15 Packets - Receive Queue	Page 1218	16
● C18-26:	Packet Relay - Port Behavior if a VL Stalls	Page 1218	16
● o18-23:	VL 15 Packets - Packet Relay - Discard Rule	Page 1219	17
● C18-27:	Packet Transmission - In Order Delivery Rules	Page 1219	18
● o18-24:	Forwarding to Get Around Blocked VLs	Page 1219	19
● C18-28:	Forwarding Table - Legal Configurations.	Page 1219	19
● C18-29:	Multicast Relay - Required Behavior.	Page 1219	20
● o18-25:	UDMcast: Multicast Relay - Packet Replication	Page 1219	21
● C18-30:	MulticastFDBCap Rule for Non-UDMcast Switch	Page 1219	21
● C18-31:	Linear Forwarding - Table Properties	Page 1219	22
● C18-32:	Linear Forwarding - Advertised Table Size	Page 1220	23
● C18-33:	Linear Forwarding - Advertised Random Capability	Page 1220	23
● C18-34:	Linear Forwarding Table - Programming.	Page 1220	24
● C18-35:	Linear Forwarding Table - LinearFDBTop Value	Page 1220	25
● C18-36:	Linear Forwarding - Unicast Discard Rules.	Page 1220	26
● C18-37:	Random Forwarding Table - Properties.	Page 1220	26
● C18-38:	Random Forwarding Table - DefaultPort.	Page 1221	27
● C18-39:	Random Forward Table - Forward to DefaultPort	Page 1221	27
● C18-40:	Random Forward Table - Discard Rule	Page 1221	28
● C18-41:	Random Forward Table - Added Discard Rule	Page 1221	29
● C18-42:	Random Forward Table - Advertised Size.	Page 1221	29
● C18-43:	Random Forward Table - LinearFDBCap Value	Page 1221	30
● o18-26:	Random Forward Table - Per Port Limit Option	Page 1221	31
● C18-44:	Random Fwd Table - Advertised Per Port Limit.	Page 1221	31
● C18-45:	Random Fwd Table - LIDsPerPort Value.	Page 1221	32
● C18-46:	Random Forwarding Table - LID/LMC Support.	Page 1221	33
● C18-47:	Primary and Non-Primary Port Value Rules	Page 1222	33
● C18-48:	Primary/Non-Primary Port Value - Programming	Page 1222	34
● C18-49:	Required Multicast - Fwd to Primary Mcast Port.	Page 1222	35
● C18-50:	Required Mcast - Fwd to Non-Primary Mcast Port	Page 1222	36
● C18-51:	Required Multicast - Discard Rule.	Page 1223	36
● o18-27:	UDMcast: Packet Replication	Page 1223	37
● o18-28:	UDMcast: Multicast Forwarding Table and LIDs	Page 1223	37
● o18-29:	UDMcast: Multicast Forwarding Table Size.	Page 1223	38
● o18-30:	UDMcast: Advertising Multicast Fwd Table Size.	Page 1223	39
● o18-31:	UDMcast: Multicast Packet Replication/Relay	Page 1223	40
● o18-32:	UDMcast: Outbound VL Field Value	Page 1223	40
● o18-33:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound Enforcement Disabled.	Page 1224	41
● o18-34:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound P_Key List is Per Port	Page 1224	42

● o18-35:	P_Key SRE_Out: P_Key Port's List Same for In/Out	Page 1224	1
● o18-36:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound P_Key Table Size.	Page 1224	2
● o18-37:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outboud P_Key List - Programmable	Page 1224	3
● o18-38:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound Enforcement - IBA Pkts	Page 1224	4
● o18-39:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound Enforcement - Raw Pkts	Page 1225	5
● o18-40:	P_Key SRE_Out: Outbound Enf. - IBA Pkt Discard	Page 1225	6
● o18-40.a1:	Transmission - Outbound Raw Packet Filter	Page 1225	7
● C18-53:	Transmission - Valid VCRC Required	Page 1225	8
● C18-54:	Transmission - Valid egp Character	Page 1225	9
● C18-55:	Transmission - VL Arbitration Required.	Page 1225	10
● C18-56:	Obsolete	Page 1226	11
● C18-57:	Obsolete	Page 1226	12
● C18-58:	Transmit Queueing - Discard Rules	Page 1226	13
● C18-59:	Transmit Queueing - Switch Lifetime Limit	Page 1226	14
● o18-41:	Transmit Queueing - Discard Rule in Fast Switch.	Page 1227	15
● C18-60:	Packet Transmit - Truncation and Marking Bad	Page 1227	16
● C18-61:	Subnet Managment Interface is Required.	Page 1227	17
● C18-62:	General Services Interface is Required	Page 1227	18
● C18-63:	General Service Interface - GSI P_Key Reqmts	Page 1227	19

20.6 ROUTER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Router, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Router **shall** meet all Section [Common Port Requirements on page 1284](#) and all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C4-1:	EUI-64 Assignment	Page 159	21
● C4-2:	EUI-64 Assignment - At Least One per Port	Page 160	22
● C4-3:	GID Usage and Properties	Page 160	23
● C4-4:	Addressing Rules	Page 164	24
● C4-5:	LID (Local Identifier) Usage and Properties	Page 164	25
● o5-5:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Rules	Page 179	26
● o5-6:	RawD: EtherType Usage in RWH	Page 179	27
● o5-7:	RawD: Raw Packet Length Rule.	Page 180	28
● o5-8:	RawD: Raw Packet Header Format	Page 180	29
● C7-5:	How to Corrupt a Packet.	Page 192	30
● o7-1:	Truncation is Allowed when Corrupting a Packet	Page 192	31
● C7-6:	Packet Truncation Rule	Page 192	32
● C7-9:	Packet Check Rule for Management Packets.	Page 194	33
● C7-21:	VL15 Buffer(s) required For each Port	Page 202	34
● C7-26:	Do Not Forward VL15 Packets	Page 202	35
● o7-5:	SL-to-VL Mapping Table Size	Page 206	36
● o7-17:	RawDMcast: Raw Multicast Operational Rules.	Page 240	37
● o8-1:	Optional Use of GRH in Packets.	Page 250	38
● C8-12:	GRH Modification - IPVer Rule	Page 251	39
● C8-13:	GRH Modification - TClass Rule	Page 251	40
● o8-2:	GRH Modification - FlowLabel Rule	Page 251	41
● C8-14:	GRH Modification - PayLen Rule	Page 252	42
● C8-15:	GRH Modification - NxtHdr Rule	Page 252	43
● C8-16:	GRH Modification - HopLmt Rule	Page 252	44
● C8-17:	GRH Modification - SGID Rule	Page 252	45
● C8-18:	GRH Modification - DGID Rule	Page 252	46
● C10-118:	P_Key value not modified in routed packet.	Page 557	47
● C13-1.1.1:	SMA required on CAs, switches, routers.	Page 780	48
● C13-28:	ClassPortInfo Required for each Agent.	Page 799	49
● C13-29:	ClassPortInfo Required For Each Agent Port.	Page 799	50
● C13-30.1.2:	Agent must do Trap or Notice Queue if Notices.	Page 802	51

● o13-1:	Obsolete	Page 802	1
● o13-1.1:	Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format	Page 802	2
● o13-2:	Obsolete	Page 804	2
● o13-2.1.1:	Trap or Notice: InfoInInfo format	Page 805	3
● C13-32:	Trap: No Traps Without TrapDLID Target.....	Page 812	3
● o13-2.a1:	Trap: parameters from ClassPortInfo and PortInfo	Page 812	4
● o13-3:	Trap: Maximum Rate of Generation	Page 812	5
● o13-4:	Trap: Use of Notice Attribute	Page 812	5
● o13-5:	Trap: Transaction ID setting	Page 812	6
● o13-6:	Trap: Response to TrapRepress	Page 813	7
● o13-7:	Trap: TrapRepress Dropped if No Matching Trap	Page 813	7
● o13-8:	Notice: Notice Queue is FIFO	Page 813	8
● o13-9:	Notice: NoticeCount semantics	Page 813	9
● o13-10:	Obsolete.....	Page 813	9
● o13-10.1.1:	Notice: Returning a Notice from Notice Queue	Page 813	10
● o13-11:	Notice: Response to Set(Notice).....	Page 814	11
● C13-33:	SM MADs (SMPs) appear on QP0	Page 820	11
● C13-34:	GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	12
● C13-35:	SMPs Don't Exit a Subnet.	Page 821	12
● C13-37:	SMP Processing Above/Below the Verb Layer	Page 821	13
● o13-21.1.1:	RMPP: Required packet formats	Page 843	14
● o13-21.1.2:	RMPP: RMPP header	Page 843	15
● o13-21.1.3:	RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header .	Page 843	15
● o13-21.1.4:	RMPP: version = 1	Page 843	16
● o13-21.1.5:	RMPP: status codes	Page 844	16
● o13-21.1.6:	RMPP: dispatcher behavior	Page 855	17
● o13-21.1.7:	RMPP: Receiver behavior	Page 857	18
● o13-21.1.8:	RMPP: Sender behavior	Page 860	19
● C14-8:	Directed Route SMPs Processed by the SMI.	Page 873	19
● C14-12:	Obsolete	Page 875	20
● C14-13.1.1:	Required SMA methods	Page 877	21
● C14-14:	Obsolete	Page 877	21
● C14-15:	M_Key not Checked When PortInfo:M_Key = 0	Page 878	22
● C14-16:	M_Key checks when PortInfo:M_Key is not zero	Page 878	23
● C14-17:	Lease Period Timer Countdown	Page 879	23
● C14-18:	PortInfo:M_KeyViolations Counting.	Page 879	24
● C14-19:	Lease Period Counting Halts on valid M_Key	Page 880	25
● C14-20:	M_KeyProtectBits When Lease Period Expires	Page 880	25
● C14-21:	M_KeyLeasePeriod 0 = Lease Never Expires	Page 880	26
● C14-22:	M_Key, ProtectBits, & LeasePeriod Set Together	Page 880	27
● C14-23:	Init of M_Key, ProtectBits & LeasePeriod	Page 881	28
● C14-24:	Obsolete	Page 881	28
● C14-24.1.1:	SMA Required Attributes.	Page 881	29
● C14-24.1.2:	DRN: Ignore DataDetails if not supported.	Page 888	30
● C14-24.1.3:	DRN: DataDetails if supported	Page 888	30
● o14-24.2-1.2:	Detailed link speed / width combinations	Page 927	31
● o14-24.2-1.4:	VendorSpecificMadsTable SubnGet response	Page 929	31
● o14-24.2-1.5:	PortInfoExtended local change trap	Page 933	32
● o14-24.2-1.6:	PortInfoExtend local change notice	Page 934	33
● C14-25:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is 0	Page 976	33
● C14-26:	PortInfo Set when M_Key is not 0.	Page 976	34
● C14-27:	Req to Change RO Components Ignored	Page 976	35
● C14-28:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key is 0	Page 976	36
● C14-29:	SubnGetResp Generation when M_Key non0	Page 976	36
● C14-30:	SubnGetResp Content	Page 977	37
● C14-31:	SubnGetResponse TransactionID.	Page 977	38
● C14-32:	Obsolete	Page 977	38
● o14-1:	Obsolete	Page 977	39
● o14-1.1.1:	Trap: SubnTrap M_Key field	Page 977	40
● o14-2:	Obsolete	Page 977	41
● o14-2.1.1:	Trap: Trap Generation Interval	Page 977	41
● o14-3:	Obsolete	Page 977	42

● o14-3.2.1:Trap: Only Sent When Portstate is Active	Page 977	1
● o14-3.a1: Trap: SMA sets trap source LID	Page 978	2
● o14-3.a2: Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key is 0	Page 978	3
● o14-3.a3: Trap: TrapRepress Gen when M_Key non0	Page 978	3
● o14-3.a4: Trap: No TrapRepress response	Page 978	3
● o14-4: Obsolete	Page 979	4
● o14-5: Obsolete	Page 979	5
● o14-5.1.1:Trap: Trap 128 on Port State Change	Page 979	5
● o14-6: Obsolete	Page 979	6
● o14-6.1.1:Notice: Logged on Port State Change	Page 979	7
● o14-6.1.2:P_Key SEPT: Mismatches monitored	Page 982	8
● o14-6.1.3:Obsolete	Page 982	8
● o14-6.2.1:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	9
● o14-6.2.2:P_Key SEPT and Trap: Send trap 259	Page 983	10
● C14-33: P_Key and Q_Key Mismatches Monitored	Page 983	11
● C14-34: P_Key or Q_Key Violation Count Reporting	Page 983	11
● o14-7: Trap: P_Key, Q_Key Violation =Trap 257, 258	Page 983	12
● o14-8: Notice: Must Log P_Key & Q_Key Violations	Page 984	13
● o14-9: Trap: trap 256 On M_Key Mismatch	Page 984	14
● o14-10: Notice: M_Key mismatch is logged	Page 984	14
● o14-11: Trap: trap 129, 130, or 131 When Link Problems	Page 984	15
● o14-12: Notice: Must Log Link Problems	Page 984	15
● o14-12.1.1:Trap and CMN: trap 144 when cap. mask changes	Page 985	16
● o14-12.1.2:Notice and CMN: log when cap. mask changes	Page 985	17
● o14-12.1.3:Trap and SysG: trap if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	17
● o14-12.1.4:Notice and SysG: log if SystemImageGUID changes	Page 985	18
● o14-34.2-1.1:OtherLocalChanges Trap	Page 986	19
● o14-34.2-1.2:OtherLocalChanges Notice	Page 986	19
● C16-1: PM Agent is mandatory on all nodes	Page 1079	20
● C16-2: PM MAD format	Page 1080	21
● C16-2.1.1:PMA required methods	Page 1081	21
● C16-2.1.2:Performance Management Agents Mandatory Attributes	Page 1081	22
● C16-3: PortSamplesControl, PortSamplesResult Req'd	Page 1084	23
● C16-4: Obsolete	Page 1084	24
● C16-4.1.1:Each sampler must have >=1 & <=15 counters	Page 1084	25
● o16-4.2-1.1:SampOnly: No overlap between option masks	Page 1084	25
● o16-4.2-1.2:SampOnly: option masks can't share comp'ts	Page 1084	26
● C16-5: PMA Mandatory quantities: all ports, all nodes	Page 1091	27
● o16-1: OptPC: Optional Performance Counters: Attributes	Page 1091	27
● C16-6: PortCounters Attribute is Mandatory	Page 1098	28
● C16-7.2-1.1:Counters power-up 0 and stick at all 1s	Page 1098	29
● o16-2: Obsolete	Page 1104	29
● o16-2.1.1:OptPC: Optional Performance Management Attributes	Page 1104	30
● o16-8.2-1.1:SampOnly: Sampled only attributes	Page 1104	31
● o16-2.1.2:OptPC: SwPortVLCongestion only on switches	Page 1117	31
● o16-8.2-1.2:ExtWidth: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1120	32
● o16-8.2-1.3:ExtSpeed: Extended cntrs power-up 0 & stick at all 1s	Page 1120	33
● C16-9: BMA Mandatory on all nodes	Page 1141	34
● C16-10: BM datagram format	Page 1142	35
● C16-10.1.1:BMA required methods	Page 1144	36
● C16-10.1.2:Baseboard Management Agent attributes and Method	Page 1145	36
● o16-3: Trap or Notice: BKeyViolation DataDetails	Page 1148	37
● o16-3.1.1:Trap or Notice: BMTrap DataDetails	Page 1148	37
● C16-11: BMA checks B_Key	Page 1151	38
● C16-12: BMA Action when B_Key check Fails	Page 1151	39
● C16-13: B_Key, B_Key Protection, B_Key lease at reset	Page 1152	40
● C19-1: Router Unicast Routing Table - Minimum Size	Page 1230	41
● C19-2: VL15 Required	Page 1230	41
● C19-3: Virtual Lanes - Allowed Configurations	Page 1230	42

● C19-4:	Each Port Shall have Independent VL15	Page 1230	1
● C19-5:	VL15 Packets Can't Be Routed Between Ports	Page 1230	2
● C19-6:	SL to VL Mapping Req'd for > One Data VL	Page 1230	3
● o19-1:	SL to VL Mapping Optional for a Single Data VL	Page 1230	4
● C19-7:	Preserve TClass when Routing.	Page 1230	5
● o19-2:	P_Key SRE: Inbound Enforcement.	Page 1231	6
● o19-3:	P_Key SRE: Outbound Enforcement	Page 1231	7
● C19-8:	Allowed MTU Configurations.	Page 1231	8
● C19-9:	Packet Size - MTU + 128 Bytes	Page 1231	9
● C19-10:	Power-up Initialization.	Page 1231	10
● C19-11:	Per-Port Physical Layer Requirements.	Page 1233	11
● C19-12:	Per-Port Link Layer Requirements	Page 1233	12
● C19-13:	PortInfo Attribute for Each Router Port	Page 1233	13
● C19-14:	Each Port Shall Have at Least One GID.	Page 1233	14
● C19-15:	Use Packet VL to Determine Inbound VL Queue	Page 1234	15
● C19-16:	Inbound Raw Packet Filtering	Page 1234	16
● o19-4:	P_Key SRE: Inbound Enforcement Rule	Page 1234	17
● o19-5:	P_Key SRE: Inbound P_Key List is Per-Port	Page 1234	18
● o19-6:	P_Key SRE: Same List at Port for In/Out	Page 1234	19
● o19-7:	P_Key SRE: Maximum Size of List per Port	Page 1234	20
● o19-8:	P_Key SRE: Inbound List is Programmable	Page 1234	21
● o19-9:	P_Key SRE: Inbound Pkt Discard except VL15	Page 1234	22
● o19-10:	P_Key SRE: Inbound Vers. Check except VL15.	Page 1235	23
● C19-17:	Packet Relay Based on DGID.	Page 1235	24
● C19-18:	Packet Relay Disallowed for VL15 Packets	Page 1235	25
● o19-11:	VLS: Rules for Outbound VL Field Value.	Page 1235	26
● C19-19:	Tclass Mapping to SL - Best Effort	Page 1235	27
● C19-20:	SL to VL Mapping and Discard Rules	Page 1236	28
● C19-21:	Outbound Data - Wait for Credit Available	Page 1236	29
● C19-22:	Packet Relay Rules - Credit Availability	Page 1236	30
● C19-23:	Packet Ordering Rules	Page 1236	31
● o19-12:	Packet Relay - Credit Availability Work-Around	Page 1236	32
● C19-24:	Backpressure - Must not Cause Deadlock	Page 1236	33
● C19-25:	Discard Rule Based on Hop Count	Page 1236	34
● C19-26:	Hop Count Decrement for Each Relay	Page 1236	35
● o19-13:	P_Key SRE: Outbound Packet Checking	Page 1237	36
● o19-14:	P_Key SRE: Outbound List is Per Port.	Page 1237	37
● o19-15:	P_Key SRE: Inbound/Outbound P_Key Lists	Page 1237	38
● o19-16:	P_Key SRE: Outbound Per Port List Size Limit	Page 1237	39
● o19-17:	P_Key SRE: Outbound List Per Port.	Page 1237	40
● o19-18:	P_Key SRE: Discard/Truncate Pkt Rule - IBA.	Page 1237	41
● o19-19:	P_Key SRE: Discard/Truncate Rule - Raw Plts	Page 1237	42
● C19-27:	Outbound Transmission of Raw Packets	Page 1238	43
● C19-28:	SLtoVL Mapping Function.	Page 1238	44
● C19-29:	VCRC Required	Page 1238	45
● C19-30:	EGP Symbol	Page 1238	46
● C19-31:	Physical Layer Compliance.	Page 1238	47
● C19-32:	Link Layer Compliance	Page 1238	48
● C19-33:	Packet Size vs. MTU - Truncation Rule	Page 1239	49
● C19-34:	GRH is Required in Received Packets	Page 1239	50
● C19-35:	Packet Lifetime and Head of Queue Lifetime	Page 1239	51
● C19-36:	Packet Transmission Error - Corrupting Packets	Page 1239	52
● o19-20:	Transmission Errors - Truncation Option.	Page 1240	53
● C19-37:	Transmission Error - Packet Corruption	Page 1240	54
● C19-38:	SMI Requirement	Page 1240	55
● C19-39:	GSI Requirement	Page 1240	56

20.7 SUBNET MANAGER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Subnet Manager, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Subnet Manager **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C10-115: Default P_Key value is 0xFFFF	Page 557
● C10-117: Use of default and invalid P_Key values.	Page 557
● C13-1: Subnet Must Have at Least One SM.	Page 779
● C13-27.1.1:Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798
● C13-30.1.1:Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802
● C13-31: Obsolete	Page 811
● o13-5.1.1:Trap: TrapRepress format.	Page 812
● C13-32.1.1:Manager with Notice attribues must do forwarding.	Page 815
● o13-12: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-12.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815
● C13-32.2.1:Ignore duplicate subscriptions.	Page 815
● o13-13: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-13.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815
● o13-14: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-14.1.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816
● C13-32.2.2:Must verify all subscriptions.	Page 816
● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding.	Page 817
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817
● C13-33: SM MADs (SMPs) are sent from Port 0	Page 820
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820
● C13-45.1.1:Validation of SMPs	Page 825
● C13-45.1.2:SM uses only QP0 and VL15	Page 827
● C14-13: Returning Directed Route SMP Handling	Page 875
● C14-13.1.1:Required methods.	Page 877
● C14-14: Subnet Management Required Methods	Page 877
● C14-15: M_Key not Checked When PortInfo:M_Key = 0	Page 878
● C14-16: M_Key checks when PortInfo:M_Key is not zero	Page 878
● C14-19: Lease Period Counter Halts on valid M_Key	Page 880
● C14-20: ProtectBits Setting When Lease Period Expires	Page 880
● C14-21: LeasePeriod of 0 means Lease Never Expires	Page 880
● C14-22: One Set() Sets M_Key, ProtectBits, & LeasePeriod	Page 880
● C14-23: Initialization of M_Key, ProtectBits & LeasePeriod	Page 881
● C14-24.1.1:SM Required Attributes	Page 881
● C14-24.1.2:DRN: Ignore DataDetails if not supported.	Page 888
● C14-24.1.3:DRN: DataDetails if supported	Page 888
● C14-24.2.1:PortInfo data when PortState=Down.	Page 899
● C14-35: SM always associated with one port, one subnet.	Page 989
● C14-35.1.1:lsSM indicates presence of an SM	Page 989
● C14-36: SM Shall Comply with Initialization State Machine	Page 990
● C14-37: Obsolete	Page 990
● C14-37.1.1:Priority, GUID, SM_Key Configurable Out Of Band	Page 990
● C14-37.1.2:SMInfo:Priority kept in nonvolatile memory.	Page 990
● C14-38: SM response to SubnGet/Set(SMInfo)	Page 991
● C14-38.1.1:Action on invalid state transition	Page 992
● C14-39: SM Enters DISCOVERING at Startup.	Page 992

● C14-40:	DISCOVERING state Use Of SubnGet(*)	Page 992	1
● C14-41:	Obsolete	Page 992	2
● C14-41.1.1:	Go To Standby When Find Higher Priority SM	Page 992	3
● C14-42:	Obsolete	Page 993	4
● C14-42.1.1:	Become Master When No Higher Priority SM	Page 993	5
● C14-43:	Master SM Musts Provide Paths to Itself	Page 993	6
● C14-44:	Punt Init When M_Key Prohibits Access	Page 993	7
● C14-45:	SM in Standby Does Not Configure Subnet	Page 993	8
● C14-46:	Standby SMs Must poll the Master SM	Page 993	9
● C14-47:	Standby SM enters Discovery if Master Fails	Page 993	10
● C14-48:	Standby to Discovery on DISCOVER	Page 994	11
● C14-49:	Standby to Not-Active on DISABLE	Page 994	12
● C14-50:	Standby Action on HANDOVER Control Packet	Page 994	13
● C14-51:	SMState Set NOT-ACTIVE in NOT-ACTIVE State	Page 995	14
● C14-52:	SM Does not Send Set/Get in NOT-ACTIVE State	Page 995	15
● C14-53:	SM Response to Set/Get in NOT-ACTIVE State	Page 995	16
● C14-54:	Obsolete	Page 995	17
● C14-54.1.1:	Not-Active Response to STANDBY Control Packet	Page 995	18
● C14-55:	Only the Master SM shall configure subnet nodes	Page 995	19
● C14-56:	Master SM Shall Sweep Subnet	Page 995	20
● C14-57:	Minimum SM Sweep Rate	Page 995	21
● C14-58:	Master SM ActCount Incrementing	Page 995	22
● C14-59:	Master SM Action on Topology Change	Page 996	23
● C14-60:	Obsolete	Page 996	24
● C14-60.2.1:	Discovery Halts on Finding a Lower-Priority Master	Page 996	25
● C14-61:	Obsolete	Page 996	26
● C14-61.1.1:	SM shall coplete discovery	Page 996	27
● C14-61.2.1:	SM does not relinquish to bad SM_Key	Page 997	28
● C14-61.2.2:	Don't change subnet without handover	Page 997	29
● C14-61.2.3:	Response to HANDOVER	Page 997	30
● C14-62:	Obsolete	Page 998	31
● C14-62.1.1:	Master SM shall Initialize Many Things	Page 998	32
● C14-62.1.2:	No deadlock in routing	Page 1001	33
● C14-62.1.3:	No deadlock with any SL/DLID pair	Page 1002	34
● C14-62.1.4:	Reversible paths required	Page 1002	35
● o14-12.1.5:	ReIn: SM action if port does not do Reinitialization	Page 1004	36
● o14-12.1.6:	ReIn: SM setting of PortInfo:InitTypeReply	Page 1004	37
● o14-12.1.7:	ReIn: SM action when cannot preserve content	Page 1004	38
● o14-12.1.8:	ReIn: No PreservePresence without other actions	Page 1005	39
● o14-12.1.9:	ReIn: No trap 65/64 if PreservePresence	Page 1005	40
● C14-63:	SM Action on Seeing Portstate at Initialize	Page 1007	41
● C14-64:	Items Master SM Must Check in Sweep	Page 1008	42
● C14-65:	SM Shall Not Check M_Key in a SubnGetResp(*)	Page 1009	43
● C14-66:	Reply to SubnSet/Get(SMInfo) When :M_Key = 0	Page 1009	44
● C14-67:	Reply to SubnSet/Get(SMInfo) When M_Key non0	Page 1009	45
● C14-68:	Master SM Doesn't Check M_Key in SubnTrap()	Page 1009	46
● C14-69:	Out-of-Band Disable Mechanism	Page 1009	47
● C14-70:	SM Behavior When Disabled	Page 1009	48
● C14-71:	SM Behavior When Not Disabled	Page 1010	49
● C14-72:	Disabled Can Change At Any Time	Page 1010	50
● C14-72.1.1:	Report with trap code 64 for node now reachable	Page 1010	51
● C14-72.1.2:	Report with trap code 65 for node not reachable	Page 1011	52
● o14-12.1.10:	UDMcast: SubnAdmReport(66) on group create	Page 1011	53
● o14-12.1.11:	UDMcast: SubnAdmReport(67) on group delete	Page 1011	54
● o14-12.2.1:	Rereg: Port shall reregister when requested	Page 1012	55
● o14-12.2.2:	Rereg: Use of ClientReregister bit	Page 1012	56
● o14-72.2.1.1:	UnPath: Must send notice on path going away	Page 1013	57
● o14-72.2.1.2:	UnPath: Use of WAIT_FOR_REPATH	Page 1013	58

20.8 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Subnet Administration, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, compliant Subnet Administration **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C13-27.1.1:Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798
● C13-30: ClassPortInfo Required for SA	Page 799
● C13-30.1.1:Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802
● C13-31: Obsolete	Page 811
● o13-5.1.1:Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812
● C13-32.1.1:Manager with Notice attributes must do forwarding	Page 815
● o13-12: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-12.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815
● C13-32.2.1:Ignore duplicate subscriptions	Page 815
● o13-13: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-13.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815
● o13-14: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-14.1.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816
● C13-32.2.2:Must verify all subscriptions	Page 816
● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding	Page 817
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820
● C15-0.1.1:SA Must Exist	Page 1015
● C15-0.1.2:Information Provided by SA	Page 1015
● C15-0.1.3:SA Must Live and Die with its SM	Page 1016
● C15-0.1.4:SA MADs Follow GSI & MAD Rules	Page 1016
● C15-0.1.5:SA datagram format and field definitions	Page 1016
● C15-0.1.6:SA MADHeader:ClassVersion = 2	Page 1016
● C15-0.1.7:Obsolete	Page 1018
● C15-0.2-1.1:SA obeys its CapabilityMask & Mask2 bits	Page 1018
● C15-0.1.8:SA required methods	Page 1018
● C15-0.1.9:SA shall provide data for all subnet elements	Page 1021
● C15-0.1.10:SA Query LID Aliasing	Page 1022
● C15-0.1.11:SA Query Response Base LID use	Page 1022
● C15-0.1.12:SA Required Attributes	Page 1023
● o15-0.2-1.2:CapMask: Support for CapMaskMatch	Page 1027
● C15-0.2-1.3:ServiceP_Key must be OK for ServiceGID port	Page 1034
● C15-0.1.13:obsolete	Page 1034
● C15-0.2-1.4:SA rejection of non-matching ServiceP_Key	Page 1034
● o15-0.2-1.5:PA Services: ServiceP_Key is undefined in query	Page 1034
● o15-0.2-1.6:PA Services: ServiceP_Key is undefined in query	Page 1034
● C15-0.1.14:ServiceName - ServiceKey association	Page 1035
● C15-0.1.15:ServiceRecord access key-controlled	Page 1035
● C15-0.1.16:ServiceLease must be counted down	Page 1037
● C15-0.1.17:ServiceLease end means delete ServiceRecord	Page 1037
● o15-0.1.1:UDMcast: Set() creates routing	Page 1051
● o15-0.1.2:Obsolete	Page 1051
● o15-0.2.1:UDMcast: Reqs for group mod	Page 1051
● o15-0.1.3:UDMcast: bad modify/delete gives error	Page 1052
● o15-0.1.4:obsolete	Page 1053

● o15-0.2.2:Obsolete	Page 1053	1
● o15-0.3.1:UDMcast: Multicast group creation	Page 1053	2
● o15-0.1.5:Obsolete	Page 1054	3
● o15-0.1.5:UDMcast: created MGID format	Page 1054	4
● o15-0.2-1.8:UDMcast: Create MC group with undefined MGID	Page 1054	5
● o15-0.1.6:Obsolete	Page 1054	6
● o15-0.3.2:UDMcast: requirements for group creation	Page 1054	7
● o15-0.1.7:UDMcast: invalid GID error	Page 1055	8
● o15-0.1.8:UDMcast: unrealizable group error	Page 1055	9
● o15-0.3.3:UDMcast: error creating without fullmember	Page 1055	10
● o15-0.1.10:Obsolete	Page 1055	11
● o15-0.2.4:UDMcast: joining a MCast group	Page 1055	12
● o15-0.1.11:UDMcast: updating joinstate on join	Page 1056	13
● o15-0.3.4:UDMcast: updating joinstate on send only join	Page 1056	14
● o15-0.1.13:UDMcast: error on bad join request	Page 1056	15
● o15-0.1.14:UDMcast: leaving MCast group	Page 1057	16
● o15-0.2-1.9:UDMcast: updating joinstate on group leave	Page 1057	17
● o15-0.1.15:UDMcast: updating joinstate on group leave	Page 1057	18
● o15-0.1.16:Obsolete	Page 1057	19
● o15-0.2.5:Obsolete	Page 1058	20
● o15-0.1.17:Obsolete	Page 1061	21
● o15-0.2.6:MPath: IDComponents not IBA identifiers	Page 1061	22
● o15-3.2-1.10:MPath: Ignore SDGID mask bits	Page 1063	23
● o15-0.1.18:Obsolete	Page 1064	24
● o15-0.2.7:Obsolete	Page 1064	25
● o15-3.2-1.11:MPath: MultiPathRecord query required	Page 1064	26
● o15-3.2-1.12:MPath: Ignore ComponentMask	Page 1064	27
● C15-3.1.18:SA use of single-sided RMPP transfer	Page 1068	28
● C15-3.1.19:obsolete	Page 1068	29
● C15-3.2-1.14:SA use of double-sided RMPP transfer	Page 1068	30
● C15-3.1.20:SA RMPP specifies exact PayloadLength	Page 1068	31
● C15-3.1.21:Access Restrictions for Path Records	Page 1069	32
● C15-3.1.22:obsolete	Page 1070	33
● C15-3.2.15:Access Restrictions for Other Attributes	Page 1070	34
● C15-3.1.23:Obsolete	Page 1070	35
● C15-3.2.16:Obsolete	Page 1070	36
● C15-3.2-1.17:Other SA access restrictitons	Page 1071	37
● C15-3.1.24:How to find the SA	Page 1071	38
● C15-3.1.25:SA redirection or other information to find	Page 1071	39
● C15-3.1.26:SA Event forwarding Conforms to General Model	Page 1072	40
● C15-3.1.27:Component Mask Bit Assignments	Page 1072	41
● C15-3.1.28:Obsolete	Page 1073	42
● C15-3.2.18:ComponentMask matching rules	Page 1073	43
● C15-3.1.29:SA may refuse a request, with status	Page 1074	44
● C15-3.1.30:SubnAdmGet() returns data	Page 1075	45
● C15-3.1.31:SubnAdmGet() returns status	Page 1075	46
● C15-3.1.32:SubnAdmSet() Can Add an attribute	Page 1076	47
● C15-3.2-1.19:SubnAdmSet() status for too many records	Page 1076	48
● C15-3.1.33:Invalid SubnAdmSet() returns status	Page 1076	49
● C15-3.2-1.20:SubnAdmDelete() status for too many records	Page 1077	50
● o15-0.1.19:Obsolete	Page 1077	51
● o15-0.2.8:MPath: Query must reject invalid requests	Page 1077	52
● o15-0.1.20:MPath: TraceRecord query must be supported	Page 1077	53

20.9 COMMUNICATION MANAGER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Communication Manager, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addi-

tion, a compliant Communication Manager **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

Though a number of optional CM-specific features exist, no CM-unique qualifiers have been defined since the optional CM-specific features are fully described within the CM Chapter, and most of the chapter's optional compliance statements would require unique qualifiers.

● C12-2:	Required CM adherence to CM protocol.	Page 713
● C12-3:	CM message content requirements	Page 713
● C12-4:	REJ message support required.	Page 713
● C12-5:	Req'd behavior upon receipt of MRA message.	Page 713
● o12-1:	Reqs if supports sending REQ message	Page 713
● o12-2:	Reqs if supports sending MRA message	Page 713
● o12-3:	Reqs if supports sending REP message	Page 713
● o12-4:	Reqs if supports sending RTU message	Page 713
● o12-5:	Reqs if supports sending DREQ message	Page 714
● o12-6:	Reqs if supports sending DREP message	Page 714
● o12-7:	Req'd snd/rcv msgs if initiates connect requests	Page 714
● o12-8:	Req'd snd/rcv msgs if accepts connect requests	Page 714
● o12-9:	DREP handling is required if sends DREQ msg	Page 714
● o12-10:	Reqs if supports sending SIDR_REQ message	Page 714
● o12-11:	Reqs if supports sending SIDR REP message	Page 714
● o12-13:	APM: Conditions when receiving LAP required.	Page 715
● o12-14:	APM: Conditions when sending LAP required	Page 715
● o12-14.1.1:	APM: Conditions when sending SAP and SPR required	Page 715
● C12-5.1.1:	CM MAD Status Values.	Page 715
● C12-5.1.2:	CM MAD TransactionID value.	Page 715
● C12-5.1.3:	Response generation rules.	Page 716
● C16-14:	Obsolete	Page 1182
● C16-15:	Datagram format.	Page 1183
● C16-15.1.1:	MADHeader:ClassVersion = 2	Page 1183
● C16-15.1.2:	Required methods.	Page 1184
● C16-15.1.3:	Required attributes and methods	Page 1184

20.10 PERFORMANCE MANAGER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Performance Manager, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Performance Manager **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C13-27.1.1:	Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798
● C13-30.1.1:	Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802
● C13-31:	Obsolete	Page 811
● o13-5.1.1:	Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812
● C13-32.1.1:	Manager with Notice attributes must do forwarding	Page 815
● o13-12:	Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-12.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815
● C13-32.2.1:	Ignore duplicate subscriptions	Page 815
● o13-13:	Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-13.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815
● o13-14:	Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-14.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816
● C13-32.2.2:	Must verify all subscriptions	Page 816

● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding.	Page 817
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820
● C16-2: PM MADs Follow Common MAD Format & Usage	Page 1080
● C16-8: Obsolete	Page 1102

20.11 VENDOR-DEFINED MANAGER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Vendor-Defined Manager, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Vendor-Defined Manager **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

● C13-27.1.1:Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798
● C13-30.1.1:Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802
● o13-1: Obsolete	Page 802
● o13-1.1:Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format	Page 802
● o13-2: Obsolete	Page 804
● o13-2.1.1:Trap or Notice: InformInfo format	Page 805
● C13-31: Obsolete	Page 811
● o13-5.1.1:Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812
● C13-32.1.1:Manager with Notice attribues must do forwarding.	Page 815
● o13-12: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-12.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815
● C13-32.2.1:Ignore duplicate subscriptions.	Page 815
● o13-13: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-13.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815
● o13-14: Obsolete	Page 815
● o13-14.1.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816
● C13-32.2.2:Must verify all subscriptions.	Page 816
● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding.	Page 817
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820
● o13-21.1.1:RMPP: Required packet formats	Page 843
● o13-21.1.2:RMPP: RMPP header	Page 843
● o13-21.1.3:RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header .	Page 843
● o13-21.1.4:RMPP: version = 1	Page 843
● o13-21.1.5:RMPP: status codes	Page 844
● o13-21.1.6:RMPP: dispatcher behavior	Page 855
● o13-21.1.7:RMPP: Receiver behavior	Page 857
● o13-21.1.8:RMPP: Sender behavior	Page 860

20.12 OPTIONAL MANAGEMENT AGENT COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Volume 1 specification to the Compliance Category of Optional Management Agent, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. In addition, a compliant Optional Management Agent **shall** meet all Section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

- [C13-28:](#) ClassPortInfo Required for each Agent..... Page 799
- [C13-29:](#) ClassPortInfo Required For Each Agent Port..... Page 799
- [C13-30.1.2:](#) Agent must do Trap or Notice Queue if Notices..... Page 802
- [o13-1:](#) Obsolete Page 802
- [o13-1.1.1:](#) Trap or Notice:Notice Attribute Format Page 802
- [o13-2:](#) Obsolete Page 804
- [o13-2.1.1:](#) Trap or Notice: InformInfo format Page 805
- [C13-32:](#) Trap: No Traps Without TrapDLID Target..... Page 812
- [o13-2.a1:](#) Trap: parameters from ClassPortInfo and PortInfo Page 812
- [o13-3:](#) Trap: Maximum Rate of Generation Page 812
- [o13-4:](#) Trap: Use of Notice Attribute Page 812
- [o13-5:](#) Trap: Transaction ID setting Page 812
- [o13-6:](#) Trap: Response to TrapRepress Page 813
- [o13-7:](#) Trap: TrapRepress Dropped if No Matching Trap Page 813
- [o13-8:](#) Notice: Notice Queue is FIFO Page 813
- [o13-9:](#) Notice: NoticeCount semantics Page 813
- [o13-10:](#) Obsolete Page 813
- [o13-10.1.1:](#) Notice: Returning a Notice from Notice Queue Page 813
- [o13-11:](#) Notice: Response to Set(Notice) Page 814
- [C13-34:](#) GSA MADs Directed to QP1 Page 820
- [o13-21.1.1:](#) RMPP: Required packet formats Page 843
- [o13-21.1.2:](#) RMPP: RMPP header Page 843
- [o13-21.1.3:](#) RMPP: RMPPFlags.Active=0 ignores rest of header Page 843
- [o13-21.1.4:](#) RMPP: version = 1 Page 843
- [o13-21.1.5:](#) RMPP: status codes Page 844
- [o13-21.1.6:](#) RMPP: dispatcher behavior Page 855
- [o13-21.1.7:](#) RMPP: Receiver behavior Page 857
- [o13-21.1.8:](#) RMPP: Sender behavior Page 860
- [o16-4:](#) DMA: Device Management datagram format Page 1154
- [o16-4.1.1:](#) DMA: Required methods Page 1156
- [o16-4.1.2:](#) DMA: required attributes Page 1157
- [o16-5:](#) DMA and Trap or Notice: DM Trap DataDetails Page 1159
- [o16-6:](#) SNMP: datagram format Page 1166
- [o16-6.1.1:](#) SNMP: required methods Page 1168
- [o16-6.1.2:](#) SNMP: required attributes Page 1168
- [o16-7:](#) SNMP: Multipacket SNMP MADs Filled Page 1169
- [o16-8:](#) SNMP: Multipacket SNMP Timeout Action Page 1170
- [o16-9:](#) SNMP: Multipacket SNMP Transaction ID Page 1170
- [o16-10:](#) SNMP: SNMP Information Passthrough Page 1170
- [o16-11:](#) SNMP: SNMP Tunnelling Must Exist Page 1171
- [o16-12:](#) Obsolete Page 1173
- [o16-12.1.1:](#) VMA: Vendor class datagram format 1 Page 1173
- [Table 353](#) VMA: Vendor class datagram format 2 Page 1173
- [Table 355](#) VMA: Vendor class datagram format 2 Page 1175
- [o16-13:](#) Obsolete Page 1177
- [o16-14:](#) AMA: Application-specific mgt datagram format Page 1179
- [o16-15:](#) Obsolete Page 1181

Common Port Requirements

Multiple Compliance Categories share common Port Requirements. To avoid unnecessary duplication, Port Requirements are collected here and referenced by the appropriate Compliance Categories.

● C5-1:	Packet Structure and Packet Header Location	Page 168	4
● C5-2:	LRH Packet Header Format	Page 171	5
● C5-3:	GRH Packet Format	Page 171	5
● C5-4:	BTH Packet Format.	Page 172	6
● C5-5:	Datagram Extended Transport Header Format.	Page 174	7
● C5-6:	ACK Extended Transport Header Format.	Page 177	8
● C5-7:	Payload Size Limited to MTU bytes	Page 179	9
● C5-8:	Last or Only Packet of a Message	Page 179	9
● C5-9:	Pad Field Usage in IBA Transport Packets	Page 179	9
● C7-1:	Port Link State Machine and Terms	Page 187	10
● C7-1.1.1:	Port Link State Machine and Terms	Page 187	11
● C7-2:	Allowed Management Command Port States	Page 188	12
● C7-3:	Allowed Mgmt Command Port State Transitions.	Page 188	12
● C7-4.1.1:	Packet Receiver State Machine	Page 191	13
● C7-8:	Obsolete	Page 194	14
● C7-8.1.1:	Data Packet Check State Machine	Page 194	14
● C7-10:	Packet Check State Machine - Discard Failures.	Page 194	15
● C7-11:	Data Packet Checks - Corrupt/Discard Rules.	Page 194	15
● C7-12:	Link Packet Check State Machine	Page 197	16
● C7-13:	Virtual Lanes - Rules for Protol-Aware IBA Ports	Page 199	17
● o7-2:	VLs: Flow Control - IBA Port Rules	Page 199	17
● C7-14:	Virtual Lane Field Use - IBA Protocol-Aware Port	Page 201	18
● C7-15:	Virtual Lane Numbering and Legal Configurations	Page 201	19
● C7-16:	Virtual Lanes - VL0 and VL15 are mandatory	Page 201	19
● o7-3:	VLs: Rules for VL Configurations	Page 201	20
● C7-17:	Data VLs Start from 0 and Go Up Sequentially.	Page 201	21
● C7-18:	VL15 is not Subject to Flow Control	Page 202	22
● C7-19:	Discard VL15 if Receive Buffer is Full.	Page 202	22
● C7-20:	Protocol-Aware Ports - VL15 Packet Support.	Page 202	23
● C7-23:	VL15 Packets Preempt Other Outbound Packets.	Page 202	24
● C7-25:	VL15 Packets - SL Usage Rules	Page 202	24
● C7-26:	No GRH Allowed on VL15 Packets.	Page 202	25
● C7-27:	VL15 Packets - Payload Maximum	Page 202	26
● C7-28:	Per Port Buffering Resources	Page 202	26
● C7-29:	Use Flow Control Packets to Advertise Credit	Page 203	27
● C7-30:	Link Packet Send and Receive	Page 203	27
● C7-31:	Minimum Buffer Resources per VL	Page 204	28
● C7-32:	VL on Incoming Packet Specifies Receive Buffer	Page 204	29
● o7-4:	VLs: SL-to-VL Mapping and VL Arbitration Rules	Page 204	29
● C7-34:	SL Sourcing Rule for Single-VL Ports	Page 205	30
● o7-8:	VLs: SL-to-VL Mapping and Behavior	Page 206	31
● o7-9:	VLs: SLtoVLMappingTable and Port Behavior	Page 207	31
● C7-35:	VL Arbitration - Packet Ordering Requirements	Page 208	32
● o7-10:	VL Arbitration Rules - Single Data VL	Page 208	33
● o7-11:	VLs: VL Arbitration Rules - Multiple Data VLs.	Page 209	33
● o7-12:	VLs: More VL Arbitr. Rules - Multiple Data VLs.	Page 209	34
● C7-36:	LRH Header Format	Page 215	35
● C7-37:	LRH VL Field Value	Page 215	36
● C7-38:	LRH LVer Field Value	Page 215	36
● C7-39:	LRH Reserve Field Value	Page 216	37
● C7-40:	LRH Link Next Header (LNH) Field Value	Page 216	38
● C7-41:	LRH Reserve Field Value	Page 216	38
● C7-42:	LRH Packet Length Field Value	Page 216	39
● C7-43:	LRH Minimum Packet Length - IBA Transport	Page 217	40
● C7-44:	LRH Min. Packet Length - non-IBA Transport.	Page 217	40
● C7-45:	LRH Maximum Value for Packet Length Field.	Page 217	41
● C7-46:	LRH SLID Field Value	Page 217	42

● C7-47:	ICRC Field - Required for IBA Transport Packets	Page 218	1
● C7-48:	ICRC Field Value.	Page 218	2
● C7-49:	VCRC Field - Required for All Data Packets.	Page 220	3
● C7-50:	VCRC Field Value	Page 220	4
● C7-51:	LPCRC Field - Required in All Link Packets	Page 220	5
● C7-52:	LPCRC Field Value	Page 220	6
● C7-53:	Flow Control Packet Rules	Page 233	7
● C7-54:	Flow Contol Packet Format.	Page 233	8
● C7-55:	Flow Control Init Operand.	Page 233	9
● C7-56:	Flow Control - Normal Operand	Page 233	10
● C7-57:	Flow Control Packets - Reserved Op Field Values	Page 233	11
● C7-58:	Flow Control - FCTBS - Initialization	Page 234	12
● C7-59:	Flow Control - FCTBS - Initialize PortState.	Page 234	13
● C7-60:	Flow Control - ABR counter - Initialization.	Page 234	14
● C7-61:	Flow Control - ABR - Update Mechanism	Page 234	15
● C7-62:	Flow Control - ABR - Update/Discard Rule	Page 234	16
● C7-63:	Flow Control - FCCL - Calculation Method	Page 234	17
● C7-64:	Data Packet Transmission - Credit Rules	Page 235	18
● C7-65:	Flow Control - VL15 Packets are Not Subject.	Page 235	19
● o7-16:	Obsolete	Page 237	20
● o7-16.1.1:	UDMcast: Multicast Operational Rules	Page 237	21
● C7-67:	Link Layer - Classification of Errors on Receive	Page 243	22
● C7-68:	Link Layer - Precedence of Error Counters.	Page 243	23
● C7-69:	Obsolete	Page 243	24
● C7-69.1.1:	Link Layer - Link Integrity and Overrun Errors	Page 243	25
● C7-70:	Link Layer - Detection of Flow Control Errors	Page 244	26
● C7-71:	Link Layer - Retraining Rules	Page 244	27
● C8-2:	GRH Rule for IPVer Value.	Page 250	28
● C8-3:	GRH Rule for TClass Value.	Page 250	29
● C8-4:	GRH Rule for Unused FlowLabel Value	Page 250	30
● C8-5:	GRH Rule for FlowLabel Value If Used.	Page 250	31
● C8-6:	GRH Rule for PayLen Value	Page 250	32
● C8-7:	GRH Rule for NxtHdr Value - IBA Transport	Page 250	33
● C8-8:	GRH Rule for NxtHdr Value - Raw Transport	Page 251	34
● C8-9:	GRH Rule for HopLmt Value.	Page 251	35
● C8-10:	GRH Rule for SGID Value.	Page 251	36
● C8-11:	GRH Rule for DGID Value.	Page 251	37
● C8-19:	GRH Verification/Discard Rules	Page 252	38
● C9-1:	BTH - Required for Packets Using IBA Transport	Page 256	39
● C9-36:	Transport Layer - BTH TVer Field - Validation.	Page 295	40
● o9-165:	Static Rate Control - Interpacket Delay.	Page 458	41
● C9-226:	Static Rate Control - Unsupp. Value(s) - Behavior	Page 458	42
● o10-55:	Obsolete	Page 559	43
● o10-55.1.1:	P_Key traps: general requirements.	Page 559	44
● o10-56:	P_Key traps: new violation before trap sent	Page 559	45
● o10-57:	P_Key counters: general requirements.	Page 559	46

20.13 COMMON MAD REQUIREMENTS

Multiple Compliance Categories share common Management Datagram Requirements. To avoid unnecessary duplication, Management Datagram Requirements are collected here and referenced by the appropriate Compliance Categories.

● C13-2:	MAD Conventions and Data Placement	Page 780	38
● C13-3:	MAD Length	Page 781	39
● C13-4:	obsolete.	Page 781	40
● C13-4.2-1.1:	MAD Base Format	Page 781	41
● C13-5:	MADHeader:MgmtHeader Values	Page 783	42
● C13-6:	MAD Method Names and Method Values	Page 785	43

● C13-7:	Assigned Method Values Otherwise Unused	Page 785	1
● C13-8:	Class Specific Methods Request/Response	Page 785	2
● C13-8.1.1:	MAD retry interval	Page 787	3
● C13-9:	Responders Shall Not Coalesce Responses	Page 787	4
● C13-10:	Obsolete	Page 788	5
● C13-10.1.1:	GetResp() Required for Every Valid Get()	Page 788	6
● C13-11:	Obsolete	Page 788	7
● C13-11.1.1:	GetResp() Required for Every Valid Set()	Page 788	8
● C13-12:	Obsolete	Page 788	9
● C13-12.1.1:	GetResp() semantics	Page 788	10
● C13-12.1.2:	ReportResp() required	Page 790	11
● C13-13:	Obsolete	Page 791	12
● C13-13.1.1:	Default RespTimeValue is 4.3 sec.	Page 791	13
● C13-14:	Appropriate RespTimeValue (General)	Page 792	14
● C13-15:	RespTimeValue for other cases	Page 792	15
● C13-15.1.1:	RespTimeValue for Report/ReptResp	Page 793	16
● C13-16:	RespTimeValue for Request/Response Seq's	Page 794	17
● C13-17:	Obsolete	Page 794	18
● C13-18:	Obsolete	Page 794	19
● C13-18.1.1:	Choosing MADHeader:TransactionID	Page 794	20
● C13-19:	Obsolete	Page 794	21
● C13-19.1.1:	TID, SGID, MgmtClass to Associate Messages	Page 794	22
● C13-20:	TransactionID for Request Sequences	Page 794	23
● C13-21:	TransactionID for Responses	Page 794	24
● C13-22:	TransactionID for Response Sequences	Page 794	25
● C13-23:	TransactionID for Message Sequences	Page 795	26
● C13-24:	Common Status Field Bit Values for Responses	Page 795	27
● C13-25:	Obsolete	Page 795	28
● C13-26:	Unused Attribute Modifier is Set to 0	Page 797	29
● C13-27:	Same Attribute Format for Get, Set, GetResp	Page 797	30
● C13-38:	GMPs Done Below Verbs Invisible to Verbs	Page 822	31
● C13-39:	Obsolete	Page 822	32
● C13-39.1.1:	GMPs Above Verbs Appear on QP1	Page 822	33
● C13-40:	GMPs Always Validated As If on QP1	Page 823	34
● C13-41:	GMPs Dispatched to Agents	Page 823	35
● C13-42:	GMP Redirection from QP1	Page 824	36
● C13-42.1.1:	GMP Redirection from QP not 1	Page 824	37
● C13-43:	GMP Redirection-Required Status	Page 824	38
● C13-43.1.1:	Redirection is sticky	Page 824	39
● C13-44:	GRH in Redirection Only If In ClassPortInfo	Page 825	40
● C13-45:	Obsolete	Page 825	41
● C13-45.1.1:	SMP Validation	Page 825	42
● o13-18:	SMP GetResponse() Status Values	Page 826	43
● C13-46:	Processing of Directed Route SMPs	Page 827	44
● C13-47:	GMP Validation	Page 827	45
● o13-19:	GMP GetResponse() Status Values	Page 827	46
● C13-48:	No QP1 When No GSM Above Verbs	Page 828	47
● o13-20:	Obsolete	Page 828	48
● C13-48.1.1:	Validation of Redirected GMPs	Page 828	49
● C13-49:	Obsolete	Page 828	50
● C13-49.1.1:	Validation of all MADs	Page 828	51
● C13-50:	Action When GMPs Fail Validation	Page 829	52
● o13-21:	GetResponse() Status on Failed Validation	Page 829	53
● C13-50.1.1:	Sender must use a reversible path	Page 840	54
● C13-51:	Obsolete	Page 840	55
● C13-51.1.1:	Response Packet Construction, no GRH	Page 841	56
● C13-52:	Obsolete	Page 841	57
● C13-52.1.1:	Response Packet Construction With GRH	Page 841	58
● C14-1:	SMP Required MgmtClass Values	Page 866	59
● C14-2:	SMPs Conform to General MAD Format, Use	Page 866	60
● C14-3:	LID Routed SMP Required Format	Page 866	61
● C14-4:	Directed Routed SMP Required Format	Page 867	62

● C14-5:	Only an SM Shall Originate a Directed route SMP.....	Page 871	1
● C14-5.a1:	SM initializes LIDs for LID/Directed Routes	Page 871	2
● C14-6:	Directed Route SMP Field Initialization.....	Page 872	3
● C14-7:	Directed Route SMP UD Field Initialization.....	Page 873	4
● C14-9:	Outgoing Directed Route SMP Handling.....	Page 873	5
● C14-10:	Directed Route SMP Field Initialization.....	Page 875	6
● C14-11:	Directed Route Response Header Initialization	Page 875	7
			8
			9
			10
			11
			12
			13
			14
			15
			16
			17
			18
			19
			20
			21
			22
			23
			24
			25
			26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

ANNEX A1: I/O INFRASTRUCTURE

A1.1 INTRODUCTION

A1.1.1 PURPOSE

This document is a supplement to Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base document.

It is an informative annex and does not contain any compliance requirements. This annex describes the InfiniBand I/O framework and recommends various policies for discovering, managing, and using I/O devices attached via the IB fabric.

A1.1.2 GLOSSARY

This annex uses the following terms in addition to the terms defined in the base document Glossary (Chapter 2).

Compatibility String	An ASCII string used to match an I/O controller with a compatible I/O Device Driver .
I/O Device Driver	Code, typically in a host, that is used to control an I/O device. I/O device drivers allow programs in the host to control I/O devices in a device independent way. An I/O device driver may be a generic driver designed for a standard I/O Protocol regardless of the device vendor, or it may be a vendor-specific driver, for a particular vendor's device or set of devices.
I/O Initiator	An I/O client that sends I/O commands to an I/O device.
I/O Protocol	The set of rules governing the content and exchange of I/O related information passed between host platforms and I/O controllers.
SCSI RDMA Protocol	A Storage Protocol defined by T10 that maps SCSI onto transport protocols (such as IBA) that support remote DMA. It specifically provides an annex that maps SCSI onto IBA.
Service Connection	All the channels that a single initiator establishes with a particular I/O controller.
SRP	SCSI RDMA Protocol
Storage Protocol	An I/O Protocol specifically for storage devices.

A1.2 PRINCIPLES OF I/O

A1.2.1 I/O OPERATION OVERVIEW

The IBA fabric provides a scalable interconnect that supports numerous I/O devices. As an I/O network, IBA supports many different configurations such as direct connected I/O (an I/O unit directly connected to a host's HCA port without a switch), single system (a single host, a switch, and a number of I/O units) as in [Figure 237](#), multiple systems (multiple hosts with I/O units dedicated to each one) as in [Figure 238](#) and other configurations (where I/O devices may be shared among multiple hosts).

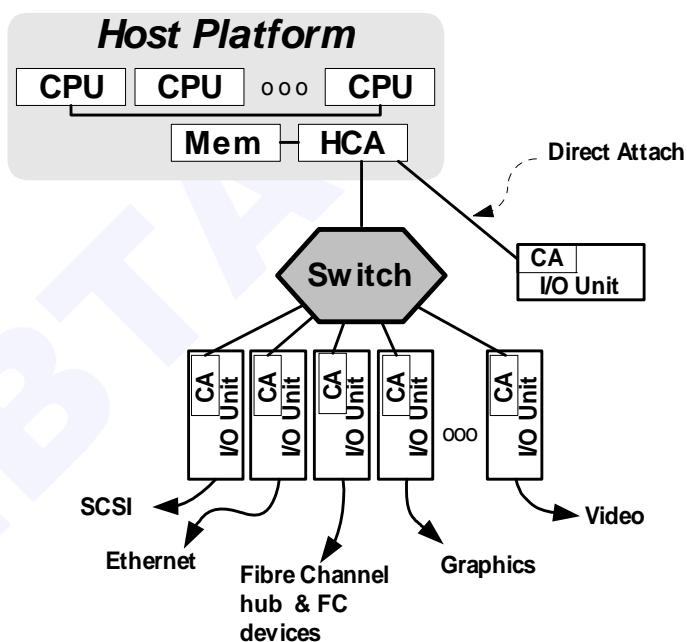


Figure 237 Single System & Direct Attached I/O

I/O units might contain one or more constructs referred to as I/O controllers. Each I/O controller may choose to support only a single initiator (e.g., a host) or might support multiple initiators (either sequentially or concurrently). Each I/O controller may be simple (i.e., provide a single QP for each initiator) or complex and use multiple channels with each initiator. The term service connection refers to all the channels that a single initiator establishes with an I/O controller. When an I/O controller cannot support an additional initiator, the IOU's CM rejects CM:REQ messages with an appropriate reject code (e.g., No QP Available, No Resources Available, Invalid ServiceID, and Consumer Reject).

An I/O unit is composed of a channel adapter (HCA or TCA) and a number of I/O controllers. A platform that is a host might also provide I/O capabilities in which case that host is also considered an I/O unit. A managed I/O

unit is an I/O unit that supports Device Management; the mechanism an I/O unit uses to deliver information about the I/O unit's I/O resources. Class version 1 of device management is specified in the base document section 16.3 "Device Management". Class version 2 is specified in [Annex A8: Device Management](#).

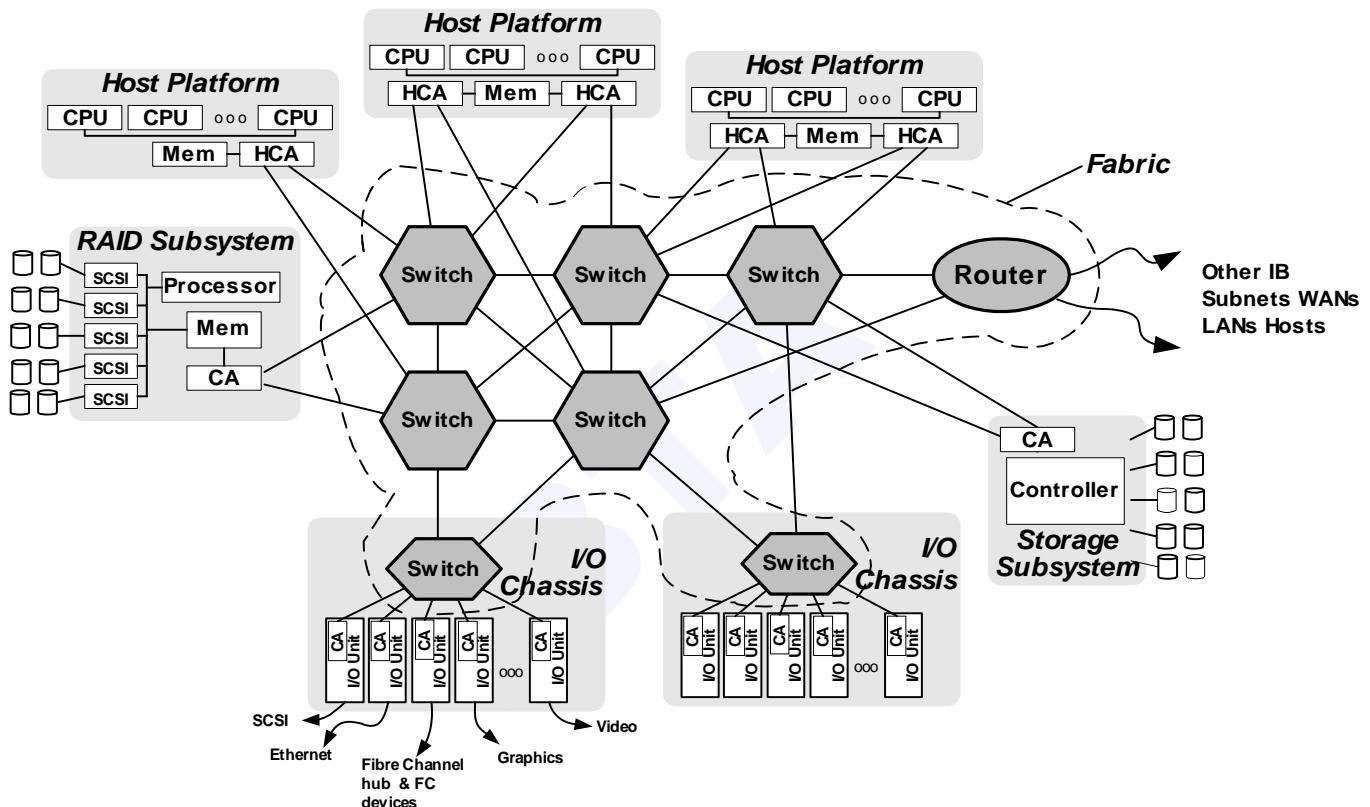


Figure 238 Multiple Systems

I/O operation is independent of subnet complexity. The host enumerates I/O controllers within a managed I/O unit by querying the I/O unit. A host may discover I/O units in its partitions by querying Subnet Administration (SA) and/or the Configuration Manager (CFM). A CFM, if it exists, provides information about I/O controllers to particular hosts. The host may query the CFM to retrieve a list of its I/O controllers. The host can register with the CFM to be notified about new arrivals and removals. The CFM is defined in the "Configuration Management" annex. Specific use of I/O controllers for booting is captured in the Booting Annex and is outside the scope of this annex.

The host may retrieve information about each I/O controller in a managed I/O unit using DevMgtGet MADs. Using controller and protocol information from the DevMgtGet(s), the host is able to match an I/O device driver to

that controller. The host then invokes the I/O device driver which establishes necessary connections with the I/O controller and enumerates I/O ports and/or devices behind the I/O controller. At this point, operation is strictly in the hands of the I/O device driver and outside the scope of the IB specification.

A1.2.2 MANAGED I/O UNITS

IB Device Management class specifies methods and attributes used for managing IB devices that provide I/O. IB devices managed by these device management methods and attributes are referred to as managed I/O units.

The architectural model of a managed I/O unit is illustrated in [Figure 239](#).

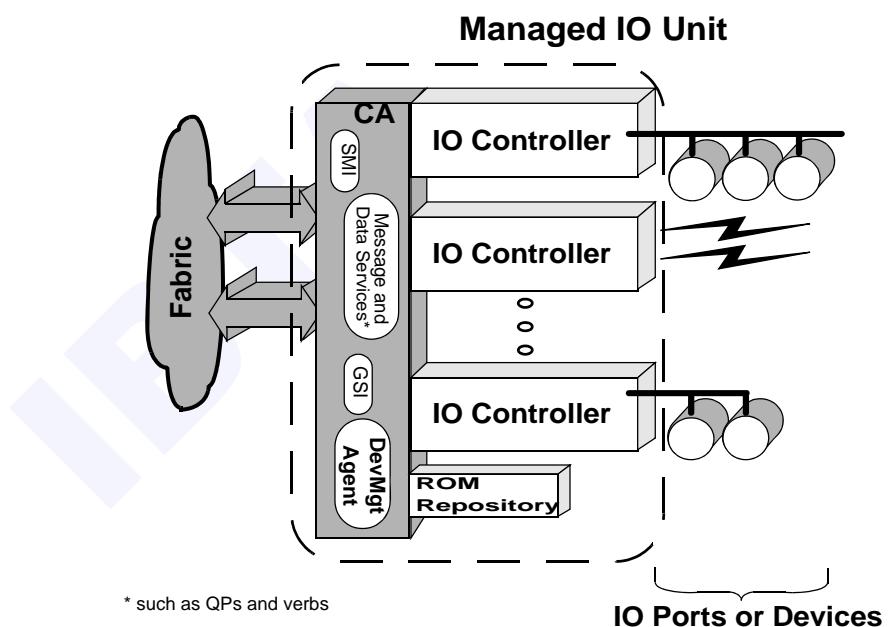


Figure 239 **Architectural Model for a Managed I/O**

The Device Management Class specifies messages that can be used for determining the number of I/O controllers for a managed I/O unit and the existence of an optional ROM repository. Using these methods and attributes, a host can determine the protocols and services supported by each I/O controller, as well as other capabilities of the I/O controllers. See chapter 16 and [Annex A8:](#) for additional information.

A1.2.3 ROM REPOSITORY

The ROM repository, illustrated in [Figure 239](#), provides a means for managed I/O units to supply I/O device drivers for controlling IOCs during booting. The ROM repository may also contain other information such as

downloaded microcode or data related to initializing and using IOCs. For additional information, see Boot Management Annex.

A1.2.4 I/O DEVICE DRIVERS

I/O Device Drivers are code images which drive I/O controllers. An I/O device driver may be vendor-specific for a particular vendor's I/O controller or set of similar I/O controllers, or it may be a standard I/O device driver designed for a standard I/O protocol regardless of the I/O controller vendor.

This section describes the recommended practice for a device manager to match an I/O controller with an appropriate I/O device driver. This is the practice mandated for matching boot drivers in the ROM repository (see Booting Annex).

Each I/O device driver image, regardless of whether or not it is stored in a ROM repository, is associated with a set of character strings which identify the I/O protocols and/or vendor products which the I/O device driver supports. These character strings are called "compatibility strings." An I/O device driver image may be associated with one or more compatibility strings, depending on the number of protocols and/or vendor products which it supports. These compatibility strings allow the I/O device driver to be matched with I/O controllers with which it can be used.

A1.2.4.1 MATCHING AN I/O CONTROLLER WITH AN I/O DEVICE DRIVER

The process of matching an I/O device driver with an I/O controller involves creating a set of compatibility strings for the I/O controller, and comparing the compatibility strings generated for the I/O controller to the compatibility strings associated with each I/O device driver. If one of the compatibility strings associated with the I/O device driver matches one of the compatibility strings of the I/O controller, then the driver may be used with the I/O controller.

A1.2.4.1.1 CREATING COMPATIBILITY STRINGS FOR AN I/O CONTROLLER

In order to generate the compatibility strings for an IOC, a host sends DevMgtGet(s) to the managed I/O unit containing the IOC requesting IOControllerProfile and other pertinent attributes. The attributes contain a set of components identifying the IOC and its vendor (VendorID, LocDeviceID, Device Version, Subsystem VendorID, SubsystemID), and a set of components identifying the protocols supported by the IOC (I/O Class, I/O Subclass, Protocol, and Protocol Version). These components are in binary format. See [A3.3 "I/O Controller Identification" on page 1356](#) for additional details regarding the component values corresponding to various protocols.

The host converts the binary value of each component into its ASCII representation with a leading designator. For example, if the IOControllerPro-

file Device Version component was 0xabcd, which is a 16-bit quantity, then the ASCII string into which it is converted is 'abcd', which is a 40-bit quantity. [Table 380](#) specifies how the DevMgt attribute components are converted into an ASCII string.

Table 380 ASCII String Representations of DevMgt Components

Component Name	Component Length	ASCII String Representation of Component ^a	ASCII String Length
V - VendorID:	24 bits	V <u>xxxxxx</u>	56 bits
P - locDeviceID (product):	32 bits	P <u>xxxxxxxx</u>	72 bits
v - Device Version	16 bits	v <u>xxxx</u>	40 bits
S - Subsystem VendorID:	24 bits	S <u>xxxxxx</u>	56 bits
s - Subsystem ID:	32 bits	s <u>xxxxxxxx</u>	72 bits
C - Class:	16 bits	C <u>xxxx</u>	40 bits
c - SubClass:	16 bits	c <u>xxxx</u>	40 bits
p - Protocol:	16 bits	p <u>xxxx</u>	40 bits
r - Protocol version:	16 bits	r <u>xxxx</u>	40 bits

a. x = hexadecimal character in lower case ASCII (0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,a,b,c,d,e,f)

The host generates the following six compatibility strings by concatenating the ASCII strings from [Table 380](#) into the compatibility strings of [Table 381](#).

Table 381 Compatibility Strings

Compatibility String			String Length (Bytes)
Vendor/Product Strings	1	V <u>xxxxxx</u> P <u>xxxxxxxx</u> S <u>xxxxxx</u> s <u>xxxxxxxxxxxx</u> v <u>xxxx</u>	37
	2	V <u>xxxxxx</u> P <u>xxxxxxxx</u> S <u>xxxxxx</u> s <u>xxxxxxxx</u>	32
	3	V <u>xxxxxx</u> P <u>xxxxxxxx</u> v <u>xxxx</u>	21
	4	V <u>xxxxxx</u> P <u>xxxxxxxx</u>	16
Class Strings	5	C <u>xxxx</u> c <u>xxxx</u> p <u>xxxx</u> r <u>xxxx</u>	20
	6	C <u>xxxx</u> c <u>xxxx</u> p <u>xxxx</u>	15

A1.2.4.1.2 COMPARING COMPATIBILITY STRINGS

The compatibility strings shown in [Table 381](#) serve as product or protocol designators. Since I/O device drivers are written for particular products, family of products, or specific protocols, each compatibility string represents the potential name of a compatible I/O device driver. Thus, they are convenient strings used to unambiguously reference a driver. Each driver can thus be represented by one or more I/O device driver names of the format shown in [Table 381](#) (i.e., one name per product, product family, or protocol that the driver can control). The driver writer selects the I/O device driver name (or names) to express how closely an implementation of an I/O device driver matches a particular product or protocol.

In order to match an I/O device driver with an IOC, the host generates the first string in [Table 381](#) and compares it against the list of I/O device driver names for each I/O device driver. If it finds an exact match between the generated string describing the IOC and an entry in the list of I/O device driver names, then the host selects that driver. If no match is found, the host repeats the process by generating and comparing the second string (and then each of the following strings) until it finds a match. If no match is found between any of the generated strings and any I/O device driver names, there is no matching driver.

Note that strings in [Table 381 on page 1294](#) are listed from most specific to least specific. The order assumes that an IOC which works with a generic “class” driver (which matches the 5th or 6th compatibility string), will work better with a product-and-version-specific driver matching the first string, if it is present.

The order of search is specifically called out so that the driver matching algorithm will produce deterministic results and select more specific drivers over more generic drivers. This allows I/O device driver writers and hardware vendors to know which drivers will supersede which other drivers in the various different host environments.

A1.2.4.2 USING AN I/O CONTROLLER

Each IOU contains one or more IOCs and each IOC contains one or more I/O objects. The following is a walk-through of the process that a host might perform in order to use an IO object.

To communicate with IOC, the host needs to determine the address (LID and/or GID) of the I/O unit containing the IOC and it needs to know the I/O controller GUID. This information can be obtained in a number of ways. In a fully managed subnet, the host can query the CFM to learn of its I/O objects, otherwise the host needs to remember its I/O objects or “walk the bus” and discover its I/O objects (see [A1.3.1 “I/O Device Resolution” on page 1298](#) for additional information regarding the determination of I/O objects and I/O unit address.)

If the host knows the I/O controller GUID and needs to locate the IOU, the steps differ depending on whether the IOU's Device Management agent supports Class Version 1 or 2.

- For class version 1, the host sends a DevMgtGet(IOUnitInfo) to each IOU in order to obtain a list of I/O slots in the I/O unit. For each slot containing an IOC, the host sends a DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) to determine whether the IOC in the requested slot has the proper I/O Controller GUID.

When a slot containing the IOC with the desired GUID is found, the host uses information in the IOControllerProfile attribute to match the IOC with an I/O device driver. (See [A1.2.4.1 "Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver" on page 1293](#).)

At this point the host has found the IOC and matched it with an appropriate I/O device driver. The I/O device driver needs to establish I/O service with the IOC. This entails the host setting up one or more connections with the IOC for exchanging control and data. However, an IOC might support multiple I/O protocols. The process is to query the IOU via a DevMgtGet(ServiceEntries) and match the service name of the particular I/O protocol to get the ServiceID (used by the CM to connect to a QP). The IOC lists protocols in its service entries list by their Service Name. Thus, the ServiceEntries attribute translates the Service Name to a service ID.

Each I/O protocol has its own service name and the I/O device driver uses that service name to derive the service ID, which it subsequently uses in a CM:REQ message. At the target, the Service ID distinguishes both the IOC and the protocol.

Thus, after the appropriate I/O device driver is found, the host sends a DevMgtGet(ServiceEntries) request to the IOC in that slot to obtain a list of ServiceNames and their corresponding Service IDs. The I/O device driver then establishes one or more connections with the IOC using the ServiceID(s) corresponding to the ServiceName(s) specified by the I/O device driver. (Note that the ServiceNames for an I/O device driver is designed into the I/O device driver.)

- For class version 2, the host simply sends a DevMgtGet(ServiceRecord) query to each IOU specifying the particular IOC and service object. And then sends DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) and DevMgtGet(ProtocolRecord) queries to the IOU that responds with the ServiceRecord to get information to match the IOC with an I/O device driver. (See [A1.2.4.1 "Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver" on page 1293](#)). The ServiceID in the ServiceRecord provides the driver with the information it needs to establish connections with the service object.

For additional details on the device management methods mentioned above, see chapter 16, section 3, Device Management, [Annex A7: Configuration Management](#), and [Annex A8: Device Management](#). For additional details on establishing connections, see chapter 12.

A1.2.5 I/O ATTACHMENT

A1.2.5.1 DIRECT ATTACHMENT

Direct I/O attachment is the attachment of a host IB port to an I/O unit without a switch. In this case, the host provides subnet management (SM). Because the subnet is extremely simple (2 CAs and no switch), the role of the SM is significantly reduced, and optional management capabilities are not expected to be provided.

For a node to support Direct Attached I/O it needs to supply a subnet manager.

A1.2.5.2 FABRIC ATTACHMENT

Fabric complexities range from configurations consisting of a single host, single switch, and multiple I/O units, to configurations consisting of multiple hosts, multiple switches, and multiple I/O units. The I/O units may be either shared by multiple hosts or dedicated to a single host.

As subnets increase in size, it becomes increasingly important for IB devices to support baseboard management functions such as power management. It also becomes more useful for the subnet to provide a Configuration Manager (CFM), Boot Information Service (BIS), and Boot Manager. See related annexes.

A1.2.5.3 POWER MANAGEMENT

Volume 2 and Baseboard Management class provides for power management of nodes attached to the IB fabric including the ability to power down and wake up nodes. I/O operation described herein assumes that power management is transparent to I/O operation and assumes that the I/O units are alive and active.

However, the impact of power management might be noticeable. This is especially true when an I/O unit has been put into a power off state. Assuming that the power manager automatically detects a host's attempt to establish communications with a powered down I/O unit, and immediately powers the I/O unit on, there might be significant delay before the I/O unit is capable of responding to DevMgt and CM MADs.

This delay is not IBA related, but rather a function of platform implementation. Both hosts and I/O units should consider this delay in their designs.

The host should take into consideration that there may be a delay from the time that it starts to send MADs to an I/O unit until the I/O unit is capable

of responding. This delay could include the time for the power manager to respond and the time for the I/O unit to initialize. Currently this time is not bounded, but is expected to be in the order of seconds. For example, the Boot Management class (see Booting Annex) provides a time-out value that the boot manager configures so a booting platform knows the minimum amount of time it needs to wait from the first time it attempts to access an I/O unit before it can claim the I/O unit does not exist.

It is recommended that I/O units that take significant time to initialize, especially those supporting power management and wake-on-fabric, be able to respond with DevMgtGetResp(PortClassInfo) as soon as possible.

A1.3 I/O MANAGEMENT

This section provides an overview on how I/O devices are located and accessed.

A1.3.1 I/O DEVICE RESOLUTION

I/O device resolution is the process of determining the set of nodes which contain I/O devices. There are several resolution methods:

- **Persistent Information:** The host persistently stores information regarding the node containing the I/O device. See [Section A1.3.1.2](#) for additional information.
- **Configuration Manager (CFM):** The host sends a query to the CFM to get a list of I/O objects assigned to the host. See [Annex A7: Configuration Management](#).
- **Subnet Administrator (SA):** The host sends a SubnAdminGetTable(PortInfo) query to the SA in order to obtain the PortInfo attributes of all accessible ports. (See base document chapter 15.) The host filters the list of PortInfo attributes received from the SA to select the ports which have the PortInfo:CapabilityMask:DeviceManagementSupported bit set to one. Each port supporting Device Management is then queried to determine if it contains one or more IOCs.
- **Boot Manager:** A boot manager programs a booting node with the identity of the IOU/IOC/ and I/O object that the host uses to boot. See [Annex A5: Booting Annex](#).
- **Boot Information Server (BIS):** A booting node queries the BIS for the identity of the IOU, IOC, and I/O object that the host uses to boot. See [Annex A6: Boot Information Service](#).

A1.3.1.1 RESOLVING A PATH

During the resolution process, the host determines either the Node GUID, Port GUID, or port GID of the target I/O unit. In order to communicate with that node, however, the host requires a DLID, possibly a DGID, and other

information about the path to the node. The steps in obtaining this information is listed below.

- 1) If the host knows the Node GUID, it can issue a **SubnAdmGet-Table(NodeRecord)** query to the SA specifying the NodeGUID of the IOU. This request produces a list of NodeInfo attributes, one for each port on the IOU. (See chapter 15 for additional information.)
- 2) Select one of the NodeInfo attributes obtained in step 1, and construct a GID by pre-pending the local subnet prefix to the Port GUID component from the NodeInfo attribute.
- 3) Once the host obtains a Port GID, it can send a **SubnAdmGet-Table(PathRecord)** query to the SA with the DGID component set to the Port GUID obtained above. Typically, the PathRecord request contains an SGID of the host platform, the DGID equal to the port-GID, and wildcards the SLID to account for a non-zero LMC. The SM returns all paths from the host's port to the I/O unit's port and provides the host with the information (DLID, SL, MTU, etc.) necessary to send packets to the I/O unit.

A1.3.1.2 PERSISTENT INFORMATION

After a node has selected an IOC, it may need to save information about the IOC persistently so that the IOC may be accessed in the future. When this is necessary, the minimum set of information about the IOC which must be persistently stored includes the following:

- **Node GUID** - the Node GUID of the IOU containing the IOC.
- **IOC GUID** - the GUID of the IOC.
- **Additional Information** - protocol-specific information about I/O devices.

See [A1.3.1.1 “Resolving A Path” on page 1298](#) and [A1.2.4.2 “Using an I/O Controller” on page 1295](#) for additional information regarding how the above persistent information is used to access the I/O device.

A1.3.1.3 CONFIGURATION CHANGES

Depending on the upper level protocol, and the way it identifies its target, maintenance scenarios involving the replacement of a failed device may cause the protocol to loose addressability of its target. For instance, if the host's protocol uses the persistent identifiers defined in Section A1.3.1.2 to identify its target, and either the I/O unit or I/O controller must be replaced due to failure, it will be impossible for the protocol to obtain a path using their GUIDs because the new unit (or I/O controller) will have a different GUID. Similarly, if a pair of I/O Units or I/O Controllers are swapped, the protocol might mistakenly swap the service objects behind those IOUs or IOCs. This may or may not be the intended result.

For most upper level protocols, such as SRP, this should not be a problem, since they use other methods of identifying their targets.

In general, if the upper level protocol uses persistent identifiers to locate its target, the recommended solution is simply to change the identifier in the protocol configuration definition file. This will eliminate any ambiguities and assure that the configuration definition file is consistent with the fabric.

If a protocol using persistent identifiers requires the ability to gracefully handle replacement scenarios, the following subsections provide some guidance. None of these strategies are mandatory. None of these strategies are mandatory. In addition, if the protocol does not update its configuration definition file with the new identifier upon detecting such a change, the protocol will be forced to go through this rediscovery processing each time the system is re-booted.

The following subsections also provide insight for how a configuration manager can deal with an I/O unit or I/O controller being replaced or swapped.

A1.3.1.3.1 IDENTIFIERS SUPPORTING CONFIGURATION CHANGES

In order to gracefully handle replacement scenarios, storage of the following identifiers is recommended:

- **ChassisGUID:** global ID of the chassis containing the node
(See Volume 2, section 13.7.7, ChassisInfo Record:ChassisGUID.)
- **Module GUID:** global ID of module containing the node
(See Volume 2, section 13.7.6, ModuleInfo Record:ModuleGUID.)
- **SlotNumber:** the IB Module slot to which the IB module containing the node is attached
(See Volume 2, section 13.7.7, ChassisInfo Record:SlotNumber.)
- **NodeString:** locally administered node name
(See Chapter 14, section 14.2.5.2, NodeDescription.)
- **I/O Controller Slot Number:** position of IOC in the ControllerList component of the IOUnitInfo attribute of the Device Management agent. (See Chapter 16, section 16.3.3.3, IOUnitInfo and [A8.3.3.5: IOUnitInfo](#).)

A1.3.1.3.2 NODE REPLACEMENT

When the host can not locate an I/O unit with a desired Node GUID, it might mean that a channel adapter, module, and/or chassis has been replaced. When this occurs, the host might be able to determine the Node GUID of a possible replacement. Node replacement strategy is a an im-

lementation policy set by each OS vendor. Some of the possibilities might include:

- Make no attempt to associate a new I/O unit with a missing one.
- Select a node with the same ModuleGUID. Such a node can be found by searching the subnet for any node with the same ModuleGUID. This covers the case in which the desired channel adapter has been replaced within the same module. Note that if the module contains multiple channel adapters, there is a risk that an incorrect channel adapter will be selected.
- Select a node with the same NodeDescription:NodeString component. This can be done by querying the subnet administrator for a list of nodes with the same NodeDescription:Nodestring component as the missing I/O unit. Note that if the subnet was configured with multiple I/O units containing the same NodeString, then there is a risk that an incorrect I/O unit will be selected.
- Select a node with the same ChassisGUID and SlotNumber. Such a node can be found by searching the subnet for any node (with the same ChassisGUID and SlotNumber). This covers the case in which the module containing the I/O unit was replaced. Note that if the module contains multiple I/O units, there is a risk that an incorrect I/O unit will be selected. There is also a risk that the desired module was replaced with a totally unrelated module.

In addition to the above possibilities, it may be appropriate to search for an IOU containing an IOC with the same IOCGUID. This covers the case in which the desired IOC has been moved.

In any of the above cases there is a risk that either the desired I/O device will not be found, or an inappropriate I/O device will be found. Therefore, operator confirmation is recommended before proceeding with the device access.

A1.3.1.3.3 IOC REPLACEMENT

The recommendation to I/O unit vendors producing I/O units with removable I/O controllers is that the I/O controller slot number specified in the IOUnitInfo and IOControllerProfile attributes be associated with its physical location. This allows an operator to replace an IOC and have the new IOC be located at the same I/O slot number as the old IOC. If the old IOC GUID is not found, then the IOC user (e.g., the OS device manager) can look for the new IOC at the same I/O slot. Note that DevMgt class version 2 supports multiple IOCs per I/O module. Thus, there may be more than one IOC with the same I/O slot number, and therefore there is a risk that an incorrect I/O controller could be selected.

A1.3.2 RETRY-BACKOFF POLICY

The I/O resolution process involves accessing a number of different services using unreliable datagrams, and there are a number of reasons why a request might be lost including random bit errors, congestion, and device or service not ready. In the case of random bit errors, retrying immediately has a high probability of success, however in most situations involving congestion and busy devices, immediate retries are not helpful and may create or add to congestion. Therefore, a host needs a simple algorithm for increasing back-off intervals each time the host encounters a situation where it needs to retry an operation.

When an operation is to be retried, the sender first waits the expected maximum response time for the response. (See Chapter 13, section 13.4.6.3.) If no response is received within the expected maximum response time, the sender retries the operation immediately.

If no response is received for this second attempt, the next retry is performed at a randomly selected back-off time between 1 and 100 msec.

If this retry also fails and if subsequent retries are to be performed, the sender doubles the back-off time used for the previous retry before retrying again.

If the back-off time exceeds 30 seconds, the sender randomly selects another back-off time between 1 and 100 msec and repeats the process.

A1.4 IMPACT OF PARTITIONS ON I/O

When there is only a single partition (e.g., the default partition), life is simple and the host does not have to make any decisions regarding partitions. This section discusses various concerns centering around the use of multiple partitions and their impact on I/O. See Chapter 10 section 10.9 “Partitioning” for a description of partitioning. Partitions are enforced on a per port basis.

The Subnet Manager assigns every port to at least one partition and possibly many partitions. The purpose of each partition varies. Any partition that allows a host to communicate with an I/O Unit is considered an I/O partition. Furthermore, I/O related services such as CFM, BIS, and Boot Manager are also bound by partitioning rules. The Subnet Manager does not provide the host with information concerning the purpose of its partitions. Thus, a host does not know which partitions are I/O partitions.

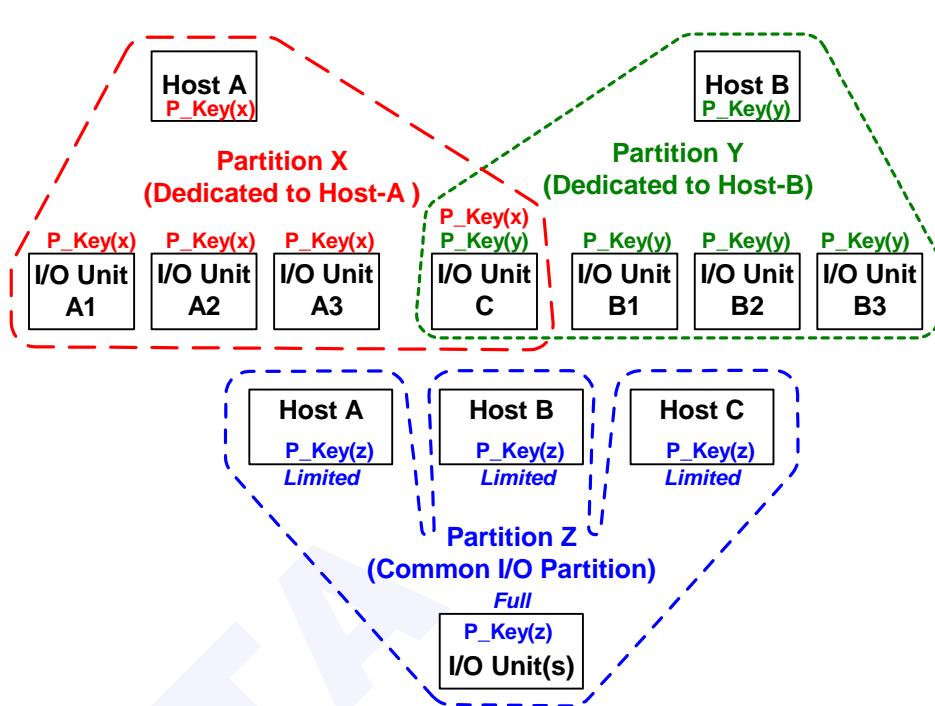


Figure 240 I/O Partitions

An administrator sets up I/O Partitions to enable and enforce access between specified ports (e.g., a host and its I/O units). The sharing pattern of each partition might be a dedicated partition or a common partition as illustrated in [Figure 240](#). Typically the administrator provides at least one I/O partition per host dedicated to that host and assigns I/O units to that partition as illustrated by Partition X and Partition Y.

However, I/O units that need to be accessed by multiple hosts, such as I/O Unit C in [Figure 240](#), need to be a member of each I/O partition that it serves. This means, that an I/O unit accessed by many hosts needs a large P_Key Table. An alternative to requiring I/O units with large P_Key Tables is for the administrator to also provide a common I/O partition for each group of I/O units shared by the same set of hosts, as illustrated by partition Z. In order to maintain separation between hosts in the common I/O partition, the subnet manager configures each host with limited partition membership for that partition while the I/O Units have full membership (see Chapter 10 section 10.9 “Partitioning” subsection titled “Limited and Full Membership”). The point is that hosts might have multiple I/O partitions, one for each relative group of I/O units.

A host containing an I/O related service such as a CFM, BIS, or Boot Manager has to have a partition in common with each host it serves. However,

it is inappropriate to add the host containing the I/O service to an I/O partition if that host is not allowed access to the I/O units. For this case the service would use a non-I/O partition, such as a management partition. The default partition²⁷ is suitable for the case where these services co-exist with the Subnet Manager. Otherwise, the service and the hosts it serves might be assigned to a common management partition (similar to the common I/O partition described above).

The conclusion is that both hosts and I/O units can be assigned to multiple I/O partitions, as well as other partitions. However, the impact of partitioning is not as severe as one might expect. The following sections describe various ways that host and I/O units can deal with multiple partitions.

A1.4.1 I/O UNITS AND PARTITIONS

I/O units are typically targets, that is, hosts make connections to I/O units. The CM:REQ attribute contains a “Partition Key” field that specifies the P_Key for the connection. Thus, an I/O unit simply validates CommMgt MADs based on whether the specified partition is in the port’s P_Key table or not. Only when an I/O unit is to be the initiator of a connection (in this case it is behaving as a host), will it have the same issues as a host. In other words, if the IOU is behaving as a host, the guidance given to hosts in the rest of this section applies to the I/O unit.

A1.4.2 HOSTS AND I/O PARTITIONS

If a host uses the management facilities appropriately, partitions can be semi-transparent to hosts, meaning that the host does not need to treat each partition separately. That is, a host does not have to scan for I/O Units on a partition-by-partition basis -- because discovery mechanisms are outside of partitions. However, I/O access mechanisms are governed by partitioning. Thus, when communicating with I/O units and I/O services, the host does have to use the proper partition, which might be a different partition for each one.

It is the Subnet Administration (SubnAdm) query methods that permits the host to discover I/O devices across all partitions. For example, the host can send a single SubnAdm query to the Subnet Administration agent (SA) such that the SA returns responses for all I/O units that are in a partition for which the host is a member.

A host does need to treat each port independently of the other. If multiple ports attach to the same subnet, then each port is potentially a different path to the same I/O resources. If the ports are on different subnets, then the query subsystem returns information pertinent to that subnet.

27. The default partition purpose, as defined in Chapter 14 and 15 (sections section 14.4 and 15.4), is to permit all nodes to communicate with the SA.

In the process of managing its I/O, there are a number times that a host queries the SA for information. Typically, this involves two SubnAdm methods and several SubnAdm attributes. The methods are SubnAdmGet and SubnAdmGetTable. The attributes are ServiceRecord, NodeRecord, PortInfoRecord, and PathRecord.

The solution is to query the SA and use the Component Mask to indicate that the partition is a wildcard. Since the SA only returns information associated with partitions that are valid for the host (i.e. only information about nodes with which the host can communicate), the result is that the SA responds with information for all of the host's partitions and each record returned indicates the partition that the host needs to use.

See Chapter 15 section titled "Administration of Query Subsystem" for details on "querying by ComponentMask". The following are examples of how the host can apply this concept.

A1.4.2.1 QUERY FOR PATH

The host can generate a single SubnAdmGetTable(PathRecord) query and get a list of paths to all other ports that are members of the host's partitions, except for paths where both ports have limited partition membership. This is documented in Chapter 15 section titled "PathRecord" and referred to as "bus walk" because it provides a list of all other nodes the host can access (I/O units and other hosts). From this list, the host can select the paths to its I/O units and the nodes supplying other services such as CFM and BIS.

Each record returned in the response identifies one path to a target port and provides a P_Key that the host can use to communicate with that port. Thus, the partition structure (i.e., whether the host or the I/O Unit is the full member and whether or not there are multiple hosts) is irrelevant to the host.

A1.4.2.2 QUERY FOR SERVICE

To get the list of all nodes providing a particular service, such as BIS or CFM, the host can query the SA with a SubnAdmGetTable(ServiceRecord) specifying a ComponentMask of 0x0000-0000-0000-0020 (bit 6 of ComponentMask = ServiceName component) and specifying the desired service name in the ServiceRecord Attribute. For example, if the host asks for the "BIS.IBTA" service name, then it receives a list of all registered Boot Information Servers that it can reach through that port.

A1.4.2.3 QUERY FOR LIST OF I/O UNITS

A host can derive a list of all managed I/O units on all of its I/O partitions by sending SubnAdmGetTable(PortInfoRecord) query for all records. The SA only returns records for which ports the host can access. The host then

filters those records for ports with the IsDeviceManagementSupported bit of the CapabilityMask component set.

One alternative is to send each port identified by the path query (see [A1.4.2.1 “Query for Path” on page 1305](#)) a DevMgtGet(ClassPortInfo) to determine if it is an IB managed I/O unit.

A1.5 STORAGE I/O

A1.5.1 IB STORAGE CONCEPTS

Storage is an I/O application where a storage initiator accesses a storage target (e.g., storage subsystem, storage adapter, or a storage device) via the IB fabric. This section addresses the considerations where the storage target takes the form of an I/O controller and the storage initiator (client of the storage controller) is instantiated as an IBA host or booting platform. There are several considerations in mapping a storage protocol onto IBA. That is, each protocol must specify values for protocol specific components in various management attributes.

An IBA storage controller should be sensitive to the richness of IBA's scalable interconnect options. The controller may be deployed in direct attach, single host system, or multiple host system networks. Deployment of a storage controller in the latter may require host sharing capabilities in the controller.

Storage protocol is *the set of rules governing the content and exchange of storage related information passed between host platforms and I/O controllers of the InfiniBand Architecture.*

IBTA does not specify any one given storage protocol. External standards organizations define storage protocol mappings over IBA.

This section identifies the requirements of implementing specific storage protocols on IBA. It is expected that as storage protocols are mapped onto IBA by their respective standards bodies this section will grow to complement them.

A1.5.2 PROTOCOL SPECIFIC FIELDS

Certain components in IBA management attributes are defined to have protocol specific values. These components assist in the identification of the protocol supported by a given IOC, associate an IOC with a specific I/O device driver, or may aid in the usage of a protocol in a boot environment.

Values for the following components need to be defined by the organization specifying the protocol.

- IO Class 1
- IO Subclass 2
- Protocol 3
- Protocol Version 4
- ServiceName 5

Other management classes also have protocol specific components. This includes:

- AdditionalInfo component of BIS and Boot Management Locator Records (see Booting Annex) 9

A1.5.3 STORAGE PROTOCOLS

This section lists relevant storage protocols capable of operation over the IB fabric. These protocols have defined values for the IB components listed in section [A1.5.2 “Protocol Specific Fields” on page 1306](#) 14

- SCSI is a dominant block oriented storage protocol. SCSI RDMA Protocol (SRP) is a SCSI protocol capable of realizing the performance benefits of IBA’s RDMA semantics. Refer to T10/1415D, SCSI RDMA Protocol (SRP) standard for details.

ANNEX A2: CONSOLE SERVICE PROTOCOL

A2.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex is a supplement to Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture specification, herein referred to as the base document. This annex specifies the IB Console Service Protocol.

A2.1.1 GLOSSARY

The following are additional terms not found in the Volume 1 Glossary (Chapter 2).

Console Display Object	A display terminal or window for displaying output from, and providing input to, a Console User .
Console Device	A Console Display Object .
Console IOC	An I/O controller that supports the Console Service Protocol and provides one or more Console Display Objects .
Console Server	An IOC or Host process that provides access to one or more Console Display Objects .
Console Server Process	A process on a host that supports the Console Service Protocol and provides one or more Console Display Objects .
Console User	One of a number of processes on a host that use the console service to input and output streams of console data. An example of a console user is a booting environment that uses the console service to display error messages on a console display.
CSP	Console Service Protocol
CSP Client	An entity that communicates with a CSP server (via the Console Service Protocol) to present virtual consoles to a set of console users.
CSP Connection	A connection that carries CSP messages.
CSP IOC	A Console IOC implementing the Console Service Protocol.
CSP Server	A Console Server implementing the Console Service Protocol.
CSP Session	A relationship between a Console User and a Console Display Object where data generated by the user is delivered to the display object and visa versa.

A2.1.2 COMPLIANCE

This annex specifies two new Compliance Categories (see Volume 1 Chapter 20 for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). These new categories are CSP Client and CSP Server.

There are two Compliance Qualifiers for CSP Server. They are CSP-IOC and CSP-Process.

Section [A2.4 “Compliance Summary” on page 1339](#) provides a summary of compliance statements.

A2.1.3 OVERVIEW

Firmware and software on IBA hosts and IO Units often require console-based interaction with system administrators. Examples include the ROM-based boot environment, downloaded bootcode, OS loaders and IO controller firmware. This annex describes the IB Console Service Protocol (hereafter, CSP) that provides the *IB console service*. A variety of console strategies are possible; IBA supports the following.

- One or more *console display objects* (e.g. windows) behind a *CSP server process* on a host, where the CSP Server Process supports CSP.
- One or more *console devices* (e.g. terminals) behind a *CSP IOC* in an IOU, where the IOC supports the CSP.
- A *vendor-specific console abstraction* supported by one or more devices behind an IOC that supports a *proprietary protocol*. The IOU exports a downloadable expansion ROM image, which implements the vendor-specific console-device interface.

This section describes the *IB Console* abstraction and CSP, the wire protocol followed by IB console IOCs and IB console server processes. Booting with proprietary protocols is the subject of the Booting Annex; the vendor-specific console abstraction is outside the scope of IBA.

All multi-byte console protocol message fields use big endian byte ordering as described in section 1.5.1.

The difference between CSP IOCs and CSP server processes is the way by which the CSP client locates them. Locating the CSP IOC and the CSP server process is described in [Section A2.2.1 on page 1312](#) and [Section A2.2.2 on page 1313](#) and they are collectively referred to as *CSP servers*.

A2.1.4 GOALS

- Permit multiple console users within a host to use a single CSP connection, where each user has its own dedicated console display object.

- Support terminal emulation by a host process without the need for the host to dynamically create IOC GUIDs.
- Provide the conventional console-device abstraction of a pair of input and output devices.
- Provide for simple unformatted text input and output, as well as standard methods of inputting control characters and outputting simple formatted text.
- Expose a persistent device path for a console input/output device to firmware so it may be cached in nonvolatile memory and/or handed off from one console user to another.
- Allow for intelligence in a console device.

A2.2 THE IB CONSOLE ABSTRACTION

[Figure 241](#) illustrates the overall architecture and operation of CSP. Typical users of IB console service (*console users*) are host-based execution threads, such as boot firmware, OS loader, system setup and diagnostic utilities, and loaded boot images.

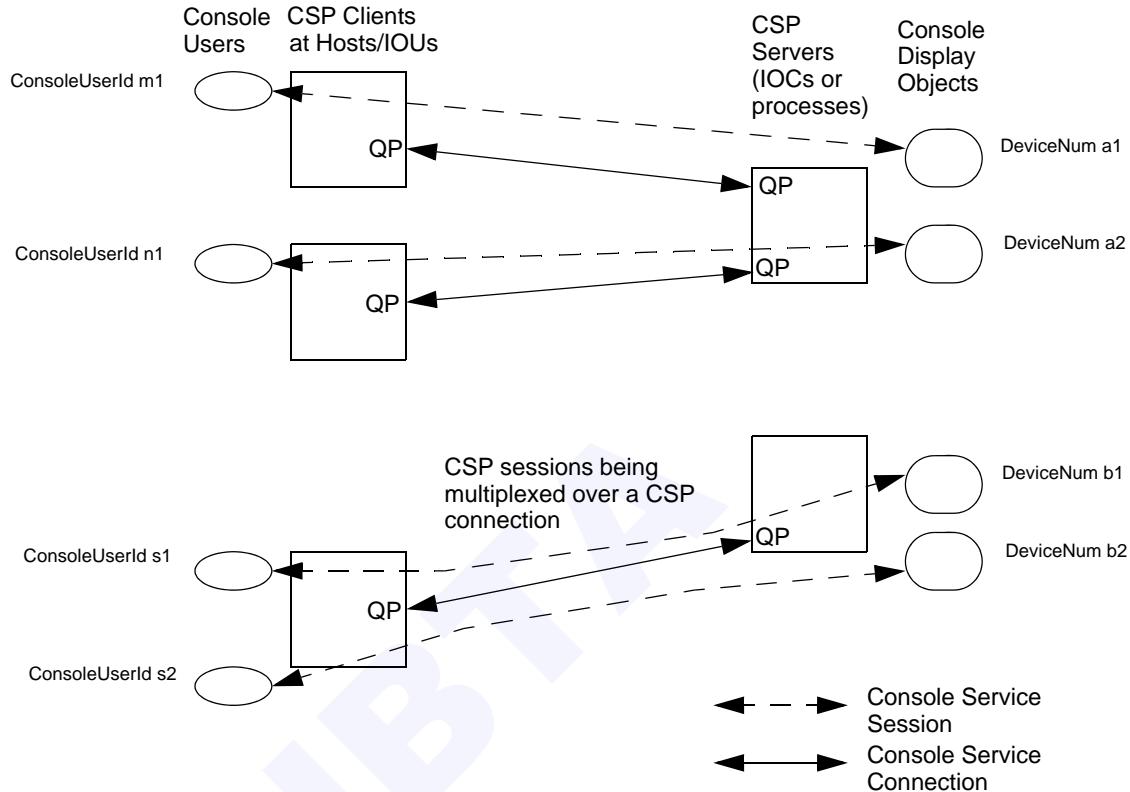


Figure 241

Schematic of IBA Console Abstraction

CA2-1: A CSP client shall assign a unique *console user ID* to each of its console users.

At each CSP server, there are one or more *console display objects* representing presentation interfaces.

CA2-2: A CSP server shall assign a unique *device number* to each console display object.

A CSP client establishes a *CSP connection* with a host or IOU CSP server by following the IBA CM protocol for establishing an RC channel.

CA2-3: A CSP server shall support RC service connections using only Send/Receive operations (i.e., does not use RDMA).

CA2-4: Every CSP message shall be sent with the SE bit in the BTH header set.

Whenever a CSP connection is needed, the CSP client shall be the one to initiate connection establishment.

A *CSP session* exists between a console user and a console display object. Multiple sessions may be multiplexed over a single CSP connection. Each console display object is associated with at most one console session.

The CSP client abstracts the console service as a CSP session to each of its console users. When multiple sessions are multiplexed over one CSP connection, it is the CSP client that demultiplexes between different console users sharing the connection.

Likewise, at the CSP server end, the server demultiplexes the traffic from a single CSP client with multiple sessions to different console display objects.

CA2-5: At any given time, a CSP server shall open at most one CSP session per console display object.

CSP sessions exists on top of a reliable connection service. A CSP session can survive the loss of a CSP connection caused, for instance, by the Boot environment to OS transition on a host or by a console-directed warm reboot. Session handles can be passed between console users during boot transitions, or saved by a dying console user and later recovered in order to resume a CSP session past a warm reboot. These properties of console service sessions are considered crucial to maintaining continuity in administrative interactions.

A2.2.1 CONSOLE IO CONTROLLERS

oA2-1: The CSP Server abstraction may be implemented by an I/O controller in a managed I/O unit, provided the IOC satisfies the following properties - refer to the I/O Annex and base document section 16.3 "Device Management".

- The IOC's Class, Subclass, Protocol, and Version values for its DevMgt IOControllerProfile attribute are as follows:
 - Class: 0x40FF
 - Subclass: 0xFFFF
 - Protocol: 0x0001
 - Version = 0x0001
- DevMgt ServiceEntries:ServiceName = "Console.IBTA"

- The service ID to be used by a CSP client in a console service connection request sent to such an IOC (hereafter, *CSP IOC*) can be found in DevMgt *ServiceEntries:ServiceID* for the Service Entry for that particular IOC with the matching *ServiceName*.

An IOU may contain multiple CSP IOCs, each offering console service behind a different service ID. Thus, a CSP IOC does not use the well-known Console ServiceID.

A CSP IOC supports CSP, as described below, for the enumeration, naming and control of console display objects.

A CSP IOC is not required to support multiple concurrent console service connections.

oA2-2: This compliance statement is obsolete.

The persistent identifier of a CSP IOC includes its IOC GUID and the Node or Port GUID of the channel adapter through which the IOC's services are accessed. If a CSP client wants to connect to the same display object, it must also retain the DeviceNum. A CSP client may retain these items of information in its persistent boot bindings.

A2.2.2 CONSOLE SERVER PROCESSES

The CSP Server abstraction may also be implemented by a host-based service offered by a *CSP server process* behind an HCA.

oA2-3: A CSP server process shall register its service with the SA by creating one or more *ServiceRecords* as follows. The *ServiceName* field shall contain the string "Console.IBTA". No service-specific or service-generic flags shall be set. The *ServiceGID* field shall contain the port GID of the CSP server process. The *ServiceID* shall be the well-known Console ServiceID 0x00000002. All other components are implementation specific.

Since CSP server processes can be started dynamically at any IBA host, console service should be considered both mobile and dynamic. The persistent identifier of a CSP server process contains just its port GUID and the well-known Console ServiceID. A CSP client may retain such information in its persistent boot bindings.

A2.3 CONSOLE SERVICE PROTOCOL

CSP is the message-level protocol used for establishing, maintaining, and communicating inside CSP sessions. The CSP Client uses CSP messages to establish a session between a console user and a console display object, modify the state of that session, and send and receive data streams over that session.

There are various ways for a CSP Client to discover the GID and Service ID of a CSP server (see Application Specific Identifiers Annex, Booting Annex, and Boot Information Service Annex). It uses this information to establish a reliable connection with the CSP Server.

CA2-6: CSP clients and CSP servers shall support CSP messages over IB RC transport service.

Once the CSP client establishes the connection, the general steps are:

- CSP Client sends ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest to learn console capabilities and establish buffer sizes. The CSP Server responds with the profile information
- For each Console User, the CSP Client sends a SessionInitRequest to establish (or reestablish) a session between a Console User and an Console Display Object. The CSP Server responds with an ACK (or NAK).
- The CSP Client sends Console Out data from the Console User and CSP Server sends Console In data from the Console Display object. The data is not interpreted by the CSP client or CSP Server, it is just passed to the Console Display Object and Console User.
- Either end can terminate a session. The CSP Client by sending a SessionEndRequest and the CSP Server by sending a SessionTerminated message.
- The CSP Client can also suspend sessions. Sessions that are suspended when the connection terminates are preserved.
- The CSP Client resumes a suspended session by sending a SessionResumemessage

The protocol takes place within the context of a CSP connection. A CSP session set up using CSP can be handed off from one console user to another without impacting the continuity of administrative interaction. Furthermore, a CSP session can be suspended before a host is rebooted, and later resumed after a new CSP connection has been established, allowing an administrator to continue monitoring a system through a warm reset with minimal loss of continuity.

Console I/O traffic from multiple sessions is multiplexed over a single console service connection. CSP session control messages are multiplexed with the console I/O traffic messages over that connection.

CSP session control messages are usually request-response messages. Requests originate from a CSP client and sent to a CSP server. Responses travel in the opposite direction. In most cases responses are generated as a result of a request message. Exceptions to this rule are

the SessionTerminated message (see [Section 2.3.8 on page 1337](#)) and Console I/O messages (see [Section 2.3.5, “Normal Operation,” on page 1327](#)).

CA2-7: The CSP server shall send response messages for corresponding request messages on the same CSP connection on which the request message arrived.

[Table 382](#) lists the CSP messages, indicates in which states those messages are valid, and indicates who can send the message. [Figure 242](#) indicates the various session states, the messages or events that cause a state transition, and the messages that the CSP server sends in response to state transitions.

Table 382 Console Protocol Messages

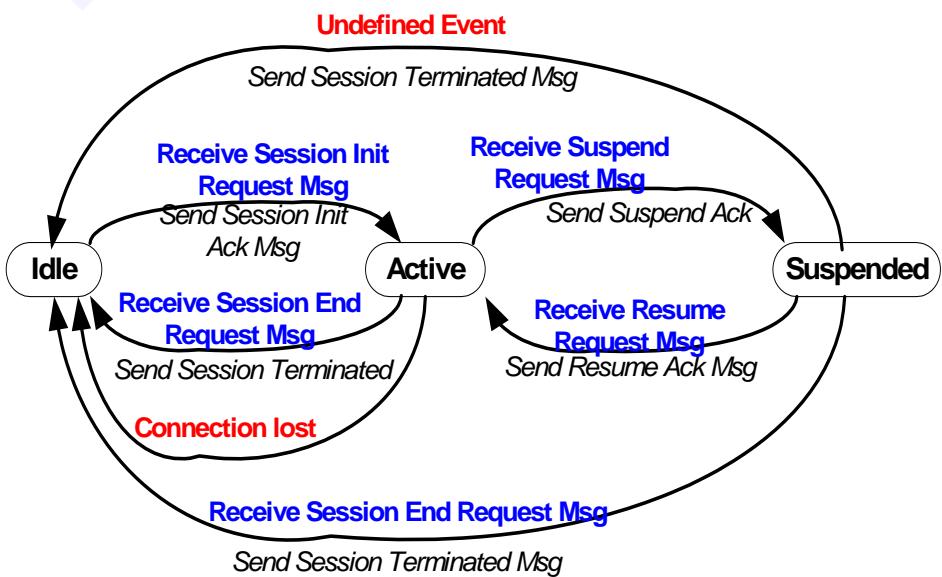
Message Name	Op Code	Session State	Direction	Message Description
ConsoleDataOut	0	Active	From Client	Output from console user to display object
ConsoleDataIn	1	Active	To Client	Input from display object to console user
ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest	2	n/a	From Client	Request a Console Device Profile from the CSP server
ConsoleDeviceProfileReply	3	n/a	To Client	Response to ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest
ConsoleDeviceProfileReject	4	n/a	To Client	Response to ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest
SessionInitRequest	5	Idle	From Client	Establish a new session over a CSP connection
SessionInitAck	6	Transition to Active	To Client	Response to SessionInitRequest message (session granted)
SessionInitNAK	7	any	To Client	Response to SessionInitRequest message (request denied)
SessionSuspendRequest	8	Active	From Client	Suspend Request
SessionSuspendNAK	9	any	To Client	Suspend Reject
SessionSuspendAck	10	Transition to Suspend	To Client	Suspend Accept
SessionResumeRequest	11	Suspend	From Client	CSP SessionResumerequest

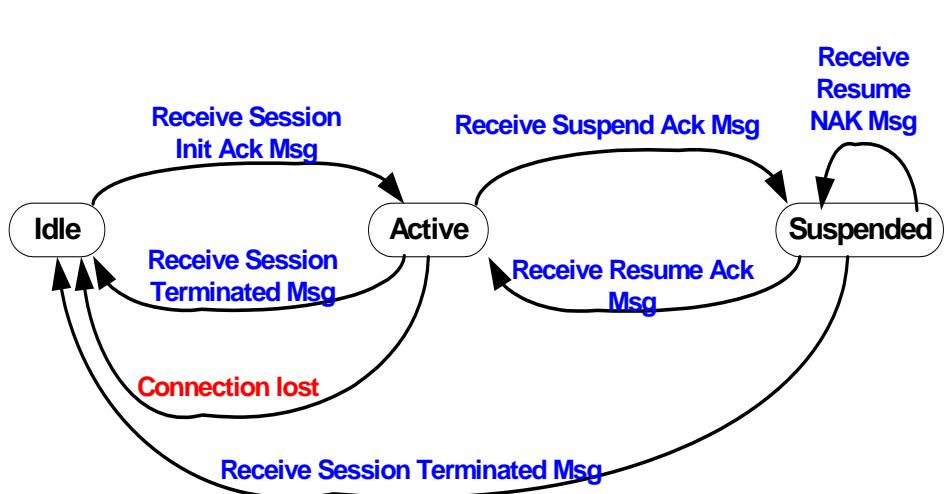
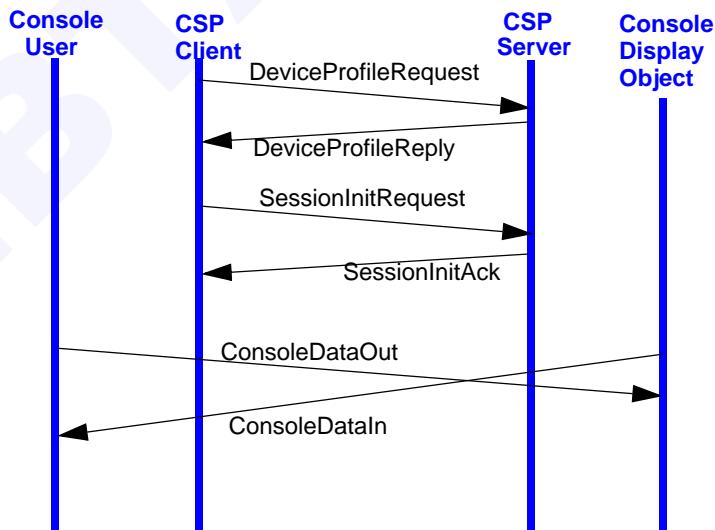
Table 382 Console Protocol Messages (Continued)

Message Name	Op Code	Session State	Direction	Message Description
SessionResumeAck	12	Transition to Active	To Client	CSP SessionResumerequest accepted
SessionResumeNAK	13	any	To Client	CSP SessionResumerequest declined
SessionEndRequest	14	Active or Suspend	From Client	Request to terminate CSP session
SessionTerminated	15	Transition to Idle	To Client	Accept SessionEndRequest request or initiate termination
PingRequest	16	Active	Either	Request the other side to respond with a PingResponse within the PingResponse-Time negotiated when the session was started.
PingResponse	17	Active	Either	Response to PingRequest
ErrorReport	18	any	Either	Reports protocol error causes

CA2-8: A CSP Client shall not send a message that has a direction as specified in [Table 382](#) of “To Client”.

CA2-9: A CSP Server shall not send a message that has a direction as specified in [Table 382](#) of “From Client”.

**Figure 242** CSP Server Session State Diagram

Figure 243 **CSP Client Session State Diagram**Figure 244 **Protocol Flow Diagram**

[Table 383](#) specifies actions that the CSP client and CSP server take if they receive an invalid message.

CA2-10: The CSP client and CSP server shall respond to protocol errors as per [Table 383](#)

Table 383 **Console Protocol Error Actions**

Error	Session State	Direction	Reaction
Inappropriate or Invalid OpCode	any	either	Reject message via an ErrorReport message
Invalid Session (Device Number + ConsoleUserId)	any	To Server	Respond with SessionTerminated message
Invalid Session (Device Number + ConsoleUserId)	any	To Client	Discard message - May optionally send SessionEndRequest message
Specified Device Number not available	any	To Server	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reject a ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest message via a ConsoleDeviceProfileReject message, • reject a SessionInitRequest message via a SessionInitNAK message, • reject any other message via a SessionTerminated message
Invalid ErrorReport Message	any	either	Discard message - do no respond
Any other invalid component value	any	either	Reject message via an ErrorReport message
Message too short	any	either	Reject message via an ErrorReport message
Message too long	any	either	Reject message via an ErrorReport message

Neither the CSP client nor the CSP server check the content of the Data components in ConsoleDataIn and ConsoleDataOut messages. How Console Users and Console Display Objects respond to errors in the data stream are outside the scope of the Console Service Protocol.

A2.3.1 ERROR REPORTING

The CSP client or CSP server send an ErrorReport when it detects an invalid component value in a message that prevents it from properly processing the received message as per [Table 383](#).

There is no response to an ErrorReport message. Receiving an error report indicates a protocol error. The overall effect could be that either end might terminate the session or the connection.

Table 384 **ErrorReport**

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOpCode	0	4	0xFFFFFFFF: ErrorReport message
DeviceNum	4	4	DeviceNum value from offending message
ConsoleUserId	8	4	ConsoleUserId value from offending message

Table 384

ErrorReport (Continued)

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
OpCode	12	4	CSPOpCode from offending message.
RejectCode	16	2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0001 = Invalid component value (ComponentOffset indicates component with bad value) • 0x0002 = Message too short (ComponentOffset indicates expected length in bytes) • 0x0003 = Message too long (ComponentOffset indicates expected length in bytes) • 0xFFFF = any other protocol error all other values reserved
reserved1	18	2	reserved
ComponentOffset	20	4	Location of the offending component in the offending message expressed as the offset in number of bytes from the CSPOpCode (i.e., a value of zero indicates the CSPOpcode, a value of 4 indicates the DeviceNum component, etc.)

A2.3.2 CONSOLE DEVICE ENUMERATION

IB console capabilities are enumerated in a *ConsoleDeviceProfile* structure (see [Table 385 on page 1319](#)). It provides sufficient information for configuring the console-specific parameters of standard booting environments (e.g., Intel Corporation’s Extended Firmware Interface (EFI) and the IEEE 1275-1994 Open Firmware standard).

The Console Device Profile carries a number of Console Capability records (one for each capability type). The CSP Server provides this information to the CSP Client in the *ConsoleDeviceProfileReply* message. The only standard capability type is “Terminal Type”, but the protocol allows for proprietary capabilities. The CSP Client selects the appropriate capability by providing a Console Capability Record in *SessionInitRequest* and *SessionResumeRequest* messages (CapabilitiesUsed component).

Table 385

ConsoleDeviceProfile

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
MaxUsers	0	2	The maximum number of sessions allowed per console service connection
CapabilityCount	2	2	The number of capability listings (max. 255)
CapabilityList	4	n x 12	12 bytes per capability record, as specified in Table 386 , where n is the value of CapabilityCount

Table 386 **ConsoleCapabilityRecord**

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CapabilityType	0	4	0: Undefined, 1: Proprietary (not applicable to console server processes), 2: Terminal type All other values: reserved
ContentFormat	4	8	<p>Not relevant <u>for CapabilityType = Undefined</u>.</p> <p>For CapabilityType = Proprietary, interpretation of this field is specific to Subsystem VendorID and SubsystemID fields of the CSP IOC's ControllerProfile.</p> <p>For CapabilityType = Terminal type, a bitmask describing the content formats supported by the console device, as follows.</p> <p><u>Byte:Bit position, Corresponding content format</u></p> <p>0:0, ASCII input and output (always set in ConsoleDeviceProfileReply messages (Table 388 on page 1323); required capability). ISO 646 defines the character set and control character interpretation for the ASCII character set.</p> <p>0:1, UTF-8, ISO 10646, input and output</p> <p>0:2, HTTP over CSP Session (HTTP/1.1 GET and POST messages only; see Section 2.3.5.3 on page 1328.)</p> <p>all other bits: reserved</p> <p>In ConsoleDeviceProfileReply messages (Table 388 on page 1323), multiple bits of this field may be set in order to communicate the full list of content formats supported by the CSP server. In SessionInitRequest messages (Table 390 on page 1325), however, no more than one bit may be set because it specifies the format selected by the CSP client for use during that session. (see CA2-29: on page 1326)</p>

CA2-11: ContentFormat bit 0 (ASCII Input and output) shall always be set in Console Capability Records.

CA2-12: If the ContentFormat bit 1 (UTF-8) of a Console Capability Record is set to 1 by a CSP Server, then it shall support ISO 10646 defined UTF-8 data streams.

CA2-13: If the ContentFormat bit 2 (HTTP) of a Console Capability Record is set to 1 by a CSP Server, then it shall support HTTP/1.1 GET and POST messages.

CA2-14: Fields that are reserved shall be set to zero in messages being sent and ignored in received messages.

CA2-15: Bits that are reserved shall be set to zero in messages being sent and ignored in received messages.

CA2-16: Values that are reserved shall not be used in messages being sent and treated as unknown in received messages. Receiving a reserved value is not necessarily an error, but may be treated as an error.

A2.3.3 CAPABILITY QUERY

A CSP client conducts capability negotiation with a CSP server on behalf of a console user. The first step is to query the CSP Server for the capability of its console display objects using the *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* message. The CSP server shall use the ConsoleUserId (see [Table 388 on page 1323](#)) in generating its response. It should be noted that no device numbers are granted or reserved by the CSP server as a result of capability query. This set of messages are also used to establish buffer sizes and negotiate version level.

CA2-17: A CSP server shall support receiving a *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* message (described in [Table 387 on page 1322](#)) over a CSP connection at any time during the connection's lifetime.

CA2-18: A CSP server shall reply to a *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* message with a *ConsoleDeviceProfileReply* message (described in [Table 388 on page 1323](#)) containing the requested *ConsoleDeviceProfile* (described in [Table 385 on page 1319](#) and [Table 386 on page 1320](#)).

It is not required that the same values be returned in response to repeated *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* messages.

These communications take place within the context of a CSP connection, but outside any CSP session context.

Traffic is asynchronous in both directions and thus both ends need to have receive buffers posted at all times. The client and server specify buffer size in the *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* and Reply.

CA2-19: Neither the client nor the server shall reduce its buffer size while there are active console sessions.

Table 387 ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOpCode	0	4	0x00000002: Request a Console Device Profile from a CSP server
DeviceNum	4	4	0: send capabilities available for a new session over this CSP connection Non-zero: used in conjunction with ConsoleUserId and CSP client information to determine the capabilities available for reconnecting to the display object identified by DeviceNum
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Unique identifier of the console user at the CSP client
Version	12	2	The highest version number of CSP messages supported by the CSP client sending this request. Byte 0: Major version Byte 1: Minor version This document specifies version 0x0100.
reserved	14	2	reserved
ClientBufferSize	16	4	Specifies the maximum number of bytes of a message that the CSP server can send to the CSP client. The minimum value shall be 256.
PingResponseTime	20	2	Maximum number of 10 milliseconds time periods this CSP client will take to respond to a PingRequest message with a PingResponse.

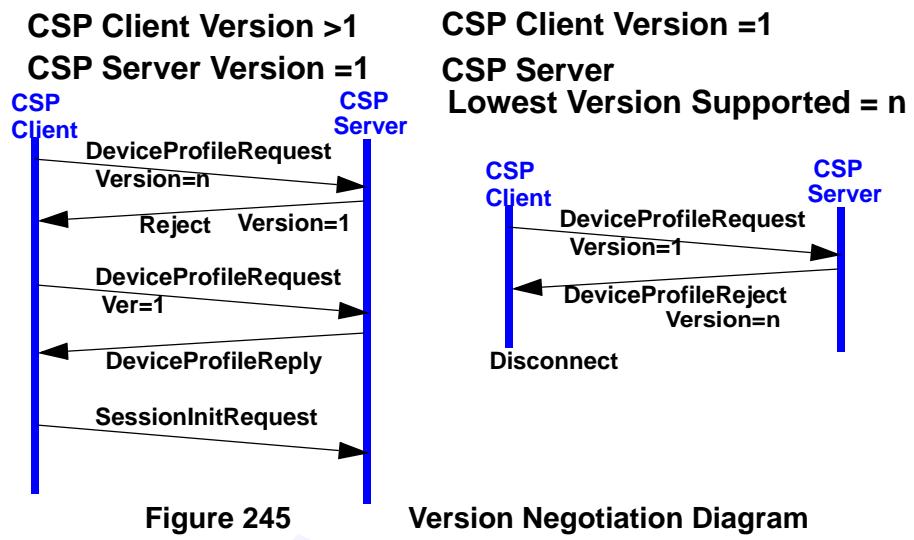
CA2-20: If the CSP server supports the version in the request, it shall return ConsoleDeviceProfileReply with that version number.

CA2-21: If the CSP server supports a lower version than in the request, it shall return ConsoleDeviceProfileReply with the highest version that it supports.

CA2-22: If the CSP server supports only higher versions than requested, it shall return ConsoleDeviceProfileReject with the lowest version it supports.

CA2-23: If the CSP server supports versions below the requested version, but not the version requested, it shall return ConsoleDeviceProfileReject with the highest version it supports below the version requested.

CA2-24: The CSP client shall either use the version returned, submit another ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest, or shall terminate the connection

**Table 388 ConsoleDeviceProfileReply**

Component Name	Offset (Bytes)	Length (Bytes)	Component Description
CSPOpCode	0	4	0x00000003: CSP Server response to ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest from a CSP client
DeviceNum	4	4	From the request
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From the request
Version	12	2	<p>The highest version number of CSP messages supported by the CSP server sending this reply. Byte 0: Major version Byte 1: Minor version This document specifies version 0x0100.</p>
reserved	14	2	
ServerBufferSize	16	4	Specifies the maximum number of bytes of a message that the CSP client can send to the CSP server. The minimum value shall be set to 256.
PingResponseTime	20	2	Maximum number of 10 milliseconds time periods this CSP server will take to respond to a PingRequest message with a PingResponse.
MaxUsers	22	2	The maximum number of active+suspended sessions allowed per console service connection.
reserved	24	2	
CapabilityCount	26	2	The number of capability records (max. 255)
CapabilityList	28	n x 12	12 bytes per capability record, as specified in Table 386 on page 1320 , where n is the value of Capability count. n shall be zero if the ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest message contained an invalid DeviceNum.

Table 389 ConsoleDeviceProfileReject

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOpCode	0	4	0x00000004: Reject service
DeviceNum	4	4	From the request
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From the request
Version	12	2	If the requested CSP version is lower than the lowest version supported by the server, reject with the lowest CSP version supported by the server. If the requested version is an unsupported version between the lowest and highest versions supported by the server, reject the highest version supported by the CSP server that is less than the requested version. Byte 0: Major version Byte 1: Minor version
Reserved	14	2	Reserved
Reject Code	16	2	0x0001 = Can not support version 0x0002 = DeviceNum not active or not valid Others reserved

A2.3.4 SESSION ESTABLISHMENT

CSP session establishment protocol runs outside of the context of any specific session but within the context of a CSP connection.

Capability negotiation (see [Section 2.3.3 on page 1321](#)) is recommended but optional before a console service session is established or re-established.

A console user may optionally issue a *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* message to its CSP server before sending a *SessionInitRequest* message.

To establish a new CSP session a CSP client shall send a *SessionInitRequest* message to the CSP server.

Table 390 SessionInitRequest

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000005: Establish a new session over a CSP connection
DeviceNum	4	4	Requested deviceNum if known, else set to zero to mean any.
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Unique identifier of the console user at the CSP client requesting a new session
Nickname	12	8	Short, null-terminated UTF-8 ASCII string identifying the console user
ConsoleUserName	20	64	Long, null-terminated UTF-8 ASCII string identifying the console user
CapabilitiesUsed	84	12	The Console Capability Record (see Table 386) selected by the requesting console user for use during the session being established

The Nickname and ConsoleUserName components provide a means for the console user to identify itself. The exact application of this information is not specified. However, the expectation is that console server with multiple windows would use the ConsoleUserName as the window title and that the Nickname might proceed each line on a console display for when a single physical display is used for multiple console display objects.

Table 391 SessionInitAck

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000006: Response to SessionInitRequest message (session granted)
DeviceNum	4	4	A non-zero device number assigned to the console display object allocated to the session being established.
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From request
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of active sessions on the CSP connection on which the response is being sent, including the one just established

CA2-25: A CSP server shall not assign a DeviceNum of zero.

Table 392 SessionInitNAK

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000007: Response to SessionInitRequest message (request denied)
DeviceNum	4	4	Reserved
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From request
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of currently active sessions over the CSP connection on which the response is being sent
NAKCode	16	4	0: reserved 1: DeviceNum already in use or invalid 2: Requested capability not available 3: MaxUsers exceeded for console service connection 4: All devices in use 5: ConsoleUserId in use or not available 6: Not otherwise specified 0xFF80-0xFFFF: Vendor specific error (interpretation is console specific and unless otherwise known, treat as "device not available"). All other values: reserved

CA2-26: A CSP server shall respond to a SessionInitRequest message ([Table 390 on page 1325](#)) by either establishing a CSP session and sending a SessionInitAck message ([Table 391 on page 1325](#)) or by rejecting the session-establishment request, i.e., by sending a SessionInitNAK message ([Table 392 on page 1326](#)).

CA2-27: A CSP client shall include the device number — returned by the CSP server in the SessionInitAck message — in all subsequent messages for that session.

CA2-28: All console messages for a CSP session shall contain that session's ConsoleUserId and DeviceNum.

CA2-29: The CSP client shall set exactly one bit of the ContentFormat field in a SessionInitRequest message ([Table 390 on page 1325](#)), for CapabilityType = Terminal Type.

A2.3.5 NORMAL OPERATION

The following messages transfer console I/O traffic within the context of a CSP session.

Table 393 ConsoleDataOut

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000000: Output from console user to display object
DeviceNum	4	4	Indicates device number assigned to the associated console display object
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Indicates the console user
Length	12	4	Length of input or output data (max 4080)
Data	16	as specified by the Length component	Opaque contents of the console I/O protocol between a console user and a console display object. Contents must follow selected content format specified in the selected Console Capability Record.

Table 394 ConsoleDataIn

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000001: Input from display object to console user
DeviceNum	4	4	Indicates device number assigned to the associated console display object
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Indicates the console user
Length	12	4	Length of input or output data (max 4080)
Data	16	as specified by the Length component	Opaque contents of the console I/O protocol between a console user and a console display object. Contents must follow selected content format specified in the selected Console Capability Record.

CA2-30: ConsoleDataIn messages shall travel only from a CSP server to a CSP client.

CA2-31: ConsoleDataOut messages shall travel only from a CSP client to a CSP server.

CA2-32: If a session is established for ASCII, then the ASCII byte stream shall conform to ISO 646.

CA2-33: If a session is established for UTF-8, then the byte stream shall conform to ISO/IEC 10646

A2.3.5.1 ASCII TEXT STREAMS

A CSP client establishes an ASCII session using the normal session establishment messages described in [Section 2.3.4 on page 1324](#). The SessionInitRequest must set Terminal Type:ASCII bit in the CapabilitiesUsed component and the message must be acknowledged by the CSP server with a SessionInitAck message.

The content of ConsoleDataIn and ConsoleDataOut messages are not interpreted by the CSP client nor CSP server. Rather the content is passed between the Console User and the Console Display Object. These messages do not imply any framing (i.e., no implied CR/LF characters) and thus, long text strings can be passed using multiple messages.

A2.3.5.2 UTF-8 TEXT STREAMS

A CSP client establishes a UTF-8 session using the normal session establishment messages described in [Section 2.3.4 on page 1324](#). The SessionInitRequest must set Terminal Type:UTF-8 bit in the CapabilitiesUsed component and the message must be acknowledged by the CSP server with a SessionInitAck message.

The content of ConsoleDataIn and ConsoleDataOut messages are not interpreted by the CSP client nor CSP server. Rather the content is passed between the Console User and the Console Display Object. These messages do not imply any framing (i.e., no implied CR/LF characters) and thus, long text strings can be passed using multiple messages.

A2.3.5.3 HTTP CONSOLE SUPPORT

HTML pages or other HTTP-supported content may be transferred from a console user to a console display object using the HTTP/1.1 protocol²⁸. In order to accomplish this, a CSP session must be properly set up to serve as HTTP/1.1 transport. Such a session is called an *HTTP-over-CSP session*.

The CSP client establishes an HTTP-over-CSP session using the normal session establishment messages described in [Section 2.3.4 on page 1324](#). The CSP client sends the SessionInitRequest setting Terminal Type of HTTP-over-CSP bit in the CapabilitiesUsed component and the message must be acknowledged by the CSP server with a SessionInitAck message.

Once the session is established, the console user shall assume the role of an HTTP/1.1 server supporting at least the GET and POST methods. The console display object shall assume the role of an HTTP/1.1 client and use only the GET or POST methods. Both shall accept HTTP/1.1 chunked transfer encoding (see RFC 2616²⁸ for details). Both should use

28. Hypertext Transfer Protocol -- HTTP/1.1, RFC 2616, IETF, June 1999.

the *Connection: Keep-Alive* option in HTTP request and response headers.

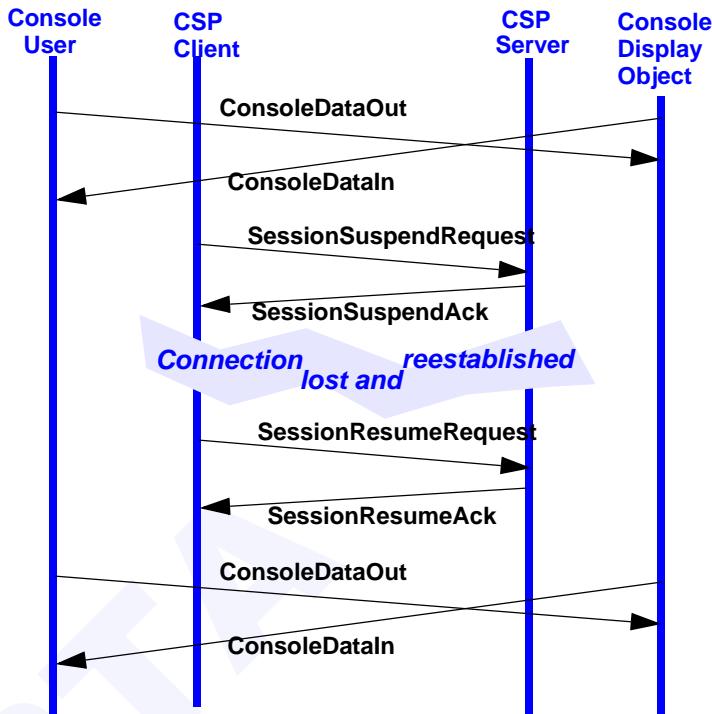
All HTTP/1.1 messages (requests as well as responses) shall be fragmented into chunks of size 4080 bytes or less using chunked transfer encoding. All HTTP/1.1 messages, or chunks thereof, shall be carried in the payload area (Data field) of Console Input and Console Output messages. The console user and the console display object shall be responsible for all fragmentation and reassembly required to fit the messages within the 4080-byte payload limit.

HTTP connections are closed by terminating the console session.

A2.3.6 SESSION HANDOFF AND MAINTENANCE

Session maintenance allows a console user to survive a connection change and it also allows a session to be handed-off to a new user. In the first case, a console user may suspend a session before it loses its CSP connection. It then resumes the session after a new connection has been established, for instance after a warm reboot. In the second case, a console user hands off its session to a different console user, for example during a boot transition.

Session maintenance messages allow a returning console user to resume a session without losing continuity of console interaction and without a requirement for a CSP client to renegotiate console capabilities with a CSP server.



A session resume request with the originally negotiated console capabilities, submitted within the SuspendTime returned in the SessionSuspenddAck ([Table 397 on page 1334](#)) message, is expected to succeed. Only in cases of a crash or reconfiguration of the CSP server does the resume request fail.

A session may be resumed with new capabilities and it is possible that the resume request will not be honored if the CSP server does not support the new capabilities. There may also be resume failures after a crash or reconfiguration of a CSP server.

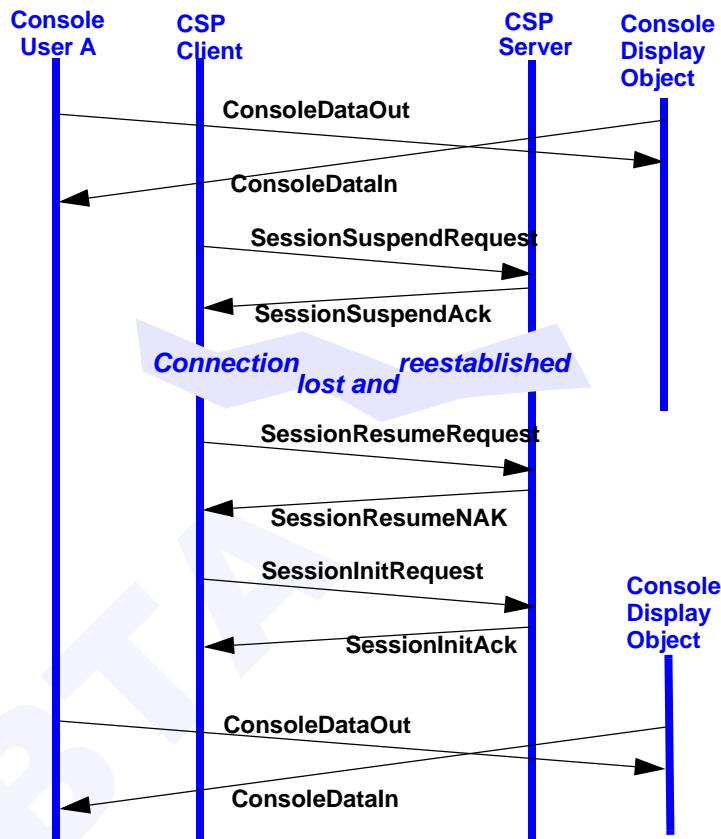


Figure 247 Resume Reject

An example of a resume request with new capabilities is a boot platform that runs with ASCII capabilities and the booted system tries to resume the session with HTTP capabilities on a new RC. If the CSP server does not support the new capabilities, it will reject the resume request.

Handoff is similar to session resumption except that a new console user inherits the session and capabilities must be renegotiated. The console display object supporting the session may flush interactive streams and reset display state, for instance, if new capabilities are negotiated.

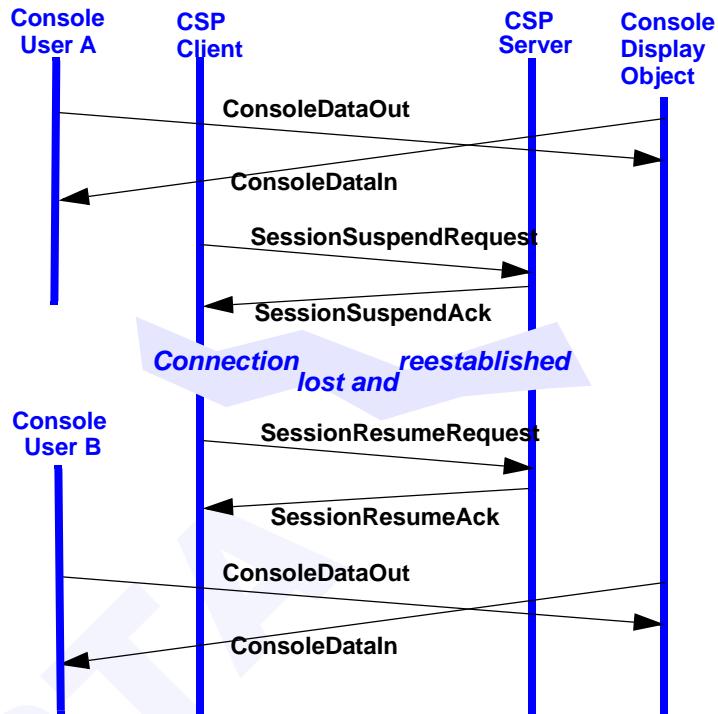


Figure 248 Handoff Example

CA2-34: A CSP server shall support CSP sessions being handed off between two console users over the same CSP connection using messages described in [Table 395](#), [Table 396](#), [Table 397](#), [Table 398](#), [Table 399](#), and [Table 400](#).

CA2-35: A CSP server shall support a CSP session being suspended and subsequently resumed over a new CSP connection using messages described in [Table 395](#), [Table 396](#), [Table 397](#), [Table 398](#), [Table 399](#), and [Table 400](#).

CA2-36: A CSP server that accepts a session maintenance request shall quiesce its end of the session and go into a state where it expects an optional *ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest* message followed by a *SessionResumeRequest* message from the resuming console user indicating the current device number.

The message formats are as follows:

Table 395 SessionSuspendRequest

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000008: Suspend Request
DeviceNum	4	4	Indicates device number assigned to the associated console display object
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Indicates previous console user
NewConsoleUserId	12	4	Indicates new console user
SuspendTime	16	4	32 bit unsigned integer indicating in seconds the duration for which the resources associated with the session are requested to be preserved by the CSP server.

Table 396 SessionSuspendNAK

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000009: Suspend Reject
DeviceNum	4	4	From request
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From request
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of active sessions on the CSP connection on which the response is being sent
NAKCode	16	4	0: Out of resources 1: DeviceNum is invalid 2: ConsoleUserId is invalid 0xFF80-0xFFFF: Other error (interpretation is console specific) All other values: reserved

Table 397 SessionSuspendAck

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000A: Suspend Accept
DeviceNum	4	4	Device number of the console display object which is being put in suspended mode (from request)
ConsoleUserId	8	4	ConsoleUserId of the new console user (from request)
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of active sessions on the CSP connection on which the response is being sent
ResumeKey	16	8	64-bit key generated by the CSP server for the associated device number and requesting console user for validation of session resumption request. The server expects this key to be present in a SessionResumerequest for the device number in question (see Table 398 on page 1334)
SuspendTime	24	4	32 bit unsigned integer indicating in seconds the duration for which the resources associated with the session are requested to be preserved by the CSP server. This value will be less than or equal to the SuspendTime value in the SessionSuspendRequest.

Table 398 SessionResumeRequest

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000B: CSP SessionResumerequest
DeviceNum	4	4	Device number of the console display object with which to resume session
ConsoleUserId	8	4	ConsoleUserId of the requesting console user
Reserved1	12	4	reserved
ResumeKey	16	8	64-bit key generated by the CSP server at the time of accepting session maintenance request corresponding to this resume request (see Table 397 on page 1334)
Nickname	24	8	Short, null-terminated UTF-8 ASCII string identifying the new console user
ConsoleUserName	32	64	Long, null-terminated UTF-8 ASCII string identifying the new console user
CapabilitiesUsed	96	12	The Console Capability Record (see Table 386) selected by the requesting console user for use during the session being resumed

On a successful session suspend, the CSP Server retains the state information of the session including the ResumeKey. A SessionResumeRequest with the correct ResumeKey can modify certain parameters.

The SessionResumeRequest allows the CSP client to specify a new ConsoleUserId for flexibility. This may be useful in the case where the boot environment hands off to the OS and the OS has different Console UserIDs from the boot environment, but wants to use the same console display object.

Table 399 SessionResumeAck

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000C: CSP SessionResumeRequest accepted
DeviceNum	4	4	From request
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From request
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of active sessions on the CSP connection on which the response is being sent, including the one just resumed

Table 400 SessionResumeNAK

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000D: CSP SessionResumerequest declined
DeviceNum	4	4	From request
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From request
ReferenceCount	12	4	The count of currently active sessions over the CSP connection on which the response is being sent
NAKCode	16	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0: Out of session resources• 1: There is an active session on the requested DeviceNum• 2: A requested capability in the CapabilitiesUsed field of the request is no longer available.• 3: Invalid DeviceNum in request• 4: There is a suspended CSP session on the specified DeviceNum but the request did not contain the matching ConsoleUserId• 5: ResumeKey mismatch for the specified DeviceNum• 0xFF80-0xFFFF: Other error (interpretation is console specific) <p>All other values: reserved</p>

A2.3.7 CONNECTION MAINTENANCE MESSAGES

The PingRequest and PingResponse messages allow a CSP client or a CSP server to verify that the function on the other end of the RC connection is still responding to requests.

Standard RC management interfaces, CM DisconnectRequest and RNR Nak for example, also indicate problems on the RC.

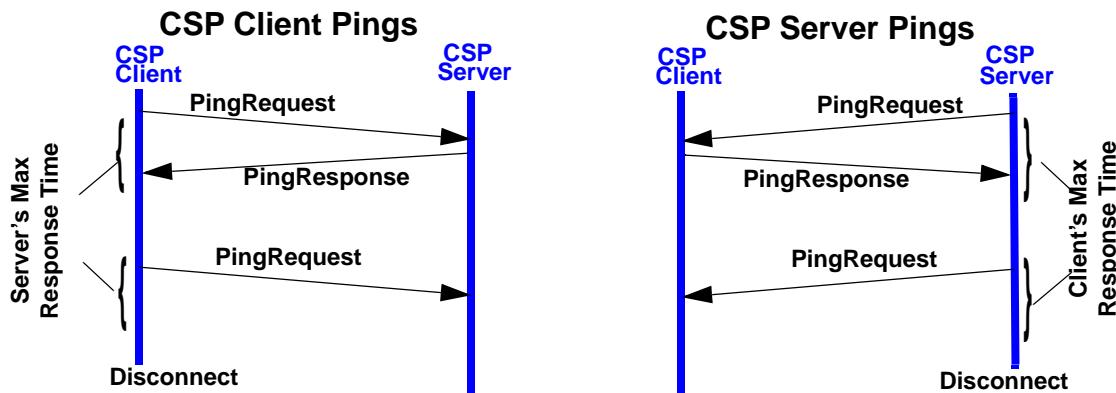
Table 401 **PingRequest**

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000010: CSP PingRequest

Table 402 **PingResponse**

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x00000011: CSP PingResponse

CA2-37: A CSP client or server that receives a PingRequest message shall respond with a PingResponse message within its PingResponse-Time period.

**Figure 249** **Ping Diagrams**

The CSP client PingResponseTime period is specified in the data included in his ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest. The CSP server PingResponseTime period is specified in the data returned in his ConsoleDeviceProfileResponse.

If a CSP client does not receive a PingResponse message within the expected timeout period, it is allowed to tear down the RC session and notify affected Console Users that the session had been terminated.

If a CSP server does not receive a PingResponse message within the expected timeout period, it is allowed to transition affected Console Display Objects to the idle state.

A2.3.8 SERVICE CONNECTION AND SESSION TERMINATION

Normal session tear-down may be initiated either by a CSP client or by a CSP server.

Table 403 SessionEndRequest

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000E: Request to terminate CSP session
DeviceNum	4	4	Device number of the console display object associated with the CSP session to be terminated
ConsoleUserId	8	4	Console User ID of the console user associated with the CSP session

Table 404 SessionTerminated Message

Component Name	Offset (bytes)	Length (bytes)	Component Description
CSPOopcode	0	4	0x0000000F: Accept termination request
DeviceNum	4	4	From SessionInitAck message or from SessionEndRequest message
ConsoleUserId	8	4	From SessionInitRequest message or from SessionEndRequest message
ReferenceCount	12	4	Count of remaining active CSP sessions over this service connection following termination of this session

CA2-38: A CSP server shall issue a SessionTerminated message ([Table 403 on page 1337](#)) upon receiving a SessionEndRequest message ([Table 404 on page 1337](#)).

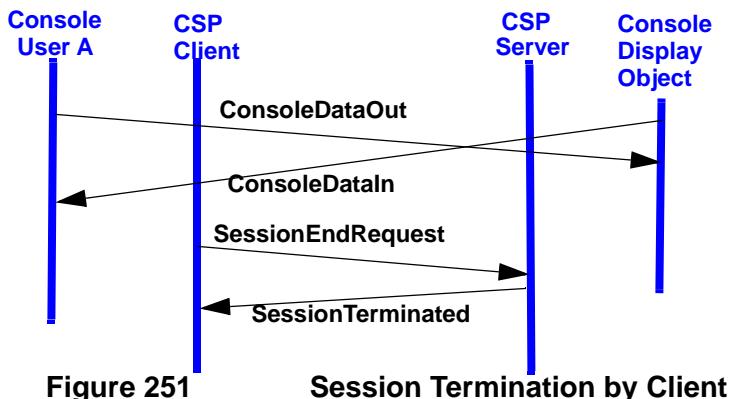
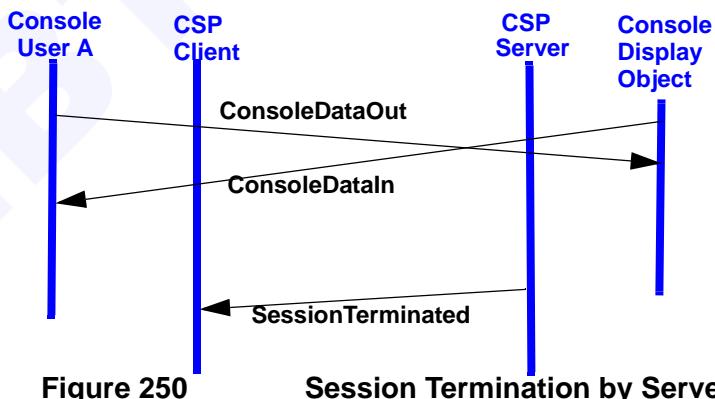
A CSP server may optionally issue a SessionTerminated message to the CSP client in order to unilaterally terminate a CSP session.

CA2-39: A CSP server shall issue a SessionTerminated message on receiving a ConsoleDataOut message not associated with any active CSP session.

When a CSP client receives a SessionTerminated message ([Table 404 on page 1337](#)) with ReferenceCount set to zero, it may close the CSP connection immediately.

The CSP server may close the CSP connection after completion of the send of SessionTerminated message ([Table 404 on page 1337](#)) with ReferenceCount set to zero.

Any sessions not suspended using SessionSuspend messages are considered terminated when the underlying CSP connection is closed.



A2.4 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

This annex specifies two new Compliance Categories (see Volume 1 Chapter 20 for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). These new categories are:

- CSP client
- CSP server.

There are no Compliance Qualifiers for CSP client.

A2.4.1 CSP CLIENT COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of Console-Client, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support (currently there are no optional compliance qualifiers for this category).

- CA2-1: Unique console user ID Page 1311
- CA2-4: SE bit in BTH header Page 1312
- CA2-6: CSP messages over IB RC transport service Page 1314
- CA2-8: Messages to CSP Server Page 1316
- CA2-10: Protocol error response Page 1317
- CA2-14: Reserved fields Page 1320
- CA2-15: Reserved bits Page 1321
- CA2-16: Reserved values Page 1321
- CA2-19: Changing buffer size Page 1321
- CA2-24: Console version - Client actions Page 1322
- CA2-27: Device number Page 1326
- CA2-28: ConsoleUserId and DeviceNum Page 1326
- CA2-29: ContentFormat field Page 1326
- CA2-30: Console input messages Page 1327
- CA2-31: Console output messages Page 1327
- CA2-32: ASCII is ISO 646 Page 1327
- CA2-33: UTF-8 is ISO/IEC 10646 Page 1327
- CA2-37: Ping response Page 1336

A2.4.2 CSP SERVER COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of Console-Server, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

There are two Compliance Qualifiers for CSP Server. They are:

- CSP-IOC - an I/O controller providing console service
 - CSP-Process - a console server process running on a host providing console service
- CA2-2: Unique device number Page 1311
 - CA2-3: RC service connection Page 1311
 - CA2-4: SE bit in BTH header Page 1312
 - CA2-5: One CSP session per console display object Page 1312

● oA2-1:	CSP-IOC: IOControllerProfile component values	Page 1312	1
● oA2-2:	CSP-IOC: obsolete.	Page 1313	2
● oA2-3:	CSP-Process: Register with SA	Page 1313	2
● CA2-6:	CSP messages over IB RC transport service	Page 1314	3
● CA2-7:	Response messages on the same connection	Page 1315	3
● CA2-9:	Messages to CSP Client	Page 1316	4
● CA2-10:	Protocol error response.	Page 1317	5
● CA2-11:	ContentFormat bit 0 (ASCII Input and output)	Page 1320	5
● CA2-12:	ContentFormat bit 1 (UTF-8)	Page 1320	6
● CA2-13:	ContentFormat bit 2 (HTTP)	Page 1320	7
● CA2-14:	Reserved fields	Page 1320	7
● CA2-15:	Reserved bits	Page 1321	8
● CA2-16:	Reserved values	Page 1321	9
● CA2-17:	ConsoleDeviceProfileRequest message.	Page 1321	9
● CA2-18:	ConsoleDeviceProfileReply.	Page 1321	10
● CA2-19:	Changing buffer size	Page 1321	10
● CA2-20:	Console version - Server normal response.	Page 1322	11
● CA2-21:	Console version - Server supports lower version	Page 1322	12
● CA2-22:	Console version - Server supports higher version	Page 1322	13
● CA2-23:	Console version - Supports higher and lower not req.	Page 1322	13
● CA2-25:	DeviceNum of zero reserved.	Page 1325	14
● CA2-26:	Response to Session Init Request message	Page 1326	15
● CA2-28:	ConsoleUserId and DeviceNum	Page 1326	15
● CA2-30:	Console input messages.	Page 1327	16
● CA2-31:	Console output messages.	Page 1327	16
● CA2-32:	ASCII is ISO 646.	Page 1327	17
● CA2-33:	UTF-8 is ISO/IEC 10646.	Page 1327	18
● CA2-34:	CSP sessions hand-off	Page 1332	19
● CA2-35:	Session suspend / resume	Page 1332	19
● CA2-36:	Session maintenance	Page 1332	20
● CA2-37:	Ping response	Page 1336	21
● CA2-38:	Session Terminated message.	Page 1337	21
● CA2-39:	Session Terminated message on error	Page 1338	22
			23
			24
			25
			26
			27
			28
			29
			30
			31
			32
			33
			34
			35
			36
			37
			38
			39
			40
			41
			42

ANNEX A3: APPLICATION SPECIFIC IDENTIFIERS

A3.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is a supplement to Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base document. This document provides an annex to the base document that specifies application specific values for InfiniBand management components and policies for using those components.

The main topics are:

[A3.2 Service ID](#) - Addresses provisions and policies for supporting services over the InfiniBand fabric. Specifically policies for assigning and using Service IDs.

[A3.3 I/O Controller Identification](#) - Specifies policies for creating and interpreting vendor and protocol specific values in Device Management class IOControllerProfile attributes

[A3.4 Service Names](#) - Specifies policies for creating Service Names used in various management attributes.

[A3.5 Management Class Codes](#) - Lists application specific management classes.

A3.1.1 GLOSSARY

The following are additional terms not found in the Volume 1 Glossary (Chapter 2).

Platform

A logical node that consists of one or more channel adapters under the control of a single operating system instance.

Service

A service is a function, or set of functions, accessible by a known protocol (i.e., the service protocol). A service is identified by its Service Name.

Service Client

The user of a service. Typically, the service client contacts the service provider and sends it service requests

Service GID

A GID that is used to obtain a path to a service. A service provider makes known its service GID and a service client uses that GID to obtain a path to the service provider.

Service Name	A name used to identify a service. Service providers usually register their services by service name and service clients use the service name to locate the service.
---------------------	--

Service Provider	An entity that provides a service. Typically a service provider waits for service clients to contact it and responds to service requests.
-------------------------	---

A3.1.2 COMPLIANCE

This annex does not define functionality, but rather defines the policies for administering certain InfiniBand values.

This annex specifies 3 new Compliance Categories (see Volume 1 Chapter 20 for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). These new categories are:

- Service ID Administration
- Service Application
- Managed I/O Unit.

There are no Compliance Qualifiers for these categories.

Section [A3.7 “Compliance Summary” on page 1361](#) provides a summary of compliance statements.

A3.2 SERVICE ID

A Service ID is an InfiniBand construct necessary for Communication Management (see volume 1 chapter 12). The Service ID is a component in ComMgt class MADs that the Communication Manager (CM) uses when resolving a connection request or identifying an Unreliable Data-gram QP.

This Annex addresses the assignment of Service IDs.

A3.2.1 GOALS AND SCOPE

This Annex defines the structure of the 64-bit IB Service ID name-space (fields and their bit-widths), provides for multiple administration authorities, and clarifies which fields within the Service ID the administration authority controls. It also specifies how various entities may use and interpret the various fields of Service IDs.

This annex specifies structure, semantics, policy, and guidelines governing the use of Service IDs by the various entities involved. It also provides detailed examples of how operating systems and I/O unit firmware need to participate in Service ID administration.

A3.2.2 PRINCIPLES OF SERVICE ID USAGE

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Each port on a CA may support a set of services. Each service is identified by a given Service ID. Since not all ports support the same set of services, a tuple composed of the GID, PKey, and a Service ID uniquely identify a service.

11
12
13
14
15
In the process of establishing communications, the communication manager behind the port uses the Service ID to identify the service provider. The Service ID in conjunction with a GID identifies a service accessible through that port. In general each Service ID represents a particular service entity and thus identifies the QP consumer providing that service.

16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
2A
Because Service IDs are allocated, advertised, discovered, cached, and eventually used in establishing communication, a number of diverse entities deal with Service IDs in their various roles: server processes, I/O units, I/O controllers, operating systems, service clients (including potential clients), SA, CMs, and boot firmware.

A3.2.2.1 BACKGROUND

18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
A service is a function, or set of functions, accessible by a known protocol (i.e., the *service protocol*). An *IB Service* is any service accessible via an IB transport service. A *Service ID* is a value that identifies a particular service. Because a service provider might use multiple QPs, a Service ID identifies the QP consumer (i.e., the application or protocol stack that uses the QPs to provide the service). Thus, it is not the ID of a particular QP. The Service ID provides the means for a service client's communication manager to resolve a given service to a particular QP. The resolution process (how the CM determines which QP) is implementation specific. For example, a service using UD transport service uses a different QP for each partition and a service using the RC transport service needs a different QP for each client. They each can use a single Service ID and the clients use that Service ID to learn which QP to use. In fact, the QP might not exist until the service provider receives a communication request from the client, at which time the CM or service provider creates and configures the QP.

32
33
34
35
36
Communication management messages provide the mechanism for CMs to (1) resolve a Service ID to a UD QP, (2) establish a connection to an RC or UC QP for the service identified by a Service ID, and (3) establish a Reliable Datagram Channel to the RD service identified by a Service ID.

37
38
The two predominant service models are Client-Server and Peer-Peer.

- 39
40
41
42
• For the *Client-Server* model, a service provider (i.e., the application providing the service) offers a service to one or more service clients (i.e., the applications using the service). Typically, service clients make service requests to the service provider and service

providers respond. This implies that the service client knows both the port and the QP where it sends its service requests while the service provider can learn that information from the request. Thus, the service client needs the ability to locate the service provider.

- In the Peer-Peer model, two or more applications (i.e., peers) communicate, and each peer may perform a role similar to a client, a service provider, or both. Peers also need the ability to locate other peers.

For both of these models, an application on one platform wants to locate and establish communications with a particular application on another platform. This is the role of the Service ID. Since there can be multiple instances of a particular service in the IB fabric, it is the combination of the Port GID and Service ID that identifies a particular service provider. Thus, the combination of the port GID, PKey, and Service ID must uniquely identify a single service provider.

The GID used to identify the port providing the service is called the Service GID. A client uses the Service GID to resolve a path to the port. A port can have multiple GIDs and the DGID in the path that the service client uses does not need to be the Service GID. Typically, the service client queries the SA for paths to the service provider's port by specifying the Service GID and uses one of the paths that the SA returns.

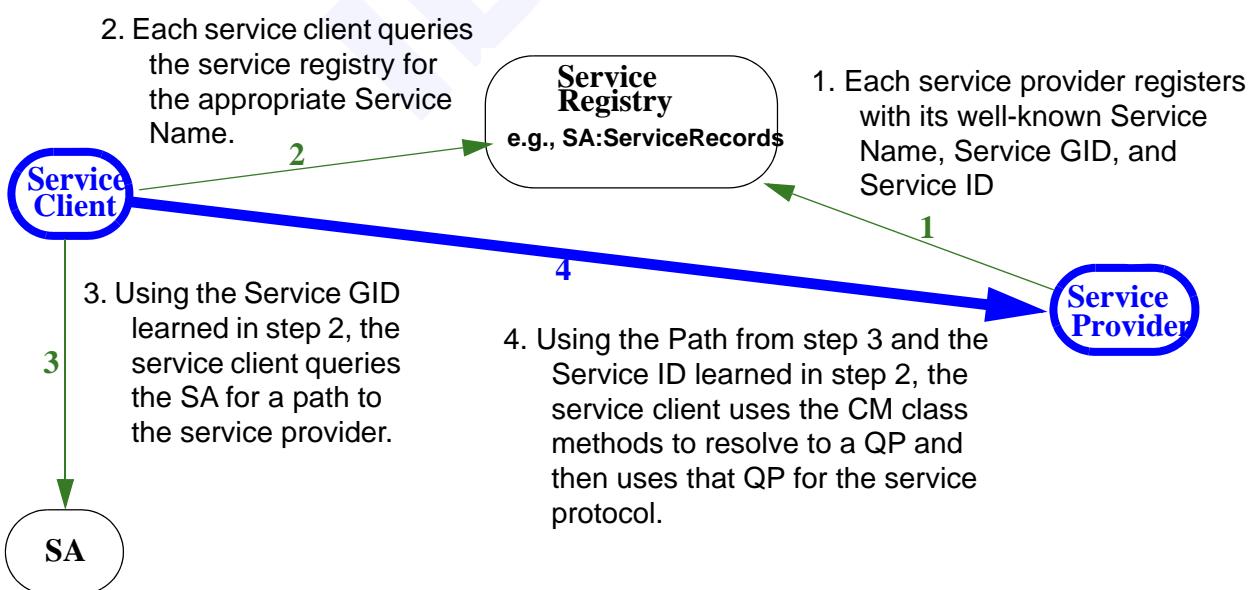


Figure 252

Typical Service Resolution for Host-based Services

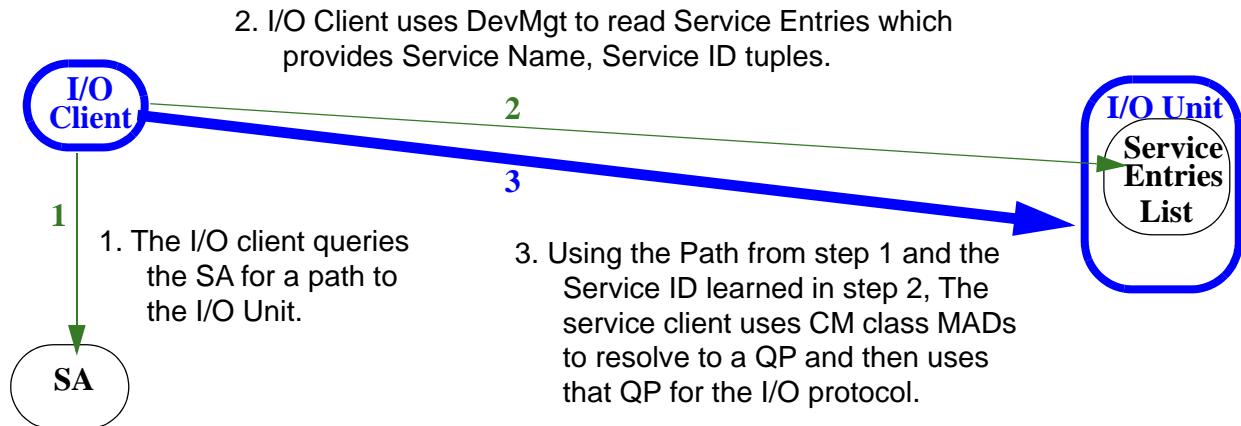


Figure 253

Typical Service Resolution for I/O Services

As previously mentioned, the combination of the {Service GID and Service ID} identifies the port and the service. The SA provides a means for a service provider to register its Service Name, Service GID, Service ID, and other service related information. Service consumers can query the SA for service records for a particular service name and get a list of service providers registered for that Service Name. Each record provides the {Service GID, Service ID} for a service provider. The service consumer uses the Service GID to obtain a path to the service provider (see section 15.2 “SA MADs” subsection on the PathRecord attribute) and then uses the Service ID to resolve the QP (see Chapter 12.6 “Communication Management Messages”).

A3.2.2.2 CONSIDERATIONS

Definition of the Service ID name-space gives special consideration to:

- Scope of the service: Whether a single service instance covers just a port, a channel adapter (or node), multiple channel adapters in a “platform”, etc. -- Well-known (permanent) Service IDs must have a platform wide scope because service clients usually remember these types of services by their host name and Service ID. Dynamically allocated Service IDs can have a port-only scope. Service resolution for services that use dynamic Service IDs typically resolves a Service Name to a <Port GID, Service ID>. While it is possible that a dynamic Service ID has greater than port only scope, the service consumer can not assume a service with a dynamically assigned Service ID is available on any other port. The service provider needs to register its service for each valid {Service GID, Service ID} combination (i.e., the service registers each of its ports).

- Lifetime: How long can a potential client retain a Service ID after discovery and still use it to establish transport service. -- Well-known Service IDs are cacheable and can be remembered forever. However, because of the nature of dynamic Service ID assignment, not all Service IDs have this guarantee. Platforms need to assign Service IDs in a manner that avoids the same Service ID being subsequently assigned to a different service. This annex provides guidance on how to avoid or minimize the possibility of subsequent reassignment (see [A3.2.3.3.2 "Coherency Requirements" on page 1352](#)).
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
- Assigning entity: What body covers the structure of Service IDs for a given service. -- This annex divides the Service ID address space into groups and identifies who controls assignment of those Service IDs. These groups include: local OS, IBTA, and external organizations.
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Accommodating multiple instances behind a port: If multiple instances of a service may overlap in scope or time, how to avoid assigning conflicting Service IDs. -- Where there are multiple entities independently providing different instances of the same service (i.e., same service name/protocol for the same partition), each instance requires a different Service ID value and thus, the application can not use a well-known Service ID. This is because the <platform Name, Well-Known Service ID> or even <Port GID, Well-known Service ID> would not be unique. Where a service is advertised in the form of <Service Name, Service ID>, dynamically assigned Service IDs are sufficient.
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- Accommodating host-based services along with device-based services: The two service categories represent two different service models; IPC and I/O. -- IPC and I/O mostly differ on how the client resolves the Service ID (see [Figure 252 on page 1344](#) and [Figure 253 on page 1345](#)). Once a client learns the Service ID, there is no difference in how the I/O client verses the IPC client establishes a connection or learns the UD QP (Chapter 12).
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- The number of advertisements needed by a single service instance: For services that use a single transport type, it is sufficient to register once for each port through which the service is available. However, an application that supports multiple service types (UC, RC, RD, UD) might need to advertise each service type. It is not necessary for the application to use a different Service ID for each transport service type because in the CM:REQ, the transport service type is specified independently from the Service ID, and the transport service type is implicit in CM:SIDR_REQ MADs. Therefore, the issue becomes one of the service client knowing which transport service type(s) the service provider supports (because Communication can only occur if both ends use the same service type). One solution is to have a dif-
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
ferent service name for each appropriate transport service type and thus require the service provider to register for each Service Name it supports.

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
• Using multiple Service IDs to distinguish service types: Even though a protocol could use a different Service ID for each transport service type, the service client still needs to know which transport service type the service provider supports. Different Service IDs typically indicate different service providers. Thus the only reason to use separate Service IDs for the same service is when one QP consumer provides the service for one transport service type and a different QP consumer provides the service for a different transport service type. For all practical purposes they are different services. Each with its own Service ID. A single QP consumer providing the service independent of the selected transport service type constitutes a single service instance and thus only needs one Service ID. The specification defining the service, or defining how the service maps to IB, must specify of how the service consumer knows which service type to use.

A3.2.2.3 ASSIGNING SERVICE IDs

17
18
19
20
Service IDs fall into different categories on the basis of geographic and temporal scope as shown in Table 405.

21
Table 405 Service ID Categories and Characteristics

Characteristic	Category		
	Universally Assigned Well-known Service IDs	Network ^a assigned Service IDs	Locally Assigned Service IDs
Geographical Scope	Global	not specified	platform
Does the Service ID value identify the particular service type?	yes	not specified	no
Temporal Scope: Within the geographical scope, does a Service ID value always indicate the same service type?	yes	not specified	not guaranteed
Can there be multiple independent instances ^b of the same service type per port?	no	not specified	yes

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
a. Network is loosely defined to mean a subnet or collection of subnets that form a domain where each domain has its own administration responsibilities independent of other domains.

30
31
32
33
34
35
b. Service instance refers to the process providing the service (i.e., the QP consumer) and not individual instances of service objects accessible through the same QP.

36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Geographical scope refers to whether the Service ID assignment is unique only within the platform, within the network, or universally unique.

- A Service ID which is permanently assigned to a service type (i.e., a particular application, protocol, etc.), to be used everywhere is called a “*well-known*” Service ID and both the service provider and the service client explicitly know which Service ID to use. This annex provides for well-known Service IDs.

Well-known Service IDs are assigned per service type and all instances of that particular service type, regardless of where they are located, use the same Service ID. Conversely, no other service type uses that Service ID value, so a well-known Service ID value explicitly identifies the service type. Since the {port GID, P_Key, Service ID} tuple must uniquely identify a single service provider, there can be only one service provider for that service type per port per partition.

- Network assigned Service IDs are administered by a network service or network administrator. Network means a subnet or collection of subnets that form a domain where each domain has its own administration responsibilities independent of other domains. IBA does not prescribe any particular network administration model. The Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) is an organization that defines network service structures and mechanisms. This annex reserves a range of Service IDs for definition by the IETF. The details of how these Service IDs are assigned, as well as their characteristics, are left to the IETF. That definition is not limited to network assigned Service IDs and may include well-known values and locally administered values. This annex also provides for assignment of Service IDs by other organizations.
- *Locally assigned* Service IDs are Service IDs arbitrarily assigned by an agent within the local platform. Locally assigned Service IDs are dynamic. Dynamic means that the Service ID assignment is not guaranteed to last any longer than the immediate lifetime of the service provider or OS (i.e., until the application dies or the OS reboots). Thus, at a later time, the {GID, Service ID} tuple might identify a different service provider. This annex provides for locally assigned Service IDs.

Each service provider that uses locally assigned Service IDs has a different Service ID value. Thus, there can be multiple independent instances of a particular service type per port. An example of multiple independent instances of a service type is an I/O unit containing multiple I/O controllers of the same type. Note that a single service provider with multiple service objects only needs a single Service ID.

This annex divides the Service ID address space into groups to permit different authorities to independently assign unique Service ID values within their scope.

A3.2.3 SERVICE ID STRUCTURE

The Service ID structure breaks the 64-bit Service ID address space into groups of address spaces, which are administered independently of each other. The first byte of the Service ID identifies the group and thus identifies the administration authority. IBTA defines four of the groups and reserves the remainder for future definition. [Figure 254](#) illustrates the general Service ID structure and [Table 405](#) specifies the values for the Administration Group Number (AGN) field.

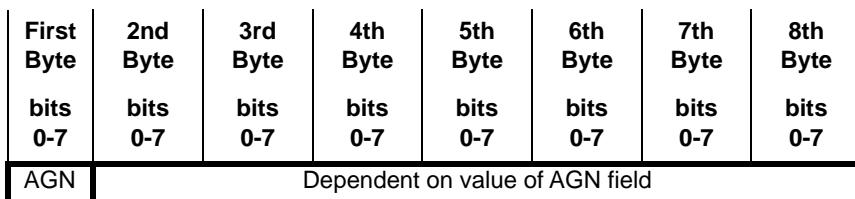


Figure 254 General Service ID Structure

Table 406 AGN Codes

Value	Administration Authority
0x00	IBTA Well-known and dynamic Service IDs, see A3.2.3.1 on page 1349
0x01	IETF - (any category), see A3.2.3.2 on page 1351
0x02	Local OS - dynamically assigned with limited lifetime (see A3.2.3.3 on page 1351)
0x10 - 0x1F	External organizations (any category, see A3.2.3.4 on page 1354)
others	reserved

CA3-1: A Service ID assignment shall use the format specified in [Figure 254](#) and use the AGN values specified in [Table 406](#).

A3.2.3.1 IBTA ASSIGNED SERVICE IDs

Certain applications need a preassigned Service ID to avoid requiring each service provider to register or advertise its specific Service ID. The purpose of IBTA Assigned Service IDs is to define Service ID values for IBTA defined protocols. The format of IBTA defined Service IDs is illustrated in [Figure 255](#) and [Table 407](#) lists the IBTA administered Service ID values.

First Byte	2nd Byte	3rd Byte	4th Byte	5th Byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte
0x00	Value as per Table 407						

Figure 255 IBTA Assigned Service IDs

Table 407 IBTA Assigned Service IDs

Service	First Byte	2nd Byte	3rd Byte	4th Byte	5th Byte	6th byte	7th Byte	8th Byte
Null	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00
ROM Repository	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x01
Console Process	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x02
Compliance Testing	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x01	any
SDP Port	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x00	0x01	Port Number	
other values reserved								

The ROM Repository, Console Process, and some SDP Port Service IDs are well-known and fully cacheable. Most SDP Port Service IDs are dynamic (refer to the SDP Annex for details). A limitation of Service IDs is that there can be only one service provider using that Service ID per port (or perhaps per platform), and thus, only one instance of an application can use a particular well-known Service ID for that port.

A3.2.3.1.1 NULL SERVICE ID

The null Service ID (all zeros) is a special Service ID that applications may use in data structures containing a Service ID parameter when the Service ID is not relevant. This might be the case when the application does not depend on using CM messages to resolve a UD QP and does not set up a connection. Networking protocols that use multicast to locate service providers is an example where the application does not need a specific Service ID. Use of the null Service ID in CM messages is not valid.

A3.2.3.1.2 ROM REPOSITORY

ROM Repository is a service provided by an I/O unit that allows host nodes to read (and update) device drivers and other images stored in persistent memory on the I/O unit (see Booting Annex). The ROM Repository Service ID identifies the ROM repository application.

A3.2.3.1.3 CONSOLE PROCESS

The IB Console protocol supports both an I/O based and a host based console service (i.e., Console IOC and Console Process). The console IOC does not need or use a well-known Service ID. However, the host based console server process does (see Console Annex). Thus, a console IOC uses locally administrated Service IDs while a host based console server process uses the well-known Console Process Service ID.

A3.2.3.1.4 SERVICE IDs FOR TESTING

IBA reserves a block of 256 Service IDs for compliance testing as specified in [Table 407](#) as “Compliance Testing”. The use of these Service IDs are defined by the IBTA Compliance Test Group.

A3.2.3.1.5 SOCKETS DIRECT PROTOCOL

Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP) is a network protocol equivalent to TCP that uses a Reliable Connection QP for each socket. A socket is identified by its TCP port number. The set of SDP Port Service IDs identify specific applications by their equivalent TCP/IP port number. The last two bytes of the SDP Port Service ID is the equivalent TCP port number.

Some SDP Port values are well-known port numbers and fall into the category of well-known Service IDs as per [Table 405 on page 1347](#). Other values have the characteristic of a dynamically assigned Service ID (i.e., fall into locally assigned category of Service IDs as per [Table 405 on page 1347](#)). Refer to the Sockets Direct Protocol Annex for details.

A3.2.3.2 IETF SERVICE IDs

The IBTA recognizes the importance of the IETF and reserves a range of Service IDs for that organization. How the IETF chooses to use this address space is left entirely to the IETF. Unless the IETF specifies otherwise, these Service IDs should not be considered cacheable.

First Byte	2nd Byte	3rd Byte	4th Byte	5th Byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte
0x01							any value

Figure 256 IETF Service IDs**A3.2.3.3 LOCAL OS ADMINISTERED SERVICE IDs**

Local OS administered Service IDs are those Service ID values assigned by the local platform. Each platform assigns locally administered Service IDs independent of other platforms. In a host, this assignment is the responsibility of the operating system (or its designated agent, such as the CM) that resides above the verbs layer. An equivalent means of assigning Service IDs can exist for an I/O unit. Other than the AGN field, IBA does not impose any particular format on local OS administered Service IDs, leaving that task to the discretion of the local OS. [Figure 257](#) illustrates the structure of local OS administered Service IDs.

First Byte	2nd Byte	3rd Byte	4th Byte	5th Byte	6th byte	7th byte	8th byte
0x02							Dynamic value assigned by local OS

Figure 257 OS Administered Service IDs

Locally administered Service IDs have local scope. That means that the same service type can have a different Service ID value on each platform that provides that service. Thus, a service client needs a way to learn the Service ID. Learning the Service ID can be handled through a number of service registration facilities such as a DHCP²⁹ server, a registration service such as the SubnAdm Service Records, and by Device Management class Service Entries (see [A3.2.4 “Resolving Service Names” on page 1355](#)).

A3.2.3.3.1 PORT ASSOCIATION

Dynamically assigned Service ID assignment is per port. Whether the OS assigns a dynamic Service ID to an application on a per port basis or per platform basis is a matter of OS policy. This means that an OS could assign a Service ID to an application and restrict that application to a particular port (or set of ports) and assign the same Service ID to other applications as long as none of the port assignments overlap.

CA3-2: The assignment of Service IDs shall ensure that the <Port GID, P_Key, Service ID> tuple is unique and unambiguous. That is, there is at most one application (or a set of applications that know that they are sharing the Service ID) that believes an incoming CM MAD on that port containing that Service ID is a request for its service.

CA3-3: A CM shall not redirect a CM:REQ or CM:SIDR_REQ to another port unless the <Port GID, Service ID> tuple for both ports reference the same QP consumer on the responder side.

A3.2.3.3.2 COHERENCY REQUIREMENTS

A primary concern with using Service IDs is their relative lifetime. That is, once a service client learns a Service ID, for what period of time is the Service ID valid? How the platform administers Service IDs affects the answer.

A cacheable Service ID is a Service ID value where the {Service GID, Service ID} tuple always represents the same service entity. Only well-known Service IDs are cacheable. Dynamic Service IDs do not have the same coherency guarantees.

Because locally administered Service IDs are dynamically assigned, there is no guarantee that an application will be assigned the same Service ID each time the platform, OS, or process initializes. This means that a particular {Service GID, Service ID} tuple could subsequently identify a different application. A coherency problem could exist if a Service ID value assigned to one application is subsequently assigned to another applica-

tion while service clients of the first application still think that the Service ID identifies the first application.

The assigning authority has the responsibility of not reassigning a Service ID value until all clients have stopped using it. Just because an application terminates, does not mean that its Service IDs are not in use. In fact, there may be service registries that retain Service IDs for long periods of time, depending on lease periods established for those service listings. These lease periods could be any period of time (e.g., minutes, days, etc.), and not all service registries have leases.

Service records registered with the SA contain a lease period that identifies how long that service record is valid. The expectation is that the service continually renews that lease while the application is active and the Service ID is valid. If for any reason the Service ID assignment changes (e.g. the platform providing the service resets, the application terminates, etc.), the lease expires and the SA removes the service record from use.

Some steps that a platform can take to avoid a coherency problem are:

- Persistently assign Service IDs so that an application always uses the same value.
- Assign Service IDs sequentially, storing the next value to be assigned in non-volatile storage, so it survives power cycles and platform resets. Thus each time the platform resets, applications are assigned a new set of Service IDs that do not overlap with the previous instantiation. Due to the large local OS Service ID address space (2^{56} values), the OS should never have to reuse a value.
- Assign Service IDs sequentially, starting with a random number each time the OS starts up (or resets). The probability of reassigning a Service ID is extremely small and the probability of a coherency problem is even smaller - much better than exists in networking such as for TCP and UDP port numbers.
- In all cases, from the time the platform initializes until it resets, it should never reassign a Service ID value to a different application, unless the original application has specifically indicated that it is ok for the OS to reuse the value.
- A platform that reassigns a Service ID value should assure that there are no SA:ServiceRecords for the old assignment. One way this can be meet is by restricting the maximum SA:ServiceRecord lease period when creating/modifying a ServiceRecord and not reassigning the Service ID until after the lease has expired.

When the client receives a ServiceRecord from the SA, the ServiceRecord contains a ServiceLease component that indicates the remaining

amount of time the Service ID will remain valid. A client should not use a Service ID after its lease period expires.

A3.2.3.4 EXTERNALLY ADMINISTRATED SERVICE IDs

Other organizations may wish to assign Service IDs or need to map their equivalent of a Service ID to an IBA Service ID. To keep the IBTA out of the business of administering Service IDs to other organizations, any organization that has an IEEE Organizational Unique Identifier (OUI)³⁰ can specify its own Service IDs as long as they follow the format specified in [Figure 258](#).

First Byte		2nd Byte	3rd Byte	4th Byte	5th Byte	6th byte	7th Byte	8th Byte
bits 4-7	bits 0-3	bits 0-7	bits 0-7	bits 0-7	bits 0-7	bits 0-7	bits 0-7	bits 0-7
0x1	org ^a	OUI			Value assigned by organization ^a .			

Figure 258 Externally Administrated Service IDs

a. value assigned by the organization indicated by the OUI field

OUI = IEEE 24-bit Organization Unique Identifier

By placing the organization's IEEE assigned 24-bit Organization Unique Identifier in bytes 2, 3 and 4, the organization can define Service IDs by specifying the value for bits 0-3 of the first byte and all bits of the last 4 bytes. For example, the OUI assigned to ANSI X3 is 00609E and thus if any X3 subgroups, such as X3T10, needs its own Service IDs, X3 can create them by using its OUI. Thus, Service IDs 0x1h00609Ehhhhhhhh (where h is any hexadecimal digit) can be assigned by X3.

Since these values are application specific, the application knows if the Service ID is cacheable or not. Unless explicitly known, these Service IDs should not be considered cacheable.

CA3-4: Other than the IETF, which may specify Service IDs as per Section A3.2.3.2, an external organization that specifies Service IDs shall use the structure specified in [Figure 258](#).

CA3-5: The OUI in an Externally Administrated Service ID shall be an OUI assigned to the defining organization by the IEEE or an OUI which that organization has permission to use.

30. For additional details, see: "IEEE OUI and Company_id Assignments" at www.standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/

A3.2.4 RESOLVING SERVICE NAMES

Service resolution is the process of learning the service location (i.e., the port GID and Service ID) for a particular service instance.

A3.2.4.1 SERVICE ADVERTISEMENT

One way to resolve a service location is through service advertisement. A service advertisement is where the service provider places service information in a known location so service clients or peers can find it. The service information includes <service name, port GID, and Service ID>. Services are advertised in different ways.

- A managed I/O unit advertises I/O services provided by its I/O controllers via DevMgt ServiceEntry or ServiceRecords attributes. These records list <service name, Service ID> tuples for the I/O controller. The port GID is implied as the same port that the client used to read the DevMgt attribute.
- Host-based IB subnet services are advertised in SA ServiceRecords. These records list <service name, port GID, Service ID> tuples.
- Some network based services are advertised in configuration and directory servers, such as a DHCP server / Directory Agent where service clients retrieve service records through standard service location protocols (e.g., SLP v2).

Each service advertisement describes exactly one service instance.

Once the service's port GID and Service ID are known, the service client can:

- Resolve the UD QP & Q_Key by sending a CM:SIDR_REQ to that port specifying the Service ID.
- Resolve the RD QP/RDC & Q_Key by sending a CM:REQ to that port specifying the Service ID.
- Create an RC or UC connection by sending a CM:REQ to that port specifying the Service ID.

A3.2.4.2 MULTICAST QUERY

Another means to resolve a service location is via multicast. Naturally this only works for services using Unreliable Datagram or Raw Datagram transport service. The first service provider creates a multicast group and additional service providers join the MC group. The service client then sends a multicast datagram to that MC group address identifying the particular service provider (e.g., service name, host name, protocol ID, etc.), and the appropriate service provider(s) respond to it. The service provider learns the location of the service client from the multicast datagram and responds with a unicast datagram. The service client learns the location

of the service provider from the response. For the multicast method, a Service ID is not necessary.

The multicast method implies that the service providers and service clients know which multicast address to use. There are several possible ways to solve this problem. One way is to use service advertisement described previously.

For example, if the IETF wanted to define an IP over InfiniBand (IPoIB) service resolution process, it could define a unique service name such as “xyz.MCGroup.IETF”³¹ and require that the first service provider (or router) create a MC group and register it via a SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) using ServiceName= “xyz.MCGroup.IETF”, ServiceGID = the assigned multicast GID, and Service ID = null or well-known Service ID.

Now all interested parties can learn the multicast address by:

- a) Querying the SA for ServiceRecords with ServiceName = “xyz.MCGroup.IETF”
- b) Querying the SA for MCGroupRecords with MGID=ServiceGID.

The MCGroupRecord provides all of the parameters the client needs to send a UD multicast packet.

A3.2.4.3 ALTERNATIVES

Not every service type needs to use advertisement or multicast. Certain service types are *ubiquitous* (i.e., present on most ports or present on platforms of a certain type: e.g. the service for accessing the ROM Repository is found on some managed I/O units, an OS-specific service on all hosts incorporating a particular OS, etc. For these situations, there are various ways for the client to learn the GID of service provider and it is common for the service to employ a *well-known Service ID*.

The method that a service client uses to learn which platform provides the service is application dependant. However, it is typical for service clients using well-known Service IDs to be configured with just the name of the host providing the service, and then query a service that resolves the host name to a port GID.

A3.3 I/O CONTROLLER IDENTIFICATION

The DevMgt class attributes contain components that identify properties of an I/O controller. These components are: VendorID, DeviceID, Device Version, Subsystem VendorID, SubsystemID, IO Class, IO Subclass, Protocol, Protocol Version, ID String.

31. This is a fictitious name created for the example and does not imply an actual service name.

The I/O controller vendor provides this information so the host can identify the I/O controller and match it with an appropriate I/O driver (refer to the I/O annex). This section describes the acceptable practice for deriving values for these fields.

A3.3.1 VENDOR INFORMATION

The following components are vendor specific: *VendorID*, *DeviceID*, *Device Version*, *Subsystem VendorID*, *SubsystemID*, *ID String*.

The vendor places its IEEE assigned Organization Unique Identifier (OUI)³² in the *VendorID* field and may place any value in the *DeviceID* and *Device Version* fields. The vendor may also provide an ASCII string of its choice in the *ID String* field.

The *Subsystem VendorID* and *SubsystemID* provide additional information when a subsystem vendor uses components provided by other vendors. In this case the subsystem vendor provides its OUI in the *Subsystem VendorID* field and may specify any value in the *SubsystemID* field.

A vendor that produces a generic controller (i.e., one that supports a standard I/O protocol such as SRP), which does not have vendor specific device drivers, may use the value of 0xFFFFFFF in the *VendorID* field. However, such a value prevents the vendor from ever providing vendor specific drivers for the product.

A3.3.2 GENERIC INFORMATION

Generic information fields refer to the *IO Class*, *IO Subclass*, *Protocol*, and *Protocol Version* components of the in DevMgt attributes. An I/O Controller (IOC) uses these fields to indicate that it supports a standard I/O protocol³³. A host uses these fields to match the IOC with an I/O driver that performs that I/O protocol (see [Annex A1: “I/O Infrastructure” on page 1289](#) for driver matching).

CA3-6: A managed I/O unit shall implement a Device Management Agent as per Section 16.3 (or per a supplemental Annex that supersedes Section 16.3).

CA3-7: An IOC shall specify Class, Subclass, and Protocol values in accordance with [A3.3 I/O Controller Identification](#).

32. For additional details, see: “IEEE OUI and Company_id Assignments” at www.standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/

33. A standard I/O protocol refers to a protocol definition that permits a vendor other than the IOC vendor to provide the I/O driver. Thus, vendor and product specific information is not pertinent in matching the IOC with an I/O driver.

It is the combination of the Class, Subclass, and Protocol fields that identifies a single I/O class protocol.

The most significant byte of the Class field identifies the I/O category and the least significant byte of the Class field and the SubClass field identify the defining organization as illustrated in [Figure 259](#).

Field:	Class Field			SubClass Field
Bits:	15-12	11-8	7-0	15-0
Content:	Category Table 408	reserved	OrganizationID ^a	

Figure 259 Class/Subclass fields for External Protocols

a. The most significant byte of the OUI is in the least significant byte of the Class field and the least significant byte of the OUI is in the least significant byte of Subclass field. Bits are in canonical order.

[Table 408](#) specifies the values for Category:

Table 408 I/O Category

Value	I/O Category
0x0	none or other
0x1	Storage class
0x2	Network class
0x4	Video/Multimedia class
0xF	Unknown or multiple classes
others	reserved

A3.3.3 IBTA PROTOCOLS

An OrganizationID code of 0xFFFFFFF indicates an IBA defined class protocol as listed in [Table 409](#).

Table 409 IBTA Defined Protocols

Class ^a	Subclass	Protocol ^b	Definition
0xzzFF	0xFFFF	0xFFFF	The IOC does not support a standard I/O protocol (only a proprietary protocol)
0x40FF	0xFFFF	0x0001	Console protocol as defined in Console Annex

a. z = any value

b. All other combinations reserved

A3.3.4 OTHER PROTOCOLS

Any organization may define their own protocol identifiers by specifying a Class, SubClass, Protocol tuple using their OrganizationID in the Class

field (i.e., the least significant 8 bits) and the Subclass field, as illustrated in [Figure 259](#). The OrganizationID is the IEEE Organization Unique Identifier³⁴ (OUI) assigned to the organization that is defining the Protocol and Version field values. Thus any organization that has an IEEE assigned OUI may specify Protocol codes. For each Protocol value, the defining organization selects a Category. It also maintains control of defining Version values.

A3.4 SERVICE NAMES

Service names appear in a number of different places. In particular, in SubnAdm:ServiceRecord attributes and in DevMgt:ServiceEntries attributes. The recommended practice is that the service name end in a name unique to the assigning authority.

The InfiniBand Trade Association (IBTA) reserves the value “.IBTA” for IBTA defined service names. Thus, the IBTA is the only organization that may use that value in a service name. For example, “Console.IBTA” can only be assigned by the IBTA.

CA3-8: The value “.IBTA” shall not be used in a service name unless the name is explicitly defined by the InfiniBand Trade Association.

CA3-9: An application that specifies an IBTA defined protocol name shall conform to the requirements for the associated protocol.

A3.4.1 IBTA SERVICE NAMES

Table 410 lists IBTA Service Names.

Table 410 IBTA Service Names

Service Name	Defined in:
BaseboardManager.IBTA	Chapter 16 - Baseboard Management
BIS.IBTA	Boot Information Service Annex
BootManager.IBTA	Booting Annex
Console.IBTA	Annex A2 “Console Service Protocol”
DeviceManager.IBTA	Chapter 16 - Device Management

A3.4.2 I/O SERVICE RECORDS

Each IOC provides a list of protocol identifiers in one or more service entry attributes. The number of attribute records for a particular IOC is indicated

34. For additional details, see: “IEEE OUI and Company_id Assignments” at www.standards.ieee.org/regauth/oui/

in the IOControllerProfile. Typically, an I/O driver uses this information for establishing connections with the IOC.

For each protocol the IOC supports, the IOC provides a service entry. Each entry contains a ServiceName and its associated ServiceID. Service names need to be unique within the scope of the IOC (i.e., the IOC can not list the same service name more than once in any of its service entries). For proprietary drivers, the IOC vendor defines a service name and for standard I/O protocols, the organization defining the I/O protocol defines the service name.

A3.4.3 SERVICERECORD ATTRIBUTE

The SubnAdm:ServiceRecord attribute provides the means for a service to advertise its presence. The service record contains a Service Name and its associated Service GID and Service ID. Typically a service client queries the SA for ServiceRecords matching a particular service name to locate a port and Service ID for a particular protocol. The organization defining the protocol defines the Service Name.

A3.5 MANAGEMENT CLASS CODES

Chapter 13 specifies a range of management class codes as application specific. [Table 411](#) lists application specific management class code values and identifies their respective management class.

Table 411 Application Specific Management Class Codes

Class Code ^a	Management Class
0x10	Device Administration - see Configuration Management Annex
0x11	Boot Management - see Booting Annex
0x12	Boot Information Service - see Boot Information Service Annex
0x20	Reserved for Compliance and Inter-operability Testing
0x21	Congestion Management - see Congestion Management Annex

a. All other values reserved for future assignment

A3.6 QUEUE KEYS

Chapter 10 section 10.2.5 specifies that Q_Keys with the most significant bit set can only be sent by QPs that have that Q_Key in the QP context. This provides for a set of ‘privileged Q_Keys’. That is, the only way for a QP to send or receive a privileged Q_Key is to have been created with that privileged Q_Key. Since the operating system controls QP creation and

the user level application can not alter the QP context, the OS has the means to control use of privileged Q_Keys.

In order for privileged Q_Keys to be meaningful, their use needs to be restricted to the applications for which the Q_Key is assigned. Table 412 lists Privileged Q_Keys and their assigned use.

Table 412 Privileged Q_Keys

Q_Key	Management Class
0x8000_0000 thru 0x8000_FFFF	Available for general use - can be used without permission from the InfiniBand Trade Association
0x8001_0000	Well known IB management Q_Key
0x8001_0001	Device Administration Agent (see Configuration Management Annex)
0x8001_0000 thru 0x8001_FFFF	reserved for IBTA definition
0x8002_0000 thru 0x8FFF_FFFF	Reserved for external use - An organization can request a privileged Q_Key by sending the request to the InfiniBand Trade Association - attention Application Working Group.

A3.7 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

This annex specifies 3 new Compliance Categories (see Volume 1 Chapter 20 for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers).

These new categories are:

- Service ID Administration
- Service Application
- Managed I/O Unit.

There are no Compliance Qualifiers for these categories.

A3.7.1 SERVICE ID ADMINISTRATION

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of Service ID Administration, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support (currently there are no optional compliance qualifiers for this category).

- CA3-1: Service ID structure. Page 1349
- CA3-2: <Port GID, Service ID> unique and unambiguous. Page 1352

● CA3-3:	CM Redirection to another port	Page 1352
● CA3-4:	Structure for externally assigned Service IDs	Page 1354
● CA3-5:	OUI in an Externally Administrated Service ID	Page 1354

A3.7.2 SERVICE APPLICATION

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of Service Application, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support (currently there are no optional compliance qualifiers for this category).

● CA3-8:	Using ".IBTA" in a service name	Page 1359
● CA3-9:	IBTA defined protocol	Page 1359

A3.7.3 MANAGED I/O UNIT

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of Managed I/O Unit, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support (currently there are no optional compliance qualifiers for this category).

● CA3-6:	Must implement Device Management.	Page 1357
● CA3-7:	locProfile: Class, Subclass, and Protocol values	Page 1357

ANNEX A4: SOCKETS DIRECT PROTOCOL (SDP)

A4.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is a supplement to release 1.0.a of Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base document. This document provides an annex to the base document defining a transport layer protocol called Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP).

SDP is a byte-stream transport protocol that closely mimics TCP's stream semantics. SDP utilizes InfiniBand's advanced protocol offload, kernel bypass, and zero copy capabilities. Because of this, SDP can have lower CPU and memory bandwidth utilization when compared to conventional implementations of TCP, while preserving the familiar byte-stream oriented semantics upon which most current network applications depend.

This version of the specification expands the SDP protocol to leverage the optional *Base Memory Management Extensions* provided in this version of the IBA Specification.

Base Memory Management Extensions provided in this version of the IBA Specification support *Local and Remote Invalidate* features. Connecting and accepting peers in a SDP connection will need to exchange the *Send with Invalidate* capability during the connection setup. Once both sides of an SDP connection have advertised *Send with Invalidate* support, both sides shall use R_Keys that are suitable for a *Remote Invalidate*.

This version of the specification allows each peer to support more than 255 outstanding Zcopy advertisements.

A4.1.1 ARCHITECTURAL GOALS

SDP has the following architectural goals:

- Maintain traditional sockets SOCK_STREAM semantics as commonly implemented over TCP/IP. Some specific issues that are addressed include:
 - Graceful close, including half-closed sockets
 - Ability to use TCP port space
 - IP addressing (IPv4 or IPv6)
 - Connecting/accepting connect model
 - Out-of-band (OOB) data
 - Support for common socket options

- Support for byte-streaming over a message passing protocol 1
- Capable of supporting kernel bypass data transfers 2
- Capable of supporting zero-copy data transfers from send upper-layer-protocol (ULP) buffers to receive ULP buffers. 3

This specification focuses specifically on the wire protocol, finite state machine, and packet semantics. Operating system specific issues and other implementation specific issues are outside the scope of this specification, including application programming interfaces (APIs), ULP completion mechanisms, kernel bypass capabilities, etc. These issues are left up to each implementation.

Note that SDP only supports SOCK_STREAM semantics (i.e., byte-stream), not SOCK_DGRAM (i.e., datagram) semantics.

A4.1.2 OVERVIEW OF THE BYTE-STREAM PROTOCOL

SDP's ULP interface is a byte-stream interface that is layered on top of InfiniBand's Reliable Connection message-oriented transfer model. The mapping of the byte-stream protocol to InfiniBand message-oriented semantics was designed to enable ULP data to be transferred by one of two methods - through intermediate private buffers (Bcopy) or directly between ULP buffers (Zcopy).

A mix of InfiniBand Send and RDMA mechanisms are used to transfer ULP data. Zcopy uses InfiniBand RDMA Reads or Writes, transferring data between RDMA buffers. Bcopy uses InfiniBand Sends, transferring data between send buffers and receive private buffers. An implementation is expected, but not required, to have RDMA buffers be ULP buffers, enabling the RDMA path to perform a true zero-copy. An implementation is expected, but not required, to use the receive private buffer pool to buffer data and eventually copy the data from the receive private buffer pool into the receive ULP buffer. An implementation may choose to implement different ULP buffering semantics.

SDP has two types of buffers:

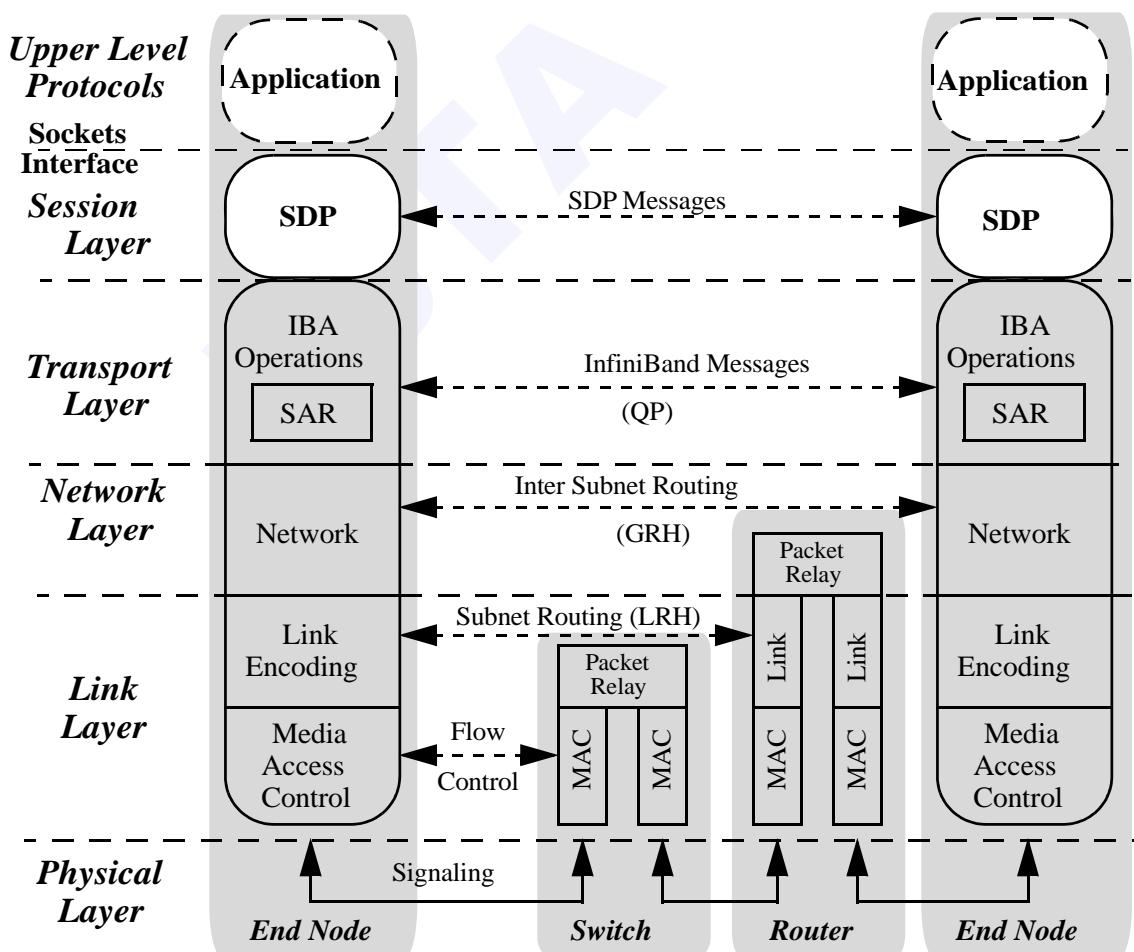
- Private buffers - used for transmission of all SDP messages and ULP data that is to be copied into the receive ULP buffer. The Bcopy data transfer mechanism is used for this traffic. 33
- RDMA buffers - used when performing Zcopy data transfer. ULP data is intended to be RDMAed directly from the Data Source's ULP buffer 36 to the Data Sink's ULP buffer. 37

The policy which controls when to use private buffers versus RDMA buffers is outside the scope of this specification. An implementation dependent parameter defined as the Bcopy Threshold is used to abstractly define the results of the policy decision.

To remain compatible with the base InfiniBand specification, this annex defines a wire protocol which can be layered on top of the semantics defined by verbs (see section [11.1 Verbs Introduction and Overview on page 583](#) in Volume 1a and [Figure 260 SDP Relation to IBA Architecture Layers on page 1365](#)). Thus when this specification uses the term “send” in relation to an SDP message, it is in reference to when the Work Queue Entry is posted to the Send Queue. When this specification uses the term “receive” in relation to an SDP message, it is in reference to when the associated Completion Queue Entry is dequeued. Sending an SDP message specifically does not refer to when the CA actually places the message on the InfiniBand link; reception of an SDP message specifically does not refer to reception of the SDP message at the CA interface or when the SDP message Completion Queue Entry is first inserted into the Completion Queue.

Figure 260

SDP Relation to IBA Architecture Layers



A4.2 GLOSSARY

Accepting peer	The peer which sent the REP MAD during connection establishment. Equivalent to the passive peer in section 12.9.6 Communication Establishment - Passive on page 750 .	1 2 3 4
Bcopy	See Buffer-copy .	5 6
Buffered Mode	One of three modes for an SDP half-connection. This mode uses the Bcopy Data transfer mechanism exclusively.	7 8
Bcopy Threshold	A locally defined threshold existing separately for each peer of a half-connection, which helps the peer determine whether it will attempt to use the Bcopy Data transfer mechanism versus the Zcopy Data transfer mechanism to transfer a given size ULP buffer.	9 10 11 12
Buffer-copy	A Data transfer mechanism where the transfer of ULP payload between peers is done through an SDP managed receive Private Buffer pool. The received ULP data may require a copy into the receive ULP Buffer .	13 14 15 16
Combined Mode	One of three modes for an SDP half-connection. This mode enables the use of the Bcopy and Read Zcopy Data transfer mechanisms .	17 18
Connecting peer	The peer which received the REP MAD during connection establishment. Equivalent to the active peer in section 12.9.5 Communication Establishment and Release - Active on page 749 .	19 20 21 22
Controlling address space	The address space in which the socket currently exists. This is relevant for socket duplication, where a Non-controlling address space can request control of the socket.	23 24 25 26
Data Sink	The peer receiving ULP payload. Note that the Data Sink can be required to both send and receive messages to complete a data transfer mechanism.	27 28
Data Source	The peer sending ULP payload. Note that the Data Source can be required to both send and receive messages to complete a data transfer mechanism.	30 31 32 33
Data transfer mechanism	A sequence of messages, including control messages (with or without ULP payload) and/or RDMA messages, to transfer data from a Data Source to a Data Sink with flow control. Four data transfer mechanisms are defined - Buffer-copy , Zero-copy with RDMA Write (Write Zcopy), Zero-copy with RDMA Read (Read Zcopy), and Transaction .	34 35 36 37 38
Flow control mode	The mode of the half-connection that determines which Data transfer mechanisms may be used; can be either Buffered, Pipelined, or Combined.	39 40 41 42

In-Process	An SDP message sequence is In-Process if it is actively being worked on. For example, if a SrcAvail message is In-Process, RDMA reads may have been issued or completed, but a completion message (RdmaRdCompl or SendSm) has not been sent. See also Unprocessed and Processed .
Incomplete	See In-Process .
Message	In this annex “message” is context dependent. It may either be an SDP message or an InfiniBand message. If there is any ambiguity, either the exact message name is used or it is explicitly stated whether it is an SDP or an InfiniBand message.
Mode	See Flow control mode .
Mode Master	The side of an SDP half-connection which may initiate a mode transition by sending a ModeChange message. This is either the Data Source or the Data Sink, depending upon the flow control mode.
Mode Slave	The side of an SDP half-connection which reacts to mode changes. It may advise the Mode Master to change modes (by using SendSm messages or setting the REQ_PIPE flag in the BSDH), but it cannot force a mode change. This is either the Data Source or the Data Sink, depending upon the flow control mode.
Non-controlling address space	An address space that does not currently have control of the socket. See Controlling address space .
OOB	See Out-Of-Band Data .
Out-Of-Band Data	Out-of-Band Data is a single byte of data in the data stream whose handling should be expedited.
Pipelined Mode	One of three modes for an SDP half-connection. This mode enables the use of the Bcopy, Read Zcopy, Write Zcopy, and Transaction Data transfer mechanisms .
Private Buffer	Buffers owned by SDP and not exposed to the ULP. Receive private buffers are used for reception of all SDP messages and ULP data transfer using the Bcopy or Transaction Data transfer mechanisms . All receive private buffers must be at least the current advertised size, and are posted to the InfiniBand Receive Queue.
Processed	An SDP message sequence has been completed by sending the last message of the sequence. Note that the completing message may not have been received. For example, a SinkAvail advertisement is said to have been Processed when the corresponding RdmaWrCompl message has been sent. See also Unprocessed and In-Process .

RDMA Buffer	A buffer which is exposed by the SDP protocol for RDMA access. It is used by the Write Zcopy, Read Zcopy, and Transaction Data transfer mechanisms .	1
Receiver	Destination of an SDP or InfiniBand message.	2
SDP Message	An InfiniBand message which contains an SDP Base Sockets Direct Header (BSDH). This specifically does not include InfiniBand RDMA Write and RDMA Read messages. SDP connection initialization messages are encapsulated in the CM REQ and REP messages.	3
Sender	Source of an SDP or InfiniBand message.	4
Transaction	A Data transfer mechanism that collapses a Data message and a SinkAvail message into a single SDP message.	5
ULP	Upper Layer Protocol.	6
ULP Buffer	Buffers owned by and visible to the ULP. A ULP buffer may serve as an RDMA source buffer, an RDMA sink buffer, or a send buffer.	7
Unprocessed	An SDP message is Unprocessed if it has been sent, and possibly received, but it has not been operated on. For example, a SinkAvail message is Unprocessed if it has been sent by the Data Sink, received by the Data Source, but no RDMA Writes have begun. Note that processing of flow control information by the receiver may have been done. See also In-Process and Processed .	8
WrapSubtract	WrapSubtract is meant to represent a function which subtracts the second argument (arg2) from the first argument (arg1). Both arguments are unsigned integers which wrap from a value of 0xFFFFFFFF to 0x0. Mathematical operations on wrapping unsigned integers can be done by a variety of methods, including methods defined in RFC1982 (see www.ietf.org). The following equation is an example implementation of the function that casts the unsigned integers into two's complement integers, and then takes the absolute value of the result:	9
	result = abs((int)arg1 - (int)arg2)	10
Zcopy	See Zero-copy .	11
Zero-copy	Three Data transfer mechanisms (Read Zcopy, Write Zcopy, and Transactions) where the transfer of ULP payload between peers is done directly into the ULP buffer, thus avoiding a Buffer-copy on receive.	12
		13
		14
		15
		16
		17
		18
		19
		20
		21
		22
		23
		24
		25
		26
		27
		28
		29
		30
		31
		32
		33
		34
		35
		36
		37
		38
		39
		40
		41
		42

A4.3 SDP MESSAGE FORMATS

Sockets Direct Protocol defines several types of messages to transfer data and control the state of a connection. Each SDP message contains a Base Sockets Direct Header (BSDH). SDP connection setup messages (Hello and HelloAck) are encapsulated within CM REQ and REP MADs, respectively. Some SDP message types also contain an extended header and/or ULP payload. The extended header (if present) immediately follows the BSDH. The ULP payload follows the headers (BSDH and extended header, if any).

CA4-1: All SDP message headers **shall** use big endian byte ordering, as defined in section [1.5.1 Byte Ordering on page 81](#).

CA4-2: The SDP Hello and HelloAck messages **shall** be carried in the private data of the CM REQ and CM REP MADs, respectively.

CA4-3: All SDP messages, except for Hello and HelloAck, **shall** be transmitted via the InfiniBand RC channel.

A4.3.1 BASE SOCKETS DIRECT HEADER (BSDH)

CA4-4: All SDP messages **shall** contain the Base Sockets Direct Header, as defined in this section.

Figure 261

Base Sockets Direct Header (BSDH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	MID	flags		bufs
4-7			len	
8-11			MSeq	
12-15			MSeqAck	

A4.3.1.1 MESSAGE IDENTIFIER (MID)

Specifies the type of the SDP message. The type of SDP message indicates whether an extension header is present.

CA4-5: [Table 413](#) shall be used to define the MID parameter in the BSDH, the type of SDP message, and the extended headers and payload that follow the BSDH for a specific SDP message.

Table 413 SDP Message Definitions

MID[7-0]	Message Name	Extended Header Following the Base Sockets Direct Header	Packet Contents Following the Extended Header (if any)
00000000	Hello	HH	none
00000001	HelloAck	HAH	none
00000010	DisConn	none	none
00000011	AbortConn	none	none
00000100	SendSm	none	none
00000101	RdmaWrCompl	RWCH	none
00000110	RdmaRdCompl	RRCH	none
00000111	ModeChange	MCH	none
00001000	SrcAvailCancel	none	none
00001001	SinkAvailCancel	none	none
00001010	SinkCancelAck	none	none
00001011	ChRcvBuf	CRBH	none
00001100	ChRcvBufAck	CRBAH	none
00001101	SuspComm	SuspCH	none
00001110	SuspCommAck	none	none
00001111	Reserved	n/a	n/a
00010000-00111111	Reserved	n/a	n/a
01000000-01111111	Experimental	n/a	optional payload
10000000-11111100	Reserved	n/a	n/a
11111101	SinkAvail	SinkAH	optional ULP payload
11111110	SrcAvail	SrcAH	optional ULP payload
11111111	Data		optional ULP payload

Note that SDP messages Hello and HelloAck are encapsulated in the private data of CM REQ and REP MADs, respectively.

Reserved MID values may be assigned in future versions of the protocol. Experimental values will never be used for permanent assignment.

A4.3.1.2 FLAGS

CA4-6: [Table 414](#) shall be used to define the BSDH Flags field.

Table 414 BSDH Flags

Bit Position	Name	Description
0	OOB_PRES	Out-Of-Band Data is present
1	OOB_PEND	Out-Of-Band Data is pending
2	REQ_PIPE	Request change to Pipelined Mode
3-7	reserved	transmitted as zero and not checked at receiver

If the OOB_PRES bit is set then the last byte of the ULP payload in the SDP message is OOB data.

CA4-7: The OOB_PRES bit shall be set only in a Data message.

Normal ULP payload may also be present in the Data message before the OOB data. See section [A4.6.5.3 Processing Out-Of-Band Data on page 1408](#).

If the OOB_PEND bit is set then Out-Of-Band data has been sent by the ULP. This flag may be set in any SDP message. The actual Out-Of-Band data may or may not be in the current SDP message. See section [A4.6.5.3 Processing Out-Of-Band Data on page 1408](#).

The REQ_PIPE bit is a hint from the Data Sink to the Data Source to switch to Pipelined Mode.

CA4-8: The Data Sink shall clear the REQ_PIPE bit if it would prefer the Data Source to stay in Combined Mode. The Data Sink shall set the REQ_PIPE bit to one if it would prefer the Data Source to switch to Pipelined Mode or remain in Pipelined Mode. REQ_PIPE shall only be set in RdmaRdCompl messages.

The Data Source is not obligated to follow the recommendation.

CA4-9: The Data Source shall ignore REQ_PIPE if the current mode is Buffered Mode.

A4.3.1.3 BUFFERS (BUFS)

Number of private buffers which were currently posted after the last SDP message was received by the local peer, in units of private buffers. More precisely, Bufs equals the total number of private buffers posted over the lifetime of the connection minus the number of SDP messages received over the lifetime of the connection. A maximum of 65535 ($2^{16}-1$) buffers may be posted at any one time.

A4.3.1.4 LENGTH (LEN)

SDP message length in bytes.

In a Hello or HelloAck message, the BSDH Len is equal to the sum of the sizes of the BSDH plus the HH or HAH, respectively. See sections [A4.3.2.1 Hello Message \(HH\) on page 1372](#) and [A4.3.2.2 HelloAck Message \(HAH\) on page 1376](#).

CA4-10: For SDP messages other than Hello and HelloAck, Len **shall** be equal to the sum of the sizes of the BSDH, extended header (if present), and ULP payload (if present). The IB message length **shall** equal the value of Len.

A4.3.1.5 MESSAGE SEQUENCE NUMBER (MSEQ)

CA4-11: The first SDP message sent after connection establishment **shall** have a MSeq value of 1. Each successive SDP message **shall** increase the value of Mseq by one, wrapping to zero after 0xFFFFFFFF.

A4.3.1.6 MESSAGE SEQUENCE NUMBER ACKNOWLEDGEMENT (MSEQACK)

MSeqAck is the sequence number of the last SDP message received by the local peer. See section [A4.6.5.4 SrcAvail Revocation on page 1408](#) for additional constraints.

CA4-12: If no messages have been received by the local peer since connection establishment, a MSeqAck value of zero **shall** be transmitted.

A4.3.2 CONNECTION MANAGEMENT MESSAGES

SDP connection setup uses InfiniBand CM REQ, REP, and RTU MADs, with additional SDP information exchanged in the private data. SDP specific information includes the size of the receive private buffers, the initial credits for the receive private buffers, and source and destination IP addresses, as well as other parameters. SDP connection teardown uses InfiniBand DREQ and DREP messages, plus additional SDP messages (DisConn and AbortConn) to emulate TCP connection teardown semantics.

A4.3.2.1 HELLO MESSAGE (HH)

The Hello message shall contain a BSDH and a Hello Header (HH). The Hello message shall be contained in the private data of the CM REQ MAD. See section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#).

CA4-13: The Hello Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 262](#).

Figure 262 **Hello Header**

bits bytes	31-24		23-16		15-8	7-0				
0-3	MajV	MinV	IPV	Cap	rsvd	MaxAdverts				
4-7	DesRemRcvSz									
8-11	LocalRcvSz									
12-15	LocalPort		rsvd							
16-19	SrcIP(127-96)									
20-23	SrcIP(95-64)									
24-27	SrcIP(63-32)									
28-31	SrcIP(31-00)									
32-35	DstIP(127-96)									
36-39	DstIP(95-64)									
40-43	DstIP(63-32)									
44-47	DstIP(31-00)									
48-51	rsvd		ExtMaxAdverts							
52-55	rsvd									
...										
72-75										

CA4-14: The BSDH fields of the REQ MAD **shall** be set as follows:

- MID = Hello
- len = size of the BSDH, plus the size of the HH
- flags = 0
- bufs = see section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#) and section [A4.7.3 Initialization of Send Credit on page 1413](#).
- MSeq = set to zero and not checked on receive.
- MSeqAck = set to zero and not checked on receive.

A4.3.2.1.1 MAJOR PROTOCOL VERSION NUMBER (MAJV) - 4 BITS

The current specification requires MajV to be set to 2. See section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#) for additional information.

CA4-15: The accepting peer **shall** reject the connection if MajV in the HH does not match its local value.

A4.3.2.1.2 MINOR PROTOCOL VERSION NUMBER (MINV) - 4 BITS

The current specification requires MinV to be set to 2.

CA4-16: The accepting peer **shall not** reject the connection, solely on the basis that MinV of the HH does not match its local value.

This enables future protocol extensions which are upwardly compatible.

A4.3.2.1.3 IP VERSION (IPV) - 4 BITS

The Internet Protocol version number of the end-point address field (fields SrcIP and DstIP). If IPV = 0x4, the IP addresses are IP version 4 format (32 bit addresses). If IPV = 0x6, then both IP addresses are IP version 6 format (128 bit addresses). All other IPV values are reserved

CA4-17: The accepting peer **shall** reject the connection if IPV of the HH has a value other than 0x4 or 0x6.

A4.3.2.1.4 MAXIMUM ADVERTISEMENTS (MAXADVERTS) - 8 BITS

The maximum number of concurrent Zcopy advertisements that can be outstanding to the local QP at any one time. This includes SrcAvail advertisements for data transfer from the remote peer to the local peer and SinkAvail advertisements for data transfer from the local peer to the remote peer. MaxAdverts may be between 1 and 2^8 -1, inclusive.

CA4-18: The accepting peer **shall** reject the connection if MaxAdverts of the HH is zero.

Note that there is no correlation between this parameter and InfiniBand RDMA Read resources (the Responder Resources parameter specified during connection setup).

A4.3.2.1.5 DESIRED REMOTE RECEIVE SIZE (DESREMRCVSZ) - 32 BITS

Desired size of remote peer's receive private buffers, in units of bytes (maximum = 2^{31} bytes). Usually set to the initial size of the local send buffers (assuming the send buffers are all the same size). This is a hint to the remote peer. The remote peer should take this into consideration when choosing the size of its receive private buffers, but it is free to select a different size.

A4.3.2.1.6 LOCAL RECEIVE SIZE (LOCALRCVSZ) - 32 BITS

Initial size of the local receive private buffers, in units of bytes (maximum = 2^{31} bytes).

A4.3.2.1.7 LOCALPORT - 16 BITS

The local TCP port number. See IETF RFC 1122 (Host Requirements RFC) for requirements on the TCP port number.

A4.3.2.1.8 INTERNET PROTOCOL ADDRESS (SrcIP, DstIP) - 128 BITS

The Internet Protocol (IP) address for the local interface (SrcIP) and remote interface (DstIP). These can be either IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, as specified by the IPV field.

CA4-19: If SrcIP and DstIP of the HH are IPv4 addresses, as specified by the IPV field, then SrcIP(31-0) and DstIP(31-0) **shall** be used to transmit the source and destination IP addresses, respectively, and bits SrcIP(127-32) and DstIP(127-32) **shall** be set to zero.

A4.3.2.1.9 Rsvd

Reserved for future use. Must be transmitted as zeroes and not checked on receive.

A4.3.2.1.10 CAPABILITIES (CAP) - 4 BITS

The Capabilities field conveys the connecting peer's capabilities. The following capabilities are defined.

CA4-19.2.1: SDP Extensions Table 415 "Capabilities" shall be used to define the Hello Header Cap field.

Table 415 Capabilities

Bit Position	Capability	Description
0	INVALIDATE_CAP	Supports incoming <i>Send w/Invalidate</i> opcode
1	EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS	<i>Extended MaxAdverts</i> is used
2-3	reserved	transmitted as zero and not checked at receiver

CA4-19.2.2: The connecting peer shall set the *INVALIDATE_CAP* bit in the *Cap* field in *Hello Header* only if it can support incoming invalidate messages.

If the accepting peer does not support *Send w/Invalidate*, it will ignore the *Invalidate Capability* advertisement.

CA4-19.2.3: The following rules shall be applied by a connecting peer when using *EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS* capability bit:

- Set the *EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS* bit only if the connecting peer supports more than 255 outstanding Zcopy advertisements on the local QP.
- If *EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS* bit is set, the *MaxAdverts* field shall be set to 255.

- If *EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS* bit is set, the *Extended MaxAdverts* field shall have the maximum number of outstanding Zcopy advertisements that the connecting peer supports.

A4.3.2.1.11 EXTENDED MAXADVERTS (ExtMAXADVERTS) - 16 BITS

The maximum number of concurrent Zcopy advertisements that can be outstanding to the local QP at any time. If EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS bit is set, ExtMaxAdverts must be between 256 and $2^{16}-1$, inclusive. If EXTENDED_MAXADVERTS bit is clear, ExtMaxAdverts must be zero.

A4.3.2.2 HELLOACK MESSAGE (HAH)

The HelloAck (Hello Acknowledgement) message shall contain a BSDH and a HelloAck Header (HAH). The HelloAck message contains a subset of the information sent in the Hello message. The HelloAck message shall be contained in the private data of the CM REP MAD. See section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup](#) on page 1386.

CA4-20: The HelloAck Header format shall be as defined in [Figure 263](#).

Figure 263 HelloAck Header

bits bytes	31-24		23-16		15-8	7-0
0-3	MajV	MinV	rsvd	Cap	ExtMaxAdverts	
4-7	ActRcvSz					
8-11	rsvd					
...						
176-179						

CA4-21: The BSDH fields of the REP MAD shall be set as follows:

- MID = HelloAck
 - len = size of the BSDH, plus the size of the HAH
 - flags = 0
 - bufs = see section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#) and section [A4.7.3 Initialization of Send Credit on page 1413](#).
 - MSeq = set to zero and not checked on receive.
 - MSeqAck = set to zero and not checked on receive.

A4.3.2.2.1 MAJOR PROTOCOL VERSION NUMBER (MAJV) - 4 BITS

The current specification requires MajV to be set to 2. See section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#) for additional information.

CA4-22: The connecting peer **shall** terminate the connection attempt if MajV does not match its local value, i.e., it sends a REJ back to the remote peer, instead of RTU.

A4.3.2.2.2 MINOR PROTOCOL VERSION NUMBER (MINV) - 4 BITS

The current specification requires MinV to be set to 2.

CA4-23: The connecting peer **shall not** terminate the connection attempt, solely on the basis that MinV of the HAH does not match its local value.

A4.3.2.2.3 EXTENDED MAXADVERTS (EXTMAXADVERTS) - 16 BITS

The maximum number of concurrent Zcopy advertisements that can be outstanding to the local peer at any one time. This includes SrcAvail advertisements sent to the local peer for data transfer from the remote peer to the local peer and SinkAvail advertisements for data transfer from the local peer to the remote peer.

CA4-24: This compliance statement has been obsoleted.

CA4-24.2.1: If the connecting peer has set *MajV* of 2 and *MinV* of 1 in the *HelloHeader*, the valid values for the *ExtMaxAdverts* in *HAH* are between 1 and 2^8 -1, inclusive.

CA4-24.2.2: If the connecting peer has set *MajV* of 2 and *MinV* of 2 in the *HelloHeader*, the valid values for the *ExtMaxAdverts* in *HAH* are between 1 and 2^{16} -1, inclusive.

CA4-24.2.3: The connecting peer **shall** terminate the connection attempt if *ExtMaxAdverts* of the *HAH* is set to zero.

Note that there is no correlation between this parameter and InfiniBand RDMA Read resources (the Responder Resources parameter specified during connection setup).

A4.3.2.2.4 ACTUAL RECEIVE SIZE (ACTRCVSZ) - 32 BITS

The initial size of the local receive private buffers, in units of bytes (maximum = 2^{31} bytes).

A4.3.2.2.5 RSVD

Reserved for future use. Must be transmitted as zeroes and not checked on receive.

A4.3.2.2.6 CAPABILITIES (CAP) - 4 BITS

The Capabilities field conveys the accepting peer's capabilities. The following capabilities are defined.

CA4-24.2.4: SDP Extensions Table 416 "Capabilities" shall be used to define the HelloAck Header Cap field.

Table 416 Capabilities

Bit Position	Capability	Description
0	INVALIDATE_CAP	Supports incoming Send w/Invalidate opcode
1-3	reserved	transmitted as zero and not checked at receiver

CA4-24.2.5: The accepting peer shall set the *INVALIDATE_CAP* bit in the *Cap* field in *HelloAck Header* only if it can support incoming invalidate messages and the incoming *Hello Header Cap* field has the *INVALIDATE_CAP* bit set.

If both connecting and accepting peers in an SDP connection set the *INVALIDATE_CAP* bit in the *Cap* field of *Hello Header* and *HelloAck Header* respectively, the SDP connection is configured to be *Invalidate Enabled*.

A4.3.2.3 DisConn MESSAGE

The DisConn (Disconnect Connection) message informs the remote peer that the local ULP will not be sending any more data on this connection, and that the ULP has requested graceful teardown of the socket in the send direction. This is functionally equivalent to TCP sending a FIN packet. See section [A4.5.3 Connection Teardown on page 1391](#).

The DisConn message shall have only a BSDH. It contains no ULP payload.

A4.3.2.4 AbortConn MESSAGE

The AbortConn (Abort Connection) message tells the remote peer to ignore an earlier DisConn message and to consider socket teardown as abortive. This message is sent only if a DisConn message has been sent earlier. AbortConn is functionally equivalent to TCP setting the RST bit to reset a connection. See section [A4.5.3 Connection Teardown on page 1391](#).

The AbortConn message shall have only a BSDH. It contains no ULP payload.

A4.3.3 DATA TRANSFER AND FLOW CONTROL MESSAGES

A4.3.3.1 DATA MESSAGE

The Data message is normally used to send ULP payload. A Data message without ULP payload is a gratuitous credit update.

The Data message is one of three SDP message types which may contain ULP data. The other types are SrcAvail and SinkAvail messages. See section [A4.6.1 Bcopy on page 1396](#).

The Data message shall contain a BSDH.

A4.3.3.2 SRCAVAIL MESSAGE (SRCAH)

The SrcAvail (Data Source Available) message is sent by the Data Source to the Data Sink to inform the latter of the availability of an RDMA buffer that can be transferred through an RDMA Read operation.

The SrcAvail message shall contain a BSDH and a SrcAvail Header (SrcAH).

The SrcAH may include a copy of the initial portion of the send RDMA buffer as ULP payload of the SDP message, depending upon the flow control mode. See section [A4.6.2 Read Zcopy on page 1397](#).

CA4-25: The SrcAvail Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 264](#).

Figure 264 SrcAvail Header (SrcAH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Len	
4-7			R_Key	
8-11			VA (63-32)	
12-15			VA (31-0)	

A4.3.3.2.1 LENGTH (LEN) - 32 BITS

The size of the send RDMA buffer (in bytes) represented by the VA and R_Key.

CA4-26: The value of Len **shall** be greater than zero and less than or equal to 2^{31} bytes.

A4.3.3.2.2 VIRTUAL ADDRESS (VA) - 64 BITS

The start address of the send RDMA buffer. The RDMA VA may start on any byte boundary.

CA4-27: The buffer addressed by the RDMA VA **shall** include the initial ULP data that was copied into the ULP payload of the SrcAvail message (if any).

A4.3.3.2.3 R_KEY - 32 BITS

CA4-28: The R_Key field **shall** contain the R_Key value to be used by the Data Sink, when retrieving data from the memory of the Data Source via an RDMA Read.

A4.3.3.3 SINKAVAIL MESSAGE (SINKAH)

The SinkAvail (Data Sink Available) message is sent by the Data Sink to the Data Source to inform the latter of the availability of an RDMA buffer that can be filled through an RDMA Write operation. See section [A4.6.3 Write Zcopy on page 1401](#).

CA4-29: The SinkAvail Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 265](#).

Figure 265

SinkAvail Header (SinkAH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Len	
4-7			R_Key	
8-11			VA (63-32)	
12-15			VA (31-0)	
16-19			NonDiscards	

The SinkAvail message shall contain a BSDH and SinkAH.

The SinkAvail message may include some send data as ULP payload for data flow in the *opposite* direction. See section [A4.6.4 Transaction Mechanism on page 1403](#).

A4.3.3.3.1 LENGTH (LEN) - 32 BITS

The size (in bytes) of the receive RDMA buffer represented by the VA and R_Key.

CA4-30: The value of Len **shall** be greater than zero and less than or equal to 2^{31} bytes.

A4.3.3.3.2 VIRTUAL ADDRESS (VA) - 64 BITS

The start address of the receive RDMA buffer. The RDMA VA may start on any byte boundary.

A4.3.3.3 R_KEY - 32 BITS

CA4-31: The R_Key field **shall** contain the R_Key to be used by the Data Source, when sending the data via an RDMA Write into the memory of the Data Sink.

A4.3.3.4 NONDISCARDS - 32 BITS

The NonDiscards field in the SinkAvail message contains the Data Sink's current local value for NonDiscards. After connection setup, the Data Sink shall initialize the local value for NonDiscards to zero. The Data Sink shall increment its local value for NonDiscards when a ULP payload carrying SDP message is received and the SDP message did not cause the Data Sink to discard a previously sent SinkAvail message. This count wraps around to 0 after reaching 0xFFFFFFFF.

See section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#) for additional information.

A4.3.3.4 RDMA MESSAGES

SDP uses the existing InfiniBand RDMA Write and RDMA Read messages to transfer zero-copy data.

A4.3.3.5 SENDSM MESSAGE

The Data Source uses a SrcAvail message to inform the Data Sink of data which can be transferred using RDMA. If the Data Sink is unable or unwilling to transfer this data using RDMA, it can use the SendSm (Send Small) message to inform the Data Source it should send the data using the Bcopy Transfer Mechanism. See section [A4.6.5.2 Mechanisms For Forcing Bcopy on page 1406](#).

The SendSm message shall contain only a BSDH and no ULP payload.

A4.3.3.6 RDMAWRCOMPL MESSAGE (RWCH)

The RdmaWrCompl (RDMA Write Complete) message is sent by the Data Source to inform the Data Sink of completion of an RDMA Write transfer. See section [A4.6.3 Write Zcopy on page 1401](#).

CA4-32: The RdmaWrCompl Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 266](#).

Figure 266 RdmaWrCompl Header (RWCH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Len	

The RdmaWrCompl message shall contain only a BSDH and a RWCH.

A4.3.3.6.1 LENGTH (LEN) - 32 BITS

The size (in bytes) transferred to the receiver's RDMA buffer through RDMA Write(s) for the oldest outstanding SinkAvail. The size may be less than the size of the RDMA buffer advertised by the Data Sink in the SinkAvail message.

A4.3.3.7 RDMA RD COMPL MESSAGE (RRCH)

The RdmaRdCompl (RDMA Read Complete) message is sent by the Data Sink to inform the Data Source of completion of an RDMA Read transfer. See section [A4.6.2 Read Zcopy on page 1397](#)

CA4-33: The RdmaRdCompl Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 267](#).

Figure 267 **RdmaRdCompl Header (RRCH)**

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Len	

The RdmaRdCompl message shall contain only the BSDH and RRCH.

The sender (Data Sink) may set the REQ_PIPE bit in the Flags field of the BSDH. This bit should be set to zero if the Data Sink would prefer the Data Source to stay in Combined Mode. The REQ_PIPE bit should be set to one if the Data Sink prefers the Data Source to switch to Pipelined Mode or remain in Pipelined Mode. This is just a hint to the Data Source. The Data Source is not obligated to follow the recommendation. The Data Source (which is the receiver of the RdmaRdCompl message) does not examine the REQ_PIPE bit when in Buffered Mode.

A4.3.3.7.1 LENGTH (LEN) - 32 BITS

The size (in bytes) transferred to the Data Sink's RDMA buffer from the Data Source's RDMA buffer (i.e., the buffer advertised in the original SrcAvail message) through RDMA Read(s). The Len field does not include the portion of the buffer (if any) transferred within the SrcAvail message as ULP data payload. If there is ULP data in the SrcAvail message, Len shall be less than the size of the Data Source RDMA buffer advertised in the SrcAvail message by exactly the number of ULP payload bytes included in the SrcAvail message.

A4.3.3.8 MODECHANGE MESSAGE (MCH)

The ModeChange message is used to inform the remote peer of a flow control mode transition. See section [A4.8 SDP Modes on page 1416](#).

CA4-34: The ModeChange Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 268](#).

Figure 268 ModeChange Header (MCH)

bits	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
bytes	S	Mode	RSVD	
0-3				

The ModeChange message shall contain only a BSDH and MCH.

The receiver of the ModeChange message must change its send or receive mode to the new mode specified in the message.

A4.3.3.8.1 S - 1 BIT

Specifies whether the peer receiving the ModeChange message should change its flow control mode for its Send half-connection ($S = 1$) or Receive half-connection ($S = 0$), for the connection over which the ModeChange message was received.

A4.3.3.8.2 MODE - 3 BITS

Specifies the new mode.

CA4-35: The ModeChange MCH field value **shall** be as defined in [Table 417](#).

Table 417 MCH Mode Values

Mode Value	Name	Description
0	BUFF_MODE	New mode should be Buffered Mode
1	COMB_MODE	New mode should be Combined Mode
2	PIPE_MODE	New mode should be Pipelined Mode
3-7	reserved	Reserved value

A4.3.3.8.3 RSVD - 28 BITS

Reserved for future use. Must be transmitted as zeroes and not checked on receive.

A4.3.3.9 SRCAVAILCANCEL MESSAGE

The SrcAvailCancel (Data Source Available Cancel) message is sent by the Data Source to ask the Data Sink to ignore all SrcAvail advertisements sent by the Data Source which are Unprocessed by the Data Sink. See section [A4.6.5.4 SrcAvail Revocation on page 1408](#).

The SrcAvailCancel message shall contain only a BSDH.

A4.3.3.10 SINKAVAILCANCEL MESSAGE

The SinkAvailCancel (Data Sink Available Cancel) message is sent by the Data Sink to ask the Data Source to ignore all SinkAvail advertisements sent by the Data Sink which are Unprocessed by the Data Source. See section [A4.6.5.5 SinkAvail Revocation on page 1410](#).

The SinkAvailCancel message shall contain only a BSDH.

A4.3.3.11 SINKCANCELACK MESSAGE

The SinkCancelAck (Data Sink Available Cancel Acknowledgement) message is sent by the Data Source in response to the SinkAvailCancel message. It shall be sent after it has canceled all Unprocessed SinkAvail advertisements. See section [A4.6.5.5 SinkAvail Revocation on page 1410](#).

The SinkCancelAck message shall contain only a BSDH.

A4.3.4 PRIVATE BUFFER RESIZING MESSAGES

A4.3.4.1 ChRcvBuf MESSAGE (CRBH)

The ChRcvBuf (Change Receive private Buffer size) message is sent by a the Data Source to the Data Sink to request a change in the size of the latter's receive private buffers. See section [A4.7.6 Receive Buffer Resizing on page 1415](#).

The ChRcvBuf message shall contain only a BSDH and a CRBH

CA4-36: The ChRcvBuf Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 269](#).

Figure 269

ChRcvBuf Header (CRBH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3	DesSz			

A4.3.4.1.1 DESIRED SIZE (DESSz) - 32 BITS

Desired size (in bytes) of the Data Sink's receive private buffers.

A4.3.4.2 ChRcvBufAck MESSAGE (CRBAH)

The ChRcvBufAck (Change Receive private Buffer size Acknowledgment) message is sent in response to the ChRcvBuf message. The ChRcvBufAck message informs the Data Source of the new size of the receive private buffers. See section [A4.7.6 Receive Buffer Resizing on page 1415](#).

The ChRcvBufAck message shall contain only a BSDH and a CRBAH.

CA4-37: The ChRcvBufAck Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 270](#).

Figure 270 ChRcvBufAck Header (CRBAH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			ActSz	

A4.3.4.2.1 ACTUAL SIZE (ACTSZ) - 32 BITS

The actual or new size (in bytes) of the local receive private buffers. The actual size may be the same as the size prior to receipt of the ChRcvBuf message if the protocol implementation does not wish to resize its receive private buffers.

A4.3.5 SOCKET DUPLICATION MESSAGES

A4.3.5.1 SUSPCOMM MESSAGE

The SuspComm (Suspend Communication) message is sent to ask the remote peer to suspend communication as part of preparing the socket for duplication. See section [A4.10 Socket Duplication on page 1428](#).

The SuspComm message shall contain only a BSDH and a SuspCH.

CA4-38: The SuspComm Header format **shall** be as defined in [Figure 271](#).

Figure 271 SuspComm Header (SuspCH)

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
0-3			Service ID(63-32)	
4-7			Service ID(31-0)	

A4.3.5.1.1 SERVICE ID - 64 BITS

The Service ID that the remote peer should try to connect with to re-establish the connection with the local peer after duplication has completed.

A4.3.5.2 SUSPCOMMAck MESSAGE

The SuspCommAck (Suspend Communication Acknowledgement) message is sent in response to the SuspComm message. This message informs the peer that all communication has been suspended as requested by the peer in its SuspComm message. See section [A4.10 Socket Duplication on page 1428](#).

The SuspCommAck message shall contain only a BSDH.

A4.4 ADDRESS RESOLUTION

CA4-39: SDP **shall** use either IPv4 or IPv6 addressing (generically called IP addressing), as defined in IETF RFC791 and IETF RFC2460, respectively. SDP **shall** use the IP over InfiniBand address resolution mechanism. This mechanism is being developed by the IP over IB (IPoIB) IETF working group. See <http://www.ietf.org/html.charters/ipoib-charter.html>.

SDP does this rather than defining a new mechanism for mapping from an IP address to an InfiniBand address (either a LID or GID). Thus the SDP protocol definition begins after the source and destination addresses have been resolved to an InfiniBand address.

IP over InfiniBand does not define a mechanism to perform an inverse lookup (from an InfiniBand address to an IP address). It is also possible for a single InfiniBand address to have many IP addresses, providing a one-to-many mapping when attempting to perform an inverse lookup. To resolve these issues, the complete source and destination IP address is provided during connection setup to enable mapping the destination and source LID/GID to an IP address at the accepting peer of the connection.

A4.5 CONNECTION MANAGEMENT

SDP connection setup uses the existing InfiniBand connection management MADs (REQ/REP/RTU/REJ/MRA), which include the ability to redirect the connection to a different CM or Port (see section [12.10.7 Active Client to Passive Server with Redirector - All Accept Communication on page 767](#)) or to automatically migrate the connection to an alternate path (APM, see sections [10.4 Automatic Path Migration on page 493](#) and [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#)). SDP connection teardown uses the existing InfiniBand teardown messages (DREQ/DREP), but requires additional SDP message types to emulate TCP connection teardown semantics for abortive and graceful connection teardown.

A4.5.1 CONNECTION SETUP

A4.5.1.1 INFINIBAND RELIABLE CONNECTION SETUP

CA4-40: SDP communications **shall** use InfiniBand's Reliable Connection transport service exclusively.

Recall that an SDP implementation uses the private data field in the InfiniBand CM REQ and CM REP MADs to transfer initial connection information through the Hello and HelloAck messages, respectively.

Each socket corresponds to a single queue pair. The CM REQ MAD also contains the destination Service ID, which is used to map the connection to the destination TCP port number. The connection setup mechanism is the InfiniBand Active/Passive (Client/Server) model as specified in section [12.2 Establishment on page 709](#).

CA4-41: The connection setup sequence **shall** include the following numbered steps in order:

- 4) The connecting peer prepares to send a CM REQ MAD with private data.
 - a) Socket applications use 16-bit TCP port numbers to establish connections. InfiniBand requires a 64-bit Service ID for connection setup. The mapping between TCP port numbers and InfiniBand Service IDs is defined in the Application Specific Identifiers Annex. It is reproduced here for convenience, where the TCP port number is a hex value, 0xXXXX.
Service ID = 0x0000 0000 0001 XXXX
 - b) The connecting peer configures how many local receive private buffers will be posted to the HCA and the size of the receive private buffers. See section [A4.7 Private Buffer Management on page 1412](#) for constraints on private buffers.
 - c) The connecting peer should post all of its receive private buffers to the Receive Queue (using the Post Receive Request verb) at this time or before sending the CM RTU MAD. The connecting peer may wait until immediately after completion of connection setup to post the buffers, however it is possible the InfiniBand RNR NAK protocol will be invoked. The RNR NAK protocol will stall data transfer until the receive private buffers are posted. See section [A4.7 Private Buffer Management on page 1412](#).
 - d) The Responder Resources field in the CM REQ MAD **shall** be greater than or equal to one.
- 5) The connecting peer **shall** send a CM REQ MAD with the Hello message to the accepting peer. See section [A4.3.2.1 Hello Message \(HH\) on page 1372](#) and section [A4.7.3 Initialization of Send Credit on page 1413](#) for additional information on filling in the REQ private data.
- 6) The accepting peer, upon receipt of the Hello message, performs the following operations:
 - a) The accepting peer should post all of its receive private buffers to the Receive Queue (using the Post Receive Request verb) before sending the CM REP MAD with the HelloAck message. The accepting peer may wait until immediately after completion of connection setup to post the buffers, however it is possible the InfiniBand RNR NAK protocol will be invoked. The RNR NAK Protocol will stall data transfer until the receive private buffers are posted. See section [A4.7 Private Buffer Management on page 1412](#).
 - b) The Responder Resources field in the CM REP MAD **shall** be greater than or equal to one.

- c) The accepting peer **shall** reject the connection by sending a CM REJ MAD if:
- The local Major Protocol Version Number does not match the Major Protocol Version Number in the Hello message. If the accepting peer's Major Protocol Version Number matches, but the Minor Protocol Version Number does not, the accepting peer **shall** accept the connection. The protocol specified by the lower Minor Protocol Version Number **shall** be used for all communication after connection setup.
 - If the Responder Resources field in the CM REQ MAD is equal to zero.
- 7) If the connection is accepted, the accepting peer **shall** send a CM REP MAD with a HelloAck message back to the connecting peer. See section [A4.3.2.2 HelloAck Message \(HAH\) on page 1376](#) for additional information.
- 8) The connecting peer replies to the CM REP MAD HelloAck message with a CM RTU MAD.
- a) If the connecting peer did not previously post receive private buffers to the receive queue, it should do so before sending the CM RTU MAD. It may wait until immediately after the CM RTU MAD is sent, but as previously mentioned, this may stall data transfer until the buffers are posted.
 - b) The connecting peer **shall** set the flow control mode to Combined Mode and may immediately commence data transfer.
 - c) The connecting peer **shall** reject the connection by sending a CM REJ MAD if:
 - The local Major Protocol Version Number does not match the Major Protocol Version Number in the HelloAck message.
 - The Responder Resources field in the CM REP MAD is equal to zero.
- 9) The accepting peer receives the CM RTU MAD.
- a) The accepting peer **shall** set the flow control mode to Combined Mode and may immediately commence data transfer.

If the RTU is dropped, the accepting peer may implement a timeout and retransmit the REP. If a retransmission timeout is not implemented, it is possible that the connecting peer's SDP messages may be received without an RTU having been delivered. This issue is resolved by the HCA generating an event which completes connection setup. However, if the accepting peer did not post receive private buffers before the SDP message was received, data transfer will stall until connection setup is completed and the receive private buffers are posted to the Receive Queue.

CA4-42: Implementations **shall** set the RNR NAK retry count to be non-zero to avoid teardown of the connection because the remote peer has not posted receive private buffers before completion of connection setup.

A4.5.1.2 ABORTING CONNECTION SETUP

CA4-43: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [CA4-43.2.1](#):

CA4-43.2.1: When a CM REJ MAD is received by either the connecting or accepting peer and the CM does not choose to retry under the provisions of [12.9.8.7](#) or [12.9.8.8](#), the connection setup **shall** be aborted.

If a CM REJ MAD is sent for an SDP-specific error, the reject reason code value shall be 28 (Consumer Reject -- [12.6.7.2 Rejection Reason on page 723](#)).

An SDP implementation is expected to clean up any resources associated with an aborted connection.

A4.5.2 AUTOMATIC PATH MIGRATION

SDP is designed to be compatible with the optional InfiniBand Automatic Path Migration feature defined in sections [10.4 Automatic Path Migration on page 493](#) and [17.2.8 Automatic Path Migration on page 1200](#) (APM). SDP implementations should support APM, if it is available on the underlying InfiniBand implementation. SDP consumers may at their option use this feature if it is available. APM usage involves two basic steps. First, alternate paths are determined. Second, those paths are configured into the SDP connection.

A4.5.2.1 DETERMINING ALTERNATE PATHS

Exactly how alternate paths are chosen is a matter of policy and outside the formal scope of the SDP specification. However, SDP was designed to be compatible with a number of different styles of alternate path selection. These styles include policies which use *a priori* information or information exchanged outside of the SDP protocol.

Alternate paths are commonly determined at connection setup time. However, they may be determined later. Also, new alternate paths may need to be determined later if fabric conditions change or to reload a new alternate path after path migration has occurred.

A4.5.2.2 EXAMPLE ALTERNATE PATH SELECTION PROCEDURE

The address resolution procedure (see section [A4.4 Address Resolution on page 1386](#)) provides address information in the form of a GID. If desired, implementations may use the following procedure to find an alternate path based on this address. The alternate path found by this procedure is not guaranteed to map back into a valid IP-on-IB path.

This alternate path procedure employs a query commonly used to obtain 1
REQ information for the a single path. 2

SubnAdmGetTable(PathRecord: SGID, DGID, RawTraffic=0, other-pa- 3
rameters) 4

“other-parameters” may specify items such as SL, P_Key, MTU, 5
Rate, etc. 6

Note that SDP does not require any particular MTU, while IP-on- 8
IB paths have additional restrictions. 9

NumbPath could be 1 (in which case the SA query may use Sub- 11
nAdmGet rather than SubnAdmGetTable) or it could be higher if 12
some other criteria are used to select a path that cannot be spec- 13
ified in an SA query. 14

If an alternate path is desired to the above port, modify the single path 15
query. One modification is to specify NumbPaths greater than 1 (up to 16
127) and choose two path records to use. (Note, it is possible that a fabric 17
configuration may only provide a single possible path.) Another method is 18
to repeat the single path query but specify different “other-parameters” 19
(e.g. SL) to obtain an alternate path. 20

If it is desired that an alternate path be to another port of the HCA con- 21
taining the above port, the following procedure may be used. 22

- 24 1) Obtain the primary path by the single path query described above.
- 25 2) Use the LID from the primary PathRecord to construct a RID (see 26
section [15.2.4.2 Record Identifier \(RID\) Fields on page 1022](#))

(Note that section [C15-0.1.9: on page 1021](#) allows this to work even if 28
the LID is not the base LID.) 29

- 30 3) Obtain the primary port NodeRecord (see section [15.2.5.2 No- 31
deRecord on page 1027](#)) for the CA:

32 SubnAdmGet(NodeRecord: RID)

33 Save the NodeGUID, PortGUID and LocalPortNum fields from the No- 34
deInfo (see section [14.2.5.3 NodeInfo on page 894](#)) portion of this No- 35
deRecord. 36

- 37 4) Get all other NodeRecords for this CA:

38 SubnAdmGetTable(NodeRecord: NodeGUID)

39 For each NodeRecord returned (there will be one per port), save the 40
NodeRID. Also save the PortGUID and LocalPortNum from the No- 41
deInfo portion. Note that one record returned from this query will be a 42

- duplicate of that returned from step 3. The duplicate can be found by matching on the LocalPortNum field.
- 5) For each possible alternate port, find its GID Prefix by querying the SA:
- SubnAdmGet(PortInfoRecord: RID=NodeRecord.NodeRID,
LocalPortNum=NodeRecord.NodeInfo.LocalPortNum)
- Save the GIDPrefix field from the PortInfoRecord.
- 6) Assemble the zeroth GID for each possible alternate port:
- GID<127:64> = PortInfoRecord.PortInfo.GIDPrefix
- GID<63:0> = NodeRecord.NodeInfo.PortGUID
- 7) Optionally, the other possible GIDs for each alternate port can be constructed by looking up GUIDInfoRecords. (This may be necessary in inter-subnet routing cases.)
- 8) The single path query can now be repeated on each possible alternate port using the GID(s) constructed in steps 6 and 7.
- 9) Select an alternate path from those looked up in step 8.

A4.5.2.3 CONFIGURING ALTERNATE PATHS

Configuration of alternate paths is accomplished using standard CM MADs. Two means are possible. One method is to specify the alternate path information in the CM REQ MAD as part of the normal REQ/REP/RTU exchange for connection setup. This procedure places the responsibility for specifying alternate paths with the connecting side. The second method uses the CM LAP MAD to modify an existing connection. Note that the LAP/APR MAD exchange can only be initiated from the connecting side.

The LAP can also be used to reconfigure alternate paths. If a two step process is again required, one LAP/APR sequence can exchange private data to drive a second LAP method configuration.

A4.5.3 CONNECTION TEARDOWN

SDP emulates TCP connection teardown functionality. TCP provides two ways to close a connection - a graceful close, where any data that has been posted by the ULP to the transport is transferred before the connection is torn down, and abortive close, where the connection is immediately torn down.

A4.5.3.1 GRACEFUL CLOSE

TCP's graceful close (also known as graceful disconnect or half-closed connections) is an agreement between the transport and ULP that:

- before the connection is terminated, all data accepted for transmission by the transport before the close occurred is guaranteed to be sent out (under reasonable limitations) and reliably acknowledged.
- data reception can continue normally until the remote peer performs a close.

Sockets Direct Protocol provides the same behavior.

CA4-44: The local peer **shall not** close the InfiniBand connection at the time of the ULP's call to gracefully close the half-connection. The local peer shall reject any send data posted by the ULP after the ULP close call occurred.

CA4-45: The local peer **shall** continue to receive ULP data through any of the SDP data transfer mechanisms until the remote peer gracefully closes the connection or the connection is abortively closed (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#) for the abortive close protocol).

CA4-46: The local peer **shall** also perform the following operations in the order specified:

- 1) The local peer **shall** complete the transmission of all outbound data posted by the ULP before the ULP requested the graceful close. This means that all Bcopy transfers, Write Zcopy transfers, Read Zcopy transfers, and Transaction transfers from this Data Source have been completed (see section [A4.6 Data Transfer Mechanisms on page 1395](#)). Completions may be successful or unsuccessful (e.g. an InfiniBand timeout occurred). Unsuccessful completions **shall** cause the local peer to perform an abortive close (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#)).
- 2) The local peer **shall** send a DisConn message to the remote peer. This informs the remote peer that the connection is being terminated gracefully, allowing the remote peer to inform the ULP of this fact as appropriate. If the DisConn message completed with an error, the connection tear down was abortive. The DisConn message provides similar functionality to a TCP segment with the FIN bit set. Because InfiniBand reliable connection service provides in-order delivery, no ULP data will be received after the DisConn message has been received. Note that SDP messages may continue to be received by the local peer to enable ULP data transfer on the opposite half-connection.
- 3) The local peer **shall** wait for one of the following events:
 - reception of a DisConn message - the remote peer gracefully closed the opposite half-connection (unless an AbortConn message is received before the connection is terminated).

- the InfiniBand connection is torn down (this may be due to either a graceful or an abortive close).
 - the local ULP abortively closes the connection (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#)).
 - if no forward progress is being made, the connection may be abortively closed (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#)).
- 4) When the SDP implementation is informed that the InfiniBand connection was torn down all work completions **shall** be examined to determine whether a DisConn message, or a DisConn message followed by an AbortConn message, was received. If a DisConn message was received without an AbortConn, the graceful close was successfully completed. If a DisConn message was not received, or a DisConn message and an AbortConn message were received, then the close was abortive (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#)). In either case, all ULP receive buffers **shall** be completed with information about how much of the buffer was filled.
- 5) The local peer **shall** wait for all send work requests to complete (either successfully or in error). This is necessary because the remote peer's DisConn message may have crossed the local peer's DisConn message (i.e. both sides are simultaneously attempting a graceful teardown). Because InfiniBand connection teardown immediately places the Queue Pair in the Error state (see section [12.10.8 Communication Release on page 768](#)), any outstanding SDP messages or RDMA transfers would be aborted if the connection were immediately torn down.
- 6) The InfiniBand connection teardown protocol **shall** be used to complete the teardown (see section [12.10.8.1 Disconnect Request on page 768](#)). The local peer **shall** close and clean up all InfiniBand resources associated with the connection (queue pair, buffers, etc.).

CA4-47: To effect a graceful close, the remote peer **shall** perform the following operations in the order given:

- 1) Upon receipt of a DisConn message, the remote peer **shall** consider all its outstanding SinkAvail advertisement as canceled, complete all ULP receive buffers, and wait for the ULP to close the connection. The remote peer **shall** continue to allow normal ULP send data transfer, but **shall** complete any new ULP receive buffers and inform the ULP (as appropriate) that the receive half-connection has been gracefully closed.
- 2) If the ULP issues an abortive close, the abortive close protocol **shall** be used (see section [A4.5.3.2 Abortive Close on page 1394](#)). If the ULP issues a graceful close, the remote peer **shall** complete the transmission of all send ULP data that was posted before the ULP posted the graceful close. Completions may be successful or unsuc-

cessful (e.g. an InfiniBand timeout occurred). The remote peer **shall** reject any send data posted by the ULP after the ULP close call occurred.

- 3) The remote peer **shall** send a DisConn message to the local peer.
- 4) The remote peer **shall** wait for all send work requests to complete and then **shall** process all work completions. If the DisConn message completed without error and no AbortConn message was received, then the graceful teardown was successful. If the DisConn message completed with an error (including a flush error status) or an AbortConn was received, the connection teardown was abortive.
- 5) The InfiniBand connection teardown protocol **shall** be used to complete the teardown. The remote peer **shall** close and clean up all InfiniBand resources associated with the connection (queue pair, buffers, etc.).

A4.5.3.2 ABORTIVE CLOSE

CA4-48: If the ULP specifies an abortive disconnect or an abortive disconnect is required for some other reason, the following rules **shall** be followed:

- if the IB connection is still valid and a DisConn message was previously sent, then an AbortConn message **shall** be sent and its completion processed before terminating the InfiniBand connection.
- if the IB connection is not valid or if the IB connection is valid and no DisConn message was previously sent, no further SDP messages **shall** be placed on the Send Queue and the InfiniBand connection **shall** be terminated immediately (see section [12.10.8 Communication Release on page 768](#)).

CA4-49: SDP **shall** consider the connection abortively torn down if the InfiniBand connection is torn down without receiving a DisConn message, or if both an AbortConn and a DisConn message were received. Any unsent ULP data **shall** be discarded.

If an SDP protocol violation occurs, the connection should be abortively closed. A protocol violation includes but is not limited to InfiniBand errors, invalid SDP messages, or incorrectly formatted SDP messages.

Certain ULP behaviors can lead to a situation under which the ULP initially indicates graceful teardown in the send direction (causing the DisConn message to go out), and then some error occurs which requires the connection to be abortively closed. The AbortConn message is used for this purpose. It is sent if the DisConn message has already been sent out (but InfiniBand connection has not been terminated yet) and some error condition arises which calls for abortive teardown of the socket under TCP se-

mantics. Sending out the AbortConn message informs the remote peer to ignore the earlier DisConn message and inform the ULP (as appropriate) that the connection was closed abortively. In this case, the AbortConn message is similar to TCP sending a segment with the RST bit set after it has already sent a segment with the FIN bit set.

CA4-50: Once the AbortConn message completion event occurs, the normal InfiniBand connection teardown protocol **shall** be used to complete the teardown.

A4.6 DATA TRANSFER MECHANISMS

SDP employs four data transfer mechanisms:

- Bcopy - transfer of ULP data from send buffers into receive private buffers.
- Read Zcopy - transfer of ULP data through RDMA Reads, preferably directly from ULP buffers into ULP buffers.
- Write Zcopy - transfer of ULP data through RDMA Writes, preferably directly from ULP buffers into ULP buffers.
- Transaction - an optimized ULP data transfer model for transactions. It piggy-backs ULP data transfer using private buffers on top of the Write Zcopy mechanism used to transfer ULP data on the opposite half-connection.

The policy which controls when to use the Bcopy data transfer mechanisms versus a Zcopy data transfer mechanism is outside the scope of this specification. An implementation dependent parameter defined as the Bcopy Threshold is used to abstractly define the results of the policy decision. There are no constraints placed on the Data Source Bcopy Threshold values, and the value of the Data Source Bcopy Threshold may be static or dynamic. The Data Sink Bcopy Threshold has a single constraint: it must be greater than or equal to the size of the receive private buffers. Its value may also be static or dynamic.

Note that some socket implementations do not provide deterministic results if overlapping receive buffers are posted.

CA4-51: An SDP implementation **shall** support the Bcopy data transfer mechanism, both as a Data Source and as a Data Sink.

It is strongly recommended that an SDP implementation support the ability to initiate all data transfer mechanisms.

It is strongly recommended that an SDP implementation support the ability to carry out all data transfer mechanism requests.

CA4-52: If an SDP implementation does not support carrying out a received request for a given optional data transfer mechanism, the implementation **must** still be able to parse the received request, and to force the use of the Bcopy data transfer mechanism.

For example, if an SDP implementation does not support carrying out the Read Zcopy data transfer mechanism request, when the implementation receives a SrcAvail message, the implementation must be able to respond with a SendSm message to force the Data Source to use the Bcopy data transfer mechanism.

A4.6.1 BCOPY

SDP maintains a small set of receive private buffers for receiving data that the Data Source transfers using InfiniBand Sends. Each connection has a separate pool of receive private buffers.

A ladder diagram showing the Data Source sending multiple Data messages to send ULP data. Note that Data messages are sent to the receive private buffer pool, and thus require a flow-control update periodically. This update can be piggybacked on a SDP message sent as part of normal data flow or it can be sent in a Data message with no payload.

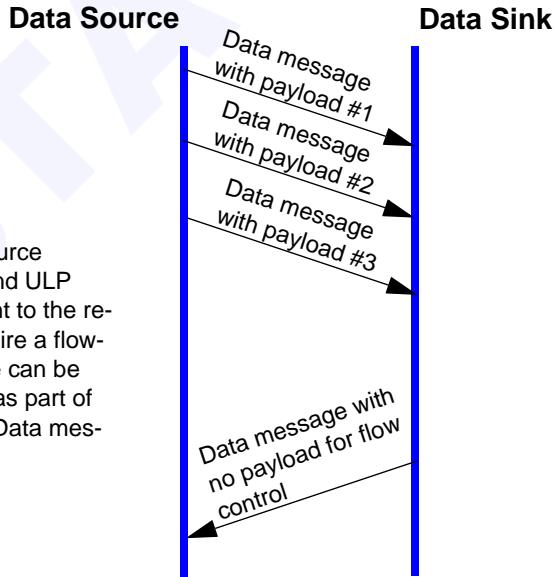


Figure 272 Ladder Diagram for BCopy

Each peer chooses its own sizes of send and receive private buffers and informs the other peer of these during connection setup.

CA4-53: The Data Source **shall** limit the amount of ULP data sent in an SDP message (specifically a Data, SinkAvail, or SrcAvail message) to ensure the ULP data plus SDP header(s) will fit within the receive private buffer size advertised by the Data Sink.

SDP message transfer is flow controlled as described in section [A4.7 Private Buffer Management on page 1412](#).

For the Data Source, data may be copied from the ULP's buffer to the payload sections of one or more of the send buffers or the ULP buffer may be referenced directly by the send work request. In the header, the MID is set to type Data message and the SDP message size is set to the ULP payload size plus the size of the header. The SDP message is sent by posting a Send work request.

The Data Sink receives the SDP message in its posted receive private buffers. When a ULP receive buffer is completed is outside the scope of this specification.

A4.6.2 READ ZCOPY

This mechanism shall transfer data through the following sequence of operations:

- 1) The Data Source sends a SrcAvail message when a send ULP buffer the Source deems suitable has been posted (there are no protocol restrictions on the Data Source use of the Bcopy mechanism versus Read Zcopy mechanism for transfer of a specific ULP buffer). For example a SrcAvail message may be sent if the ULP buffer is larger than the Bcopy Threshold. If the Source chooses to advertise a ULP buffer in a SrcAvail message, the ULP buffer is referred to as an RDMA buffer (the RDMA buffer may be a copy of the ULP buffer).

Note that in Combined Mode the SrcAvail message payload must contain at least one byte of ULP payload and in Pipelined Mode the SrcAvail message must not contain ULP payload (see sections [A4.8.2 Combined Mode on page 1419](#) and [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)).

CA4-54: The SrcAH Len, VA, and R_Key fields **shall** describe the entire send RDMA buffer, regardless of whether a copy of the initial portion of the RDMA buffer is included in the SrcAvail message payload.

CA4-54.2.1: In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the R_Key in a SrcAvail message **shall be** capable of being remotely invalidated. Refer to the *Base Memory Management Extensions* for additional details on remote invalidation.

In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the Data Source should not rely on the Data Sink to perform a remote invalidate after the data transfer is completed.

After receiving a SrcAvail message, the Data Sink may send a SendSm message when ULP receive buffer(s) are not suitable for Read Zcopy.

- 2) The Data Sink receives the SrcAvail message and waits for the ULP to post a receive buffer to SDP. If the receive ULP buffer is viewed as

unsuitable for Read Zcopy, a SendSm message should be sent (see section [A4.6.5.2 Mechanisms For Forcing Bcopy on page 1406](#)). If the receive ULP buffer is viewed as suitable for Read Zcopy, the ULP buffer should be used as the RDMA buffer. An implementation may choose to create an intermediate buffer as the RDMA buffer, and then copy the data into the ULP buffer. If there is an initial portion of the send RDMA buffer present in the SrcAvail advertisement, the Data Sink shall move the data into the RDMA buffer through one of the following mechanisms:

- copy some or all of the ULP payload of the SrcAvail message to the receive RDMA buffer, and then perform one or more RDMA Read(s) to retrieve the rest of the data, offsetting the initial RDMA Read transfer by the number of bytes that were copied out of the SrcAvail message ULP payload.
- avoid the ULP payload copy and start the initial RDMA Read at the start of the send RDMA buffer. Additional RDMA Reads may be used to transfer the rest of the buffer.

CA4-55: After the RDMA Read(s) complete(s), the Data Sink **shall** send a RdmaRdCompl message to the Data Source, unless the operation was canceled (see section [A4.6.5.4 SrcAvail Revocation on page 1408](#)). The RdmaRdCompl **shall** either have the fence indicator set or the Data Sink **shall** wait for completion of the RDMA Read before posting the RdmaRdCompl to the Send Queue.

CA4-56: The RdmaRdCompl header **shall** contain the size (in bytes) of ULP data transferred through the RDMA Read(s), excluding any portion of the ULP data that was originally transferred through the SrcAvail message. The RdmaRdCompl message **shall** refer to data made available through a single SrcAvail advertisement.

CA4-57: A Data Sink **shall** only send an RdmaRdCompl message associated with the oldest incomplete SrcAvail message.

The size does not include the portion of the data, if any, transferred within the SrcAvail message as ULP payload. It may be less than the size of the Data Source RDMA buffer advertised in the SrcAvail message minus the size of ULP data payload included in the SrcAvail message. An implementation may loop performing a series of RDMA Read operations followed by RdmaRdCompl messages to transfer the send RDMA buffer contents.

It is expected (but not required) that protocol implementations would typically RDMA Read all the ULP data and then send a single RdmaRdCompl message to inform the Data Source that the SrcAvail message has been Processed. The facility to specify data transfer size less than the RDMA buffer size advertised in the SrcAvail message enables various transfer scenarios. For example, a protocol im-

lementation may RDMA Read part of the data and then send a RdmaRdCompl message followed by a SendSm message to retrieve the rest of the data using the Bcopy mechanism. Only one SendSm message may be used to complete data transfer for a given SrcAvail advertisement. See 3) below.

In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the Data Sink should send the last *RdmaRdCompl* message, associated with a *SrcAvail* message, through a *Send w/Invalidate*; the R_Key used for the RDMA Read data transfer shall be used as an argument to the *Send w/Invalidate* verb.

CA4-57.2.1: The Data Sink shall not send an *RdmaRdCompl* message through a *Send w/Invalidate* for partially completed data transfers.

Note that if the flow control mode from the Data Source to the Data Sink is Combined Mode, the Data Sink may set the REQ_PIPE bit in the BSDH Flags field of the RdmaRdCompl message if it wishes to transition to Pipelined mode (see section [A4.3.1 Base Sockets Direct Header \(BSDH\) on page 1369](#)).

- 3) Upon receiving the RdmaRdCompl message, the Data Source shall compare the RRCH Len field against the length of the oldest, incomplete SrcAvail advertisement. If the send RDMA buffer has not been completely transferred, the Data Source shall wait until the SrcAvail message has been Processed by an ensuing RdmaRdCompl message or a SendSm message. Once the send RDMA buffer is completed, this may map to completion of a send ULP buffer, as appropriate.

CA4-57.2.2: If the Data Sink has remotely invalidated the RDMA buffer through a *RdmaRdCompl* message, the Data Source shall verify that the invalidated R_Key is associated with the RDMA buffer sent in the oldest incomplete *SrcAvail* message. If there is a mismatch, the Data Source shall view the operation as a protocol violation.

CA4-58: Data advertised by SrcAvail **shall** remain available for Read Zcopy by the Data Sink until its consumption has been acknowledged with RdmaRdCompl message(s), a SendSm message is received from the Data Sink, the SrcAvail message has been over ridden because of a SinkAvail message (see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)), or the Data Source has Processed a SrcAvailCancel sequence (see section [A4.6.5.4 SrcAvail Revocation on page 1408](#)).

Note the portions of the RDMA Read buffer that have been completed by an RdmaRdCompl are no longer required to be available for RDMA Read.

If a SendSm message is received at the Data Source, the Data Source shall match the message with the oldest, incomplete SrcAvail adver-

tisement. The Data Source shall view this SrcAvail as Processed and shall send the remaining ULP data using Data messages (see section [A4.6.1 Bcopy on page 1396](#)). The Data Sink shall consume this data before sending an RdmaRdCompl for other SrcAvail messages (this condition can only occur in Pipelined Mode - see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)).

CA4-59: Upon receiving a SendSm message, the Data Source **shall** complete the oldest incomplete SrcAvail advertised buffer using Data message(s). After sending a SendSm message, the Data Sink **shall** wait until it has received all of the data that was advertised in the corresponding SrcAvail before sending any RdmaRdCompl message, even for another advertised buffer.

Note that the Data Sink calculates the number of remaining bytes expected through Data messages by subtracting from the SrcAH length field the sum of the number of bytes that the Data Sink has acknowledged with RdmaRdCompl message(s) plus the amount of ULP payload included in the SrcAvail message.

A ladder diagram showing the Data Source sending a send RDMA buffer advertisement (SrcAvail message) to the Data Sink. The Data Sink initiates one or more RDMA Read(s) to transfer source ULP data. When the RDMA Read(s) completes, a RdmaRdCompl message is sent to the Data Source. Further RDMA Read(s) and RdmaRdCompl messages may be necessary to consume the entire source buffer.

— Optional Message

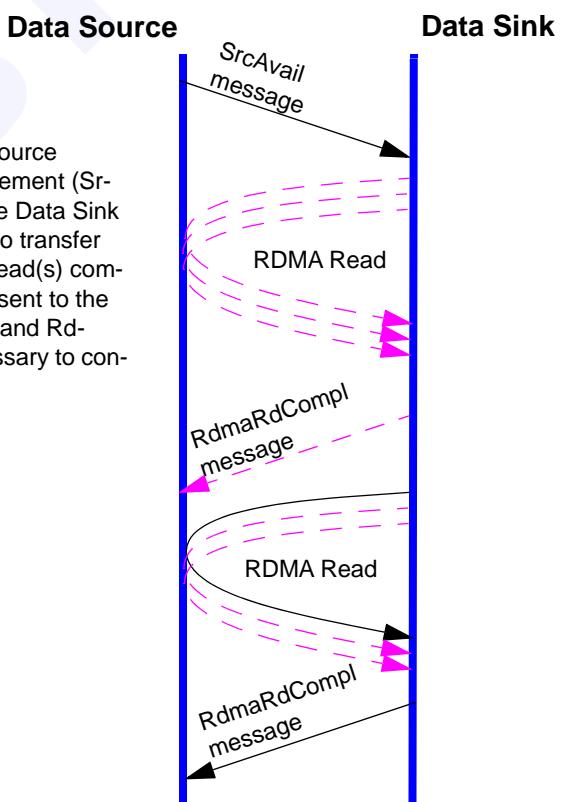


Figure 273

Ladder Diagram for Read Zcopy Mechanism

1
2
3
4
5
CA4-60: When the Data Sink sends multiple RdmaRdCompl messages
for a single SrcAvail advertisement, the RdmaRdCompl message length
field **shall** be the number of bytes transferred since the last RdmaRd-
Compl was sent for this SrcAvail advertisement.

6
7
8
9
10
It is possible to create a deadlock if, at the same time, both ULP peers
post send data suitable for Read Zcopy and both ULPs wait for the asso-
ciated send to complete before posting a receive. A SrcAvail message
could be sent by each SDP peer, but no ULP receive buffer would be
posted. This deadlock is possible when all of the following are true:

- 11 • A SrcAvail is received; and
- 12 • No ULP receive buffer is posted; and
- 13 • The local Data Source has a SrcAvail outstanding.

14
15 When these conditions are true, a deadlock can be avoided in a variety of
16 ways:

- 17 • The Data Sink could send a SendSm message to force the use of
18 the Bcopy data transfer mechanism.
- 19 • The Data Source could send a SrcAvailCancel message and then
20 complete the ULP write using the Bcopy data transfer mecha-
21 nism.
- 22 • The Data Sink could complete the Read Zcopy using a local buf-
23 fer, holding that data until the ULP posts a receive.

24
25 Regardless of the method used, it is strongly recommended that SDP im-
26 plementations detect and recover from this deadlock situation.

A4.6.3 WRITE ZCOPY

27
28
29 This mechanism shall transfer data through the following sequence of op-
30 erations:

- 31
32 1) The Data Sink may send a SinkAvail message to the Data Source
33 when a suitable receive ULP buffer is posted (note that the ULP
34 buffer must be larger than the size of the local receive private buffers
35 - see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)). If Write Zcopy is chosen, the ULP buffer is referred to as
36 a receive RDMA buffer (the receive RDMA buffer may actually be a
37 private buffer from where receive data is copied to the ULP buffer --
38 this is implementation-dependent).

39
40 **CA4-61:** The SinkAH Len, VA, and R_Key fields **shall** describe the entire
41 receive RDMA buffer. The NonDiscards field **shall** be set as specified in
42 section [A4.3.3.3.4 NonDiscards - 32 bits on page 1381](#).

CA4-61.2.1: In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the R_Key in a *SinkAvail* message **shall be** capable of being remotely invalidated. Refer to the *Base Memory Management Extensions* for additional details on remote invalidation.

In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the Data Sink should not rely on the Data Source to perform a remote invalidate after the data transfer is completed.

- 2) The Data Source receives the *SinkAvail* message and waits for the ULP to post a send buffer. If the Data Source determines the buffer is suitable for Write Zcopy, it shall use one or more RDMA Writes to transfer ULP data to the Data Sink. If the Data Source determines the buffer is unsuitable for Write Zcopy, it shall use the protocol described under section [A4.6.5.2.2 Data Source Forcing Bcopy on page 1407](#).

CA4-62: After the RDMA Writes(s) complete, the Data Source **shall** send a single *RdmaWrCompl* message to the Data Sink, unless the operation was canceled.

In an *Invalidate Enabled* SDP connection, the Data Source should send an *RdmaWrCompl* message, associated with a *SinkAvail* message, through a *Send w/Invalidate*; the R_Key used for the RDMA Write data transfer shall be used as an argument to the *Send w/Invalidate* verb.

CA4-63: The *RdmaWrCompl* header **shall** contain the size (in bytes) of data transferred through the RDMA Write(s).

- 3) Upon receiving the *RdmaWrCompl* message, the Data Sink shall match the *RdmaWrCompl* message to the oldest incomplete *SinkAvail* advertisement and shall consider the *SinkAvail* advertisement Processed. Once the receive RDMA buffer is Processed, this may map to completion of a receive ULP buffer, as appropriate.

CA4-63.2.1: If the Data Source has remotely invalidated the RDMA buffer through a *RdmaWrCompl* message, the Data Sink shall verify that the invalidated R_Key is associated with the RDMA buffer sent in the oldest incomplete *SinkAvail* message. If there is a mismatch, the Data Sink shall view the operation as a protocol violation.

CA4-64: A Data Sink RDMA buffer advertised by *SinkAvail* **shall** remain available for Write Zcopy from the Data Source until it has been acknowledged with an *RdmaWrCompl* message, the *SinkAvail* was canceled due to a Data message (see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)), or the advertisement has been revoked, (and

the revoke request has been Processed - see section [A4.6.5.5 SinkAvail Revocation on page 1410](#).

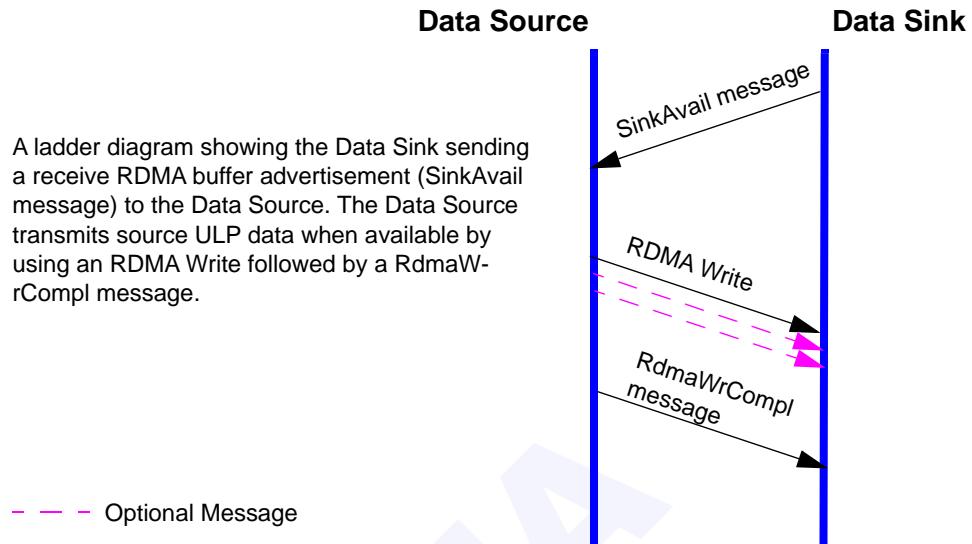


Figure 274 Ladder Diagram for Write Zcopy Mechanism

Some socket implementations support an option to ensure that receive ULP buffers are completely filled before they are returned to the ULP. This is typically implemented as a flag called MSG_WAITALL which is specified when a receive ULP buffer is posted. If the MSG_WAITALL socket option is supported by the Data Sink implementation, it shall disable Write Zcopy for ULP buffers which have MSG_WAITALL set by not sending SinkAvail advertisements to the Data Source. Enabling Write Zcopy for buffers with MSG_WAITALL breaks the ULP buffer accounting algorithm which addresses crossing SinkAvail and Data messages (see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)). If the ULP buffer accounting algorithm were used, then the ULP buffer must be partially completed if a Data message and SinkAvail message cross. Disabling SinkAvail prevents this condition, thus enabling the receive ULP buffer to be completely filled in all scenarios.

oA4-1: For any ULP buffer with the MSG_WAITALL socket option flag set, no SinkAvail advertisement **shall** be sent to the Data Source.

A4.6.4 TRANSACTION MECHANISM

If the ULP is transaction oriented, typically one peer is sending short *command* messages and medium to long *reply* messages are expected. It is possible to optimize this transfer model by collapsing the SinkAvail advertisement for the *reply* receive RDMA buffer with the Data message for the command. This enables zero-copy receives on potentially smaller *replies* as well as reducing control traffic. Note that the SinkAvail message is used

to transfer ULP payload which is being sent in the opposite direction of the SinkAvail message, and that for the SinkAvail to be generated the flow control mode must be Pipelined Mode (see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)). Also note that the receive RDMA buffer for the SinkAvail advertisement must be larger than the local receive private buffer size (see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)).

Note that the Data Sink can only send a SinkAvail message with ULP payload to the Data Source if the current flow control mode is Pipelined mode (see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)).

If an end point receives a SinkAvail message with ULP payload, it may use RDMA Writes to fill the advertised RDMA buffer unless prior ULP payload-carrying messages effectively canceled this SinkAvail advertisement (see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)).

[Figure 275 Ladder Diagram of Transaction Mechanism on page 1404](#) shows the collapsing of the Data message into the SinkAvail advertisement. ULP peer A is communicating with ULP peer B, with a traffic pattern that appears as though it is transactional. Peer A is repetitively sending peer B a single small ULP message (this is the *command*) and then immediately posting a receive ULP buffer (this is the *reply*). Without the piggyback mechanism, two SDP messages would potentially be generated by peer A.

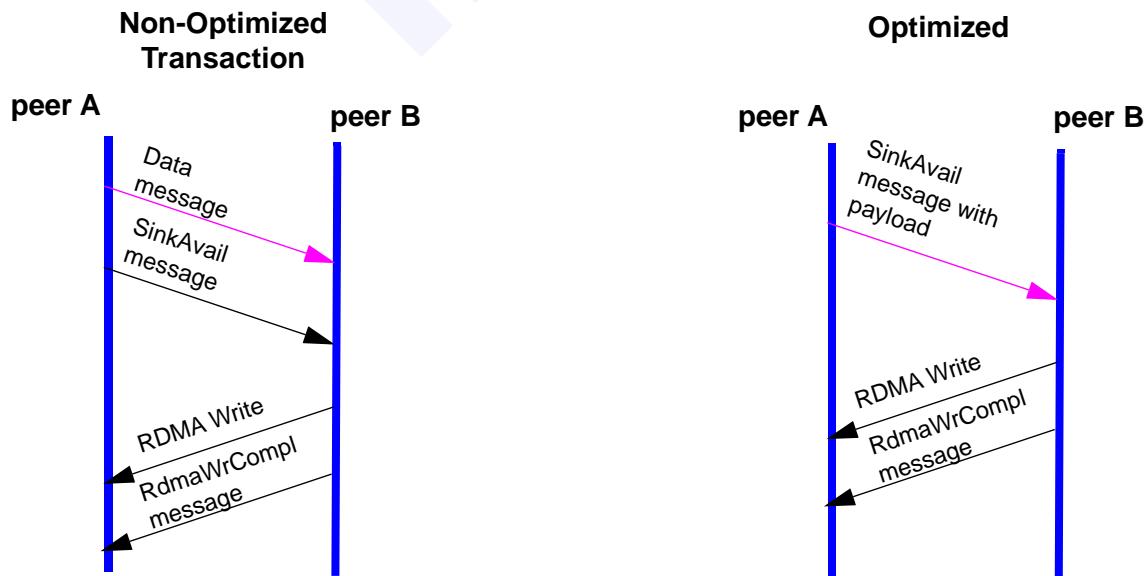


Figure 275 Ladder Diagram of Transaction Mechanism

ULP peer B is consistently waiting for reception of a *command* before posting a send ULP buffer for the *reply*. If the Transaction mechanism was not available and the SinkAvail advertisement was not received before the *reply* was posted by the ULP, the *reply* Data Source would have to choose whether to wait for the SinkAvail advertisement, generate a SrcAvail advertisement, or transfer the ULP data using the Bcopy mechanism. With the Transaction mechanism, the logic is straightforward. The *reply* Data Source may use the Write Zcopy mechanism to transfer the *reply*. If the *reply* ULP buffer is not suitable for RDMA Write, the Data Source may send the *reply* data using the Bcopy mechanism. All Pipelined Mode rules apply (see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)).

A4.6.5 MISCELLANEOUS DATA TRANSFER ISSUES

A4.6.5.1 DETECTING STALE SINKAVAIL ADVERTISEMENTS

SDP allows the Data Source to send ULP data through SDP messages. This creates an issue in Pipelined Mode because a SinkAvail advertisement may cross an SDP message containing ULP data which is destined for the same receive ULP buffer that was advertised in the SinkAvail message. The receive ULP buffer could be at least partially satisfied through the Data message. This effectively requires the Data Source to view the receive RDMA buffer advertisement as outdated or stale.

CA4-65: The Data Sink **shall** only send a SinkAvail advertisement if the RDMA buffer is larger than the local receive private buffer size.

Note that this also means that the Data Sink Bcopy Threshold must be larger than or equal to the receive private buffer size.

SDP shall use the following algorithm to enable the Data Source to detect and recover from stale SinkAvail advertisements:

- 1) If a ULP receive RDMA buffer R has been advertised through a SinkAvail message and one or more messages with ULP payload (Data or SinkAvail message with ULP payload) arrive at the Data Sink, then the ULP payload of exactly one SDP message shall be copied to R and R shall be returned to the ULP. In other words, R will not consume the ULP payload of more than one SDP message.

CA4-66: In Pipelined mode, the ULP payload of only one SDP message (Data message or SinkAvail) **shall** be used to complete any one RDMA buffer advertised through SinkAvail.

If a receive ULP buffer has not been advertised through a SinkAvail message, it may consume the ULP payload of more than one SDP message.

2) The Data Source shall keep a 32-bit counter, *PotentialNonDiscards*, which tracks the number of SDP messages carrying ULP payload that the Data Source has sent that might not cause a SinkAvail message to be discarded. It is initialized to zero. It wraps to zero after reaching 0xFFFFFFFF.

3) The Data Source, upon sending an SDP message carrying ULP payload, shall increment *PotentialNonDiscards* by one.

4) At the Data Source:

CA4-67: The Data Source **shall** execute the following pseudo-code for each received SinkAvail advertisement before initiating a Write Zcopy data transfer using the advertised buffer. If ULP payload is present in the SinkAvail, it **shall** be processed normally regardless of whether the SinkAvail was discarded.

```
If (SinkAvail.NonDiscards != PotentialNonDiscards)
    Discard(SinkAvail)
    PotentialNonDiscards--
Else
    Process SinkAvail normally
```

For example, if *PotentialNonDiscards*=2 and the Data Source has three SinkAvail advertisements, all with *NonDiscards*=0, then the first two advertisements are discarded as stale and RDMA is initiated on the third advertisement.

Note that this algorithm can cause receive ULP buffers to be partially filled when completed. If a ULP buffer is required to be completely filled an SDP implementation should not advertise the ULP buffer with a SinkAvail message. See section [A4.6.3 Write Zcopy on page 1401](#) for additional details.

Detecting stale SinkAvail advertisements is one mechanism that causes a SinkAvail advertisement to be discarded. Section [A4.9.4 Transition From Pipelined Mode to Combined Mode on page 1424](#) defines a different circumstance when a SinkAvail message must be discarded.

A4.6.5.2 MECHANISMS FOR FORCING BCOPY

A4.6.5.2.1 DATA SINK FORCING BCOPY

While in Combined or Pipelined Modes, if the Data Sink determines that its buffer is unsuitable for use with Read Zcopy from an RDMA buffer advertised by the Data Source, the Data Sink can use the SendSm message to force the Data Source to send data through the Bcopy mechanism (i.e., through Data messages). The Data Sink may send the SendSm message after receiving a SrcAvail message.

CA4-68: Upon receiving the SendSm message, the Data Source **shall** send all remaining ULP data (advertised in the associated SrcAvail message) using Data messages.

Section [A4.7.1 SDP Message Ordering on page 1413](#) requires that the Data Sink process SrcAvail messages in MSeq order. For each SrcAvail message received, the Data Sink shall either proceed with the appropriate RDMA data transfer mechanism (Read Zcopy if a SinkAvail advertisement did not cross, or wait for an RdmaWrCompl if a crossing occurred - see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)) or it shall respond with a SendSm message.

The Data Source shall respond to the SendSm request by matching it to the oldest incomplete SrcAvail advertisement and then sending the remaining ULP data for the SrcAvail advertisement (i.e. that has not been Processed by RdmaRdCompl message(s) from the Data Sink or already sent as ULP payload in the SrcAvail message) through the Bcopy mechanism.

Implementation note: in some cases the Data Source and Data Sink will have different Bcopy Threshold values. When the Source advertises an RDMA buffer whose size is greater than the Source's Bcopy Threshold but less than the Sink's Bcopy Threshold, the Sink may choose to force a Bcopy. However, since the Source has already invested in setting up a Read Zcopy data transfer, the Sink should give special consideration to cooperating with the Source's attempt to use Read Zcopy. Still, the Sink is free to force a Bcopy if it determines that for any reason its buffer is unsuitable for Read Zcopy.

A4.6.5.2.2 DATA SOURCE FORCING BCOPY

While in Pipelined Mode, if the Data Source determines that its buffer is unsuitable for use with Write Zcopy to an RDMA buffer advertised by the Data Sink, the Data Source is allowed to choose to not use the Data Sink's RDMA buffer advertisement, and use Data messages to send data using the Bcopy data transfer mechanism. In this case, the Data Source and Data Sink shall follow the protocol described in section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#).

Implementation note: in some cases the Data Source and Data Sink will have different Bcopy Threshold values. When the Data Sink advertises an RDMA buffer whose size is greater than the Data Sink's Bcopy Threshold but less than the Data Source's Bcopy Threshold, the Data Source may choose to force a Bcopy. However, since the Data Sink has already invested in setting up a Write Zcopy data transfer, the Data Source should give special consideration to cooperating with the Data Sink's attempt to use Write Zcopy. Still, the Data Source is free to force a Bcopy if it determines that for any reason its buffer is unsuitable for Write Zcopy.

A4.6.5.3 PROCESSING OUT-OF-BAND DATA

CA4-69: When the Data Source ULP posts Out-Of-Band data (a single byte) to be transmitted, the ordering of the Out-Of-Band data in the output byte stream **shall** be preserved.

The precise mechanism for conveying OOB data requests from the ULP to the SDP implementation is outside the scope of this specification.

CA4-70: Once the ULP has indicated that a particular byte in its output stream should be marked as Out-Of-Band data, the SDP implementation **shall** notify the remote peer that out-of-band data is pending by setting the OOB_PEND flag on an outgoing SDP message. It is recommended that this notification be accomplished in an expeditious fashion, however, the only requirements levied by the specification are as follows:

- The OOB_PEND flag **shall** be sent exactly once for each OOB data indication.
- The OOB_PEND flag **shall** be sent on a message sent no later than the message containing the Out-Of-Band data byte.
- The implementation **shall**, if necessary, delay sending the OOB_PEND flag to ensure that there will be no more than 65,535 ($2^{16}-1$) bytes of data sent between the flag and its associated Out-Of-Band data byte. This includes all ULP data sent by any SDP data transfer mechanism, including any data sent in or advertised by the SDP message containing the OOB_PEND flag.

Note that an implementation is allowed to send a message with the OOB_PEND flag using a reserved credit. See section [A4.7.5 Use of Send Credits on page 1414](#).

CA4-71: When the output byte-stream advances to the point where the Out-Of-Band data was inserted into the data stream by the ULP, the Data Source **shall** send the Out-Of-Band data using a Data message with the OOB_PRES bit set and the Out-of-Band data byte as the last byte of the ULP payload in the Data message.

Upon receipt of an SDP message with the OOB_PEND flag set, it is recommended that the SDP implementation expeditiously notify the ULP that OOB data is pending; however, the precise mechanism for conveying OOB notifications from the SDP implementation to the ULP is outside the scope of this specification.

A4.6.5.4 SRCAVAIL REVOCATION

To revoke all incomplete SrcAvail messages sent by the Data Source to the Data Sink, the Data Source shall send a SrcAvailCancel message. This is needed, for example, if the ULP performs a socket write and a timeout capability is supported. If the timeout interval passes without suc-

cessful completion of the transfer all RDMA buffers advertised on behalf of the socket write need to be canceled. Rather than create a new message type to explicitly acknowledge the SrcAvailCancel message, the SendSm message is used because it can be unambiguously understood to complete the cancel operation.

The Data Sink, upon receiving the SrcAvailCancel message, shall invalidate all Unprocessed SrcAvail messages (SrcAvail messages which have not been operated on), and should invalidate all In-Process SrcAvail messages (RDMA Read processing has started, but an RdmaRdCompl or SendSm message to complete the SrcAvail advertisement has not been sent) -- see details below. If all SrcAvail messages have been Processed, then the SrcAvailCancel message shall be ignored.

If a SrcAvail message is In-Process at the Data Sink (i.e., it has initiated one or more RDMA Reads), the RDMA Read cannot be canceled.

CA4-72: The Data Sink **shall not** update the value of MSeqAck to be sent in SDP messages, to greater than or equal to the MSeq value, with wrap, in the SrcAvailCancel message until all In-Process SrcAvail advertisements have been completed with the following sequence of events:

- 1) The Data Sink **shall not** initiate any new RDMA Reads.
- 2) After completion of all In-Process RDMA Reads, the Data Sink **shall** send any relevant RdmaRdCompl messages (this may or may not complete the SrcAvail message, depending on how many bytes have been consumed).
- 3) If there is more ULP data which has not been transferred from the original SrcAvail message, the Data Sink **shall** cancel the remainder of the SrcAvail advertisement.

CA4-73: If the Data Sink canceled one or more SrcAvail advertisements (either Unprocessed or In-Process), the Data Sink **shall** send exactly one SendSm message associated with the oldest incomplete SrcAvail message.

CA4-74: The Data Source, after sending a SrcAvailCancel message, **shall not** send any new SrcAvail messages until the SrcAvailCancel message has been Processed, as defined below.

This enables the Data Sink to implement simpler accounting (i.e., not have to account for whether a SrcAvail message was sent before or after the SrcAvailCancel message).

The Data Source shall consider the SrcAvailCancel message Processed if any of the following occur:

- All Unprocessed or In-Process SrcAvail messages have been moved to the Processed state with an RdmaRdCompl message or have been over-ridden by a SinkAvail message (see section [A4.8.3 Pipelined Mode on page 1419](#)).
- A SendSm message is received with an MSeqAck value greater than or equal to the MSeq value in the SrcAvailCancel message.

A4.6.5.5 SINKAVAIL REVOCATION

To revoke all incomplete SinkAvail advertisements sent by the Data Sink to the Data Source, the Data Sink shall send the SinkAvailCancel message. This is needed, for example, if the ULP performs a socket read and a timeout capability is supported. If the timeout interval passes without successful completion of the transfer all RDMA buffers advertised on behalf of the socket read need to be canceled.

The Data Source, upon receiving the SinkAvailCancel message, shall invalidate all Unprocessed SinkAvail advertisements (SinkAvail messages which have not been operated on) and should cancel all In-Process SinkAvail messages (RDMA Write processing has started, but an RdmaWrCompl message which completes the SinkAvail advertisement has not been sent) -- see details below. If all SinkAvail advertisements have been Processed, the SinkAvailCancel message shall be ignored.

Because an RDMA Write can not be canceled, if a SinkAvail message is In-Process at the Data Source (i.e., it has initiated one or more RDMA Writes), the RDMA Write shall be allowed to complete and the RdmaWrCompl message shall be sent.

CA4-75: The Data Source **shall** complete the buffer with the following sequence of events:

- 1) The Data Source **shall not** initiate any new RDMA Writes
- 2) After completion of the In-Process RDMA Writes, the Data Source **shall** send any relevant RdmaWrCompl messages (this may or may not complete the SinkAvail message, depending on how many bytes have been consumed)
- 3) if there is more ULP data which has not been transferred into the RDMA buffer advertised by the SinkAvail message, the Data Sink **shall** invalidate the remainder of the SinkAvail advertisement.

CA4-76: If the Data Source canceled one or more SinkAvail advertisements (either Unprocessed or In-Process), the Data Source **shall** send exactly one SinkCancelAck message.

CA4-77: The Data Sink, after sending the SinkAvailCancel message, **shall not** send a new SinkAvail or SinkAvailCancel message until all previous SinkAvail messages have been Processed, as defined below.

This enables the Data Source to implement simpler accounting (i.e., not have to account for whether a SinkAvail message was sent before or after the SinkAvailCancel message).

The Data Sink shall consider the SinkAvailCancel message Processed if any of the following occur:

- All Unprocessed or In-Process SinkAvail messages have been moved to the Processed state with an RdmaWrCompl message (i.e. the byte count returned in the RdmaWrCompl completely consumed the buffer).
- a Data message that adhered to the stale advertisement rules (see section [A4.6.5.1 Detecting Stale SinkAvail Advertisements on page 1405](#)).
- A SinkCancelAck message is received.

A4.6.5.6 BUFFERING ULP PAYLOAD

Under certain conditions it is possible for a sockets application to deadlock unless ULP payload is buffered by the underlying sockets implementation. For example, if all of the following occur:

- a) both ULP peers perform a sockets send followed by a sockets receive,
- b) both ULP peers do not post the receive buffer until the send is completed, and
- c) the underlying sockets implementation does not buffer the send data

then the send will never complete - thus creating deadlock. To solve this in the most general case (i.e. infinite length sends) is intractable, thus existing sockets applications bound the amount of buffering required by the transport layer through the use of the socket options SO_RCVBUF and SO_SNDBUF.

An application whose behavior is similar to the above example will not deadlock if the application ensures that a send is never larger than the size of the local peer's SO_RCVBUF plus the remote peer's SO_SNDBUF, and the SDP implementation ensures there is SO_RCVBUF plus SO_SNDBUF amount of buffering in the local and remote peer respectively.

Note that an application may post buffers larger than SO_RCVBUF plus SO_SNDBUF - but to remain deadlock free it must ensure that it does not exhibit the above behavior (e.g. a backup application could post large sends in one direction after it is sure the remote peer is posting receives).

Specification of the exact buffering algorithm is beyond the scope of this specification, but care must be taken if the receive private buffer pool is used as part of the SO_RCVBUF buffers. This is because an entire receive private buffer may, in some situations, contain only one byte of ULP data instead of being filled completely.

Thus an SDP implementation should provide at least SO_RCVBUF amount of buffering for ULP data at the Data Sink. An SDP implementation should provide at least SO_SNDBUF amount of ULP data buffering at the Data Source.

A4.7 PRIVATE BUFFER MANAGEMENT

SDP uses credit-based flow control on a per-socket connection basis. Each peer – for each connection – posts some number of private buffers as receive requests to the Receive Queue of the QP associated with the socket. The number of currently posted receive private buffers is advertised by the local peer to the remote peer in the Bufs field in the BSDH of each SDP message.

CA4-78: Private buffers **shall** obey the following enumerated constraints:

- a) All receive private buffers **shall** be at least as large as the advertised buffer size. See section [A4.7.6 Receive Buffer Resizing on page 1415](#) for receive private buffer constraints when resizing.
- b) The total number of receive private buffers **shall** be at least 3 per-connection for normal data flow. It is recommended the number of receive private buffers be substantially greater than 3.
- c) A local peer **shall not** send SDP messages larger than the size of the remote peer's receive private buffers.
- d) The sizes of both send and receive private buffers **shall** be at least the size of the BSDH plus the size of the largest extended header in an SDP message (which is SinkAH) plus one byte.
- e) The Data Sink Bcopy Threshold **shall** be greater than or equal to the size of the local peer's receive private buffers.
- f) the number of posted private buffers shall not exceed HCA or QP limits.

Receive private buffers should be substantially larger than the minimum value to enable practical data transfer using the Bcopy mechanism.

In addition, send buffers may obey the following constraint:

- If the local peer's send buffer size is larger than the remote peer's receive private buffer size, the local peer may reduce the size of its send buffers or leave them unmodified. The latter approach may be advantageous if the remote peer enlarges its receive private buffers at a later time.

A4.7.1 SDP MESSAGE ORDERING

CA4-79: The SDP sender **shall** insert messages into the Send Queue in BSDH MSeq order.

Note that this means the SDP message MSeq value in the BSDH will be monotonically increasing in the Send Queue.

CA4-80: The SDP receiver **shall** process all messages in BSDH MSeq order.

A4.7.2 SEND CREDIT CALCULATION

Send credit is calculated using information in the BSDH included with each SDP message.

Consider the case of peer 1 sending a SDP message to its connected peer, peer 2. The header of the SDP message includes the number of receive private buffers peer 1 currently has posted on that connection (in the Bufs field of the BSDH). The header also includes the sequence number of the last SDP message peer 1 has received before sending this SDP message (in the MSeqAck field of the BSDH - see section [A4.6.5.4 Sr-cAvail Revocation on page 1408](#) for additional constraints on MSeqAck). Upon receiving this SDP message, peer 2 uses this information to update its send credit for that connection:

New send credit = bufs – WrapSubtract(LSSeq – MSeqAck)

where LSSeq ("Last Sent Sequence number") is the MSeq of the last SDP message sent by peer 2.

See section [A4.7.5](#) below for the detailed rules governing usage of available send credits.

A4.7.3 INITIALIZATION OF SEND CREDIT

Initial send credit advertisements are exchanged during connection setup in the Buf field of the BSDH within the Hello and HelloAck messages. These credit advertisements shall be greater than or equal to 3. Either before or after connection setup, the receiver may post additional receive private buffers and increase the advertised window.

CA4-81: On connection establishment, initial credit advertisement from each peer **shall** be no less than three.

A4.7.4 GRATUITOUS UPDATE OF THE REMOTE PEER'S SEND CREDIT

As previously mentioned, credit updates are included in the header of each SDP message. Therefore when ULP data flow is such that SDP message flow is bidirectional (e.g., when doing Zcopy data transfer), credits are refreshed as part of the data transfer process. In some scenarios, bidirectional SDP message flow does not occur. Under these circumstances, SDP shall send gratuitous Data messages (Data messages with no ULP payload) as required to update the remote peer's send credit.

A4.7.5 USE OF SEND CREDITS

The sender shall reserve two receive private buffer credits to ensure the SDP connection operates correctly under flow controlled conditions.

The sender must reserve one credit for an SDP message which provides additional credits. If this credit was not reserved, a deadlock scenario is possible if both ends become flow controlled. Reserving a receive private buffer for the flow control update ensures that the sender can always update the receiver when more receive private buffers are posted.

The sender must reserve one additional credit for sending any SDP message which does not contain ULP payload. This ensures that the credit can be refreshed by the remote peer without depending upon ULP receive behavior. If ULP payload was allowed to be present in the SDP message, it is possible to have protocol deadlock.

CA4-82: Before sending any SDP message over the IB RC connection, an SDP implementation **shall** compute its available send credit as detailed in section [A4.7.2](#), and **shall** then obey the following rules:

- If no credits are available, an implementation **shall not** send any type of SDP message.
- If one credit is available, an implementation **shall** only send SDP messages that provide additional credits and also do not contain ULP payload.
- If two credits are available, an implementation **shall** only send SDP message which do not contain ULP payload.
- An SDP implementation **shall** send an SDP message that provides additional credit(s) if the remote side's credits drop to one or fewer credits. The sending of this message by the local side **shall not** be contingent upon the local side first receiving some other SDP message from the remote side.

Note that if three or more credits are available, an implementation may send any type of SDP message which would otherwise be legal.

A4.7.6 RECEIVE BUFFER RESIZING

The local peer may request the remote peer to change its receive private buffer pool buffer size by sending a Change Receive Buffer message (ChRcvBuf) with the desired new size. This enables the local peer to increase or decrease the maximum size of its outgoing messages if the remote peer agrees to the change. See section [A4.7 Private Buffer Management on page 1412](#) for restrictions on the size of the receive private buffers.

The remote peer should change the size of its receive private buffers to the desired size specified in the ChRcvBuf message; it may make them larger than the desired size, for example for alignment or performance optimization. If the remote peer is unable or unwilling to change its receive private buffer size in this manner, it should change the size to be as close as possible.

CA4-83: Upon receipt of ChRcvBuf message, the remote peer **shall not** change the buffer size in the direction opposite of that requested.

That is, if the local peer requests a decrease, the remote peer shall either decrease the size or leave it unchanged. Conversely, if the local peer requests an increase, the remote peer shall either increase the size or leave it unchanged.

CA4-84: Upon receipt of the ChRcvBuf message, if the local peer requested a decrease in the private buffer size, the remote peer **shall not** decrease the private buffer size to be smaller than that requested.

CA4-85: To confirm the change, the remote peer **shall** send a ChRcvBufAck message with the new size of its receive private buffers when all previous receive private buffers of smaller size have been consumed.

The ChRcvBufAck message may be sent immediately if the new size is smaller than or equal to the old size. If the new size is larger than the old size, the ChRcvBufAck message shall be sent after all receive private buffers of the old size have been consumed. If the remote peer is unable to resize its receive private buffers, it shall specify in the ChRcvBufAck message the original receive private buffer size.

The remote peer shall continue to use the old receive private buffer size to determine whether a SinkAvail message can be sent for a specific ULP buffer until it has sent the ChRcvBufAck message. At that time the remote peer shall use the new receive private buffer size to determine whether a SinkAvail message may be sent.

After receiving the ChRcvBufAck message, the local peer may change the maximum size of an SDP send message to the value specified in the ChRcvBufAck message.

CA4-86: The local peer **shall not** increase the maximum size of an SDP send message until the ChRcvBufAck message is received.

CA4-87: If the ChRcvBuf message requested an increased size and the ChRcvBufAck message contains a size that is the same as the original size before the ChRcvBuf message was sent, then the local peer **shall not** request any further size increases for this connection.

CA4-88: If the ChRcvBuf message requested a decreased size and the ChRcvBufAck message contains a size that is the same as the original size before the ChRcvBuf message was sent, then the local peer **shall not** request any further size decreases for this connection.

CA4-89: The local peer **shall not** send a new ChRcvBuf message if there is an unacknowledged ChRcvBuf message.

A4.7.6.1 CONFLICT RESOLUTION

CA4-90: If both peers concurrently send each other ChRcvBuf messages, then the accepting peer **shall** disregard the ChRcvBuf message.

The connecting peer shall respond to the ChRcvBuf message. The connecting peer may re-send its ChRcvBuf message after sending the ChRcvBufAck message in response to the accepting peer's ChRcvBuf message.

A4.7.6.2 FLOW CONTROL ISSUES DURING RESIZING

When a peer receives the ChRcvBuf message and it decides to change its receive private buffer size in response to this request, the peer must allocate new receive private buffers of the desired size and post these private buffers to the Receive Queue. The peer shall not wait for completion of all posted receive private buffers of the previous size before allocating and posting the new (different size) receive private buffers. This is required to enable the remote peer to continue sending messages which will cause the old-size receive private buffers to complete; otherwise the remote peer will stop sending messages once the channel becomes stalled and the reserved receive private buffers will not be consumed.

A4.8 SDP MODES

SDP modes control how ULP buffers larger than the Bcopy Threshold are transferred. Data Source ULP buffers less than or equal to the Bcopy Threshold are sent using the Bcopy or Transaction mechanism (note that because the Bcopy Threshold is locally defined, it may be fixed, variable, or be defined as infinite - which would cause the Data Source to always

use the Bcopy mechanism). ULP buffers larger than the Bcopy Threshold are sent in a variety of ways depending upon the current mode. The three modes are:

- Combined Mode - the initial mode. This mode enables both Bcopy and Read Zcopy data transfer mechanisms, but with only one outstanding Read Zcopy operation at a time. The SrcAvail message contains a non-zero length ULP payload.
- Pipelined Mode - All data transfer mechanisms are valid, including multiple outstanding transfers at one time (with some limits). The SrcAvail message contains no ULP payload.
- Buffered Mode - only the Bcopy data transfer mechanism is valid. The main difference between this mode and Combined Mode is that the Data Source cannot generate SrcAvail messages.

In all modes the Data Sink may force the Data Source to transfer data via the Bcopy mechanism. In Buffered Mode the Data Source always uses the Bcopy mechanism. In Combined or Pipelined mode, the Data Sink may force data transfer using the Bcopy mechanism by issuing a SendSm message. In this case, however, an extra round trip is required to cause the Bcopy mechanism to be used because of the SrcAvail/SendSm sequence. Buffered Mode eliminates this extra overhead.

Pipelined Mode is the highest performance mode. It enables multiple outstanding zero-copy transfers, optimizing for either the Data Sink ULP buffer being posted first (Write Zcopy) or the Data Source ULP buffer being posted first (Read Zcopy). Pipelined Mode also enables mixing of Bcopy and Zcopy mechanisms.

CA4-91: The data flow mode between peers **shall** be independent in each direction.

For example, data flow from the local peer to its remote peer may be in Buffered mode in one direction, but the reverse direction may be in Combined mode. [Table 418](#) summarizes the various characteristics of each mode. Table 419 summarizes the possible actions at the local peer A for each combination of modes between the local peer A and remote peer B. In the table, a “1” in the Send or Accept column indicates that the specific message type is valid, but only one can be outstanding at a time.

Table 418 Mode Characteristics

Mode	Multiple Outstanding Zcopy Requests	Simultaneous Outstanding SinkAvail & SrcAvail	Data in SrcAvail	Mix ULP Data Messages with Write Zcopy	Mix ULP Data Messages with Read Zcopy	List of Available Transfer Mechanisms
Buffered	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A (Write Zcopy not allowed)	N/A (Read Zcopy not allowed)	Bcopy, Transaction*
Combined	No	No	Yes	N/A (Write Zcopy not allowed)	Yes, but not at same time	Bcopy, Read Zcopy, Transaction*
Pipelined	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes, but not at same time	Bcopy, Read Zcopy, Write Zcopy, Transaction*

*if the reverse half-connection is in Pipelined Mode

Table 419 Summary of Permitted Actions By Mode Pair

Half Connection		Host A is Allowed To:							
A to B	B to A	Post		Send			Accept		
		RDMA Read Req	RDMA Write	SrcAvail	SinkAvail	Trans- action	SrcAvail	SinkAvail	Trans- action
Buffered	Buffered	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Buffered	Combined	YES	NO	NO	NO	NO	1	NO	NO
Buffered	Pipelined	YES	NO	NO	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO
Combined	Buffered	NO	NO	1	NO	NO	NO	NO	NO
Combined	Combined	YES	NO	1	NO	NO	1	NO	NO
Combined	Pipelined	YES	NO	1	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO
Pipelined	Buffered	NO	YES	YES	NO	NO	NO	YES	YES
Pipelined	Combined	YES	YES	YES	NO	NO	1	YES	YES
Pipelined	Pipelined	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES	YES

A4.8.1 BUFFERED MODE

CA4-92: In Buffered Mode all data **shall** be transferred using the Bcopy mechanism or optionally, if the opposite half-connection is in Pipelined Mode, the Transaction mechanism.

Thus only Data or SinkAvail messages may be used to transfer ULP data.

A4.8.2 COMBINED MODE

In Combined Mode, if the send ULP buffer is less than or equal to the Data Source Bcopy Threshold, the Data Source uses the Bcopy mechanism (i.e., by sending Data messages) or optionally, if the opposite half connection is in Pipelined Mode, the Transaction mechanism. If the ULP buffer is larger than the Bcopy Threshold, data is transferred using the Read Zcopy mechanism.

CA4-93: In Combined Mode the Data Sink **shall** be prepared to receive ULP data through either the Bcopy mechanism, the Read Zcopy mechanism, or the Transaction mechanism.

CA4-94: In Combined Mode, if the Read Zcopy mechanism is used, after the Data Source sends a SrcAvail message it **shall not** send any messages which contain a ULP payload until all data transfer associated with the SrcAvail message is complete (specifically, a RdmaRdCompl or SendSm message is received).

This effectively means that only a single SrcAvail message may be In-Process at any one time, and the Data Source can not use the Bcopy data transfer mechanism if a Read Zcopy is In-Process.

CA4-95: In Combined Mode, the SrcAvail message **shall** contain greater than zero bytes of ULP payload. The actual amount of ULP data included is implementation dependent.

A4.8.3 PIPELINED MODE

In Pipelined Mode, if the ULP buffer is less than or equal to the Bcopy Threshold, the Data Source uses the Bcopy mechanism (e.g., by sending Data messages) or optionally, if the opposite half connection is in Pipelined Mode, the Transaction mechanism. If the ULP buffer is larger than the Bcopy Threshold, data is transferred using the Read Zcopy mechanism or the Write Zcopy mechanism.

CA4-96: In Pipelined Mode the Data Sink **shall** be prepared to receive ULP data through any of the data transfer mechanisms.

CA4-97: In Pipelined Mode, the Data Source **shall not** include ULP payload in any SrcAvail messages.

CA4-98: After sending one or more SrcAvail messages, the Data Source **shall not** send any messages with a ULP payload until all data transfers associated with previously sent SrcAvail message(s) have been Processed. The single exception to this is the case when the Data Sink sends a SendSm message. In this case, the Data Source **shall** send the remaining data associated with the SrcAvail through Data messages. The remaining Unprocessed or In-Process SrcAvail advertisements remain valid and **shall** be Processed by the Data Sink after it consumes these Data messages.

This restriction is necessary since a crossing SinkAvail message would cancel any advertised SrcAvails, and the Sink would be unable to process the received in-line ULP payload until it received and processed all the data associated with the canceled SrcAvails. See [A4.6.2 Read Zcopy on page 1397](#) for further details.

The Data Sink may also advertise receive RDMA buffers using SinkAvail messages (i.e., Write Zcopy mechanism, which uses RDMA Writes). If SrcAvail and SinkAvail messages cross, then Write Zcopy has higher priority than Read Zcopy (i.e., the SrcAvail messages are canceled).

CA4-99: The following rules for crossing SinkAvail/SrcAvail advertisements **shall** be obeyed. If both compliance statements 4-67 (4-67 describes discarding stale SinkAvail messages) and 4-99 apply, then compliance statement 4-67 **shall** take precedence over 4-99.

- a) If the Data Source receives a SinkAvail message:
 - i) the Data Source **shall** use the Write Zcopy mechanism to transfer data - even if it has already advertised the ULP send data through a SrcAvail message.
 - ii) the Data Source **shall** treat all outstanding SrcAvail advertisements as having been discarded by the Data Sink.
 - This implies that if the Data Source consumes all SinkAvail advertisements and ULP send data remains that is suitable for RDMA, the Data Source should advertise the ULP data through a SrcAvail message, even if a SrcAvail advertisement for that send RDMA buffer was sent prior to receiving the SinkAvail message.
- b) If the Data Sink receives a SrcAvail message
 - i) and it has no Unprocessed or In-Process SinkAvail message, the Data Sink **shall not** send a SinkAvail message and the Data Sink **shall** transfer data using the Read Zcopy mechanism.

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- ii) and a SinkAvail message is Unprocessed or In-Process, the Data Sink **shall** discard all Unprocessed or In-Process SrcAvail advertisements and **shall** ignore the current SrcAvail advertisement (but otherwise process the packet normally, e.g. flow control information, etc.).

In Pipelined mode multiple send/receive RDMA buffers may be advertised by sending multiple SrcAvail/SinkAvail messages without waiting for data transfers associated with prior SrcAvail/SinkAvail messages to complete.

CA4-100: The Data Sink **shall** limit the maximum number of outstanding SrcAvail and SinkAvail advertisements to the HH or HAH MaxAdverts value specified by the remote peer during connection setup.

A4.9 SDP MODE TRANSITIONS

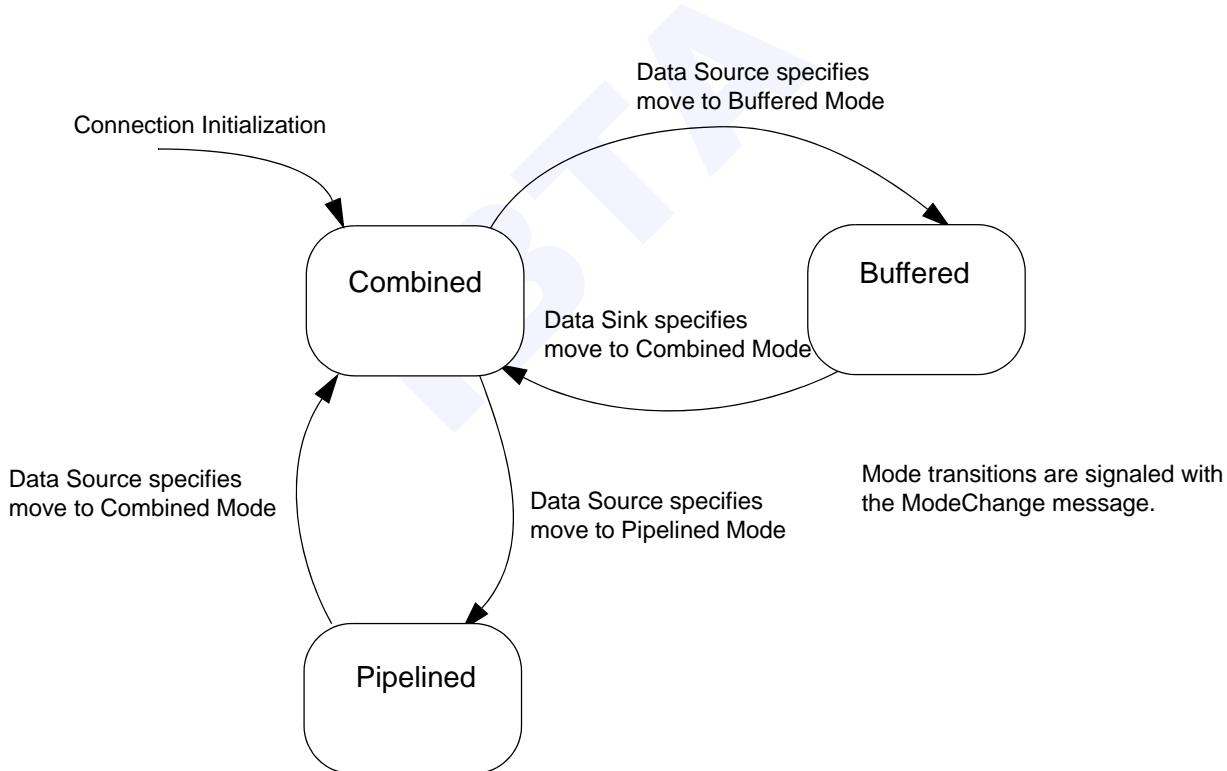


Figure 276 Mode State Machine

CA4-101: [Figure 276](#) defines the possible transitions between the SDP modes. Each SDP mode **shall** have a master, which controls any mode changes, and a slave, which passively changes mode when told by the master, as specified in [Table 420](#).

CA4-102: An SDP implementation **shall not** send a ModeChange message which specifies the current mode.

The slave may indicate to the master that a mode change is recommended by either setting the REQ_PIPE flag in the BSDH (transition from Combined Mode to Pipelined Mode) or by using SendSm to transfer ULP data (transition from Pipelined Mode to Combined Mode or from Combined Mode to Buffered Mode). The master may choose to ignore the request.

Table 420 Mode Master

Mode	Master	Mode Change Hint From Slave
Buffered	Data Sink	None
Combined	Data Source	SendSm messages or REQ_PIPE
Pipelined	Data Source	SendSm messages

CA4-103: The master **shall** change its mode immediately after sending a ModeChange message.

This may occur before the completion event associated with completion of the Reliable Connection transfer of the ModeChange message. In a specific mode, the master shall only use data transfer mechanisms allowed for that mode (see section [A4.8 SDP Modes on page 1416](#)). For example, if the prior mode was Combined Mode and the current mode is Buffered Mode, the Data Source shall not generate SrcAvail messages.

CA4-104: When the slave receives the ModeChange message, the slave **shall** immediately set its current mode to the mode specified in the ModeChange message.

In a specific mode, the slave shall only use data transfer mechanisms allowed for that mode. For example, if the prior mode was Pipelined Mode and the current mode is Combined Mode, the Data Sink (slave) must not generate SinkAvail messages.

Depending on the mode transition, the master and slave may be required to take some further actions, as described later in this chapter.

Note that when a connection is first set up, the local peer shall set the initial mode for the local Data Sink and Data Source to be Combined Mode (see section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#)).

The Data Source (master) may cause a transition to either Buffered Mode or Pipelined Mode.

When in Buffered Mode or Pipelined Mode, the only legal mode transition is to Combined Mode.

Following subsections give details of SDP message exchanges needed to transition from one mode to another. Each transition is caused by sending a ModeChange message.

A4.9.1 TRANSITION FROM COMBINED MODE TO BUFFERED MODE

CA4-105: To transition from Combined to Buffered mode, the Data Source (master) **shall** send a ModeChange message with the MCH fields set as follows:

- S=0, (i.e., change the Data Sink mode)
- Mode = BUFF_MODE (see section [A4.3.3.8.2 Mode - 3 bits on page 1383](#))

CA4-106: The Data Source **shall not** send the ModeChange message until all Unprocessed or In-Process Read Zcopy transfers have been moved to the Processed state with either a RdmaRdCompl or SendSm message from the Data Sink (there will be at most one outstanding in Combined Mode).

This ensures that no messages specific to Combined Mode (i.e., those related to the Read Zcopy mechanism) can be received by either peer when in Buffered Mode.

A4.9.2 TRANSITION FROM BUFFERED MODE TO COMBINED MODE

CA4-107: To transition from Buffered to Combined mode, the Data Sink (master) **shall** send a ModeChange message with the MCH fields set as follows:

- S=1 (i.e., change the Data Source mode)
- Mode = COMB_MODE (see section [A4.3.3.8.2 Mode - 3 bits on page 1383](#))

Because all SDP message types which are legal for Buffered Mode are also legal for Combined Mode, no special action is needed for this transition.

A4.9.3 TRANSITION FROM COMBINED MODE TO PIPELINED MODE

CA4-108: To transition from Combined to Pipelined mode, the Data Source (master) **shall** send a ModeChange message with the MCH fields set as follows:

- S=0 (i.e., change the Data Sink mode)
- Mode = PIPE_MODE (see section [A4.3.3.8.2 Mode - 3 bits on page 1383](#))

Because all SDP message types which are legal for Combined Mode are also legal for Pipelined Mode, no special action is needed for this transition. For example, if the Data Source has an outstanding SrcAvail advertisement (and there can be at most one such advertisement outstanding in Combined Mode), then it need not wait for a RdmaRdCompl or SendSm before sending the ModeChange message.

A4.9.4 TRANSITION FROM PIPELINED MODE TO COMBINED MODE

CA4-109: To transition from Pipelined to Combined mode, the Data Source (master) **shall** send a ModeChange message with the MCH fields set as follows:

- S=0 (i.e., change the Data Sink mode)
- Mode = COMB_MODE (see section [A4.3.3.8.2 Mode - 3 bits on page 1383](#))

CA4-110: After sending the ModeChange message, the Data Source immediately transitions to Combined Mode, but Data Source **shall not** subsequently switch to any other mode until it receives an SDP message with the following constraint:

$$\text{MSeqAck} \geq (\text{MSeq of the ModeChange message})$$

In the above calculation, MSeqAck and “MSeq of the ModeChange message” are treated as signed integers.

This constraint ensures that all stale SinkAvail messages will be received at the Data Source before a transition out of Combined Mode. The behavior upon receiving a stale SinkAvail message while in Combined Mode is described later in this section.

If data transfer is occurring, the Data Source is guaranteed to eventually receive the acknowledgement for the ModeChange message. If no data transfer is occurring, the acknowledgement can take an indeterminate amount of time. However there is no need to immediately switch out of Combined Mode if no data transfer is occurring.

The transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode imposes additional constraints on the Data Source and Data Sink.

CA4-111: The transition from Pipelined Mode to Combined Mode **shall** be governed by [Figure 277 Data Source Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode on page 1426](#) and [Figure 278 Data Sink Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode on page 1427](#).

CA4-112: The Data Source **shall** complete any RDMA Writes that are In-Process, and issue all RdmaWrCompl messages before sending a ModeChange message.

This ensures that RDMA Writes will not be used in Combined Mode.

CA4-113: If the Data Source has incomplete SinkAvail advertisements, the Data Source **shall** discard them and re-issue all Unprocessed or In-Process SrcAvail messages, if there are any.

Normal Combined Mode rules apply, for example, only one SrcAvail message may be outstanding at any one time and it must contain ULP payload. If the Data Source has no incomplete SinkAvail advertisements, but a SinkAvail advertisement is received before the acknowledgement for the ModeChange message, it shall ignore the SinkAvail message (but process flow control information, etc.) and re-issue all outstanding SrcAvail messages according to Combined Mode rules. In either case, if any more SinkAvail messages arrive after the initial discard of SinkAvail message(s), the Data Source shall ignore these SinkAvail messages (but flow control information, etc., shall be Processed normally).

Normal Data Sink behavior in Pipelined Mode requires it to drop any SrcAvail messages (but process flow control information, etc.) if there is a SinkAvail outstanding.

CA4-114: Thus the only behavior the Data Sink **must** follow when transitioning to Combined Mode after receiving the ModeChange message is to invalidate local state associated with any outstanding SinkAvail messages.

As mentioned previously, the Data Source will ensure that any outstanding SrcAvail messages will be re-issued.

A4.9.5 STATE MODE TRANSITION SUMMARY

[Table 421 Data Source Mode Transition Events on page 1428](#) and [Table 422 Data Sink Mode Transition Events on page 1428](#) summarize the events and consequent actions for the Data Source and Data Sink, respectively. Advisory input to the Mode Master to change modes is not meant to be exhaustive. The Mode Master may change modes at any time, possibly for reasons beyond the scope of this specification. The tables only list events which may cause a mode transitions or may be an event which is handled uniquely in a specific mode.

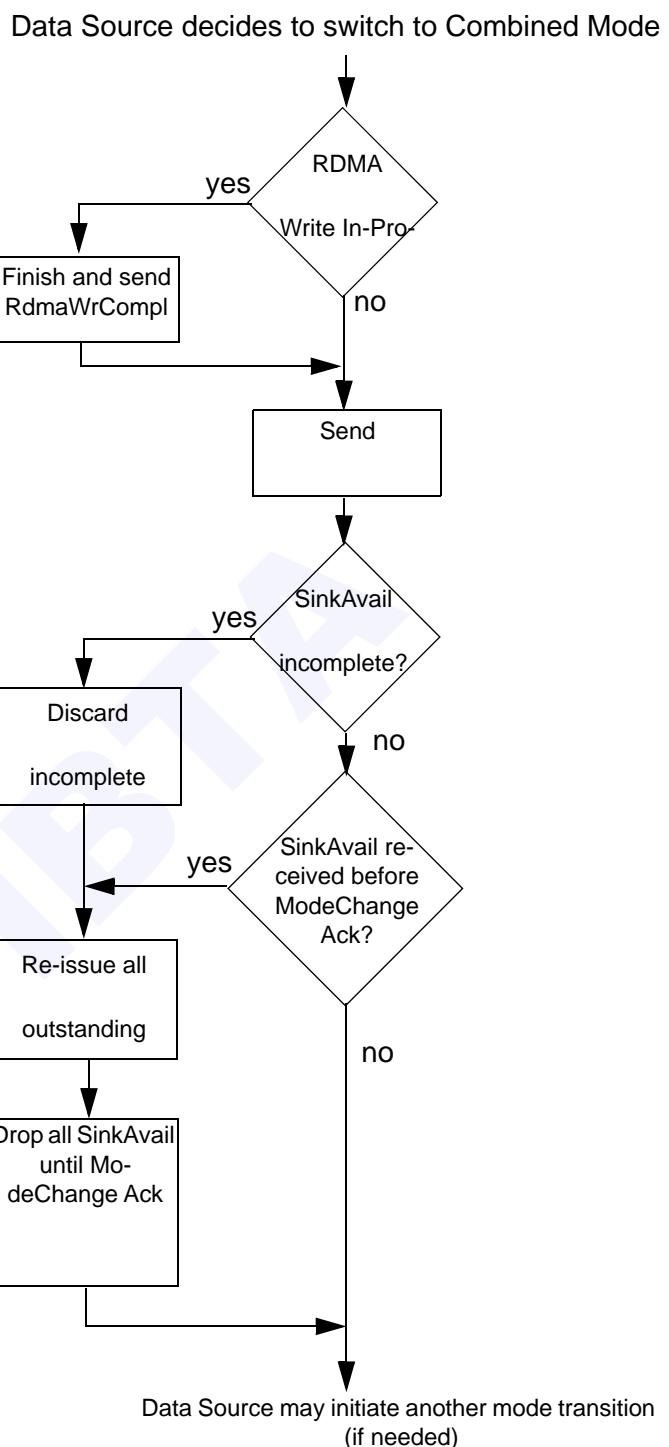


Figure 277

Data Source Transition from Pipelined to Combined

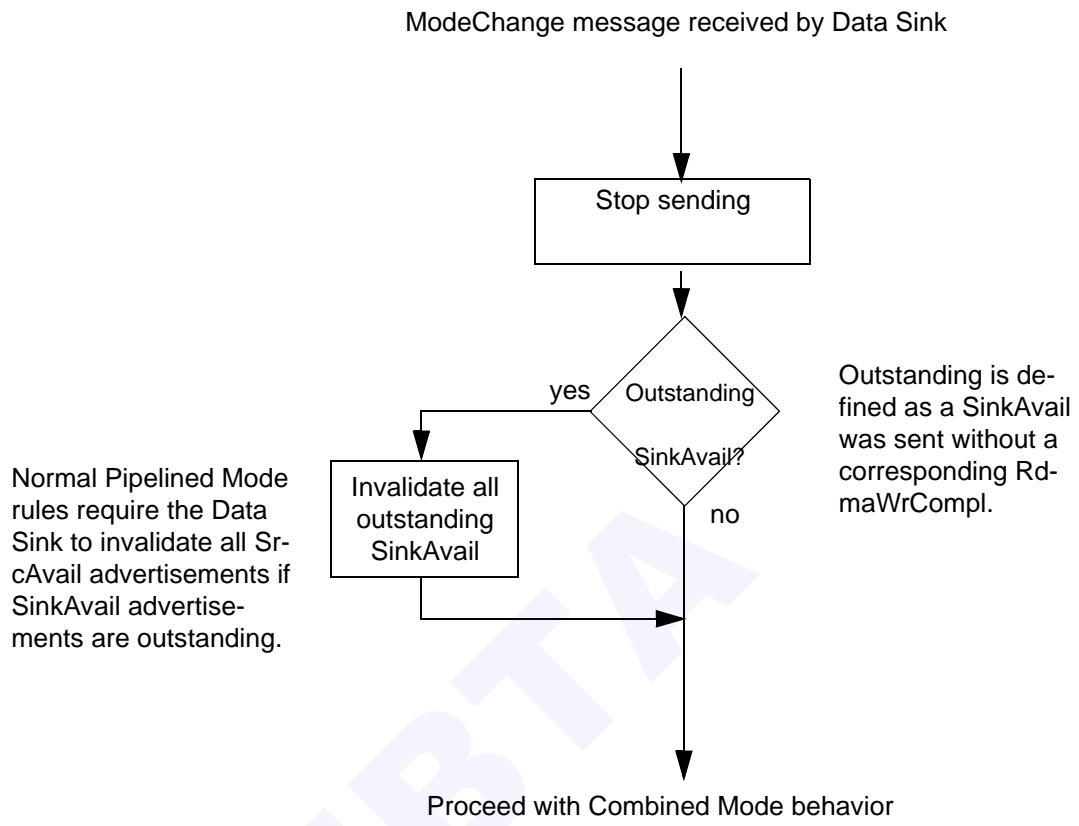
**Figure 278****Data Sink Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode**

Table 421 Data Source Mode Transition Events

Data Source Mode	Event	Action/Transition
Combined (master)	Receive REQ_PIPE=1 in an RdmaRd-Compl message	Advisory: May decide to transition to Pipelined Mode.
	Data Source decides to change modes to Buffered	If outstanding SrcAvail, wait for RdmaRd-Compl or SendSm from Data Sink, then send ModeChange message
	Data Source decides to change to Pipelined Mode	Change to Pipelined Mode and send a ModeChange message
	Receive SendSm	Advisory: May decide to transition to Buffered Mode.
	Receive SinkAvail	Can happen if just transitioned from Pipelined Mode. See Figure 277 Data Source Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode on page 1426 for processing details.
Buffered (slave)	Receive ModeChange message with S=1 and Mode=COMB_MODE	Immediately transition to Combined Mode.
Pipelined (master)	Receive SendSm	Advisory: May decide to transition to Combined Mode.
	Data Source decides to change to Combined Mode	Change to Combined Mode and send a ModeChange message. See Figure 277 Data Source Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode on page 1426 for processing details.

Table 422 Data Sink Mode Transition Events

Data Sink Mode	Event	Action/Transition
Combined (slave)	Receive ModeChange message with S=0 and Mode=BUFF_MODE	Immediately transition to Buffered Mode.
	Receive ModeChange message with S=0 and Mode=PIPE_MODE	Immediately transition to Pipelined Mode.
Buffered (master)	ULP receive buffer is posted	Advisory: If the receive ULP buffer is suitable for RDMA, the Data Sink may choose to transition to Combined Mode.
	Data Sink decides to change to Combined Mode.	Send ModeChange message.
Pipelined (slave)	Receive ModeChange message with S=0 and Mode=COMB_MODE	Immediately transition to Combined Mode. See Figure 278 Data Sink Transition from Pipelined to Combined Mode on page 1427 for processing details.

A4.10 SOCKET DUPLICATION

When a socket exists in one address space and is then accessed in a different address space (on the same peer), the socket needs to be duplicated into the second address space. Note that if two threads are

1 accessing the socket in the same address space, socket duplication is not
2 required.
3

4 Performing socket duplication in user-mode imposes certain restrictions
5 because socket state cannot be shared between the address spaces. In
6 fact, in the context of InfiniBand networks available today, the socket can
7 only exist in one address space at a time (since HCAs are not required to
support sharing queue pairs between multiple address spaces).
8

9 Because of these restrictions, SDP allows only one address space at a
10 time to execute operations that either transfer data or change state for an
11 underlying shared socket. Address spaces dynamically swap control of
12 the underlying socket, as needed, to execute requested operations. The
13 SDP socket duplication procedure serializes operations that different ad-
14 dress spaces request on a shared socket. The procedure waits for all In-
15 Process operations to complete before swapping control of an underlying
16 socket to another address space. Logically, the procedure takes control of
17 the underlying socket away from the controlling address space as soon as
18 a non-controlling address space requests an operation on that socket.
19 After control is taken away, the procedure treats the original controlling ad-
20 dress space like a non-controlling address space if the original controlling
21 address space requests operations on that socket. In this way a socket
22 may transition back and forth between controlling address spaces based
23 on ULP behavior.
24

25 SDP enables socket duplication by bringing the connection to a consistent
26 state, closing the InfiniBand connection, handing the state to the new con-
27 trolling address space, and then creating a new reliable connection in the
28 new address space. Note that after the connection is suspended and then
29 restarted on a new InfiniBand connection, the connection by definition
30 does not have any outstanding SinkAvail or SrcAvail advertisements. Any
31 incomplete SinkAvail or SrcAvail advertisements were effectively can-
32 celed during the transition to a new connection.
33

A4.10.1 IMPLEMENTING SOCKET DUPLICATION

34 **CA4-115:** An SDP implementation **shall** support responding to a socket
35 duplication request using the procedure defined for the remote peer in
36 section [A4.10.1.1](#).
37

38 **oA4-2:** If SDP socket duplication initiation is supported, an SDP local peer
39 **shall** employ the procedure defined in section [A4.10.1.1](#) when initiating
40 socket duplication.
41

A4.10.1.1 SOCKET DUPLICATION PROCEDURE

- 42 1) The SDP implementation in the non-controlling address space **shall**
43 use the appropriate verbs to accept incoming connection requests at
44

a Service ID in one of two formats (see the Application Specific Identifiers Annex for additional information):

- 0x0000 0000 0001 XXXX, where 0xXXXX is the TCP destination port number. This may or may not be the original TCP port number specified during the initial connection setup. Note that if this format is used, the connection request should not be completed unless the source IP address, destination IP address, and source TCP port number contained in the Hello message match the expected value. Checking just the Service ID (i.e. destination TCP port number) is not sufficient in some implementations.
- Local OS Administered Service IDs.

The mechanism which enables the Service ID to be conveyed to the controlling address space is outside the scope of this specification.

- 2) The SDP implementation in the controlling address space **shall** wait for all In-Process data transfer operations to complete, then it **shall** send a SuspComm message to the remote peer to request a suspension of the session. This SDP message also contains the Service ID received from the non-controlling address space. The remote peer **shall** connect to this Service ID when resuming communication (step 4). The local peer **shall** send no more SDP messages, nor perform any RDMA operations from the controlling address space, after sending the SuspComm message.
- 3) Upon receiving the SuspComm message, the remote peer **shall** wait for all In-Process data transfer operations to complete, then **shall** send a SuspCommAck message indicating that the session is suspended. This peer **shall not** send any more messages or perform any RDMA operations until a new connection is set up (step 8).
- 4) The remote peer **shall** wait for completion of the send work request for the SuspCommAck message, then close the InfiniBand connection. Before sending the REQ CM MAD, the remote peer **shall** use the address resolution procedure to determine the destination address for the REQ MAD; note that this may be different from the original destination address. It **shall** then initiate the new connection to the Service ID received through the SuspComm message. Posting of receive private buffers and the contents of the HH **shall** follow the same rules as connection setup (see section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#)).
- 5) Once the SuspCommAck message is received, the controlling address space on the local peer **shall** send a signal to the non-controlling address space through some private means outside the scope of this specification. The controlling address space **shall** also send to the non-controlling address space through some private means outside the scope of this specification:
 - any buffered receive ULP data

- the remote peer's TCP port number (to ensure the parameter does not change when the socket is re-connected).
1
 - the size of the local receive private buffers.
2
- 6) Non-controlling address space **shall** accept the connection request from the remote peer and initialize its state variables for the new connection. The Hello message in the REQ MAD initializes SDP connection state. The non-controlling address space **shall** also verify that the TCP port number is the same as the TCP port number passed from the controlling address space.
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
- 7) When both steps 5 and 6 have completed, the (previously) non-controlling address space:
10
11
- a) **Shall** send a CM REP MAD with a HelloAck message to the remote peer (see section [A4.5.1 Connection Setup on page 1386](#)).
12
The receive private buffer size parameter in the HelloAck message **shall** be the values received from the controlling address space.
13
14
15
16
 - b) **Shall** make received data from the controlling address space available to the ULP.
17
18
- 8) the remote peer **shall** respond by sending an RTU.
19
- 9) When connection setup is complete, the local peer **shall** resume normal data transfer. See section [A4.5.1.1 InfiniBand Reliable Connection Setup on page 1386](#) for a description of connection setup completion.
20
21
22
23
24

A4.10.1.2 CONFLICT RESOLUTION

CA4-116: If both peers concurrently send each other SuspComm messages, then the accepting peer **shall** disregard the SuspComm message, while the connecting peer **shall** respond to the SuspComm message. The connecting peer **shall** re-send its own SuspComm message once communication is re-established.

A4.10.2 HCA MANAGED FAILOVER

SDP supports Managed Failover by leveraging the Socket Duplication procedure (see section [A4.10 Socket Duplication on page 1428](#)). During socket duplication, a change of address space is occurring. In managed failover, the SDP connection may in fact be reestablished using different paths, ports, HCAs or hosts. The original connection in a managed failover scenario is analogous to the controlling address space in socket duplication. The new failed over connection is analogous to the non-controlling address space. Managed failover changes where one end of the connection is situated. Failing over both ends requires two managed failover operations.

The decision to attempt a managed failover must occur before step 1 of the Socket Duplication procedure. How such a decision is made is dependent on policy and outside the scope of the SDP specification.

oA4-3: If an SDP implementation supports managed failover, it **shall** do so using the socket duplication procedure (see section [A4.10.1 Implementing Socket Duplication on page 1429](#)) with the following change to Step 1:

- A new endpoint for the failover connection must be chosen. How the new endpoint is chosen is a matter of policy. However, it must be chosen in such a way that the address (see section [A4.4 Address Resolution on page 1386](#)) will resolve to the failover port. This address resolution uses the IP addresses from the original connection's Hello message (see section [A4.3.2.1 Hello Message \(HH\) on page 1372](#)). As before, the Service ID chosen for the SuspComm (see section [A4.3.5.1 SuspComm Message on page 1385](#)) message should resolve to the failover endpoint.

A4.11 INFINIBAND TRANSPORT LAYER ISSUES

A4.11.1 INFINIBAND MESSAGE REQUIREMENTS

CA4-117: A conforming implementation of SDP **shall** enable RDMA Reads and RDMA Writes on each RC connection.

CA4-118: A conforming implementation of SDP **shall not** use InfiniBand Immediate Data.

A4.11.2 SOLICITED EVENTS

An SDP implementation occasionally needs to stop processing on a half-connection and wait for one of the following messages to arrive before proceeding further:

- 1) flow control credit update SDP message - flow control credits for the receive private buffer pool have been exhausted, thus it cannot send data, control, and/or RDMA advertisement to the peer;
- 2) data or RDMA advertisement SDP message - the ULP has indicated its interest in data via a sockets interface select call or receive;
- 3) RDMA completion (or cancel) SDP message - before it can de-register a send or receive RDMA buffer it must either complete the RDMA transfer or receive a cancel acknowledgement message.

A typical SDP implementation would request completion queue notification and block the ULP process (or thread) until the appropriate message arrives and the notification is delivered. The goal of using the SE (solicited event) bit is to minimize completion queue notification events and corresponding process (or thread) wake-ups when the arriving message does

not match the class of SDP messages that the implementation requires. For example, if the Data Source is waiting for a RdmaRdCompl message to complete a send ULP buffer and there is no local receive ULP buffer posted or local invocation of a sockets interface select on the opposite half-channel (local Data Sink), it should not receive notifications for the opposite half-connection if the peer sends a Data message or SrcAvail RDMA advertisement.

To accomplish this goal, all SDP messages are subdivided into solicited or unsolicited SDP messages.

Solicited SDP messages are those that most likely require immediate attention regardless of ULP behavior at the remote peer and regardless of whether the remote peer is waiting for other (unsolicited) messages. Solicited SDP messages are defined as:

- AbortConn, SuspComm, SuspCommAck, SendSm, SrcAvailCancel, SinkAvailCancel - because it is essential for the sender of these messages that its peer react to them as soon as possible;
- RdmaWrCompl, RdmaRdCompl, SinkCancelAck - because the peer most likely needs to deregister and release RDMA buffers to the ULP upon reception of these messages;
- Data with OOB_PRES or OOB_PEND bit set - because the peer SDP implementation most likely needs to notify the ULP as soon as possible that this message has been received.

CA4-119: An SDP implementation **shall** request the InfiniBand SE bit in the InfiniBand Base Transport Header be set for solicited SDP messages.

Unsolicited SDP messages are those which may require immediate attention by the peer, but only the peer can decide whether or not a notification is necessary - it depends on the ULP behavior or the implementation of the peer. Unsolicited SDP messages are defined as:

- DisConn, SrcAvail, SinkAvail, Data without OOB_PEND or OOB_PRES bit set - because the peer only needs to immediately process these messages when the ULP has issued a sockets interface select or receive request;
- ModeChange, ChRcvBuf, ChRcvBufAck - because after receiving these messages the peer only needs to take action for new messages it generates itself or messages which follow which are solicited SDP messages (e.g., it will not be blocked specifically waiting for these SDP messages).

CA4-120: An SDP implementation **shall not** request the InfiniBand SE bit in the InfiniBand Base Transport header be set for Unsolicited SDP messages.

The SE bit is never applicable for RDMA Reads, and for RDMA Writes is applicable only for those that contain Immediate Data. Since SDP never generates RDMA Writes with Immediate Data, the SE bit is not applicable for RDMA Read or RDMA Write requests generated by SDP.

A4.11.3 KEEPALIVE MESSAGES

The sockets interface provides the ULP with the capability of periodically transmitting messages to the peer (which require an answer) to determine if the peer is still alive (SO_KEEPALIVE). This is referred to as the keepalive feature, and the associated messages are known as keepalive messages. If an SDP implementation supports the keepalive feature, then it must implement this functionality by using zero-length RDMA Writes (see [C9-88: on page 329](#)). A zero-length RDMA does not require a valid memory region at the Data Sink; the R_Key and VA may be set to any value and are not checked at the destination.

Initiation of keepalive messages is determined by SDP message activity as well as the passage of a recurring time period known as the *idle period*. The first idle period begins when the SDP implementation determines that the keepalive feature will be enabled on a particular connection. The duration of the idle period is determined by a value called the *idle interval*; once that amount of time has passed, a new idle period begins.

oA4-4: If the SDP implementation supports the keepalive feature, and keepalive is enabled for a particular connection, then the implementation **shall** obey the following two rules regarding the generation of keepalive messages, and the default value of the idle interval:

- 1) If no SDP messages are sent or received during an idle period, then at the end of that period the SDP implementation **shall** send a zero-length RDMA Write keepalive message.
- 2) The default idle interval **shall** be 2 hours.

The value for the default idle interval should be configurable.

If a keepalive message completes in error, the QP will transition to the Error state. This is considered an SDP protocol violation, and the SDP implementation shall perform an abortive close. At that time normal InfiniBand clean up processing must occur to reclaim system resources.

Note that the SDP implementation of keepalive differs somewhat from the traditional TCP implementation in two ways:

- 1) The successful completion of the keepalive message verifies that the IB Reliable Connection is still operational; it does not assess the health of the remote SDP implementation.

- 2) SDP does not maintain separate keepalive idle and interval timers for a connection; the IB Reliable Connection retry mechanism serves the function that the keepalive interval timer serves in TCP.

A4.12 SDP COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the Sockets Direct Protocol Specification to the SDP Compliance Category, a product **shall** meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

● CA4-1:	SDP Message Headers - Byte ordering rule	Page 1369
● CA4-2:	Hello & HelloAck shall be in REQ and REP msgs	Page 1369
● CA4-3:	SDP msgs xmitted on IB RC channel	Page 1369
● CA4-4:	BSDH header required for all SDP messages	Page 1369
● CA4-5:	SDP message format and MID definition.	Page 1370
● CA4-6:	BSDH - Flags field definition.	Page 1371
● CA4-7:	BSDH - OOB_PRES bit set only in Data messaage	Page 1371
● CA4-8:	BSDH - Data Sink REQ_PIPE bit usage rules	Page 1371
● CA4-9:	BSDH - Data Source REQ_PIPE handling rule	Page 1371
● CA4-10:	BSDH - Len in other SDP message headers	Page 1372
● CA4-11:	BSDH - Rules for setting MSeq value	Page 1372
● CA4-12:	BSDH - MSeqAck value	Page 1372
● CA4-13:	HH - header format.	Page 1373
● CA4-14:	REQ Message - BSDH field settings.....	Page 1373
● CA4-15:	HH - Accepting Peer MajV mismatch behavior	Page 1373
● CA4-16:	HH - Accepting Peer MinV mismatch behavior	Page 1374
● CA4-17:	HH - Valid IPV values.....	Page 1374
● CA4-18:	HH - Accepting peer behavior when MaxAdverts = 0	Page 1374
● CA4-19:	HH - SrcIP and DstIP IPV4 byte location	Page 1375
● CA4-19.2.1:	SDP: Extensions Table.....	Page 1375
● CA4-19.2.2:	SDP: Invalidate capability bit.....	Page 1375
● CA4-19.2.3:	SDP: Extended maximum advertisements.....	Page 1375
● CA4-20:	HAH - header format.	Page 1376
● CA4-21:	REP message - BSDH field settings	Page 1376
● CA4-22:	HAH - Connecting Peer MajV mismatch behavior	Page 1377
● CA4-23:	HAH - Connecting Peer MinV mismatch behavior	Page 1377
● CA4-24.2.1:	SDP: Valid values for minor version 1	Page 1377
● CA4-24.2.2:	SDP: Valid values for minor version 2	Page 1377
● CA4-24.2.3:	SDP: Extended Max Advertisements in HAH = 0	Page 1377
● CA4-24.2.4:	SDP: Extensions Table 1.....	Page 1378
● CA4-24.2.5:	SDP: Accepting peer Invalidate Capability bit	Page 1378
● CA4-25:	SrcAvail - header format.	Page 1379
● CA4-26:	SrcAvail - Valid Len value range	Page 1379
● CA4-27:	SrcAvail - RDMA data buffer payload	Page 1380
● CA4-28:	SrcAvail - RKey field value usage	Page 1380
● CA4-29:	SinkAvail - header format.	Page 1380
● CA4-30:	SinkAvail - Valid Len value range	Page 1380
● CA4-31:	SinkAvail - RKey field value usage	Page 1381
● CA4-32:	RdmaWrCompl - header format.	Page 1381
● CA4-33:	RdmaRdCompl - header format.	Page 1382
● CA4-34:	ModeChange - header format.	Page 1383
● CA4-35:	ModeChange - MCH value definitions	Page 1383
● CA4-36:	ChRcvBuf - header format.	Page 1384
● CA4-37:	ChRcvBufAck - header format.	Page 1385
● CA4-38:	SuspComm - header format.	Page 1385
● CA4-39:	IP Address resolution requirements.	Page 1386
● CA4-40:	SDP communications use RC transport.....	Page 1386
● CA4-41:	SDP connection setup sequence requirements.	Page 1387

● CA4-42:	RNR NAK retry count requirement	Page 1389	1
● CA4-43:	Obsolete	Page 1389	2
● CA4-43.2.1:	REJ message aborts connection setup	Page 1389	2
● CA4-44:	Local peer behavior after ULP graceful close call	Page 1392	3
● CA4-45:	Local peer ULP data receive on half-open connection ..	Page 1392	3
● CA4-46:	Local peer required operations for graceful close	Page 1392	4
● CA4-47:	Remote peer required operations for graceful close	Page 1393	4
● CA4-48:	Abortive disconnect behavior	Page 1394	5
● CA4-49:	Conditions resulting in an abortive disconnect	Page 1394	6
● CA4-50:	AbortConn uses InfiniBand teardown	Page 1395	7
● CA4-51:	Required support for data transfer mechanisms	Page 1395	8
● CA4-52:	Response to unsupported xfer mechanisms	Page 1396	8
● CA4-53:	ULP data size limitation on send	Page 1396	9
● CA4-54:	Read Zcopy - SrcAH message Len field value	Page 1397	9
● CA4-54.2.1:	SDP: Invalidate Enabled SDP SrcAvail + Invalidate ...	Page 1397	10
● CA4-55:	Read Zcopy - RDMA Read completion Processing	Page 1398	11
● CA4-56:	Read Zcopy - RdmaRdCompl message contents	Page 1398	11
● CA4-57:	Read Zcopy - generation of RdmaRdCompl	Page 1398	12
● CA4-57.2.1:	SDP: RdmaRdCompl+Inv invalid for partial transfers .	Page 1399	13
● CA4-57.2.2:	SDP: Verification that correct buffer was Invalidated ..	Page 1399	13
● CA4-58:	Read Zcopy - Data Source buffer availability	Page 1399	14
● CA4-59:	Read Zcopy - SendSm message processing	Page 1400	14
● CA4-60:	Read Zcopy - RDMArdCompl Len rules	Page 1401	15
● CA4-61:	Write Zcopy - SinkAH message contents	Page 1401	16
● CA4-61.2.1:	SDP: Invalidate Enabled SDP SinkAvail + Inv	Page 1402	16
● CA4-62:	Write Zcopy - RDMA Write completion processing	Page 1402	17
● CA4-63:	Write Zcopy - RdmaWrCompl header contents	Page 1402	18
● CA4-63.2.1:	SDP: Verify buffer invalidated on RdmaWrCompl	Page 1402	19
● CA4-64:	Write Zcopy - Data Sink RDMA buffer availability	Page 1402	19
● oA4-1:	MSG_WAITALL: Write Zcopy rules	Page 1403	20
● CA4-65:	Write Zcopy - when Data Sink can send SinkAvail	Page 1405	21
● CA4-66:	Write Zcopy - SinkAvail completion	Page 1405	21
● CA4-67:	Write Zcopy - stale SinkAvail detection	Page 1406	22
● CA4-68:	Read Zcopy - Data Source rule for SendSm	Page 1407	23
● CA4-69:	Out-Of-Band Data - Ordering in the byte stream	Page 1408	23
● CA4-70:	Out-Of-Band Data - Pending notification	Page 1408	24
● CA4-71:	Out-Of-Band Data - Data Source OOB Processing	Page 1408	25
● CA4-72:	SrcAvailCancel - handling MSeqAck	Page 1409	25
● CA4-73:	SrcAvailCancel - generating SendSm	Page 1409	26
● CA4-74:	SrcAvailCancel - can only have one outstanding	Page 1409	27
● CA4-75:	SinkAvailCancel - Data Source completions	Page 1410	28
● CA4-76:	SinkAvailCancel - generation of SinkCancelAck	Page 1410	28
● CA4-77:	SinkAvailCancel - at most one outstanding	Page 1410	29
● CA4-78:	Priv Buff - usage constraints	Page 1412	29
● CA4-79:	Send Queue message ordering	Page 1413	30
● CA4-80:	Receive Queue message processing order	Page 1413	31
● CA4-81:	Credits - Initial credit advertisement	Page 1413	31
● CA4-82:	Credits - permitted usage	Page 1414	32
● CA4-83:	Priv Buff Resize - remote peer size rules	Page 1415	33
● CA4-84:	Priv Buff Resize - remote peer size rules	Page 1415	33
● CA4-85:	Priv Buff Resize - remote peer ack rules	Page 1415	34
● CA4-86:	Priv Buff Resize - local peer timing of size increase	Page 1416	35
● CA4-87:	Priv Buff Resize - local peer increase rules	Page 1416	35
● CA4-88:	Priv Buff Resize - local peer decrease rules	Page 1416	36
● CA4-89:	Priv Buff Resize - only one ChRcvBuf outstanding	Page 1416	37
● CA4-90:	Priv Buff Resize - crossing ChRcvBuf messages	Page 1416	37
● CA4-91:	Mode - each half-connection has a mode	Page 1417	38
● CA4-92:	Buffered Mode - Data transfer mechanism	Page 1419	39
● CA4-93:	Combined Mode - Data Sink operation	Page 1419	40
● CA4-94:	Combined Mode - Read Zcopy Data Source operation .	Page 1419	40
● CA4-95:	Combined Mode - SrcAvail message payload	Page 1419	41
● CA4-96:	Pipelined Mode - Data Sink ULP data receive	Page 1419	42

● CA4-97: Pipelined Mode - SrcAvail payload for Read Zcopy	Page 1419	1
● CA4-98: Pipelined Mode - Data Source operation	Page 1420	2
● CA4-99: Pipelined Mode - Crossing SinkAvail/SrcAvails	Page 1420	2
● CA4-100: Pipelined Mode - Data Sink buffer advertisements	Page 1421	3
● CA4-101: Mode - transition state machine	Page 1421	3
● CA4-102: Mode - ModeChange must change the mode	Page 1422	4
● CA4-103: Mode - Master mode after sending ModeChange	Page 1422	5
● CA4-104: Mode - Slave mode after receiving ModeChange	Page 1422	5
● CA4-105: Combined to Buffered - ModeChange values	Page 1423	6
● CA4-106: Combined to Buffered - ModeChange restriction	Page 1423	7
● CA4-107: Buffered to Combined - ModeChange values	Page 1423	8
● CA4-108: Combined to Pipelined - ModeChange values	Page 1423	8
● CA4-109: Pipelined to Combined - ModeChange values	Page 1424	9
● CA4-110: Pipelined to Combined - ModeChange usage limitation	Page 1424	10
● CA4-111: Pipelined to Combined - Transition rules	Page 1424	10
● CA4-112: Pipelined to Combined - RDMA Write processing	Page 1424	11
● CA4-113: Pipelined to Combined - SinkAvail advertisements	Page 1425	11
● CA4-114: Pipelined to Combined - Data Sink transition behavior..	Page 1425	12
● CA4-115: Responding to a Socket Duplication request	Page 1429	13
● oA4-2: Initiating Socket Duplication: optional	Page 1429	13
● CA4-116: Crossing SuspComm messages conflict resolution	Page 1431	14
● oA4-3: Managed failover: requirements	Page 1432	15
● CA4-117: RDMA Read and RDMA Write requirements	Page 1432	16
● CA4-118: Immediate Data usage is disallowed	Page 1432	16
● CA4-119: Solicited Event bit usage - Solicited SDP msgs	Page 1433	17
● CA4-120: Solicited Event bit usage - Unsolicited SDP msgs	Page 1433	17
● oA4-4: Keepalive: message generation, interval value	Page 1434	18
● CA12-4: REP message - BSDH field settings	Page 1859	19
		20
		21
		22
		23
		24
		25
		26
		27
		28
		29
		30
		31
		32
		33
		34
		35
		36
		37
		38
		39
		40
		41
		42

ANNEX A5: BOOTING ANNEX

A5.1 INTRODUCTION

A5.1.1 PURPOSE

This annex provides relevant information necessary to build IBA solutions which are capable of booting their operating system using IB attached devices. It provides implementers with guidance about how various boot methods can be supported, defines boot resolution methods as policies, and provides a descriptive time-line of the booting process.

Selection of booting methods and boot resolution methods are matters of policy, this annex specifies a Boot Management class and an optional Boot Management Agent (BtA) to manage boot parameters in a booting platform. The Boot Management class provides a mechanism for a system administrator to manage the InfiniBand specific booting policies of platforms that contain a BtA. This is done using Boot Management MADs. Booting policies are installation specific, there are no prescribed defaults for boot methods or boot resolution methods.

This annex addresses the considerations for producing IB specific boot code. These topics include:

- How to identify, select, locate, and use IB I/O Controllers and Console services needed for booting.
- Network Boot Models - IB Network and NIC
- How to manage the IB specific behavior of booting platforms throughout the fabric.
- How to boot using the Boot Information Service
- The dependencies the booting platform has on the IB fabric.
- BtA traps and notices to notify the BootManager of asynchronous events within the booting platform.
- The ability of the booting platform to expand the boot environment by loading and executing additional code from a ROM Repository
- The definition and usage of ROM Repositories when the platform is booting.

A5.1.2 GLOSSARY

The following terms are in addition to the terms in [Chapter 2: Glossary on page 84](#).

BIS	Boot Information Service (see Annex A6: Boot Information Service on page 1570).	1
BIS Locator Records	Locator Record provided by the BIS.	2
BIS Resolution Method	The method for locating a ROM Repository , a Console object, or an OS Boot Loader by sending a query to the BIS which returns Locator Records back to the booting platform.	3
Boot	The bootstrap process used by a platform that terminates when the Operating System is loaded. The process begins with either a power on reset or a node reboot (also called Reboot).	4
Boot Environment	A software environment that controls the booting platform during the boot process.	5
Boot Information Service	A management service (specified in the Boot Information Service Annex) that provides boot information to booting platforms upon request.	6
Boot Management	A class of MADs that allow the BootManager to Set (write) and Get (read) attributes that control the behavior of the booting platform.	7
Boot Management Agent	An optional General Services Agent (GSA) located behind each port of a booting platform that supports InfiniBand Boot Management .	8
BootManager	A IBA management entity that issues Boot Management Class MADs to Boot Management Agents to manage the behavior of the platform during the Boot process.	9
BootMgt	Boot Management	10
Boot Method	Identifies the style or process (Storage, Network) that a boot environment uses to load the OS.	11
Boot Platform	An endnode that can Boot using the IB fabric and Locator Records provided by the BootManager or the BIS .	12
Booting Platform	A Boot Platform that is in the process of booting.	13
Boot Resolution Method	A way that a Booting Platform selects I/O devices, a Console service, or ROM Repository used during the Boot process. This annex defines two boot resolution methods, which are Local Resolution Method and BIS Resolution Method .	14
BtA	Boot Management Agent .	15
Console Locator Record	A record that identifies the Console I/O controller (Console IOC) or Console Service the Booting Platform uses during the Boot process.	16

Extended Boot Environment	A Boot Environment that has been extended by loading additional code.	1
Firmware	Firmware is the ROM-based software that controls a computer between the time it is turned on and the time the primary operating system takes control of the machine.	2
IB Network Boot	A way of booting that reads file(s) from a service using Network boot protocols (e.g. IP) over the IB fabric. See Figure 282 on page 1447 .	3
LAN Network Boot	A way of booting that reads file(s) using a LAN adapter or Network Interface Controller (LAN NIC). See Figure 281 on page 1446 .	4
Local Resolution Method	A method for locating a ROM Repository , a Console object or an OS Boot Loader by using non-volatile storage to persistently save the identities of these entities across power cycles.	5
Locator Record	Attributes that describe the identity of an OS Boot Loader , Console service, or ROM Repository . In some cases, additional information exists within the locator record that can be used by the protocol to assist in finding a particular OS Boot Loader or Console service when multiple object can be accessed. There are 3 types of locator records - OS Locator Record , ROM Repository Locator Record and Console Locator Record .	6
NVRAM	Non-volatile Random Access Memory. Refers to any type of non-volatile storage.	7
OS Boot Loader	The term used to describe code located on an I/O device or boot server that when executed by the Booting Platform will load the target OS.	8
OS Locator Record	A Locator Record that points to the device that contains an OS Boot Loader used to load the OS into the Booting Platform .	9
Local-Persistent Locator Records	Boot information that a Boot Platform saves in local, non-volatile memory to use when the platform Boots . A persistent LocatorRecord local to the booting platform is accessible across power-cycles.	10
Reboot	To restart the boot process. See Boot .	11
ROM Repository	A non-volatile storage cache on a managed I/O unit that contains images such as device drivers and Extended Boot Environment code.	12
ROM Repository Locator Record	A Locator Record that points to a ROM Repository containing images such as device drivers and Extended Boot Environment code.	13
SCSI RDMA	SCSI RDMA Protocol. See SRP.	14

SRP	SCSI RDMA Protocol - An I/O storage protocol defined by ANSI T10 that may be used for the purposes of booting the platform.	1
------------	---	---

Storage Boot	A way of booting that reads blocks of information from a storage device such as a hard disk drive.	2
---------------------	--	---

A5.1.3 OVERVIEW

Booting platform is a conceptual term that describes an entity which starts with an elementary operating environment³⁵ herein called the boot environment and uses I/O functions to load a more sophisticated operating environment. I/O functions might involve devices and services attached via the IB fabric. A booting platform contains one or more CA's.

This annex describes the booting framework that allows a booting platform to use an IB fabric to boot.

In general, a booting platform needs IB specific information to boot if it is to use the IB fabric in its boot process. That information may be stored locally on the booting platform or provided dynamically by a Boot Information Service (BIS) each time the platform boots. The Boot Information Service Annex specifies BIS operation, which provides the means for the booting platform to query the BIS when it needs boot information.

As shown in [Figure 279](#), this annex defines two management entities; the BtA and the BootManager. These are conceptual entities that send and receive Boot Management Class MADs to affect the booting process (refer to section [13.3 Managers, Agents, and Interfaces on page 776](#)).

These MADs are not part of the platform's booting process and are not meant to describe the implementation of the booting platform. The BtA is an optional General Services Agent (GSA) located behind each port of a booting platform that supports InfiniBand Boot Management.

35. A software environment that is not as feature rich as current vintage Operating Systems. For example Firmware (e.g. BIOS) is considered an elementary operating environment.

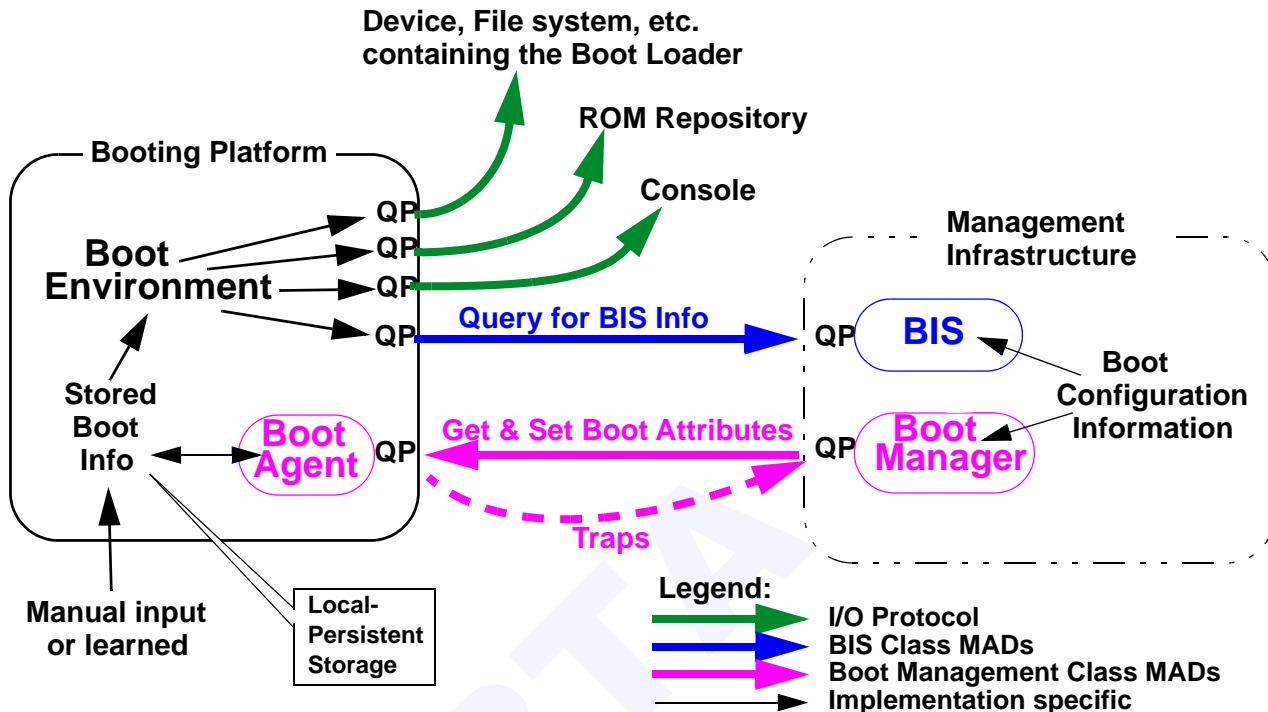


Figure 279 describes a booting platform containing a Boot Environment, a BtA and persistent storage. A BootManager uses Boot Management class MADs to communicate with the BtA. The Boot Environment through firmware can access the BIS using BIS class MADs. Both Boot Management and BIS class MADs serve the booting platform by providing information used by the platform during the boot process.

The booting framework also supports various phases of booting, providing the booting platform with locator records that identify:

- ROM Repositories that contain additional code to update or expand the boot environment or contain device drivers needed to access the OS Boot Loader.
- A Console Service that the booting platform can use to input information manually and output status.
- The location for the platform's Boot Loader. This includes the source for the installation program, such as when a new platform needs to boot an Install program that installs the OS. A platform boots an Install program just like it boots the OS - by executing what it thinks is a boot loader.

- The destination where the Install Program can place the platform's OS Boot Loader. Thus, if the Install is successful, then the location becomes a source for the platform's OS Boot Loader.

Locator Records (see A5.6.5 "Persistent Locator Records" on page 1495 and A5.6.5.5 "RecordFunction" on page 1499) contain information for a platform to identify a device from which to boot an OS and to locate either a Console device or service. Platforms that do not have Locator Records in non-volatile storage need to query the BIS for Locator Records or wait to be configured with boot information, such as by a BootManager. Proprietary methods to read or write Local-Persistent locator records are out of the scope of IBA. Regardless of how Locator Records are set, they can be read by a BootManager if a BtA is present on the boot platform.

The boot environment (e.g. BIOS) controlling the boot platform after power on reset, reset, or reboot might or might not contain a BtA. After the OS is loaded it too might or might not contain a BtA. The Capability of the BtA in the boot environment may be different than the Capability of the BtA after the OS is running. When the BtA is not running, the BootManager does not have the ability to change local-persistent locator records, time-outs or receive Boot Management Traps/Notices from the booting platform.

A booting platform includes any node booting over IB that contains a CA. This includes compute nodes, I/O nodes, and routers. For example, an I/O unit might import its operating environment from a device or server attached by the IB fabric. A switch or a router may also boot from the fabric and be considered a booting platform. However, booting capability is generally associated with how a compute node loads its operating system (OS). This annex describes the IB booting framework with respect to a booting platform loading its OS.

A booting platform might contain multiple CA's and each CA might contain multiple ports. There are no architectural limitations on which CA or which port can be used for booting. Thus, the selection of the CA and the selection of a port on the CA becomes a decision based on the location of the boot device, port priority, and booting policy. If the boot platform can access a boot device using multiple ports, then the booting platform makes the determination of exactly which port it uses.

Platform booting environments vary based on processor type, platform vendor, etc. Some well-known firmware boot environments include BIOS, IEEE1275, EFI, PA-IODC and there are others. Each of these booting environments provide interfaces for supporting different I/O technologies, such as IBA. Thus, there is some form of boot environment specific code that interfaces the boot environment to the I/O technology. In our case, this is IB specific boot code, as conceptually illustrated in Figure 280.

Figure 281 also illustrates the IB I/O boot model (e.g., I/O controller controlling storage devices) and Figure 282 illustrates the IB Network boot model. Both I/O and services are used in most booting methods. For example, resolution of I/O devices require using certain subnet services such as BIS and make use of storage or network protocols such as SRP.

These considerations vary depending on the Boot Method and the Boot Resolution methods supported. The most pervasive booting methods are storage and network. In addition, most boot environments desire some form of console service and that service can also be provided via IBA.

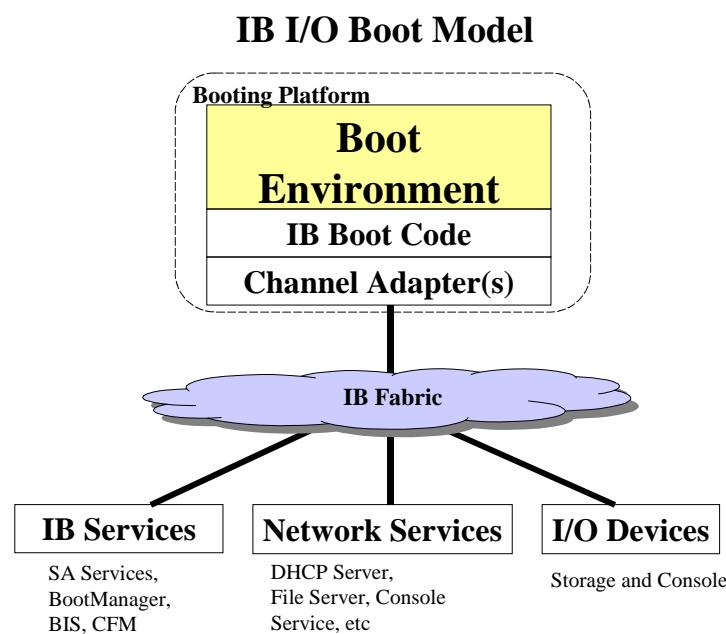


Figure 280 **IB I/O Boot Model**

A5.1.4 CONSOLE

Typically booting environments use console services to display booting progress, to make booting selections, to input boot parameters, and to troubleshoot or recover from failed boot attempts.

Console service is independent of any boot method. There are two key considerations in supporting console service over IB fabric. The first is the selection of the console service and the second is the console protocol. Naturally, both the booting platform and the console service support the same console protocol. IBA defines a console protocol (see [Annex A2: Console Service Protocol on page 1308](#)) and while it is not the only possible console protocol, it is the only one specifically addressed in this

annex. All other console protocols are considered proprietary. The IB booting framework supports proprietary protocols, but does not address issues with implementing them or determining if a booting platform is compatible with a proprietary console protocol.

The IB console service can be provided by a server or by an I/O controller. This annex describes how the IB boot code can locate the server or I/O controller that provides console service.

Normally there is an affinity from a booting platform to a particular console service or device using either local-persistent or BIS Locator Records. If this affinity fails then an exhaustive search for a console might be performed. For a console device the hunt begins when the platform queries all I/O units (IOU) that the booting node has a path to using DevMgtGet(ServiceEntries) and scanning for the well-known service name of Console.IBTA. A console service is found by querying Subnet Administration (SA) with SubnAdm(ServiceRecord) also scanning for the well-known service name of Console.IBTA.

A5.1.5 STORAGE BOOT METHOD

The predominant booting method is booting from a fixed-length random block storage device. Other storage devices such as sequential (tape) storage and variable-length block storage are also viable. The IB booting framework does not differentiate between various storage device types.

Typically the booting environment reads blocks of data from a storage device. For the IB I/O model, that storage device is accessed by an I/O controller (IOC) that is part of an I/O unit (IOU).

There are two key considerations in supporting a storage method over the IB fabric. The first is the boot resolution method which selects the IOC. The second is the boot method (i.e. the storage protocol) used after selecting to the IOC. Naturally, both the booting platform and the IOC support the same I/O protocol. ANSI T10 defines a SCSI protocol specifically suited for IBA (see [Annex A1: I/O Infrastructure on page 1289](#)). It is called SCSI RDMA protocol or SRP. While SRP is not the only possible storage protocol, it is the only one specifically addressed in this annex. All other storage protocols are considered proprietary. The IB booting framework supports proprietary protocols, but does not address issues with implementing them or determining if a booting platform is compatible with a proprietary protocol.

This annex describes how IB boot code can locate the I/O controller for a storage device and determine the I/O protocol using Locator Records. Through the use of multiple Locator Records, the IB booting framework also addresses ways to establish an affinity with a storage controller as well as the ability to support redundant storage controllers.

A5.1.6 NETWORK BOOT METHOD

The Network boot method is considered more complex than storage because it involves multiple services and multiple protocols. There are a number of network booting methods that range from simply identifying the boot server and then extracting the boot file to a complex, service rich network environment.

There are multiple ways for the booting platform to access network based services. Two of them are as follows.

- One way is through a LAN Network Interface Controller (LAN NIC) as illustrated in Figure 281. In this case the boot environment (BIOS, etc.) needs a LAN driver that controls the LAN NIC so it can send and receive network packets through the NIC. The I/O protocol between the LAN driver and the LAN NIC is not specified by IBA. Boot resolution is very similar to that for a Storage Boot method because the booting platform only needs to locate the I/O controller (LAN NIC), make a connection to the I/O controller, and then use standard IP protocols over an IB connection.

LAN Network Boot Model

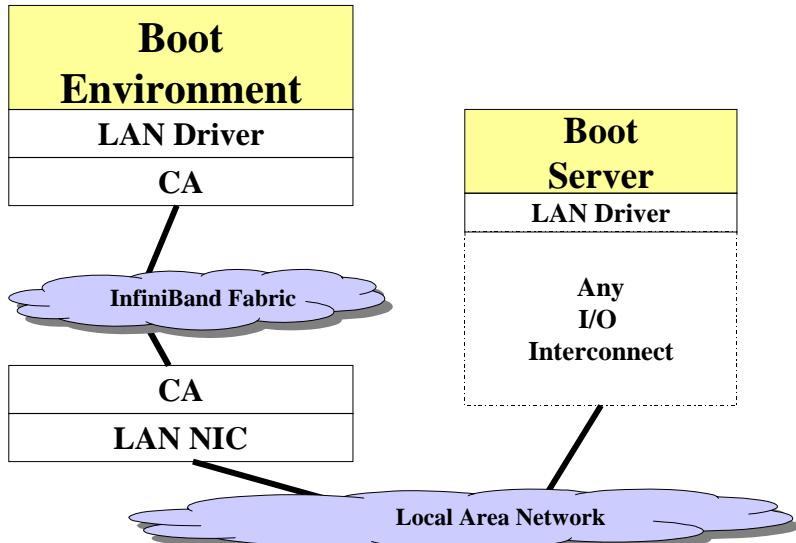
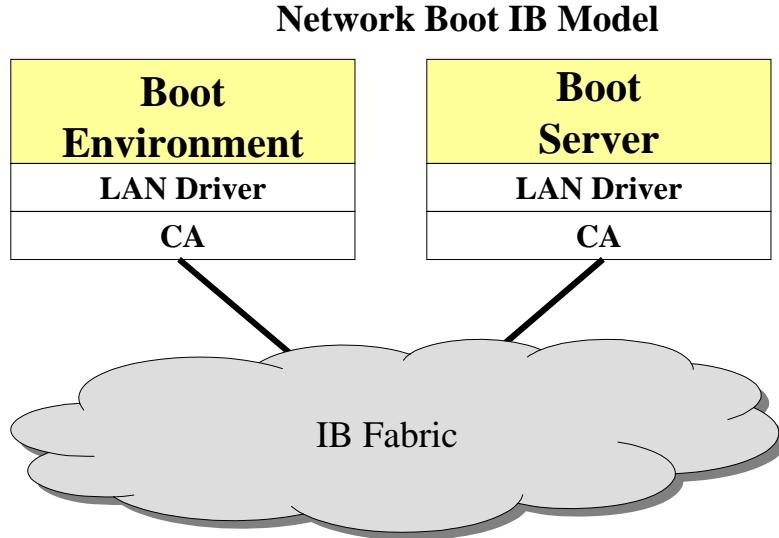


Figure 281 LAN Network Boot Model

- The second case is where the Boot Server is attached to the IB fabric and the IB fabric is the network as illustrated in Figure 282.



The IB network boot model does not require a LAN NIC. In this case, the boot environment (BIOS, etc.) needs a LAN driver that can send and receive IP packets over the IB transport.

A5.1.7 BOOT ENVIRONMENT

The boot environment is defined as the software environment (including the BtA) running before the booting platform's OS is operational. The boot environment makes use of CA's on the IB subnet that provide I/O and subnet services needed to boot.

Console Service - Boot firmware, OS loaders and low-level applications (diagnostics, recovery) often assume the presence of a console, which is an abstraction for a pair of input and output devices used for interaction with an administrator.

This Annex describes how consoles are discovered. The Console Annex defines a wire protocol for consoles, which is suitable for use with console devices as well as console services.

Power Management - The management infrastructure provides for power management including the ability to power down and wake a node. Booting principles assume that I/O units are alive and active. The booting host should take into consideration that there may be a delay from the time that it starts to send MADs to an I/O unit, until the I/O unit is capable of responding. This delay could include the time for the power manager to

1 respond to a trap and the time for the I/O unit to initialize. Currently this
2 time is not bounded, but is expected to be in the order of seconds.

3 It is recommended that I/O units that take significant time to initialize, es-
4 pecially those supporting power management and wake-on-fabric (see
5 Volume 2, 12.7 “Power Management Wake-up”), be able to respond with
6 DevMgtGetResp(PortClassInfo) as soon as possible.

A5.1.8 MANAGING THE BEHAVIOR OF A BOOTING PLATFORM

7 Subnets range from very simple to very complex and the selection of the
8 appropriate Boot Resolution Methods is dependant on subnet complexity.
9 Also, booting platforms with multiple ports can belong to multiple subnets
10 with multiple BootManagers and more than one BIS.

A5.1.8.1 Boot RESOLUTION METHODS

13 The IB booting framework defines two Boot Resolution Methods and pro-
14 vides two ways to manage them and allows for IB Network Boot.

17 One Boot Resolution Method, called the Local Resolution Method, simply
18 remembers (through non-volatile storage located on the booting platform)
19 information (i.e Locator Records) required to locate devices or services for
20 the purpose of booting a platform over the IB fabric. Using local-persistent
21 Locator Records provides the boot platform a relatively static way to iden-
22 tify boot devices or services without depending on additional fabric ser-
23 vices such as BIS.

24 Another Boot Resolution Method, called Boot Information Service (see
25 [Annex A6: Boot Information Service on page 1570](#)) also resolves devices
26 and services used for booting. It provides a booting platform with the iden-
27 tity of devices and services it needs to boot over the IB fabric. Using the
28 BIS in this manner provides both an adaptive and redundant boot capa-
29 bility that scales with subnet size. A booting platform can query the BIS for
30 any particular attribute and the BIS returns the requested attributes. The
31 attributes returned by the BIS to the booting platform are identical to the
32 R/W components of the equivalent Boot Management attributes (Plat-
33 formBootInfo, PortBootInfo, RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, ConsoleLo-
34 catorRecord and OsLocatorRecord) written by the BootManager to the
35 BtA.

36 Boot resolution methods vary from site to site and between platform ven-
37 ditors. Subnet management providers are likely to support both the Local
38 and BIS Resolution methods. Therefore, the Boot Management class pro-
39 vides the means to specify which boot resolution method to use and in
40 what order to use them when both are selected. Local resolution allows
41 the booting platform to maintain a list of Locator Records for one or more
42 devices. The BIS provides a more dynamic and centralized mechanism to
manage Locator Records.

Using the locator records, the boot environment can locate a specific OS boot loader, console objects, and ROM Repositories within the IB fabric.

A5.1.8.2 ROM REPOSITORY

To accommodate extending the boot environment and 3rd party drivers, the IBA booting framework provides for ROM Repositories. See A5.12 “ROM Repository” on page 1533. The booting platform can discover if there are Option ROM images designed for that particular boot environment. It also provides the means (i.e. protocol) to download the desired ROM image to the booting platform. Of course what happens to the image (i.e., how the code is linked to the boot environment and how it gets executed) is outside the scope of this document.

A5.1.8.3 BOOT ENVIRONMENT EXTENSION

A platform's boot environment code might provide full functionality or might contain a minimum amount of code that has the capability of being extended. When shipped with code that can be extended, the booting platform needs the ability to access additional code located in another node's ROM Repository. This extended code together with the co-resident code of the booting platform provides an extended boot environment. In general, the booting platform powers on, locates a ROM repository using either Local or BIS supplied ROM Repository Locator Records, and then downloads additional boot environment code, which provides a richer set of services or functions, including enhancing the BtA itself.

When a power on reset or reboot takes place, the booting platform uses saved platform boot information to determine the method (BIS or Local-Persistent) that it uses to locate and connect to a ROM Repository.

A5.1.8.4 PROPRIETARY DRIVER LOAD

Many booting environments support loading additional code such as 3rd party drivers. This allows the boot environment to import additional code such as proprietary I/O protocols for existing boot methods. This includes extending the boot environment on the booting platform to cover new boot methods.

A5.1.9 SUBNET INITIALIZATION

The Master SM has the task of stabilizing the fabric (see [14.1 Subnet Management Model on page 865](#)). The Master SM initializes the fabric (node discovery/configuration, topology discovery, and routing table configuration). A booting node might also be the Master SM and thus performs these functions before it can boot. A booting platform that does not contain SM functionality waits until the fabric is stable (PortState = Armed or Active) before the port is allowed onto the IB subnet. A booting platform that does contain SM functionality waits until the subnet is initialized, optionally loads code images from a ROM Repository, and then finds its OS boot loader on the fabric.

Power is often applied to many platforms at the same time, requiring special consideration. A number of factors (CPU speed, memory testing, other diagnostics etc.) allow nodes in the fabric to become SM's at different points of time with a default or persistent recollection of SM Priority. The Master SM (MSM) will switch from node to node until the highest priority SM is on the fabric. From a booting platform's perspective it means that IB paths may be reassigned at any time after the first MSM sets the routing tables/LIDs until the MSM with the highest priority wins the SM discovery process. Subnet management is a dynamic process that responds to topology changes. SM election is completely asynchronous to the boot process, thus the boot environment should tolerate MSM changes.

A5.1.10 BOOT/REBOOT

Booting takes place when the platform is powered on and the firmware running on the platform loads the operating system. Generally, rebooting follows this same process except that power is not cycled.

A5.2 BOOTMANAGER

The Boot Management class provides mechanisms (methods and attributes) to enable a BootManager to set and retrieve boot information from platforms supporting Boot Management.

A5.2.1 GENERAL OPERATION

The BootManager configures a boot platform for the subnet's booting policy using attributes listed [Table 428 Boot Management Attribute Summary on page 1461](#). The booting platform uses these attributes to guide the booting process.

A BootManager communicates with the BtA as shown in Figure 283. The BootManager sends a message (BootMgtSet() or BootMgtGet()) to the BtA and the BtA responds with a BootMgtGetResp(). The BtA can also send Traps to the BootManager and the BootManager can retrieve Notices (not illustrated) from the BtA using BootMgtGet(Notice) and BootMgtSet(Notice).

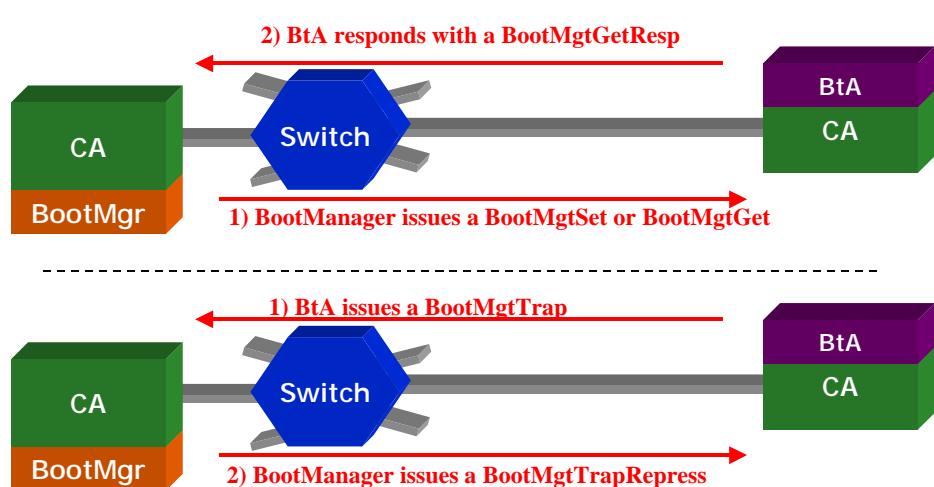


Figure 283 BootManager/BtA Relationship

Boot methods and resolution policies are dictated by the user or computing facility policies. There is no single boot method nor boot resolution policy that is valid for all. In fact, a boot method and resolution strategy that might be ideal in one environment (such as a small single host static topology) is undesirable and sometimes prohibited for another environment (such as a large dynamic facility, clusters, etc.). Additionally, as a site continues to evolve, it may become necessary to vary those strategies over time. A BootManager is also useful to update a platform's boot attributes when subnet configuration changes might otherwise leave the booting platform unable to boot.

The system administrator uses the BootManager as a mechanism to manage the booting policy of each boot platform in order to:

- Assure that when a booting platform is installed, it can be configured to follow the booting policies of the facility. For example, setting Platform Boot Information, Port Boot Information, and Locator Records convey that information to the booting platform via Boot-Mgt MADs.
- Reconfigure each booting platform's boot policy when the booting policy changes.
- Intervene when configuration changes or failures prevent a booting platform from booting.
- Select the BIS port priority for when a booting platform attaches to multiple subnets (see [Table 434 PortBootInfo Attribute on page 1489](#)).

- Set the priority of the local-persistent Locator Records. This allows the BootManager to pass the booting platform multiple Locator Records and indicate the order by which each should be tried.

One way for the BootManager to determine if a BtA resides on a booting platform is to query the SA using SubnAdminGet(PortInfoRecord) for any port on the platform. Using CapabilityMask:IsBootManagementAgent-Supported from the PortInfoRecord query returned by the SA, the BootManager determines if the BtA exists. If so, the BootManager can determine if the BtA supports either Traps or Notices by testing BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(0)) = 1b and BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(1)) = 1b respectively. Traps and Notices from the booting platform allows the BtA to notify the BootManager of problems that prevent the platform from booting and alerting the system administrator if necessary.

Third parties can register to receive Boot Management Traps and Notices initiated from a port that contains a BtA by issuing a BootMgtSet(InformInfo) to the BootManager. When a trap event occurs on the booting platform, the platform issues a trap to the BootManager. The BootManager forwards the Trap to the third party through the BootMgtReport(Notice) method and attribute. For more information on Boot Management Traps and Notices see A5.6.7 “Traps and Notice Queues” on page 1504]

A5.2.2 DETECTING NEW BOOT PLATFORMS

The BootManager needs to be aware of booting platforms entering and exiting the subnet. The BootManager can subscribe with the SA for in service and out of service Traps (Trap number 64/65). Using traps 64/65 the BootManager is kept informed of the nodes that are online and reachable by the BootManager.

CA5-1: The BootManager shall check for new BtAs by subscribing to SA for trap 64.

In addition to being aware that new booting platforms have entered the subnet the BootManager should be aware that the capability of a booting platform are not static and may change and the BootManager may periodically query each booting platform by querying PlatformBootInfo:Capability. The booting platform's Capability may change whenever a new BtA is loaded for any reason including expansion of the boot environment and the OS loading a new BtA.

A5.2.3 MULTIPLE BOOT MANAGERS

When multiple BootManagers access the same platform, then access to a booting platform should be serialized by the BootManagers to prevent race conditions that result when multiple BootManagers are reading and writing attributes on a platform at the same time.

A5.2.4 PROTECTING THE BtM_KEY

When BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyProtectBits are non-zero, the BootManager needs to protect against unauthorized access by sending each BtA a BootMgt MAD with a valid MADHeader:BtM_Key before BtA's BtM_Key lease period expires.

CA5-2: When the BootManager sets a non-zero BtM_Key and a non-zero BtM_ProtectionBits in a booting platform, the BootManager shall reset the lease period counter by sending a BootMgt MAD with MAD-Header:BtM_Key equal to BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key at an interval less than the lease period.

A5.2.5 EVENT REPORTING

The BootManager needs to collect Notices from booting platforms that support Notices.

oA5-1: If the BootManager supports event subscriptions, then the BootManager shall periodically query the BtA notice queue and shall generate a BootMgtReport() for each notice.

A5.2.6 SA ADVERTISEMENT

The BootManager advertises its location using the ServiceRecord specified in [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#). Nodes that choose to subscribe to Traps and Notices can find the BootManager by querying the SA.

CA5-3: The BootManager shall register with the SA via the SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) using the <ServiceName>="BootManager.IBTA". If the BootManager is configured for multiple partitions, it shall register once for each partition.

The values for the other ServiceRecord parameters are implementation dependent.

If for any reason a BootManager cannot advertise its location with the SA using the ServiceRecord then 3rd party nodes will not be able to subscribe to Traps and Notices from booting platforms.

CA5-4: If the BootManager cannot register with the SA then it shall not send Boot Management class MADs to a BtA.

The BootManager is responsible for periodically renewing its lease with the SA to prevent the SA from dropping its ServiceRecord from the SA database (see [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#) and [15.2.5.14.3 ServiceLease on page 1036](#)).

CA5-5: The BootManager shall renew its registration lease by reregistering with the SA before its service lease expires.

A5.3 BootAgent

A BootAgent (BtA) provides the means for a BootManager to remotely manage the platform's boot attributes. At a minimum, it provides a way for the BootManager to read the platform's booting attributes and optionally provides the means for setting them.

The BtA behind each port allows the BootManager to:

- 1) Get() (read) the booting platform's capabilities.
- 2) Set() locator components (see [A5.6.3.4 Boot Record Locator Sources on page 1483](#)) to control resolution methods and the specific order that the platform uses to locate a ROM Repository, the Console, and the OS.
- 3) Set() time-out components to set the minimum amount of time a booting platform should wait to connect to devices or services required to boot.
- 4) Set() the local-persistent Locator Records the platform will use to boot and the order by which they will be used when booting
- 5) Be notified (via Traps or Notices) of events that occur within the booting platform that involve the boot process

Boot Management class attributes with a scope of platform can be read and written by a BootManager through any port with identical results. Boot Management class attributes with a scope of port can be read and written by a BootManager on a particular port. Table 425 specifies the scope of each attribute.

CA5-6: The BtA shall return the same component values on all ports of the booting platform for attributes that have a platform scope (as per [Table 425](#)).

A5.4 MAD FORMAT

CA5-7: The datagrams in the Boot Management class shall conform to the MAD format and use as specified in Vol1, 13.4 Management Data-grams and further customized in [Figure 284 "Boot Management MAD" on page 1454](#), and Table 423, "Boot Management MAD Components," on page 1455

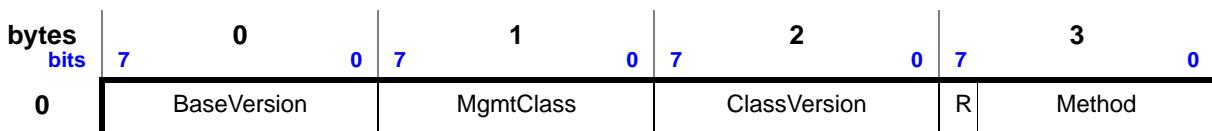


Figure 284 Boot Management MAD

bytes	0	1	2	3	
4	Status		Reserved		1
8		TransactionID			2
12					3
16	AttributeID		Reserved		4
20		AttributeModifier			5
24		BtM_Key			6
28					7
32		Reserved			8
...					9
60					10
64		BootMgtData			11
...					12
252					13

Figure 284 Boot Management MAD (Continued)

Table 423 Boot Management MAD Components

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description	
BaseVersion	0	1 byte	as per 13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780	24
MgmtClass	8	1 byte	Management class value = 0x11 indicates Boot Management	25
ClassVersion	16	1 byte	Version field. Value is set to 1.	26
R	24	1 bit	as per 13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780	27
Method	25	7 bits	Boot Management Method, as defined in Table 424 on page 1457	28
Status	32	2 bytes	The Status field (0:7) is defined in Volume 1, 13.4.7 "Status Field". Status bits 8-15 are class specific and reserved for future definition. See A5.4.1 "Boot Management MAD Status" on page 1456	29
Reserved	48	2 bytes	Reserved	30
TransactionID	64	8 bytes	as per 13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780	31
AttributeID	128	2 bytes	as per 13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780 and further defined in Table 428, "Boot Management Attribute Summary," on page 1461.	32
Reserved	144	2 bytes	Reserved	33

Table 423 Boot Management MAD Components (Continued)

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
AttributeModifier	160	4 bytes	See Table 428 Boot Management Attribute Summary on page 1461
BtM_Key	192	8 bytes	A 64-bit (8-byte) key used to validate Boot Management operations. See A5.6.2 BtM_KeyInfo on page 1463
Reserved	156	32 bytes	Reserved
BootMgtData	188	192 bytes	Attribute data

A5.4.1 BOOT MANAGEMENT MAD STATUS

[13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#) defines the use of the MAD Status component.

Busy

The BootManager may attempt to alter attributes such as Platform-BootInfo, PortBootInfo, and Locator Records at anytime. If the BtA relies on stable boot parameters during the boot process, then the BtA can reject the Set() command by setting bit 0 of the Status component. For example, while booting, some implementations may expect registers to be stable for the duration of the boot. If the implementation dictates this behavior then the BtA may return the MAD with a Status(0)=1b.

Invalid Field Encode

A Set() or Get() is rejected (i.e. MAD:Status(2:4)=0x3) by the BtA when the attribute, a component of an attribute, or an attribute/component combination cannot be accepted by the BtA. One example of the usage of this status is when the BtA receives a BootMgtSet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) and the BtA does not have the capability of setting this attribute.

When a BtA receives a Set() the Read Only (RO) components of the attribute are ignored.

A BootMgtSet() informs the recipient to set values maintained by the recipient according to the values contained in the attribute conveyed in MADHeader:BootMgtData. The components of the attribute shall be set equal to the equivalent values maintained by the recipient after the set has been performed except when the Status returned is non-zero.

By convention, reserved fields must be filled with 0 by the initiator and ignored by the receiver (see [13.4.1 Conventions on page 780](#)).

CA5-8: A BtA or a BootManager that does not support the class version in a request message shall respond by returning the message and setting the R bit, the MAD:Status(2:4) to 0x1 and the ClassVersion set to 1.

CA5-9: A BtA or a BootManager that does not support the method in a request message shall respond by returning the message and setting the R bit and set MAD:Status (2:4) to 0x2.

CA5-10: A BtA or a BootManager that does not support the method/attribute combination in a request message shall respond by returning the message and setting the R bit set MAD:Status (2:4) to 0x3 in the response.

CA5-11: A BtA or a BootManager that does not support a particular value in a Set request message shall respond by returning the message and setting the R bit and set MAD:Status (2:4) to 0x7 in the response.

CA5-12: A BootManager shall ignore the contents of the BootMgtData component if the BtA returns a non-zero status in a BootMgtGetResp().

CA5-13: A BtA shall ignore RO components when processing a BootMgtSet().

Policy Reject

The Boot Manager may reject a BootMgtSet(InformInfo) using MAD:Status(11:8)=0x3 to indicate that the boot manager's policy does not permit subscription to that trap.

CA5-13.2.1: If the Boot Manager rejects a BootMgtSet(InformInfo) because it does not permit subscription to that trap, it shall reject the request using MAD:Status(11:8)=0x3.

A5.4.2 MAD BTM_KEY

The BtM_Key in the MAD:Header is used to validate the source of the BootMgt MADs. See section A5.6.2.1 "BtM_Key General Use" on page 1464 for additional details.

A5.5 BOOT MANAGEMENT METHODS AND ATTRIBUTES

The Boot Management class methods listed in [Table 424](#) are a subset of the common methods described in section [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

Table 424 Boot Management Methods

Method	Value (8b=R,Method)	Description
BootMgtGet()	0x01	Request a get (read) of a Boot Management attribute.
BootMgtSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of a Boot Management attribute

Table 424 Boot Management Methods (Continued)

Method	Value (8b=R,Method)	Description
BootMgtGetResp()	0x81	Response to a BootMgtGet() or BootMgtSet().
BootMgtTrap	0x05	A Boot Management datagram providing the BootManager with asynchronous event notification. Traps are described in 13.4.9. Trap support indicated by BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask) bits(0:1) described in 13.4.8.1.
BootMgtTrapRepress()	0x07	A Boot Management datagram notifying the BtA to stop reporting a particular instance of a Trap matching the TransactionID and the Notice attribute.
BootMgtReport()	0x06	BootManager Only, not BtA -Sent from a BootManager to forward Traps/Notices to subscribers.
BootMgtReportResp()	0x86	BootManager Only, not BtA - Response to a BootMgtReport, sent by subscriber to the BootManager.

[Table 425](#) shows the complete list of BootMgt class method and attribute combinations and indicates which are mandatory or optional. Section [A5.6 Boot Management Attribute Definitions on page 1461](#) defines Boot Management attributes.

Attribute Scope identifies the attribute as affecting booting parameters of the port or the entire platform.

Table 425 BtA Method/Attribute Combinations

Attribute Name	Attribute Scope	Methods				
		BootMgt Get	BootMgt GetResp	BootMgt Set	BootMgt Trap	BootMgt Trap Repress
ClassPortInfo	Port	Mandatory		n/a		
BtM_KeyInfo	Platform	Mandatory		n/a		
PlatformBootInfo	Platform	Mandatory		Conditional	n/a	
PortBootInfo	Port	Mandatory		Conditional	n/a	
RomRepositoryLocatorRecord	Platform	Conditional		Conditional	n/a	
ConsoleLocatorRecord	Platform	Conditional		Conditional	n/a	

Table 425 BtA Method/Attribute Combinations (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute Scope	Methods				
		BootMgt Get	BootMgt GetResp	BootMgt Set	BootMgt Trap	BootMgt Trap Repress
OsLocatorRecord	Platform	Conditional		Conditional	n/a	
NodeReboot	Platform	Conditional			n/a	
Notice	Platform	Conditional			Conditional	

CA5-14: A BtA shall implement the methods and attribute combinations listed as Mandatory in [Table 425 on page 1458](#), and conditionally listed in [Table 426 on page 1459](#).

Table 426 describes the Boot Management Methods and Attributes that

Table 426 BtA Capability Requirements

Method(Attribute)	Condition/Requirement
BootMgtSet(PlatformBootInfo)	If Capability(10),Capability(11) or Capability(12)=1b, then a BtA shall process BootMgtSet(PlatformBootInfo) and BootMgtGet(PlatformBootInfo) and return BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo).
BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo)	If Capability(8),Capability(10),Capability(11) or Capability(12)=1b, then a BtA shall process BootMgtSet(PlatformBootInfo) and BootMgtGet(PlatformBootInfo) and return BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo)
BootMgtGet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord), BootMgtGetResp(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord)	If Capability(0) or Capability(1) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgtGet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) and return BootMgtGetResp((RomRepositoryLocatorRecord))
BootMgtSet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord)	If Capability(10) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgtSet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) and return BootMgtGetResp((RomRepositoryLocatorRecord))
BootMgtGet(ConsoleLocatorRecord), BootMgtGetResp(ConsoleLocatorRecord)	If Capability(2) or Capability(3) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgtGet(ConsoleLocatorRecord) and BootMgtGetResp(ConsoleLocatorRecord)
BootMgtSet(ConsoleLocatorRecord)	If Capability(11) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgtSet(ConsoleLocatorRecord) and return BootMgtGetResp((ConsoleLocatorRecord))
BootMgtGet(OsLocatorRecord), BootMgtGetResp(OsLocatorRecord)	If Capability(4),Capability(5),Capability(6) or Capability(7) = 1b then a BtA platform shall process BootMgtGet(OsLocatorRecord) and BootMgtGetResp(OsLocatorRecord)
BootMgtSet(OsLocatorRecord)	If Capability(12) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgtSet(OsLocatorRecord) and return BootMgtGetResp((OsLocatorRecord))

Table 426**BtA Capability Requirements (Continued)**

BootMgtSet(NodeReboot)	If Capability(14) or Capability(15)= 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgt-Set(NodeReboot), BootMgtGet(NodeReboot) and BootMgtGet-Resp(NodeReboot) and return BootMgtGetResp(NodeReboot)
BootMgtSet(Notice), BootMgtTrapRepress(Notice)	If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(0) = 1b then a BtA shall process BootMgt-Trap(Notice) and BootMgtTrapRepress(Notice).
BootMgtSet(Notice) and repress	If ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(1) = 1b then the BtA shall process BootMgt-Set(Notice) and BootMgtGet(Notice).

are conditionally supported based on the values found in PlatformBoot-Info:Capability and ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

CA5-15: A BtA shall implement the methods and attribute combinations listed as Conditional in [Table 425 on page 1458](#) when the conditions listed in Table 426 on page 1459 are true.

Some vendors may implement proprietary means to create or alter R/W components and locator records. This may be done through various means including a console session and is outside the scope of this Annex.

oA5-2: If the Booting Platform supports Local RomRepositoryLocatorRecords then these records shall be readable via a BootMgtGet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) regardless of the method used to set RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.

oA5-3: If the Booting Platform supports Local ConsoleLocatorRecords then these records shall be readable via a BootMgtGet(ConsoleLocatorRecord) regardless of the method used to set ConsoleLocatorRecords.

oA5-4: If the Booting Platform supports Local OsLocatorRecords then these records shall be readable via a BootMgtGet(OsLocatorRecord) regardless of the method used to set OsLocatorRecords.

oA5-5: If the BtA supports BootMgtGet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) then it shall return the record indicated by the AttributeModifier as specified in A5.6.5 “Persistent Locator Records” on page 1495.

oA5-6: If the BtA supports BootMgtGet(ConsoleLocatorRecord) then it shall return the record indicated by the AttributeModifier as specified in A5.6.5 “Persistent Locator Records” on page 1495.

oA5-7: If the BtA supports BootMgtGet(OsLocatorRecord) then it shall return the record indicated by the AttributeModifier as specified in A5.6.5 “Persistent Locator Records” on page 1495.

Table 427 describes additional methods and attribute combinations that are supported by the BootManager allowing 3rd parties to subscribe to traps and notices.

Table 427 **BootManager Method/Attribute Combinations**

Attribute Name	Methods		
	BootMgt Get	BootMgt Set	BootMgt Report
ClassPortInfo	x	x	
Notice	x	x	x
InformInfo		x	

A5.6 BOOT MANAGEMENT ATTRIBUTE DEFINITIONS

This section specifies the format of the attributes used for managing booting platforms over the IB fabric.

Table 428 **Boot Management Attribute Summary**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	as per Chapter 13: Management Model on page 772
BtM_KeyInfo	0x0010	0x00000000	BtM_Key information for the platform used to check received Boot Management class MADs.
PlatformBootInfo	0x0020	0x00000000	The PlatformBootInfo attribute allows the BootManager to Get() the booting platforms capabilities and Set() components to control certain boot behavior.
PortBootInfo	0x0021	0x00000000	The PortBootInfo attribute allows the BtA to Get() and Set() the booting platforms BIS priority and time-out values on a port by port basis.
RomRepositoryLocatorRecord	0x0030	0x00000000 - 0x000000FF	A Locator Record that identifies a ROM Repository used to expand the boot environment, BtA, and/or contains proprietary device drivers. The AttributeModifier determines the priority of the record.
ConsoleLocatorRecord	0x0031	0x00000000 - 0x000000FF	A Locator Record that identifies the console to be used by the booting platform. The AttributeModifier determines the priority of the record.

Table 428 Boot Management Attribute Summary (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
OSLocatorRecord	0x0032	0x00000000 - 0x000000FF	A Locator Record that identifies the device that the booting platform will use to bootstrap the OS. The AttributeModifier determines the priority of the record.
NodeReboot	0x0040	0x00000000	Allows the BootManager to reboot a platform.
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Attribute supporting Traps and Notice Queues
InformInfo	0x0003	0x00000000	Attribute to subscribe to Boot Management Traps. InformInfo is not used by the BtA.
Reserved	Other values reserved	0x00000000 - 0xFFFFFFFF	Reserved

CA5-16: The BtA shall return MAD>Status(2:4) = 0x3 when an invalid AttributeID or AttributeModifier is specified as per [Table 428](#).

A5.6.1 CLASSPORTINFO

Table 429 Boot Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
ClassVersion	RO	0	8	Current supported BootMgt class version = 0x01
CapabilityMask	RO	16	16	<p>Supported capabilities of this management class, bit set to 1 for affirmation of management support.</p> <p>Bits 0-7: are defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799</p> <p>Bits 8-15 for Boot Agent</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bit 8: IsBtM_KeyNonVolatile 1b = BtM_Key saved in non-volatile storage 0b = BtM_Key not saved in non-volatile storage • Bit 9-15: Reserved Class-specific bits, set to 0. <p>Bits 8-15 for Boot Manager</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bit 8-13: Reserved Class-specific bits, set to 0. • Bit 14: GracefulFailover - This bit indicates if the Boot Manager shares subscription information with standby managers. A value of 1 indicates that the DA retains subscriptions across fail-overs so a client does not have to re-subscribe if fail-over is successful. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in sections A5.6.7.3.1 Subscription Integrity on page 1516. • Bit 15: IsContextPersistent - This bit indicates if the manager persistently stores subscription information such that subscriptions are retained across reset, restarts, and power cycles. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in A5.6.7.3.1 Subscription Integrity on page 1516. <p>See 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 for more information on the CapabilityMask.</p>

CA5-17: The BtA shall implement ClassPortInfo for the BootMgt class as described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#) and further specified in Table 429, “Boot Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask,” on page 1463.

A5.6.2 BTM_KEYINFO

Table 430 BtM_KeyInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
BtM_Key	R/W	0	64	The 8-byte Boot Management key used in all Boot Management MADs by all valid BootManagers. A BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key value of 0 means no BtM_Key check is performed by the BtA (see Table 431, “BtM_Key Check,” on page 1465).

Table 430 BtM_KeyInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
BtM_KeyProtectBits	R/W	64	2	See A5.6.2.3 “BtM_Key Operations” on page 1465 for details.
Reserved	R/W	66	14	Reserved
BtM_KeyLeasePeriod	R/W	80	16	Timer value used to indicate how long the BtM_KeyProtectBits are to remain non zero after a failed BtM_Key check. The value of the timer indicates the number of seconds for the lease period. With a 16 bit counter, the period can range from one second to approximately 18 hours. 0 shall mean infinite. See A5.6.2.5 “BtM_Key Recovery” on page 1467 for details.
BtM_KeyViolations	R/W	96	16	<p>Number of MADs that have been received at this booting platform since power-on or reset that have been dropped due to a failed BtM_Key check.</p> <p>Counts the number of Boot Management MADs that have been received by the platform that have had an invalid BtM_Key. The counter increments until the count reaches all 1s and then must be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing.</p> <p>When the BootManager sets this component to 0x0000 the counter is reset to 0x0000 and counting resumes. Setting the counter to a value other than zero results the counter being left unchanged.</p>
Reserved	RO	112	1424	Reserved

A5.6.2.1 BtM_KEY GENERAL USE

The Boot Management Key (BtM_Key) provides a separate level of authentication that helps protect against receipt of bad management request messages. The BootManager includes the BtM_Key in the BootMgt MAD to obtain authorization. The BtM_Key is used to authenticate a trusted source. Similar to the model used for the M_Key and B_Key, this model assumes that the fabric has some level of physical security. While the BtM_Key is located in the header of the BootMgt MAD, BtM_Key handling depends on whether BootMgt MAD contains a request or a response message or is a BootMgt Trap.

The BootManager sets the BtM_Key using BootMgtSet(BtM_KeyInfo). A BootMgtGetResp shall return a MADHeader:BtM_Key of zero as specified in Table 431, “BtM_Key Check,” on page 1465. The Method, BtM_Key, and BtM_KeyProtectBits determine how the BtA handles the BtM_Key. If a key check fails, then the BtA silently drops the packet and increments the BtM_KeyViolations counter. If the BtA supports traps or notices, then it issues a Key Violation notice.

CA5-18: The BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyViolations component shall be incremented once, each time the BtA receives a MAD for which the BtM_Key

check was performed according to [Table 431, “BtM_Key Check,” on page 1465](#) and failed. However, the counter shall not be incremented if its value is all 1's.

CA5-19: The BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyViolations component shall be set to 0x0000 when a Set(BtM_KeyInfo) is received with BtM_KeyViolations=0x0000. A BtM_KeyViolations value other than 0x0000 shall leave the counter unchanged.

A5.6.2.2 BtM_KEY ASSUMPTIONS

Assumptions for using the BtM_Key are:

- 1) To use the correct key for each booting platform, the BootManager or
2 a higher-level BtM_Key manager keeps track of the keys for the plat-
3 forms that it is managing.
4
- 2) If a backup BootManager exists, it shares the BtM_Key for ease of
5 fail-over.
6
- 3) The BootManager sets the BtM_Key, the BtM_KeyProtectBits, and
7 the BtM_Key lease period via the BtM_KeyInfo Attribute with one
8 BootMgtSet(BtM_KeyInfo) MAD. A successful completion of this as-
9 signment indicates to the BootManager that it has taken ownership of
10 the booting platform.
11

A5.6.2.3 BtM_KEY OPERATIONS

The success and affect of the BtM_Key validation check depends on the value of the BtM_Key, BtM_KeyProtectBits, and on the method and attribute contained in the incoming MAD. If the key check succeeds then the BtA responds to the MAD. If the key check fails the MAD is silently dropped.

Table 431 BtM_Key Check

BtM_KeyInfo Component Values		Description
BtM_Key	BtM_Key ProtectBits	
zero	any	The BtM_Key contained in the MADHeader:BtM_Key of the MAD shall not be checked when the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key is zero. As a result, no authentication is performed.

Table 431 BtM_Key Check (Continued)

BtM_KeyInfo Component Values		Description
BtM_Key	BtM_KeyProtectBits	
non-zero	00b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • BootMgtGet(*) and BootMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any key in the MADHeader:BtM_Key • BootMgtGet(BtM_KeyInfo) shall return the platform's BtM_Key in BootMgtGetResp(BtM_KeyInfo) allowing any BootManager to learn the BtM_Key of the port. • BootMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:BtM_Key does not match the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key component of the platform.
non-zero	01b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any Boot Management MAD received at the port shall succeed if MADHeader:BtM_Key matches the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key component of the platform. • BootMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any key in the MAD-Header:BtM_Key • BtM_Key check on BootMgtGet(*) shall succeed for any key in the MADHeader:BtM_Key • BootMgtGetResp(BtM_KeyInfo) shall return the BtM_Key set to zero if MADHeader:BtM_Key does not match the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key. This prevents the BootManager from learning the BtM_Key of the platform. • BootMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:BtM_Key does not match the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key component of the platform.
non-zero	10b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any Boot Management MAD received at the port shall succeed if MADHeader:BtM_Key matches the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key component of the platform • BootMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any key in the MAD-Header:BtM_Key • BootMgtGet(*) and BootMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader: BtM_Key does not match the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key component of the platform.
non-zero	11b	Reserved

CA5-20: When the BtA receives a validated BootMgtGet() or BootMgtSet() and BtM_Key checking succeeds according to the rules specified in Table 8, "BtM_Key Check" on page 35, then the BtA shall generate a BootMgtGetResp().

CA5-21: The BtA shall perform the authentication determined by the contents of BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key and the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyProtectBits as per the behaviors described in [Table 431, "BtM_Key Check," on page 1465](#).

CA5-22: If BtM_Key check specified in [Table 431, "BtM_Key Check," on page 1465](#) fails, the BtA shall:

- 1) Silently drop the MAD.

- 2) Increment BtM_KeyViolations. Incrementing shall stop when the component reaches all 1s.
- 3) Send a Key Violation 0x0000 trap on all ports that have a non-zero ClassPortInfo:TrapLID if traps are supported by the BtA.
- 4) If Notice Queues are supported, a notice is posted into the Notice Queue.

CA5-23: The BootManager shall not check the MADHeader:BtM_Key in any received Boot Management class MAD.

When the BtA sends a MAD to the BootManager there is no requirement for the BootManager to do any type of key authentication. For simplicity and consistency, the MADHeader:BtM_Key is set to zero for all MADs issued by the BtA.

CA5-24: The BtA shall set MADHeader:BtM_Key to zero in all Boot Management MADs that it sends.

A5.6.2.4 BTM_KEY INITIALIZATION

CA5-25: At power-up, reset, or reboot, the BtM_Key, BtM_KeyProtectBits, and BtM_KeyLeasePeriod shall be set to zero if NVRAM is not used; otherwise, they shall be set to the values stored in NVRAM.

Using a BootMgtSet(BtM_KeyInfo), the BootManager may assign the subsequent BtM_Key, BtM_KeyProtectBits, and BtM_KeyLeasePeriod. Note that the BootManager must ensure that the lease period allows ample time for the BootManager to sweep the subnet to prevent the lease from expiring.

A5.6.2.5 BTM_KEY RECOVERY

The BtM_Key lease period timer starts when a BootManager sends the BtA a Boot Management class MAD whose BtM_Key fails the BtM_Key check. At this time, the booting platform sends a Key Violation trap to the BootManager (if traps are supported and if the BootManager stored its information in the trap components of the ClassPortInfo attribute). This trap serves as a request to the BootManager to refresh the lease period by issuing any MAD with a MADHeader:BtM_Key that matches the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key. The lease period timer is reset to the value contained in BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyLeasePeriod when any MAD is received with MADHeader:BtM_Key that matches the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key.

If the BootManager fails to send a MAD with the BtM_Key that matches BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key, then the lease period expires - clearing the BtM_KeyProtectBits to zero and allowing anyone to read (and then set) the BtM_Key.

In the case when a booting platform initializes using NVRAM (e.g. IsBtM_KeyNonVolatile=1b) then BtM_Key, BtM_KeyProtectBits, BtM_KeyLeasePeriod are set to the values in local-persistent storage. The TrapLID is reset to zero and waits for the BootManager to come around to set the TrapLid. If the port receives a MAD that fails the BtM_Key check and the TrapLid is reset then the booting platform can not determine the LID of the BootManager needed to send the trap. In this case, the booting platform does not send the trap and the lease period timer can expire, causing eventual take over by a new BootManager.

With the BootMgtGet(BtM_KeyInfo), any BootManager can detect whether the BtM_Key is set (although hidden) based on the BtM_KeyProtectBits. If the BtM_KeyProtectBits are non-zero, the BtM_Key is set and hidden. Otherwise, the returned BtM_Key is the real one even if it is zero. Failure to get a response after some number of attempts is an indication that the BtM_Key is set and BtM_KeyProtectBits = 10b.

A5.6.2.6 LEASE PERIOD

A Lease Period is specified by setting the contents of the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyLeasePeriod component. It is intended to allow a BtM_Key to 'expire' if the BootManager inadvertently goes away without sharing the BtM_Key with backup BootManagers.

CA5-26: The lease period timer shall start counting down toward zero when a Boot Management MAD is received for which the BtM_Key check was performed according to [Table 431, "BtM_Key Check," on page 1465](#) and failed. If the lease timer count is already underway, it shall not be interrupted by the arrival of that MAD.

Furthermore, if a port is capable of sending Boot Management traps, a Key Violation trap described in Table 442, "Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation," on page 1509 is sent to the BootManager indicating that the lease timer has started counting. In response to that trap, the BootManager may refresh the Lease Period. If a BootManager with the proper BtM_Key has gone away, the Lease Period may expire.

CA5-27: The lease period timer shall cease counting down and shall be reset to the value contained in BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyLeasePeriod component when any MAD is received with MADHeader:BtM_Key that matches the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_Key.

CA5-28: The BtA shall set its BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyProtectBits to zero when its lease period counter expires.

When the lease period expires, clearing the BtM_KeyProtectBits allow any BootManager to read (and then set) the BtM_Key.

CA5-29: When the BtM_KeyInfo:BtM_KeyLeasePeriod is set to zero, the lease period timer shall never expire.

Whether there is an out-of-band mechanism to reset data protected with a lease period of zero is outside the scope of the specification.

A5.6.3 PLATFORMBOOTINFO ATTRIBUTE

The BootManager informs the BtA of the desired behavior of the platform in order to assist in setting the booting policy of the subnet. The scope of this attribute is the booting platform. [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#) describes the format of the PlatformBootInfo attribute. The BootManager reads the booting platforms capabilities and current status by sending a BootMgtGet(PlatformBootInfo). This attribute also allows the BootManager to Set(PlatformBootInfo) components and therefore control the booting behavior of the platform.

Table 432 PlatformBootInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
Capability	RO	0	32 bits	<p>This component reports the capability of the Booting Platform</p> <p>0b indicates booting platform does not support the capability.</p> <p>1b indicates booting platform supports the capability.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• bit 0 - Extended Boot Environment - Booting platform is able to load code from a ROM Repository that extends the boot environment and/or BtA capability.• bit 1 - Proprietary Driver Load - The booting platform is able to load proprietary device drivers from a ROM Repository• bit 2 - IB Console Protocol - The boot environment supports this protocol• bit 3 - Proprietary Console Protocol - The boot environment supports a proprietary console protocol.• bit 4 - SRP Storage Protocol - The boot environment supports this protocol• bit 5 - Proprietary Storage Protocol - The boot environment supports a proprietary storage protocol• bit 6 - Network Boot-IB Network Model - The boot environment supports a proprietary network boot protocol (without LAN NIC) see A5.1.6 Network Boot Method on page 1446.• bit 7 - Network Boot- NIC Model - The boot environment supports a proprietary network boot protocol (with LAN NIC) see A5.1.6 Network Boot Method on page 1446.• bit 8 - BIS - Booting platform can boot from Locator Records provided by a BIS.• bit 9 - Persistent Boot - Booting platform can boot from Locator Record information located in local non-volatile storage.• bit 10 - Update ROM Locator Records - BtA can write persistent ROM Repository information located in local non-volatile storage• bit 11 - Update Console Locator Records - BtA can write persistent console information located in local non-volatile storage• bit 12 - Update OS Locator Records - BtA can write persistent OS locator information located in local non-volatile storage• bit 13 - Reserved• bit 14 - Immediate Reboot. This booting platform has the capability of initiating an Immediate reboot to the platform when the BtA receives a BootMgtSet(NodeReboot).• bit 15 - Graceful Reboot. This booting platform has the capability of initiating a Graceful reboot of the platform when the BtA receives a BootMgtSet(NodeReboot).• bit 16-31 - Reserved
reserved	RO	32	4-bits	reserved

Table 432 PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ROMRepositoryLocatorSource	R/W	36	4-bits	<p>This component indicates how and in what order the boot platform locates a ROM Repository to extend its boot environment. When Capability(0) = 0b and Capability(1) = 0b, then the only valid value is 0xF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 - BIS Only • 0x1 - BIS then Persistent • 0x2 - Persistent Only • 0x3 - Persistent then BIS • 0xF - Disable/No ROM Repository for expansion.
ConsoleLocatorSource	R/W	40	4-bits	<p>This component indicates how and in what order the boot platform locates a Console IOC or Server. When both Capability(2) = 0b and Capability(3) = 0b, then the only valid value is 0xF.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 - BIS Only • 0x1 - BIS then Persistent • 0x2 - Persistent Only • 0x3 - Persistent then BIS • 0xF - Disable/No console
OsLocatorSource	R/W	44	4-bits	<p>This component indicates how and in what order the boot platform locates an IOC and device containing its operating system loader for either storage or network booting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 - BIS Only • 0x1 - BIS then Persistent • 0x2 - Persistent Only • 0x3 - Persistent then BIS • 0xF - Disable/No OS boot loader
reserved	RO	48	8 bits	reserved
reserved	RO	56	6-bits	reserved
PlatformBootInfoSource	R/W	62	1-bit	<p>This component indicates if the booting platform will query BIS for PlatformBootInfo - A booting platform may obtain PlatformBootInfo from either a BIS or from persistent information saved locally on the platform.</p> <p>0b - The booting platform will query the BIS for PlatformBootInfo at the beginning of the boot process. This is the Default value</p> <p>1b - The booting platform will obtain PlatformBootInfo from Persistent storage.</p>
PortBootInfoSource	R/W	63	1-bit	<p>This component indicates if the booting platform will query BIS for PortBootInfo - A booting platform may obtain PortBootInfo from either a BIS or from persistent information saved on the platform.</p> <p>0b - The booting platform will query the BIS for PortBootInfo at the beginning of the boot process. This is the Default value</p> <p>1b - The booting platform will obtain PortBootInfo from Persistent storage.</p>
RomLocatorCount	RO	64	8 bits	This component specifies the number of ROM Repository Locator Records the booting platform can persistently save that point to a ROM Repository.

Table 432 PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ConsoleLocatorCount	RO	72	8 bits	This component specifies the number of Console Locator Records the booting platform can persistently save that point to a console device/service.
OsLocatorCount	RO	80	8 bits	This component specifies the number of OS Locator Records the booting platform can persistently save that point to a OS boot loader located on a device or provided as a service that points to a device or service that can access the OS boot loader.
reserved	RO	88	8 bits	reserved
DeletePersistentRecords	RW	96	8 bits	This component instructs the BtA to erase persistent Locator Records bit 0 - 1b erases all Persistent RomRepositoryLocatorRecords from use bit 1 - 1b erases all Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecords from use bit 2 - 1b erases all Persistent OsLocatorRecords from use bit 3-7 - Reserved and set to zero This component is set to zero in BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo)
reserved	RO	104	24 bits	reserved

Table 432

PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ExtendedBootProgress	RO	128	16 bits	<p>This component reports the status of a booting platform while attempting to load the extended boot environment. The ROM Repository is accessed when loading the extended boot environment.</p> <p>bit 0 - Not Attempted - Platform has not attempted to use the ROM Repository to extend the boot environment.</p> <p>bit 1 - In Progress - Platform will use the ROM Repository. This status bit is set when the platform either accesses the Persistent ROM Repository Locator Record or queries the SA for a path to the BIS in order to locate a ROM Repository.</p> <p>bit 2 - No ROM Repository Locator Record - Platform either does not have a ROM Repository Locator Record or one or more RomRepositoryLocatorRecords are invalid. Both local-persistent and BIS Locator Records, if supported, are included in this status bit.</p> <p>bit 3 - No Path Returned to ROM Repository (IOU not found) - Platform cannot locate an IOU specified by a RomRepositoryLocatorRecord</p> <p>bit 4 - ROM Repository not found on IOU - The IOU in the RomRepositoryLocatorRecord does not contain a ROM Repository.</p> <p>bit 5 - Cannot connect to ROM Repository - After repeated attempts, the platform cannot make an RC connection to the ROM Repository.</p> <p>bit 6 - ROM Repository image for Extension not found - A ROM Repository does not contain an Extended Boot Image suitable for the platform.</p> <p>bit 7:9 - Reserved and set to zeros</p> <p>bit 10 - ROM Repository protocol error - A protocol error was detected while connected to the ROM Repository causing the connection to be terminated.</p> <p>bit 11 - Reserved and set to zeros.</p> <p>bit 12 - Reserved and set to zeros.</p> <p>bit 13 - ROM Repository image invalid, corrupted or incompatible - A ROM Repository is corrupted or contains a corrupt image.</p> <p>bit 14 - Extension process complete and operational - The platform has successfully loaded the extended boot environment code. This status may be present even though other failures were detected. This can occur when multiple ROM Repositories are available.</p> <p>bit 15 - Reserved and set to zeros</p> <p>0x0000 - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report ExtendedBootProgress.</p> <p>0x0001 - Set to this value at reset (Not Attempted)</p>
Reserved	RO	144	8 bits	Reserved

Table 432

PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ExtendedBootState	RO	152	8 bits	<p>This component reports the state of a booting platform attempting to load the extended boot environment. The ROM Repository is accessed when loading the extended boot environment. This component reports the success or failure of the platform to extend its boot environment.</p> <p>0x00 - Set to this value at reset</p> <p>0x01 - In Progress - Platform has begun to load the extended boot environment and has not detected a failure.</p> <p>0x10 - Extended Boot Environment Failure - The booting platform has failed to boot the OS because the boot environment could not be extended.</p> <p>0x11 - Extended Boot Environment Failure - The booting platform has failed to load the desired extended boot environment. The non-extended boot environment is/was used to boot the OS.</p> <p>0xFE - Success - The platform is using the extended boot environment</p> <p>0xFF - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report ExtendedBootState.</p> <p>All other code points reserved</p>

Table 432

PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ConsoleBootProgress	RO	160	16 bits	<p>This component reports Console Boot Progress - The Console device or service is normally enabled as early as possible in the boot process. Extending the boot environment and loading Console device drivers may be a prerequisite for making a console connection.</p> <p>0x0001 - Set to this value at reset (Not Attempted)</p> <p>bit 0 - Not Attempted - Platform has not yet attempted to use the Console</p> <p>bit 1 - In Progress - Platform will use a Console device or service. This status bit is set when the platform either accesses the local-persistent ConsoleLocatorRecord or queries the SA for a path to the BIS in order to locate a console.</p> <p>bit 2 - No ConsoleLocatorRecord - Platform either does not have a ConsoleLocatorRecord or one or more ConsoleLocatorRecords are invalid. Both Local-Persistent and BIS Locator Records, if supported are include in this status bit.</p> <p>bit 3 - No Path Returned for Console (IOU or service not found)- Platform cannot access one or more Console targets because a Path Record was not returned from the SA.</p> <p>bit 4 - Console IOU or Server not found - The IOU or server identified by the ConsoleLocatorRecord is not responding to MADs.</p> <p>bit 5 - Console GUID/SID not found - The GUID/SID in the ConsoleLocatorRecord cannot be found.</p> <p>bit 6 - Cannot connect to Console - After repeated attempts, the platform cannot make an RC connection to the Console.</p> <p>bit 7 - Reserved and set to zero</p> <p>bit 8 - Console ProtocolName not found - ProtocolName not found in AdditionalInfo when ConsoleLocatorRecord:Protocol(7)=1b</p> <p>bit 9 - Console protocol not supported - The platform does not support the protocol used by the device or service.</p> <p>bit 10 - Console protocol error - A protocol error was detected while connected to the Console causing the connection to be terminated.</p> <p>bit 11 - Console Device Driver not found - The platform cannot locate a Console Device Driver suitable for this platform.</p> <p>bit 12 - Reserved and set to zeros</p> <p>bit 13 - Console Device Driver image invalid, corrupted or incompatible - The console device driver found in the ROM Repository is not usable.</p> <p>bit 14 - Console operational - The platform has successfully connected to the console device or service.</p> <p>bit 15 - Reserved and set to zeros</p> <p>0x0000 - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report Console Informational Status.</p> <p>0x0001 - Set to this value at reset (in Progress)</p>
Reserved	RO	176	8 bits	Reserved

Table 432

PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
ConsoleBootState	RO	184	8 bits	<p>This component reports Console Boot State - This component reports the success or failure of the platform to use the console.</p> <p>0x00 - Set to this value at reset</p> <p>0x01 - In Progress - Platform has begun to access the IB console and has not detected a failure.</p> <p>0x10 - Console Device Driver Load Failure - The platform could not locate a Device Driver for the console device or service - the platform will attempt to load the OS.</p> <p>0x11 - Boot Failure Console Device Driver - The platform has failed to boot the OS because the platform could not locate a Device Driver for the console device or service.</p> <p>0x20 - Console Failure - The platform has located a DD but failed to connect to a console - the platform will attempt to load the OS.</p> <p>0x21 - Boot Failure Console - The platform has located a DD but has failed to connect to a console - the platform will not attempt to load the OS.</p> <p>0xFE -Success - The platform is using the console</p> <p>0xFF - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report ConsoleBootState.</p> <p>All other code points reserved</p>

Table 432

PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
OSBootProgress	RO	192	16 bits	<p>This component reports the status of the platform's OS boot process.</p> <p>0x0001 - Set to this value at reset (Not Attempted)</p> <p>bit 0 - Not Attempted - Platform has not yet attempted to load the OS loader from the boot device or server.</p> <p>bit 1 - In Progress - This status is set when the platform either accesses the Local-Persistent OSLocatorRecords or queries the SA for a path to the BIS in order to locate the boot device.</p> <p>bit 2 - No OSLocatorRecord - Platform either does not have an OS Locator Record or one or more OS Locator Records are invalid. Both Local-Persistent and BIS Locator Records, if supported are include in this status bit.</p> <p>bit 3 - No Path Returned for Device/Service (IOU or service not found)- Platform cannot access one or more boot targets because a Path Record was not returned from the SA.</p> <p>bit 4 - OS Boot Device or Server not found - The device or server identified by an OsLocatorRecord cannot be found.</p> <p>bit 5 - locGUID/SID not found - The locGUID or SID in the OsLocatorRecord cannot be found.</p> <p>bit 6 - Cannot connect to OS Boot Target - After repeated attempts, the platform cannot make a connection to the Boot Target.</p> <p>bit 7 - Reserved and set to zero</p> <p>bit 8 - I/O ProtocolName not found - ProtocolName not found in AdditionalInfo when OsLocatorRecord:Protocol(7)=1b</p> <p>bit 9 - OS Device protocol Unknown - The platform does not support the protocol used by the device.</p> <p>bit 10 - OS Boot protocol error - A protocol error was detected while connected to the Boot target causing the connection to be terminated.</p> <p>bit 11 - OS Boot Device Driver not found - The platform cannot locate an OS Boot Device Driver suitable for this platform.</p> <p>bit 12 - OS Boot AdditionalInfo - Device in AdditionalInfo not found or AdditionalInfo invalid.</p> <p>bit 13 - OS Boot Device Driver image invalid, corrupted or incompatible - The console device driver found in the ROM Repository is corrupt.</p> <p>bit 14 - OS Boot Loader operational - The platform has successfully loaded the OS Boot Loader.</p> <p>bit 15 - Reserved and set to zeros</p> <p>0xFFFF - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report OSBootProgress.</p> <p>0x0001 - Set to this value at reset (in Progress)</p>
Reserved	RO	208	8 bits	Reserved

Table 432 PlatformBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
OSBootState	RO	216	8 bits	<p>This component reports the state of the platform in booting its OS. It reports the success or failure to locate an OS boot loader.</p> <p>0x00 - Set to this value at reset</p> <p>0x01 - In Progress - Platform has begun to access the OS boot loader and has not detected a failure.</p> <p>0x00 - Not Urgent - Platform has not detected an urgent error accessing the OS Loader. Set to this value at reset (in Progress)</p> <p>0x11 - OS Boot Failure Device Driver - The platform has failed to boot the OS because the platform could not locate a Device Driver for any of the boot devices.</p> <p>0x21 - OS Boot Failure, no Boot Loader - The platform has failed to locate any boot loader (i.e., IOU/IOC not present, no boot device, or no boot loader on boot device, etc.).</p> <p>0xFE - Success - The platform is using the boot device.</p> <p>0xFF - Disabled or Not Supported - This platform does not report OSBootState.</p> <p>All other code points reserved</p>
BootPlatformUUID	RO	224	128 bits	A 128-bit universally unique identifier (UUID) as defined by ISO/IEC 11578 that uniquely identifies the booting platform.
PlatformInfo	RO	352	1024 bits (128-Bytes)	A TLV encoded component containing multiple packed elements as described in A5.6.3.2 "PlatformInfo" on page 1479 .
Reserved	RO	1376	160	Reserved

CA5-30: A BtA shall report its Capability via the PlatformBootInfo attribute returned in the BootMgtGetResp method. See Capability in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

CA5-31: If PlatformBootInfo:Capability(10:12) is non-zero then the BtA shall persistently save the R/W components of PlatformBootInfo and Port-BootInfo in non-volatile storage.

CA5-32: If the BtA does not support BootMgtSet(PlatformBootInfo) or BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo) then the BtA shall return MAD>Status(2:4) = 0x3 in the response of the request.

oA5-8: If the booting platform attempts to locate a ROM repository using Local-Persistent ROMRepositoryLocatorRecords, it shall use them in the order specified by their AttributeModifier.

1 **oA5-9:** If the booting platform attempts to locate a Console using Local-
2 Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecords, it shall use them in the order speci-
3 fied by their AttributeModifier.

4 **oA5-10:** If the booting platform attempts to locate an OS boot loader
5 using Local-Persistent OsLocatorRecords, it shall use them in the order
6 specified by their AttributeModifier.

7 **oA5-11:** A BtA shall report the number of RomRepositoryLocatorRecords
8 it can save in non-volatile storage by returning the count of locator records
9 in BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:RomLocatorCount).

10 **oA5-12:** A BtA shall report the number of ConsoleLocatorRecords it can
11 save in non-volatile storage by returning the count of locator records in
12 BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:ConsoleLocatorCount).

13 **oA5-13:** A BtA shall report the number of OsLocatorRecords it can save
14 in non-volatile storage by returning the count of locator records in Boot-
15 MgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:OsLocatorCount).

A5.6.3.1 BootPLATFORMUUID

The BtA uniquely identifies a booting platform by its BootPlatformUUID. The 128-bit UUID was selected over a 64-bit GUID (EUI-64) because it can be generated easily by software, which de-couples the boot environment from any particular hardware. For example, it removes the necessity for a hardware serial number to be machine readable. Software generation is also advantageous for retrofit and field upgrades in machines that are not specifically designed for InfiniBand. A BootManager does not need to interpret the BootPlatformUUID, but rather uses it as an opaque value to match with locator records assigned to that BootPlatformUUID.

CA5-33: The booting platform shall provide a persistent UUID in Platform-
BootInfo:BootPlatformUUID that uniquely identifies the booting platform.

oA5-14: If a booting platform supports BIS, then the booting platform shall provide a persistent BootPlatformUUID in the BisQuery() that uniquely identifies the booting platform. The UUID in the BIS query shall be the same value reported in the BtMGetResp(PlatformBootInfo).

A5.6.3.2 PLATFORMINFO

The BootPlatformUUID is a component that a BootManager uses to identify a booting platform. The PlatformInfo component is intended as supplemental information to identify those characteristics of a booting platform that may influence the set of locator records selected for the booting platform.

Elements in PlatformInfo are in TLV format. The first byte is the Type, the second byte is the Length (number of bytes in the value string), and the remainder of the element is the value string, in UTF-8 format. Type codes are specified in Table 433. The PlatformInfo component contains a variable number of variable length elements and is terminated with the null value (0x00). All bytes after the termination byte should also be null bytes.

Each respective booting platform vendor is responsible for defining its own value string definition. For instance the Platform vendor defines unique values for each of its products and firmware vendor defines unique values for each of its products. An element with a Length of zero means that the booting platform does not know the value for that element.

The recommended practice is for the booting platform to order elements by their Type value, lowest to highest.

Table 433 PlatformInfo Elements

Type Value	Length Value	Description (All strings are in UTF-8 and the content of each element is vendor specific)
0x00	0x00	Marks end of elements - ignore remainder of component data following this Type code
0x01	variable	Platform Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the vendor that manufactured the booting platform.
0x02	variable	Platform Vendor Model/Type String This string provides the model and type of the booting platform.
0x03	variable	Platform Serial Number String This string provides the serial number of the booting platform.
0x04	variable	Firmware Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the firmware vendor that manufactured the boot environment code (e.g., BIOS vendor.).
0x05	variable	Firmware Version String This string provides the version of the firmware code.
0x06	variable	CPU Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the CPU vendor
0x07	variable	CPU Vendor Version String This string provides the CPU version, stepping, etc.
0x08	variable	Platform Name String This string provides the local name assigned the booting platform - usually assigned by the System Administrator to identify the platform by name.
0x09	variable	OS Name String This string provides the name of the preferred Operating System.

A5.6.3.3 BOOTING PLATFORM CAPABILITY

Platform vendors provide BtAs with varying degrees of functionality. The booting platform's Capability component in PlatformBootInfo reports the functionality of the BtA to the BootManager. See [Table 432](#).

A5.6.3.3.1 EXTENDED BOOT ENVIRONMENT

A 1b returned in PlatformBootInfo:Capability(0)) indicates that the boot environment can be expanded by loading additional code from a ROM Repository.

Each vendor that desires to expand its boot environment using the ROM Repository should test the repository Image Descriptor (see [A5.12.8 "IMAGE Descriptor" on page 1543](#)). It is expected that each platform vendor checks the ImageAuthority component in the Image Descriptor for an ImageAuthority and ImageType recognized by the boot environment of the booting platform. Other checks such as validating the content of the image may also be necessary. For more information on using the ROM Repository see [A5.12 "ROM Repository" on page 1533](#).

A5.6.3.3.2 PROPRIETARY DRIVER LOAD

Capability(1)) indicates that the booting platform has the capability of loading proprietary drivers. Proprietary Driver Load is a method or process to load Storage, Network, and/or Console device drivers from another node (e.g the ROM Repository) into the booting platform. This allows the I/O subsystem to deliver the boot platform code (3rd party drivers) enabling devices, services, and protocols present within the IB fabric. This firmware is typically dependent on the HW-platform (BIOS, IEEE1275, EFI, etc.) when loading code for the boot environment and also OS dependant when loading code for the OS (i.e. the driver is specific to the OS). When the booting platform is booting from a device, the platform may search for the ROM Repository on the same IOU that contains the IOC, or may use a centralized ROM Repository³⁶. If the booting platform is booting from a boot service or if the correct device driver is not found, then the platform should search the ROM repositories pointed to by the RomRepositoryLocatorRecord(s).

A5.6.3.3.3 PROTOCOLS SUPPORTED

Capability(0:7) indicates that the booting platform supports particular protocols.

- Capability(0) or Capability(1) indicates that the booting platform supports the IB ROM Repository protocol described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

36. Console and OS Locator Records contains a component (DeviceDriverLocation) that informs the booting platform of which repository to search first.

- Capability(2) indicates that the booting platform supports the IB Console protocol described in [Annex A2: Console Service Protocol on page 1308](#).
- Capability(3) indicates that the booting platform supports a proprietary Console protocol the details of which are outside the scope of IBA.
- Capability(4) indicates that the booting platform supports the SRP Storage protocol described in [Annex A1: I/O Infrastructure on page 1289](#).
- Capability(5) indicates that the booting platform supports a proprietary Storage protocol the details of which are outside the scope of IBA.
- Capability(6) indicates that the booting platform supports a Network protocol that uses a LAN NIC.
- Capability(7) indicates that the booting platform supports a Network protocol that does not use a LAN NIC. The details of which are outside the scope of IBA (see [Section 5.1.6, "Network Boot Method." on page 1446](#)).

A5.6.3.3.4 BOOT RESOLUTION METHODS SUPPORTED

There are two sources for locator records, Local-Persistent storage or BIS. Local-Persistent Locator Records are saved in non-volatile storage on the booting platform. Local-Persistent Locator Records can be set using Boot Management attributes. BIS records are provided by a BIS service when the service is queried by the booting platform.

- Capability(8) indicates that the boot platform can query the BIS using BIS class MADs and use the BIS Locator Records returned for locating a ROM Repository, a console and a boot device.
- Capability(9) indicates that the booting platform can use Local-Persistent Locator Records located locally in non-volatile storage.

CA5-34: A BtA that supports the Local-Persistent Locator Records (Capability(9)) shall have the capability to read all RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, ConsoleLocatorRecords, and OSLocatorRecords in non-volatile storage.

oA5-15: A booting platform whose BtA sets Capability(8) shall have the capability to query the BIS for RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecords, OSLocatorRecords, PlatformBootInfo, and PortBootInfo attributes.

A5.6.3.3.5 UPDATE LOCATOR RECORDS SUPPORTED

Capability(10) indicates that the BtA has write access to Local-Persistent Locator Records pointing to the ROM Repository.

1
2
3
4
oA5-16: A BtA that supports Update ROM Locator Records, Capability(10) = 1b, shall have the capability to save RomLocatorCount RomRepositoryLocatorRecords in non-volatile storage across power cycles and RomLocatorCount shall be greater than zero. A 0b indicates that the booting platform does not have this capability.

5
6
7
Capability(11) indicates that the BtA has write access to Local-Persistent
Locator Records pointing to the Console object.

8
9
10
oA5-17: A BtA that supports Update Console Locator Records, Capability(11) = 1b shall have the capability to save ConsoleLocatorCount ConsoleLocatorRecords in non-volatile storage across power cycles and ConsoleLocatorCount shall be greater than zero. A 0b indicates that the booting platform does not have this capability.

11
12
13
Capability(12) indicates that the BtA has write access to Local-Persistent
Locator Records pointing to the OS boot loader.

14
15
16
oA5-18: A BtA that supports Update OS Boot Locator Records, Capability(12) = 1b shall have the capability to save OsLocatorCount OsLocatorRecords in non-volatile storage across power cycles and OsLocatorCount shall be greater than zero. A 0b indicates that the booting platform does not have this capability.

A5.6.3.4 Boot RECORD LOCATOR SOURCES

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
The ROMRepositoryLocatorSource, ConsoleLocatorSource, and OsLocatorSource components inform the booting platform of the Locator Record sources (Local-Persistent or BIS) to use when booting. Each locator selects the boot resolution method used and the order in which the method shall be used. BIS can only be used if Capability(8) = 1b. Local-Persistent can only be used if Capability(9) = 1b. These attributes can be set by the BootManager or the booting platform can query the BIS (see BisQuery in [Annex A6: Boot Information Service on page 1570](#)).

31
32
33
34
35
The component encode determines if either BIS or Local-Persistent methods should be used and if both are used which is attempted first.

ROMRepositoryLocatorSource

36
37
38
39
40
41
When the ROMRepositoryLocatorSource contains a 0x0 or 0x1 the booting platform will query the BIS to determine the location of a ROM Repository when required to expand the boot environment or access Proprietary drivers. When the ROMRepositoryLocatorSource contains a 0x3 the booting platform will query the BIS only if necessary after using RomRepositoryLocatorRecords saved in non-volatile storage.

When the ROMRepositoryLocatorSource contains a 0x2 or 0x3 the booting platform will use the Local-Persistent RomRepositoryLocatorRecords to determine the location of the Repository. When the ROMRepositoryLocatorSource contains a 0x1 the booting platform will use Local-Persistent RomRepositoryLocatorRecords only if necessary after querying the BIS.

ConsoleLocatorSource

When the ConsoleLocatorSource contains a 0x0 or 0x1 the booting platform will query the BIS to determine the location of the Console device or service. When the ConsoleLocatorSource contains a 0x3 the booting platform will query the BIS only if necessary after using Local-Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecords saved in non-volatile storage.

When the ConsoleLocatorSource contains a 0x2 or 0x3 the booting platform will use the Local-Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecords to determine the location of the Console device or service. When the ConsoleLocatorSource contains a 0x1 the booting platform will use Local-Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecords only if necessary after querying the BIS.

OsLocatorSource

The OsLocatorSource is a way that a booting platform selects services and IOCs. Specifically, a mechanism by which a booting platform can resolve or select a set of Locator Records that the booting platform uses to find a Boot Device or a Boot Service.

When the OsLocatorSource contains a 0x0 or 0x1 the booting platform will query the BIS for OsLocatorRecords. When the OsLocatorSource contains a 0x3 the booting platform will query the BIS only if necessary after using Local-Persistent OsLocatorRecords saved in non-volatile storage.

When the OsLocatorSource contains a 0x2 or 0x3 the booting platform will use its Local-Persistent OsLocatorRecords. When the OSLocatorSource contains a 0x1 the booting platform will use Local-Persistent OsLocatorRecords only if necessary after querying the BIS.

oA5-19: If the boot platform supports RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, then the platform shall use PlatformBootInfo:RomRepositoryLocatorSource to determine the method to use to locate the ROM Repository.

oA5-20: If the boot platform supports ConsoleLocatorRecords, then the platform shall use PlatformBootInfo:ConsoleLocatorSource to determine the method to use to locate the Console.

oA5-21: If the boot platform supports OsLocatorRecords, then the platform shall use PlatformBootInfo:OsLocatorSource to determine the method to use to locate the OS loader.

1 **oA5-22:** The BtA shall set MAD>Status(2:4) to 0x3 in the response if a
2 BootMgtSet(PlatformBootInfo) attempts to Set() a component to an un-
3 supported value inconsistent with PlatformBootInfo:Capability.

4 **oA5-23:** If PlatformBootInfo:OsLocatorSource is set to 0xF then the plat-
5 form shall not boot from the IB fabric.

6 A BootManager would set PlatformBootInfo:OsLocatorSource to 0xF
7 while updating OsLocatorSource records so that if the platform re-booted
8 while the Boot manager is updating OsLocatorRecords the OsLocatorRe-
9 cords would not be used as a pointer to the OS boot loader.

10 **oA5-24:** If PlatformBootInfo:ConsoleLocatorSource is set to 0xF then the
11 platform shall not access the console over the IB fabric.

12 **oA5-25:** If PlatformBootInfo:RomRepositoryLocatorSource is set to 0xF
13 then the platform shall not use RomRepositoryLocatorRecord to locate a
14 ROM Repository.

15 When a booting platform has multiple ports on multiple subnets or multiple
16 partitions then multiple BootManagers may share the platform BtM_Key.
17 To keep each BootManager informed of changes to Locator Records, a
18 Trap is issued out all ports that have a non-zero ClassPortInfo:TrapID-
19 when any Locator Record is modified.

A5.6.3.5 RECORD COUNT

20 The BtA reports the number of Local-Persistent Locator Records capable
21 of being persistently saved by the platform for each of the 3 types of Local-
22 Persistent locator records, namely RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, Con-
23 soleLocatorRecord, and OsLocatorRecord.

24 A non-zero count returned in RomLocatorCount, ConsoleLocatorCount,
25 or OsLocatorCount indicates that the booting platform has the ability to
26 persistently save count number of Local-Persistent Locator Records
27 across power cycles.

28 **oA5-26:** BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:RomLocatorCount) shall in-
29 dicate the number of RomRepositoryLocatorRecords the platform can
30 persistently store. A 0x00 indicates that the platform can not save any
31 RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.

32 **oA5-27:** BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:ConsoleLocatorCount) shall
33 indicate the number of ConsoleLocatorRecords the platform can persi-
34 stently store. A 0x00 indicates that the platform can not save any Console-
35 LocatorRecords.

oA5-28: BootMgtGetResp(PlatformBootInfo:OsLocatorCount) shall indicate the number of OsLocatorRecords the platform can persistently store. A 0x00 indicates that the platform can not save any OsLocatorRecords.

oA5-29: A BtA shall set MAD:Status(2:4) to 0x3 in BootMgtGetResp() when it receives a Set(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) and the AttributeModifier is equal to or greater than the number of RomRepositoryLocatorRecords indicated in PortBootInfo:RomLocatorCount.

oA5-30: A BtA shall set MAD:Status(2:4) to 0x3 in BootMgtGetResp() when it receives a Set(ConsoleLocatorRecord) and the AttributeModifier is equal to or greater than the number of ConsoleLocatorRecords indicated in PortBootInfo:ConsoleLocatorCount.

oA5-31: A BtA shall set MAD:Status(2:4) to 0x3 in BootMgtGetResp(Get-Resp) when it receives a Set(OsLocatorRecord) and the AttributeModifier is equal to or greater than the number of OsLocatorRecords indicated in PortBootInfo:OsLocatorCount.

The BootManager erases individual persistent locator records by issuing a BootMgtSet() specifying the attribute (RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecord, or OsLocatorRecord), the AttributeModifier to indicate the slot, and setting the BootMgtData component to zero.

The BtA shall not use a LocatorRecord containing all zero's (i.e. skips this record when booting).

The BtA may report non-initialized, invalid, or otherwise unusable Local-Persistent locator records by setting the BootMgtData component to zero in the BootMgtGetResp() of a RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecord, or OsLocatorRecord read.

CA5-35: The BtA shall return RomRepositoryLocatorRecord in the BootMgtGetResp() with BootMgtData of the MAD(64:256) equal to all zeros (see [Figure 284 "Boot Management MAD" on page 1454](#)) when the locator record specified by the AttributeModifier has never been initialized, has been erased, or is otherwise unusable.

CA5-36: The BtA shall return ConsoleLocatorRecord in the BootMgtGetResp() with BootMgtData of the MAD(64:256) equal to all zeros (see [Figure 284 "Boot Management MAD" on page 1454](#)) when the locator record specified by the AttributeModifier has never been initialized, has been erased, or is otherwise unusable.

CA5-37: The BtA shall return OsLocatorRecord in the BootMgtGetResp() with BootMgtData of the MAD(64:256) equal to all zeros (see [Figure 284 "Boot Management MAD" on page 1454](#)) when the locator record speci-

fied by the AttributeModifier has never been initialized, has been erased, or is otherwise unusable.

A5.6.3.6 DELETING PERSISTENT RECORDS

When a configuration change affects the booting policy the BootManager may need to erase Locator Records on a booting platform. This component allows the BootManager to erase all the Local-Persistent Locator Records on a booting platform or just a particular type.

oA5-32: If PlatformBootInfo:Capability(10) is 1b and the BtA receives a Set(PlatformBootInfo) with DeletePersistentRecords(0) set to 1b then the BtA shall erase all RomRepositoryLocatorRecord's from non-volatile storage.

oA5-33: If PlatformBootInfo:Capability(11) is 1b and the BtA receives a Set(PlatformBootInfo) with DeletePersistentRecords(1) set to 1b then the BtA shall erase all ConsoleLocatorRecord's from non-volatile storage.

oA5-34: . If PlatformBootInfo:Capability(12) is 1b and the BtA receives a Set(PlatformBootInfo) with DeletePersistentRecords(2) set to 1b then the BtA shall erase all OsLocatorRecord's from non-volatile storage.

A5.6.3.7 STATUS COMPONENTS

The Status components allows the BtA to report multi-step operations when extending the boot environment, making a console connection, or accessing the OS boot loader. There are 2 status categories, boot progress and boot state. The status components in PlatformBootInfo are especially useful when a booting platform does not support Traps.

The informational progress components (ExtendedBootProgress, ConsoleBootProgress, OSBootProgress) report failures while processing one or more Locator Records. Once a bit comes on, it stays on until the platform resets or reboots.

The BootState components (ExtendedBootState, ConsoleBootState, OSBootState) report severe failures in which the platform no longer attempts to use the ROM Repository, the Console, or load the OS. Once an error code is set it stays set until the platform resets.

ExtendedBootProgress - This status component allows the BtA to report the status of the platforms attempt to expand its boot environment. ExtendedBootProgress is set to 0x0001 at power on reset or reboot. If the platform will expand its boot environment, the BtA sets this ExtendedBootProgress(1) - In Progress. All other bits in ExtendedBootProgress are described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

ExtendedBootState - This status component allows the BtA to report the results of the platforms attempt to expand its boot environment using one or more Locator Records. The ExtendedBootState component is described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

ConsoleBootProgress - This status component allows the BtA to report the status of the platforms attempt make a connection to a console. ConsoleBootProgress is set to 0x0001 at power on reset or reboot. If the platform uses an IB console during boot, the BtA sets this ExtendedBootProgress(1) - In Progress. All other bits in ConsoleBootProgress are described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

ConsoleBootState - This status component allows the BtA to report the results of the platforms attempt to connect to a Console using one or more Locator Records. The ConsoleBootProgress component is described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

OSBootProgress - This status component allows the BtA to report the status of the platforms attempt load the OS loader from a boot device. OSBootProgress is set to 0x0001 at power on reset or reboot. If the platform uses an IB OSLocatorRecord during boot, the BtA sets this OSBootProgress(1) - In Progress. All other bits in ConsoleBootProgress are described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

OSBootState - This status component allows the BtA to report the results of the platforms attempt to load the OS loader onto the boot platform using one or more Locator Records. The OSBootState component is described in [Table 432 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1470](#).

A5.6.4 PORTBOOTINFO ATTRIBUTE

Components in this attribute have a port scope and indicate the relative priority of the port in locating a BIS, ROM Repository, Console, and an OS boot loader. In addition, three time-out components determine the minimum amount of time the booting platform should spend attempting to find or make a connection.

[Table 434](#) describes the format of the PortBootInfo attribute. PortBootInfo attribute allows the BootManager to set the port time-out value and port priorities with respect to other ports on the same booting platform. Time-outs are used so the boot environment can determine the maximum amount of time it should take to make a connection to a device or service through the port and the minimum time the booting platform should continue to attempt making a connection.

Table 434 PortBootInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BISPortPriority	R/W	0	2-bits	<p>This component indicates the priority of this port to locate the BIS managing locator records used for booting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 10b is medium priority• 01b is the lowest and the default• 00b indicates that this port should not be used to query the BIS.
RomPortPriority	R/W	2	2-bits	<p>This component indicates the priority of this port to locate the RomRepository using RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 10b is medium priority• 01b is the lowest and the default• 00b indicates that this port should not be used to locate the RomRepository.
ConsolePortPriority	R/W	4	2-bits	<p>This component indicates the priority of this port to locate the Console using ConsoleLocatorRecords.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 10b is medium priority• 01b is the lowest and the default• 00b indicates that this port should not be used to locate the Console.
locPortPriority	R/W	6	2-bits	<p>This component indicates the priority of this port to locate an I/O unit containing the IOC specified by an OsLocatorRecord.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 10b is medium priority• 01b is the lowest and the default• 00b indicates that this port should not be used to locate OS boot loader

Table 434 PortBootInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
NetworkBootPortPriority	R/W	8	2-bits	<p>This component indicates the priority of this port when attempting an IB network boot (see A5.1.6 on page 1446).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 11b is the highest priority • 10b is medium priority • 01b is the lowest and the default • 00b indicates that this port should not be used for IB Network booting
reserved	RO	10	22-bits	reserved
InitTimeout	R/W	32	16-bits	<p>The amount of time (in 100 msec increments) from power on reset that the booting platform allows for subnet resources to become operational.</p> <p>The factory default is ~2 min. = 0x04b0. This allows sufficient time for the IOU or services to become active and to prevent this booting platform from timing out too early and moving on to the next Locator Record.</p>
BisTimeout	R/W	48	16-bits	<p>Specifies the maximum amount of time (100 mSec increments) from power on reset that a BIS takes to become operational.</p> <p>The factory default is ~2 min. = 0x04b0. This allows sufficient time for the BIS to become active and to prevent this booting platform from timing out too early and moving on to the next BIS.</p>
EndNodeTimeout	R/W	64	16-bits	<p>The period of time the booting platform allows an endnode to respond to the first MAD. The booting platform continues to retry the MAD until EndNodeTimeout has expired or the endnode become operational. Each endnode the booting platform sends a MAD to is allowed EndNodeTimeout period of time to respond to the MAD before the booting platform determines the endnode unreachable. The time-out is specified in 100 mSec increments.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0000 = 0 mS - Endnodes require no additional time to become operational • 0x0001 = 100 mS = default • 0x0002-0xFFFF = Additional valid time-out values <p>Once an endnode responds, the booting platform no longer has to retry waiting for the endnode to become operational.</p>
Reserved	RO	80	182 Bytes	Reserved

CA5-38: Every port shall have an InitTimeout parameter whose factory default is 0x04b0.

InitTimeout may be configured locally by a system administrator and can be set by the BootManager when the platform contains a BtA that supports BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo).

oA5-35: If the booting platform supports BIS, then every port shall have a BisTimeout parameter whose factory default is 0x04b0.

BisTimeout may be configured locally by a system administrator and can be set by the BootManager when the platform contains a BtA that supports BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo).

oA5-36: If BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo) is supported, the BtA shall persistently save the values of all PortBootInfo R/W components in non-volatile storage.

oA5-37: If BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo) is supported, the booting platform shall use BootMgtSet(PortBootInfo) component values only on the port in which the MAD was received.

oA5-38: If the Platform supports BIS then the platform shall attempt to query the BIS for Locator Records through ports in their PortBootInfo:BIS-PortPriority order. If PortBootInfo:BISPortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to query the BIS through this port.

CA5-39: When the Platform uses RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, then the platform shall attempt to access the RomRepository through ports in their PortBootInfo:RomPortPriority order. If PortBootInfo:RomPortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to access the RomRepository through that port.

oA5-39: If the Platform supports the IB Console then the platform shall attempt to access the IB Console using Locator Records through ports in their PortBootInfo:ConsolePortPriority order. If PortBootInfo:ConsolePortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to access the IB Console through this port.

oA5-40: If the Platform supports booting over IB (e.g. Capability(4:7) is non-zero) then the platform shall attempt to access the OS boot loader, through an IOC using Locator Records through ports in their PortBootInfo:locPortPriority order. If PortBootInfo:locPortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to access the OS boot loader through this port.

oA5-41: If the platform supports Capability(6), IB Network Boot, then the booting platform shall attempt network booting through ports in their PortBootInfo:NetworkBootPortPriority order. The booting platform shall not attempt an IB Network Boot through a port that has a PortBootInfo:NetworkBootPortPriority of zero.

oA5-42: The booting platform shall allow at least InitTimeout amount of time for all subnet resources to become operational. The period of time

begins at the last power on reset and extends for InitTimeout period measured in 100 mSec increments.

oA5-43: The booting platform shall allow at least BisTimeout amount of time for a BIS to become operational. The period of time begins at the last power on reset and extends for BisTimeout period measured in 100 mSec increments.

oA5-44: The booting platform shall allow at least EndNodeTimeout amount of time for an endnode to become operational. The period of time begins when the 1st MAD is sent to the particular end node and extends for EndNodeTimeout period measured in 100 mSec increments.

A5.6.4.1 BisPortPriority

BIS Port priority notifies the BtA of which port it is more likely to find a BIS that can supply ROM Repository, Console, and OS Locator Records. This component is useful when a booting platform attaches to multiple subnets.

A5.6.4.2 RomPortPriority

RomPortPriority identifies which ports are more likely to find the RomRepository. This component is useful when the booting platform attaches to multiple subnets. When the booting platform processes a RomRepositoryLocatorRecord then the booting platform should access the RomRepository through the port with the highest priority first. If that fails, the booting platform proceeds with lower priority ports in priority order. When multiple ports have the same priority, the booting platform may select the port in any order relative to the ports that have this same priority.

A5.6.4.3 ConsolePortPriority

ConsolePortPriority identifies which ports are more likely to find the Console. This component is useful when the booting platform attaches to multiple subnets. When the booting platform processes a ConsoleLocatorRecord then the booting platform should access the Console through the port with the highest priority first. If that fails, the booting platform proceeds with lower priority ports in priority order. When multiple ports have the same priority, the booting platform may select the port in any order relative to the ports that have this same priority.

A5.6.4.4 LocPortPriority

LocPortPriority identifies which ports are more likely to find the IOC from which to load the OS boot loader. This component is useful when the booting platform attaches to multiple subnets. When the booting platform processes a OsLocatorRecord then the booting platform should access the OS boot loader through the port with the highest priority first. If that fails, the booting platform proceeds with lower priority ports in priority order. When multiple ports have the same priority, the booting platform

may select the port in any order relative to the ports that have this same priority.

A5.6.4.5 NETWORKBOOTPORTPRIORITY

NetworkBootPortPriority identifies which ports are more likely to find the IB Network boot server. This component is useful when the booting platform attaches to multiple subnets. When the booting platform processes a OsLocatorRecord then the booting platform should access the OsLocatorRecord through the port with the highest priority first. If that fails, the booting platform proceeds with lower priority ports in priority order. When multiple ports have the same priority, the booting platform may select the port in any order relative to the ports that have this same priority.

A5.6.4.6 TIME-OUTS

Three components provide the booting platform with time-out values used in determining how much time a platform should wait for subnet resources (InitTimeout), the BIS (BisTimeout) and end nodes (EndNodeTimeout) to become operational.

A5.6.4.6.1 INITTIMEOUT AND BISTIMEOUT

Determining the amount of time after power-on-reset to contact an end-node providing a boot device, console, or BIS service is the role of the InitTimeout and BisTimeout values. Each time-out specifies the minimum amount of time in 100 mSec increments (approximately 109 minutes max.). The booting platform waits at least this period of time before making the determination that the node is not available. The timer begins at power on reset of the booting platform and unconditionally counts. The BootManager should set this value to the maximum amount of time it takes for IOUs or Services to become operational and accept requests from booting platforms.

When the booting platform is connecting to a device or console service, the platform continues trying to connect to the IOC/Service for at least the period of time listed in InitTimeout before declaring that the IOC or service is not operational through this port.

If the booting platform queries the BIS, then the platform continues to query the BIS for at least the period of time listed in BisTimeout before declaring that the BIS is not operational through this port.

The InitTimeout value allows sufficient time for the all IOCs or services to become available to the booting platform.

For BIS, the time-out value provides sufficient time for the BIS Service to boot itself, register with the SA, and become available on the subnet.

Generally, a booting platform attempts to communicate with an endnode for booting. If the platform cannot communicate with the endnode, time-out values are used, and only then is the Free Running Timer compared against the time-out value. This allows booting platforms to make progress as soon as the resource becomes available on the network. Once the time-out value has been reached, the BtA tries to use each Locator Record in priority order with zero tolerance for “no path” reported by the SA. That is, once the SA reports “no path” the BtA moves on to the next port and then the next Locator record.

oA5-45: The boot platform shall contain a Free Running Timer that is initialized at power on reset and counts time unconditionally.

oA5-46: If the booting platform supports Traps, the platform shall issue a BootReport Trap when a failure listed in [Table 444 on page 1511](#) occurs.

oA5-47: If the booting platform supports Notices, it shall post a BootReport notice when a failure listed in [Table 444 on page 1511](#) occurs.

There may be a need to update time-out values periodically as fabric response times slow down due to scaling factors, such as increasing the number of platforms booting from the same IOU. As the number of booting platforms sharing resources increases, it is expected that booting will take longer. As it takes longer to boot it may be undesirable that a booting platform time-out value is reached due to subnet scaling issues. There are many ways of calculating the correct timer values and preventing the timers from expiring. One might be the BootManager periodically adjusting the value of the timers as a simple function of the number of platforms booting from the same IOU.

A5.6.4.6.2 ENDNODETIMEOUT

Some nodes needed to boot a platform may not be able to respond to MADs immediately upon receiving a MAD. This may be due to the CA being in a powered down state or any other state that might not allow the target node to respond to a MAD.

When the booting platform is connecting to a device or service, then the platform continues trying to connect IOC/Service for at least the period of time listed in EndNodeTimeout before declaring that the IOC or service is not operational through this port. Unlike BisTimeout and InitTimeout, each target (not just the first) is given at least this much time to respond.

oA5-48: The booting platform shall continue to retry MADs sent to target nodes for a period of time defined in EndNodeTimeout or the node has generated a response.

oA5-49: If Traps are supported the booting platform shall issue Trap 0x0110 during boot if the platform does not receive a Response to a MAD

Request in the period specified in section [13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts on page 791](#) and the platform has given up retrying the MAD.

oA5-50: If Notices are supported the booting platform shall post notice 0x0110 during boot if the platform does not receive a Response to a MAD Request in the period specified in section [13.4.6.2 Timers and Timeouts on page 791](#) and the platform has given up retrying the MAD.

A5.6.5 PERSISTENT LOCATOR RECORDS

The BootManager can Get() and optionally Set() Local-Persistent LocatorRecords. When a BootManager does a Set() to OsLocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecord, or RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, then the BtA saves the record persistently. The BtA indicates which Locator Records that the booting platform supports and whether the BootManager can modify them in the PlatformBootInfo:Capability component (see [A5.6.3 "PlatformBootInfo Attribute" on page 1469](#)). The booting platform uses the Locator Records the next time the platform boots using Local-Persistent Locator Records. The BootManager can determine the current set of persistent Locator Records of a booting platform by issuing Get()s to that platform's BtA Locator Record attributes.

There are 3 Local-Persistent Locator Record types:

- ROM Repository - Pointer to the ROM Repository
- Console - Pointer to the Console
- OS - Pointer to the OS boot loader

Each booting platform saves Persistent Locator Records in slots. The number of slots available per record type is defined by the Platform-BootInfo Capability and Count components. Slot numbers can range from 0 to 255 with slot 0 being the highest priority and 255 the lowest. The AttributeModifier component in the MAD header serves as an index to the slot. For example, BootMgtSet(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) with AttributeModifier=0 writes slot 0 of the RomRepositoryLocatorRecord. AttributeModifier=1 writes slot 1 of the RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, and so on. AttributeModifier is used for both Set() and Get() to the RomRepositoryLocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecord, and OsLocatorRecord attributes.

Table 435 RomRepositoryLocatorRecord Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
Reserved	RO	0	16-Bytes	Reserved

Table 435 RomRepositoryLocatorRecord Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
PortGID	R/W	128	16-Bytes	Port GID for the IOU
Reserved	RO	256	160-Bytes	Reserved

Table 436 ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
Reserved	RO	0	8-bits	Reserved
Device-Service	R/W	8	1-bit	Indicates if this record describes a Console Device or Server: 0b = this record describes an Console device 1b = this record describes a Console server
DeviceDriverLocation	R/W	9	2-bits	Provides information on the search order to locate a Device Driver supporting this Console: 00b = Search only the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC 01b = First search the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC then use the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords 10b = First search the ROM Repository pointed to by the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords then use the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC 11b = Search only the ROM Repository pointed to by the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords
Reserved	RO	11	5-bits	Reserved
Protocol	R/W	16	8-bits	Identifies the console protocols supported by the console device or service: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x00 = unknownotherwise bit specific where:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• bit 0 - proprietary protocol• bit 1 - IBTA Console protocol (refer to Annex A2: Console Service Protocol on page 1308)• bits 2-6 are reserved and set to zero• bit 7 -Use any ProtocolName specified by a Protocol-Name element in the AdditionalInfo component.
Reserved	RO	24	5-Bytes	Reserved

Table 436 **ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute (Continued)**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
locGUID-SID	R/W	64	8-Bytes	GUID of the I/O controller or ServiceID of the service depending on setting of the Device-Service component <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If Device-Service = 0b (console IOC), then this is the locGUID. • If Device-Service = 1b (server process), then this is the ServiceID.
PortGID	R/W	128	16-Bytes	Port GID for the IOU or service
AdditionalInfo	R/W	256	160 Bytes	Console Protocol specific data in Type-Length-Value (TLV) format see A5.11 "AdditionalInfo" on page 1530 . This component is passed to the Console Driver.

Table 437 **OsLocatorRecord Attribute**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BootMethod	R/W	0	8-bits	Indicates the Boot Method: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x01 = Storage (Locator Record specifies IOC to use) • 0x02 = Network (Locator Record specifies IOC) • 0x03 = Proprietary (Locator Record specifies IOC to use) • 0x04 = IB Network Boot (Locator record specifies IB network boot protocol and/or IB Boot Server, i.e., it does not specify an IOC) all other values reserved
Reserved	R/W	8	1-bit	reserved
DeviceDriverLocation	R/W	9	2-bits	Provides information on the search order to locate a Device Driver supporting this Locator Record: <p>00b = Search only the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC</p> <p>01b = First search the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC, then use the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.</p> <p>10b = First search ROM Repositories pointed to by the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, then use the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC.</p> <p>11b = Search only the ROM Repositories pointed to by the RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.</p>

Table 437 OsLocatorRecord Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
RecordFunction	RO	11	2-bits	<p>Indicates the purpose of this Locator Record:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b - Install Source - this record describes a source for the installation program which can install an OS for the booting platform. • 01b - Boot Source - this record describes a source for the booting platforms OS boot loader • 10b - Install Destination - this record describes a destination where an installation program can install an OS boot loader. A booting platform should not attempt to use an OsLocatorRecord with RecordFunction=10b as the source for its boot loader. • 11b - Install Destination/Boot Source - this record describes a destination where an installation program can or has installed an OS boot loader. A booting platform can attempt to boot from this location. An installation program can install an OS boot loader at this location.
Reserved	RO	13	3-bits	Reserved
Protocol	R/W	16	8-bits	<p>Specifies I/O protocols supported by the IOC</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 = unknown otherwise bit specific (refer to Table 438 "Protocol Component Bit Definitions" on page 1499):
Reserved	RO	24	5-bytes	Reserved
locGUID/SID	R/W	64	8-Bytes	GUID of the I/O controller or SID of the IB Network Boot Service (a value of zero means unknown or not used).
PortGID	R/W	128	16-Bytes	Port GID for the IOU or the IB Network Boot Service (a value of zero means unknown or not used)
AdditionalInfo	R/W	256	160 Bytes	Protocol specific data in Type-Length-Value (TLV) format which identifies the device or path behind the IOC or the IB Network Boot Service. This component is passed to the IO Driver. See A5.11 "AdditionalInfo" on page 1530 .

When multiple BootManagers access the same booting platform the BootManagers should act in concert. To ensure BootManagers are aware of changes, when a LocatorRecord is changed then the BootAgent sends the BootManager identified in each port's ClassPortInfo, a ChangeReport Trap informing them of the change.

A5.6.5.1 DEVICE-SERVICE

This component qualifies the locGUID/SID component. If Device-Service = 0b, then the locGUID/SID component contains the locGUID. Otherwise it contains the ServiceID.

A5.6.5.2 locGUID-SID

This component defines the GUID of the IOC if the Device-Service component indicates a device. If the Device-Service component indicates a service this component contains a ServiceID. For IB network boot, the SID identifies the boot server (or the first server that the booting platform contacts). A value of zero is valid if the network boot protocol is capable of finding its own boot server. The AdditionalInfo component provides protocol specific information to further help the booting platform locate the protocol specific objects.

A5.6.5.3 PORTGID

PortID of the CA where the IOU or Service resides.

A5.6.5.4 PROTOCOL

Locator records contain a Protocol component that the booting platform uses to determine which protocols the booting platform can use with the specified device. This field is bit specific (i.e., each bit represents a protocol). When a device supports more than one protocol, the BootManager can indicate a preference by setting multiple records, each with a single Protocol value. If the BootManager sets more than one bit, it means that the booting platform may use any of the indicated protocols. A value of zero means that the BootManager does not know which protocols the device supports. In this case the booting platform determines which protocol to use.

Protocols are dependant on the BootMethod component as specified in are Table 438.

Table 438 Protocol Component Bit Definitions

Bit	Boot Method			
	01 Storage	02 LAN Network Boot	03 Proprietary	04 IB Network Boot
0	proprietary	proprietary	proprietary	proprietary
1	SRP	Reserved	Reserved	IPoIB
2-6	Reserved			
7	Use any ProtocolName specified by a ProtocolName element in the AdditionalInfo component.			

A5.6.5.5 RECORDFUNCTION

Local-Persistent and BIS OsLocatorRecords are provided to the booting platform in priority order. When trying to load the OS, a booting platform processes OsLocatorRecords starting with the first record and continuing until it finds a boot loader. The boot loader can be the normal OS boot

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

loader that loads the OS onto the platform or a boot loader that loads an OS-Install program onto the platform. The RecordFunction component identifies the intent of the OsLocatorRecord as (a) a pointer to the source of the platforms OS boot loader, (b) a pointer to the source of the platforms OS-Install boot loader, and/or (c) a pointer to the destination device used by the OS installation program as the target for a newly installed OS boot loader.

By including an OsLocatorRecord with RecordFunction = 00b, the BootManager or BIS enables the installation process. Setting RecordFunction = 01b identifies that the OS loader is to be used as a source but ignored by the OS-Install program. Setting RecordFunction=10b identifies that the OsLocatorRecord only identifies a destination where the installation program can install an OS boot loader and is ignored by a platform as a boot loader source. Setting RecordFunction=11b identifies that the OsLocatorRecord is a source for the platforms OS boot loader and a destination where the installation program can install an OS boot loader. Thus this record can be used by the platform when it is trying to boot and by the Installation program.

The order in which the BootManager or BIS provides OsLocatorRecords effects the booting process. For example, providing an OsLocatorRecord that points to an OS-Install Program (RecordFunction=00b) first followed by the second OsLocatorRecord that points to the destination device (usually RecordFunction=11b) can be used to install or re-install an OS. Supplying multiple source and destination OsLocatorRecords provides redundancy.

If an OS-Install is not desired then the BootManager or BIS provides only OsLocatorRecords that describe OS boot loader sources (RecordFunction = 01b) and does not provide OS-Install sources, RecordFunction=00b.

If the policy is to attempt to boot an OS and upon detection of a missing or corrupt boot loader reinstall the OS onto a new device then the BootManager or BIS could provide two OsLocatorRecords, the first OsLocatorRecord (RecordFunction =11b, both destination and source) and the second OsLocatorRecord describing the source of a boot loader and an OS-Install Program (RecordFunction=00b). If the booting platform detects a failure in the first source, such as failing to find a valid boot sector on the disk or detects that the OS boot loader was not installed properly, then it proceeds to the next OsLocatorRecord and thus uses the OsLocatorRecord RecordFunction=00b as source to install the OS. The installation program then uses OsLocatorRecord (RecordFunction =11b) as the target for the new OS. If the installation was successful, then the next time the platform reboots, it finds a valid OS boot loader at the location specified by the first OsLocatorRecord and the booting platform boots the OS from the

first OsLocatorRecord and would not use the OsLocatorRecord that re-installs the OS.

OsLocatorRecords can be provided so that the platform normally attempts to load the OS, but if it encounters a device failure while attempting to load the OS, the platform will install the OS onto another device To do this the BootManager or BIS would provide three OsLocatorRecords (A,B and C). The first OsLocatorRecord, RecordFunction =01b, record A points to the source of the active boot loader. The second OsLocatorRecord, record B describes the source of an OS Install Program (RecordFunction=00b). The third OsLocatorRecord, RecordFunction =11b, record C points to a backup boot loader destination. If the booting platform detects a device failure in the first source (A) in which the platform cannot access to the boot loader, then it bypasses this OsLocatorRecord and proceeds to the second source OsLocatorRecord (B) as source to install the OS. The installation program then uses the third destination OsLocatorRecord, RecordFunction =11b, record (C) as the target of the newly installed OS. Care should be taken that this platform does not repeatedly install the OS. In this case, during subsequent reboots, the booting platform may have the ability to determine that the new OS has been installed correctly and by-pass repetitive re-installs of the OS. Alternatively, the booting platform could wait for the BootManager to update OsLocatorRecords by either removing the OsLocatorRecord pointing to the OS-Install or placing the newly installed OS locator at a higher priority than the OS-Install OsLocatorRecord.

Another possibility is to provide source OsLocatorRecords before any OS-Install locator records such that the OS-Install only occurs after the boot environment attempts to boot from all source devices. To do this the BootManager or BIS could provide three OsLocatorRecords. The first OsLocatorRecord, RecordFunction =01b, points to the source of the active boot loader. The second OsLocatorRecord, RecordFunction =11b, points to a device that is both the destination of an OS-Install and a boot source which does not currently contain a boot loader. The third OsLocatorRecord, points to the OS Install Program (RecordFunction=00b). With this combination, the first time device pointed to by the first record fails to produce an OS loader then the booting platform skips loading from the device pointed to by the first locator record. The booting platform also skips the second record because it does not yet have an OS Loader. Thus, the booting platform uses the third record as the OS-Install source and uses the second record as a pointer to the destination of the OS-Install. After the OS installation completes and the platform re-boots, the first record again fails to produce a boot loader and the platform boots from the second record, which now contains a valid OS loader.

A5.6.6 NODE REBOOT

The system administrator using the BootManager may reboot a platform by issuing a Set(NodeReboot) MAD. Normally, the system administrator would use a graceful reboot to shutdown the OS in an orderly fashion. There are some conditions that may occur that prevent a graceful reboot from completing. Under this circumstance the system administrator may need to signal an immediate reboot to the platform. It is the boot platform that makes the final determination of the actions that it takes when it receives a NodeReboot. The RebootStatus in the BootMgtGetResp() indicates the platforms reaction to the Reboot MAD.

Varying platforms offer different types of reboots. Some might clear caches and memory and some might not. Some might run a number of diagnostics and some might not. What is of concern is the state of the BtA when the reboot occurs. It is expected that if the platform supports IB reboot, that it not clear the information required to reboot. Of particular interest are the R/W components in PlatformBootInfo and the Locator Records themselves. These must be maintained by the booting platform in order for the reboot to be successful.

A5.6.6.1 NODEREBOOT ATTRIBUTE

Table 439 NodeReboot Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
Type	R/W	0	1bit	<p>Reboot Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0b - Graceful Reboot - Shutdown and Reset. Close files etc., then reboot.• 1b - Immediate Reboot - Immediate Reboot. <p>This component is reserved as zero in Resp() to a BootMgt-Get(NodeReboot);</p>
Reserved	RO	1	5-bits	Reserved
LocatorRecordType	R/W	6	2-bits	<p>Select the Locator Record Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 00b - Other - Non-IBA boot (e.g., from PCI)• 01b - Selects Persistent or BIS record as set in Platform-BootInfo:OsBootLocator.• 10b - reserved• 11b - reserved <p>This component is set to zero in the BootMgtGetResp() to a BootMgt-Get(NodeReboot);</p>
RebootStatus	RO	8	8-bits	<p>Reboot Status</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x00 - Not attempting to Reboot• 0x01 - Reboot in progress• 0x02 - Reboot failed

Table 439 NodeReboot Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
Reserved	RO	1	16-bits	Reserved
Timestamp	RO	32	32-bits	Timestamp - The BtA reports the time that the last reboot started. The timestamp is the number of seconds since 1/1/70 00:00am.
Reserved	RO	64	184 Bytes	Reserved

oA5-51: If Capability(14:15) is non-zero, then the BtA shall report the time that the last reboot started (or the time that the BtA was loaded if no reboot) in the NodeReboot:Timestamp component in a format that represents the number of seconds from 1/1/70 00:00am in NodeReboot:Timestamp.

oA5-52: If Capability(15) is 1b then the BtA shall request the platform (OS, BIOS, etc.) to gracefully reboot the platform when a BootMgtSet(NodeReboot:Type) = 0b is received from any port.

oA5-53: If Capability(14) is 1b then the BtA shall request the platform (OS, BIOS, etc.) to immediately reboot the platform when a BootMgtSet(NodeReboot:Type) = 1b is received from any port.

oA5-54: If Capability(14:15) is non-zero, then the booting platform shall use the value in NodeReboot:LocatorRecordType to select the source of the OS record locator.

oA5-55: If Capability(14:15) is non-zero then the BtA shall return BootMgtGetResp(NodeReboot) according to [Table 439 "NodeReboot Attribute" on page 1502](#).

A5.6.6.2 REBOOT TIME LINE

[Figure 285 on page 1504](#) illustrates that two BtAs (non-OS and OS BtAs) can exist on a booting platform. After a booting platform is powered on, it takes some period of time for a BtA to become active (Blue bar). This non-OS BtA normally exists on the booting platform before the OS is loaded and is part of the Platform Vendors boot environment. It is the responsibility of the boot environment and the Non-OS BtA to locate boot devices containing the Console and OS boot loaders. Many times, when the platform vendors boot environment gives up control to the OS loader there is a period of time when a BtA is not available on the port. Then as the OS becomes functional, an OS BtA may appear in place of the non-OS BtA. The non-OS and OS BtAs may have differing capabilities. For example,

the non-OS BtA might have access to non-volatile storage and the OS BtA might not.

The BootMgt GetResp(NodeReboot>Status) reflects the progress of the platform with respect to the reboot. Although a reboot is shown occurring while the OS BtA is running, a non-OS BtA may also be requested to reboot.

Traps or Notices, if supported, are very useful in assisting the BootManager in determining the state of the booting platform. For more information on Traps see [A5.6.7 "Traps and Notice Queues" on page 1504](#).

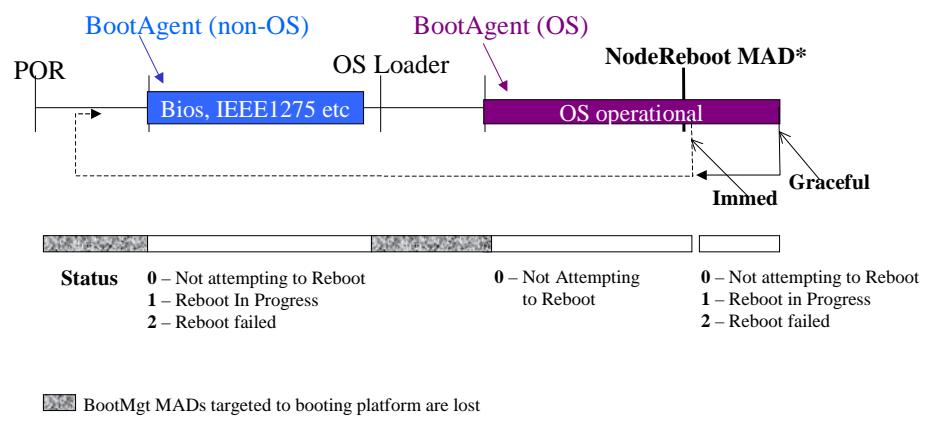


Figure 285 Reboot Time Line

A5.6.7 TRAPS AND NOTICE QUEUES

Traps and Notices Queues are optional and allow a BtA to inform a BootManager of failures while the platform is booting or at anytime when a failure is detected which might affect a future booting of the platform. Some notable traps or notices are a failed attempt to locate an IOU and the loss of Local-Persistent Locator Records within the booting platform. Once a failure is detected, it should be reported to the BootManager via the trap or notice mechanism.

Traps and Notice Queues are described in detail in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#). This annex uses the Common Framework described in Chapter 13 and this section serves only to describe behavior that is unique to the Boot Management class.

The BootManager shall [Compliance assured in the base document] support Traps and Notices. Traps are asynchronous notifications for the purpose of alerting an entity about exception conditions or other events of interest related to booting. The BootManager can also use a BootMgtReport(Heartbeat) to inform subscribed clients that the Boot Manager is still operational.

Other 3rd party nodes may want to register for Event Forwarding to be notified when a booting Platform reports a boot failure or boot event.

The Trap and Notice ladder diagrams in [Figure 286 on page 1505](#) and [Figure 287 on page 1506](#) respectively describe the flow of reporting failures to/from the BtA and to/from the BootManager.

Boot Management Trap Handling

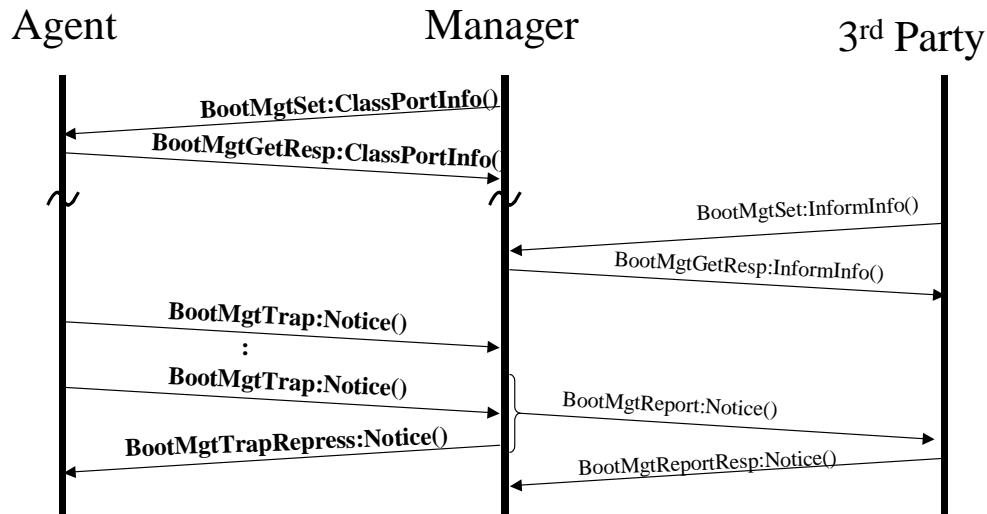


Figure 286

Boot Management Trap Flow

Boot Management Notice Handling

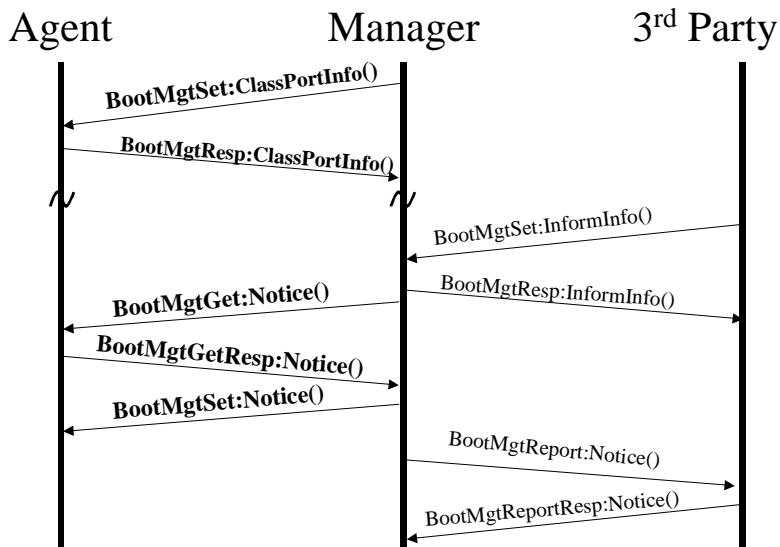


Figure 287 Boot Management Notice Flow

For details on Trap and Notice usage refer to [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#).

In each Data Details definition there is a LostTrap bit. This bit is used to signal when the boot agent had to stop sending a trap before receiving a TrapRepress(). The premise is that the Boot Agent has a trap queue of limited depth (one or more outstanding traps). When a new trap is generated, it is placed at the tail of the trap queue and the trap at the head of the queue is repeated until the Boot Agent receives a matching TrapRepress(). The matching trap is then discarded and then next trap in the queue is sent immediately and repeated until a matching TrapRepress is received.

If the trap queue is full and a new trap is generated, the Boot Agent discards the trap at the head of the trap queue, adds the new trap to the tail of the trap queue, sets the LostTrap bit in trap at the head of the queue and immediately starts sending that trap.

There could be other reasons why a trap is discarded. It is the boot agent's responsibility to set the LostTrap bit in the first trap sent after the discarded trap would have been sent. If the discarded trap is the only trap in the queue, then the agent should fabricate a StatusReport trap with StatusType = 0x00 (Trap or Notice Queue flushed) and the LostTrap bit set to indicate the lost trap.

This bit is also used to signal when the boot agent had to discard a trap in the Notice Queue before receiving a Set(Notice). With the Notice Queue, when a new trap is generated, it is placed at the tail of the queue and the Trap at the head of the queue is read until the Boot Agent receives a matching Set(Notice). When the BtA receives a matching Set(Notice), it discards the matching trap and returns the next trap in the queue in the GetResp(Notice). If the Notice Queue is full when a new trap is generated, the Boot Agent discards the trap at the head of the Notice Queue, adds the new trap to the tail of the queue, and sets the LostTrap bit in the trap at the head of the queue.

There might be other events that could cause the boot agent to prematurely discard one or more notices. When there is at least one notice to be reported and a condition occurs in which the BtA discards all of the notices, then the BtA generates a StatusReport notice with a StatusType of x00 and sets the LostTrap. This will inform the Boot Manager and subscribed clients that one or more notices have been lost.

A5.6.7.1 NOTICE ATTRIBUTE

The Notice attribute describes an exception or other CA, switch, or router event. It is used by both the trap mechanism described in 13.4.9 Traps and the Notice mechanism described in 13.4.10 Notice Queue.

Table 440 **Notice Attribute**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
BaseNoticeComponents	RO	0	80	This component contains the IsGeneric, Type, NodeType, TrapNumber, IssuerLID, NoticeToggle and NoticeCount defined in section 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802
DataDetails	RO	80	432 (54 Bytes)	Each Trap defines its own Data Details. See Table 442 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation" on page 1509 , Table 443 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0100 - ChangeReport" on page 1510 , Table 444 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport" on page 1511 , and Table 445 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0007 - Heartbeat" on page 1513

CA5-39.2.1: Unless otherwise specified, Notice attribute components for Notices specified in [Table 441](#) shall be set as follows:

- IsGeneric = 1 (Generic)
- Type - as per [Table 441](#)
- ProducerType = 1 (Channel Adapter)
- TrapNumber - as per [Table 441](#)

- IssuerLID - as per [Section 13.4.8.2, "Notice," on page 802](#)
- NoticeToggle - as per [Section 13.4.8.2, "Notice," on page 802](#)
- Notice Count - as per [Section 13.4.8.2, "Notice," on page 802](#)
- DataDetails - as per [Table 441](#)
- IssuerGID=0 as per [Section 13.4.8.2, "Notice," on page 802](#)

oA5-56: If the BtA supports Traps or the Notice Queue, then the BtA shall use the format in [Table 440 "Notice Attribute" on page 1507](#), [Table 442 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation" on page 1509](#) and [Table 443 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0100 - ChangeReport" on page 1510](#).

This section specifies specific traps for the Boot Management Class. DataDetails of the Notice attribute leaves 54 bytes to trap specific data (See DataDetails in [Table 440 on page 1507](#)).

Table 441 Boot Management Traps

Trap Name	Type	TrapNumber	DataDetails
KeyViolation	Security	0x0000	See Table 442 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation" on page 1509
ChangeReport	Urgent	0x0100	See Table 443 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0100 - ChangeReport" on page 1510
StatusReport	Urgent/ Informational	0x0110	See Table 444 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport" on page 1511
Heartbeat	Informational	0x0007	Indicates that the Boot Manager is still active. See Table 445 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0007 - Heartbeat" on page 1513
All other Boot Management Traps are reserved.			

oA5-57: If the BtA supports Traps or the Notice Queue, then the BtA shall only use the Type and Number listed in [Table 441 on page 1508](#).

The BtA sends traps to the BootManager listed in ClassPortInfo.

oA5-58: The BtA shall zero the BtM_Key component when generating a BootMgtTrap().

A5.6.7.1.1 KEYVIOLATION NOTICE**Table 442 Notice Details for Trap 0x0000 - KeyViolation**

Component	Offset (bits)	Length (in bits) 54B/432b	Description
BtAType	0	8b	0x00 - BtA is Firmware controlled, non-Extended 0x01 - BtA is Firmware controlled, Extended 0x10 - BtA is OS controlled All other encodes are reserved
Method	8	8b	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributeID	16	16b	AttributeID used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64b	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128b	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16b	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
Reserved	240	16	Reserved
QP	256	24b	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
Reserved	280	8b	Reserved
BtM_Key	288	64b	BtM_Key from the MAD that caused the violation
Timestamp	352	48b	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
Reserved	384	47b	Reserved
LostTrap	431	1b	This bit is set when the BtA had to discard a Trap before receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

oA5-59: If the BtA supports Traps as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the BtA shall set the KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 442 on page 1509](#) and issue the Trap to every port when a BtM_Key mismatch is detected.

oA5-60: If the BtA supports Notices as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the BtA shall post the KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 442 on page 1509](#) to the notice queue when a BtM_Key mismatch is detected.

oA5-61: If the BtA generates a trap, then a trap shall be issued to all ports that have a non-zero ClassPortInfo:TrapLID.

oA5-62: "If the BootAgent supports notices, it shall maintain a single notice queue accessible from every port on the platform."

A5.6.7.1.2 CHANGEREPORT NOTICE

Table 443 Notice Details for Trap 0x0100 - ChangeReport

Component	Offset (bits)	Length (in bits) 54B/432b	Description
BtAType	0	8b	0x00 - BtA is Firmware controlled, non-Extended 0x01 - BtA is Firmware controlled, Extended (See A5.1.8.3 "Boot Environment Extension" on page 1449) 0x10 - BtA is OS controlled All other encodes are reserved
Method	8	8b	Method used in MAD that caused this event
BootMgrLID	16	16b	BootManager LRH:SLID that caused this event
AttributeID	32	16b	AttributeID used in MAD that caused this event (see Table 428 on page 1461)
Reserved	48	16	Reserved
PlatformPortGUID	64	64b	GUID of the port on the booting platform receiving the BootMgtSet() that caused this event
BootMgrPortGID	128	128b	GRH:SGID of the port GID that caused this event. This value is zero if the MAD does not contain a GRH.
AttributeModifier	256	32b	AttributeModifier used in MAD that caused this event
Reserved	288	8b	Reserved
BootMgrSrcQP	288	24b	Source Queue Pair (DETH:SrcQP) from the MAD that caused this event
Timestamp	320	48b	Timestamp when change was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
Reserved	368	63	Reserved
LostTrap	431	1b	This bit is set when the BtA had to discard a Trap before receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

oA5-63: If the BtA supports Traps, then any change made by a proprietary mechanism which affects the outcome of a platform boot for conditions specified in [Table 443 on page 1510](#) shall be accompanied by a ChangeReport Trap 0x0100 issued on every port.

oA5-64: If the BtA supports the Notice Queue, then any change made by a proprietary mechanism which affects the outcome of a platform boot for conditions specified in [Table 443 on page 1510](#) shall be accompanied by a 0x0100 notice posted to the Notice Queue.

A5.6.7.1.3 STATUSREPORT NOTICE

Table 444**Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport**

Component	Offset (bits)	Length (in bits) 54B/432b	Description
BtAType	0	8b	<p>0x00 - BtA is Firmware controlled, non-Extended</p> <p>0x01 - BtA is Firmware controlled, Extended (See A5.1.8.3 "Boot Environment Extension" on page 1449)</p> <p>0x10 - BtA is OS controlled</p> <p>All other encodes are reserved)</p>
LocatorRecordType	8	8b	<p>0x00 - none</p> <p>0x02 - Local-Persistent OsLocatorRecord</p> <p>0x03 - BIS OsLocatorRecord</p> <p>0x04 - Local-Persistent ConsoleLocatorRecord</p> <p>0x05 - BIS ConsoleLocatorRecord</p> <p>0x06 - Local-Persistent RomRepositoryLocatorRecord</p> <p>0x07 - BIS RomRepositoryLocatorRecord</p> <p>All other encodes are reserved</p>
LocatorRecordNumber	16	8b	<p>If LocatorRecordType = 0x02-0x07 then the LocatorRecordNumber identifies the locator record of interest.</p> <p>If Local-Persistent Locator Record - AttributeModifier used in the Set().</p> <p>If BIS Locator Records - this value represents the priority order by which the BIS sent locator records back to the booting platform in response to a BIS query. The first record is 0x00, the second is 0x01, and so on.</p> <p>If LocatorRecordType is other than 0x02-0x07, this value should be set to 0x00.</p>

Table 444 Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport (Continued)

Component	Offset (bits)	Length (in bits)	Description
			54B/432b
StatusType	24	8b	<p>Reason for StatusReport</p> <p>0x00 - Trap Queue or Notice Queue flushed</p> <p>0x01 - Platform Boot Failed, reboot- platform will initiate reboot</p> <p>0x02 - Platform Boot Failed, waiting for BootManager to initiate reboot via Set(Reboot)</p> <p>0x03 - Platform Boot Failed, Boot canceled manually</p> <p>0x04 - Platform Boot Failed, reboot - platform will initiate non-IB boot process</p> <p>0x05 - reserved</p> <p>0x06 - Non-volatile platform storage failure</p> <p>0x07 - Locator Record Failure (see LocatorRecordType)</p> <p>0x08 - Extended ROM Repository Failure</p> <p>0x09 - Device Driver ROM Repository Failure</p> <p>0x0A - IOU Failure</p> <p>0x0B - Network Boot server failure</p> <p>0x10 - No path to BIS - SA did not return PathRecord</p> <p>0x11 - BIS Timeout - BIS did not return Locator Records in allowed time (see BisTimeout in Table 434 "PortBootInfo Attribute" on page 1489)</p> <p>0x12 - BisQueryResp() received without matching TransactionID - see BisPortGID for failing BIS</p> <p>0x13 - ProtocolName not found in AdditionalInfo. This is set when the OsLocatorRecord:Protocol(7)=1b and OsLocatorRecord:AdditionalInfo does not contain a protocol.</p> <p>0x14 - ProtocolName not found in AdditionalInfo. This is set when the ConsoleLocatorRecord:Protocol(7)=1b and OsLocatorRecord:AdditionalInfo does not contain a protocol.</p> <p>0x20 - BtA started</p> <p>0x21 - BtA terminated, OS Loading - Persistent Boot</p> <p>0x22 - BtA terminated, OS Loading - BIS Boot</p> <p>0x23 - reserved</p> <p>0x24 - BtA terminated, OS Loading - Non-IB Boot</p> <p>0x25 - BtA terminated, Reboot</p>
Reserved	32	24b	Reserved
AdditionalStatus	56	8b	<p>Additional Status</p> <p>0x00 - No additional status</p> <p>0x01 - SA did not return a Path to the targeted port</p> <p>0x02 - MAD Time-out</p> <p>0x03 - Connection Time-out</p> <p>0x04 - ROM Repository image not found</p> <p>0x05 - ROM Repository image failed (i.e. platform determined the image is not usable)</p> <p>0x06 - Connection to target failed - Service not found</p> <p>0x07 - Connection to target failed - Connection failure</p>

Table 444 Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport (Continued)

Component	Offset (bits)	Length (in bits) 54B/432b	Description
Timestamp	68	48b	Timestamp when error was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
BisPortGID	112	128b	PortGID of the BIS() if BIS failure else set to zero
Reserved	240	191	Reserved
LostTrap	431	1b	This bit is set when the BtA had to discard a Trap before receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

oA5-65: If the BtA supports Traps as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the BtA shall issue a StatusReport Trap 0x0110 to every port on the booting platform for conditions described in StatusType or AdditionalStatus in Table 444 on page 1511.

oA5-66: If the BtA supports Notices as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the BtA shall post a StatusReport notice 0x0110 in the Notice Queue for conditions described in StatusType or AdditionalStatus in Table 443 on page 1510.

A5.6.7.1.4 HEARTBEAT NOTICE

This notice is not generated by the Boot Mgt agent, it is generated by a Boot Manager in a BootMgtReport() to inform subscribed clients that the Boot Manager is still operational.

Table 445 Notice Details for Trap 0x0007 - Heartbeat

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
TTNH	0	12	Time till next heartbeat - specifies the number of minutes before the Boot Manager will send another Heartbeat notice. If more than this time elapses, it is an indication that the Boot Manager has terminated the subscription.
reserved	12	4	
Fail-over	16	1	When this bit is set to one it indicates that a standby manager has taken-over. The client platform should query the SA to locate and verify the new Boot Manager.
reserved	17		

Table 445 Notice Details for Trap 0x0007 - Heartbeat (Continued)

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	431	1	LostTrap: This bit is not used and set to zero since this notice is not sent in a Trap() (only in a Report).

See [A5.6.7.3.3 "Heartbeat" on page 1518](#) for requirements on generating the Heartbeat notice.

A5.6.7.2 TRAPREPRESS

Common Trap datagrams are described in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#).

oA5-67: Upon receipt of a valid TrapRepress() MAD and independent of the MADHeader:BtM_Key, the BtA shall cease sending the trap which matches the trap identified by the TrapRepress() MAD. A trap being repeatedly sent matches a trap identified in a TrapRepress() MAD when both MADHeader:TransactionID in the trap MAD matches MAD-Header:TransactionID in the TrapRepress MAD and the Notice attribute in the trap MAD matches the Notice attribute in the TrapRepress().

A5.6.7.3 TRAP SUBSCRIPTION / REPORTING

A node may subscribe for BootMgt Trap forwarding by issuing a BootMgtSet(InformInfo) to the Boot Manager. The LID Range and GID in the InformInfo attribute indicates for which booting node the client is interested in receiving Report(s). Note that when subscribing and unsubscribing for the Heartbeat, the GID and LID Range components in the InformInfo is irrelevant and thus the client should set GID, LIDRange-Begin, LIDRangeEnd to zero, 0xFFFF, & zero respectively and the Boot Manager shall ignore those components.

When the Boot Manager receives a BootMgtTrap(), it forwards the trap to subscribed parties via the BootMgtReport(Notice) with the exception of traps listed in [Table 446: Privileged Traps](#). Traps in [Table 446](#) are considered private and must not be forwarded except as indicated in the table.

Table 446 Privileged Traps

Trap	Trap
Key Violation	This is a security trap that contains information which might be considered sensitive (such as invalid keys). The Boot Manager may restrict which nodes receive the BootMgtReport() and/or may zero the key component in the Notice attribute. The Boot Manager policy can be on a trap by trap basis. If a node attempts to subscribe to one of these traps individually and the Boot Manager policy is not to forward the trap to that node, then the Boot Manager rejects the BootMgtSet(InformInfo) with MAD Status [8:15] = Policy Reject (see page 1457). However, the Boot Manager accepts a subscription for 'TrapNumber=0xFFFF' (all traps) regardless of whether it forwards the Key Violation trap.

oA5-67.2.1: When a Boot Manager receives a BootMgtTrap() not listed in [Table 446 "Privileged Traps" on page 1515](#), it shall generate a BootMgtReport() to all parties that have subscribed with the Boot Manager for that notice if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

oA5-67.2.2: When a Boot Manager receives a BootMgtTrap() listed in [Table 446 "Privileged Traps" on page 1515](#), it shall only generate a BootMgtReport() as described in the table.

Because BootMgt Agents are not required to support Traps, the Boot Manager is required to poll notice queues of Boot Agents that do not support notices, and generate BootMgtReport()s for Notices it reads from those notice queue.

oA5-67.2.3: Except for traps listed in [Table 446 "Privileged Traps" on page 1515](#), the Boot Manager shall generate BootMgtReport()s for Notices it reads from a notice queue of a Boot Agent that does not support Traps (as indicated in the Boot agent's ClassPortInfo:Capability bits).

The manager reports traps in the order that it receives them from the BtA. When the manager receives multiple traps from the same BtA, it delivers them one at a time in the order that the traps were received and waits for a ReportResp() from the client before delivering the next Report().

oA5-67.2.4: A Boot Manager shall report Traps from a BtA in the order it receives the traps. However, the Boot Manager is not required to maintain ordering of traps from different BtAs.

oA5-67.2.5: A Boot Manager shall only have one BootMgtReport() outstanding per subscriber per booting node. That is, the Boot Manager shall

wait for a BootMgtReportResp() before sending a subsequent BootMgtReport() for another trap from the same BtA.

A5.6.7.3.1 SUBSCRIPTION INTEGRITY

Clients depend on receiving Report()s whenever a BtA generates a trap and thus depend on the Boot Manager reporting traps to subscribers. However, there are a number of events that can cause a subscription to be destroyed where the client might not be aware that its subscriptions were destroyed.

- Boot Manager reset - In the event that the Boot Manager is reset, subscriptions can be lost. It is recommended that the Boot Manager retain subscription information in persistent storage, such that subscriptions survive power cycles and Boot Manager resets. A client can subscribe with the SA for Trap 64/65 'Port In/Out of Service' to detect when the node on which the Boot Manager resides is reset. The client can also subscribe with the Boot Manager for the Heartbeat notice (see [A5.6.7.3.3 "Heartbeat" on page 1518](#)), so it can detect when the Boot Manager disappears or ceases to function. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the Boot Manager is alive and that the client's subscriptions are still valid.
- Boot Manager failover - In the event that the active Boot Manager fails and another Boot Manager takes over, subscriptions with the old Boot Manager might not be carried over to the new Boot Manager. For graceful failover, the active Boot Manager provides subscription information to standby Boot Managers before replying to a subscription request. A client can subscribe with the SA for Trap 65 'Port Out of Service' to detect when the node on which the Boot Manager resides goes down and subsequently query the SA to locate the new Boot Manager. If the client subscribed with the Boot Manager for the Heartbeat notice (see [A5.6.7.3.3 "Heartbeat" on page 1518](#)), the heartbeat can indicate graceful failover. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the new Boot Manager inherited the client's subscriptions.
- Temporary path disruptions can make a client unreachable, which might result in the Boot Manager timing-out and removing the client's subscriptions. Both the client and the manager can subscribe to SA trap 65 to detect such a condition (assuming that the SM detects the path failure). Again, the client can subscribe with the Boot Manager for the Heartbeat notice (see [A5.6.7.3.3 "Heartbeat" on page 1518](#)), so it can detect when the Boot Manager drops its subscriptions. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the client's subscriptions are still valid.

oA5-67.2.6: If the Boot Manager supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the *IsContextPersistent* bit in BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall

1 retain subscriptions across power cycles (i.e., use subscription information stored in non-volatile storage).
2

3 **oA5-67.2.7:** If the Boot Manager supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the
4 *IsContextPersistent* bit in *BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo)* to 1), it shall
5 save subscription information in non-volatile storage before responding to
6 the *BootMgtSet(InformInfo)*.
7

8 **oA5-67.2.8:** If the Boot Manager supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the
9 *GracefulFailover* bit in *BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo)* to 1), it shall
10 share subscription information with all standby Boot Managers provided
11 by that same vendor. This includes supplying Standby Boot Managers
12 with subscription information when the standby manager comes on-line
13 and updating standby Boot Managers when subscription information
14 changes before responding to the *BootMgtSet(InformInfo)*.
15

16 **oA5-67.2.9:** If the Boot Manager supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the
17 *GracefulFailover* bit in *BootMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo)* to 1), it shall
18 make subscription information known to all standby Boot Managers pro-
19 vided by that same vendor before responding to the *BootMgtSet(InformInfo)*.
20

A5.6.7.3.2 SUBSCRIPTION TIMEOUT

21 When a subscribed node fails or resets, it does not always have the
22 chance to unsubscribe. For the express purpose of limiting the number of
23 retries and the size of the Boot Manager's subscribers list over long pe-
24 riods of time, clients that become unreachable by the Boot Manager or
25 otherwise leave the fabric for any reason will have their subscription ter-
26 minated by the Boot Manager. However the Boot Manager needs to be
27 able to distinguish between subscribers that are temporarily unreach-
28 able versus those that have gone away.
29

30 When the Boot Manager receives a trap, it sends a *BootMgtReport()* to
31 each subscriber and waits for a *BootMgtReportResp()*. If it fails to receive
32 the response, it resends the *BootMgtReport()*. The minimum amount of
33 time the Boot Manager waits before re-sending is specified in the *In-*
34 *formInfo* attribute. The Boot Manager should implement the Retry-Backoff
35 Policy specified in Annex A1 section A1.3.2 between successive attempts
36 to limit the number of retries when trying to reach an unreachable node. If
37 after 10 minutes the subscriber has not responded, the Boot Manager
38 may terminate the retry and cancel all of the subscriptions for that client.
39

40 **oA5-67.2.10:** If the Boot Manager fails to receive a *ReportResp()* in re-
41 sponse to a *Report()*, then the Boot Manager shall continue to retry the
42 *Report()* until either it receives a *ReportResp()*, the client unsubscribes, or
the Boot Manager terminates the subscription.
43

oA5-67.2.11: The Boot Manager shall not terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp() until after 10 minutes of retrying has occurred. If the Boot Manager does terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp(), it shall terminate all subscriptions for that particular destination (LID/GID + QPN).

A5.6.7.3.3 HEARTBEAT

The Boot Manager periodically sends a BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to let subscribers know that the Boot Manager still exists and that the client's subscriptions are still valid. It is also a means for the Boot Manager to detect stale subscriptions since failure for a client to respond to the heartbeat is grounds to cancel that client's subscriptions.

When a client subscribes for the heartbeat event, the Boot Manager sends the client a BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) before it replies to the subscription request. This initial heartbeat provides the client with the maximum time until the next heartbeat (TTNH). The length of time between heartbeats is a Boot Manager policy. The client starts an expiration timer for TTNH minutes and if the timer expires, it is an indication that the Boot Manager is no longer functional or that the Boot Manager has cancelled the client's subscriptions. Thus, the client should re-subscribe or query the SA to locate the new Boot Manager so it can subscribe. Each time a client receives a BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat), it resets its expiration timer to the new TTNH value specified in the Heartbeat notice.

oA5-67.2.12: For heartbeat subscriptions, the Boot Manager shall generate a BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to the subscriber before sending the BootMgtGetResp(InformInfo)

oA5-67.2.13: The Boot Manager shall continue to generate BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to each subscriber within TTNH minutes after sending the previous BootMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to that subscriber.

Note that the LID Range and GID in the InformInfo for a heartbeat report is irrelevant and thus ignored by the Boot Manager. That is, the Boot Manager generates a Heartbeat report to anyone subscribed for heartbeats regardless of the GID and LID range in the InformInfo attribute.

The Heartbeat notice also has a 'Fail-Over' bit that indicates a new manager. This is to inform the client that a standby manager has gracefully taken over the Boot Manager responsibility. In order to ensure that the notice came from a valid Boot Manager, instead of using the Report()'s reciprocal path to communicate with the new Boot Manager, the client should query the SA to locate the new Boot Manager, but it will not need to re-subscribe.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
oA5-67.2.14: The Boot Manager shall not set the FailOver bit in a Heartbeat notice unless the Boot Manager inherited all of the subscriptions from the previous manager.

10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
oA5-67.2.15: The Boot Manager shall only set the FailOver bit in the first Heartbeat notice it sends to a client. Thus, the Boot Manager shall not set the FailOver bit in subsequent reports to a client after it receives the ReportResp() from that client.

A5.6.8 INFORMINFO ATTRIBUTE

20
21
22
23
The InformInfo attribute provides information for subscribing to a class manager for event forwarding. See [13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804](#) and [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#).

24
25
26
27
28
29
Table 447 InformInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
See InformInfo in 13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804				

A5.7 PLATFORMS USE OF BIS

A5.7.1 BIS USAGE OVERVIEW

30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
This section describes the behavior of a booting platform that supports BIS as a Boot Resolution Method. BIS is described in the Boot Information Service Annex. A booting platform may support using BIS, Persistent storage, or both as the source for boot information. The overview and operation of a BIS server is described in General Operation in the Boot Information Service Annex.

The BIS server returns many of the same attributes to the booting platform as the BootManager provides.

The booting platform can access a BIS without requiring a BtA to also be running on the booting platform. Ideally, a booting platform accessing a BIS should also run the BtA so that the BootManager can receive Traps, read the Notice Queue or read status and status components using PlatformBootInfo to stay informed of BIS related events.

The booting platform queries a BIS using the BIS class MADs as described in the BIS Annex. The booting platform queries a BIS using the BisQuery(BootQueryInfo) to find information records (PlatformBootInfo and PortBootInfo) and locator records (RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, ConsoleLocatorRecords, and OsLocatorRecords). The BIS returns the

requested attributes using BisQueryResp(*). The BisQuery(*) and Bis-QueryResp(*) use the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol.

oA5-68: If BIS is supported, the platform shall conform to the BIS Class MADs and data structure as specified in the BIS Annex.

oA5-69: If BIS is supported and the platform queries the BIS for locator records, then the platform shall use the locator records (RomRepository-LocatorRecord, ConsoleLocatorRecord, and OsLocatorRecord) in the order in which they were received from the BIS.

A booting platform that supports BIS but not the BtA defaults to using the BIS to acquire the PlatformBootInfo and PortBootInfo attributes. If the platform contains a BtA, then the BootManager sets these attributes and disables the platform from acquiring them from the BIS.

A5.7.2 PLATFORMBOOTINFO SOURCE

If BIS or Persistent boot methods are supported, then the booting platform must determine the source of the platforms booting parameters. The factory default for a booting platform is to use a BIS to obtain the Platform-BootInfo attribute.

If the platform has a BtA, the default usage of the BIS may be altered by the BootManager, depending on the facilities booting policy, by modifying the PlatformBootInfoSource and PortBootInfoSource components in the PlatformBootInfo attribute.

The booting platform tests PlatformBootInfoSource (see [Table 432 on page 1470](#)) to determine the source of the PlatformBootInfo attribute.

oA5-70: If BIS is supported and PlatformBootInfoSource=0, then the booting platform shall query the BIS for the PlatformBootInfo attribute.

oA5-71: When the booting platform supports both BIS and local persistent storage, if the local PlatformBootInfoSource=1, then the booting platform shall use the PlatformBootInfo attribute in persistent storage.

Before the booting platform first accesses a BIS, the platform might not contain information regarding the subnet specific boot time-out values. The booting platform must use the default values until the BIS returns the PortBootInfo attribute.

CA5-40: If the booting platform supports BIS and the platform does not have a persistent PlatformBootInfo attribute, then the booting platform shall use the default values for PlatformBootInfo until it queries the BIS for PlatformBootInfo.

A5.7.3 PORTBOOTINFO SOURCE

If BIS or Persistent boot methods are supported, then the booting platform must determine the source of subnet parameters, such as time-outs located in the PortBootInfo attribute. The factory default for a booting platform is to use a BIS to obtain PortBootInfo attributes.

The booting platform tests PortBootInfoSource (see [Table 432 on page 1470](#)) to determine the source of the PortBootInfo attribute. If PortBootInfoSource=0 (the default value), then the booting platform shall query the BIS for PortBootInfo. If PlatformBootInfoSource=1, then the booting platform shall use the PortBootInfo attribute in persistent storage.

oA5-72: If BIS is supported and PortBootInfoSource=0, then the booting platform shall use the BIS as the source of the PortBootInfo attribute.

oA5-73: If PortBootInfoSource=1, then the booting platform shall use persistent storage as the source of the PortBootInfo attribute.

When the booting platform first accesses a BIS, the platform might not contain information regarding the subnet specific boot time-out values. The booting platform must use the default values until the BIS returns the PortBootInfo attribute.

oA5-74: If BIS is supported and PortBootInfoSource=0, then PortBootInfo:BisTimeout, PortBootInfo:EndnodeTimeout, and PortBootInfo:InitTimeout components default values specified in [Table 434 "PortBootInfo Attribute" on page 1489](#) shall be used.

A5.7.4 DETERMINING TO USE A BIS

A booting platform shall use the BIS as a source of booting information if:

- PlatformBootInfoSource=1 or
- PortBootInfoSource=1 or
- Any Locator Source in PlatformBootInfo in persistent storage indicates BIS

oA5-75: If BIS is supported, the booting platform shall only use PlatformBootInfoSource, PortBootInfoSource, RomRepositoryLocatorSource, ConsoleLocatorSource, and OsLocatorSource in the PlatformBootInfo attribute to determine if the BIS is used as a source for booting information.

A5.7.5 FINDING A BIS

Once the platform determines that it needs a BIS, the platform determines the location of the BIS using the service advertisement in the SA (see [A6.3.1 Registration on page 1578](#)). The SA is used to find the ServiceRecord of a BIS for the subnet. From the ServiceRecord, the BIS ServiceID

and partition is found. A PathRecord can be obtained from the SA using the GID and partition from the ServiceRecord. Using the PathRecord the BIS service is located on QP1 or redirected to another QP. This process should be followed each time the platform boots to prevent the platforms BIS Service Record from becoming stale.

oA5-76: If BIS is supported and the platform determines that the BIS will be queried, then the booting platform shall:

- locate the BIS using SubnAdmGet(ServiceRecord) using only the ServiceName of “BIS.IBTA” as described in the BIS Annex.
- fill out the PathRecord request specifying GID and partition returned in the SubnAdmGet(ServiceRecord) response from the SA.

A5.7.6 SELECTING A BIS

Once the platform determines that a BIS is to serve as a source of booting information, then the platform determines which BIS to access. If the booting platform is on a single subnet with multiple BISs or if the platform is on multiple subnets with each subnet containing a BIS service, then the platform selects a BIS to use as the source of booting information.

Any BIS can supply a platform with attributes that have platform scope (i.e., PlatformBootInfo, RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, ConsoleLocatorRecords and OsLocatorRecords attributes).

A single BIS can also provide a platform with port specific attributes (Port-BootInfo) for each of its ports when responding to a BootQueryInfo:Port-GUID with BootInfoRequested=0x01. However, a BIS might not have port information for all ports of the booting platform, and thus, the booting platform may need to query another BIS (e.g., a BIS on the same subnet as the port).

If a subnet contains multiple BISs as indicated by multiple records being returned in the SubnAdmGet(ServiceRecord) response, then the platform queries each BIS in order until the requested information is returned.

A5.7.7 PRIORITIZING MULTIPLE BISs

When multiple BISs exist in a subnet or a platform is on multiple subnets each having some number of BISs, the booting platform should determine which BIS to use as its source of booting information. The booting platform can query the SA searching for a BIS in the BisPortPriority order.

If multiple records are returned in a SubnAdmGet(ServiceRecord) response then multiple BISs on that port serve the booting platform.

oA5-77: If BIS is supported, then the booting platform shall prioritize multiple BISs by using records returned by a BIS in BisPortPriority order from highest to lowest.

oA5-78: If a subnet has multiple BIS's then the platform will access the BIS's in the order in which the ServiceRecords are return from the SA.

If a BIS does not provide all of the records needed by a booting platform then other BIS's are queried to obtain the desired record(s).

A5.7.8 OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

oA5-79: If BIS is used to locate a ROM Repository, Console, or OS Loader, then the platform shall only query the BIS for records that the platform supports.

oA5-80: If BisQueryResp() returns PortBootInfo:NetworkBootPortPriority = 0x0 then the platform shall not use this port for IB network booting.

oA5-81: If BisQueryResp() returns PortBootInfo:RomPortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to access the RomRepository through this port.

oA5-82: If BisQueryResp() returns PortBootInfo:ConsolePortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to access the IB Console through this port.

oA5-83: If BisQueryResp() returns PortBootInfo:locPortPriority = 0x0 then the booting platform shall not attempt to boot through this port.

oA5-84: If the platform supports BIS, the BtA, and Traps, then the BtA shall issue a StatusReport Trap (see [Table 444 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport" on page 1511](#)) to every port for failures defined in the notice details.

oA5-85: If the platform supports BIS, the BtA, and notice queue, then the BtA shall post a StatusReport Notice (see [Table 444 "Notice Details for Trap 0x0110 - StatusReport" on page 1511](#)) to the notice queue for failures defined in the notice details.

A5.7.8.1 RELIABLE MULTI-PACKET PROTOCOL

oA5-86: If the platform supports BIS, then the platform shall support the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol specified in [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#).

A5.7.8.2 PORT GID TO LID RESOLUTION

Given the PortGID from the Locator Record, the booting platform queries the SA with SubnAdmGetTable(PathRecord). The booting platform que-

ries the SA to obtain a path to the IOC in the Locator Record. A technique that will find all possible paths, in case some are inoperable, is to fill out the PathRecord request specifying only the SGID of the booting platform, the DGID equal to the portGID from the Locator Record, and all other components “wildcarded” (ComponentMask bits set to 0) so they match anything. Note, the SLID is “wildcarded” to account for a possible non-zero LMC. A table of paths are returned for all paths from the booting platform portGID to the portGID specified in the Locator Record.

A5.7.8.3 REPORTING FAILURES

A platform that supports a BootAgent and Traps has the ability to notify the BootManager when unauthorized accesses occur within both the Boot Management and BIS class MADs. This allows reporting of the unauthorized attempt to manipulate the booting platform so that a higher level management entity (Administrator) can take an appropriate action.

A5.8 IB NETWORK BOOTING

A boot platform may be capable of booting over IB using the IB Network boot described in [Figure 282 "IB Network Boot Model" on page 1447](#) without requiring a LAN NIC. This Annex requires that a booting platform make the BootManager aware of the capability of using the IB Network boot method by setting Network Boot-IB Network Model in Platform-BootInfo:Capability in [Table 432 on page 1470](#).

There are multiple network protocols that allow a booting platform to directly communicate with a boot server such as IP over IB (IPoIB) and Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP). OsLocatorRecords inform the booting platform when to attempt IB Network Boot and which IB network protocol to use. The OsLocatorRecord also has the ability to identify the boot server and to supply protocol specific parameters need to perform the IB Network Boot.

A booting platform may contain multiple ports on more than one subnet. Instead of enumerating each port, the BootManager may inform the booting platform of the port order in which to attempt to find the IB Network boot server by setting NetworkBootPortPriority in PortBootInfo (see [Table 434 on page 1489](#))

A5.9 RETRY BACKOFF

When many platforms in a subnet are booting at the same time, then congestion on some resources while booting may develop. [A1.3.2 Retry-Backoff Policy on page 1302](#) contains guidance for IB retries.

CA5-41: A booting platform shall implement the Retry Back-off Policy specified in the I/O Annex when it fails to receive a response to any MAD for any management class.

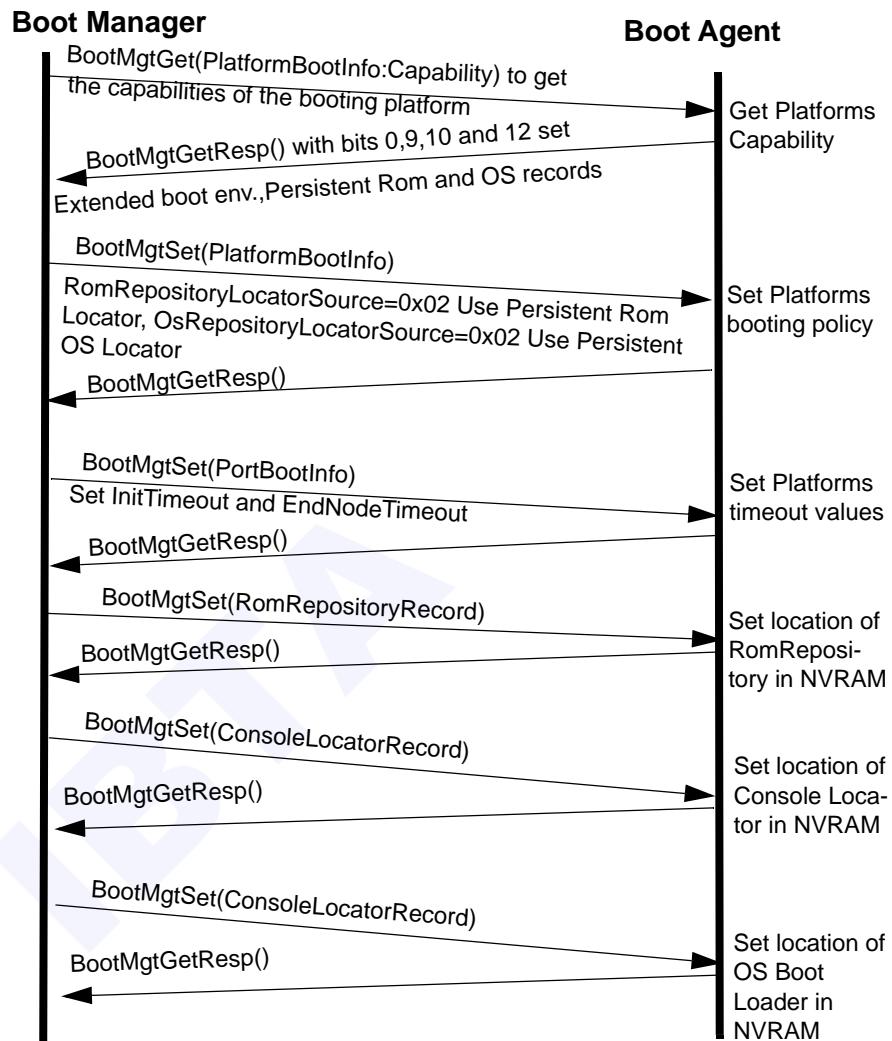
A5.10 IB Boot PROCESS - SUMMARY

Boot Management MADs specify messages that appear on the wire and behaviors associated with those messages. The appearance of a message at a port implies a required action and, most likely, a response. Additionally, the appearance of a message on the wire implies behavior of the entity that caused the message to be emitted. Various conceptualizations are used in specifying behaviors of the booting platform. However, the use of such conceptualizations in this Annex is purely a descriptive artifice. The conceptualizations themselves, do not convey normative requirements. While some conceptualizations used in this Annex may suggest certain implementations, implementations are outside of the scope of this Annex and no specific implementation is implied.

Booting over IB involves selecting Locator Records to locate a ROM Repository, a Console object, and/or the OS boot loader. There are 2 sources of Locator Records, Local-Persistent and BIS. Local-Persistent Locator Records may be set using Boot Management. BIS is an optional service on the IB fabric. Each time the platform boots, it uses either Local-Persistent records or queries the BIS, which returns the latest set of Locator Records for the booting platform to use.

Booting over IB includes the platform determining if the boot environment will be extended and if device drivers will be loaded using the ROM Repository. Booting also includes determining if an IB console will be used and selecting the device or network to be used if booting over IB.

Booting platforms which support a BtA may contain non-volatile storage. Booting platforms can optionally permit the system administrator, via the BootManager, to update attributes that affect booting. Platforms may implement a local only update policy that does not allow updates using IBA methods. If the local policy allows a BootManager to write components, then the R/W components of BootMgt attributes are stored in the platforms non-volatile storage. A ladder diagram of a Boot Manager configuring the boot policy of a boot platform is shown in [Figure 288](#). The boot platform in this example supports an extension of the boot environment, persistent boot, ROM locator record and OS locator record updates.

**Figure 288 Configuring the Boot Platform**

A platform with invalid data in this non-volatile storage (NVRAM) might be a platform shipped directly from the factory, a platform which has had its entire non-volatile storage cleared, or a platform that does not contain valid data in non-volatile storage. When a platform boots with invalid Boot Management data in non-volatile storage then:

- 1) If the platform supports Local-Persistent Locator Records, then the booting platform may wait for the BootManager to Set() Persistent Locator Records to the platform. After being Set() the platform will use the Persistent Locator Records to optionally load the boot environment extension, device drivers, the Console, and the OS Boot Loader.

- 1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
- 2) If the platform supports BIS, then it may use BIS Class MADs to query the BIS. The BIS will, depending on the query, return Locator Records for the boot environment extension, the Console, and the OS Boot Loader. Proprietary Device Drivers that are not co-located with the boot environment may be found in a ROM Repository image.

Other considerations are:

- 1) A booting platform queries the SA using SubnAdmGet(ServiceRecord) to locate a BIS. The PortBootInfo(BisTimeout) value determines the minimum amount of time the booting platform should wait for the BIS to register with the SA. If BisTimeout has not been set, then the default value listed in the component definition should be used.
- 2) If the booting platform supports both Local-Persistent and BIS boot resolution methods, then the platform defaults to BIS only until the Boot Management attributes are written.
- 3) The booting platform may optionally extend the boot environment.
- 4) The booting platform may optionally locate the Console.
- 5) The booting platform may optionally locate the OS Boot Loader. This is optional because the BtA may be on the platform to extend the boot environment or use the IB console, but have no need to boot over IB.

If the booting platform contains valid persistent data in non-volatile storage, then the platform does not wait for the BootManager to Set() boot attribute to the platform. Here, the platform will either use Local-Persistent and/or BIS Locator Records to locate the extended boot environment code, the Console, or the OS Boot Loader.

[Figure 290 on page 1529](#) describes a platform boot example that illustrates the steps involved in booting a platform. The boxes on the left side of the page show that a booting platform would access the ROM Repository, Console, and OS loader. The single box on the right shows the common steps used by the booting platform each time the platform needs to determine the location of a device or service. When the platform is powered on, reset, or rebooted, then the platform finds devices or services needed to boot. In this example, the ROM Repository images are accessed first. Then the console is located followed by the OS boot loader.

The order (ROM Repository, Console, and OS loader) is determined by the booting platform. Platforms may already contain a local copy of a console device driver used to access the console, which enables that platform to immediately connect to the console.

ROM Repository

- 1) The Boot Resolution Method for the ROM Repository is selected
2 using ROMRepositoryLocatorSource.
3
4 a) The ROMRepositoryLocatorSource selects BIS or BIS then Lo-
5 cal-Persistent or Local-Persistent then BIS or none. This variabi-
6 lity is not shown in [Figure 290 "Platform Boot Example" on page 1529](#)
7 and with the intent being if one method fails the secondary
8 method may be used.
9
10 2) 1) above provides the booting platform with one or more RomRepos-
11 itoryLocatorRecords that point to the IOU.
12
13 Using the Locator Record the platform queries the SA for a path and
14 connects to the ROM Repository. Connecting to the RomRepository is
15 shown in [Figure 289](#). The ROM Repository protocol is detailed in
16 [A5.12 "ROM Repository" on page 1533](#).

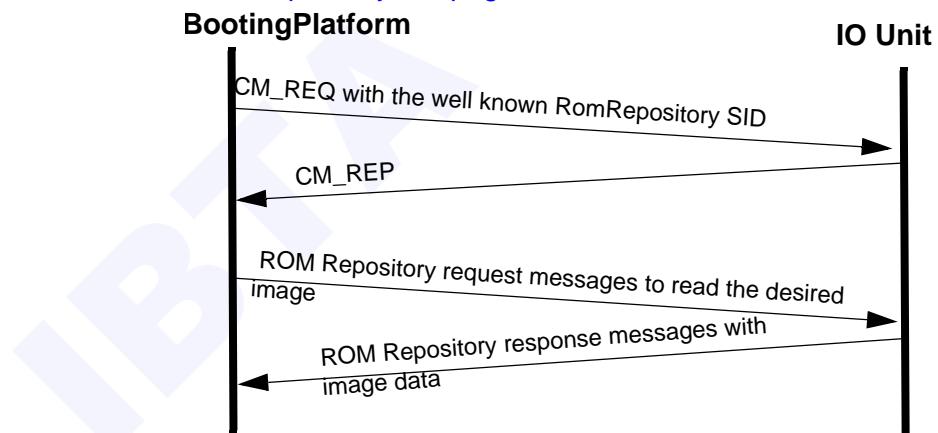


Figure 289 RomRepository Access

- 27 3) The platform then searches the ROM Repository for the desired
28 image(s).
29
30 4) Failures throughout the process should result in Traps being issued
31 (see [A5.6.7 "Traps and Notice Queues" on page 1504](#)).
32
33

Console

The Boot Resolution Method for the Console is similar to the ROM Repository except that the method is selected using ConsoleLocatorSource and the Console protocol described in [Annex A2 Console Service Protocol](#) or a proprietary console protocol is used.

OS Loader

The Boot Resolution Method for the OS Loader is similar to the ROM Repository and Console except that the method is selected using OsLoca-
39 torSource and the protocol is I/O specific (e.g. SRP, IPoIB and
40 proprietary).

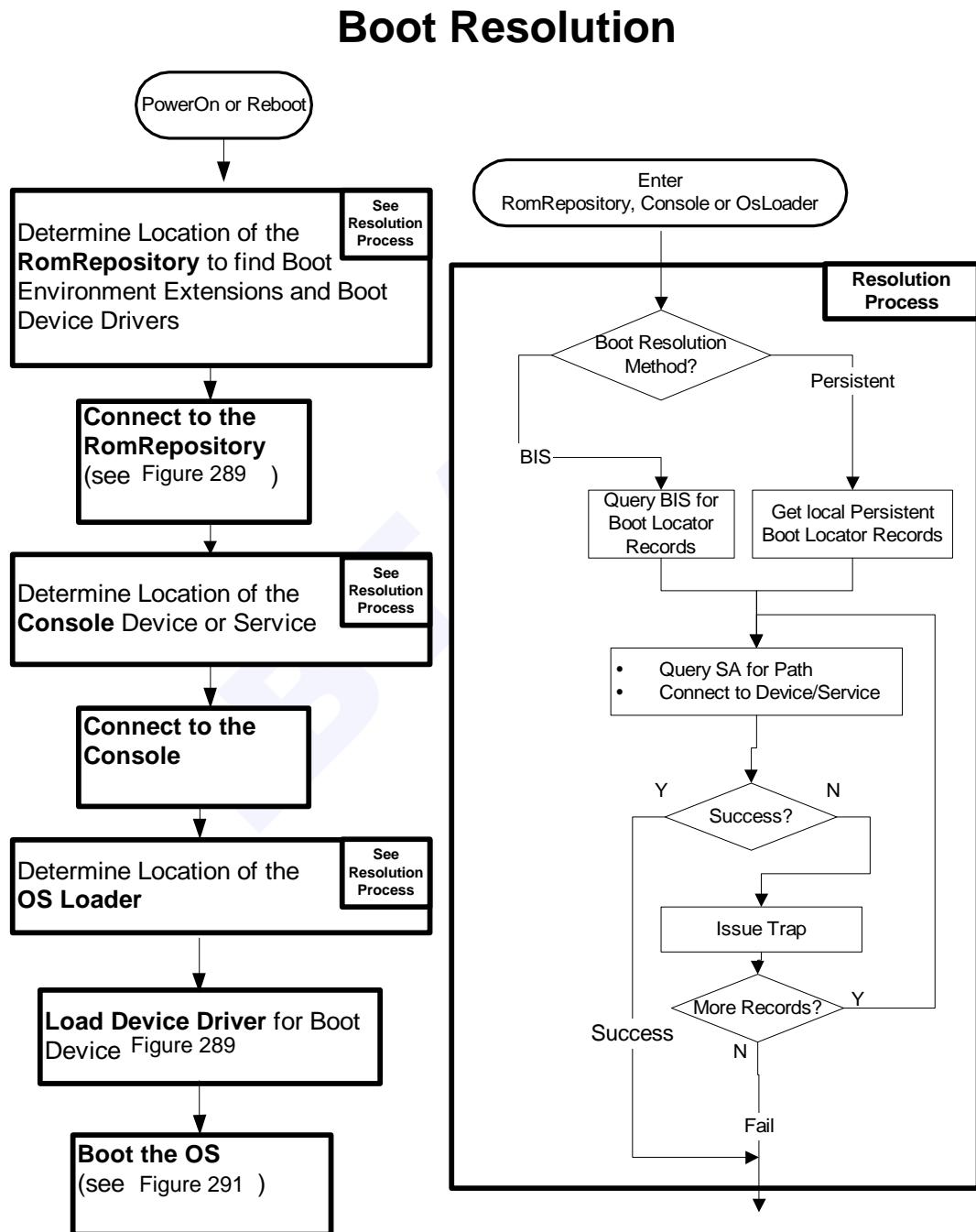


Figure 290

Platform Boot Example

[Figure 291](#) is a ladder diagram illustrating the messages a booting platform sends to an IOU and the IOU response. The booting platform obtains

information about the IOC, I/O protocol and boot device from the Locator Record stored in the persistent storage or obtained from the BIS.

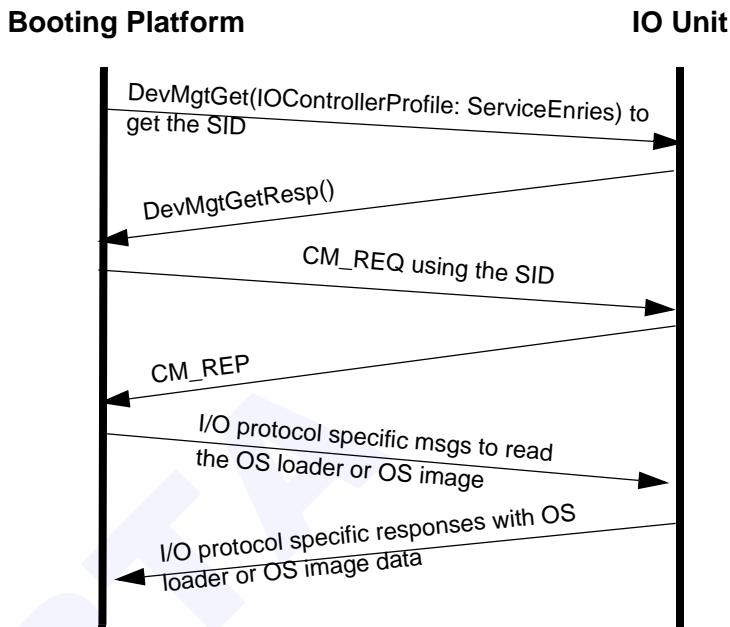


Figure 291

Boot Platform to IOU Communication - Access OS Loader

A5.11 ADDITIONALINFO

AdditionalInfo is a component of the ConsoleLocatorRecord and OsLocatorRecord attributes provided to a booting platform by the BIS or the Boot Manager.

AdditionalInfo is a 160 byte field whose content is dependent on the DeviceType, ServiceType, and I/O protocol. This information is intended to be passed to the device driver. This component provides information that might help the I/O driver configure itself, configure the IOC, and/or identify a particular I/O device or service.

The contents of the AdditionalInfo component contain multiple variable length elements. Each element contains 3 fields. The first field, **Type** is a one byte field that identifies the content of the element. The second field, **Length** is a one byte field and specifies the length of the **Value** field. The third field, **Value** contains the 'Length' number of bytes of element data. There may be any number of elements limited only by the 160 byte size of the overall AdditionalInfo component. The remainder of the AdditionalInfo component is filled with 0x00.

Table 448 General AdditionalInfo Element Definitions

Type Field Value	Length Field Value	Description
0x00	0x00	Marks end of elements - ignore all data following this value
0x01	variable	ProtocolName in ASCII (UTF-8) - precedes any protocol specific components
0x02	variable	Filename - in ASCII (UTF-8)
0x10 - 0x1F	variable	Device Vendor Specific
0x20-0x3F	variable	Protocol Specific - (see following sections for examples)

This annex describes AdditionalInfo elements for the IBA Console and SRP protocols.

For an IOC that supports multiple protocols, the AdditionalInfo component can contain multiple sets of protocol specific elements. All elements between two ProtocolName elements are for the protocol identified by the preceding ProtocolName element. Thus, each ProtocolName element identifies a new group of protocol specific elements.

A5.11.1 SRP

When using the SRP protocol, additional information is passed to the entity on the booting platform (i.e. boot environment code) that loads the OS Loader from a storage device into memory through the OsLocatorRecord attribute provided by either the BIS or the BootManager. Table 449 specifies elements specific to the SCSI RDMA Protocol.

Table 449 SRP AdditionalInfo Elements

Type Field Value	Length Field Value (Bytes)	Description
0x01	7	ProtocolName = "SRP.T10" in ASCII.
0x20	16	SCSI Initiator Port Identifier - see IB annex of the SRP specification for format.
0x21	16	SCSI Target Port Identifier - see IB annex of the SRP specification for format.
0x22	8 or 16	Logical Unit Name - format type either: • NAA IEEE Registered - 8 bytes • NAA IEEE Registered Extended - 16 bytes

For an IOC that supports multiple protocols, the AdditionalInfo component can contain multiple sets of protocol specific elements. All elements be-

tween two ProtocolName elements are for the protocol identified by the preceding ProtocolName element. Thus, each ProtocolName element identifies a new group of protocol specific elements.

The ProtocolName for SRP is identical to the ServiceName defined by T10 for SRP. Value types 0x20 to 0x3F are protocol specific and depend on the ProtocolName that precedes them.

The SCSI Initiator Port Identifier type element specifies the SRP initiator port identifier value that the booting platform uses to access the SRP target.

The SCSI Target Port Identifier identifies the SRP target. A OsLocatorRecord should be associated with one SRP target.

The Logical Unit Name is the name returned in the response to SCSI Inquiry Vital Product Date Page Code 0x83, the Device Identification Page. This name uniquely identifies the Logical Unit from every other one in the world. The booting platform uses the Logical Unit Name to determine which Logical Unit Number (LUN) it uses to access the boot loader. A OsLocatorRecord should specify one Logical Unit Name in the AdditionalInfo component. A booting platform that obtains a OsLocatorRecord for an SRP target should:

- Check the 0x01 type element for a content match with the SRP Service-Name of “SRP.T10”
- Use the 0x20 type element as the SCSI Initiator Port Identifier.
- Establish an SRP connection with the IOC indicated in the OsLocatorRecord.
- Use the 64 bit Target port extension identifier portion of the 0x21 type element to match the 64 bit extension identifier portion of the ServiceName from the Service Entries component of IOControllerProfile attribute. Use the ServiceID corresponding to the matching ServiceName.
- Retrieve LUN information with the SCSI Report LUNs command.
- Query each LUN with SCSI Inquiry Vital Product Data Page Code 0x83 until a response with a Logical Unit Name exactly matches the 0x22 type element. This is the boot LUN. If any of these steps fail then disregard the OsLocatorRecord.

How the BootManager or the BIS obtains information contained in AdditionalInfo is out of the scope of this Annex.

A5.11.2 CONSOLE

Additional information is intended to be passed to the entity on the booting platform (i.e. boot environment code) that is communicating with the IB

CSP Server. Table 450 specifies elements specific to the IB Console Service Protocol.

Table 450 Console AdditionalInfo Elements

Type Field Value	Length (160 Bytes)	Description
0x01	0x0C	ProtocolName = "Console.IBTA" in ASCII
0x20	0x08	ResumeKey - Key used in SessionResumeRequest
0x21	0x04	DeviceNum - Requested DeviceNumber
0x22	0x04	ConsoleUserID - Identifier of the console user at the CSP client requesting the session
0x23	0x08	Nickname - Short, null terminated ASCII string identifying the console user
0x24	0x40	ConsoleUsername - Long, null terminated ASCII string identifying the console user
0x25	0x0C	Capability - This element contains the ConsoleCapabilityRecord as specified in the Console Annex and informs the Booting platform of the capabilities of the console service pointed to by the Console locator record.

For a console that supports multiple protocols, the AdditionalInfo component can contain multiple sets of protocol specific elements. All elements between two ProtocolName elements are for the protocol identified by the preceding ProtocolName element. Thus, each ProtocolName element identifies a new group of protocol specific elements.

A5.12 ROM REPOSITORY

A5.12.1 INTRODUCTION

IBA provides an optional method for managed I/O units to supply code and/or data images to a node by supporting a ROM repository. This section describes the wire protocol for a node to access a managed I/O unit's ROM repository. The ROM repository protocol provides a method for a node to search a managed I/O unit for code images needed by the node and download them from the repository. The protocol also provides a method for a node to add new images to the repository, delete images from the repository, and to modify existing images in the repository. This section focuses on ROM repository containing boot driver images. Other technologies provide similar functionality through the use of Option ROMs within adapter cards. It is expected that this repository survives power cycling much like Read-Only-Memory (ROM) devices, hence the term ROM Repository.

A5.12.2 OVERVIEW OF IOC BOOT DRIVER DOWNLOAD

The following are the normal steps in booting a platform using a driver supplied by a managed I/O unit. The term platform refers to the combination of processes and utilities being performed regardless of whether they are provided by the CA, a boot environment such as BIOS or IEEE 1275, the platform vendor, or the IO driver.

- 1) The booting platform selects a boot IOC using either persistent or BIS type boot records (see [A5.6.3.4 "Boot Record Locator Sources" on page 1483](#)).
- 2) The booting platform sends DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) to the I/O unit that contains the selected IOC and then creates compatibility strings using the components returned in the DevMgtGetResp(IOControllerProfile) as specified in section G.1.3.1.1 of the I/O Annex.
- 3) The booting platform selects a managed I/O unit that provides a ROM repository. This might be the I/O unit containing the boot IOC or it might be an I/O unit identified using one of the resolution methods specified in [A5.6.3.4 "Boot Record Locator Sources" on page 1483](#).
- 4) The booting platform searches the selected IOU's ROM repository for ROM image that matches selected IO controller and type of boot environment.
- 5) The booting platform loads boot driver image into its boot environment.
- 6) Boot environment executes the boot driver image.
- 7) Boot driver image calls IBA services to:
 - a) create QPs
 - b) form connections
 - c) invoke IBA transport (Send/Receive/RDMA)

A5.12.3 ROM REPOSITORY MODEL

The ROM repository protocol supports multiple concurrent connections to a ROM repository. The number of connections supported is an implementation option which can be as few as one (i.e. only one connection to the ROM repository at any given time). Multiple connection support is desirable where many nodes depend on a single IOU's ROM repository.

The Capabilities component of RepositoryInfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)) specifies whether or not the IOU supports multiple connections.

The main objective of defining the ROM repository is for providing IOC drivers. IBA defines the ROM repository space that contains IOC driver

1 images (Option ROM page). This section primarily deals with the ROM re-
2 pository space that contains IOC driver images.
3
4

5 IBA does not limit the type of data that is located in the ROM repository.
6 An IOU may support more than one type of repository space and each re-
7 pository space has a unique “ROM repository ID” (see [Table 456 on page 1543](#)). Other ROM repository spaces for example, might contain micro-
8 code for an IOC or tabular data. These ROM repository spaces are not de-
9 scribed in this annex, but are left to innovation. Each ROM repository must
10 have an Option ROM page, however, the number of images in that page
11 may be zero.
12
13

14 Each image in the Option ROM page is described by an Image descriptor
15 (see [Table 457 on page 1544](#)). The information contained in an Image de-
16 scriptor is used to locate an IOC driver image that matches to a particular
17 hardware defined by the IOControllerProfile attribute. A requestor uses
18 compatibility string(s) (Ref. I/O Annex Section A1.2.4) specified in the
19 image descriptor to match the image. If there is a common driver image
20 for multiple types of IOCs, then the image descriptor contains multiple
21 compatibility strings to match the image. Image descriptor size is variable
22 and depends on the number of compatibility strings specified in the de-
23 scriptor.
24
25

26 Each image in the Option ROM page has a unique handle assigned by the
27 IOU. The image handle is specified in the image descriptor and re-
28 questors use the handle to access the image.
29
30

31 It is not required that a ROM image be from the same IO unit that contains
32 the IO controller. In fact, it is desirable to permit a single ROM image to
33 drive multiple IO controllers, on various IO units. Thus, if the target IO unit
34 does not provide a driver, the host may search for other ROM repositories
35 that contain a suitable driver. In fact, the host policy may be to discover all
36 ROM repositories and then select the best match between all of the option
37 ROM images and the target IO controller. Console and OS Locator Re-
38 cords contain a DeviceDriverLocation component as a hint of which re-
39 pository most likely contains the best driver for a particular I/O controller.
40
41

A5.12.4 IDENTIFYING A ROM REPOSITORY

42 ROM repository support by a managed I/O unit is optional. An IOU indi-
43 cates that it contains a ROM Repository by setting the Option ROM com-
44 ponent in IOUnitInfo (device management) attribute. A host reads the
45 IOUnitInfo attribute by sending a DevMgtGet(IOUnitInfo). The IO unit re-
46 sponds with DevMgtGetResp(IOUnitInfo). If the Option ROM bit is set, it
47 means that a ROM repository exists on the IOU and the IOU has at least
48 one QP for the ROM repository protocol so that a requestor can establish
49 a connection with the IO unit and access the ROM repository.
50
51

CA5-42: An IO unit that supports a ROM repository shall set the option ROM bit in its IOUnitInfo attribute.

A5.12.5 ROM REPOSITORY ACCESS METHODS

ROM Repository messages use RC transport services. The requestor sends a connection request (see Volume 1, Chapter 12) specifying the well-known option ROM Service ID 0x0000_0000_0000_0001, defined in the “IB Identifiers” Annex, requesting a reliable connection. An IOU may use any of its available queue pairs to satisfy the connection request. Once the connection is established, the requestor uses the ROM repository protocol to read, write, modify, and delete an image in the ROM repository.

ROM repository access messages are relayed strictly by Send operations (RDMA operations are not used in either direction). Access message formats (see [Table 451 on page 1536](#)) dictate that payload byte zero indicates the message type, the contents of the remainder of the message are dictated by that message type.

An IOU may allow multiple simultaneous connections using the well-known SID. An IOU with multiple connection support (see Capabilities component in [Table 453 on page 1538](#)) can allow simultaneous reading of one or more images by multiple requestors.

CA5-43: An IO unit that contains a ROM repository shall provide at least one QP supporting a reliable connection for ROM repository access.

CA5-44: An IO unit that supports ROM repository shall only accept send messages on its ROM repository QPs.

The ROM repository protocol relies on message-level flow control supported by the hardware.

A5.12.6 ROM REPOSITORY MESSAGES

ROM repository operation codes and their corresponding message names are as specified in [Table 451 on page 1536](#).

Table 451 ROM Repository Operation Codes

OpCode	Message Name	Description
0x00	RepositoryInfoRequest	Request information on the ROM repository from the IOU. See Table 452 "RepositoryInfoRequest Message" on page 1538 .

Table 451 ROM Repository Operation Codes (Continued)

OpCode	Message Name	Description
0x01	DescriptorReadRequest	Request one or more image descriptors from the IOU's ROM repository. See Table 459 "DescriptorReadRequest message" on page 1547 .
0x02	ImageReadRequest	Request image data from an IOU. See Table 461 "ImageReadRequest Message" on page 1549 .
0x03	ImageAddRequest	Initiate an image add operation. See Table 463 "ImageAddRequest Message" on page 1553 .
0x04	ImageUpdateRequest	Initiate an image update operation. See Table 465 "ImageUpdateRequest Message" on page 1557 .
0x05	ImageWriteRequest	Write either the image descriptor or image data to a ROM repository. See Table 467 "ImageWriteRequest Message" on page 1560 .
0x06	ImageDeleteRequest	Delete an image from the repository. See Table 469 "ImageDeleteRequest Message" on page 1563
0x07 - 0x7F	-	Reserved.
0x80	RepositoryInfoResponse	Response to RepositoryInfoRequest message. See Table 453 "RepositoryInfoResponse Message" on page 1538 .
0x81	DescriptorReadResponse	Response to DescriptorReadRequest message. See Table 460 "DescriptorReadResponse Message" on page 1547 .
0x82	ImageReadResponse	Response to ImageReadRequest message. See Table 462 "ImageReadResponse Message" on page 1550 .
0x83	ImageAddResponse	Response to ImageAddRequest message. See Table 464 "ImageAddResponse Message" on page 1554 .
0x84	ImageUpdateResponse	Response to ImageUpdateRequest message. See Table 466 "ImageUpdateResponse Message" on page 1559 .
0x85	ImageWriteResponse	Response to ImageWriteRequest message. See Table 468 "ImageWriteResponse Message" on page 1560 .
0x86	ImageDeleteResponse	Response to ImageDeleteRequest message. See Table 470 "ImageDeleteResponse Message" on page 1563 .
0x87 - 0xFF	-	Reserved.

CA5-45: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall support ROM repository messages specified in [Table 451 on page 1536](#).

A5.12.7 READING ROM REPOSITORY INFORMATION

CA5-46: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to RepositoryInfoRequest message as specified in [Table 452 on page 1538](#) with a RepositoryInfoResponse message as specified in [Table 453 on page 1538](#).

The requestor sends a RepositoryInfoRequest message as specified in [Table 452 on page 1538](#) and the IOU responds with a single RepositoryInfoResponse message as specified in [Table 453 on page 1538](#).

Table 452 RepositoryInfoRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x00 - Request information on the ROM repository from the IOU.
Reserved	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
MaxIdleTime	12	4	Unsigned integer value expressed in 10 millisecond intervals by the requestor to inform an IOU the expected maximum idle time between requests.

Table 453 RepositoryInfoResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x80 - Response to RepositoryInfoRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status - see Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	The value from the request.
TransactionID	4	8	The value from the request.
IdleTimeOut	12	4	Unsigned integer value expressed in 10 millisecond intervals to inform a requestor the idle time the IOU allows between requests before it releases the connection with that requestor.
NumImages	16	4	Total number of images in the repository.
InputBufferSize	20	4	Maximum send payload the IOU can receive in a single send message from a requestor for ROM repository access.
OutputBufferSize	24	4	Maximum send payload the IOU can send in a single send message in response to ROM repository request messages from a requestor.
FreeSpace	28	8	Unused space in the repository.

Table 453 RepositoryInfoResponse Message (Continued)

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Capabilities	32	4	<p>Specifies the capabilities supported by the IOU.</p> <p><u>Byte:Bit position</u></p> <p>0:0 - IOU supports multiple ROM repository connections if this bit is set.</p> <p>0:1 - IOU supports updates in retain mode if this bit is set.</p> <p>All other bits are reserved and shall be zero.</p>

The repository information messages provides for a mechanism to negotiate idle connection time out value between a requestor and an IOU. The requestor specifies its expected maximum idle time between requests in the MaxIdleTime component of the RepositoryInfoRequest message and the IOU responds with the idle time it allows by specifying the time in the IdleTimeOut component of the RepositoryInfoResponse message.

The idle time allowed by the IOU is not required to be the same as the time out requested by the requestor. A requestor may use the value specified by IdleTimeOut component (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)) to implement some kind of keep-alive mechanism. The action taken by a requestor when an IOU's allowed idle time is less than what it has requested is implementation specific and outside the scope of this specification. How an IOU or a requestor decides on maximum idle time between requests for a given connection is outside the scope of this specification.

The FreeSpace component in [Table 453 on page 1538](#) specifies the unused space available in the repository page identified by the RepositoryID component in [Table 452 on page 1538](#). This is a snap shot of the free space available at the time of response. When the IOU supports multiple connections the available free space can change depending on the operations on other RCs. This component is a useful indicator in single connection implementations.

A requestor accessing a ROM repository can send requests on a connection without waiting for the response to a previous request. The requestor may post receive buffers of varying size depending on the expected response size. For proper receive buffer usage at the requestor's end, an I/O unit is required to send responses to requests in the order they are received.

CA5-47: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall send responses to ROM repository requests in the order the requests are received on a given connection.

CA5-48: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall support a minimum buffer size of 4096 bytes to receive ROM repository request messages.

CA5-49: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall support a minimum buffer size of 4096 bytes to send ROM repository response messages.

Table 454 Transaction Status Codes for All Transactions

Status Code	Description
0x00	Success - Indicates that the operation has completed without error.
0x01	Success With Recovery - Indicates that the command completed successfully with some recovery action performed. A requestor's action upon receiving this status is implementation specific and outside the scope of this specification.
0x02	Hardware Error - Detected a non-recoverable hardware error.
0x03	Illegal Request - Illegal parameter in request message or unknown message type.
0x04	Data Write Protect - Update prohibited.
0x05	Data Read Protect - Read prohibited.
0x06	Update In Progress - Indicates that the image is being updated. This status is returned to prevent simultaneous updating of the same image by two requestors and/or to prevent deleting of an image that is being updated.
0x07	Insufficient Space - Indicates that there is not enough space in the repository to accommodate the new image.
0x08	Insufficient Retain space - Indicates that the IOU does not have enough space to retain the old image while the update is in progress.
0x09	Invalid Image Handle - Image handle is invalid. An image handle can become invalid if the corresponding image gets deleted or updated.
0x0A- 0xFF	Reserved.

Data returned with error status i.e status codes other than 0x00 and 0x01 should be discarded.

An IOU returns “Illegal Request” status in the following cases:

- 1) Operation code specified by the Opcode component in a request is not valid i.e. the specified opcode is not one of the request message opcodes defined in [Table 451 on page 1536](#).
- 2) The ROM repository type specified by the RepositoryID component in a request is not supported by the IOU.

- 3) The index number specified by the StartIndex component in a DescriptorReadRequest message (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)) is outside the valid range. The valid range for a descriptor index number is 0 to n-1, where n is equal to the number of images present in the repository as specified by the NumImages component in Repository-InfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)).
1
2
3
4
5
- 4) The size specified by the BufferSize component in a Descriptor-ReadRequest message (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)) is equal to zero.
6
7
8
- 5) The size specified by the BufferSize component in a Descriptor-ReadRequest message (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)) is greater than the size specified by the OutputBufferSize component in Repository-InfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)).
9
10
11
12
- 6) The NumDescriptors component in a DescriptorReadRequest message (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)) is equal to zero.
13
14
- 7) An ImageReadRequest exceeds the IOU's capacity as specified in the OutputBufferSize component of the RepositoryInfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)). This occurs when the sum of the ByteCount component in the ImageReadRequest message (see [Table 461 on page 1549](#)) plus 28 bytes for the ImageReadResponse header (i.e. the byte offset of the Data component from [Table 462 on page 1550](#)) is greater than the specified OutputBufferSize.
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
- 8) The ImageSize component in an ImageUpdateRequest message (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) is equal to zero.
22
23
- 9) The DescriptorSize component in an ImageUpdateRequest message (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) is equal to zero.
24
25
- 10) The Retain component in an ImageUpdateRequest message (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) specifies a value of 0x01 and the IOU does not support updates in retain mode (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#), Capabilities component).
26
27
28
29
- 11) The ImageSize component in an ImageAddRequest message (see [Table 463 on page 1553](#)) is equal to zero.
30
31
- 12) The DescriptorSize component in an ImageAddRequest message (see [Table 463 on page 1553](#)) is equal to zero.
32
33
- 13) The FinalRequest component in an ImageWriteRequest message (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) specifies a value other than 0x00 and 0x01.
34
35
36
- 14) The DataType component in an ImageWriteRequest message (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) specifies a value other than 0x00 and 0x01.
37
38
39
- 15) The offset specified by the ByteOffset component in an ImageWriteRequest message (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) is greater than n-1, where n is the descriptor size in bytes if the DataType specified
40
41
42

is equal to 0x00 or image size in bytes if the DataType specified is equal to 0x01.

- 16) The sum of the values specified by the ByteOffset component and ByteCount component in an ImageWriteRequest message (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) is greater than n-1, where n is the descriptor size in bytes if the DataType specified is equal to 0x00 or image size in bytes if the DataType specified is equal to 0x01.
- 17) The key specified by the AuthenticationKey component in ImageAddRequest (see [Table 463 on page 1553](#)) message is an illegal key.
- 18) The key specified by the AuthenticationKey component in ImageUpdateRequest (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) message is an illegal key.
- 19) The key specified by the AuthenticationKey component in ImageDeleteRequest (see [Table 469 on page 1563](#)) message is an illegal key.

CA5-50: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall respond with “Illegal Request” status in all the above mentioned cases.

An IOU is not required to do a boundary check if the operation being performed is an image read or descriptor read operation. An IOU may choose not to check boundary conditions. If a check is done and fails, then the IOU returns a status of 0x03. An IOU’s response (in the absence of boundary check) to a read operation beyond an image boundary or descriptor boundary is outside the scope of this specification.

The matrix of possible status codes in response to various request message operation codes (see [Table 451 on page 1536](#)) is as shown in [Table 455 on page 1542](#).

Table 455 Status Code Matrix

Status Code Opcode	0x00	0x01	0x02	0x03	0x04	0x05	0x06	0x07	0x08	0x09
0x00	X	X	X	X						
0x01	X	X	X	X						
0x02	X	X	X	X		X				X
0x03	X	X	X	X	X			X		
0x04	X	X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X

Table 455 Status Code Matrix (Continued)

Status Code Opcode	0x00	0x01	0x02	0x03	0x04	0x05	0x06	0x07	0x08	0x09
0x05	X	X	X	X	X					X
0x06	X	X	X	X	X					X

Table 456 ROM Repository IDs

Value	Description
0x0000	ROM repository page containing IOC driver images.
0x0001 - 0x7FFF	Reserved for future IBTA definition.
0x8000 - 0xFFFF	IOU Vendor Specific - IOU vendor may support IDs in this range to allow access to objects such as micro code or configuration tables in IOUs from that vendor.

A5.12.8 IMAGE DESCRIPTOR

Each image in the Option ROM page has one image descriptor associated with it. Image descriptor contains important information about the associated image such as size of the image, state of the image, image CRC, and information to match the image to a particular hardware and host execution environment. Image descriptor format is as shown in [Table 457 on page 1544](#).

Note that the image descriptor format in [Table 457 on page 1544](#) has been defined primarily for image descriptors in Option ROM page. Other repository types i.e. non Option ROM pages (IOU's vendor specific repository spaces) might not use the same image descriptor format.

Table 457 Image Descriptor Format

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
DescriptorSize	0	4	Size of the Image descriptor.
ImageState	4	1	Specifies state of the image as follows: 0x00 - Image is valid. 0x01 - Image is invalid. 0x02 - 0xFF Reserved.
Reserved1	5	3	Reserved.
ImageHandle	8	8	Handle assigned by the IOU to the image associated with this descriptor. A requestor uses this handle to perform operations (read, update or delete) on the image.
ImageSize	16	4	Size of the image.
ImageAuthority	20	4	Specifies the organization that defines the image type and the image content. <u>Byte 0 Bytes 1-3</u> 0x000x000000 IBTA 0x01IEEE OUI All other values - Reserved.
ImageType	24	4	Image type as defined by Image Authority if ImageAuthority component contains an IEEE assigned OUI. If the Image Authority is IBTA, then the ImageType indicates the execution environment as specified by IBTA. See Table 458 on page 1545 .
ImageVersion	28	2	Version of the image.
Reserved2	30	2	Reserved.
ImageCRC	32	4	Cyclic Redundancy Code covering all bytes in the image. Calculation is identical to that described for Invariant CRC in the Link Layer Chapter.
PrivateData	36	40	Vendor-defined text description and/or notes (such as build date).
Reserved3	76	2	Reserved.
NumCompStrs	78	2	Number of compatibility strings present in the descriptor. See I/O Annex Section 1.3.1 for information on compatibility strings.
CompStrArray	80	64 * {NumCompStrs}	Array of compatibility strings (for matching driver to hardware).

Each element in the CompStrArray is 64 bytes in size and contains a variable size null terminated compatibility string (see I/O Annex section 1.3.1).

CA5-51: The format of each compatibility string in the CompStrArray component (see [Table 457 on page 1544](#)) of an image descriptor present in the Option ROM page shall be as specified in [Annex I/O, Table 3 compatibility strings](#), if the image authority specified by the ImageAuthority component in that image descriptor is IBTA (i.e. a value of 0x00000000).

The ImageAuthority component in [Table 457 on page 1544](#) specifies the organization that defines the image type and the image content. If the least most significant byte (byte 0) is equal to 0x00 then the image authority is IBTA. If it is equal to 0x01 then the image authority is the organization whose IEEE assigned OUI has been specified in bytes 1-3.

The association between the ImageHandle component in [Table 457 on page 1544](#) and its corresponding image does not change during the life time of a given connection. The same association might not exist on a different connection.

Table 458 IBTA Boot Image Types

Value	Description
0x00	Unspecified
0x01	BIOS
0x02	EFI
0x03	IEEE 1275
0x04	PA - IODC
All others	Reserved.

Any organization that has an IEEE assigned OUI may define image types by placing their OUI in the ImageAuthority component. In this case, that organization defines the meaning of the ImageType values.

A5.12.9 READING AN IMAGE DESCRIPTOR

Image descriptors are indexed from 0 to n-1, where n is the total number of image descriptors present in the repository. The total number of image descriptors present in the repository is equal to the value returned in the “NumImages” component of the RepositoryInfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)). Requestor reads image descriptors using index numbers and determines from the image descriptor components, whether or not a desired image is present in the repository.

To read a single image descriptor with a particular index, the requestor specifies the index number in the StartIndex component and specifies a count of one in the NumDescriptors component (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)). To read a range of image descriptors the requestor specifies the

index number of the starting descriptor (of the range) in the StartIndex component and the number of descriptors to be read in the NumDescriptors component.

Since the image descriptor size is variable, it is possible to have an image descriptor that is larger in size than the output buffer size supported by an IOU or the Input buffer size supported by a requestor. To read such an image descriptor, the requestor sends multiple DescriptorReadRequest messages with appropriate offset values specified in the ByteOffset component of each request message. The requestor also specifies the maximum send payload size it can receive in the Buffer Size component of the DescriptorReadRequest message. Since the requestor may not be aware of the descriptor size (particularly when it is reading the descriptor starting from byte0 i.e offset 0), the IOU sends as much descriptor data as it can send without exceeding the size specified in the BufferSize component of the request.

To prevent discontinuity in the descriptor index range, an IOU does not delete image descriptors corresponding to deleted or updated images as long as there is a connection to the ROM repository. The IOU simply changes the ImageState component in the descriptor to “invalid” state.

CA5-52: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall not respond with a DescriptorReadResponse message that is larger in size than the value specified by the BufferSize component in the DescriptorReadRequest message.

CA5-53: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall not change the index number assignments of existing image descriptors (as viewed by the requestor) as long as a given RC exists.

CA5-54: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to DescriptorReadRequest message as specified in [Table 459 on page 1547](#) with a DescriptorReadResponse message as specified in [Table 460 on page 1547](#).

The requestor sends DescriptorReadRequest message as specified in [Table 459 on page 1547](#) and the IOU responds with DescriptorReadResponse message as specified in [Table 460 on page 1547](#). The ladder diagram of image descriptor read operation is as shown in Figure 292.

Table 459 DescriptorReadRequest message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x01- Request one or more image descriptors from the IOU's ROM repository.
Reserved1	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543 .
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
StartIndex	12	4	Index of the image descriptor to read or index of the first image descriptor if reading multiple image descriptors.
ByteOffset	16	4	Specifies the byte offset from the start of the image descriptor where the transfer starts. The specified offset is only for the image descriptor referenced by the StartIndex component. Note that descriptor Byte 0 is at Offset 0x00.
NumDescriptors	20	4	Number of image descriptors to read. The starting image descriptor is specified in the StartIndex component.
BufferSize	24	4	Specifies the buffer size allocated by the requestor to receive the response to this request message.

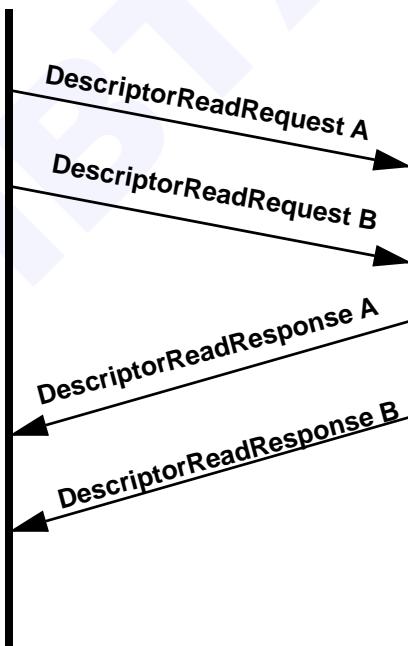
Table 460 DescriptorReadResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
MessageType	0	1	0x81- Response to DescriptorReadRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status. See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	The value from the request.
TransactionID	4	8	The value from the request.
StartIndex	12	4	The value from the request.
ByteOffset	16	4	The value from the request.
NumDescriptors	20	4	Actual number of image descriptors sent in this message. This number includes partial descriptors if any.
Reserved1	24	4	Reserved.
ByteCount	28	4	Number of bytes sent in the Data component.

Table 460 **DescriptorReadResponse Message (Continued)**

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Data	32	{ByteCount}	This component contains full or partial image descriptor data. It contains tightly packed image descriptors if the IOU returns more than one descriptor.

The NumDescriptors component in the DescriptorReadResponse message (see [Table 460 on page 1547](#)) specifies actual number of image descriptors returned in the Data component. This number can be less than the number specified in the corresponding request message (see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)), when the requested number of descriptors can't fit in a single response message and/or when there are not as many image descriptors (starting with the StartIndex, see [Table 459 on page 1547](#)) as requested by the requestor.

**Figure 292** **Ladder Diagram of Image Descriptor Read Operation**

A5.12.10 READING AN IMAGE

A requestor selects a particular image for reading by matching one of the IOC's compatibility strings with one of the I/O driver's compatibility strings

(see CompStrArray component in [Table 457 on page 1544](#)), for image descriptors that have an ImageAuthority, ImageType, and ImageVersion matching the boot environment. The requestor then uses the image handle present in the matching descriptor to read the image. The requestor sends an ImageReadRequest message as specified in [Table 461 on page 1549](#) and the IOU responds with a single ImageReadResponse message as specified in [Table 462 on page 1550](#). The ladder diagram of an image read operation is as shown in Figure 293.

An image and its image handle are valid only when the ImageState component in the corresponding image descriptor is equal to 0x00.

CA5-55: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to an ImageReadRequest message as specified in [Table 461 on page 1549](#) with an ImageReadResponse message as specified in [Table 462 on page 1550](#).

CA5-56: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond with the status “Invalid Image Handle”, if the image handle specified in a message sent by the requestor is not a valid image handle.

An image handle becomes invalid, if the image gets deleted or updated. When there are two or more requestors accessing the ROM Repository, a requestor can initiate image update or image delete operation even if that image is currently being read by other requestors. An image is invalidated by writing a value of 0x01 in the ImageState component of the corresponding image descriptor.

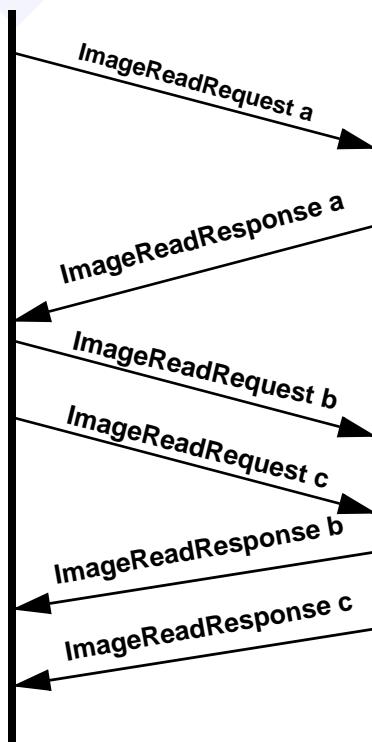
Table 461 ImageReadRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x02 - Request image data from the IOU.
Reserved1	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
ImageHandle	12	8	Image handle specified in the image descriptor.
ByteOffset	20	4	Specifies the byte offset from the start of the image where the transfer starts. Byte 0 is at Offset 0x00.
ByteCount	24	4	Specifies the number of bytes of image data to transfer.

Table 462 ImageReadResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x82 - Response to ImageReadRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status. See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	Value from the request.
TransactionID	4	8	Value from the request.
ImageHandle	12	8	Value from the request.
ByteOffset	20	4	Value from the request.
ByteCount	24	4	Actual number of bytes returned in the data component.
Data	28	{ByteCount}	Image data.

The requestor should check for under-flows by comparing the returned byte count (ByteCount component in the ImageReadResponse message) with the byte count requested in ImageReadRequest message.

**Figure 293****Ladder Diagram of Image Read Operation**

A5.12.11 ADDING AND UPDATING AN IMAGE

A requestor can modify a ROM repository by performing operations such as adding new images to the repository, modifying (updating) images present in the repository, and deleting images from the repository.

There are two possible modes to update an image in the repository. One is to invalidate the existing image (make it unavailable to other requestors) before writing the new image and the other mechanism is to retain the existing image (and make it available to other requestors) until the modified image is written successfully. The location at which the new image is stored in the repository is implementation specific.

The Retain component in the ImageUpdateRequest (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) message specifies which mode to use. Update support in retain mode is optional and the Capabilities component in the RepositoryInfoResponse message (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) specifies whether or not the IOU supports updates in retain mode.

The ROM repository protocol provides an authentication mechanism for I/O units to authenticate image add, image update, and image delete operations by checking the Authentications component specified in ImageAddRequest (see [Table 463 on page 1553](#)), ImageUpdateRequest (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)), and ImageDeleteRequest (see [Table 469 on page 1563](#)) messages. How a requestor obtains the authentication key is outside the scope of this annex. An IOU is not required to authenticate image add, image update and image delete operations. An IOU may accept any authentication key in the request message, if it does not support authentication of the above mentioned operations.

A ROM repository supported by an IOU can be write protected. How write protection is enabled or disabled is outside the scope of this annex. If a repository is write protected, the IOU responds to ImageAddRequest, ImageUpdateRequest, ImageWriteRequest, and ImageDeleteRequest, messages with "Data Write Protected" (see [Table 454 on page 1540](#)) status.

A5.12.11.1 INITIATING AN IMAGE ADD OPERATION

A requestor initiates an image add operation by sending ImageAddRequest message to the IOU as specified in [Table 463 on page 1553](#). The requestor specifies image size and image descriptor size in the request message. The IOU responds with ImageAddResponse message as specified in [Table 464 on page 1554](#). The response message contains the write handle allocated by the IOU to add the new image and its image descriptor. This write handle is unique across all connections. The requestor uses the allocated write handle to write the new image and new image descriptor as specified in [A5.12.11.3 "Writing Descriptor and Image Data" on page 1559](#).

Following are the steps involved in adding an image:

- 1 1) The requestor sends ImageAddRequest message (see [Table 463 on page 1553](#)) specifying the authentication key, image descriptor size, and image size.
- 2 2) The IOU allocates a Write Handle³⁷ and returns it in the response message (see [Table 464 on page 1554](#)).
- 3 3) The requestor sends ImageWriteRequest messages (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) specifying the Write Handle (returned in step 2), Byte Offset, Byte Count, etc. to write the new image descriptor and new image.
- 4 4) The requestor informs an IOU that it has sent all the bytes of image descriptor and image by specifying a value of 0x01 in the Final Request component (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)).
- 5 5) When the IOU receives an ImageWriteRequest message with Final Request component equal to 0x01, it completes the writing of new image and descriptor. If the write is successful, then the IOU allocates a new handle, updates the image descriptor with the new handle³⁸, and then makes the new image descriptor available for reading.

There are two handles involved in an image add operation. The scope of these handles during an add operation is as shown in Figure 294.

37. The IOU assigns a unique handle for adding the image.
38. The IOU assigns another unique handle for all future access.

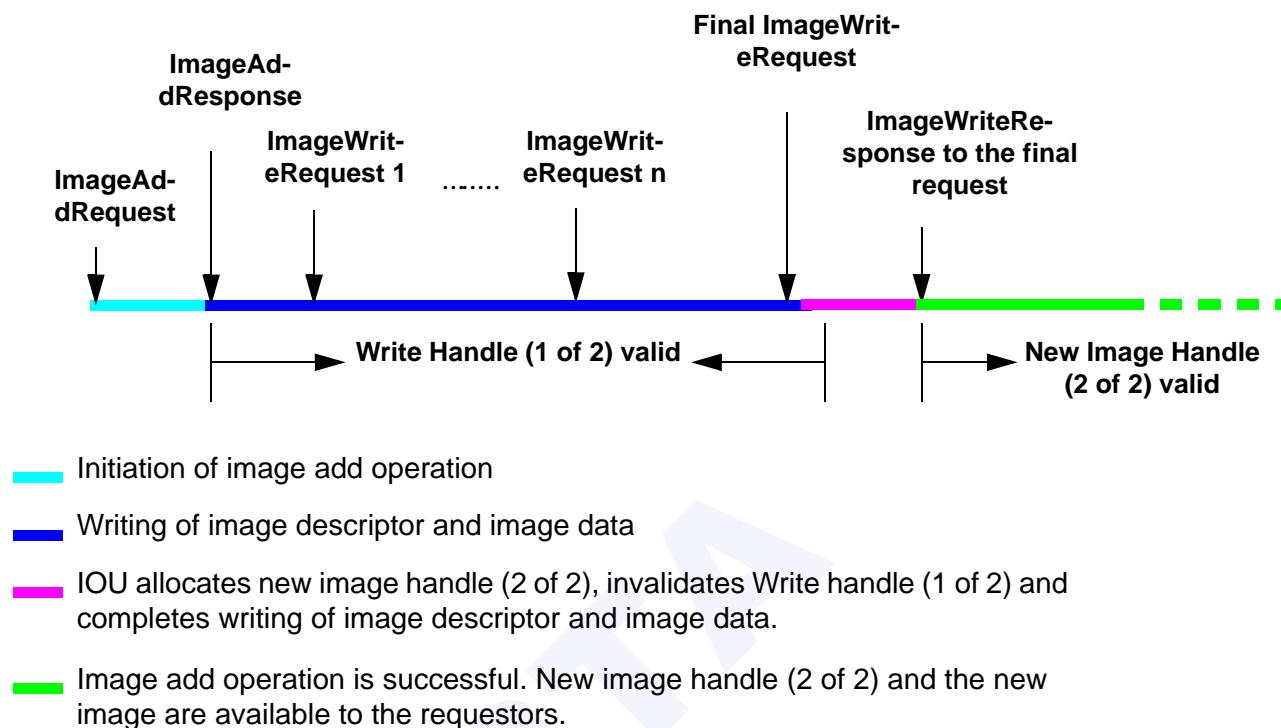


Figure 294 Handles Involved in an Image Add Operation

CA5-57: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to an **ImageAddRequest** message as specified in [Table 463 on page 1553](#) with an **ImageAddResponse** message as specified in [Table 464 on page 1554](#).

CA5-58: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall respond with the status “Insufficient Space” (see [Table 454 on page 1540](#)) to an **ImageAddRequest** message, if there is not enough space to store the new image and the new descriptor.

Table 463 ImageAddRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x03 - Initiate an image add operation.
Reserved1	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 .
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.

Table 463 ImageAddRequest Message (Continued)

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Reserved2	12	8	Reserved.
ImageSize	20	4	Size of the image to be added.
DescriptorSize	24	4	Size of the image descriptor.
AuthenticationKey	28	8	Key for the IOU to authenticate the add operation.

Table 464 ImageAddResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x83 - Response to ImageAddRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	Value from the request
TransactionID	4	8	Value from the request.
WriteHandle	12	8	Image handle allocated by the IOU to add the new image. This handle is used by the requestor to write the new image and new descriptor.

A5.12.11.2 INITIATING AN IMAGE UPDATE

A requestor initiates an image update operation by sending ImageUpdateRequest message to the IOU as specified in [Table 465 on page 1557](#). The IOU responds with ImageUpdateResponse message as specified in [Table 466 on page 1559](#). The response message contains the image handle allocated by the IOU to update the existing image and its image descriptor. This image handle is unique across all connections. The requestor uses the allocated image handle to write the new image and new image descriptor as specified in [A5.12.11.3 "Writing Descriptor and Image Data" on page 1559](#).

Following are the steps involved in updating an image:

- 1) The requestor sends ImageUpdateRequest (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)) message specifying the image handle³⁹ of the image being modified, new image size, new descriptor size, authentication key, etc.

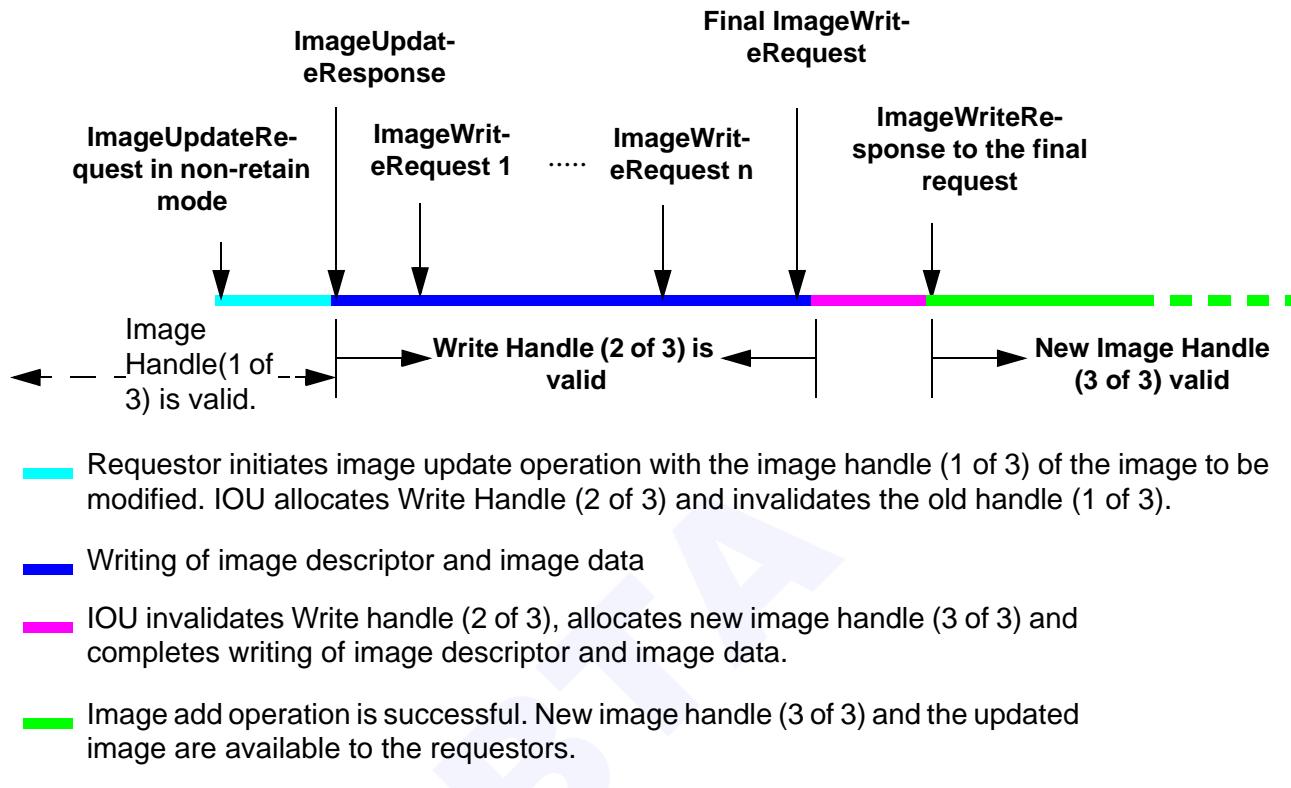
39. Image handle of the existing image from the corresponding descriptor.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39
- 40
- 41
- 42
- 2) The IOU allocates Write Handle⁴⁰ (if the update is allowed and there are enough resources) and returns it in the response message (see [Table 466 on page 1559](#)). The IOU invalidates the old image before sending the response (with success status), if the requestor specifies a value of 0x00 in the Retain component of the corresponding request (see [Table 465 on page 1557](#)).
 - 3) The requestor then sends ImageWriteRequest messages (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) specifying the Write Handle (returned in step 2), Byte Offset, Byte Count etc. to write the modified image descriptor and modified image.
 - 4) The requestor informs an IOU that it has sent all the bytes of image descriptor and image by specifying a value of 0x01 in the Final Request component (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)).
 - 5) When the IOU receives an ImageWriteRequest message with Final Request component equal to 0x01, it completes the writing of modified image and descriptor. If the write is successful then the IOU allocates a new handle⁴¹ and updates the image descriptor with the new handle.
 - 6) If the update is initiated in the Retain mode (see Retain component in Table 12) then the IOU invalidates the old image by assigning a value of 0x01 to the ImageState component in the old image descriptor. The IOU does not delete or over-write the old image descriptor as long as there is a connection to the ROM repository.
 - 7) The IOU makes the new image descriptor and new image available for reading.

Updating an image always requires writing the image descriptor as well as the image. ImageWriteRequest message is used for writing the image and also the image descriptor. The DataType component in the ImageWriteRequest message (see [Table 467 on page 1560](#)) specifies whether the Data component contains image data or descriptor data.

There are three handles involved in an image update operation. The scope of these handles during an update operation in non retain mode is as shown in [Figure 295](#).

-
40. IOU assigns a unique handle to update the image.
 41. IOU assigns another unique handle for all future access.

**Figure 295****Handles Involved in an Image Update in Non Retain Mode**

The scope of the handles during an update operation in retain mode is as shown in Figure 296.

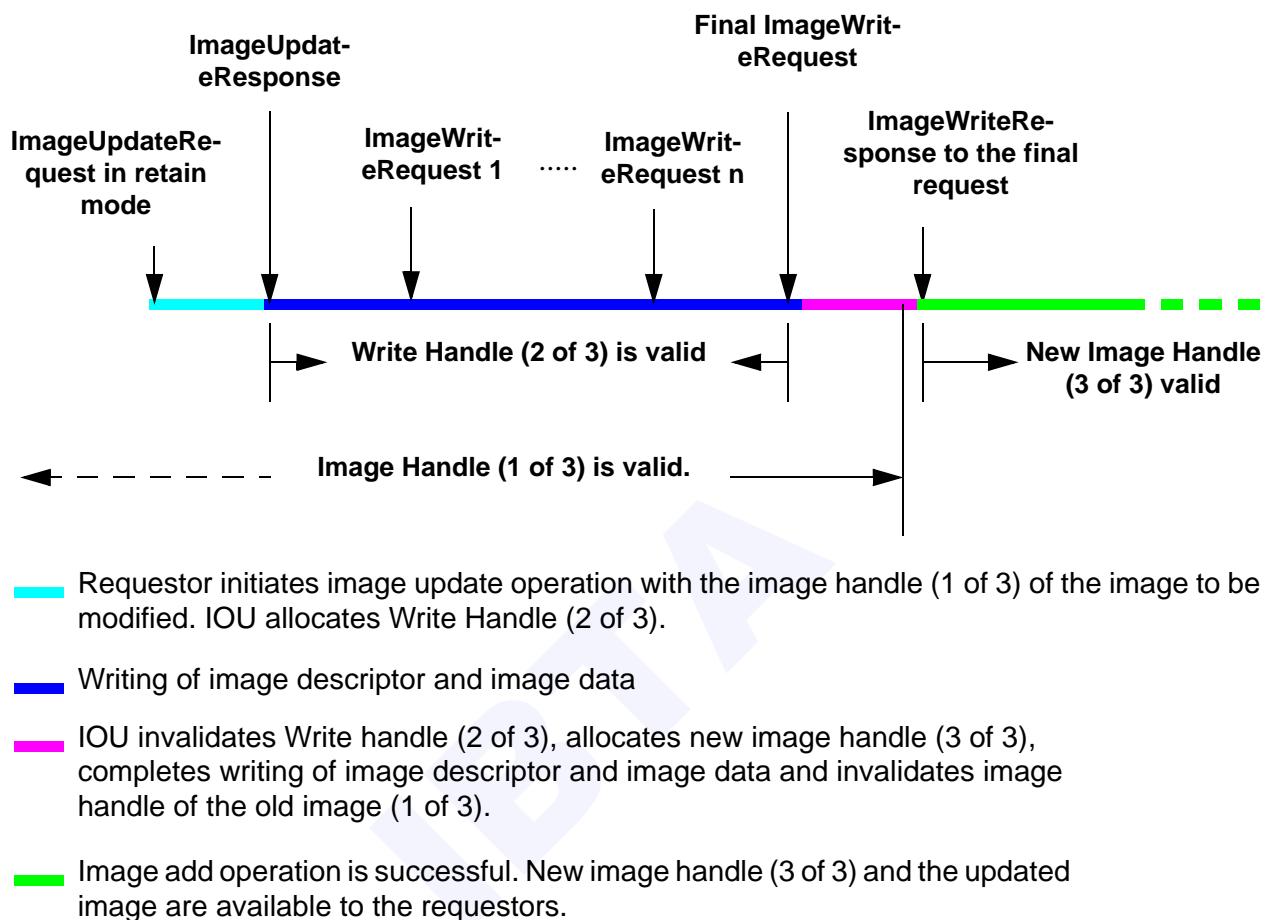


Figure 296 Handles Involved in an Image Update in Retain Mode

Table 465 ImageUpdateRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x04 - Initiate an image update operation.
Reserved1	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
ImageHandle	12	8	Image handle of the image being updated as specified by the ImageHandle component in the corresponding image descriptor.

Table 465 ImageUpdateRequest Message (Continued)

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Reserved2	20	8	Reserved.
Retain	28	1	Specifies the update mode. Value 0x00 - Update in non-retain mode. Value 0x01 - Update in retain mode Values 0x02 - 0xFF - Reserved.
Reserved3	29	3	Reserved.
ImageSize	32	4	Size of the new image.
DescriptorSize	36	4	Size of the new image descriptor.
AuthenticationKey	40	8	Key for the IOU to authenticate the update operation.

The Retain component in [Table 465 on page 1557](#) specifies whether or not the IOU should retain the old image (descriptor, handle and image data for reading by other requestors) until the update process completes successfully (good response to the final ImageWriteRequest message). A value 0x00 in the Retain component specifies that the IOU should invalidate the old image immediately, if the requestor is allowed to update the old image. This is a destructive upgrade because the old image is lost even if the upgrade fails for any reason. A value of 0x01 specifies that the IOU should not invalidate the old image until the update completes successfully. In this case, if the update fails for any reason, the old image is still available and valid.

Note that the IOU lists the new image descriptor only when the update is successful in either case.

CA5-59: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to an ImageUpdateRequest message as specified in [Table 465 on page 1557](#) with an ImageUpdateResponse message as specified in [Table 466 on page 1559](#).

CA5-60: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond with the status “Update In Progress” to an ImageUpdateRequest message, if the image is currently being updated.

CA5-61: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall respond with the status “Insufficient Space” (see [Table 454 on page 1540](#)) to an ImageUpdateRequest message, if there is not enough space to store the new image and the new descriptor because of the increase in size.

CA5-62: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond with the status “Insufficient Retain Space” to an ImageUpdateRequest message with Retain component equal to 0x01, if there is not enough space to retain the old image, but there is enough space to store the new image and new descriptor without retaining the old image.

CA5-63: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall invalidate the old image before responding with a Success status to an ImageUpdateRequest message with Retain component equal to 0x00.

Table 466 ImageUpdateResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x84 - Response to ImageUpdateRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status. See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	Value from the request.
TransactionID	4	8	Value from the request.
ImageHandle	12	8	Value from the request.
WriteHandle	20	8	Image handle allocated by the IOU for the update. This handle is used to write the descriptor and image data.

A5.12.11.3 WRITING DESCRIPTOR AND IMAGE DATA

To write a new image or to update an existing image the requestor sends ImageWriteRequest message as specified in [Table 467 on page 1560](#) and the IOU responds with ImageWriteResponse message as specified in [Table 468 on page 1560](#).

The IOU uses the Write Handle to correlate ImageWriteRequest messages with the corresponding add or update operation.

CA5-64: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall respond to an ImageWriteRequest message as specified in [Table 467 on page 1560](#) with an ImageWriteResponse message as specified in [Table 468 on page 1560](#).

Table 467 ImageWriteRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x05 - Write image and image descriptor data to the ROM repository.
Reserved1	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
WriteHandle	12	8	Handle allocated for writing the image. This handle is returned in the ImageUpdateResponse message if the operation is an update or returned in the ImageAddResponse message if the operation is an add operation.
FinalRequest	20	1	Specifies whether or not this is the final request message for the image descriptor and image write operation that is currently in progress. Value 0x00 - This message is not the final request. Value 0x01 - This message is the final request. Values 0x02 - 0xFF are reserved.
DataType	21	1	Specifies whether the data contained in the Data component is descriptor data or image data. Value 0x00 - Descriptor data. Value 0x01 - Image data. Values 0x02 - 0xFF - Reserved.
Reserved2	22	2	Reserved.
ByteOffset	24	4	Specifies the byte offset from the start of the image where the transfer starts. Byte 0 is at Offset 0x00.
ByteCount	28	4	Specifies the number of bytes of image data to transfer.
Data	32	{ByteCount}	Image descriptor data or image data for writing.

Table 468 ImageWriteResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x85 - Response to ImageWriteRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status. See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	Value from the request.

Table 468 ImageWriteResponse Message (Continued)

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
TransactionID	4	8	Value from the request.
WriteHandle	12	8	Value from the request.

CA5-65: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall allocate a new image handle and shall update the ImageHandle component in the image descriptor before making the new or modified image available to requestors.

CA5-66: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall not invalidate the old image until the image update is successful, if the corresponding ImageUpdateRequest is sent with a value of 0x01 in the Retain component.

The ladder diagrams of an image update and add operations are as shown in Figure 297.

Image update operation

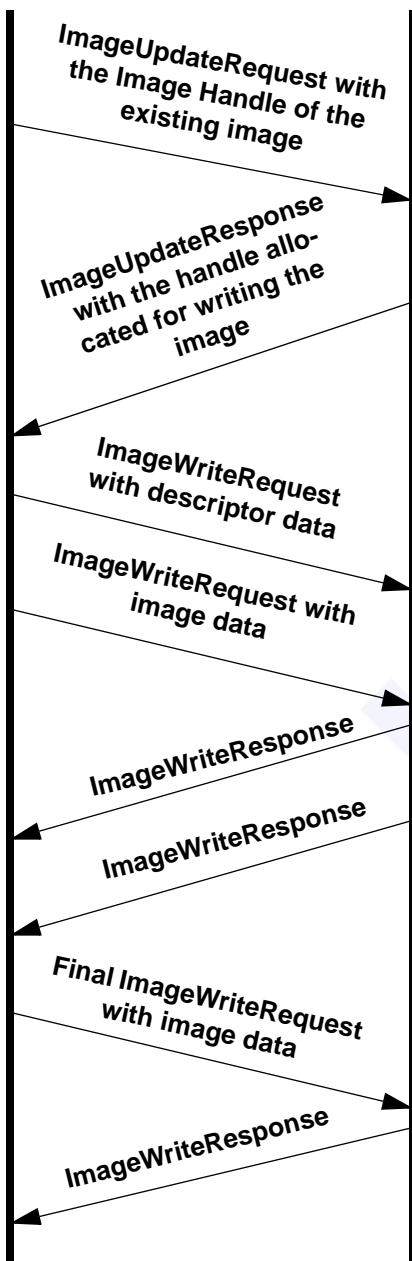


Image add operation

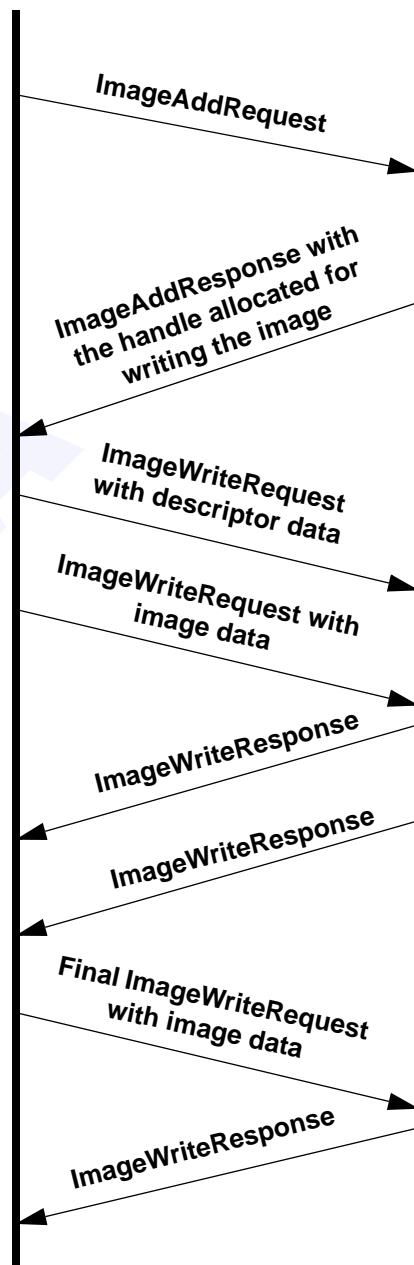


Figure 297

Ladder Diagram of Image Write operation

A5.12.11.4 DELETING AN IMAGE

CA5-67: An IOU that provides a ROM Repository shall respond to an ImageDeleteRequest message as specified in [Table 469 on page 1563](#) with an ImageDeleteResponse message as specified in Table 470 on page 1563.

Table 469 ImageDeleteRequest Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x06 - Delete an image from the repository.
Reserved	1	1	Reserved.
RepositoryID	2	2	Identifies the type of ROM repository. See Table 456 on page 1543
TransactionID	4	8	This value is supplied by the requestor and returned in the response.
ImageHandle	12	8	Image handle of the image to be deleted.
AuthenticationKey	20	8	Key for the IOU to authenticate the delete operation.

Table 470 ImageDeleteResponse Message

Component	Byte Offset	Length (Bytes)	Description
Opcode	0	1	0x86 - Response to ImageDeleteRequest message.
Status	1	1	Transaction Status. See Table 454 on page 1540 .
RepositoryID	2	2	Value from the request.
TransactionID	4	8	Value from the request.
ImageHandle	12	8	Value from the request.

CA5-68: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall respond with the status “Update in Progress” to an ImageDeleteRequest, if the image is currently being updated.

CA5-69: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall set the ImageState component to a value of 0x01 in the image descriptor corresponding to the deleted image, if and only if, the delete operation is successful.

The IOU immediately frees up the space occupied by an image, if the image delete operation on that image is successful. The IOU does not de-

lete the corresponding image descriptor as long as there is a connection to the ROM repository that is aware of that image descriptor. A connection is assumed to be aware of an image descriptor, if the index number associated with that image descriptor is less than the value returned in the NumImages component of a RepositoryInfoResponse message (see [Table 453 on page 1538](#)).

CA5-70: An IOU that provides a ROM repository shall not delete the image descriptor corresponding to deleted/invalidated image as long as there is a connection to the ROM repository that is aware of the image descriptor corresponding to the deleted/invalidated image.

A5.13 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

A5.13.1 BOOTING SPECIFICATION COMPLIANCE CATEGORIES

In order to claim compliance to the Booting Specification a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

Table 471 Booting Compliance Categories/Qualifiers

Category	Qualifiers	Description
BtA	none	Minimum requirements for a BootAgent
	Trap	Asynchronous Event Notification
	NQ	Notice Queue
	Info	Capable of saving PlatformBootInfo and PortBootInfo attributes into non-volatile storage
	RomLoc	Capable of saving and deleting RomRepositoryLocatorRecords into non-volatile storage
	ConLoc	Capable of saving and deleting ConsoleLocatorRecords into non-volatile storage
	OsLoc	Capable of saving and deleting OsLocatorRecords into non-volatile storage
BtM	Reboot	Capable of rebooting the platform
	none	Minimum requirements for a BootManager
	Subscribe	BootManager supports 3rd party Trap subscriptions
	PERS	BootManager retains subscription information across power cycles and resets - requires compliance with Subscribe qualifier
	FAILOVER	BootManager supports graceful failover to another boot manager - requires compliance with Subscribe qualifier

Table 471 Booting Compliance Categories/Qualifiers (Continued)

Category	Qualifiers	Description
BtPlatform	none	Minimum requirements for a Boot Platform
	Info	Capable of reading PlatformBootInfo and PortBootInfo from non-volatile storage
	NV	Capable of reading RomRepositoryLocatorRecords, ConsoleLocatorRecords and OsLocatorRecords from non-volatile storage
	ExBE	Capable of expanding the Boot Environment using a ROM Repository
	BIS	Capable of using the BIS service and using BIS class attributed for booting
	NWBoot	Capable of booting using the IB Network model
	BootOS	Capable of booting the OS over the IB Network
RomRepos	Con	Capable of using the IB attached Console
	none	Minimum requirements for ROM Repository

A5.13.2 BOOTAGENT (BtA) COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of BootAgent (BtA), a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, in [Section 20.12, “Optional Management Agent Compliance Category,” on page 1284](#), and [Section 20.13, “Common MAD Requirements,” on page 1286](#), except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

- **CA5-6:** Platform scope component values - any port Page 1454
- **CA5-7:** MAD format and use as specified in Vol 1 Page 1454
- **CA5-8:** Status for class version if not supported Page 1456
- **CA5-9:** Status for method if not supported Page 1457
- **CA5-10:** Status for method/attrib comb. not supported Page 1457
- **CA5-11:** Status for particular value if not supported Page 1457
- **CA5-13:** RO components when processing a Set() Page 1457
- **CA5-14:** Support the methods/attrib listed Page 1459
- **CA5-15:** Methods and Attributes supported Requirements Page 1460
- **oA5-2:** RomLoc:RomRepositoryLocatorRecords readable Page 1460
- **oA5-4:** OsLoc:OsLocatorRecords readable Page 1460
- **oA5-5:** RomLoc: Rom Loc Record - Attribute Modifier Page 1460
- **oA5-6:** ConLoc: Con Loc Record - Attribute Modifier Page 1460
- **oA5-7:** OsLoc: Os Loc Record - Attribute Modifier Page 1460
- **CA5-16:** Status when an invalid attribute ID Page 1462
- **CA5-17:** Shall implement ClassPortInfo Page 1463
- **CA5-18:** When BtM_KeyViolations increments Page 1464
- **CA5-19:** BtM_KeyViolations reset Page 1465
- **CA5-20:** Generate a Resp() when key check succeeds Page 1466
- **CA5-21:** Perform Key authentication Page 1466
- **CA5-22:** Key check fail rules Page 1466
- **CA5-24:** Set Key to zero on Sends Page 1467
- **CA5-25:** Key mechanism reset to zero at POR no NVRAM Page 1467
- **CA5-26:** Lease period timer count down when key chk fails Page 1468

● CA5-27:	Lease period timer reset on key chk match	Page 1468	1
● CA5-28:	ProtectBits set to zero when its lease expires.	Page 1468	2
● CA5-29:	When Lease set to zero, the lease never expires	Page 1469	3
● CA5-30:	Report Capabilities via PlatformBootInfo	Page 1478	4
● CA5-31:	R/W components in NVRAM	Page 1478	5
● CA5-32:	Status if no support of PlatformBootInfo/PortBootInfo	Page 1478	6
● oA5-11:	RomLoc: Numb. of RomLocRecs in NVRAM	Page 1479	7
● oA5-12:	ConLoc: Numb. of Con LocRecs in NVRAM.	Page 1479	8
● oA5-13:	OsLoc: Numb. of OsLocRecs in NVRAM.	Page 1479	9
● CA5-34:	Persistent LocatorRecords are readable.	Page 1482	10
● oA5-16:	RomLoc: Save Rom Locator Records in NVRAM	Page 1483	11
● oA5-17:	ConLoc: Save ConLocRecs in NVRAM	Page 1483	12
● oA5-18:	OsLoc: Save OSLocator Records in NVRAM	Page 1483	13
● oA5-22:	Info:Status if unsupported value	Page 1485	14
● oA5-26:	RomLoc: Count ROM records in NVRAM	Page 1485	15
● oA5-27:	ConLoc: Count console records in NVRAM	Page 1485	16
● oA5-28:	OsLoc: Count OS records in NVRAM	Page 1486	17
● oA5-29:	RomLoc: Status when AM > ROM count	Page 1486	18
● oA5-30:	ConLoc: Status when AM > Console count	Page 1486	19
● oA5-31:	OsLoc: Status when AM > OS count	Page 1486	20
● CA5-35:	Rom locator record not initialized,.	Page 1486	21
● CA5-36:	Consolelocator record not initialized,	Page 1486	22
● CA5-37:	OS locator record not initialized,	Page 1486	23
● oA5-32:	RomLoc: Deleted Rom records cannot be reused	Page 1487	24
● oA5-33:	ConLoc: Deleted Console records cannot be reused	Page 1487	25
● oA5-34:	OsLoc: Deleted OS records cannot be reused	Page 1487	26
● oA5-36:	Info: Persistently save the PortBootInfo	Page 1491	27
● oA5-37:	Info: PortBootInfo has a port scope.	Page 1491	28
● oA5-46:	Trap: Issue Trap on failure	Page 1494	29
● oA5-47:	NQ: Set NQ on failure	Page 1494	30
● oA5-49:	Trap: Issue Trap 0x0110 a timeout occurs	Page 1494	31
● oA5-50:	NQ: Issue Trap 0x0110 a timeout occurs	Page 1495	32
● oA5-51:	Reboot: Time that the last reboot started	Page 1503	33
● oA5-52:	Reboot: Gracefully reboot	Page 1503	34
● oA5-53:	Reboot: Immediately reboot	Page 1503	35
● oA5-54:	Reboot: Select the source of the OS record locator.	Page 1503	36
● oA5-55:	Reboot: GetResp(NodeReboot)	Page 1503	37
● CA5-39.2.1:Trap fields.	Page 1507	38
● oA5-56:	NQ: Notice format	Page 1508	39
● oA5-56:	Trap: Notice format	Page 1508	40
● oA5-57:	NQ: Trap Type and Number	Page 1508	41
● oA5-57:	Trap: Trap Type and Number	Page 1508	42
● oA5-58:	Trap: Zero the Key on BootMgtTrap().	Page 1508	43
● oA5-59:	Trap: KeyViolation Trap.	Page 1509	44
● oA5-60:	NQ: KeyViolation Trap.	Page 1509	45
● oA5-61:	Trap: Issue traps to all ports	Page 1509	46
● oA5-62:	NQ: Single Notice Queue for all ports	Page 1510	47
● oA5-63:	Trap: ChangeReport Trap	Page 1510	48
● oA5-64:	NQ: ChangeReport NQ	Page 1511	49
● oA5-65:	Trap: Issue StatusReport trap 0x0110.	Page 1513	50
● oA5-66:	NQ: Issue StatusReport trap 0x0110.	Page 1513	51
● oA5-67:	Trap: TrapRepress	Page 1514	52

A5.13.3 BOOTMANAGER (BtM) COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of BootManager (BtM), a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

- CA5-1: Subscribing to SA for trap 64. Page 1452

● CA5-2: Reset the BtM_Key lease period	Page 1453	1
● oA5-1: Subscribe: Periodically query the notice queue	Page 1453	1
● CA5-3: Register with SA	Page 1453	2
● CA5-4: If BtMgr cannot register with SA	Page 1453	2
● CA5-5: Renew registration lease	Page 1453	3
● CA5-7: MAD format and use as specified in Vol 1	Page 1454	4
● CA5-8: Status for class version if not supported	Page 1456	5
● CA5-9: Status for method if not supported	Page 1457	5
● CA5-10: Status for method/attrib comb. not supported	Page 1457	6
● CA5-11: Status for particular value if not supported	Page 1457	7
● CA5-12: Ignore Resp() component values if non-zero status	Page 1457	7
● CA5-13.2.1: Rejecting subscription for policy	Page 1457	8
● CA5-23: No Resp() MADHeader:BtM_Key checking	Page 1467	9
● oA5-67.2.1: Subscribe: Generating a Report() for each trap	Page 1515	10
● oA5-67.2.2: Subscribe: Generating Report() for priveledged trap	Page 1515	10
● oA5-67.2.3: Subscribe: Generating a Report() for Notice Queue	Page 1515	11
● oA5-67.2.4: Subscribe: Report Traps in order	Page 1515	12
● oA5-67.2.5: Subscribe: 1 outstanding Report() per booting node	Page 1515	12
● oA5-67.2.6: PERS: Persistent subscriptions	Page 1516	13
● oA5-67.2.7: PERS: Storing subscription info	Page 1517	14
● oA5-67.2.8: FAILOVER: Sharing subscription w/Stby BtMgrs	Page 1517	14
● oA5-67.2.9: FAILOVER: Sharing subscription info w/Stby Mgrs	Page 1517	15
● oA5-67.2.10: Subscribe: Retrying Report(s)	Page 1517	16
● oA5-67.2.11: Subscribe: Subscription time-out	Page 1518	17
● oA5-67.2.12: Subscribe: Hearbeat initial notice generation	Page 1518	17
● oA5-67.2.13: Subscribe: Periodic Hearbeat notice generation	Page 1518	18
● oA5-67.2.14: Subscribe: Setting Fail-over bit in Heartbeat	Page 1519	19
● oA5-67.2.15: Subscribe: Fail-over bit in Heartbeat sent one time	Page 1519	19
		20

In addition, a Boot Manager must also be compliant with the Common MAD requirements specified in [Section 20.13, "Common MAD Requirements," on page 1286](#) and the following general management framework requirements from Chapter 13.

● C13-27.1.1: Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798	25
● C13-30.1.1: Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802	26
● C13-31: Obsolete	Page 811	27
● o13-5.1.1: Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812	27
● C13-32.1.1: Manager with Notice attributes must do forwarding	Page 815	28
● o13-12: Obsolete	Page 815	29
● o13-12.1.1: Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815	29
● C13-32.2.1: Ignore duplicate subscriptions	Page 815	30
● o13-13: Obsolete	Page 815	31
● o13-13.1.1: Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815	31
● o13-14: Obsolete	Page 815	32
● o13-14.1.1: Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816	33
● C13-32.2.2: Must verify all subscriptions	Page 816	34
● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816	34
● o13-15.2.1: Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816	35
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816	36
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816	36
● o13-17.1.1: Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817	37
● o13-17.2.1: Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding	Page 817	38
● o13-17.1.2: Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817	38
● C13-32.1.2: Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817	39
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	40
		41
		42

A5.13.4 BOOT PLATFORM (BtPLATFORM) COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of Boot Platform (BtPlatform), a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

- oA5-8: NV: shall use the ROM Loc Rec in order Page 1478
- oA5-9: NV: shall use the Con Loc Rec in order Page 1479
- oA5-10: NV: shall use OsLocatorRecords in order Page 1479
- CA5-33: Persistent, unique BootPlatformUUID Page 1479
- oA5-14: BIS: Persistent, unique BootPlatformUUID Page 1479
- oA5-15: BIS: Capability to query the BIS Page 1482
- oA5-19: NV: Use RomRepositoryLocatorSource Page 1484
- oA5-20: NV: Use ConsoleLocatorSource Page 1484
- oA5-21: NV: Use OsLocatorSource Page 1484
- oA5-23: Info: OsBootLocator=0x0F, do not IB boot Page 1485
- oA5-24: Info: Con.BootLocator=0xF, do not use IB console Page 1485
- oA5-25: Info: Rom.BootLocator=0xF, do not use RomRep Page 1485
- CA5-38: Default value of InitTimeout Page 1490
- oA5-35: BIS: Default value of BisTimeout Page 1491
- oA5-38: BIS: ExtendBISPortPriority order Page 1491
- CA5-39: Access RomRepository through ports in order Page 1491
- oA5-39: Con:Use Locator in ConPortPriority order Page 1491
- oA5-40: BootOS:Use Locator in OsPortPriority order Page 1491
- oA5-41: NWBoot:Use Locator in NetworkPortPriority order Page 1491
- oA5-42: Info: InitTimeout - subnet resources operational Page 1491
- oA5-43: BIS: BISTimeout - for BIS to become operational Page 1492
- oA5-44: Info: EndNodeTimeout - endnode operational Page 1492
- oA5-45: Info: Free Running Timer for timeouts Page 1494
- oA5-48: Info: Retry MADs sent to target nodes Page 1494
- oA5-68: BIS: Platform conforms to the BIS Class MADs Page 1520
- oA5-69: BIS: Use Locator records in order - BIS Page 1520
- oA5-70: BIS: PlatformBootInfoSource=0, query the BIS Page 1520
- oA5-71: BIS: PlatformBootInfoSource=1, use NVRAM Page 1520
- CA5-40: BIS: Default values for PlatformBootInfo Page 1520
- oA5-72: BIS: PortBootInfoSource=0 then query the BIS Page 1521
- oA5-73: BIS: PlatformBootInfoSource=1, use NVRAM Page 1521
- oA5-74: BIS: Using default port timeouts Page 1521
- oA5-75: BIS: Shall use PlatformBootInfoSource Page 1521
- oA5-76: BIS: Finding th BIS using the SR Page 1522
- oA5-77: BIS: Prioritizing multiple BISs Page 1523
- oA5-78: BIS: ServiceRecords used in priority order Page 1523
- oA5-79: BIS: Query BIS with supported requests Page 1523
- oA5-80: BIS: NetworkPortPriority=0, don't boot from port Page 1523
- oA5-81: BIS: PortPriority= 0x0, don't use port for Rom Page 1523
- oA5-82: BIS: PortPriority= 0x0, don't use port for Console Page 1523
- oA5-83: BIS: PortPriority= 0x0, don't use port for IOC Page 1523
- oA5-84: BIS: Traps issued when using BIS Page 1523
- oA5-85: BIS: NQs posted when using BIS Page 1523
- oA5-86: BIS: platform shall support the MPTP Page 1523
- CA5-41: Retry Back-off Page 1524

A5.13.5 ROM REPOSITORY COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of ROM Repository (RomRepos), a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, in [Section 20.12, “Optional Management Agent Compliance Category,” on page 1284](#), and [Section 20.13,](#)

["Common MAD Requirements," on page 1286](#). This category has no optional qualifiers.

● CA5-42: Option ROM bit in its IOUnitInfo	Page 1536
● CA5-43: One QP supporting RC	Page 1536
● CA5-44: Send messages only.	Page 1536
● CA5-45: Support ROM Repository Msg in Table.	Page 1537
● CA5-46: Repository information messages in Table 2/3	Page 1538
● CA5-47: Responses to ROM repository requests in order	Page 1539
● CA5-48: Minimum buffer size of 4096 bytes to receive	Page 1540
● CA5-49: Minimum buffer size of 4096 bytes to send	Page 1540
● CA5-50: Respond with "Illegal Request" status	Page 1542
● CA5-51: The format of each compatible string	Page 1545
● CA5-52: DescriptorReadResponse - Buffer Size	Page 1546
● CA5-53: Index number assignments of existing image	Page 1546
● CA5-54: Image descriptor read messages in Table 9/10.	Page 1546
● CA5-55: Image read messages in Table 11/12.	Page 1549
● CA5-56: Status "Invalid Image Handle",	Page 1549
● CA5-57: Image add messages in Table 13/14.	Page 1553
● CA5-58: Status "Insufficient Space" (SeeTable 4)	Page 1553
● CA5-59: Image update messages in Table 15/16	Page 1558
● CA5-60: Status "Update In Progress"	Page 1558
● CA5-61: Status "Insufficient Space" (See Table 4)	Page 1558
● CA5-62: Status "Insufficient Retain Space"	Page 1559
● CA5-63: Invalidate the old image	Page 1559
● CA5-64: Image write messages in Table 17/18.	Page 1559
● CA5-65: New image handle component	Page 1561
● CA5-66: Invalidate the old image until update successful	Page 1561
● CA5-67: Support image delete messages in Table 19/20.	Page 1563
● CA5-68: Status "Update in Progress"	Page 1563
● CA5-69: ImageState of 0x01	Page 1563
● CA5-70: Delete the image descriptor	Page 1564

ANNEX A6: BOOT INFORMATION SERVICE

A6.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex is a supplement to Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture Specification, herein referred to as the base document. This annex specifies a Boot Information Service. In particular, it describes how a booting platform requests and receives boot information by defining methods, attributes, and requirements on how the Boot information Service responds.

A6.1.1 GLOSSARY

The following are additional terms not found in the Volume 1 Glossary (Chapter 2).

BIS

[Boot Information Service](#)

Boot Information Record

Information that provides booting parameters or describes a device or service that a [Booting Platform](#) can use to boot its operating environment.

Boot Information Service

A management agent of a server that supplies boot information records.

I/O Partition

Any IB fabric partition that allows an I/O client (e.g., a host) to communicate with an I/O Unit for the purpose of performing I/O operations.

Booting Platform

An endnode that is booting its operating system using the IB fabric.

A6.1.2 COMPLIANCE

This annex specifies a new Compliance Category (see [Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary on page 1241](#) for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). The new category is BIS-Server.

There are no Compliance Qualifiers for BIS-Server.

Section A6.5 “Compliance Summary” on page 1601 provides a summary of compliance statements.

A6.2 BIS OVERVIEW

This annex defines an optional management service called Boot Information Service (BIS). A BIS is an IB management agent (i.e., GSA) that provides boot information to booting platforms, which, in the role of a General

Service Manager (GSM), queries the BIS for boot information. Boot information includes booting parameters as well as locator records identifying ROM Repositories, boot devices, and console services.

In general, this annex defines the external behavior of the BIS, including its relationship with other management entities. In particular, it defines the methods and attributes that a booting platform uses to query the BIS and thus retrieve its boot information. The internal behavior of the BIS is outside the scope of this annex.

The Booting Annex specifies a boot management class that permits a boot manager to configure a booting platform with its booting information with the expectation that the platform persistently stores its boot information. As illustrated in Figure 298, the BIS is the complement to that capability where the booting platform may query the BIS each time that it boots. Thus, the booting platform retrieves the latest set of boot information available from the BIS, reducing the need for the boot platform to persistently store boot information. The Booting Annex specifies how a booting platform can support both BIS and persistent storage of boot information.

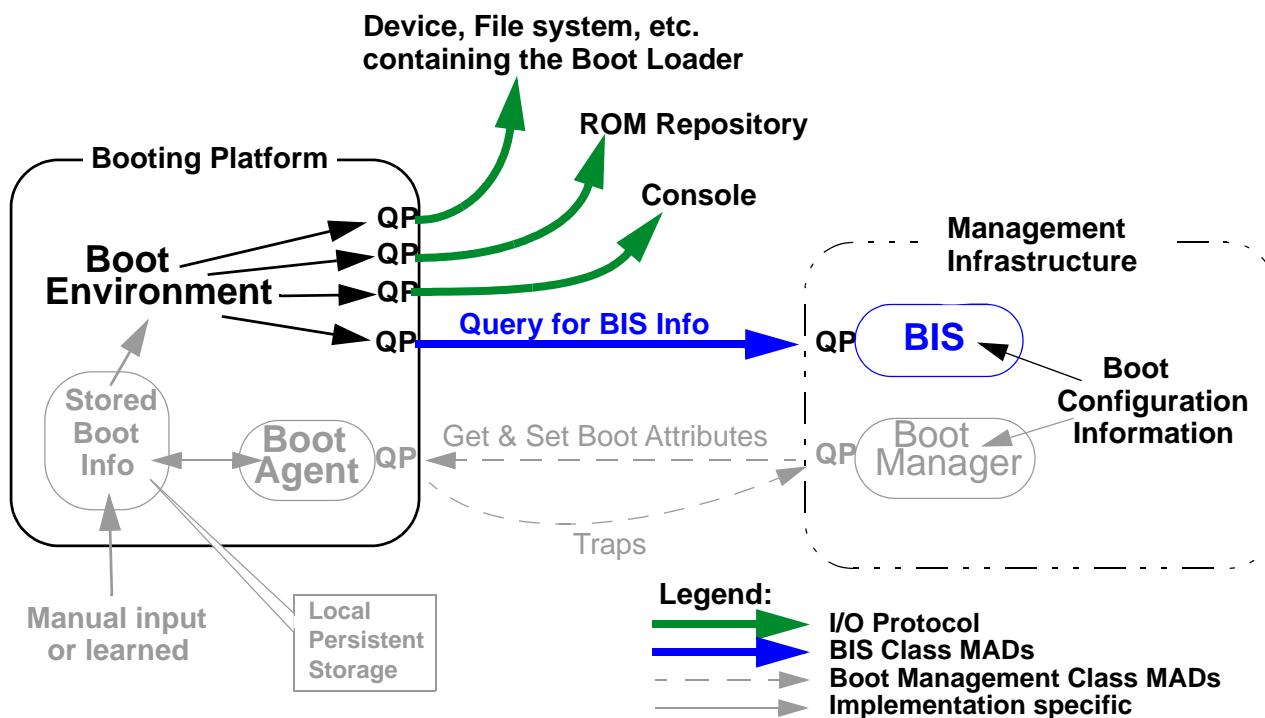


Figure 298 Booting Framework

Whether a booting platform always uses BIS or only uses a BIS if its persistent information fails is a local policy that depends on many factors including the capability of the BIS. The BIS definition permits a broad range of innovation ranging from a BIS that simply stores information and provides it unmodified to the booting platform, to an intelligent implementa-

tion that responds differently based on device availability, subnet loading, fabric failures, etc.

A6.2.1 BIS OPERATIONAL MODEL

A BIS provides boot information to booting platforms at their request. Typically the booting platform is a host trying to bootstrap (load) its operating system, however, nothing prevents an I/O unit from using a BIS in booting its operating environment.

The booting platform must first locate the BIS. This is accomplished by having the BIS register with the SA via SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) so that each booting platform can query its SA to find the BIS. Once the booting platform has resolved a path to the BIS, it can query the BIS for its boot information.

Figure 299 illustrates the relationship of a BIS to a booting platform. A booting platform queries the BIS, which provides the booting platform with boot information records describing devices or services needed for booting. As illustrated, the booting platform need not query the BIS through the same port that it uses to access boot devices. The BIS can provide locator records describing devices accessible through any port of the booting platform.

The BIS only provides boot information and does not provide or broker any boot services, such as providing a boot image to the booting platform (i.e., the booting platform does not boot through the BIS). The booting platform uses the BIS information to locate and then establish communications directly with the devices and services as necessary (as illustrated by the dotted lines in Figure 299).

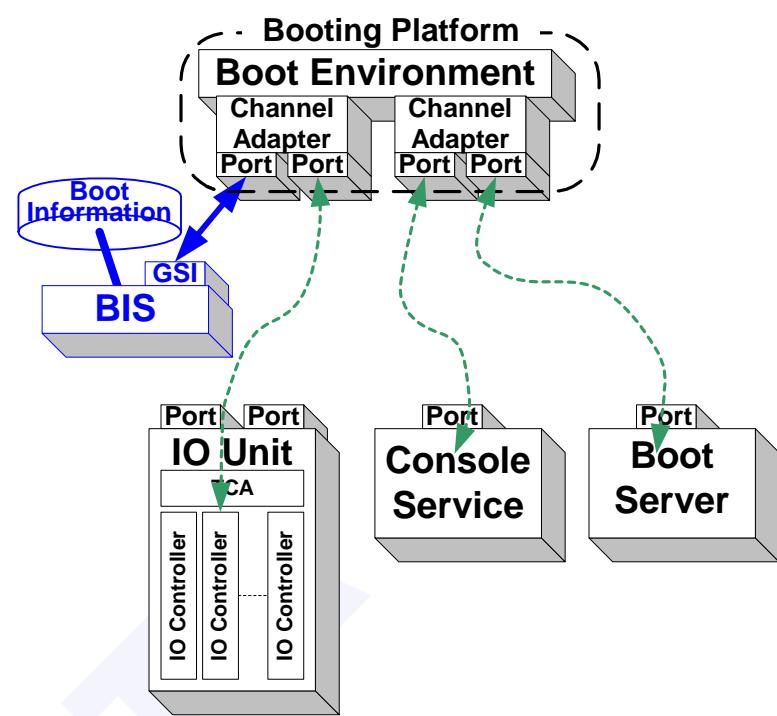


Figure 299 **BIS Application Model**

When a booting platform queries the BIS, it provides the BIS with:

- A unique identifier (BootPlatformUUID), that uniquely identifies the booting platform.
- Identification string (PlatformInfo) containing vital information that is useful for identifying a new platform.
- Port identifier (PortGUID) that the BIS uses when the booting platform requests port parameters.
- An indication of the type of boot information that the booting platform wants, such as console, storage boot device, ROM Repository for a device driver, etc. One type per request.
- An indication of the booting capabilities that the booting platform supports.

The BIS responds with zero or more boot information records of the type that the booting platform requested.

This specification only specifies the interface between a booting platform and the BIS. Thus, how a BIS determines the boot information is outside the scope of this annex. It is assumed that the BIS has some form of user interface that permits a system administrator to configure the BIS with boot information. In addition, the BIS might be intelligent enough to deal with booting platforms for which it does not have specific information.

A6.2.2 RELATIONSHIP WITH OTHER MANAGEMENT CLASSES

Naturally, there is a strong dependency on the BIS information to be consistent with boot management, I/O configuration, and partition management. How a BIS implementation obtains its data and maintains its integrity to provide data consistent with other management classes is outside the scope of this annex and thus left to the innovation of the BIS vendor. A number of possibilities exists ranging from manually configuring the BIS to integrating the BIS with the other management services.

Architecturally, there are several relationships with other management classes as follows.

A6.2.2.1 Boot MANAGEMENT

Boot Management (see Booting Annex) and Boot Information Service classes complement each other. Boot management provides the means to manage the booting platform and set parameters that the booting platform needs to locate a BIS. In fact, the booting platform can independently access a BIS for various purposes (finding a console, finding a ROM Repository, finding the OS loader) and the Boot Manager can configure the booting platform for each of these phases. For example, a booting platform can be configured to only use local persistent information to find a ROM Repository, always use the BIS to find its console, and use the BIS to find its the boot loader only if its local persistent information is not valid.

Since a boot manager using Boot Management class MADs is capable of providing the same information as a BIS using BIS class MADs, the attributes for both classes are aligned as follows:

- Attribute components that use the same names have the same definition.
- There is a one to one correlation between attributes used in BisQueryResp() and BootMgtSet() attributes. Note that some BootMgt attributes, such as NodeReboot are not relevant for BIS and thus have no equivalent.
- Attribute formats are consistent in that components in BisQueryResp() attributes have the same offset as their equivalent R/W component in the Boot Management attribute. Thus, code needed to process a BisQueryResp() will be similar to that needed for processing the BootMgtSet() for the equivalent attribute.

A6.2.2.2 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

BIS uses the facilities of the Subnet Administration class to allow booting platforms to locate a BIS. The BIS is a service that registers with the SA. This registration provides the means for booting platforms to locate the BIS. The SA only allows an authorized BIS to register. This is enforced by the ServiceKey used in the service registration. How a BIS gets authorized (i.e., learns its ServiceKey) is outside the scope of this annex.

A6.2.2.3 SUBNET MANAGEMENT

For a booting platform to use a BIS, that BIS has to share a partition with the booting platform. There is no special P_Key for a BIS. The SM assigns P_Keys to a node containing a BIS the same as it assigns P_Keys to any other node. That is, normal partitioning rules apply and how partitions are assigned is outside the scope of this document.

Additionally, BIS information needs to conform with partitions established by the SM. Again, this is an implementation detail outside the scope of this annex.

A6.2.2.4 DEVICE MANAGEMENT

The BIS provides information to booting platforms about I/O units and I/O controllers. How the BIS gets its information is not specified, but attribute components that relate to I/O units and I/O controllers conform to the Device Management definition for components of the same name.

A6.2.3 CHARACTERISTICS

This section describes the characteristics of the BIS architecture.

Geographical Scope - There is no prescribed boundary for a BIS. Possibilities include:

- A BIS that serves all booting platforms of the entire fabric.
- A BIS that serves all booting platforms on particular subnets (e.g., a different BIS for each subnet).
- A BIS that serves booting platforms in particular partitions (e.g., a different BIS for each I/O partition).

Other possibilities exist and the various combinations are endless.

Redundancy - There may be more than one BIS serving the same set of booting platforms. A primary reason for multiple BIS entities is redundancy. See A6.4 “Booting using Boot Information Records” on page 1598 for recommendations on how a booting platform deals with more than one BIS.

How the BIS stores its boot information, the interface for configuring and updating that information, as well as the protocol for exchanging information with another BIS is outside the scope of this specification. Thus, this specification does not address coherency between redundant BIS servers nor any mechanism to provide redundant information.

A booting platform can not assume that multiple BIS servers all return the same information. There are other reasons for multiple BIS, such as different scopes (for example, a different BIS for each class of platform, for each processor type, or for each type of OS). When there are multiple BIS

servers with non-overlapping scope, all but one BIS returns zero records. For example, a BIS for web servers would return zero records when queried by a print server, thus the print server would need to query other BISs until it found one that returns valid records. Of course, once the booting platform finds the information it needs, it no longer has a need for the BIS.

In addition to redundant BIS servers. A BIS can specify multiple devices even though the booting platform only needs a single device. A BIS provides information on devices in attributes called locator records, where each locator record identifies a device or service the booting platform is to use. When the BIS returns multiple locator records, it provides them in the order it wants the booting platform to use them.

BIS Availability - The BIS is a service for the multitude of booting platforms in the fabric. As such, at subnet initialization, booting platforms must wait for the BIS to become active. There are a number of factors that contribute to the latency of a BIS becoming available.

- The BIS must wait for the SM to configure switches, create path records, and set the BIS port's state to active;
- The platform that hosts the BIS must boot its OS and load the BIS application;
- The BIS must initialize and register with the SA as the BIS service.

These steps can take significant time and hence all booting platforms need to know how long to wait for the BIS. For this purpose, there is the PortBootInfo:BisTimeout value which can be set by default, set locally, or set by the BootManager.

Response Time - As per chapter 13, a BIS has to respond to a request within the timeout period specified in ClassPortInfo:RespTimeValue. The booting platform uses this timeout for determining if the request or response is lost. Thus, this time should indicate the worst case processing time for the BIS. However, there might be situations where the BIS can not respond immediately (for example, when a booting platform is not known to the BIS and the BIS needs to consult other sources before taking action).

The BIS may send KeepAlive packets (see A6.3.4.2.2 “Keep Alive Packets” on page 1584) until it determines how to respond. If the BIS has the capability to respond with KeepAlive packets, it should provide a means for the system administrator to disable that feature or limit the time that the BIS waits (continues sending KeepAlive) before it responds to the booting platform.

The KeepAlive packets inform the booting platform that the BIS needs more time before sending a final response. A booting platform is not re-

quired to wait for a final response. For instance, the booting platform can try another BIS or alternate resolution method.

Restricting Information - A BIS should not provide information to a booting platform about another node (such as an I/O unit) for which those two nodes do not share a common partition. Such information would be useless and it is undesirable for nodes to know about other nodes outside their assigned partitions. One way to accomplish this is for the BIS to validate that a path exists by querying the SA for path records between those two nodes. However this query will only work if the BIS shares a partition with each node for which it is requesting the path (they do not need to be the same partition). A BIS might periodically perform the validation or register with the SA to be informed if partition assignments change.

A6.3 BIS CLASS SPECIFICATION

This section specifies the Boot Information Service management class methods and attributes, operating requirements for a BIS, and interaction between a BIS and the subnet manager's subnet administration agent (SA). The various BIS relationships are illustrated in Figure 300.

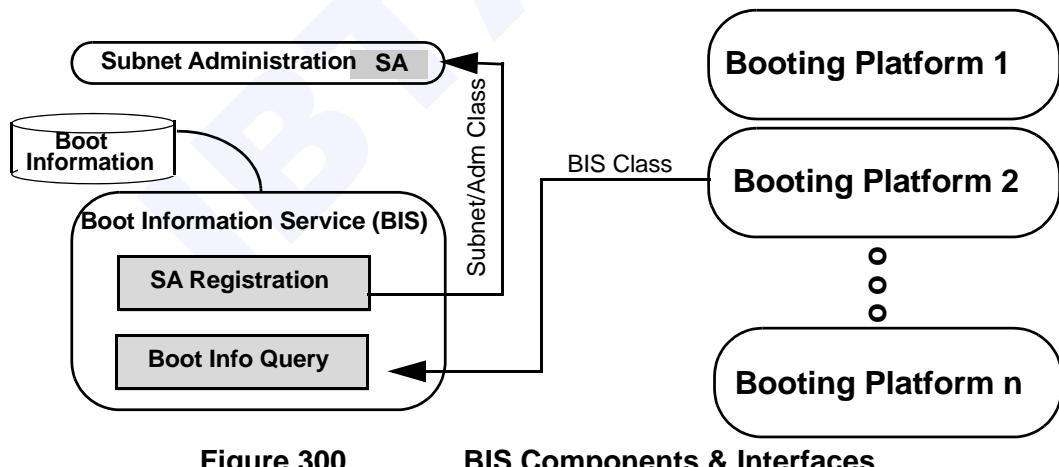


Figure 300

BIS Components & Interfaces

CA6-1: A BIS is a management agent and shall conform to the requirements for the Application Specific Management Agent (AMA) qualifier of the Optional Management Agent (OMA) compliance category as specified in section [20.12 Optional Management Agent Compliance Category on page 1284](#) and the Common MAD Header compliance category requirements specified in section [20.13 Common MAD Requirements on page 1286](#).

In particular, this requires conformance to the MAD format and use as specified in 13.4 Management Datagrams.

A6.3.1 REGISTRATION

BIS is a service for distributing boot information. A BIS may be implemented on any IBA node. The BIS registers as a subnet service with the SA using SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord).

CA6-2: The BIS shall register with the SA via the SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) using the Null ServiceID (0x0000_0000_0000_0000) and <ServiceName>="BIS.IBTA", null terminated (i.e., the 9th and subsequent characters are 0x00). If the BIS is configured for multiple partitions, it shall register once for each partition.

The values for the other ServiceRecord parameters are implementation dependent.

For the BIS to register with the SA requires that the BIS supply the appropriate ServiceKey at the time it registers, updates, or modifies the ServiceRecord (see Chapter 15). The ServiceKey is the means for the SA to authenticate the BIS and protect against a rogue or invalid BIS. How a BIS gets configured with its ServiceKey is an implementation detail outside the scope of this annex. It is very important that a BIS takes appropriate steps to protect its service key and guard it such that other programs can not discover its value.

Normally, a BIS will not receive requests until after it has registered. How a BIS responds if it receives requests before it registers is undefined.

The BIS is responsible for periodically renewing its lease with the SA to prevent the SA from dropping its ServiceRecord from the SA database (see [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#), and “[15.2.5.14.3 Service-Lease on page 1036](#)”).

CA6-3: The BIS shall renew its registration lease by reregistering with the SA before its service lease expires.

A booting platform queries the SA to get the ServiceRecord of the BIS and uses the ServiceGID from the ServiceRecord to query the SA for PathRecords to the BIS. Booting platforms ignore the ServiceID in the ServiceRecord because it does not need to resolve the ServiceID to a QP. The booting platform initially sends BIS class MADs to the GSI (i.e., QP1) of the port identified by the ServiceGID. If the BIS uses a different QP, then the GSI redirects the MAD to that QP.

A6.3.2 BIS QUERY OPERATION

The query methods (see A6.3.4.2 “Query Methods” on page 1582) permit a booting platform to query the BIS for boot information records. The content of the response depends on the source of the query and the content

of the query, that is, different booting platforms receive different information and the booting platform asks for a particular type of information.

A booting platform makes a query by sending a BisQuery() to the BIS. The query provides information identifying the booting platform, the capabilities of the booting platform, and the information the booting platform desires. A booting platform will query the BIS several times if it needs more than one type of information. For example, once to find a ROM Repository to extend its boot environment, then to locate a console, again to locate its boot device, and finally to locate a ROM Repository containing device drivers for the boot device.

The BIS uses the information provided in the query to generate a BisQueryResp() with boot information specific for that particular platform. Which components of the query that the BIS chooses for its filter criteria is implementation dependent, except that the BIS responds with zero or more records of the type requested by the booting platform.

The query methods permit the requester to submit a single query and the BIS to respond with a set of boot information records. The response may require more capacity for data than that provided by a single MAD. Thus the BIS query response uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol (RMPP) specified in Chapter 13 for segmentation and reassembly of datastreams.

The attributes obtained by a BIS class query are records of boot information. Each boot information record is exactly 192 bytes, so each response MAD packet contains exactly one record. The BIS may return more than one record, all of the same type, and the AttributeID in the MAD header specifies which record type is being returned. Thus, each packet of a multi-packet response specifies the same attribute type. An example is a BIS returning four records identifying four boot devices. If the booting platform needs console and boot devices, it makes two queries, one for console and one for boot devices.

When a BIS responds with multiple Boot Information Records, it provides records in the order of preference (i.e., higher preference returned before lesser preference).

The BIS identifies a booting platform by the BootPlatformUUID component in the BisQuery(BootQueryInfo). When a platform is first introduced into the fabric, the BIS may not have locator records associated with the booting platform's BootPlatformUUID and might respond with (a) a status indicating no matching records, (b) a response that starts an install process, or (c) a Keep-Alive status while it acquires the information. After the BIS has been configured, the BIS is able to respond to a BisQuery() with a BisQueryResp() containing appropriate locator records. From this point forward, the BIS associates that BootPlatformUUID with that platform's locator records.

A6.3.3 BIS DATA FORMATS

Figure 301 shows the structure of the BIS management datagram. The datagram conforms to the MAD definition as specified in Chapter 13.

Bytes	Components
0 - 23	Common MAD Header (24 bytes as per 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781)
24-35	RMPP Header (12 bytes as per 13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843)
36-63	reserved
64-255	AttributeData (192 bytes)

Figure 301 BIS MAD Structure

CA6-4: A BIS shall use the format specified in section [A6.3.3](#) when sending and receiving BIS class MADs.

Table 472 defines the components of the BIS class datagram.

Table 472 BIS MAD Components

Component	Offset (Bytes)	Length	Description
BaseVersion	0	8 bits	Version of management datagram base format. Value is set to 1
MgmtClass	1	8 bits	Management class - set to 0x12 for BIS class
ClassVersion	2	8 bits	Version field. Value is set to 1.
BisMethod	3	8 bits	Method and R-Bit, as defined in A6.3.4 BIS Methods on page 1582 .
Status	4	16 bits	see A6.3.3.2 BIS Status Values on page 1581
ClassSpecific	6	16 bits	not used. Shall be set to 0.
TransactionID	8	64 bits	Transaction specific identifier as per base MAD definition in 13.4.6.4 TransactionID usage on page 794
AttributelD	16	16 bits	Specifies the attribute in the AttributeData or the attribute to include in the reply, as per the Table 475 on page 1584 and Table 476 on page 1585 .
reserved	18	16 bits	reserved.
AttributeModifier	20	32 bits	Identifies a particular instance of an attribute as per Table 475 on page 1584 .

Table 472 BIS MAD Components (Continued)

RMPP_Header	24	12 bytes	Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol header as per 13.6.2.1 RMPP Header on page 843 .
reserved	36	28 bytes	reserved
AttributeData	64	192 bytes	Data field used for operations as specified by Attribute definitions.

A6.3.3.1 RESERVED FIELDS

Chapter 13 requires components indicated as “reserved” to be set to zero in request messages. In response messages, a reserved field is either left unmodified if using the request for the response, or is set to zero. The recipient of a MAD ignores reserved fields.

A6.3.3.2 BIS STATUS VALUES

If the BIS rejects a request because it is too busy, it may respond with the appropriate response method setting MAD_Header>Status bit 0.

Bits 8-15 of the MAD_Header>Status field provide class specific definition for additional status encoded as follows:

Table 473 BIS MAD Status Field Components

Component Name	Bits	Meaning
BIS_Status	8-11	An enumerated value as follows: 0 = normal 1 = No records matching query 2 = Multi-packet request (RMPPType>0) invalid all other values reserved
reserved	12-15	reserved

CA6-5: If there are no records for a BisQueryResp(), the BIS shall set the MAD_Header>Status.BIS_Status in the BisQueryResp() to indicate no matching records and the AttributeData is undefined.

CA6-6: If the BIS receives a request (R bit = 0) with a ClassVersion other than 1, it shall respond by returning the request MAD with the R bit set to 1 and Status bits 2-4 set to the value of 1 (001b).

CA6-7: If the BIS receives a request with an unknown Method, it shall respond by returning the request MAD with the R bit set to 1 and setting Status bits 2-4 to the value of 2 (010b).

CA6-8: If the BIS receives a request with an unsupported Method/attribute combination, it shall respond by returning the request MAD with the R bit set to 1 and setting Status bits 2-4 to the value of 3 (011b).

CA6-9: If the BIS receives a request with an invalid value in any class specific MAD header component or any attribute component, it shall respond by returning the request MAD with the R bit set to 1 and setting Status bits 2-4 to the value of 7 (111b).

A6.3.4 BIS METHODS

CA6-10: A BIS shall support the BIS methods described in Table 474.

Table 474 BIS Methods

Method Name	Type ^a	Value	Description
BisGet()	S	0x01	Request (read) an attribute.
BisSet()	S	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute. This method is only used if the BIS supports vendor traps or vendor specific attributes.
BisGetResp()	S	0x81	The response from a BisGet() or BisSet().
BisQuery()	S	0x12	Requests (reads) all of the instances of the specified attribute that match the information supplied in the request.
BisQueryResp()	M	0x92	The response from a BisQuery() request using the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol.

a. The “Type” column specifies if the method support multiple packets as follows:

[S] supports only single packets

[M] supports multiple packets using the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol (see A6.3.4.2.1 “Multi-Packet Transaction” on page 1583).

A6.3.4.1 COMMON METHODS

BisGet(), BisSet(), and BisGetResp() methods are common methods (Get, Set, GetResp) specified in Chapter 13.

For these methods, the RMPP components (i.e., bytes 28-35) of the MAD are not used and thus filled with zeroes.

A6.3.4.2 QUERY METHODS

The BisQuery() and BisQueryResp() methods provide a mechanism for a booting platform to query the BIS for boot information records. The Query operation is illustrated in Figure 302. The content of the attribute that the booting platform supplies in the query request determines which attribute type the BIS returns in the query responses.

The BisQuery() is a single packet. Therefore, the RMPP_Header components (i.e., bytes 28-35) of the MAD are not used and thus filled with ze-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
roes. The QueryResp() method uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol (RMPP) defined in Section [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#) and further specified in [A6.3.4.2.1 Multi-Packet Transaction on page 1583](#).

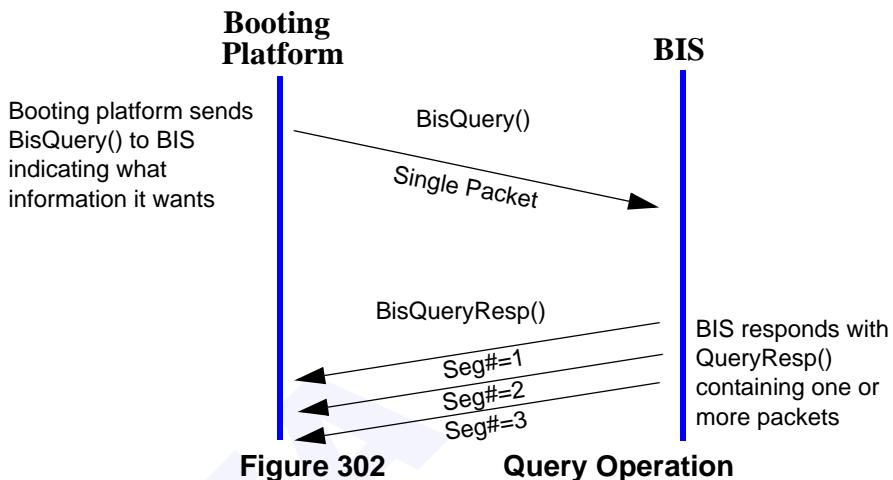


Figure 302 Query Operation

The attributes for the BisQueryResp() method are padded to 192 bytes such that each MAD provides one attribute record (i.e., one boot information record).

A6.3.4.2.1 MULTI-PACKET TRANSACTION

The BIS QueryResp method uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol specified in [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#) with the following class specific requirements.

CA6-11: A BIS shall implement the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol for BisQueryResp() as per [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#).

CA6-12: The BIS shall not send more than “Window component” number of packets before it receives an Ack from the requester. The Window value in each ACK determines the maximum number of subsequent packets the BIS is allowed to send.

CA6-13: If the BIS receives a BisGet(), BisSet(), or BisQuery() request indicating a multi-packet request (i.e., RMPPType not zero), then the BIS shall respond by returning the MAD with the R bit set to 1 and setting BIS_Status bits (MAD_Header>Status bits 8::11) to the value of 2 (Multi-packet request invalid).

A6.3.4.2.2 KEEP ALIVE PACKETS

The KeepAlive value in the RMPPType component identifies a KeepAlive packet.

Operation is as specified in [13.6 Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol on page 841](#). The BIS sets this value in a query response to request the recipient re-initialize its transaction response timer (see [A6.3.4.3: Lost Messages](#)).

AttributeData in a KeepAlive packet is indeterminate.

A6.3.4.3 LOST MESSAGES

The *ClassPortInfo* attribute provides a time-out value (see [13.4.8.1 Class-PortInfo on page 799](#)) used in conjunction with BIS requests. Because BIS messages use unreliable datagram service, it is possible that a request or its response might be lost. If the querying node does not receive a response within the time specified, it resends the original request.

Where a response is a multi-packet segmented response, the segments are sent in order and identified by the SegmentNumber field. If the initiator detects that it missed one of the response packets, it can immediately request retransmission starting with the missing packet by sending a Re-Send request (ReSend value in the RMPPType field), specifying the missing packet in the SegmentNumber field. The BIS starts resending the response starting with the indicated packet.

A6.3.5 ATTRIBUTES**Table 475****BIS Attributes**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	Class Info as per base MAD definition. This annex specifies BIS ClassVersion =1
BootQueryInfo	0x0080	0x00000000	Specifies information the BIS uses for Boot Information filter criteria
PlatformBootInfo	0x0020	0x00000000	Specifies platform-wide booting parameters
PortBootInfo	0x0021	0x00000000	Specifies port specific booting parameters
RomRepositoryLocator-Record	0x0030	0x00000000	Identifies an I/O unit that contains a ROM Repository
ConsoleLocatorRecord	0x0031	0x00000000	Supplies information describing a console service
OsLocatorRecord	0x0032	0x00000000	Supplies information describing a boot loader

Table 476 associates BIS attributes with methods.

CA6-14: A BIS shall support BIS method/attributes combinations identified in Table 476.

Table 476 BIS Attribute / Method Map

Attribute	Method:	Get / GetResp	Set / GetResp	Query	Query Resp
ClassPortInfo		x	x		
BootQueryInfo				x	
PlatformBootInfo					x
PortBootInfo					x
RomRepositoryLocatorRecord					x
ConsoleLocatorRecord					x
OsLocatorRecord					x

A6.3.5.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute as defined in Chapter 13 has the following class specific information and definitions:

- ClassVersion: This is version 1 of the BIS class specification. The ClassVersion field shall be set to 0x01.
- CapabilityMask 8-15 = reserved, set to 0 and ignored

A6.3.5.2 BootQueryInfo Attribute

The BootQueryInfo attribute is used in a *BisQuery()* and supplies information needed for the BIS to filter its boot information and produce boot information records. The BootQueryInfo attribute has the format specified in Table 477.

Table 477 BootQueryInfo Attribute

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BootPlatformUUID	0	128 bits	A 128-bit universally unique identifier (UUID) as defined by ISO/IEC 11578 that uniquely identifies the booting platform.
PortGUID	128	64 bits	Port GUID of booting platform's port for which the booting platform is requesting information (see considerations below and section A6.3.5.4: PortBootInfo Attribute)
reserved	192	64 bits	reserved

Table 477

BootQueryInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BootSupport	256	32 bits	<p>Identifies the capability of the booting platform. Bit specific: 0=no support, 1=supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0 - Extend Boot Environment - boot environment can load code from a ROM Repository to extend the boot environment and/or BootAgent capability. • bit 1 - Proprietary Driver Load: the boot environment can load proprietary device drivers from a ROM Repository. • bit 2 - IB Console Protocol - The boot environment supports the IB Console protocol. This implies that the booting platform does not need to load (or already has loaded) an IB Console device driver from a ROM Repository. • bit 3 - Proprietary Console Protocol - The boot environment supports a proprietary console protocol. If bit 1 is set, the platform can load a console driver (including an IB Console driver). If bit 1 is not set, this bit means that the booting platform has another source for console protocols. • bit 4-SRP Storage Protocol- The boot environment supports the SRP protocol. This implies that the booting platform does not need to load (or already has loaded) an SRP device driver from a ROM Repository. • bit 5 - Proprietary Storage Protocol - The boot environment supports a proprietary storage protocol. If bit 1 is set, the platform can load a storage driver (including an SRP driver). If bit 1 is not set, this bit means that the booting platform has another source for storage protocols. • bit 6 - Network Boot: IB Network Model - The boot environment supports a network boot protocol without using a LAN NIC (e.g., using IPoIB). • bit 7 - Network Boot: IB NIC Model - The boot environment supports network boot using a LAN NIC attached to the IB fabric. • all other bits reserved.
BootInfoRequested	288	8 bits	<p>Indicates what boot information the booting platform wants.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 - PlatformBootInfo • 0x01 - PortBootInfo • 0x02 - RomRepositoryLocatorRecords to extend the boot environment • 0x03 - RomRepositoryLocatorRecords for device drivers • 0x04 - ConsoleLocatorRecords • 0x10 - Install Program Boot platform is requesting OsLocatorRecords describing the source for an OS installation program. This permits a booting platform to explicitly request an install. • 0x11 - Boot Loader Boot platform is requesting OsLocatorRecords describing the source of a boot loader. The BIS returns zero or more OsLocatorRecords, each describing the source for an OS boot loader or the source of an installation program. • 0x12 - Boot Loader Destination Boot platform is requesting OsLocatorRecords describing the destination for an OS boot loader (typically used by an installation program to determine where to install the OS boot loader). all other values reserved

Table 477**BootQueryInfo Attribute (Continued)**

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
reserved	296	24 bits	reserved
PlatformInfo	320	1024 bits (128-Bytes)	A TLV encoded component containing multiple packed elements as described in A6.3.5.2.5 “PlatformInfo” on page 1589
reserved	1344	192 bits (24 Bytes)	reserved

A6.3.5.2.1 BOOTINFOREQUESTED

The BIS returns the attribute specified in the BootInfoRequested component. For a PlatformBootInfo query, the BIS returns at most one PlatformBootInfo record. For a PortBootInfo query, the BIS returns at most one PortBootInfo record for the port identified in the PortGUID component. For the other BootInfoRequested types, the BIS might return multiple boot information records, one for each device or service for that particular request. Each Query Response packet of a multi-packet response contains one boot information record. For example, if there are 2 consoles and 3 storage devices that the BIS will provide to the booting platform, a 0x04 - “ConsoleLocatorRecord” query would return 2 MADs each containing a ConsoleLocatorRecord attribute and a 0x11 - “Boot Loader” query would return 3 MADs each containing an OsLocatorRecord attribute.

When trying to load its OS, a booting platform typically requests 0x11 - “Boot Loader” and the BIS returns zero or more OsLocatorRecords that identify an OS boot loader or a boot loader that loads an installation program. If the BIS knows that this is a new platform and wants to start the install process, then it can return one or more OsLocatorRecords identifying an Install Program. Otherwise, the BIS would return one or more OsLocatorRecords that each describe a source for the platform’s OS Boot Loader. The BIS may choose to return combinations of OsLocatorRecords (both OS boot loader source and installation program source). For example, the BIS might return two OsLocatorRecords, the first describing a disk drive and the second describing the source of an OS Install Program. If the booting platform detects a failure in the first source, such as failing to find a valid boot sector on the disk or detects that the OS was not installed, then it proceeds to the next OsLocatorRecord and thus installs the OS. If it does find a valid OS boot loader, i.e., the installation was successful, then the booting platform boots the OS from the first OsLocatorRecord and does not use the second.

A booting platform can specify a BootInfoRequested component of 0x10 - “Install Program” when it knows it wants to perform an OS install. During the installation, the Install Program can query the BIS, specifying a BootIn-

foRequested component of 0x12 - “Boot Loader Destination”, to get a list of destinations where the Install Program can place the OS Boot Loader.

A point of clarification concerning the use of RomRepositoryLocatorRecords: There are two phases in extending the capabilities of the booting platform and thus two encodes for requesting RomRepositoryLocatorRecords.

- One phase is in extending the boot environment, such as loading updated or extended code. It is possible that a platform only contains a minimal amount of boot code, which simply locates a ROM Repository and loads the remainder of the boot environment from it. In this case, the booting platform is looking for platform specific or boot environment specific code stored in the ROM Repository. This phase occurs prior to the booting platform requesting any OsLocatorRecords.
- The second phase is when the booting platform is processing a locator record and that record identifies an I/O protocol for which the booting platform needs to load a driver. In this case, the platform is looking for a specific I/O driver. Refer to the I/O Annex for driver matching rules.

To permit platform code and device driver code to reside in different ROM Repositories, there are two encodes to indicate for which phase the booting platform is requesting a ROM Repository.

A6.3.5.2.2 BootPLATFORMUUID

CA6-15: A BIS shall only return attributes for the platform identified by BootPlatformUUID component.

How a BIS manages its boot information and filters it is outside the scope of this annex. However, an implementer might want to consider the following issues.

The BIS identifies a booting platform by its BootPlatformUUID. The 128-bit UUID was selected over a 64-bit GUID (EUI-64) because it can be generated easily by software, which decouples the boot environment from any particular hardware. For example, it removes the necessity for a hardware serial number to be machine readable. Software generation is also advantageous for retrofit and field upgrades in machines that are not specifically designed for InfiniBand. A BIS does not need to interpret the BootPlatformUUID, but rather uses it as an opaque value to match with locator records assigned to that BootPlatformUUID.

As a matter of policy, a BIS may associate the BootPlatformUUID with a set of physical GUIDs (such as Node GUIDs, Port GUIDs, Module GUIDs, etc.) and validate with the SA that the platform making the request has the same physical attributes each time it receives a query. Detecting a different physical GUID indicates either the requesting platform has physi-

cally changed, or that the platform is not who it claims to be. How the BIS determines which is the case, and what actions the BIS takes is an implementation policy.

A6.3.5.2.3 PORTGUID

When a BIS returns locator records, they identify devices that the booting platform needs, independent of which port the booting platform uses to query the BIS. That is, a booting platform attempts to locate the device through each of its ports, until it finds a suitable path. However, when the target has multiple ports, the PortGUID that the BIS returns in the locator record could be a function of the PortGUID component that the booting platform specifies in the BisQuery(). The expectation is that the booting platform identifies the first port it intends to use and, unless the BIS has specific topology information, the BIS ignores the PortGUID component.

When the booting platform requests PortBootInfo, the BIS returns the attribute for the booting platform's port specified in the PortGUID component of the BisQuery(). The BIS responds with a MAD_Header>Status.BIS_Status = 1:"No records matching query" when it does not have the information for the specified port. When the BIS does return a PortBootInfo record, the record's RomPortPriority, ConsolePortPriority, LocPortPriority, and NetworkBootPortPriority components indicate if and how the booting platform uses the specified port for booting. The Booting Annex describes how the booting platform uses those priorities.

A6.3.5.2.4 BOOTSUPPORT

The BootQueryInfo:BootSupport component is provided as supplemental information and there is no requirement that BIS use that information. It could be useful when the BIS does not recognize the UUID. The BIS may use this information in determining the status and content of the BisQueryResp().

A6.3.5.2.5 PLATFORMINFO

The BootQueryInfo:PlatformInfo component specifies booting related characteristics of the booting platform. This information is useful when the booting platform is unknown to the BIS, such as when a new platform is added to the fabric, and thus the BIS can not associate the booting platform with a prior set of locator records.

The PlatformInfo component contains multiple elements, where each element is a platform characteristic (see Table 478, "PlatformInfo Elements," on page 1591). The elements in PlatformInfo allow the BIS to identify the booting platform to the system administrator or automatically invoke an install process based on the content of the elements. Other possibilities include using the information to validate the requestor and for reporting changes to the System Administrator.

The BootQueryInfo:BootPlatformUUID is the primary component that a BIS uses to identify a booting platform and the PlatformInfo component is intended as supplemental information to identify those characteristics of a booting platform that may influence the set of locator records selected for the booting platform.

Elements in PlatformInfo are in TLV format. The first byte is the Type, the second byte is the Length (number of bytes in the value string), and the remainder of the element is the value string, in UTF-8 format. Type codes are specified in Table 478. The PlatformInfo component contains a variable number of variable length elements and is terminated with the null value (0x00). All bytes after the termination byte should also be null bytes.

Each respective booting platform vendor is responsible for defining its own value string definition. For instance the Platform vendor defines unique values for each of its products and firmware vendor defines unique values for each of its products. An element with a Length of zero means that the booting platform does not know the value for that element.

The recommended practice is for the booting platform to order elements by their Type value, lowest to highest.

Table 478 **PlatformInfo Elements**

Type Value	Length Value	Description (All strings are in UTF-8 and the content of each element is vendor specific)
0x00	0x00	Marks end of elements - ignore remainder of component data following this Type code
0x01	variable	Platform Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the vendor that manufactured the booting platform.
0x02	variable	Platform Vendor Model/Type String This string provides the model and type of the booting platform.
0x03	variable	Platform Serial Number String This string provides the name of the serial number of the booting platform.
0x04	variable	Firmware Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the firmware vendor that manufactured the boot environment code (e.g., BIOS vendor.).
0x05	variable	Firmware Version String This string provides the version of the firmware code.
0x06	variable	CPU Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the CPU vendor
0x07	variable	CPU Vendor Version String This string provides the CPU version, stepping, etc.
0x08	variable	Platform Name String This string provides the local name assigned the booting platform - usually assigned by the System Administrator to identify the platform by name.
0x09	variable	OS Name String This string provides the name of the preferred Operating System.

A6.3.5.3 PLATFORMBOOTINFO ATTRIBUTE

The PlatformBootInfo attribute is a subset of the R/W components of the BootMgt:PlatformBootInfo attribute (see Booting Annex) and supplies the booting platform with platform-wide booting parameters.

Table 479 PLATFORMBOOTINFO Attribute

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
reserved	0	36-bits	reserved
RomRepositoryLocator-Source	36	4-bits	This component indicates how and in what order the booting platform locates a ROM Repository to extend its boot environment. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 - BIS Only• 0x1 - BIS then Persistent• 0x2 - Persistent Only• 0x3 - Persistent then BIS• 0xF - No ROM Repository for expansion.
ConsoleLocatorSource	40	4-bits	This component indicates how and in what order the booting platform locates a Console. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 - BIS Only• 0x1 - BIS then Persistent• 0x2 - Persistent Only• 0x3 - Persistent then BIS• 0xF - No Console.
OsLocatorSource	44	4-bits	This component indicates how and in what order the booting platform locates an IOC, device or server containing its operating system boot loader storage and network booting. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 - BIS Only• 0x1 - BIS then Persistent• 0x2 - Persistent Only• 0x3 - Persistent then BIS• 0xF - Disable/No IB boot}
reserved	48	186-Bytes	reserved

CA6-16: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x00 - PlatformBootInfo) with a BisQueryResp(PlatformBootInfo) containing at most one PlatformBootInfo record as specified in Table 479.

A6.3.5.4 PORTBOOTINFO ATTRIBUTE

The PortBootInfo attribute is identical to the R/W components of the BootMgt:PortBootInfo attribute and supplies the booting platform with port-specific booting parameters for the port identified in the query.

Table 480**PORTBOOTINFO Attribute**

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BISPortPriority	0	2-bits	This component indicates the port's priority for locating a BIS. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 01b is the lowest priority• 00b indicates that the port should not be used to locate a BIS.
RomPortPriority	2	2-bits	This component indicates the priority of this port when attempting to locate a ROM repository. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 01b is the lowest priority• 00b indicates that the port should not be used to locate a ROM repository.
ConsolePortPriority	4	2-bits	This component indicates the priority of this port when attempting to locate a console. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 01b is the lowest priority• 00b indicates that the port should not be used to locate a console.
LocPortPriority	6	2-bits	This component indicates the priority of this port when attempting to locate an I/O unit (I/O Controller). <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 01b is the lowest priority• 00b indicates that the port should not be used to locate an I/O unit.
NetworkBootPortPriority	8	2-bits	This component indicates the priority of this port when attempting an IB network boot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 11b is the highest priority• 01b is the lowest priority• 00b indicates that the port should not be used for IB Network Boot.
reserved	10	22-bits	reserved
InitTimeout	32	16-bits	The time (100 mSec increments) from Power On Reset that the booting platform allows for subnet resources (e.g., I/O units) to become operational.
BisTimeout	48	16-bits	The time (100 mSec increments) from Power On Reset that the booting platform allows for the BIS to become operational.
EndNodeTimeout	64	16-bits	Specifies the maximum amount of time (in 100 mSec increments) that an end node takes to become operational and thus respond to MADs. Timer starts when the booting platform first sends a MAD to the particular node. This component accounts for target nodes that are in a power-down state and are awakened as a result of the booting platform sending MADs to it.
reserved	80	182-Bytes	reserved

CA6-17: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x01 - PortBootInfo) with a BisQueryResp(PortBootInfo) containing at most one PortBootInfo record as specified in Table 480.

A6.3.5.5 ROMREPOSITORYLOCATORRECORD ATTRIBUTE

The RomRepositoryLocatorRecord attribute used in the *BisQueryResp()* provides a boot information record identifying an I/O unit containing a ROM Repository and has the format specified in Table 481. The AttributeID in the MAD header indicates that the AttributeData contains a RomRepositoryLocatorRecord record.

The RomRepositoryLocatorRecord attribute is identical to the R/W components of the BootMgt:RomRepository attribute.

Table 481 ROMREPOSITORYLOCATORRECORD Attribute

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
reserved	0	16-Bytes	reserved
PortGID	128	16-Bytes	Port GID of the I/O unit.
reserved	256	160-Bytes	reserved

CA6-18: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x02 - RomRepositoryLocatorRecords to extend the boot environment or 0x03 - RomRepositoryLocatorRecords for device drivers) with a BisQueryResp(RomRepositoryLocatorRecord) as specified in Table 481.

A6.3.5.6 CONSOLELOCATORRECORD ATTRIBUTE

The ConsoleLocatorRecord attribute used in the *BisQueryResp()* provides a boot information record for a console service and has the format specified in Table 482. The AttributeID in the MAD header indicates that the AttributeData contains a ConsoleLocatorRecord attribute. Note that IB Console Protocol (see [Console Annex](#)) supports both console server processes and console devices.

Table 482 ConsoleLocatorRecord Attribute

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
reserved	0	8-bits	reserved
Device-Service	8	1-bit	<p>Indicates if this record describes a Console IOC or Console Server Process</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0b = this record describes a console IOC • 1b = this record describes a console server process
DeviceDriverLocation	9	2-bits	<p>Specifies the search order to locate a Device Driver for a Console IOC that supports a proprietary device driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b = Search only the ROM Repository in the same IOU as the IOC. • 01b = First search the ROM Repository in the same IOU as the IOC, then try ROM Repository records. • 10b = First search ROM Repositories pointed to by RomRepository records, then try the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC. • 11b = Search only ROM Repositories pointed to by the RomRepository Records.
reserved	11	5-bits	reserved
Protocol	16	8-bits	<p>The console protocol to use (see A6.3.5.8 Protocol Field on page 1597):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 - unknown <p>otherwise bit specific where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0 - proprietary protocol • bit 1 - IBTA Console protocol (refer to Console Annex) • bits 2-6 are reserved • bit 7 -Use any ProtocolName specified by a ProtocolName element in the AdditionalInfo component.
reserved	24	5-Bytes	reserved
locGUID-SID	64	8-Bytes	<p>GUID of the I/O controller or ServiceID of the service depending on setting of the Device-Service field</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If Device-Service = 0b (console IOC), then this is the locGUID. • If Device-Service = 1b (server process), then this is the ServiceID. A service ID other than the IB CSP ServiceID indicates a proprietary console protocol
PortGID	128	16-Bytes	Port GID for the console service.
AdditionalInfo	256	160-Bytes	Console protocol specific data in Type-Length-Value (TLV) format see Booting Annex for definitions

CA6-19: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x04 - ConsoleLocatorRecords) with a BisQueryResp(ConsoleLocatorRecord) as specified in Table 482.

A6.3.5.7 OsLOCATORRECORD ATTRIBUTE

The OsLocatorRecord attribute used in the *BisQueryResp()* provides a boot information record for boot device such as a storage device or a network interface adapter, and has the format specified in Table 483. The AttributeID in the MAD header indicates that the AttributeData contains an OsLocatorRecord attribute.

Table 483 OsLocatorRecord Attribute

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
BootMethod	0	8-bits	<p>Boot Method</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x01 = Storage (attribute specifies IOC to use) • 0x02 = Network (attribute specifies IOC to use) • 0x03 = Proprietary (attribute specifies IOC) • 0x04 = IB Network boot (attribute specifies IB boot server, if needed) <p>all other values reserved</p>
reserved	8	1-bit	reserved
DeviceDriverLocation	9	2-bits	<p>Specifies the search order to locate a Device Driver for an IOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b = Search only the ROM Repository in the same IOU as the IOC. • 01b = First search the ROM Repository in the same IOU as the IOC, then try ROM Repository records. • 10b = First search ROM Repositories pointed to by RomRepository records, then try the ROM Repository on the same IOU as the IOC. • 11b = Search only ROM Repositories pointed to by the RomRepository Records.
RecordType	11	2-bit	<p>Indicates the purpose of this record</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b = this record describes a source for a boot loader that loads an installation program which can install an OS for the booting platform. • 01b = this record describes a source for the booting platform's OS boot loader • 10b = this record describes a destination where an installation program can install an OS boot loader. A booting platform should not attempt to use an OsLocatorRecord with RecordType=10b as the source for its boot loader. • 11b = this record describes a destination where an installation program can or has installed an OS boot loader. A booting platform can attempt to boot from this location. An installation program can install an OS boot loader at this location.
reserved	12	3-bits	reserved
Protocol	16	8-bits	<p>The IOC protocol to use (see A6.3.5.8 Protocol Field on page 1597):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 - unknown <p>otherwise bit specific as described in Table 484, "Protocol Component Bit Definitions," on page 1598)</p>
reserved	24	5-Bytes	reserved

Table 483 OsLocatorRecord Attribute (Continued)

Component Name	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
locGUID-SID	64	8-Bytes	GUID of the I/O controller or SID of the Boot Service (a SID value of zero means unknown or not used).
PortGID	128	16-Bytes	Port GID of the I/O unit or the Boot Service (a value of zero means unknown or not used).
AdditionalInfo	256	160-Bytes	I/O protocol specific data in Type-Length-Value (TLV) format, refer to Booting Annex for definition and content.

CA6-20: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x10 - Install Program) with a BisQueryResp(OsLocatorRecord) as specified in Table 483 and the RecordType component of any record returned shall be 00b.

CA6-21: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x11 - Boot Loader) with a BisQueryResp(OsLocatorRecord) as specified in Table 483 and the RecordType component of any record returned shall be 00b, 01b, or 11b.

CA6-22: A BIS shall respond to a BisQuery(BootQueryInfo:BootInfoRequested=0x12 - Boot Loader Destination) with a BisQueryResp(OsLocatorRecord) as specified in Table 483 and the RecordType component of any record returned shall be 10b or 11b.

A6.3.5.8 PROTOCOL FIELD

Locator records contains a Protocol component that the BIS uses to specify which protocols the booting platform can use with the specified device. This field is bit specific (i.e., each bit represents a protocol). When a device supports more than one protocol, the BIS can indicate a preference by returning multiple records, each with a different Protocol value. If the BIS sets more than one bit, it means that the booting platform may use any of the indicated protocols. A value of zero means that the BIS does not know which protocols the device supports. In this case the booting platform determines which protocol to use.

For OsLocatorRecords, Protocols are dependant on the BootMethod component as specified in are Table 484.

Table 484 Protocol Component Bit Definitions

Bit	Boot Method			
	01 Storage	02 LAN Network Boot	03 Proprietary	04 IB Network Boot
0	proprietary	proprietary	proprietary	proprietary
1	SRP	reserved	reserved	IPoIB
2-6	reserved			
7	Use any ProtocolName specified by a ProtocolName element in the AdditionalInfo component.			

When bit 7 is set, the booting platform looks in the AdditionalInfo component of the OSLocatorRecord for ProtocolName elements to determine which I/O protocols it can use.

A6.4 BOOTING USING BOOT INFORMATION RECORDS

This section specifies the recommended practices and considerations for a booting platform that uses a BIS to derive boot information. This annex only specifies requirements on the BIS. See the Booting Annex for requirements on a booting platform.

A6.4.1 OVERVIEW

The booting platform uses the services of the subnet manager's subnet administration agent to identify and locate a BIS and then queries the BIS for boot information. In each query the booting platform specifies which type of information it wants and can ask for one of the following:

- boot parameters for the platform (PlatformBootInfo);
- boot parameters for a particular port (PortBootInfo);
- location of ROM Repositories (RomRepositoryLocatorRecords) that contains code to extend the boot environment or that contain device drivers;
- the location of a console (ConsoleLocatorRecords);
- the location of a boot loader (OsLocatorRecords).

If a booting platform needs multiple types of information, it queries the BIS multiple times. For each query, the BIS returns the requested information.

The booting platform queries the BIS (as specified in A6.3.5.2 “BootQueryInfo Attribute” on page 1585) to get its boot information records. When responding to a query for the location of a ROM Repository, Console, or Boot Loader, the BIS may return multiple records using the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol. The booting platform assumes the BIS returns the records in the order of priority (primary device/service first). Records are returned as a part of multi-packet response such that the booting platform can detect and request retransmission of missed records. The BIS might also respond with a KeepAlive status when it needs more time to process the query. This is useful for when the BIS needs to poll the fabric or query other data repositories.

A6.4.2 GENERAL OPERATION

The following is an example of how a booting platform can use the Boot Information Service stated in relative order.

- 1) Each BIS registers itself with the SA using the **SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord)** method with *ServiceName* = “BIS.IBTA” null terminated (i.e., the 9th a subsequent characters are 0x00). The SA ServiceRecord lease will remove stale entries after the lease expires (see Chapter 15). However, a booting platform should be able to deal with a stale ServiceRecord for a BIS that is no longer in service (i.e., the SA might return zero path records from the booting platform to the BIS or the BIS does not respond).
- 2) Since each port of a booting platform might be on a different subnet and/or each port may belong to a different set of partitions, the booting platform should treat each of its ports as if it is independent from the others. Thus, the booting platform selects a port and all subsequent operations (i.e., the following steps) are performed through that port. Note that the Booting Annex provides the means for a booting platform to be configured with BIS port priorities that identify which order the booting platform attempts to use its ports to locate a BIS.
- 3) The booting platform uses **SubnAdmTableGet(ServiceRecord)** method to query the SA and retrieve a list of all the BIS agents (i.e., *ServiceName* = “BIS.IBTA”) for all of its partitions (i.e., wildcards the *ServiceP_Key* component in the request) and selects one. When the booting platform finds multiple BIS servers, it should attempt to use them in the order that the SA returns the Service Records.
- 4) The booting platform queries the SA to get the path record for the selected BIS using the **SubnAdmTableGet(PathRecord)** with *DGID* = the *GID* from the service record. From this information the booting platform selects a path and is now able to send messages to the GSI of the selected BIS.

- 5) The booting platform queries the BIS using the **BisQuery(BootQueryInfo)** message described in [A6.3.4.2 Query Methods on page 1582](#). The booting platform makes a separate query (i.e., a single packet request) for each type of information it wants in any order it wants to request it. By setting the appropriate value in the BootInfoRequested component, the booting platform can request one of the following:
 - a) A PlatformBootInfo record specifying platform booting parameters
 - b) A PortBootInfo record specifying booting parameters for the specified port
 - c) ConsoleLocatorRecords specifying a console
 - d) RomRepositoryLocatorRecords for ROM Repositories for extending the booting platform's boot environment
 - e) RomRepositoryLocatorRecords for ROM Repositories containing device drivers
 - f) OsLocatorRecords for boot devices (storage, Network Interface Controllers, etc.) or Network Boot information that the booting platform uses to locate and load a boot loader.
- 6) The BIS may redirect a query to a dedicated QP, which might be on another port. The BIS does this by responding with a **BisGetResp(ClassPortInfo)** specifying the redirection information (see section [13.5 MAD Processing on page 818](#)). For this case the booting platform resubmits the query to the redirected port. Redirection can come at anytime. All subsequent queries should be to the redirected port.
- 7) In certain cases, the BIS may need more time to process boot inquiries, and thus it responds with a KeepAlive status. This response is useful when the BIS information is stale or the BIS needs to validate the requestor and thus the BIS takes an action that requires additional time (such as querying a configuration manager, etc.). A booting platform is not required to wait and thus the amount of time it does wait is a policy of the booting platform.
- 8) The BIS eventually responds with boot information records for the particular request (or the platform times out and jumps to step 10).
- 9) The booting platform attempts booting using the appropriate protocols, loading proprietary drivers as necessary. The ports that the booting platform uses to access the ROM Repository, Console, and boot loader are determined by the appropriate PortBootInfo priority values.
- 10) If no suitable boot devices or services are found, the booting platform might take one or more of the following actions, not necessarily in this order:

- a) Query the next BIS (return to step 4) 1
- b) Repeat the process for the next port (return to step 3) 2
- c) Periodically query the SA looking for a new BIS ServiceRecord 3
(return to step 3) and repeat the process. If no new BIS, then retry 4
each BIS. This covers the case of a new BIS registering and also 5
a current BIS being updated with new information. 6
- d) Report an error to the console 7
- e) Send a Trap to the Boot Manager 8
- f) Stall and await operator assistance 9
- g) Continue with another boot resolution method (see Booting An- 10
nex). 11

A6.5 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

This annex specifies a new Compliance Category (see [Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary on page 1241](#) for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). The new category is BIS-Server. There are no Compliance Qualifiers.

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of BIS-Server, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support (currently there are no optional compliance qualifiers for this category).

- **CA6-1:** Conform to Management Model Page 1577 25
- **CA6-2:** Register with SA Page 1578 26
- **CA6-3:** Renew registration lease Page 1578 26
- **CA6-4:** MAD format Page 1580 27
- **CA6-5:** Response for No Matching Records Page 1581 28
- **CA6-6:** Response to unsupported class version Page 1581 28
- **CA6-7:** Response to unknown method Page 1581 29
- **CA6-8:** Response to unsupported attribute Page 1582 30
- **CA6-9:** Response to invalid parameter Page 1582 30
- **CA6-10:** BIS methods Page 1582 31
- **CA6-11:** Multi-packet protocol Page 1583 32
- **CA6-12:** Response window size Page 1583 32
- **CA6-13:** Multi-packet request rejection Page 1583 33
- **CA6-14:** BIS attributes Page 1585 33
- **CA6-15:** Filter on BootPlatformUUID Page 1588 34
- **CA6-16:** BisQuery response for PlatformBootInfo Page 1592 35
- **CA6-17:** BisQuery response for PortBootInfo Page 1594 36
- **CA6-18:** BisQuery response for Rom Repository Page 1594 36
- **CA6-19:** BisQuery response for Console Page 1595 37
- **CA6-20:** Response for Install Source Locator Records Page 1597 38
- **CA6-21:** Response for Boot Loader Locator Records Page 1597 39
- **CA6-22:** Response for Boot Loader Destination Records Page 1597 39

In addition, a BIS must also be compliant with the general management framework requirements from Chapter 13 specified in [Section 20.12, “Op-](#)

[tional Management Agent Compliance Category.” on page 1284](#) and
[Section 20.13, “Common MAD Requirements,” on page 1286.](#)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

IBTA

ANNEX A7: CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT

A7.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex and [Annex A8: Device Management](#) defines the framework for managing I/O units and assigning I/O Unit resources to client platforms. The Device Management annex specifies the Device Management class and the requirements for an I/O unit to support Device Management. This annex describes the overall configuration management framework, specifies the Device Administration Class, and specifies the requirements for a configuration management application that configures the I/O Unit (i.e., the Device Manager) and administers privileged configuration information to client platforms (i.e., Device Administrator). The combination of the Device Manager and Device Administrator is referred to as a Configuration Manager.

This Annex:

- Explains the framework for managing the resources of an I/O unit (i.e., I/O service objects) and assignment of those resources to hosts (i.e. client platforms). The overall objective is to facilitate multiple hosts sharing the same I/O unit. In this annex, a host that is assigned I/O resources is referred to as a client platform.
- Specifies the role of a configuration manager, which performs two main functions. It is a Device Manager (DM) that uses Device Management (DevMgt) class MADs (see [Annex A8: Device Management](#)) to configure I/O units and it is a Device Administrator (DA) that uses Device Administration (DevAdm) class MADs (specified in this annex) to provide hosts with I/O configuration information and to coordinate I/O events (such as diagnostics and hot plug),
- Defines the Device Administration management class, which specifies the management interface (messages, methods, and attributes) between Client Platforms and the DA.

I/O units are capable of providing I/O service to multiple clients. However, it is desirable to control which I/O resources each client is permitted to use. IB partitioning enforces isolation among systems sharing an InfiniBand fabric, but does not provide for partitioning of the resources within a node. Device Management in conjunction with Device Administration and Communication Management (CM; see chapter 12) together extend the IB Architecture to provide enforceable assignment of I/O resources to multiple clients.

The Device Management class provides the means to configure an I/O unit to specify which client platforms are permitted to access which I/O services (by associating access keys with a set of I/O service objects). The Device Administration class provides the means for client platforms to get information (such as access keys) that enables those platforms to use allocated services and to be notified about events that affect their use of those resources.

A7.1.1 GLOSSARY

The following terms are in addition to the terms in Volume 1 [Chapter 2: Glossary on page 84](#).

Active Configuration Management

The usage model where there is a [Device Manager](#) that configures [I/O Units](#) with access rights for [Service Clients](#) and thus restricts which clients can see and use certain I/O resources. Also see [Passive Configuration Management](#). Device Management in conjunction with Device Administration and Communication Management together provide enforceable assignment of I/O resources to multiple clients.

Active Device Management

Another term for [Active Configuration Management](#).

Client_Key

A key that a client passes to the [I/O Unit](#) in CM and DevMgt MADs. The [I/O Unit](#) allows the client to access service objects based on the record in the [Client Pool Table](#) that matches this key.

Client Platform

A platform (one or more channel adapters under common control) that hosts one or more [Service Clients](#). Also see [Figure 303 "Configuration Management Usage Model" on page 1610](#).

Client Pool Table

A table in an [I/O Unit](#) that specifies the access rights of each client. Each record specifies the list of service objects that a client is allowed to access and specifies the [I/O Unit](#) CA resources, such as number of QPs, the client may consume. Each record is identified by a unique [Client_Key](#) and specifies the [Supervisor Key](#) of the [Client Platform](#) that is permitted to modify the record.

Configuration Group

The set of [I/O Units](#) that are managed by the same [Device Manager](#) and the set of [Client Platforms](#) that are permitted to use those [I/O Units](#).

Configuration Management

The act of configuring [I/O Units](#) to control which [Service Clients](#) may access which of the IOU's services and administering configuration information to client platforms. See [Device Management](#) and [Device Administration](#).

Configuration Manager

A manager that provides the [Device Manager](#) and [Device Administrator](#) for a [Configuration Group](#).

DA	Device Administrator	1
DevAdm	Device Administration class	2
Device Administration	An IB management class for administering information about I/O Units to Client Platforms .	3
Device Administrator	A function of the Configuration Manager that administers configuration information to Client Platforms .	4
Device Management	An IB management class for obtaining information about an I/O Unit 's resources, configuring the I/O unit, and for managing diagnostics.	5
Device Management Agent	An IB management agent in an I/O Unit that implements the Device Management class protocol. It provides information about the I/O Unit 's I/O resources, can invoke diagnostics, and reports diagnostic results.	6
Device Manager	An IB manager that configures an I/O Unit by setting the I/O unit's Device Management class attributes via the I/O Unit 's Device Management Agent using DevMgt class MADs. As a class manager, it provides the means for 3rd parties to subscribe for DevMgt class event reports (i.e. Trap forwarding). It also oversees I/O module hot plug and diagnostic sessions.	7
DM	Device Manager	8
DevMgt	Device Management class	9
DevMgt Agent	Device Management Agent	10
Host	See Client Platform	11
IOC	I/O Controller	12
I/O Client	A function or process on a Client Platform that uses an I/O service provided by an I/O Unit (i.e., the user of one or more I/O Service Objects).	13
I/O Controller	A process or circuit of an I/O Unit that provides access to one or more I/O Service Objects .	14
I/O Device	An overloaded term that usually refers to an I/O Unit , an I/O Controller , an I/O Service Object , or a Protocol Object . In this annex it refers to any physical or logical I/O component that an I/O Controller accesses on behalf of an I/O Client , see Figure 318 "Model for an I/O Unit" on page 1682 of Annex A8: Device Management . An example of an I/O Device is a SCSI disk drive behind a SCSI I/O Controller .	15
I/O Management Application	A process running in a Client Platform ⁴² that accesses an I/O Management Object to create, configure, or destroy I/O Service Objects and/or set	16

	I/O protocol-specific parameters. Also see Figure 319 "I/O Components and Relationships" on page 1684 of Annex A8: Device Management .	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
I/O Management Object	A type of Service Object provided by an I/O Unit used to configure I/O Service Objects and I/O Protocol -specific parameters. Not to be confused with an IB Management Agent, the DevMgt class advertises the existence of vendor supplied management objects that do not use the IB management framework (i.e., do not use GMPs and QP1). Also see Figure 319 "I/O Components and Relationships" on page 1684 of Annex A8: Device Management .	
I/O Management Protocol	The protocol between an I/O Management Application and an I/O Management Object , typically to manage I/O configuration such as installing I/O Controllers or creating, destroying, and configuring Service Objects . I/O Management Protocols are outside the scope of this annex, except that DevMgt advertises the I/O Management Protocols supported by an I/O Unit and its I/O Controllers .	
I/O Module	A permanent or removable subassembly of an I/O Unit that contains one or more I/O Controllers . An I/O module is different from an IB module in that it does not contain the channel adapter.	
I/O Partition	Any partition used to perform I/O. An I/O partition is defined as the set of Client Platforms and I/O Units that share the same P_Key value for the purpose of supporting I/O operation. An I/O partition exists by virtue of the SM assigning to an I/O Unit , a P_Key value that permits a Client Platform to access that I/O Unit . IBA requires a Client Platform to be a member of one of the I/O Unit 's I/O partitions in order to use the I/O Unit .	
I/O Port	An overloaded term, in this annex it refers to a physical attachment to an I/O fabric, for example a Fibre Channel port.	
I/O Protocol	The protocol between an I/O Client and an I/O Service Object to invoke I/O operation and perform I/O transactions. I/O Protocols are outside the scope of this annex, except that DevMgt identifies the I/O Protocols supported by an I/O Unit (i.e., its I/O Controllers).	
IORM	I/O Resource Manager	
I/O Resource Manager	A management function in a Client Platform that manages I/O resources for that platform. Also known as the platform's Supervisor . The Device Administrator provides each IORM with a Supervisor Key . The IOU allows 42. Typically, management applications run from an administrator's machine. For the purpose of accessing the I/O management object in the IOU, the machine is considered a client because Device Management provides the means for the Device Manager to configure which nodes may access specific I/O management objects.	

the [IORM](#) access to DevMgt attributes based on the records that matches this key. An [IORM](#) uses the key to read its [Platform Pool Table](#) record and to modify the [Client Pool Table](#) records assigned to that platform to further control which IOU resources each of its clients may access.

I/O Service Object	A type of Service Object provided by an I/O Controller that permits an I/O Client to access a set of I/O functions or I/O Devices via an I/O Protocol (see Figure 319 "I/O Components and Relationships" on page 1684 of Annex A8: Device Management). Each I/O Service Object uses a different set of QPs. That is, an I/O client uses a different channel to access each service object.
IOU	I/O Unit
I/O Unit	A node that implements a Device Management Agent . It normally contains one or more I/O Controllers and provides I/O service.
Passive Configuration Management	A usage model where there is not a Device Manager that configures I/O Units . Management uses only partitions (P_Keys) to control which nodes may access an I/O unit and thus see and use its I/O resources. For passive management, if a node has access to an I/O Unit , then any I/O Client on that node has access to all I/O resources provided by that I/O unit. Also see Active Configuration Management .
Passive Device Management	Another term for Passive Configuration Management .
Platform Pool Table	A table of records in an I/O Unit where each record specifies the access rights of a Client Platform (i.e., list of service objects that each platform is allowed to access and specifies the I/O Unit CA resources, such as number of QPs, the platform may consume). Each record is identified by a unique Supervisor Key .
Protocol Object	A logical I/O entity that is accessible through an I/O Service Object . The means to discover and address a protocol object is I/O Protocol specific. An example of a Protocol Object is a SCSI logical unit, which is distinguished by its SCSI logical unit number (LUN) in the SCSI protocol packet. Protocol Objects are outside the scope of DevMgt. That is, I/O clients use DevMgt to identify I/O Service Objects and then communicate with each I/O Service Object via its I/O Protocol to identify and address Protocol Objects.
Service Client	An entity such as an I/O Client or I/O Management Application that communicates with a Service Object , usually for the purpose of performing I/O operations or configuring the I/O service.
Service Object	An addressable entity in an I/O Unit , such as an I/O Service Object or I/O Management Object , that provides some type of service to a Service Client .

[Client](#). Thus, it is a port through which a client can access [Protocol Objects](#) or manage I/O devices. The characteristics of a Service Object is that it consumes at least one QP and it does not share its QPs with other Service Objects. That is, Service Objects are addressed via their QPs.

Supervisor

The entity on a [Client Platform](#) (a.k.a. [I/O Resource Manager](#) or [IORM](#)) that manages I/O clients on that platform.

Supervisor_Key

A key a supervisor (i.e., the [IORM](#) of a [Client Platform](#)) passes to an [I/O Unit](#) that the I/O unit compares to keys in the I/O unit's [Platform Pool Table](#). The I/O unit allows the [IORM](#) access to DevMgt attributes based on the record that matches this key. [IORMs](#) use the key to read its [Platform Pool Table](#) record and to modify [Client Pool Table](#) records associated with that Supervisor_Key to further control which I/O unit resources each of its clients may access.

A7.1.2 COMPLIANCE

This annex specifies compliance requirements for a configuration manager (Device Manager and its Device Administrator) and for client platforms.

This annex specifies two new Compliance Categories (see [Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary on page 1241](#) for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). The new categories are:

- Configuration Manager - the application that provides the Device Manager and the Device Administrator for a configuration group)
- Client Platform - a platform that uses an I/O units's resources.

There are two Compliance Qualifiers for the Configuration Manager category and no Compliance Qualifiers for the Client Platform category. The compliance categories for Configuration Managers are:

- PERS - The manager persistently saves client contexts such as subscriptions and diagnostic sessions across reset, restarts, and power cycles.
- FAILOVER - The manager supports graceful failover such that if the manager fails and a standby manager takes over, the new manager inherits the client context (subscriptions and diagnostic sessions) from the old manager.

Section [A7.7 Compliance on page 1670](#) provides a summary of compliance statements.

A7.2 OVERVIEW

When an IOU can be accessed by multiple client platforms, there is a need for a management entity (i.e., a Configuration Manager) that admin-

isters assignment of service objects to the various client platforms and co-ordinates actions that might impact the client platforms, such as invoking diagnostics and hot plugging an I/O module.

Assignment of IOUs to client platforms is not a one to one relationship and needs to take into consideration sharing aspects. An IOU is considered shared when more than one client platform has access to that IOU's resources.

[Editorial Note:For the simple case, each client platform is a host platform running an operating system that supports multiple clients which initiate I/O transactions, but in elaborate I/O architectures, an IOU could also be an initiator of I/O requests to another IOU, and therefore, for the purpose of managing the relationships between those IOUs, the initiating IOU is considered a client platform. Thus, Device Management / Device Administration controls the client platform / IOU relationship and any node that needs access to an IOU's service object is considered a client platform.]

To enable graceful sharing of an IOU between independent client platforms, a Configuration Manager becomes necessary and it:

- a) Acts as the central class manager for DevMgt agents of IOUs in the configuration manager's configuration group.
- b) Provides each client platform with information necessary for that platform to locate and use I/O services by passing out lists of IOUs and access keys to each client platform
- c) Provides a central service for maintaining I/O assignment information and:
 - iii) Provides centralized control for approving a Diagnostic Session.
 - iv) Provides I/O module Hot Plug/Removal notification to affected clients
 - v) Performs I/O resource polling functions that would otherwise be replicated by each client platform

The Configuration Manager in conjunction with the Device Management Agent provides:

- Individually assigning each service object of an IOU to one or more client platforms.
- Notifying client platforms about configuration changes and configuration events.
- Mechanism for graceful insertion and removal of I/O-Modules (hot plug and hot swap).

- Coordination of diagnostics.
- An efficient scalable means for client platforms to discover applicable IOUs and to query for configuration information.
- The means for client platforms to discover IOUs on other subnets.

A7.2.1 OBJECTIVE

The goals of the configuration management framework are:

- Provide the means for a Configuration Manager to allocate I/O resources by configuring each IOU, specifying which service objects and associated resources that each client platform may use.
- Allow each client platform's OS the ability to allocate those resources to clients within that platform, specifying which subset of those service objects and resources each client may use.
- Enforce allocations such that client platforms and their clients cannot consume resources for which they are not authorized.
- Coordinate events that affect multiple client platforms.

A7.2.2 USAGE MODEL

The Configuration Manager is an InfiniBand management facility that manages relationships between client platforms and I/O resources within a managed IOU. It is composed of a Device Manager (DM) and a Device Administrator (DA), which are described as two separate entities as a matter of architectural convenience (see [Figure 303 on page 1610](#)).

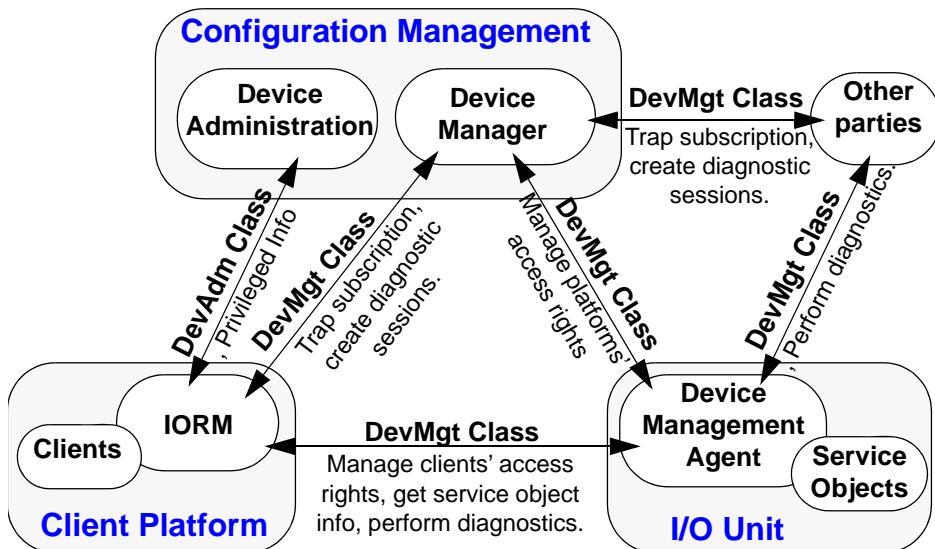


Figure 303

Configuration Management Usage Model

The DA is the complement to the DM. The DM uses DevMgt class MADs⁴³ to configure each IOU with information describing which platforms may access which service objects. It does this by setting Platform Pool Table records in each IOU (one record per client platform), identified by a unique supervisor key). Each Platform Pool Table record specifies which service objects and I/O resources the platform may use.

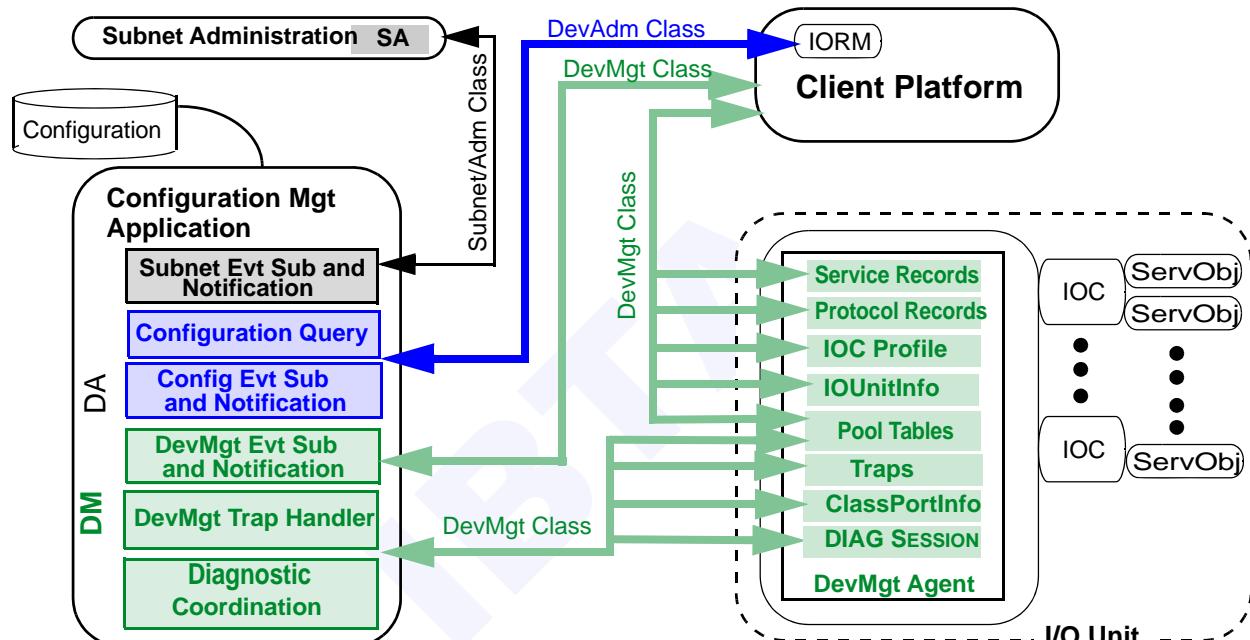


Figure 304

Configuration Management Functions and Relationships

Before a client platform can query the DA, the platform's I/O resource Manager (IORM) must first login to the DA so that the DA can validate the client platform and assign it a RequesterID. The IORM uses that RequesterID in subsequent DevAdm MADs.

The IORM may then query the DA for information about IOUs it is permitted to use using DevAdm MADs. The IORM is a privileged process on a client platform that uses a special privileged Q_Key to query the DA for privileged information about I/O resources for that platform. Specifically, the DA provides the IORM with a list of IOUs and Supervisor_Keys. The Supervisor_Key authorizes the IORM to access the IOU and read that platform's Platform Pool Table record (to learn which resources it may use) and to configure IOU Client Pool Table records assigned to that plat-

43. The DevMgt Annex describes all of the DevMgt attributes including the communication between clients and the Device Manager for trap subscriptions and forwarding (requirements for trap forwarding are specified in this annex).

form. Each Client Pool Table record is identified by a Client_Key and specifies which of the resources assigned to the platform that a client using that Client_Key is allowed to use.

The IORM then distributes client keys to its clients as necessary. Each client uses its client key to access the IOU using DevMgt MADs to read information about service objects associated with that client key. The client also uses that key when creating a connection with the service object. Refer to the Device Management Annex for details on how the IORM uses its supervisor key and provisions an IOU with client access privileges.

It is important that only the platform's IORM, and not the platform's clients, have access to the platform's supervisor key. Thus, DevAdm uses a special privileged Q_Key. Since the OS controls who can use privileged Q_Keys, the OS has the means to prevent its clients from querying the DA to learn privileged information. In addition, the DA validates the identity of the client platform before providing that platform with any configuration information (see [A7.6.3.4 "LogIn" on page 1658](#)) and only provides information for that platform.

The DA also coordinates events such as I/O module hot-plug/removal and diagnostics with client platforms that are assigned service objects affected by those events. The DA notifies affected clients via Event Subscription and Notification, and the response from the clients determine whether the DM continues with the hot plug or diagnostic session.

In addition, the DM provides an interface (using DevMgt MADs) that is used by both client platforms and other managers to subscribe to DevMgt class traps and to create diagnostic sessions. Thus, client platforms and other managers use DevMgt class to access the DM function of the Configuration Manager.

A7.2.3 CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT APPLICATION

A configuration manager consists of a DM and its associated DA. The Device Management class provides mechanisms (methods and attributes) for a DM to configure IOUs and the means for client platforms to query the IOU about those service objects that the DM had configured for that platform (see [Annex A8: Device Management](#)).

The Device Administration class provides mechanisms (methods and attributes) to enable an IORM to query the DA to retrieve supervisor keys and for the DA to report configuration changes to the IORM.

A7.2.3.1 PASSIVE MANAGEMENT

It is not always necessary to have a Configuration Manager (i.e., a DM and DA). The term "*Passive Configuration Management*" refers to a fabric

designed to function without a configuration manager. Passive management is typical in a subnet where each IOU is dedicated to a single client platform (example: each IOU configured for a single partition containing a single client platform) or where all clients in that partition have equal access to all of the IOU's resources. Except for the most trusted environments, a Configuration Manager is needed when IOUs are shared among multiple clients. For passive configuration management, DevMgt class defaults (i.e., KeyInfo:ProtectBits) allow any client platform that can access an IOU (i.e., has the proper P_Key) to access to all of the IOU's Device Management information and I/O resources.

A7.2.3.2 ACTIVE MANAGEMENT

For active device management there is a configuration manager that provides a DM and a DA.

In general, a DA:

- Provides each IORM with a list of its IOUs and supervisor keys.
- Notifies client platforms when IOUs, IOCs, or service objects come on-line or go off-line.
- Notifies client platforms about changes in configuration.
- Manages hot plug events - notifying client platforms when one or more I/O Controllers are to be removed.
- Notifies client platforms about diagnostic sessions.

And Client Platforms and other managers use the DM to:

- Register for and receive reports of IOU generated DevMgt Traps.
- Request a diagnostic session with an IOU.

A7.2.3.3 MULTIPLE MANAGERS

Configuration Management supports the concept of multiple configuration managers for the following reasons.

- Segregated resources - when a fabric is divided into two or more independent configuration groups, each group will have its own logical Configuration Manager, independent of the other groups as illustrated in [Figure 305 on page 1614](#).
- Redundancy - standby Configuration Managers monitor active managers, ready to takeover in case of failure as illustrated in [Figure 306 on page 1615](#). Only the active DM registers with the SA, so a client platform does not see standby Configuration Managers.
- Distributed management - for large fabrics, having multiple Device Managers help balance the workload. In this case, the discrete managers cooperate to form a single logical Device Manager. This means that two clients of the same configuration group might not see the same DM / DA as illustrated in [Figure 307 on page 1615](#).

A client platform (IORM, I/O client, I/O management application) might see multiple DMs (one for each partition) if it belongs to multiple groups (e.g., ‘Client Platform n’ in [Figure 305](#)). Since a DM might register for multiple partitions, it is possible for a client platform that only belongs to a single configuration group to get multiple ServiceRecords for the same DM when it queries the SA to locate the DM. When a client platform does get multiple ServiceRecords, it can query each DM for the DAInfo attribute and the ConfigGroupID in the DAInfo Attributes will indicate which DMs serve different configuration groups.

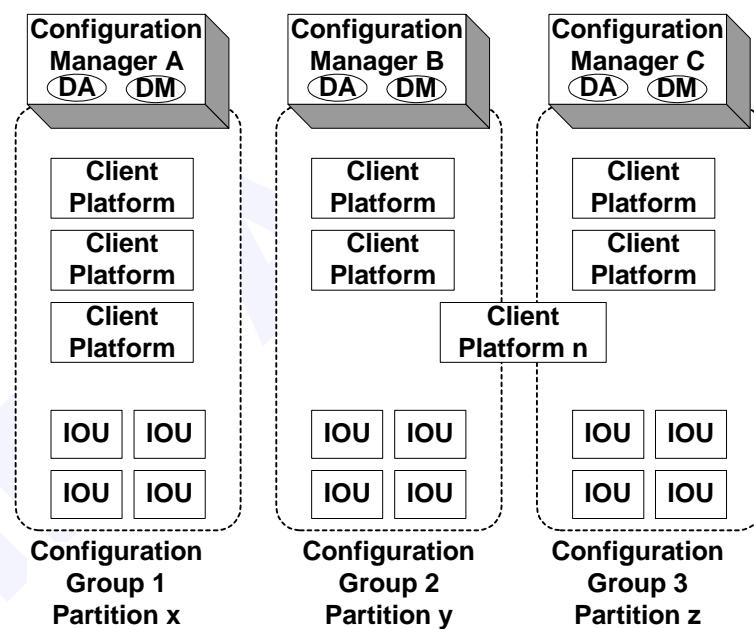


Figure 305

Multiple Configuration Group

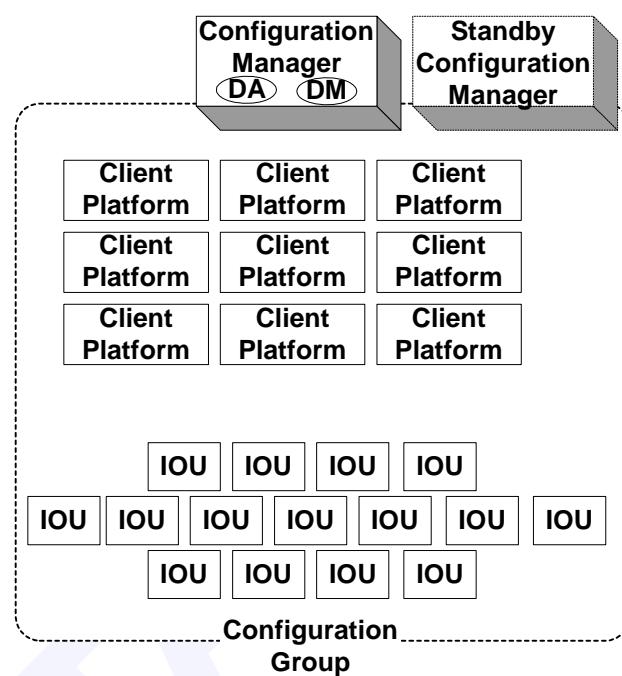


Figure 306 Standby Configuration Manager

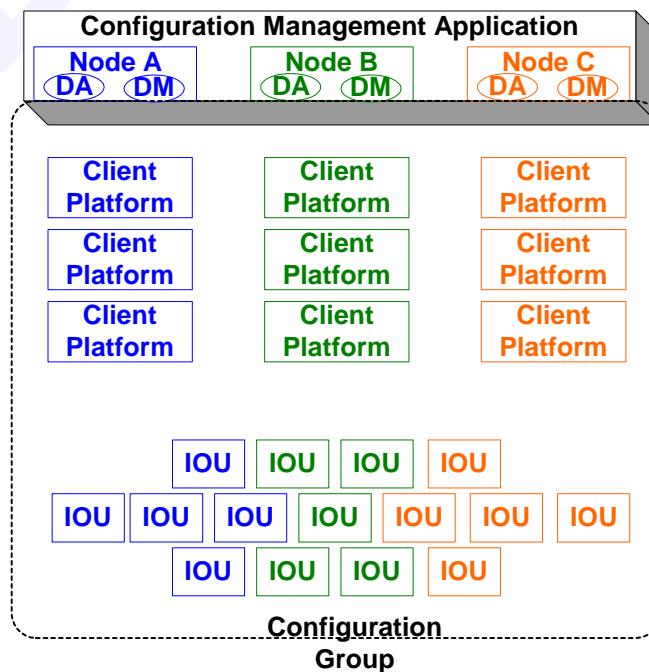


Figure 307 Distributed Configuration Manager

Unlike the SM/SA, there does not need to be a DM/DA per subnet. That is, one configuration manager can handle multiple subnets. However, it might be desirable to provide a configuration manager per subnet. For example, each DM/DA in [Figure 307](#) might serve a different subnet. In this case, each DM would register [via SubnAdmSet(ServiceRegistration)] on its own subnet and directly manage the IOUs on its own subnet, with the understanding that all the DM/DAs coordinate privately and appear as a single configuration manager. Thus, a client platform queries its DA to locate all of its I/O resources, even if those IOUs are on a different subnet.

A7.3 CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT OPERATIONAL MODEL

The Configuration Manager is a management facility that appears as a service (i.e., the DA) to client platforms and as a class manager (i.e., the DM) for DevMgt Agents as illustrated in [Figure 308 on page 1616](#). Each client platform is able to access IOUs directly using DevMgt class MADs. However, it is the Configuration Manager (i.e., the DM) that has the responsibility and the authority (by way of the Manager_Key) to initially configure the IOU and assign resources to client platforms. And it is the DA that provides client platforms with the keys that they need to manage the resources assigned to the client platform.

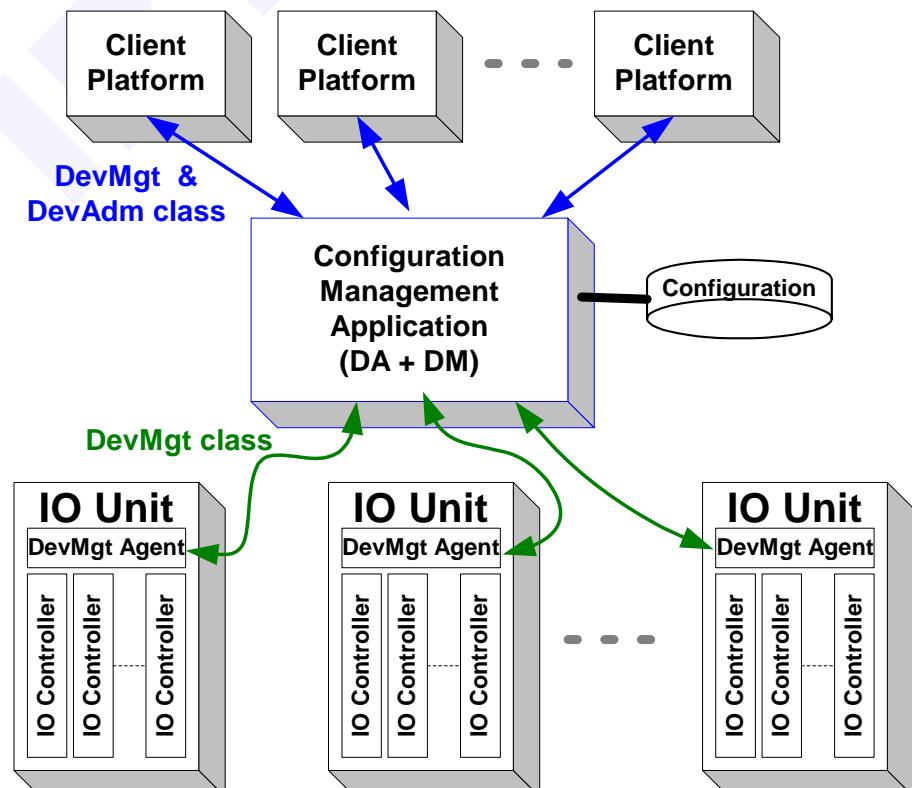


Figure 308

Configuration Management

Configuration management provides the means to manage the sharing of service objects and other IOU resources by client platforms. The Configuration Manager performs common maintenance functions to build and maintain its configuration information, thus providing client platforms with a single interface (the DA) for acquiring information about IOUs. Each platform's IORM has privileged access to that platform's configuration information and supervises that platform's I/O operation by directly configuring client pools on each IOU and providing its clients with the information they need to directly access the IOU's services.

A Configuration Manager reduces resource management complexity by providing client platforms with a central facility that handles event notification and coordination as follows.

- The DM provides subscription service that allows client platforms to subscribe for DevMgt Traps.
- The DM provides the interface for requesting a diagnostic session with an IOU.
- The DA provides a notification service that informs client platforms about configuration changes, I/O module hot plug/removal events, and diagnostic sessions.
- Together, the DM & DA provide coordination for I/O management actions such as I/O module hot plug/removal and system configuration change.
- The Configuration Manager reduces management traffic by providing a central agent that performs polling functions that otherwise would have to be performed by each client platform. For example, the Configuration Manager detects when IOUs or IOCs come on-line and report those events to client platforms.

A7.4 CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT CHARACTERISTICS

A7.4.1 CONFIGURATION DOMAIN

- 1) The term '**configuration group**' denotes the set of IOUs assigned to a Configuration Manager. Thus, by definition a Configuration Manager manages exactly one configuration group. This term is used for describing the scope of responsibility for a Configuration Manager.
- 2) An IOU belongs to only one configuration group, the one that sets the IOU's Manager_Key. This is necessary because IOU traps can only be sent to one destination (i.e., one DM). For the case where an IOU has multiple ports, each port is capable of sending traps to a different DM. However, those DMs need to cooperate in some fashion for information to be accurate. Cooperating DMs are, for all practical purposes, one logical DM.
- 3) Each configuration group is identified by a ConfigGroupID.

- 4) A Client Platform may have access to multiple configuration groups as permitted by the client platform's P_Key table. That is, it could see multiple Device Managers, each managing a different configuration group. It might also see multiple managers serving the same configuration group.
- 5) If an IOU is not in the Configuration Manager's configuration group, the default policy is that the Configuration Manager does not automatically acquire it, since that IOU might already be a member of another configuration group. How an IOU gets added to a Configuration Manager's configuration group is outside the scope of this annex.
- 6) Logically, there is only one DM and DA for a particular configuration group. There may be standby managers and/or the functionality might be distributed. However, client platforms are not aware of standby managers.

A7.4.2 PARTITION USAGE

- 7) The proper partitioning must be in place which allows the IORM to communicate with the Configuration Manager, the Configuration Manager to communicate with the IOU, and the client to communicate with the IOU.
- 8) For the purpose of explaining the architecture, an '**I/O partition**' is defined as the set of client platforms and IOUs that share the same P_Key value for the purpose of supporting I/O operation. Either the client platforms or the IOUs (or both) have full membership capability as defined by the most significant bit of their assigned P_Key value. Thus, an I/O partition exists by virtue of the SM assigning the same P_Key value to an IOU and a host.
- 9) A single Configuration Manager may manage I/O resources for multiple I/O partitions and the Configuration Manager does not need to be a member of each I/O partition. For example, there could be one partition where the Configuration Manager has full membership and each IOU has limited membership as determined by the most significant bit of the P_Key. The purpose of this partition is communication between the DM and the DevMgt Agent and not for I/O. Of course, IOUs that support Device Management should provide multiple entries in its P_Key tables (one for the Configuration Manager and one for each I/O partition). Otherwise, the Configuration Manager would need to be a member of each I/O partition.
- 10) The partition that a client platform uses to access the DA does not need to be a partition that the platform uses to access IOUs. For example, there could be one partition where the DA has full membership and each client platform has limited membership as determined by the most significant bit of the P_Key. This could be the same partition that the DM uses to communicate with DevMgt Agents.

- 11) There can be multiple paths because of partitioning. When more than
2 one I/O partition exists between a client platform and an IOU, se-
3 lection resides with the client platform, and may be governed by path
4 information provided by the SA.
5
- 12) The Configuration Manager obeys partition rules. This does not
6 prevent the Device Manager from forwarding information such as no-
7 tices using a different partition, but the Configuration Manager does
8 verify that a subscribing platform is permitted access as per Chapter
9 13 "Management Model" section 13.4 "Management Datagrams"
10 subsection titled "Event Forwarding".
11

A7.4.3 SA USAGE

- 13) The DM registers with the SA so that client platforms and other man-
14 agers can locate the Configuration Manager.
15
- 14) The DA uses SA services to detect IOUs that come on-line so it can
16 report those events to client platforms. It also monitors traps from
17 IOUs to detect IOCs that come on-line so it can report those events to
18 client platforms.
19

A7.4.4 MANAGER INTERACTION

- 15) How a Configuration Manager stores its data and the communication
16 between an active and a standby manager is outside the scope of
17 this specification. It is expected that a single vendor provides both the
18 active and standby managers for a particular configuration group.
19
- 16) This annex does not specify the protocol between standby and active
20 managers, nor does it specify how a master DM is elected. It is ex-
21 pected that a single vendor provides both the active and standby
22 managers for a particular configuration group.
23
- 17) The Configuration Management framework does provide for multiple
24 independent Configuration Managers, each serving a different config-
25 uration group. Communication between Configuration Managers that
26 serve different configuration groups is not necessary.
27

A7.5 CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT OPERATION

Configuration management is an IB management application that an ad-
ministrator uses to manage which I/O resources may be used by which
client platforms as illustrated in [Figure 304 "Configuration Management
Functions and Relationships" on page 1611](#).

The Configuration Manager interacts with the SubnAdm (SA) agent of the
SM, with DevMgt class agents of IOUs under its control, and with the client
platforms which it serves.

Typically, a Configuration Manager uses SA services to detect IOUs
coming on-line and uses IOU traps to discover IOCs coming on-line, noti-
fying client platforms appropriately.

This section specifies the overall operation for the Configuration Manager. The following section ([A7.6 "DevAdm Class Definition" on page 1638](#)) specifies the wire level protocol for the DA portion of the Configuration Manager and [Annex A8: Device Management](#) specifies the wire level protocol for the DM portion of the Configuration Manager.

A7.5.1 INTERACTION WITH SUBNET MANAGER

Configuration Management complements subnet management, but the Configuration Manager is not necessarily collocated with the SM or SA. In fact, there may be multiple Configuration Managers per subnet and a single Configuration Manager can span several subnets.

The I/O partitions, partitions used for client platform to DA communications, and partitions used for DM to IOU communications are subject to subnet management policy. For example, there might be one partition that all client platforms use to access the DM / DA, or perhaps a different partition per client platform. One use of partitioning would be a single partition dedicated for configuration management where the DM / DA has full membership (as per the P_Key msb) and all client platforms and IOUs are limited members and thus can only communicate with the DM / DA (not each other). Additionally, assignment of I/O resources to client platforms requires appropriate I/O partitions.

Thus, Configuration Management is dependant on partitioning created by the SM. How a Configuration Manager coordinates partition usage with the SM is outside the scope of this document.

A7.5.2 INITIALIZATION AND SA REGISTRATION

The configuration management framework supports multiple Configuration Managers per subnet. Each Configuration Manager registers with the SA so that client platforms and interested parties can locate it.

The DM function of the Configuration Manager registers with the SA via the SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) as specified in [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#), to advertises its location. Client Platforms and Interested parties that choose to subscribe to DevMgtTraps can find DMs by querying the SA. The client can then query the DM to get the Config-GroupID and the address of the DA.

The DM uses the well-known management Q_Key 8001_0000. Thus, any agent on any node allowed to use that Q_Key can subscribe with the DM for DevMgt traps. Once a client platform locates the DM, it can send a DevMgtGet(DAInfo) to the DM to get the address (LID/GID/QPN) of the DA. The DA uses the special Q_Key 8001_0001, which is reserved for DA to IORM communications. The OS should only permit the IORM to use this Q_Key, so that only the IORM can communicate with the DA on behalf of that platform.

CA7-1: A DA **shall not** respond to DevAdm MADs that do not use the special DevAdm Q_Key.

If redundant managers exist, they are expected to be provided by the same vendor. Thus, the protocol that redundant managers use to validate that they serve the same configuration group, how they elect a master, and how they coordinate and maintain consistency is outside the scope of this document.

CA7-2: A Device Manager **shall** register its services with the SA via SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord) using the ServiceName “DeviceManager.IBTA” prior to sending a DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) to a DevMgt agent. See [15.2.5.14 ServiceRecord on page 1033](#) and Service Names in Annex A3 “Application Specific Identifiers”. If the Device Manager is configured for multiple partitions, it shall register once for each partition.

If the SA rejects a Device Manager’s registration, it means that the Device Manager is not authorized to operate on that subnet.

CA7-3: If the SA rejects a Device Manager’s SubnAdmSet(ServiceRecord), the Device Manager shall not send DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) to any IOUs on that subnet.

The Device Manager is responsible for periodically renewing its lease with the SA to prevent the SA from dropping its Service Records (see [15.2.5.14.3 ServiceLease on page 1036](#)).

CA7-4: The Device Manager shall renew its registration lease by reregistering with the SA before its service lease expires.

When the configuration management application is distributed over multiple nodes (i.e., distributed management), only one node registers as a Device Manager per partition per subnet. That node can distribute the workload by using MAD redirection if desired.

A standby Device Manager that transitions to active should register itself with the SA and remove the old registration.

A7.5.3 COHERENCY BETWEEN CONFIGURATION MANAGERS

A Configuration Manager establishes DevMgt ownership of an IOU by setting the IOU’s Manager_Key via a DevMgtSet(KeyInfo). If the Configuration Manager is unable to set the Manager_Key it means that another manager has ownership. There are a number of reasons for such a situation and this annex does not address how to remedy this situation other than suggesting that the Configuration Manager report the conflict through a user or management interface. Such an interface is outside the scope of this specification.

CA7-5: When two DMs have the same ConfigGroupID, they shall work in unison and provide the same information and service to a client platform as if they were two different ports of the same DM.

CA7-6: If the DM is not able to establish control of an IOU by setting the IOU's Manager_Key, then the Configuration Manager shall not include the IOU or any information regarding the IOU in any communication with client platforms.

CA7-7: Should a DM be elected master DM, its DA shall also be implicitly elected master. If a DM ceases to be master, its DA shall cease to be master.

CA7-8: Should a DM cease being the Master DM (e.g., transitions from master DM to standby DM), it shall reject DevMgtGet() requests using MAD Header Status [8:15] = 'NotMasterDM' and cease sending DevMgtTrapRepress() and DevMgtReport() messages.

CA7-9: Should a DA cease being the Master DA (e.g., transitions from master DA to standby DA), it shall reject DevAdmGet() requests using MAD Header Status [8:11] = 'Not Master DA' and cease sending DevAdmReports()s.

For distributed management, multiple Device Managers may attempt to access the same IOU. Access to that IOU should be serialized to prevent race conditions and integrity issues that result when multiple Device Managers are reading and writing attributes at the same time. One way to achieve atomic access is by the Device Manager temporarily changing the KeyInfo:Manager_Key before it performs any other DevMgtSet()s and then change it back when it is done. Thus, if a Device Manager is not able to change the key, it means that another manager performing an update.

A7.5.4 ACTIVE VS. PASSIVE CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT

For environments that do not contain a Configuration Manager (i.e., no DM / DA), a client platform needs to be able to discover and use IOUs (passive management). When a DM / DA is present (active management), a client platform cannot arbitrarily use IOUs. If the client platform determines that there is no DM, then it can use IOUs that have the IOUnitInfo:IsActiveManaged bit set to zero. This bit is automatically set when the DM sets the IOU's Manager_Key to a non-zero value.

CA7-10: A Client Platform shall not access a service object unless either a DM / DA has assigned that service object to the client platform or the IOU's IOUnitInfo:IsActiveManaged bit is zero.

Only the SM and DM should have access to an IOU prior to the DM setting the IOU's Manager_Key and configuring the IOU's pool tables. Otherwise,

there could be a potential race condition where a client platform emerges before the Configuration Manager, incorrectly determines that an IOU is not actively managed, and thus attempts to use IOUs. In an ideal subnet, the SM does not configure an IOU with I/O partitions until after the DM configures the IOU. This prevents a client platform from seeing un-managed IOUs, and thus prevents conflicts.

Because coordination between SM and the Configuration Manager is not guaranteed, a Client Platform should wait for a sufficient time interval before using an IOU. For passive management, it is desirable that the interval be extremely small and for active management, it is desirable the interval be extremely large. Thus, such a parameter is subject to local policy. It is recommended that a client platform persistently remember if a DM / DA previously existed and set its time-out accordingly.

A system administrator should be able to add new equipment to a subnet with minimal risk and without requiring the system administrator to configure the equipment before installing it. Thus, the factory default timeout for determining passive management mode should be long.

CA7-11: The factory default time that a client platform waits before it determines passive management and starts to use IOUs shall be no less than 2 minutes.

A7.5.5 DEVICE MANAGER OPERATION

The DM uses DevMgt class MADs (methods and attributes) to set and retrieve IOU DevMgt information. The DM communicates with the DevMgt agent by sending a DevMgtSet() or a DevMgtGet() to the DevMgt agent and the DevMgt agent responds with a DevMgtGetResp(). The DevMgt agent also sends DevMgtTrap()s to the Device Manager repeating each trap until the Device Manager responds with a DevMgtTrapRepress().

CA7-12: DevMgt class datagrams **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further specified in [Annex A8: Device Management Figure 326 Device Management MAD Format on page 1697](#) and [Table 509 Device Management MAD Fields on page 1698](#).

CA7-13: The datagrams for the DevMgt and DevAdm class **shall** conform to the Common MAD requirements as specified in 20.14 “Common Mad Requirements”.

CA7-14: A DM shall respond to MADHeader:ClassVersion values as per [Annex A8: Device Management Table 510 "Class Version" on page 1699](#)

CA7-15: The DM shall not check the MADHeader:Access_Key in any received DevMgt class MAD.

One way for a Configuration Manager to determine if a DevMgt agent resides on an IOU is to query the SA using SubnAdminGet(PortInfoRecord) for any port on the IOU. By inspecting the CapabilityMask:IsDeviceManagementSupported in the PortInfoRecord query returned by the SA, the Configuration Manager determines if the DevMgt agent exists. If so, the Device Manager can determine if the DevMgt agent supports Traps or Notices by testing if DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(0)) = 1b and DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask(1)) = 1b respectively. Note that version 2 of Device Management requires DevMgt Agents to support Traps. Traps allow the DevMgt agent to notify the Device Manager of events such as security violations and changes to the IOU's I/O capability.

Third parties can register to receive DevMgt Management Traps by issuing a DevMgtSet(InformInfo) to the Device Manager (see 13.4.3.8 "Informinfo"). When a trap event occurs on the IOU, the IOU sends a DevMgtTrap(Notice) to the Device Manager. The Device Manager forwards the Trap to the third party through the DevMgtReport(Notice). For more information on DevMgt Management Traps see the DevMgt Annex.

A Device Manager supervises diagnostic sessions. Clients and other management programs have to request a diagnostic session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the DM. If the DM approves, the DA notifies the affected clients and then DM sets up the diagnostic session with the IOU by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU. The diagnostic initiator invokes the diagnostics by sending DevMgt MADs directly to the IOU. When the diagnostic initiator finishes testing, it terminates the session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the DM, which terminates the session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU and then the DA notifies client platforms that the testing has ended via IOC On-Line reports (see [A7.5.9 Diagnostics on page 1635](#) for details).

A7.5.6 PROTECTING THE MANAGER_KEY

By definition, when a node sets the Manager_Key in an IOU, it becomes the DM. Once the node becomes the DM controlling an IOU it has the responsibility to periodically access the IOU so that the IOU knows that the DM is active and has not failed. The IOU's Manager_Key lease period is the mechanism to allow another DM to take control in case the current DM fails.

A Device Manager sets the IOU's KeyInfo:ProtectBits to protect against others learning the IOU's KeyInfo:Manager_Key. However, these bits are subject to being reset if the Manager_Key lease period expires, which could allow unauthorized access. A DevMgt agent resets its lease period timer when it receives a MAD with KeyType=DM and a valid MAD-Header:Access_Key. Thus, a Device Manager can protect against unauthorized access by sending each of its DevMgt agents a DevMgt MAD

with a valid MADHeader:Access_Key before the DevMgt agent's Manager_Key lease period expires.

CA7-16: When a Device Manager sets a non-zero KeyInfo:Manager_Key and non-zero KeyInfo:ProtectBits in an IOU, the Device Manager shall continuously reset the lease period counter by sending a DevMgt MAD with MADHeader:Access_Key equal to the IOU's KeyInfo:Manager_Key at an interval less than the lease period.

A7.5.7 I/O UNIT TRAP FORWARDING

Device Management uses the event reporting framework defined in chapter 13 (see 13.4.9 Traps, 13.4.10 Notice Queue, and 13.4.11 Event Forwarding).

A7.5.7.1 CONFIGURING IOUs FOR TRAPS

The DM configures each IOU in its configuration group so that the IOU sends DevMgt class traps to the DM. It does this by setting the TrapGID, TrapTC, Trap FL, TrapHL, TrapLID, TrapQP, TrapQ_Key, TrapSL, and TrapP_Key components in the DevMgtSet(ClassPortInfo) of at least one port of each IOU.

CA7-17: The Device Manager shall set the ClassPortInfo Trap components of the DevMgt Agent for each IOU in its configuration group such that the DevMgt agent sends DevMgtTrap()s to the Device Manager.

CA7-18: When a Device Manager receives DevMgtTrap(), it shall respond with a DevMgtTrapRepress().

A7.5.7.2 TRAP SUBSCRIPTION / REPORTING

A node may subscribe for DevMgt Trap forwarding by issuing a DevMgtSet(InformInfo) to the DM. The LID Range and GID in the InformInfo attribute indicates for which IOU the client is interested in receiving Report().s. Note that when subscribing and unsubscribing for the Heartbeat, the GID and LID Range components in the InformInfo is irrelevant and thus the client should set GID, LIDRangeBegin, LIDRangeEnd to zero, 0xFFFF, & zero respectively and the DA shall ignore those components.

When the DM receives a DevMgtTrap(), it forwards the trap to subscribed parties via the DevMgtReport(Notice) with the exception of traps listed in [Table 485: Privileged Traps](#). Traps in [Table 485](#) are considered private and must not be forwarded except as indicated in the table.

Table 485 Privileged Traps

Trap	Trap
DiagSessionState	This trap contains the DiagToken and is considered private. The DM shall only send the DevMgtReport() to the node that initiated the Diag Session.
MgrKeyViolation , SupvKeyViolation , Client Violation , DiagToken Violation , DiagSession Violation	These security traps contain information which might be considered sensitive (such as invalid keys and DiagTokens). The DM may restrict which nodes receive the DevMgtReport() and/or may zero the key/DiagToken component in the Notice attribute. The DM policy can be on a trap by trap basis. If a node attempts to subscribe to one of these traps individually and the DM policy is not to forward the trap to that node, then the DM rejects the DevMgtSet(InformInfo) with MAD Status [8:15] = ' PolicyReject '. However, the DM accepts a subscription for 'TrapNumber=0xFFFF' regardless of whether it forwards these traps.

CA7-19: When a Device Manager receives a DevMgtTrap() not listed in Table 485 "Privileged Traps", it shall generate a DevMgtReport() to all parties that have subscribed with the Device Manager for that notice if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

CA7-20: When a Device Manager receives a DevMgtTrap() listed in Table 485 "Privileged Traps", it shall only generate a DevMgtReport() as described in the table.

CA7-20.2.1: If the Device Manager rejects a DevMgtSet(InformInfo) because it does not permit subscription to that trap, it shall reject the request using MAD Status [8:15] = '[PolicyReject](#)'.

Because DevMgt Agents are required to support Traps, the Device Manager is not required to poll notice queues, and does not generate DevMgtReport()s for Notices it reads from a notice queue.

CA7-21: The Device Manager shall not generate DevMgtReport()s for Notices it reads from a notice queue.

The sequence of message exchanges for trap subscription mechanism is shown in [Figure 309](#) and [Figure 310](#).

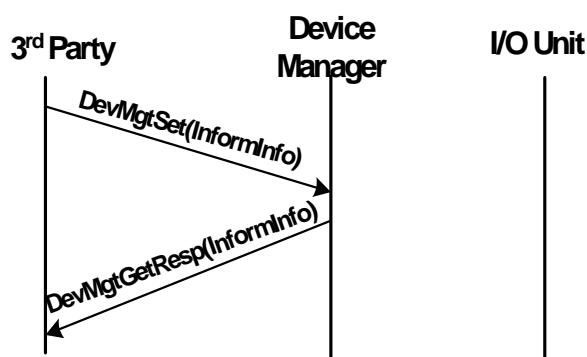


Figure 309 Trap Subscription

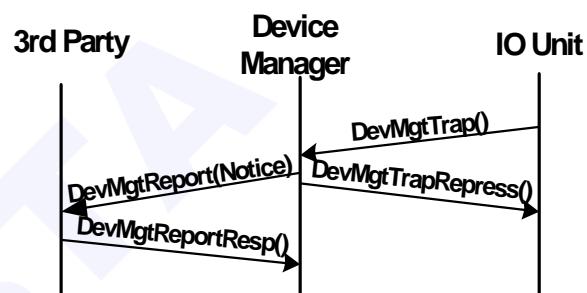


Figure 310 Trap Forwarding

The manager reports traps in the order that it receives them from the IOU. When the manager receives multiple traps from the same IOU, it delivers them one at a time in the order that the traps were received and waits for a ReportResp() from the client before delivering the next Report().

CA7-22: A DM shall report Traps from an IOU in the order it receives the traps. However, the DM is not required to maintain ordering of traps from different IOUs.

CA7-23: A DM shall only have one DevMgtReport() outstanding per subscriber per IOU. That is, the DM shall wait for a DevMgtReportResp() before sending a subsequent DevMgtReport() for another trap from the same IOU.

[Editorial Note: A Class Version 2 DM does not forward Class Version 1 Traps. If a client desires to subscribe for Class Version 1 Traps, it can issue a Class Version 1 DevMgtSet(InformInfo) to the DM. If the DM does not support Class Version 1, it rejects the request with 'MAD Status 2:4 = 001 - Bad version' (version not supported).]

A7.5.7.3 SUBSCRIPTION INTEGRITY

Clients depend on receiving Report()s whenever an IOU generates a trap and thus depend on the DM reporting traps to subscribers. However, there are a number of events that can cause a subscription to be destroyed where the client might not be aware that its subscriptions were destroyed.

- DM reset - In the event that the DM is reset, subscriptions can be lost. It is recommended that the DM retain subscription information in persistent storage, such that subscriptions survive power cycles and DM resets. A client can subscribe with the SA for Trap 64/65 'Port In/Out of Service' to detect when the node on which the DM resides is reset. The client can also subscribe with the DM for the Heartbeat notice (see [A7.5.7.5 "Heartbeat" on page 1630](#)), so it can detect when the DM disappears or ceases to function. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the DM is alive and that the client's subscriptions are still valid.
- DM failover - In the event that the active DM fails and another DM takes over, subscriptions with the old DM might not be carried over to the new DM. For graceful failover, the active DM should provide subscription information to standby DMs before replying to a subscription request. A client can subscribe with the SA for Trap 65 'Port Out of Service' to detect when the node on which the DM resides goes down and subsequently query the SA to locate the new DM. If the client subscribed with the DM for the Heartbeat notice (see [A7.5.7.5 "Heartbeat" on page 1630](#)), the heartbeat can indicate graceful failover. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the new DM inherited the client's subscriptions.
- Temporary path disruptions can make a client unreachable, which might result in the DM timing-out and removing the client's subscriptions. Both the client and the manager can subscribe to SA trap 65 to detect such a condition (assuming that the SM detects the path failure). Again, the client can subscribe with the DM for the Heartbeat notice (see [A7.5.7.5 "Heartbeat" on page 1630](#)), so it can detect when the DM drops its subscriptions. Successful reception of the heartbeat indicates that the client's subscriptions are still valid.

oA7-1: If the Device Manager supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the *IsContextPersistent* bit in DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall retain subscriptions across power cycles (i.e., use subscription information stored in non-volatile storage) and shall also retain information about current Diag Sessions.

oA7-2: If the DM supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the *IsContextPersistent* bit in DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall save subscrip-

tion information in non-volatile storage before responding to the DevAdmSet(InformInfo).

oA7-3: If the Device Manager supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *GracefulFailover* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall share subscription information with all standby Device Managers for that same configuration group provided by that same vendor. This includes supplying Standby DMs with subscription information when the standby manager comes on-line and updating standby DMs when subscription information changes. It also includes sharing Diag Session information.

oA7-4: If the DM supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *GracefulFailover* bit in DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall make subscription information known to all standby DMs for that same configuration group provided by that same vendor before responding to the DevMgtSet(InformInfo).

A7.5.7.4 SUBSCRIPTION TIMEOUT

When a subscribed node fails or resets, it does not always have the chance to unsubscribe. For the express purpose of limiting the number of retries and the size of the DM's subscribers list over long periods of time, clients that become unreachable by the DM or otherwise leave the fabric for any reason will have their subscription terminated by the DM. However the DM needs to be able to distinguish between subscribers that are temporarily unreachable versus those that have gone away.

When the DM receives a trap, it sends a DevMgtReport() to each subscriber and waits for a DevMgtReportResp(). If it fails to receive the response, it resends the DevMgtReport(). The minimum amount of time the DM waits before re-sending is specified in the InformInfo attribute. The DM should implement the Retry-Backoff Policy specified in Annex A1 section A1.3.2 between successive attempts to limit the number of retries when trying to reach an unreachable node. If after 10 minutes the subscriber has not responded, the DM may terminate the retry and cancel all of the subscriptions for that client.

CA7-24: If the DM fails to receive a ReportResp() in response to a Report(), then the DM shall continue to retry the Report() until either it receives a ReportResp(), the client unsubscribes, or the DM terminates the subscription.

CA7-25: The DM shall not terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp() until after 10 minutes of retrying has occurred. If the DM does terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp(), it shall terminate all subscriptions for that particular destination (LID/GID + QPN).

A7.5.7.5 HEARTBEAT

The DM periodically sends a DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to let subscribers know that the DM still exists and that the client's subscriptions are still valid. It is also a means for the DM to detect stale subscriptions since failure for a client to respond to the heartbeat is grounds to cancel that client's subscriptions.

When a client subscribes for the heartbeat event, the DM sends the client a DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat)⁴⁴ before it replies to the subscription request. This initial heartbeat provides the client with the maximum time until the next heartbeat (TTNH). The length of time between heartbeats is a DM policy. The client starts an expiration timer for TTNH minutes and if the timer expires, it is an indication that the DM is no longer functional or that the DM has cancelled the client's subscriptions. Thus, the client should re-subscribe or query the SA to locate the new DM so it can subscribe. Each time a client receives a DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat), it resets its expiration timer to the new TTNH value specified in the Heartbeat notice.

CA7-26: For heartbeat subscriptions, the DM shall generate a DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to the subscriber before sending the DevMgtGet-Resp(InformInfo)

CA7-27: The DM shall continue to generate DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to each subscriber within TTNH minutes after sending the previous DevMgtReport(Notice=Heartbeat).

Note that the LID Range and GID in the InformInfo for a heartbeat report is irrelevant and thus ignored by the DM. That is, the DM generates a Heartbeat report to anyone subscribed for heartbeats regardless of the GID and LID range.

The Heartbeat notice also has a 'Fail-Over' bit that indicates a new manager. This is to inform the client that a standby manager has gracefully taken over the DM responsibility. In order to ensure that the notice came from a valid DM, instead of using the Report()'s reciprocal path to communicate with the new DM, the client should query the SA to locate the new DM, but it will not need to re-subscribe.

CA7-28: The DM shall not set the FailOver bit in a Heartbeat notice unless the DM inherited all of the subscriptions from the previous manager.

CA7-29: The DM shall only set the FailOver bit in the first Heartbeat notice it sends to a client. Thus, the DM shall not set the FailOver bit in subsequent reports to a client after it receives the ReportResp() from that client.

44. For details of the heartbeat notice see [Annex A8: Device Management](#) section [A8.3.3.2.5 "Heartbeat Notice" on page 1719](#).

A7.5.8 GRACEFUL HOT REMOVAL

The IOU perspective of graceful removal of an I/O-Module⁴⁵ is specified in [Annex A8: Device Management](#) section [A8.6 "IOC Graceful Hot Removal" on page 1785](#). Removal can be initiated either by the IOU ([Figure 311 on page 1631](#)), such as an operator pushing a release button, or by the configuration manager ([Figure 312 on page 1631](#)), such as an administrator requesting the removal via the configuration manager. Graceful refers to the fact that the DA notifies client platforms affected⁴⁶ by the removal prior to indicating "OK to Remove".

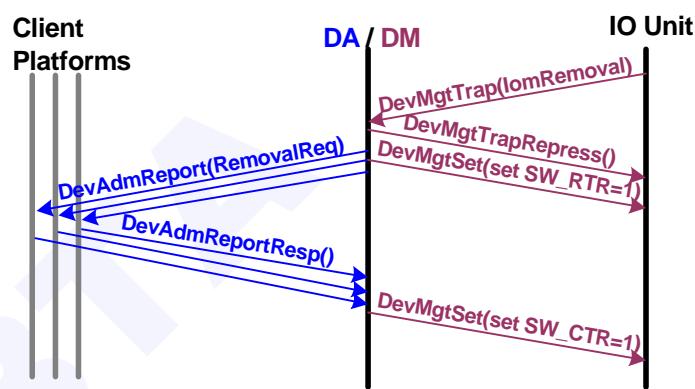


Figure 311 IOU Initiated Removal Process

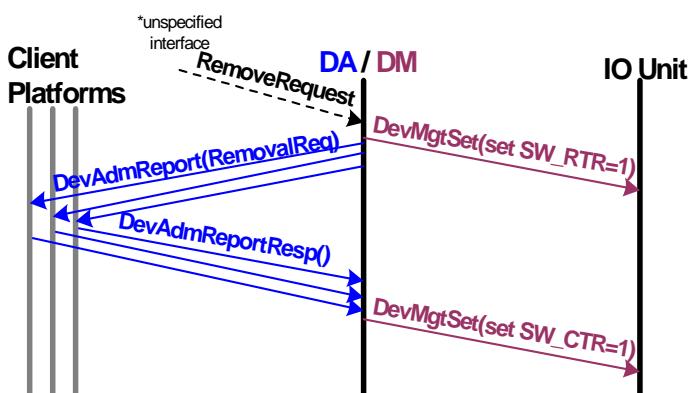


Figure 312 SW Initiated Removal Process

45. Note that this section addresses removal of an I/O module from an IOU where the IOU's Channel Adapter and Device Management Agent remain functional. The case of removing an IOU including its channel adapter is covered under BaseBoard Management as specified in Volume 2.

46. An affected client is a client platform that has registered with the DA and has access to one or more of the module's service objects.

For each I/O module, there are 2 bits in the IOU that the DM controls to facilitate graceful hot removal - see [Annex A8: Device Management](#) section [A8.3.3.9 "SlotControlStatus" on page 1737](#). They are SW_RTR (software request-to-remove) and SW_CTR (software clear-to-remove). In addition, the module's IOU_RTR bit indicates to the DM that the IOU has initiated the removal request for that I/O module.

Before the DM assigns any of an IOU's service objects to a client (i.e., creates or modifies platform pool table records), the DM clears both the SW_RTR and SW_CTR bits to 0 for all I/O modules, indicating that the modules are in use. This also turns the I/O module's Status LED on indicating that the module is in-use. Until the DM does this, the module's Status LED is off, indicating that it is "OK to Remove". The DM modifies these bits via the DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl) as specified in the Device Management Annex.

CA7-30: The DM shall clear the SlotControlStatus.SW_RTR bit and the SW_CTR bit of each I/O module of an IOU before it assigns any of the service objects associated with that I/O module to a client platform. Note than an I/O module might contain multiple IOCs, thus this pertains to all service objects of all IOCs associated⁴⁷ with the I/O module.

For the case that the request is coming from the IOU (e.g., operator pressing the I/O module's removal button), the DevMgt agent sets IOU_RTR for the affected module and then forms and sends a DevMgt-Trap(lomRemoval) out each port where the port's ClassPortInfo trap information has been set (see [A7.6.1.2.9 Removal Requested Notification on page 1645](#)). On setting the IOU_RTR, the DevMgt agent blinks the module's Status LED.

Upon receipt of a DevMgtTrap that indicates IOU_RTR is set, the DM issues a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl=0x02) which instructs the IOU to set the SW_RTR bit to 1b. The DevMgtSet() acts as an acknowledgement to the setting of IOU_RTR. The DA notifies the affected clients via the DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) and collects the necessary responses via the DevAdmReportResp(RemovalReq).

CA7-31: The Configuration Manager shall examine DevMgtTrap()s and shall send a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl=Set SW_RTR to one) to the IOU when it receives a DevMgtTrap(lomRemoval).

For the case that the DM initiates the removal, the DM issues a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl=0x02 - 'Set SW_RTR to one') for the affected I/O module in conjunction with notifying and col-

47. Any IOC with an IOControllerProfile:SlotNumber equal to the I/O module's slot number.

lecting the necessary responses from the affected clients. The Removal-
Control value of 0x02 instructs the DevMgt agent to indicate the
“transition” condition through the blinking of the I/O module’s Status LED.

Regardless of whether the IOU or the configuration manager generated
the removal request, the DM sets the **SlotControlStatus:RemovalCon-
trol.SW_RTR** bit of the I/O-Module to 1 via a DevMgtSet(SlotControl-
Status:RemovalControl=Set SW_RTR to one). This clears the trap
condition (if it was IOU initiated) and starts the LED blinking as a physical
indication that the removal approval process is in progress. The DA also
issues a DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to any client platform that has
subscribed for removal events and had been assigned a service object
that will be affected by the removal.

CA7-32: The Configuration Manager shall initiate the removal process
(i.e., sends DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to subscribed client platforms)
when it sends a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl.Set
SW_RTR to one) to the IOU.

CA7-33: The DA shall issue a DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to each
client platform that has been assigned a service object that will be affected
by the removal, if the client platform subscribed for *Removal reports* and
if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that
falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd (see
[Table 499 DevAdm LID Range Interpretation on page 1658](#)).

An IORM can register for Removal reports via the DevAdmSet(Login) or
a DevAdmSet(Informinfo). Refer to [A7.6.3.4 LogIn on page 1658](#) and
[A7.6.3.3 InformInfo on page 1657](#).

The DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) sent to a client platform indicates the
IOCs that are affected by the removal that have one or more service ob-
jects assigned to that client platform. Each DevAdmReport(RemovalReq)
can specify up to 16 IOCs and if there are more than 16 affected IOCs for
that client platform, then the DA issues multiple announcements to that
client platform.

CA7-34: The DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) shall only list IOCs which
have service objects listed in a PlatformPoolRecord for which the client
platform has been given the Supervisor_Key or listed in a ClientPoolRe-
cord for which the client platform has been given the Client_Key.

Each client platform responds with a DevAdmReportResp(RemovalReq)
for each DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) it receives to acknowledge receipt
of the report and to accept, reject, or request more time. Based on these
responses the Configuration Manager decides whether to approve, delay,
or cancel the removal process.

In the DevAdmReport(RemovalReq), the DA indicates the severity of the removal request by setting the RemovePriority field, which indicates if it is a:

- **Graceful Removal** - any IORM may terminate the removal process by rejecting the request, or may request more time so it can stop using the resource before it approves the request. An IORM indicates approval, rejection, or delay via setting the Acknowledge component in the DevAdmReportResp(RemovalReq).
- **Forced Removal** - IORM cannot reject the request, but may request more time in order to stop using the resource before it approves the request.
- **Immediate Removal** - IORM cannot reject nor delay the removal process. The removal continues after the DA has notified all the affected clients.
- **Critical Removal** - removal already approved, thus, the DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) is just a notice sent after the OK-to-Remove was issued.

For Graceful and Forced after all of the affected client platforms have accepted, or for Immediate or Critical, the DM continues the removal process by setting the I/O module's SW_CTR bit to 1. This indicates that the I/O module is no longer in use and turns the Status LED off indicating that it is "OK to Remove".

However, if the Configuration Manager decides to terminate the removal process, the DM issues a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl=0x01) to clear the SW_RTR and IOU_RTR bits and the DA sends an IOC On-Line notice to the set of client platforms to which it sent the RemovalReq report.

If the DA does not receive a DevAdmReportResp() from each client platform within the time identified by that platform's DevAdmSet(InformInfo), the DA repeats the DevAdmReport() to that platform. If a client platform responds with an Acknowledge value = WAIT and the RemovePriority component of the RemovalRequest attribute permits, then the DA resends the DevAdmReport(RemovalRequest) to each client that indicated WAIT until that client has approved. The amount of time the DA should wait before resending is indicated in the DevAdmReportResp.

The exact behavior of the Configuration Manager, as well as its control actions with the I/O-Module being removed is not specified if, for example, the DA does not receive all the anticipated responses back from the client platforms within a reasonable amount of time (Configuration Management policy).

Note that as per the Device Management Annex, if the Configuration Manager fails to respond to the IOU in a timely fashion, hardware time-outs might override and permit the removal anyway.

A7.5.9 DIAGNOSTICS

The configuration management framework provides for a Diagnostic Application to notify and obtain permission from multiple users of an IOU, such that the users participate in determining if a diagnostic can be run at that time. The actual Diagnostics that are run are outside the scope of this Annex and are normally vendor specific.

A7.5.9.1 DIAGNOSTIC FRAMEWORK

As illustrated in [Figure 313](#), the diagnostic framework provides the means for a diagnostic application located on any node to request a diagnostic session. This request is sent to the DM [step 1]. The manager validates the request, and if the source is authorized to perform diagnostics, the DA informs the client platforms that will be affected by the diagnostics [steps 2,3]. If the client platforms agree, the manager establishes a diagnostic session with the IOU [step 4], and then informs the diagnostic application that it may proceed [step 5].

The diagnostic application performs diagnostics directly with the IOU [step 6] and when it is done running diagnostics, it releases the session by informing the DM [step 7]. The DM cancels the IOU's diagnostic session [8] and then the DA notifies the affected clients that the I/O resources are back on-line [9].

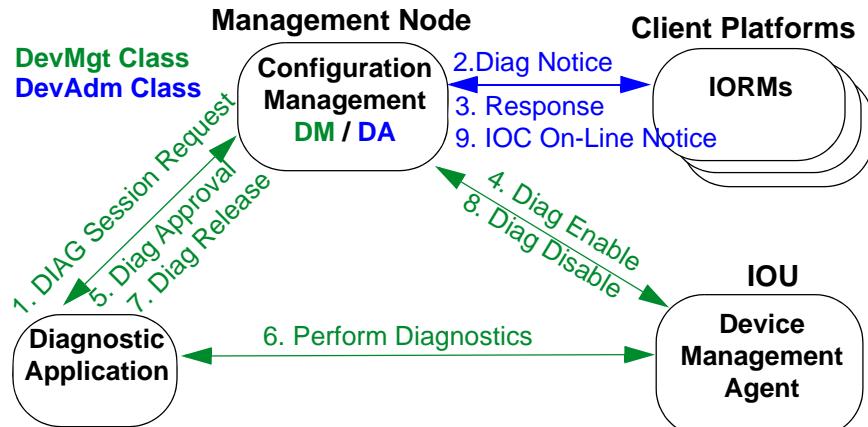


Figure 313 Diagnostic Usage Model

Steps 1,4,5,6,7, and 8 are performed under the DevMgt class and are defined in [Annex A8: Device Management](#). Steps 2,3, and 9 are performed under DevAdm class and are defined in this annex.

oA7-5: If the DM supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the */sContextPersistent* bit in DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall save Diag Session information in non-volatile storage before sending the DevAdmGetResp(DiagSession).

oA7-6: If the DM supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *Graceful-Failover* bit in DevMgtGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall make Diag Session information known to all standby DMs for that same configuration group provided by that same vendor before responding to the DevMgtSet(DiagSession).

CA7-35: Before the DM enables a diagnostic session (i.e., sends the DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU creating a diag token), the DA shall issue a DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) to each client platform that has been assigned a service object that could be affected by the diagnostic testing (as per the DiagSession:DiagScope), only if the client platform registered for *Diagnostic Notification* and if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo:LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

An IORM can register for *Diagnostic Notification* via the DevAdmSet(Login) or a DevAdmSet(Informinfo). Refer to [A7.6.3.4 Login on page 1658](#) and [A7.6.3.3 InformInfo on page 1657](#).

The DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) indicates all of the affected IOCs that are assigned to that client platform. Each DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) can specify up to 16 IOCs and if there are more than 16 IOCs affected, then the DA issues multiple announcements to that client platform.

CA7-36: The DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) shall only list IOCs which have service objects listed in a PlatformPoolRecord for which the client platform has been given the Supervisor_Key or listed in a ClientPoolRecord for which the client platform has been given the Client_Key.

The Diag Notice [step 2] provides the means for the manager to indicate the priority of the diagnostics and the response to the Diag Notice [step 3] allows the client platform to reject or delay the start of the diagnostic session.

A7.5.9.2 VERSION 1 DIAGNOSTICS

The diagnostic framework assumes that IOUs have a Device Management Agent implementing Device Management Class version 2. Many of the features for supporting sharing of IOUs were added in version 2 and are not available in DevMgt class version 1. Therefore, a DM is not able to arbitrate and control diagnostic sessions for IOUs that only implement DevMgt class version 1.

When the DM receives a DIAG Session Request that targets an IOU that only supports version 1, the DM rejects the request with MAD Status = '[IncompatibleVersion](#)' (see [Annex A8: Device Management](#) section [A8.3.1.2 on page 1702](#)). This serves as an indication to the diagnostic application that the IOU implements a down-level DevMgt Agent. It is possible for the diagnostic application to perform diagnostics directly with the IOU under the bounds of DevMgt class version 1 as per Chapter 16 Section 16.3.4.

CA7-37: A DM shall reject a DIAG Session Request for an IOU that does not support DevMgt class version 2 with a status code of [0x41](#) - '[IncompatibleVersion](#)'.

Typically, operation under class version 1 assumed that either (a) partitioning would only permit one client platform to access an IOU and that diagnostic testing would be executed from that client platform, or (b) client platforms sharing an IOU would coordinate by an unspecified means. Furthermore, the client platform acted as a manager and configured the IOU to send traps directly to the client platform. Note that there was only one generic trap defined for version 1 (i.e., the Ready-to-Test trap).

The diagnostic application should not attempt to configure the IOU to send traps to the diagnostic application, but rather poll the IOU for the Test-Ready state. Thus, if a client platform does configure a version 1 IOU to send traps to the client platform, then the client platform will be notified of the diagnostic (if the IOU supports traps).

A7.5.9.3 7.5.9.3 DIAGNOSTICS UNDER PASSIVE MANAGEMENT

Typically, operation under Passive Management assumes that either (a) partitioning would only permit one client platform to access an IOU and that diagnostic testing will be executed from that client platform, or (b) client platforms sharing an IOU will coordinate by an unspecified means. Operation under passive management does not provide the degree of protection and notification that active management provides.

The diagnostic framework assumes there is a DM that arbitrates Diag Sessions. However, for passive management, there is no DM to arbitrate, control diagnostic sessions, or distribute traps. Instead, the diagnostic application must establish the Diag Session directly with the IOU by sending the DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU the same as a DM would. The diagnostic application should not attempt to configure the IOU to send traps to the diagnostic application, but rather poll the IOU for the DiagSession-Status via the DevMgtGet(DiagSession).

A7.6 DEVADM CLASS DEFINITION

This section describes the DevAdm class methods & attributes, operation of the DA, and relationships between the DA and other IBA management entities. Refer to the Device Management Annex for specification of Device Management class.

A7.6.1 OPERATION

Client platforms query the DA using DevAdm class MADs. The DA provides client platforms with information about IOUs and with the supervisor key that the platform uses to configure the IOU.

Client Platforms may subscribe for event notification from the DA. These events include configuration changes such as IOUs and IOCs coming on-line. Methods to subscribe and un-subscribe for traps are facilitated by the DevAdm class using the DevAdmSet(InformInfo) method in Volume 1 Chapter 13 and further defined below.

The DA responsibilities include:

- Providing the IORM within client platforms with configuration information such as list of IOUs, supervisor keys, and client keys.
- Subscribing with the Subnet Administration for IOU arrival and removal events so it can notify client platforms when I/O services come on-line.
- Monitoring DevMgt traps to detect resource changes so it can notify client platforms when I/O services come on-line.
- Allowing client platforms to subscribe for reports of configuration related events, such as I/O services coming on-line and configuration changes.
- Notifying client platforms and coordinating responses for events such as:
 - IO-Module (one or more IOCs) removal requests
 - Diagnostic session requests

A7.6.1.1 QUERY

The DevAdm query subsystem permits the IORM of a client platform to query the DA for:

- a list of IOUs that have service objects assigned to the client platform.
- the Supervisor_Key for each IOU that the IORM uses to find and configure Client Pool Table records allocated to that client platform.

- a list of Client_Keys for each IOU that the IORM may use to subdivide resources.

The MAD header of a DevAdm MAD contains a RequesterID that identifies the client platform. Before a client platform can submit a query to the DA, it must perform a LOGIN to the DA to obtain its RequesterID. **The LOGIN provides the means for the DA to validate the identity of the client platform and then assign it a RequesterID so that the DA does not have to validate every query.**

The query subsystem allows the requester to submit a single request and the DA responds with a set of attribute records. The response may require more capacity for data than that provided by a single MAD. Thus, DevAdm uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol (RMPP) as specified in Chapter 13.

The attributes obtained by the query are in effect records of attributes from the configuration information, filtered for the requesting platform. Actual implementation of internal data structures and how the DA gets configured are outside the scope of this specification.

CA7-38: When a DA receives a DevAdmGet() for an attribute identified as RMPP in [Table 490 DevAdm Attribute / Method Map on page 1653](#), the DevAdmGetResp() shall only contain records for that requester as identified by the RequesterID. If the RequesterID is not valid (i.e., was not assigned, is no longer in use, or is the default RequesterID), the DA shall return zero records and a status of Invalid RequesterID.

If an IORM has a query rejected for invalid RequesterID, it needs to perform a login to acquire a valid RequesterID.

A7.6.1.2 EVENT NOTIFICATION SUBSYSTEM

Device Administration provides an event-notification subsystem that notifies subscribed client platforms about:

- **Configuration Change** - generates a notice when a change is made to the configuration information that the DA provides to the client platform.
- **Resource Allocation Change** - generates a notice when the DM makes a change to an IOU's pool table record (i.e., adds or removes service objects or changes the resources that the client may consume).
- **IOU On-line Status Change** - monitors subnet to detect when an IOU appears or disappears and generates IOC On-line and IOC Off-line reports.

- **IOC On-line Status Change** - monitors DevMgt traps for IO Controller Change and Slot Status Change notices and generates IOC On-line and IOC Off-line reports if an IOC's on-line status changes.
- **Removal Requested** - reports when an I/O module is to be removed (graceful hot plug).
- **Diagnostic Session Requested** - reports when a diagnostics are to be performed.

The DA generates event reports via the DevAdmReport() when it detects or generates any of these conditions.

Each client platform may subscribe for any of these DevAdm notifications. When the DA detects any of these conditions, it generates a DevAdmReport() to subscribed client platforms. The DevAdmReport() uses different attributes depending on what is being reported. The AttributelD in the DevAdmReport() identifies the type of attribute used in the report.

A7.6.1.2.1 EVENT SUBSCRIPTION

A client platform subscribes with the DA for event notification by issuing a DevAdmSet(InformInfo) to the DA as follows:

The *InformInfo.Subscribe* value indicates the nature of the subscription - A value of 1 to subscribe and 0 to un-subscribe. If successful, the DA will report subscribed events to the subscriber via a DevAdmReport() MAD. The *GID* and *LID Range* in the InformInfo attribute identifies for which IOUs the client wants reports. Note that when subscribing and unsubscribing for the Heartbeat, the InformInfo *GID* and *LID Range* is irrelevant and thus the client should set the GID, LIDRangeBegin, LIDRangeEnd in the DevAdmSet(InformInfo) to zero, 0xFFFF, and zero respectively and the DA shall ignore these components.

The sequence of message exchanges for event subscription mechanism is shown in [Figure 314](#).

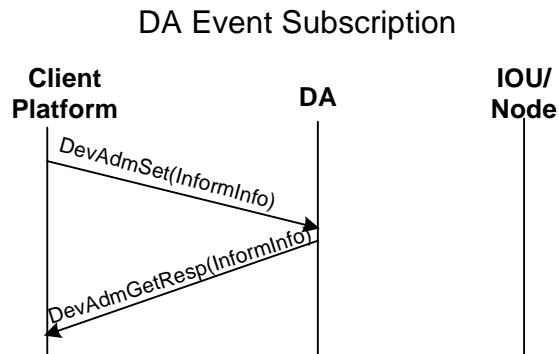


Figure 314 Event Subscription

A Configuration Manager maintains information concerning which service objects may be accessed by which client platforms (assuming that proper partitions exist). An administrator establishes endnode partition memberships through the SM. The Configuration Manager can query the SubnAdm agent (SA) of the SM to validate partition usage (i.e., validate that a path exists between the client and the IOU).

A7.6.1.2.2 EVENT REPORTING

When the DA detects or generates a DevAdm event, it generates a DevAdmReport() to subscribed client platforms. The DevAdmReport() uses different attributes depending on what is being reported. The AttributeID in the DevAdmReport() identifies the type of attribute used in the report. The Removal Requested notification uses the RemovalReq attribute, the Diagnostic notification uses the DiagNotice attribute, the Reset notification uses the ResetNotice attribute, and the others use the Notice attribute. See [A7.6.3.2 "Notice" on page 1654](#) for a list DA generated notice attributes. Diagnostic, Removal Requested, and Reset notification report attributes are as per [A7.6.3.7 "RemovalReq" on page 1664](#), [A7.6.3.8 "DiagNotice" on page 1666](#), and [A7.6.3.9 "ResetNotice" on page 1668](#).

The client responds to the DevAdmReport() with a DevAdmReportResp().

CA7-39: A subscribed client platform shall respond with a DevAdmReportResp() each time it receives a DevAdmReport(). The response shall be within the time frame specified in the DevAdmSet(InformInfo).

If the DA does not receive the DevAdmReportResp() from a client, it repeats the DevAdmReport() to that client.

A7.6.1.2.3 SUBSCRIPTION INTEGRITY

Client platforms depend on receiving Report()s about configuration changes and thus depend on the DA reporting configuration events to subscribed clients. However, there are a number of situations that can cause a subscription to be destroyed where the client might not be aware that its subscriptions were destroyed. The situations and considerations described in [A7.5.7.3 Subscription Integrity](#) also apply to DevAdm subscriptions. Thus, DevAdm also has a Heartbeat notice (see [A7.6.1.2.12 "Heartbeat" on page 1645](#)).

oA7-7: If the DA supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the *IsContextPersistent* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall retain subscriptions across power cycles (i.e., use subscription information stored in non-volatile storage).

oA7-8: If the DA supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *GracefulFailover* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall share LogIn and subscription information with all standby DAs for that configuration group provided by that same vendor. This includes supplying Standby DAs with LogIn and subscription information when they come on-line and updating standby DAs when LogIn and subscription information changes.

A7.6.1.2.4 SUBSCRIPTION TIMEOUT:

When an event occurs, the DA sends a DevAdmReport() to each subscribed client platform and waits for a DevAdmReportResp(). If it fails to receive the response, it resends the DevAdmReport(). The minimum amount of time the DA waits before re-sending is specified in the Info attribute. For resending the report, the DA should implement the Retry-Backoff Policy specified in Annex A1 section A1.3.2 and if after 10 minutes the client platform has not responded, the DA may terminate the retry and cancel all of the subscriptions for that client.

CA7-40: If the DA fails to receive a ReportResp() in response to a Report(), then the DA shall continue to retry the Report() until either it receives a ReportResp(), the client unsubscribes, or the DA terminates the subscription.

CA7-41: The DA shall not terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp() until after 10 minutes of retrying has occurred. If the DA does terminate a subscription due to a missing ReportResp(), it shall terminate all subscriptions for that particular destination (LID/GID + QPN).

A7.6.1.2.5 CONFIGURATION CHANGE NOTIFICATION

A configuration change notification results because the DM creates a Pool Table record in an IOU and then assigns that record to the client platform (i.e., provides the client platform with the Supervisor_Key or Client_Key).

When a client platform comes on-line it queries the DA to get a list of IOUs and Supervisor_Keys. When that list changes, the DA informs the client by issuing a Configuration Change notice to the client platform, if the client subscribes for the Configuration Change Notification.

CA7-42: The DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=Configuration Change) to a subscribed client platform anytime that an S_KeyInfo attribute record is added or removed from the list of records that would be returned in response to a DevAdmGet(S_KeyInfo) from that platform if a GID of the IOU in the S_KeyInfo attribute matches the InformInfo:GID or that IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRange-Begin – LIDRangeEnd.

CA7-43: The DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=Configuration Change) to a subscribed client platform anytime that a C_KeyInfo attribute record is added or removed from the list of records that would be returned in response to a DevAdmGet(C_KeyInfo) from that platform if a GID of the IOU in the C_KeyInfo attribute matches the InformInfo:GID or that IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRange-Begin – LIDRangeEnd.

A7.6.1.2.6 IOC ON-LINE NOTIFICATION

The DA generates an IOC on-line notification when it detects an IOU coming on-line or an IOC in an on-line IOU coming on-line.

CA7-44: The DA shall detect when IOUs in its configuration group come on-line by subscribing with the SA for SubnAdm Trap 64.

The DM configures IOUs to send DevMgt traps to the Configuration Manager. When the Configuration Manager receives a DevMgt Trap, it determines the exact nature of the change, updates its information base as needed, and generates the necessary event notifications.

CA7-45: The DA shall inspect DevMgt Traps for IO Controller Change notices and Slot Status Change notices to detect IOCs coming on-line and going off-line.

CA7-46: The DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=IOC On-line) to subscribed client platforms when it detects the presence (coming on-line) of each IOC that contains service objects assigned to the client platform (i.e., service object is listed in the Platform Pool Table or Client Pool Table record for which the client has the Supervisor_Key or Client_Key) and if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

A7.6.1.2.7 IOC OFF-LINE NOTIFICATION

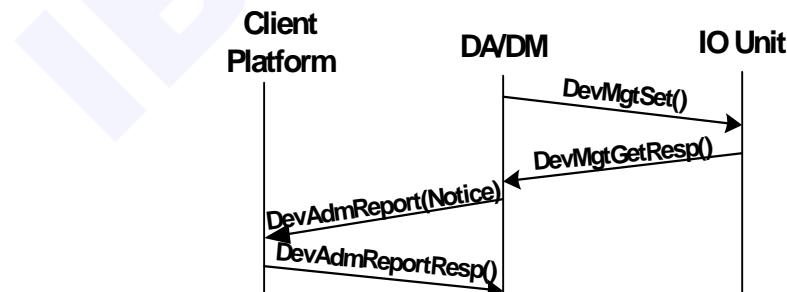
CA7-47: The DA shall detect when IOUs in its configuration group go off-line by subscribing with the SA for SubnAdm Trap 65.

As per [CA7-45: on page 1643](#) the DA inspects DevMgt Traps to detect IOCs coming on-line and going off-line.

CA7-48: The DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=IOC Off-line) to subscribed client platforms anytime that it detects that an IOC that contains service objects assigned to the client platform (i.e., service object is listed in the Platform Pool Table or Client Pool Table record for which the client has the Supervisor_Key or Client_Key) went off-line when a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

A7.6.1.2.8 RESOURCE ALLOCATION CHANGE NOTIFICATION

The DA generates a Resource Allocation Change notification when the DM modifies an IOU's pool table record changing which service objects a client platform may use or changing the IOU resources that the client platform is allowed to consume. The DA does not send the report until the DM completes the IOU configuration update - i.e., receives a successful response to the DevMgtSet() as illustrated in [Figure 315](#).

**Figure 315****Event Notification for Resource Allocation Change**

CA7-49: The DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=Resource Allocation Change) to each subscribed client platform anytime that the DM modifies one or more platform pool table records or client pool table records for that client platform (i.e., the client platform has been given the Supervisor_Key or Client_Key for the pool table record) and if a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

A7.6.1.2.9 REMOVAL REQUESTED NOTIFICATION

The DA generates a Removal Requested notification when it initiates an I/O module removal or receives a removal request from the IOU. The removal requested notification DevAdmReport() does not use the Notice attribute. Rather the DevAdmReport() for this event uses the RemovalReq attribute (as indicated in the MAD's AttributeID field). See [A7.5.8 "Graceful Hot Removal" on page 1631](#) for details.

CA7-50: The DA shall inspect DevMgt Traps to detect I/O module removal requests (i.e., a hot plug removal request).

The DA generates a DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to client platforms subscribed for the Removal Request event as per [A7.5.8 "Graceful Hot Removal" on page 1631](#).

A7.6.1.2.10 DIAGNOSTIC NOTIFICATION

The DA generates the Diagnostic Notification event when a diagnostic application requests a diagnostic session that would impact the client platform's I/O operation. The Diagnostic Notification does not use the Notice attribute. Rather the DevAdmReport() for this event uses the DiagNotice attribute, which is indicated in the DevAdmReport's AttributeID field. See [A7.5.9 "Diagnostics" on page 1635](#) for details.

The DA generates a DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) to client platforms subscribed for the Diagnostic event as per [A7.5.9.1 "Diagnostic Framework" on page 1635](#).

A7.6.1.2.11 RESET NOTIFICATION

The DA generates the Reset Notification event before it issues a DevMgtSet(Reset) to an IOU that would impact the client platform's I/O operation. The Reset Notification does not use the Notice attribute. Rather the DevAdmReport() for this event uses the ResetNotice attribute, which is indicated in the DevAdmReport's AttributeID field. See [A7.6.3.9 "Reset-Notice" on page 1668](#) for details.

A7.6.1.2.12 HEARTBEAT

The DA periodically sends a DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to let subscribed client platforms know that the DA still exists and that the platform's subscriptions are still valid. It is also a means for the DA to detect stale subscriptions since failure for a platform to respond to the heartbeat is grounds to cancel all subscriptions for that platform.

When a client subscribes for the heartbeat event, the DA immediately sends it a DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat). This initial heartbeat provides the client with the time until the next heartbeat (TTNH). The length of time between heartbeats is a DA policy. The client starts an expiration timer for TTNH minutes and if the timer expires, it is an indication that the

DA is no longer functional or that the DA has cancelled the platform's subscriptions. Thus, the client platform should re-subscribe (in the case of subscription cancellation). If the DA does not respond, then the client should query the SA to locate the new DM (in case the manager reset or a standby manager has taken over) and query the new DM to locate the DA so it can login and subscribe.

Each time a client receives a DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat), it resets its expiration timer to the new TTNNH timeout value specified in the Heartbeat notice. The Heartbeat notice also has a bit that indicates a new manager. This is to inform the client that a standby manager has gracefully taken over the DM / DA responsibility. The client will need to query the SA to locate the new DM and query the new DM to locate the DA, but it will not need to login nor re-subscribe.

IORMs can subscribe for the Heartbeat notice either explicitly via DevAdmSet(InformInfo) or implicitly as a result of DevAdmSet(Login).

CA7-51: For explicit heartbeat subscriptions, the DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to the subscribed client platform before sending the DevAdmGetResp(InformInfo)

CA7-52: For implicit heartbeat subscriptions, the DA shall generate a DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to the subscribed client platform before sending the DevAdmGetResp(Login).

CA7-53: The DA shall continue to generate DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat) to each subscribed client platform within TTNNH minutes after sending the previous DevAdmReport(Notice=Heartbeat).

CA7-54: The DA shall not set the FailOver bit in a Heartbeat notice unless the DA inherited all of the subscriptions from the previous manager.

CA7-55: The DM shall only set the FailOver bit in the first Heartbeat notice it sends to a client. Thus, the DM shall not set the FailOver bit in subsequent reports to a client after it receives the ReportResp() from that client.

Note that the LID Range and GID in the subscription [i.e., from the DevAdmSet(InformInfo)] for a heartbeat notice is irrelevant and thus ignored by the DA. That is, the DA sends the heartbeat to all clients who subscribed for the Heartbeat regardless of the GID and LID Range in the InformInfo.

A7.6.2 DEVADM MESSAGE FORMAT

Figure 316 shows the structure of a DevAdm datagram. The DA sends and receives datagrams using an Unreliable Datagram QP, that is determined via the CM:SIDR_REQ protocol. The datagrams conform to the MAD definition as specified in Volume 1 Chapter 13

Figure 316 DevAdm MAD Format

Offset	Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3
0	Common MAD Header			
...				
20				
24	RMPP Header			
...				
32				
36	RequesterID			
40				
44	reserved			
...				
56				
60	reserved		ComponentMask	
64	DevAdm Data			
...				
252				

CA7-56: A DA and IORM shall send and receive DevAdm class MADs that conform to the format specified in [Figure 316 DevAdm MAD Format](#) and [Table 486 Device Administration MAD Fields](#).

Table 486 defines the fields in the DevAdm datagram.

Table 486 Device Administration MAD Fields

Field ^a	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 . MgtClass=0x10, ClassVersion=1.
RMPP Header	12 bytes	RMPP header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 . Also refer to A7.6.2.4 RMPP Header on page 1649
RequesterID	8 bytes	A value assigned by the DA to identify the requester. Default value is zero. See A7.6.2.5 RequesterID on page 1650 and A7.6.3.4 LogIn on page 1658 .
reserved	16 bytes	reserved
reserved	2 bytes	reserved

Table 486**Device Administration MAD Fields (Continued)**

Field ^a	Length	Description
ComponentMask	2 bytes	Indicates which attribute components in the DevAdmGet() are to be used for the query. Refer to A7.6.2.6 Component Mask on page 1651
DevMgt Data	192 bytes	192 bytes of DevAdm payload. The structure and content depends upon the Method, Attribute, and Attribute Modifier fields in the MAD header.

a. The term ‘MAD header’ refers to all fields except the DevAdm Data field

A7.6.2.1 RESERVED FIELDS

Fields indicated as “reserved” shall be set to zero in request messages. In response messages, a reserved field may be left unmodified if using the request for the response, or may be set to zero. A reserved field shall be ignored on receipt.

CA7-57: Fields indicated as “reserved” shall be set to zero in request messages. In response messages, a reserved field shall either be left unmodified, if using the request for the response, or shall be set to zero.

CA7-58: The recipient of a DevAdm class MAD shall ignore reserved fields.

A7.6.2.2 DEVADM STATUS VALUES

Chapter 13 defines bits 0-7 of the MAD Header.Status field and leaves bits 8-15 for additional class specific status. They are encoded as follows:

Table 487**DevAdm MAD Status Field Values**

Name	Bits	Meaning
DA_ERR_CODE	8-11	An enumerated value as follows: 0x0 = normal 0x1 = RequesterID is invalid 0x2 = Supplied request or update is invalid 0x3 = Insufficient privilege or policy violation 0x4 = Not Master DA all other values reserved
RESERVED	12-15	reserved for future definition

CA7-59: If the DA accepts a DevAdmGet() as a valid request, it shall set the MAD Header Status to zero in the DevAdmGetResp().

CA7-60: If the DA rejects a DevAdmGet(), it shall set the MAD Header Status in the DevAdmGetResp() to reflect the reason for the rejection.

A7.6.2.3 METHODS

1
2
3
4
CA7-61: A DA shall support the DevAdm methods described in Table 488.

5
6
Table 488 **DevAdm Methods**

Method Type	Value	Description
DevAdmGet()	0x01	Request (read) an attribute.
DevAdmSet()	0x02	Request a set (write) of an attribute.
DevAdmGetResp()	0x81	The response from a DevAdmGet or DevAdmSet.
DevAdmReport()	0x06	Forward a subscribed event.
DevAdmReportResp()	0x86	Reply to a DevAdmReport.

15
16
17
18
DevAdmGet(), DevAdmSet(), DevAdmGetResp(), DevAdmReport(), &
DevAdmReportResp() methods are common methods specified in
Volume 1 Chapter 13 (see Get, Set, GetResp, Report, & ReportResp in
section 13.4.5).

19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
The DevAdmSet(InformInfo), DevAdmGetResp(InformInfo), DevAdmRe-
port(), & DevAdmReportResp() methods are used to subscribe to and re-
port DevAdm events. The DevAdmReport() & DevAdmReportResp()
typically use the Notice attribute (A7.6.3.2 “Notice” on page 1654). How-
ever, for reporting the IO-Module removal process, the RemovalReq attri-
bute is used in the DevAdmReport() & DevAdmReportResp() as per
A7.5.8 “Graceful Hot Removal” on page 1631. For reporting Diagnostic,
the DiagNotice attribute is used in the DevAdmReport() & DevAdmRepor-
tResp(). For reporting IOU/IOC Reset, the ResetNotice attribute is used in
the DevAdmReport() & DevAdmReportResp().

A7.6.2.4 RMPP HEADER

30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
DevAdm uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol as described in Section
13.6 “Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol”. This protocol allows
the initiator to make a single query which returns more information than
can be transferred in a single packet. For example, an IORM can make a
single request for S_KeyInfo attributes and have the DA return all of the
records for that particular client platform. The response includes multiple
DevAdmGetResp(S_KeyInfo) packets if necessary. Only the method/attri-
bute combinations listed as ‘RMPP’ in [Table 490 "DevAdm Attribute / Method Map" on page 1653](#) use the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol and
thus have multi-packet responses. DevAdmGet() requests are always
single packets.

40
41
42
CA7-62: A DA shall implement Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol as de-
scribed in Section 13.6 “Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol.”

CA7-63: A DA shall not respond with more than one packet for method/attribute combinations not listed as 'RMPP' in [Table 490 "DevAdm Attribute / Method Map" on page 1653](#).

CA7-64: A DA shall reject a request that contains more than one packet.

A7.6.2.5 REQUESTERID

Since it is possible that a client platform might use multiple ports and because a port's LID/GID can subsequently change, depending on LID/GID alone for identifying the platform is not sufficient, thus the DA provides each client platform with a RequesterID, which the client platform uses in future requests.

RequesterID serves as an authorization tool. When the DA encounters a new client platform, it validates the client platform and assigns it a RequesterID as follows:

- When a client platform initializes, it uses the default MADHeader:RequesterID value of zero and performs a LOGIN (i.e., sends a DevAdmSet(Login) to the DA. In the response, the DA provides a unique RequesterID that the client platform uses in the MADHeader:RequesterID of subsequent DevAdm queries (see [A7.6.3.4 "Login" on page 1658](#)).
- When the DA receives a DevAdmSet(Login), it validates the client platform. At a minimum the DA relates the LID/GID in the request to a specific platform and determines the access rights for that platform. Note that the DA can issue a SubnAdmGet(NodeInfo) to the SA to get the NodeGUID for that platform.

CA7-65: The DA shall identify a client platform by its NodeGUID.

CA7-66: The DA shall validate a client's NodeGUID by querying the SA before sending the DevAdmGetResp(Login).

CA7-67: Generation of RequesterIDs shall not be sequential or predictable, in order to make it difficult for a client to guess the RequesterID of another node.

The DA uses the RequesterID to validate DevAdm class requests that it receives.

CA7-68: A DA shall reject a DevAdmGet() containing an invalid RequesterID (see [CA7-38: on page 1639](#)).

The use of the default RequesterID by a client platform is only permitted for reading the ClassPortInfo, performing a login, and responding to a DevAdmReport(). The DA uses the default RequesterID in DevAdmReport()s to allow reports to be sent to clients that don't need to know the

platforms's RequesterID. The fact that the IORM used the RequesterID to perform the subscription and the DevAdmReportResp() contains the TransactionID is sufficient protection.

CA7-69: A DA shall only allow the default MADHeader:RequesterID value of zero in DevAdmGet(ClassPortInfo), DevAdmSet(LogIn), and DevAdmReportResp() MADs.

CA7-70: A DA shall use the default MADHeader:RequesterID value of zero in DevAdmReport() MADs that it generates.

It's possible that the information a DA returns in response to a query depends on the state of the client platform (e.g., pre-boot or post boot) and the platform's OS. For example, a booting platform might only be given information about devices necessary to boot the OS, but when the OS takes control, it is given information about additional resources. Since this information can be determined as part of the login process, the RequesterID can function as a data versioning key. When there is a context change, the client platform performs another login. If the DA detects changes (such as a change in the platform's purpose or permissions), it can invalidate the platform's old RequesterID, forcing the client platform to perform another login and get a new RequesterID.

A7.6.2.6 COMPONENT MASK

The ComponentMask in the MAD header is used in queries for attributes supporting RMPP (see [Table 490 DevAdm Attribute / Method Map on page 1653](#)). The ComponentMask allows the initiator to indicate which components in the query (i.e., the DevAdmGet request) that the DA uses in determining which records to return. Each bit corresponds to an attribute component as specified in each attribute's definition in [A7.6.3: Attributes](#). If that bit is set to zero, the DA ignores that component when selecting which attributes to return. When the bit is one, the DA only returns records that have that component matching the value supplied in the request. For example, a DevAdmGet(C_KeyInfo) with component mask bits for louGUID and Supv_Key set to one will return all records matching the louGUID and Supv_Key values supplied in the attribute in the DevAdmGet(C_KeyInfo) query.

CA7-71: The DA shall ignore MADHeader:ComponentMask in MADs not indicated as 'RMPP' in [Table 490 "DevAdm Attribute / Method Map" on page 1653](#)

CA7-72: The DA shall ignore MADHeader:ComponentMask bits that are not defined in the attribute's definition in [A7.6.3: Attributes](#)

CA7-73: For method/attribute combinations marked 'RMPP' in [Table 490 DevAdm Attribute / Method Map on page 1653](#), the DA shall only return

attribute records matching the components indicated by the request's MADHeader:ComponentMask field.

CA7-74: The DA shall set the MADHeader:ComponentMask in the response to the same value as in the request, except that any ComponentMask bits not supported (i.e., not defined for the attribute) shall be set to zero. This requires that the MADHeader:ComponentMask in responses to non RMPP method/attributes combinations is always returned as zero.

A7.6.2.7 LOST MESSAGES

The DevAdm *ClassPortInfo* attribute provides a time-out value (RespTimeValue) to be used in conjunction with DevAdm requests. Because DevAdm messages use unreliable datagram service, it is possible that a request or its response may be lost. If the requester does not receive a response within the time allotted⁴⁸, it resends the original request.

Where a response is a multi-packet segmented response, the segments are sent in order and identified by the SegmentNumber field. If the initiator detects that it missed one of the response packets, it can immediately request retransmission starting with the missing packet by resubmitting the original request with original RequesterID, setting the ReSend Request bit in the FragmentFlag field, and specifying the missing packet in the SegmentNumber field. The DA starts resending the response starting with the indicated packet using the window value specified in the Resend Request.

A7.6.3 ATTRIBUTES

Table 489 lists attributes for the DevAdm class MADs

Table 489 DevAdm Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
<u>ClassPortInfo</u>	0x0001	0x00000000	Class Info as per base MAD definition. This document specifies DevAdm ClassVersion =1
<u>Notice</u>	0x0002	0x00000000	Fabricated Trap/Notice information generated by the DA.
<u>InformInfo</u>	0x0003	0x00000000	Subscription information as per common MAD attribute definitions in Chapter 13.
<u>Login</u>	0x0011	0x00000000	Provides information about the Client Platform so the DA can assign a RequesterID.
<u>S_KeyInfo</u>	0x0012	0x00000000	Request for list of IOU's and associated Supervisor_Keys.
<u>C_KeyInfo</u>	0x0013	0x00000000	Request for list of Client_Keys.

48. Note that the requester must also consider fabric round trip delays.

Table 489**DevAdm Attributes (Continued)**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
RemovalReq	0x0021	0x00000000	Notifies client platform about IOCs affected by a requested removal of an I/O module.
DiagNotice	0x0022	0x00000000	Notifies client platforms affected by a requested diagnostic.

Table 490 associates DevAdm class attributes with methods.

Table 490**DevAdm Attribute / Method Map**

Attribute	Get / GetResp ^a	Set / GetResp	Report / ReptResp
ClassPortInfo	SP		
Notice		SP	
InformInfo		SP	
Login		SP	
S_KeyInfo	RMPP		
C_KeyInfo	RMPP		
RemovalReq		SP	
DiagNotice		SP	

a. SP designates single packet request/response. RMPP designates that the method/attribute uses Reliable Multiple Packet Protocol. Note that the DevAdmGet() is always a single packet that can result in a multiple packet response.

A7.6.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is defined in Volume 1 Chapter 13 and has the following class specific information and definitions:

- ClassVersion: This is version 1 of the DevAdm class specification. The ClassVersion field shall be set to 0x01.
- CapabilityMask component is defined in [Table 491 on page 1654](#).

Table 491 Device Administration ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 . Note that bits 0 and 1 are not meaningful for a manager and thus are set to zero and ignored.
8-13	reserved	reserved
14	GracefulFailover	This bit indicates if the DA shares subscription information with standby managers. A value of 1 indicates that subscriptions are retained across fail-overs. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in section A7.6.1.2.3 Subscription Integrity on page 1642 and A7.6.3.4 Login .
15	IsContextPersistent	This bit indicates if the DA persistently stores Login context and subscription information. A value of 1 indicates that subscriptions and login context are retained across reset, restarts, and power cycles. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in A7.6.1.2.3 Subscription Integrity , A7.6.3.3 InformInfo , and A7.6.3.4 Login .

A7.6.3.2 NOTICE

The DA uses the Notice attribute in most reports it sends to subscribed client platforms (see below for exceptions). The Notice attribute is defined in Volume 1 Chapter 13 section 13.4.8.2. Note that the DevAdmSet(InformInfo) permits a client platform to subscribe to notices about any IOU in the configuration group. In addition to notice attributes, DevAdm also defines additional attributes that are used in DevAdmReport() MADs (see [A7.6.3.7 "RemovalReq" on page 1664](#) and [A7.6.3.8 "DiagNotice" on page 1666](#)).

DevAdm notices are fabricated and fall into two categories - Proxy Traps and Manager Events. A proxy trap is one that is generated on behalf of an IOU, in which case the notice identifies the IOU. A Manager Event is not associated with an IOU.

Unless otherwise specified, components for generic Notice attributes (listed in [Table 493 on page 1655](#)) shall be set as per [Table 492 on page 1655](#):

Table 492 Notice Component Values

Component	Component Value
IsGeneric	1 (Generic)
Type	as per Table 493
ProducerType	4 (Class Manager)
TrapNumber	as per Table 493
IssuerLID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Proxy Traps - A LID of the subject IOU. • For Manager Events - the base LID of the port emitting the Report() message.
NoticeToggle	0 as per 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802
Notice Count	0 as per 13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802
DataDetails	as per Table 493
IssuerGID	GID of port specified by IssuerLID

Table 493 Generic DevAdm Events

Trap Number	Name	P/M ^a	Type	DataDetails
0	Removal Requested	P	1-urgent	n/a - the Removal Requested notification does not use the Notice Attribute. It is included here because this event needs a trap number and type so client platforms can subscribe for the notification.
1	Diagnostic Notification	P	1-urgent	n/a - the Diagnostic Notification does not use the Notice Attribute. It is included here because this event needs a trap number and type so client platforms can subscribe for the notification.
2	Configuration Change	P	4-informational	As specified in Table 494
3	IOC On-line	P	4-informational	As specified in Table 495
4	IOC Off-line	P	4-informational	As specified in Table 496
5	Resource Allocation Change	P	4-informational	As specified in Table 497
7	Heartbeat	M	4-informational	As specified in Table 498
8	Reset Notification	P	1-urgent	n/a - the Reset Notification does not use the Notice Attribute. It is included here because this event needs a trap number and type so client platforms can subscribe for the notification.

a. P/M indicates if (P) Proxy Trap or (M) Manager Event.

The DataDetails field of a Notice attribute consists of 54 Bytes that are class and trap specific.

A7.6.3.2.1 CONFIGURATION CHANGE

The DataDetails field for the Configuration Change Notice is defined in [Table 494](#).

Table 494 Configuration Change Notice DataDetails

Component	Length ^a	Description
reserved	64 bits	reserved
IouGUID	64 bits	I/O Unit's Channel Adapter GUID

a. remaining space reserved - set to zero and ignored

A7.6.3.2.2 IOC ON-LINE

The DataDetails field for the IOC On-line Notice is defined in [Table 495](#).

Table 495 IOC On-line Notice DataDetails

Component	Length ^a	Description
reserved	64 bits	reserved
IouGUID	64 bits	I/O Unit's Channel Adapter GUID
LocGUID	64 bits	I/O Controller GUID
SlotNumber	8 bits	Slot number of the I/O module containing the IOC

a. remaining space reserved - set to zero and ignored

A7.6.3.2.3 IOC OFF-LINE

The DataDetails field for the IOC Off-line Notice is defined in [Table 496](#).

Table 496 IOC Off-line Notice DataDetails

Component	Length ^a	Description
reserved	64 bits	reserved
IouGUID	64 bits	I/O Unit's Channel Adapter GUID
LocGUID	64 bits	I/O Controller GUID
SlotNumber	8 bits	Slot number of the I/O module containing the IOC - zero if not known

a. remaining space reserved - set to zero and ignored

A7.6.3.2.4 RESOURCE ALLOCATION CHANGE

The DataDetails field for the Resource Allocation Change Notice is defined in [Table 497](#).

**Table 497 Resource Allocation Change Notice
DataDetails**

Component	Length ^a	Description
reserved	64 bits	reserved
IoGUID	64 bits	I/O Unit's Channel Adapter GUID

a. remaining space reserved - set to zero and ignored

A7.6.3.2.5 HEARTBEAT

The DataDetails field of a Heartbeat Notice attribute is defined in [Table 498](#).

Table 498 Heartbeat Notice DataDetails

Component	Length ^a	Description
TTNH	12 bits	Time till next heartbeat - specifies the number of minutes before the DM will send another Heartbeat notice. If more than this time elapses, it is an indication that the DA has terminated the subscription.
reserved	4 bits	reserved
Fail-over	1	When this bit is set to one, it indicates that a standby manager has taken-over. The client platform should query the SA to locate the new DM.

a. remaining space reserved - set to zero and ignored

A7.6.3.3 INFORMINFO

A client platform uses the InformInfo attribute to subscribe for configuration event notification.

The InformInfo attribute is defined in Volume 1 Chapter 13. Normally, LidRangeBegin and LIDRangeEnd identify the port generating a trap. However, the DA does not forward traps but rather creates configuration events that relate to specific IOUs. Thus, for DevAdm class subscription, the LID range specifies the IOUs involved.

Since the LID range specifies the source LID, which must be in the unicast LID range (0x0001 - 0xBFFF), LidRangeBegin and LidRangeEnd have class specific interpretation as specified in [Table 499](#).

Table 499 DevAdm LID Range Interpretation

LIDRangeBegin	LIDRangeEnd	Description
0x0000	any	invalid
0x0001 through 0xBFFF	0x0000 and LID-RangeBegin through 0xBFFF	events relating to an IOU managed by the DA/DM that has a LID in the specified LID Range for which the client is assigned a service object.
0xC000 thru FFFE	any	invalid
any	0xC000 thru 0xFFFF	invalid
0xFFFF	any	events relating to any IOU managed by the DA/DM for which the client is assigned a service object and for events not related to an IOU (e.g. Heartbeat).

oA7-9: If the DA supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the */sContextPersistent* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall save subscription information in non-volatile storage before responding to a DevAdmSet(InformInfo).

oA7-10: If the DA supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *Graceful-Failover* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall make subscription information known to all standby DAs for that same configuration group provided by that same vendor before responding to the DevAdmSet(InformInfo).

A7.6.3.4 LOGIN

A client platform sends DevAdmSet(Login) to get its RequesterID and/or to invalidate previous context between the platform and the DA (see [A7.6.2.5 "RequesterID" on page 1650](#)). The DA uses the LID/GID in the MAD and R/W information in the Login attribute to validate who the requester is and responds back with the Login attribute specifying the RequesterID that the platform uses in subsequent queries. As part of a Login, the client platform can request that the DA invalidate all previous event subscriptions made by that platform.

Table 500 LogIn Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length	Description
RequesterID	R/W	0	8 bytes	The value that the client platform uses in MAD-Header:RequesterID of DevAdm queries.
PlatformName	R/W	64	64 Bytes	Indicates the name assigned to the client platform. UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated character string (e.g., "WebServer1"). Value of all zeros indicates unknown or not assigned.
OSName	R/W	576	32 Bytes	Indicates the client platform's operating system. UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated character string. Value of all zeros indicates unknown or not assigned.
BootStage	R/W	832	2 bits	Indicates the current boot stage of the platform 00 - Pre-boot 01 - OS booting (OS and Pre-boot environments both exist) 10 - OS fully operational (No pre-boot environment)
reserved	RO	834	2 bits	reserved
ContextChange	R/W	836	4 bits	Controls if the DA invalidates existing RequesterIDs and subscriptions made by the client platform as per Table 501 "Context Change" on page 1660
ImplicitSubscription	R/W	840	8 bits	Client sets appropriate bits to automatically subscribe to the indicated event. bit 0 - Removal Request events bit 1 - Diagnostic events bit 2 - Configuration Change events bit 3 - IOC On-line events bit 4 - IOC Off-line events bit 5 - Resource Allocation Change events bit 6 - bit 7 - Heartbeat
reserved	RO	848	688	reserved

See [A7.6.2.5 "RequesterID" on page 1650](#) for requirements on issuing RequesterID. The DA ignores the MADHeader:RequesterID when it receives a DevAdmSet(LogIn) and uses the LID/GID from the MAD to validate who the requester is by getting its NodeGUID from the SA. The Login attribute's PlatformName, OSName, and BootStage components provides the DA a means to distinguish between different uses of that platform and also as an aid in identifying the platform to an administrator when the platform is not known to the DA. How the DA uses these components is subject to DA policy.

A platform normally issues a new login after the platform is reset, when information in the LogIn attribute (PlatformName, OSName, or BootStage component) changes⁴⁹, after it receives a response with a status of invalid RequesterID, or after the operating environment changes (such as the transition from BIOS to OS control) to establish a new context with the DA.

When a client platform initializes, the BIOS, OS, etc., does not necessarily know if context that the previous instantiation of the platform established with the DA is still valid, so the client-platform is able to set the ContextChange component controlling how the DA flushes old context for that platform.

Table 501 Context Change

Bit	Action
3 2 1 0	
x x x 0	DA does not invalidate any RequesterID.
x x x 1	DA invalidates the RequesterID specified in this attribute (i.e., Login:RequesterID) - if Login:RequesterID=zero, then the DA invalidates all RequesterIDs for this platform.
x x 0 x	DA responds with zero in Login:RequesterID component. DA does not generate any new requester IDs.
x x 1 x	DA responds with current RequesterID in Login:RequesterID - DA will generate a new RequesterID if one does not exist or it had been invalidated.
0 0 x x	DA does not invalidate or modify any subscriptions.
0 1 x x	DA invalidates all subscriptions for the RequesterID specified in Login:RequesterID - if Login:RequesterID=zero, then the DA invalidates all subscriptions for all RequesterIDs for this platform.
1 0 x x	IORM inherits subscriptions for the RequesterID specified in Login:RequesterID, if Login:RequesterID=zero, then it inherits all subscriptions of all RequesterIDs for this platform. This means the DA modifies those subscriptions such that the Report()'s LRH:DLID, LRH:SL, BTH:P_Key, BTH:DestinationQP, DETH:Q_Key, GRH:DGID, GRH:FlowLabel, GRH:TClass, and GRH:HopLmt will be the same values as the values in the DevAdmGetResp(Login).
1 1 x x	invalid, DA rejects a Set() with this value.

A node that knows it is leaving the fabric (e.g., being put to sleep) can destroy its subscriptions by sending a DevAdmSet(LogIn) with context = 0x4 (or 0x5 to invalidate its RequesterID). When the node awakes, it sends a

49. An example is a platform that changes from a web server to a backup server at midnight and changes back to a web server at 6 AM.

1 DevAdmSet(Login) with context = 0x2 to get its RequesterID and, if de-
2 sired, make implicit subscriptions.

3 **CA7-75:** The DA shall reject a DevAdmSet(Login) that specifies a
4 Login:RequesterID component not valid for the client platform as deter-
5 mined by the platform's NodeGUID (see [CA7-65: and CA7-66: on page](#)
6 [1650](#)).
7

8 **CA7-76:** Upon receipt of a DevAdmSet(LOGIN) with a ContextChange
9 value that invalidates RequesterID, the DA shall reject subsequent
10 DevAdm MADs that use the invalidated RequesterID(s).
11

12 A client platform uses the Login:RequesterID returned in the DevAdmGet-
13 Resp(Login) in the MADHeader:RequesterID in all subsequent DevAdm
14 MADs.
15

16 **CA7-77:** A client platform shall only use the default RequesterID in
17 DevAdmGet(ClassPortInfo), DevAdmSet(Login), and DevAdmRepor-
18 tResp() MADs.
19

20 The ImplicitSubscription component provides a shortcut for the client plat-
21 form to subscribe with the DA for reports. When the client sets the implicit
22 subscription, the DA treats it as receiving an InformInfo for the specified
23 notices. The DevAdmReport()s will be sent to the same destination as the
24 DevAdmGetResp(Login). That is, the values for LRH:DLID, LRH:SL,
25 BTH:P_Key, BTH:DestinationQP, DETH:Q_Key, GRH:DGID, GRH:Flow-
26 Label, GRH:TClass, and GRH:HopLmt are inherited from the values in the
27 DevAdmGetResp(Login). The implicit scope is “all IOUs” (i.e., LIDRange-
28 Begin=0xFFFF).
29

30 **oA7-11:** If the DA supports Persistent Context (i.e. sets the *IsContextPer-*
31 *sistent* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall save/update
32 Login information in non-volatile storage before responding to a DevAd-
33 mSet(Login).
34

35 **oA7-12:** If the DA supports Graceful Failover (i.e., sets the *Graceful-*
36 *Failover* bit in DevAdmGetResp(ClassPortInfo) to 1), it shall make LogIn
37 information known to all standby DAs for that same configuration group
38 provided by that same vendor before responding to a DevAdmSet(Login).
39

A7.6.3.5 S_KEYINFO

40 The DA responds to *DevAdmGet(S_KeyInfo)* with a *DevAdmGet-*
41 *Resp(S_KeyInfo)*. As per [CA7-38: on page 1639](#) the DA only provides re-
42 cords for the requesting node as identified by the

MADHeader:RequesterID⁵⁰. There may be multiple packets per response.

Table 502 S_KeyInfo Attribute

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset	Length	Description
0	IouGUID	RO	0	8 bytes	Node GUID of the IOU
1	Supv_Key	RO	64	8 bytes	Supervisor_Key that the client platform uses in any DevMgt MADs to that IOU.
-	ClientKeyCount	RO	640	2 bytes	The number of C_KeyInfo records that will be returned for a DevAdmGet(C_KeyInfo) query that contains this IouGUID and Supv_Key.
-	reserved		656	14 bytes	reserved - not used
2	SKey_Name	RO	128	64 bytes	A name associated with the Supervisor_Key

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

Each attribute record returned by the DA specifies an IOU and the Supervisor_Key that the client platform uses to manage client pools on that IOU.

Normally, the DA should use the same Supervisor_Key on all IOUs. However, there are times when that is not possible, thus the client platform should be prepared to use multiple keys. It is also possible that a client platform has multiple Supervisor_Keys on the same IOU (i.e., can receive multiple S_KeyInfo attribute records specifying the same IOU with a different Supv_Key and different SKey_Name). The manager may wish to provide different Supv_Keys based upon the current function of the platform (e.g. Development and Test, versus using the system as a failover for production.) The SKey_Name allows the supervisor to select the appropriate Supv_Key from the set of all those returned.

A7.6.3.6 C_KEYINFO

The DA responds to *DevAdmGet(C_KeyInfo)* with a *DevAdmGet-Resp(C_KeyInfo)*. As per [CA7-38: on page 1639](#) the DA only provides re-

50. When the IORM performs a LOGIN, the DA determines the IORM's Node GUID and assigns it a unique RequesterID, which the IORM specifies in the MAD Header of all its queries. The DA uses the RequesterID to authenticate the query and associate the request to a particular host platform.

cords for the requesting node as identified by the MADHeader:RequesterID⁵¹. There may be multiple packets per response.

Table 503 C_KeyInfo Attribute

CMSk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset	Length	Description
0	IouGUID	RO	0	8 bytes	Node GUID of the IOU
1	Supv_Key	RO	64	8 bytes	Supervisor_Key that the client platform uses in any DevMgt MADs to that IOU.
2	Client_Key	RO	128	8 bytes	Client_Key that a client uses in any DevMgt MADs to that IOU.
	reserved	RO	192	8 bytes	reserved - not used
3	ClientKey_Name	RO	256	64 bytes	A name associated with the Client_Key

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMSk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

Each attribute record returned by the DA specifies a Client_Key that the client platform can use for the specified IOU and the Supervisor_Key the platform' IORM uses to manage the ClientPoolRecord assigned that Client_Key.

Note that a Client_Key may be valid on more than one IOU, but it might not be valid on all IOUs. Thus, it is possible for the client platform to be given a different set of Client_Keys for each IOU.

51. When the IORM performs a LOGIN, the DA determines the IORM's Node GUID and assigns it a unique RequesterID, which the IORM specifies in the MAD Header of all its queries. The DA uses the RequesterID to authenticate the query and associate the request to a particular host platform.

A7.6.3.7 REMOVALREQ

The DA uses the DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to report the removal process to client platforms affected by the removal of an I/O module (see [A7.5.8 "Graceful Hot Removal" on page 1631](#)).

Table 504 RemovalReq Attribute

Component	Access	Offset	Length	Description
louGUID	RO	0	8 bytes	The CA GUID of the IOU containing the I/O module being removed.
RemovePriority	RO	64	4 bits	See Table 505 on page 1666
Acknowledge	R/W	68	4 bits	In the DevAdmReportResp(): 0=OK to remove 1=REJECT, critical resource, etc. 2=WAIT, need time to acquiesce operation In the DevAdmReport(), this field is set to zero and ignored
WaitDelay	R/W	72	8 bits	Set to zero in the DevAdmReport() and when the IORM responds with an Acknowledge value of WAIT, the IORM sets this component to the number of milliseconds that the DA should wait before it resends the request. For each Report() the IORM may request more time.
reserved	RO	80	22 bytes	reserved
locGUID1	RO	256	8 bytes	IOC GUID of an affected IOC.
locGUID2	RO	320	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs, means locGUID3 through locGUID16 are also zero) ^a
locGUID3	RO	384	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID4	RO	448	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID5	RO	512	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID6	RO	576	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID7	RO	640	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID8	RO	704	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID9	RO	768	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID10	RO	832	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID11	RO	896	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID12	RO	960	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID13	RO	1024	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID14	RO	1088	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)

Table 504**RemovalReq Attribute (Continued)**

Component	Access	Offset	Length	Description
locGUID15	RO	1152	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
locGUID16	RO	1216	8 bytes	GUID of an affected IOC (or zero if no more IOCs)
reserved32	RO	1280	32 bytes	reserved

a. If an locGUID is zero, it means there are no more IOCs in the list and the client platform may ignore the remaining locGUIDs (i.e., ignore locGUID components following the first zero locGUID).

The DA sends a DevAdmReport(RemovalReq) to the IORM of each affected client platform setting the RemovePriority component to inform the IORM what options the IORM has to reject or delay the removal (see [Table 505](#)). The Acknowledge component identifies the willingness of the IORM to accept the removal. Acknowledge and WaitDelay are the only components that the IORM may modify when it returns the attribute in the DevAdmReportResp(RemovalReq).

The DA sets the Acknowledge component to zero and if RemovePriority permits, the IORM may change it in the response to reject the removal or request more time. See [RemovePriority](#) component above and [Table 505](#) for IORM options in responding to the DevAdmReport(). If the IORM indicates WAIT, then the IORM also sets the WaitDelay component to tell the DA how long it should wait before asking again. If the client needs more than 255 msec, it sets WaitDelay to 0xFF. The DA continues to send a DevAdmReport() until the client indicates OK to remove (or reject).

Each report can identify up to 16 IOCs affected by the removal. When there are more than 16 the DA sends multiple reports. If an locGUID is zero, the client platform may ignore the following locGUIDs.

A RemovalReq can have one of the following priorities.

Table 505 Removal/Diagnostic/Reset Priority

Value	Description
0h	Graceful - if a client platform responds negatively to the notice, the DA cancels the removal/diagnostic/reset operation.
1h	Forced - Client Platforms are not allowed to reject the removal/diagnostic/reset, but may respond with WAIT status. The amount of time that the DA will permit a client platform to delay the action is a DA policy.
2h	Immediate - Client Platforms are not allowed to reject or delay the removal/diagnostic/reset - i.e., the DA ignores the Acknowledge component in the response. The amount of time that the DA attempts to contact a client platform before performing the action is a DA policy.
3h	Critical - The configuration manager issues the removal/diagnostic/reset command without waiting for acknowledgment from client platforms. The DA sends this notice to inform the client platforms of the action, but this report may come after the fact - i.e., the DA ignores the Acknowledge component in the response.

The architecture permits I/O module removal requests to be initiated by the IOU (see DevMgt Annex) or initiated via the Configuration Manager. The criteria for the Configuration Manager initiating a remove and how the DA determines the RemovePriority is a Configuration Manager policy outside the scope of this document. See [A7.6.1.2.4 "Subscription Timeout:" on page 1642](#) for how the DA determines that a client platform is not responding. How the DA reacts to non-responding clients is a DA policy.

A7.6.3.8 DIAGNOTICE

The DA uses the DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) to report that a diagnostic session has been requested (see [A7.5.9 "Diagnostics" on page 1635](#)).

Table 506 DiagNotice Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
IouGUID	RO	0	64	The CA GUID of the IOU being tested.
DiagPriority	RO	64	4	See Table 505 on page 1666
Acknowledge	R/W	68	4	In the DevAdmReportResp(): 0h=OK to perform diagnostics 1h=REJECT, critical resource, etc. 2h=WAIT, need time to acquiesce operation In the DevAdmReport(), this field is set to zero and ignored

Table 506**DiagNotice Attribute (Continued)**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
WaitDelay	R/W	72	8 bits	Set to zero in the DevAdmReport() and when the IORM responds with an Acknowledge value of WAIT, the IORM sets this component to the number of milliseconds that the DA should wait before it resends the request. For each Report() the IORM may request more time.
reserved	RO	80	48	reserved
DiagSeverity	RO	128	4	<p>Specifies the maximum severity level for a diagnostic test</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 - Non-Intrusive - does not impact I/O performance • 0x1 - I/O performance reduced to 90% • 0x2 - I/O performance reduced to 80% • 0x3 - I/O performance reduced to 70% • 0x4 - I/O performance reduced to 60% • 0x5 - I/O performance reduced to 50% • 0x6 - I/O performance reduced to 40% • 0x7 - I/O performance reduced to 30% • 0x8 - I/O performance reduced to 20% • 0x9 - I/O performance reduced to 10% • 0xA - No I/O Service during diagnostics - connections remain • 0xF - No I/O Service - Connections terminated • other values reserved
DiagScope	RO	132	4	<p>Specifies the scope of the objects that can be affected by diagnostic testing using this token:</p> <p>0x0 - Entire IOU: The diagnostics can affect all I/O objects of all IOCs. 0x1 - reserved.</p> <p>0x2 - I/O Controllers: The diagnostics can affect all I/O objects of the IOCs listed in the ObjectList component.</p> <p>0x3 - Service Objects: The diagnostics can affect the I/O objects listed in the ObjectList component.</p> <p>other values reserved</p>
reserved	RO	136	104	reserved
ObjectListCount	RO	240	16	Specifies the number of objects in ObjectList. When DiagScope is 'Entire IOU' then this value is zero. The max value allowed is 24 for IOCs and 12 for Service Objects.
ObjectList	RO	256	varies	<p>Specifies the list of objects that can be impacted by a diagnostic testing. The content of this component is based on DiagScope and ObjectListCount:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entire IOU: no data (this field size is zero) • I/O Controllers: List of locGUIDs - thus the length of this component is 8n Bytes where n = ObjectList Count. • Service Objects: List of locGUID+ServiceObjectID tuples - thus the length of this component is 16n Bytes where n = ObjectListCount

The DA uses this attribute to inform hosts that a diagnostic session has been requested.

The DA sends a DevAdmReport(DiagNotice) to the IORM of each affected client platform setting the DiagPriority component to inform the IORM what options the IORM has to reject or delay the diagnostic session (see [Table 505](#)). The Acknowledge component identifies the willingness of the IORM to accept the diagnostic session. *Acknowledge* and *WaitDelay* are the only components that the IORM may modify when it returns the attribute in the DevAdmReportResp(DiagNotice).

The DA sets the Acknowledge component to zero and the IORM may change it in the response to reject the session or request more time (if DiagPriority permits). See [DiagPriority](#) component above and [Table 505 on page 1666](#) for IORM options in responding to the DevAdmReport(DiagNotice). If the IORM indicates WAIT, then the IORM also sets the *WaitDelay* component to tell the DA how long it should wait before asking again. If the client needs more than 255 msec, it sets *WaitDelay* to 0xFF. The DA continues to send a DevAdmReport() until the IORM indicates 'OK to perform diagnostics' (or reject).

Most of the information comes from the DevMgtSet(DiagSession). The DA only lists devices that are assigned⁵² to the client platform and are listed in the DiagSession ObjectList. If the DiagSession lists I/O modules, then the DA has to convert the module list to a list of IOCs. If the DiagSession specifies more IOCs or Service Objects than will fit in the DiagNotice attribute, the DA sends multiple single packet Report(DiagNotice) MADs.

A7.6.3.9 RESETNOTICE

The DA uses the DevAdmReport(ResetNotice) to inform IORMs before it issues a reset to an IOU. The reset can be for a specific IOC or the entire IOU.

Table 507 ResetNotice Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
IouGUID	RO	0	64	The CA GUID of the IOU being reset or the IOU containing the IOC being reset.
ResetPriority	RO	64	4	See Table 505 on page 1666
Acknowledge	R/W	68	4	In the DevAdmReportResp(): 0h=OK to perform Reset 1h=REJECT, critical resource, etc. 2h=WAIT, need time to acquiesce operation In the DevAdmReport(), this field is set to zero and ignored

52. Assigned means the IOC or Service Object is listed in a Platform Pool Table record or in a Client Pool Table record for which the DA has provided the IORM a Supervisor_Key or Client_Key.

Table 507

ResetNotice Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
WaitDelay	R/W	72	8 bits	Set to zero in the DevAdmReport() and if the IORM responds with an Acknowledge value of WAIT, the IORM sets this component to the number of milliseconds that the DA should wait before it resends the request. For each DevAdmReport() the IORM may request more time.
reserved	RO	80	48	reserved
ResetType	RO	128	4	Reset Type that will be specified in the DevMgtSet(Reset) to the IOU. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0b - Graceful Reset - Shutdown and Reset. The IOU/IOC completes outstanding commands, closes files etc., then resets. • 1b - Immediate Reset - The IOU will perform the reset immediately.
ResetScope	RO	132	2	Scope of reset that will be specified in the DevMgtSet(Reset) to the IOU. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 00 - default (IOU determines scope of reset) 01 - Reset only software 10 - Reset only hardware 11 - Reset both hardware and software
reserved	RO	136	104	reserved
locGUID	RO	240	16	Specifies the IOC GUID of the IOC that will be reset. A value of zero indicates that the entire IOU will be reset.

The DA uses this attribute to inform hosts that it will issue a Reset to the specified IOU. The DA only sends the DevAdmReport(ResetNotice) to IORMs that will be affected⁵³ by the reset and have subscribed for the ResetNotice.

CA7-78: Before the DM sends a DevMgtSet(Reset) to an IOU, the DA shall issue a DevAdmReport(ResetNotice) to each client platform that satisfies the following requirements (a) the platform has been assigned a service object that will be affected by the reset, (b) the client platform subscribed for *Reset Notification*, and (c) a GID of the IOU matches the InformInfo:GID or the IOU has a LID that falls in the range of the InformInfo: LIDRangeBegin – LIDRangeEnd.

CA7-79: The DA shall not issue a DevAdmReport(ResetNotice) to a client platform unless at least one of the affected IOCs' service objects are listed in a PlatformPoolRecord for which the client platform has been given the Supervisor_Key or listed in a ClientPoolRecord for which the client platform has been given the Client_Key.

53. Affected means the IOC is listed in a Platform Pool Table record or in a Client Pool Table record for that client platform.

The DA sends a DevAdmReport(ResetNotice) to the IORM of each affected client platform setting the ResetPriority component to inform the IORM what options the IORM has to reject or delay the Reset (see [Table 505](#)). The Acknowledge component in the response identifies the willingness of the IORM to accept the Reset. *Acknowledge* and *WaitDelay* are the only components that the IORM may modify when it returns the attribute in the DevAdmReportResp(ResetNotice).

The DA sets the Acknowledge component to zero and the IORM may change it in the response to reject the Reset or request more time (if ResetPriority permits). See [ResetPriority](#) component above and [Table 505 on page 1666](#) for IORM options in responding to the DevAdmReport(ResetNotice). If the IORM indicates WAIT, then the IORM also sets the *WaitDelay* component to tell the DA how long it should wait before asking again. If the client needs more than 255 msec, it sets *WaitDelay* to 0xFF. The DA continues to send a DevAdmReport() until the IORM indicates OK to Reset (or reject).

A7.7 COMPLIANCE

In order to claim compliance to Configuration Management a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section.

A7.7.1 COMPLIANCE CATEGORIES

This annex specifies two compliance categories: Configuration Manager and I/O Client. The Device Management Annex specifies the requirements for an I/O unit.

In order to claim compliance to Configuration Management a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

Table 508 Configuration Management Compliance Categories/Qualifiers

Category	Qualifiers	Description
CFM	none	Minimum requirements for a Configuration Manager
	PERS	Requirements for a manager that persistently saves client contexts such as subscriptions and diagnostic sessions across reset, restarts, and power cycles.
	FAILOVER	Requirements for a manager that supports graceful failover such that if the manager fails and a standby manager takes over, the new manager inherits the client context (subscriptions and diagnostic sessions) from the old manager.
Client Platform	none	Minimum requirements for client platforms

A7.7.2 CONFIGURATION MANAGER COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of Configuration Manager, a product shall provide a Device Manager and Device Administrator that meet all requirements specified in this section and in [A7.7.4 "Common Management Requirements" on page 1672](#).

● CA7-1:	Special Q_Key required	Page 1621
● CA7-2:	Register with the SA	Page 1621
● CA7-3:	When SA rejects the Device Manager	Page 1621
● CA7-4:	Renew SA registration lease	Page 1621
● CA7-5:	DMs with same ConfigGroupID work in unison	Page 1622
● CA7-6:	Claiming IOUs	Page 1622
● CA7-7:	DM and DA paired,	Page 1622
● CA7-8:	Ceasing being the Master DM.	Page 1622
● CA7-9:	Ceasing being the Master DA	Page 1622
● CA7-12:	DevMgt MADs conform to DevMgt format	Page 1623
● CA7-13:	Datagrams Follow Common MAD Use	Page 1623
● CA7-14:	Response to the MADHeader:ClassVersion	Page 1623
● CA7-15:	No MADHeader:BtM_Key checking	Page 1623
● CA7-16:	Reset the BtM_Key lease period	Page 1625
● CA7-17:	Configure IOU Trap info	Page 1625
● CA7-18:	Generating a DevMgtTrapRepresst()	Page 1625
● CA7-19:	Generating a DevMgtReport() for each trap	Page 1626
● CA7-20:	Generating a DevMgtReport() for priveledged traps	Page 1626
● CA7-20.2.1:	Rejecting subscription for policy	Page 1626
● CA7-21:	Generating a DevMgtReport() for NQ illegal	Page 1626
● CA7-22:	Report Traps in order	Page 1627
● CA7-23:	Only 1 outstanding Report() per IOU	Page 1627
● oA7-1:	PERS: DM persistent subscriptions	Page 1628
● oA7-2:	PERS: DM storing subscription info	Page 1628
● oA7-3:	FAILOVER: DM Sharing subscription w/Stby DMs	Page 1629
● oA7-4:	FAILOVER: Sharing subscription info w/Stby DMs	Page 1629
● CA7-24:	DA retrying Report()s	Page 1629
● CA7-25:	DA subscription time-out	Page 1629
● CA7-26:	DM Heartbeat initial notice generation (explicit)	Page 1630
● CA7-27:	Periodic DM Heartbeat notice generation	Page 1630
● CA7-28:	DM setting Fail-over bit in Heartbeat	Page 1630
● CA7-29:	DM Fail-over bit in Heartbeat sent one time	Page 1630
● CA7-30:	Claiming I/O Modules	Page 1632
● CA7-31:	Response to a Removal Trap	Page 1632
● CA7-32:	Initiating the Removal Process	Page 1633
● CA7-33:	Processing a Removal event	Page 1633
● CA7-34:	IOCs listed in a Removal Notice	Page 1633
● oA7-5:	PERS: DM storing Diag Session info	Page 1636
● oA7-6:	FAILOVER: Sharing Diag Session info w/Stby DMs	Page 1636
● CA7-35:	Processing a Diagnostic event	Page 1636
● CA7-36:	IOCs listed in a Diag report	Page 1636
● CA7-37:	DIAG Session invalid DevMgt class version 1	Page 1637
● CA7-38:	Filtering on RequesterID	Page 1639
● oA7-7:	PERS: DA persistent subscriptions	Page 1642
● oA7-8:	FAILOVER: DA Sharing subscription info w/Stby DAs	Page 1642
● CA7-40:	DA retrying Report()s	Page 1642
● CA7-41:	DA subscription time-out	Page 1642
● CA7-42:	Reporting configuration changes (S_KeyInfo)	Page 1643
● CA7-43:	Reporting configuration changes (C_KeyInfo)	Page 1643
● CA7-44:	Detecting IOUs coming on-line	Page 1643
● CA7-45:	Detecting IOCs comming on-line	Page 1643
● CA7-46:	Reporting IOCs on-line	Page 1643
● CA7-47:	Detecting IOUs going off-line	Page 1644
● CA7-48:	Reporting IOCs off-line	Page 1644
● CA7-49:	Resource Allocation Change notification	Page 1644

● CA7-50:	Detecting hot plug removal request	Page 1645
● CA7-51:	DA Hearbeat initial notice generation (explicit)	Page 1646
● CA7-52:	DA Hearbeat initial notice generation (implicit)	Page 1646
● CA7-53:	Periodic DA Hearbeat notice generation	Page 1646
● CA7-54:	DA Setting Failover in Heartbeat	Page 1646
● CA7-55:	DA Fail-over bit in Heartbeat sent one time	Page 1646
● CA7-56:	DevAdm MADs conform to specified format	Page 1647
● CA7-57:	Reserved field set to zero/unmodified	Page 1648
● CA7-58:	Reserved fields shall be ignored	Page 1648
● CA7-59:	MAD Header valid Status	Page 1648
● CA7-60:	MAD Header reject Status	Page 1648
● CA7-61:	Required Methods	Page 1649
● CA7-62:	Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol	Page 1649
● CA7-63:	Invalid RMPP types	Page 1650
● CA7-64:	Reject requests that contain more than one packet	Page 1650
● CA7-65:	Identify a platform by its GUID	Page 1650
● CA7-66:	Login Validation	Page 1650
● CA7-67:	Non-sequential RequesterID	Page 1650
● CA7-68:	Reject a DevAdmGet() with an invalid RequesterID	Page 1650
● CA7-69:	Default RequesterID acceptance	Page 1651
● CA7-70:	Use the default MADHeader:RequesterID	Page 1651
● CA7-71:	Ignore ComponentMask in non-RMPP MADs	Page 1651
● CA7-72:	Ignore ComponentMask bits that are not defined	Page 1651
● CA7-73:	Filtering on ComponentMask	Page 1651
● CA7-74:	ComponentMask in the response	Page 1652
● oA7-9:	PERS: DA persistent subscriptions	Page 1658
● oA7-10:	FAILOVER: DA Sharing subscription info w/Stby DAs	Page 1658
● CA7-75:	Reject inappropriate RequesterID	Page 1661
● CA7-76:	Invalidated RequesterIDs	Page 1661
● oA7-11:	PERS: DA saving LogIn info	Page 1661
● oA7-12:	FAILOVER: DA Sharing Login info w/Stby managers	Page 1661
● CA7-78:	Processing a IOU/IOC reset	Page 1669
● CA7-79:	ResetNotice only sent to affected clients	Page 1669
● CA8-1:	Datagrams conform to DevMgt format	Page 1697
● CA8-2:	Datagrams Follow Common MAD Use	Page 1698
● CA8-3:	Response to the MADHeader:ClassVersion	Page 1699

A7.7.3 I/O CLIENT COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of I/O Client, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section and in [A7.7.4 "Common Management Requirements" on page 1672](#).

● CA7-10:	Using IOU service objects	Page 1622
● CA7-11:	Waits before deciding passive management	Page 1623
● CA7-12:	DevMgt MADs conform to DevMgt format	Page 1623
● CA7-13:	Datagrams Follow Common MAD Use	Page 1623
● CA7-39:	Response to a DevAdmReport()	Page 1641
● CA7-56:	DevAdm MADs conform to specified format	Page 1647
● CA7-57:	Reserved field set to zero/unmodified	Page 1648
● CA7-58:	Reserved fields ignored	Page 1648
● CA7-77:	Using the default RequesterID	Page 1661

A7.7.4 COMMON MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

All managers and agents must be compliant with the Common MAD requirements specified in 20.14 and the following general management framework requirements from Chapter 13.

● C13-27.1.1:Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798	1
● C13-30.1.1:Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802	2
● C13-31: Obsolete	Page 811	3
● o13-5.1.1:Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812	4
● C13-32.1.1:Manager with Notice attribues must do forwarding	Page 815	5
● o13-12: Obsolete	Page 815	6
● o13-12.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815	7
● C13-32.2.1:Ignore duplicate subscriptions.	Page 815	8
● o13-13: Obsolete	Page 815	9
● o13-13.1.1:Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815	10
● o13-14: Obsolete	Page 815	11
● o13-14.1.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816	12
● C13-32.2.2:Must verify all subscriptions.	Page 816	13
● o13-15: Obsolete	Page 816	14
● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure	Page 816	15
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816	16
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816	17
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817	18
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding.	Page 817	19
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817	20
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817	21
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	22
		23
		24
		25
		26
		27
		28
		29
		30
		31
		32
		33
		34
		35
		36
		37
		38
		39
		40
		41
		42

ANNEX A8: DEVICE MANAGEMENT

A8.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex in conjunction with [Annex A7: Configuration Management](#) defines the framework for managing I/O units and assigning I/O Unit resources to client platforms. This annex specifies the Device Management class and the requirements for an I/O unit to support Device Management (i.e., requirements for the Device Management Agent). The Configuration Management annex describes the overall configuration management framework, specifies the Device Administration Class, and specifies the requirements for a configuration management application that configures the I/O Unit (i.e., the Device Manager) and administers privileged configuration information to client platforms (i.e., the Device Administrator).

This annex specifies an enhanced Device Management class for managing I/O resources of an I/O unit and thus this annex specifies version 2 of the Device Management class which supersedes version 1 specified in Chapter 16 section 16.3.

The Device Management (DevMgt) class provides the means to manage an I/O unit and its I/O services. This class specifies formats for Device Management packets and the protocol for sending and receiving those packets between two IB endnodes, typically between an HCA of a client platform and a TCA of an I/O unit and between an HCA of the Device Manager and an I/O unit. To facilitate this, a managed I/O unit provides a DevMgt Agent that manages I/O unit attributes and configuration information.

I/O units are capable of providing I/O service to multiple clients. IB partitioning enforces isolation among systems sharing an InfiniBand fabric, but does not provide partitioning of the resources within a node. Device Management in conjunction with Device Administration (the service used to administer configuration information, see [Annex A7: Configuration Management](#)), and Communication Management (CM; see Chapter 12i) together extend the IB Architecture to provide enforceable assignment of I/O resources to multiple clients.

This annex describes the mechanism for a Device Manager to configure the IOU with the information necessary for the I/O unit to limit and control access to its services and resources on a client by client basis, thus enabling multiple platforms to use separate I/O devices located in the same I/O unit without interfering with one another.

This annex defines the wire-level interface to the DevMgt Agent and a wire-level protocol that provides a way to discover I/O service objects, configure those objects for particular clients, and provide information to clients necessary for those clients to access their service objects. The DevMgt class also provides a means for clients to invoke and manage diagnostics.

Support for Device Management is optional (i.e., not all nodes contain a DevMgt agent). A node that contains a DevMgt agent is considered a managed I/O unit. This annex addresses managed I/O units and the entities that access them.

A8.1.1 GLOSSARY

[Annex A7: Configuration Management](#) defines additional glossary terms used in this annex.

A8.1.2 COMPLIANCE

This annex specifies a new Compliance Category. See [Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary on page 1241](#) for explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers. The new category is DevMgt Agent.

The Compliance Qualifiers for DevMgt Agent are:

- V1: Backward compatibility with class version 1.
- HOT: Hot plug/removal of I/O modules

Section [A8.9 Compliance on page 1792](#) provides a summary of compliance statements for a DevMgt Agent.

A8.1.3 GOALS AND OBJECTIVES

This annex revises Device Management as follows:

- 1) Enhanced Device Management for enterprise class I/O
 - Separates definition of I/O subassembly module from I/O controller and allows multiple IOCs per subassembly slot.
 - Adds support for hot removal of I/O subassemblies
 - Allows I/O units and I/O controllers to support multiple protocols. These protocols include management protocols as well as I/O protocols.
 - Provides a means to identify a range of protocol versions supported.
 - Object oriented - adds the notion of service objects and provides for their identification, identification of their properties, protocols and protocol properties, and the ServiceIDs for accessing service objects.

- Provides clearer separation between I/O objects, their protocol, and the information needed to access the I/O object. 1
 - Adds Vendor ID and Description information to IOUnitInfo. 2
 - Removes fields that were not applicable. 3
- 2) Aligns DevMgt with configuration management. 4
- Provides enforceable control of resources within an I/O unit where multiple clients share the same I/O unit. 5
 - Supports both passive and active configuration management 6
- 3) Supports both simple and elaborate I/O Unit implementations 7
- The bounds and limitations of this annex are: 8
- 13
- 1) Managing & configuring I/O devices behind the IOC, such as LUN mapping and other I/O protocol-specific attributes are the responsibility of I/O management protocols and are outside the scope of Device Management. However, Device Management does provide the means to advertise which I/O management protocols the IOU/IOC supports. 14
 - 2) DevMgt does not mandate how I/O devices are mapped to I/O service objects. The relationship can be physical, logical, or virtual. For example: 15
 - a) Secondary I/O ports could be mapped as I/O Service Objects; for this case, the client uses one channel (or one set of channels) to access all I/O devices accessible through that port. 16
 - b) Each I/O device attached to the secondary fabric could be mapped as an I/O Service Object; for this case, the client uses one channel (or a set of channels) for each I/O device - that is each I/O device has its own QP (or set of QPs). 17
 - c) There could be virtual and logical service objects (one to many, many to one, and many to many mappings between I/O service objects and I/O devices). 18

A8.2 OVERVIEW

The primary goals of Device Management (DevMgt) are to provide information about an I/O Unit (IOU) and its service objects and to provide enforceable access of service objects by client platforms. A service object is a port through which a client can access or manage I/O devices. Thus, each service object has its own set of QPs.

A8.2.1 USAGE MODEL

Device Management is used by a number of different entities. These include the Device Manager (DM), I/O resource manager (IORM), I/O client,

and I/O management application (see [Figure 317 "Device Management Usage Model" on page 1677](#) and [Figure 319 "I/O Components and Relationships" on page 1684](#)).

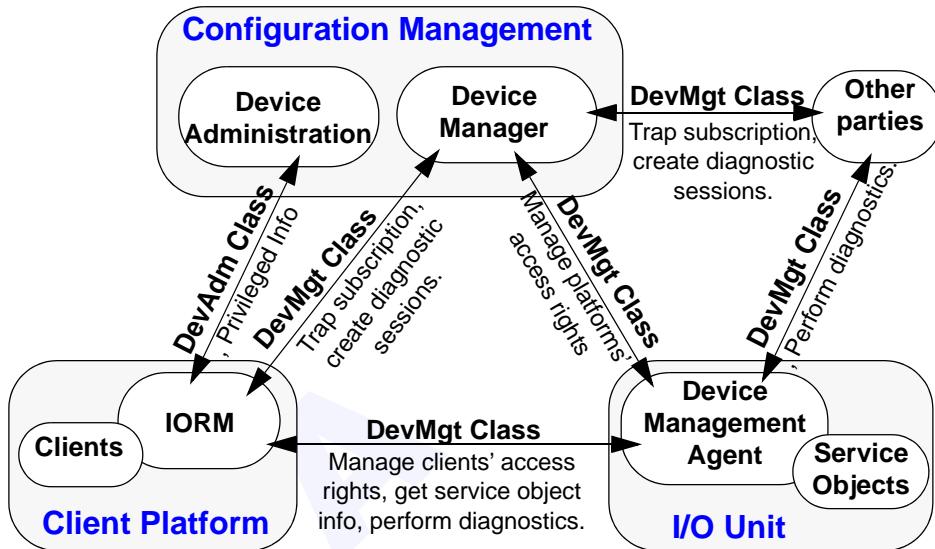


Figure 317 Device Management Usage Model

Device Management provides the means for a DM to provision IOU resources and allocate them on a per client platform basis. This provides the client platform's IORM the ability to subdivide IOU resources allocated to that platform to individual clients based on OS policy.

A8.2.1.1 DEVICE MANAGER (DM)

The Device Management class provides mechanisms (methods and attributes) to enable a DM to set and retrieve I/O device specific information from I/O units.

A DM is a management entity that sets Device Management attributes of an I/O unit (i.e., sends a `DevMgtSet()` to a DevMgt agent). Only the DM has access to all of the IOU's attributes. To enforce this, Device Management class provides a Device Manager's key (*Manager_Key*) that restricts `DevMgtSet()` operations for certain attributes to authorized managers, i.e., those who know the *Manager_Key*.

The manager key allows the DM to create *Platform Resource Pools* and *Client Resource Pools*. These pools are referred to as Platform Pool Table Records and Client Pool Table Records. The DM uses a Platform Pool Record to specify which resources a particular platform may use and the platform's IORM uses Client Pool Records to assign those resources to individual clients.

1 Each *Platform Resource Pool* (i.e., *Platform Pool Record*) is identified by
2 a unique *Supervisor_Key* and each *Client Resource Pool* (i.e., *Client Pool*
3 *Record*) is identified by a unique *Client_Key*. The manager associates
4 each client pool to a specific *Supervisor_Key*. The manager provides the
5 *Supervisor_Key* to the specific client platform (i.e., the platform's IORM).
6 This permits an IORM with the correct *Supervisor_Key* to assign IOU re-
7 sources specified in that Platform Pool Record to client resource pools.
8 When the IORM passes a *Client_key* to one of its clients, that key enables
9 the client to access the I/O resources specified by that client pool record.

9
10 Management applications and I/O clients also access IOU information via
11 DevMgt class MADs (i.e., read attributes) but the DM and the IORM are
12 the only ones that may program the IOU. This programming specifies
13 which service object a client may see and use.

14 It is not always necessary to have a DM. “*Passive configuration management*”
15 is the term used when a fabric is designed to function without a DM.
16 Passive configuration management is typical in a subnet where each IOU
17 is dedicated to a single client platform (i.e., each IOU configured for a
18 single partition containing one I/O client platform) or where all clients in
19 that partition have equal access to all of the IOU’s resources. Except for
20 the most trusted environments, a DM is needed when IOUs are divided
21 among multiple clients.

22 In general, a Device Manager:

- 23 • Uses DevMgt to learn what I/O service objects are available, so they
24 can be assigned to client platforms. DevMgt supplies the DM with in-
25 formation about service objects, such as number clients the service
26 object supports as well as the number and type of QPs that an I/O
27 object uses to communicate with a client.
- 28 • Uses DevMgt to configure each IOU as to which client platforms are
29 authorized to see and use which service objects.
- 30 • Configure IOUs to send DevMgt traps to the DM. The DM forwards
31 those traps to nodes that have subscribed for them.
- 32 • Controls Diagnostic Sessions on each IOU, including the ability to re-
33 set the IOU and I/O controllers.

35 In contrast, for passive device management, any client platform that can
36 access an I/O unit (i.e., is assigned a common P_Key) has complete ac-
37 cess to all of the IOU’s Device Management information and I/O re-
38 sources.

39 An IOU defaults to passive configuration management mode, but is
40 placed in active configuration management mode by virtue of a DM setting
41 the IOU’s Manager_Key and programming the IOU’s pool tables.

Client Platforms and other managers use Device Management to subscribe to the DM to receive reports when IOUs generate Device Management Traps and to establish (via the DM) a Diagnostic Session so it can invoke diagnostics on an IOU or IOC. Note that the diagnostic application requests a diagnostic session via the DM, but performs diagnostics directly with the IOU.

The Device Management framework supports the concept of multiple DMs but for an IOU, there is only one logical DM. That is, the one that knows the IOU's Manager's key. Thus, an IOU does not distinguish between DMs and accepts any MAD containing the proper Manager_Key as coming from an authorized DM. The DM programs each of the IOU's ports where to send traps. Even though each port's ClassPortInfo can specify a different trap destination, a valid TrapRepress() received on any port represses that trap for all ports.

A8.2.1.2 I/O RESOURCE MANAGER

An I/O Resource Manager (IORM) is the component of an operating system that supervises I/O resources for that platform. An IORM uses DevAdm class (see Configuration Management Annex) to query the Device Administrator associated with the DM to learn the platform's Supervisor Key and list of IOUs. It then queries the IOU using DevMgt to discover which I/O resources (i.e., I/O service objects) are available to that platform and characteristics about them that enables the IORM to load an I/O driver that executes the appropriate I/O protocol (see "I/O Drivers" in Annex A1).

An IOU uses the Supervisor_Key to distinguish between IORMs and accepts any MAD containing a valid Supervisor_Key as coming from that client platform.

When an IORM sends DevMgtGet()s to an IOU, it provides its Supervisor_Key, and the information that the IOU returns is dependent on how the DM configured the platform pool record that has that Supervisor_Key.

The IORM, as the node's supervisor, can discover how many Client Pool Records are assigned to the client platform, and can configure them specifying which service objects and the resources (such as the number of QPs) that a client using that Client_Key is permitted to consume.

A8.2.1.3 I/O CLIENT

An I/O client is the entity that actually communicates with an I/O object using an I/O protocol. The IOU has Client Pool Records to manage what a client can see and use. Each Client Pool Record has a unique Client_Key and is assigned to a particular platform. The platform's IORM configures Client Pool Records to specify client access rights that deter-

mine which service objects a client using that Client_Key can see and access, and then makes the Client_Key known to the client.

An IOU uses the Client_Key to distinguish between clients and accepts any MAD containing a valid Client_Key as coming from that client.

When an I/O client sends DevMgtGet()s to an IOU, it provides its Client_Key, and the information that the IOU returns is dependent on how the IORM configured the Client Pool Record that has that Client_Key.

The I/O client uses DevMgt to find connection parameters, such as the ServiceID, that it needs to establish communication (i.e., establish RC, UC, RD, and/or UD channels) with the service object. Once the I/O client establishes communications, it uses those channels to exchange I/O protocol packets with the I/O service object.

The client uses its Client_Key when setting up channels (e.g., passing its Client_Key in CM MADs or in an I/O protocol specific login sequence after the channel is established). The CM, DevMgt Agent, and Service Objects work together to enforce the I/O access rights of a client by searching for the Client_Key in the Client Pool Table. If the Client_Key is found, then that record specifies the resources for the client. The CM denies the connection (e.g., CM:REJ) if the Client_Key is not found, the client is not authorized for the service object, or making the connection would cause a maximum allocation level to be exceeded.

A8.2.1.4 I/O MANAGEMENT APPLICATION

An I/O management application is an entity that manages I/O properties of an I/O unit (such as to create, configure, destroy I/O service objects). The system administrator might wish to run such an application from its own machine rather than from the machine that is actually using the I/O services.

In addition to the IB management framework (which provides for vendor defined management classes using MADs), Device Management architecture provides for management protocols that don't use Vendor MADS.

Device Management architecture supports these additional management protocols because some IOCs, such as a RAID controller, may require extended management, where an I/O management application communicates with a management service object using a specific I/O management protocol to configure I/O device specific operation.

Device Management provides the means to advertise if an IOU or IOC supports a particular I/O management protocol. For each supported I/O management protocol, there will be a service object that identifies the I/O management protocol and provides connection information, such as the

ServicelID, that the management application uses to establish communications with that service object. The management application, as a client, is provided with a Client_Key and can only send DevMgtGet()s to the IOU's DevMgt Agent (that is, DevMgtSet()s are not permitted). The information that the IOU returns is dependent on how the Client Pool Record that has that Client_Key has been configured.

In addition, the IOU uses the Client_Key to validate that the client is authorized to access that management service object, such as requiring the management application to pass the key when creating a channel (e.g., in the CM message) or in a management protocol specific login sequence after the channel is created. Thus, the DM controls which nodes may perform I/O management using pool tables just like it does for controlling I/O service objects.

A8.2.2 I/O UNIT MODEL

This section explains the I/O unit service model on which Device Management is based.

An I/O unit contains one or more I/O controllers and associated service objects.

- An *I/O Controller* (IOC) is a circuit and/or process of an IOU that provides I/O service. That is, an IOC provides one or more I/O service objects.
- A *Service Object* refers to an instance of service that is addressed by its QPs (i.e., a client uses a different channel to communicate with each service object).
- I/O devices, such as disk drives, can be presented as individual service objects (i.e., each with its own QP) or as protocol objects behind a service object.
- Service objects that perform I/O are referred to as *I/O service objects*.
- Management agents on the IOU used to configure I/O service objects are also represented as service objects. They are referred to as *I/O management service objects*.

Although this annex uses language implying that an IOU "contains" IOCs, this annex does not specify packaging requirements. Thus, how IOCs are connected to an IOU is an implementation detail outside the scope of the architecture. [Figure 318 Model for an I/O Unit on page 1682](#) provides the architectural and connection model for an IOU, consisting of a CA and one or more IOCs.

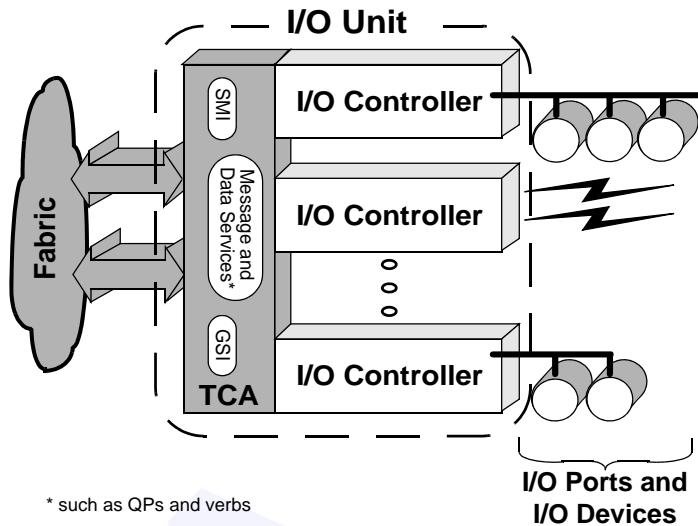


Figure 318 Model for an I/O Unit

An IOU attaches to the fabric via a CA. For I/O operation, the CA receives packets from the fabric and delivers complete, valid IBA messages to service objects, and vice-versa. The service object is then responsible for executing I/O requests contained in those messages, such as network sends and receives or disk reads and writes over a device-specific interface such as Ethernet, Parallel SCSI, Fibre Channel, or a proprietary interconnect.

The Device Management Agent is an IB management agent (as defined in Chapter 13) that resides behind the CA (i.e., behind the GSI) and interfaces with the IOU and its IOCs to manage I/O specific information. This annex focuses on the infrastructure, related methods, data formats, and attributes to support IOU/IOC management over the fabric. It uses the management framework specified in Chapter 13 to send and receive DevMgt packets to/from the DevMgt agent, but does not define the implementation-specific mechanisms necessary to translate MADs into a format that the IOU and IOCs understand, nor does it define how that data is delivered and retrieved from the IOU and IOCs.

The InfiniBand architecture is based on message passing. For an IOU and its service objects, the messages generally fall into three categories: fabric configuration, unit management/configuration, and I/O transaction:

- 1) Fabric configuration messages are processed by the Subnet Management Agent (SMA) and are defined in [Chapter 14: Subnet Management on page 865](#). They are not discussed in this Annex.
2) Messages specific to configuring and managing I/O properties of an I/O unit fall into two categories:
 - a) Generic DevMgt messages used to describe the IOU, IOC, and service objects, to control access to DevMgt information, and to perform diagnostics. These messages are received through the General Services Interface (GSI) and are described in this annex.
 - b) Implementation-specific I/O management messages used to create, configure, and destroy service objects. While implementation-specific management could use vendor class MADs and/or private vendor attributes, DevMgt also supports the notion of implementation-specific management outside the IB management framework. These messages are sent from I/O management applications to I/O management service objects of the IOU/IOC. The definition of these messages are outside the scope of this document. However, DevMgt provides the means to identify I/O management objects, the management protocol, and obtain information that permits a management application to create channels to those I/O management objects. In this annex, I/O management objects mean those implemented outside the IB management framework.
- 3) I/O transaction messages used for I/O transactions (such as disk reads and writes). I/O transaction messages include those messages used by an I/O client to request I/O services from a service object, messages containing user or application data, and messages used by the service object to provide a completion notification (ending status) to the requester. Definition of these messages are also outside the scope of this document. However, DevMgt provides the means to identify I/O service objects, their I/O protocol, and information that permits an I/O client to create channels to the service objects.

A8.2.3 DEVICE MANAGEMENT MODEL

[Figure 319 I/O Components and Relationships on page 1684](#) illustrates the relationships between the various entities and elements involved in I/O operations and management.

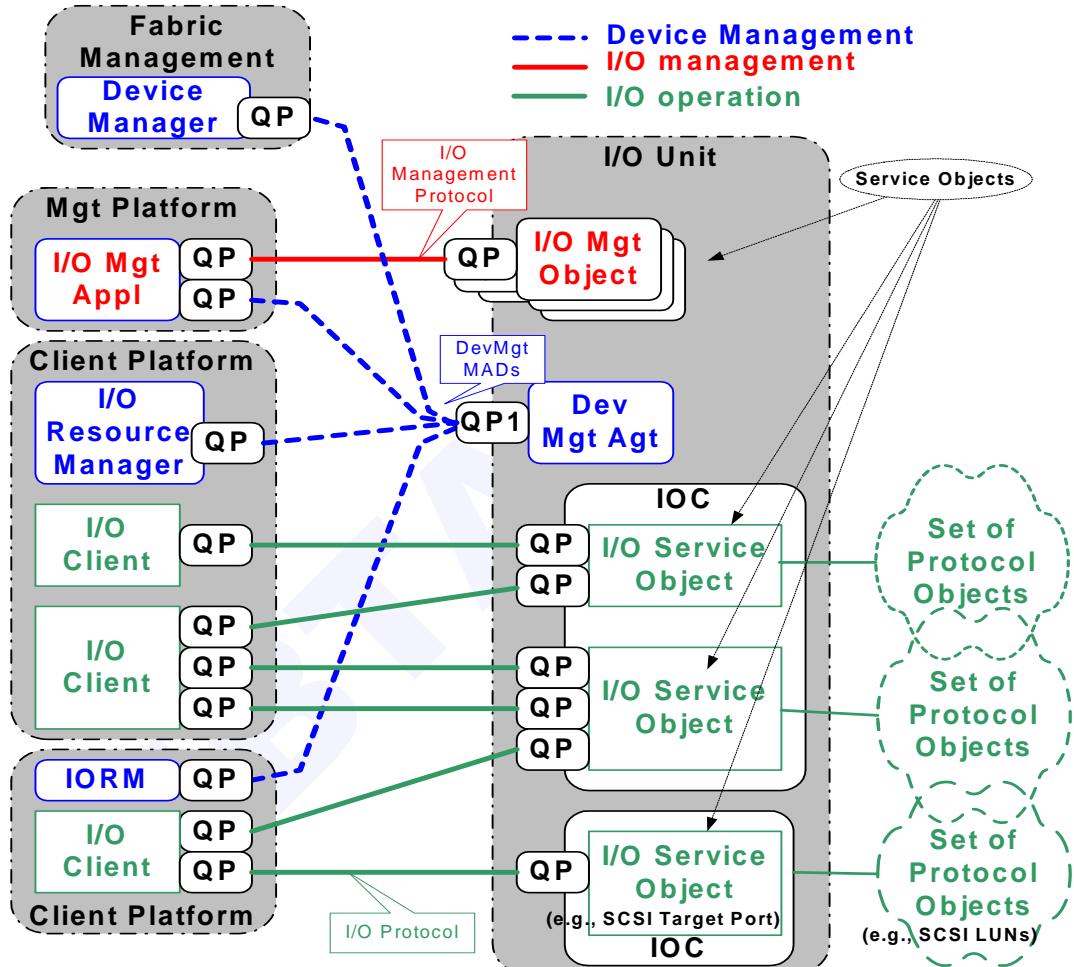


Figure 319 I/O Components and Relationships

Figure 319 illustrates that the Device Manager, I/O management applications, and client platforms access the DevMgt Agent via DevMgt MADs (blue dashed line). I/O management applications create channels to I/O management service objects (red line) that carry I/O management protocol messages and I/O clients create channels to I/O service objects (green heavy line) that carry I/O protocol messages.

Typically, an I/O client establishes a single channel with a service object. However, Device Management does not prohibit using multiple channels.

The set of protocol objects shown to the left behind an I/O service object illustrates that further division of services beyond the I/O service object is a function of the I/O protocol. An example of an I/O service object and its

protocol objects is a SCSI target port and its logical units. The difference between service objects and protocol objects are that service objects are discovered via Device Management (blue dashed line) and accessed via their QPs (green heavy line), while protocol objects are discovered and addressed via the I/O protocol over the channels provided by those QPs (green heavy lines). Thus, the service object is a port through which a client can access protocol objects.

Device Management encompasses several categories of management.

- Authority - provides for authentication, protection, and configuration of the I/O unit by a DM.
- Device Information - Provides the Device Manager, management applications, and I/O clients with information about the IOU and the services provided by each IOC. This includes information about the I/O protocols and management protocols supported by the IOU and each IOC.
- Device Assignment - provides the means for a DM to configure client access rights to I/O objects.
- Device Diagnostics - provides the means to control the execution of diagnostics on various components of an I/O unit and report their results.
- Physical hot plug management - DevMgt supports the concept of physical subassemblies (I/O modules) which house IOCs and allow them to be inserted and removed from the I/O unit. The architecture supports up to 256 I/O module slots per IOU with any number of IOCs per slot and any number of service objects per IOC.

A8.2.3.1 AUTHORITY

The DevMgt class provides for both passive and active device management models. Passive management refers to only using partitions to limit access to an IOU, while clients in that partition share access to all of the IOU's resources. Thus, a DM is not necessary for passive management. Passive management is generally appropriate when an IOU is assigned to a single client platform (e.g., all ports of the IOU are configured for a single partition and there is only one client platform performing I/O that is a member of that partition). It is also appropriate when it is acceptable for all clients to have access rights to all of the IOU's service objects.

Active management refers to the presence of a DM, which takes charge of the IOU and configures the IOU as to which clients may access which service objects. Active device management is valuable where multiple client platforms need access to a particular IOU, but not the same service objects. Active device management can prevent one platform from disturbing or impacting the ability of other clients to perform I/O by restricting an I/O object so it can be accessed only by critical clients.

To facilitate active management, DevMgt class provides for a Device Manager's Key that can be set by the Device Manager. Only a manager with the correct key is able to set critical DevMgt attributes. This includes the ability to set trap info in ClassPortInfo, create /modify Supervisor_Keys and Client_Keys, assign resources to platform pools, and create diagnostic sessions.

The default settings for a DevMgt agent enable passive management. This means that the IOU is not protected (i.e. Manager_Key=0) and any node in the IOU's partitions can access any of the IOU's service objects. Configuring an IOU for active management implies setting the agent's Manager_Key to a non-zero value. As long as management sets the Manager_Key before programming the IOU's I/O partitions, client platforms will only see IOUs that are actively managed. Thus, when an IOU comes on-line, the subnet manager should insure that the IOU's DevMgt Agent is configured before assigning P_Keys to the IOU.

A8.2.3.2 DEVICE INFORMATION

A primary purpose of DevMgt is to enable communication between clients and their service objects and prevent a client from accessing a service object for which it is not configured. This allows enterprise class IOUs to support multiple clients and provides a standard architected method of enforcing which clients may access which I/O Objects.

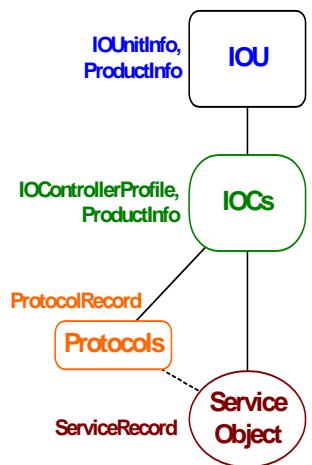
- I/O management applications can discover I/O management objects. A management application uses DevMgt to discover if the IOU/IOC supports its management protocol, and if so, uses DevMgt information to connect to the I/O management object. Via that channel, the management application performs I/O-specific and device-specific management functions such as creating, destroying, or configuring I/O service objects. Thus, DevMgt provides the means for the IOU and IOC to advertise the presence of I/O management objects, identify the I/O management protocol, and provides information necessary for an I/O management application to access the appropriate management object.
- IORMs and I/O clients discover I/O service objects and associated properties. DevMgt provides the means to discover I/O service objects, identify the I/O protocols they support, and retrieve the information (such as Service ID) necessary for the client to access the object.

DevMgt uses a hierarchy of information in managing device information as illustrated in [Figure 320](#).

The IOU is the parent object that has one or more IOCs. Each IOC can support multiple protocols and can have multiple service objects that are accessible by one or more of these protocols.

DevMgt defines a number of attributes that describe the IOU, the IOCs, protocols, service objects and the channels for accessing the service objects. In the figure, attributes are shown next to its associated object illustrating the relationship.

- There is an IOUnitInfo attribute that provides information about the IOU in general and indicates the number of I/O modules (i.e., number and status of slots in the IOU). The IOU can provide an optional ProductInfo attribute that supplies additional product specific information about the IOU.
- The IOControllerProfile attribute provides information about an IOC. There is one attribute record for each IOC. An IOC is identified by its locGUID. The IOC can provide an optional ProductInfo attribute that supplies additional product specific information about the IOC.
- The ProtocolRecord attribute specifies the characteristics of an I/O service protocol or an I/O management protocol. For each protocol that an IOC supports, there is one ProtocolRecord attribute. A protocol can be identified by its protocol name or its protocol ID.
- The ServiceRecord attribute provides the ServiceID a client needs for communicating with a service object via a specific protocol. A service object is uniquely identified by the combination of its locGUID plus its ServiceObjectID. There is at least one ServiceRecord attribute record for each service object and can be more if the service object supports multiple protocols.



[Figure 320](#) Data Hierarchy

A8.2.3.3 DEVICE ASSIGNMENT

Device Management provides the means for a DM to configure the IOU as to which platforms may access which service objects and limit certain IOU resources (such as IOU QPs) that the platforms may consume. It also allows the platform's supervisor to allocate those resources to particular clients.

The IOU asserts access control at two levels. One is the ability to restrict certain Device Management information to specified supervisors and clients. The other is to restrict access to the service to only those clients that have been permitted access. That is, allowing a client to make a connection with the service object only if the client resource pool with that client's Client_Key specifies the service object and the client has not exceeded its IOU-QP allotment.

A8.2.3.3.1 RESOURCE ALLOCATION

The IOU maintains a table of platform pool records. Each *PlatformPoolRecord* specifies the set of service objects that the platform may use and the resources (such as number of IOU QPs) that the platform may consume. Each record is identified by a unique Supervisor_Key. Only the DM can modify a PlatformPoolRecord. Once the platform knows its Supervisor_Key, it can read its PlatformPoolRecord to learn of its resources.

The IOU also maintains a table of client pool records. Each *ClientPoolRecord* specifies the set of service objects that the client may use and the resources (such as number of IOU QPs) that the client may consume. Each record is identified by a unique Client_Key. The record also specifies the Supervisor_Key of the platform that may modify the client pool. Only the DM can create a ClientPoolRecord, change the Client_Key and change the Supervisor_Key. The supervisor may modify a ClientPoolRecord, but can only assign resources allocated to the platform by the platform's PlatformPoolRecord.

When a client attempts to make a connection with a service object, the DevMgt agent only permits the connection if the ClientPoolRecord indicates that the client is authorized to access the service object and the client has not exceeded its authorized resources.

A Client learns its Client_Key from its IORM. An IORM learns its Supervisor_Key from the DA associated with the DM. For passive man-

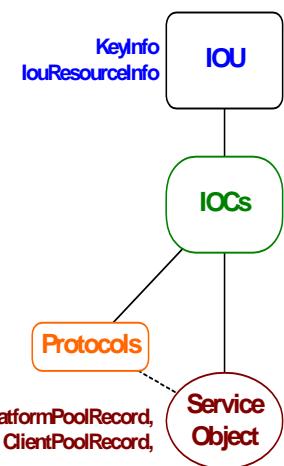


Figure 321 DeviceAssignment Attributes

agement (when there is no DM), the platform uses the default Supervisor_Key value of zero. Note that a node that boots different operating systems or boots up for different purposes might be given a different Supervisor_Key for each OS or each purpose, such that the Supervisor_Key controls which I/O resources the node may access.

The DevMgt Agent uses the Access_Key in the MAD header to determine which resources that the requestor is allowed to access and thus what information that the DevMgt Agent returns.

A8.2.3.3.2 QP ALLOCATION

The concept is that the DM assigns resources to platforms (such as reserving a number of IOU QPs for a platform and limiting the maximum number of IOU QPs the platform may use) and then the platform's supervisor assigns those resources to clients (within the bounds of the resources the DM assigned to the platform). See [A8.4 Resource Allocation Framework on page 1773](#) for details.

The IOU's QPs are represented as a general pool of QPs which can be reserved for client platforms or available on a 'first come' basis. The DM specifies a minimum (Platform QPmin) and a maximum (Platform QPmax) number of IOU QPs for each client platform as illustrated in [Figure 328 Allocating Resource Pools on page 1774](#). QPmin represents the number of QPs reserved for that platform. When the DM increases a platform's QPmin, the number of Free QPs in the general pool decreases and the number reserved increase. Thus, a portion of the general pool becomes reserved for specific platforms. FREE QPs are available to platforms on a first come first served basis as long as the platform has not reached its maximum limit.

A supervisor allocates QPs from its platform pool to client pools by specifying a minimum (Client QPmin) and a maximum (Client QPmax) number of IOU QPs for each client. The Client QPmin specifies QPs reserved for that client and the total number of QPs reserved for its clients cannot exceed the Platform QPmin (i.e., the number of QPs reserved for the platform).

As a client makes connections, the IOU uses QPs from the appropriate client pool. When a client has consumed all of the reserved QPs in its client pool (i.e., ClientQPmin), it may continue to consume additional QPs only if there are excess QPs available and the client pool has not reached its maximum limit. Thus, if the platform has un-allocated QPs (i.e., sum of clients QPmin is less than the platform's QPmin), then clients consume the platform's un-allocated QPs until they are exhausted. Once all the platform's un-allocated QPs are used, the clients may continue to consume available QPs from the general pool as long as the client's pool and the platform's pool have not reached their maximum limits. This means

that the number of reserved QPs plus additional QPs is less than QPmax both at a client level and at the platform level.

A8.2.3.3.3 SHARED POOLS

The architecture supports the notion of shared “resource pools”. This concept is useful when there are more client platforms than PlatformPoolRecords. The DM can configure a platform pool as shared and lock the associated ClientPoolRecords. This permits the same Supervisor_Key to be used by multiple platforms and prohibits those platforms from modifying the ClientPoolRecords. Those supervisors simply provide the Client_Key to one of its clients and all of the clients with that Client_Key may access the service object(s). The DM should create an individual ClientPoolRecord for each service object of a shared pool, so that the supervisors can control which of its clients use which service objects.

A8.2.3.3.4 CLIENT IDENTIFICATION AND DEFAULT POOLS

DevMgt MADs contain an Access_Key component, where the DM, supervisor, or client specifies its Manager_Key, Supervisor_Key, or Client_Key respectively. The DevMgt Agent uses the Access_Key to validate the requestor.

Clients also use Communication Management to establish communication and thus consume QPs. However, CM MADs do not contain an equivalent key component. Most I/O protocols require some form of validation, where client information is passed to the service object for validation. Some protocols pass the equivalent of the Client_Key in the PrivateData field of the CM MADs. Others pass the equivalent of the Client_Key over the connection, but before the client is allowed to access the service object (e.g., some form of Login). Because I/O protocols already have architected ways of passing this type information, this annex does not specify how the information is passed.

Since not all I/O protocols validate who the client is, there is a CMValidation bit in the ServiceRecord that identifies if the ServiceObject validates Client_Key when the client creates a connection (see [A8.3.3.7.1 CM Validation on page 1734](#) for more details).

- For the case where the service object does have the ability to validate, the service object uses the key passed to it by the client to determine which Client Pool to use in order to determine if the connection should be made.
- For the case where the service object does not have the ability to validate, it has no way to know the client's client_Key, and thus the DM needs to specify which client pool is used for connections to that service object. To do this the DM can set the DefaultPool bit in a ClientPoolRecord to indicate that record defines a special “Default Pool” for the service objects listed in that record's ServiceObjList.

Typically, the DM creates a default pool for each service object that does not set the CMValidation bit. That Client_Key is not given to supervisors nor clients. Rather the DM includes the service object in the PlatformPoolRecord for each platform that is authorized to use that service object. The only difference is that when clients connect to the service object, they do not consume QPs from their own client pool, but rather the service object consumes QPs from the DefaultPool (if available).

When the CMValidation bit is not set, Device Management still provides protection against unauthorized access because the platform (and its clients) cannot access the service record unless the service object is listed in the PlatformPoolRecord. Thus, the ServiceID can only be learned by an authorized client and since the client needs the ServiceID to make the connection, connections can only be made by authorized clients.

The CMValidation bit not being set only means that because the IOU cannot identify individual clients when making connections, those service objects use a default client pool, which limits the number of QPs all clients together may consume. Thus, the DM is not able to prevent one client from hogging all of those QPs. This does not effect QPs reserved for clients using services objects that do validate.

A8.2.3.3.5 PASSIVE MANAGEMENT

For passive management, the IOU defaults to a single shared Platform Pool record with Supervisor_Key=0, that includes all service objects, has a QPmin of 0, and a QPmax equal to or greater than the number of QPs in the general pool. This gives each platform full access to all of the IOU's information and service objects. The IOU also provides a set of Client Pools, one for each service object. Each Client Pools has a unique Client_Key arbitrarily chosen by the DevMgt agent.

A8.2.3.4 PHYSICAL MANAGEMENT**A8.2.3.4.1 MODULAR SUBASSEMBLIES**

Because I/O units might be built with modular subassemblies (I/O modules) that can be added or removed, Device Management provides the means to identify which IOCs are associated with an I/O module and the means to gracefully remove or replace I/O modules.

Each I/O module houses one or more IOCs. Removal of an I/O module means removal of all of the associated IOCs. Before an I/O module can be removed, I/O clients using those IOCs need to cease I/O operations. Device Management provides the means to identify which IOCs are associated with each I/O module, defines a trap for the IOU to request the removal of an I/O module, the means for the DM to signal that it is OK to remove module power and remove the module.

Each I/O module is represented by a slot number and the IOControllerProfile for each IOC identifies the slot to which the IOC is associated. The IOUnitInfo attribute specifies the number of slots and indicates if each slot is populated or not. The IOControllerProfile indicates with which slot the IOC is associated so that if an I/O module needs to be removed, powered down, or reset, the DM can determine which IOCs will be affected.

A8.2.3.4.2 GRACEFUL HOT REMOVAL

The IOU provides a SlotControlStatus attribute (one record for each slot) which provides the DM with the status of each slot and the means for the DM to control that I/O module's removal state.

Removable I/O modules contain a Remove switch, a Status LED that is normally ON when the module is in use, and an Attention LED. When an operator engages the Remove switch, the DevMgt Agent starts blinking the Status LED and sends a trap to the DM. When the DM receives the trap, the DA associated with the DM notifies the affected clients (see [A7.5.8: Graceful Hot Removal](#) in [Annex A7](#)). When the clients notify the device manager that they have ceased their I/O operation, the DM signals the IOU that it is ok to remove the I/O module and the IOU turns off the Status LED as an indication that the operator can safely remove the module. The DM can cancel the removal process, in which case the IOU turns the Status LED ON instead of OFF.

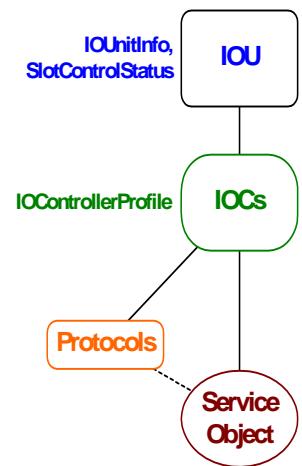


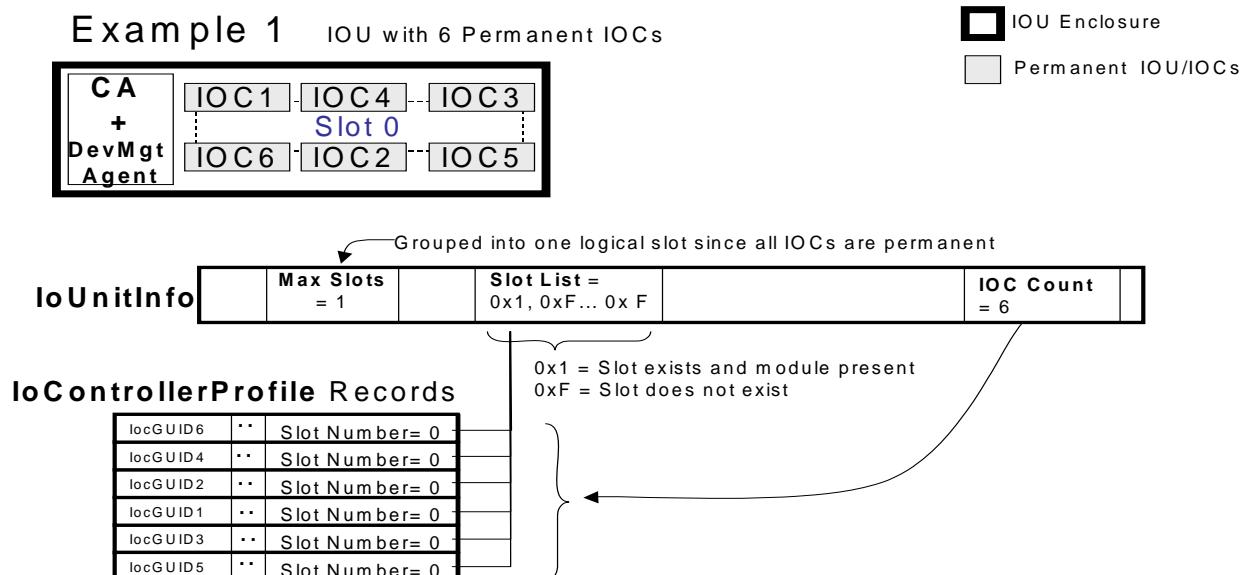
Figure 322 Physical Management Attributes

The DM can initiate the removal process, causing the Status LED to start blinking without having an operator engage the removal switch - the rest of the process remains the same.

The DM can also control the Attention LED causing it to turn on, off, or blink.

A8.2.3.4.3 I/O MODULE EXAMPLES

Figure 323 provides an example of an IOU containing 6 permanent IOCs in one non-pluggable I/O module. The IOUnitInfo attribute indicates one slot and 6 IOCs. Thus, there will be 6 IOControllerProfile records, each indicating the IOC is in slot 0. Because there are no removable slots, there are no SlotControlStatus attribute records.



SlotControlStatus Records = 0

DevMgtGet(SlotControlStatus) response returns Status=x02, no match to indicate all IOCs are permanent

Figure 323

Example of IOU with Permanent IOCs

Figure 324 provides an example of an IOU containing 6 IOCs distributed between 3 I/O modules (1 permanent and 2 removable). The IOUnitInfo attribute indicates 3 slots and 6 IOCs. Thus, there will be 6 IOControllerProfile records, each indicating its associated slot. Because there are 2 removable slots, there are 2 SlotControlStatus attribute records. The DM writes the SlotControlStatus records to control the hot plug status of the removable modules.

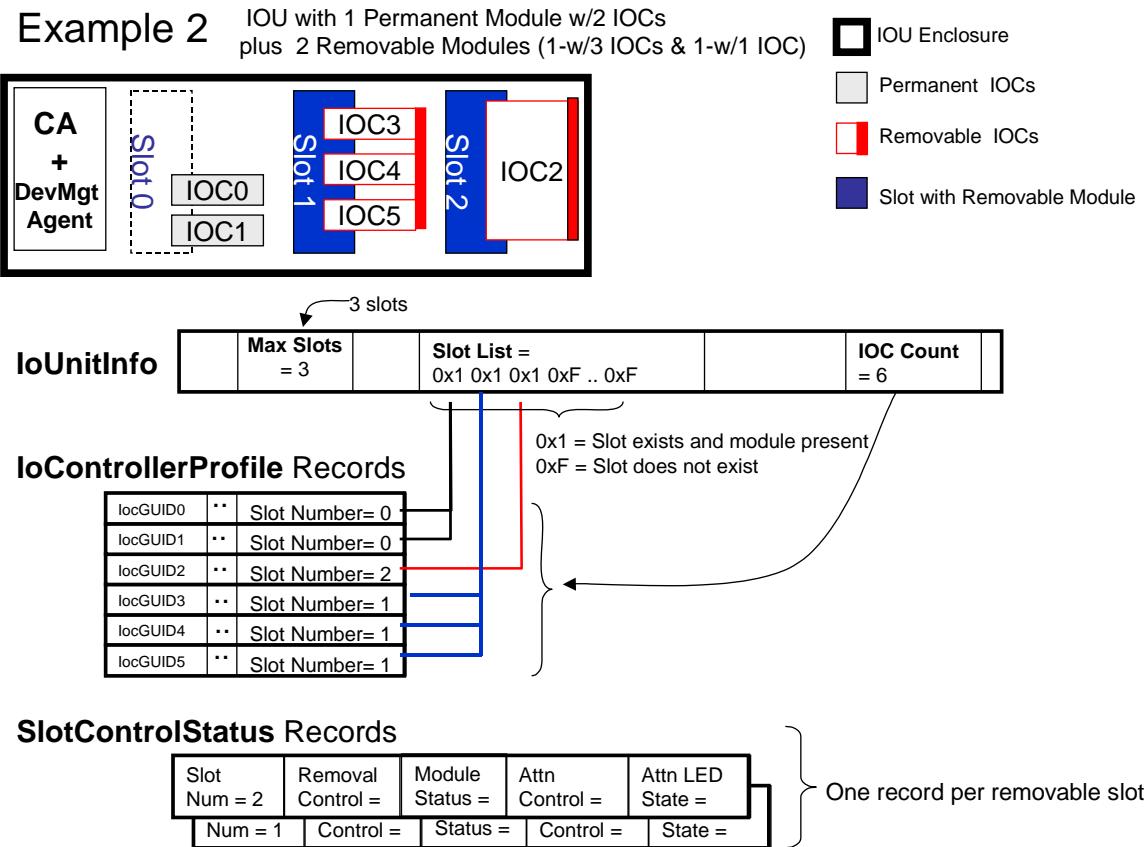


Figure 324 Example of IOU with Removable Modules

A8.2.3.5 DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS

As illustrated in [Figure 325](#), the diagnostic framework provides the means for a diagnostic application to request a diagnostic session. This request is sent to the DM [step 1]. The manager validates the request, and if the source is authorized to perform diagnostics, the manager informs client platforms that will be affected by the diagnostics [steps 2,3]. establishes a diagnostic session with the IOU [step 4], and then informs the diagnostic application that it may proceed [step 5].

The diagnostic application performs diagnostics directly with the IOU [step 6] and when it is done running diagnostics, it releases the session by informing the manager [step 7]. The manager cancels the IOU's diagnostic session [step 8] and then notifies the affected clients that the I/O resources are back on-line [step 9].

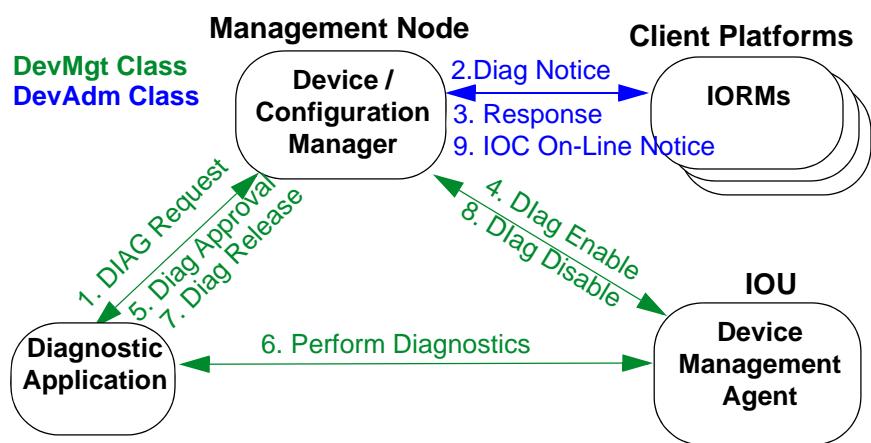


Figure 325 Diagnostic Usage Model

Steps 1,4,5,6,7, and 8 are performed under the DevMgt class and are defined in this annex. Steps 2,3, and 9 are performed under DevAdm class and are defined in [Annex A7: Configuration Management](#).

In the initial session request [step 1] the diagnostic application indicates the severity and scope of the diagnostics. The manager uses the scope to determine which I/O clients to notify. The request also establishes a lease period for the session and the means to renew the lease if more time is needed.

The session setup [step 4] establishes the parameters for the diagnostic testing including severity and scope, and establishes the Token that the diagnostic application uses in diagnostic requests [step 6] to validate that it is authorized to perform diagnostics. The IOU rejects any diagnostic tests that violate the parameters of the diagnostic session.

Because it may take time for the IOU to prepare for diagnostic testing, the IOU replies immediately to the Diagnostic Session request and then sends a trap when it is prepare to perform diagnostics. That trap is passed on to the diagnostic application to indicate that the application may invoke diagnostic tests. The application invokes tests to be executed once or run continuously.

A8.2.4 LEVELS OF ACCESS

There are several levels of access to Device Management attributes.

Some attributes are available to anyone that can access the IOU.

All attributes are available to the DM and certain attributes are only accessible by the DM. The DevMgt Agent uses the Access_Key and KeyType

components in the MAD header to validate if a MAD comes from a valid DM (i.e., passes DevMgt key check), a supervisor, or a client.

Some attributes are available to the DM and specific supervisors. For example, the PlatformPoolRecord can only be accessed by the DM and the supervisor that the DM specifies in the PlatformPoolRecord.

Some attributes are only available to the DM, specific platform supervisors, and configured clients. For example, in addition to the DM:

- A ClientPoolRecord can only be read by the specific client and the client's supervisor, which may also write the record.
- ServiceRecords are restricted to clients and supervisors that have a corresponding ClientPoolRecord or PlatformPoolRecord specifying the ServiceObject (see below).
- ProtocolRecords and IOControllerProfile attributes are limited to clients and supervisors that have a corresponding ClientPoolRecord or PlatformPoolRecord specifying a ServiceObject of that IOC (see below).

The DM, using the PlatformPoolRecord attribute, programs the IOU with Supervisor_Keys, and using the ClientPoolRecord attribute, programs the IOU with Client_Keys.

A supervisor (IORM) must get its key from the DM. With the Supervisor_Key, the IORM can learn and the Client_Keys for its platform. Thus, clients get their keys from their IORM.

For a KeyType of Supervisor or Client, the DevMgt Agent matches the Access_Key in the MAD header to a corresponding PlatformPoolRecord or ClientPoolRecord respectively, which specifies the access rights.

- When a client requests attributes about service objects, the DevMgt Agent only returns records for service objects specified in the ClientPoolRecord with that Client_Key.
- When a supervisor requests attributes about service objects, the DevMgt Agent only returns records for service objects specified in the PlatformPoolRecord with that Supervisor_Key.

Some attributes are only available to the DM and specific diagnostic applications. For example:

- A DiagSession attribute can only be read by the DM and a diagnostic application with a valid DiagToken.
- TestDeviceOnce and TestDeviceLoop can only be set by the DM or a diagnostic application with a valid DiagToken.

The DM, using the DiagSession attribute, programs the IOU with DiagTokens. A diagnostic application must get its DiagToken from the DM. With the DiagToken, the diagnostic application is able to invoke diagnostics, but only on the objects the DM specifies in the DiagSession attribute.

For a KeyType of DiagToken, the DevMgt Agent matches the Access_Key in the MAD header to a corresponding DiagSession record, which specifies the access rights.

A8.3 DEVICE MGT MAD SPECIFICATION

A8.3.1 MAD FORMAT

CA8-1: The datagrams for the DevMgt class **shall** conform to the MAD format and use as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 780](#) and further specified in [Figure 326 Device Management MAD Format on page 1697](#) and [Table 509 Device Management MAD Fields on page 1698](#) below.

Figure 326 Device Management MAD Format

Offset	Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3			
0	Common MAD Header						
...							
20							
24	RMPP Header						
...							
32							
36	Access_Key						
40							
44	KeyType	reserved					
48	Reserved						
52							
56							
60	Change_ID		ComponentMask				
64	DevMgt Data						
...							
252							

Table 509

Device Management MAD Fields

Field ^a	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD Header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781 . MgtClass=0x06, ClassVersion=2
RMPP Header	12 bytes	RMPP header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781
Access_Key	8 bytes	Manager key, supervisor key, client key, or diagnostic token - a value that the DevMgt Agent uses to validate the source of certain management operations as described in A8.3.3.12 KeyInfo on page 1743 , and A8.3.1.4.3 Client Key on page 1704 . A node uses the default value of zero unless it has been configured otherwise.
KeyType	1 byte	A value that specifies the nature of the sender and indicates they type of key provided in the Access_Key component. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x00 = Client or DevMgt Agent• 0x01 = Supervisor• 0x02 = DM• 0x03 = Diagnostic Token
reserved	15 bytes	reserved
Change_ID	2 bytes	Count that indicates when one or more read-only components in an attributes has changed. It is incremented, with rollover, by any change to a Read-Only component of IOUnitInfo, IOControllerProfile, ProtocolRecord, ServiceRecord, ProductInfo, or lIoResourceInfo attributes. Multiple changes to the same attribute should not result in multiple increments, while changes to multiple attributes should result in an increment for each attribute record modified, added, or deleted.
ComponentMask	2 bytes	Indicates which attribute components in the DevMgtGet() are to be used for the query. Refer to A8.3.1.5 Component Mask on page 1705
DevMgt Data	192 bytes	192 bytes of DevMgt payload. The structure and content depends upon the Method, Attribute, and Attribute Modifier fields in the MAD header.

a. The term 'MAD header' refers to all fields except the DevMgt Data field

CA8-2: The datagrams for the DevMgt class **shall** conform to the Common MAD requirements as specified in 20.14 "Common Mad Requirements".

A8.3.1.1 CLASS VERSION

Class version 2 provides significant enhancements over class version 1. Class version is indicated in two places. One is the ClassVersion field in the MAD header and the other is the ClassVersion component in the ClassPortInfo attribute. The following rules apply to IOUs and DMs supporting Class Version 2 as the highest version supported.

Table 510 Class Version

Received MADHeader: ClassVersion	Method/Attribute	Action ^a	Response MADHeader: ClassVersion	ClassPortInfo: ClassVersion
0 or >2	Get(ClassPortInfo)	respond	2	2
0 or >2	Set(ClassPortInfo)	reject	2	n/a
0 or >2	other than Get/Set ClassPortInfo	reject	2	n/a
2	Get(ClassPortInfo) Set(ClassPortInfo)	respond	2	2
2	other than Get/Set ClassPortInfo	respond	2	n/a
1	Get(ClassPortInfo)	respond	1	2
1	Set(ClassPortInfo) - if class version 1 supported	Conditional	1	2
1	other than Get/Set ClassPortInfo - if class version 1 supported	Conditional	1	n/a
1	all except Get(ClassPortInfo) - when class version 1 not supported	reject	1	n/a

a. Note that there are other reasons why a MAD is rejected independent of the Class Version. **Reject** means report Status(4:2)=001 "Either the base version, or the class version, or the combination of the two is not supported". **Conditional** means that the KeyInfo:BackwardCompatibilityLevel component determines if the IOU responds or rejects the MAD (see [Table 511 DevMgt Backward Compatibility on page 1701](#)) and DM policy determines how the DM responds.

CA8-3: A DevMgt Agent and DM shall respond to MADHeader:ClassVersion values as per [Table 510: Class Version](#)

A8.3.1.1.1 BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY

Class version 1 does not have the facilities for enforcement of device assignment and access control that is provided in class version 2. Depending on the environment and whether the IOU is being shared by multiple hosts, it may or may not be advantageous for an IOU to support class version 1. A primary concern is to prevent class version 1 from being a means for hosts to circumvent the protection provided by class version 2 while providing the ability for the IOU to function when hosts only support class version 1.

When all hosts support class version 2 or higher, there might be no need for an IOU to support class version 1. Thus, IOUs are not required to support multiple Class Versions, but for those that do, this annex defines the

means to identify if the IOU does support ClassVersion 1 and a means for the DM to configure how the IOU responds to ClassVersion 1 MADs.

A8.3.1.1.2 BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY LEVEL

There is an ‘IsBackwardCompatibilitySupported’ bit in the version 2 Class-PortInfo Capability component that indicates if the DevMgt Agent supports class version 1.

There are three levels of backward compatibility for an IOU that supports class version 1 & 2 and the DM selects the level via the KeyInfo attribute. The levels are:

- **No_v1_Access:** The DevMgt Agent rejects all ClassVersion 1 MADs as ‘version not supported’. This is the only possibility for IOUs that do not support ClassVersion 1.
- **Full_v1_Access:** The DevMgt Agent processes ClassVersion 1 MADs without any filtering of information based on ClassVersion 2 configuration. This is the default for IOUs that support Class-Version 1, so they will function in a ClassVersion 1 environment that does not have a DM.
- **Programmed_v1_Access:** The DM uses a ClassVersion 2 Client Pool Table record to limit what information can be obtained via ClassVersion 1 MADs. This level allows the DM to program the IOU as to which service objects are accessible to hosts that use ClassVersion 1.

For ‘Programmed_v1_Access’, there is a V1ClientKey component in the KeyInfo attribute that the DM sets to indicate which Client Pool Table defines the service objects accessible via class version 1 MADs. When the DevMgt Agent receives a ClassVersion 1 request, it treats the request as if it included a Client Access Key with this value. Thus, the client pool table record whose Client_Key matches V1ClientKey (a.k.a. the Ver1ClientPoolRecord) determines which service objects that any host using ClassVersion 1 can access and it also limits the resources (QPs, SLs, etc.) that all ClassVersion 1 hosts (together as a group) may consume.

[Table 511: DevMgt Backward Compatibility](#) specifies how the DevMgt Agent responds to ClassVersion 1 DevMgt MADs per the different BackwardCompatibilityLevel settings.

Table 511 DevMgt Backward Compatibility

ClassVersion 1 Attribute Name ^a	I/O Unit's Backward Compatibility Level Setting ^b		
	No_v1_Access	Full_v1_Access	Programmed_v1_Access
ClassPortInfo	Get() only - reject set() as 'version not supported'	Get/Set()	Get() only - reject set() as 'version not supported'
Notice	no ClassVersion 1 traps	v1 traps	no ClassVersion 1 traps
IOUnitInfo	Reject	Get() - controller list includes all IOCs	Get() - controller list only includes IOCs listed in Ver1ClientPoolRecord
IOControllerProfile	Reject	Get() - any IOCs	Get() - only for IOCs listed in Ver1ClientPoolRecord
ServiceEntries	Reject	Get() - any service object	Get() - only includes Service Objects listed in Ver1ClientPoolRecord
DiagnosticTimeout	Reject	Get()	Reject
PrepareToTest	Reject	Get/Set()	Reject
TestDeviceOnce	Reject	Set()	Reject
TestDeviceLoop	Reject	Set()	Reject
DiagCode	Reject	Get()	Get()
VendorSpecific	Reject	Get()	Reject

a. This table describes how a DevMgt Agent that supports class version 2 responds to class version 1 requests depending on how the DM had programmed the agent's BackwardCompatibilityLevel. Since the attribute in the response must match the version, any response must use version 1 attribute formats.

b. Reject means respond with Status bits 4:2 =1; "Bad version. Either the base version, or the class version, or the combination of the two is not supported".

A8.3.1.1.3 BACKWARD COMPATIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

CA8-4: If the DevMgt Agents sets the IsBackwardCompatibilitySupported bit in ClassPortInfo, then the agent shall support all Backward Compatibility Levels (No_v1_Access, Full_v1_Access, and Programmed_v1_Access).

CA8-5: If the DevMgt Agents does not set the IsBackwardCompatibilitySupported bit in ClassPortInfo, then it shall only support the 'No_v1_Access' Backward Compatibility Level. Thus, it shall ignore the BackwardCompatibilityLevel component in a DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) and always return a value of 'No_v1_Access' for the KeyInfo:BackwardCompatibilityLevel component.

CA8-6: If KeyInfo:BackwardCompatibilityLevel is ‘No_v1_Access’ and the DevMgt Agent receives a ClassVersion 1 DevMgt MAD, it shall reject the MAD with Status bits 4:2 =001b; “Bad version. Either the base version, or the class version, or the combination of the two is not supported”.

oA8-1: If BackwardCompatibilityLevel is set to ‘Full_v1_Access’ and the DevMgt Agent receives a ClassVersion 1 DevMgt MAD, the agent shall respond as per [Table 511: DevMgt Backward Compatibility](#) using attribute formats defined in Section 16.3.

[Editorial Note: When the IOU is configured for ‘Full_v1_Access’, pool tables do not provide enforceable assignment of I/O resources to clients because any client could use version 1 DevMgt MADs to bypass the enforcement.]

oA8-2: If BackwardCompatibilityLevel is set to ‘Programmed_v1_Access’ and the DevMgt Agent receives a ClassVersion 1 DevMgt MAD, the agent shall respond as per [Table 511: DevMgt Backward Compatibility](#), using attribute formats defined in Section 16.3, but shall only provide information permitted by the ClientPoolRecord whose Client_Key matches the KeyInfo:Ver1ClientKey.

A8.3.1.2 STATUS FIELD

The Status field is described in [13.4.7 Status Field on page 795](#). Class-specific bits are defined in [Table 512: Device Management Status Field](#).

Table 512 Device Management Status Field

Bits [8:15]	Name	Meaning
0x00	Operational	no additional status
0x01	locErrorDetected	IOC not responding or in a failed state
0x02	NoMatchingRecord	The query did not result in a match
0x04	TableFull	Cannot create record because table capacity has been reached
0x80	GeneralFailure	IOU General Failure
0x10	InvalidDiagObject	Object not part of DiagSession:DiagScope
0x11	DiagSeverityLimit	Test exceeds DiagSession:DiagSeverity level
0x12	InvalidDiagTest	Test is undefined or not supported (TestType + TestTargetType + VendorSpecific)
0x40	NotMasterDM	This is not the master DM
0x41	IncompatibleVersion	The requested operation is not valid due to the class version of the target IOU.

Table 512**Device Management Status Field (Continued)**

Bits [8:15]	Name	Meaning
0x42	PolicyReject	Rejected because of Device Manager Policy

A8.3.1.3 RMPP HEADER

DevMgt uses the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol as described in Section 13.6 “Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol”. This protocol allows the initiator to make a single query which returns more information than can be transferred in a single packet. For example, an IORM can make a single request for IOControllerProfile attributes and have the DevMgt agent return all of the IOControllerProfile records. The response includes multiple DevMgtGetResp(IOControllerProfile) packets if necessary. Only the method/attribute combinations listed as ‘RMPP’ in Table 515, “DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map,” on page 1709 use the Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol and thus have multi-packet responses. DevMgtGet() requests are always single packets.

CA8-7: A DevMgt agent shall implement Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol as described in Section 13.6 “Reliable Multi-Packet Transaction Protocol.”

CA8-8: A DevMgt agent shall not respond with more than one packet for method/attribute combinations not listed as ‘RMPP’ in Table 515, “DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map,” on page 1709.

CA8-9: A DevMgt agent shall reject a request that contains more than one packet except for a DevMgtSet() for an attribute listed as RMPP in the DevMgtSet() column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#).

A8.3.1.4 ACCESS_KEY AND KEYTYPE

The Access_Key and KeyType components in the MAD:Header are used to validate the source of the MAD. The KeyType component indicates if the MAD is from a client, supervisor, DM, or diagnostic program and the Access_Key component provides the Client_Key, Supervisor_Key, Manager_Key, or DiagToken respectively.

The Access_Key validates the requestor’s level of access. The RAL and WAL columns of [Table 515 on page 1709](#) specifies the access level permitted for each attribute. Some attributes can only be read or set by the DM, which can get and set all attributes. A supervisor is only allowed to get and set certain records of certain attributes, and a client can only get a subset of its supervisor records.

The DevMgt Agent always specifies a MADHeader:Access_Key value of zero in DevMgt MADs it sends.

CA8-10: The DevMgt agent shall set the MADHeader:Access_Key component to zero when generating a DevMgtTrap().

CA8-11: The DevMgt agent shall set the MADHeader:Access_Key component to zero when sending a DevMgtGetResp().

CA8-12: The DevMgt agent shall ignore the value of the MADHeader:Access_Key component in a DevMgtTrapRepress().

Note that the DevMgt agent validates a TrapRepress() by the TransactionID and Notice attribute content, which is only known by the recipient of the trap, which was set in ClassPortInfo by the DM.

A8.3.1.4.1 MANAGER_KEY

The IOU's Manager_Key is set by the DM to prevent others from modifying the configuration of the IOU (i.e., the IOU only accepts a DevMgtSet() from a manager with the correct Manager_Key, a supervisor with a correct Supervisor_Key, or a diagnostic application with the correct Diag Token).

A DM sets an IOU's Manager_Key and other manager key related parameters via the DevMgtSet(KeyInfo). See [A8.3.3.12 KeyInfo on page 1743](#) for details on how the DevMgt agent uses the Manager_Key.

- The DevMgt agent only accepts DevMgtSet()s that contain a valid MADHeader:Access_Key (i.e., KeyType = Manager and Access_Key matches the key set via the KeyInfo attribute, KeyType = Supervisor and Access_Key matches a Supervisor_Key set by the DM, or KeyType = DiagToken and Access_Key matches a currently active DiagToken set by the DM).
- The DevMgt Agent also uses the MADHeader:Access_Key to validate if a DevMgtGet() came from a valid DM.

A8.3.1.4.2 SUPERVISOR_KEY

The Supervisor_Key identifies the privileged user on a particular client platform (i.e., the platform's IORM) that may configure that platform's client resource pools. A DM sets Supervisor_Keys in platform pool table records and client pool table records. The platform pool table record lists the service objects that the platform is permitted to use. The DevMgt Agent limits a supervisor's access to reading its own platform pool table record, to reading and writing its own client pool table records, and reading information about IOCs and service objects that the platform is permitted to use.

A8.3.1.4.3 CLIENT_KEY

Each client pool record has a Client_Key which identifies the client that is permitted to use the listed service objects and specified resources

(Number of QPs, client priority, service levels, etc.). The DevMgt Agent limits a client's access to getting its own client pool table record and information about IOCs and service objects that the client is permitted to use.

A8.3.1.4.4 DIAGTOKEN

The DM programs the IOU with a Diagnostic Token (DiagToken) specifying the scope and severity level of diagnostics that may be performed using that token. The manager provides the diagnostic program with that token. The diagnostic program specifies the DiagToken in diagnostic requests that it sends to the IOU to validate that the program is authorized to perform the diagnostics. When the DevMgt Agent receives a Set() for a diagnostic attribute, the agent validates that the DiagToken in the MAD matches a valid DiagToken and that the request is within the scope specified by that token.

CA8-13: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Diagnostic Token the MAD specifies an attribute that does not have a value of 'D' or 'A' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map on page 1709](#), then the DevMgt agent shall reject the MAD.

A8.3.1.5 COMPONENT MASK

The ComponentMask in the MAD header is used in queries for attributes supporting RMPP (see [Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map on page 1709](#)). The ComponentMask allows the initiator to indicate which components in the query (i.e., the DevMgtGet request) that the DevMgt agent uses in determining which records to return. Each bit corresponds to an attribute component as specified in each attribute's definition in [A8.3.3: Attributes](#). If that bit is set to zero, the DevMgt agent ignores that component when selecting which attributes to return. When the bit is one, the DevMgt agent only returns records that have that component matching the value supplied in the request. For example, a DevMgtGet(ProtocolRecord) with component mask bits for Category, OrgID, and Protocol set to one will return all protocol records matching the Category, OrgID, and Protocol values supplied in the attribute in the DevMgtGet(ProtocolRecord) query.

CA8-14: The DevMgt agent shall ignore ComponentMask in MADs not indicated as 'RMPP' in Table 515, "DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map," on page 1709

CA8-15: The DevMgt agent shall ignore ComponentMask bits that are not defined in the attribute's definition in [Section 8.3.3, "Attributes," on page 1707](#)

CA8-16: For method/attribute combinations marked 'RMPP' in Table 515, "DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map," on page 1709, the DevMgt agent

shall only return attribute records matching the components indicated by the ComponentMask in the request.

CA8-17: The DevMgt agent shall set the ComponentMask in the response to the same value as in the request, except that any ComponentMask bits not supported (i.e., not defined for the attribute in this version) shall be set to zero. This requires that the ComponentMask in responses to non RMPP method/attributes combinations is always returned as zero.

A8.3.2 METHODS

Each MAD specifies a Method and an Attribute type. Common methods are defined in Chapter 13. [Table 513 Device Management Methods on page 1706](#) specifies the common methods used by Device Management.

Device Management attributes are listed in [Table 514 Device Management Attributes on page 1707](#). [Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map on page 1709](#) specifies which attributes are valid with which methods for a DevMgt agent. [Table 516 DM Attribute / Method Map on page 1710](#) specifies which attributes are valid with which methods for a DM. The format of each attribute is defined in the subsections of [A8.3.3 Attributes on page 1707](#).

The DevMgt Agent initially receives MADs through the GSI, which is an unreliable datagram service. The actual access QP and DLID may be redirected by the GSI.

Table 513 Device Management Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
DevMgtGet()	0x01	Request (read) DevMgt class attributes such as IOU information, IOC profiles, or service objects be returned. The response is a DevMgtGetResp().
DevMgtSet()	0x02	Request (write) an attribute to be set. The response is a DevMgtGetResp().
DevMgtGetResp()	0x81	Response to a DevMgtGet() or DevMgtSet() request.
DevMgtTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent to the DM. Contains the Notice attribute as defined in A8.3.3.2 Notice on page 1712 to identify the trap.
DevMgtTrapRepress()	0x07	Cancel repetition of notification.
DevMgtReport()	0x06	Forward an event to an entity that previously subscribed for it
DevMgtReportResp()	0x86	Reply to a DevMgtReport()

A8.3.3 ATTRIBUTES

This section specifies the format of the attributes used for managing the IOU.

Device Management attributes are listed in [Table 514 Device Management Attributes on page 1707](#).

[Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map on page 1709](#) specifies which attributes are valid with which methods for a DevMgt agent, identifies which are required to be supported, and specifies which method/attribute combination can be multi-packet. It also indicates if the attribute can only be accessed by the DM, by configured clients, or by anyone.

Table 514 Device Management Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID ^a	Scope ^b	Description
ClassPortInfo page 1711	0x0001	Port	Provides information about the DevMgt Agent and allows the DM to program where the DevMgt Agent sends traps. See A8.3.3.1 ClassPortInfo on page 1711
Notice page 1712	0x0002	IOU	Provides Trap details. See A8.3.3.2 Notice on page 1712
InformInfo page 1724	0x0003	DM	Attribute for interested parties to subscribe with the DM for DevMgt Traps.
IOUnitInfo page 1726	0x0010	IOU	Information about the IOU and lists status of subassembly slots. Each IOU may support up to 255 subassemblies. Each subassembly can have an unlimited number of IOCs and each IOC can have 2^{16} service objects.
IOControllerProfile page 1728	0x0011	IOU	IOC Profile Information. Note: Attribute Modifier no longer identifies the IOC. The IOU maintains a table of IOControllerProfile records. The ComponentMask may be used to request a particular IOControllerProfile record or a particular set of IOControllerProfile records. If all IOControllerProfile records are needed, the requester sets the component mask to zero.
ServiceEntries	0x0012	n/a	The ServiceEntries attribute has been replaced by the ServiceRecord attribute and is no longer used
DA Info page 1725	0x0013	DM	Provides the address of the Device Administrator
ServiceRecord page 1731	0x0014	IOU	Specifies a Service ID for communicating with a service object. The IOU maintains a table of ServiceRecords for the IOU and all its IOCs. The ComponentMask may be used to request a particular ServiceRecord or a particular set of ServiceRecords, or set to zero to request all records.
ProtocolRecord page 1735	0x0015	IOU	Specifies a protocol (management protocol or I/O protocol) supported by the IOU. The ComponentMask may be used to request a particular protocol record or a particular set of protocol records, or set to zero to request all records.

Table 514 Device Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID ^a	Scope ^b	Description
SlotControlStatus page 1737	0x0016	IOU	Get()s and Set()s information pertaining to the removal state of a subassembly. The ComponentMask may be used to request a particular SlotControlStatus or a particular set of SlotControlStatus records, or set to zero to request SlotControlStatus on all slots.
KeyInfo page 1743	0x0017	IOU	Information pertaining to the Manager_Key used to check received DevMgt class MADs
Reset page 1740	0x0018	IOU	Used to reset the IOU or an IOC
ProductInfo page 1741	0x0019	IOU	Provides product specific information about the IOU or an IOC.
reserved	0x001A-0x001F	n/a	reserved
DiagnosticTimeout page 1769	0x0020	IOU	Provides the maximum time for completion of diagnostic test. Tests not completing within this period may indicate device failure.
PrepareToTest	0x0021	n/a	The 'PrepareToTest' attribute has been replaced by the DiagSession attribute and is no longer used
TestDeviceOnce page 1770	0x0022	IOU	A DevMgtSet() of this attribute instructs the IOU to initiate the diagnostic test specified in the attribute and run it once.
TestDeviceLoop page 1771	0x0023	IOU	A DevMgtSet() of this attribute instructs the IOU to initiate the diagnostic test specified in the attribute and run it continuously in a loop.
DiagCode page 1772	0x0024	IOU	Vendor-specific diagnostic information for the device specified in the attribute.
DiagSession page 1765	0x0025	IOU / DM	A DevMgtSet() of this attribute sent to the DM requests a diagnostic session. When sent to the IOU by the DM, instructs the IOU to prepare the object(s) specified by the attribute for diagnostic testing.
reserved	0x0026 - 0x003F	n/a	reserved
IoUResourceInfo page 1749	0x0040	IOU	Specifies resource capabilities of the IOU.
PlatformPoolRecord page 1752	0x0041	IOU	Permits the DM to specify which service objects and resources a platform may use.

Table 514 Device Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID ^a	Scope ^b	Description
ClientPoolRecord page 1758	0x0042	IOU	Permits the platforms' supervisor to specify which of service objects and resources a client may use.
KeyChange page 1764	0x0043	IOU	Changes a Client_Key or Supervisor_Key'
reserved	0x0044-0xFEFF	n/a	reserved
Vendor-specific	0xFF00-0xFFFF	vendor defined	Vendor-unique attribute values may be defined to deliver specific test instructions.

a. Attribute Modifier field is not used and therefore is set to zero. Vendor-Specific attributes may use Attribute Modifiers.

b. Scope identifies whether each port has its own set of that attribute (i.e., Port scope) or the IOU maintains a single set of that attribute accessible via any of its ports (i.e., IOU scope).

For IOU scope, a DevMgtSet() on any port changes the attribute content for all ports such that a DevMgtGet() on any port returns the same information.

For Port scope, a DevMgtSet() on one port does not change the attribute content for other ports.

For DM scope, if the DM uses multiple QPs to receive DevMgtSet()s, the DM treats the requests as if they came to the same QP regardless of whether they come through the same port or not.

Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map^a

Attribute Name	RAL ^b	WAL ^c	DevMgtGet() ^d	DevMgtSet() ^d	DevMgtTrap()	TrapRepress()
ClassPortInfo	A	M	yes	yes		
Notice	M	A	yes	yes	yes	yes
IOUnitInfo	A	-	yes			
IOControllerProfile	MSCD	-	RMPP			
ServiceRecord	MSC	-	RMPP			
ProtocolRecord	MSC	-	RMPP			
SlotControlStatus	A	M	RMPP	yes		
ProductInfo	A	-	RMPP			
KeyInfo	A	M	yes	yes		
Reset	A	M	yes	yes		
IouResourceInfo	M	M	RMPP	yes		
PlatformPoolRecord	MS	M	RMPP	yes		
ClientPoolRecord	MSC	MS	RMPP	yes		
KeyChange		M		yes		

Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map^a (Continued)

Attribute Name	RAL ^b	WAL ^c	DevMgtGet() ^d	DevMgtSet() ^d	DevMgtTrap()	TrapRepress()
DiagnosticTimeout	A	-	yes			
DiagSession	MD	M	RMPP	yes		
TestDeviceOnce	-	MD		yes		
TestDeviceLoop	-	MD		yes		
DiagCode	A	-	yes			

a. Combinations in ***Bold Italic*** are required to be supported by all DevMgt agents.

b. Read Access Level - RAL identifies who the DevMgt Agent allows to read the attribute. A=all, M=DM, S=configured supervisors, C=configured clients (see [A8.4.2 Filtering Information on page 1775](#)), D=Diagnostic program.

c. Write Access Level - The WAL identifies who the DevMgt Agent allows to write the attribute.

d. RMPP designates that the method/attribute uses Reliable Multiple Packet Protocol. Note that the DevMgtGet() is a single packet that can result in a multiple packet response.

The attributes are requested and returned through the GSI, which is an unreliable datagram service. The actual access QP and DLID may be redirected by the GSI.

In addition to the MADs that the DM sends to DevMgt Agents, the DM is required to support additional Method-Attribute combinations. [Table 516 DM Attribute / Method Map on page 1710](#) specifies which attributes are valid with which methods for a DM and identifies which are required to be supported.

Table 516 DM Attribute / Method Map^a

Attribute Name	DevMgtGet()	DevMgtSet()	DevMgtReport()
ClassPortInfo	yes		
InformInfo		yes	
Notice			yes
DA Info	yes		
DiagSession	yes	yes	
ProductInfo	yes		

a. Combinations in ***Bold Italic*** are required to be supported by a DM.

The DM registers with the SA using SubAdmSet(ServiceRecord). The QP the manager uses to receive these manager MADs can be learned via a CM:SIDR_REQ using the ServiceID specified in the SA:ServiceRecord. The QP is an unreliable datagram service.

A8.3.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#). The CapabilityMask component provides for class-specific bits which are defined in [Table 517: Device Management Agent ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask](#) and [Table 518: Device Manager ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask](#).

Table 517 Device Management Agent ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 .
8	reserved	reserved
9	IsManager_KeyNonVolatile	Indicates if DevMgt Agent preserves its Manager_Key across power cycles. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1b = Manager_Key saved in non-volatile storage• 0b = Manager_Key not saved in non-volatile storage
10	NonVolatileAttributes	Indicates if DevMgt Agent preserves R/W components of all attributes across power cycles. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1b = Attributes saved in non-volatile storage• 0b = Attributes not saved in non-volatile storage
11	GracefulHotPlug	Indicates if DevMgt Agent supports graceful hot plug <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1b = Graceful hot plug supported• 0b = Graceful hot plug not supported
12	IsBackwardCompatibility-Supported	When set indicates that the DevMgt agent supports multiple Class Versions (i.e., v1 and v2). Requirements for setting this bit are specified in A8.3.1.1.3: Backward Compatibility Requirements .
13-15	-	reserved

Device Managers have different capabilities than Device Management Agents. Thus, [Table 518](#) specifies CapabilityMask bits for a DM.

Table 518**Device Manager ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask**

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 . Note that bits 0 and 1 are not meaningful for a class manager and thus are set to zero and ignored.
8-13	reserved	reserved
14	GracefulFailover	This bit indicates if the DM shares subscription and Dlag Session information with standby managers. A value of 1 indicates that the DA retains subscriptions and Dlag Session information across fail-overs. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in Annex A7: Configuration Management in sections A7.5.7.3 Subscription Integrity on page 1628 and A7.5.9.1 Diagnostic Framework on page 1635 .
15	IsContextPersistent	This bit indicates if the DM persistently stores subscription and Dlag Session information such that subscriptions are retained across reset, restarts, and power cycles. Requirements for setting this bit are specified in Annex A7: Configuration Management in sections A7.5.7.3 Subscription Integrity on page 1628 and A7.5.9.1 Diagnostic Framework on page 1635 .

A8.3.3.2 NOTICE

The Notice attribute is described in [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#). It is used for generic traps as specified in [Table 519: Notices for Device Management Traps](#).

Trap datagrams are described in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#).

CA8-18: When the DevMgt agent generates a trap, then that trap shall be issued from all ports that have a non-zero ClassPortInfo:TrapLID.

CA8-19: Upon receipt of a valid TrapRepress() MAD and independent of the MADHeader:Access_Key, the DevMgt agent shall cease sending the trap which matches the trap identified by the TrapRepress() MAD. A trap being repeatedly sent matches a trap identified in a TrapRepress() MAD when both MADHeader:TransactionID in the trap MAD matches MADHeader:TransactionID in the TrapRepress MAD and the Notice attribute in the trap MAD matches the Notice attribute in the TrapRepress().

A DevMgtTrap() conveys a Notice attribute and the Notice attribute contains a DataDetails component, which provides trap specific information. Thus, Device Management defines the DataDetails for each type of trap.

In each DataDetails definition there is a LostTrap bit. This bit is used to signal when the IOU had to stop sending a trap before receiving a DevMgtTrapRepress(). The premise is that the DevMgt Agent has a trap queue of limited depth (one or more outstanding traps). When a new trap is generated, it is placed at the tail of the trap queue and the trap at the head of the queue is repeated until the DevMgt Agent receives a matching DevMgtTrapRepress(). The matching trap is then discarded and then next trap in the queue is sent immediately and repeated until a matching DevMgtTrapRepress is received.

If the trap queue is full and a new trap is generated, the DevMgt Agent discards the trap at the head of the trap queue, adds the new trap to the tail of the trap queue, sets the LostTrap bit in trap at the head of the queue and immediately starts sending that trap.

There could be other reasons why a trap is discarded before it is acknowledged. It is the DevMgt Agent's responsibility to set the LostTrap bit in the first trap sent after the discarded trap would have been sent. If the discarded trap is the only trap in the queue, then the agent should fabricate a Status Report trap with StatusType = 0x01 (Trap Queue Flushed) and the LostTrap bit set to indicate the lost trap.

There might be other events that could cause the agent to prematurely discard one or more traps. When there is at least one trap to be reported and a condition occurs in which the DevMgt Agent discards all of the traps, then the DevMgt Agent generates a StatusReport trap with a StatusType of 0x01 and the LostTrap bit set. This will inform the Device Manager and subscribed clients that one or more traps may have been lost.

Unless otherwise specified, Notice attribute components for Notices specified in [Table 519](#) shall be set as follows:

- 1) IsGeneric = 1 (Generic)
- 2) Type - as per [Table 519](#)
- 3) ProducerType = 1 (Channel Adapter)
- 4) TrapNumber - as per [Table 519](#)
- 5) IssuerLID - as per [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)
- 6) NoticeToggle = 0 as per [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)
- 7) Notice Count = 0 as per [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)
- 8) DataDetails - as per [Table 519](#)
- 9) IssuerGID=0 as per [13.4.8.2 Notice on page 802](#)

Table 519

Notices for Device Management Traps

Name	Type	Number	DataDetails (padded to 432 bits)
MgrKeyViolation	Security	0x0000	Reports an Access_Key violation as per Table 520 Notice 0x0000 DataDetails [MgrKey Violation] on page 1715
SupvKeyViolation	Security	0x0001	Reports an Access_Key violation as per Table 521 Notice 0x0001 DataDetails [SupvKey Violation] on page 1716
Client Violation	Security	0x0002	Reports an Access_Key violation as per Table 522 Notice 0x0002 DataDetails [Client Violation] on page 1717
DiagToken Violation	Security	0x0003	Reports the use of an invalid DiagToken as per Table 523 Notice 0x0003 DataDetails [DiagToken Violation] on page 1718
Heartbeat	Informational	0x0007	Indicates that the DM is still active as per Table 524 Notice 0x0007 DataDetails [Heartbeat] on page 1719
StatusReport	Informational	0x0008	Status change as per Table 525 Notice 0x0008 DataDetails [Status-Report] on page 1719
IO Controller Change	Informational	0x0010	IOC with <locGUID> has been <ACTION = added, deleted, or modified> as per Table 526 Notice 0x0010 DataDetails [IO Controller Change] on page 1720
Service Object Change	Informational	0x0011	ServiceRecord with for <locGUID> with <ServiceObjectID> has been <ACTION = added, deleted, or modified> as per Table 527 Notice 0x0011 DataDetails [ServiceRecord Change] on page 1721
Slot Status Change	Informational	0x0018	Status of I/O module with <SlotNumber> has changed to <SlotStatus> as per Table 528 Notice 0x0018 DataDetails [Slot Status Change] on page 1722
IomRemoval	Informational	0x0020	Request to remove I/O module <SlotNumber> as per Table 529 Notice 0x0020 DataDetails [IomRemoval] on page 1722
ReadyToTest	Informational	0x0202	The ReadyToTest notice (514) has been replaced with the DiagSessionState notice and is no longer used
DiagSessionState	Informational	0x0801	Diagnostic session <DiagToken> readiness is <DiagSessionStatus>, where DiagSessionStatus is the same as would have been returned by a DevMgtGetResp(DiagSession) for that DiagToken as per Table 530 Notice 0x0801 DataDetails [DiagSessionState] on page 1723
DiagSession Violation	Security	0x0802	Reports a diagnostic violation as per Table 531 Notice 0x0802 Data-Details [DiagSession Violation] on page 1723

CA8-20: A DevMgt agent shall use the layouts for the DataDetails component specified in [A8.3.3.2: Notice](#) for corresponding Traps. Fields **shall** be filled with the information corresponding to the description of a given trap.

A8.3.3.2.1 MGRKEY VIOLATION NOTICE

The IOU uses the MgrKey Violation notice to inform the DM that it received a DevMgt MAD with an invalid Manager_Key.

Table 520**Notice 0x0000 DataDetails [MgrKey Violation]**

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	0	8	reserved
Method	8	8	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributeID	16	16	AttributeID used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
reserved	240	16	reserved
QP	256	24	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
reserved	280	8	reserved
Manager_Key	288	64	MADHeader:Access_Key from the MAD that caused the violation
Timestamp	352	48	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
reserved	400	31	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-21: The DevMgt agent shall create the MgrKey Violation notice as specified in [Table 520](#) and issue the Trap from every port when it detects a Manager_Key mismatch as per [A8.3.3.12 KeyInfo on page 1743](#).

A8.3.3.2.2 SUPVKEY VIOLATION NOTICE

The IOU uses the SupvKey Violation notice to inform the DM that it received a DevMgt MAD with an invalid Supervisor_Key (MADHeader:Key-

Type = Supervisor and no PlatformPoolRecord with a Supervisor_Key matching MADHeader:Access_Key).

Table 521 Notice 0x0001 DataDetails [SupvKey Violation]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	0	8	reserved
Method	8	8	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributeID	16	16	AttributeID used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
reserved	240	16	reserved
QP	256	24	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
reserved	280	8	reserved
Supervisor_Key	288	64	MADHeader:Access_Key from the MAD that caused the violation
Timestamp	352	48	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
reserved	400	31	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-22: The DevMgt agent shall create the SupvKey Violation notice as specified in [Table 521](#) and issue the trap to every port when it detects an invalid Supervisor_Key as per [A8.4.2 Filtering Information on page 1775](#).

A8.3.3.2.3 CLIENT VIOLATION NOTICE

The IOU uses the Client Violation notice to inform the DM that it received a DevMgt MAD or a CM MAD with an invalid Client_Key.

Table 522 Notice 0x0002 DataDetails [Client Violation]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
MADClass	0	8	MgmtClass value used in MAD that caused the violation - indicates if DevMgt or CM MAD.
Method	8	8	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributeID	16	16	AttributeID used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation. Zero indicates that the MAD did not contain a GRH.
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
reserved	240	16	reserved
QP	256	24	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
reserved	280	8	reserved
Client_Key	288	64	MADHeader:Access_Key from the DevMgt MAD or the PrivateData:Client_Key from the CM MAD that caused the violation.
Timestamp	352	48	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
reserved	400	31	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-23: The DevMgt agent shall create the Client Violation notice as specified in [Table 522](#) and issue the Trap from every port when it detects a Client_Key mismatch as per [A8.4.2 Filtering Information on page 1775](#).

CA8-24: The DevMgt agent shall create the Client Violation notice as specified in [Table 520](#) and issue the Trap from every port when it detects a Client_Key mismatch as per [A8.4.3 Restricting Access on page 1777](#).

A8.3.3.2.4 DIAGTOKEN VIOLATION NOTICE

The IOU uses the DiagToken Violation notice to inform the DM that it received a DevMgt MAD with an invalid DiagToken.

Table 523 Notice 0x0003 DataDetails [DiagToken Violation]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	0	8	reserved
Method	8	8	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributeID	16	16	AttributeID used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation. Zero indicates that the MAD did not contain a GRH.
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
reserved	240	16	reserved
QP	256	24	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
reserved	280	8	reserved
DiagToken	288	64	MADHeader:Access_Key from the DevMgt MAD that caused the violation.
Timestamp	352	48	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
reserved	400	31	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receives a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-25: The DevMgt agent shall create the DiagToken Violation notice as specified in [Table 523](#) and issue the Trap from every port when it receives a MAD with KeyType = DiagToken but the Access_Key does not match DiagToken of a current Diagnostic Session as per [A8.3.3.17 DiagSession on page 1765](#).

A8.3.3.2.5 HEARTBEAT NOTICE

This notice is not generated by the IOU, it is generated by a DM in a DevMgtReport() to inform subscribed clients that the DM is still operational.

Table 524 Notice 0x0007 DataDetails [Heartbeat]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
TTNH	0	12	Time till next heartbeat - specifies the number of minutes before the DM will send another Heartbeat notice. If more than this time elapses, it is an indication that the DA has terminated the subscription.
reserved	12	4	
Fail-over	16	1	When this bit is set to one it indicates that a standby manager has taken-over. The client platform should query the SA to locate the new DM.
reserved	17		
reserved	431	1	The LostTrap bit is not used since this notice is not sent in a Trap().

See Configuration Management Annex [A7.5.7.5 Heartbeat on page 1630](#) for requirements on generating the Heartbeat notice.

A8.3.3.2.6 STATUSREPORT NOTICE

This notice is generated by the IOU to inform the Device Manager and subscribed clients that there was a change in operational status. Currently this trap is only used to indicate that all outstanding traps have been discarded prior to receiving an acknowledge.

Table 525 Notice 0x0008 DataDetails [StatusReport]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
ReportType	0	8	Report Type <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x01 = Trap Queue Flushedall other values reserved
reserved	0	423	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set. It is always set when ReportType = "Trap Queue Flushed".

See [Section 8.3.3.2 on page 1712](#) for requirements on generating the Status Report notice.

A8.3.3.2.7 IOC CHANGE NOTICE

The IOU uses the IO Controller Change Notice to inform the DM that an IOC has been installed, removed, or modified.

Table 526 Notice 0x0010 DataDetails [IO Controller Change]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
locGUID	0	64	IOC GUID from IOControllerProfile attribute
reserved	64	64	reserved
ACTION	128	2	Attribute action: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 00b = deleted• 01b = modified - includes adding/removing/modifying attributes (e.g., Protocol records) for more than one of its Service Objects• 10b = reserved• 11b = added
reserved	130	301	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-26: The DevMgt agent shall create the IO Controller Change notice as specified in [Table 527](#) and issue the Trap from every port when an IOControllerProfile attribute record is added, deleted, or modified, unless the change is the result of a Slot Change reported by a Slot Status Change Notice.

A8.3.3.2.8 SERVICE RECORD CHANGE NOTICE

The IOU uses the ServiceRecord Change notice to inform the DM that a ServiceRecord has been created, destroyed, or modified

Table 527 Notice 0x0011 DataDetails [ServiceRecord Change]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
locGUID	0	64	IOC GUID from ServiceRecord attribute
ServiceObjectID	64	64	Service Object ID from ServiceRecord attribute
ACTION	128	2	Attribute action: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 00b = object deleted• 01b = modified (includes adding/removing/modifying Protocol records associated with the Service-Record).• 10b = reserved• 11b = object added
reserved	130	301	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-27: The DevMgt agent shall create the ServiceRecord Change notice as specified in [Table 527](#) and issue the Trap from every port when a ServiceRecord attribute is added, deleted, or modified, unless the change is result of a Slot Change reported by a Slot Change notice or an IOC change reported by an IO Controller Change notice.

A8.3.3.2.9 SLOT STATUS CHANGE NOTICE

The IOU uses the Slot Status Change Notice to inform the DM that an I/O module has been installed or removed.

Table 528 Notice 0x0018 DataDetails [Slot Status Change]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
SlotNumber	0	8	Slot Number of I/O module
us	8	4	Slot status - as per IOUnitInfo:SlotList.
reserved	12	419	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-28: The DevMgt agent shall create the Slot Status Change notice as specified in [Table 528](#) and issue the Trap from every port when its IOUnitInfo:SlotList changes.

A8.3.3.2.10 IOM REMOVAL NOTICE

The IOU uses the lomRemoval notice to inform the DM that a local action is requesting removal of an I/O module. This implies removal of one or more IOCs.

Table 529 Notice 0x0020 DataDetails [lomRemoval]

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
SlotNumber	0	8	I/O module slot number
reserved	8	423	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

oA8-3: The DevMgt agent shall create the lomRemoval notice as specified in [Table 529](#) and issue the Trap from every port when an I/O module's SlotControlStatus:ModuleStatus.IOU_RTR bit transitions from 0 to 1. See [A8.6 IOC Graceful Hot Removal on page 1785](#).

A8.3.3.2.11 DIAGSESSIONSTATE NOTICE

The IOU uses this Notice to inform the DM that the Diagnostic Session has changed (e.g., is ready for diagnostic testing). The DM also uses it in a DevMgtReport() to inform the diagnostic program whether it can proceed.

Table 530**Notice 0x0801 DataDetails [DiagSessionState]**

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
DiagToken	0	64	Specifies the Diagnostic Session
DiagSessionStatus	64	4	Diagnostic Readiness status as per the DiagSession attribute status defined in A8.3.3.17 DiagSession on page 1765 .
reserved	68	363	reserved - set to zero
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

See [A8.5.2 Preparing for Diagnostic Tests on page 1784](#) for requirements on generating this Trap.

A8.3.3.2.12 DIAG SESSION VIOLATION NOTICE

The IOU uses this Notice to inform the DM of an invalid diagnostic request.

Table 531**Notice 0x0802 DataDetails [DiagSession Violation]**

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
Violation	0	8	Violation 0x00 - Test exceeds DiagSeverity level 0x01 - Service Object outside of scope 0x02 - IOC outside of scope 0x03 - I/O module outside of scope 0x04 - Service Object does not exist 0x05 - IOC does not exist 0x06 - I/O module does not exist
Method	8	8	Method used in MAD that caused the violation
AttributelD	16	16	AttributelD used in MAD that caused the violation
ViolatedPortGUID	32	64	Port GUID of the port receiving the violation
OffendingPortGid	96	128	Requestor port GID from the MAD that caused the violation. Zero indicates that the MAD did not contain a GRH.

Table 531 Notice 0x0802 DataDetails [DiagSession Violation] (Continued)

Field	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
OffendingLIDADDR	224	16	SLID used in MAD that caused the violation
reserved	240	16	reserved
QP	256	24	Source Queue Pair from the MAD that caused the violation
reserved	280	8	reserved
DiagToken	288	64	MADHeader:Access_Key from the DevMgt MAD that caused the violation.
Timestamp	352	48	Timestamp when violation was detected. The format of the timestamp is the number of milliseconds since 1/1/70 00:00am Zero indicates Timestamp not supported
reserved	400	31	reserved
LostTrap	431	1	This bit is set when the IOU had to discard a Trap without receiving a TrapRepress() for it. The bit is reset when the IOU receive a valid TrapRepress() with this bit set.

CA8-29: The DevMgt agent shall create the DiagSession Violation notice as specified in [Table 531](#) and issue the Trap from every port when it detects a Diagnostic Session violation.

A Diagnostic Session violation is defined as receiving a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) or DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) specifying a test device not listed in the Diagnostic Session's scope or specifying a test that violates the Diagnostic Session's DiagSeverity. See [A8.3.3.17 DiagSession on page 1765](#) and [A8.5.3 Invoking Diagnostic Tests on page 1784](#) for requirements on generating this Trap. Note that an invalid DiagToken is reported via the DiagToken Violation Notice on [page 1718](#).

A8.3.3.3 INFORMINFO

The InformInfo attribute is specified in [13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804](#). It is used in a DevMgtSet() sent to the DM by interested parties to register for (subscribe to) DevMgt Traps.

The InformInfo attribute provides information for subscribing to a class manager for event forwarding. See [13.4.8.3 InformInfo on page 804](#) and [13.4.11 Event Forwarding on page 814](#).

A8.3.3.4 DA INFO

This attribute provides the address of the DA and general information about the DM/DA. Client platforms send a DevMgtGet(DAInfo) to the DM to learn the address of the Device Administrator associated with the DM. The client can also use this attribute to distinguish between multiple instances of the same manager and managers for different configuration groups.

Table 532 DAInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
DA_GID	RO	0	128	GID of the Port where the clients sends DevAdm MADs
DA_LID	RO	128	32	LID of the Port where the clients sends DevAdm MADs
reserved	RO	160	8	reserved
DA_QPN	RO	168	24	Destination QP where the clients sends DevAdm MADs
reserved	RO	192	64	reserved
ConfigGroupID	RO	256	128	A 128-bit universally unique identifier (UUID) as defined by ISO/IEC 11578 that uniquely identifies the configuration group.
ConfigGroup-Name	RO	384	256	Null terminated UTF-8 string that specifies the name for the configuration group.
DevMgtVerHigh	RO	640	8	Indicates the highest Device Management ClassVersion that this manager supports
DevMgtVerLow	RO	648	8	Indicates the lowest Device Management ClassVersion that this manager supports
DevAdmVerHigh	RO	656	8	Indicates the highest Device Administration ClassVersion that this manager supports
DevAdmVerLow	RO	664	8	Indicates the lowest Device Administration ClassVersion that this manager supports
reserved	RO	672	864	reserved

The DA_GID, DA_LID, and DA_QPN specifies the address where a client platform sends DevAdm MADs.

The ConfigGroupID is a 128-bit UUID created by the configuration management application to identify the configuration group. When there are multiple managers that serve the same configuration group (i.e., distributed management application) they all report the same ConfigGroupID. Thus, a client platform can quickly determine which DM/DAs serve which configuration groups by sending a DevMgtGet(DAInfo) to each DM.

When a client sees multiple DMs with the same ConfigGroupID, it means that it will receive the same information from each one and thus only needs to query and subscribe to one of them. That is, each SA registration indicates a different path to the same logical DM (e.g., different port, P_Key, etc.).

The ConfigGroupName specifies a human readable name (if any) that a system administer assigned to the configuration group. The default value of all zeros indicates that a name has not been assigned.

The DevMgtVerHigh, DevMgtVerLow, DevAdmVerHigh, DevAdmVerLow specifies the highest and lowest versions of The DevMgt class and DevAdm class that the DM/DA supports.

A8.3.3.5 IOUNITINFO

A DM uses DevMgtGet(IOUnitInfo) to learn detailed information about the IOU, such as the IOU vendor, the number of I/O subassembly modules and their physical status, the number of IOCs, the number of protocol records, service objects, and service records, the number of QPs, and the number of resource pools. An IORM uses this attribute to discover if the IOU contains an option ROM, which could provide I/O drivers.

There is one IOUnitInfo record and thus the DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask and RMPP header and returns a single DevMgtGet-Resp(IOUnitInfo) MAD.

Table 533 IOUnitInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	RO	0	16	reserved - Change_ID moved to MAD header.
MaxSlots	RO	16	8	Number of actual slots in SlotList. Slots refer to I/O modules that reside behind the channel adapter and contain IOCs. Modules may be permanent or pluggable. A value of zero indicates 256.
IsActivelyManaged	RO	24	1	Indicates if the IOU is actively managed. The IOU sets this bit to 1 when the IOU's Manager_Key (see KeyInfo attribute) is set to a non-zero value.
reserved	RO	25	6	reserved
OptionROM	RO	31	1	Indicates presence of Option ROM. 1 = Present; 0 = Absent.

Table 533 IOUnitInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
SlotList	RO	32	1024	A series of 4-bit nibbles with each representing an IOU subassembly. Each 4-bit nibble can take the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 = module not installed or not available (i.e., not powered up)• 0x1 = present and available• 0x2-0xE = reserved• 0xF = slot does not exist Bits 7-4 of the first byte (lowest offset) represent slot 0, bits 3-0 represent slot 1, bits 7-4 of the second byte represent slot 2, bits 3-0 represent slot 3, and so on to slot 255.
louVendorID	RO	1056	24	I/O unit vendor ID, IEEE format for Organization Unique ID (OUI). Bits are in canonical order.
reserved	RO	1080	8	reserved
ProductID	RO	1088	32	A number assigned by the vendor to identify the type of IOU.
louVersion	RO	1120	16	A number assigned by the vendor to identify the IOU version.
locCount ^a	RO	1136	16	Number of I/O controllers present and thus the number of IOControllerProfile Records that the DevMgt Agent will return if it receives an IOControllerProfile query with ComponentMask=0 (i.e., locGUID=any, SlotNumber=any, etc.), see Section 8.3.3.6, "IOControllerProfile," on page 1728 .
louProtocolRecordCount ^a	RO	1152	16	Number of Protocol Records that the DevMgt Agent will return if it receives a Protocol query for locGUID=0 (all other ComponentMask bits=0), see Section 8.3.3.8, "ProtocolRecord," on page 1735 . This is the number of management protocols associated specifically with the IOU (rather than a particular IOC).
TotalProtocolRecordCount ^a	RO	1168	16	Total number of Protocol Records that the DevMgt Agent will return if it receives a Protocol query with ComponentMask=0 (locGUID=any, ServiceName=any, etc.), see Section 8.3.3.8, "ProtocolRecord," on page 1735 .
louServiceRecordCount ^a	RO	1184	16	Number of IOU ServiceRecords that the DevMgt Agent will return if it receives a ServiceRecord query for locGUID=0 (all other ComponentMask bits=0), see Section 8.3.3.7, "ServiceRecord," on page 1731 . This is the number of management services associated specifically with the IOU (rather than a particular IOC).
ServiceRecord-Count ^a	RO	1200	16	Number of ServiceRecords that the DevMgt Agent will return if it receives a ServiceRecord query with ComponentMask=0 (i.e., locGUID=any, ServiceName=any, etc.), see Section 8.3.3.7, "ServiceRecord," on page 1731 .
reserved	RO	1216	320	reserved

a. For the case where the actual count exceeds the maximum value of 0xFFFF, the DevMgt agent reports the maximum value. Thus, the value 0xFFFF indicates '0xFFFF or more'.

The previous DevMgt class version supported a one-to-one relationship between IOCs and subassembly slots. This version supports a many-to-one relationship. That is, an I/O subassembly module can contain multiple IOCs. The IOUnitInfo attribute contains information on the number of subassembly modules the I/O unit can support (IOUnitInfo:MaxSlots). The IOUnitInfo:SlotList has an entry for every possible "slot". I/O module slots may be physical or logical and those modules can be removable or permanent. Each entry in the SlotList component shows whether the corresponding subassembly is present. An IOU that does not have physical subassemblies has the option of reporting one subassembly and associate all IOCs to it (preferred) or could report one subassembly for each IOC (legacy - as per class version 1).

SlotNumber of an I/O module refers to its logical position in the Slot list. IOCs are associated with slots but are primarily identified by their loc-GUID. The SlotNumber helps the DM identify which IOCs are associated with a physical module, especially when the module is removed, replaced, or relocated. Note that replacement of a module could be with IOCs of the same type or a completely different type.

A8.3.3.6 IOCONTROLLERPROFILE

The IOControllerProfile attribute (as defined in [Table 534 IOControllerProfile on page 1729](#)) provides detailed information about an I/O controller. An I/O Controller represents a circuit or process on the IOU that provides I/O service. The IOControllerProfile attribute enables a host to identify the vendor of the IOC and load the appropriate vendor supplied I/O driver. Note that in order to allow an IOC to support multiple I/O protocols, as well as management protocols, the I/O protocol information has been removed from the IOControllerProfile (previous version) and made available via ProtocolRecord attributes. The information in ProtocolRecords enables the IORM to identify the appropriate generic I/O driver and the information in the IOControllerProfile attribute enables the host to identify the appropriate vendor supplied I/O driver. Refer to [Annex A1: I/O Infrastructure on page 1289](#) for driver matching rules.

There is one IOControllerProfile record for each IOC and the locGUID uniquely identifies the IOC. This attribute provides details of each IOC such as its locGUID, its vendor, product ID, product revision levels, and other information that is specific to a given IOC but common to all of the service objects provided by that IOC.

IOControllerProfile information aids a DM in allocating the IOU's resources to various clients and the SlotNumber associates the IOC with a particular I/O subassembly for graceful hot removal. The IOControllerProfile also provides a common way for an IORM to determine the characteristics of IOCs.

Additional information about the controller is specified in ProductInfo, ProtocolRecord, and ServiceRecord attribute records associated with the IOC (i.e., records with that IOC's locGUID). A ProtocolRecord specifies a protocol that the IOC supports. ServiceRecords identify instances of services and correlate services with their ServiceIDs so a client may establish a channel to communicate with the service object.

Table 534 IOControllerProfile

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	locGUID	RO	0	64	An EUI-64 GUID used to uniquely identify the controller. This could be the same GIUD as the TCA's Node GUID if there is only one controller using that GUID.
1	VendorID	RO	64	24	I/O controller vendor ID, IEEE OUI format
2	SlotNumber	RO	88	8	Identifies which I/O module (Slot Number in the IOUnitInfo:SlotList) to which this IOC is associated.
-	locDeviceID	RO	96	32	A number assigned by the IOC vendor to identify the type of controller. This can be used by an Operating System to select a device driver (see Annex A1: I/O Infrastructure on page 1289).
-	Device Version	RO	128	16	A number assigned by the IOC vendor to identify the device version (see A1.2.4.1 Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver on page 1293).
-	reserved	RO	144	16	reserved
-	Subsystem VendorID	RO	160	24	IEEE OUI of the vendor of the module, if any, in which the I/O controller resides in IEEE format; otherwise zero (see A1.2.4.1 Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver on page 1293).
-	reserved	RO	184	8	reserved
-	SubsystemID	RO	192	32	A number assigned by the subsystem vendor identifying the type of module where the controller resides (see A1.2.4.1 Matching an I/O Controller with an I/O Device Driver on page 1293).
-	locServiceRecordCount ^b	RO	424	16	Number of ServiceRecords that the DevMgt Agent will return for a ServiceRecord query matching this IOC's locGUID (all other ComponentMask bits=0), see A8.3.3.7 ServiceRecord on page 1731 . This includes records for IOC I/O management objects as well as I/O service objects.

Table 534 IOControllerProfile (Continued)

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	locProtocolCount ^b	RO	440	16	Number of Protocol Records that the DevMgt Agent will return for a ProtocolRecord query matching this IOC's locGUID (all other ComponentMask bits=0), see A8.3.3.8 ProtocolRecord on page 1735 . This includes all IOC related protocols (I/O protocols, management protocols, etc.)
-	locServiceObjectCount ^b	RO	456	16	Number of Service Objects associated with this IOC. This includes all IOC related services (I/O service objects, management service objects, etc.)
-	reserved	RO	472	40	reserved
-	ID String	RO	512	512	UTF-8 encoded string for identifying the controller.
-	reserved	RO	1024	512	reserved

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

b. For the case where the actual count exceeds the maximum value of 0xFFFF, the DevMgt agent reports the maximum value. Thus, the value 0xFFFF indicates '*0xFFFF or more*'.

There are different ways to request IOControllerProfiles. Three examples (by locGUID, by SlotNumber, and a wildcard request that returns all IOControllerProfiles) are provided below. The requestor will receive one or more response packets containing zero or more records via the RMPP protocol.

- Wildcard Query

For a wildcard query, the initiator sets the ComponentMask to 0x0000 in the DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile). The DevMgt agent returns an IOControllerProfile for each IOC.

- Query by locGUID

For a query by locGUID, the initiator sets the locGUID in the DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) to the desired value and sets the ComponentMask to 0x0001. The DevMgt agent returns the IOControllerProfile for the specified locGUID.

- Query by SlotNumber

For a query by SlotNumber, the initiator sets ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) to 0x0004 (bit 2 of the ComponentMask set) and sets the SlotNumber component in the DevMgtGet(IOControllerProfile) attribute to the desired Slot Number. The DevMgt agent returns an IOControllerProfile for each IOC with the specified slot number.

The number of service objects associated with the IOC is specified in [loc-ServiceObjectCount^b](#). There are a number of ProtocolRecords and ServiceRecords associated with each IOC. The number of these records are specified in [locProtocolCount^b](#) and [locServiceRecordCount](#).

A8.3.3.7 SERVICE RECORD

The IOU maintains the list of ServiceRecords. For each service object, there is one or more ServiceRecords that contains that service object's locGUID+ServiceObjectID. That is, if the IOC supports multiple I/O protocols, then there will be multiple ServiceRecords per I/O service object (each with the same ServiceObjectID but a different service name). Additionally, there are ServiceRecords for I/O management service objects.

The combination of locGUID+ServiceObjectID+ServiceName uniquely identifies a ServiceRecord.

There are two types of service objects (I/O service objects and I/O management service objects). An I/O service object is a port, through which a client can access I/O devices. An I/O management service object is a port, through which a management application can manage service objects and their I/O devices. The ObjectType component in the ServiceRecord attribute specifies if the service is an I/O service or an I/O management service.

Each Service Object is associated with an IOC. The ServiceRecord contains the IOC's locGUID plus a ServiceObjectID that together uniquely identifies the service object. The IOU may have I/O management service objects that are not associated with a particular IOC, in which case the locGUID in the ServiceRecord is set to zero.

An IOC has multiple I/O services objects anytime the IOC provides multiple sets of I/O resources for which the same I/O client has to use a different QP (or set of QPs) to access each set. For example, an IOC that supports the SCSI RDMA Protocol (SRP) would have a ServiceRecord for each SCSI target port. Additionally, if that IOC supports one or more management protocols (such as for a JBOD or RAID configuration program), the IOC would also have additional ServiceRecords for them.

The DM uses ServiceRecords to learn what service objects exists and determine how many resources (number and type of QPs) get consumed when a client uses the specified service object. This information is useful when the manager needs to establish the size of resource pools.

The IORM and I/O driver uses information from the ServiceRecord to identify the protocol (ServiceName) and channel characteristics for communicating with the specified service object including the ServiceID that the client uses in CM:REQ and/or CM:SIDR_REQ messages.

Table 535 ServiceRecord Attribute

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	locGUID	RO	0	64	locGUID - Identifies the IOC that provides the service. IOCs that have multiple service objects or support multiple protocols can have multiple records, each with the same locGUID value. A value of zero designates the service is associated with the IOU and not a particular IOC.
1	ServiceObjectID	RO	64	64	ServiceObjectID - identifies the service object within the IOC's domain. ServiceRecords with the same locGUID+ServiceObjectID refer to the same service object. Note that a service object that supports multiple protocols has multiple ServiceRecords (each with the same locGUID+ServiceObjectID value).
2	ServiceName	RO	128	512	Service Name (protocol name)- UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated protocol-specific name of the service as per Annex A3 from the ProtocolRecord attribute that describes the protocol supported by a channel created using this record's ServiceID.
3	ObjectType	RO	640	8	Indicates the type of service object <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 = unknown/other • 0x01 = I/O Service Object • 0x02 = I/O Management Object other values reserved
4	CMValidation	RO	648	1	Set to one to indicate that the IOU validates Client_Key as part of CM:REQ and CM:SIDR_REQ. When set to zero, it indicates that the DM must allocate a DefaultPool specifying this service object if it wants to assign the service object to a client.
5	SharedUD	RO	649	1	Set to one to indicate that UD QPs are used for multiple clients. This bit is set to zero if the service object uses a different UD QP for each client, does not use UD service, or only supports a single client and the UD QP is released when the client logs out.
-	reserved	RO	650	6	reserved
	ClientCountMax	RO	656	16	Number of clients that can simultaneously access this service. A value of 0xFFFF is interpreted as not limited by the implementation.
-	ServiceID	RO	672	64	ServiceID - The 64-bit Service ID that the Service Client uses in CM class MADs to connect with a QP for the particular service object using the specified I/O Protocol. Refer to Chapter 12 and Annex A3 for definition and usage of Service IDs.

Table 535 ServiceRecord Attribute (Continued)

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	RC Channels	RO	736	16	Maximum number of Simultaneous RC Channels Supported - a value of 0xFFFF means not limited by the implementation or the protocol. Any other value indicates the maximum number of RC QPs that the IOC allows for this ServiceID.
-	UC Channels	RO	752	16	Maximum number of Simultaneous UC Channels Supported - a value of 0xFFFF means not limited by the implementation or the protocol. Any other value indicates the maximum number of UC QPs that the IOC allows for this ServiceID.
-	UD Channels	RO	768	16	Maximum number of Simultaneous UD QPs Supported - a value of 0xFFFF means not limited by the implementation or the protocol. Any other value indicates the maximum number of UD QPs that the IOC allows for this ServiceID.
-	RD Channels	RO	784	16	Maximum number of Simultaneous RD QPs Supported - a value of 0xFFFF means not limited by the implementation or the protocol. Any other value indicates the maximum number of RD QPs that the IOC allows for this ServiceID.
-	Send Message Queue Depth	RO	800	16	Maximum number of outstanding requests - the number of request messages that a client can send before receiving an indication that they have been completed. If the implementation supports multiple channels per client, this is the value for the first command channel (unless specified otherwise by the I/O protocol).
-	reserved	RO	816	8	reserved
-	RDMA Read Queue Depth	RO	824	8	Maximum number of RDMA Read transactions that the service object can have outstanding (sent to client). Actual limit is established in CM connection establishment.
-	Send Message Size	RO	832	32	Maximum size of Send Messages in bytes that the service object can receive on this channel.
-	RDMA Transfer Size	RO	864	32	Maximum size of outbound RDMA transfers initiated by the IOC - in bytes.
-	reserved	RO	896	640	reserved

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

An initiator can request particular ServiceRecords using the ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(ServiceRecord). This limits the records returned to a specific subset matching the component values specified in the re-

quest. Thus, in the DevMgtGet(ServiceRecord), the requestor sets the corresponding ComponentMask bit to one (as specified by the CMsk column in [Table 535: ServiceRecord Attribute](#)) and specifies the component value in the ServiceRecord attribute. Only components with a CMsk bit number assigned can be specified and the DevMgt agent ignores component values for components without a CMsk bit number and for components whose ComponentMask bit is zero. The DevMgt agent returns all ServiceRecords that match the specified components and are associated with the requestor's Client_Key (see [A8.4.2 Filtering Information on page 1775](#)). Thus, when the ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt agent returns all ServiceRecords that are associated with the Client_Key.

A8.3.3.7.1 CM VALIDATATION

When set, the CMValidation bit indicates that the IOU does not permit a client to use the service object until after it has validated that the client is authorized to use the service object and that the connection does not exceed the client's allotted resources as specified in the appropriate PlatformPoolRecord and ClientPoolRecord. That is, the service object requires that the client passes its Client_Key in the CM MAD's PrivateData component or as part of a login sequence prior to the service object allowing the client access to its service.

The requirement for setting CMValidation are

- a) The client provides its Client_Key (such as in PrivateData of the CM:REQ and CM:SIDR_REQ messages) before the client is permitted to use to the service object, Service objects may set up a channel with the client and use that channel to convey the Client_Key, as long as the Client_Key validation is performed prior to permitting any other access.
- b) The IOU validates the access rights against the ClientPoolRecord matching that Client_Key.
- c) The QP is allocated from that client pool, except for UD QPs where the QP serves multiple clients (i.e., SharedUD bit is set in the corresponding ServiceRecord). In the case where SharedUD =1 and the QP does not already exist, the QP is allocated from the general pool.

A8.3.3.7.2 SHAREDUD

The SharedUD component indicates whether UD QPs are used for multiple clients. This bit is set to zero if the service object uses a different UD QP for each client, if the service object does not use UD transport service, or if the service only supports a single client and the UD QP is released when the client logs out.

Since one UD QP can service multiple clients, when SharedUD is set, the IOU allocates the QP from the general pool rather than from an individual

client pool. Thus, this bit lets the DM and supervisor know that it does not need to account for the UD service in the pool table QP allocations.

A8.3.3.8 PROTOCOLRECORD

The ProtocolRecord attribute provides the IORM with information it needs to match a generic driver to the service object.

The DevMgt Agent maintains the list of protocol records. The ProtocolRecord attribute contains the IOC's locGUID. Each record describes a protocol supported by the IOC, and if the IOC supports multiple protocols, then there will be multiple Protocol records for that IOC. Protocol types include I/O protocols and I/O management protocols. Thus, there will be one ProtocolRecord attribute for each I/O protocol and each I/O management protocol that the IOC supports. The IOU may have one or more management protocols that are not associated with a particular IOC, in which case the locGUID in the ProtocolRecord attribute is set to zero.

The combination of locGUID+OrgID+Protocol components uniquely identifies a ProtocolRecord attribute.

Table 536 ProtocolRecord Attribute

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	locGUID	RO	0	64	locGUID - Identifies the IOC that this protocol is associated with. Entries with same locGUID refer to same IOC. IOCs that support multiple protocols will have multiple protocol records, each with the same locGUID value. A value of zero designates the IOU. {i.e., <i>locGUID=0 for IOU management and utility protocols like ROM Repository</i> }.
1	Category	RO	64	4	Protocol category as per Annex A3.3.2.
-	reserved	RO	68	4	reserved
3	OrgID	RO	72	24	24-bit IEEE assigned OUI of the organization defining the protocol.
4	Protocol	RO	96	16	Protocol ID - as specified by organization identified in OrgID
5	ProtocolType	RO	112	8	Indicates the type of service object this protocol is for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x00 = unknown/other• 0x01 = I/O Protocol• 0x02 = Management Protocol other values reserved
	reserved	RO	120	8	reserved

Table 536 ProtocolRecord Attribute (Continued)

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
7	ServiceName	RO	128	512	Service Name for the protocol as per Service Naming Conventions defined in Annex A3. UTF-8 encoded, null-terminated character string (e.g., “Console.IBTA”).
-	ProtocolVerLow	RO	640	16	Protocol Version^b (Low) - This is a protocol-specific value that specifies the lowest protocol version supported by the IOC.
-	ProtocolVerHi	RO	656	16	Protocol Version^b (High) - This is a protocol-specific value that specifies the highest protocol version supported by the IOC.
-	ServiceRecord-Count ^c	RO	672	16	Number of ServiceRecords that match loc-GUID+ServiceName of this record
-	Operations	RO	688	16	Supported operation types of this protocol. A bit set to 1 for affirmation of supported capability. Bit: Name; Description 0: ST; Send Messages To IOCs 1: SF; Send Messages From IOCs 2: RT; RDMA Read Requests To IOCs 3: RF; RDMA Read Requests From IOCs 4: WT; RDMA Write Requests To IOCs 5: WF; RDMA Write Requests From IOCs 6: AT; Atomic Operations To IOCs 7: AF; Atomic Operations From IOCs 8-13 reserved 14: VSi; Vendor Specific operations to IOC 15: VSo; Vendor Specific operations from IOC
-	reserved	RO	704	832	reserved

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

b. Protocol version is a numerically increasing value where the higher value indicates a later version. Format of this value is protocol specific.

c. For the case where the actual count exceeds the maximum value of 0xFFFF, the DevMgt agent reports the maximum value. Thus, the value 0xFFFF indicates ‘0xFFFF or more’.

An initiator can request particular Protocol records using the ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(ProtocolRecord). This limits the records returned to a specific subset matching the component values specified in the request. Thus, in the DevMgtGet(ProtocolRecord), the initiator sets the appropriate ComponentMask bit to one (as specified by the CMsk column in [Table 536: ProtocolRecord Attribute](#)) and specifies the component value in the ProtocolRecord attribute. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified and the DevMgt agent ignores component values for components without a CMsk bit number assigned and for com-

ponents whose ComponentMask bit is zero. The DevMgt agent returns all Protocol records that match the specified components. Thus, when the ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt agent returns all ProtocolRecords.

A8.3.3.9 SLOTCONTROLSTATUS

The SlotControlStatus attribute provides the DM with the module removal status for an I/O module and the means to control the removal state. This attribute is used for Graceful IOC Hot Plug.

An IOU that supports Graceful IOC Hot Plug (see [A8.6: IOC Graceful Hot Removal](#)) must support both Get(SlotControlStatus) and Set(SlotControlStatus). Each removable I/O module has its own SlotControlStatus attribute as per [Table 537](#). A non-removable I/O module does not have a SlotControlStatus. Thus, the number of attribute records returned for a wildcard query for all slots is equal to the number of removable I/O modules (one attribute for each slot or a removable I/O module whether or not the slot is populated). An IOU that does not support Graceful IOC Hot Plug only needs to support Get(SlotControlStatus) and returns a MAD-Header:Status of *NoMatchingRecord* in the GetResp().

Table 537 **SlotControlStatus Attribute**

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	SlotNumber	RO	0	8	Slot number of the I/O module
-	RemovalControl	RW	8	8	<p>Specifies action as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x00 = no change• 0x01 = Reset IOU_RTR and SW_RTR to zero• 0x02 = Set SW_RTR to one• 0x03 = Reset SW_CTR to zero• 0x04 = Set SW_CTR to one and reset IOU_RTR and SW_RTR to zero <p>other values reserved</p> <p>For a DevMgtGetResp() in response to a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus), this is the value from the DevMgtSet(). For a response to a DevMgtGet() this value is zero.</p>

Table 537

SlotControlStatus Attribute (Continued)

CMsk ^a bit	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
2	ModuleStatus	RO	16	16	<p>Indicates status of the IO module</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: Module_Present - a 1 indicates that the module is present • bit 1: IOU_RTR - a 1 indicates that the IOU is requesting removal of the module. • bit 2: SW_RTR - a 1 indicates that DM has started the removal process for this module. • bit 3: SW_CTR - a 1 indicates that the I/O module may be removed. <p>all other bits reserved</p>
-	AttentionControl	R/W	32	2	<p>Specifies a change to the Attention LED state as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b = Turn Attention LED OFF • 01b = Turn Attention LED ON • 10b = Blink Attention LED (Module Identify) • 11b = no change to Attention LED state <p>Note that local events may also cause a change to the Attention LED state.</p> <p>For a DevMgtGetResp() in response to a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus), this is the value from the DevMgtSet(). For a response to a DevMgtGet() this value is returned as 11b.</p>
3	AttentionLED- State	RO	34	2	<p>Indicates status of the Attention LED</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 00b = OFF (neither the IOU nor the DM has indicated an attention event) • 01b = ON (either the IOU or the DM has indicated an attention event) • 10b = Blink (indicates Module Identify) • 11b = reserved
-	reserved	RO	36	28	reserved

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

An initiator can request particular SlotControlStatus attributes by using the ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(SlotControlStatus). This limits the records returned to a specific subset matching the component values specified in the request. For example, in the DevMgtGet(SlotControlStatus), the initiator sets the ComponentMask to 0x0001 (i.e., bit 0 =1) and specifies the slot number in the SlotControlStatus attribute to get the attribute for a specific slot. When the ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt agent returns all SlotControlStatus records. DevMgt agent rejects a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus) if the ComponentMask is not 0x0001. That is, the DM can read all of the slots with a single request, but may only set one module per MAD.

A8.3.3.10 RESET

The reset attribute permits the DM to initiate an IOU or IOC reset by issuing a DevMgtSet(Reset) MAD. The reset is targeted to the particular IOC specified by the locGUID. The DM can target the reset to the entire IOU by setting locGUID to zero. In this case, the DevMgt Agent resets the entire IOU.

A reset can be graceful or immediate. Graceful means that the IOC attempts to complete any I/O transactions in progress (i.e., empties its receive queues), if it cannot, or if the IOC continues to receive requests, the IOU terminates the reset and indicates that the reset failed. There are other conditions that may occur that also prevent a graceful reset from completing. They also cause the reset to fail. If so, the DM may need to signal an immediate reset. Immediate means the reset occurs independent of IOC state. IOU policy determines what actions the IOU takes when it receives a Reset. The ResetStatus component in the DevMgtGetResp(Reset) indicates the IOU's reaction to the Reset MAD.

Table 538 **Reset Attribute**

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	locGUID	R/W	0	64	A value of zero specifies an IOU reset, otherwise specifies the IOC GUID of the IOC.
-	ResetType	R/W	64	1	<p>Reset Type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0b - Graceful Reset - Shutdown and Reset. Complete outstanding commands, close files etc., then reset. • 1b - Immediate Reset - Perform the reset immediately. <p>In a DevMgtGetResp() to a DevMgtGet(Reset), this component is reserved and set to zero.</p>
	ResetScope	R/W	65	2	<p>Scope of reset</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 00 - default (IOU determines scope of reset) 01 - Reset only software 10 - Reset only hardware 11 - Reset both hardware and software
	reserved	RO	67	5	Reserved
	ResetStatus	RO	72	8	<p>Reset Status</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 - Not attempting to Reset • 0x01 - Reset in progress • 0x02 - Reset failed
	Reserved	RO	80	48	Reserved

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

1
2
3
4
CA8-30: When the IOU receives a DevMgtSet(Reset) with locGUID=0 and ResetType = Immediate, it shall immediately attempt a reset of the entire IOU.

5
6
7
8
CA8-31: When the IOU receives a DevMgtSet(Reset) with an locGUID that matches one of its IOCs and ResetType = Immediate, it shall immediately attempt a reset of the specified IOC.

9
10
11
CA8-32: When the IOU receives a DevMgtSet(Reset) with an locGUID = 0 and ResetType = Graceful, it shall only attempt the reset if all I/O transactions for all IOCs have ceased.

12
13
14
CA8-33: When the IOU receives a DevMgtSet(Reset) with an locGUID that matches one of its IOCs and ResetType = Graceful, it shall only attempt a reset of the specified IOC if all I/O transactions for that IOC have ceased.

A8.3.3.11 PRODUCTINFO

The ProductInfo attribute provides the means for an IOU to provide product specific information about the IOU or an IOC which might be useful for asset management and other ancillary management.

23
24
Table 539 ProductInfo Attribute

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	locGUID	RO	0	64	An EUI-64 GUID used to uniquely identify the controller. This could be the same GIUD as the TCA's Node GUID if there is only one controller using that GUID. A value of zero signifies the IOU, any other value signifies an IOC.
-	ProductData	RO	64	1472	A null-terminated TLV encoded component containing multiple packed elements of product specific information (see A8.3.3.11.2 ProductData on page 1742).

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

A8.3.3.11.1 locGUID

35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
Each ProductInfo record provides product specific information about the IOU or an IOC. When the locGUID is zero, the record contains product information for the IOU. Otherwise, the record contains product information about the IOC specified by the locGUID.

A8.3.3.11.2 PRODUCTDATA

The ProductData component provides supplemental information about the IOU or IOC that might help identify the IOU/IOC. The ProductData is a fixed-length variable-content field as follows.

- The ProductData component contains a variable number of variable length elements and is terminated with the null value (0x00). All bytes after the termination byte should also be null bytes.
- Elements in ProductData are in TLV format. The first byte is the Type, the second byte is the Length (number of bytes in the value string), and the remainder of the element is the value string, in UTF-8 format. Type codes are specified in [Table 540 ProductData Elements on page 1742](#).
- An element with a Length of zero means that the value for that element is unknown or not set.

Elements that are not valid for a particular implementation should be excluded from the component. The choice of which elements are included is implementation policy. The recommended practice is to order elements by their Type value, lowest to highest.

Table 540 ProductData Elements

Type Value	Length Value	Description (All strings are in UTF-8 and the content of each element is vendor specific)
0x00	0x00	Marks end of elements - ignore remainder of component data following this Type code
0x01	variable	Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the vendor that manufactured the IOU/IOC.
0x02	variable	Vendor Model/Type String This string provides model and type information for the IOU/IOC.
0x03	variable	Serial Number String This string provides the serial number of the IOU/IOC.
0x04	variable	Firmware/OS Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the firmware vendor that manufactured the environment code (e.g., RTOS vendor.).
0x05	variable	Firmware/OS Version String This string provides the version of the firmware code.
0x06	variable	CPU Vendor Name String This string provides the name of the CPU vendor
0x07	variable	CPU Vendor Version String This string provides the CPU version, stepping, etc.

Table 540

ProductData Elements (Continued)

Type	Length	Description	
Type	Length	(All strings are in UTF-8 and the content of each element is vendor specific)	
0x08	variable	Platform Name String This string provides the local name assigned the IOU/IOC - usually assigned by the System Administrator to identify the IOU/IOC by name.	
0x09	variable	Operating Environment Name String This string provides the name of the Operating Environment (RTOS, OS, etc.).	

A8.3.3.12 KEYINFO

The KeyInfo attribute is used by the DM to set the IOU's Device Management Manager_Key and protection properties.

Table 541

KeyInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
Manager_Key	R/W	0	64	The 8-byte Manager_Key used in DevMgt MADs by valid DMs. A KeyInfo:Manager_Key value of 0 means the DevMgt agent does not perform a MADHeader:Access_Key check (see Table 542, "Manager_Key Check," on page 1745).
ProtectBits	R/W	64	2	See A8.3.3.12.3 Manager_Key Check on page 1745 for details.
reserved	R/W	66	14	reserved
LeasePeriod	R/W	80	16	Timer value used to indicate how long the ProtectBits are to remain non zero after a failed MADHeader:Access_Key check with KeyType=Manager. The value of the timer indicates the number of seconds for the lease period. With a 16 bit counter, the period can range from one second to approximately 18 hours. 0 shall mean infinite. See A8.3.3.12.5 Manager_Key Recovery on page 1747 for details.
Violations	R/W	96	16	Number of MADs that have been received at this IOU since power-on or reset that have been dropped due to a failed MADHeader:Access_Key check with KeyType = Manager or attempt to access an attribute that has a 'DM only' access level. Counts the number of DevMgt MADs that have been received by the DevMgt agent that contain an invalid MADHeader:Access_Key. The counter increments until the count reaches all 1s and then must be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. When the DM sets this component to 0x0000, the counter is reset to 0x0000 and counting resumes. Setting the counter to a value other than zero results the counter being left unchanged.
BackwardCompatibility-Level		112	4	Sets the desired Backward Compatibility Level. See A8.3.1.1.2: Backward Compatibility Level .
reserved	RO	116	12	reserved

Table 541 KeyInfo Attribute (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
V1ClientKey		128	64	Specifies the client pool table record that determines which service objects that a host using class version 1 MADs is authorized to see and use. See A8.3.1.1.2: Backward Compatibility Level .
reserved	RO	192	1344	reserved

A8.3.3.12.1 MANAGER_KEY GENERAL USE

The DM's key (Manager_Key) provides a separate level of authentication that helps protect against receipt of improper management request messages. There are two Key values that are compared with each other. One is the MADHeader:Access_Key located in the MAD header of every DevMgt MAD. The other is the KeyInfo:Manager_Key that is read and set via the KeyInfo attribute.

A DM sets an IOU's Manager_Key value via the DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) and the DevMgt agent uses that value to authenticate trusted sources by validating that the MADHeader:Access_Key in received MADs with KeyType = Manager match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key value.

Similar to the model used for other management classes (M_Key, B_Key, etc.), this model assumes that the fabric has some level of physical security. The value of MADHeader:KeyType component and the MAD's method and attribute determines how the DevMgt agent handles the MADHeader:Access_Key validation.

A DevMgt agent always sets the MADHeader:Access_Key to zero in all MADs it creates. For MADs received by the DevMgt agent, the MAD's Method, the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, and the KeyInfo:ProtectBits determine how the DevMgt agent handles the MADHeader:Access_Key validation (as per [Table 542 Manager Key Check on page 1745](#)). If a key check fails, then the DevMgt agent silently drops the packet and increments the KeyInfo:KeyViolations counter. It then issues a MgrKey Violation trap.

CA8-34: The KeyInfo:KeyViolations component shall be incremented once, each time the DevMgt agent receives a MAD for which the MADHeader:Access_Key check was performed according to [Table 542 Manager Key Check on page 1745](#) and failed. However, the counter shall not be incremented if its value is all 1's.

CA8-35: The DevMgt agent shall set the KeyInfo:KeyViolations component to 0x0000 when it receives a valid DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) with KeyViolations = 0x0000.

lations=0x0000. A KeyViolations value other than 0x0000 shall leave the counter unchanged.

A8.3.3.12.2 MANAGER_KEY ASSUMPTIONS

Assumptions for using the Manager_Key are:

- 1) To use the correct key for each IOU, the DM or a higher-level manager keeps track of the keys for the IOUs that it is managing.
- 2) If a backup DM exists, it shares the Manager_Key for ease of fail-over.
- 3) The DM sets the Manager_Key, the ProtectBits, and the LeasePeriod via the KeyInfo attribute with one DevMgtSet(KeyInfo) MAD. A successful completion of this assignment indicates to the DM that it has taken ownership of the IOU.

A8.3.3.12.3 MANAGER_KEY CHECK

Matching the MADHeader:AccessKey to KeyInfo:Manager_Key implies MADHeader:KeyType=DM.

The success and affect of the MADHeader:Access_Key validation check depends on the value of the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, KeyInfo:ProtectBits, and on the method and attribute contained in the incoming MAD. If the key check succeeds then the DevMgt agent responds to the MAD. If the key check fails, the DevMgt agent silently drops the MAD (i.e., does not process it and does not send a response).

CA8-36: When the DevMgt agent receives a MAD with MADHeader:KeyType=DM, it shall perform the authentication determined by the contents of KeyInfo:Manager_Key and the KeyInfo:ProtectBits as per the behaviors described in [Table 542, “Manager_Key Check,” on page 1745](#).

Table 542 Manager_Key Check

KeyInfo Component Values		DevMgt Agent Actions
Manager_Key	ProtectBits	
zero	any	The MADHeader:Access_Key of the MAD shall not be checked when the KeyInfo:Manager_Key is zero. As a result, no authentication is performed.
non-zero	00b	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Any DevMgt MAD received shall succeed if MADHeader:Access_Key matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU.• DevMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key.• A DevMgtGet(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key.• A DevMgtGet(KeyInfo) shall return the IOU's Manager_Key in DevMgtGetResp(KeyInfo) allowing any DM to learn the Manager_Key for the IOU.• A DevMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:Access_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU.

Table 542 Manager_Key Check (Continued)

KeyInfo Component Values		DevMgt Agent Actions
Manager_Key	ProtectBits	
non-zero	01b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any DevMgt MAD received shall succeed if MADHeader:Access_Key matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU. DevMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key A DevMgtGet(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key A DevMgtGetResp(KeyInfo) shall return the KeyInfo:Manager_Key value set to zero if MADHeader:Access_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key. This prevents unauthorized entities from learning the Manager_Key of the IOU. A DevMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader:Access_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU.
non-zero	10b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any DevMgt MAD received shall succeed if MADHeader:Access_Key matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU DevMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key A DevMgtGet(*) for an attribute with RAL of 'A' or 'C' shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key A DevMgtGet(*) for an attribute with RAL of 'M' shall fail if MADHeader:Access_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU. A DevMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader: Manager_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU.
non-zero	11b	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any DevMgt MAD received shall succeed if MADHeader:Access_Key matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU DevMgtTrapRepress(*) shall succeed for any value in the MADHeader:Access_Key A DevMgtGet(*) for any attribute shall fail if MADHeader:Access_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU. A DevMgtSet(*) shall fail if MADHeader: Manager_Key does not match the KeyInfo:Manager_Key component of the IOU.

CA8-37: When the DevMgt agent receives a validated (as per Chapter 13) DevMgtGet() or DevMgtSet() and the Manager_Key checking succeeds according to the rules specified in [Table 542 Manager_Key Check on page 1745](#), then the DevMgt agent shall generate a DevMgtGetResp().

CA8-38: If Manager_Key check specified in [Table 542, “Manager_Key Check,” on page 1745](#) fails, the DevMgt agent shall:

- 1) Silently drop the MAD (i.e., do not send a response).
- 2) Increment KeyInfo:KeyViolations. Incrementing shall stop when the component reaches all 1s.
- 3) Send a KeyViolation trap on all ports.

When a DevMgt agent sends a MAD to the DM there is no need for the DM to do any type of key authentication. For simplicity and consistency, the MADHeader:Access_Key is set to zero for all MADs issued by the DevMgt agent.

CA8-39: The DevMgt agent shall set MADHeader:Access_Key to zero in all DevMgt MADs that it sends.

The DM does not check the MADHeader:Access_Key in any received DevMgt class MAD.

A8.3.3.12.4 MANAGER_KEY INITIALIZATION

CA8-40: At power-up, the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, KeyInfo:ProtectBits, and KeyInfo:LeasePeriod shall be set to zero if KeyInfo is not saved in NVRAM; otherwise, they shall be set to the values stored in NVRAM.

In the case that the IOU is reset or rebooted, the protection afforded by the Manager_Key needs to be preserved. It is desirable that the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, KeyInfo:ProtectBits, and KeyInfo:LeasePeriod survive the reset. It is only permissible to reset KeyInfo attribute components if the reset is complete, such that the P_Key tables are also cleared, because resetting the P_Key table removes clients' ability to access the IOU while it is vulnerable.

CA8-41: When the IOU is reset or rebooted, the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, KeyInfo:ProtectBits, and KeyInfo:LeasePeriod shall be preserved. The only exception is that if the IOU's P_Key tables are cleared and KeyInfo is not saved in NVRAM, then the KeyInfo:Manager_Key, KeyInfo:ProtectBits and KeyInfo:LeasePeriod may be set to zero.

Using a DevMgtSet(KeyInfo), the DM may assign the subsequent Manager_Key, ProtectBits, and LeasePeriod. Note that the DM should ensure that the lease period allows ample time for the DM to sweep the IOUs in its configuration group to prevent the lease from expiring.

A8.3.3.12.5 MANAGER_KEY RECOVERY

The Manager_Key lease period timer starts when the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt class MAD whose MADHeader:Access_Key fails the Manager_Key check. At this time, the DevMgt agent sends a KeyViolation trap to the DM (that is, if the DM set its information in the trap components of the ClassPortInfo attribute). This trap serves as a request to the DM to refresh the lease period, which it can do by issuing any DevMgt MAD with a MADHeader:KeyType=DM and MADHeader:Access_Key that matches the IOU's KeyInfo:Manager_Key. The lease period timer is reset to the value contained in KeyInfo:LeasePeriod when the DevMgt agent receives any MAD with MADHeader:Access_Key that matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key.

If the DevMgt agent fails to receive a MAD with a MADHeader:Access_Key that matches KeyInfo:Manager_Key, then the lease period expires - clearing the KeyInfo:ProtectBits to zero and allowing anyone to read (and then set) the KeyInfo:Manager_Key.

In the case when a IOU initializes using NVRAM (e.g. IsManager_KeyNonVolatile=1b) then Manager_Key, ProtectBits, LeasePe-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
riod are set to the values the DevMgt agent had saved in local-persistent storage. The TrapLID for each port is reset to zero and the DevMgt agent waits for the DM to come around to set the port's TrapLid before it can send any traps. If the DevMgt agent receives a MAD that fails the Manager_Key check and the TrapLID is reset, then the DevMgt agent cannot determine the LID of the DM needed to send the trap. In this case, the IOU does not send the trap and the lease period timer could expire, causing eventual take over by a new DM.

With the DevMgtGet(KeyInfo), any DM can detect whether the Manager_Key is set (although hidden) based on the ProtectBits. If the ProtectBits are non-zero, the KeyInfo:Manager_Key is set and hidden. Otherwise, the returned KeyInfo:Manager_Key is the real one even if it is zero. Failure to get a response after some number of attempts is an indication that the KeyInfo:Manager_Key is set and KeyInfo:ProtectBits = 10b or 11b.

A8.3.3.12.6 LEASE PERIOD

A DM specifies the Lease Period by setting the contents of the KeyInfo:LeasePeriod component. It is intended to allow the Manager_Key protection to 'expire' if the DM inadvertently goes away without sharing the Manager_Key.

CA8-42: The lease period timer shall start counting down toward zero when the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD for which the Manager_Key check was performed according to [Table 542, "Manager_Key Check," on page 1745](#) and failed. If the lease timer count is already underway, it shall not be interrupted by the arrival of that MAD.

Furthermore, for each port capable of sending DevMgt traps, the DevMgt agent sends a MgrKey Violation trap described in [Table 520 Notice_0x0000 DataDetails \[MgrKey Violation\] on page 1715](#) to the DM indicating that the lease timer has started counting. In response to that trap, the DM may renew the Lease Period by setting the proper MAD-Header:Access_Key in the DevMgtTrapRepress() or any other DevMgt MAD it sends to the IOU. If all DMs with the proper Manager_Key have gone away, then the Lease Period will expire, allowing another DM to take over.

CA8-43: The DevMgt agent shall cease counting down the lease period timer and shall reset it to the value contained in KeyInfo:LeasePeriod component when the DevMgt agent receives any MAD on any port with MADHeader:Access_Key that matches the KeyInfo:Manager_Key.

CA8-44: The DevMgt agent shall set its KeyInfo:ProtectBits to zero when its lease period counter expires.

When the lease period expires, clearing the ProtectBits allow any DM to read (and then set) the KeyInfo:Manager_Key.

CA8-45: When the KeyInfo:LeasePeriod is set to zero, the lease period timer shall never expire.

Whether there is an out-of-band mechanism to reset data protected with a lease period of zero is outside the scope of this specification.

A8.3.3.13 IoURESOURCEINFO

A DM uses DevMgtGet(IoUResourceInfo) to learn detailed information about the IOU's configurable resources, such as size and capacity of platform pool table, size and capacity of client pool table, the number of QPs already assigned to platforms, and the number of available QPs.

There is one IoUResourceInfo record and thus the DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask and RMPP header and returns a single DevMgtGet-Resp(IoUResourceInfo) MAD.

Table 543 IoUResourceInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
PlatformPoolTableSize ^a	RO	0	16	Number of Platform Pools, thus it is the maximum number of PlatformPoolRecords the IOU can have
PlatformPoolRecordCount ^a	RO	16	16	Number of Platform Pools currently configured
ClientPoolTableSize ^a	RO	32	32	Number of Client Pools, thus it is the maximum number of Client-PoolRecords the IOU can have
ClientPoolRecordCount ^a	RO	64	32	Number of Client Pools currently configured
ServiceObjectMaxCount ^a	RO	96	32	Maximum number of service objects that can be specified in a PlatformPoolRecord and a ClientPoolRecord.
reserved	RO	128	8	reserved
NumFreeQPs	RO	136	24	Number of QPs still available - This value limits the number of QPs that the DM can allocate to a Platform Pool.
reserved	RO	160	8	reserved
TotalReservedQPs	RO	168	24	Number of QPs that have been reserved for platform pools - i.e., sum of PlatformQPmin for all Platform Pools
reserved	RO	192	8	reserved
TotalReservedQPsTarget	RO	200	24	Number of QPs that have been requested for platform pools - i.e., sum of PlatformQPminTarget for all Platform Pools
reserved	RO	224	8	reserved

Table 543 **IoUResourceInfo Attribute (Continued)**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
TotalQPsInUse	RO	232	24	Number of QPs consumed by all platforms - i.e., sum of ClientQPsInUse for all Client Pools
reserved	RO	256	8	reserved
TotalAdditionalQPs	RO	264	24	Number of additional QPs consumed by all platforms - i.e., sum of PlatformAdditionalQPs for all Platform Pools
reserved		288	7	reserved
NonVolatile	RO	295	1	Set to 1 to indicate that Pool Tables are persistently saved across power cycles.
ManagerUpdateLock	R/W	296	8	<p>Set by the DM to coordinate updates</p> <p>Bit 0 - Supervisors prohibited from modifying ClientPoolRecords</p> <p>Bit 1 - Clients prohibited from consuming QPs</p> <p>other bits reserved</p>
ManagerUpdateLease	R/W	304	16	Specifies the number of milliseconds from the time the manager sets this record until the ManagerUpdateLock reverts to zero. A lease value of zero means infinite.
reserved		320	16	reserved
MaxNumbDiagSessions	RO	336	16	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent diagnostic sessions that the IOU supports. A value of zero means the IOU does not support Diagnostic Sessions.
MaxNumbDiagObjects	RO	352	32	Specifies the maximum number of objects that can be listed in the DiagSession:ObjectList.
MaxClientPriority	RO	384	8	Specifies the number of priority levels the IOU supports by specifying the maximum priority value that can be specified for client priority in PlatformPoolRecords and ClientPoolRecords.
IsClientPriorityRetroactive	RO	392	1	<p>Indicates if changes to ClientPoolRecord:ClientPriority impacts the priority of existing connections.</p> <p>0 = only impacts priority of future connections</p> <p>1 = impacts priority of existing as well as future connections</p>
MaxPriorityChangeTime	RO	393	7	Indicates the maximum number of seconds that the IOU takes to change a QP's priority when ClientPoolRecord:ClientPriority changes. If IsClientPriorityRetroactive =0, then this component is undefined and set to zero.
	RO	400	1136	reserved

a. For the case where the actual count exceeds the maximum value, the DevMgt agent reports the maximum value. Thus, the value 0xFFFF in a 16-bit field indicates '0xFFFF or more'.

A8.3.3.13.1 TABLE SIZES

The PlatformPoolTableSize and ClientPoolTableSize components respectively specify the maximum number of Platform Pool Table entries and Client Pool Table entries the IOU supports.

The PlatformPoolRecordCount and ClientPoolRecordCount components respectively specify the actual number of Platform Pool Table entries and Client Pool Table entries in use. Their values change when the DM creates or destroys Pool Table Records via the DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord) and DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with Action = Create or Delete.

The number of pool table entries affects the ability of the DM to distribute resources. The number of platform pool table records affect the number of client platforms that may access the IOU.

CA8-46: An IOU shall support a minimum of 4 Platform Pool Records.

The number of client pool table records needed affect the number of clients that may access service objects. Ideally, there would be one record per service object per client platform. There must be at least one record per client platform and when there is a large number of service objects there needs to be at least one record for each service object.

CA8-47: An IOU shall support a number of Client Pool Table records equal to or greater than the number of Platform Pool Records or the number of Service Objects, which ever is greater.

ServiceObjectMaxCount specifies the maximum number of service objects that may be listed in a pool table entry. Ideally, that number is equal to the number of service objects. For the case where management creates a new service object for each client platform, the number of service objects necessary in a pool table record is significantly less than the total number of service objects. At a minimum, the DM needs the ability to list at least one service object per IOC.

CA8-48: An IOU shall support a ServiceObjectMaxCount equal to or greater than the number of IOCs.

A8.3.3.13.2 QP RESOURCES

The maximum number of QPs available can vary from one moment to the next depending on circumstances outside of Device Management. Additionally, the number of QPs in use is a dynamic value. The DM can calculate the maximum QPs available via adding the TotalReservedQPs, TotalAdditionalQPs, and the NumFreeQPs components, which represent a snapshot at the time the DM reads the louResourceInfo attribute.

When there are sufficient QPs to fill a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord.PlatformQPminTarget) request, the IOU reserves the QPs for the platform and the TotalReservedQPs component will equal the TotalReservedQPsTarget. When there are not sufficient free QPs (i.e., NumFreeQPs = 0), then TotalReservedQPsTarget can be greater than TotalReservedQPs. As QPs become available (i.e., DM reduces QPmin of other pool table records or additional QPs are released), the DevMgt agent allocates those resources to platform pools that have a PlatformQPminTarget exceeding its PlatformQPmin. Thus, TotalReservedQPs will increment until it reaches TotalReservedQPsTarget.

The actual number of QPs in use (as reported in the TotalQPsInUse component) is different than the number of QPs reserved for platforms. This value represents the QPs that clients are actually consuming. The TotalAdditionalQPs component specifies the number of QPs that client platforms are consuming above their QPmin.

A8.3.3.13.3 UPDATE LOCK

The ManagerUpdateLock and ManagerUpdateLease components provide a means for the DM to lock out clients and supervisors while it is modifying pool table records. When the DM sets a non-zero value for the ManagerUpdateLock, the DevMgt Agent starts a timer for the time specified in ManagerUpdateLease. If the timer expires, the DevMgt Agent resets the ManagerUpdateLock to zero. This protects from the manager going away and leaving the IOU disabled. The DM cancels the lease by setting a ManagerUpdateLock value of zero. If the DM needs more time, it simply writes the louResourceInfo attribute again, which restarts the timer with the new ManagerUpdateLease value.

A8.3.3.13.4 MAXCLIENTPRIORITY

MaxClientPriority specifies the number of priority levels the IOU supports by specifying the maximum priority value that may be specified for client priority in PlatformPoolRecords and in ClientPoolRecords. A value of zero indicates that the IOU supports one priority (i.e. the IOU does not support client priority). A value of "n" indicates the IOU supports "n+1" priorities, for example, a value of 3 indicates that the IOU supports the 4 priority levels 0 through 3.

A8.3.3.14 PLATFORMPOOLRECORD

The DM uses PlatformPoolRecords to create Supervisor_Keys and program the IOU with access privileges for individual platforms. Each record represents a client-platform, which is identified by a unique Supervisor_Key. The platform's supervisor can read its PlatformPoolRe-

cord to learn which service objects the platform is allowed to access as well as the resources that the platform's clients are permitted to consume.

Table 544 PlatformPoolRecord Attribute

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	Supervisor_Key	RO	0	64	A key that identifies the supervisor of the node permitted to access the service objects listed below.
-	ClientPoolCount	RO	64	32	The number of ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key
-	reserved	RO	96	32	reserved
-	Action	R/W	128	8	Specifies the action to be taken when this record is written. This component is returned with a value of zero in response to a DevMgtGet(). 0x00 - Update: Replace the record that matches this attribute's Supervisor_Key with this record. 0x01 - Create a new record 0x04 - Delete the PlatformPoolRecord with this Supervisor_Key and delete all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key 0x07 - Delete all PlatformPoolRecords and all ClientPoolRecords Any other value is an error - do not modify any record
-	ManagerUpdateLock	RO	136	8	ManagerUpdateLock value as defined in the lIoResourceInfo attribute. This component provides the means for the Supervisor to learn that the DM has asserted the global lock.
-	Non-Volatile	RO	144	1	Indicates if Pool Tables are preserved over power cycles.
-	SharedRecord	R/W	145	1	Specifies that this record is used by more than one platform.
-	reserved	RO	146	14	reserved
-	PlatformQoS	R/W	160	16	Indicates SL that the IOU is allowed to use with this platform's clients. Bit 0=SL0, Bit 1=SL1, ... Bit 15=SL15
-	reserved	RO	176	24	
-	PlatformQPmin	RO	200	24	Indicates the number of IOU QPs reserved for this platform.
-	reserved	RO	224	8	
-	PlatformQPminTarget	R/W	232	24	Specifies the desired QP minimum. The DM sets this value to change QPmin. The DevMgt Agent changes PlatformQPmin as soon as QPs become available.
-	reserved	RO	256	8	
-	PlatformQPmax	R/W	264	24	Specifies the maximum number of IOU QPs this platform is allowed to consume.
-	reserved	RO	288	8	

Table 544 PlatformPoolRecord Attribute (Continued)

CMsk^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	PlatformQPsAllocated	RO	296	24	Indicates the number of IOU QPs that the supervisor has allocated to its client pools - This is the sum of ClientQPmin for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key
-	reserved	RO	320	8	
-	PlatformQPsAllocatedTarget	RO	328	24	Number of QPs that have been requested for this platform's client pools - it is the sum of ClientQPminTarget for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key.
-	reserved	RO	352	8	
-	PlatformQPsInUse	RO	360	24	Indicates the number of IOU QPs that are currently being used by this platform's clients - It is the sum of ClientQPsInUse for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key.
-	reserved	RO	384	8	
-	PlatformAdditionalQPs	RO	392	24	Indicates the number of QPs that the platform is consuming in excess of the number reserved for that platform (PlatformQPmin).This is the number of QPs borrowed from the general pool. - This value is calculated as the greater of zero or [Sum {ClientAdditionalQPs} - PlatformUnallocatedQPs], • where <i>PlatformUnallocatedQPs</i> = [PlatformQPmin - PlatformQPsAllocated], and <i>Sum {ClientAdditionalQPs}</i> is the total of [ClientQPsInUse-ClientQPmin] for ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key and ClientQPsInUse greater than ClientQPmin.
-	PlatformPriorityMin	R/W	416	8	Indicates the minimum priority that may be assigned to a client of this platform. Valid values range from 0 to PlatformPriorityMax , where zero is the lowest priority.
-	PlatformPriorityMax	R/W	424	8	Indicates the maximum priority that may be assigned to a client of this platform. Valid values range from PlatformPriorityMin to iouResourceInfo:MaxClientPriority .
-	reserved		432	16	
-	ServiceObjCount	R/W	448	32	Specifies the number of service objects listed in ServiceObjList
-	ServiceObjList	R/W	480	varies	List of service objects that the platform is allowed to access. Each service object is 128 bits [64-bit louGUID+64bit ServiceObjectID]. The length of this field is 128 x n where n is ServiceObjCount.

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

The DM can request particular PlatformPoolRecords by using the ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(PlatformPoolRecord). This limits the records

1 returned to a specific subset matching the component values specified in
2 the request. For example, in the DevMgtGet(PlatformPoolRecord), the
3 manager sets the ComponentMask to 0x0001 (i.e., bit 0 =1) and specifies
4 the Supervisor_Key in the PlatformPoolRecord attribute to get the record
5 for a specific platform. When the ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt
6 agent returns all PlatformPoolRecords.

7 DevMgt agent rejects a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord) containing more
8 than one attribute. Thus, the DM can read multiple records, but can only
9 perform a single write per transaction. For a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRe-
10 cord), the DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask.

A8.3.3.14.1 SUPERVISOR KEY

11 The platform is designated by its Supervisor_Key. The DM creates a re-
12 cord by specifying a unique Supervisor_Key and setting the Action com-
13 ponent to Create. If the Supervisor_Key already exists or there are no
14 platform pools available, the DevMgt Agent rejects the set. Otherwise it
15 creates a new record with that Supervisor_Key.

16 **CA8-49:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRe-
17 cord) with MADHeader:KeyType other than Manager.

18 **CA8-50:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject to a DevMgtGet(PlatformPoolRe-
19 cord) with MADHeader:KeyType not equal to DM or Supervisor.

20 **CA8-51:** In response to a DevMgtGet(PlatformPoolRecord) with MAD-
21 Header:KeyType = Supervisor, the DevMgt Agent shall only return the re-
22 cord with Supervisor_Key matching MADHeader:Access_Key.

A8.3.3.14.2 ACTION COMPONENT

23 The Action component specifies the action that the IOU takes when the
24 DM performs the DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord). The normal action is
25 to replace or create a record. However there are times when the DM may
26 need to delete a specific record or delete all records.

27 DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask in a DevMgtSet(Platform-
28 PoolRecord) because the Action component specifies the scope.

29 **CA8-52:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject to a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRe-
30 cord) with Action = Update if the Supervisor_Key does not exist.

31 **CA8-53:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject to a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRe-
32 cord) with Action = Create if the Supervisor_Key already exists.

33 **CA8-54:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject to a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRe-
34 cord) with Action = Delete Record if the Supervisor_Key does not exist.

A8.3.3.14.3 MANAGER UPDATE

The ManagerUpdateLock informs the supervisor if the DM has locked the IOU's resources while the manager is modifying pool table entries. Set by the DM in the louResourceInfo attribute ManagerUpdateLock component to coordinate updates.

CA8-55: If ManagerUpdateLock specifies that supervisors are prohibited from modifying ClientPoolRecords, then that DevMgt Agent shall either reject or defer a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with KeyType = Supervisor.

A8.3.3.14.4 NON-VOLITILE

Informs the supervisor if the information that the supervisor configures into its ClientPoolRecords will be retained across power cycles.

A8.3.3.14.5 PLATFORMQoS

PlatformQoS specifies the SLs that the platform's clients are allowed to use when connecting with a service object. Thus, this component specifies the ClientQoS values that the supervisor may specify in a ClientPoolRecord.

A8.3.3.14.6 PLATFORM QPMIN, QPMAX, AND QPMINTARGET

Refer to [Figure 328 Allocating Resource Pools on page 1774](#). The PlatformPoolRecord indicates the number of IOU QPs reserved for that platform (**PlatformQPmin**) and the maximum number of IOU QPs that the platform is allowed to consume (**PlatformQPmax**) for use in communication between the platform's clients and the IOU. Because there might not be enough available QPs to increase a platform's QP min, the DM sets **PlatformQPminTarget** to the desired value. If the QPs are available, the DevMgt Agent increases PlatformQPmin immediately, otherwise, the DevMgt Agent increases PlatformQPmin over time as QPs become available.

When the supervisor reduces PlatformQPminTarget below PlatformQPmin, the DevMgt Agent immediately reduces PlatformQPmin to match.

The IOU rejects a CM request that would cause the number of QPs used by all the clients with that same Supervisor_Key to exceed PlatformQPmax - see [A8.4 Resource Allocation Framework on page 1773](#).

The attribute also provides a count of QPs that have been allocated to or consumed by the platform's clients (see [Figure 330 Consuming QPs from Resource Pools on page 1780](#)).

- **PlatformQPsAllocated** = sum of ClientQPmin for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key. This value is the total number of IOU QPs that the supervisor has successfully allocated to its client pools.
- **PlatformQPsAllocatedTarget** = sum of ClientQPminTarget for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key. This value is the total number of QPs that the supervisor has attempted to allocate to its client pools. When PlatformQPsAllocated is less than PlatformQPsAllocatedTarget, it means that there are insufficient QPs - either because the supervisor has specified more than its QPmin or because the some of its clients have consumed all of the platforms excess QPs.
- **PlatformQPsInUse** = sum of ClientQPsInUse for all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key. This value indicates the number of IOU QPs that are actually being used by this platform's clients.
- **PlatformAdditionalQPs** - This value indicates number of additional IOU QPs consumed by this platform in excess of its PlatformQPmin. It is calculated as the greater of zero or [Sum {ClientAdditionalQPs} minus PlatformUnallocatedQPs], -- where PlatformUnallocatedQPs = [PlatformQPmin - PlatformQPsAllocated], and Sum {ClientAdditionalQPs} is the total of [ClientQPsInUse-ClientQPmin] for ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key and ClientQPsInUse greater than ClientQPmin. This value indicates number of additional IOU QPs consumed by this platform in excess of its PlatformQPmin.

A8.3.3.14.7 PLATFORMPRIORITYMIN & PLATFORMPRIORITYMAX

The PlatformPoolRecord specifies the minimum priority (PlatformPriorityMin) and maximum priority (PlatformPriorityMax) that may be assigned to any client of that platform. The values of these components limit the value of Client Priority that the supervisor may specify in it's ClientPoolRecords.

An administrator uses these components to set relative priorities for client platforms. For example, setting PlatformPriorityMax and PlatformPriorityMin to the same value assures that the platform operates at that priority level.

Valid values are 0-n, where zero is the lowest priority possible and n is the value specified in MaxClientPriority of the lIoResourceInfo attribute. The higher the priority value, the greater the access to resources.

CA8-56: The DevMgt Agent **shall reject** a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord) with a PlatformPriorityMax that is greater than the MaxClientPriority of the lIoResourceInfo attribute.

CA8-57: The DevMgt Agent **shall reject** a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with a ClientPriority that is lower than the PlatformPriorityMin in the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.

CA8-58: The DevMgt Agent **shall reject** a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with a ClientPriority that is greater than the PlatformPriorityMax in the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.

CA8-59: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord) with a PlatformPriorityMax that is lower than the PlatformPriorityMin.

The DM changing PlatformPriorityMax or PlatformPriorityMin does not change ClientPriority in ClientPoolRecords regardless of whether the ClientPriority is within the new range. Thus, if the DM wants to enforce the change, it needs to also modify the ClientPoolRecords. However, changes to ClientPoolRecords does not necessarily effect existing connections.

A8.3.3.14.8 SERVICE OBJECT LIST

The ServiceObjList is a list of service objects that the platform is allowed to access. Each service object is designated by two components: locGUID + ServiceObjectID (see [Figure 327: Service Object Tuple](#)). The locGUID specifies the IOC providing the service object and ServiceObjectID species the IOC specific service object. An locGUID value of zero indicates an IOU service object.

Byte0	Byte 7	Byte 8	Byte 15
locGUID		ServiceObjectID	

Figure 327 Service Object Tuple

The length of the ServiceObjList component is calculated as ServiceObjCount x 128 bits. The maximum size of the service object list is specified in the lIoResourceInfo attribute ServiceObjectMaxCount.

A8.3.3.15 CLIENTPOOLRECORD

The DM uses ClientPoolRecords to create unique Client_Keys and the Supervisor uses the attribute to program the IOU with client access privileges for individual clients. See [A8.4 Resource Allocation Framework on page 1773](#) for more information on how ClientPoolRecords are used.

Each record represents a client, which is identified by a unique Client_Key. The record also specifies the Supervisor_Key that associates the ClientPoolRecord to a particular PlatformPoolRecord. For each ClientPoolRecord, the platform's supervisor configures which service objects the client is allowed to access as well as the resources that the client is permitted to consume.

The platform's supervisor may only allocate resources (i.e., QPs, QoS, BW) permitted as per the respective PlatformPoolRecord.

Table 545 ClientPoolRecord Attribute

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
0	Client_Key	RW	0	64	A key that identifies the client permitted to access the service objects listed below.
1	Supervisor_Key	RW	64	64	A key that identifies the supervisor of this record and relates this record to its corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.
-	Action	R/W	128	8	<p>Specifies the action to be taken when this record is written. This component is returned with a value of zero in response to a DevMgtGet().</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x00 - Update: Replace the record that matches this attribute's Client_Key with this record. • 0x01 - Create a new record • 0x02 - Lock ClientPoolRecord with this Client_Key - make no other changes • 0x03 - Unlock ClientPoolRecord with this Client_Key - make no other changes • 0x04 - Delete the ClientPoolRecord with this Client_Key • 0x05 - Delete all ClientPoolRecords with this Supervisor_Key • 0x07 - Delete all ClientPoolRecords • Any other value is an error - do not modify any record <p>Any Action other than 0x00 can only be performed by the DM</p>
-	ManagerUpdateLock	RO	136	8	ManagerUpdateLock value as defined in the lIoResourceInfo attribute.
-	Non-Volatile	RO	144	1	Indicates if Pool Tables are preserved over power cycles.
5	LockedRecord	RO	145	1	When set to one, means that only the DM can modify the record. When set to zero the supervisor may modify the record. This value is set by the DM via the Action component.
6	DefaultPool	R/W	146	1	When set to one, means that this record describes the default pool for service objects listed in its ServiceObjList. When set to zero, means that this record describes a normal client pool.
-	reserved	RO	147	13	
-	ClientQoS	R/W	160	16	Indicates SL that the IOU is allowed to use with this client. Bit 0=SL0, Bit 1=SL1, ... Bit 15=SL15
-	reserved	RO	176	24	

Table 545 ClientPoolRecord Attribute (Continued)

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	ClientQPmin	R/W	200	24	Indicates the number of IOU QPs reserved for this client.
-	reserved	RO	224	8	
-	ClientQPminTarget	R/W	232	24	Specifies the desired QP minimum. The supervisor sets this value to change QPmin. The DevMgt Agent changes ClientQPmin as soon as QPs become available.
-	reserved	RO	256	8	
-	ClientQPmax	R/W	264	24	Specifies the maximum number of IOU QPs this Client is allowed to consume.
-	reserved	RO	288	72	
-	ClientQPsInUse	RO	360	24	Indicates the actual number of IOU QPs this Client is currently consuming.
-	reserved	RO	384	32	
-	ClientPriority	R/W	416	8	Indicates the priority for this client. Valid values are limited by PlatformPriorityMin and PlatformPriorityMax of the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord. The higher the value the higher the priority.
-	reserved		424	24	
-	ServiceObjCount	R/W	448	32	Specifies the number of service objects listed in ServiceObjList
-	ServiceObjList	R/W	varies		List of service objects that the Client is allowed to access. Each service object is 128 bits [64-bit low-GUID+64bit ServiceObjectID]. The length of this field is 128 x n where n is ServiceObjCount.

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

The DM or supervisor can request particular ClientPoolRecords by using the ComponentMask in the DevMgtGet(ClientPoolRecord). This limits the records returned to a specific subset matching the component values specified in the request. For example, in the DevMgtGet(ClientPoolRecord), the manager sets the ComponentMask to 0x0002 (i.e., bit 1 =1) and specifies the Supervisor_Key in the ClientPoolRecord attribute to get all the records for a specific platform. When the ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt agent returns all ClientPoolRecords. A supervisor can only read its own ClientPoolRecords, so if it specifies a ComponentMask is zero, the DevMgt Agent returns its own ClientPoolRecords. A client cannot read any ClientPoolRecords.

DevMgt agent rejects a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with more than one attribute. Thus, the DM or supervisor can read multiple records, but may only perform a single write. A supervisor can only write its own ClientPoolRecords. A client cannot write any ClientPoolRecords. For a DevMgtSet(PlatformPoolRecord), the DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask.

A8.3.3.15.1 CLIENT KEY

The Client's is designated by its Client_Key. The DM creates a record by specifying a unique Client_Key and setting the Action component to Create. If the Client_Key already exists, the DevMgt Agent rejects the set. Otherwise it creates a new record with that Client_Key.

CA8-60: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with KeyType not equal to DM or Supervisor.

CA8-61: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtGet(ClientPoolRecord) with MADHeader:KeyType not equal to DM or Supervisor.

A8.3.3.15.2 SUPERVISOR KEY

The Supervisor_Key correlates the ClientPoolRecord to a PlatformPoolRecord.

CA8-62: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with KeyType = Supervisor if the attribute's Supervisor_Key does not match the MADHeader:Access_Key.

CA8-63: In response to a DevMgtGet(ClientPoolRecord) with MADHeader:KeyType = Supervisor, the DevMgt Agent shall only return records with Supervisor_Key matching MADHeader:Access_Key.

Note that by using component mask, in addition to requesting a particular ClientPoolRecord, the supervisor can request all of its own records.

A8.3.3.15.3 ACTION COMPONENT

The Action component specifies the action that the IOU takes when the DM performs the DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord). The normal action is to replace or create a record. However there are times when the DM may need to delete a specific record or delete all records. The DM is also able to lock the record. Only the DM can create, delete, lock, or unlock ClientPoolRecords.

DevMgt agent ignores the ComponentMask in a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) because the Action component specifies the scope.

CA8-64: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with Action other than Update if KeyType is not Manager.

- CA8-65:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with Action = Update if the Client_Key does not exist. 1
2
- CA8-66:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with Action = Create if the Client_Key already exists. 3
4
- CA8-67:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with Action = Delete Record if the Client_Key does not exist. 5
6
- CA8-68:** The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) if the Supervisor_Key does not exist, unless Action = Delete All. 8
9

A8.3.3.15.4 MANAGER UPDATE LOCK

The ManagerUpdateLock component is used to coordinate updates. It indicates if the DM has locked the IOU's resources while the manager is modifying pool table entries. The value is set by the DM via the louResourceInfo attribute.

CA8-69: If ManagerUpdateLock specifies that supervisors are prohibited from modifying ClientPoolRecords, then that DevMgt Agent shall either reject or defer a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with KeyType = Supervisor. 16
17
18
19

CA8-70: If ManagerUpdateLock specifies that clients are prohibited from consuming resources, then the IOU shall reject or defer CM:REQs for service objects. 21
22
23

A8.3.3.15.5 NON-VOLITILE

Informs the supervisor if the information that the supervisor configures into its ClientPoolRecords will be retained across power cycles. 25
26
27

A8.3.3.15.6 LOCKEDRECORD

Indicates if the record is locked and thus cannot be modified except by the DM. This value is set via the Action component. When not locked, the supervisor may modify the record. 29
30
31
32

The DM can lock ClientPoolRecords via the Action component. Locking a record prevents the supervisor from modifying the record. This is useful for Default Pools and for shared Platform Pools. 33
34
35

CA8-71: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) with KeyType = Supervisor if the record's LockedRecord bit is set. 36
37
38

A8.3.3.15.7 CLIENTQoS

Specifies the SLs that the Client is allowed to use when connecting with a service object. 39
40
41
42

CA8-72: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) if the ClientQoS is not a subset of PlatformQoS in the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.

CA8-73: If the Primary SL or Alternate SL in a CM:REQ or CM:LAP is not a value specified in the ClientQoS component, then the IOU shall reject the CM request.

A8.3.3.15.8 CLIENT QPMIN, QPMAX, AND QPMINTARGET

Refer to [Figure 328 Allocating Resource Pools on page 1774](#). The ClientPoolRecord specifies the number of IOU QPs reserved for that Client (ClientQPmin) and the maximum number of IOU QPs that the Client is allowed to consume (ClientQPmax) for use in communication between the clients and the IOU. Because the platform may have already consumed excess QPs, there might not be enough available QPs to increase a client's QP min. Thus, the supervisor sets ClientQPminTarget to the desired value. If the QPs are available, the DevMgt Agent increases ClientQPmin immediately, otherwise, the DevMgt Agent increases ClientQPmin over time as QPs become available.

When the supervisor reduces ClientQPminTarget, the DevMgt Agent immediately reduces ClientQPmin to match.

CA8-74: The DevMgt Agent shall not increase ClientQPmin if the sum of ClientQPmin for ClientPoolRecords with the same Supervisor_Key exceeds PlatformQPmin in the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.

The DevMgt Agent rejects a CM request that would cause the number of QPs used by the client to exceed ClientQPmax - see [A8.4 Resource Allocation Framework on page 1773](#).

A8.3.3.15.9 CLIENTPRIORITY

The ClientPoolRecord specifies the priority for that Client (ClientPriority). Valid values are limited by the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord (PlatformPriorityMin and PlatformPriorityMax), where the higher the value is higher priority.

Implementation of priority is not architected and is left as an implementation policy. However, a client with a higher priority must have equal or greater access to IOU resources than clients with lower priorities. For example, QPs for higher priority clients should have higher priority slots in the channel adapter's scheduling queue than QPs for lower priority clients. Thus, when the IOU completes a connection with a client, that QP/EEC assumes the priority assigned to that client via the corresponding ClientPoolRecord.

CA8-75: When the IOU creates a QP for a particular client, the IOU shall assign that QP the client priority from the corresponding ClientPoolRecord.

CA8-76: If *louResourceInfo:IsClientPriorityRetroactive* is one, then a change to ClientPoolRecord:ClientPriority must change the client priority for all QPs associated with that client within *louResourceInfo:MaxPriorityChangeTime* seconds.

CA8-77: The IOU shall assure that QPs with a given client priority are given equal or greater access to IOU resources than QPs with lower priority values.

A8.3.3.15.10 SERVICE OBJECT LIST

The ServiceObjList is a list of service objects that the client is allowed to access. Each service object is designated by two components: locGUID + ServiceObjectID (see [Figure 327 Service Object Tuple on page 1758](#)).

The length of the ServiceObjList component is calculated as ServiceObjCount x 128 bits. The maximum size of the service object list is specified in the louResourceInfo attribute ServiceObjectMaxCount.

CA8-78: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtSet(ClientPoolRecord) if the ServiceObjList is not a proper subset of the ServiceObjList in the corresponding PlatformPoolRecord.

A8.3.3.16 KEYCHANGE

The DM uses KeyChange attribute to change Client_Key and Supervisor_Key values. A successful DevMgtSet(KeyChange) means that the DevMgt Agent changed the Client_Key or the Supervisor_Key as specified in the attribute.

Table 546 KeyChange Attribute

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
Old_Key	W	0	64	Specifies the old Client_Key or Supervisor_Key value
New_Key	W	64	64	Specifies the new Client_Key or Supervisor_Key value
Action	W	128	8	<p>Specifies the action to be taken when this record is written.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x01 - Change the Client_Key value in the ClientPoolRecord who's Client_Key = Old_Key to the value specified in New_Key. • 0x02 - Change the Supervisor_Key value in the PlatformPoolRecord who's Supervisor_Key = Old_Key to the value specified in New_Key and change Supervisor_Key value in all ClientPoolRecords who's Supervisor_Key = Old_Key to the value specified in New_Key <p>Any other value is an error - do not modify any record</p>
	RO	136	120	reserved

A8.3.3.17 DIAGSESSION

This attribute provides the means to establish, renew, or terminate a Diagnostic Session. A diagnostic application requests a Diagnostic Session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the DM and if the manager approves, the manager notifies the affected hosts and then sends a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU. Renewing and terminating an established session work the same way. If the DiagSessionStatus in the response from the IOU indicates 'Device not Ready', then the IOU will send a trap when the status changes. If the manager accepts the session request, it responds to the diagnostic application with 'Device not Ready' so that it can inform the affected hosts and configure the IOU. It will then follow-up with a DevMgtReport() with the final status.

Table 547 DiagSession

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	IouGUID	R/W	0	64	The CA GUID of the IOU to be tested.

Table 547 DiagSession (Continued)

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
1	DiagToken	R/W	64	64	Diagnostic Token set by the DM. When this attribute is sent by the diagnostic program to establish a new session, it sets this value to zero in the Set() and the manager provides the actual value in the GetResp(). This component is ignored when Action = Terminate all existing diagnostic sessions.
-	DiagSeverity	R/W	128	4	<p>Specifies the severity level of diagnostics that the diagnostic program may perform using this token:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 - Non-Intrusive - does not impact I/O performance • 0x1 - I/O performance reduced to 90% • 0x2 - I/O performance reduced to 80% • 0x3 - I/O performance reduced to 70% • 0x4 - I/O performance reduced to 60% • 0x5 - I/O performance reduced to 50% • 0x6 - I/O performance reduced to 40% • 0x7 - I/O performance reduced to 30% • 0x8 - I/O performance reduced to 20% • 0x9 - I/O performance reduced to 10% • 0xA - No I/O Service during diagnostics - connections remain • 0xF - No I/O Service - Connections terminated • other values reserved
-	DiagScope	R/W	132	4	<p>Specifies the scope of the objects that can be affected by diagnostic testing using this token:</p> <p>0x0 - Entire IOU: The diagnostics can affect all I/O objects of all IOCs.</p> <p>0x1 - I/O Modules: The diagnostics can affect all I/O objects of the IOCs associated with the I/O modules listed in the ObjectList component.</p> <p>0x2 - I/O Controllers: The diagnostics can affect all I/O objects of the IOCs listed in the ObjectList component.</p> <p>0x3 - Service Objects: The diagnostics can affect the I/O objects listed in the ObjectList component.</p> <p>other values reserved</p>
-	Action	R/W	136	4	<p>Specifies the action that the DevMgt Agent takes when the DM sets this attribute:</p> <p>0x0 - Establish a new diagnostic session</p> <p>0x1 - Terminate all^b existing sessions (if any) and establish a new diagnostic session</p> <p>0x2 - Terminate existing diagnostic session (identified by DiagToken)</p> <p>0x3 - Terminate all^b existing diagnostic sessions</p> <p>0x4 - Renew the lease for the Diagnostic Session identified by DiagToken. This may also establish new scope and diagnostic level.</p> <p>other values reserved</p>

Table 547

DiagSession (Continued)

CMsk ^a (bit)	Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
-	DiagSession-Status	RO	140	4	<p>Indicates the state of the Diagnostic Session</p> <p>0x0 = Ready for diagnostic test</p> <p>0x1 = Invalid DiagScope - one or more of the objects listed is not present or does not exist</p> <p>0x2 = Device not ready - More time is required to prepare one or more of the objects listed</p> <p>0x4 = Device not responding - one or more of the objects listed has failed to prepare for diagnostic testing.</p> <p>0x6 = Device in use - at least one of the objects listed is part of another DiagSession.</p> <p>0x7 = Unknown or Invalid DiagToken - If Action = Terminate or Renew, DiagToken does not exist; Action = Establish, DiagToken already exists.</p> <p>0x8 = Diagnostics not supported</p> <p>0x9 = Session Terminated</p> <p>0xF = Request denied</p> <p>other values reserved</p>
-	LeasePeriod	R/W	144	16	Number of seconds remaining in the DiagSession
-	reserved		160	80	reserved
-	ObjectList-Count	R/W	240	16	Specifies the number of objects specified in objectList. When DiagScope is 'Entire IOU' then this value is zero. The max value allowed is reported in the louResourceInfo attribute.
-	ObjectList	R/W	256	varies	<p>Specifies the list of objects that can be impacted by a diagnostic test using this DiagToken. The content of this component is based on DiagScope and ObjectListCount:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entire IOU: no data (this field size is zero) • I/O Modules: List of I/O Modules by slot number where each byte contains the slot number of an I/O module - thus the length of this component is n Bytes where n = ObjectList Count. • I/O Controllers: List of locGUIDs - thus the length of this component is 8n Bytes where n = ObjectList Count. • Service Objects: List of locGUID+ServiceObjectID tuples - thus the length of this component is 16n Bytes where n = ObjectListCount

a. ComponentMask bit - This column indicates which bit in the ComponentMask is set when the initiator wants only records that match the corresponding component value in the query. Only components with CMsk bit numbers assigned can be specified.

b. When sent to DevMgt Agent, 'all sessions' means any existing session. When sent by a diagnostic application to the manager, 'all sessions' means all sessions created by the source LID+QP.

The number of Diagnostic Sessions that an IOU supports is implementation dependant and reported in the louResourceInfo attribute. The IOU rejects a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) that attempts to exceed the supported number of Diagnostic Sessions using MADHeader>Status of 'TableFull'. The IOU may also reject a DiagSession if the scope overlaps with an existing Diagnostic Session.

The diagnostic application uses the IouGUID component to indicate to the DM which IOU. If the DM permits the session, it then issues a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU. If the IOU receives a DevMgtGet(DiagSession) or DevMgtSet(DiagSession) with an IouGUID that does not match the IOU's CA GUID, then the DevMgt Agent rejects the MAD with MADHeader>Status 2-4 = 7 (invalid value).

CA8-79: The DevMgt Agent shall reject a DevMgtGet(DiagSession) or DevMgtSet(DiagSession) with an IouGUID that does not match the IOU's CA GUID.

If a DevMgtGet(DIAGSession) requests a specific DIAG Session (i.e., specifies a specific DiagToken), then the IOU returns the attribute for that session. If the session does not exist, then the IOU returns an attribute with DiagSessionStatus = 0x7 "Unknown or Invalid DiagToken". If a DevMgtGet(DIAGSession) requests all DIAG Sessions (i.e., DiagToken CMsk bit not set), then the IOU returns all current DIAGSession Attributes (i.e., DIAG sessions that have not been terminated).

The LeasePeriod specifies the amount of time that the IOU keeps the session active. The time counts down from the time that DevMgtGetResp() is sent. If the lease timer expires, the session terminates. Note that the lease period granted by the manager may be different than what was requested by the diagnostic application. If the application needs more time, it can renew the lease before the end of the lease period. The lease period between the diagnostic application and the manager is to guard against the application disappearing before it terminates the session and the lease between the manager and the IOU is to protect against the manager disappearing. Thus, the manager may choose to use a different lease period with the IOU than it does with the diagnostic application.

CA8-80: The DevMgt Agent shall automatically terminate a DiagSession if the DM does not renew the lease within the time limit specified in DiagSession:LeasePeriod.

The diagnostic application uses the DiagToken in diagnostic DevMgt MADs that it sends to the IOU to specify the governing Diagnostic Session. The DevMgt Agent uses the DiagToken to authenticate the rights of the initiator to perform diagnostics by comparing the requested test to the permissions granted by the Diagnostic Session matching the DiagToken.

The IOU rejects a diagnostic test request that:

- a) Specifies an invalid DiagToken
- b) Exceeds the specified DiagSeverity level
- c) Exceeds the specified DiagScope

CA8-81: The DevMgt Agent shall reject any DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) and DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) that does not specify a valid access key (i.e., valid DiagToken and MADHeader:KeyType=Diagnostic Token or the Manager_Key and MADHeader:KeyType=DM).

CA8-82: The DevMgt Agent shall reject any DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) and DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) that specifies a test object outside the scope of the Diagnostic Session matching the DiagToken.

CA8-83: The DevMgt Agent shall reject any DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) and DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) that specifies a test that exceeds the DiagSeverity level of the Diagnostic Session matching the DiagToken.

Note that if the IOU/IOC performs any automatic background diagnostics, those test should be inhibited while the device is included in an active Diagnostic Session. That is, while an object is listed in the scope of a Diagnostic Session, the DiagCode should only change as a result of a test explicitly run via the TestDeviceOnce or TestDeviceLoop commands.

A8.3.3.18 DIAGNOSTICTIMEOUT

This attribute provides the means to learn the maximum time required to perform the specified diagnostic. The result is based on the Test Type and Test Target. The R/W components indicate the information that is supplied in the DevMgtGet() to specify which test time,

Table 548 DiagnosticTimeout

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
MaxDiagTime	RO	0	32	Maximum time to finish the specified diagnostic operation in milliseconds
TestType	R/W	32	4	Specifies the type of test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0=default• 0x2=vendor specific (VendorSpecific component provides additional details)
TestTarget-Type	R/W	36	4	Specifies the object type for the test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 = IOU• 0x1 = I/O module specified by ModuleSlot• 0x2 = IOC specified by locGUID• 0x3 = I/O Object specified by locGuid+ObjectID
reserved	-	40	16	reserved
ModuleSlot	R/W	56	8	I/O Module Slot Number
locGUID	R/W	64	64	IOC GUID - Identifies the IOC for a test target of I/O object or IOC.
ObjectID	R/W	128	64	I/O Object Identifier - Identifies the I/O object for a test target type of I/O object.

Table 548 DiagnosticTimeout (Continued)

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	-	192	64	reserved
VendorSpecific	R/W	256	varies	Additional information defined by the IOU vendor (not required for 'Default' test)

Note that the diagnostic framework provides for both '*default*' and '*vendor specific*' tests. Default refers to the test that is invoked by a diagnostic application that does not have vendor specific knowledge. Thus, the '*default*' test permits the OS or a third party to perform a single diagnostic test (or set of tests) of the vendor's choosing on the specified target.

A8.3.3.19 TESTDEVICEONCE

This attribute allows the diagnostic program to initiate a diagnostic test that runs once.

Table 549 TestDeviceOnce

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	-	0	32	reserved
TestType	W	32	4	Specifies the type of test <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0=default • 0x2=vendor specific
TestTarget-Type	W	36	4	Specifies the object type for the test <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0 = IOU • 0x1 = I/O module specified by ModuleSlot • 0x2 = IOC specified by locGUID • 0x3 = I/O Object specified by locGuid+ObjectID
reserved	-	40	16	reserved
ModuleSlot	W	56	8	I/O Module Slot Number
locGUID	W	64	64	IOC GUID - Identifies the IOC for a test target of I/O object or IOC.
ObjectID	W	128	64	I/OC Object Identifier - Identifies the I/O object for a test target type of I/O object.
reserved	-	192	64	reserved
VendorSpecific	W	256	varies	Additional information defined by the IOU vendor (not required for 'Default' test)

A8.3.3.20 TESTDEVICELOOP

This attribute allows the diagnostic program to initiate a diagnostic test that runs continuously.

This attribute provides several options for terminating the test. The behavior when the Action is set to 'run continuously' and the test encounters an error is not specified. That is, the test may continue with the next phase or might abort the current run and restart the diagnostic. In the event of an error, the DiagCode is set to indicate the error and is not changed until the test encounters another error or the test successfully completes a full loop without errors. Thus, the time that an error code remains available is indeterministic. The Action of 'Halt on Error' guarantees that an error code is not overwritten.

Table 550 TestDeviceLoop

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
reserved	-	0	32	reserved
TestType	W	32	4	Specifies the type of test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0=default• 0x2=vendor specific
TestTarget-Type	W	36	4	Specifies the object type for the test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 = IOU• 0x1 = I/O module specified by ModuleSlot• 0x2 = IOC specified by locGUID• 0x3 = I/O Object specified by locGuid+ObjectID
Action	W	40	4	Specifies whether the test halts when it encounters an error or continues to loop. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 Continue to loop• 0x1 Halt on error• 0x2 Halt after current pass• 0x3 Abort
reserved	-	44	12	reserved
ModuleSlot	W	56	8	I/O Module Slot Number
locGUID	W	64	64	IOC GUID - Identifies the IOC for a test target of I/O object or IOC.
ObjectID	W	128	64	I/O Object Identifier - Identifies the I/O object for a test target type of I/O object.
reserved	-	192	64	reserved
VendorSpecific	R/W	256	varies	Additional information defined by the IOU vendor (not required for 'Default' test)

A8.3.3.21 DIAGCODE

This attribute provides the means to learn the result of the last diagnostic test performed on the specified object. Anyone may issue a DevMgtGet(DiagCode). Thus, a client may learn the status of the IOC without establishing a Diagnostic Session. In this case, the result could be from the IOC's 'power-on-test', the last diagnostic test performed as part of a Diagnostic Session, or background diagnostics automatically run by the IOU.

The R/W components indicate the information that is supplied in the DevMgtGet().

Table 551**DiagCode**

Component	Access	Offset (bits)	Length (bits)	Description
DiagCode	RO	0	16	16-bit diagnostic code - a value of 0x0000 means "device operational" and all other values are IOU vendor-specific.
reserved	RO	16	16	reserved
TestType	R/W	32	4	Specifies the type of test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0=default• 0x2=vendor specific
TestTarget-Type	R/W	36	4	Specifies the object type for the test <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 0x0 = IOU• 0x1 = I/O module specified by ModuleSlot• 0x2 = IOC specified by locGUID• 0x3 = I/O Object specified by locGuid+ObjectID
reserved	-	40	16	reserved
ModuleSlot	R/W	56	8	I/O Module Slot Number
locGUID	R/W	64	64	IOC GUID - Identifies the IOC for a test target of I/O object or IOC.
ObjectID	R/W	128	64	I/OC Object Identifier - Identifies the I/O object for a test target type of I/O object.
reserved	-	192	64	reserved
VendorSpecific	R/W	256	varies	Additional information defined by the IOU vendor (not required for 'Default' test)

A8.4 RESOURCE ALLOCATION FRAMEWORK

A8.4.1 QP ALLOCATION

The DM assigns resources to platforms, such as reserving a number of IOU QPs for a platform and limiting the maximum number of IOU QPs the platform may use by setting PlatformPoolRecords. The platform's supervisor assigns those resources to clients (within the bounds of the resources the DM assigned to the platform).

The IOU's QPs are represented as a general pool of QPs which consists of QPs reserved for client platforms, 'Free QPs' that are available on a 'first come' basis, and additional QPs used by platforms. The DM specifies a minimum (PlatformQPmin) and a maximum (PlatformQPmax) number of IOU QPs for each client platform as illustrated in [Figure 328](#). QPmin represents the number of QPs reserved for that platform. When the DM increases a platform's QPmin, the number of Free QPs in the general pool decreases and the number reserved increase. Thus, a portion of the general pool becomes reserved for specific platforms. Remaining FREE QPs are available to platforms on a first come first served basis as long as the platform has not reached its maximum limit.

The total number of QPs in an IOU is typically static, but might change over time because non-I/O related processes consume and release QPs. This affects the number of FREE QPs, but does not change the number of QPs already reserved for platforms.

A supervisor allocates QPs from its platform pool to client pools by specifying a minimum (ClientQPmin) and a maximum (ClientQPmax) number of IOU QPs for each client. The ClientQPmin specifies QPs reserved for that client and the total number of QPs reserved for its clients cannot exceed the PlatformQPmin. Thus, QPs reserved for a platform (PlatformQPmin) are either Allocated and Unallocated. When the supervisor increases a client pool's QPmin value, the count of Platform Unallocated QPs decreases and the count of Platform Allocated QPs increases. A supervisor can only reserve up to the Platform's QPmin value for its clients (i.e., Sum of ClientQPmin <= PlatformQPmin).

As a client makes connections, the IOU uses QPs from the appropriate client pool. When a client has consumed all of the reserved QPs in its client pool (i.e., ClientQPmin), it may continue to consume additional QPs only if there are excess QPs available and the client pool has not reached its maximum limit. If the platform has un-allocated QPs (i.e., sum of clients QPmin is less than the platform's QPmin), then clients consume the platform's un-allocated QPs until they are exhausted. Once all the platform's un-allocated QPs are used, the clients may continue to consume available QPs from the general pool as long as the client's pool and the platform's pool have not reached their maximum limit. This means that the number

of reserved QPs plus additional QPs is less than QPmax both at a client level and at the platform level.

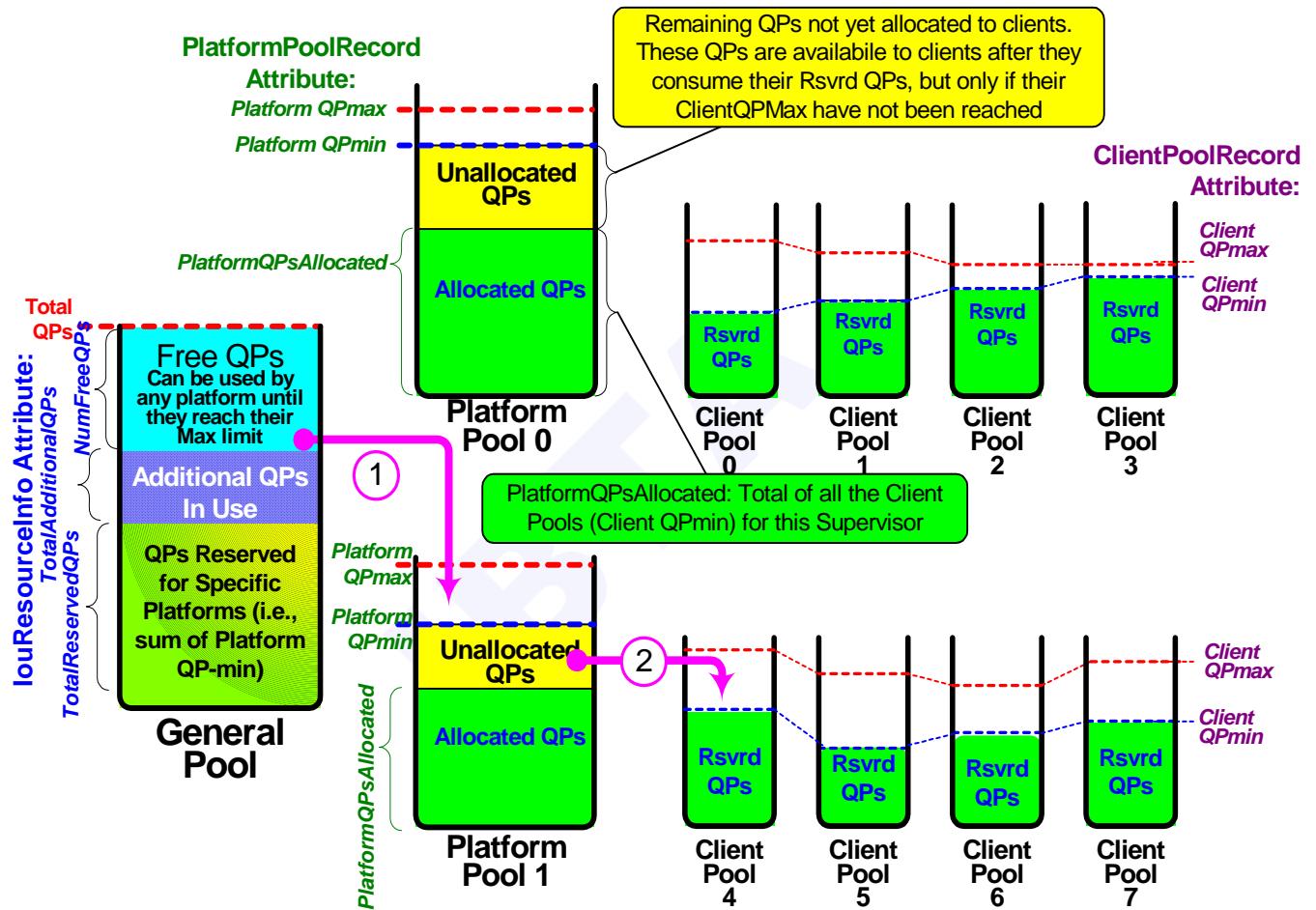


Figure 328 Allocating Resource Pools

When a QPmin or QPmax value is reduced, it does not affect any QPs in use until the client releases a connection and the QP is returned to the client pool. Thus, only if a platform has un-allocated QPs that have not been consumed by its clients, will reducing a platform's QPmin immediately return QPs to the FREE pool. Otherwise, QPs are returned to the Free pool when the QP is released by the client that has consumed more than its QPmin.

If the DM needs to increase QPmin for a platform, there needs to be Free-QPs in the general pool from which the additional QPs can be obtained.

The DM can reduce QPs allocated to other platforms (see previous paragraph) to increase the number of Free QPs.

Additionally, for a platform to consume more than its QPmin allotment, there has to be Free QPs available.

A8.4.2 FILTERING INFORMATION

ClientPoolRecords determine which records a particular client may see. PlatformPoolRecords determine which records a particular supervisor may see.

When the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtGet() with a MADHeader:KeyType = Manager, it performs the Manager Key check as per [A8.3.3.12.3 Manager Key Check on page 1745](#). If the key check passes, the DevMgt Agent returns any records that match the query.

When the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtGet() with a MADHeader:KeyType = Supervisor and the DevMgtGet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'S' in the RAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), the DevMgt Agent uses the PlatformPoolRecord with Supervisor_Key = MAD-Header:Access_Key and the PlatformPoolRecord with Supervisor_Key = 0 (if they exist). The combination of service objects in both records defines the IOCs and Service Objects for which the requester is authorized. For DevMgtGet(ServiceRecord), the DevMgt Agent only returns ServiceRecords that match the query and the service object appears in one of the two PlatformPoolRecords. For all other attributes, the DevMgt Agent returns only records that match the query and have an locGUID listed in the combined lists.

Likewise, When the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtSet() with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Supervisor and the DevMgtSet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'S' in the WAL column, the DevMgt agent does not allow the write unless the attribute matches one of the platform's service objects.

CA8-84: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Supervisor, the DevMgtGet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'S' in the RAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), and there is no PlatformPoolRecord with Supervisor_Key = MADHeader:Access_Key, then the DevMgt agent shall send a Supervisor Key Violation Trap.

CA8-85: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Supervisor, the MAD specifies an attribute that does not have a value of 'S' or 'A' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), then the DevMgt agent shall reject the MAD.

CA8-86: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Supervisor, the DevMgtGet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'S' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), the DevMgt Agent shall only return records that match service objects listed in the PlatformPoolRecord with Supervisor_Key = MAD-Header:Access_Key or listed in the PlatformPoolRecord with Supervisor_Key = 0.

When the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtGet() with a MADHeader:KeyType = Client and the DevMgtGet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'C' in the RAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), the DevMgt Agent uses the ClientPoolRecord with Client_Key = MADHeader:Access_Key (if it exists). The service objects listed in this record defines the IOCs and Service Objects for which the requester is authorized. For DevMgtGet(ServiceRecord), the DevMgt Agent only returns ServiceRecords that match the query and the service object appears in the ClientPoolRecord:ServiceObjList. For all other attributes, the DevMgt Agent returns only records that match the query and have an locGUID listed in the ClientPoolRecord:ServiceObjList.

Likewise, when the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtSet() with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Supervisor and the DevMgtSet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'C' in the WAL column, the DevMgt agent does not allow the write unless the attribute matches one of the client's service objects. Currently, there are no attributes that clients may modify.

CA8-87: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Client, the DevMgtGet() specifies an attribute that has a value of 'C' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), and there is no ClientPoolRecord with Client_Key = MAD-Header:Access_Key, then the DevMgt agent shall send a Client Key Violation Trap.

CA8-88: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Client, the MAD specifies an attribute that does not have a value of 'C' or 'A' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), then the DevMgt agent shall reject the MAD.

CA8-89: If the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgt MAD with a MAD-Header:KeyType = Client, the MAD specifies an attribute that has a value of 'C' in the respective RAL or WAL column of [Table 515 on page 1709](#), the DevMgt Agent shall only return records that match service objects listed in the ClientPoolRecord with Client_Key = MAD-Header:Access_Key.

A8.4.3 RESTRICTING ACCESS

The IOU must only permit authorized clients to access I/O objects. Authorized client means that the service object is listed in the ServiceObjList of the corresponding ClientPoolRecord. Thus, the service object must ascertain the Client_Key before it allows the client to access its service. In addition, the IOU needs to know which client is consuming the QP so it can track the number of QPs that each client is using and thus limit the resources that each client consumes.

CM MADs do not contain a Client_Key component. However, many I/O protocols require some form of validation, where client information is passed to the service object for validation. For SCSI this is the LOGIN, and the equivalent of the DevMgt Client_Key is the SCSI Initiator ID. For SRP, the Initiator ID is passed in the PrivateData field of CM MADs. Because I/O protocols already have architected ways of passing this type of information, this annex does not specify how the information is passed.

The CMValidation bit in the ServiceRecord identifies if the ServiceObject does validate the Client_Key when the client creates a connection.

- For service objects that validate clients (i.e., the CMValidation bit in the corresponding ServiceRecord is set), the QP is allocated from the client's pool, if the pool exists, but only if the supervisor has configured the pool to include that service object.
- For service objects that do not validate clients (i.e., the CMValidation bit in the corresponding ServiceRecord is not set), the QP is allocated from a default pool, if a default pool exists which specifies that service object. If the DM omits a service object that has CMValidation=0 from all Default Pool's ServiceObjList, then no one is allowed to access that service object.

Thus, when completing a connection, the IOC validates the access rights using the Client_Key. If the ServiceObject's CMValidation = 0, the then the IOU uses Client_Key = 0. If the Client_Key is valid (i.e., a ClientPoolRecord exists with that Client_Key), the QP is allocated from the client pool.

[Figure 329 Connection Approval Decision Tree on page 1778](#) illustrates the decision process.

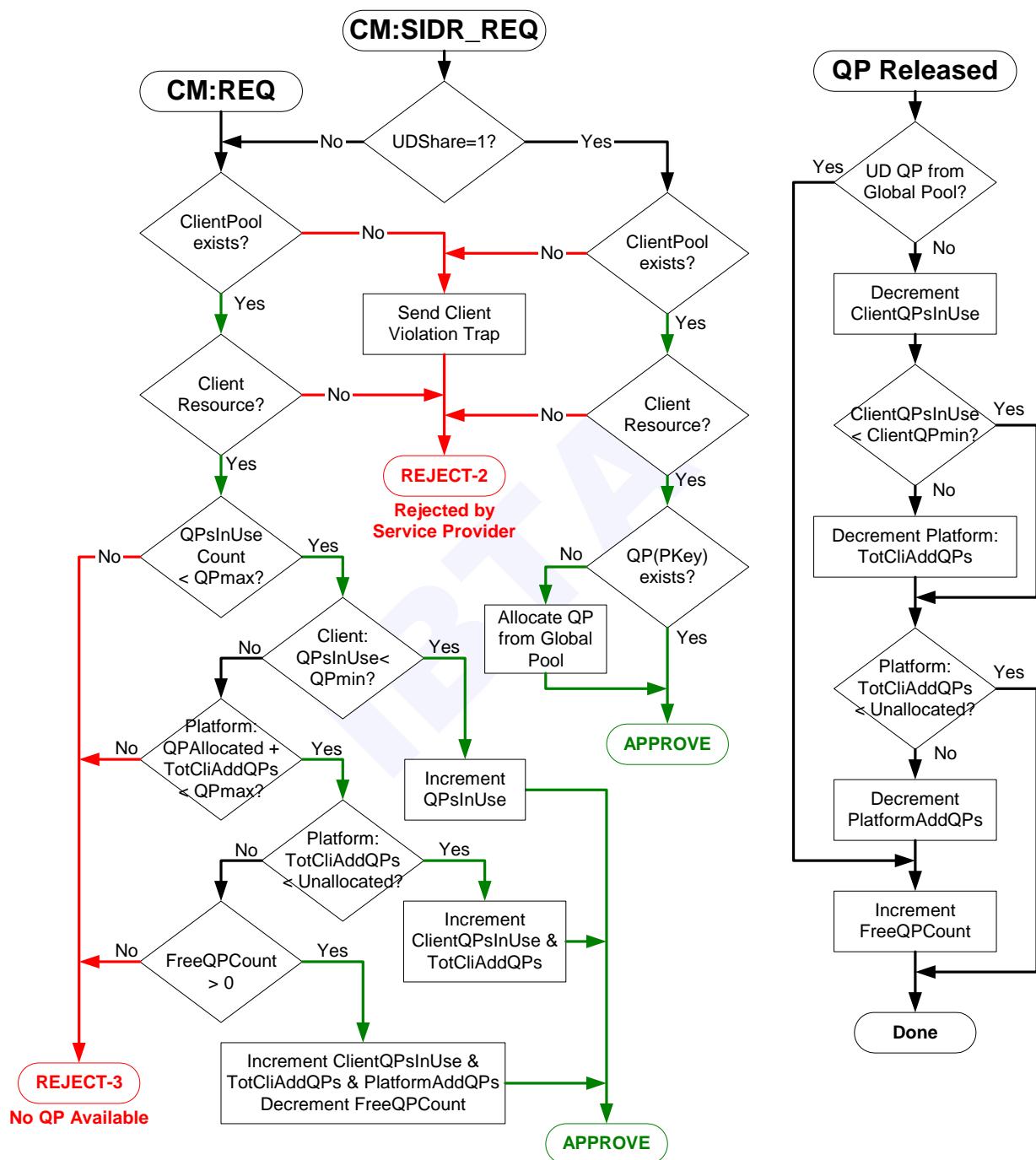


Figure 329

Connection Approval Decision Tree

The IOC shall not allow access to a service object until it validates the source's Client_Key matches a Client_Key in a ClientPoolRecord containing the service object's locGUID and ServiceObjectID.

For protocols passing Client_Key in the CM PrivateData field, the validation is done before the QP is allocated, otherwise it is done when the client passes the Client_Key to the service object. For UD transport service, the term 'connection' means the ability of the client to access the service.

CA8-90: The service object shall inhibit service over a connection until the client provides a valid Client_Key (i.e., matches a Client_Key in a ClientPoolRecord) and the corresponding ClientPoolRecord lists the target service object in its ServiceObjList.

CA8-91: The IOU shall reject the connection and send a Client Validation Trap if the client passes a Client_Key that does not match a Client_Key in any ClientPoolRecord.

CA8-92: The IOU shall reject the connection if the target service object is not in the ServiceObjList of the ClientPoolRecord corresponding to the Client_Key passed to the service object.

CA8-93: The IOC shall reject the connection if there are no QPs available in appropriate Client Pool. That is, if the client has exceeded ClientQPmax, the platform has exceeded PlatformQPmax, or there are no free QPs in the general QP pool.

CA8-94: If the service object uses a UD protocol where each client uses a different UD QP (i.e., SharedUD not set in the ServiceRecord), then the IOC shall reject the CM:SIDR_REQ if there are no QPs available in appropriate Client Pool.

A8.4.4 CONSUMING QPs

The PlatformPoolRecord and the ClientPoolRecord specifies the minimum and maximum number of IOU QPs that a platform and client may consume respectively. These values are related as illustrated in [Figure 330](#).

As a client makes connections, it uses QPs from its client pool. When a client has consumed all of the reserved QPs in its client pool (i.e., QPmin), it may continue to consume additional QPs only if there are excess QPs available and the client pool has not reached its maximum limit.

- If the platform has un-allocated QPs (i.e., sum of clients QPmin is less than the platform's QPmin), then clients consume the platform's un-allocated QPs until they are exhausted.

- Once all the platform's un-allocated QPs are used, the clients may continue to consume available QPs from the general pool as long as the platform has not reached its maximum limit. This means that the number of reserved QPs plus additional QPs is less than QPmax both at the client level and at the platform level.

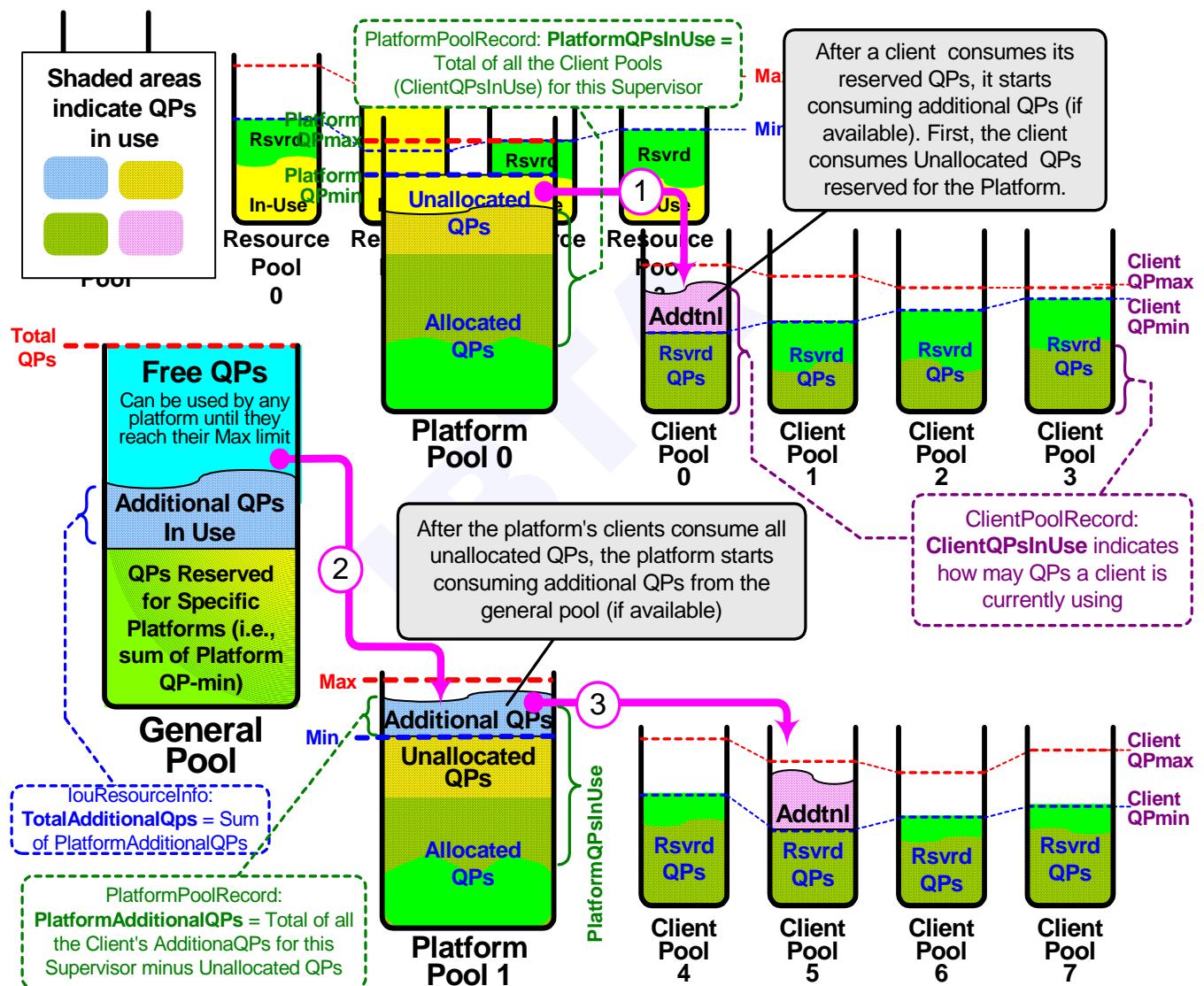


Figure 330 Consuming QPs from Resource Pools

When the client or service object terminates a connection, the IOU returns the freed QP to the appropriate pool as follows.

- 1) The DevMgt Agent decrements the In-Use count for that client pool.
- 2) If the number of QPs in-use in that client pool is now less than the client QPmin, then the freed QP remains allocated that client pool for future use by that client.
- 3) If the number of QPs in-use in that client pool is greater than or equal to the client QPmin, then the freed QP is returned to the platform pool as follows.
 - a) If the total number of additional QPs in the platform's client pools plus the number of allocated QPs (i.e., sum of client QPmin) is less than the platform's QPmin, then the freed QP remains allocated the platform pool for future connections by any of the platform's clients.
 - b) If the total number of additional QPs in the platform's client pools plus the number of allocated QPs (i.e., sum of its client QPmin) is greater than or equal to the platform's QPmin, then the freed QP returns to the general pool for use by all clients.

A8.5 DEVICE DIAGNOSTIC FRAMEWORK

Device diagnostics allows the identification of faults in devices behind the target channel adapter. As such, it complements other sections of this specification that describe how problems at the fabric and node level may be identified and isolated.

It is not the intent of this annex to define a set of white-box, technology-specific diagnostic tests. Rather, the intent is to allow initiation of a vendor-supplied test sequence (referred to as the default test), for which the expected outcome would be either success or failure. The DiagCode format, however, allows flexibility for the a vendor specific diagnostic program to run specific tests and for the vendor to provide specific, coded information about the test results. To this end, most diagnostic attributes contain a VendorSpecific component that allows the diagnostic program to specify additional information and allows the IOU to return additional information.

The device diagnostic framework is intended to support tests within an active fabric. It is versatile enough, however, to accommodate vendor-unique approaches that may include retrieval of power-on data. It should be noted that some, and perhaps most, devices may not permit simultaneous use of I/O transaction messages and diagnostics. Unless data is flushed from internal buffers, for example, corruption or loss of user data might occur. Thus, an IOU may reject a diagnostic request if the device is not in an appropriate state. Further, it is expected that the diagnostics tests would require setting the device to an initial, known state. For that reason, provision is be made to put the device into a "ready" state prior to test, which could cause I/O transactions to be held off. This may, in turn,

cause established connections to time out, and other management notices to be sent.

To prevent an I/O client from being surprised because of side effects from performing diagnostics, the diagnostic application must first establish a Diagnostic Session. It does that by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) request to the DM that indicates both the scope and severity of the diagnostics to be performed. The manager replies specifying the Diagnostic Token that the diagnostic application will use to perform the diagnostics. However, this response does not give the diagnostic application permission to perform the tests.

The DM informs all of the affected client platforms and then sets up the Diagnostic Session with the IOU by sending it a DevMgtGet(DiagSession) specifying the Diagnostic Token for the session as well as the bounds (scope and severity) for the session. The DevMgt Agent indicates in the DevMgtGetResp(DiagSession) whether it is ready to proceed. If it is not ready, it will subsequently send a DiagSessionState trap when it is ready. Once the IOU notifies the DM that it has prepared for the diagnostic testing, the DM informs the diagnostic application that it may proceed via sending a Report(DiagSessionState) to the diagnostic application that requested the session. The diagnostic application may now perform diagnostic tests by supplying the Diagnostic Token in the MADs that it sends to the IOU, to validate that it is the one authorized to perform the tests. The IOU rejects any test that is not performed under a valid Diagnostic Token or any test that exceeds the bounds established for that Diagnostic Session.

In general, device diagnostics should be used with great care, and with full understanding of the potential impact to I/O transactions to the target device. It is best used during periods of initial configuration, major maintenance, or as a tool of last resort.

When the diagnostic application has completed its testing, it cancels the session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the DM. The manager invalidates the session by sending a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) to the IOU and then notifying the affected clients that the IOCs are back on-line. If the IOU responds with a DevMgtGetResp(DiagSession) with DiagStatus = not ready, then the DA does not notify the affected clients until the IOU sends a DiagSessionState trap indicating the session has terminated.

If the diagnostic application fails for any reason, the diagnostic lease expires and the manager performs the same actions as if the application had terminated the session. Likewise, if the manager fails for any reason, the DevMgt Agent automatically terminates the session when the lease expires and returns the affected IOCs to service.

The diagnostic framework allows for diagnostics to be performed at various levels (i.e., TestTargetType = a Service Object, an IOC, an I/O module, or the entire IOU). When a DevMgt Agent receives a DevMgtGet(DiagCode), DevMgtGet(DiagnosticTimeout), DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce), or DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) specifying a TestTargetType that is not supported, the DevMgt Agent rejects the request using the MADHeader>Status of 'InvalidDiagTest'.

A8.5.1 BEHAVIORS

The DevMgt class of MADs (see [A8.3 Device Mgt MAD Specification on page 1697](#)) is used for diagnostics, i.e., DevMgtGet(), DevMgtSet(), and DevMgtTrap(). Vendor specific testing may be accomplished via the standard DevMgt methods and attributes or via vendor defined methods and/or attributes. In addition, standard DevMgt diagnostic attributes provide for additional vendor-specific data.

Each diagnostic attribute indicates the device under test. The DiagSession attribute can specify the IOU, a list of I/O modules, a list of IOCs, or a list of Service Objects - while the TestDeviceOnce, TestDeviceLoop, DiagnosticTimeout, and DiagCode specify either the IOU, an I/O module, a single IOC, or a single Service Object.

A diagnostic application may send DevMgtGet(DiagnosticTimeout) prior to establishing a Diagnostic Session to help determine the lease period. The lease period granted may differ from that requested so the application should check the GetResp() to determine the actual lease period. If more time is required, the diagnostic application may renew the lease periodically before the lease expires by sending another DevMgtSet(DiagSession) with Action = Renew.

Once the diagnostic application establishes a Diagnostic Session, it performs tests by sending DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) or DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) directly to the IOU.

Results are reported in the DiagCode attribute. The first 16-bits provide an overall status of the device under test where a value of zero indicates that the device is operational and all other values are vendor-specific. The Vendor-Specific component of the attribute data provide for additional vendor-specific information. The format of the Vendor-Specific component is defined by the IOU vendor.

A diagnostic application written by the vendor is able to perform any number of tests using vendor-specific fields. However, a diagnostic application not familiar with the product can still perform 'default' diagnostic testing. Default diagnostic tests are defined by the vendor as a means to perform a Go/NoGo test.

A8.5.2 PREPARING FOR DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

The DevMgtSet(DiagSession) attribute specifies the scope of the test by listing the service objects, IOCs, or I/O modules that may be tested. It also specifies the intensity/severity of testing that is allowed to be performed. The IOU places the device(s) into a test-ready state. The time required to complete this step is device-specific, as it may involve flushing data from cache memory, re-initializing SCSI ports, etc. If the IOU responds with a status indicating more time is required, the IOU subsequently indicates its readiness for test by having the DevMgt agent send a DiagSessionState Trap.

Alternatively, a DevMgtGet(DiagSession) also returns information pertaining to the specific device's ability or readiness for test. This allows the status to be polled in case the trap is lost.

CA8-95: When the DevMgt agent receives a DevMgtSet(DiagSession), it shall respond immediately⁵⁴ with the appropriate DiagSessionStatus as specified in [Table 547 DiagSession on page 1765](#). If the preparation requires additional time, the DevMgt agent shall report "Device not ready" DiagSessionStatus.

CA8-96: If the DevMgt agent responds to a DevMgtSet(DiagSession) with DiagSessionStatus = "Device not ready", then, when the status changes, the DevMgt agent shall generate a Trap as per [Table 530 Notice 0x0801 DataDetails \[DiagSessionState\] on page 1723](#).

A8.5.3 INVOKING DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

After the diagnostic application successfully establishes a Diagnostic Session, it sends DevMgt MADs directly to the IOU's DevMgt Agent to perform the diagnostics and get their status. The diagnostic application supplies the DiagToken in the MAD's Access_Key field.

Two modes are provided for initiating diagnostics: single test mode and continuous test mode. In single test mode, a single test sequence is initiated by sending a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) attribute. The attribute specifies the target device and specific test. Which components of an IOC are testable is implementation-specific.

The DevMgt Agent rejects a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceOnce) that violates the bounds established by the Diagnostic Session. Once initiated, this vendor-defined test will run to completion. Because tests will vary by device technology and by vendor, the time-to-completion is inherently device-specific. To detect devices which are unable to complete their diagnostic test, a DiagnosticTimeout attribute may be retrieved in advance of test initiation, which indicates the maximum allowable period for

54. Within the response time indicated in ClassPortInfo.

completion. Results of the completed diagnostic test are obtained through the DevMgtGet(DiagCode) method, - i.e., diagnostic status is returned in the DevMgtGetResp().

The continuous test mode can assist in detecting problems that are transient in nature, or used to initiate endurance-related tests. The continuous-test mode is initiated by sending a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop). Results of the last completed diagnostic test are obtained through the DevMgtGet(DiagCode) method.

For graceful termination of the continuous test mode, the initiator sends a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) with Action = 'Halt after current pass'. In this case, the DevMgt Agent terminates the continuous test mode after it completes the current pass and the DiagCode is valid.

The DevMgt Agent aborts the continuous test mode when it receives a DevMgtSet(TestDeviceLoop) with Action = Abort. In this case the DiagCode is indeterminate (e.g., might be set from the previous pass, might have been set to an initial value, or might indicate an intermediate result).

A8.6 IOC GRACEFUL HOT REMOVAL

"Surprise Hot Removal" is defined as the removal of an I/O module from an IOU without the module first being placed in a quiescent state.

"Graceful Hot Removal" is the removal of an I/O module that has first been placed in a quiescent state where no activity is present that would cause disruption upon module's removal. Module power might or might not be on. Other modules remain operational. The features required for the achievement of the quiescent state are described in this section.

Support for Graceful Hot Removal is optional. To claim compliance, an IOU must meet the requirements specified in this section and provide a DevMgt agent that supports Graceful Hot Removal.

This section covers removal of an I/O module (and its IOCs). An I/O module is different from an IB module because the I/O module does not contain the channel adapter. That is, the I/O module resides behind the channel adapter and thus DevMgt is still functional after the I/O module has been removed. Removal of IB modules (i.e., the IOU itself) is covered in Volume 2 under Baseboard Management.

Graceful Hot Removal requires that the I/O module has first been placed in a quiescent state where no activity is present that would cause disruption upon its detachment. The quiescent state is under control of the DM (i.e., a node that knows the IOU's Manager_Key). The DM's role is to co-ordinate the removal of an I/O module with clients that might be using to the affected Service Objects.

The term “affected clients” refers to those elements that are dependent on the presence of a given I/O module (i.e., its IOCs and their Service Objects) for operation.

The architecture assumes that there is a switch or lever on each I/O module that an operator engages to signal that the module is to be removed. That action causes a STATUS LED on the module to blink and a trap to be sent to the DM, who informs affected clients.

The request to remove may also be initiated via the DM allowing a software process such as a console application invoked by the system administrator, a diagnostic or health monitoring application, to inform the DM that an I/O module needs to be removed. In this case the DM sets a bit in the SlotControlStatus attribute indicating the module may be removed, which also causes its STATUS LED to blink.

When the affected clients have notified the DM that they have acquiesced their I/O operation, the DM sends an approval to the IOU, which causes the STATUS LED to turn off, indicating that it is OK to remove the module.

Power to the module is assumed to be removed when the LED is turned off.

A8.6.1 REQUIRED HOT PLUG FACILITIES

The following facilities and signals are used for interaction with the DM to accomplish Graceful Hot Removal:

- **Indicator LEDs** - Each I/O module has a Status LED and Attention LED as per [A8.6.4 I/O Module Indicators on page 1789](#).
- **SlotControlStatus Attribute** - The DM uses this attribute to get and set information about an I/O module’s removal state. Each I/O module has the following set of bits:
 - **IOU_RTR** (IOU Request to Remove) - this is an indication that someone at the IOU wants to remove the I/O module. How this signal is generated is implementation-specific. It can be cleared via a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus). The IOU initializes this bit to zero (cleared) at power-up or IOU reset (but not IOC reset).
 - **SW_RTR** (Software Request to Remove) - this is an indication that the DM is processing the removal of the I/O module. The removal might have been initiated by the IOU or by the DM. This signal is set and cleared via a DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus). The IOU initializes this bit to zero (cleared) at power-up or IOU reset (but not IOC reset).

- **SW_CTR** (Software Clear to Remove) - this is an indication from the DM that the I/O module is in the acquiesced state and thus can be removed gracefully. This signal can be set (unclaimed/acquiesced) and cleared (claimed) via a DevMgt Set(SlotControlStatus.RemovalControl). The IOU initializes this bit to one (unclaimed) at power-up.
- The **DevMgtTrap** mechanism is used to notify the DM that a Request to Remove (IOU_RTR) is pending.

oA8-4: An IOU that implements IOC Graceful Hot Removal shall support the SlotControlStatus attribute.

oA8-5: An IOU that implements IOC Graceful Hot Removal shall support the lomRemoval TRAP ([Table 529 Notice 0x0020 DataDetails \[lomRemoval on page 1722\]](#)).

A8.6.2 OPERATION

To enable Graceful Hot Removal, it is necessary for software to “Claim” the I/O module by clearing the **SW_CTR** bit, which turns the STATUS LED on indicating that software is presently using or preparing to use one or more of the module’s IOC.

At power-up, **SW_CTR** is set to 1b. Once the **SW_CTR** bit is set to 0b, the I/O module’s STATUS LED indicates that it is not OK to Remove the I/O module (See [A8.6.4 I/O Module Indicators on page 1789](#) for a full description).

Once an I/O module is claimed, the general steps of Graceful Hot Removal are:

- 1) 1) The IOU or DM initiates a request for removal.
 - a) For the case that the DM initiates the removal, the DM issues a **DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl = 0x02 = Set SW_RTR to one)** for the affected I/O module prior to collecting the necessary responses from the affected clients. Setting SW_RTR=1 instructs the DevMgt agent to indicate the “transition” condition through the blinking of the module’s Status LED (see [A8.6.4 I/O Module Indicators on page 1789](#)).
 - b) For the case that the request is coming from the IOU, the DevMgt agent sets **IOU_RTR** for the affected I/O module and then forms and sends a **DevMgtTrap** out each port (if the port’s ClassPortInfo trap information has been set). On setting the IOU_RTR, the DevMgt agent blinks the module’s Status LED.

Upon receipt of a **DevMgtTrap** or equivalent polling means that indicates **IOU_RTR** is set, the DM issues a **DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl = 0x02 = Set SW_RTR to one)**. The

- setting of the **SW_RTR** bit to 1b acts as an acknowledgement to the setting of **IOU_RTR**.
- 2) The DM notifies all affected clients of the removal request and determines when all such entities have released their dependence on the IOCs. This is termed “Claim Release”.
- 3) For the case that not all affected clients concur with the claim release, the DM **shall** issue a **DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl = 0x01 = Reset IOU_RTR and SW_RTR to zero)** setting **SW_RTR=0** to cancel the request.
- For the case that not all responses are received within a DM specific time-out period, the DM **may** issue a **DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl = 0x01)** to cancel the request. Failure to issue this operation will leave the IOC in a transition state for an indefinite period of time; the LED state for this case indicates that the I/O module is not OK to Remove.
- 4) For the case that all affected clients have quashed their operation and released the IOCs, the DM issues a **DevMgtSet(SlotControlStatus:RemovalControl = 0x04 = Set SW_CTR to one and reset IOU_RTR and SW_RTR to zero)**. Setting **SW_CTR=1** results in the I/O module Status LED condition being changed to the “OK to Remove” indication.
- 5) Anytime an I/O module is removed or added, the IOU sends a Slot Status Change trap to the DM.

Power is assumed to be removed when **SW_CTR** transitions from 0 to 1. How power is removed is implementation specific. Note that **SW_CTR=1** is the default state at power up, but power is expected to be applied to the I/O module. In the case where there is no DM, the I/O module is never claimed and thus the Status LED remains OFF, indicating that the module may be removed (since there is no DM to control the removal sequence).

Graceful or ungraceful removal of an I/O module results in its **IOU_RTR** signal being reset.

A8.6.3 STATE DIAGRAM

The Graceful Hot Removal process is summarized in the state diagram of [Figure 331: Graceful Removal State Diagram](#) and generally depicts the behavior of the I/O module’s Status LED. (See [A8.6.4 I/O Module Indicators on page 1789](#)).

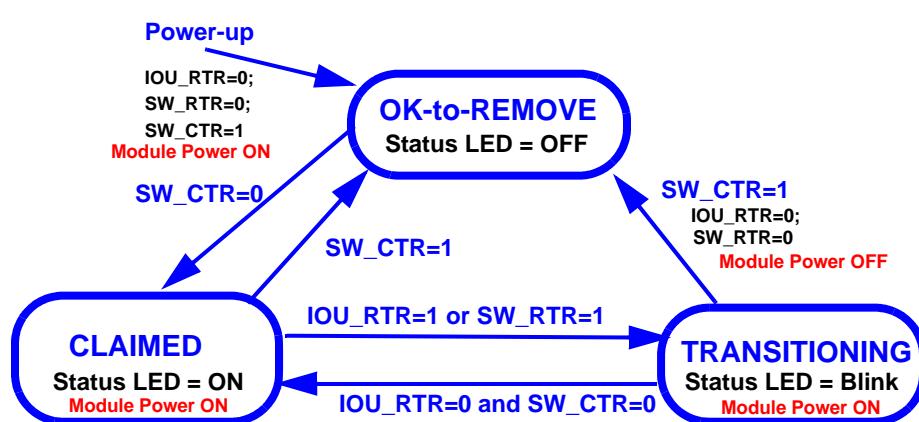


Figure 331 Graceful Removal State Diagram

A8.6.4 I/O MODULE INDICATORS

An IOU that implements IOC Graceful Hot Removal provides a Status LED for each I/O module to indicate the module's removal status.

oA8-6: An IOU that implements IOC Graceful Hot Removal shall have a Green Status LED and an Amber Attention LED for each removable module. The LED shall have the characteristics and operation as specified in [A8.6.4 I/O Module Indicators on page 1789](#).

During power-on test, self-test, or diagnostics, the IOU/module may slow blink the Status LED as part of an LED test. Otherwise, LED states are controlled by the SlotControlStatus attribute bits IOU_RTR, SW_RTR, and SW_CTR as per [Table 552: I/O Module Status LED](#).

Table 552 I/O Module Status LED

IOU RTR	SW RTR	SW CTR	LED Condition	Description
x	x	1	OFF	I/O module can be gracefully removed
n/a	n/a	n/a	Slow Blink	LED test
1	X	0	Blink	Removal Transition - Release in progress but IOCs are still claimed and not removable.
X	1	0		
0	0	0	ON	Claimed - I/O module can NOT be gracefully removed

A8.6.4.1 LED BLINK RATE DEFINITIONS

When used in this annex, the LED Conditions defined in [Table 552: I/O Module Status LED](#) shall apply to the repetitive ON/OFF behavior of the LED indicators as per [Table 553: Blink Rate Definitions](#).

Table 553 **Blink Rate Definitions**

Term	Frequency	Period	Duty Cycle	Comments
OFF	0	n/a	0%	LED is steady off
Slow Blink	1/4 Hz	4 sec	50 +/- 2 %	Nominally 2 sec ON, 2 sec OFF
Blink	2 Hz	500 msec	50 +/- 2 %	Nominally 250ms ON, 250ms OFF
ON	0	n/a	100%	LED is steady on

A8.6.4.2 LED COLOR

oA8-7: The I/O module Status LED shall be Green or Blue-Green (555 - 565 nm).

oA8-8: The I/O module Attention LED shall be Amber (582 - 592 nm).

A8.7 DEVICE MANAGER

The role of the Device Manager is specified in the Configuration Management Annex. Device Management plays an intricate role in configuration management. A client platform communicates with the Configuration Management Application using DevAdm class to learn of IOUs and then uses Device Management to communicate with the IOUs. The Configuration Management Application uses Device Management to communicate with I/O units and configure them with client information. Additionally, third parties (such as other managers and diagnostic programs) use Device Management to communicate with the DM to request a diagnostic session.

The DevMgt class provides mechanisms (methods and attributes) to enable a DM to set and retrieve DevMgt information from IOUs that provide a DevMgt agent. Other interested parties are also allowed to get DevMgt information directly from the IOUs. A DM configures an IOU using attributes listed [Table 515 DevMgt Agent Attribute / Method Map on page 1709](#).

A DM communicates with the DevMgt agent by sending a DevMgtSet() or a DevMgtGet() to the DevMgt agent and the DevMgt agent responds with a DevMgtGetResp(). The DevMgt agent also sends DevMgtTrap()s to the DM and the DM responds with a DevMgtTrapRepress().

A8.8 I/O UNIT IMPLEMENTATION

DevMgt supports various concepts such as virtualized I/O resources. An IOU is modeled as one or more IOCs with each IOC providing one or more I/O services (i.e., I/O service object) via an I/O protocol. An IOC can support multiple I/O protocols. In addition to I/O protocols, the IOU or each IOC might also support one or more I/O management protocols. Thus, the term *Service Object* applies to both I/O management objects and I/O service objects.

I/O Service Object is an abstract term that refers to a service object with which an I/O client communicates to perform I/O operations. thus, the client uses a different QP for each service object. The architecture places no restriction on how an IOC defines service objects. For instance, an IOC might have:

- just one service object;
- a service object for each physical port to a secondary fabric;
- a service object for each virtual controller;
- a service object for each physical I/O device.

The following example illustrate the flexibility of Device Management by illustrating different ways a SCSI storage controller's Device Management information could be implemented.

For the following examples, assume an IB/SCSI device that has a single SCSI port, which connects to a SCSI bus with 3 SCSI devices. Device A and Device B have one logical unit (LUN 0) and Device C has 3 logical units (LUN 0,1,2).

Example 1: Talk through model where each SCSI device is a service object (i.e., each SCSI device appears as a SCSI target port). In this case, there would be three I/O service objects, each corresponding to one of the SCSI devices. A client assigned to the service object for Device C would have access to all three of its LUNs unless an I/O management application configured the object for LUN masking (i.e., managing which clients may access each LUN). The client would use a different QP to access each SCSI device.

Example 2: Talk-To model where the SCSI port is the I/O service object (i.e., a single SCSI target port). For this example, each I/O device (SCSI device) is presented as a protocol object and is ac-

cessed as a SCSI LUN, such that the I/O client sends SCSI commands to the I/O service object, and the LUN in the SCSI command block determines which I/O device is accessed. The 5 logical units could be represented by hierarchical LUN addressing (i.e. LUN 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, 3.1, 3.2). A client authorized for the service object would have access to all the LUNs, unless an I/O management application configured the object for LUN masking. The client sends all SCSI commands to the same QP.

Example 3: Virtual target devices. Each of the LUNs in example 2 are represented as a service object. For this case LUN masking is inherent in the virtualization. The client would need a different QP to access each LUN.

Example 4: Virtual target ports. For each client, I/O management creates a service object and specifies which devices and LUNs may be accessed via that service object. For this case LUN masking is the virtualization. The client sends all SCSI commands to the same QP.

When the mapping between I/O devices and service objects is not fixed, or when the mapping varies based on the client, the mapping function (such as LUN masking) is typically provided by an I/O management protocol (via an I/O management object or ClientPoolRecord).

A8.9 COMPLIANCE

A8.9.1 COMPLIANCE CATEGORIES

In order to claim compliance to the Device Management class an I/O unit shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

Table 554 Device Management Compliance Qualifiers

Qualifier	Description
V1:	Backward compatibility with class version 1
HOT:	Hot plug / hot removal

A8.9.2 DEVICE MANAGEMENT AGENT COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

In order to claim compliance to the InfiniBand Specification for the Compliance Category of Managed IOU, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section and in A8.9.3 “Common Management Requirements” on page 1794, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

- CA8-1: Datagrams conform to DevMgt format Page 1697
- CA8-2: Datagrams Follow Common MAD Use Page 1698
- CA8-3: Response to the MADHeader:ClassVersion Page 1699

● CA8-4:	IsBackwardCompatibilitySupported bit is set	Page 1701	1
● CA8-5:	IsBackwardCompatibilitySupported bit not set	Page 1701	2
● CA8-6:	BackwardCompatibilityLevel is ‘No_v1_Access’	Page 1702	3
● oA8-1:	V1: BackwardCompatibilityLevel is ‘Full_v1_Access’	Page 1702	4
● oA8-2:	V1: BackwardCompatibilityLevel is ‘Programmed’	Page 1702	5
● CA8-7:	Reliable Multi-Packet Protocol	Page 1703	6
● CA8-8:	Invalid RMPP types	Page 1703	7
● CA8-9:	Reject a request containing more than one attribute	Page 1703	8
● CA8-10:	Zero the Key in a DevMgtTrap().	Page 1704	9
● CA8-11:	Zero the Key in a DevGetResp().	Page 1704	10
● CA8-12:	Key in a DevMgtTrapRepress().	Page 1704	11
● CA8-13:	Diag Token reject reasons	Page 1705	12
● CA8-14:	Ignore ComponentMask in MADs not marked ‘RMPP’	Page 1705	13
● CA8-15:	Ignore ComponentMask bits that are not defined	Page 1705	14
● CA8-16:	Filtering on ComponentMask	Page 1705	15
● CA8-17:	ComponentMask in the response	Page 1706	16
● CA8-18:	Traps issued to all ports	Page 1712	17
● CA8-19:	TrapRepress	Page 1712	18
● CA8-20:	Layouts for the DataDetails component	Page 1714	19
● CA8-21:	Manager Key Violation Trap	Page 1715	20
● CA8-22:	Supv Key Violation Trap	Page 1716	21
● CA8-23:	Client Key Violation Trap	Page 1717	22
● CA8-24:	Client Key Access Violation Trap	Page 1717	23
● CA8-25:	Diag Token Violation Trap	Page 1718	24
● CA8-26:	IOC Change Trap	Page 1720	25
● CA8-27:	Service Record Change trap	Page 1721	26
● CA8-28:	Slot Status Change Trap	Page 1722	27
● oA8-3:	HOT: Removal Notice Trap	Page 1722	28
● CA8-29:	Diag Session Violation Trap	Page 1724	29
● CA8-30:	Immediate IOU reset	Page 1741	30
● CA8-31:	Immediate IOC reset	Page 1741	31
● CA8-32:	Graceful IOU reset	Page 1741	32
● CA8-33:	Graceful IOC reset	Page 1741	33
● CA8-34:	Incrementing KeyViolations counter	Page 1744	34
● CA8-35:	Resetting KeyViolations counter	Page 1744	35
● CA8-36:	Perform Key authentication	Page 1745	36
● CA8-37:	Generate a Resp() when key check succeeds	Page 1746	37
● CA8-38:	Key check fail rules	Page 1746	38
● CA8-39:	Set Key to zero on Sends	Page 1746	39
● CA8-40:	Key mechanism reset to zero at POR no NVRAM	Page 1747	40
● CA8-41:	Preserving KeyInfo values during IOU Reset	Page 1747	41
● CA8-42:	Lease period timer counts when key check fails	Page 1748	42
● CA8-43:	Lease period timer reset on key check match	Page 1748	43
● CA8-44:	ProtectBits set to zero when its lease expires	Page 1748	44
● CA8-45:	When Lease set to zero, the lease never expires	Page 1749	45
● CA8-46:	Minimum number of Platform Pool Records	Page 1751	46
● CA8-47:	Minimum number of Client Pool Table records	Page 1751	47
● CA8-48:	Minimum ServiceObjectMaxCount	Page 1751	48
● CA8-49:	PlatformPoolRecord can only be set by Manager	Page 1755	49
● CA8-50:	Clients can not read PlatformPoolRecord	Page 1755	50
● CA8-51:	Filter PlatformPoolRecord Supervisor	Page 1755	51
● CA8-52:	Update Action when Supervisor_Key does not exist	Page 1755	52
● CA8-53:	Create Action when Supervisor_Key already exists	Page 1755	53
● CA8-54:	Delete Record when Supervisor_Key does not exist	Page 1755	54
● CA8-55:	ManagerUpdateLock when modifying Client Pools	Page 1756	55
● CA8-56:	Reject PlatformPriorityMax > MaxClientPriority	Page 1757	56
● CA8-57:	Reject ClientPriority < PlatformPriorityMin	Page 1757	57
● CA8-58:	Reject ClientPriority > PlatformPriorityMax	Page 1758	58
● CA8-59:	Reject PlatformPriorityMax < PlatformPriorityMin	Page 1758	59
● CA8-60:	Client can not modify ClientPoolRecord	Page 1761	60
● CA8-61:	Client can not read ClientPoolRecord	Page 1761	61
● CA8-62:	Supervisors can only modify their own Client Pools	Page 1761	62

● CA8-63:	Supervisors can only read thier own Client Pools	Page 1761	1
● CA8-64:	Only manager can create/destroy Client Pools	Page 1761	2
● CA8-65:	Client Pool Update when Client_Key does not exist	Page 1762	3
● CA8-66:	Create Client Pool only if Client_Key does not exist	Page 1762	4
● CA8-67:	Delete Client Pool only if Client_Key exists	Page 1762	5
● CA8-68:	Deleting ClientPoolRecords	Page 1762	6
● CA8-69:	ManagerUpdateLock & modifying ClientPoolRecords	Page 1762	7
● CA8-70:	ManagerUpdateLock & consuming resources	Page 1762	8
● CA8-71:	Supervisor cannot modify locked ClientPoolRecord	Page 1762	9
● CA8-72:	ClientQoS must be subset of PlatformQoS	Page 1763	10
● CA8-73:	Primary SL and Alternate SL must be %ClientQoS	Page 1763	11
● CA8-74:	Sum of ClientQPmin cannot exceed PlatformQPmin	Page 1763	12
● CA8-75:	QP assigned client priority from ClientPoolRecord	Page 1764	13
● CA8-76:	If IouResourceInfo:IsClientPriorityRetroactive is 1	Page 1764	14
● CA8-77:	QPs with higher client priority	Page 1764	15
● CA8-78:	Client ServiceObjList subset of PlatformPoolRecord	Page 1764	16
● CA8-79:	Termination of DiagSession when lease expires	Page 1768	17
● CA8-80:	Termination of DiagSession when lease expires	Page 1768	18
● CA8-81:	Reject test that has invalid DiagToken	Page 1769	19
● CA8-82:	Reject test specifying invalid a test object	Page 1769	20
● CA8-83:	Reject test that has invalid DiagLevel	Page 1769	21
● CA8-84:	Supervisor Key Violation Trap	Page 1775	22
● CA8-85:	Supervisor access limited	Page 1775	23
● CA8-86:	Filtering Supervisor access	Page 1776	24
● CA8-87:	Client Key Violation trap	Page 1776	25
● CA8-88:	Client access limited	Page 1776	26
● CA8-89:	Flitering client access	Page 1776	27
● CA8-90:	Restricting client access	Page 1779	28
● CA8-91:	Client ValidationTrap	Page 1779	29
● CA8-92:	Limiting client connection access	Page 1779	30
● CA8-93:	Limiting QP consumption	Page 1779	31
● CA8-94:	Limiting UD QP consumption	Page 1779	32
● CA8-95:	DevMgtSet(DiagSession) response	Page 1784	33
● CA8-96:	DiagSession status = 'Device not ready'	Page 1784	34
● oA8-4:	HOT: Support for SlotStatus attribute	Page 1787	35
● oA8-5:	HOT: Support TRAP 0x0020	Page 1787	36
● oA8-6:	HOT: Green Status LED for each removable module	Page 1789	37
● oA8-7:	HOT: Module Status LED color	Page 1790	38
● oA8-8:	HOT: Module Attention LED color	Page 1790	39

A8.9.3 COMMON MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

In addition, a Device Management Agent must also be compliant with the Common MAD requirements specified in 20.14 and the following general management framework requirements from Chapter 13.

● C13-27.1.1:	Standard common AttributeIDs and Attributes	Page 798	33
● C13-30.1.1:	Manager must support both Notice poll and Trap	Page 802	34
● C13-31:	Obsolete	Page 811	35
● o13-5.1.1:	Trap: TrapRepress format	Page 812	36
● C13-32.1.1:	Manager with Notice attribues must do forwarding	Page 815	37
● o13-12:	Obsolete	Page 815	38
● o13-12.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Event Subscription Confirmation	Page 815	39
● C13-32.2.1:	Ignore duplicate subscriptions	Page 815	40
● o13-13:	Obsolete	Page 815	41
● o13-13.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Event subscription rejection	Page 815	42
● o13-14:	Obsolete	Page 815	
● o13-14.1.1:	Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification	Page 816	
● C13-32.2.2:	Must verify all subscriptions	Page 816	
● o13-15:	Obsolete	Page 816	

● o13-15.2.1:Trap or Notice: Set(InformInfo) Verification Failure . . .	Page 816	1
● o13-16: Obsolete	Page 816	2
● o13-17: Obsolete	Page 816	3
● o13-17.1.1:Trap or notice: Event Subscription Action	Page 817	4
● o13-17.2.1:Trap or Notice: Discontinuing event forwarding.	Page 817	5
● o13-17.1.2:Trap or Notice: Action when trap forwarding fails	Page 817	6
● C13-32.1.2:Trap or Notice: Content of Report(Notice)	Page 817	7
● C13-34: GSA MADs Directed to QP1	Page 820	8
		9
		10
		11
		12
		13
		14
		15
		16
		17
		18
		19
		20
		21
		22
		23
		24
		25
		26
		27
		28
		29
		30
		31
		32
		33
		34
		35
		36
		37
		38
		39
		40
		41
		42

ANNEX A9: VERB EXTENSIONS ANNEX

A9.1 INTRODUCTION

A9.1.1 OVERVIEW

This Annex defines enhancements to the Verbs specified in Release 1.1 of the base specification:

- efficient memory registration mechanisms for privileged Consumers,
- a mechanism for invalidation of Memory Windows and registered Physical Memory Regions,
- finer Memory Window protection through the ability to associate a bound Memory Window to a single QP,
- efficient mechanism for posting multiple work requests at one time,
- ability to share Receive Queue resources between multiple Reliable Connected and Unreliable Datagram Consumers through the use of a Shared Receive Queue (SRQ),
- ability to use multiple completion event handlers per HCA,
- ability to directly use host physical addresses through a Reserved L_Key, and
- introduction of zero based virtual addressing and block list oriented physical buffer lists.

The changes included in this Annex have been incorporated into the main body of this specification. Compliance statements for the Verb Extensions listed above take two forms:

CX-y.2.z: This type of compliance statement is mandatory in order to comply with the 1.1 specification semantics.

oX-y.2.z: This type of compliance statement is required to comply with the optional function referenced by the compliance statement.

Where X is dependent on which chapter and y & z or dependent on where the compliance statement is placed.

ANNEX A10: CONGESTION CONTROL

A10.1 CONGESTION CONTROL IN INFINIBAND NETWORKS

A10.1.1 GLOSSARY

Backward Explicit Congestion Notification	A signal, set by a destination port in either an ACK or a CNP . The BECN bit tells the source port that a packet it sent earlier, which corresponds to this ACK or CNP, encountered congestion.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
BECN	Backward Explicit Congestion Notification	
BTH	Base Transport Header	
CA	Channel Adapter.	
CCT	Congestion Control Table	
CCTI	Congestion Control Table Index	
CCTI_Increase	The amount by which a CCTI will be increased, when a packet which was marked as having gone through a point of congestion, is received.	
CCTI_Limit	CCTI_Limit is the bounding value for a CCTI ; CCTI cannot be greater than CCTI_Limit.	
CCTI_Min	This is the lowest value that CCTI can be reduced to; the default value is zero.	
CCTI_Timer	Congestion Control Table Timer	
CCMgr	Congestion Control Manager see Congestion Control Manager	
CCMgtA	Congestion Control Management Agent see Congestion Control Management Agent	
Channel Adapter Congestion Event	The arrival of a packet with the BECN bit active in the BTH .	
Channel Adapter Threshold Congestion Event	When a CCTI is increased and becomes greater than or equal to the Trigger Threshold this event is triggered and information pertaining to the event is logged by the CA.	
CN	Congestion Notification	
CNP	Congestion Notification Packet	

Congestion Control Table	The Congestion Control Table contains an array of values of injection rate delay used to control congestion. The data is organized such that the lowest IRD is contained in entry 0, and the highest IRD is contained in the last entry of the table.	1
Congestion Control Table Index	An Index into the CCT , to select an Injection Rate Delay value.	2
Congestion Control Table Timer	A cyclic timer set up by the congestion manager, associated with an SL, which on expiry is reset and decreases the CCTI .	3
Congestion Control Manager	A manager dedicated to the control of congestion within a subnet. There may be more than one per subnet.	4
Congestion Control Management Agent	A management agent that decodes Congestion Control MAD attributes and applies them to a CA or Switch.	5
Congestion Notification	A Congestion Notification is generated to signal a congestion event to a source.	6
Credit Starvation	A mechanism to control the injection rate of legacy devices (e.g. CAs) by starving the device of credits.	7
CS_ReturnDelay	Used by Credit Starvation to control the rate of credit return upstream, while the input port is considered to be in a congested state.	8
CS_Threshold	The level at an input port, which when crossed, places the port in a congested state.	9
FECN	Forward Explicit Congestion Notification	10
Flow	A flow is a stream of data, from a QP or an SL (on a port).	11
Forward Explicit Congestion Notification	A signal set in a packet by a switch, to indicate that the packet encountered congestion along the path to the destination.	12
Injection Rate Delay	A minimum delay which a CA is to place between packets, to control congestion within a subnet. (See also CCT[CCTI]).	13
IRD	Injection Rate Delay	14
MAD	Management Datagram	15
QP	Queue Pair.	16
Root of Congestion	A switch output port whose buffer threshold for a VL has been exceeded, and for which there are link flow control credits available to send data continuously, is the root of congestion.	17

SL	Service Level
Switch Port VL Congestion State	The state of a <u>VL</u> at a port, in which packets for that VL are candidates for being marked with a <u>FECN</u> .
Switch Congestion event	When a <u>VL</u> on a switch port moves into a <u>Switch Port VL Congestion State</u> .
Trigger Threshold	When the <u>CCTI</u> reaches this level for a given flow, a <u>Channel Adapter Threshold Congestion Event</u> occurs.
Victim of Congestion	A switch output port whose buffer threshold for a <u>VL</u> has been exceeded, and which does not have sufficient flow control credits available to keep the data flowing at full rate, is a victim of congestion.
VL	Virtual Lane.

A10.1.2 CONGESTION OVERVIEW

To understand the congestion spreading problem, and the relationship between a root source and a victim of congestion, consider [Figure 332 Fabric Congestion on page 1800](#). Assume that ports A through E on Switch 1 are all sending packets to port G so that port G is receiving data at 100% of its capability to send it.

Also assume that port F, on adjacent Switch 2 is also transmitting data to port G on Switch 1 at 20% of the total link bandwidth. Since egress port G is backed up, port F will transmit packets until there are no more credits left on the inter-switch link between the two switches.

At this point, port G will be congested, however there is no detrimental side effect, since all ports (A-F) will be served as quickly as port G is able to.

Now consider a port X on Switch 2, which is sending packets to port Y on Switch 1, at 20% of the paths bandwidth. Port G, the source of the congestion is not anywhere in the path from port X to port Y. In this case one might expect that since port F was only using 20% of the inter-switch links bandwidth, the remaining 80% of the links bandwidth would be available for port X, much more than port X requires. However this is not the case, since port F will eventually consume all of the link credits to switch 2, and port X will have to wait for available credits.

Congestion Control further defines two subcategories of congestion a port may experience. It may be the “root” cause of the congestion, or it may be a “victim”.

If a port has a large queue of packets awaiting transmission, and the port has available credits to send packets, then it is the root cause; however if the port does not have credits to send packets, then it is a “victim” of congestion spreading.

In this example port G in switch 1 would be the “root” of the congestion. It has available credits, however the queue is growing because it is receiving packets faster than it is able to forward them.

The congestion in Switch 1 has spread so that port H on Switch 2 is now congested. Port H will not have flow control credits, causing it to throttle data and is therefore a “victim” of congestion spreading. Traffic from port X is suffering from head-of-line blocking, and results in a reduction of the total throughput of the fabric.

The objective of congestion Control is to avoid if possible, and eliminate if it has already occurred, congestion spreading such as this. The approach here is to limit the injection rate of flows at the ports which are the root cause of the congestion (ports A-F), so that other ports are not affected (port X).

By limiting the injection rate of ports A-F to something which port G can handle, ports A-F should not see a significant degradation (after all, their packets were just going to wait anyway), however packets being sent from port X to port Y should be able to flow normally, since credits will be available.

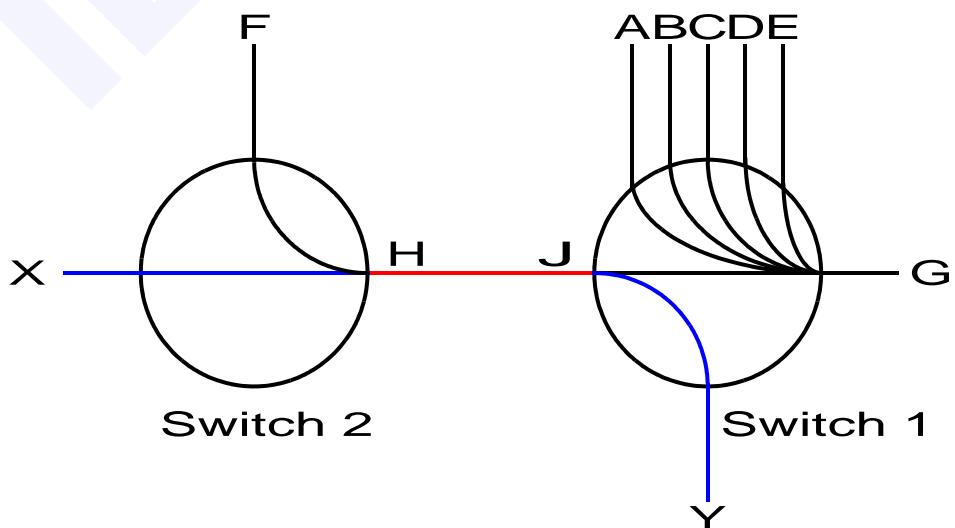


Figure 332 Fabric Congestion

There are situations where congestion can occur, yet no switch will detect that it is the root of congestion. For example, consider the case of a switch port connected to a CA that is unable to process received packets at the full line rate. In this case the switch output port buffer

threshold for a VL will be exceeded, and it will not have sufficient flow control credits available to keep the data flowing at full rate. As a result, the switch will view itself as the victim of congestion, instead of the root.

To handle this situation, a switch may be configured to enter the congestion state even when it views itself as the victim.

A10.1.3 CONGESTION CONTROL SUMMARY

This is a summary and is included to provide an overview of the congestion control specification. The normative portion of this specification is contained in [A10.2 Congestion Control Mechanism on page 1803](#). A Congestion Manager is not architected by this specification.

- Switches detect congestion on a VL.
 - Switches distinguish between when that congestion is the root cause, or the result of congestion spreading (victim).
- Forward Explicit Congestion Notification (FECN) is used to communicate that a switch port is in the congested state.
 - Ports on switches may be configured to be in a congested state either when the port is the root of the congestion, or any time congestion is detected (i.e. the port is either the root or victim).
- The switch will set a FECN bit on a subset of the packets exiting the port when in the port VL congested state.
- The target CA of the marked packet then notifies the packet's source that congestion has occurred via a BECN.
- The source of the congested packet reacts by temporarily reducing its injection of packets into the network.
 - The original injection rate resumes over time.
 - Congestion Control may be performed on a per QP basis.
 - Congestion may alternatively be controlled for each SL on a Port.
- Cyclic logs are kept in congestion control aware switches and CAs, and are supplied to a congestion manager on request.
- Congestion control as defined will handle transient congestion within the fabric directly, and will define attributes, which may be used by higher levels of management to control longer term congestion, possibly in conjunction with a QoS manager.
- Security: Access to congestion control information in a switch or CA will be done under a congestion control key. See [A10.4.1.1 CC Key on page 1817](#) for detail of the CC_Key.

- For a link controlled by static rate control, if there is no congestion, static rate control will be predominant. When congestion occurs on a path that is controlled by static rate control, then the minimum of the two rates (i.e. the maximum interpacket delay) is used to inject packets into the fabric.

A10.1.3.1 CURRENT PERFORMANCE METRICS

Performance counters pertaining to congestion will be kept by CAs and switches.

Information that is currently collected may be pertinent to congestion:-

Mandatory counters:-

- PortXmitData. The closer this is to the maximum transmission of a link the more likely it is that a port may be in a congested environment.
- PortXmitWait. This provides information on a potential victim of congestion. It is the number of ticks during which the port had data to transmit but was unable to because of a lack of credits or a lack of arbitration.

Optional counters:-

- PortXmitQueue[n]
- PortXmitDataVL[n]
- PortVLXmitWaitCounters:PortVLXmitWait[n]
- SwPortVLCongestion:SWPortVLCongestion[n]

For Further information see [16.1 Performance Management on page 1079](#).

A10.1.3.2 OPERATION WITH CC UNAWARE SWITCHES AND CHANNEL ADAPTERS

The full capability of the congestion control mechanism requires congestion control aware CAs and switches. However, a mix of congestion control aware and unaware devices is supported, with, at most, some loss of Congestion control.

Marked packets and Congestion Notification Packets (CNP)s traverse Congestion Control unaware switches as valid packets.

Congestion Control unaware CAs ignore Congestion Notifications of FECN and BECN.

A10.2 CONGESTION CONTROL MECHANISM

The implementation of congestion control in a Switch or a CA is optional. When implemented, it shall be done so in accordance with the specification in this section.

In order for congestion control to work effectively with unreliable datagrams, the paths must be reversible as described in [13.5.4 Response Generation and Reversible Paths on page 839](#). CN's can only be constructed from the received datagram with a FECN mark (see [A10.3.2 on page 1815](#)). BECNs may not reach the source if the path is non reversible, as they may be dropped.

Congestion control is only applicable to Data VLs; it does not apply to VL15.

A Congestion Control Manager will identify that a switch or CA supports Congestion Control by receiving successful responses to valid Congestion Control Method requests. A non congestion aware CA or switch will return either "Bad Version" or drop the packet. If a request times out it is up to a congestion manager to determine how many times it will retry without a response before the CA or Switch is assumed not to support Congestion Control.

CA10-1: A CA or Switch that supports Congestion Control shall so-indicate by responding to valid Congestion Control Method requests successfully.

A10.2.1 SWITCH BEHAVIOR

This section defines the operation of a switch that supports congestion control.

A switch that supports congestion control may or may not support congestion control on its enhanced switch port zero. The indication of such support is by the setting of EnhancedPort0CC in the Congestion Control ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask, see [Table 563 Congestion Control Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1822](#). The requirements are identical to those for a CA. Congestion control is not supported on base port0.

A10.2.1.1 CONGESTION DETECTION

A switch port may identify that it has entered a Port VL congested state when it crosses a threshold. The threshold for this event may be set to a different level for each port. The threshold is determined by a weight that has a value of 0 to 15 and is interpreted as follows:-

- 0: there is no marking of packets on this port

- 1: Indicates a high value of a threshold (little space to accommodate for packets already in the fabric).i.e. there is a high probability that congestion will spread.
- 2-14: A uniform distribution of thresholds between those assigned to weights 1 and 15.
- 15: indicates a low value of the threshold (more space to accommodate packets in the fabric). In this case the likelihood of congestion spreading is reduced, but there is an increased probability that a packet might be signalled as moving through a point of congestion, when the fabric is not congested.

The threshold should be considered in terms of credits. A threshold with weight 15 will be set by the device such that traffic with a fixed packet size of 256 bytes (including headers), with a uniformly random destination address on each supported VL on the port, and an inter packet gap of 176 bytes (approximate load of 60%), on all ports will have a <1% probability of packets being marked with a FECN. This calculation should be performed on a device configured such that each port has the same number of operational VLs.

This will provide different settings for the threshold with a weight 15, depending on the number of VLs that are configured on a port. Fewer VLs provides more buffer space.

A weight of 1 should have a threshold that has consumed the majority of the buffering for a VL

A switch should have a default weight of 8.

The weights from 15 to 1 should cover a uniform distribution over the available buffering from the average 60% queueing point, on a VL basis.

The setting of the thresholds in the switch is dependent on the architecture (Output buffered, Input buffered, central shared buffer pool with or without dynamic buffer allocation, virtual output queueing, etc.). The association of the congestion weighting to the threshold, beyond what is outlined in [A10.2.1.1 Congestion Detection on page 1803](#), is left to the device designer.

CA10-2: A weight of 0 shall indicate no congestion marking.

CA10-3: A weight of n shall produce a threshold that is lower than a threshold generated by a weight of n-1.

CA10-4: There shall be 16 distinct thresholds levels within a device (based on credits), including the threshold for a weight of 0 which indicates no marking.

A10.2.1.1.1 Root vs. Victim

A switch is capable of identifying both root and victim of congestion.

- Identify a root of congestion:- An output VL has exceeded the selected threshold and there are credits available to output data, i.e. data is always able to exit, but may be delayed due to arbitration.
- Identify a victim of congestion:- An output VL has exceeded the selected threshold and packets are delayed due to a lack of credits, i.e. data may not always be able to exit the port due to a lack of credit.

Under certain circumstances, such as when a switch port is connected to a CA that is unable to process received packets quickly enough, it may be beneficial to enter the Port VL congested state when the switch identifies itself as a victim of congestion. This can be accomplished by setting the Victim_Mask for the port (see [A10.4.3.6 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#)). The Victim_Mask would typically be set for enhanced switch port zero.

The indication of congestion through the VL should be smoothed over time. The precise smoothing mechanism is left to the switch implementor. The precise mechanism for identifying congestion is dependent on the switch architecture.

CA10-5: A switch that supports congestion control shall be capable of determining whether it is a root or a victim of congestion.

CA10-6: A switch port data VL shall detect that it is a root of congestion when the congestion threshold has been exceeded and there is sufficient credit to transmit a packet at the head of the queue on that data VL. It is permissible to smooth or average credits in the determination of a root of congestion, as long as the result maintains the long term behavior.

CA10-7: A switch port VL shall detect that it is a victim of congestion when the congestion threshold has been exceeded and it is unable to transmit a packet at the head of the queue on that data VL due to a lack of credit.

A10.2.1.2 CONGESTION MARKING

A switch marks packets when a switch port is in a switch port VL congestion state which is defined as follows.

CA10-8: A switch port VL shall be in the congestion state when it is a root of congestion.

CA10-9: A switch port VL shall be in the congestion state when it is a victim of congestion and the Victim_Mask bit (see [A10.4.3.6 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#)) is set for that port.

CA10-10: A switch shall generate a switch congestion event when a port VL enters the congestion state. This event is used to log events in the switch CongestionLog (see [Table 568 CongestionLog \(switch\) on page 1825](#)).

CA10-11: A switch that has a port that enters a switch port VL congestion state, shall mark packets by setting the “F” field in the BTH, while in this state. See [A10.3.1 BTH: FECN and BECN locations on page 1814](#)

CA10-12: A switch shall not mark raw packets with a FECN.

CA10-13: A switch shall not mark packets with a FECN, if the packet size is below the specified value. If the packet_size threshold is set to 0, then packets of all size are eligible to be marked. To control the marking packet size see:- [Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#) and [Table 573 SwitchPortCongestionSetting Attribute on page 1829](#).

CA10-14: A switch shall set the FECN bit in the BTH of packets that are candidates for marking determined by the Marking_Rate. (see [Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#) marking_rate). If the Marking_Rate is set to zero, then all packets are eligible to be marked.

A10.2.1.3 CONGESTION LOG

A switch that supports congestion control maintains a congestion log to identify the frequency and source of congestion events. Due to the possibility of contention in large switches this log is best effort, but while a switch is marking packets this log file shall have at least one active entry. See [Table 568 CongestionLog \(switch\) on page 1825](#).

- Entries may be placed in the log for each Switch Congestion Event. This may happen on more than one VL on a port, and for more than one port in the same switch at the same time.
- Only a sampling of switch congestion events needs to be reported; all events are not reported.
 - If the switch marks multiple packets at any instant during a congestion period for the same SL/DLID, it may choose to record only one of the packets in its log of congestion events (best effort).
 - The switch maintains information for the last 15 congestion events. Some entries may be zero if either fifteen events have not yet occurred, or if events are too old (outside the scope of the current timestamp).
 - The Switch Congestion Log is not cleared on reading, and is not explicitly cleared. A congestion manager identifies duplicate entries from successive reads via the time stamps.

A switch maintains a free running 32 bit timer for log purposes that encompasses a range of 1.024 μ sec to 1.22 hours.

CA10-15: A switch that supports congestion control shall maintain a Switch Congestion Log.

CA10-16: The Switch Congestion log shall be a cyclic buffer of 15 entries.(i.e. most recent events replace older ones)

CA10-17: A switch shall place at least one entry in the switch congestion log when it generates one or more switch port VL congestion events.

CA10-18: A switch shall maintain a free running 32 bit timer for log purposes that increments in 1.024 μ sec steps and is derived from the link bit rate.

CA10-19: The Switch Congestion Log shall contain the information defined in [Table 568 CongestionLog \(switch\) on page 1825](#).

CA10-20: In a Switch Congestion Log, entries that are older than the maximum timestamp wrapping twice, shall be returned as zero.

A10.2.1.4 SWITCH PERFORMANCE COUNTERS FOR CONGESTION

The switch maintains the following sampled performance counters that pertain to congestion on a port.

- The length of time (number of ticks) during the sample period that the port for a given data VL is in the switch port VL congestion state (PortXmitTimeCong).
- The length of time (number of ticks) during the sample period that any data VL on a port is in the switch port VL congestion state (Port-VLXmitTimeCong).

For a definition of tick, see [16.1.3.2 PortSamplesControl on page 1083](#).

At 2.5Gbps a tick can be in the range of 4 nsec to 1 microsecond (in multiples of 4 nsec). If a higher resolution tick is used, then the counter shall be larger. For a 4ns resolution, the counter shall be 32 bits (max. of 4 seconds).

CA10-21: A switch that supports congestion control shall maintain the sampled performance counters to be returned to the CCMgr on request defined in [Table 587 PortXmitConCtrl on page 1841](#) and [Table 588 Port-VLXmitTimeCong on page 1841](#).

A10.2.1.5 SWITCH CREDIT STARVATION

Switch Credit Starvation may be used to control congestion when attached to devices (CAs or switches) that do not support Congestion Control. It is an optional feature within Congestion Control.

The technique is to control the return of credits to the device upstream of a link (Credit Starvation), when an input port is marked as having such a mechanism active. The mechanism identifies a trigger point at which a port will start to control the rate of credit return for a VL. The trigger point will be based on an average “input buffer” threshold for a VL, but may also be considered as being the average active number of credits used for a VL. Note that this mechanism will affect flows that might not be going through the root of congestion. While this condition exists, the credit return rate will be controlled by the CS_ReturnDelay. When the average “buffer occupancy” for a VL falls below its threshold, credits will be returned by the switch’s normal policy.

There will be one average “buffer occupancy” threshold and a CS_ReturnDelay for each port. Each port on a switch may have different values. Capable ports can be set active, through the Credit_Mask, see [Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#), which also contains the default settings for the trigger level (CS_Threshold), and credit return rate (CS_ReturnDelay) see [Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#) for switch defaults, and [Table 573 SwitchPortCongestionSetting Attribute on page 1829](#) to set different rates on ports. Individual ports may be set, see [A10.4.3.7 SwitchPortCongestionSetting on page 1829](#)

oA10-1: A switch may support the Switch Credit Starvation option.

oA10-2: A switch shall indicate support of the Switch Credit Starvation option by setting Bit0 in the CongestionInfo to a one, see [Table 566 CongestionInfo on page 1824](#)

oA10-3: A switch that supports the Switch Credit Starvation option shall activate credit starvation on each port that has the Credit_Mask set to one (see [Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827](#)).

oA10-4: A switch port that has credit starvation activated shall detect when the CS_Threshold for a data VL on that port is exceeded.

oA10-5: When the CS_Threshold is exceeded on a switch port data VL, the credits for that VL shall be delayed as specified by the CS_ReturnDelay for that port.

A10.2.2 CA BEHAVIOR

The implementation of congestion control in a CA is optional. This section defines its operation if implemented.

A CA that supports congestion control is responsible for notifying the source when packets are received that indicate they have passed through a point of congestion. The CA is also responsible for reducing the injection rate of flows that pass through a point of congestion when it receives such a notification from the target.

A CA ignores the FECN bit in the BTH (it will not generate a BECN response) of the following packet types:-

- Multicast Packets
- ACK Packets
- CN Packets

The CA notifies the source of a packet that has passed through a point of congestion by sending a CN packet. Alternatively, for reliable connections, this may be optimized by placing a BECN marker in the ACK rather than generating a CNP. Note: ACKs are not normally subject to IRD, however an RDMA_Read_Response is an ACK which may be controlled by IRD, and in such a case, a CNP should be used to signal a BECN back to its source.

A CA may be subject to high rates of small packets arriving which are marked with a FECN and, additionally, there is the possibility of output scheduling delays. Under such conditions it may not be possible to generate a BECN for each FECN that arrives. Under such conditions a device shall:-

- For BECNs in ACKs, BECN responses may be coalesced.
- The BECN bit on a coalesced Acknowledge packet shall be active if one or more of the Acknowledges covered by the coalesced acknowledge should have had its BECN bit active.
- For BECNs in CN's, the endpoint shall be able to support at least 1 outstanding CN per QP, or if a centralized CN allocation mechanism is used, shall be capable of queueing at least 32 CN's per port. (When CN resources are exhausted a FECN shall have its corresponding BECN dropped).

On receipt of a FECN, the resulting ACK or CN should be scheduled as quickly as possible.

CA10-22: CAs that support congestion control shall ignore the FECN bit set in the BTH of multicast, ACK and Congestion Notification Packets.

CA10-23: When a valid FECN is received (see [CA10-22](#)), the CA shall set the BECN bit to a one in the BTH of either an ACK or a CNP that is returned in response to the packet received with the FECN bit set.

- CA10-24:** A CA that supports congestion control shall be capable of scheduling at least one CNP per QP or 32 CNPs per port. 1
2
- CA10-25:** A CA that supports Congestion control shall be able to handle a BECN received in either an ACK (including unsolicited ACK), or a CNP. 3
4
- CA10-26:** A CA that supports congestion control and marks ACKs with a BECN shall schedule an ACK marked with a BECN regardless of the state 5
6
7
8
of the AckReq bit in the received packet's BTH field.
- CA10-27:** CAs that support congestion control shall ensure that the BECN 9
10
bit on a coalesced Acknowledge packet shall be active if one or more of 11
the Acknowledges covered by the coalesced acknowledge should have 12
had its BECN bit active. 13

A10.2.2.1 INJECTION RATE CONTROL

The following describes the way in which a congestion-control-capable CA receiving a BECN will control the rate of injection into the fabric. 14

A CA has one Congestion control table (CCT) per port, with a minimum of 17
18
128 entries in each CCT. The CCT may be larger, but only in multiples of 19
64 entries. A CA returns the size of the CCT in 64 entry units in ControlTableCap 20
in the CongestionInfo attribute (see: [Table 566 CongestionInfo 21](#) 22
[on page 1824](#)). 23

A10.2.2.1.1 CCT ENTRY FORMAT

A CCT entry is 16 bits wide; consisting of a 2-bit shift_field and a 14-bit multiplier. The lowest injection rate that can be achieved is $100/(2^{14})$ or 0.006% of a link's throughput. 24
25
26

A CA shall interpret a CCT entry as follows:- 27
28

The IRD will be the value of CCT[CCTI] that defines the delay between 29
30
packets from this flow. 31

CA10-28: For a CA that supports congestion control, if a packet has been sent from a flow, the subsequent packet from the flow shall not be scheduled until *at least* time T_s has passed since the previous packet was 32
33
scheduled, where T_s is calculated as follows: 34
35

$$T_s = (\text{TpacketTime} \gg \text{Shift_field}) * \text{Mult_Factor}$$
 36
37

Where: 38

\gg = shift right 39

Multi_factor = CCT[CCTI] bits 0-13 (14 bit multiplier) 40

Shift_field = CCT[CCTI] bits 14-15 41

TpacketTime = time it takes to transmit the preceding packet

LRH:PktLen*4/L_r,

L_r is the port speed as obtained from the PortInfo:LinkWidthActive and PortInfo:LinkSpeedActive attributes.

A CA may aggregate a small number of packets together (up to 4 MTU) before asserting IRD. In such a case, the IRD applied between such grouping shall be that appropriate to the aggregate size.

A CA controls the injection rate of a flow on either a QP or SL basis, depending on the setting for the port. It shall either be QP or SL based exclusively. See [Table 575 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#)

A CA will have a CCTI and CCTI_Min per flow (QP and SL). It also has a table for CCTI_Increase and CCTI_Timer for each port. Each table has 16 entries; one for each SL. See [Table 575 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#).

CA10-29: A CA that supports congestion control shall interwork with Static Rate Control. The IRD will be the maximum of the static rate control and the congestion rate control.

CA10-30: A CA that supports congestion control shall maintain one Congestion Control Table (CCT) per port.

CA10-31: The CCT shall contain a minimum of 128 entries.

CA10-32: A CA shall report the number of entries in the CCT in 64 entry units in the CongestionInfo attribute (see [Table 566 CongestionInfo on page 1824](#)).

CA10-33: A CA shall load the CCT based on the information received in the CongestionControlTable attribute (see [Table 577 CongestionControlTable on page 1832](#)).

CA10-34: A CA shall maintain a CCTI_Limit for each CCT.

CA10-35: A CA shall be capable of controlling the injection rate on each QP flow or on each port SL flow, depending on the setting of the Port Control:FlowSelect (bit 0) in CA CongestionSetting (see [Table 575 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#)).

CA10-36: A CA shall maintain a CCTI for each QP or port SL flow.

CA10-37: A CA shall maintain a CCTI_Min, CCTI_Increase and CCTI_Timer for each port SL and shall load them based on the contents of the CA CongestionSetting attribute (see [Table 575 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#)).

CA10-38: Each CCTI_Timer shall be in units of 1.024 usec and may be implemented with accuracy influenced by the link bit rate.

A10.2.2.1.2 RATE DECREASE

The injection rate is decreased for a flow (QP or port SL) based on the receipt of BECNs. When the CA is configured for SL based control, the CCTI is incremented by the CCTI_Increase value associated with the SL. When configured for QP based control, the CCTI_Increase value for the SL associated with that QP is used. The CCTI is only increased up to the CCTI_Limit, and no history of BECNs arriving while the CCTI is at the CCTI_Limit is kept.

CA10-39: When the CA is configured for SL-based control, the CCTI is incremented by the CCTI_Increase value associated with the SL, each time a BECN is received on that SL.

CA10-40: When the CA is configured for QP-based control, the CCTI is incremented by the CCTI_Increase value for the SL associated with that QP, each time a BECN is received on that QP.

CA10-41: A CA shall not increment the CCTI beyond the CCTI_Limit.

A10.2.2.1.3 RATE INCREASE

The injection rate is increased periodically based on the value set in the CCTI_Timer. The CCTI_Timer has a range from 1.024 μ sec to 67 msec and is maintained for each port SL. When this timer expires, the CCTI for each flow associated with that timer is decremented by one, thus referencing a CCT entry that has a reduced delay value. When the CCTI reaches zero, no injection rate delay is to be added to the flow.

The CCTI is not reduced any further, once it has reached either CCTI_Min or zero (whichever is the larger).

This specification describes setting CCTI_Min for a port SL (see [A10.4.3.8 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#)). When configured for QP-based injection rate control, the CCTI_Min for the associated SL is applied to the QP.

CA10-42: A CA shall decrement by one, the CCTI for each flow associated with an SL that has its CCTI_Timer expire. The CCTI shall not be decremented below zero or the CCTI_Min value for the flow.

A10.2.2.2 CA CONGESTION THRESHOLD EVENT NOTIFICATION LOG

A congestion-control-capable CA provides a Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log for each port in order to provide information pertaining to the frequency and source of congestion events. CAs provide the capability to detect when a CCTI reaches the Trigger_Threshold that is set by

a Congestion Manager. When the Trigger_Threshold for a flow is reached, information pertaining to the event is logged by the CA. A Congestion Manager sets the Trigger_Threshold for each SL on a CA port using the CACongestionSetting attribute (see [A10.4.3.8 CACongestionSetting on page 1831](#)). If the Trigger_Threshold is set to zero, no information is logged.

The Congestion Threshold Event Notification log is a cyclic buffer of thirteen entries. It is not cleared on reading, and is not explicitly cleared. A congestion manager identifies duplicate entries from successive reads via the entry time stamps.

A CA shall maintain a free running 32 bit timer for log entries, with a range of 1.024 µsec to 1.22 hours.

A CA places entries in the notification log as follows:-

- The detailed information recorded for each log entry is given in [Table 571 CongestionLogEvent \(CA\) on page 1826](#). Event Log entries for which information is not available are returned as all zeros.
- The log maintains an indication that the threshold for any SL has occurred since the last CCMgtGet(CongestionLog). This indication for each SL is returned in the Trigger_Threshold Log information in the ThresholdCongestionEventMap field (see [Table 570 CongestionLog \(CA\) on page 1826](#)).
- When the ThresholdCongestionEventMap has been returned in a CCMgtGetResp(CongestionLog) it shall be set to zero. It is possible for a packet to get lost, and thus lose the current information.
- If multiple notification events occur in quick succession, it may not be possible to log all the events, in which case a CA will log as many as may be practical (best effort).
- When a CA is configured to control congestion on a port SL, the following entry fields shall be maintained:
 - SL
 - Remote LID
 - Timestamp

CA10-43: A CA that supports congestion control shall provide a Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log for each port.

CA10-44: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by CA10-44.1.1.

CA10-44.1.1: The Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log shall be a cyclic buffer of thirteen entries.

CA10-45: A CA shall detect when the CCTI for a flow is increased and becomes greater than or equal to the Trigger Threshold. When this is detected the CA shall generate a threshold event.

CA10-46: A CA shall place at least one entry in the Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log when it detects that one or more threshold events have occurred.

CA10-47: A CA shall maintain a free running 32-bit timer for log entries that increments in 1.024 µsec steps and is derived from the link bit rate.

CA10-48: The Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log shall contain the information defined in [Table 570 CongestionLog \(CA\) on page 1826](#).

CA10-49: In a Congestion Threshold Event Notification Log, entries that are older than the maximum timestamp wrapping twice, shall be returned as zero.

A10.2.2.3 CA PERFORMANCE COUNTERS

A congestion-control-capable CA supports the following sampled performance counters on each port.

- The number of packets received with a FECN mark (PortPktRcvFECN).
- The number of CNPs/ACKs received with a BECN mark (PortPktRcvBECN).
- The number of packets for a specified SL received with a FECN mark (PortSLRcvFECN).
- The number of CNPs/ACKs for a specified SL received with a BECN mark (PortSLRcvBECN).

CA10-50: A CA that supports congestion control shall provide the sampled performance counters defined in [A10.5.4 PortRcvConCtrl on page 1836](#), [A10.5.5 PortSLRcvFECN on page 1837](#) and [A10.5.6 PortSLRcvBECN on page 1839](#).

A10.3 PACKET FORMATS

A10.3.1 BTH: FECN AND BECN LOCATIONS

The following table shows the BTH and where the FECN and BECN will reside. The FECN & BECN bits are in the area of the BTH that is not covered by the iCRC.

Table 555 Base Transport Header

bits bytes	31-24	23-16	15-8	7-0
---------------	-------	-------	------	-----

0-3	Opcode			SE	M	Pad	TVER	Partition Key
4-7	F	B	Reserved-6	Destination QP				
	(masked in the iCRC)							
8-11	A	Reserved 7		PSN - Packet Sequence Number				

B (BECN): 0 indicates that no congestion was encountered, 1 indicates that the packet indicated by this header was subject to forward congestion. The B bit is set in an ACK or CN BTH.

F (FECN): 0 indicates that it probably did not go through a point of congestion, 1 indicates that the packet went through a point of congestion.

A10.3.2 CONGESTION NOTIFICATION PACKET (CNP) FORMAT

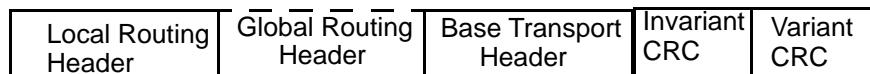


Figure 333 Congestion Notification packet format

Notes:

- a) The Lver-field of the LRH must be set to 0x0. To be transparent to version 1.1 and earlier switches.
- b) The BECN bit of the BETH will be set (see BETH bit settings above).
- c) CNP opcode of 0b'10000000.
- d) The QP field in the BTH will be set to the source QP of the packet marked with a FECN:-
For UD the QP is obtained from the DETH.
For UC, RC and XRC the QP is obtained from the QP context.
For RD the QP is obtained from the EE context.
- e) The PSN will be set to 0 and ignored by the receiver.
- f) The P_Key will be the same as the BTH of the packet marked with a FECN.
- g) The Tver in the BTH will be set to 0x0
- h) The Solicited Event and Migration Required shall not be set.

- i) If the original packet contained a GRH, then the CN packet must contain a GRH. For original packets being UC, RC and XRC this information is obtained from the QP context, for RD it is obtained from the EE context and for UD as follows:-

The Dgid is copied from the Sgid in the GRH of the original packet.

The FlowLabel and TrafficClass are copied from the original packet.

HopLimit is set to 0xFF

CA10-51: A congestion control aware device that signals or receives BECNs, shall support the CN packet format as described in section [A10.3.2 Congestion Notification Packet \(CNP\) format on page 1815](#).

A10.4 CONGESTION CONTROL MANAGEMENT

CA10-52: The Congestion Control Management Agent (CCMgtA) is mandatory on all nodes that support congestion control.

The Congestion Control Management class provides mechanisms to configure congestion control parameters in switches and channel adapters that support congestion control. It also provides mechanisms for retrieving information pertaining to congestion events from such devices.

A10.4.1 CONGESTION CONTROL MAD FORMAT

CA10-53: The datagrams for the Congestion Control class shall conform to the MAD format and used as specified in [13.4 Management Datagrams on page 627](#) and further specified in [Figure 334 on page 1816](#) and [Table 556 Congestion Control MAD Fields on page 1817](#).

The management class for the Congestion Control class is 0x21.

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
0				
.....				Common MAD Header
20				
24				CC_Key
28				

Figure 334

Congestion Control MAD format

bytes	bits 31-24	bits 23-16	bits 15-8	bits 7-0
32				Congestion Control Log Data (otherwise reserved)
...				
60				
64				CCMgt Data
...				
252				

Figure 334 Congestion Control MAD format

Table 556 Congestion Control MAD Fields

Field Name	Length	Description
Common MAD Header	24 bytes	Common MAD header as described in 13.4.2 Management Datagram Format on page 781. MgtClass0x21, ClassVersion=2 .
CC_Key	8 bytes	Congestion Control key, is used to validate the source of the Congestion Control MADs, see A10.4.3.4 CongestionKeyInfo on page 1824 for definition and use.
Congestion Control Log Data	32 bytes	32 bytes of CCMgt payload for congestion control log MADs. This data may extend into the CCMgt Data field below. See A10.4.3.5 CongestionLog on page 1825 for attribute format.
CCMgt Data	192 bytes	192 bytes of CCMgt payload. The structure and content depends upon the Method, Attribute, and Attribute Modifier fields in the MAD header.

A10.4.1.1 CC_KEY

In order to authenticate that congestion control MADs originated from a trusted source, all Congestion Control MADs must include the Congestion Control Key (CC_Key).

A10.4.1.1.1 CC_KEY ASSUMPTIONS

- 1) To use the correct key for each node, a CCMgr or a higher level CC_Key manager keeps track of the keys for the nodes that it is managing.
- 2) If a backup CCMgr exists, it shares the CC_Keys for ease of fail-over.
- 3) A CCMgr sets the CC_Key, CC_KeyProtectBit, and CC_KeyLeasePeriod in the CCKeyInfo Attribute with one CC-MgtSet(CCKeyInfo) MAD. A successful completion of this assignment indicates to a CCMgr that it has taken ownership of the node.

A10.4.1.1.2 CC_KEY PROTECTION SCOPE

Each Congestion Management Agent in a node has one CC_Key. All access from a CCMgr to a CCMgtA are protected by the CC_Key. [Table 557](#)

[CC_Key Protection Scope on page 1818](#) shows the scope protected by the CC_Key.

Table 557 CC_Key Protection Scope

Source	Target Entity	Protection
CCMgr	Reads and Writes to a CCMgtA	yes

A10.4.1.1.3 CC_KEY OPERATION

CA10-54: The CCMgtA shall check the CC_Key contained in incoming MADs of the Congestion Control class.

The success and effect of the check depends on the value of the CCKeyInfo:CC_Key and CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit of the CCMgtA and on the method and attribute contained in the incoming MAD.

Table 558 CC_Key Check

CCMgtA CC_Key	CCMgtA CC_Key Protection Bit	MADs method	Success
Zero	any	any	yes
non-zero	any	CCMgtSet() or CCMgtTrapRepress()	if MADs CC_Key equals CCMgtAs CC_Key
non-zero	0	CCMgtGet()	yes
non-zero	1	CCMgtGet()	if MADs CC_Key equals CCMgtAs CC_Key ^a

a. Even though the check succeeds, the CC_Key value in the CCKeyInfo attribute shall be returned as zero

CA10-55: If the CC_Key check fails, the CCMgtA shall

- Drop the MAD.
- Increment a CC_Key Violation counter if supported.
- Send a CCKeyViolation trap or generate a CCKeyViolation Notice.
- Start a countdown timer with the CC_Key lease period value.

A10.4.1.1.4 CC_KEY INITIALIZATION

CA10-56: At power up or reset, the CCKeyInfo:CC_Key, CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit and CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyLeasePeriod shall be set to zero.

A CCMgr may use CCMgtSet(CCKeyInfo) to assign the subsequent CCKeyInfo:CC_Key, CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit and CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyLeasePeriod.

A10.4.1.1.5 CC_KEY RECOVERY

CA10-57: The CC_Key lease period timer shall start when a CC_Key check fails.

When a CC_Key check fails, the node either sends a trap to the CCMgr or generates a Notice indicating the attempted access. This trap or notice serves as a request to the CCMgr to refresh the lease period by issuing a CCMgtSet(CCKeyInfo). A successful CCMgtSet(CCKeyInfo) will stop the timer and will rearm it.

If the CCMgr that originally set the CC_Key has gone away, then the lease period expires --- clearing the CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit and allowing a new CCMgr to read (and then set) the CCKeyInfo:CC_Key.

In the case where the TrapLID is zero (because no CCMgr has set it), the node has no CCMgr to send the trap to. In this case, the node does not send the trap and the lease period timer will expire, causing eventual take over by a new CCMgr

With the CCMgtGet(CCKeyInfo), any CCMgr can detect whether a CCKeyInfo:CC_Key is set (although hidden) based on the CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit. If the CCKeyInfo:CC_KeyProtectBit is set, the CCKeyInfo:CC_Key is set and hidden. Otherwise the return CCKeyInfo:CC_Key is the real one even if it is zero.

A10.4.1.1.6 LEVELS OF PROTECTION

There are four different protection levels based on the CC_Key, depending on the system requirements.

Table 559 Protection Levels

CC_Key	CC_KeyProtectBit	CC_KeyLeasePeriod	Description
0	any	any	No Protection provided. Any CCMgr can issue CCMgtSets, CCMgtGets and CCMgtTrapRepress
non-zero	0	n/a	Protection provided, but allows CCMgrs to read the CCKeyInfo:CC_Key in this mode
non-zero	1	non-zero	Protection provided and does not allow anyone to read the CC_Key in the node until the lease period has expired. The CC_Key lease period is a mechanism to allow the CC_Key to be protected only for a given amount of time.

Table 559 Protection Levels (Continued)

CC_Key	CC_KeyProtectBit	CC_KeyLeasePeriod	Description
non-zero	1	0	<p>Protection provided and does not allow the CC_Key in the node to be read by other CCMgrs.</p> <p>It must be noted that if the lease period was set to 0 (infinite) and the CCMgr that set it is no longer operational, there is no possibility for other CCMgrs to ever read it. So if the CC_Key is not provided by some unspecified way to the other CCMgrs, the CCMgtA of this node will never be accessible again</p>

A10.4.1.2 CONGESTION CONTROL LOG DATA

For the CongestionLog attribute, the payload is 224 bytes, starting at byte 32 and extending into the CCMgt Data field. For attributes other than CongestionLog, the contents of the Congestion Control Log Data field is reserved.

A10.4.1.3 CCMGT DATA

For attributes other than CongestionLog, the payload is 192 bytes, starting at byte 64.

A10.4.2 METHODS

The Congestion Control Class uses a subset of the common methods described in [13.4.5 Management Class Methods on page 785](#).

CA10-58: Congestion Control shall support the methods listed in [Table 560 Congestion Control Methods on page 1820](#). All method type values not listed in the Table are reserved.

Table 560 Congestion Control Methods

Method Type	Value	Description
CCMgtGet()	0x01	Request (read) a class specific information attribute.
CCMgtSet()	0x02	Request (write) that a class specific information attribute be set.
CCMgtGetResp()	0x81	Response from a Get() or Set() request.
CCMgtTrap()	0x05	Unsolicited datagram sent to the Congestion Control Management entity. Contains the Notice Attribute as defined in A10.4.3.2 Traps and Notices on page 1822 to identify the trap.
CCMgtTrapRepress()	0x07	Block repetition of notification.

A10.4.3 ATTRIBUTES

CA10-59: A Congestion Control Management Agent shall support the attributes listed in [Table 561 Congestion Control Attributes on page 1821](#). All attributes not listed in [Table 561 Congestion Control Attributes on page 1821](#) are reserved.

CA10-59.1.1: Whenever Congestion Control references an invalid port value or an architectural or implementation limit is exceeded or when mutually exclusive fields are set, then status code 7 shall be returned. See [Table 124 MAD Common Status Field Bit Values on page 795](#).

The attributes are described in detail in the sections following the table.

Table 561 Congestion Control Attributes

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description	Applicable to
ClassPortInfo	0x0001	0x00000000	Provides information about the CCMgt Agent. See A10.4.3.1 ClassPortInfo on page 1822 .	Switch & CA
Notice	0x0002	0x00000000	Provides Trap details. See A10.4.3.2 Traps and Notices on page 1822 .	Switch & CA
CongestionInfo	0x0011	0x00000000	Provides information about the congestion capability of a device. See A10.4.3.3 CongestionInfo on page 1824 .	Switch & CA
CongestionKeyInfo	0x0012	0x00000000	Provides CC_Key information for a port. Note: For a switch this is only applicable to port 0. See A10.4.3.4 CongestionKeyInfo on page 1824 .	Switch & CA
CongestionLog	0x0013	0x00000000	Returns CA or switch congestion log. See A10.4.3.5 CongestionLog on page 1825 .	Switch & CA
SwitchCongestionSetting	0x0014	0x00000000	Default buffer thresholds at which packet marking should occur, and device specific fields. See A10.4.3.6 SwitchCongestionSetting on page 1827 .	Switch
SwitchPortCongestionSetting	0x0015	Block Identifier	Provides the trigger levels, packet_size, and credit return rate controls for a port. See A10.4.3.7 SwitchPortCongestionSetting on page 1829 .	Switch
CACongestionSetting	0x0016	0x00000000	Provides rate control reduction and logging settings. See A10.4.3.8 CACongestionSetting on page 1831 .	CA ^a
CongestionControlTable	0x0017	Sequence Number	Indicates the starting element of the table for this request. See A10.4.3.9 CongestionControlTable on page 1832 .	CA ^a
TimeStamp	0x0018	0x00000000	Returns the current timer value from a device. See A10.4.3.10 TimeStamp on page 1834 .	Switch & CA

a. these are also valid for enhanced switch port 0 when CC ClassPortInfo.CapabilityMask.EnhancedPort0CC is set. See [Table 563 Congestion Control ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1822](#)

Table 562 Congestion Control Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	CCMgtGet()	CCMgtSet()	CCMgtTrap()	CCMgtTrapRepress()
ClassPortInfo	X	X		
Notice	X	X	X	X
CongestionInfo	X			
CongestionKeyInfo	X	X		
CongestionLog	X			
SwitchCongestionSetting	X	X		
SwitchPortCongestionSetting	X	X		
CACongestionSetting	X	X		
CongestionControlTable	X	X		
TimeStamp	X			

A10.4.3.1 CLASSPORTINFO

CA10-60: A CCMgtA shall support ClassPortInfo as described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#).

The ClassPortInfo attribute is described in [13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799](#).

Table 563 Congestion Control ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask

Bits	Name	Meaning
0-7	-	Common bits as defined in 13.4.8.1 ClassPortInfo on page 799 .
8	EnhancedPort0CC	Switch only: set if the EnhancedPort0 supports CA Congestion Control. (Note a switch can support Congestion control on data ports without supporting it on EnhancedPort0)
9	IsStaticRateControlDisableSupported	0 = Static rate control may not be disabled 1 = Static rate control may be disabled
10	IsSwitchCongestionSettingStaticRate-ControlMaskSupported	0 = switch congestion setting does not support static rate control mask 1 = switch congestion setting supports static rate control mask
11	IsRel13Supported	0 = complies with Volume 1 Spec v1.2.1 1 = complies with Volume 1 Spec v1.3
12-15	-	Reserved

A10.4.3.2 TRAPS AND NOTICES

Notice and Trap Queues allow a CCMgtA to inform a Congestion Manager of a CC_Key violation.

CA10-61: A Congestion Control Management Agent shall support either a Trap or a Notice Queue.

It is expected that a Congestion Manager will be capable of supporting both Trap and Notice Queues.

Traps and Notice Queues are described in detail in [13.4.9 Traps on page 811](#) and [13.4.10 Notice Queue on page 813](#). Congestion Control will use the common framework and this section serves only to describe behavior that is unique to the Congestion Control Class.

Table 564 Congestion Control Traps

Name	Type	Number	Details
CC_KeyViolation	Security	0x0000	See Table 565 Notice details for Trap 0x0000 CC_KeyViolation on page 1823

oA10-6: If the CCMgtA supports Traps, then the CCMgtA shall only use the Type and Number listed in [Table 564 Congestion Control Traps on page 1823](#)

Table 565 Notice details for Trap 0x0000 CC_KeyViolation

Component	Length (Bits)	Description
Source LID	16	Source Local Identifier, from the LRH of the offending MAD.
Method	8	Method, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Reserved	8	Reserved
Attribute ID	16	Attribute ID, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Attribute Modifier	32	Attribute Modifier, from Common MAD Header of the offending MAD.
Reserved	8	Reserved
QP	24	Destination Queue Pair number from the BTH of the offending MAD.
CC_Key	64	Congestion Control Key specified in the offending MAD.
Source GID	128	The Source Global Identifier from the GRH of the offending MAD. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be binary zeroes.
Padding	128	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

oA10-7: If the CCMgtA supports Traps as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the CCMgtA shall set the CC_KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 565 Notice details for Trap 0x0000 CC_KeyViolation on page 1823](#). Fields shall be filled with the information corresponding to the description of the trap.

1
2
3
4
oA10-8: If the CCMgtA supports Notices as indicated in ClassPortInfo, then the CCMgtA shall post the CC_KeyViolation notice as specified in [Table 565_Note details for Trap 0x0000 CC_KeyViolation on page 1823](#) to the notice queue when a CC_Key mismatch is detected.

5
6
oA10-9: The notice shall only be visible on the port that detected the CC_Key mismatch.

A10.4.3.3 CONGESTIONINFO

7
8
9
10
11
The CongestionInfo attribute provides the Congestion Control Manager with information on the capabilities of the node. This attribute is supported by both CAs and switches.

12
Table 566 CongestionInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CongestionInfo	RO	16	0	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Bit0 = 1: Supports Credit Starvation (switch only)Bit0 = 0: Does not support Credit StarvationAll other bits are reserved
ControlTableCap	RO	8	16	Number of 64 entry blocks in the CongestionControlTable. At least two 64 entry blocks must be supported. (CA only)

A10.4.3.4 CONGESTIONKEYINFO

21
22
23
24
The CongestionKeyInfo attribute is used by the Congestion Control Manager to set and retrieve the node's CC_Key and protection properties.

25
Table 567 CongestionKeyInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CC_Key	RW	64	0	The 8-byte CC_Key used in all CongestionControl MADs by all valid CCMgrs. A value of 0 means that no CC_Key check is ever performed by the CCMgtA.
CC_KeyProtectBit	RW	1	64	See A10.4.1.1.6 Levels of Protection on page 1819 for details.
Reserved	RO	15	65	Reserved
CC_KeyLeasePeriod	RW	16	80	Timer value used to indicate how long the CC_KeyProtectBit is to remain non zero after a CCMgtSet(CCKeyInfo) MAD that failed a CC_Key check is dropped. The value of the timer indicates the number of seconds for the lease period. With a 16 bit counter, the period can range from 1 second to approximately 18 hours. 0 shall mean infinite.

Table 567**CongestionKeyInfo (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CC_KeyViolations	RW	16	96	<p>Number of MADs that have been received at this node since power-on or reset that have been dropped due to a failed CC_Key check if such a counter is implemented. Otherwise it shall be 0xFFFF.</p> <p>When the CCMgr sets this component to 0x0000, the counter is reset to 0x0000 and counting resumes. Setting the counter to a value other than zero results in the counter being left unchanged</p>

A10.4.3.5 CONGESTIONLOG

The CongestionLog attribute provides the Congestion Control Manager with information on congestion events detected at congestion control capable switches and CAs. For switches, it returns a map of ports that marked packets within a specified time window. For CAs, it returns a map of SLs that have hit their threshold within a specified time window.

Table 568**CongestionLog (switch)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Logtype	RO	8	0	= 0x1 Switch
CongestionFlags	RO	8	8	<p>Bit 0 = 1, CC_Key lease period timer active. Bit 0 = 0, CC_Key lease period timer inactive. All other bits are reserved.</p>
LogEventsCounter	RO	16	16	Number of CongestionLogEvents since log last sent
CurrentTimeStamp	RO	32	32	32 bits wraps ~1hr with a 1.024 µsec tick
PortMap	RO	256	64	<p>If a bit is set to 1 then the corresponding port has marked packets with a FECN. Bit 0: reserved Bit 1: port 1 ... Bit 254: port 254 Bit 255: reserved</p>
CongestionEntryList	RO	1440	320	Contains an array of the 15 most recent CongestionLogEvent entries. (See Table 569 on page 1825 .)

Table 569**CongestionLogEvent (switch)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
SLID	RO	16	0	Source LID of congestion event

Table 569 CongestionLogEvent (switch) (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
DLID	RO	16	16	Destination LID of congestion event
SL	RO	4	32	Service level of congestion event
Reserved	RO	28	36	reserved
Timestamp	RO	32	64	Timestamp of congestion event

Table 570 CongestionLog (CA)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LogType	RO	8	0	= 0x2 CA
CongestionFlags	RO	8	8	Bit 0 = 1, CC_Key lease period timer active. Bit 0 = 0, CC_Key lease period timer inactive. All other bits are reserved.
ThresholdEventCounter	RO	16	16	Number of events since log last sent.
ThresholdConges- tionEventMap	RO	16	32	Contains an array of sixteen bits, one for each SL. • If set to 1b, at least one event has occurred on this SL before the timestamp wrapped twice. • If set to 0b, no events have occurred on this SL for a period equal to twice the maximum timestamp.
Reserved	RO	16	48	Reserved
CurrentTimeStamp	RO	32	64	Timestamp when log sent
CongestionLogEvent	RO	1664	96	Contains an array of the thirteen most recent CongestionLogEvent entries. (See Table 571 on page 1826 .)

Table 571 CongestionLogEvent (CA)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Local_QP_CN_Entry	RO	24	0	Local QP that reached CN Threshold. Set to zero if port threshold reached
SL_CN_Entry	RO	4	24	Service Level associated with local QP

Table 571 CongestionLogEvent (CA) (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Service_Type_CN_Entry	RO	4	28	Service Type of local QP <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • b'0000' - RC or XRC • b'0001' - UC • b'0010' - RD • b'0011' - UD
Remote_QP_Number_CN_Entry	RO	24	32	Remote QP that is connected to local QP. Set to zero for datagram QPs.
Reserved	RO	8	56	Reserved
Reserved (or Local_LID_CN)	RO	16	64	Local port LID
Remote_LID_CN_Entry	RO	16	80	LID of remote port that is connected to local QP. Set to zero for datagram service.
Timestamp_CN_Entry	RO	32	96	Timestamp when threshold reached.

A10.4.3.6 SWITCHCONGESTIONSETTING

The Congestion Control Manager uses the SwitchCongestionSetting attribute to program and retrieve the switch's congestion settings. This allows the CCMgr to control such attributes as how aggressively the switch marks congested packets, whether packets which are the victim of congestion are marked, and credit starvation.

Table 572 SwitchCongestionSetting

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Control_Map	RW	32	0	Indicates which components of this attribute are valid <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: a 1 indicates that the victim mask is valid. • bit 1: a 1 indicates that the credit mask is valid. • bit 2: a 1 indicates that the Threshold and Packet_Size components are valid. • bit 3: a 1 indicates that the CS_threshold and CS_ReturnDelay components are valid. • bit 4: a 1 indicates that the Marking_Rate is valid. • bit 5: a 1 indicates static rate control mask is valid • all other bits reserved.

Table 572 **SwitchCongestionSetting (Continued)**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Victim_Mask ^{a b}	RW	256	32	<p>If the bit set to 1, then the port corresponding to that bit shall mark packets that encounter congestion with a FECN, whether they are the source or victim of congestion. (See A10.2.1.1.1 Root vs. Victim on page 1805.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: port 0 (enhanced port 0 only) • ... • bit 254: port 254 • bit 255: reserved
Credit_Mask ^{a b}	RW	256	288	<p>If bit set to 1, then the port corresponding to that bit shall apply Credit Starvation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: port 0 (enhanced port 0 only) • ... • bit 254: port 254 • bit 255: reserved
Threshold ^c	RW	4	544	<p>A value that indicates how aggressive congestion marking should be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0: No packet marking • 0x1: Loose • 0x2: • ... • 0xF: Very aggressive <p>(See A10.2.1.1 Congestion Detection on page 1803.)</p>
Reserved	RO	4	548	reserved
Packet_Size ^c	RW	8	552	<p>Any packet less than this size will not be marked with a FECN. This fields units are credits, a value greater than the maximum packet size will result in no packets being marked with a FECN.</p>
CS_Threshold	RW	4	560	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0: No credit starvation • 0x1: Loose • 0x2: • ... • 0xF: Very aggressive <p>see A10.2.1.1 Congestion Detection on page 1803</p>
Reserved	RO	12	564	reserved
CS_ReturnDelay	RW	16	576	The same format as a CCT entry, that controls the credit rate return when active. See A10.2.2.1.1 CCT Entry Format on page 1810
Marking_Rate	RW	16	592	The value that provides the mean number of packets, between marking eligible packets with a FECN.

Table 572

SwitchCongestionSetting (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Static_Rate_Control_Mask	RW	256	608	<p>If bit set to 1, then the port corresponding to that bit shall enable static rate control</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0: port 0 (enhanced port 0 only) • ... • bit 254: port 254 • bit 255: reserved

a. If Credit_Mask and Victim_Mask is changed in the SwitchCongestionSetting, it will affect the Control_Type in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement. If Control_Type in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement is changed it may affect Credit_Mask and Victim_Mask in the SwitchCongestionSetting. In either case these changes will be immediately reflected in a GetResp. See compliance statement [C13-12.1.1: on page 788](#)

b. On any specified port, Victim_Mask and Credit_Mask are mutually exclusive.

c. If either Packet_Size or Threshold is changed in the SwitchCongestionSetting, it can affect the corresponding fields in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement. In either case these changes will be immediately reflected in a GetResp. See compliance statement [C13-12.1.1: on page 788](#)

This may be used to set the Victim and/or Credit Starvation (CS) Marker on each of the ports. A setting of the Marker in each case will activate that functionality on that port. It shall also be used to set a default setting for Threshold, packet_size, CS_threshold, and CS_ReturnRate, along with the packet marking rate to the same value on all ports. This is the only way of setting the marking rate for a switch. The control map will indicate which attributes are active. A CongestionGet() shall return the latest values set in a device for each active attribute set in the Control_Map.

All attributes apply to both data ports and port zero, as it is only a switch that sets a FECN in a packet, except for CS_Threshold and CS_ReturnDelay, which applies to data ports and enhanced port 0 only.

A10.4.3.7 SWITCHPORTCONGESTIONSETTING

The Congestion Control Manager uses the SwitchPortCongestionSetting attribute to program and retrieve specific switch port's congestion settings.

Table 573

SwitchPortCongestionSetting Attribute

Component	Access	Length(bits)	Description
SwitchPortCongestionSetting Block	RW	1536	Contains an array of 48 SwitchPortCongestionSettingElements. (See Table 574 on page 1830)

Table 574

SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Valid	1	0	When set to 1, indicates this switch port congestion setting element is valid.
Control_Type ^a	2	1	<p>Indicates which type of attribute is being set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • bit 0 = 0; QP based (FECN based) congestion control • bit 0 = 1; SL/Port based (credit starvation) congestion control • bit 1 = 1; Static rate control disabled • bit 1 = 0; Static rate control enabled
Reserved	1	3	reserved
Threshold ^b	4	4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Control_Type bit 0 = 0b, contains the congestion threshold value (Threshold) for this port. • When Control_Type bit 0 = 1b, contains the credit starvation threshold (CS_Threshold) value for this port. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0x0: None • 0x1: Loose • 0x2: • ... • 0xF: Very aggressive <p>See A10.2.1.1 Congestion Detection on page 1803.</p>
Packet_Size ^b	8	8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Control_Type bit 0 = 1b this field is reserved • When Control_Type bit 0 = 0b this field contains the minimum size of packets (Packet_Size) that may be marked with a FECN. Packets smaller than this size will not be marked. The packet size is specified in credits.
Cong_Parm_Marking_Rate	16	16	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Control_Type bit 0 = 0b, this contains port Marking_Rate, the mean number of packets, between marking eligible packets with a FECN. • When Control_Type bit 0 = 1b, this field contains the congestion control return delay (CS_ReturnDelay). The delay is specified in the same format as a CCT entry. (See A10.2.2.1.1 CCT Entry Format on page 1810.)

a. If Credit_Mask or Victim_Mask is changed in the SwitchCongestionSetting, it will affect the Control_Type in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement. If Control_Type in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement is changed it may affect Credit_Mask and Victim_Mask in the SwitchCongestionSetting. In either case these changes will be immediately reflected in a GetResp. See compliance statement [C13-12.1.1: on page 788](#).

b. If either Packet_Size or Threshold is changed in the SwitchCongestionSetting, it can affect the corresponding fields in SwitchPortCongestionSettingElement. In either case these changes will be immediately reflected in a GetResp. See compliance statement [C13-12.1.1: on page 788](#)

The AttributeModifier is a pointer to a block of 32 Congestion controls for ports to which this attribute applies. Valid values are from 0 to 5 and are further limited by the number of ports within a switch. Valid block values multiplied by the number of elements in the block, which is 48, should cover all possible switch ports. For example, a switch with 128 ports has valid block values of 0, 1 and 2.

Any entries in the SwitchPortCongestionSetting Block beyond the number of ports within a switch will be ignored on write and read back as zero

A10.4.3.8 CACONGESTIONSETTING

The Congestion Control Manager uses the CACongestionSetting attribute to program and retrieve congestion settings on channel adapters.

Table 575 CACongestionSetting

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Port_Control	RW	16	0	<p>Specifies congestion attributes for this port:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• bit 0 = 0; QP based congestion control• bit 0 = 1; SL/Port based congestion control• bits 3:1; = reserved for additional CC operation modes• bit 4 = 1; Static rate control disabled• bit 4 = 0; Static rate control enabled <p>All other bits are reserved.</p>
Control_Map	RW	16	16	An array of sixteen bits, one for each SL. Each bit indicates whether or not the corresponding SL entry is to be modified. If 1b, then the values for the corresponding SL must be set.
CACongestionEntryList	RW	1024	32	Specifies a list of sixteen CACongestionEntries, one per service level. (See Table 576 on page 1832 .)

A10.4.3.8.1 PORT_CONTROL

Port_Control indicates whether congestion control is on an SL/port or a QP basis.

If it is on a QP basis, each QP on a port will have a unique CCTI, so BECNs received on one QP will have no effect on other QPs on that same SL.

If it is on an SL/port basis, all QPs on that same SL, and behind the same port, will share a common CCTI, so that BECNs received on one QP, will effect the IRD of all QPs on that SL/port.

A10.4.3.8.2 CONTROL_MAP

The Control_Map identifies which of the sixteen SLs, will be set by this attribute. When set to 1b, the corresponding SL will have its CCTI_Increase, CCTI_Timer, Trigger_Threshold and CCTI_Min set from the corresponding entries in this attribute.

A10.4.3.8.3 CACONGESTIONENTRYLIST

The CACongestionEntryList is a list of sixteen CACongestionEntries. Each entry corresponds to a service level, from zero to fifteen.

All sixteen entries must be specified in the attribute, however only entries with their corresponding Control_Map bit equal to 1b, will be used. Entries with their Control_Map bit equal to 0b are ignored.

A10.4.3.8.4 CACONGESTIONENTRY**Table 576 CACongestionEntry**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CCTI_Timer	RW	16	0	When the timer expires it will be reset to its specified value, and 1 will be decremented from the CCTI.
CCTI_Increase	RW	8	16	The number to be added to the table Index (CCTI) on the receipt of a BECN.
Trigger_Threshold	RW	8	24	When the CCTI is increased and becomes greater than or equal to this value, an event is logged in the CA's cyclic event log.
CCTI_Min	RW	8	32	The minimum value permitted for the CCTI. This is used to impose a minimum injection rate delay on the SL.
Reserved	RO	24	40	Reserved

A10.4.3.9 CONGESTIONCONTROLTABLE

The Congestion Control Manager uses the CongestionControlTable attribute to program and retrieve entries in a channel adapter's Congestion Control Table. There is a separate Congestion Control Table for each port.

In the case of a switch with enhanced port 0, the “device” beyond the port may be considered a CA, and this attribute may be used to program its congestion control table.

Table 577 CongestionControlTable

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CCTI_Limit	RW	16	0	This value indicates the maximum valid CCTI for this table. See A10.2.2.1.2 Rate Decrease on page 1812 .
Reserved	RO	16	16	Reserved
CCTI_Entry_List	RW	1024	32	Specifies a list of up to 64 CongestionControlTableEntries. (See Table 578 on page 1834 .)

A10.4.3.9.1 CCTI_LIMIT

Specifies the maximum value that the CCTI may reach. CCTI Limit equals the number of valid CCT entries minus one. The last CCTI_Limit specified in a MAD will be the one used by the CA.

Note: To determine the maximum number of entries the CA supports, check the ControlTableCap component of the CongestionInfo attribute. (See [A10.4.3.3 CongestionInfo on page 1824](#).)

Since a congestion control table may support far more than 64 entries, yet only 64 may be defined in a single MAD, it is suggested that each MAD specify a CCTI_Limit which will not allow the CCTI to extend beyond the valid entries defined up to that point.

So for example, if you were defining a table with 150 entries, the first MAD sent defines the first 64 entries, and CCTI_Limit is set to 63; the second MAD would contain the next 64 entries, and CCTI_Limit set to 127 and the final MAD would contain the remaining 22 entries, and CCTI_Limit set to 149. In this way, if BECNs were being received while the table is being defined, it would not run off the end of the table.

If the tables are reloaded and the resulting CCTI_Limit is found to be lower than the current CCTI, the CCTI will be set to the CCTI_Limit. This can be done on a case by case basis, and does not require the CA to check all its CCTI's when a CCTI_Limit is lowered.

If the CCTI_Limit exceeds the CongestionInfo:ControlTableCap, then status code 7 is returned.

A10.4.3.9.2 CCTI_ENTRY_LIST

Specifies a list of up to 64 CongestionControlTableEntries. The origin of these table entries is equal to 64 * attribute modifier. In other words, if the attribute modifier is 0, then entries 0 - 63 are being defined. If the attribute modifier is 1, then entries 64 - 127 are being defined.

Note: Since these MADs are directed to specific ports, the attribute modifier is not required to be used to identify the port.

Only entries that are within the range of the CCTI_Limit specified in the attribute need be specified. In other words, if the CCTI_Limit is 149, and the attribute modifier is 2 (i.e. entries 128 - 191), then the MAD may be truncated to contain only 22 entries.

A10.4.3.9.3 CONGESTIONCONTROLTABLEENTRY**Table 578** CongestionControlTableEntry

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CCT_Shift	RW	2	0	This is the shift value used when calculating the injection rate delay. (See A10.2.2.1.1 CCT Entry Format on page 1810 .)
CCT_Multiplier	RW	14	2	This is the multiplier used when calculating the injection rate delay (See A10.2.2.1.1 CCT Entry Format on page 1810 .)

A10.4.3.10 TIMESTAMP

The TimeStamp attribute allows the Congestion Control Manager to read a device's free running timer. This may be used to help synchronize events from different devices.

Table 579 TimeStamp

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
TimeStamp	RO	32	0	Free running clock that provides relative time information for a device. Time is kept in 1.024 µsec units.

A10.5 CONGESTION MANAGEMENT PERFORMANCE COUNTERS

These performance counters may be accessed through a collecting or polling mechanism. Mechanisms for sampling counters are described in [16.1 Performance Management on page 1079](#).

The following describes the additions to the Component Mask, and other fields that are currently reserved.

A10.5.1 PORTSAMPLESCONTROL

The following are additions to the PortSamplesControl:OptionMask in order to enable a device to disclose the congestion management performance counters that it supports. ([Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085](#))

Table 580 **Addition to PortSamplesControl**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OptionMask	RO	64	96	Bit 49 = PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvFECN Bit 50 = PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvBECN Bit 51 = PortSLRcvFECN:PortSLPktRcvFECN[n] Bit 52 = PortSLRcvBECN:PortSLPktRcvBECN[n] Bit 53 = PortXmitConCtrl:PortXmitTimeCong Bit 54 = PortVLXmitTimeCong:PortVLXmitTimeCong[n]

A10.5.2 COUNTER SELECT VALUES

The following are additions to the CounterSelect Values in order to support the Congestion Control performance counters. (see [Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091](#))

Table 581 **Additional CounterSelect Values**

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x5001	PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvFECN	See Table 584 PortRcvConCtrl on page 1837
0x5002	PortRcvConCtrl:PortPktRcvBECN	See Table 584 PortRcvConCtrl on page 1837
0x5n03	PortSLRcvFECN:PortSLPktRcvFECN[n]	See Table 585 PortSLRcvFECN on page 1838
0x5n04	PortSLRcvBECN:PortSLPktRcvBECN[n]	See Table 586 PortSLRcvBECN on page 1839
0x5005	PortXmitConCtrl:PortXmitTimeCong	See Table 587 PortXmitConCtrl on page 1841
0x5n06	PortVLXmitDataRoot:PortVLXmitTimeCong[n]	See Table 588 PortVLXmitTimeCong on page 1841

A10.5.3 OPTIONAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT ATTRIBUTES

The following are additions to the optional performance management attributes in order to support the Congestion Control performance metrics. (see [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#)).

Table 582 **Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
PortRcvConCtrl	0x0031	0x00000000	See A10.5.4 PortRcvConCtrl on page 1836
PortSLRcvFECN	0x0032	0x00000000	See A10.5.5 PortSLRcvFECN on page 1837

Table 582 Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes (Continued)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
PortSLRcvBECN	0x0033	0x00000000	See A10.5.6 PortSLRcvBECN on page 1839
PortXmitConCtrl	0x0034	0x00000000	See A10.5.7 PortXmitConCtrl on page 1841
PortVLXmitTimeCong	0x0035	0x00000000	See A10.5.8 PortVLXmitTimeCong on page 1841

The following are additions to the optional performance management attribute / method map in order to support the congestion control performance metrics. (see [Table 279 Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1106](#)).

Table 583 Additional Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	PerformanceGet()	PerformanceSet()
PortRcvConCtrl	X	X
PortSLRcvFECN	X	X
PortSLRcvBECN	X	X
PortXmitConCtrl	X	X
PortVLXmitTimeCong	X	X

A10.5.4 PORTRcvCONCTRL

The PortRcvConCtrl provides a mechanism for counting the number of packets received by a CA marked with a FECN or BECN. This counter is only provided by a congestion-control-capable CA.

Table 584 PortRcvConCtrl

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported. Statistics are accumulated for all SL's on a port.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <p>Bit 0 - PortPktRcvFECN</p> <p>Bit 1 - PortPktRcvBECN</p>
PortPktRcvFECN	RW	32	32	Total number of packets received at the port that contain a FECN mark in the BTH.
PortPktRcvBECN	RW	32	64	Total number of packets received at the port that contain a BECN mark in the BTH.

A10.5.5 PORTSLRcvFECN

The PortSLRcvFECN provides a mechanism for counting the number of packets received by a CA marked with a FECN on each SL. This counter is only provided by a congestion-control-capable CA.

Table 585 PortSLRcvFECN

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <p>Bit 0 - PortSLRcvFECN0</p> <p>Bit 1 - PortSLRcvFECN1</p> <p>Bit 2 - PortSLRcvFECN2</p> <p>Bit 3 - PortSLRcvFECN3</p> <p>Bit 4 - PortSLRcvFECN4</p> <p>Bit 5 - PortSLRcvFECN5</p> <p>Bit 6 - PortSLRcvFECN6</p> <p>Bit 7 - PortSLRcvFECN7</p> <p>Bit 8 - PortSLRcvFECN8</p> <p>Bit 9 - PortSLRcvFECN9</p> <p>Bit 10 - PortSLRcvFECN10</p> <p>Bit 11 - PortSLRcvFECN11</p> <p>Bit 12 - PortSLRcvFECN12</p> <p>Bit 13 - PortSLRcvFECN13</p> <p>Bit 14 - PortSLRcvFECN14</p> <p>Bit 15 - PortSLRcvFECN15</p>
PortSLRcvFECN0	RW	32	32	Number of packets received on SL0 at the port that contain a FECN mark in the BTH.
PortSLRcvFECN1	RW	32	64	Similar count for SL1
PortSLRcvFECN2	RW	32	96	Similar count for SL2
PortSLRcvFECN3	RW	32	128	Similar count for SL3
PortSLRcvFECN4	RW	32	160	Similar count for SL4
PortSLRcvFECN5	RW	32	192	Similar count for SL5
PortSLRcvFECN6	RW	32	224	Similar count for SL6
PortSLRcvFECN7	RW	32	256	Similar count for SL7
PortSLRcvFECN8	RW	32	288	Similar count for SL8

Table 585 PortSLRcvFECN (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSLRcvFECN9	RW	32	320	Similar count for SL9
PortSLRcvFECN10	RW	32	352	Similar count for SL10
PortSLRcvFECN11	RW	32	384	Similar count for SL11
PortSLRcvFECN12	RW	32	416	Similar count for SL12
PortSLRcvFECN13	RW	32	448	Similar count for SL13
PortSLRcvFECN14	RW	32	480	Similar count for SL14
PortSLRcvFECN15	RW	32	512	Similar count for SL15

A10.5.6 PORTSLRcvBECN

The PortSLRcvBECN provides a mechanism for counting the number of packets received by a CA marked with a BECN on each SL. This counter is only provided by a congestion-control-capable CA.

Table 586 PortSLRcvBECN

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>

Table 586 PortSLRcvBECN (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortSLRcvBECN0 Bit 1 - PortSLRcvBECN1 Bit 2 - PortSLRcvBECN2 Bit 3 - PortSLRcvBECN3 Bit 4 - PortSLRcvBECN4 Bit 5 - PortSLRcvBECN5 Bit 6 - PortSLRcvBECN6 Bit 7 - PortSLRcvBECN7 Bit 8 - PortSLRcvBECN8 Bit 9 - PortSLRcvBECN9 Bit 10 - PortSLRcvBECN10 Bit 11 - PortSLRcvBECN11 Bit 12 - PortSLRcvBECN12 Bit 13 - PortSLRcvBECN13 Bit 14 - PortSLRcvBECN14 Bit 15 - PortSLRcvBECN15
PortSLRcvBECN0	RW	32	32	Number of packets received on SL0 at the port that contain a BECN mark in the BTH.
PortSLRcvBECN1	RW	32	64	Similar count for SL1
PortSLRcvBECN2	RW	32	96	Similar count for SL2
PortSLRcvBECN3	RW	32	128	Similar count for SL3
PortSLRcvBECN4	RW	32	160	Similar count for SL4
PortSLRcvBECN5	RW	32	192	Similar count for SL5
PortSLRcvBECN6	RW	32	224	Similar count for SL6
PortSLRcvBECN7	RW	32	256	Similar count for SL7
PortSLRcvBECN8	RW	32	288	Similar count for SL8
PortSLRcvBECN9	RW	32	320	Similar count for SL9
PortSLRcvBECN10	RW	32	352	Similar count for SL10
PortSLRcvBECN11	RW	32	384	Similar count for SL11
PortSLRcvBECN12	RW	32	416	Similar count for SL12
PortSLRcvBECN13	RW	32	448	Similar count for SL13
PortSLRcvBECN14	RW	32	480	Similar count for SL14
PortSLRcvBECN15	RW	32	512	Similar count for SL15

A10.5.7 PORTXMITCONCTRL

The PortXmitConCtrl provides a mechanism for counting the amount of time a switch port is in the congested state. This counter is only provided by a congestion-control-capable switch.

Table 587**PortXmitConCtrl**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. Statistics are accumulated for all VL's on a port. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortXmitTimeCong
PortXmitTimeCong	RW	32	32	Total number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect was in the congested state on any VL.

For a definition of a tick, see [Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085](#).

A10.5.8 PORTVLXMITTIMECONG

The PortVLXmitTimeCong provides a mechanism for counting the amount of time a switch port data VL is in the congested state. This counter is only provided by a congestion-control-capable switch.

Table 588**PortVLXmitTimeCong**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved

Table 588 PortVLXmitTimeCong (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bit 0 - PortVLXmitTimeCong0 Bit 1 - PortVLXmitTimeCong1 Bit 2 - PortVLXmitTimeCong2 Bit 3 - PortVLXmitTimeCong3 Bit 4 - PortVLXmitTimeCong4 Bit 5 - PortVLXmitTimeCong5 Bit 6 - PortVLXmitTimeCong6 Bit 7 - PortVLXmitTimeCong7 Bit 8 - PortVLXmitTimeCong8 Bit 9 - PortVLXmitTimeCong9 Bit 10 - PortVLXmitTimeCong10 Bit 11 - PortVLXmitTimeCong11 Bit 12 - PortVLXmitTimeCong12 Bit 13 - PortVLXmitTimeCong13 Bit 14 - PortVLXmitTimeCong14 Bit 15 - Reserved
PortVLXmitTimeCong0	RW	32	32	Total number of ticks during which the port selected by PortSelect was in the congested state on VL0.
PortVLXmitTimeCong1	RW	32	64	Similar count for VL1
PortVLXmitTimeCong2	RW	32	96	Similar count for VL2
PortVLXmitTimeCong3	RW	32	128	Similar count for VL3
PortVLXmitTimeCong4	RW	32	160	Similar count for VL4
PortVLXmitTimeCong5	RW	32	192	Similar count for VL5
PortVLXmitTimeCong6	RW	32	224	Similar count for VL6
PortVLXmitTimeCong7	RW	32	256	Similar count for VL7
PortVLXmitTimeCong8	RW	32	288	Similar count for VL8
PortVLXmitTimeCong9	RW	32	320	Similar count for VL9
PortVLXmitTimeCong10	RW	32	352	Similar count for VL10

Table 588 PortVLXmitTimeCong (Continued)

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortVLXmitTimeCong11	RW	32	384	Similar count for VL11
PortVLXmitTimeCong12	RW	32	416	Similar count for VL12
PortVLXmitTimeCong13	RW	32	448	Similar count for VL13
PortVLXmitTimeCong14	RW	32	480	Similar count for VL14

A10.6 OPTIONAL PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS

This section contains additions to optional performance management attribute status for the Congestion Control performance counters. See **16.1.5.2 OPTIONAL PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS**.

Table 589 Additional Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations^a

Attribute Name	Methods
PortRcvConCtrl	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortSLRcvFECN	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortSLRcvBECN	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortXmitConCtrl	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortVLXmitTimeCong	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()

a. This table is in addition to [Table 300 Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations on page 1135](#).

A10.6.1 PM ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 590****Additional PM AttributeModifier Errors^a**

Attribute Name	AttributeModifier Violations
PortRcvConCtrl	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSLRcvFECN	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortSLRcvBECN	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitConCtrl	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortVLXmitTimeCong	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000

a. This table is in addition to [Table 294 PM AttributeModifier Errors on page 1133](#).

A10.6.2 PM ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 591****PerformanceSet(PortRcvConCtrl) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b
CounterSelect	Any bit in CounterSelect[15:2] is set to 1

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 592**PerformanceSet(PortSLRcvFECN) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b
CounterSelect	Any bit in CounterSelect[15:2] is set to 1

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 593**PerformanceSet(PortSLRecvBECN) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b
CounterSelect	Any bit in CounterSelect[15:2] is set to 1

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 594 PerformanceSet(PortXmitConCtrl) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b
CounterSelect	Any bit in CounterSelect[15:1] is set to 1

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 595 PerformanceSet(PortVLXmitTimeCong) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b
CounterSelect	Any bit in CounterSelect[15:1] is set to 1

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

A10.7 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

This annex specifies two new compliance categories (see [Chapter 20: Volume 1 Compliance Summary on page 1241](#) for an explanation of compliance categories and qualifiers). These new categories are:

- CCMgt Switch
- CCMgt CA

A10.7.1 CCMGT SWITCH COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim conformance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of CCMgt Switch, a product shall meet all the requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. The TRAP and NOTICE compliance qualifiers defined in chapter 20 apply for this category.

There is one further Compliance Qualifier for the CCMgt Switch. It is:

- SCS - A switch supporting Switch Credit Starvation
- o13-30.2-1.2: Failure of CC_Key check..... Page 808
- o13-30.2-1.5: Trap: CC Trap format..... Page 810
- o13-30.2-1.6: Trap: CC_KeyViolation Trap..... Page 810
- o13-30.2-1.8: Notice: CC_KeyViolation Notice Page 811
- o13-30.2-1.9: Notice: Port CC_Key mismatch & Notice Page 811
- CA10-1: Valid CC Class response indicates CC support Page 1803

● CA10-2:	Weight 0 (no marking)	Page 1804	1
● CA10-3:	Relationship of weight thresholds	Page 1804	2
● CA10-4:	Weights generate 16 thresholds.....	Page 1804	3
● CA10-5:	Root or victim identification	Page 1805	4
● CA10-6:	Definition of root of congestion.....	Page 1805	5
● CA10-7:	Definition of victim of congestion.....	Page 1805	6
● CA10-8:	Congestion state & root of congestion	Page 1805	7
● CA10-9:	Congested state when a victim	Page 1805	8
● CA10-10:	Congestion state causing congestion event.....	Page 1806	9
● CA10-11:	Mark packets in congestion state	Page 1806	10
● CA10-12:	CC and raw packets.....	Page 1806	11
● CA10-13:	Size limit on marking	Page 1806	12
● CA10-14:	CC packet marking rate	Page 1806	13
● CA10-15:	Congestion Log support	Page 1807	14
● CA10-16:	20 entry Congestion Log	Page 1807	15
● CA10-17:	Congestion Log of multiple events	Page 1807	16
● CA10-18:	32 bit free running timer	Page 1807	17
● CA10-19:	Switch Congestion Log information.....	Page 1807	18
● CA10-20:	Aging entries in Congestion Log	Page 1807	19
● CA10-21:	CC switch sampled counters.....	Page 1807	20
● oA10-1:	SCS: Switch Credit Starvation	Page 1808	21
● oA10-2:	SCS: CongestionInfo indicates CS	Page 1808	22
● oA10-3:	SCS: Port CS via Credit_Mask	Page 1808	23
● oA10-4:	SCS: CS from CS_Threshold.....	Page 1808	24
● oA10-5:	SCS: Port CS by CS_ReturnDelay	Page 1808	25
● CA10-52:	CC and CCMgtA.....	Page 1816	26
● CA10-53:	CC MAD format	Page 1816	27
● CA10-54:	CCMgtA handling of CC_Key	Page 1818	28
● CA10-55:	Failure of CC_Key check	Page 1818	29
● CA10-56:	CC_Key and reset/power up	Page 1818	30
● CA10-57:	CC_Key lease period timer	Page 1819	31
● CA10-58:	CC management methods	Page 1820	32
● CA10-59:	CC supported attributes	Page 1820	33
● CA10-60:	CCMgtA & ClassPortInfo	Page 1822	34
● CA10-61:	CCMgtA support for Trap / Notice	Page 1823	35
● oA10-6:	Trap: CC Trap format	Page 1823	36
● oA10-7:	Trap: CC_KeyViolation Trap.....	Page 1823	37
● oA10-8:	Notice: CC_KeyViolation Notice.....	Page 1824	38
● oA10-9:	Notice: Port CC_Key mismatch & Notice	Page 1824	39

A10.7.2 CCMGT CA COMPLIANCE CATEGORY

In order to claim conformance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of CCMgt CA, a product shall meet all the requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support. The TRAP and NOTICE compliance qualifiers defined in chapter 20 apply for this category.

● o13-30.2-1.2:	Failure of CC_Key check.....	Page 808	40
● o13-30.2-1.5:	Trap: CC Trap format.....	Page 810	41
● o13-30.2-1.6:	Trap: CC_KeyViolation Trap.....	Page 810	42
● o13-30.2-1.8:	Notice: CC_KeyViolation Notice.....	Page 811	43
● o13-30.2-1.9:	Notice: Port CC_Key mismatch & Notice	Page 811	44
● CA10-1:	Valid CC Class response indicates CC support	Page 1803	45
● CA10-22:	Ignored packets.....	Page 1809	46
● CA10-23:	BECN generation	Page 1809	47
● CA10-24:	Number of CNPs to support	Page 1810	48

● CA10-25: Packets with a BECN	Page 1810	1
● CA10-26: BECN in ACK	Page 1810	2
● CA10-27: BECN & ACK Coalescing.....	Page 1810	3
● CA10-28: Packet scheduling under CC.....	Page 1810	4
● CA10-29: CC & Static Rate Control	Page 1811	5
● CA10-30: CC requires CCT per port	Page 1811	6
● CA10-31: CCT has minimum 128 entries.....	Page 1811	7
● CA10-32: CCT entries reported in units of 64	Page 1811	8
● CA10-33: CCT loaded by CCT attribute	Page 1811	9
● CA10-34: CCT has a CCTI_Limit	Page 1811	10
● CA10-35: Injection Rate setting attribute.....	Page 1811	11
● CA10-36: CCTI for each QP or port SL flow	Page 1811	12
● CA10-37: CCTI setting attribute	Page 1811	13
● CA10-38: Definition of CCTI_Timer.....	Page 1812	14
● CA10-39: SL control: CCTI increase	Page 1812	15
● CA10-40: QP control: CCTI increase	Page 1812	16
● CA10-41: CCTI no greater than CCTI_Limit	Page 1812	17
● CA10-42: Decrementing CCTI	Page 1812	18
● CA10-43: Congestion Log per port.....	Page 1813	19
● CA10-44: Congestion Log has 16 entries	Page 1813	20
● CA10-45: Generating a Threshold Event	Page 1814	21
● CA10-46: Multiple events & Log	Page 1814	22
● CA10-47: 32 bit free running timer	Page 1814	23
● CA10-48: Format of CA Log	Page 1814	24
● CA10-49: Aging entries in Log	Page 1814	25
● CA10-50: CA CC counters	Page 1814	26
● CA10-51: CNP Format	Page 1816	27
● CA10-52: CC and CCMgtA.....	Page 1816	28
● CA10-53: CC MAD format	Page 1816	29
● CA10-54: CCMgtA handling of CC_Key	Page 1818	30
● CA10-55: Failure of CC_Key check	Page 1818	31
● CA10-56: CC_Key and reset/power up	Page 1818	32
● CA10-57: CC_Key lease period timer	Page 1819	33
● CA10-58: CC management methods	Page 1820	34
● CA10-59: CC supported attributes	Page 1820	35
● CA10-60: CCMgtA & ClassPortInfo.....	Page 1822	36
● CA10-61: CCMgtA support for Trap / Notice	Page 1823	37
● oA10-6: Trap: CC Trap format	Page 1823	38
● oA10-7: Trap: CC_KeyViolation Trap.....	Page 1824	39
● oA10-8: Notice: CC_KeyViolation Notice.....	Page 1824	40
● oA10-9: Notice: Port CC_Key missmatch & Notice	Page 1824	41
		42

ANNEX A11: RDMA IP CM SERVICE

A11.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex defines the RDMA IP CM Service which provides support for a socket-like connection model for RDMA-aware ULPs. The annex defines a ULP independent way for the encoding of socket's 5-tuple into IBTA CM messages. The 5-tuple consists of source and destination IP addresses and ports, and protocol number. RDMA IP CM Service allows ULPs to use the same 5-tuple that is used by sockets for IB connection set up.

The RDMA IP CM Service uses IBTA CM REQ and SIDR_REQ private data. It encodes into private data the connection client (local) IP address and port, and the destination IP address. The encoding maximizes RDMA-aware ULPs usable private data.

Second, the RDMA IP CM Service defines the range of IBTA Service IDs. It provides the mapping of the destination IP port and protocol number into Service ID. This allows for a connection server to listen on the Service ID corresponding to the IP protocol port and for a connection client to specify IB connection destination Service ID corresponding to the IP protocol port for RDMA-aware ULP.

RDMA IP CM Service Provider uses Service IDs range defined by RDMA IP CM Service. The Service IDs range defined by RDMA IP CM Service indicates that a CM REQ or SIDR_REQ private data is formatted according to this Annex.

There are no requirements on where the Provider of the RDMA IP CM Service belongs. IBTA CM Provider can be enhanced to support RDMA IP CM Service, the service can be provided in a layer above IBTA CM, or even incorporated into ULP CM services.

The iSER Annex provides an example of the use of the RDMA IP CM Service.

A11.2 GLOSSARY

Downward Compatible

An ability of a service provider to support previous versions of a product or a protocol. Minor version downward compatible provider automatically shifts to the highest numbered previous version of a protocol minor version within a major version to ensure both sides of a communication use the same protocol version.

Protocol Number	The protocol number specifies the protocol above IP [http://www.iana.org]. In the Internet Protocol the protocol number specifies the protocol above IP [http://www.iana.org]. In the Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) [RFC791] there is a field, called “Protocol”, to identify the next level protocol. This is an 8 bit field. In Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) [RFC1883] this field is called the “Next Header” field. For, example, Transmission Control (TCP) Protocol Number is 6, User Datagram (UDP) is 17, Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) is 132.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
RDMA-Aware ULP	RDMA-aware ULP is an Upper Layer Protocol that explicitly uses RDMA primitives. In contrast, a ULP that is not RDMA-aware may be using RDMA implicitly by running over IPoIB or SDP.	8 9 10 11
RDMA IP CM Service	IP-based Connection Management services defined in this annex.	12 13
RDMA IP CM Service Provider	The provider of the RDMA IP CM Service.	14 15
RDMA IP CM Service Connection Client	A connection client that uses RDMA IP CM Service and that generates connection requests.	16 17 18
RDMA IP CM Service Connection Server	A connection server that uses RDMA IP CM Service and that responds to the connection requests.	19 20 21
RDMA IP CM Service Service ID Range	The range of IBTA Service IDs assigned to RDMA IP CM Service. The Service IDs in the range share a prefix of 0x000000000001.	22 23 24
A11.3 CONVENTION	Though the IETF specification uses the same big endian byte ordering convention as defined in section Section 1.5.1, “Byte Ordering,” on page 81 , the rule for bit ordering is different. In IETF specification convention, for a byte, bit 0 is the most significant bit and bit 7 is the least significant bit. Similarly, for a word, bit 0 is the most significant bit and bit 31 is the least significant bit. In this annex, the IBTA convention for bit ordering and byte ordering as defined in section Section 1.5.1, “Byte Ordering,” on page 81 is used.	25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
A11.4 IP CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT	The RDMA IP CM Service connection establishment is mapped to InfiniBand CM REQ and REJ MADs. The RDMA IP CM Service can use other CM MADs in accordance with Communication Management (Chapter 12).	34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42
	RDMA IP CM Service formats CM REQ Private Data. The formatted CM REQ private data field together with the connection Service ID convey 5-tuple socket connection information. ULPs can define the remaining CM REQ MAD (Consumer) Private Data field. For the mapping to the CM	

SIDR protocol, see section [A11.4.7 IP Service ID Resolution on page 1851](#).

CA11-1: The RDMA IP CM Service connection client shall encode connection IP addressing information into InfiniBand REQ MAD private data field as defined by [Table 596, “IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format” on page 1850](#).

Table 596 IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format

bits bytes	31-24		23-16		15-8	7-0		
0-3	MajV	MinV	IPV	Res	Source Port			
4-7	Source IP Address (127 – 96)							
8-11	Source IP Address (95 – 64)							
12-15	Source IP Address (63 – 32)							
16-19	Source IP Address (31 – 0)							
20-23	Destination IP Address (127 – 96)							
24-27	Destination IP Address (95 – 64)							
28-31	Destination IP Address (63 – 32)							
32-35	Destination IP Address (31 – 0)							
36-91	Consumer Private Data							

A11.4.1 MAJOR VERSION (4 BITS)

The current RDMA IP CM Service protocol specification requires MajV to be set to 0.

CA11-2: The RDMA IP CM Service connection server shall reject the connection request if MajV in the REQ message does not match the Major Version number it supports.

A11.4.2 MINOR VERSION (4 BITS)

The current RDMA IP CM Service protocol specification requires MinV to be set to 0.

CA11-3: The RDMA IP CM Service protocol shall be Minor Version downward compatible.

CA11-3.1.1: RDMA IP CM Service connection server shall reject the connection request if MinV in the CM REQ message is higher than the Minor Version number it supports.

CA11-3.1.2: For a Major version number RDMA IP CM Service Provider shall support the Minor Version numbers of an incoming CM REQ message equal to and lower than the Minor Version it supports.

A11.4.3 IP VERSION (4 BITS)

The Internet Protocol version number of the end-point address field (fields Source IP Address and Destination IP Address). If IPV = 0x4, the IP addresses are IP version 4 format (32 bit addresses). If IPV = 0x6, then both IP addresses are IP version 6 format (128 bit addresses). All other IPV values are reserved.

CA11-4: The RDMA IP CM Service connection server shall reject the connection if IPV of the REQ message differ from the one(s) it supports.

A11.4.4 RES (4 BITS)

Reserved Field. Must be 0 on transmit and ignored on receive.

A11.4.5 SOURCE PORT (16 BITS)

The Source Port is a local IP protocol port number of the client. The protocol number of the IP protocol port is encoded in the Service ID of the CM REQ message as defined in [A11.5 “IP Protocol Ports Mapping into IBTA Service IDs” on page 1852](#).

A11.4.6 SOURCE & DESTINATION IP ADDRESSES (128 BITS)

The Internet Protocol (IP) address for the local interface (Source IP Address) and remote interface (Destination IP Address). These can be either IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, as specified by the IPV field.

CA11-5: If Source IP Address and Destination IP Address are IPv4 addresses, as specified by the IPV field, then Source IP Address(31-0) and Destination IP Address(31-0) shall be used to transmit the source and destination IP addresses, respectively, and bits Source IP Address(127-32) and Destination IP Address(127-32) shall be set to zero.

A11.4.7 IP SERVICE ID RESOLUTION

The RDMA IP CM Service can also be used with the CM SIDR protocol [12.11 Service ID Resolution Protocol on page 768](#). The RDMA IP Service mapping for SIDR_REQ MAD uses the same conventions as that for the REQ MAD, except as noted below.

CA11-5.1.1: The RDMA IP CM Service client shall encode IP addressing information into the InfiniBand SIDR_REQ MAD private data field in the format defined by [Table 596 IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format on page 1850](#), except that Consumer Private Data shall occupy bytes 36 through 215, inclusively.

CA11-5.1.2: Compliance statements in sections [A11.4.1 on page 1850](#) to [A11.4.6 on page 1851](#) shall also apply to the RDMA IP CM Service mapping of SIDR_REQ by converting all references to REQ in those compliance statements to SIDR_REQ.

A11.5 IP PROTOCOL PORTS MAPPING INTO IBTA SERVICE IDs

The RDMA IP CM Service defines a mapping of IP protocol port spaces into the IBTA assigned Service ID space. The Service ID of the RDMA IP CM Service must have a prefix of 0x000000000001.

The RDMA IP CM Service user shall use Service ID as defined in [Table 597 RDMA IP CM Service IBTA Service ID Format on page 1852](#).

Table 597 RDMA IP CM Service IBTA Service ID Format

Byte Location	Description	Value
0	IBTA AGN	0x00
1 to 3	Prefix of RDMA-aware Service ID range	each byte is 0x00
4	RDMA-aware ULP Service ID range	0x01
5	IP Protocol Number	see IANA
6 to 7	Destination port number	ULP port number (usually well-known)

CA11-6: An RDMA IP CM Service connection client shall use Service ID from the Service ID range defined by [Table 597 RDMA IP CM Service IBTA Service ID Format on page 1852](#).

The prefix of Service IDs for RDMA-aware ULPs starts with 0x00 as all Service IDs assigned by IBTA. The rest of the prefix is zeroed out with the 5th byte of 0x01 specifying the Service ID range for the RDMA IP CM Service. The sixth byte specifies IP protocol number of the port. The last two bytes of the Service ID are the ULP port for the IP protocol number. For example, for SCTP NFSv4-RDMA default port the Service ID is 0x0000000001840801 (port 2049) [RFC3530], for TCP iSCSI/iSER the Service ID is 0x000000000106035C (port 860). The port numbers are assigned by IETF per protocol number and are administered by IANA.

A11.6 ERROR HANDLING

CA11-7: The connection server shall treat CM REQ private data as formatted as defined [Table 596 IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format on page 1850](#) if a Service ID belongs to the Service ID range of the RDMA IP CM Service.

Since IBTA Communication Manager may not be aware of RDMA IP CM Service there is no requirements for IBTA Communication Manager to val-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
idate the formatting of the REQ MAD private data matches [Table 596 IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format on page 1850](#) when a Service ID belongs to the Service IDs range of the RDMA IP CM Service.

CA11-8: If the connection server does not support RDMA IP CM Service, it should return a CM REJ Message indicating "Invalid Service ID" (Reason 8) to the connection request whose Service ID belongs to the Service IDs range of the RDMA IP CM Service.

The connection server can return a generic CM REJ Message indicating "Consumer Reject" (Reason 28) with the ARI indicating RDMA IP CM Service reject with the RDMA IP CM Service ARI of 0x00 to the connection request whose Service ID belongs to the Service IDs range of the RDMA IP CM Service.

If connection client gets a CM REJ Message indicates "Consumer Reject" (Reason 28) with the ARI indicating RDMA IP CM Service reject with the RDMA IP CM Service ARI of 0x00 to the connection request this does not imply that connection server supports RDMA IP CM Service nor that there is listener on the requested Service ID.

oA11-1: If the connection server supports RDMA IP CM Service but does not accept the parameters in the formatted Private Data field as defined by [Table 596 IP Addressing CM REQ Message Private Data Format on page 1850](#), it shall return a CM REJ Message indicating "Consumer Reject" (Reason 28), with the content of the REJ MAD ARI field as defined in [A11.7 REJ Reasons on page 1854](#).

A11.6.1 SIDR ERROR HANDLING

Error handling for the SIDR case follows conventions which parallel those of the connection establishment case.

CA11-8.1.1: The CM shall treat CM SIDR_REQ private data as formatted according to [CA11-5.1.1: on page 1851](#) if a Service ID belongs to the Service ID range of the RDMA IP CM Service.

CA11-8.1.2: If the CM does not support RDMA IP CM Service for SIDR_REQ, it should return a CM SIDR_REP Message indicating "Service ID not supported" (Value 1) to the SIDR_REQ whose Service ID belongs to the range of Service IDs for the RDMA IP CM Service.

When the Service ID of a SIDR_REQ is in the range of the RDMA IP CM Service, the CM can return a generic SIDR_REP Message indicating "Rejected by Service Provider" (Value 2) with the Additional Information indicating the RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI of 0x00. This case, however, does not imply that there is a listener at that Service ID.

oA11-1.1.1: If the CM supports RDMA IP CM Service but does not accept the parameters in the formatted Private Data field as defined by [CA11-5.1.1: on page 1851](#), it shall return a CM SIDR_REP Message indicating "Rejected by Service Provider" (Value 2) with the Additional Information field as defined in [A11.7.1 SIDR Additional Information on page 1855](#).

A11.7 REJ REASONS

In order to separate RDMA IP CM Service reject reasons from an RDMA-aware ULP that uses RDMA IP CM Service both of which use "Consumer Reject" (reason 28) the ARI field is partitioned between them as defined by [Table 598 REJ ARI format on page 1854](#)

Table 598 REJ ARI format

Byte Location	Description	Value
0	Rejection Layer	0x00 - RDMA IP CM Service; 0x01 - RDMA-Aware ULP
1-71	Layer ARI	defined by the layer

When the rejection layer is RDMA CM Service, the format of the ARI field is shown in table [Table 599 REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service on page 1854](#)

Table 599 REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service

Byte Location	Description	Value
0	Rejection Layer	0x00 - RDMA IP CM Service
1	The RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI	see Table 600 RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI on page 1855
2	Suggested Value Length in Bytes	0x00 - no suggested value; x -suggested value present of length of x bytes
3	alignment filler	reserved
4-71	Suggested Value	undefined

CA11-9: If the connection server supports RDMA IP CM Service, for the RDMA IP CM Service layer reject ARI it shall specify the ARI in accordance with [Table 600 RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI on page 1855](#) for the RDMA IP CM Service Provider connection rejection. The RDMA IP CM

Service layer ARI shall occupy the second (byte 1) byte of the CM REJ ARI field.

Table 600 RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI

ARI Code	Name	Description
0x00	Unspecified	Unspecified reason for RDMA IP CM Service rejection.
0x01	Major Version	Major version of RDMA IP CM Service REQ Message is not supported by the remote CM.
0x02	Minor Version	Minor version of RDMA IP CM Service REQ Message is not supported by the remote CM.
0x03	IPV	IP version of RDMA IP CM Service REQ Message is not supported by the remote CM.
0x04	Source IP Address	The format of the Source IP Address is inconsistent with the IP version in the RDMA IP CM Service REQ Message.
0x05	Destination IP Address	The format of the Destination IP Address is inconsistent with the IP version in the RDMA IP CM Service REQ Message.
0x06	Unknown IP Address	The Destination IP Address does not match the server IP Address.

The connection server may optionally specify the suggested value for the rejected field of RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI.

oA11-2: If the connection server supports RDMA IP CM Service, for the RDMA IP CM Service layer reject ARI it shall specify the rejected field suggested value in ARI in accordance with [Table 599 REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service on page 1854](#).

The connection server is allowed to reject request for security or any other reason with the *unspecified* ARI returned to the connection client.

CA11-10: There is no suggested value for unspecified rejection reason.

CA11-11: The RDMA IP CM Service Provider must verify the Major and Minor versions field first.

In case of a rejection due to more than one reason, the connection server can freely choose one of the errors to be reported in ARI. The specification does not mandate any priority between the various fields except for the version fields.

A11.7.1 SIDR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

The errors for the RDMA IP CM Service mapping use the same RDMA IP CM Service conventions as those for the REJ MAD ARI field but are placed in the SIDR_REP "Additional Information" field.

CA11-12: If a CM supports the RDMA IP CM Service for SIDR, and an RDMA IP CM Service Layer error occurs, it shall specify the ARI according to [Table 598 REJ ARI format on page 1854](#), [Table 599 REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service on page 1854](#) and [Table 600 RDMA IP CM Service layer ARI on page 1855](#) and place the ARI data into the SIDR_REP Additional Information field.

oA11-3: If a CM supports the RDMA IP CM Service for SIDR, and an RDMA IP CM Service Layer error occurs, it shall specify the suggested value in the ARI data according to [Table 599 REJ ARI format for RDMA IP CM Service on page 1854](#).

A11.8 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

In order to claim conformance to the InfiniBand Architecture Specification for the Compliance Category of RDMA IP CM Service, a product shall meet all the requirements specified in this section.

- **CA11-1:** IP addressing info in REQ MAD private data field. Page 1850
- **CA11-2:** REQ messages requires Major Ver of RDMA IP CM . . Page 1850
- **CA11-3:** Downward compatibility of Minor Version Page 1850
- **CA11-3.1.1:**MinV cannot be higher than RDMA IP CM Page 1850
- **CA11-3.1.2:**CM REQ messages and Minor Version Page 1851
- **CA11-4:** IPV match one(s) supported by RDMA IP CM Page 1851
- **CA11-5:** Bits 31:0 of IPv4 Source and Destination IP Addresses Page 1851
- **CA11-5.1.1:**RDMA IP CM client shall encode IP addressing. Page 1851
- **CA11-5.1.2:**A11.4.1 to A11.4.6 apply to RDMA IP CM SIDR_REQ Page 1852
- **CA11-6:** RDMA IP CM Service IBTA Service ID Format Page 1852
- **CA11-7:** Treatment of CM REQ private data. Page 1852
- **CA11-8:** Reject unsupported RDMA IP CM Service Page 1853
- **oA11-1:** CM REJ Message indicating "Consumer Reject" Page 1853
- **CA11-8.1.1:**Treatment of CM SIDR_REQ private data. Page 1853
- **CA11-8.1.2:**CM not supporting SIDR_REQ messages Page 1853
- **oA11-1.1.1:**RDMA IP CM Service invalid parameters. Page 1854
- **CA11-9:** Specify ARI for RDMA IP CM reject ARI Page 1854
- **oA11-2:** Specify rejected field for RDMA IP CM reject ARI. Page 1855
- **CA11-10:** No suggested value for unspecified rejection reason . . Page 1855
- **CA11-11:** RDMA IP CM must verify the versions Page 1855
- **CA11-12:** RDMA IP CM Service for SIDR ARI formats for errors.. Page 1856
- **oA11-3:** RDMA IP CM for SIDR errors Page 1856

ANNEX A12: SUPPORT FOR iSCSI EXTENSIONS FOR RDMA (iSER)

A12.1 INTRODUCTION

The iSCSI protocol is an IETF standard (RFC3720) which maps the SCSI Architecture Model over the TCP protocol. SCSI commands are carried by iSCSI requests, and SCSI responses and status are carried by iSCSI responses. Other iSCSI protocol exchanges and SCSI Data are also transported in iSCSI PDUs. iSCSI Extensions for RDMA (iSER) is an IETF standard (RFC7145) which adds the RDMA data transfer capability to iSCSI by layering iSCSI on top of an RDMA-Capable Protocol such as InfiniBand. An RDMA-Capable Protocol provides RDMA Read and Write services, which enable data to be transferred directly into SCSI I/O Buffers without intermediate data copies. Using iSER as a storage protocol in an InfiniBand environment also means that existing iSCSI infrastructure (sometimes referred to as "iSCSI ecosystem") including but not limited to MIB, bootstrapping, negotiation, naming & discovery, and security can be utilized as well.

The IETF iSER standard requires certain features which are optional to implement in InfiniBand, including the following:

- Zero-Based Virtual Address
- Send with Invalidate

CA12-1: The iSER standard as released by IETF, shall be followed when iSER is used as a storage protocol in an InfiniBand environment except for the handling of Zero-Based Virtual Address and Send with Invalidate.

This annex describes the connection establishment issues for iSER including iSER Service ID and CM Private Data format in an InfiniBand environment and how Zero-Based Virtual Address and Send with Invalidate should be handled if they are not supported.

A12.2 GLOSSARY

Inbound RDMA Read Queue Depth (IRD)

The maximum number of incoming outstanding RDMA Read Requests that the RDMA-Capable Controller can handle on a particular RDMA-Capable Protocol Stream at the Data Source. For InfiniBand, the equivalent for IRD is the Responder Resources.

Initiator

This refers to the iSCSI initiator node which originates device service and task management requests to be processed by an iSCSI target node.

Outbound RDMA Read Queue Depth (ORD)

The maximum number of outstanding RDMA Read Requests that the RDMA-Capable Controller can initiate on a particular RDMA-Capable

Protocol Stream at the Data Sink. For InfiniBand, the equivalent for ORD is the Initiator Depth.

Steering Tag (STag)

An identifier of a Tagged Buffer on a node (local or remote) as defined in “An RDMA Protocol Specification” (RDMAP) and “Direct Data Placement over Reliable Transports” (DDP). (As of this writing, the RDMAP and DDP specifications have not yet been released as IETF RFC standards. The current versions are draft-ietf-rddp-rdmap-05 and draft-ietf-rddp-ddp-05. Please refer to the IETF website at www.ietf.org for the final version.) For Infiniband, an STag for remote access is known as an R-Key, and an STag for local access is known as an L-Key, and both will be considered STags in iSER.

Target

This refers to the iSCSI target node which receives device service and task management requests for processing.

A12.3 CONVENTION

Though the iSER specification uses the same big endian byte ordering convention as defined in section [1.5.1 Byte Ordering on page 81](#), the rule for bit ordering is different. In the iSER specification, for a byte, bit 0 is the most significant bit and bit 7 is the least significant bit. Similarly, for a word, bit 0 is the most significant bit and bit 31 is the least significant bit. In this annex, the convention for bit ordering and byte ordering as defined in section [1.5.1 Byte Ordering on page 81](#) is used.

A12.4 iSER CONNECTION ESTABLISHMENT

iSER connection setup uses InfiniBand CM MADs, with additional iSER information exchanged in the private data. Please refer to Chapter 12: for more details.

CA12-2: All iSER messages shall be transmitted via the InfiniBand RC channel.

CA12-3: iSER shall use the RDMA-Aware Service ID as defined in Annex A11. The iSER Service ID shall conform to the format as defined in [Table 601 iSER Service ID Format on page 1858](#).

Table 601 iSER Service ID Format

Byte Location	Description	Value
0 to 4	Service ID for an RDMA-Aware ULP	As defined in the RDMA IP CM Service Annex
5	Protocol	0x06 (TCP)
6 to 7	Destination port number	Set by iSCSI/iSER (usually the iSCSI well-known TCP port number)

Discovery of target portals (IP address and port number of iSCSI targets) is done using the iSCSI discovery mechanisms as described in the IETF document “iSCSI Naming and Discovery” (RFC3721).

For connection establishment, the initiator sends a CM REQ using the iSER Service ID. The CM Private Data field contains additional parameters relating to the iSER connection and IB options support status.

CA12-4: The iSER CM REQ Message Private Data shall conform to the format as defined in [Table 602 iSER CM REQ Message Private Data Format on page 1859](#).

Table 602 iSER CM REQ Message Private Data Format

Byte	Bit	Description	Value
0-35		CM REQ Message Extension	As defined in the RDMA IP CM Service Annex
36-39	31	Zero Based Virtual Address Exception	0 - Initiator supports Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA) 1 - Initiator does not support Zero Based Virtual Address (ZBVA)
	30	Send with Invalidate Exception	0 - Initiator supports Send with Invalidate 1 - Initiator does not support Send with Invalidate
	29-0	reserved	Set to zero and ignored on receive
40-91		reserved	Set to zero and ignored on receive

CA12-5: Before accepting a CM REQ, a target shall check the content of the non-Private Data portion of the CM REQ first, followed by the CM REQ Message Extension in the Private Data, and then the rest of the Private Data, in that order.

CA12-6: To prevent address spoofing attempts by user applications, the source IP address and the port number shall be filled in by privileged kernel mode. The passive side shall verify that the CM REQ Message contains a privileged Q-key and its value is 0x80010000.

If a target does not support iSER, or if the Protocol or Destination Port Number specified in the Service ID are unacceptable, it returns a CM REJ indicating “Invalid Service ID”. The initiator may attempt connection using iSCSI over IPoIB.

Other errors in the CM REQ resulting in a CM REJ are handled as described in [Section 12.6.7, “REJ - Reject,” on page 720](#).

CA12-7: A target shall use the semantics as specified in the RDMA IP CM Service Annex to handle the CM REQ Message Extension in the Private Data.

If a target supports iSER and the content of the Private Data are acceptable, it returns a CM REP Message.

CA12-8: The iSER CM REP Message Private Data shall conform to the format as defined in [Table 603 iSER CM REP Message Private Data Format on page 1860](#).

Table 603 iSER CM REP Message Private Data Format

Byte	Bit	Description	Value
0-3	31	Zero Based Virtual Address Exception	0 - ZBVA shall be used for this connection 1 - VA shall be used for this connection
	30	Send with Invalidate Exception	0 - The target shall issue Send with Invalidate as needed 1 - The target shall issue Send instead of Send with Invalidate
	29 - 0	reserved	Set to zero and ignored on receive

Upon receiving the CM REP Message from the target, the initiator returns the CM RTU Message to complete the connection establishment.

CA12-9: An initiator shall proceed with iSCSI login exchanges after completing the CM MAD exchanges to establish a connection.

CA12-10: During the iSCSI login exchanges, the RDMAExtensions key shall be negotiated to “Yes”.

During the CM MAD exchanges, the Responder Resources (equivalent to IRD in iSER) and Initiator Depth (equivalent to ORD in iSER) are negotiated. The iSER initiator and target should take note of the negotiated values and ensure that in the subsequent iSCSI login negotiations and iSER Hello/HelloReply exchanges that the IRD/ORD values reflect the negotiated values of Responder Resources and Initiator Depth.

A12.5 iSER EXTENSION FOR HANDLING SEND WITH INVALIDATE

CA12-11: If both the initiator and the target support Send with Invalidate, then the target shall issue Send with Invalidate for that connection whenever Send with Invalidate is intended to be used as specified in the iSER specification. If either the initiator or the target does not support Send with Invalidate, then the target shall issue Send instead of Send with Invalidate for that connection.

CA12-12: An initiator shall set the Send with Invalidate Exception flag in CM REQ as described in Table 602 if it does not support Send with Invalidate. This shall be done per connection.

CA12-13: A target shall set the Send with Invalidate Exception flag in CM REP as described in Table 603 if either the initiator or the target does not support Send with Invalidate. This shall be done per connection.

A12.6 iSER EXTENSION FOR HANDLING VIRTUAL ADDRESS

CA12-14: If both the initiator and the target support Zero-Based Virtual Address, then Zero-Based Virtual Address shall be used for that connection. If either the initiator or the target does not support Zero-Based Virtual Address, then Virtual Address shall be used for that connection.

CA12-15: An initiator shall set the Zero Based Virtual Address Exception flag in CM REQ as described in Table 602 if it does not support Zero Based Virtual Address. This shall be done per connection.

CA12-16: A target shall set Zero-Based Virtual Address Exception flag in CM REP as described in Table 603 if either the initiator or the target does not support Zero Based Virtual Address. This shall be done per connection.

CA12-17: When Zero Based Virtual Address is not supported, both the initiator and the target shall use the expanded iSER header as defined in Table 604 for iSCSI control-type PDUs in the connection.

Table 604 Expanded iSER Header for Supporting Virtual Address

Byte	Bit	Name	Value
0-3	31-28	Operation code	0x1 - iSCSI Control Type PDU
	27	Write STag Valid (WSV)	When set, indicates that the Write STag and the Write Virtual Address fields are used
	26	Read STag Valid (RSV)	When set, indicates that the Read STag and the Read Virtual Address fields are used
	25-0	reserved	Set to zero and ignored on receive
4-7	31-0	Write STag	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains the IB R-key for the SCSI Write command when WSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when WSV is set to b'0
8-11	31-0	Write Virtual Address High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains bits 63 to 32 of the IB Virtual Address for the SCSI Write command when WSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when WSV is set to b'0
12-15	31-0	Write Virtual Address Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains bits 31 to 0 of the IB Virtual Address for the SCSI Write command when WSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when WSV is set to b'0

Table 604 Expanded iSER Header for Supporting Virtual Address

Byte	Bit	Name	Value
16-19	31-0	Read STag	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains the IB R-key for the SCSI Read command when RSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when RSV is set to b'0
20-23	31-0	Read Virtual Address High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains bits 63 to 32 of the IB Virtual Address for the SCSI Read command when RSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when RSV is set to b'0
24-27	31-0	Read Virtual Address Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Contains bits 31 to 0 of the IB Virtual Address for the SCSI Read command when RSV is set to b'1 - Set to zero and ignored on receive when RSV is set to b'0

A12.7 COMPLIANCE SUMMARY

In order to claim compliance for the Support for iSCSI Extensions for RDMA, a product shall meet all requirements specified in this section.

- **CA12-1:** IETF iSER standard compliance Page 1857
- **CA12-2:** iSER uses only RC Page 1858
- **CA12-3:** iSER uses RDMA-Aware Service ID. Page 1858
- **CA12-4:** iSER CM REQ Message Private Data format. Page 1859
- **CA12-5:** CM REQ checking order Page 1859
- **CA12-6:** iSER CM REQ Message contains a privileged Q-key. Page 1859
- **CA12-7:** Handling of iSER CM REQ Message Extension. Page 1859
- **CA12-8:** iSER CM REP Message Private Data format Page 1860
- **CA12-9:** iSCSI login exchanges after connection establishment Page 1860
- **CA12-10:** Negotiation of iSCSI RDMAExtensions key Page 1860
- **CA12-11:** Use of Send vs Send with Invalidate in iSER Page 1860
- **CA12-12:** Use of Send Invalidate Exception flag by initiator. Page 1860
- **CA12-13:** Use of Send with Invalidate Exception flag by target Page 1861
- **CA12-14:** Use of Zero-Based Virtual Address vs. Virtual Address Page 1861
- **CA12-15:** Use of ZBVA Exception flag by initiator. Page 1861
- **CA12-16:** Use of ZBVA Exception flag by target Page 1861
- **CA12-17:** Use expanded iSER header with ZBVA exception Page 1861

ANNEX A13: QUALITY OF SERVICE (QoS)

A13.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is a supplement to Release 1.3 of Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base document. This document provides an annex to the base document that defines the framework for managing Quality of Service in an InfiniBand fabric.

Support for this Quality of Service framework is optional, but if it is supported it must be done in accordance with the requirements of this annex. Further, it must be compliant with the base specification. Specifically:

CA13-1: If a CA, switch, router or SA supports QoS then it shall comply with Release 1.3 of the IBA specification.

A13.2 GLOSSARY

Active QoS Manager

A type of QoS Manager which not only responds to path requests forwarded by subnet administration, but also interacts with other managers and agents to alter the fabric in order to (1) assure that paths assigned continue to provide the level of service they were originally assigned to provide and (2) tune the fabric in order to maximize its ability to provide the required service.

CC

Congestion Control.

Congestion Control

An optional function for InfiniBand devices. Congestion control attempts to avoid if possible, and eliminate if it has already occurred, congestion spreading in the fabric.

QoS Flow

A QoS flow is a stream of data between two queue pairs. A path might contain several flows, one from each of several applications on a host. In addition, an application may use different flows, one for each path that it uses.

Passive QoS Manager

A type of QoS Manager which responds to path requests forwarded by subnet administration, but does not interact with other managers or agents to alter the fabric.

QoS

Quality of Service.

QoSClass.Priority

A code representing the requested and granted priority for a specific flow through the fabric. The actual semantics of the value is dependant on the coding scheme selected by the QoSClass.Type.

QoSClass.Type	The set of semantics by which the QoSClass.Priority field will be interpreted. For example, one QoSClass.Type indicates that the QoSClass.Priority field is to be interpreted as the DiffServ codepoint.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
Quality of Service	The set of attributes, associated with a flow, used to determine how that flow should be managed, in order for the work associated with that flow to achieve its goals. For example, its relative priority.	11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20
Service ID	A value that allows a Communication Manager to associate an incoming connection request with the entity providing the service. The Service ID is similar to the TCP Port Number.	21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42

A13.3 OVERVIEW

When multiple workloads share an InfiniBand subnet, there is a need to manage the resources such that each workload receives a portion of the resources commensurate with their relative goals and importance.

This annex describes the framework which allows a client to specify the QoS attributes required of a path, when requesting a path from Subnet Administration.

A13.3.1 OBJECTIVES

The QoS framework has the following objectives:

- Provide a means for a client to request a path that meets its QoS requirements.
- Provide a means for a QoS Manager to determine if the workloads that have been assigned fabric resources continue to achieve their requested QoS attributes.

The scope of this Annex is limited. It provides the framework to support a QoS scheme providing different relative classes of service. It does not define (nor exclude) other schemes where absolute performance levels can be provided (such as in bandwidth reservation). This annex provides a framework for a class of service scheme, which may be enhanced later.

A requester specifies priority by specifying the type of priority management requested via a two-bit QoSClass.Type and eight-bit QoSClass.Priority field. Currently, the only type of priority management defined is DiffServ Compatible. All other values for the QoSClass.Type are reserved.

When the QoSClass.Type is set to “DiffServ Compatible”, the QoSClass.Priority field is interpreted as a “Differentiated Services Field” (DS field), as defined by the IETF in RFC2474. The DS field is an eight bit field, of which the first six bits represent “the differentiated services codepoint” or DSCP. The remaining two bits are currently unused.

The QoS Manager operates by examining requests for path records which contain the requested QoS attributes and then returning a path (or paths) that the client can use to achieve these attributes.

In addition a client can receive UnPath notices that indicate the path is no longer available.

A13.3.2 PASSIVE VS ACTIVE QoS MANAGEMENT

QoS Management may either be passive or active. Passive QoS Managers respond to path requests, but do not interact with other managers or agents to alter the fabric. Active QoS Managers not only respond to path requests, but also interact with other managers and agents to monitor and alter the fabric in order to (1) assure that paths assigned continue to provide the level of service they were originally assigned to provide and (2) tune the fabric in order to maximize its ability to continue to provide the required service.

Components (i.e. CAs, HCAs, TCAs, switches, routers, and SAs) claiming compliance to the passive QoS level must comply with compliance statements listed in Section [A13.8 Compliance on page 1885](#) that have the identifier: **CA13-x**. Components claiming compliance to the active QoS level must additionally comply with all compliance statements listed in section [A13.8 Compliance on page 1885](#) that have the identifier: **CA13a-x**

This specification does not define what passive behavior or active measures a QoS Manager needs to take. It only defines specific features that must be supported by a component in order to claim compliance to these two different levels. It is the task of the QoS Manager (which is not defined in this annex) to use these features to provide a QoS managed fabric.

A13.3.3 QoS MANAGEMENT MODEL

This section describes a typical QoS management model. Other implementations are possible, as long as they comply with the specifications.

It is the goal of this model to allow QoS management on heterogeneous fabrics. That is, fabrics which are comprised of devices supporting different levels of QoS (i.e. unaware, passive, and active).

Managing Quality of Service may require the interaction of several InfiniBand components. These include clients on hosts, the Subnet Manager, Subnet Administration, Congestion Control Manager, Device Manager, and QoS Manager. It is anticipated that an active QoS manager would use more of these interactions than would a passive one.

Referring to the QoS management model shown in [Figure 335 on page 1866](#), a request (1) for path records is made by a client using either the

PathRecord or MultiPathRecord Subnet Administration attribute. This is similar to current processing, except that the request includes the QoS components requested for the path.

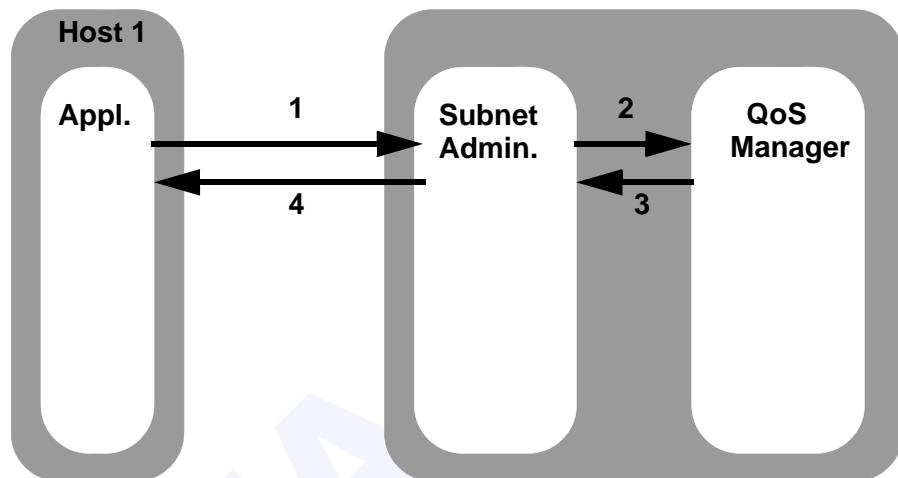


Figure 335

QoS Management

Subnet administration builds the path records containing all valid paths, without regard to QoS attributes, as it normally would when it receives a request for the PathRecord attribute. If the client specified the NumbPath component, which limits the number of records returned by the SA, the records are not subset at this point. The SA then forwards these records (2), along with the original PathRecord attribute to the QoS Manager.

The QoS Manager then examines the QoS attributes requested for the path, and subsets the set of PathRecord attributes to only those PathRecords that meet those requirements. For example, the QoS Manager may direct the client to a single SL, DLID, and/or TClass by eliminating all PathRecords other than ones specifying that SL, DLID, and/or TClass. The algorithm used by the QoS Manager to subset the PathRecords is outside the scope of these specifications.

At this point, the number of PathRecords returned may be further reduced if the client specified a value for NumbPath.

The QoS Manager then returns the set of PathRecords (3) to Subnet Administration, who then forwards the PathRecords (4) to the client.

Although not required by the specification, ideally the QoS Manager would be an active QoS Manager. That is, it would monitor and even manage the

fabric, in an attempt to assure that higher priority SLs continue to provide better responsiveness than lower priority SLs. For example, the QoS Manager may wish to adjust the VLArbitrationTable associated with a port on a particular switch. It would do that by interacting with Subnet Management, the means by which this is done is beyond the scope of this specification.

Similarly, if the QoS Manager wishes to adjust congestion control attributes, it would do so by interacting with the Congestion Control Manager.

In general, when the QoS Manager wants to adjust the fabric, it does so by interacting with the corresponding manager. The QoS Manager should not directly alter the configuration of the fabric.

A13.3.4 CONGESTION MANAGEMENT VS QoS MANAGEMENT

There are two managers which on the surface provide similar functions; the Congestion Control Manager and the QoS Manager. The distinction is that the objective of the Congestion Control Manager is to avoid if possible, and eliminate if it has already occurred, congestion spreading in the fabric. (See [Annex A10: Congestion Control](#) (in the IBA 1.3 Specification) section [A10.1.2 Congestion Overview](#)).

In order to avoid or alleviate congestion spreading, it is necessary to react very quickly when the situation is detected. Failure to react quickly to congestion can result in the congestion spreading to other switches within the fabric, which can in turn cascade to yet other switches. Once this has occurred it can often take far longer to resolve the problem.

This necessitates a solution which does not require MADs to be sent, or decisions to be made by managers, when congestion is detected. It also follows that corrective actions which involve reconfiguration of the subnet would also take excessive time. The policy for what is to be done when congestion is detected must be determined a priori.

For these reasons it is not possible for the Congestion Control Manager to address congestion in ways that factor in the varying goals, priorities and importance of work effected by the congestion.

QoS Management on the other hand need not be as responsive as the Congestion Control Manager. The QoS Manager has the ability to factor in the varying goals and importance levels of the work using the fabric.

In cooperation with Subnet Administration, the QoS Manager will accept path requests from clients that specify QoS attributes. The QoS Manager will then subset the list of potential paths, that would otherwise have been returned by the SM, to those that best meet the clients needs, and the

needs of other work already using the subnet. By doing this, the QoS Manager can direct the client to a specific SL, DLID, and/or TClass.

Periodically, the QoS Manager should collect performance metrics, by interacting directly with performance management agents, in order to best decide how to assign subsequent paths.

In the case of an active QoS Manager, it may also use this information in order to determine if work is still achieving its goals. If work is no longer achieving its goals, or if new work is entering the fabric that will cause workloads to cease achieving their goals, an active QoS Manager may re-configure certain aspects of the fabric in order to better achieve these goals. For example, the SLtoVLMappingTable in switches might be modified to move lower priority work to another VL, thereby giving the remaining SLs on the VL the ability to perform better. The means by which this is done is beyond the scope of this specification.

A13.3.5 CONGESTION CONTROL MANAGER AND QoS MANAGER COEXISTENCE

A Congestion Control Manager may coexist with a QoS Manager in the same subnet. In this environment, when an Active QoS Manager needs to change congestion control attributes in switches and channel adapters, it must interact with the Congestion Control Manager.

When both a Congestion Control Manager and a QoS Manager exist in a subnet, in addition to congestion control, the relative priorities of different flows over the fabric are used to assign paths. If the QoS Manager is an Active QoS Manager, then it may monitor and tune the fabric. The congestion control attributes that an active QoS Manager may wish to tune include such attributes as CCTI_Min, CCTI_Timer, CCTI_Shift and CCTI_Multiplier.⁵⁵

A Congestion Control Manager may exist in a subnet, without a QoS Manager being present. In this case, congestion management is performed without any knowledge of the relative priority of the different flows.

How a QoS Manager determines whether or not a Congestion Control Manager exists, and what the protocol is between the QoS Manager and the Congestion Control Manager is outside the scope of this specification.

A13.4 VL REQUIREMENTS

Support of multiple data VLs is optional in the base InfiniBand specification, but is required for QoS.

55. See InfiniBand Architecture Release 1.3 Volume 1, Annex A10: Congestion Control, sections [A10.4.3.8.4 CACongestionEntry on page 1832](#) and [A10.4.3.9.3 CongestionControlTableEntry on page 1834](#).

CA13-2: If a CA, router, or switch supports QoS, then it shall support at least 4 data VLs.

A13.5 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

The following sections describe the Subnet Administration attributes which are relevant to QoS and which are used to communicate between a client and Subnet Administration. For example, flows (1) and (4) shown in [Figure 335 "QoS Management Model" on page 1866](#).

CA13-3: An SA which responds to Get(ClassPortInfo) with Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsQoSSupported set to 1 shall support QoS enhanced attributes, as described in ["QoS Extended Attributes" on page 1869](#).

SA clients that do not support QoS can still interoperate with an SA supporting QoS. In order to obtain a differentiated service the SA client shall provide the QoS components in the PathRecord/MultiPathRecord queries as defined in this annex.

A13.5.1 SA-SPECIFIC OPTIONAL CAPABILITIES

See the IsQoSSupported capability in [Table 230 SA-Specific Optional Capabilities on page 1019](#).

A13.5.2 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION STATUS VALUES

CA13-4: For SA which supports QoS the values for the class-specific status bits (see [13.4.7: Status Field](#)) shall be extended with the additional codes specified in [Table 605 SA MAD Additional Class-Specific Status Encoding on page 1869](#).

Table 605 SA MAD Additional Class-Specific Status Encoding^a

Name	Value	Meaning
ERR_REQ_PRIORITY_SUGGESTED	8	Requested QoSClass could not be supplied. Suggested QoSClass for a subsequent request is supplied in the response as a hint for what would be an acceptable request. This error shall be provided in a response to PathRecord or MultiPathRecord requests if the QoSClass component mask bit was set in the request and the requested QoSClass could not be met.

a. This table is an addition to [Table 232 SA MAD Class-Specific Status Encodings on page 1021](#).

A13.5.3 QoS EXTENDED ATTRIBUTES

The attribute extensions for QoS are in PathRecord and MultiPathRecord.

A13.5.3.1 PATHRECORD

CA13-5: An SA which supports QoS, as indicated by setting the SA Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsQoSSupported to one, shall provide an ex-

tended PathRecord attribute as described in [Table 606 PathRecord on page 1870](#).

To avoid text duplication the following only lists the new attribute components replacing previously reserved fields of the PathRecord attribute.

Table 606 PathRecord^a

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Required For GetTable Request	Description
ServiceID8MSB	8	0		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMsk2.IsQoSSupported is set to one, on a SubnAdmGet or SubnAdmGetTable used to determine parameters for Communication Management, ServiceID8MSB should be specified according to the 8 most significant bits of the ServiceID to be used in the subsequent CM REQ message. Otherwise, reserved.
ServiceID56LSB	56	8		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMsk2.IsQoSSupported is set to one on a SubnAdmGet or SubnAdmGetTable used to determine parameters for Communication Management, ServiceID56LSB should be specified according to the corresponding 56 least significant bits of the ServiceID to be used in the subsequent CM REQ message. Otherwise, reserved.
QoSClass	12	416		If SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMsk2.IsQoSSupported is set to one, the type and priority value for QoS as described in section A13.5.3.1.3 QoSClass on page 1871 . Otherwise, reserved.

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 249 PathRecord on page 1038](#).

A13.5.3.1.1 GENERAL

With the exception of the fields described below, all fields are as described in section [15.2.5.16: PathRecord](#).

A13.5.3.1.2 SERVICEID8MSB AND SERVICEID56LSB

The ServiceID which is a 64 bit wide field is broken into 8 bit and 56 bit components: ServiceID8MSB and ServiceID56LSB

NOTE: For information on the ServiceID see [A3.2 Service ID on page 1342](#).

Providing the ServiceID in the PathRecord request is optional. If ServiceID field is provided, the QoS manager may use it to match against a service aware QoS policy. A QoS Manager will likely provide a default QoS level if this field is not provided in the request.

CA13-6: The component mask bits for ServiceID8MSB and ServiceID56LSB shall have the same value. They shall be either both set to one or both cleared.

A13.5.3.1.3 QoSCLASS

The QoSClass field is described in [Table 607 QoSClass Component on page 1871](#):

Table 607 QoSClass Component

1	1	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Type	Reserved	Priority									

Type Field: This is the type of QoSClass priority being requested. A value of b'00' - means that the QoSClass.Priority field shall be interpreted as a DiffServ field, according to RFC 2474. All other values are reserved.

Priority Field: During a query (SubnAdmGet or SubnAdmGetTable), the QoSClass.Priority field holds the client requested QoSClass priority. The exact semantics of the 8 bit priority is defined by the QoSClass.Type field.

CA13-7: If the QoS manager does not support the requested QoSClass it shall respond with ERR_REQ_INVALID.

CA13-8: If the QoS manager is not able to satisfy the requested priority it shall fail the request with an ERR_NO_RESOURCES response.

The QoS manager may suggest a priority value by replacing the requested one with a "suggested" priority and returning ERR_REQ_PRIORITY_SUGGESTED. The requestor can then either make a subsequent request specifying the suggested value, or try another value.

A13.5.3.2 MULTIPATHRECORD

CA13-9: SA that supports QoS as indicated by setting the SA Class-PortInfo:CapabilityMsk2.IsQoSSupported to one, as well as supports MultiPathRecord as reported by setting the SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsMatchSupported to one, shall provide an extended MultiPathRecord attribute as described in [Table 608 MultiPathRecord on page 1872](#).

The following table only provides the new components used by QoS replacing previously reserved fields of the MultiPathRecord attribute.

Table 608 MultiPathRecord^a

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
QoSClass	12	64	Semantics identical to PathRecord component QoSClass on page 1871
ServiceID8MSB	8	104	Semantics identical to PathRecord ServiceID8MSB component on Table on page 1870
ServiceID56LSB	56	136	Semantics identical to PathRecord ServiceID56LSB component on Table on page 1870

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 257 MultiPathRecord on page 1061](#).

A13.5.3.2.1 GENERAL

With the exception of the fields described below, all fields are as described in section [15.2.5.20 MultiPathRecord on page 1061](#).

A13.5.3.2.2 QoSCLASS

This is the QoS class being requested. It is identical to the semantics of the PathRecord QoSClass as described in section: [QoSClass on page 1871](#)

A13.5.3.2.3 SERVICEID8MSB AND SERVICEID56LSB

The ServiceID which is a 64 bit wide is broken into 8 most significant bits ServiceID8MSB and 56 bits ServiceID56LSB components.

The semantics of this component are identical to the ServiceID8MSB and ServiceID56LSB of the PathRecord attribute defined in section [A13.5.3.1.2 on page 1870](#)

A13.6 PERFORMANCE COUNTERS

The following section outlines the performance counters available in InfiniBand that are required for Active QoS, along with two new counters that are also required for Active QoS Management support.

A13.6.1 NEW COUNTERS FOR ACTIVE QoS

The following are new counters to support an Active QoS Manager.

InfiniBand currently defines counters based on the VL of the packet using a link. The QoS scheme, however, uses SLs as a basis for assignment of different service classes. This annex adds counters to include counts based on SLs as well as VLs for packets on a link. This will provide information to enable an Active QoS Manager to modify the SL to VL mappings when and where appropriate. These SL based counters are defined as follows:

- 1 vi) PortXmitDataSL[n]/PortXmitDataSLExt[n]: Total number of
2 data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on a given SL from this
3 port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the
4 start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include pack-
5 ets containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data
6 octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose
7 the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a
8 multiple of four octets.
9
10 vii) PortRcvDataSL[n]/PortRcvDataSLExt[n]: Total number of
11 data octets, divided by 4, received on a given SL on this port.
12 This includes all octets between (and not including) the start
13 of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets
14 containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data oct-
15 ets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the
16 smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a
17 multiple of four octets.

A13.6.2 QoS PERFORMANCE COUNTER REQUIREMENTS

CA13a-1: Active QoS Management aware devices (CAs, Switches and Routers) shall support the following performance counters.

- PortXmitDataSL[SL]:
- PortRcvDataSL[SL]:
- PortVLXmitWaitCounters:PortVLXmitWait[VL]:
- PortXmitQueue[VL]:
- PortXmitDataVL[VL]:
- PortRcvDataVL[VL]:

CA13a-2: Active QoS Management aware switches shall also support the following.

- SwPortVLCongestion:SWPortVLCongestion[VL]:

A13.6.3 PORTSAMPLESCONTROL

The following are additions to the PortSamplesControl:OptionMask and PortSamplesControl:SampledOnlyOptionMask in order to enable a device to disclose the QoS performance counters that it supports.

Table 609 Addition to PortSamplesControl^a

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
OptionMask	RO	64	96	Bit 55 = PortXmitDataSL[n] Bit 56 = PortRcvDataSL[n] Bit 57 = PortXmitDataSLExt[n] Bit 58 = PortRcvDataSLExt[n]

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085](#).

A13.6.4 COUNTER SELECT VALUES

The following are additions to the CounterSelect Values in order to support the QoS performance counters. ([Table 610 Additional CounterSelect Values on page 1874](#))

Table 610 Additional CounterSelect Values^a

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x5n07	PortXmitDataSL[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL[n] from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
0x5n08	PortRcvDataSL[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL[n] on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to choose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.

Table 610**Additional CounterSelect Values^a**

Sample Select Value	Name	Description
0x5n09	PortXmitDataSLExt[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL[n] from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
0x5n0A	PortRcvDataSLExt[n]	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL[n] on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may choose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 275 CounterSelect Values on page 1091](#).

A13.6.5 OPTIONAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT ATTRIBUTES

The following are additions to the optional performance management attributes in order to support the QoS performance counters. ([Table 611 Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1875](#)).

Table 611**Additional Optional Performance Management Attributes^a**

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Description
PortXmitDataSL	0x0036	0x00000000	See A13.6.6 PortXmitDataSL on page 1876
PortRcvDataSL	0x0037	0x00000000	See A13.6.7 PortRcvDataSL on page 1878
PortXmitDataSLExt	0x0038	0x00000000	See A13.6.8 PortXmitDataSLExt on page 1879
PortRcvDataSLExt	0x0039	0x00000000	See A13.6.9 PortRcvDataSLExt on page 1881

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#).

The following are additions to the optional performance management attribute / method map in order to support the QoS performance counters.

[\(Table 612 Additional Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map on page 1876\).](#)

Table 612 Additional Optional Performance Management Attribute / Method Map^a

Attribute Name	PerformanceGet()	PerformanceSet()
PortXmitDataSL	X	X
PortRcvDataSL	X	X
PortXmitDataSLExt	X	X
PortRcvDataSLExt	X	X

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 278 Optional Performance Management Attributes on page 1104](#).

A13.6.6 PORTXMITDATASL

The PortXmitDataSL provides a mechanism for counting the amount of data transmitted by a port on an SL. This counter is required in an Active QoS Managed subnet endpoint.

Table 613 PortXmitDataSL

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	Selects the port, as defined in Volume 1 version 1.3 Table 274 PortSamplesControl on page 1085 , for which the statistics are reported. If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Volume 1 version 1.3 Table 272 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask on page 1082), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated. When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.

Table 613 **PortXmitDataSL**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortXmitDataSL0 Bit 1 - PortXmitDataSL1 Bit 2 - PortXmitDataSL2 Bit 3 - PortXmitDataSL3 Bit 4 - PortXmitDataSL4 Bit 5 - PortXmitDataSL5 Bit 6 - PortXmitDataSL6 Bit 7 - PortXmitDataSL7 Bit 8 - PortXmitDataSL8 Bit 9 - PortXmitDataSL9 Bit 10 - PortXmitDataSL10 Bit 11 - PortXmitDataSL11 Bit 12 - PortXmitDataSL12 Bit 13 - PortXmitDataSL13 Bit 14 - PortXmitDataSL14 Bit 15 - PortXmitDataSL15
PortXmitDataSL0	RW	32	32	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL0 from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
PortXmitDataSL1	RW	32	64	Similar count for SL1
PortXmitDataSL2	RW	32	96	Similar count for SL2
PortXmitDataSL3	RW	32	128	Similar count for SL3
PortXmitDataSL4	RW	32	160	Similar count for SL4
PortXmitDataSL5	RW	32	192	Similar count for SL5
PortXmitDataSL6	RW	32	224	Similar count for SL6
PortXmitDataSL7	RW	32	256	Similar count for SL7
PortXmitDataSL8	RW	32	288	Similar count for SL8
PortXmitDataSL9	RW	32	320	Similar count for SL9
PortXmitDataSL10	RW	32	352	Similar count for SL10
PortXmitDataSL11	RW	32	384	Similar count for SL11
PortXmitDataSL12	RW	32	416	Similar count for SL12
PortXmitDataSL13	RW	32	448	Similar count for SL13

Table 613 PortXmitDataSL

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortXmitDataSL14	RW	32	480	Similar count for SL14
PortXmitDataSL15	RW	32	512	Similar count for SL15
Reserved	RO	992	544	Reserved

A13.6.7 PORTRcvDATASL

The PortRcvDataSL provides a mechanism for counting the amount of data transmitted by a CA marked on an SL. This counter is required in an Active QoS Managed subnet endpoint.

Table 614 PortRcvDataSL

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Volume 1 version 1.3 Table PortSample-sControl, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Volume 1 version 1.3 Table Performance Management ClassPortInfo:Capability-Mask), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bit 0 - PortRcvDataSL0 Bit 1 - PortRcvDataSL1 Bit 2 - PortRcvDataSL2 Bit 3 - PortRcvDataSL3 Bit 4 - PortRcvDataSL4 Bit 5 - PortRcvDataSL5 Bit 6 - PortRcvDataSL6 Bit 7 - PortRcvDataSL7 Bit 8 - PortRcvDataSL8 Bit 9 - PortRcvDataSL9 Bit 10 - PortRcvDataSL10 Bit 11 - PortRcvDataSL11 Bit 12 - PortRcvDataSL12 Bit 13 - PortRcvDataSL13 Bit 14 - PortRcvDataSL14 Bit 15 - PortRcvDataSL15

Table 614 PortRcvDataSL

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvDataSL0	RW	32	32	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL0 on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
PortRcvDataSL1	RW	32	64	Similar count for SL1
PortRcvDataSL2	RW	32	96	Similar count for SL2
PortRcvDataSL3	RW	32	128	Similar count for SL3
PortRcvDataSL4	RW	32	160	Similar count for SL4
PortRcvDataSL5	RW	32	192	Similar count for SL5
PortRcvDataSL6	RW	32	224	Similar count for SL6
PortRcvDataSL7	RW	32	256	Similar count for SL7
PortRcvDataSL8	RW	32	288	Similar count for SL8
PortRcvDataSL9	RW	32	320	Similar count for SL9
PortRcvDataSL10	RW	32	352	Similar count for SL10
PortRcvDataSL11	RW	32	384	Similar count for SL11
PortRcvDataSL12	RW	32	416	Similar count for SL12
PortRcvDataSL13	RW	32	448	Similar count for SL13
PortRcvDataSL14	RW	32	480	Similar count for SL14
PortRcvDataSL15	RW	32	512	Similar count for SL15
Reserved	RO	992	544	Reserved

A13.6.8 PORTXMITDATASLEXT

The PortXmitDataSLExt provides a mechanism for counting the amount of data transmitted by a port on an SL. This counter is optional in an Active QoS Managed subnet endpoint.

Table 615 PortXmitDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved

Table 615 PortXmitDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Volume 1 version 1.3 Table PortSamplesControl, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Volume 1 version 1.3 Table Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	<p>When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bit 0 - PortXmitDataSL0Ext Bit 1 - PortXmitDataSL1Ext Bit 2 - PortXmitDataSL2Ext Bit 3 - PortXmitDataSL3Ext Bit 4 - PortXmitDataSL4Ext Bit 5 - PortXmitDataSL5Ext Bit 6 - PortXmitDataSL6Ext Bit 7 - PortXmitDataSL7Ext Bit 8 - PortXmitDataSL8Ext Bit 9 - PortXmitDataSL9Ext Bit 10 - PortXmitDataSL10Ext Bit 11 - PortXmitDataSL11Ext Bit 12 - PortXmitDataSL12Ext Bit 13 - PortXmitDataSL13Ext Bit 14 - PortXmitDataSL14Ext Bit 15 - PortXmitDataSL15Ext
Reserved	RO	32	32	Reserved
PortXmitDataSL0Ext	RW	64	64	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on SL0 from this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
PortXmitDataSL1Ext	RW	64	128	Similar count for SL1
PortXmitDataSL2Ext	RW	64	192	Similar count for SL2
PortXmitDataSL3Ext	RW	64	256	Similar count for SL3
PortXmitDataSL4Ext	RW	64	320	Similar count for SL4
PortXmitDataSL5Ext	RW	64	384	Similar count for SL5
PortXmitDataSL6Ext	RW	64	448	Similar count for SL6
PortXmitDataSL7Ext	RW	64	512	Similar count for SL7

Table 615 PortXmitDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortXmitDataSL8Ext	RW	64	576	Similar count for SL8
PortXmitDataSL9Ext	RW	64	640	Similar count for SL9
PortXmitDataSL10Ext	RW	64	704	Similar count for SL10
PortXmitDataSL11Ext	RW	64	768	Similar count for SL11
PortXmitDataSL12Ext	RW	64	832	Similar count for SL12
PortXmitDataSL13Ext	RW	64	862	Similar count for SL13
PortXmitDataSL14Ext	RW	64	960	Similar count for SL14
PortXmitDataSL15Ext	RW	64	1024	Similar count for SL15
Reserved	RO	496	1088	Reserved

A13.6.9 PORTRcvDATASLEXT

The PortRcvDataSLExt provides a mechanism for counting the amount of data transmitted by a CA marked on an SL. This counter is optional in an Active QoS Managed subnet endpoint.

Table 616 PortRcvDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	8	0	Reserved
PortSelect	RW	8	8	<p>Selects the port, as defined in Volume 1 version 1.3 Table PortSamplesControl, for which the statistics are reported.</p> <p>If gathering data from all ports at once is supported (see Volume 1 version 1.3 Table Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask), setting PortSelect to 0xFF will cause data from all valid ports to be accumulated.</p> <p>When Selecting invalid port values, any results are undefined.</p>

Table 616 PortRcvDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are overwritten by the values specified in their respective fields. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortRcvDataSL0Ext Bit 1 - PortRcvDataSL1Ext Bit 2 - PortRcvDataSL2Ext Bit 3 - PortRcvDataSL3Ext Bit 4 - PortRcvDataSL4Ext Bit 5 - PortRcvDataSL5Ext Bit 6 - PortRcvDataSL6Ext Bit 7 - PortRcvDataSL7Ext Bit 8 - PortRcvDataSL8Ext Bit 9 - PortRcvDataSL9Ext Bit 10 - PortRcvDataSL10Ext Bit 11 - PortRcvDataSL11Ext Bit 12 - PortRcvDataSL12Ext Bit 13 - PortRcvDataSL13Ext Bit 14 - PortRcvDataSL14Ext Bit 15 - PortRcvDataSL15Ext
Reserved	RO	32	32	Reserved
PortXmitDataSL0Ext	RW	64	64	Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on SL0 on this port. This includes all octets between (and not including) the start of packet delimiter and the vCRC, and may include packets containing errors. Implementers may chose to count data octets in groups larger than four but are encouraged to chose the smallest group possible. Results are still reported as a multiple of four octets.
PortRcvDataSL1Ext	RW	64	128	Similar count for SL1
PortRcvDataSL2Ext	RW	64	192	Similar count for SL2
PortRcvDataSL3Ext	RW	64	256	Similar count for SL3
PortRcvDataSL4Ext	RW	64	320	Similar count for SL4
PortRcvDataSL5Ext	RW	64	384	Similar count for SL5
PortRcvDataSL6Ext	RW	64	448	Similar count for SL6
PortRcvDataSL7Ext	RW	64	512	Similar count for SL7
PortRcvDataSL8Ext	RW	64	576	Similar count for SL8
PortRcvDataSL9Ext	RW	64	640	Similar count for SL9
PortRcvDataSL10Ext	RW	64	704	Similar count for SL10
PortRcvDataSL11Ext	RW	64	768	Similar count for SL11
PortRcvDataSL12Ext	RW	64	832	Similar count for SL12

Table 616 PortRcvDataSLExt

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortRcvDataSL13Ext	RW	64	862	Similar count for SL13
PortRcvDataSL14Ext	RW	64	960	Similar count for SL14
PortRcvDataSL15Ext	RW	64	1024	Similar count for SL15
Reserved	RO	496	1088	Reserved

A13.7 OPTIONAL PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS

This section contains additions to optional performance management attribute status for the QoS performance counters. See 16.1.5.2 **OPTIONAL PM ATTRIBUTE STATUS**.

Table 617 Additional Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations^a

Attribute Name	Methods
PortXmitDataSL	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortRcvDataSL	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortXmitDataSLExt	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()
PortRcvDataSLExt	PerformanceGet() or PerformanceSet()

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 300 Valid Optional PM Method/Attribute Combinations on page 1135](#).

A13.7.1 PM ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 618****Additional PM AttributeModifier Errors^a**

Attribute Name	AttributeModifier Violations
PortXmitDataSL	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortRcvDataSL	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortXmitDataSLExt	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000
PortRcvDataSLExt	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000

a. This table is incorporated into [Table 301 PM AttributeModifier Errors on page 1135](#).

A13.7.2 PM ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 619****PerformanceSet(PortXmitDataSL) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 620**PerformanceSet(PortRcvDataSL) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 621**PerformanceSet(PortXmitDataSLExt) Component Errors**

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

Table 622 PerformanceSet(PortRcvDataSLExt) Component Errors

Attribute Component	Violations
PortSelect	PortSelect = 0x00 ^a
	0xFF > PortSelect > NodeInfo:NumPorts
	PortSelect = 0xFF ^b

a. Only if EnhancedPort0 = 0.

b. Only if AllPortSelect = 0.

A13.8 COMPLIANCE

In order to claim compliance to the QoS Management class an I/O unit shall meet all requirements specified in this section, except for those statements preceded by Qualifiers that the product does not support.

- **CA13-1:** SA complies with Release 1.2.1 of IBA..... Page 1863
- **CA13-2:** QoS data VLs Page 1869
- **CA13-3:** QoS ClassPortInfo.IsQoSSupported capability mask. . Page 1869
- **CA13-4:** Class-specific status bits..... Page 1869
- **CA13-5:** SA shall provide an extended PathRecord attribute... Page 1869
- **CA13-6:** Mask bits for ServiceID8MSB & ServiceID56LSB..... Page 1871
- **CA13-7:** If QoSClass not supported => ERR_REQ_INVALID. . Page 1871
- **CA13-8:** No support for priority => ERR_REQ_NO_RESOURCES. Page 1871
- **CA13-9:** SA shall provide an extended MultiPathRecord attribute Page 1871
- **CA13a-1:** QoS Mgmt devices shall support performance ctrs. . . . Page 1873
- **CA13a-2:** SwPortVLCongestion:SWPortVLCongestion[VL]: Page 1873

ANNEX A14: EXTENDED RELIABLE CONNECTED (XRC) TRANSPORT SERVICE

A14.1 INTRODUCTION

The XRC annex has been incorporated into the main body of this specification. The bulk of the changes are contained within chapters 9, 10, 11 and 12.

IBTA

ANNEX A15: HIERARCHY INFORMATION

A15.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex defines the framework for discovering the hierarchy of an InfiniBand fabric.

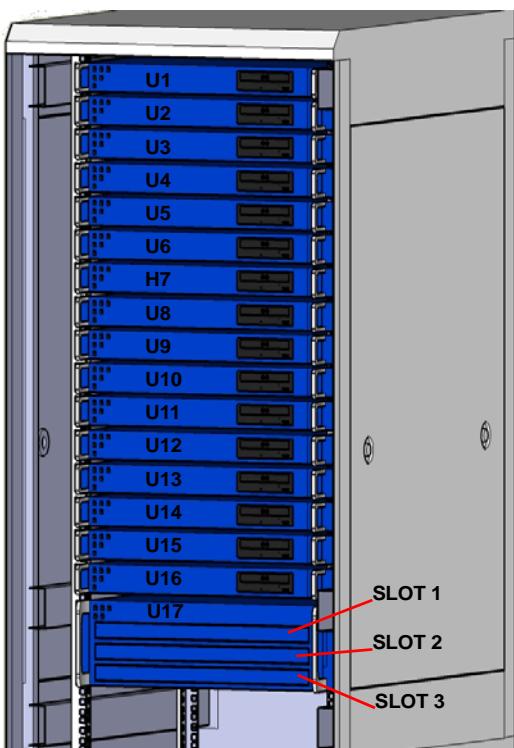
Support for this Hierarchy Information framework is optional, but if it is supported it must be done in accordance with the requirements of this annex.

A15.2 GLOSSARY

HI	See Hierarchy Information	14
Hierarchy Information	Information which progressively describes the fabric hardware components (Ports, CAs, switches, and routers) in a hierarchical manner.	15
HI Template	An XML file holding the encoding and semantics of the HI data returned from a node.	18
HI Template GUID	A unique identifier assigned to each HI Template.	21
Physical Hierarchy	The hierarchy representing the location of the InfiniBand node. Going from bottom up it will include the node location in the board, the slot that board is located in the chassis, the chassis location within the rack, the rack location within the room, etc.	23
Port Hierarchy	Describes the mapping between an InfiniBand device port to the front panel port or plug it connects to. Applying this mapping iteratively, the front panel port or plug can be further mapped to the port or plug of a higher level enclosure the system is embedded in.	27
Raw HI	Information as stored within the fabric nodes. Requires decoding by the corresponding HI Template to have meaning.	32

A15.3 OVERVIEW

InfiniBand Subnet Management infrastructure enables a Subnet Manager entity to discover the network connectivity. The discovered topology which is a graph of InfiniBand nodes (CA/Router/Switch) connected by InfiniBand links, can be used for reporting network issues and characteristics. Unlike many other technologies, the InfiniBand connectivity graph is completely discovered even if parts of it are enclosed within embedded systems.

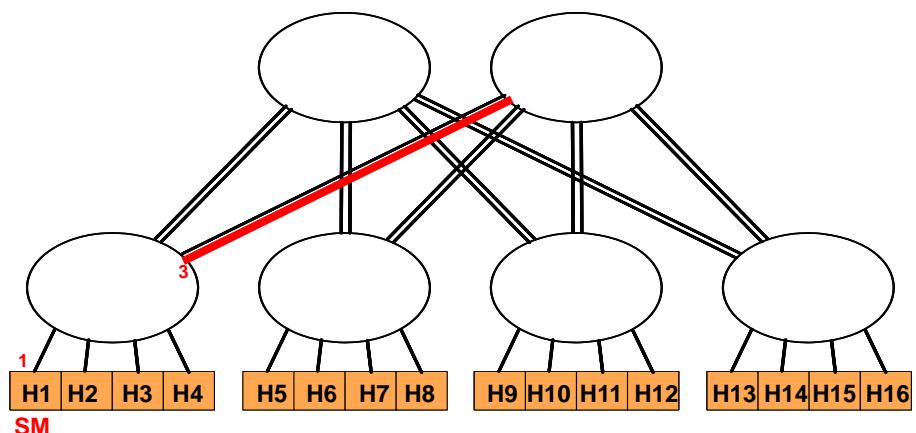
Figure 336 Equipment Rack

For example, consider the equipment rack depicted in [Figure 336 on page 1888](#). The rack is built of 16 1U servers, at locations U1 to U16, and a sixteen-port InfiniBand switch system, at location U17.

The connectivity graph as would be discovered by the SM in its discovery phase is provided in [Figure 337 on page 1889](#). The 16 port InfiniBand switch is represented as a connectivity graph made of 6 switches of 8 ports each. We refer to this connectivity view as a 'flattened' view, since the system-level hierarchy is missing from it.

Figure 337

Flat topology view

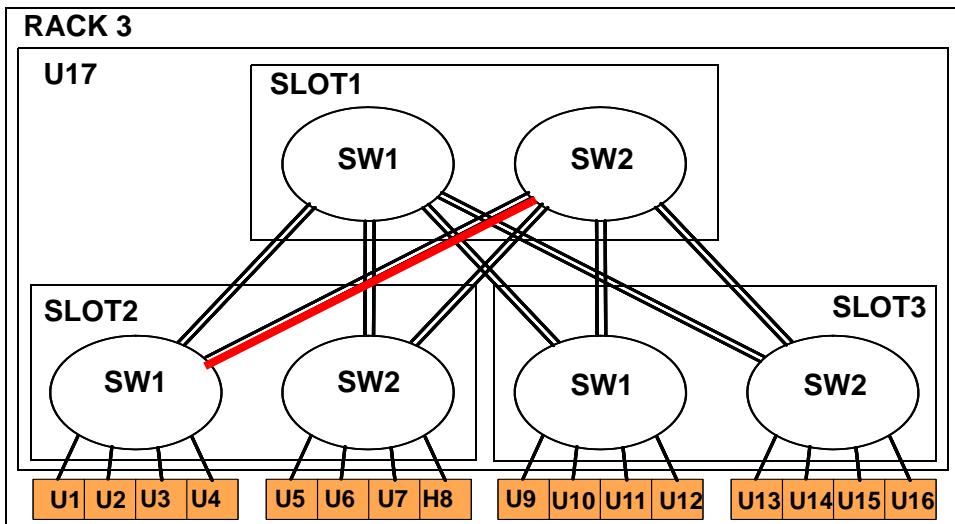


This strength of the InfiniBand standardization, i.e., of providing a common view of the network, has a drawback which the Hierarchy Information extension is intended to solve: humans work with physical systems, not InfiniBand abstractions.

As an example, assume the link highlighted in red in [Figure 337 on page 1889](#) located at directed path 1,3 from node H1 (SM node) has reported bad link stability. Reporting the link instability using the directed path of 1,3 requires some indirect translation to actually point to the link in trouble. However, if the report included the physical hierarchy information shown in [Figure 338 on page 1889](#), i.e., that this link is between InfiniBand switch SW1 of SLOT2 and InfiniBand SW2 of SLOT1 in switch chassis U17 which is located in rack 3, the fabric administrator knows immediately which physical boards and chassis are having a problem. Furthermore, the location of that chassis and boards, is directly provided.

Figure 338

Physical hierarchy view



The description above exemplifies a chassis or physical containment hierarchy. It is the objective of this annex to support not only that type, but to enable other, arbitrary hierarchy types as well. The Hierarchy Information Annex describes extensions to Infiniband Subnet Management and Subnet Administration which allow administrative tools to understand and display physical properties of systems in a flexible, user-focused manner.

The crux of the extension is standardizing how InfiniBand nodes report hierarchy information. There are two methods for the hierarchical information to be programmed into the node:

- By the SM, using SubnSet(HierarchyInfo)
- Using vendor specific embedded software which is beyond the scope of this specification

To support the concept of arbitrary hierarchy semantics, a new Hierarchy-Info attribute is used to manage the hierarchy information stored on the node, which must be decoded by applying a "Hierarchy Template". The template provides semantic structure to the raw, unstructured data provided directly by the InfiniBand nodes.

The structure of the annex is as follows: in the next section we describe the flow of Hierarchy Information and the involved entities. The following two sections describe the enhancements to Subnet Management and Administration. The definition of the Hierarchy Template file including two common hierarchies (i.e., Physical-Hierarchy and Port-Hierarchy) as examples. The last section is the compliance statement summary.

To summarize, the annex goals are:

- To define a flexible, generic encoding of hierarchical information associated with ports and nodes in an InfiniBand network. This information can relate to physical location, grouping of devices within enclosures, connectivity, power, or any other information a vendor chooses to provide.
- To provide an encoding that is as space efficient as possible, since storage on actual devices is expensive. The device stores data in an encoded format which can be very space efficient, and the decoding of the data is provided by an external XML description of the data.
- To provide sample encoding of the data that real-world experience has shown to be vital to efficient network administration.

A15.4 MODE OF OPERATION

This section describes the flow of hierarchy-related information and the hardware and software involved. The overall process has the following steps which are described in details in the following sub sections:

- Storing and updating hierarchical information in InfiniBand nodes
- Fabric discovery and query of the raw hierarchical information
- Decoding hierarchical information using corresponding templates

A15.4.1 STORING AND UPDATING HIERARCHICAL INFORMATION

It is anticipated that a node is pre-programmed with its hierarchical information when it comes on-line and starts responding to subnet management packets. A vendor-dependent mechanism is assumed to provide that initial information. For the Physical Hierarchy, vendor-dependent embedded software will program each device in the chassis with information identifying its location therein.

Systems supporting hot-plug installation of subsystems are expected to include a mechanism for updating the hierarchy information contained in the new hardware.

Some of the hierarchical information to be associated with a device may not be known until it is in its final location in the system. In our Physical Hierarchy example [Figure 338 on page 1889](#) the location of the device chassis within the rack, and the rack location in the datacenter are examples of additional physical information that aid an administrator in locating and debugging network issues. The Hierarchy Information mechanisms allow vendors and administrators to supplement the hierarchy information provided by the embedded system either directly at the embedded system (via vendor-dependant mechanisms) or in-band via the SubnSet(HierarchyInfo) mechanism

A15.4.2 FABRIC DISCOVERY

A Subnet Manager supporting the optional functionality described in this annex will recognize nodes supporting Hierarchy Information by examining the capability mask bits they return in response to SubnGet(PortInfo). For those nodes, subsequent calls to SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) will return their relevant hierarchy information.

In order to support multiple hierarchies, the SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) attribute modifier includes a hierarchy index which identifies the type of hierarchy queried. To enable storing per port information the attribute modifier used in query of switch devices also contains the target port number.

The capability mask bit and HierarchyInfo attribute defined by this annex are described in detail in [Section A15.5, “Subnet Management Extensions,” on page 1892](#).

Discovered Hierarchical Information is made available by SA to clients with sufficient permissions. The corresponding HierarchyInfoRecord attribute and its usage is described in [Section A15.6, “Subnet Administration Extensions,” on page 1898](#)

A15.4.3 DECODING HIERARCHICAL INFORMATION

Raw Hierarchical Information returned in response to a SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) query has two parts:

- A Hierarchy Information Template GUID
- Template-specific encoded data

The Hierarchy Information Template GUID is the key by which the matching Hierarchy Information Template File is found.

To support arbitrary hierarchies Hierarchy Template files take the form of XML, which defines the semantics and data encoding.

Two example templates are provided in this annex, one for generic physical hierarchy representation, the other for device to system port mapping.

The definition of the syntax for the Hierarchy Template file is provided in [Section A15.7, “Hierarchy Template File,” on page 1899](#)

A15.5 SUBNET MANAGEMENT EXTENSIONS

The following sections describe the Subnet Management class extensions for Hierarchy Information.

These extensions are:

- A new PortInfo:CapabilityMask bit declaring the SMA’s support for HierarchyInfo attribute
- A new OtherLocalChanges bit in trap 144 data details to flag a change in a node hierarchy info
- HierarchyInfo attribute which returns the encoded raw hierarchy data
- Error conditions for the above attribute

A15.5.1 HIERARCHY INFORMATION CAPABILITY

The PortInfo:CapabilityMask component (described in Table 164, “PortInfo,” on page 899) is extended by this annex. The previously reserved bit 31 of the PortInfo:CapabilityMask is now defined as IsHierarchyInfoSupported, declaring support for the HierarchyInfo attribute, specified in this annex.

CA15-1: A switch that sets PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsHierarchyInfoSupported bit to one on its management port **shall** support the HierarchyInfo attribute on all its external ports.

A15.5.2 HIERARCHY INFORMATION OTHERLOCALCHANGES BIT

Trap 144, reporting local changes (described in [Section 14.3.13, “Other Local Changes,” on page 986](#)) is extended by this annex to report hierarchy information changes. A new bit named HierarchyInfoChange at bit 12 of the third reserved field (used for other local changes) of the Notice:DataDetails is defined and should be set to one to mark the notice as reporting hierarchy information changes.

The changes to Table 154, “Notice DataDetails For Trap 144,” on page 890 are:

- The width of the third reserved field (used for other local changes), is decreased by 1 to 11
- A single bit field named HierarchyInfoChange is added to the table just below the third reserved field and above SMPriorityChange field.

CA15-2: If the port supports Traps as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported, and the port is capable of sending the enhanced (for other local changes) version of Trap 144 as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported, and the port supports Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsHierarchyInfoSupported bit to one, then the SMA **shall** send a Trap 144 to the SM when the hierarchy information is modified by an entity on the sending port's endnode at runtime.

CA15-3: If the management port supports Notices as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported, and the port is capable of logging the OtherLocalChanges notice as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported, and the port supports Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsHierarchyInfoSupported bit to one the SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 144 when the hierarchy information is modified by an entity on the sending port's endnode at runtime.

A15.5.3 HIERARCHYINFO ATTRIBUTE

A new Subnet Management attribute, HierarchyInfo (with Attribute ID 0x001E), is defined in this section. The HierarchyInfo Attribute provides port-specific hierarchy information.

CA15-4: An endpoint supporting Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IshierarchyInfoSupported bit to one, **shall** respond to SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) and SubnSet(HierarchyInfo) according to the behavior described in the following section.

- The other bits 31:16 of the AttributeModifier are reserved.
- The AttributeModifier bits 15:8 define HierarchyIndex. This field is used to select a specific hierarchy maintained for the specified port. Each hierarchy supported by the port is identified with a HierarchyIndex value in the range zero through HierarchyInfo:MaxActiveIndex, as returned in the response to SubnGet(). The HierarchyIndex zero is always valid even if its data fields are unused, and thus can be queried to obtain the value of MaxActiveIndex and MaxSupportedIndex.
- The AttributeModifier bits 7:0 select the port upon which the operation specified by the SMP is performed. For switches, the range of values is between 0 to N, where N is the number of switch ports. For CAs and routers, these bits are reserved and the operation is performed on the port that receives the SMP.

Note that each switch external port may support a different set of hierarchies.

Note that there need be no relationship between the values of HierarchyIndex and TemplateGUID. The HierarchyIndex value does not imply anything about the meaning of the obtained hierarchy information and should only be used as means to retrieve the active hierarchies available on the port. No relation between the index and obtained TemplateGUID is guaranteed.

The Level0Data through Level12Data components of the HierarchyInfo attribute provide the encoded hierarchy data. Level0Data is the data for the lowest hierarchy level. Level1Data provides the data one level above it, and so on.

Table 623 HierarchyInfo Attribute

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
TemplateGUID	RW	64	0	A unique, vendor assigned identifier, that recognizes the Hierarchy Information Template to be used for decoding the hierarchy information provided by this attribute.
MaxSupportedIndex	RO	8	64	The largest possible hierarchy index number supported on the given port.
MaxActiveIndex	RO	8	72	Returns the largest valid hierarchy index value in use on the port. The SMA maintains this value in accordance with the number of active hierarchies.
ActiveLevels	RW	4	80	Total number of hierarchy levels provided in this attribute data. For SubnGet(), a value of zero notes the specific queried hierarchy was not setup on the port, thus it is unused. For SubnSet(), a value of zero invalidates the specific hierarchy information of the port.
Reserved	RO	4	84	Reserved
Reserved	RO	8	88	Reserved
Level0Data	RW	32	96	Level 0 encoded data of the specific port
Level1Data	RW	32	128	Level 1 encoded data of the specific port
Level2Data	RW	32	160	Level 2 encoded data of the specific port
Level3Data	RW	32	192	Level 3 encoded data of the specific port
Level4Data	RW	32	224	Level 4 encoded data of the specific port
Level5Data	RW	32	256	Level 5 encoded data of the specific port
Level6Data	RW	32	288	Level 6 encoded data of the specific port
Level7Data	RW	32	320	Level 7 encoded data of the specific port
Level8Data	RW	32	356	Level 8 encoded data of the specific port
Level9Data	RW	32	384	Level 9 encoded data of the specific port
Level10Data	RW	32	416	Level 10 encoded data of the specific port
Level11Data	RW	32	448	Level 11 encoded data of the specific port
Level12Data	RW	32	480	Level 12 encoded data of the specific port

A15.5.3.1 HIERARCHYINFO QUERY

The SM performing SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) is expected to first obtain the range of available hierarchy information sets on the given port by using zero for the value of HierarchyIndex, then to repeat the query using values from one up to HierarchyInfo:MaxActiveIndex obtained from the first query.

The value N of the resulting HierarchyInfo:ActiveLevels qualifies the first N (zero through N-1) Level*<i>*Data fields of the HierarchyInfo. If N equals zero it means the HierarchyInfo is invalid and should be ignored.

A15.5.3.2 SETTING HIERARCHYINFO

A SM undertaking to update the hierarchy information in a node should first determine the number of hierarchies the node can support by querying it with SubnGet(HierarchyInfo), using zero as the value of HierarchyIndex. If the response to this query yields a HierarchyInfo:MaxSupportedIndex value of M, say, a performance optimization for the SM is to use values contiguously from zero through M in SubnSet(HierarchyInfo) to set up multiple hierarchy information data sets.

A HierarchyInfo attribute is valid only if its HierarchyInfo:ActiveLevels is greater than zero. To invalidate a particular HierarchyInfo attribute of a node a SM can perform SubnSet(HierarchyInfo) on that node with HierarchyInfo:ActiveLevels value of zero.

CA15-5: An endpoint supporting Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IshierarchyInfoSupported bit to one, **shall** track for every port the maximal HierarchyIndex of valid Hierarchy-Info attributes and report it in the subsequent SubnGet(HierarchyInfo) MaxActiveIndex component.

A15.5.4 ERROR HANDLING FOR HIERARCHYINFO ATTRIBUTE

The following tables describe the error conditions for HierarchyInfo attribute.

A15.5.4.1 HIERARCHYINFO METHOD/ATTRIBUTE COMBINATION NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x3)

The following table extends Table 196, “Subnet Management Attribute / Method Map Errors,” on page 945.

Table 624 HierarchyInfo Attribute / Method Map Errors

Attribute	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
HierarchyInfo	Valid	Valid	error	error

A15.5.4.2 HIERARCHYINFO ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)

The following table extends Table 197, “SMP AttributeModifier Errors,” on page 947.

Table 625 HierarchyInfo AttributeModifier Errors

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier for Switch with BSP0	Invalid AttributeModifier for CA/Router/Switch with ESP0
HierarchyInfo	AttributeModifier[7:0] > NodeInfo.NumPorts or AttributeModifier[15:8] >= HierarchyInfo:MaxActiveIndex	AttributeModifier[7:0] > 0 or AttributeModifier[15:8] >= HierarchyInfo:MaxActiveIndex

A15.5.4.3 HIERARCHYINFO ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)

The following table describes error conditions when inspecting specific components of the HierarchyInfo attribute.

Table 626 HierarchyInfo Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() component value
ActiveLevels	> 13

A15.6 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION EXTENSIONS

This section describes the Subnet Administration class extension for Hierarchy Information including a new attribute, HierarchyInfoRecord.

A15.6.1 HIERARCHYINFO SUPPORT

A new SA capability mask bit is defined for ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 extending Table 230, “SA-Specific Optional Capabilities,” on page 1019:

- Name: IsHierarchyInfoSupported
- Bit: 4
- Description: If this value is 1, SA **shall** support the HierarchyInfoRecord attribute as defined in [Section A15.6.2, “HierarchyInfoRecord Attribute,” on page 1898](#).

A15.6.2 HIERARCHYINFORECORD ATTRIBUTE

A new Subnet Administration attribute, HierarchyInfoRecord (with Attribute ID 0x003C), is defined in this section. This attribute encapsulates HierarchyInfo attribute and provides a means for SA clients to obtain the hierarchy information discovered by the SM.

CA15-6: If SA supports Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsHierarchyInfoSupported bit to one, it **shall** respond to SubnAdmGet() and SubnAdmGetTable() of the HierarchyInfoRecord attribute.

Table 627 HierarchyInfoRecord

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0 For a switch: LID of switch port 0. For a CA or router: LID of the port.
	PortNum	8	16 For a switch: port number. For a CA or router: reserved.
	HierarchyIndex	8	24 The specific hierarchy to which the included HierarchyInfo refers.
	HierarchyInfo	512	HierarchyInfo contents; see Table 623 HierarchyInfo Attribute on page 1895 .

A15.7 HIERARCHY TEMPLATE FILE

The Hierarchy Template file is an XML file following a formal definition of an XML Schema. The key design considerations of the schema are described in this section followed by description of the key schema elements and the actual schema.

CA15-7: An endpoint supporting Hierarchy Information as indicated by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsHierarchyInfoSupported bit to one, and programmed with specific hierarchy information **shall** be associated with a Hierarchy Template File with a TemplateGUID matching the node Hierarchy Information. That file **shall** be made available to the SM/SA and other management applications.

A15.7.1 KEY SCHEMA DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

The following key considerations apply to the Template File:

- This specification imposes no assumptions or hard requirements on the format of the data stored in each HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data component.
- Each hierarchy level HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data may hold a different data set with a different format. Multiple different data sets may be defined and described by the schema, even for a single hierarchy.
- There is no requirement that the type of data is identical at a given level across all fabric ports.
- Some hierarchies may be deeper than others.
- Each HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data component is decoded separately such that there is no information shared across levels.

A15.7.2 SCHEMA ELEMENTS

The hierarchy template schema includes at least one **RecordSelector** definition that is applied to several contiguous Hierarchy-Info:Level<N>Data attribute components. Each one of the **RecordSelector** elements holds a field named **RecordCode** which maps to at least one **Record** element. Each **Record** element defines a set of fields included in one HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data component. Each **Record** thus holds at least one **Data** field and exactly one **Representation** element describing how the **Record** is to be displayed. Each **Data** field holds a **Bits** element defining the specific bits of the Hierarchy-Info:Level<N>Data attribute component making this field.

A15.7.2.1 BITS ELEMENT

A range of bits of the HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data component defined as the [lsb:msb] range. Data elements use the "Bits" element to define which portion of the HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data is used to provide their value.

The following example demonstrates declaration of a data field stored in bits 8 to 15 of the HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data component:

```
<Bits lsb="8" msb="15" />
```

A15.7.2.2 SCHEMA DATA TYPES

This section lists the schema elements which describe the types available for the fields which comprise the Level<N>Data components of the HierarchyInfo attribute.

A15.7.2.2.1 INTEGER ELEMENT

A data field that is interpreted as an integer (can be displayed in the record **Representation** using the decimal %d, unsigned decimal %u or hexadecimal %x format). The following example shows how an integer field named “SlotNum” which is stored in bits 8 to 15 of the Hierarchy-Info:Level<N>Data component is defined:

```
<Integer name="SlotNum">  
  <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" />  
</Integer>
```

A15.7.2.2.2 ENUM ELEMENT

An enumerated data field that maps the value stored in the field into a string (can be included in the record **Representation** using the %s format). For example an enumeration field named “BoardType” that maps the value 0 to the string “Leaf”, the value 1 to the string “Spine”, the value 2 to the string “Board” and the value 3 to the string “Reserved” is declared below:

```
<Enum name="BoardType">  
  <Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />  
  <EnumVal val="0" name="Leaf" />  
  <EnumVal val="1" name="Spine" />  
  <EnumVal val="2" name="Board" />  
  <EnumVal val="3" name="Reserved" />  
</Enum>
```

A15.7.2.3 REPRESENTATION ELEMENT

Defines how the information stored in data fields will be displayed, using a printf-like format. A format string and a list of data fields are provided as arguments. The following example for a **Representation** element defines a display format which uses a string to display the first argument **Data** field named “BoardType” and a decimal number for the second **Data** field named “SlotNum”.

```
<Representation format="%s%d" args="BoardType SlotNum" />
```

A15.7.2.4 RECORD ELEMENT

A specific data set stored in the HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data (not including the RecordCode). Each **Record** must have a unique name. The following example shows a **Record** element holding two **Data** fields - “SlotNum” and “BoardType” - and a corresponding **Representation** element:

```
<Record name="Board">  
  <Integer name="SlotNum">  
    <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" />  
  </Integer>  
  <Enum name="BoardType">
```

```
<Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />
<EnumVal val="0" name="Leaf" />
<EnumVal val="1" name="Spine" />
<EnumVal val="2" name="Board" />
<EnumVal val="3" name="Reserved" />
</Enum>
<Representation format="%s%d" args="BoardType SlotNum" />
</Record >
```

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

A15.7.3 RECORDSELECTOR, RECORDCODE AND APPLYTOLEVELS ELEMENTS

The **RecordSelector** element references a set of **Record** elements that may be coded in the same set of HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data levels.

The value stored in the bits of the **RecordSelector** element defines which one of these **Record** elements is actually stored in the Hierarchy-Info:Level<N>Data level. A set of **RecordCode** elements maps between the codes and their matching **Record** name. Another mandatory sub-field within the **RecordSelector** declaration named **ApplyToLevels** specifies the set of contiguous HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data components to which this **RecordSelector** applies.

The example below declares two **RecordSelector** elements, one for HierarchyInfo:Level0Data, HierarchyInfo:Level1Data and Hierarchy-Info:Level2Data, and the other for the rest of the components HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data. The first **RecordSelector** is stored at bit [31] and selects between two **Record** types named "Board" or "Device" while the second **RecordSelector** uses the set of bits to [28:31] and selects between three **Record** types: "Board", "System" or "Rack".

```
<RecordSelector>
  <ApplyToLevels min="0" max="2" />
  <Bits lsb="31" msb="31" />
  <RecordCode val="0" name="Board" />
  <RecordCode val="1" name="Device" />
</RecordSelector>
<RecordSelector>
  <ApplyToLevels min="3" max="12" />
  <Bits lsb="28" msb="31" />
  <RecordCode val="0" name="Board" />
  <RecordCode val="1" name="System" />
  <RecordCode val="2" name="Rack" />
</RecordSelector>
```

A special case of **RecordSelector** is when there is only one type of **Record** that may be coded in the set of levels specified by **ApplyToLevels**. In that case the **Bits** element **msb** and **lsb** fields should be set to 32 and a single **RecordCode** should be included. The **val** field of the **RecordCode** is reserved, thus it must be set to zero but is ignored. This coding enables using the entire 32 bits of the HierarchyInfo:Level<N>Data for storing **Record** data. The example below shows how such **RecordSelector** is defined:

```
<RecordSelector>
  <ApplyToLevels min="0" max="1" />
  <Bits lsb="32" msb="32" />
  <RecordCode val="0" name="SerialNum" />
</RecordSelector>
```

A15.7.4 FORMAL TEMPLATE FILE XML SCHEMA

The template file XML Schema is defined in [Figure 339 Hierarchy Template File XML Schema on page 1903](#)

Figure 339 Hierarchy Template File XML Schema

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" ?>	1
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">	2
<xs:simpleType name="Level">	3
<xs:restriction base="xs:integer">	4
<xs:minInclusive value="0"/>	5
<xs:maxExclusive value="13"/>	6
</xs:restriction>	7
</xs:simpleType>	8
<xs:element name="ApplyToLevels">	9
<xs:complexType>	10
<xs:attribute name="max" type="Level" use="required" />	11
<xs:attribute name="min" type="Level" use="required" />	12
</xs:complexType>	13
</xs:element>	14
<xs:simpleType name="Bit">	15
<xs:restriction base="xs:integer">	16
<xs:minInclusive value="0"/>	17
<xs:maxExclusive value="32"/>	18
</xs:restriction>	19
</xs:simpleType>	20
<xs:element name="Bits">	21
<xs:complexType>	22
<xs:attribute name="msb" type="Bit" use="required" />	23
<xs:attribute name="lsb" type="Bit" use="required" />	24
</xs:complexType>	25
</xs:element>	26
<xs:element name="Enum">	27
<xs:complexType>	28
<xs:sequence>	29
<xs:element ref="Bits" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	30
<xs:element ref="EnumVal" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	31
</xs:sequence>	32
<xs:attribute name="name" type="xs:string" use="required" />	33
</xs:complexType>	34
</xs:element>	35
<xs:element name="Integer">	36
<xs:complexType>	37
<xs:sequence>	38
<xs:element ref="Bits" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	39
</xs:sequence>	40
<xs:attribute name="name" type="xs:string" use="required" />	41
</xs:complexType>	42
</xs:element>	

<xs:simpleType name="GUID">	1
<xs:restriction base="xs:string">	2
<xs:pattern value="[0-9A-Fa-f]{16}" />	3
</xs:restriction>	4
</xs:simpleType>	5
 	6
<xs:element name="HierarchyTemplate">	7
<xs:complexType>	8
<xs:sequence>	9
<xs:element ref="RecordSelector" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="13" />	10
<xs:element ref="Record" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded" />	11
</xs:sequence>	12
<xs:attribute name="name" type="xs:string" use="required" />	13
<xs:attribute name="GUID" type="GUID" use="required" />	14
</xs:complexType>	15
</xs:element>	16
 	17
<xs:element name="Record">	18
<xs:complexType>	19
<xs:choice>	20
<xs:element ref="Enum" maxOccurs="unbounded" />	21
<xs:element ref="Integer" maxOccurs="unbounded" />	22
<xs:element ref="Representation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	23
</xs:choice>	24
<xs:attribute name="name" type="xs:string" use="required" />	25
</xs:complexType>	26
</xs:element>	27
 	28
<xs:element name="RecordSelector">	29
<xs:complexType>	30
<xs:sequence>	31
<xs:element ref="ApplyToLevels" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	32
<xs:element ref="Bits" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1" />	33
<xs:element ref="RecordCode" maxOccurs="unbounded" />	34
</xs:sequence>	35
</xs:complexType>	36
</xs:element>	37
 	38
<xs:element name="Representation">	39
<xs:complexType>	40
<xs:attribute name="args" type="xs:string" use="required" />	41
<xs:attribute name="format" type="xs:string" use="required" />	42
</xs:complexType>	43
</xs:element>	44
 	45
</xs:schema>	46

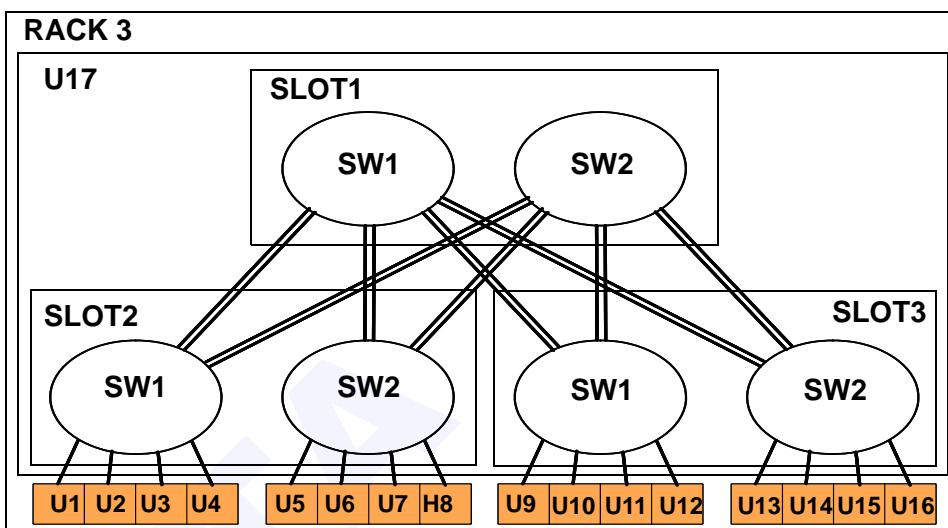
A15.7.5 A GENERIC PHYSICAL HIERARCHY TEMPLATE

In this section we provide an example template for Physical Hierarchy.

Figure 340 Generic Physical Hierarchy Template

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes" ?>
<HierarchyTemplate GUID="0000000000000001" name="IBTA Physical Hierarchy">
    <RecordSelector>
        <ApplyToLevels min="0" max="12" />
        <Bits lsb="28" msb="31" />
        <RecordCode val="0" name="Device" />
        <RecordCode val="1" name="Board" />
        <RecordCode val="2" name="System" />
        <RecordCode val="3" name="Rack" />
        <RecordCode val="4" name="Room" />
        <RecordCode val="5" name="Campus" />
    </RecordSelector>
    <Record name="Device">
        <Integer name="SerialNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="i%d" args="SerialNum" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="Board">
        <Integer name="SlotNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Enum name="BoardType" >
            <Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="Leaf" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="Spine" />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="Board" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="Reserved" />
        </Enum>
        <Representation format="%s%d" args="BoardType SlotNum" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="System">
        <Integer name="TopUNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Enum name="SysType" >
            <Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="SW" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="H" />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="GW" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="SYS" />
        </Enum>
        <Representation format="%s-U%d" args="SysType TopUNum" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="Rack">
        <Integer name="SerialNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="Rack%d" args="SerialNum" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="Room">
        <Integer name="SerialNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="Room%d" args="SerialNum" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="Campus">
        <Integer name="SerialNum" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="Campus%d" args="SerialNum" />
    </Record >
</HierarchyTemplate>
```

Using the Generic Physical Hierarchy Template we provide here an example HierarchyInfo attribute query result for a node of the example hierarchy described in [Figure 341 "Physical hierarchy view"](#) which is a copy of Figure 338.

Figure 341 **Physical hierarchy view**

The SW2 located in SLOT3 of the switch system in U17 of rack 3 may return the following HierarchyInfo:

Table 628 Physical HierarchyInfo GetResponse Example

Component	Value	Description
TemplateGUID	0000000000000001h	GUID of the IBTA Physical Hierarchy Template
ActiveLevels	4	Device, Board, System and Rack
Level0Data	0000:0200h	Device, Num 2,
Level1Data	1000:0300h	Board, Slot 3, Leaf
Level2Data	2000:1100h	System, TopU 17, Switch
Level3Data	3000:0300h	Rack, Num 3

Software based on this template may display the name of the specific switch device as "Rack3/SW-U17/Leaf3/i2".

The detailed procedure for decoding of Level1Data into "Leaf3" is:

- The value 1 stored in bits 31:28 which are the **RecordSelector** for all levels map the Level1 Data to the "Board" **Record**
- The "Board" bits 15:8 define the slot number to be 3 and bits 1:0 defines the type to be a "Leaf"

- “Board” representation is of format %s%d which result in “Leaf3”

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

IBTA

A15.7.6 A GENERIC PORT HIERARCHY TEMPLATE

The port hierarchy template example provides a means to track how device ports map to system ports. Only those ports which connect to the system panel may have such HierarchyInfo defined. The rest may return HierarchyInfo:ActiveLevels set to zero.

System ports may be arbitrarily named which represents a real challenge for a generic template. For this reason, we have coded several possible prefixes for the plug names and use them in the port name representation.

IBTA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

Figure 342 Generic Port Hierarchy Template

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8" standalone="yes" ?>
<HierarchyTemplate GUID="0000000000000002" name="IBTA Generic Port Hierarchy">
    <RecordSelector>
        <ApplyToLevels min="0" max="0" />
        <Bits lsb="31" msb="31" />
        <RecordCode val="0" name="SlotBased" />
        <RecordCode val="1" name="Continuous" />
    </RecordSelector>
    <Record name="SlotBased">
        <Enum name="SlotPrefix" >
            <Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="L" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="S" />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="Leaf" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="Slot" />
        </Enum>
        <Enum name="PortPrefix" >
            <Bits lsb="2" msb="3" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="P" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="J" />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="-" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="" />
        </Enum>
        <Enum name="Sep" >
            <Bits lsb="4" msb="5" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="-" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="." />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="/" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="" />
        </Enum>
        <Integer name="port" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="15" /> </Integer>
        <Integer name="slot" > <Bits lsb="16" msb="23" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="%s%d%s%s%d" args="SlotPrefix slot Sep PortPrefix port" />
    </Record >
    <Record name="Continuous">
        <Enum name="PortPrefix" >
            <Bits lsb="0" msb="1" />
            <EnumVal val="0" name="P" />
            <EnumVal val="1" name="J" />
            <EnumVal val="2" name="Plug" />
            <EnumVal val="3" name="Jack" />
        </Enum>
        <Integer name="port" > <Bits lsb="8" msb="23" /> </Integer>
        <Representation format="%s%d" args="PortPrefix port" />
    </Record >
</HierarchyTemplate>
```

Using the above template port 2 of the device at Rack3/SW-U17/Leaf3/I2 may report back the following HierarchyInfo describing its port hierarchy information.

Table 629 Port HierarchyInfo GetResponse Example

Component	Value	Description
TemplateGUID	0000000000000002h	GUID of the IBTA Port Hierarchy Template
ActiveLevels	1	System and Rack
Level0Data	0003:0220h	Slot based, slot 3, port 2, "/", "P", "L"

Decoding the above information with the Generic Port Hierarchy Template will result in the front panel of the switch system at jack L3/P1.

A15.8 COMPLIANCE

Support for Hierarchy Information framework is optional, but if it is supported it must be done in accordance with the requirements of this annex.

- **CA15-1:** Support the HI attribute on all its external ports Page 1893
- **CA15-2:** Trap 144 on HI change Page 1893
- **CA15-3:** Notice log on HI change Page 1893
- **CA15-4:** Required SubnGet/SubnGet behavior Page 1894
- **CA15-5:** SMA track HierarchyIndex per port. Page 1896
- **CA15-6:** SA support for HI Page 1898
- **CA15-7:** Hierarchy Template File for every TemplateGUID used Page 1899

ANNEX A16: RDMA OVER CONVERGED ETHERNET (RoCE)

A16.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is an annex to release 1.2.1 of Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base specification. This annex enables the use of alternate, non-IB defined, link and physical layers. The name given to describe this ability is RDMA over Converged Ethernet ('RoCE', pronounced as 'Rocky'). There is no particular significance to the given name.

Support for RoCE is optional, but if it is supported it must be done in accordance with the requirements stated in this annex.

A16.2 OVERVIEW

The InfiniBand Architecture offers a rich set of I/O services based on an RDMA access method and message passing semantics. Included are a variety of transport services including reliable and unreliable service, connected and unconnected service, atomics, multicast and others. This is achieved through a layered architecture that specifies the first four layers of the OSI reference model network stack including the physical, link, network and transport layers as well as an accompanying management framework for the InfiniBand network. In addition, the IB specification defines a software interface and its accompanying verbs which are designed to allow smooth access to the services provided by the InfiniBand Architecture.

This annex specifies a way to provide these same transport services over a non-InfiniBand network. The definition preserves the IB software interface and IB transport services and protocol and describes their use when run on an Ethernet network. The specification assumes common management practices of the underlying Ethernet network and does not apply the IB management infrastructure, e.g. SM, SA, and so on.

The InfiniBand transport protocol was architected to operate on a layer 2 fabric which does not routinely drop packets even though the protocol contains capabilities to allow it to recover from some number of lost packets. Although this annex does not specifically require a 'lossless' Ethernet fabric, it is likely that a port implementing this annex which is connected to an Ethernet fabric will operate more efficiently (e.g. with a higher ratio of delivered payload to offered payload) if the underlying layer 2 fabric does not routinely drop packets.

A16.2.1 ARCHITECTURAL GOALS

RoCE has the following architectural goals:

- Provide RDMA service over an Ethernet Layer 2 network
- Maintain compliance with the existing verbs definition and accompanying implementations.
- Maintain the existing memory management paradigms as described and defined in the base specification.
- Maintain the existing InfiniBand transport architecture, including RC, UC, UD, RD and XRC services, as well as Atomic operations.

A given end node may support multiple ports; most modern implementations in fact support two or more ports. This annex does not create a requirement that all ports on a given endnode support RoCE, thus a hybrid implementation of an endnode may exist with one or more ports connected to an Ethernet network and supporting RoCE and one or more ports connected to an IB network and supporting standard InfiniBand.

The port numbering rules defined in the base specification continue to apply. RoCE ports are included in the port number space.

A16.3 RoCE ON-THE-WIRE FORMATS

A16.3.1 PACKET HEADER LAYOUT

A RoCE packet has an identical layout and definition to an existing IB Packet as defined in Chapter 5 of the base specification, with the following exceptions:

- Every RoCE packet contains a GRH
- Every RoCE packet contains a MAC header in place of the IB LRH. The format and definition of the MAC header is outside the scope of this annex.
- Every RoCE packet contains an FCS as defined for Ethernet frames. The format and definition of this FCS is beyond the scope of this annex.

Conceptually, a MAC header has the same fundamental purpose as the IB LRH, which is to provide enough information about the packet source and destination to enable the underlying network, Ethernet in this case, to successfully switch the packet through the subnet such that it is delivered to the appropriate destination endpoint.

CA16-1: Packets generated by a RoCE port shall conform to the packet structure defined in Figure 343.

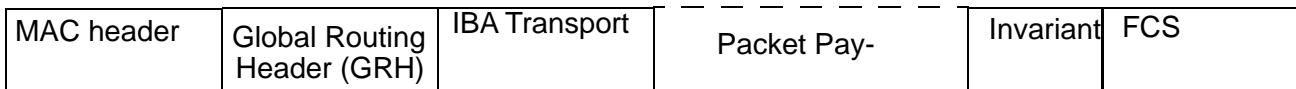


Figure 343 RoCE Packet Format

CA16-2: The fields comprising the MAC header are not defined in this annex, except that the value in the EtherType field shall be 0x8915, and except that the DMAC and SMAC fields shall be filled with the respective MAC addresses of the L2 destination and L2 source ports for the RoCE packet.

CA16-3: A RoCE packet shall not contain a Variant CRC. A RoCE packet shall contain an FCS appropriate to the Ethernet network being used. The definition of this FCS is outside the scope of this annex.

CA16-4: Each RoCE packet shall contain a valid GRH.

A16.3.2 ICRC CALCULATION

The Invariant CRC (ICRC) is calculated exactly as described in the base specification for the case where the GRH is present. Even though the LRH is not present in a RoCE packet, the CRC calculation includes 64 bits of '1' exactly as described in the base specification. The MAC header is not included in the ICRC calculation.

A16.4 MANAGEMENT CONSIDERATIONS

The InfiniBand Architecture specifies a number of management classes including Subnet Management, Communication (connection) Management, Performance Management, Device Management, Baseboard Management, SNMP Tunneling, Vendor specific, Application specific classes and Congestion Control. With the exception of Communication Management, the balance of these management classes are outside the scope of this annex.

The Subnet Management class and the Subnet Administration class are deprecated for subnets conforming to the annex. Instead, a subnet conforming to this annex is assumed to use standard Ethernet management practices for Layer 2 address assignment, fabric topology discovery and switch configuration.

Changes to the Communication Management class are addressed in section A16.5.

Compliance statement [CA16-1: on page 1913](#) Performance Management of the base specification requires an InfiniBand CA, Switch or Router to make performance and error statistics available through a Performance Management Agent. This requirement does not apply to RoCE ports.

There are two verbs which contain Capability Mask bits which are a fundamental part of the mechanism for defining how certain management classes are discovered. As will be seen below in sections A16.9.1 and section A16.9.2 describing changes to the Query HCA and Modify HCA verbs, certain of these capability bits are no longer applicable with respect to RoCE. For example, the IsSM, IsSMDDisabled, IsSNMPTunnelingSupported and IsClientReregistrationSupported capability mask bits are all eliminated. On the other hand there are two capability mask bits, IsDeviceManagementSupported and IsVendorClassSupported that are preserved for possible future use, even though the device management class and the vendor class are not currently defined in this annex.

It is expected that there is no InfiniBand management communication between an Ethernet and an InfiniBand management domain. Therefore, any InfiniBand method/attribute combination that refers to a RoCE port may return error code 7 in the MAD Common Status field (One or more fields in the attribute or attribute modifier contains an invalid value. Invalid values include reserved values and values that exceed architecturally defined limits).

A16.4.1 SUBNET MANAGEMENT

This annex enables the InfiniBand transport to be run directly on top of a non-IB network. Since InfiniBand's subnet management and its accompanying subnet administration architecture are solely concerned with Layer 2 address assignment, fabric topology discovery and switch configuration, it follows that definition of subnet management is outside the scope of this annex. Although there are no compliance statements contained within this annex mandating it, it is assumed by this annex that standard Ethernet-defined fabric management methods are applied to configuring and managing the Layer 2 subnet, including endpoint Layer 2 address assignment, fabric topology discovery and switch configuration.

CA16-5: A system conforming to this annex shall not be required to have a SM per subnet.

CA16-6: A RoCE port designed to be compliant with this annex shall not be required to support the functionality characterized as a Subnet Management Agent (SMA).

A16.4.2 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

Subnet administration is a feature of an IB subnet designed to provide a central repository for information concerning the fabric and its configuration. Although described separately, the base specification considers Subnet Administration (SA) to be a component part of subnet management. Thus, for systems designed to this annex, there are no specific requirements for subnet administration.

CA16-7: A system conforming to this annex shall not be required to provide an SA for any subnets.

Note that the SA has a few other functions beyond providing subnet configuration information, such as storing application ServiceRecords. By not requiring an SA, this annex also does not require that these other services be provided.

A16.4.3 MANAGEMENT INTERFACES

As defined in the base specification, a special Queue Pair, QP0 is defined solely for communication between subnet manager(s) and subnet management agents. Since such an IB-defined subnet management architecture is outside the scope of this annex, it follows that there is also no requirement that a port which conforms to this annex be associated with a QP0. Thus, for end nodes designed to conform to this annex, the concept of QP0 is undefined and unused for any port connected to an Ethernet network.

CA16-8: A packet arriving at a RoCE port containing a BTH with the destination QP field set to QP0 shall be silently dropped.

A16.4.4 MANAGEMENT MESSAGING

Section 13.4.6 Management Messaging in the base specification discusses requirements necessary for agents using MADs for messaging.

CA16-9: The default value for RespTimeValue shall be 19. The default value for SubnetTimeout shall be 18. These default values can be modified by Ethernet management practices.

The default SubnetTimeout value can be used as an upper bound estimate of InfiniBand PacketLifeTime, should no other information be available.

A MAD responder uses a reversible path to return a response packet to the original sender using only header information present in the request packet. The method for creating a packet to follow a reversible path through an InfiniBand fabric is specified in Section 13.5.4 (Response Generation and Reversible Paths) in the base specification. Constructing a re-

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
A response packet to follow a reversible path for a request packet received on a RoCE port is very similar. The entire process is as follows:

- The MAC header is generated through Ethernet-defined methods.
- The Source QP of the received packet is used as the Destination QP in the BTH of the response packet.
- The Destination QP of the received packet is used as the Source QP in the DETH of the response packet.
- The responder's P_Key used to match the P_Key in the received packet is used as the P_Key in the response packet.
- The Rate and MTU values are obtained using Ethernet management practices
- The Q_Key in the DETH of the response packet is set to the value of the Q_Key of the received packet.
- The SGID of the received packet is used as the DGID in the GRH of the response packet.
- The DGID of the received packet is used as the SGID in the GRH of the response packet.
- The FlowLabel and TrafficClass are copied from the GRH in the received packet.
- HopLimit in the GRH is set to 0xFF.
- Fields not otherwise specified in this section are filled in according to the requirements of the transport service.

A16.5 RoCE ADDRESSING

A16.5.1 ADDRESS ASSIGNMENT AND RESOLUTION

Layer 2 local addresses (i.e. SMAC, DMAC), and the methods by which those addresses are assigned, are outside the scope of this annex.

The means for resolving a GID to a local port address (i.e. SMAC or DMAC) are outside the scope of this annex. It is assumed that standard Ethernet mechanisms, such as ARP or Neighbor Discovery are used to maintain an appropriate address cache for RoCE ports.

A16.5.2 CONNECTION MANAGEMENT

RoCE utilizes the InfiniBand Architecture Communication Management protocol as defined in the base specification. Modifications to the specific MADs required to eliminate references to local addresses are contained in this section.

Communication Managers maintain the Connection State information during the lifetime of a connection, except for the Remote CM LID, which it is not required to maintain.

A16.5.2.1 REQ MESSAGE CONTENTS

CA16-10: When a connection is being established between RoCE ports, the Primary Local Port LID, Primary Remote Port LID, Alternate Local Port LID and Alternate Remote Port LID fields of the REQ message shall be Reserved and Ignored. The value of these fields shall not be checked or validated by a recipient of a REQ message.

A16.5.2.2 REJ MESSAGE CONTENTS

CA16-11: When a connection is being established between RoCE ports, the following reject reason codes shall not be sent as part of a REJ message:

- code 13: Primary Remote Port LID rejected
- code 19: Alternate Remote Port LID rejected

A16.5.2.3 LAP MESSAGE CONTENTS

CA16-12: When alternate paths are being established between RoCE ports, the Alternate Local Port LID and Alternate Remote Port LID fields are Reserved and Ignored. The value of these fields shall not be checked or validated by a recipient of a LAP message.

A16.5.2.4 APR MESSAGE CONTENTS

CA16-13: When alternate paths are being established between RoCE ports, the following APR status code shall not be sent as part of an APR message:

- code 7: Proposed Alternate Remote Port LID rejected.

A16.6 LINK LAYER CONSIDERATIONS

The InfiniBand Architecture defines several available transport services plus two encapsulations called Raw services. A Raw service is defined as one which does not use the InfiniBand transport. The base specification identifies a Raw packet as one containing a zero in the msb of the Link Next Header field of the LRH. Hence, the Raw services as defined in the base specification are provided by the link layer. Since RoCE does not use the InfiniBand-defined link layer, there is likewise no concept of RAW service, as defined in the base specification.

CA16-14: An implementation of an endnode claiming conformance to this annex shall not support the concept of a Raw service on a RoCE port.

A16.7 TRANSPORT CONSIDERATIONS

CA16-15: An end node containing a RoCE port which claims compliance to this annex shall be compliant with the InfiniBand transport as defined in Chapter 9 of the base specification, with the exceptions contained in this section.

Tables 60, 62 in the Transport Layer chapter (Chapter 9) of the base specification and Table 64 in the Software Transport Interface chapter (Chapter 10) of the base specification list the sources of various header fields and parameters of interest to the transport, or the means by which the values for these fields are computed. Each of the items relevant to the LRH is sourced either from an inbound packet (denoted in the table as 'link'), or is contained as part of the QP context or is defined by the WQE, or is computed from one of the above. Since RoCE does not define a link layer, the lines of these tables that refer to the LRH are no longer applicable for any RoCE port.

In addition, Table 64 contains a column labeled Raw IP and a column labeled Raw ET. These columns are not applicable for a port claiming compliance to this annex since Raw service is not supported by RoCE ports.

A16.7.1 TRANSPORT HEADER CHECKS

The base specification requires the transport layer to conduct a comprehensive set of checks of various header fields. These checks are designed to ensure that packets are delivered correctly to the destined endpoint port and to the correct QP within that endpoint. Since the base specification does not require the use of the GRH except in certain circumstances, the transport header validation protocol requires careful examination of the LRH (Local Route Header) to verify that an incoming packet has arrived at its proper destination.

RoCE packets are always required to contain a GRH. Included as part of the GRH are a source and destination GID (SGID, DGID). These values are end-to-end invariant and serve to uniquely identify the source and destination of a RoCE packet. The existing transport header checking validation protocol requires these fields to be carefully examined for all cases in which the GRH is present.

As specified above, RoCE packets do not contain an LRH, thus the portions of the transport header validation protocol devoted to verifying the fields of the LRH are eliminated for packets arriving on an endnode port that conforms to this annex.

A16.7.2 LOOPBACK

A RoCE port supports loopback via two methods. A loopback can be created either through a self-addressed packet (i.e. SGID == DGID) or through the use of the optional loopback indicator. As is specified in the base specification, the Loopback GID (0:0:0:0:0:0:1) is reserved for Raw services, which are not defined for RoCE. Thus, a packet which contains either an SGID or a DGID set to the loopback GID will be silently dropped by the transport in accordance with the base specification.

A16.7.3 STATIC RATE CONTROL

CA16-15.1.1: A RoCE port shall support static rate control.

Static rate control is described in section 9.11 of the Transport Layer chapter of the base specification. Static rate control ensures that a faster source port does not emit packets at a rate greater than a slower destination port's ability to consume them or a slower intermediate link's ability to deliver them. Mechanisms for determining the speed of various paths through an Ethernet fabric are outside the scope of this annex. It is up to an individual implementation to support Interpacket Delay (IPD) values appropriate for the fabric to which the port is attached.

A16.7.4 CONGESTION CONTROL

Congestion control as defined in [Annex A10: Congestion Control on page 1797](#) requires the detection of congestion in the switches on a VL basis. Once detected, the switch notifies the channel adapter which is the target of the packet using the FECN bit in the BTH. The channel adapter which is the target of the packet, in turn, instructs the source channel adapter to reduce its packet injection rate. The necessary thresholds and injection rates are configured by an InfiniBand Congestion Control Manager. Since the underlying mechanisms are based on InfiniBand switches and VLs, neither of which exist in an Ethernet fabric, this congestion control mechanism is not applicable to an Ethernet fabric. Thus, a CA claiming compliance to Annex A10 for its InfiniBand ports is not required to support any of the port attributes, counters or controls required by Annex A10 for its RoCE ports.

CA16-16: The B (BECN) and F (FECN) bits in the BTH devoted to congestion control as defined in [Annex A10: Congestion Control on page 1797](#) are unused and shall be ignored by a RoCE port.

In any case, the B (BECN) and F(FECN) bits are not covered by the invariant CRC.

A16.7.5 QoS MANAGEMENT

QoS Management as defined in [Annex A13: Quality of Service \(QoS\) on page 1863](#) makes use of InfiniBand capabilities such as VLs, VL arbitration and SL-to-VL mapping. It also relies on InfiniBand-defined performance metrics such as PortXmitData(VL), PortRecvData(SL) and PortXmitQueue(VL). Further, the InfiniBand QoS Manager is tightly coupled with Subnet Administration (SA) and is used to filter path requests based on QoS requirements. These underlying mechanisms and relationships are not applicable to Ethernet fabrics. Thus, a CA claiming compliance to Annex A13 for its InfiniBand ports is not required to support any of the port attributes, counters or controls associated with its RoCE ports.

A16.8 SOFTWARE TRANSPORT INTERFACE

The addressing structure used by a verbs consumer to access transport services through the software interface is called an address vector. In accordance with the principles of a layered architecture, a verbs consumer refers to both sources and destinations via a GID (Global ID).

A verbs consumer using a RoCE network relies strictly on so-called Layer 3 addressing (GIDs); layer 2 addresses (e.g. subnet local identifiers) are not passed across the verbs interface. Therefore, the concepts of a Base LID, LMC and Path bits do not apply to an implementation which conforms to this annex.

CA16-17: When accessing the services of a RoCE verbs provider, the source and destination identifiers contained in the address vector shall consist of GIDs; the address vector shall not contain layer 2 references (e.g. local addresses). Layer 2 references include source and destination local identifiers and LID Path Bits.

A16.8.1 SL, VL MANAGEMENT

InfiniBand defines an end-to-end service level, called SL. End-to-end service levels are represented hop-to-hop by Virtual Lanes (VLs). A virtual lane is implemented as a set of physical resources in an endnode's IB ports and in an InfiniBand switch. A verbs consumer accessing an IB port specifies its desired level of service by setting the SL. At each hop, the SL is mapped to a particular VL. The InfiniBand architecture supports up to 16 SLs, numbered zero through 15. The number of VLs supported by any given IB port or switch is a vendor differentiation item. VLs are defined at the InfiniBand link layer (layer 2); they do not exist on an Ethernet fabric.

Ethernet provides a construct, called a Priority Level which corresponds conceptually to InfiniBand's SLs. Eight priorities, numbered zero through seven are supported. As in InfiniBand, a verbs consumer accessing a RoCE port specifies its desired service level, which is then mapped to a given Ethernet Priority. The default mapping is as follows:

SL 0-7 are mapped directly to Priorities 0-7, respectively

SL 8-15 are reserved.

CA16-18: An attempt to use an Address Vector for a RoCE port containing a reserved SL value shall result in the Invalid Address Vector verb result.

A16.8.2 PARTITIONING

Methods to populate the P_Key table associated with a RoCE port are outside the scope of this annex. Note that this annex relies on the partition table being initialized at power on time with at least the default P_Key as

described in Chapter 10 (Software Transport Interface) of the base specification.

The P_Key contained in the BTH is of course validated for an inbound packet as required by the packet header validation protocols defined in Chapter 9 of the base specification.

A16.9 VERBS CONSIDERATIONS

The following sections specify modifications required to any verbs, for example to eliminate references to a local address, or to force the verb to provide a global identifier even for locally routed packets.

A16.9.1 QUERY HCA

The Port Attribute List Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Base LID & LMC fields are unused and are ignored.
- The maximum number of virtual lanes supported by this HCA is unused and is ignored.
- The Optional InitTypeReply value is unused and is ignored.
- The Subnet Manager address information for each RoCE port of this HCA is unused and is ignored.
- The CapabilityMask bits IsSM, IsSMDDisabled, IsSNMPTunnelingSupported, IsClientReregistrationSupported are unused and are ignored.
- A new attribute is added to the Port Attribute list (one for each port on this HCA) indicating the port type; whether the port is a RoCE port or an IB port.

A16.9.2 MODIFY HCA

The Port Attribute List Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The CapabilityMask bits IsSM, IsSNMPTunnelingSupported are unused and are reserved.

A16.9.3 CREATE ADDRESS HANDLE

The Address Vector of the Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID field is unused and are reserved.
- The Source GID index is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.

- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set, regardless of the selected transport service.

The Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this QP is associated with a RoCE port.

A16.9.4 MODIFY ADDRESS HANDLE

The Address Vector of the Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID field is unused and is reserved.
- The Source GID index is set for all destinations
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set, regardless of the selected transport service.

The Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this QP is associated with a RoCE port.

A16.9.5 QUERY ADDRESS HANDLE

The Address Vector Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is ignored.
- The Source GID index is included for all destinations
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations
- The Source Path bits are unused and are ignored.
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

A16.9.6 MODIFY QUEUE PAIR / MODIFY XRC INITIATOR QP / MODIFY XRC TARGET QP

The Address Vector Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is reserved.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local)
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local)
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Alternate Path Address Information Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is reserved.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this QP is associated with a RoCE port.

A16.9.7 QUERY QUEUE PAIR / QUERY XRC INITIATOR QP / QUERY XRC TARGET QP

The Primary Address Vector Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is ignored.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are ignored.
- The Source GID Index is returned for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is returned for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Alternate Path Address Information Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is ignored.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are ignored.
- The Source GID Index is returned for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is returned for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

A16.9.8 MODIFY EE CONTEXT ATTRIBUTES

The Primary Address Vector Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is reserved.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Alternate Path Address Vector Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is reserved.
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are reserved.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this EE context is associated with a RoCE port.

A16.9.9 QUERY EE CONTEXT

The Primary Address Vector Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is ignored
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are ignored.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local)
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

The Alternate Path Address Information Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCE port is changed as follows:

- The Destination LID is unused and is ignored
- The Source Path Bits are unused and are ignored.
- The Source GID Index is set for all destinations (global and local)
- The Destination GID is set for all destinations (global and local).
- The Send Global Routing Header Flag is set.

A16.9.10 ATTACH QP TO MULTICAST GROUP

If the QP is associated with a RoCE port, the Input Modifiers for this verb are changed as follows:

- The Multicast group MLID is unused and is ignored.

The Output Modifiers for this verb when associated with a RoCE port are changed as follows:

- “Invalid multicast MLID” is removed as a valid Verb Result

A16.9.11 DETACH QP FROM MULTICAST GROUP

If the QP is associated with a RoCE port, the Input Modifiers for this verb are changed as follows:

- The Multicast group MLID is unused and is ignored.

If the QP is associated with a RoCE port, the Output Modifiers for this verb are changed as follows:

- "Invalid multicast MLID" is removed as a valid Verb Result

A16.9.12 POLL FOR COMPLETION

The output modifier of the Poll for Completion is changed as follows:

- If the remote port is a RoCE port, the remote port address and QP information returned for datagram services (shown in Table 97 of the base specification) do not include the 16-bit SLID or the DLID path bits.

A16.9.13 GET SPECIAL QP

For a given HCA port, the Get Special QP verb returns the handle for the following special QP types: SMI QP (QP0), GSI QP (QP1), Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethertype. Compliance statement [C11-13: on page 622](#) requires that the verb support QP0 and QP1. The optional compliance statement [o11-1: on page 622](#) requires the verb to support the Raw Datagram types if the HCA supports them. Since there is no QP0 associated with a RoCE port, and since a RoCE port does not support either Raw datagram type, these compliance statements do not apply to a RoCE port with respect to QP0 or Raw Datagram QPs.

A16.9.14 POST SEND REQUEST

The Post Send Request verb is modified to eliminate Raw as one of the possible service types. Table 93 in the base document is modified to effectively eliminate the last row of the table governing the Raw service type.

CA16-19: A QP associated with a RoCE port does not support any operations for the Raw service type.

A16.9.15 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

The base specification describes an optional Client Reregistration Event generated by the CI when the SMA receives this request from the SM.

CA16-20: A RoCE port shall not support Client Reregistration.

The base specification describes an optional Port Change event which is triggered when one of a number of port attributes change.

CA16-21: A RoCE port shall not support the optional Port Change Event.

A16.10 CHANNEL ADAPTERS

The base specification defines specific hardware entities such as channel adapters and switches which implement all layers of the InfiniBand Architecture including the InfiniBand-defined physical and link layers. Chapter 17 of the base specification sets forth specific requirements for a channel adapter. Most of the compliance statements contained in Chapter 17 of the base specification apply to a CA which supports one or more RoCE ports. This section describes the exceptions.

A16.10.1 LOADING THE P_KEY TABLE

Compliance statement [C17-7: on page 1193](#) describes requirements for setting the P_Key table based on an assumption that the P_Key table is set directly by a Subnet Manager. However, Ethernet fabrics and the RoCE ports that are attached to them do not support InfiniBand Subnet Management. Therefore, compliance statement [C17-7: on page 1193](#) does not apply to RoCE ports.

Methods for setting the P_Key table associated with a RoCE port are not defined in this specification, except for the requirements for a default P_Key described elsewhere in this annex.

A16.10.2 LOCALLY ROUTED PACKETS

Compliance statement [C17-9: on page 1196](#) states that a CA shall be able to source and sink locally routed packets, which are described as those containing no GRH. However, consistent with other sections of this annex, each RoCE packet is required to contain a GRH. Thus, [C17-9: on page 1196](#) is replaced by the following compliance statement.

CA16-22: A CA shall be able to source and sink locally routed packets, including those containing a GRH in the case of a RoCE packet.

A16.10.3 BACKPRESSURE, DEADLOCK PREVENTION

Compliance statements [C17-19: on page 1197](#) and [C17-20: on page 1197](#) place specific limitations on a CA's ability to apply backpressure. For a CA claiming compliance to this annex, these requirements do not apply to RoCE ports.

A16.10.4 INBOUND PACKET CHECKING

Compliance statement [C17-21: on page 1198](#) requires a CA to check for link, network and transport layer errors in all incoming packets. However, a RoCE port does not implement either the link or network layers. Thus, for CAs which claim compliance to this annex, [C17-21: on page 1198](#) is replaced as follows:

CA16-23: The CA shall check for link, network and transport layer errors in all incoming packets received on an InfiniBand port. For incoming packets received on a RoCE port, the CA shall check for transport layer errors.

A16.10.5 SUPPORT FOR QP0

Compliance statement [C17-24: on page 1200](#) requires each port of a CA to support QP0. This requirement is removed for any RoCE ports supported by a CA.

IBTA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

ANNEX A17: RoCEv2 (IP ROUTABLE ROCE)

A17.1 INTRODUCTION

This annex is Optional Normative, meaning that implementation of the feature described by this Annex is Optional, but if present, the implementation must comply with the compliance statements contained within this annex. This specification follows the spirit of the RoCE Annex in defining a new InfiniBand protocol variant that uses an IP network layer (with an IP header instead of InfiniBand's GRH) thus allowing IP routing of its packets.

A17.2 OVERVIEW

A17.2.1 THE INFINIBAND ARCHITECTURE

The InfiniBand Architecture offers a rich set of I/O services based on an RDMA access method and message passing semantics. Included are a variety of transport services, reliable and unreliable, connected and unconnected, support for atomic operations, multicast and others.

InfiniBand defines a layered architecture that specifies the first four layers of the OSI reference stack including the physical, link, network and transport layers as well as an accompanying management framework. In addition, the IB specification defines a software interface and its accompanying verbs which are designed to allow smooth access to the services provided by the InfiniBand Architecture.

A17.2.2 RDMA OVER CONVERGED ETHERNET (RoCE)

RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE) is an InfiniBand Trade Association Standard designed to provide InfiniBand Transport Services on Ethernet Networks⁵⁶. RoCE preserves the InfiniBand Verbs Semantics together with its Transport and Network Protocols and replaces the InfiniBand Link and Physical Layers with those of Ethernet. The network management infrastructure for RoCE is also that of Ethernet.

56. http://www.infinibandta.org/content/pages.php?pg=about_us_RoCE

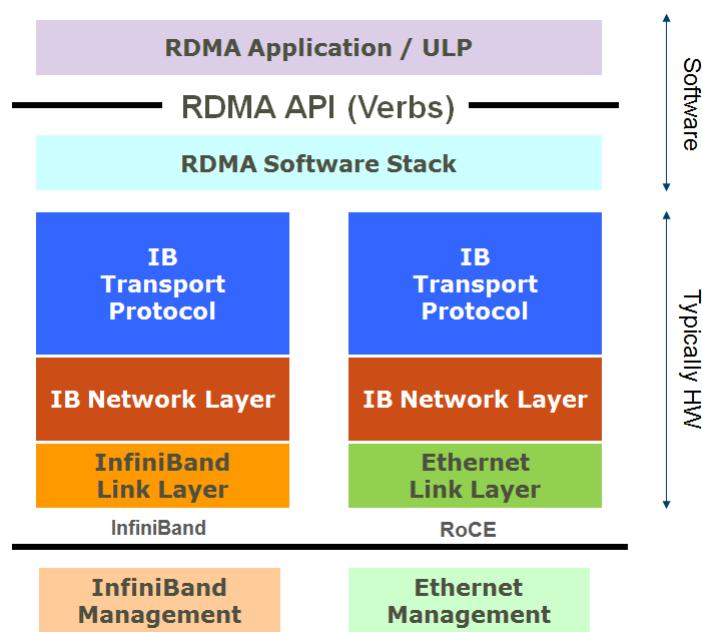


Figure 344

InfiniBand and RoCE Protocol Stacks

A17.2.3 THE NEED FOR (IP) ROUTABLE RDMA

RoCE packets are regular Ethernet frames⁵⁷ that carry an Ethertype value⁵⁸ allocated by IEEE which indicates that the next header is a RoCE GRH.



Figure 345

RoCE Packet Format

Since RoCE traffic doesn't carry an IP header, it can't be routed across the boundaries of Ethernet L2 Subnets using regular IP routers. Under this scheme, RoCE provides RDMA services for communication within an Ethernet L2 domain.

57. Including VLANs and all other Ethernet header variations as defined by IEEE 802

58. 0x8915

A17.2.4 RoCEv2 (IP ROUTABLE RoCE)

RoCEv2 is a straightforward extension of the RoCE protocol that involves a simple modification of the RoCE packet format. Instead of the GRH, RoCEv2 packets carry an IP header which allows traversal of IP L3 Routers and a UDP header that serves as a stateless encapsulation layer for the RDMA Transport Protocol Packets over IP.

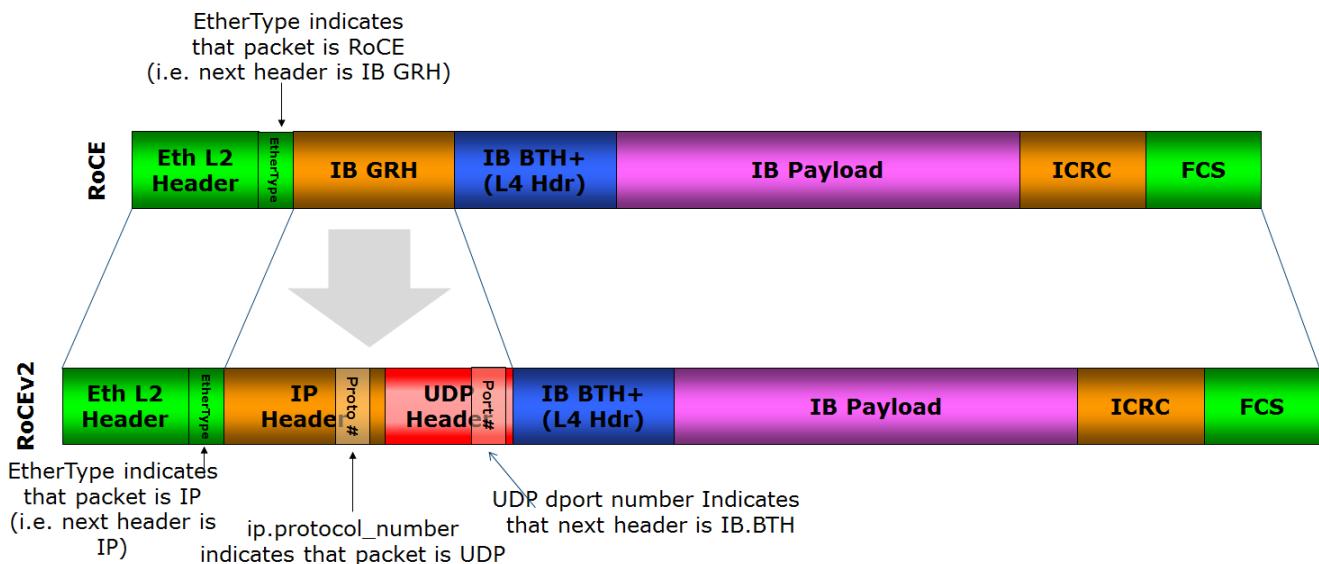


Figure 346 RoCEv2 and RoCE Frame Format Differences

RoCEv2 packets use a well-known UDP Destination Port (dport) value that unambiguously distinguishes them in a stateless manner.

As an additional benefit, following common practices in UDP encapsulated protocols, the UDP Source Port (sport) field of RoCEv2 packets serves as an opaque flow identifier that can be used by the networking infrastructure for packet forwarding optimizations - see [Section 17.9.4, "ECMP for RoCEv2," on page 1948](#).

Since this approach exclusively affects the packet format on the wire, and due to the fact that with RDMA semantics packets are generated and consumed below the API, applications can operate over any form of RDMA service (including RoCEv2) in a completely transparent way⁵⁹ (see Figure 347).

59. Widespread RDMA APIs are IP based for all existing RDMA technologies

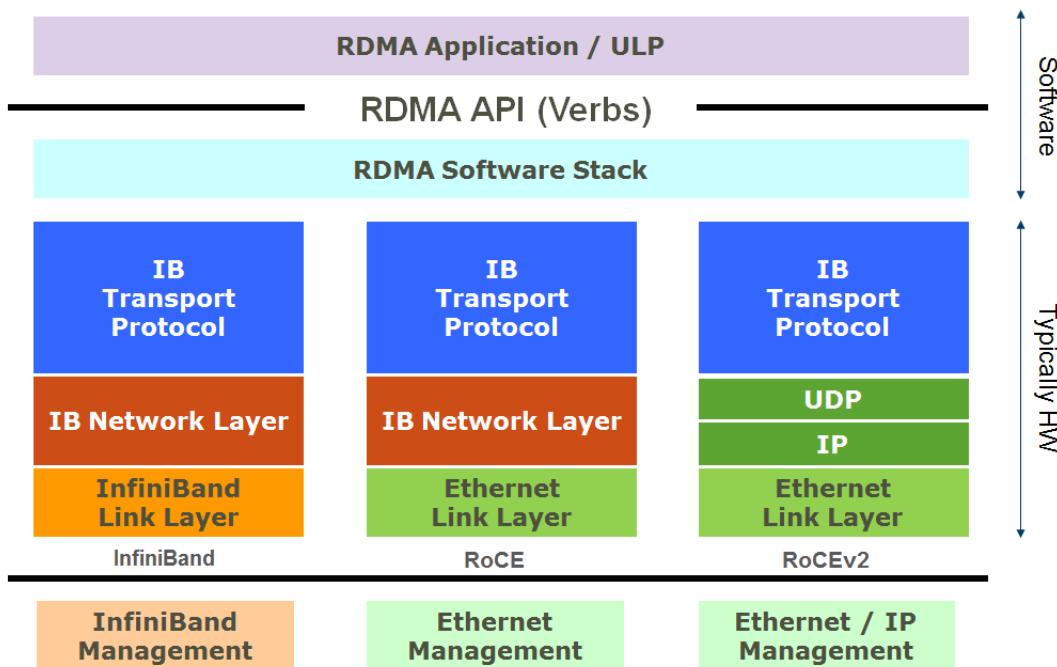


Figure 347 RoCEv2 Protocol Stack

A17.3 RoCEv2 PACKET FORMAT

The RoCEv2 Packet format is shown in Figure 348.



Figure 348 RoCEv2 Packet Format

A17.3.1 ETHERTYPES AND IP HEADER FIELDS

RoCEv2 supports both IPv4 and IPv6. The corresponding EtherType values as well as IPv4 and IPv6 header fields for RoCEv2 packets are described in [Section 17.3.1.1, “RoCEv2 with IPv4,” on page 1932](#) and [Section 17.3.1.2, “RoCEv2 with IPv6,” on page 1933](#) respectively.

- CA17-1:** RoCEv2 Ports shall support both RoCEv2 with IPv4 and RoCEv2 with IPv6 packet formats.
- CA17-2:** RoCEv2 Packets shall conform to the format depicted in Figure 348 with individual fields set as mandated by either [Section 17.3.1.1, "RoCEv2 with IPv4," on page 1932](#) or [Section 17.3.1.2, "RoCEv2 with IPv6," on page 1933](#).

A17.3.1.1 RoCEv2 WITH IPv4

The Ethertype value for IPv4 as assigned by IEEE is 0x0800.

The format of the IPv4 header and its fields are specified by the IETF in RFC791, RFC2474 and RFC3168. The sub-sections below define the values for relevant fields in the IPv4 header of RoCEv2 packets.

A17.3.1.1.1 INTERNET HEADER LENGTH (IHL)

CA17-3: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4, the IHL field shall be set to 5.

A17.3.1.1.2 DIFFERENTIATED SERVICES CODEPOINT (DSCP)

CA17-4: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4, the DSCP field shall be set to the value in the Traffic Class component of the RDMA Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.1.1.3 EXPLICIT CONGESTION NOTIFICATION (ECN)

RoCEv2 makes use of the ECN field in the IPv4 header for signaling of congestion as defined by the IETF in RFC3168. See [Section 17.9.3, "RoCEv2 Congestion Management," on page 1947](#).

For HCAs that support RoCEv2 Congestion Management, the ECN field in the IPv4 header of a RoCEv2 packet may be set to '01' or '10' to indicate that the packet is subject to marking in the network to indicate congestion.

CA17-5: For HCAs that don't support RoCEv2 Congestion Management, the ECN field in the IPv4 header of a RoCEv2 packet shall be set to '00'.

A17.3.1.1.4 TOTAL LENGTH

CA17-6: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4, the Total Length field shall be set to the length of the IPv4 packet in bytes including the IPv4 header and up to and including the ICRC.

A17.3.1.1.5 FLAGS

CA17-7: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 the Flags field shall be set to '010' (don't fragment bit is set).

A17.3.1.1.6 FRAGMENT OFFSET

CA17-8: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 the Fragment Offset field shall be set to 0.

A17.3.1.1.7 TIME TO LIVE

CA17-9: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 the Time to Live field shall be set to the value in the Hop Limit component of the RDMA Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.1.1.8 PROTOCOL

CA17-10: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 the Protocol field shall be set to 0x11 (UDP).

A17.3.1.1.9 SOURCE AND DESTINATION IP ADDRESSES

CA17-11: The Source IP Address of RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 shall be set to the IPv4 address encoded in the Port GID entry referenced by the “port” and “SGID index” components of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

CA17-12: The Destination IP Address of RoCEv2 packets with IPv4 shall be set to the IPv4 address encoded in the Dgid component of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.1.2 RoCEv2 WITH IPv6

The Ethertype value for IPv6 as assigned by IEEE is 0x86DD.

The format of the IPv6 header and its fields are specified by the IETF in RFC2460, RFC2474 and RFC3168. The sub-sections below define the values for relevant fields in the IPv6 header of RoCEv2 packets.

A17.3.1.2.1 DIFFERENTIATED SERVICES CODEPOINT (DSCP)

CA17-13: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv6, the DSCP field shall be set to the value in the Traffic Class component of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.1.2.2 EXPLICIT CONGESTION NOTIFICATION (ECN)

RoCEv2 makes use of the ECN field in the IPv6 header for signaling of congestion as defined by the IETF in RFC3168. See [Section 17.9.3, “RoCEv2 Congestion Management,” on page 1947](#).

For HCAs that support RoCEv2 Congestion Management, the ECN field in the IPv6 header of a RoCEv2 packet may be set to ‘01’ or ‘10’ to indicate that the packet is subject to marking in the network to indicate congestion.

CA17-14: For HCAs that don't support RoCEv2 Congestion Management, the ECN field in the IPv6 header of a RoCEv2 packet shall be set to '00'.

A17.3.1.2.3 PAYLOAD LENGTH

CA17-15: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv6, the Payload Length field shall be set to the length of the IPv6 packet payload starting from the first byte after the IPv6 header (i.e. the BTH) up to and including the 4 bytes of the ICRC

A17.3.1.2.4 NEXT HEADER

CA17-16: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv6 the Next Header field shall be set to 0x11 (UDP).

A17.3.1.2.5 HOP LIMIT

CA17-17: For RoCEv2 packets with IPv6 the Hop Limit field shall be set to the value in the Hop Limit component of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.1.2.6 SOURCE AND DESTINATION IP ADDRESSES

CA17-18: The Source IP Address of RoCEv2 packets with IPv6 shall be set to the IPv6 address in the Port GID entry referenced by the "port" and "SGID index" components of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

CA17-19: The Destination IP Address of RoCEv2 packets with IPv6 shall be set to the IPv6 address in the DGID component of the Address Vector associated with the packet.

A17.3.2 UDP HEADER FIELDS

The UDP header format is defined by IETF in RFC768. The sub-sections below define the values for relevant fields in the UDP header of RoCEv2 packets.

A17.3.2.1 SOURCE PORT

The Source Port field in the UDP header of a RoCEv2 packet may be used by network devices as a component in the selection of a route among multiple possible alternative routes - see [Section 17.9.4, "ECMP for RoCEv2," on page 1948](#). For that reason, HCAs should use a fixed value across packets where ordering matters between them (e.g. packets of a connected QP).

A17.3.2.2 DESTINATION PORT

CA17-20: The Destination Port field in the UDP header of RoCEv2 packets shall be set to the value allocated by IANA⁶⁰ for use with RoCEv2.

A17.3.2.3 LENGTH

CA17-21: The Length field in the UDP header of RoCEv2 packets shall be set to the number of bytes counting from the beginning of the UDP header up to and including the 4 bytes of the ICRC.

A17.3.2.4 CHECKSUM

The Checksum field in the UDP header of RoCEv2 packets should be set to 0.

A17.3.3 ICRC FOR RoCEv2 PACKETS

RoCEv2 implements a 32b end-to-end CRC (denoted ICRC) that covers all invariant fields of the packet and offers protection beyond the coverage of the Ethernet Frame Checksum (FCS) that is usually updated hop-by-hop in the fabric.

CA17-22: The rules for generation/checking of the ICRC of RoCEv2 packets follow the ICRC calculation in RoCE and InfiniBand as defined in [7.8.1 Invariant CRC \(ICRC\) - 4 Bytes on page 218](#) subject to:

- (a) The ICRC calculation starts with 64 bits of '1'.⁶¹
- (b) The ICRC calculation continues with the entire IP datagram starting with the first byte of the IP header up until and including the last IB Payload byte right before the ICRC field itself.
- (c) The variant fields in the IP header are replaced with '1s for the purpose of the ICRC calculation/check so that changes to these fields along the way don't affect the calculated ICRC value.

For RoCEv2 over IPv4 the fields replaced with '1s for the purpose of ICRC calculation are:

- Time to Live
- Header Checksum
- Type of Service (DSCP and ECN).

For RoCEv2 over IPv6 the fields replaced with '1s for the purpose of ICRC calculation are:

- Traffic Class (DSCP and ECN)
- Flow Label

60. Once allocated by IANA will be updated to include the actual value

61. This is to make it equivalent to the RoCE(v1) ICRC that runs 64 bits of '1' (dummy LRH) prior to the GRH through the ICRC machine following the spirit of the IB ICRC calculation ([7.8.1 Invariant CRC \(ICRC\) - 4 Bytes on page 218](#))

- Hop Limit.

(d) UDP Checksum field is replaced with '1s for the purpose of the ICRC calculation/check.

A17.3.4 RoCEv2 INBOUND PACKET VALIDATION

CA17-23: RoCEv2 packets shall undergo validation subject to the explicit modifications defined in [Section 17.4, "InfiniBand Transport Protocol Spec Considerations," on page 1936](#).

In addition,

CA17-24: Received RoCEv2 packets, that don't conform to the rules set in [Section 17.3.1, "Ethertypes and IP Header Fields," on page 1931](#), [Section 17.3.2, "UDP Header Fields," on page 1934](#) and [Section 17.3.3, "ICRC for RoCEv2 Packets," on page 1935](#) shall be silently dropped.

A17.4 INFINIBAND TRANSPORT PROTOCOL SPEC CONSIDERATIONS

This section describes adaptations to elements of normative behavior defined in the InfiniBand Transport Protocol Specification as they apply to RoCEv2.

CA17-25: An HCA containing a RoCEv2 port which claims compliance to this annex shall be compliant with the InfiniBand transport as defined in Chapter 9 of the base specification, subject to the adaptations and exceptions explicitly called out in this section.

A17.4.1 RoCEv2 ADDRESSING

A17.4.1.1 L3 ADDRESSES

For simplicity in the interpretation of the IB Base Specification text, RoCEv2 L3 Addresses are interchangeably referred to as GIDs. As GIDs have the same format as IPv6 addresses, for RoCEv2 with IPv6, the corresponding IPv6 Source IP (SIP) and Destination IP (DIP) Addresses are simply referred to as SGID and DGID. For RoCEv2 with IPv4, the corresponding IPv4 Source IP (SIP) and Destination IP (DIP) Addresses are encoded into the SGID and DGID respectively following common rules for IPv4-mapped IPv6 addresses namely: GID =::ffff:<IPv4 Address>.

A17.4.1.2 L2 ADDRESSES

All references in the Volume 1 Specification to the LRH and its fields are Not Applicable to RoCEv2 ports.

A17.4.2 ADDRESS VECTOR

The InfiniBand Specification defines an Address Vector that is used to denote a remote destination and the path parameters selected to communicate with it. ([11.2.2 Address Management Verbs on page 598](#) and [11.2.5.2 Modify Queue Pair on page 611](#)).

The Address Vector fields are manipulated via the “Software Transport Interface” and passed down to the Transport Layer for the generation of outgoing and validation of incoming RoCEv2 packets.

RoCEv2 Address Vectors include L2 and L3 address information as well as other path components (e.g. QoS, Hop Limit, etc). The Address Vector components retain their specified behavior with the exceptions explicitly called out in this section:

As with RoCE, the “Send Global Routing Header Flag” in the Address Vector is always set to TRUE for RoCEv2.

Source L3 Addresses (SGIDs) are not explicitly stored in the Address Vector but obtained by reference. The Address Vector includes a SGID Index that points to an entry in a Source GID Table that is maintained per port as described in [Section 17.4.3, “Port GID Table,” on page 1938](#). The GID type as obtained from the selected SGID entry determines the protocol for outbound packet generation - see [Section 17.8, “Interoperability with RoCE Endnodes,” on page 1945](#).

As with RoCE, the mechanism for RoCEv2 L3 to L2 Address Resolution is outside of the scope of this specification. It is assumed that implementations follow common practices and use existing OS services to perform this task (e.g. use ARP and routing infrastructure in the host).

For RoCEv2, the DLID component in the Address Vector is generalized to become the “Destination L2 Address” and may be used to carry an already resolved DMAC across the Software Transport Interface (Create Address Handle verb). In this case, the implementation may use the provided “Destination L2 Address” as-is for the generation of packets associated with the Address Vector in question⁶². Alternatively, by setting the “Destination L2 Address” component of the Address Vector to the value 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF, the L3 to L2 Address Resolution is effectively carried out by the implementation of the corresponding verb (“Create Address Handle” and “Modify QP”).

The “Source Path Bits” component of the Address Vector is not applicable for RoCEv2 ports. The Source L2 Address for RoCEv2 packets is implied

62. This allows L3 to L2 Address Resolution to happen before the generation of the Address Vector as is the case with the current RDMA CM implementation in Linux

1 by the selected SGID of the Address Vector and obtained by the implementation using common services of the underlying OS infrastructure.
2

3 The SL component in the Address Vector is used to determine the
4 Ethernet Priority of generated RoCEv2 packets. SL 0-7 are mapped directly
5 to Priorities 0-7, respectively. SL 8-15 are reserved.
6

A17.4.3 PORT GID TABLE

7 Every RoCEv2 port maintains a port GID table that contains all L3 Ad-
8 dresses that have been configured to the port as described in [10.2.2.1](#)
9 [Source Addressing on page 462](#)
10

11 Addresses in the RoCEv2 Port GID Table can be of type “IPv4”, “IPv6” or
12 “IB GID⁶³”. A new “GID type” attribute is added to the Port GID Table En-
13 tries of RoCEv2 ports to denote the L3 Address type.
14

15 **CA17-26:** RoCEv2 Port GID Table entries shall have a “GID type” attribute
16 that denotes the L3 Address type among “IPv4”, “IPv6” and “IB GID”.
17

18 Protocol selection for outbound packet generation is based on the GID
19 type of the selected GID Table entry as described in [Section 17.8, “In-](#)
20 [teroperability with RoCE Endnodes,” on page 1945.](#)
21

22 The software stack is responsible for maintaining the GID table following
23 creation/removal of L3 addresses to the port. This is typically achieved
24 through interaction (e.g. subscription to callback/event services) with the
25 OS and its host administrative interfaces.
26

A17.4.4 GRH CHECKS

27 [9.6.1.2 GRH Checks on page 297](#) defines the rules for checking of the
28 GRH (L3 header) of received InfiniBand packets. As RoCEv2 packets
29 carry an IP header instead of the GRH the following rules replace those
30 mandated by the base specification.
31

32 All RoCEv2 packets carry an IP header and hence [C9-43.1.1: on page 298](#)
33 and [C9-43.1.2: on page 298](#) are not applicable for RoCEv2.
34

35 RoCEv2 packets have a Next Header / Protocol field set to 0x11 (UDP)
36 and hence [C9-44: on page 298](#) is not applicable for RoCEv2.
37

A17.4.4.1 IP VERSION

38 [C9-45: on page 298](#) is replaced by:
39

40 63. For interoperability with RoCE as described in [Section 17.8,](#)
41 [“Interoperability with RoCE Endnodes,” on page 1945](#)
42

CA17-27: For RoCEv2 with IPv6, if the version number is anything other than 6, the packet shall be silently dropped. For RoCEv2 with IPv4, if the version number is anything other than 4, the packet shall be silently dropped.

A17.4.4.2 ADDRESS VALIDATION RULES

[9.6.1.2.3 GRH:SGID, GRH:DGUID on page 298](#) mandates L3 Address validation rules for inbound packets. These rules apply to RoCEv2 packets. For the purpose of these checks, the Source and Destination GIDs of RoCEv2 packets with IPv6 are the IPv6 SIP and DIP addresses respectively. For RoCEv2 with IPv4, the SGID and DGID are respectively obtained from the IPv4 SIP and DIP addresses following the common practice used to map an IPv4 address into an IPv6 one namely: GID =::ffff:<IPv4>.

In addition, the DGID check is amended to include verification of protocol type as detailed in [Section 17.8, “Interoperability with RoCE Endnodes,” on page 1945](#)

A17.4.5 UNRELIABLE DATAGRAM (UD)

A17.4.5.1 UD COMPLETION QUEUE ENTRIES (CQEs)

For UD, the Completion Queue Entry (CQE) includes remote address information (see [11.4.2.1 Poll for Completion on page 675](#)). For RoCEv2, the remote address information comprises the source L2 Address and a flag that indicates if the received frame is an IPv4, IPv6 or RoCE packet.

A17.4.5.2 SCATTERING OF THE L3 HEADER IN UD

The first 40 bytes of user posted UD Receive Buffers are reserved for the L3 header of the incoming packet (as per the InfiniBand Spec Section 11.4.1.2). In RoCEv2, this area is filled up with the IP header. IPv6 header uses the entire 40 bytes. IPv4 headers use the 20 bytes in the second half of the reserved 40 bytes area (i.e. offset 20 from the beginning of the receive buffer). In this case, the content of the first 20 bytes is undefined.

A17.4.6 IB RAW DATAGRAMS

The InfiniBand Architecture defines a Raw service which does not use the InfiniBand transport (see [9.8.4 Raw datagrams on page 420](#)). The Raw services are provided by the InfiniBand link layer. Similarly to RoCE, since RoCEv2 does not use the InfiniBand link layer, IB RAW datagrams, namely Raw Ethertype and Raw IPv6, are not applicable for RoCEv2.

CA17-28: An implementation of an HCA claiming conformance to this annex shall not support the concept of IB Raw Datagrams on a RoCEv2 port.

As follows from the above, all references to Raw Packets are not applicable to RoCEv2 ports.

A17.4.7 INFINIBAND PARTITIONING

Methods to populate the P_Key table associated with a RoCEv2 port are outside the scope of this annex. Note that this annex relies on the partition table being initialized at power on time with at least the default P_Key as described in Chapter [Chapter 10: Software Transport Interface on page 460](#). The P_Key contained in the BTH is validated for inbound packets as required by the packet header validation protocols defined in Chapter 9 of the base specification.

A17.4.8 INFINIBAND CONGESTION CONTROL

Congestion Management for RoCEv2 is specified in [Section 17.9.3, “RoCEv2 Congestion Management,” on page 1947](#). InfiniBand Congestion Control as defined in [Annex A10: Congestion Control on page 1797](#) is not applicable to RoCEv2 ports. Thus, a CA claiming compliance to Annex A10 for its InfiniBand ports is not required to support any of the port attributes, counters or controls required by Annex A10 for its RoCEv2 ports.

CA17-29: The B (BECN) and F (FECN) bits in the BTH devoted to congestion control as defined in [Annex A10: Congestion Control on page 1797](#) are unused and shall be ignored by a RoCEv2 port.

A17.4.9 INFINIBAND QOS

QoS Management as defined in [Annex A13: Quality of Service \(QoS\) on page 1863](#) is based on InfiniBand Link Layer capabilities that are not applicable to RoCEv2 ports. Thus, a CA claiming compliance to Annex A13 for its InfiniBand ports is not required to support any of the port attributes counters or controls associated with its RoCEv2 ports.

A17.5 INFINIBAND VERBS CONSIDERATIONS

The following sections specify modifications to InfiniBand verbs required for RoCEv2 ports.

CA17-30: RoCEv2 HCAs shall adopt the modifications to verbs described in this section.

A17.5.1 QUERY HCA

The Port Attribute List Output Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCEv2 port is changed as follows:

- The Base LID & LMC fields are unused and shall be ignored.
- The maximum number of virtual lanes supported by this HCA is unused and shall be ignored.
- The Optional InitTypeReply value is unused and shall be ignored.

- The Subnet Manager address information for each RoCE port of this HCA is unused and shall be ignored.
- The CapabilityMask bits IsSM, IsSMDDisabled, IsSNMPTunnelingSupported, IsClientReregistrationSupported are unused and shall be ignored.
- A new value (“RoCEv2”) shall be added for the port-type attribute of the Port Attributes list to denote that the port is of RoCEv2 type.
- A new “RoCE Supported” capability bit shall be added to the Port Attributes list. This capability bit applies exclusively to ports of the new “RoCEv2” type. When set, it denotes that the port is capable of operating simultaneously in RoCEv2 and RoCE modes. See [Section 17.8, “Interoperability with RoCE Endnodes,” on page 1945.](#)

A17.5.2 MODIFY HCA

The Port Attribute List Input Modifier for this verb when associated with a RoCEv2 port shall be changed as follows:

- The CapabilityMask bits IsSM, IsSNMPTunnelingSupported are unused and are reserved.

A17.5.3 CREATE/MODIFY/QUERY ADDRESS HANDLE

The Address Vector component shall be modified in accordance with [Section 17.4.2, “Address Vector,” on page 1937.](#)

For CREATE/MODIFY ADDRESS HANDLE, the Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when the QP is associated with a RoCEv2 port.

A17.5.4 MODIFY/QUERY QUEUE PAIR / MODIFY/QUERY XRC TARGET QP

The Address Vector and Alternate Path components shall be modified in accordance with [Section 17.4.2, “Address Vector,” on page 1937.](#)

For MODIFY QUEUE PAIR / MODIFY XRC TARGET QP, the Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this QP is associated with a RoCEv2 port.

A17.5.5 MODIFY/QUERY EE CONTEXT

The Primary Address Vector and Alternate Path components shall be modified in accordance with [Section 17.4.2, “Address Vector,” on page 1937.](#)

For MODIFY EE CONTEXT, the Invalid Address Vector error may be returned due to the use of a reserved SL value (SL 8-15 are reserved) when this EE CONTEXT is associated with a RoCEv2 port.

A17.5.6 ATTACH/DETACH QP TO/FROM MULTICAST GROUP

If the QP is associated with a RoCEv2 port, the Input Modifiers for this verb shall be changed as follows:

- The Multicast group MLID is unused and shall be ignored.

The Output Modifiers for this verb when associated with a RoCE port shall be changed as follows:

- "Invalid multicast MLID" is removed as a valid Verb Result

A17.5.7 POLL FOR COMPLETION

The output modifier of the Poll for Completion shall be changed as follows:

- If the port is a RoCEv2 port, the remote port address and QP information returned for datagram services (shown in [Table 103 Datagram addressing information on page 679](#)) shall be modified in accordance with [Section 17.4.5.1, "UD Completion Queue Entries \(CQEs\)," on page 1939](#)

A17.5.8 GET SPECIAL QP

Since there is no QP0 associated with a RoCEv2 port, and since a RoCEv2 port does not support either Raw datagram type, for a RoCEv2 port, Get Special QP only applies to the GSI QP (QP1).

Thus compliance statement [C11-13: on page 622](#) does not apply to a RoCEv2 port with respect to QP0, and compliance statement [o11-1: on page 622](#) does not apply. An attempt to call GET SPECIAL QP on a RoCEv2 port for a QP other than QP1 shall return an "Invalid Special QP Type" error.

A17.5.9 POST SEND REQUEST

The Post Send Request verb shall be modified to eliminate Raw as one of the possible service types. The "Operation Type Matrix" under the POST SEND REQUEST verb in the base document is modified to effectively eliminate the row of the table governing the Raw service type.

A17.5.10 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

CA17-31: A RoCEv2 port shall not support Client Reregistration.

CA17-32: A RoCEv2 port shall not support the optional Port Change Event

A17.6 INFINIBAND MANAGEMENT CONSIDERATIONS

The following management classes specified in the InfiniBand Architecture as well as their associated normative statements are not applicable to RoCEv2 ports: Subnet Management, Subnet Administration, Perfor-

mance Management, Device Management, Baseboard Management, SNMP Tunneling, Vendor specific, Application specific classes, Congestion Control, Boot Management and BIS. Instead, RoCEv2 ports are attached to IP subnets that are managed using common Ethernet/IP management practices and standards that are out of scope of this specification.

In the same spirit, the special Queue Pair, QP0 that is defined solely for communication between subnet manager(s) and subnet management agents is not relevant for RoCEv2 ports.

CA17-33: A packet arriving at a RoCEv2 port containing a BTH with the destination QP field set to QP0 shall be silently dropped.

It is expected that there is no InfiniBand management communication between an Ethernet and an InfiniBand management domain. Therefore, any InfiniBand method/attribute combination that refers to a RoCE port may return error code 7 in the “Code for invalid field” of the MAD Common Status field (One or more fields in the attribute or attribute modifier contains an invalid value. Invalid values include reserved values and values that exceed architecturally defined limits).

A17.6.1 COMMUNICATION MANAGEMENT

RoCEv2 utilizes the InfiniBand Architecture Communication Management protocol as defined in [Chapter 12: Communication Management on page 707](#). Modifications to the specific MADs required to eliminate references to local addresses are contained in this section.

Communication Management packets for RoCEv2 connections are regular RoCEv2 packets of the same type (IPv4 vs. IPv6) as the intended connection.

Communication Management packets for RoCE connections involving RoCEv2 ports that are also capable of generating and processing RoCE packets ([Section 17.5.1, “QUERY HCA.” on page 1940](#)), are RoCE packets.

A17.6.1.1 REQ MESSAGE

CA17-34: When a connection is being established between RoCEv2 ports, the Primary Local Port LID, Primary Remote Port LID, Alternate Local Port LID and Alternate Remote Port LID fields of the REQ message are Reserved and shall be ignored on receipt. The value of these fields shall not be checked or validated by a recipient of a REQ message.

A17.6.1.2 REJ MESSAGE

CA17-35: When a connection is being established between RoCEv2 ports, the following reject reason codes shall not be sent as part of a REJ message:

- code 13: Primary Remote Port LID rejected
- code 19: Alternate Remote Port LID rejected

A17.6.1.3 LAP MESSAGE

CA17-36: When alternate paths are being established between RoCEv2 ports, the Alternate Local Port LID and Alternate Remote Port LID fields are Reserved and shall be ignored on receipt. The value of these fields shall not be checked or validated by a recipient of a LAP message.

A17.6.1.4 APR MESSAGE

CA17-37: When alternate paths are being established between RoCEv2 ports, the following APR status code shall not be sent as part of an APR message:

- code 7: Proposed Alternate Remote Port LID rejected.

A17.6.1.5 SAP MESSAGE

CA17-38: The value of the Alternate Local Port LID is reserved and shall be ignored on receipt.

A17.7 CHANNEL ADAPTERS

The specification defines specific hardware entities such as channel adapters and switches which implement all layers of the InfiniBand Architecture including the InfiniBand-defined physical and link layers. Chapter [Chapter 17: Channel Adapters on page 1187](#) sets forth specific requirements for a channel adapter. Most of the compliance statements contained in Chapter 17 apply to a CA which supports one or more RoCEv2 ports. This section describes the exceptions.

A17.7.1 LOADING THE P_KEY TABLE

Compliance statement [C17-7: on page 1193](#) describes requirements for setting the P_Key table based on an assumption that the P_Key table is set directly by a Subnet Manager. However, RoCEv2 ports do not support InfiniBand Subnet Management. Therefore, compliance statement [C17-7: on page 1193](#) does not apply to RoCEv2 ports.

Methods for setting the P_Key table associated with a RoCEv2 port are not defined in this specification, except for the requirements for a default P_Key described elsewhere in this annex.

A17.7.2 LOCALLY ROUTED PACKETS

Compliance statement [C17-9: on page 1196](#) refers to locally routed packets which don't exist with RoCEv2 Thus, C17-9 is not applicable to RoCEv2 ports.

A17.7.3 BACKPRESSURE AND DEADLOCK PREVENTION

Compliance statements [C17-19: on page 1197](#) and [C17-20: on page 1197](#) place specific limitations on a CA's ability to apply backpressure. For a CA claiming compliance to this annex, these requirements do not apply to RoCEv2 ports.

A17.7.4 INBOUND PACKET CHECKING

Compliance statement [C17-21: on page 1198](#) is replaced as follows:

CA17-39: For RoCEv2 ports, the CA shall check for transport layer errors in all incoming packets

A17.7.5 SUPPORT FOR QP0

Compliance statement [C17-24: on page 1200](#) is not applicable to RoCEv2 ports.

A17.8 INTEROPERABILITY WITH RoCE ENDNODES

RoCEv2 and RoCE Ports can interoperate with each other. For this purpose, RoCEv2 ports are optionally capable of generating and processing RoCE packets. ([Section 17.5.1, "QUERY HCA," on page 1940](#))

Protocol selection (RoCE vs RoCEv2) is controlled through the GID type attribute in the corresponding entry of the RoCEv2 Port GID table (See [Section 17.4.3, "Port GID Table," on page 1938](#)).

CA17-40: Connected QPs on RoCEv2 ports that support RoCE shall operate in the mode (RoCE or RoCEv2) as determined by the GID type attribute in the port GID Table entry configured for the QP (MODIFY_QP).

CA17-41: For inbound packets subject to DGID checks, as mandated by the transport protocol (see [9.6.1.2.3 on page 298](#)), if the GID type of the Port GID table entry against which the DGID check is performed doesn't match the protocol of the received packet the check shall be considered as failed.

CA17-42: UD QPs on RoCEv2 ports that support RoCE shall generate packets in the mode (RoCE or RoCEv2) as determined by the GID type attribute in the port GID Table entry referenced by the Address Vector (AV) in the WQE.

CA17-43: UD QPs on RoCEv2 ports that support RoCE shall accept as valid both RoCE and RoCEv2 packets.

A17.9 RoCEv2 NETWORK CONSIDERATIONS

A17.9.1 LOSSLESS NETWORK

As with RoCE, the underlying networks for RoCEv2 should be configured as lossless. In this context, lossless doesn't mean that packets are absolutely never lost. Moreover, the Transport Protocol in RoCEv2 includes an end-to-end reliable delivery mechanism with built-in packet retransmission logic. This logic is typically implemented in HW and is triggered to recover from lost packets without the need for intervention by the software stack. The requirement for an underlying lossless network is aimed at preventing RoCEv2 packet drops as a result of contention in the fabric.

In Data Center Ethernet networks, this kind of lossless behavior is typically achieved through the use of Link-Layer Flow-Control. IEEE 802.1Qbb specifies per-priority link-layer flow-control for Ethernet Networks and is ideally suited for RoCEv2 traffic. Other methods to attain lossless network behavior besides 802.1Qbb may also be used.

In order to ensure end-to-end lossless behavior for RoCEv2 packets that traverse multiple L2 subnets, the intervening L3 routers should be configured to generate an L2 priority for RoCEv2 packets that is set to a value configured for "Link Layer Flow Control (802.1Qbb) enabled" on the subnet where the packet is about to be injected. This is normally obtained through regular configuration mechanisms of the L3 Routers that control the mapping of the "Class of Service" for traversing packets.

This lossless recommendation does not impose a constraint on non-RoCEv2 traffic that could coexist with RoCEv2 on a converged network scenario. Such traffic should be configured to use a distinct set of priorities where Link Level Flow Control could be disabled. Network devices (L2 switches and L3 routers) typically allocate separate queues and buffer resources to traffic on distinct priorities. This creates an effective isolation that decouples the RoCEv2 lossless traffic from the other flows (e.g. TCP) that usually operate in lossy mode.

A17.9.2 RoCEv2 QoS

RoCEv2 traffic can take advantage of IP/Ethernet L3/L2 QoS. Given some of the most prevalent use cases for RDMA technology (e.g. low latency, high bandwidth), the use of QoS becomes particularly relevant in a converged environment where RoCEv2 traffic shares the underlying network with other TCP/UDP packets. In this regard, RoCEv2 traffic is no different than other IP flows: QoS is achieved through proper configuration of relevant mechanisms in the fabric such as the Enhanced Transmission Selection (ETS) defined in 802.1Qaz. Packet/flow identification follows

standard practices of IP/Ethernet networks (i.e. DSCP/802.1Q) and is controlled through the Traffic Class parameter in the Address Vector - see [Section 17.4.2, "Address Vector," on page 1937.](#)

A17.9.3 RoCEv2 CONGESTION MANAGEMENT

RoCEv2 Congestion Management (RCM) provides the capability to avoid congestion hot spots and optimize the throughput of the fabric. With RCM, incipient congestion in the fabric is reported back to the sources of traffic that in turn react by throttling down their injection rates thus preventing the negative effects of fabric buffer saturation and increased queuing delays.

Congestion Management is also relevant for co-existing TCP/UDP/IP traffic. However, assuming the intended use of a distinct set of priorities for RoCEv2 and the other traffic, each set of priorities having a bandwidth allocation⁶⁴, the effects of congestion and the reaction (or lack of it) shouldn't impact one another.

For signaling of congestion, RCM relies on the mechanism defined in RFC3168 (ECN). Upon congestion that involves RoCEv2 traffic, network devices mark the packets using the ECN field in the IP header [Section 17.3.1.1.3, "Explicit Congestion Notification \(ECN\)," on page 1932](#) and [Section 17.3.1.2.2, "Explicit Congestion Notification \(ECN\)," on page 1933](#). This congestion indication is interpreted by destination end-nodes in the spirit of the FECN congestion indication flag of the Base Transport Header (BTH). In other words, as ECN marked packets arrive to their intended destination, the congestion notification is reflected back to the source which in turn reacts by rate limiting the packet injection for the QP in question.

RCM is optional normative behavior. RoCEv2 HCAs that implement RCM shall follow the rules specified in this section:

CA17-44: If RoCEv2 Congestion Management is supported, upon receiving a valid RoCEv2 packet with a value of '11' in its IP.ECN field the HCA shall generate a RoCEv2 CNP formatted as shown in [Figure 349 on page 1948](#) directed to the source of the received packet. The HCA may choose to send a single CNP for multiple such ECN marked packets on a given QP.

CA17-45: If RoCEv2 Congestion Management is supported, upon reception of a RoCEv2 CNP the HCA shall reduce the rate of injection for the QP indicated in the RoCEv2 CNP. The amount of rate change is determined by a rate reduction parameter, whose configuration is outside the scope of this specification.

64. IEEE 802.1Qaz ETS or similar mechanisms

CA17-46: If RoCEv2 Congestion Management is supported, the HCA should increase the injection rate on a QP when a configurable amount of elapsed time and/or a configurable number of bytes have been transmitted on that QP since the reception of the most recent RoCEv2 CNP for that QP. The configuration for the amount of time, number of bytes transmitted and rate of increase are outside the scope of this specification.

The RoCEv2 Congestion Notification Packet format is shown in Figure 349.

MAC Header
IPv4/IPv6 Header
UDP Header
BTH
DestQP set to QPN for which the RoCEv2 CNP is generated
Opcode set to b'10000001
PSN set to 0
SE set to 0
M set to 0
P_Key set to the same value as in the BTH of the ECN packet marked
(16 bytes) - Reserved. MUST be set to 0 by sender. Ignored by receiver
ICRC
FCS

Figure 349 RoCEv2 CNP Format

A17.9.4 ECMP FOR RoCEv2

Data Center IP networks usually implement path selection mechanisms for load balancing and improved utilization of the fabric topology. Equal Cost Multiple Paths (ECMP) is one prevalent method to achieve this goal. For a given packet, L3 Routers select among the possible different paths using a hash on some of the packet fields. The choice is aimed at allowing multiple paths while preserving the ordering requirements of individual flows.

RoCEv2 packets carry an opaque flow identifier in their UDP Source Port field [Section 17.3.2.1, “Source Port,” on page 1934](#) which is part of said hash for UDP packets. Consequently, RoCEv2 endnodes set this field so that packets in a sequence that has ordering constraints (e.g. packets

from a connected QP) will all carry a constant value. For packets that have no ordering constraints with respect to each other, the UDP Source Port field can be set to different values.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

IBTA

ANNEX A18: VIRTUALIZATION

A18.1 INTRODUCTION

This document is a supplement to release 1.3 of Volume 1 of the InfiniBand Architecture, herein referred to as the base document. This document provides an annex to the base document defining multiple virtualized endpoints within physical Host Channel Adapters for InfiniBand.

The use of the terms "virtual" or "virtualized" in this context is only to define and refer to the new InfiniBand objects and concepts introduced in this annex. There is no assumption about how such objects are implemented except for that they must provide the attributes and behavior defined in the rest of this annex.

Similarly, the use of the term "physical" when referring to object types defined in the base document does not imply any assumption about implementation beyond expectation of compliance with the relevant attributes and behavior defined in the base document. As an example, a specific object that appears as a Port or even a Node may be implemented as a software entity running on top of some hardware could be considered "virtual" in many contexts. However, it is considered "physical" by this annex since it behaves like the Port and Node objects defined by the base specification document.

A18.1.1 GLOSSARY

Virtual HCA

A Virtual HCA (VHCA) is an InfiniBand transport endpoint exposed by a virtualization-aware HCA. Multiple VHCAAs may reside within the same HCA.

Virtual Port

A Virtual Port (VPort) is an InfiniBand port with unique Transport and Network attributes, which shares the physical link with other VPorts associated with the same HCA port.

VHCA

See.

VPort

See.

VPort0

The first VPort in a virtualization-aware HCA. VPort0 reflects the physical port's attributes. This VPort also receives all packets that are not explicitly destined to other VPorts. In addition, this VPort is entitled to send and receive SMP, Raw Ethertype, and Raw IPv6 traffic.

SM GID

A well-known GID that is associated with the SM, comprising the concatenation of the Subnet prefix and the GUID 0x0200000000000002. The SM GID is never present in any GID Table. If the SubnetPrefix is modified by the SM, the SM GID is updated implicitly.

A18.1.2 OVERVIEW

With the increase of virtualization solutions and the availability of devices with native virtualization support, specification of InfiniBand support for virtualization is imminent. InfiniBand Virtualization allows a CA to share its physical link with numerous transport endpoints, referred to as Virtual CAs (VCAs). For virtual Host Channel Adapters (VHCAs), each VHCA exposes an independent Verbs consumer interface – the Software stack need not be aware to the fact that it is virtualized. VHCAs may be presented to SW using various methods, such as multiple PCI functions, Virtual functions, or as logical HCA interfaces. VCAs may also represent virtual Target Channel adapters (VTCA). For brevity, this Annex exclusively uses the term VHCA; VTCA properties may be inferred where relevant.

To support a possible increase of several orders of magnitudes in endpoints without breaking SM/SA scalability, VHCAs connect to the network through an array of light-weight entities called Virtual Ports (VPorts). VPorts do not have a physical link nor an independent SMI, but rather share the link of the physical port. Consequently, the subnet physical topology is not affected by the introduction of Virtualization.

VPorts are either assigned a dedicated LID of their own or use the LID assigned to another VPort. By default, that port is VPort0 which carries the LID of the physical port. When a VPort has an assigned LID, it can receive packets that do not contain a GRH. If a VPort refers to another VPort for a LID, it may only receive packets with a GRH destined to it.

VPorts have independent GID tables. Data packets and GMPs are steered to VPorts and looped-back within a VPort based on LIDs and GIDs. In contrast, Subnet Management, Raw Ethernet, and Raw IPv6 packets are bound to the physical port and are not relayed between VPorts. Rather, these packets are handled by VPort0. In addition, VPorts have independent Partition Tables, capabilities, and link state.

Virtualization does not break backward compatibility with virtualization-unaware Subnet Management. Virtualization is an extension to existing physical ports. On each HCA port, the first VPort, VPort0, is associated with the physical port and allows at least one VHCA to interoperate with legacy configurations. Virtualization has to be explicitly enabled by a Virtualization-aware SM after discovering the capability of the network devices. After enablement, additional VPorts may communicate over the network. As with other advanced SM features⁶⁵, there is no backward

compatibility between SMs and once a Virtualization-aware SM controls the network there is no fall back to an older SM. Virtualization may be disabled by a virtualization-aware SM.

Port numbering within VHCA must be continuous and start at 1. The specification does not mandate the association between a VPort and a particular VHCA. For example, the Annex does not preclude connecting physical port 2 as port 1 of a VHCA, or connecting several VHCA ports to the same physical port. Such internal connectivity decisions are beyond the scope of this specification

In the example shown below in **FIGURE 10**, the VPorts on each physical port shown as VPort0 through VPortN are indexed by 0 through N. The VHCA referred by NodeGUID0 has 2 local ports and is associated with VPort0 on both physical ports. Similarly, the VHCA referred by NodeGUID1 is associated with VPort1 on both physical ports. As mentioned above, other configurations are possible.

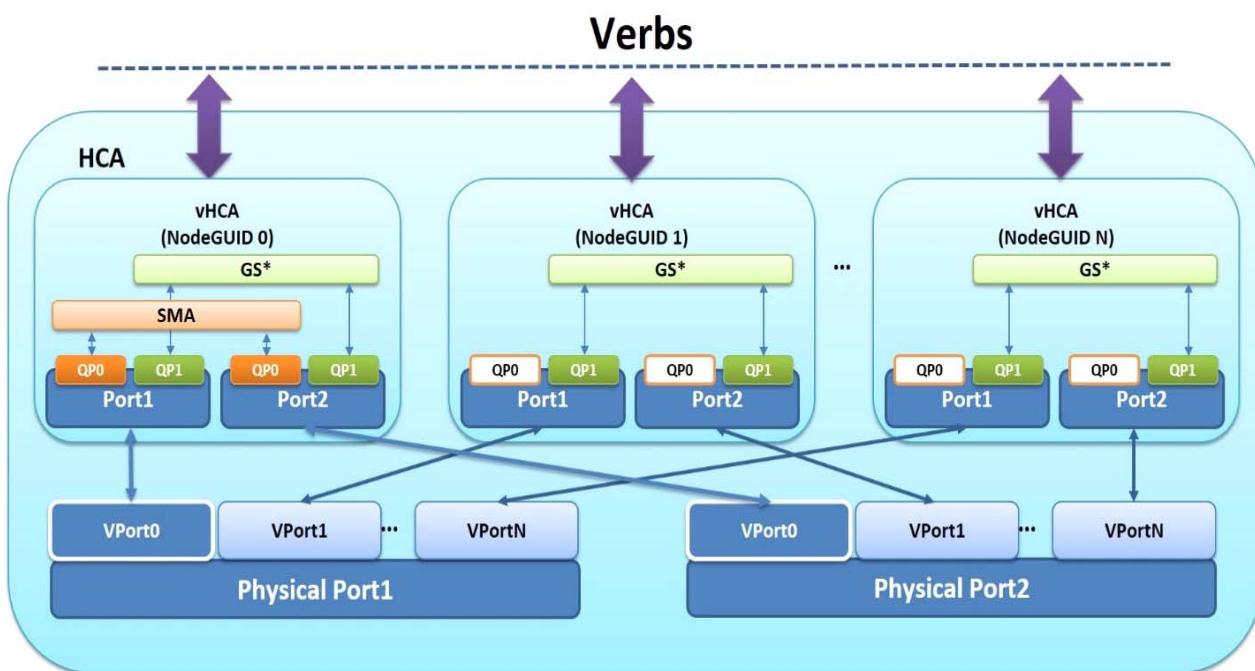


FIGURE 10 Example Virtualized Host Elements

65. This topic has been extensively discussed in MgtWG. Example feature that breaks if old SM is introduced is MulticastFDBTop. See the famous application note about Subnet Manager Interoperability by G. Pfister: <https://cw.infinibandta.org/wg/Members/document/7152>

A18.2 VPORT PACKET RELAY

A18.2.1 IBA UNICAST TRANSPORT PACKETS

Incoming packets are steered to the proper VPort based on the DLID and DGID. Packets that do not carry a GRH or specify an unknown GID are steered to VPort that is assigned the DLID (see A18.3.5).

CA18-1: VPorts that do not have a LID **must** include a GRH in any sent packets. Otherwise, such packets **shall** be silently dropped, considered a relay error, and accounted for in the VPortCounters attribute (A18.6.2).

Packets with a GRH sent from VPorts are looped back within the VPort if the DLID and DGID address the same VPort. Packets without a GRH sent by a VPort that is assigned a LID are looped back if the DLID addresses the same VPort.

CA18-2: If the loopback indicator is set, the corresponding packets **shall** always be looped back within the VPort.

Packets that are not looped back within a VPort but whose DLID equals the port LID of any other local VPort LID are looped back by the physical port.

A18.2.2 IBA MULTICAST TRANSPORT PACKETS

Any multicast packet received by the physical port or sent from a VPort is forwarded to all QPs attached to the corresponding MGID for which the VPort has an Active PortState.

CA18-3: Multicast packets transmitted by QPs whose VPort is not in the Active PortState **shall** not be relayed outside the VPort.

A18.2.3 RAW ETHERNET AND RAW IPv6 PACKETS

Raw Ethernet and Raw IPv6 packets are not relayed between VPorts. Only VPort0 may send or receive these packets from the physical port.

A18.2.4 ALLOWED SLs

VHCA consumers are subject to a fabric-wide policy that governs usage of SLs. For example, some entities might not be eligible to use SLs that are reserved for high-priority traffic. The SM enforces this policy by programming each VPort's SLMask.

CA18-4: Any traffic transmitted by a VHCA QP over an SL that was not set on the corresponding VPort **shall** be silently dropped. Such dropped packets **shall** be considered as a relay error and accounted for in the VPortCounters attribute (A18.6.2).

The SLtoVLMappingTable attribute ([14.2.5.8](#)), being a link layer feature, is provided only at the physical port and thus is shared by all VPorts on the physical port. Note that even if VPort has SL bit set in the SLMask, the packet can also be dropped due to physical port's SLtoVLMappingTable mapping that SL to either VL15 or a currently non operational VL.

A18.3 VHCA TRANSPORT INTERFACE

Each VHCA maintains its own independent transport resources, namely Protection Domains, Memory Regions, Address handles, Queue Pairs, Completion Queues, End-to-end Contexts, Reliable Datagram Domains, Shared Receive Queues and XRC domains. VHCAAs are not required to have the same amount of transport resource or device capabilities. In addition, each VPort maintains its own GID Table, Partition Table, P_Key violation counter, and Q_Key violation counter. All layer 2 resources are shared among the VPorts with the following exceptions:

- VPorts have an independent PortState. See [A18.3.4 for VPort link state transitions](#).
- VPorts have an independent Capability mask. See [A18.3.8](#).

A18.3.1 VPORT LID

A VPort may require LID assignment from the SM by asserting its VPortInfo.LIDRequired field to 1 or else rely on the LID assigned to another VPort. When relying on another VPort LID, that VPort index is provided in the VPortInfo.LIDByVPortIndex field. Both the LIDRequired and LIDByVPortIndex fields are read only and their setting is performed by means beyond the scope of this specification. The SM configures the LID by assigning the VPortInfo.LID field.

VPort0 always requires a LID, which refers to the LID of the physical port; it cannot be assigned an independent LID. The physical port LMC mask does not apply to additional LIDs associated with VPorts.

A18.3.2 VPORT GID TABLE

Each VHCA VPort contains a GID Table, which is independent from the physical port GID Table. Its size is determined by the corresponding VPortInfo attribute. Source GID indexes in VHCA Address Handles and QPs refer to the VPort GID Table.

Each VPort shall be assigned at least one unicast GID, based on the GUID0 field of the VPortGUIDInfo attribute ([A18.4.2.7](#)). The value of GUID0 is determined by the HCA and may change while the VPort is disabled. The policy of assigning GUID0 values is outside the scope of this specification.

A18.3.3 VPORT PARTITION TABLE (P_KEY_TABLE)

Each VHCA VPort contains a Partition Table, which is independent from the physical port table. The maximum number of entries in the VPort Partition Table is specified by the VNodeInfo attribute. Partition Key indexes configured by the VHCA consumer shall refer to the VPort Partition Table ([A18.4.2.8](#)).

A18.3.4 VPORT LINK STATES

VPorts have a unique PortState, which is independent from the physical port PortState, and do not have a physical link state. Management can send commands to attempt to alter the link state by sending a set request to the PortState in VPortInfo attribute ([A18.4.2.3](#)). [FIGURE 11](#) below depicts the PortState Link State machine, where CPortState=X designates a management link state change request. Link state transitions also depend on VirtLink, the status of the virtual link connecting VHCA to VPorts, and HasLID, which indicates whether the VPort has an assigned LID. VPort0 and VPorts that request a unique LID are always associated with a LID in the LinkArm and LinkActive states. VPorts that do not have unique LID are associated with a LID only if the VPort that they depend on has a LID.

VirtLink can either be Up or Down, as defined below:

VirtLink=

Up: VHCAPortEnable == True && (Virtualization is enabled || VirtLink is attached to VPort0)

Down: Otherwise

VHCAPortEnable is an internal VHCA variable that specifies whether the VPort is enabled. The means for setting VHCAPortEnable are beyond the scope of this specification.

In the above, “Virtualization is enabled” when in the VirtualizationInfo SM attribute for the physical port, the VirtualizationEnable component is set to 1. Hence, whenever this component is set to 0, all VPorts will transition to (or remain in) the Down state.

CA18-5: A VPort **shall** control its state and overall operation as specified in [FIGURE 11](#).

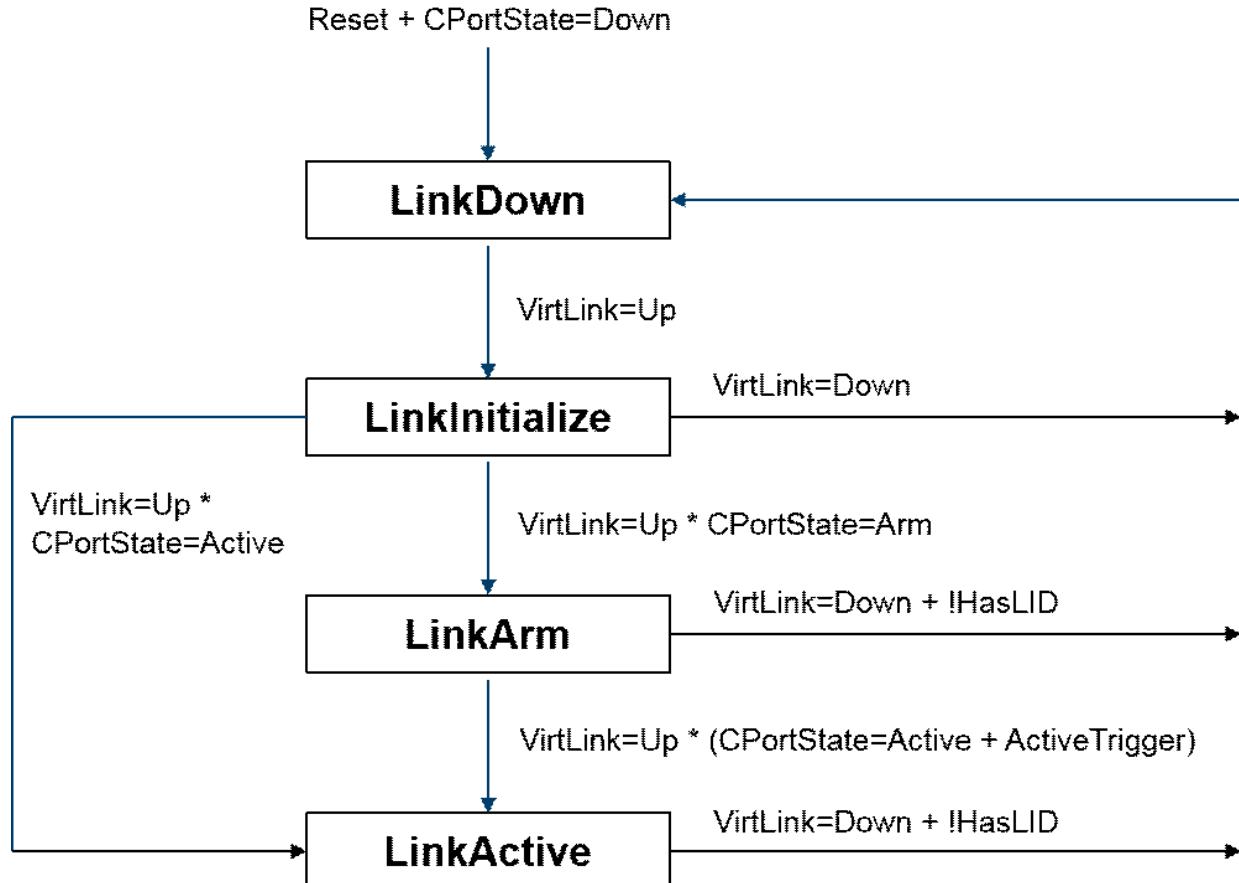


FIGURE 11 VPort PortState state machine

Note that the VPort PortState may be in the LinkActive state even if the CA's physical port PortState is Down. The SM may bring down an individual VPort by specifying CPortState=Down while VirtLink=Up. In this case, the state machine shall transition to the Down state followed by a transition to the Initialize state. The Arm state has no distinct meaning for VPorts, as their state transitions do not need to be coordinated with other manageable entities. It is provided only for compatibility purposes with the physical link states. SM implementations may choose to skip this state while modifying a VPort from Initialize to Active states.

A18.3.5 VPORT0

The first VPort on every physical port, VPort0, reflects the physical port. VPort0 is VPort index 0. VPort0's LID, Partition Table, GID Table, and CapabilityMask **shall** be synchronized with the physical port at all times. The PortState of VPort0 is synchronized with the physical port when Virtualiza-

tion is disabled in the VirtualizationInfo attribute ([A18.4.2.2](#)). In this case, VPort0 does not have an independent PortState, and the physical PortState **shall** be presented by the QueryHCA Verb, and the Port Active Unaffiliated Asynchronous Event **shall** correspond to the physical PortState. When Virtualization is enabled, VPort0 **shall** have an independent PortState as described in [A18.3.4](#).

Subnet management may access VPort0 properties either through the physical port using PortInfo, GUIDInfo, and P_KeyTable attributes, or through the VPort using VPortInfo, VPortGUIDInfo, and VPortPartitionTable attributes. Any modifications to the CapabilityMask by the Verbs consumer are reflected to both VPort0 and the physical port.

When Virtualization is disabled, VPort0 is indistinguishable from a physical HCA to both the Verbs consumer and entities within the network. This provides backward compatibility to software running over the associated VHCA, and full interoperability and connectivity with virtualization-unaware SMs and other nodes in the fabric. Nevertheless, when Virtualization is enabled, VPort0 supports all of the VPort-specific properties introduced by this Annex.

When Virtualization is enabled, the VPort0 **shall** receive all incoming LID-routed packets destined to the physical port LID that do not contain a GRH or specify a Dgid that does not match any GID in the VPort GID table. Specifically, all traffic with a GRH destined to the well-known SM GID **shall** be routed to VPort0.

A18.3.6 SPECIAL QPs

All VHCA may obtain handles to special QPs through the GetSpecialQP Verb, and post send and receive WRs according to the consumer queuing model. However, SMPs, Raw Ethertype, and Raw IPv6 traffic is restricted to VPort0 as described below.

A18.3.6.1 SMI

Each VPort exposes an SMI (QP0) interface to the Verbs consumer. However, only the VPort0 is allowed to send or receive traffic on the SMI interface.

CA18-6: Any SMP sent from a VPort other than VPort0 **shall** be silently dropped.

CA18-7: Any received LID-routed SMPs whose DLID does not specify the physical port LID **shall** be silently dropped.

Each physical port has a single SMA, which is associated with the physical port. It is the sole entity for Subnet Management Trap generation and

Notice Queue processing. To access VPort-specific attributes, the VPort index is included in the Attribute Modifier.

A18.3.6.2 GSI

Each VPort exposes a GSI (QP1) interface to the Verbs consumer. GMPs are relayed as specified in [A18.2](#).

Each VPort supports a minimal PerfMgt agent (VPMA). See [A18.6](#) for the VPort PMA (VPMA) requirements. The PMA mandatory counters are not supported by the VPMA.

The CCMgt agent is not supported on virtual ports other than VPort0.

CA18-8: Any received LID-routed CCMgt GMP response methods (Get-Response and TrapRepress) whose DLID does not specify the physical port LID **shall** be silently dropped.

A18.3.6.3 RAW IPv6 AND RAW ETHERTYPE QPs

All VPorts expose Raw IPv6 and Raw Ethernet QPs to the Verbs consumer. However, only VPort0 **may** send or receive traffic through these QPs. Any packet sent by VPorts other than VPort0 **shall** be silently dropped. Any received Raw IPv6 or Raw Ethernet packet whose DLID does not specify the physical port LID **shall** be silently dropped.

A18.3.7 CLIENT REREGISTRATION

When a Client Reregistration is issued on the physical port through the PortInfo attribute, it applies only to VPort0. Issuing Client Reregistration through VirtualizationInfo attribute will raise the event on all VPorts. In this case, the CA **must** raise the Client Reregistration Asynchronous Event for all VPorts that are not Down (see [A18.3.4](#)). Alternatively, a VPort-specific Client Registration **may** be asserted by setting VPortInfo.ClientReregister which raises the event only on the referenced VPort.

A18.3.8 CAPABILITY MASK

Each VHCA VPort shall maintain a Capability Mask, which is based on the physical port Capability Mask. These Capability Masks are visible to both the Verbs Consumer and Subnet Management. However, not all capabilities apply to specific VPorts. The table below summarizes how different capabilities are presented to the Verbs Consumer and the SM. ‘Mirror’ designates a capability that applies only to the physical port and is mirrored as a read-only attribute to the Verbs Consumer. ‘VPort’ designates a VPort-specific capability that may be modified by the Verbs Consumer read by the SM per VPort in VPortInfo:CapabilityMask. Some capability bits must be set when Virtualization is supported. ‘Physical port only’ means that in terms of subnet management, capability bit is obtainable in CapabilityMask component in PortInfo attribute for the physical ports.

Table 630 Capability Mask bits available on VHCA and their origin

Capability bit	Verbs Consumer	Subnet Management
1: IsSM	VPort	Physical port only ^a
2: IsNoticeSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
3: IsTrapSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
4: IsOptionalIPDSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
5: IsAutomaticMigrationSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
6: IsSLMappingSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
7: IsMKeyNVRAM (supports M_Key in NVRAM)	Mirror	Physical port only
8: IsPKeyNVRAM (supports P_Key in NVRAM)	Mirror	Physical port only
9: IsLEDSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
10: IsSMdisabled	VPort ^b	Physical port only
11: IsSystemImageGUIDSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
12: IsPKeySwitchExternal-PortTrapSupported	NA	NA
13: IsCableInfoSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
14: IsExtendedSpeedsSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
15: IsCapabilityMask2Supported	Mirror	Physical port only
16: IsCommunicationManagementSupported	VPort	VPort
17: IsSNMPTunnelingSupported	VPort	VPort
18: IsReinitSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
19: IsDeviceManagement-Supported	VPort	VPort
20: IsVendorClassSupported	VPort	VPort
21: IsDRNoticeSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
22: IsCapabilityMaskNotice-Supported	Mirror	Physical port only

Table 630 Capability Mask bits available on VHCA and their origin

Capability bit	Verbs Consumer	Subnet Management
23: IsBootManagementSupported	VPort	VPort
24: IsLinkRoundTripLatencySupported	Mirror	Physical port only
25: IsClientReregistrationSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
26: IsOtherLocalChangesNoticeSupported	Mirror	Physical port only; Must be set
27: IsLinkSpeedWidthPairsTableSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
28: IsVendorSpecificMadTableSupported	Must be 0	Physical port only
29: IsMulticastPKeyTrapSuppressionSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
30: IsMulticastFDBTopSupported	NA	NA
31: IsHierarchyInfoSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
CM2: 0: IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported	VPort	VPort
CM2: 1: IsPortInfoExtendedSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
CM2: 2: IsVirtualizationSupported	Must be Set	Physical port only
CM2: 3: IsSwitchPortStateTableSupported	NA	NA
CM2: 4: IsLinkWidth2xSupported	Mirror	Physical port only
CM2: 5: IsLinkSpeedHDRSupported	Mirror	Physical port only

a. Only VPort0 **may** succeed in setting the IsSM capability bit through the ModifyHCA verb. If another VPort attempts to set the IsSM bit, the ModifyHCA verb shall fail.

b. Set to 1 by the SMA for all VPorts except for VPort0.

A18.3.9 SOFTWARE TRANSPORT VERBS

All transport management Verbs apply to VHCA resources. Link layer attributes **shall** refer to the shared physical link as detailed below.

CA18-9: If CI supports this virtualization annex, the CI **shall** support verbs changes described in this section.

A18.3.9.1 OPEN HCA

In Virtualization capable HCAs, the OpenHCA Verb is used to open VHCA. OpenHCA does not depend on whether Virtualization was enabled by subnet management. Specifically, any VHCA handle returned by OpenHCA remains valid if Virtualization is subsequently enabled or disabled.

A18.3.9.2 QUERY HCA

The QueryHCA Verb **shall** refer to the capabilities of the VHCA, most notably the VHCA Node GUID. The Port Attribute list **shall** report the following VPort specific attributes:

- PortState (see A18.3.4)
- Base LID
 - Physical port LID for VPort0
 - Assigned LID for VPorts that require a unique LID
 - Associated VPort LID for VPorts that do not require a unique LID
- LMC
 - Physical port LMC for VPort0 and associated VPorts that do not require a unique LID
 - 0 for other VPorts
- The contents and length of the Source GID Table shall correspond to the VPort GID Table.
- The contents and length of the Partition Table shall correspond to the VPort Partition Table.
- The optional P_Key violation counter shall report VPort partition violations
- The Q_Key violation counter shall report VPort Q_key violations
- The following CapabilityMask bits for each VPort:
 - IsSM
 - IsSMdisabled.
 - IsSNMPTunnelingSupported.
 - IsDeviceManagementSupported.
 - IsVendorClassSupported.
 - IsClientReregistrationSupported
- An indicator that specifies whether this port is a VPort
- An indicator that specifies whether this VPort is VPort0
- An indicator that specifies whether a GRH is mandatory for this VPort
- The PortState of the physical port

The remaining port attributes shall refer to the physical port attributes from 1
[11.2.1.2.](#) 2

Note that the VPort and VPort0 indicators, and the physical port PortState 3
attributes are intended primarily for management and monitoring soft- 4
ware. Other applications are expected to run over VHCA without any ob- 5
servable changes compared to physical HCAs. 6

A18.3.9.3 MODIFY HCA ATTRIBUTES

The ModifyHCA Verb **shall** refer to the capabilities of the VHCA. Specifically, the optional System Image GUID shall correspond to the VHCA. The Port Attribute list **shall** refer to the corresponding VPort specific attributes: 9
10
11

- Optional Shutdown Port indicator.
- Q_Key Violation counter reset bit.
- The following VPort CapabilityMask bits:
 - IsSNMPTunnelingSupported.
 - IsDeviceManagementSupported.
 - IsVendorClassSupported.

The following VPort attributes are only applicable to VPort0: 19
20

- Optional InitType value. When supported, the provided value is applied to the physical port.
- IsSM CapabilityMask bit. The provided value is applied to the physical port.

If these attributes are specified on VPorts other than VPort0, ModifyHCA **shall** return an 'Invalid Attribute' Verb result. 25
26
27

A18.3.10 ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

CA18-10: Affiliated Asynchronous Events and Errors are delivered solely 29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

A18.3.10.1 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS EVENTS

CA18-11: Unaffiliated Asynchronous Events **shall** be delivered to VHCA as follows: 33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42

- Port Active – issued when the VPort PortState transitions to the Link-Active state
- Client Reregistration Event – issued when SM requests client reregistration either for the physical port or the associated VPort.
- Port Change Event – issued when port attributes change as follows:
 - VPort SGID and P_Key tables

- MasterSM LID 1
- MasterSM SL 2
- SubnetTimeout 3
- IsSMdisabled 4
- IsClientReregistrationSupported 5
- Physical port changes to/from available/unavailable state 6

A18.3.10.2 UNAFFILIATED ASYNCHRONOUS ERRORS

CA18-12: Unaffiliated Asynchronous Errors shall be delivered to VHCAAs as follows:

- Local Catastrophic Error – issued when the VHCA CI behavior is undetermined.
- Port Error – issued when the VPort PortState is unavailable. The “unavailable” states are considered to be: Down, Initialize and Armed.

A18.4 SUBNET MANAGEMENT

A18.4.1 VIRTUALIZATION SUPPORT

Support for Virtualization as described in this Annex is indicated by an additional bit PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsVirtualizationSupported (see A18.3.8). A node setting this bit to 1 **shall** implement all the mandatory virtualization features described by this Annex. The SM is responsible to detect this end-port capability, configure the hardware and track its health.

As scalability is a key, VPorts have minimal configuration space and are accessed through SMPs targeting the physical port. VPorts are indexed using the upper 16 bits of the Attribute Modifier.

To accommodate evolving changes that might not be backward-compatible, each node also designates its Virtualization Revision in the VirtualizationInfo attribute (A18.4.2.2). SMs may enable Virtualization on CAs selectively based on the Virtualization features that are supported or enabled.

CA18-13: SM may enable Virtualization on a given CA only if its Virtualization Revision is smaller or equal to the Revision supported by the SM.

A18.4.2 VIRTUALIZATION ATTRIBUTES

The following new attributes provided in Table 631 are required to support virtualization.

CA18-14: SMA that declares its support for Virtualization by setting its PortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsVirtualizationSupported bit to 1 **shall** support all the attributes and methods described in [Table 631 "Virtualization Subnet Management Attributes \(Summary\)"](#).

Table 631 Virtualization Subnet Management Attributes (Summary)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Attribute Modifier	Methods	Description
VirtualizationInfo	0x0040	0x0000_0000	Get/Set	Describes the virtualization capabilities of the node and allows the SM to enable Virtualization
VPortState	0x0046	VPorts block number	Get	Provides the means to query summarized Port-State of the virtual links
VPortInfo	0x0043	VPort index	Get/Set	Describes the properties of the VHCA VPort and enables SM to configure it
VNodeInfo	0x0041	VPort index	Get	Describes the properties of the VHCA node
VNodeDescription	0x0042	VPort index	Get/Set	Provides the node description of the VHCA
VPortGUIDInfo	0x0044	VPort index/GUID block number	Get/Set	VPort assigned GUIDs
VPortPartitionTable	0x0045	VPort index/P_Key block number	Get/Set	VPort partition table
Notice	0x0002	0x0000_0000	Trap/TrapRepress	Extends the set of traps with 4 new trap numbers

A18.4.2.1 TRAP/NOTICE GENERATION

A set of new traps are used to notify the SM on state changes or events that happen on the VPorts. While such traps are critical to the correct operation of the network, it is critical to avoid denial of service attacks on the SM due to too many traps. If every VPort sends its own trap to the SM without coalescing a single port up/down even on a single host may cause 1000 VPorts to send their trap to the SM.

Trap coalescing means that for every trap-type the host may only have a single outstanding trap transaction. When the SM represses the trap, further events may cause a new trap which covers all the pending events since the last trap of the same type. Through that mechanism, the DoS attack is prevented.

Coalescing also means that no VPort specific information can be provided in the Notice data-details. Trap coalescing is not used for security traps (1257 and 1258) since those **must** contain the information about the specific offender.

The traps defined for VPorts are shown below in [Table 632](#).

Table 632 Trap types

Trap Number	Name	Type
1144	VPort Local Change	Informational
1146	VPort State Change	Urgent
1257	VPort P_Key Violation	Security
1258	VPort Q_Key Violation	Security

A18.4.2.1.1 TRAP 1144

oA18-1: If the VPort is capable of sending the CapabilityMask trap as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported and IsTrapSupported bits set to 1, then the VPort SMA shall send a trap 1144 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID when the VPortInfo:CapabilityMask is modified at runtime.

oA18-2: If the VPort is capable of sending the CapabilityMask trap as indicated in the PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsCapabilityMaskNoticeSupported and IsNoticeSupported bits set to 1, then the VPort SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 1144 when the VPortInfo:CapabilityMask is modified at runtime.

oA18-3: If VNodeDescription of one of the VHCAs changes and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported bits set to 1, then the VPort SMA **shall** send a trap 1144 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID with VNodeDescriptionChange set.

oA18-4: If VNodeDescription of one of the VHCAs changes and PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsNoticeSupported bits set to 1, then the VPort SMA **shall** log a Notice using Notice:TrapNumber 1144 with VNodeDescriptionChange set.

Table 633 Notice DataDetails for Trap 1144

Field	Length (bits)	Offset from MAD payload (bits)	Description
Reserved	16	80	Reserved
LIDADDR	16	96	Local Identifier of VPort0
Reserved	14	112	Reserved
CapabilityMaskChange	1	126	Change of VPort capability mask
OtherLocalChanges	1	127	Change of a local property without a dedicated bit

Table 633 Notice DataDetails for Trap 1144

Field	Length (bits)	Offset from MAD payload (bits)	Description
Reserved	27	128	Reserved
HierarchyInfoChange	1	155	HierarchyInfo has changed
SMPriorityChange	1	156	SM priority changed
Reserved	1	157	Reserved
SystemImageGUIDChange	1	158	Change of VPort System Image GUID
VNodeDescriptionChange	1	159	VNodeDescription changed
Padding	352	160	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

Note that same trap **may** report multiple events on multiple or single VPort. So the bits on the data-details are not mutually exclusive (several bits may be set).

A18.4.2.1.2 TRAP 1146

If VPortInfo.PortStateChange is set to one as a result of PortState component in the VPortInfo of one of the VPorts transitioning from Down to Initialize, Initialize to Down, Armed to Down, or active to Down due to admin action, then the physical port SMA **shall** raise VPortInfo.PortStateChange and either send trap 1146 to the SM indicated by the PortInfo:MasterSMLID or log a Notice with Notice:TrapNumber 1146. Whether trap is sent or notice is logged depends on setting of PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsTrapSupported and IsNoticeSupported bits.

No data details are provided for the state change trap due to the coalescing of different VPort state changes into one trap.

A18.4.2.1.3 TRAP 1257

The trap is generated in response to P_Key violations with respect to the VPort P_Key Table. When Virtualization is enabled, VPort0 P_Key violations (which coincide with violations to the physical P_Key Table) **shall** generate VPort0-specific traps. Otherwise, VPort0 P_Key violations **shall** generate physical port traps.

NOTE: There is no trap coalescing for Trap 1257! Instead the SMA should have 1 active trap as defined in [o10-56](#): The last event will be provided.

A18.4.2.1.4 TRAP 1258

This trap is generated in response to VPort-specific Q_Key mismatches. When Virtualization is enabled, VPort0 Q_Key mismatches **shall** generate VPort0-specific traps. Otherwise, VPort0 Q_Key mismatches **shall** generate physical port traps.

NOTE: There is no trap coalescing for Trap 1258!
Instead the SMA should have 1 active trap as defined in [o10-56](#): The last event will be provided.

Table 634 Notice DataDetails for Traps 1257 and 1258

Field	Length (bits)	Offset from MAD payload (bits)	Description
Reserved	16	80	Reserved
LIDADDR1	16	96	Local identifier
LIDADDR2	16	112	Local identifier
KEY	32	128	Q_Key or P_Key. If P_Key, the 16 most significant bits of the field shall be set to 0 and the 16 least significant bits of the field shall be set to the P_Key.
SL	4	160	Service Level
Reserved	4	164	Reserved
QP1	24	168	Queue Pair
Reserved	8	192	Reserved
QP2	24	200	Queue Pair
GIDADDR1	128	224	Global Identifier. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be filled with zeroes.
GIDADDR2	128	352	Global Identifier. If no GRH is present in the offending packet, this field shall be filled with zeroes.
VPortIndex	16	480	Index of VPort
Padding	16	496	Shall be ignored on read. Content is unspecified.

A18.4.2.2 VIRTUALIZATIONINFO

This attribute describes the virtualization capabilities of the node, and allows the SM to enable and disable Virtualization. The attribute modifier is reserved.

Table 635 VirtualizationInfo

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
VPortIndexCap	RO	16	0	Indicates the maximal supported VPort index on the physical port.
VPortIndexTop	RO	16	16	Indicates the top VPort index with PortState != Down on the physical port. A valid VPortIndexTop is less than or equal to VPortIndexCap.
VirtualizationEnable	RW	1	32	Enable/disable Virtualization support. If set to 0, virtualization is disabled; VPort0 refers to the physical port and tracks its PortState. If set to 1, virtualization is enabled and VPort0 has an independent PortState. Other VPorts may only be activated if Virtualization is enabled. The default (power-on) value for this attribute is 0 in order to ensure that the default mode of CAs supporting virtualization is fully backward compatible with legacy SM implementations. Disabling virtualization (setting this bit to 0) causes PortState of any VPorts not already DOWN to be changed to DOWN.
ClientReregister	RW	1	33	Optional: shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsClientReregistrationSupported = 0). Used by SM to request endnode clients on all VPorts of that physical port perform reregistration of SA subscriptions.
PortStateChange	RW	1	34	It is set to one anytime the PortState component in the VPortInfo of any VPorts transitions from Down to Initialize, Initialize to Down, Armed to Down, or Active to Down as a result of CPortState change. Changes in PortState resulting from SubnSet() do not change this bit. This bit is cleared by writing one, writing zero is ignored.
Reserved	RO	13	35	Reserved
Revision	RO	8	48	Local SMA virtualization revision. The SM may enable virtualization only if it supports the designated revision. Current version for this annex is 1.
CapabilityMask	RO	8	56	Optional Virtualization capabilities. 0-7: Reserved
Reserved	RO	448	64	Reserved

A18.4.2.3 VPortInfo

This attribute describes the properties of the VHCA VPort. The attribute modifier bits 31:16 provide the VPort index. Attribute modifier bits 15:0 are reserved. A VPort is disabled when the PortState is Down. While a VPort is down, the CA may modify any of the VPortInfo fields. A VPort is enabled if PortState is in the Initialize, Arm, or Active states.

CA18-15: If VPortInfo:PortState=Down, then

- a SubnGet(VPortInfo) **shall** produce valid data for VPortInfo:PortState; whether any other component has valid data is vendor-dependent.
- a SubnSet(VPortInfo) **shall** be responded to with MAD error status code 7 (invalid field).

Table 636 **VPortInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PortState	RW	4	0	PortState of VPort. Enumerated as: 0: No State Change; valid only on Set(). 1: Down 2: Initialize 3: Armed ^a 4: Active 5 – 15: Reserved When writing this field, only legal transactions are valid.
ClientReregister	RW	1	4	Optional: shall be 0 if not implemented (PortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsClientReregistrationSupported = 0). Used by SM to request VPort endnode clients perform reregistration of SA subscriptions.
LIDRequired	RO	1	5	If set to 1 require the SM to assign an unique LID to this VPort or keep it in INIT state. Must be 1 for VPort0.
Reserved	RO	2	6	Reserved
GUIDCap	RO	8	8	Number of GUID entries supported in the VPortGUIDInfo attribute for this VPort. This is at a minimum set to 1.
CapabilityMask	RO	16	16	Supported capabilities of this port. A bit set to 1 for affirmation of supported capability. 0: IsCommunicationManagementSupported 1: IsSNMPTunnelingSupported 2: IsDeviceManagementSupported 3: IsVendorClassSupported 4: IsBootManagementSupported 5: IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported 6-15: Reserved
LocalPortNum	RO	8	32	VHCA local port number associated with the VPort index specified by this SMP.

Table 636 **VPortInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	24	40	Reserved
P_KeyViolations	RW	16	64	Counts the number of packets that have been received at this VPort that have had invalid P_Keys, since power-on or reset. Increments until count reaches all 1s and then shall be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. Setting this component to any value other than zero results in undefined behavior; however, it is recommended that any attempt to set the counter to a non-zero value results in it being left unchanged.
Q_KeyViolations	RW	16	80	Counts the number of packets that have been received at this port that have had invalid Q_Keys, since power-on or reset. Increments until count reaches all 1s and then shall be set back to zero to re-enable incrementing. Setting this component to any value other than zero results in undefined behavior; however, it is recommended that any attempt to set the counter to a non-zero value results in it being left unchanged.
LID	RW	16	96	If LIDRequired is set to 1, the VPort LID assigned by SM. Otherwise reserved. For VPort0, always mirrors the physical port LID.
LIDByVPortIndex	RO	16	112	If LIDRequired is set to 0, the index of the VPort (that shall have LIDRequired set to 1) this VPort is attached to.
ProfileID	RO	64	128	VPort profile.
SLMask	RW	16	192	The set of SLs allow for this VPort.
Reserved	RO	304	208	Reserved

a. Use of Armed by SM on VPorts other than VPort0 is optional; SM can advance VPort other than VPort0 from Init to Active directly without going through Armed.

A18.4.2.4 VNodeInfo

This attribute describes the properties of the VHCA. The attribute modifier bits 31:16 provide the VPort index. Attribute modifier bits 15:0 are reserved. GetResponse(VNodeInfo) for a VPort that is in Down state is undefined.

Table 637 **VNodeInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
PartitionCap	RO	16	0	Number of entries in the Partition Table for VHCA. This is at a minimum set to 1.

Table 637 **VNodeInfo**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
LocalPortNum	RO	8	16	VHCA local port number associated with the VPort index specified by this SMP.
NumPorts	RO	8	24	Number of VPorts used by this VHCA.
SystemImage-GUID	RO	64	32	GUID associating this virtual node with other virtual nodes controlled by common supervisory code. This GUID may be the same as the system image GUID in the physical port's NodeInfo.
NodeGUID	RO	64	96	GUID of the VHCA. All VPorts on the same VHCA shall report the same NodeGUID. Provides a means to uniquely identify a VHCA within a subnet and determine co-location of VPorts.
PortGUID	RO	64	160	GUID of VPort.
Reserved	RO	288	224	Reserved

A18.4.2.5 VPORTSTATE

This attribute provides the means to query summarized PortState of the virtual links. Bits 9:0 of the attribute modifier are used for the block number. Each block contains VPortState for 128 virtual links (VPorts). Attribute modifier bits 31:10 are reserved..

Table 638 **VPortState**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
VPortStateBlock	RO	512	List of 128 PortState Block Elements.

Table 639 **PortState Block Element**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
PortState	RO	4	PortState associated with the VPort for VPort index.

A18.4.2.6 VNODEDESCRIPTION

This attribute is identical in its payload to the NodeDescription attribute. The attribute modifier bits 31:16 provide the VPort index. Attribute modifier bits 15:0 are reserved. Note that because VNodeDescription is per

VHCA, querying a different VPort of the same VHCA will return the same VNodeDescription.

Table 640 VNodeDescription

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Description
NodeString	RO or RW ^a	512	UTF-8 encoded string to describe VHCA in text format.

a. RW when VPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported is set to 1.

A18.4.2.7 VPORTGUIDINFO

This attribute is identical in its payload to the GUIDInfo attribute. The attribute modifier bits 31:16 provide the VPort index. The lower 5 bits of the attribute modifier are used for the block number. Attribute modifier bits 15:5 are reserved.

The GUID Block Element at offset zero of the first GUIDInfo block (lower 5 bits of AttributeModifier = 0) is read-only.

Table 641 VPortGUIDInfo

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
GUIDInfo	512	0	GUIDInfo attribute contents; see Table 162 GUIDInfo on page 898 .

A18.4.2.8 VPORTPARTITIONTABLE

This attribute is identical in its payload to the P_KeyTable attribute. The attribute modifier bits 31:16 provide the VPort index. The lower 16 bits of the attribute modifier are used for the P_Key block number.

Table 642 VPortPartitionTable

Component	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
P_Key Table	512	0	Contents of P_KeyTable block number BlockNum; see Table 166 P_KeyTable on page 918 .

A18.4.3 SUBNET MANAGEMENT MAD STATUS

In addition to [The EnhQoSArbiterInfo attribute provides the SM with information about device capability to support different enhanced QoS arbiter features. on page 937](#), below are the additions for virtualization.

A18.4.3.1 SMP METHOD/ATTRIBUTE COMBINATION NOT SUPPORTED (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x3)

Table 643 Subnet Management Virtualization

Attribute/Method Map Errors

Attribute	Get	Set	Trap	TrapRepress
VirtualizationInfo	valid	valid	error	error
VPortState	valid	error	error	error
VPortInfo	valid	valid	error	error
VNodeInfo	valid	error	error	error
VNodeDescription	valid	error if VPortInfo:CapabilityMask.IsSetNodeDescriptionSupported = 0, otherwise valid	error	error
VPortGUIDInfo	valid	valid	error	error
VPortPartitionTable	valid	valid	error	error

A18.4.3.2 SMP ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 644 Virtualization SMP AttributeModifier Errors**

Attribute	Invalid AttributeModifier
VPortState	AM[9:0] >(VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap/128) ^a
VPortInfo	AM[31:16] >VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap
VNodeInfo	AM[31:16] >VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap
VNodeDescription	AM[31:16] >VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap
VPortGUIDInfo	AM[31:16] >VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap AM[4:0] > ((VPortInfo:GUIDCap-1)/8) ^a
VPortPartitionTable	AM[31:16] >VirtualizationInfo:VPortIndexCap AM[15:0] > ((VNodeInfo:PartitionCap-1)/32) ^a

a. Integer division with fraction truncated.

A18.4.3.3 SMP ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS_FIELD[4:2] = 0x7)

The following tables list SMP attribute components that are of concern to the SM attribute component errors. These errors can only be detected while performing SubnSet() operations targeting RW components. Some RO components are also listed because of their special characteristics.

Table 645 VirtualizationInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
VirtualizationEnable	no invalids

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
ClientReregister	no invalids
PortStateChange	no invalids

Table 646 VPortInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
PortState	0x2, >= 0x5 set to Arm while in Down ^a set to Active while in Initialize, or Down ^b
ClientReregister	no invalids
P_KeyViolations	no invalids
Q_KeyViolations	no invalids
LID	No invalids when LIDRequired is 0 When LIDRequired is 1: = 0x0000 or 0xFFFF when PortState is Armed or Active ^c >= 0xC000 and < 0xFFFF
SLMask	no invalids

a. Vendor-dependent when setting to Arm while in Arm.

b. Vendor-dependent when setting to Active while in Active.

c. Behavior is implementation-dependent for PortStates other than Armed or Active.

Table 647 VNodeInfo Attribute Component Errors

No component errors.

Table 648 VNodeDescription Attribute Component Errors

No component errors.

Table 649 VGUIDInfo Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
GUID	no invalids

Table 650 P_Key Block Element in VPortPartitionTable

Attribute Component Errors

Component	Invalid Set() Component Value
MembershipType	no invalids
P_KeyBase	no invalids

Table 651 VPortState Block Element in VPortState Attribute Component Errors

No component errors.

A18.5 SUBNET ADMINISTRATION

CA18-16: VPorts that are not assigned a LID **shall** query the SA using a GRH with the well-known SM GID as the DGID.

The source GID provided in the SA query is used to relay the SA response back to the requesting VPort. The Verbs consumer may deduce that a GRH is required based on the indicator returned by Query HCA.

CA18-17: When a VPort is involved in a SA request, whether as a requester, source, or destination, the VPort Partition Key Table **shall** be used for P_Key matching as described in [15.4.1: Restrictions on Access](#).

A18.5.1 SA SPECIFIC OPTIONAL CAPABILITY

SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 (CM2) bit 14 is named IsVirtualizationSupported with the following description: If this value is 1, SA shall support the virtualization extensions in this Annex.

CA18-18: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [CA18-18.1.1](#):

CA18-18.1.1: If SM/SA supports this virtualization annex, SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 (CM2) bit 14, IsVirtualizationSupported, **shall** be set to 1.

A18.5.2 MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING SA ATTRIBUTES

The following existing attributes support VPort data:

A18.5.2.1 INFORMINFO

InformInfo supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as GID or VPort LID as LIDRangeBegin.

A18.5.2.2 INFORMINFORCORD

InformInfoRecord supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as SubcriberGID.

A18.5.2.3 SERVICE RECORD

ServiceRecord supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as ServiceGID.

A18.5.2.4 PATH RECORD

PathRecord supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as SGID or DGID and/or VPort LID as SLID or DLID.

A18.5.2.5 MC MEMBER RECORD

MCMemberRecord supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as PortGID.

A18.5.2.6 MULTI PATH RECORD

MultiPathRecord supports VPorts by supplying VPort GID as SDGIDx.

A18.5.3 NEW SA ATTRIBUTES

CA18-19: This compliance statement is obsolete and has been replaced by [CA18-19.1.1](#):

CA18-19.1.1: If SM/SA supports this virtualization annex as indicated by SA ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 (CM2) bit 14, IsVirtualizationSupported, SA **shall** support the attributes and methods listed in [Table 652: Additional Subnet Administration Attributes for Virtualization\(Summary\)](#) and [Table 653: Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map](#). These are in addition to requirements of [C15-0.1.12](#):

There is no corresponding SA virtualization attribute for the VPortState SM attribute.

Table 652 Additional Subnet Administration Attributes for Virtualization(Summary)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	Optional / Required	Embedded Attribute	Description
VirtualizationInfoRecord	0x0040	O ^a	Y	Container for VirtualizationInfo. See A18.5.3.1 "VirtualizationInfoRecord"
VNodeRecord	0x0041	O ^a	Y	Container for VNodeInfo and VNodeDescription. See A18.5.3.2 "VNodeRecord"
VPortInfoRecord	0x0042	O ^a	Y	Container for VPortInfo. See A18.5.3.3 "VPortInfoRecord"
VPortGUIDInfoRecord	0x0043	O ^a	Y	Container for VPortGUIDInfo. See A18.5.3.4 "VPortGUIDInfoRecord"
VPortPartitionTableRecord	0x0044	O ^a	Y	Container for VPortPartitionTable. See A18.5.3.5 "VPortPartitionTableRecord"

a. Optional in terms of SA (overall) but required if SA supports virtualization.

The new SA attributes for virtualization can be accessed using the Subn-AdmGet and SubnAdmGetTable methods only.

Table 653**Subnet Administration Attribute / Method Map**

Attribute	Get	Set	Report	GetTable	GetTraceTable	GetMulti	Delete
VirtualizationInfoRecord	X			X			
VNodeRecord	X			X			
VPortInfoRecord	X			X			
VPortGUIDInfoRecord	X			X			
VPortPartitionTabelRecord	X			X			

A18.5.3.1 VIRTUALIZATIONINFORECORD**Table 654** **VirtualizationInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	LID	16	0
	Reserved	16	16
VirtualizationInfo	512	32	VirtualizationInfo attribute contents; see Table 635 "VirtualizationInfo"

A18.5.3.2 VNODERECORD**Table 655** **VNodeRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	VPortGUID	64	0
	VPortLID	16	64
	VPortIndex	16	80
Reserved	32	96	Reserved
VNodeInfo	512	128	VNodeInfo attribute contents; see Table 637 "VNodeInfo"
VNodeDescription	512	640	VNodeDescription attribute contents; see Table 640 "VNodeDescription"

A18.5.3.3 VPORTINFORECORD**Table 656****VPortInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	VPortGUID	64	0 GUID of VPort
	VPortLID	16	64 LID of VPort (either assigned or shared)
	VPortIndex	16	80 Index of VPort
Reserved	32	96	Reserved
VPortInfo	512	128	VPortInfo attribute contents; see Table 636 "VPortInfo"

A18.5.3.4 VPORTGUIDINFORECORD**Table 657****VPortGUIDInfoRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	VPortGUID	64	0 GUID of VPort
	VPortLID	16	64 LID of VPort (either assigned or shared)
	VPortIndex	16	80 Index of VPort
BlockNum	8	96	VPortGUIDInfo block number
Reserved	24	96	Reserved
VPortGUIDInfo	512	128	VPortGUIDInfo attribute contents; see Table 641 "VPort-GUIDInfo"

A18.5.3.5 VPORTPARTITIONTABLERECORD**Table 658****VPortPartitionTableRecord**

Component	Length(bits)	Offset(bits)	Description
RID	VPortGUID	64	0 GUID of VPort
	VPortLID	16	64 LID of VPort (either assigned or shared)
	VPortIndex	16	80 Index of VPort
BlockNum	16	96	VPortPartitionTable block number
Reserved	16	112	Reserved
VPortPartitionTable	512	128	VPortPartitionTable attribute contents; see Table 642 "VPortPartitionTable"

A18.6 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

CA18-20: If PMA supports this virtualization annex as indicated by PerfMgt ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2 (CM2) bit 2, IsVirtualizationSupported, VPort PMA **shall** support the attributes and methods listed in [Table 659 "Performance Management Attributes for Virtualization \(Summary\)"](#) and [Table 660 "Performance Management Virtualization Attribute / Method Map"](#).

It is important to note that the VPort PMA does not support the mandatory PMA counters such as PortCounters, PortSamplesControl, and PortSamplesResult.

Table 659 Performance Management Attributes for Virtualization (Summary)

Attribute Name	Attribute ID	AttributeModifier	Description
ClassPortInfo	0x0000	0x00000000	General and port-specific information for PerfMgt class. See A18.6.1 "Class-PortInfo"
VPortCounters	0x0040	0x00000000	VPort performance counters. See A18.6.2 "VPortCounters"

Table 660 Performance Management Virtualization Attribute / Method Map

Attribute Name	PerformanceGet()	PerformanceSet()
ClassPortInfo	X	X
VPortCounters	X	X

A18.6.1 CLASSPORTINFO**Table 661 Performance Management ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2**

Bits	Name	Meaning
2	IsVirtualizationSupported	Indicates that virtualization is supported
3-26	Reserved	Reserved

CA18-21: If this virtualization annex is supported, PMA **shall** indicate its support by setting PerfMgt ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsVirtualizationSupported bit to 1.

A18.6.2 VPORTCOUNTERS

No sampling mechanism is supported for VPortCounters.

CA18-22: If PerfMgt ClassPortInfo:CapabilityMask2.IsVirtualizationSupported is set to 1, VPortCounters **shall** be supported.

CA18-23: This compliance statement is obsolete..

Table 662 **VPortCounters**

Component	Access	Length (bits)	Offset (bits)	Description
Reserved	RO	16	0	Reserved
CounterSelect	RW	16	16	When writing (Set), selects which counters are affected by the operation. When reading (Get), this is ignored. Bit 0 - PortXmitData Bit 1 - PortRcvData Bit 2 - PortXmitPkts Bit 3 - PortRcvPkts Bit 4 - PortUnicastXmitPkts Bit 5 - PortUnicastRcvPkts Bit 6 - PortMultiCastXmitPkts Bit 7 - PortMultiCastRcvPkts Bit 8 - PortRelayErrors Bits 9-15 - Reserved
PortXmitData	RW	64	32	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of data octets, divided by 4, transmitted on all VLs from the VPort.
PortRcvData	RW	64	96	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of data octets, divided by 4, received on all VLs at the VPort.
PortXmitPkts	RW	64	160	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of packets transmitted on all VLs from the VPort.
PortRcvPkts	RW	64	224	Optional; shall be zero if not implemented. Total number of packets, including packets containing errors, and excluding link packets, received from all VLs on the VPort.
PortUnicastXmitPkts	RW	64	288	Total number of unicast packets transmitted on all VLs from the VPort. This may include unicast packets with errors, and excludes link packets.
PortUnicastRcvPkts	RW	64	352	Total number of unicast packets, including unicast packets containing errors, and excluding link packets, received from all VLs on the VPort.
PortMultiCastXmitPkts	RW	64	416	Total number of multicast packets transmitted on all VLs from the VPort. This may include multicast packets with errors.
PortMultiCastRcvPkts	RW	64	480	Total number of multicast packets, including multicast packets containing errors received from all VLs on the VPort.
PortRelayErrors	RW	64	544	Total number of packets that were dropped due to relay errors.
Reserved	RO	928	608	Reserved

A18.6.3 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STATUS

In addition to [16.1.5: Performance Management Status](#), below are the additions for virtualization.

A18.6.3.1 PM ATTRIBUTE MODIFIER ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 663 PM Attribute Modifier Errors**

Attribute Name	AttributeModifier Violations
VPortCounters	AttributeModifier != 0x0000_0000

A18.6.3.2 PM ATTRIBUTE COMPONENT ERRORS (STATUS[4:2] = 0x7)**Table 664 PerformanceSet(VPortCounters) Component Errors**

Violations
N/A